

(313) 761-4700

XEROX MICROFORMS SYSTEMS  
University Microfilms

Ann Arbor, Michigan 48106

MICROFILMED — 1977

# A N INSTITUTION OF GENERAL HISTORY.

From the beginning of the VWorld  
TO THE

*Monarchy of Constantine the Great.*

COMPOSED

In such Method and manner as never yet was  
extant.

---

By *William Howel*, M. A. Fellow of *Magdalen*  
College in CAMBRIDGE.

---

Ἡ γὰρ ἐκ τῆς ἰστορίας ἐτοιμοτάτη διὰ τὴν παιδείαν, καὶ ἀληθευοτάτη παύσει. Polybius.

Nescire quid antequam natus sis acciderit, id est semper esse puerum. Cicero.

unde facilius quam ex Annalium Monumentis aut res bellica aut omnis Reipub. disciplina cognoscetur? Idem.



---

L O N D O N,

Printed for *Henry Herringman*, and are to be sold in his Shop, at the *Anchor*  
in the lower Walk in the New Exchange, 1661.

2318



*To the KINGS most Excellent  
and most sacred*

# M A J E S T Y.

SIR,



Although the quality of this work be truly such, that, considering the brightnesse of Royal Majesty, and the obscurity of its own extraction, it cannot expect a bare acceptance, much lesse plead any merit in this addresse, yet doth it find more reason for hope than despair; for as much as the whole World hath taken notice that your Majesty's Grace and Clemency is founded more upon the transcendent goodnesse of your own Disposition than the qualifications of your Subjects. Allowance hereby being made for what is mine, it were needlesse to insuit upon the Nobility and usefulness of the subject, the excellency whereof as humane transcendeth not your Orb, and the utmost improvement of which is within the sphear of your activity. It were a piece of pedantry to shew to your Majesty that History is the store-house whence Precedents may be fetched for all sorts of Actions, Publick and Private, Military and Civil; that it is a Mirrour of prudence to shew both their beauty and deformity, a Touchstone to discover deceits, an incentive to virtue, and a terror unto vice; that in it are contained the Prudence of times, imbecillity and strength of Nations, Reasons of State, Councils of Peace, and Stratagems of War; that in it Monarchy triumpheth over the Confusions, Alterations, and Seditions of Popular Government. And should I go about to instance in the various helps it affoardeth to the management of Civil matters, I might justly incurre more than the censure that light upon him, who was so impertinent as to read a Lecture of the Art of a General in the presence of *Hannibal*. For it may justly be said that your Majesty hath improved History to the  
utmost;



utmost; that your actions have so far imitated antient Patterns as to exceed them. Others have wasted and destroyed Nations, you have recovered and restored three dying ones. Others have raged with fire and sword, have rooted out, overturned, and made desolate; your Majesty by Mercy and Grace hath replanted, settled, and enriched. *Alexander* Conquered the effeminate *Persians*, and subdued other Nations whom their own unfitness for Military matters helped him to overcome. *Cæsar* tamed the naked *Galls*, and painted *Britains*, whom fool-hardiness and barbarism had armed against themselves; or if there be any other Achievements of them, or others, which seem more glorious, yet the valour of their Soldiers, the experience of their times, and vicissitude of humane affairs, challenge to themselves the greatest share of reputation. Your Majesty hath subdued those things which are beyond *Mars* his reach: You have tamed wild and extravagant passions of men, Conquered stubborn and perverse dispositions, laid low prejudice, and convinced such, whom all these distempers had rendered affectedly ignorant and disobedient. Your Majesty's Conquests therefore so much more excell the commendations of others, as it is more glorious to cure than kill, to restore than to destroy, to follow the dictates of Compassion and Mercy, then of indignation and revenge, to Conquer the mind than the body; and indeed to overcome one's self than subdue others. That this is no flattery History will ascertain future times, and both the mouths and hearts of your People at present do testify, which, though in other matters they may disagree, yet all unite in this consent, that you are the *True Father of your Country*. In our acclamations during those solemnities of your Majesty's Royal Coronation, seeing there is no need of wishing you the Goodness of *Trajan*, we so much the more pray that the Happiness of *Augustus* may light upon you, and that those solemnities may in one part imitate the *Secular* ones amongst the *Romans*, that though some of us have heretofore seen the like, yet through the length of your happy reign none of us may do it for the time to come. I for my part, though a well-wisher to History, unfeignedly desire, that not till after very many years so great an accession of glory may come to it, as will accrue from the passages of your Majesty's Government; and that in the mean time your Majesty may be as happy in the love and loyalty of your People, as they are in your Princely clemency and care. To this, both a sense of merit and duty binds me, being

Your Majesties most loyal, and most humble  
subject and servant,  
Will. Howel.



## P R E F A C E.

**T**He French (who first Introduced this custom into the World of writing Prefaces before the works of others) have used that liberty with so much excess in the commendation of their friends, that they have rendered it not only suspected to the Reader, but prejudicial to their reputation whom they intended to honour by it. But as I cannot approve the indiscreet zeal of those persons that would rather abrogate a good Office when abus'd, than endeavour to reform it, I would neither wave an employment which gave me the occasion of hinting to the Reader some such things as may be of concernment to him in the perusal of this work, and which the modesty of the Author would not permit him to communicate, neither on the other side would I willingly recede from the strictness and severity of truth. So that whatsoever shall fall from me to his advantage shall not need any favourable construction to make it passe, nor shall I take that freedom to mix fiction and History together: The use of this latter is so obvious to every eye, that it is needlesse to speak much of it, it shall suffice me in short to say, that by the knowledge of History we are taught wisdom, and led to vertue, there being n thing in the Actions or Fortunes, either of publick or private persons, to which somewhat in former Ages bore not a resemblance, and which by a due consideration of the circumstances we may not with profit apply to our present occasions. How much we are excited to virtue by it, they that know the power of Emulation in noble minds will easily conclude: which is manifest by the famous examples of Themistocles, whom the victories of Miltiades robbed of his repose, of Alexander, who was stirred up to the desire of glory by reading the actions of Achilles, as Cæsar by reflecting upon his; add to this, that such persons whom these Precedents of vertue will not encourage to it, are aw'd by History from running headlong into vice, when they cannot but look on the writers of the present Age to be set as spies upon their Actions, and must expect when they are dead to be exposed without fear or flattery to the Impartial censure of the living. For who is there that would

would so much value the pleasure of a glasse of Wine, as not to abstain from drinking it, if he knew it had been all night steep'd in Antimony.

These, besides many others, are the benefits which accrue to us by the knowledge of History in general, but that I may inform the World how much it is acknowledging to the worthy Author of this Institution in particular, and wherein those excellencies of his consist, which distinguish him from the ordinary crowd of Historians, Ut possit digito monstrari & dicier hic est, I must take leave to insist upon these ensuing heads, wherein I shall plainly make appear to the equal and candid Reader, that History is reduced by him in this work to such order, and exact Method, as never yet in any Language.

For, first you have here all the Empires in distinct Chapters by themselves, with the Contemporaries of them distinguished in the same manner from each other, and from the Empire to which they were Coetaneous. Whereas both in Systems and in larger Volumes of General History they are mingled together with a strange confusion, like the several ingredients of an Olio in the same Dish, where the variety of the Meats destroy the taste of one another, and he that would read any History by it self, finds it immediately embroyl'd and interwoven with the affairs of other Nations, so that he will not easily form a perfect Idea in his mind of that which is given him but in parcels.

In the next place this Author has furnished you with a general Description of Greece, its antient Kingdoms and Commonwealths, from their first Originals, the successions of Kings, changes of Government, and forms of the several Republicks, with the power and nature of their respective Magistrates and Officers, not omitting the most considerable Customs, Laws, and Antiquities of each of them, deduced from the best Historians, whom you still find quoted in the Margent; this, as it hath never been intirely performed by any Author heretofore, so ought it to set a peculiar mark of Honor upon ours, who hath been carefull to give us an exact account of that Countrey, which was the Mother of Arts and Sciences.

After this, if we will turn our eyes upon the Macedonian Empire, and the several parts and branches of it, as the Kingdoms of Syria, of Macedon, and Egypt, we shall still have greater occasion to admire the learn'd diligence of the Author. The Græcian Monarchy after the decease of Alexander not being more dismembred and rent in pieces by his Successors, than by those Writers who have transmitted the memory of it to posterity, particularly, the Asian and Egyptian Kingdoms under the Seleucidæ and Ptolomies have never been compiled in one History, and I have often wondred in my perusal of this Institution, by what means the Author of it could arrive at so clear a knowledge of those perplex'd successions, it was certainly a work of great labour to compare Historians, and to weave these several Arguments and loose pieces into one entire Loom, which I the rather mind the Reader of,

of, because it is not easily perceiv'd by every ordinary capacity, for the uniformity of the style, and the unbroken order of the whole is such, that they onely who are conversant in Antiquities are able to judge what travel and study were required to it.

The Roman History next invites our observation; wherein the success of this Author hath sufficiently recompenced his worthy pains: I dare confidently affirm, No modern Pen hath yet carried it on with so great light from the Original of the Citie to the time of Constantine. For from the banishment of Tarquin to the new modeling of the Government by Augustus, you have all the Intermediate Changes, Alterations, and Seditions of it, while yet a State, as the contests of the Patricians and Commons, with the several motives of them, The displacing and restoring of Annual Magistrates, the Description of their Offices, the Rites and Ceremonies of their Religion; all collected with great diligence from the Fathers of Roman History, but never given us in one body by antient Authors, or by any of later days. I confesse I have read a French Historian, who from the reign of Augustus almost to that of Justinian hath given me the greatest satisfaction of any man; Yet he often amuseth himself (as some of our bad Chroniclers at home have done) with passages of small concernment, & below the Dignity of an Historian to relate: and from the Foundation of the Citie to Augustus, pays his Readers with a bare Translation of Florus. Sr. Walter Rawleigh (never to be mentioned without honour) concludes his History with the end of the Macedonian War, and the conversion of that Kingdom into a Roman Province: much about the same time we are forsaken by our best Guide Livy, whose Decads from the Captivity of Perseus to the time of Octavius Cæsar (whose Contemporary he was) are wholly lost: for in the conclusion of his 45<sup>th</sup> Book (the last which is left us) he introduces King Prusias speaking to the Romans, whom he came to visit, in these words; Deos qui urbem Romam incolent Senatūque & Populum Romanum salutatum se venisse, & gratulatum quod Persea Gentiumque Reges vicissent, Macedonibusque & Illyriis in Ditionem redactis, auxissent Imperium. But as this Author hath supplied the Defects of Livy, and continued the Roman History five hundred years beyond Sir W. Rawleigh, so in the alteration of the Government from a Commonwealth to a Monarchy by Augustus, the reasons which induced the Emperour to make that change, the manner how, and the form of it, are delivered with so great care, and describ'd with so much life, that I could not but take a particular notice of it; and (with the civility of those that carve to others where themselves best like) invite the Reader to a more exact observation of that which hath given me so great contentment.

Neither

Neither hath he deserved lesse of Christian than prophane History : for from the Primitive times till Constantine the Great he hath deduced the Successions of Bishops in the principal Sees, with the practice of the Christians, and a faithfull relation of their sufferings in all the persecutions.

For what concerns our own Island, I think he hath perform'd the part of a true English-man, and a lover of his Countrey : for he hath vindicated the Antiquity of its first Discovery by the Phœnicians, and that not onely by the probable reasons alleged by that great person Bochartus for the Etymology of the word Britannia, but by other undeniable, and convincing circumstances, which as it redounds to the honour of our Nation, so reflects a part of that glory to our Author.

One particular of no slight consequence I had almost omitted : That as the Reader may without any intervening matters impertinent to his present purpose read the History of any Empire, or Kingdom Contemporary to it, by it self, so he may likewise observe that the principal passages in all of them are linck'd together by Synchronisms, not onely placed in the Margent, but in the beginning or end of every notable Occurrence.

Thus I have briefly, and with much sincerity couch'd together some of those Excellencies, which amongst many others I have observed in this Institution of History : of which if I may presume to give my private opinion, (though I am conscious to my self how little it ought to signifie to the World) I think the work taken all together is for the order of it handsomely and judiciously contrived, for its style perspicuous, and for the learning in the several parts of History, Antiquity, and Chronology, uncommon. Those who desire a greater politenesse in the style may consider, that the florid way of writing, which hath undeservedly acquired so great a name to some of our own Age and Nation, is nothing proper to an Historian, and that our Author busied himself in matters more serious, and of greater use, he chose rather the plain but comely strength of the Dorique Pillar, than the Effeminate, though curious shape of the Corinthian. For my own part, I confesse that plainnesse and unaffected simplicity is pleasing to me : and I think no Intelligent Person that goes upon businesse, will leap Hedges out of the open and direct Road, to Travel over Flowry Fields, or painted Meadows.

A N



A N  
INSTITUTION  
OF  
Generall History.

The First Part.

BOOK I.

CHAP. I.

From the beginning of the world, to the beginning of the first Empire.

1. **I**N (a) the beginning God created the Heaven and the Earth. By (b) which we understand that they were framed by his Word, so that things which are seen, were not made of things which do appear. (a) Gen. 1. 1.  
(b) Heb. 1. 3.
- Man created.
2. Mans habitation being made and conveniently furnished the sixth day ; then (and not till then) was he made of the dust of the Earth, and, God breathing into his nostrils the breath of life, he became a living Soul. Being placed in the Garden of Eden, and a meet help wanting to him, Eve was framed of one of his ribs. Of all the Trees of the Garden, except that of the knowledge of Good and Evil, they might safely eate ; and at such time as they should eat it, they were surely to dye. But the Serpent beguiled the woman, who did eat thereof, and giving to her Husband, he also did eat. Hereby they rendred themselves guilty of temporall and eternall death ; they were condemned to labour and sorrow ; and those not confined to their own persons, but extended to their whole posterity, involved with them in the same guilt : the demonstrating whereof might seem the Scope of this present Work ; nothing having succeeded but vanity and vexation of spirit : nothing but labour and travail under the Sun.
- Fallen.
3. Adam, being expelled Paradise to till the ground, begat of Eve his wife.
- Expelled Paradise.
- B

wife *Cain* and *Abel*; though in what years is not expressed. *Abel* was a Keeper of Sheep, and *Cain* a Tiller of the Ground. By Faith, *Abel* offered to God a more excellent sacrifice than *Cain*, by which he obtained witness that he was righteous, and contracted such envy, that his Brother slew him in the field. The voice of his blood cried to God from the ground, and drew down this punishment upon *Cain*, (besides that of the ground formerly laid upon his Father) to be a Fugitive and Vagabond in the Earth: Then departed he from the presence of the Lord, and went into the Land of *Nod*, where he built a City, and called it *Enoch*, after the name of his Son. His Family was propagated to *Lamech*, the fifth in descent from himselfe, by whom the Jews\* have thought him to have been slain, by reason of *Lamech's* words to his two wives: that he had slain a man to his wounding, and a young man to his hurt: if *Cain* should be avenged seven fold, then *Lamech* Seventy and seven fold. After the death of *Abel*, *Adam* begat *Seth*, in the hundred and thirtieth year of his Age, as *Moses* (c) maketh expresse mention; neglecting the account of time in the Family of *Cain*, because his wicked race perished in the Flood: the Church of God being to be continued in the posterity of *Seth*, of whom also (as to the flesh) his Son himselfe was to proceed.

4. In the race of (d) *Seth*, is laid down the account of years from the Creation to the Deluge. For *Seth*, being born when *Adam* was 130 years old, begat \* *Enos* at the age of 105; *Enos* being 90, begat *Cainan*, and *Cainan* when he was 70, begat *Mehalelec*. From the birth of *Mehalelec* to that of his son *Jared* passed 65, from *Jared's* to *Enoch's* 162, and thence to that of *Methuselah* 65. *Methuselah* when he begat *Lamech*, was aged 187 years; *Lamech* when he begat *Noah* was 182, and *Noah* at the time of the Flood had lived 600 years, all which amount to the summe of 1656; each year of the Father's age being supposed compleat at the birth of his Son. All these by divine providence, for the propagation of Mankind, obtained a very long time upon the Earth. Though *Enoch* had the shortest, yet he never died, being taken up by God, after he had walked with him 365 years. *Methuselah* his son of all others, arrived at the greatest age, being 969 when he died. Yet, in a certain sense, *Adam* lived longer than he; for being created in his perfect strength, and fit for generation, he had the advantage of 60 years, before which age we read none of them to have had any children; Nature then requiring a longer time for maturity. If 60 now be added to 930 years, which he lived, the number exceeds that of *Methuselah's* age by 21. Seeing the World required it, it cannot but be presumed, that each of these begat other children, and some of them before these here mentioned. But such being but collaterall to that line, which was to be brought down to *Noah*, (who was to continue the generation of Mankind, and to re-people the Earth) *Moses* upon that account, had no occasion to make mention of them.

5. In the 480 year of the life of *Noah*, God seeing all flesh to have corrupted it selfe, and as well the posterity of *Seth*, as that of *Cain*, to be given up to all wickednesse; it repented him that he had made Man. He resolved not alwaies to strive with him, yet gave him the space of 120 years to repent in. If no amendment appeared in that time he fully determined by an universall Deluge to destroy Man and Beast, with the creeping things, and the Fowls of the air. Yet *Noah* a just man found grace in his sight, and being a Preacher of righteousness to the wicked World, the Lord was graciously pleased to make choice of him and his family to be a remnant and a seed, out of which Mankind and his Church might be propagated and repaired. He commanded him to build an Ark of \* *Gopher* wood, into which he was to take his wife, his sons and their wives, with some of every living thing of all flesh: of the clean by seven, and the unclean by two. On (e) the tenth day of the second Month, he commanded him to bring the

The order of living Creatures into the Ark: On the seventh after, he entered it; and on the same day, the rain began to fall, and so continued for 40. dayes, and as many

\* Vide Mercurium in Gen. 1. & Pererium. (c) Gen. 3. (d) Gen. 1.

Here the word begat, is to be understood in the same sense as the Hebrew בָּרָא, the Greek γενῆαι, and the Latin gignere, which are applied to Mother as well as to Father, and betoken birth rather than conception. The Latin word gignere and natus, signify the same thing. Tunc ille Aeneas quem Davidiano Anchise Alma Venus Phrygia genuit Simoentis ad undas? Vide Gen. 40. 20. Mat. 11. 1. Luc. 1. 47. 1 Pet. 2. 2. Vide Plin. lib. 7. cap. 8.

Gen 5. A. M. 1656. \* Some interpret it Cedar, others Cypress, than which no wood is stronger; of which the doors of the Temple of Ephesus were made, the coffins of those that died in the service of their Country, Jupiter's scepter, & ships in Babylon and Assyria. (e) Vide Ludov. Capellum. in Chronologia sacra.

many nights. For 150 dayes the waters prevailed upon the Earth, (reckoned from the first fall thereof); infomuch that fifteen Cubits upward the Mountains were covered, and all flesh died that moved upon the Earth, both of Fowl, and of Cattel, and Beast, and of every Creeping thing that creepeth upon the Earth, and every Man. But God remembering *Noah*, and every living thing, and all the Cattel that was with him in the Ark; after the forty dayes, the windows of Heaven were stopped, and the rain from Heaven was restrained, and at the end of 110 more (which make up the 150) the waters were abated. This fell out on the 29th day of the 7th moneth, and the 196 of the year consisting of Lunar moneths; or the 17th day of the 7th moneth, if they were Solar.

The Ark rested on Ararat.

6. On the 17th. day of the 7th. moneth the Ark rested upon the Mountains of *Ararat*, according to the Hebrew; if, in this place, the version of the 70th. and *Hierome* in the vulgar, be not rather to be credited (which have the 27th) seeing it is not probable that the Ark should rest the same day, or two dayes before the waters began to decrease. On the first day of the 10th. moneth were the tops of the Mountains seen, and forty dayes after, *Noah* sent forth a Raven which went to and fro until the waters were dried up from off the earth. The Raven returning no more unto him, seven dayes after he sent forth a Dove to see if the waters were abated, which finding no rest for the sole of her foot returned unto him. He stay'd yet other seven dayes, and again sent forth the Dove, which in the evening brought in her mouth an Olive leaf; so that he knew the waters to be abated. Then, seven other dayes passed, he sent her out the third time, and she returned not to him any more, the waters being now so much fallen, that the ordinary Hills might be uncovered, wherein the might continue and feed; although the Plains and Vallies were still overwhelmed. On the first day of the first moneth of the 601 year of *Noah's* life, the waters were dried from off the face of the earth; yet so, as it still remained moist and dirty, having been so long a time soaked with such quantity of moisture. Therefore he stay'd yet 55 dayes more, till the 27th. day of the second moneth, before he went out of the Ark; so much time having been requisite for drying the ground (especially in low places) and for the growth of grasse, and other things necessary for the sustenance of living Creatures, which had now continued in the Ark 365 dayes, or a full solar year, which exceedeth the lunar eleven dayes.

Where Ararat is.

7. The Ark rested upon the Mountains of *Ararat*; by which place most understand *Armenia*, rejecting the pretended Verses of *Sibylla*, which place it upon a Mountain of *Phrygia*, near to the Citie *Celana*, and out of which the two Rivers *Marfyas* and *Meander* do issue. Some will have it to have rested about *Araxene*, a Plain of *Armenia*, through which the River *Araxes* runneth, by the foot of the Mountain *Taurus*. But the far greater number consulting both of Heathens, Jews, and Christians, pitch upon the Mountains of the *Gordyaans*, otherwise called *Carduchi*, *Cardiai*, *Cordyai*, *Corduani*, *Gordi*, *Cordai*, *Curdi*, &c. the Hill it self being variously named *Kardu*, *Cardon*, *Kurud*, *Kardynus*, *Cordyaus*, &c. What Hill soever it was, it must have stood Eastward of the Countrey of *Shinar* or *Babylonia*, and the Vine must have naturally grown there; upon which, and other accounts these *Gordyaan* Mountains are rejected by a learned (\*) Writer of modern times, who affirmeth that *Ararat* named by *Adams* is not any one Hill, so called, no more than any one Hill among those Mountains which part *Italy* from *France*, is called the *Alpes*, and will have the same ledge of Hills running from *Armenia* to *India*, to keep the same name all along, and even in *India*, to be called *Ararat*. For that the best Vine naturally groweth on the South-side of the Mountains *Caucasus*; and, because of other excellencies of that soyl, he thinketh it most probable that *Noah* there settled himself and planted his Vineyard. And he alloweth best of the opinion of *Goropius Becanus*, who conceived the Ark to have rested on the highest Mountains of that part of the World.

The Testimony of the Heathen concerning Noah's Flood.

8. Of this Deluge a tradition remained amongst the Heathen. (c) *Berosus* the *Caldæan*, Priest of *Belus*, and contemporary with *Alexander* the Great,

Vide Bocharti Phaleg. lib. 1. cap. 3.

(\*) Sir Walter Raleigh. lib. 1. cap. 7. Sect. 10.

(c) Josephus Antiqu. lib. 1. cap. 3.





which also upon the Persian Gulf, *Pliny* and others place the *Elymaeans*.

2. *Assur*. 13. From *Assur* descended the *Assyres*, called afterwards *Assyrians*, and from him was named *Assyria*, properly so called, (which was the Countrey lying about *Ninus*, or *Ninive*), named also anciently (e) *Aturia*, and (f) *Assyria*, and in latter times (g) *Adiabene*. In it *Sirabo* placeth the *Babylonians*, *Elymaeans*, *Paratacans*, *Gordians*, *Mesopotamians*, *Arabians*, and *Syrians* (from *Egypt* to *Pontus*, where the *Leuce-Syrians* dwell) called also *Assyrians*. *Syria* and *Assyria* were of old time promiscuously used; but at length custom obtained that *Euphrates*, or *Tigris*, parted them. From *Arphaxad*, *Josephus* would have the *Chaldeans* issued, which as he and others say were anciently called *Arphaxadans*; but in Scripture they are constantly read *Chasdim* from *Chesed*, or *Chased* son to *Nachor*, the brother of *Abraham*, and therefore owe their Original rather to him; and from *Arphaxad* seemeth to have received it's appellation a part of *Assyria*, called *Arphaxitis*, and named *Arrapachitis* by *Ptolomy*. From *Lud* came the *Lydians* anciently also known by the name of *Maones*, as we have it from *Herodotus* and others; the *Carians* and *Mysians* also, who inhabited the South part of *Asia*, beyond the River *Meander*, being reckoned of the same Original by him. Of *Aram* descended the *Arameans* and the *Arimis*, called *Syrians*, after the growth of the *Assyrian* Empire. Four sons of *Aram* are mentioned by *Moses*, which (\*) elsewhere are reckoned amongst the Sons of *Sem*, viz. *Huz*, *Hull*, *Gether*, and *Mus*, or *Mesech*.

Vide Evadem.

(e) *Strabo* lib. 16. pag. 736.

(f) *Diodo* lib. 2.

(g) *Suidas*.

Lib. 1.

(\*) *1 Chron.* 17.

The four  
Sons of *Aram*.  
*Huz* 1.

*Hull* 2.  
*Gether* 3.

*Mus* 4.

*Jostan* the second son of *Eber* had thirteen Sons.

Their seat.

14. *Huz*, or *Hz*, by general consent of the ancients built *Damascus*. There being two besides of the same name; this hath made a confusion amongst Writers. One (b) was the Son of *Nachor*, the brother of *Abraham*, whose seat is called *Ausitis* (i) in the Greek, and his posterity *Ausites*, a people of *Arabia* the desert, mentioned by *Ptolomy*. (k) Another of the posterity of *Efsa*, or *Edom*; who fixed in *Arabia* the *stony*, on the Borders of *Canaan*, from whom *Idumaea* is (l) called the Land of *Hz*. *Hull* (by *Josephus* named *Orus*) as they say, inhabited part of *Armenia*. *Gether* was the father of the *Bactrians*, according to *Josephus*; according to *Hierome*, of the *Carians* and *Acarthians*; and *Mercerus* strangely joyneth all these Nations so far distant in place, together in Original. *Mus* (called also (m) *Mesech*) is thought by *Josephus* to be the founder of the *Mesaneans*, a people near the *Caspus* of *Pasinus*, about the mouths of *Tigris*. *Hierome* maketh him the father of the *Maones*; being the same with the *Lydians*, whom he himself deriveth elsewhere from *Lud*. (n) Others will have him to have given Original to the people, inhabiting the North part of *Syria*, between *Cilicia* and *Mesopotamia*, near the Mountain *Mafius*; or to the inhabitants of this Mountain, called *Mafeni* and *Mafani*. *Eber* the Son of *Selah*, besides *Phaleg*, had another Son named *Jostan*, whose thirteen Sons *Moses* relateth, as the founders of so many Nations; *Almodad*, *Sheleph*, *Hazemaxe*, *Jerah*, *Hadoram*, *Uzal*, *Diklah*, *Obal*, *Abimael*, *Sheba*, *Ophir*, *Havilah*, and *Jobab*. Their dwelling was from *Mesha*, as thou goest, saith *Moses*, unto *Sepphar*, a Mount of the East. They inhabit, saith *Josephus*, from *Cophenes*, a River of *India*, that Countrey of *Syria* which lieth upon it; as now the Text is: which cannot but be false Geography. And for *Syria*, *Asia* is rather to be read, which, as *Pliny* saith, according to the judgement of others, included three other Provinces of the *Gedrosi*, *Arachoti*, and *Paropamisade*, being terminated with the River *Cophetes*.

15. But neither in this place is there any thing to be met withall like *Mesha*, or *Sepphar*, or any people thereabout of the same name with *Jostan*, or his Sons; neither could that *Ophir*, to which *Solomon* sent for Gold by Sea, and which they also will have denominated from one of the thirteen, be near *Asia*, which lieth at the foot of the Mountain *Paropamisus*, at a vast distance from the Ocean. Great *Bochartus* therefore placeth them in the Mediterranean parts of *Arabia* the happy, the inhabitants whereof, if they may be heard, challenge *Jostan* for the founder of both the *Arabian* Nation and Language.

- Almodad* 1. guage, calling him otherwise *Cabsan*. From *A. modad* then, descended the *Almodaens*, by the Greeks called *Allamaeota*, whom *Ptolemy* placeth in the middle of *Arabia*, near the head of the River *Lar*, which emptieth it selfe into the *Persian* Sea. From *Sheleph* the *Sa'apeni*, who lived more remote upon the borders of *Arabia* Desert, not far from the spring of the River *Beisus*. From *Hazemaxe* (which word is variously written, and by the *Arabians* called *Hadrarnanth* or *Chadrarnanth*) were named the regions *Adarnia*, *Chavarnis*, *Chavarnis*, and the Inhabitants *Athramotia*, *Chavarnotia*, *Chavarnotia*, *Ararnia*, and *Adarnia*, whose Metropolis was anciently called *Sabota*, *Sabbata*, *Saubata* at this day *Sebam*. From *Jerach* came the *Alisai*, a people inhabiting near the Red Sea: *Jerachai* in Hebrew, and *Alilai* in Arabick, being the Sons of *Jarach*, *Hilal*, or the Moon.
16. From *Hadoram* issued the *Drimanti* placed by *Pliny* upon the Persian gulfe, near the *Mace*. From *Uzal*, the Inhabitants of the Kingdom of *Alieman* (in the eastern part of *Arabia*) seem to be descended, *Sanaa* the Metropolis being by the Jews still called *Uzal*. *Dikla* in the Chaldean and Syrian tongues signifying a Palm; from him must that part of *Arabia* have been called, wherein that Tree most grows, inhabited by the *Minai*. *Obal* (in the Arabian tongue *Aubal* and *ribil*) seemeth to have passed over the gulf into *Arabia* *Troglodytica*, and to have given name to the mart-Town and Bay of *Abalites* or *Analites*. *Abimael* was the Father of the *Malita*, whom *Theophrastus* maketh to have inhabited one of the four Regions fruitful in spices. Of *Seba* came the *Sabaens* properly so called, named also *Sabara*, who dwelt by the Red Sea, betwixt the *Mineans* and *Carabanes*, which Nations also together with the *Chavarnotia*, are by Writers often included amongst the *Sabaens*. Besides this *Seba*, there were three others of that name and founders of Nations. As (o) one the Son of *Chus*, another (p) *Jobab* the Son of *Jostan*, and the (q) third the Son of *Jostan* and Nephew of *Abraham*. *Seba* the Son of *Jostan* joyned to the Arabian Sea; the rest to the Persian; so that the *Sabaens* (of whom the Greeks and Romans know no distinction) are said by *Pliny*, to live from Sea to Sea. The Son of *Jostan* lived on roberie; but the rest by Commerce with other Nations. *Ophir* (in Arabick, *Opfar*, signifying most rich) gave name to that part of *Arabia* near the *Sabaens*, which was inhabited by the *Cessanite*, *Cassandros*, or *Gassandros*, so called from the Treasures; gold, for it's plenty, being here in little request. Another *Ophir* there was also in *India*; in the Island *Taprobane*, as most probable; the *Phenicians* being accustomed to give old names to new-found places. From *Chavilah* the Son of *Jostan* (for there was another of this name. Son to *Chus*) descended the *Chaulonite*, called otherwise *Carbi*, and *Cerbani*, the most warlike of the *Arabians*, whose seat is yet called *Chaulan*. Of *Jobab* the last of the thirteen, came the *Jobabite* placed by *Ptolomy* next to the *Sackalites*. This was the habitation of the Sons of *Ireland* from *Mesha*, called otherwise *Musa* and *Muzia* a famous port upon the Red Sea, as one goeth to *Saphar* a mountain Eastward, where was a City of the same name; both Port and City being well known to the *Egyptians* and *Ethiopians*, who used to trade into these parts. This was the inheritance of the Sons of *Sem*, the choicest of all, though contained onely within *Asia*.
17. To *Japhet* fell a very considerable part of *Asia*, and all *Europe*, the least of the divisions of the Earth, but better improved than the rest, and far more populous; of later times the seat of learning, of two Empires which extended their power to the inwards both of *Asia* and *Africa*; and in an especial manner blessed with more than worldly prosperity, since *Japhet* dwelt in the tents of *Sem*. The Greeks acknowledged him for their Founder, by the name of *Iapetus*, than whom they thought nothing more ancient. *Moses* reckoneth seven of his Sons, and as many Nephews. The Sons are (q) *Gomer*, *Magog*, *Madai*, *Javan*, *Tubal*, *Meshech* and *Tiras*. *Josephus* maketh *Gomer* the Father of the *Galatians*, which if so, the same Originall

*Iapetus*.  
*Japhet's* Sons.  
*Gomer* 1.

(o) *Gen.* 10. 7.  
(p) *Gen.* 25. 3.

(b) *Gen.* 22. 21.  
(i) *Job* 1. 1.  
(k) *Gen.* 36. 28.

(l) *Lam.* 4. 21.

(m) *1 Chron.* 1. 17.

(n) *Junius Bochartus*.

ginall must be extended to the *Gauls*, of whom the other were but a colonies; and to some the names of *Cimmerii* and *Cimbri*, whereby the Inhabitants of the Western parts have been known, as also those of *Kumero*, *Kumeri* and *Cymbro*, which our ancient *Britains* (of the same stock with the *Gauls*) called themselves, seem to own no other originall. But another thinketh the Land of *Gomer* to be that part of *Phrygia* called *Catecaemene*, lying upon the rivers *Cayster* and *Maander* and the City *Philadelphia*; the Plains of which consist of a burnt kind of Earth like to ashes, and the hilly parts are all stonie, the whole Country being brittle, adust and easie to be inflamed. This he gathereth from the signification of *Gomer* and *Phrygia*, both which import *burning*; *Moses*, (according to his judgment) not alwaies calling the Foundation of Nations by their true and proper names, but by the names of the Countries which they planted. Ever when the word is of the plural number, as of the Sons of *Javan*, *Cushim*, and *Rodanim*; and all the Sons of *Masaim* and *Canaan* (except *Sidon* and *Heb*) must needs be names of peoples, not of particular Men. *Harsamaneth* he proveth to be the name of a place onely, for that it signifieth the region of *Deah*; as *Dkila*, a place of *Palmyres*, *Ophir* a rich, *Jobab* is called from the desert, and severall others.

Gomer's three Sons.  
Askenaz, 1.

R'phath, 2.  
Togarmah, 3.

18. *Gomer* hath three Sons mentioned by *Moses*; *Askenaz*, *R'phath*, and *Togarmah*. From *Askenaz* those descended, according to *Josephus*, by the *Greeks* called *Rhēgines*; which who they were, is not to be understood. Most probably, by *Askenaz* is signified *Bithynia*, in which is the Biv *Ascanius*, besides a Lake and River of the same name; or *Troas* and *Phrygia* the lesse, in which were *Ascania*, both Country and City, and Island *Ascania*. From *R'phath*, *Josephus* deriveth the *Paphlagonians*, a people of *Asia* the lesse, near *Pontus*, and neighbours to the *Phrygians*. *Togarmah* is variously expounded by Writers. It appeareth out of *Ezekiel*, (r) that *Gomer* and *Togarmah* were not far distant; both North of *Judea*: and that from *Togarmah* came Horses and Mules to be sold at *Tyre*. Hereto well agreeth the opinion of *Josephus*, who placeth *Togarmah* in *Phrygia*, to which *Cappadocia* was near adjacent, North to *Judea*, and excelled in the breed of Horses and Mules.

2. Magog.

The same with Prometheus.

19. From *Magog*, *Japhet's* second Son, descended the *Scythians*, according to *Josephus* and others; *Gog* and *Magog*, being that part of *Scythia* about *Caucasus*, which the *Colchi* and *Armenians* (whose language was half *Chaldean*) called *Gog-basan*, (i. e. the Fort of *Gog*) and thence the *Greeks*, *Caucasus*: to whom also *Gogarene* was known, which *Stephanus* describeth to be between the *Colchi* and Eastern *Iberi*. *Magog* seemeth to be the same with *Prometheus*. For as *Prometheus* was the Son of *Japetus*, so *Magog* of *Japhet*. *Prometheus* was feigned to be fixed to *Caucasus*, and *Caucasus* was the seat of the *Scythians* of old time, till they expelled the *Cimmerii*, and succeeded them; *Prometheus* brought down fire from heaven, which might take Originall from *Magog* his finding out of Metals in *Colchis* and *Iberia*. And the Fable of his Heart, or Liver, being eaten by an Eagle, may be found in (c) the word *Magog*, which signifieth to be dissolved or to decay. *Hierapolis* a City in *Syria*, seemeth to have been called also *Magog* from him; seeing *Deucalion* the *Scythian*, and Son of *Prometheus*, is by *Lucian* said to have consecrated the Temple there to the Syrian Goddess. From *Madai* it's generally granted, that the *Medes* are issued; the *Medes* and *Perians* being constantly in the Books of *Daniel* and *Esther*, named *Madai* and *Paras*. From *Javan* descended the *Ionians*, (or all that inhabited *Greece*, from *Thrace* to the *Isthmus* of *Corinth*, the *Macedonians* being included) *Homer* calling them *Jaones*, and *Alexander* being signified by (r) *Daniel* under the name of the King of *Javan*.

His 4 Sons.  
Elisa, 1.

20. The Sons of *Javan* were *Elisa*, *Tarsish*, *Kittim*, and *Dodanim*, from whom four Provinces took their names. From *Elisa* *Aeolis*, according to *Josephus*, but rather *Elis* (the most ancient and ample region of *Peloponnesus*, part whereof is by *Homer* called *Alisium*) to be taken for the whole *Peninsula*.

Bochartus lib. 3.  
cap. 8.

(r) chap. 58.  
& chap. 27.  
v. 14.

(c) Vide Bochartum lib. 1.

(r) cap. 8. v. 21.

2. Tarsish.

*Tarsus*. From *Tarsis*, *Josephus* and others derive *Tarsus*, the great City in *Cilicia*, some *Caribage*, another *Tunis*; but *Eusebius* and *Bochartus* understand the *Iberians* or *Spaniards*, amongst whom was a place called *Tarlessus*. Besides this, there was another *Tarsis* in the *Indian Sea*, whither ships went from *Etion-gaber*; and indeed, whatever the word originally signifieth (whether *Cilicia* or any other place) it is secondarily applied to the *Mediterranean Sea*, which reacheth unto *Phoenicia*, and sometimes seemeth to denote the Ocean it selfe. *Josephus* will have *Cittim* to have possessed himselfe of the Island *Cyprus*, where was a City called *Cittium*, the native place of *Zeno* the Stoick; and hence he saith the *Hebrews* called all Islands and maritime places by the name of *Cheshim*. Others will have the *Chians*, some certain Nations of *India*, others *Cilicia*, some *Macedonia* to be understood by this word. The *Romans* are by *Daniel* signified under this name, and in *Italy* were of old the Cities *Cetia*, *Echeia*, and the River *Cetus*; and *Chittim* imports the same thing with the word *Latium*, betokening to lye hid. The opinion therefore of *Josephus* is very probable, that these Islands and Coasts of the *Mediterranean* might be known to the *Hebrews*, under the name of

4. Dodanim, or rather Rhodanim.

*Cheshim*. *Dodanim* (omitted in *Josephus*) by some is interpreted *Dardani*, by others *Dodanians*. But most anciently it was read *Rhodanim*, which the *Greek* rendereth *Rhodiens*, though the name of *Rhodes* is later than *Moses* his time. *Bochartus* therefore placeth this people in *Gaul*, about the River *Rhodanus* (now *Rhene*) which he proveth, not to have been so named from *Rhoda*, a Town there founded by the *Rhodiens*. *Rhodanim*, he saith, signifieth *Tellow* or *Saffron-coloured*, which agreeth well with the colour of the hair of the ancient *Gauls*, either naturall or affected; wherein also the *Britains* shewed themselves descended of the same stock, as *Jornandes* judgeth.

5. Tubal.

6. Mesekh.

21. *Tubal* and *Mesekh* (the fifth and sixth Sons of *Japhet*) are joyned in Scripture, most commonly, together; as near to each other. *Josephus* from them deriveth the *Iberians*, and *Cappadocians*, who had a City in his time known by the name of *Mazacha*. *Bochartus* understandeth by *Mesekh* and *Tubal*, the *Moschi* and *Tibareni*, which are so joyned together by *Herodotus*, as *Mesekh* and *Tubal* in the Scripture. The *Moschi* (besides *Moschica* properly so called) possessed all from *Phasis* as far as *Pontus* of *Cappadocia*; the *Moschian* Mountains reaching so far. Then next succeeded the *Tibarens*, according to *Strabo*, who extendeth their borders to *Pharnacra* and *Trapezond*, the *Moschian* and *Colchian* Mountains; so that they lay betwixt the *Trapezuntians* and Inhabitants of *Armenia* the lesse. *Tubal* and *Mesekh* are noted by *Ezekiel*, to abound in Slaves, and Brass, which, by the consent of Authors, fitly agreeth with the regions of *Pontus*; especially *Cappadocia*. From *Thiras* most Authors derive *Thrace*, a woman of which Country was called *Threissa*; and many names there, both of places and persons, perswade the same thing. This was the portion of *Japhet*, answerable to the blessing of his Father; that God should enlarge him. For unto it belonged all *Europe* how big soever, besides *Asia* the lesse, *Media*, part of *Armenia*, *Iberia*, *Albania*, and those vast Tracts towards the North, inhabited of old by the *Scythians*, and now by the *Tartars*: To say nothing of the new World, into which it's probable the *Scythians* passed by the Straits of *Anian*. To his Posterity belong the Northern parts, which by *Jornandes*, an Historian of the *Goths*, are deservedly termed, The work-houses of people, and sheaths of Nations.

Cham's portion.

22. Cursed *Cham* was not excluded from Earthly blessings. To his lot fell *Egypt*, and all *Africk*, a great part of *Syria* and *Arabia*, besides *Babylonia*, *Susiana*, *Assyria*, and other Countries, which his Grand-son *Nimrod* possessed himselfe of. *David* very often calleth *Egypt* the Land of *Cham* or *Ham*: the ancient Inhabitants themselves *Chamia* or *Chensia*. In *Arabia* and *Africk* the name of *Ammon* (the aspiration being taken away) was universally known, as appeareth by *Ammon* a River in *Arabia*, the promontory *Ammonium*, and the people called *Ammonii*. In *Africk*, the City *Ammonis* upon the River *Cinyphus*. The Chappell of *Ammonis* in the

\* a Chron. 20.  
36.

Chap. 11.  
ver. 29, 30.

Chap. 27.  
v. 13.

Plutarch in  
Iside.

Island *Meroe*. In *Marmarica*, the City *Ammonia* vulgarly *Paratonium*: And the *Ammonian* Country, where was the famous Oracle of *Ammon*. Nay all *Africk* was called *Ammonis* or *Ammonia*. *Ham* signifieth *hoc*; in which respect it agreeth well with the Greek word *Zeus*, the name of *Jupiter*. *Ham* was *Noah's* youngest Son; so was *Jupiter* the youngest of *Saturne*. From *Cham's* living in *Africk*, the hottest part of the World, *Jupiter* may be counted the Lord of Heaven. And *Saturne* his being made an Eunuch by his Son *Jupiter* (or *Calus* by his Son *Saturne*, as *Macrobius* hath it) seemeth to relate to that fault, for which *Cham* received from his Father a curse instead of a blessing. Of these things *Bochartus* giveth abundant satisfaction, to name no more.

His 4. Sons. 23. Four Sons of *Cham* are recorded by *Moses*; *Chus*, *Misraim*, *Phut*, and *Canaan*. From *Chus*, by a generall mistake, the *Ethiopians* in *Africk* have been thought to be descended; whereas by the land of *Chus* in Scripture is meant (a) part of *Arabia*, inhabited by the *Chuseans*, called also *Cutheans*; of whom were the *Madianites*, and *Sephora* the wife of *Moses*, who did not flie into *Ethiopia* and there marry her. They inhabited above *Egypt* upon the *Perfian* Gulf, in part of *Arabia* the *sonic* and the *happy*; thought by some to be the same with the ancient *Scenites*, and the moderne *Saracens*, being called *Scenites* from dwelling in Tents, and *Saracens* from their robberies. *Chus* hath six Sons mentioned; viz. *Seba*, *Havilah*, *Sabtah*, *Raamah*, *Sabtechah* and *Nimrod*. *Raamah* hath two, *Sheba* and *Dedan*.

His 6. Sons. All these inhabited about the *Perfian* Sea. Except *Nimrod*, whom *Moses* affirmeth to have fixed his seat at *Babel*. By the name of *Misraim* is to be understood the Father of those who inhabited *Egypt*; thrice in Scripture called *Masor* (the singular number of the word *Misraim*) as it's thought, from the straightness of it, being extended out in length from the Sea towards *Syene*. From *Misraim*, *Moses* deriveth seven People or Nations: *Ludim*, *Ananim*, *Lehabim*, *Naphrubim*, *Pathrusim*, *Castuhim* (out of whom came *Philistim*) and *Caphthorim*.

24. *Josephus* will have the eight Sons of *Misraim* to have possessed all the Country lying between *Gaza* and *Egypt*, though *Philistim* onely gave name to it, from whom the *Greeks* called it *Palestina*. *Lybis*, he saith, led a colonie into *Libya* which he named after himselfe; but as for the rest, he confesseth both their names and affairs to be obscure, their Cities being overthrown, as he saith, in the *Ethiopian* War made by *Moses*, concerning which he bringeth a meer Fable, taken out of *Artapanus*, and the inventions of the *Hellenists*. As for *Ludim*, *Bochartus* by ten Arguments proveth the *Ethiopians* to be meant thereby, whom he will have also a coloaie of the *Egyptians*. By *Ananim* the *Nomades* of *Africk*, who inhabited about *Ammonis*, and in *Nasamonitis*, and for *Anamians* might easily be called *Amonians* and *Ammonians*; they being also a colonie of the *Egyptians* and *Ethiopians*, as appeareth out of *Herodotus*. Of the same Original he maketh the *Nasamones*, *Amantes*, *Hammanientes* (who made their houses of the falc) and the *Garamantes*. *Lehabim* or the *Lehabians* are thought to be the same with the *Libyans* bordering upon *Egypt*, from whom this denomination might passe to those that inhabited the greatest part of *Africk*. *Naphrubim* he placeth in *Marmarica* upon the Mediterranean Sea; *Pathrusim* in *Thebais*, a Province of *Egypt*, called *Pathros*, and by many distinguished from *Egypt*, though peopled from it.

25. *Castuhim* he maketh to signifie the *Colchi*, though so far distant from *Egypt*, out of which they descended, and from *Palestine*, the Inhabitants whereof descended from them; both their Language and life in all particulars so absolutely agreed with the *Egyptians*, of whom by the Heathen also they have been thought a colonie, left there by *Sesostris* in his expedition, though they be of more antiquity then he. The *Caphthorim* seems to have been Neighbours to him, from whom also together with them, the *Philistines* descended, as appeareth from Scripture. They are therefore to be placed in that part of *Cappadocia*, which lyeth next to *Colchos* about *Trapezond*.

(a) Vide *Bochartum* lib. 4. c. 2. *Raleium* l. 7. c. 8. sec. 10.

*Antiq. l. 1. c. 6.*

\* *Solinus* c. 31.

\* *Jerem.* 47. 4. *Amos* 9. 4.

It

It is probable that, upon the report of the riches of these places, the *Egyptians* sent out a Colonie (for this drew thither *Perixus*, *Jafon*, *Sesostris*, the *Medes* and *Perfians*, and of later times the *Saracens* out of *Arabia*): which finding the Climate too cold; or the Country not to answer expectation; or perhaps molested by the *Scythians* and others; part thereof resolved to return home, and in their way feared themselves in *Palestine*, after they had expelled thence the \* *Amis*. The Captain of this Expedition seemeth to have been *Typhon*, reported by the *Greek* Poets to have made War against the gods, and to have perished as far as *Caucasus*; but, after many battells, being bricken of *Jupiter* with a thunderbolt, to have fled into *Palestine*, where he dyed at the Lake of *Serbonis* and there still lyeth buried.

*Deut. 11. 23.*

26. The third Son of *Cham* was *Phut*, who divided *Africk* with his Brother *Misraim*. To *Misraim* fell *Egypt* and most of *Africk*, as far as the Lake of *Tritonis*, which divideth *Africk* into two equall parts. To *Phut*, all from the Lake as far as the *Atlantick* Ocean, as may be gathered from (\*) *Herodotus*. As far as the Lake, he saith, all the *Africans* used the customes of *Egypt*; but those beyond them towards the West, a far different kind of life. Some names retained a memoriall of *Phut*; as the City *Putea*; a River of *Mauritania*; *Tengitana*, called *Phut*; and the Haven *Phibia*, mentioned by *Pliny*, and others. *Canaan* is the fourth Son reckoned in order by *Moses*. He begat *Sidon* his first-born, and *Heb*, the *Jebusite*, the *Ammonite*, the *Gergasite*, the *Hivite*, the *Arkite*, the *Sinite*, the *Arvadite*, the *Zemarite*, and the *Hamathite*. By *Canaan* was inhabited the Land, which thereupon bore his name, and was afterwards conquered by the *Hebrews*. His Family was propagated as far as the Sea, the *Phenicians* being descended of him, as *Eupolemus* an Heathen Writer, in his Book of the *Jews*, bare witnesse, saying, That *Saturne* begat *Belus*, and *Chanaan*; and the later begat the Father of the *Phenicians*: besides, one *Cna* is said by *Sanchonia-bon* (a most ancient *Phenician* Writer) to have been the first Man that was called *Phenician*; whence by *Stephanus*, *Phenice* is called *Cna*, and the *Phenicians* *Cnai*. But, what is more, the Scripture calleth *Phenicia* the Land of *Canaan*.

(\*) *Lib. 4. c. 186, 187.*

*Euseb. prepar. Evang. lib. 9.*

27. *Sidon* the first-born of *Canaan*, was the Father of the *Sidonians*, or the builder of the City *Sidon*, which was more ancient than *Tyre*, and the Metropolis to it; the *Sidonians* having led a Colonie thither, and founded *Tyre*, according to *Trogus* (y) before the destruction of *Troy*; 240 years before the building of *Solomon's* Temple, as *Josephus* counteth. The children of *Heb* dwelt in the Land of *Canaan*, about *Hebron* and *Barsaba* towards the South; and from them the *Anakims* descended. The *Jebusites* held *Hierusalem*, and the Castle of *Sion* unrill *David's* time. The *Ammonites* possessed the Mountains of *Judea*, and passing over *Jordan* made War upon the *Moabites* and *Ammonites*; seized upon *Basan*, *Hesbop*, and all the Country lying between the Rivers *Jabbok* and *Arnon*: in memory whereof, one of their Poets wrote a Poem which *Moses* (a) hath inserted into his Writings. The *Gergasites* seem to have continued about *Gereja* or *Gadara*, over against *Galile*, beyond *Jordan*, (b) till *Christ's* time. The *Hivites* dwelt in Mount *Hermos*, towards the East of the Land of *Canaan*, from whom descended the *Gibeonites*, living nigh to *Jerusalem*, and the *Sichemites* dwelling near to *Samarria*, more towards the West. The *Arkites* inhabited *Arca*, or *Arce*, a City in *Libanus*, mentioned by *Josephus* and *Ptolomy*. The *Sinites* had a City called *Sin*, not far from *Arce*, according to *Hierome*: but *Bochartus* placeth them at *Pelissum*; *Sin* signifying mud or clay, as *Polos* in *Greek*. The *Arvadites* or *Aradites*, seized upon the Island *Aradus*, on the Coast of *Phenice*, at the mouth of the River *Eleuthernus*, and part of the neighbouring Continent, where was *Axtaradus*, *Marathus*, and *Laodicea*. The *Zemarites*, or *Semarites*, dwelt as it's thought about *Finesa* a notable City of *Calosyria*, upon the River *Oromus*, and built *Semarajim* in the Tribe of *Benjamin*. And the *Hamathites* were feared about the City of *Syria*, called *Epiphania*, and not at *Antiochia*, which is at too great a distance. This was the Inheritance of the

(y) *Lib. 18. c. 27.*  
(\*) *Antiq. lib. 8. cap. 2.*

(a) *Num. 21. 27.*  
(b) *Mar. 8. 28.*  
*Mark* 5. 1. 4.  
*Luke* 8. 26.



the Sons of Canaan, whose border was from Sidon, as thou comest to Gerat unto Gaza, as thou goest unto Sodome and Gomorrah, and Admah and Zeboim, even unto Lasha; which some interpret Casarea Philippi, others Calli-chœ; but Bocharius thinketh it to be *Lysa*, a City of the Arabians, in the mid-way between the Dead and Red Seas.

Thus was the Earth most antiently divided and possessed after the Flood. How it hath since, in the severall parts of it, changed it's Inhabitants, shall be discovered, upon occasion, as the Work will bear.

## CHAP. II.

Of the Babylonian Empire, from the first founding thereof to it's utter subversion by Cyrus.

The begin-  
ning of Nim-  
rod's King-  
dom.

1. A fter the division of the Earth; Nimrod, as we said, the Son of Chus and Nephew of Cham fixed his seat at Babel, and therein first began a Kingdom; having joyned to it (a) Erech, and Accad, and Calneh, in the Land of Shinar. By Erech, the ancients understood Edeffa; and by Accad, Nisibis: But neither the names nor situation of these Cities do agree; they being in that part of Mesopotamia which lyeth towards Armenia, and very far from Babylon. Therefore Erech is rather to be taken for Arecca a City of Susiana upon Tigris, mentioned by Ptolomy, which also seemeth to be the same with Arderica or Anderica (b) in Herodotus; Ard in the Persian tongue signifying great. And well Arecca might so be called, which was so long, that sailing up the River one should meet with it three severall dayes, one after another; as the Historian relateth. Bocharius thinketh Accad (called also Archoad) to have given name to the River Argad, which ran through Sittacena a Province near to Babylonia, &c. since called Apolloniatis. By Calneh (which is also Calno and Cauno) is to be understood that City, by the Parthians, re-built and called Clefiphon. It stood upon Tigris, three miles from Selencia, being the Metropolis of Chalonitis, a Province denominat from it, and mentioned by Strabo, and others. Babylon was exhausted by the building of Selencia, as Pliny (c) telleth us; and the Parthians built (or re-built) Clefiphon in Chalonitis, three miles off, to drain Selencia.

The begin-  
ning and du-  
ration of the  
Assyrian Em-  
pire.

2. The duration of this Babylonian or Assyrian Empire till Sardanapalus is variously assigned; the cause of which seemeth to be, for that some de- rived the Originall thereof from the birth of Chus, as Cappellus \* thinketh, and so Herodotus might assign 1520 years to the continuance of it: Others from the beginning of the Babylonian Kingdom, as Diodorus, who reckoneth 1400 years to the death of Sardanapalus. Some from the building of Ninive, as Clefias, who hath 1360. And lastly, others from the death of Belus, as Tra- gus and Ensebius, who give to it 1300 years. That Nimrod should begin his Kingdom within an hundred years after the Flood, is not very probable, as neither that the building of the Tower of Babel happened within that time; which would have been too short a space for the propagation of man- kind to so great multitudes. An hundred years after the Deluge, Phaleg was born, in whose dayes it was that the Earth was divided. Some make the di- vision to have been at the same time of his birth, and thence his name impos- ed, as from a thing already done, or in doing. Others assign it to the latter end of his dayes, and will have his name prophetically given by his Father: But there are not wanting, who take a middle way betwixt these two, and think the division made, when he was come to ripeness of age; or in the middle of his years; the number of which amounted to 239. When Alex- ander the great had conquered Babylon, which fell out about the 365<sup>th</sup> year of the World; Callisthenes the Philosopher, who followed him in his Wars, at the desire of Aristotle his Kinman, inquired into the Antiquities of the Chaldeans, and could find no observations of any longer date then 1903 years; which being cast back from the foresaid years, fall in their beginning, into

(a) Gen. 10. 10.

(b) Lib. 1. c. 185.

(c) Lib. 6. c. 26.

\* Ad A. M. 1822. p. 45.

A. M. 759.

Leges Vossii  
Isag. Chron.  
Differt. s. c. 5, 6.

Porphyrus  
apud Simpli-  
cium in Ari-  
stot. de calo.  
lib. 2.

into the 1772 from the Creation, the 116<sup>th</sup> from the Deluge, and the 18<sup>th</sup> of Phaleg's life.

Nimrod named  
Belus.

Whether he  
built Niniveh.

Made way to  
his Kingdom  
by hunting.

The true Bac-  
chus.

3. Nimrod, the founder of this Empire, was by his subjects named Bel, or Belus, which signifieth Lord, or Sovereign. That he was the ancient Belus, is thence proved; that \* most of the old Writers accounted Be us the builder of Babylon, although some attributed it to Semiramis, herein relying upon the credit of Ctesias, which now is deservedly suspected by learned men, and in no case worthy to stand in Competition with that of Berosus the famous Baby- lonian Priest (who, as Pliny saith, had a Statue erected to his memory at Athens with a gilded tongue) nor with that of Abydenus, who also collected his Histories out of the Chaldean Archives. After Moses hath spoken of the four Cities, which were the beginning of Nimrod's Kingdom; we read that out of that Land (of Shinar) Assur went forth and built Niniveh and the Cities Rehoboth, and Calah, and Pesen, between Niniveh and Calah. Some, according to this Translation, will have this Assur to have been the son of Sem, who having built Niniveh, and founded the Assyrian Kingdom; Nimrod dispossessed him, or his; or some manner of way obtained, and joyned it to the Babylonian, as Julius Africanus hath delivered. But others con- tend that this Assur is the name of the Countrey, and not of a Man, and that it is to be read: And out of that Land went out (Nimrod) into Assur, (i. e. As- syria) and builded Ninive, &c. Otherwise they think it would be out of the way, for Moses to mention the son of Sem in this place, where he is in hand with the Genealogie of Cham; neither could it be peculiar to him to go out of this Land and build Niniveh, seeing all mankind almost, at the division of the Earth, went out of it. The last reading onely maketh the sense intire; for how else could the four Cities properly be said to be the beginning of Nimrod's Kingdom, except he added more unto it? Lastly, this seemeth very urgent that, in Scripture, Assyria is called the Land of Nimrod.

4. He was a mighty Hunter before the Lord, or, therein none was to be compared with him; things being said to be such before God, as were so indeed, or in an eminent manner; He judging not according to outward ap- pearance, but as they are in their own natures. By the means of Hunting it is probable that he made way unto his Monarchy. For under pretence of what was very necessary at this time (when men were few, scattered, and lying abroad, without defence against wild beasts, which ever especially abounded about Arabia and Babylon) he might gather a band of men, and by such exer- cises (which the Heathens (d) by their practice, as well as opinion shewed to be convenient for breeding of Warriours) train them up, till he converted their force from beasts to men. What was performed by him seemeth to have been attributed to his successors. Nimus (e) said to have gathered an Army of Arabians, and therewith to have subdued the Babylonians; which seemeth to have related to his Conquest of that Countrey. For being a Chaldean, and consequently an Arabian, he might by the assistance of his own Countrey-men and Kindred effect it; whom he (f) rewarded with that Region beyond Ti- gris, which thence was, by the Hebrews, called Chus, by the Chaldeans, Chuth; Cissia, by the Greeks; and Chuzestan (i. e. the Province of Chus) by the Per- sians. From his usurping the right of Noah, some think the Fable to have sprung, of Sauron being cast out of his Kingdom by Jupiter; the word Nim- rod signifying a Rebel, and answerable to his carriage. He is also judged to be the true Bacchus; this word being little changed from Bar-Chus, that is, the son of Chus. Bacchus was the son of Jupiter, and he was the Grand-son of Jupiter Hammon. The most ancient name of Bacchus was Zagreus, which signifieth a strong hunter, answerable to the Epithete given to Nimrod. He undertook an expedition into the East, wherein seem to be contained the Fables of Nimrod and his Successors. Bacchus was feigned to be born at Nysa in Arabia; and Nimrod was also an Arabian. And not unlikely might Nim- rod be thought to be over the Vines, who first reigned at Babylon, where was that most excellent kind of Wine, dignified by the Ancients with the name of Nectar. To the reign of Belus, or Nimrod, 65 years are given by Julius Africanus.

\* Semiramis  
eam condiderat,  
vel, ut plerique  
crediderunt, Be-  
lus, cujus regia  
ostenditur.  
Curtius lib. 5.  
cap. 1.  
Berosus apud  
Joseph. contra  
Apionem lib. 1.  
Abydenus apud  
Euseb. p. 10.  
Euseb. lib. 9.  
Dorotheus,  
Sido. is eor. 12  
apud Julianum  
Firmicum.

Mich. 5. 6.

(d) Xeno-  
phon. de ven-  
tione & in Cy-  
ropædia.  
(e) Diodorus  
l. 2. p. 64. A.

(f) Bochar-  
ius l. 4. c. 12.

Athenæus.  
5. Ninus

Ninus.

His Con-  
quests.

Ninive.

His death.

Semiramis his  
wife counter-  
feited her son.

Heracl.

Ninias.

5. *Ninus* his son succeeded him, and canonized him for a God, which gave, as 'tis said, the first occasion to Idolatry. He made a confederacy with *Ariens*, King of *Arabia* (which Countrey withstood most Conquests); and then invading *Armenia*, forced *Barzanes* the King thereof, to submit to his Vassallage. Next he entred *Media*, where he took and Crucified *Phamus* the King; and then, being pricked on by desire of glory, and encouraged by his successe, he subdued all the people of *Asia* in seventeen years, except the *Indians* and *Bactrians*; the latter whereof under Conduct of their King *Zoroastres* (or rather *Oxgartes*, for *Zoroaster* the great *Magician* lived many ages after) stoutly opposed him, and yet at length were brought under, as we have it from *Diodorus*, who reporteth also that *Ninus* built *Ninive*, which he so named after himself. Whether he, his father, or any other built it, A Citie it was of great bignesse, strength, and ornament, being in compasse sixty miles; of a Quatrigular form, encompassed and fortified with a Wall a hundred foot high, and of such a breadth as three Chariots might have been driven together a-breast upon it; adorned also with Towers, 200 foot in height. The place of it is not agreed of, and (b) some think there were two Cities of this name; one upon *Euphrates* in *Comagena*, and another in *Assyria* beyond *Tigris*. As for *Ninus*, many things done both by his father, and successors seem to be attributed to him. He reigned 52 years; and the manner of his death is diversely related. (c) One saith, he was shot with a Dart as he lay before a Town. (d) Another writeth that *Semiramis* his wife (whom he had chosen for her admirable beauty and now doated on) obtained leave to wear his Royall Robe, and reign over *Asia* five dayes; and then, when she had got the power into her hands, commanded one of the Guard to kill him: But a (e) third, onely relateth him to have been secured in prison.

6. He left a son by *Semiramis*, named *Ninyas*, who being but young, she put on mans Apparell, and counterfeiting his person as well as *Sexe* is reported to have done very great things; part of which might rather be challenged by the two foregoing Kings, and by some that followed her. The resemblance of her son in all the lineaments and proportion of his body took away suspicion; for the further prevention whereof, she commanded the same kind of Garment to be worn by the people. At length, when she thought she had got fame sufficient, she made her self known, which detracted not from her glorie, but added to the lustre of it. She re-edified and enlarged *Babylon*, encompassing it with a Wall made up of Brick, Sand, and a certain Clay, or slime clammy, like Pitch, which there abounded: and \* restrained, by new works, the violence of *Euphrates* which formerly was wont to overflow into the Town. Nor content with the Empire as her husband left it, she enlarged it by the Conquest of *Ethiopia*, and made War upon *India*, though without successe; in which undertaking she onely had *Alexander* the Great her Emulator, as *Justin* affirmeth. But, after she had reigned 42 years, either for that she would have had to do unlawfully with her son (being reported exceeding vicious of her body), or because he was impatient of her so long retaining the power, he slew her; although some say, she voluntarily resigned the Kingdom. After her death she was feigned to be turned into a Dove, and worshipped for a Goddesse under that shape; the occasion of which seemeth to have been the bearing of that bird portrayed in her Ensign.

7. *Ninyas*, or *Ninus*, (as *Justin* calleth him) succeeding, imitated neither Grand-father, Father, nor Mother; but giving up himself wholly to an effeminate course of life, would be seen by none except Concubines and Eunuchs. Yet to him is ascribed that policick ordering of the Militia, which was imitated constantly by his Successors. A yearly choice was made of Officers and Souldiers out of each Province, to lye in Garrison in the Citie, and to be ready at all Eshyes, there to continue for one year; at the end of which they were succeeded by new Levies. Hereby the subject was contained in obedience; and yet, by suffering the Souldiers no longer to continue together, all conspiracies and plots were prevented, which might else have risen amongst such multitudes; the space of a year not being sufficient for such through and

(c) Biblioth.  
l. 2. p. 65. ex  
Ctesia Caudis.  
Justin. lib. 2.

(b) Lege Bo-  
charti. Phaleg.  
l. 4. c. 20.

(i) Orosius,  
(k) Dionon  
apud Eilian.  
var. Hist. l. 7. c. 1.

(l) Diodorus  
ubi supra. p. 76.  
D. ex Athe-  
næo & alio.

Justin. ex Tro-  
go. lib. 1.  
Diodorus, ut  
prius.

\* Herodotus.  
lib. 1. cap. 184.

Diodorus, l. 2.  
p. 77. A.

Tentamus.

Sardanapa-  
lus.Belesis & Ar-  
baces co-  
spire  
against him.He obtaineth  
three victories  
over them.Is worsted  
twice.

and intimate acquaintance, as might produce any considerable stirrs. Those that followed *Ninyas* for thirty Generations trod, for the most part, in his paths; nothing either memorable, or certain, remaining of them, except of *Tentamus* the 20th. from *Ninyas*, to whom *Priamus* King of *Troy*, when he was besieged by the *Greeks*, sent for aid. This *Tentamus* is said to have sent him a supply of 10000 *Ethiopian*; and as many of the inhabitants of *Susiana*, with 200 Chariots; under the Command of *Memnon*, who bearing himself very valiantly against the besiegers, was at length by the wives of the *Thessalians*, circumvented and slain. From the beginning of the *Assyrian* Empire, to the destruction of *Troy*, *Eusebius* reckoneth 943 years, *Cappellus* from the building of *Nineveh* 995.

8. The 20th. in order was *Tonos-Cancoleros*, by the *Greeks* and *Romans* A.M. 3166. called *Sardanapalus*, ennobled onely above the rest, for his excessive effeminate life, and his ruin caused thereby. He spent all his time amongst women; with whom he would sit and spin, imitating them in all things possible, so as scarce ever in his whole time was he seen of the other Sex. This extraordinary corruption of manners gave occasion to two of his greatest Officers to compass his destruction. For *Belesis* (or *Belochus*) the Governour of *Babylon*, a great Magician and Astrologer, out of the Doctrine of the Stars, foretold to *Arbaces* Governour of *Media*, (otherwise called (m) *Arbachus*, (n) *Orbachus*, and (o) *Pharnaces*), that one day he should obtain the whole principality of *Sardanapalus*, and excited him to attempts suitable to such an achievement. *Arbaces* herewith puffed up, promised him the possession of *Babylon*, if his Prediction should take, and laboured to ingratiate himself with the Captains of the several Provinces. Then, having a great desire to see what manner of life the King lived, he hired an Eunuch to bring him into the Pallace, where beholding with his eyes his dissolute carriage, he despised him, and much more encouraged himself in the hope given him by *Belesis*. They now resolved, the one to draw the *Medes* and *Persians*, and the other the *Babylonians* to revolt; and *Arbaces* communicated his design and purpose to the Governour of *Arabia* his great friend.

9. These things being as diligently put in practice, as readily undertaken, the next year an Army of 400000 men coming up to *Niniveh*, where the King then lay; under pretence of relieving the former year's Guard, resolved to employ their force in the ruin of the *Assyrian* Kingdom. *Sardanapalus*, having timely notice of the revolt, drew out such forces as were in the Citie, and falling upon the Rebels in the Plain, put them to the rout. They flying to the Mountains, and recollecting their courage, came down again and engaged; but with the same successe: after which they retreated to the same place. Hereupon *Arbaces* calling the Officers together to advise what was to be done, all of them were for disbanding the Army and departing home, except *Belesis*, who urging them with what the Stars portended, prevailed with them to stay; but to no other purpose than that the King might gain the third victory, which shortly happened. Now they fully resolved to be gone; when *Belesis*, his credit being deeply engaged, spent the whole night in viewing the Stars; out of the mystery of which he was bold to affirm, that help would come of its own accord, and great changes follow, if they would have patience but five dayes longer. They being yet prevailed with, for this once; before the five dayes were expired, news came that great forces were coming from *Bactria* to the aid of the King. To them *Arbaces* sent, and easily persuaded them to joyn with the Conspirators.

10. *Sardanapalus* knowing nothing of this, and puffed up with his successe, returned to his former course of life; which *Arbaces* understanding from certain Fugitives, and how his Army lay in a secure and careless posture, drew down upon it in the night, made a great slaughter, and drove those that escaped into *Niniveh*. Hereupon the King committed the conduct of the Army to *Salamenes* his wives brother, and took upon himself the defence of the Citie; but the Rebels twice in the field overthrew his forces, and killed the General with most of his Souldiers. Then was the Citie closely besieged, and many

(m) Justin.  
(n) Strabo.  
(o) Gaterculus.

ny Nations revolted to the conspirators; which the King considering, and sensible of his condition, sent out his three Sons, and two Daughters, with a great treasure, to *Corra*, the Governour of *Paphlagonia*, and, dispatching Couriers into several Provinces, took what care he possibly could for the making of new Levies.

11. Neither was he behind hand in providing all things within, that were necessary for resistance. There being no fear of storming the Town, by reason of the wonderful strength and height of the walls. He considered the main danger to lye in the affections of the inhabitants; to whom, that they might have no cause to attempt any new thing, he supplied all necessities in a plentiful measure. Two years and above he held out, and doubled not but to be able to do it, till relief should come; and the rather, for that they had an Oracle that *Ninive* should never be taken, till the River first proved an enemy to it; which he never could suspect.

But in the third year fell such rains, that *Euphrates* (or *Lycus*, upon which some conceive that *Sirabo* placeth the City, and not *Euphrates*, nor *Tigris*, as others) swelling with abundance of waters, made a breach in the Wall twenty Furlongs in length. At this the King utterly discouraged, as judging the Oracle to be fulfilled, left he should fall alive into the hands of his enemies, he built a pile of wood in his Palace, upon which he heaped his treasures, and rich attire; and, making a little room in the midst, wherein he bestowed himselfe, his Concubines and Eunuchs, set fire to the heap, and so perished with this Company and the Palace. Such was the end of him, who placed all his felicity in his sensuall appetite, which he would have also recorded in his (p) *Epitaph*, and advised the Reader to imitate. He is reported to have built (but rather he restored) two Cities of *Cilicia* in one day, viz. *Tarsus* and *Anchiala*; in the later of which was his (q) Monument to be seen, being a Statue of stone, with the finger and thumb of the right hand joyned together as about to give a filip. Upon the Monument was written in *Affyrian* Characters: *Sardanapalus the Son of Anacyndaraca built Anchiales, and Tarsus in one day. As for thee, Friend, Eat, drink, and play: for all things else are not worth this*, viz. that filip. In him this line of the *Affyrians* failed, the Empire being divided into two Principalities, after it had continued about 1400 years, reckoned from the building of *Babylon*. This fall of *Sardanapalus* hapned about the year of the World 3186, 43 years before the first *Olympiad*.

12. The (r) besiegers understanding what was become of *Sardanapalus*, presently entred in at the breach, and took the City. Then, investing *Arbaces* made King. *Arbaces* with a royall roabe, they created him King; who rewarded them according to their deserts, and allotted the Provinces to their severall Governours. *Belesis*, according to agreement, having received the principality of *Babylon*, and understanding from an Eunuch how great treasure *Sardanapalus* had burnt with himselfe, begged the ashes of *Arbaces*, under pretence of having made a vow, in the heat of the War, to carry them to *Babylon*, and therewith to raise a lasting Monument of the destruction of the *Affyrian* Empire. He, being ignorant of his covetous design, granted his request; but when the matter was discovered, referred his judgement to a Councill of Officers who condemned him to death. Yet, being desirous to begin his reign mildly, he not onely remitted this punishment, but permitted him to enjoy all the gold and silver already transported; and, what remained, which amounted to many talents, he conveyed it to *Ecbatane* the chief City of the *Medes*. (s) *Diodorus* and (t) *Strabo* tell us how he levelled *Ninus* (or *Ninive*) with the ground. Some (u) think it was onely the Castle; seeing the City had afterwards Kings, if not comparable to the rest, yet great and powerfull, which they think might descend from *Belesis*.

13. *Herodotus* (x) writeth how the *Medes*, having freed themselves from the *Affyrian* yoke, lived for many Ages without a King, in way of a popular government. But (y) *Ctesias* of *Gnidus* an Author of something a later date (who served *Cyrus* the younger, in his expedition against his Brother *Ariaxerxes*, and being taken prisoner in the Battell, was for his excellent skill

The River  
swelling with  
rain breaks  
the wall.

*Sardanapalus*  
burneth him-  
selfe in his  
Palace.

*Arbaces* made  
King.

Granteth *Ba-  
bylon* to *Belesis*.

What kind of  
Government  
was in *Media*.

(p) *Athenæus*  
lib. 1.

(q) *Strabo* l.  
14. Edit.  
Caulab. p. 672.

*Hæc habeo que  
edi, quæque ex-  
stantia libido  
hausi, at illa  
jacent, multa  
& præclara re-  
liq̃ia. Epitaph.  
à Ciccone  
versum. Tusc.  
l. 5.*

*Quid aliud, in-  
quit Aristote-  
les, in Bovis,  
non in Homini  
sepulchro inci-  
des? Hæc  
habere se dicit,  
que ne vivus  
quidem diutius  
baberet, quàm  
viverebat.*

(i) *Diodorus*  
l. 2. p. 81. A.  
(f) l. 2. p. 816  
(g) l. 6. p. 737.  
(u) *Jacob.*

*Cappellus*  
Hist. Sac. &  
Exotica, p. 170.  
*Simfon in*  
*Chronico ad*  
*A. M. 3187.*  
(x) *Lib. 1. c. 95.*  
(y) *Vide Diodo-  
rum ut su-  
pra, p. 84.*

in *Phyſick*, which he professed, received into favour by the King, and lived in good esteem in his Court 16. years, pretending to transcribe his History out of the Records of *Persia*, reported that *Arbaces*, after the overthrow of the *Affyrians*, reigned 18. years: and as he left the dominion of *Asia* to the *Medes*, so also the Sovereignty over them to his Son *Mandaucæ*. That to *Ctesias*.

*Mandaucæ*, having reigned 50. years, left the Kingdom to *Sesarmus*, who reigned 30. Him followed *Arrius*, and reigned 50, then *Arbanius* 22, *Arſans* 40, in whose time the *Cadusians* revolted through the procurement of *Parſodas* the President of his Councill, whom he had offended. *Arrius* 22. *Arbanius* 14 (in whose reign the *Parthians* revolted, and gave up themselves to the *Sace*). And last of all *Aſtyages* his Son, who being overthrown by *Cyrus*, the Empire was thereby devolved upon the *Persians*.

14. That *Ctesias* out of design wrote things contrary to *Herodotus*, is probable enough, and that he is fabulous cannot be denied, yet have we a succession of Kings elsewhere (z) recorded, though such an one as scarce in one name agreeeth with that of his. *Sesarmus* is said to have succeeded *Arbaces*, and continued 30 years, then *Medidas* 40, *Cardiceus* 13, and then *Deioeces*, whom *Herodotus* will have to have first obtained sovereignty over the *Medes*. For having, as he (a) writeth, an ambition that way, he made himselfe popular by pretence to the love of Justice, which then ran at a low ebbe amongst them, for want of authority. He first took upon him to decide the controversies of his own Village, which performing with much equity and confidence, thence became known to other parts, and at length became so famous, that few would bring their causes before any other Judge than him alone. Being aware of this, he withdrew himself, giving out that no longer could he undergo such a burthen, and thereby neglect his private affairs. Hereupon, robberies, violence, and oppression, returned throughout the Country; inſomuch, that the people, gathering together from all quarters, after a serious debate, concluded there was necessity of having a King, under whose protection every man living, might the better minde his domestick matters. *Deioeces* was chosen by universall consent, who, having got the power into his hands, caused them to build a City for his residence, which he called *Ecbatane*, and having ruled with abundant severity 53 years, left the Kingdom to his Son *Iraortes*. He, after he had reigned 22, left for successor his Son *Cyaxares*, who having long struggled with various Fortune, (as afterwards will be seen) gave place to his Son *Aſtyages*, Father to *Mandaucæ* the Mother of *Cyrus*.

15. *Belesis* obtained *Babylon*, as was said; but how long he held it, or who succeeded him immediately, is not known. About 71 years after, *Nabonassar*, or *Nabonassar*, obtained the Kingdom there; from the beginning of whose reign, that famous *Æra*, or *Epocæ*, known by the name of *Æra Nabonassari*, is derived. It is counted from the first day of that *Egyptian* month *Thoth* (Febr. 26.) which fell out 746 *Julian* years, and 310. dayes, before the *Æra* of *Christ*, as *Cappellus* and others reckon; 424. years before the death of *Alexander* the Great, according to *Ptolomy* (b) the Prince of Mathematicians, in the 8th *Olympiad*. This Author hath preserved the names of such as succeeded *Nabonassar*, in his Catalogue of Kings. He reigned 14 years, after him *Nadins* 2, then *Chozirus* or *Porus* 5, *Jugens*, or *Ilulens* 5, and then *Mardocempadus* 26. In his time happened the (c) three most ancient Eclipses of the Moon, observed by the *Babylonians*. The first of them in the first of his reign, and the 28th of the month *Thoth*, the 27th year of *Nabonassar*. The second in his 2nd year, on the 18th of *Thoth*. And 176 dayes, 20 hours and an halfe after this, the third Eclipse fell out, on the 15th day of the month *Phamenoth*. *Scaliger* and others, think this *Mardocempadus* to be the same with him, who in the (d) Scripture is called *Mardoch-Baladan*, the Son of *Baladan*. But *Cappellus* conjectureth there were two *Mardoch's*, Sons of *Baladan* and Nephews of *Nabonassar*, whereof the one was called *Mardoch-Kempad*, and the other *Mardoch-Baladan*.

16. *Mardocempadus*, having reigned 12 years, was succeeded by *Arki-*

According to  
*Eusebius*.

*Deioeces* how  
he got the  
Kingdom.

*Pharastes*.

*Cyaxares*.  
*Aſtyages*.

*Belesis* his suc-  
cessors.

*Nabonassar*.

*Ptolomy's* Ca-  
talogue of  
Kings.

(z) *Euseb. in*  
*Chronico*.

(a) *Lib. 1. c. 9,*  
*7, 98, &c.*

(b) *Magn.*  
*Synax. lib. 3.*  
*c. 8.*

(c) *Idem lib. 4.*  
*cap. 6, 7.*

(d) 2 *Kings.*  
*20. 12.*

am, who ruled 5. Then followed an *Inter-regnum* for two years, after which *Babylus* obtained the Kingdom for 3, then *Apronadus* 6, *Rigibelus* one, *Mesessimordak*, 4; after whom another *Inter-regnum* infused for 8 years, he being also written *Mesessi cardac*. Now the Royall Race seemeth to (c) one, to have failed, and *Efarchaddon* the King of *Assyria* to have again subjected the *Babylonians* to his Kingdom; and his reason is, for that he who followed at the end of this *Inter-regnum* is by *Ptolemy* called *Assaradinus*, which he thinketh to differ onely from *Efarchaddon* in the sound of severall Languages. If so, this is he, who brought out of the East Country, Strangers to inhabit *Samaria*, whence *Samaneffer* had, 40 or more years before, transported the *Ephraimites*. He is also, by the posterity of this new Colonie, called the great and noble *Assnapper*. But how this *Assyrian* Kingdom had sprung up again, during these two Principalities of the *Babylonians* and *Medes*, is to be considered.

17. It is not probable that the vast Empire of *Sardanapalus* was all (nor perhaps the greatest part) subiect to *Media* and *Babylon*; but that, although *Arbaces* left not the *Medes* to their liberty, yet severall people he did, for want of power to keep them under: Hence in some time the people beyond *Euphrates*, weary of that anarchie and confusion, under which they laboured, might be willing to admit of a Prince again, though not of the old stock of *Belus*; whose successors having far excelled in power and dominion, the *Greeks* accounted *Sardanapalus* the last King of the *Assyrians*. Who this new Prince should be, remaineth very obscure. One (f) thinketh him that same *Phul*, who made an incursion into the Land of *Israel*, in the time of *Menachem*, fixing the beginning of his reign, in the 4th Olympiad, 17 years before that of *Nabonassar*. Another (g) will have *Tiglath-Pileser* (or *Thilgath-Pileser*, or *Theglath-Phalassar*) to be the man (in *Helian*, he saith, called *Thilganus*) whom also he accounteth the same with *Ninus Junior*, mentioned by *Eusebius* (h) having assumed the name of the first founder of the *Assyrian* Empire. This *Tiglath-Pileser*, at the invitation of *Judah*, went up against *Rezen* (i) King of *Damascus*, and killing him transported his subjects into *Kir*, a place (as *Josephus* will have it) of upper *Media*. He died when he had reigned 19 years, and was succeeded by *Salmanassar*; to whom (k) *Hosea* King of *Israel* refused to pay tribute, entering into confederacie with *So* King of *Egypt* against him: But *Salmanassar* besieged him in *Samaria*, and at the end of three years, taking the City, carried the *Israelites* into captivity into *Chelach*, *Cheber*, and *Nehar-gesan*, Cities of *Media*, where he, as well as his predecessor, might have power, if (*Deioces*, as yet not having obtain'd the Kingdom) that Country was still subject to a popular Government, or rather in a confused Anarchie.

18. After the subversion of the Kingdom of *Israel*, he overran all *Phoenicia* and *Syria*. He sent an Army against the *Tyrians* at such time as *Elulani* their King made War upon the *Citians* which had rebelled; but a peace was presently made, and he drew back his Forces. Not long after *Sidon*, *Arce*, *Palatyrus*, and other Towns revolted from the *Tyrians* to him; so that they alone standing out, he returned, and having a supplee of 60 ships from the *Phoenicians*, ingaged with them in a Sea-fight; but they having but 12, yet overthrew his Fleet, and thereby obtained great credit. At his return, he set guards upon the River, and water-courses, and there kept them five years together, which constrained them to make a shift with Wells and Pits, as *Menander* (l) related out of the *Tyrian* Annals, translated into the *Greek* tongue, wherein the name of *Salmanassar* was recorded. *Salmanassar* dying *Senacherib* his Son succeeded him, called also *Sargon* in (m) Scripture, as some think. He infested all *Asia* and *Egypt* with War; into the latter of which, as he descended, in his retreat he fore (n) distressed *Hezekiah* King of *Judah*, who making his application unto his God, obtained deliverance, to the confusion of the *Assyrian* and his Army. *Herodotus* telleth a story, How when he came to *Pelusium*, *Seibes* the Priest of *Vulcan* then King of *Egypt*, by his prayer to his god, procured all the habitaments of War to be eaten

The arising anew of the *Assyrian* Kingdom. How, when, and by whom,

*Phul*.

*Tiglath-Pileser*.

*Salmanassar*.

*Senacherib*.  
A. M. 3287.

(c) *Usserius* in *Anal. Vet. Testamenti*, ad A. M. 3323.

(f) *Jacobus Cappellus* ad A. M. 3236.  
(g) *Usserius* ad A. M. 3257.  
Hist. Aum. lib. 12. c. 21.  
(h) In *Chron. ex Cestore Rhodio*, (i) 2 Kings. 15. 16.

(k) 17.  
A. M. 3273.

(l) *Apud* *Iosephum Antiquum* lib. 9. cap. 14.  
(m) *Isa.* 20. 1.  
*Berosus* apud *Iosephum Antiquum* lib. 10. c. 1.  
(n) 2 Kings. 18. 17.  
(o) *Lib.* 2. c. 141.

eaten with Mice; so that being rendered unable to fight, he was forced to draw back his Army. But the Prophecies against *Egypt* ascertain us that this expedition proved very disastrous to it, and that many Captives were thence led away, which the Priests, from whom *Herodotus* had his information, hid this, and all other things that tended to the dishonour of their Country.

19. Returning from *Egypt* into *Palestine*, he besieged (p) *Lachish*; and thence removed to *Libnah*, where he wrote a blasphemous Letter to *Hezekiah*. For hearing that *Tirhakah* King of *Ethiopia* (or *Arabia*) (by *Josephus* called *Tarshis*, by *Strabo*, *Tearken*) was coming against him in behalf of the *Egyptians*, he removed for fear, and God sent his Angel into his Camp, who slew in one night 85000 men, which thing as a plague was also recorded by (q) *Berosus*. Then returned he (as God had promised *Hezekiah*) with great confederation into his own Land, where raging against the *Jews* that dwelt at *Niniveh* (if credit be to be given to the book of *Isaiah*) he was after 44 days slain in the Temple of his idol *Nisroch*, by his two sons *Adramelech* and *Sharezer*, (who fled for it into the Land of *Ararat*, or *Armenia*) and *Efarchaddon* his son reigned in his stead.

*Efarchaddon* the same with *Assaradinus*.

*Saosduchinus*.

*Chumiladanus*.

20. This *Efarchaddon* is thought (and that probably) to be the same with *Assaradinus* mentioned by *Ptolemy* in his Catalogue of Kings, and who subdued *Babylon*. It is also thought that (r) this is he, who when he brought a new Colony into *Samaria* from *Babylon*, *Cushah*, *Ana*, *Hamah*, and *Se-pharvaim*, at the same time making an inroad into *Judea*, (as 'tis very probable) took (s) *Manasseh* the King thereof in the Thorns, and carried him in Captivity into *Babylon*; for it appeareth from both these passages mentioned in Scripture, that at this time that City was subject to the King of *Assyria*. After *Efarchaddon* (or *Assaradinus*) had reigned thirteen years, *Saosduchinus* succeeded him according to *Ptolemy*; and not *Merodach* whom the general opinion will have, (being King of *Babylon*) to have killed him, and again overthrown the Empire of the *Assyrians*. For this succession is founded upon a feigned (t) Author imposed on the World, with several others of the same credit, and therefore deserveth to be rejected. The time of this *Saosduchinus* falling in with that of *Deioces* (who according to *Herodotus* built *Ecbatane* the Metropolis of *Media*) if any credit be to be given to the book of *Judith*, we may judge him to be that *Nabuchodonosor* mentioned there to have overthrown *Arphaxad*, King of the *Medes*, and builder of that City, in the great plains of *Ragan*. After he had taken him in the Mountains, he slew him; plundered *Ecbatane*, and then returned victoriously unto *Niniveh*, where he feasted his Army for 120 dayes. The year after, entering into Consultation how to subdue the several Nations about him; he ordained *Holophernes* his General, who straitly besieging *Babylona*, a Town of *Judea*; by the wisdom and courage of *Judith*, the Widow of one *Manasses* of the Tribe of *Ephraim*, was circumvented, and had his head cut off in his Tent.

21. *Saosduchinus*, (or *Saosducimus*) having reigned twenty years, *Chumiladanus* succeeded him, thought also to be the same with *Saracus*, mentioned by *Alexander Polyhistor*. Against him came (u) *Phraortes*, the son of *Deioces* in revenge of his father's death; after he had first of all others subdued the *Persians*, and the rest of *Asia*. But his good fortune here forsook him, and he perished with the greatest part of his Army, in the 22 year of his reign. His son *Cyaxares* succeeding is said to have been more puissant than his Ancestors, and the first that distinguished the people of *Asia* into several Provinces, and Souldiers into their several ranks of Pike-men, Horse-men, and those that used Darts. He fought with the *Lydians*; at which time to great an Eclipse of the Sun hapned, that the day seemed to be turned into night. Having brought to his obedience all *Asia*, beyond the River *Halys*, he gathered his forces together, and went against *Niniveh* with intention to destroy the City. He overthrew the *Assyrians* in battle and besieged the place; but it hapned at this time that a great Army of *Scythians* having

(p) 2 Chron. 32.  
1 Kings 19.  
Esay 37.

(q) *Apud* *Iosephum*, in *Judith*, cap. 2.

(r) 2 Kings 17.

(s) 2 Chron. 33.

(t) *Pseudo* *Metasthenes* apud *Anianum* vit. *Eusebii*, fol. 21. De *Cyaxares* filio *Aurachibus*, vide *Joh. Gersonium* *Biblioth. Hispan. Tom. 9. pag. 356. Gasp. Barthelemy*, *ibid.* pag. 386. 407. 417. 431. *Seth. Calvis. Isagog. Chronol.* cap. 28. 29. *et Chron. p. 171. A.* Non est *Gomani* *opus* *Pam. in Tert. Apol.* 2287.  
(u) *Herodotus* lib. 1. 102. &c.

The Scythians having driven the Cimmerians out of Europe, under conduct of Madyes, the son of Proteus, (called otherwise Judathyrus) their King, still followed them, and from the Lake Mæotis, leaving the Mountain Caucasus on their right hand, pierced into Media.

22. Cyaxares hereby was constrained to raise his siege, went, and gave them battle; but was overthrown, and lost the Dominion of Asia, which the Scythians having obtained, marched straight for Egypt. Psammetichus the King met them on their way, when they had new entered Palestine, and by good words backed with money prevailed with them to go no further. They enjoyed the Dominion of Asia 28 years; after the expiration of which term, managing their affairs with as great neglect as formerly they had, used diligence in polling and rifling the Country; the greatest part of them being overthrown by Cyaxares, were made drunken and slain, and the King recovered his Dominion. During these things, (x) Nabopolassar a Babylonian, and General to the Assyrian King contracted affinity with Astyages the son of Cyaxares, and Governor of Media: Nebuchadnezzar the son of Nabopolassar marrying Amytis daughter to Astyages. The effect of this alliance was that they jointly set upon Borsacus, or Borsadonus in Nimveh, and taking the City slew him therein, after he had reigned 22 years. At this time the Prophecies against Nimveh seem to be fulfilled in its destruction. For in the latter end of the Greek book of Tobit it is written that Nebuchadnezzar and Assuerus took Nimveh, Tobias being yet alive, who is said to have lived 127 years (or, as the Latine hath it, 99.) 95 having already passed from the taking of Samaria; at which time he was carried Captive with his father into Assyria by Salmanassar.

23. Chynaladanus being dead, Nabopolassar (or Nabulassar) obtained his Kingdom in the 123th year of Nabonassar, according to (y) Ptolemy, whose Canon of Kings also (as to the term of years collected from the particular reign of each) directly answereth to this account. (z) Against him came up Pharos Necho, and took Carchemish, a City situate upon Euphrates, killing Josiah the King of Judah, who attempted to stop his passage, He holding this Town, the (a) Governour of Coelosyria and Phœnicia revolted from the Babylonian, who being now unable to undergo the trouble of War made his son Nebuchadnezzar King with him in his 17th year, and sent him with an Army to subdue Egypt and Syria; with him joynted (b) Astyages, King of the Medes, whom some think to be Cyaxares, and others more probably Astyages his son. In this expedition he made Jehoakim King of Judah, his tributary and drew him from the obedience of Egypt; which Necho taking in disdain, came up against him and engaging once more at Carchemish was overthrown and slain, as may be gathered out of Scripture. (c) Whilest Nebuchadnezzar was prosecuting his victories, overrunning all from the River of Egypt to the River Euphrates; in the mean (d) time his father being sick at Babylon, died. After he had reigned 21 years, as it is now in the Catalogue, for which some learned men think 29 is to be read. He understanding hereof disposed of the affairs of Egypt and other Countreys, and giving order for the conveyance of the Judean, Syrian, Phœnician, and Egyptian prisoners, he himself made haste through the desert, and took possession of the Government reserved for him by the Caldeans.

24. He distributed the Captives into Colonies about Babylon, adorned the Temple of Belus (which Semiramis had built) with the spoils; repaired and increased the buildings of the City, and fortified the Channel of the River, that the Enemy should not make use of it against the Town. He added a new City to the old, and compassed both with three Walls of brick. He raised divers remarkable edifices, built a new Pallace, and about it a Garden, or Wildernesse, so much celebrated by the Grecians. His wife being a Mede, and, according to the nature of her Country, delighting in Mountainous Woody prospects, brought him to imitate with Art what was winning in the plains of Babylon. This Garden was made four-square, taking up in compass sixteen Acres, in height equalling the Walls, set with

(x) Polyhistor apud Cedrenum, vide Usserium in Annot. vet. Test. ad A.M. 3378.

(y) Magn. Syn. lib. 1. c. 14.  
(z) 2 Kings 23.  
2 Chron. 35.

(a) Berosus apud Joseph. lib. 1. contra Apionem.  
(b) Alexand. Polyist. apud Euseb. prep. Evang. lib. 9.

(c) Jerem. 46.  
(d) Berosus apud Joseph. ut prius. & Antiqu. lib. 10. cap. 11.  
A. M. 3410.  
Olymp. 46.  
an. 2.  
Romæ 159.

Vide Diodor. lib. 2. p. 70. B.

tall and beautifull Trees. It was born up by stone-Pillars; upon which a pavement of four-squared stones being laid, Earth was heaped up in great quantity, and Engines were made for the conveying of moisture out of Euphrates to water it. The Trees that grew upon it were (many of them) eight Cubits in compass at the bole; and fifty foot high, bearing fruit as plentifully as in their Native soyl. Jehoakim the King of Judah rebelling against Nebuchadnezzar, he came up against him, wasted the Countrey, and, taking him, cast him out unburied as the Prophet Jeremiah had foretold. Four months after, he also carried away Captive, Jeconias, or Jehoachims his son, and made Mattanias his Uncle King in his stead. This Mattanias, whom he named Zedekiah, rebelled against him notwithstanding his solemn Oath of fealty taken at his institution, and therefore in the eleventh year of his reign he was also taken by the Babylonian, had his eyes put out, and was carried to Babylon: the Temple and City were burnt with fire, and the people led into Captivity, as will appear in its proper place.

25. Nebuchadnezzar returning home was exceeding proud, and puffed up at his success. He erected a great Image of Gold; in the Dedication whereof all his chief Officers were commended to fall down and worship which was obeyed by all except three Jews, Shadrach, Meshach, and Abdenago, the companions of Daniel. For their punishment they were cast into a fiery Furnace, heated seven times hotter than usual, and so miraculously preserved from the fury of the flame, that not an hair of their heads was sing'd; though it killed those that cast them in. At this, the King astonished, by publick edict acknowledged Gods power, and forbade the blaspheming of him. Yet repented he not of his pride, and, notwithstanding a sufficient warning given him by God in a dream, exalted himself in the conceit of the greatness and splendour of Babel, which he had built for the house of the Kingdom, by the might of his power, and for the honour of his Majesty. But the same hour, as he was answered by a voice from Heaven, the Kingdom departed from him, he was driven from men, made to eat grass as Oxen, and his body was met with the Dew of Heaven, till his hairs were grown as Eagles feathers, and his Nails like Birds Claws; and seven times passed over him, till he knew that the Most High ruleth in the Kingdom of men, and giveth it to whomsoever he will. And this time prefixed being expired (seven years as most suppose, though some reckon but three and an half, counting for times, Winter and Summer) his reason returned to him, with the glory of his Kingdom, his Honour, and Brightnesse, his Councillors and his Lords sought unto him, he was established in his Kingdom, and excellent Majesty was added to him. Therefore he shamed not by a publick writing to own the thing: praised, honoured, and extolled the King of Heaven, all whose works he confessed to be truth, his wayes judgement, and that those that walk in pride he is able to abase.

26. Of these strange passages the Heathen were not utterly ignorant. (e) Abydenus wrote, that, being exceeding proud, and going up upon his Pallace, he was taken with Divins fury. This he had out of the Annals of the Caldeans, who fancied him to have been seized on with a prophetic spirit, and so to have vanished. (f) Megasthenes in his fourth book of Judea, endeavoured to shew how this King in valiant exploits exceeded Hercules by far; that he subdued the chief City of Africk, and a good part of Spain. Diocles, in his second book of Persia, made mention of him, and Philostratus both in his Histories of Phœnicia and India; writing that he fought against Tyre thirteen years, which 'tis probable, at length he took by composition: and there placed Baal King in the room of Ishobalus. What he did against this City, God, taking as service done to himself, promised him the Land of Egypt for his wages, which we must accordingly believe to have been paid. At length, having foretold that Babylon should be lost to Cyrus, as Abydenus wrote; he died, after he had reigned 43 years, being in Ptolemies Catalogue of Kings, called Nabocolassar, which may be corruptly written for Nabocodolassar.

Curium lib. 5.

2 Kings 23.  
&c.  
2 Chron. 36.  
Jerem. 22.

Daniel 3.

Punished.

What is found recorded of him by the Heathen.

(e) Apud Euseb. prep. Evang. lib. 9.  
(f) Apud Josephum, lib. 4. p. 15.

Ezek. 29.



Evilmerodach. 27. Evilmerodach his Son succeeded him, who lifted up the head of *Jehoiakim* King of *Judah*, in the 37th year of his Captivity, spake kindly unto him, set his Throne above the Throne of the Kings that were with him in *Babylon* and changing his prison garments, allowed him a continuall diet all the dayes of his life. But for his wickednesse and debaucheries, he continued not long, being circumvented by *Neriglissor* his Sister's Husband, and slain when he had reigned but two years. *Neriglissor* after his death, reigned 4. After him came his Son *Laborsardochus*, who being of an untowardly disposition, was made away by his Relations, after nine months, and they preferred to his place one *Nabonidus* a *Babylonian*, by *Ptolomy* called *Nabonadius*, by others *Nabannidochus* and *Labyntus*. [(g) Who reigned 17 years, for which some think 27 is to be read.] This succession we have from *Berosus* the *Caldean*, attested by *Ptolomy*, who yet leaveth out *Laborsardochus*, either for his small continuance, or because he reigned together with his Father. But learned Men do not agree in the manner of reconciling this History with what *Daniel* hath written of *Belshazar*. Some will have *Labyntus* or *Nabonodur*, to be *Belshazar*, *Nabonodur* being the last of the Kings, which *Belshazar* also seemeth to be; at his death, *Babylon* being taken by *Cyrus*, as the interpretation of the writing on the wall hinteth: *Peres, thy Kingdom is divided, and given to the Medes and Persians*. As for *Darius* the *Mede*, he seemeth to them to be no other then *Cyaxares* the Son of *Astyages* King of *Media*, and the Uncle of *Cyrus*, who of his own accord delivered *Babylon* to him: and they think this sufficient to prove that *Laborsardochus* could not be *Belshazar*, because hee hath but nine months assigned him by *Berosus*, whereas we read in *Daniel* of the third year of *Belshazar*.

28. Others think they have ground enough to denie *Nabonidus* to be *Belshazar*, who is called the Son of *Nebuchadnezar*; in regard no such relation is mentioned by *Berosus*, that can intitle him to so much as his grand-child, which *Laborsardochus* was by his Daughter, being called his Son by a common *Hebraism*: For the *Latin* version of *Iosephus* which maketh *Nabonodur* of the blood; it is in no case agreeable to the Originall which plainly relateth him to have been of the \* conspiracy. For the 5th year of *Belshazar* it well enough agreeth with *Laborsardochus*, because he reigned 4 years, with his Father, and, after his Father's death, nine moneths by himself. Now the History of *Daniel* onely relateth *Belshazar* to have been slain; not that *Babylon* was then besieged by *Cyrus*: it being improbable, say they, that a time of so great danger, the King and his Nobles should spend in feasting and jollity; but rather likely, that behaving himselfe too insolently in that drunken fit, he was knocked in the head by his Companions, as *Berosus* \* hinteth, and the Scripture rather seemeth to approve than contradict. As for the interpretation of the Writing on the wall, it might note what was already determined, and within a little time was to be accomplished concerning *Cyrus* the *Persian*, who being at that time known to the World, could not be hid from *Daniel*, who had met with his name long before in the Prophecie of *Isaiah*, and had his mind, without doubt, fixed upon the 70 years of Captivity foretold by *Jeremiah*, to which a period should shortly be put by that person. That *Darius Medus* was of *Median* descent appeareth, but that he was King of the *Medes* can no way be evinced; especially seeing that no ancient *Greek* Historian maketh mention of *Cyaxares* the Son of *Astyages*, (whom we read to have had but one Daughter) except *Xenophon*; and he either one purpose seemeth to thwart *Herodotus*, or to have written his *Cyropedia*, rather (b) to shew what a Prince ought to be, than what *Cyrus* was indeed, and so to have taken some of that liberty of invention which others (i) have done of late upon the same and other Subjects. But though *Ioseph Scaliger* may seem to show more reason for this later assertion, yet *Pererius* truly affirmeth the thing to be obscure, perplexed, and difficult.

29. If *Laborsardochus* be taken for *Belshazar*, then *Nabonodur* must be the same with *Darius Medus*; whom further, some would have to

A. M. 3446.  
Olymp. 53. an. 4.  
Romæ. condit.  
189.

(g) Apud Iosephum lib. 1.  
centr. Apocryph.

in the 5th year  
of Belshazar.

ὁ πρὸς τὸν ὄψον  
ἀποκτενεῖται  
ὁ βασιλεὺς.

(b) Cicero ad  
quintum Fratrem. Ep. 1.

(i) As the  
Grand Cyrus of  
George de Scudery  
Governor of  
Roshir Dame  
de la Gayde, a  
Romance of 10.  
Volumes.

Cyrus.

The sum of  
what Herodo-  
tus hath writ-  
ten concern-  
ing his Birth  
and Fortune.

to be the Brother of *Astyages*, not his Son, and yet called *Cyaxares*. In him the Empire of the *Babylonians* ceased, and was derived upon the *Persians* by *Cyrus*, whose first beginnings are to be viewed, with the progresse of his actions, which made way to that pitch of greatnesse whereat he arrived. Herein Historians do not relate the same things. That *Astyages* was his Grand-father is acknowledged by all, except *Ctesias*, who will have them nothing akin, and calleth him *Astygas*: His Father's name is granted to be *Cambyzes*, his Country *Persia*, but his condition is diversly reported of. *Herodotus* writeth how *Astyages* dreaming two dreams concerning his Daughter *Mandane*, (which by the Wizards were interpreted to portend the losse of his Kingdom, through the greatnesse of her issue) gave her in marriage to one *Cambyzes* a *Persian* of obscure fortune; and not satisfied in this security, sent for her when she was with child, and as soon as the Boy was born, gave him to one *Harpagus* to be made away. *Harpagus* fearing he might afterwards be called to an account by the Mother, for violence offered to the Babe, delivered him to the King's Shepherd, to be exposed in the Woods unto the mercie of wild beasts. This being done, and the Shepherd's Wife lately brought to bed of a still-born child; she prevailed with her Husband to fetch him home; nursed and brought him up as her own Son amongst the Shepherds. At seven years of age being chosen King of the Boyes in their play, he executed the office with severity, towards such as were disobedient, and for this was complained of by their Parents to the King. Being sent for and accused of the crime, he would acknowledge none, alledging he had done like a King; and standing in his justification without the least change of countenance, *Astyages* was struck with admiration, and presently called to mind his dream. Upon examination of the Shepherd, he got out the whole matter; owned him for his Grand-son, because he thought the dream fulfilled in his boyish reign amongst the Shepherds; onely he thought it good to send him out of the way into *Persia*.

30. But to punish *Harpagus* for his disobedience, he invited him to supper, and caused to be served up to the table his onely Son; of which, after he had eaten heartily, and approved the meat, he let him see his entertainment, by the head, hands, and feet, reserved in another platter. *Harpagus* for the present kept down his passion, seeming to acquiesce in the King's pleasure, untill *Cyrus* came to man's estate. Then, hearing of his activity and forwardnesse, he resolved by presents to make him his friend, meditating a convenient way of revenge by the means of this Youth, from whom he expected something answerable to his Grandfather's dream. Knowing *Astyages* his tyrannicall carriage towards the *Medes*, he insinuated himself into the chief of them by degrees, and secretly perswaded them, that it was convenient he should be removed from the Government; especially seeing they might with some plausibility place *Cyrus* in his Seat. Having thus made War, he wrote Letters to the young Man, into *Persia*, (which, to prevent discovery, he sowed up in the belly of an Hare) wherein recalling to his memorie what he had suffered from his Grandfather upon his account, he solicited him to draw the *Persians* to revolt; then to come down with an Army into *Media*, where he might be sure of him or any other the Kings Generals, and so easily become Master of all.

31. *Cyrus* considering of a way how to accomplish this business, which now he made no lesse than a design, called the *Persians* together; first gave out that he was chosen their General by *Astyages*, and then easily perswaded them, by laying open, how much Liberty was to be preferred before that Slavery they now underwent, to close with him and break out into open rebellion. The old Man hearing of this, sent a messenger for him; but he returned answer, he would come sooner than he should have cause to desire his company; whereupon he armed his Subjects of *Media*, and forgetting how he had formerly injured *Harpagus*, committed the Army to his conduct. *Harpagus* revolting, he lost thereby the first Battell; yet was not daunted, but threatened *Cyrus*, nailed to crosses the *Magicians*, who had perswaded him

Cyrus over-throweth  
Astyages his  
Grand father.

him to dismiss him, and arming all both old and young that were in the City, led them out to a second engagement, wherein his success was worse than before, he being taken prisoner. When *Harpagus*, boasting of his revenge, insulted over him, he taxed him of imprudence and injustice: of the one, for that having power to make himselfe King he should transfer the dignity to another; and of the other, because, for to revenge a private injury, he had enslaved the whole Nation of the *Medes*, out of which he might rather have chosen one to the Kingdom, refusing it himselfe, than him who would now so order the matter, that the *Persians*, slaves before, should be Lords and Masters of all. Thus *Astyages* lost his Kingdom, after he had held it 35 years, enjoying all things else at his Grandson's hands, till his naturall death: And the *Medes* became subject to the *Persians*, after they had enjoyed the dominion of *Asia* beyond the River *Haly*, the space of 128 years, (except that space wherein the *Scythians* kept them under) in the 2d year of the 55th Olympiad, of the World 3446.

32. *Cyrus* having obtained the sovereignty of *Persia* and *Media*, was within a while provoked by *Craesus* King of *Lydia*, who at this time was grown eminent, having improved the inheritance which descended upon him from his Ancestors.

The *Lydian* Nation was of great antiquity, so named from *Lud* the Son of *Sem*, or rather descended of him who by *Moses* is so called; both he and they having obtained this name from that Country, which from the crookedness and winding of the River *Meander* took the appellation of *Lud*, in the *Phœnician* Language signifying crooked or winding: The *Greeks* say, that the *Lydians* were first called *Maones*; and *Lydia* *Maonia*, from *Maon*, an ancient King of *Phrygia* and *Lydia*, who was thought to have been the Father of *Cybele*, Mother of the gods, and that long after him reigned *Lydus* the Son of *Alys*, and Brother of *Tyrrhenus*, from whom they fancie the Country to have been named. Better is the opinion of *Stephanus*, who deriveth *Maonia* from the River *Maon* or *Maander*. For, though the *Greeks* might call them *Lydians*, yet that their right name was *Ludians*, appeareth from the *Latin* words, *Ludus*, *Ludo*, *Ludio*, &c. thence derived; seeing it is granted, that the first Players came from (1) *Lydia* into *Hetruria*, so to *Rome*, as the *Lydians* (m) boasted themselves to have been inventors of those Games, which afterwards were common with them to the *Greeks*. Hence it appeareth, that though the Country might be called both *Lydia* and *Maonia*, from the selfsame thing; yet most ancient was the name of *Lud*. After the Posterity of *Lydus*, reigned the *Heraclides* or those that were descended from *Hercules*, by his Son *Alcaus*. The first was *Argon*, saith *Herodotus*, the Son of *Ninus*, Grand-son of *Belus*, and great Grand-son of *Alcaus*; the list was *Candaules* the Son of *Myrsus*, by the *Greeks* called *Myrsitus*. *Candaules* (n) or *Candylus*, signified a certain kind of *Lydian* meat made of Flowre, Cheese, Honey, Bread, and Flesh; the *Lydians* being accounted the first (o) of all Nations, that busied themselves in Cookery, inasmuch that they became a Proverb for it.

33. The Antiquity of the *Lydians* appeareth further out of the ancient Fables: *Atir*, *Tantalus*, *Pelops*, *Niobe* and *Arachne*, being of this Country: Their fruitfulness, from the Colonies they sent out into *Peoponnesus* and *Caria*, into *Etruria* also, as they say. Their valour and power is shewn to have been of great antiquity from their holding the dominion of the Sea 92 years, which they took from the *Cretians* about the time of *Jephthe*, and 1200 years before Christ, losing it again and recovering it afterwards. But *Candaules* with his Family being extinct, and the Kingdom devolved upon the *Mermnadae* (of whom *Craesus* descended) the power of the Nation grew greater also at Land. These *Heraclides*, held it the space of 505 years, through 22 Successors unto this *Candaules*, who so far being enamoured of his Wife as he esteemed her the most beautifull of all women, constrained his servant *Gyges* to see her naked. She espying *Gyges* whilst therein he onely satisfied his Masters will, offered him the choice of killing her husband, and marrying

The Royall  
Families of  
*Lydia*.

A. M. 3446.  
Olymp. 55. an. 2.  
Isthis condita.  
195.

Legge Bochar-  
tum. Phalg.  
lib. 2. cap. 12.

(k) Herodotus  
lib. 1. c. 7.  
Strabo lib. 13.  
p. 586. c.  
Plin. l. 5. c. 29.  
Diodorus  
Halicar. lib. 1.  
Diodorus l. 3.  
p. 165. B.

(l) Tertull. de  
Sœstac. lib. 5.  
Dionys. Halic.  
lib. 2.  
(m) Herodo-  
tus l. 1. c. 95.

(n) Athesul. 1. 1.  
Plur. Sym. l. 4.  
Herodotus lib.  
1. c. 49.  
(o) Athesul. 1. 1.  
Athesul.

Euseb. in Chron.

Herodotus l. 1.  
c. 8. &c.

marrying her with the Kingdom, or of suffering death himselfe; one of their two lives being the least she could require in way of Justice. He, in so great a trait, preferring his own safety before his Master's life, slew him in his bed-chamber, the place where the fault was committed, and so enjoyed the Queen with the Kingdom; wherein he was confirmed by the Oracle of *Dilephos*, to the sentence of which, he and his adversaries had agreed to stand.

34. *Gyges* reigned 38 years, in which space he made War upon *Mileus*, and *Smyrna*, and took the City *Colophon*. *Ardys* his Son and Successor subdued *Priene*, fought against *Miletus*; and in his time the *Immerians* being expelled their seats by the *Scythian Nomades*, passed into *Asia*, and took *Sardis*, all but the Castle. He reigned 49 years. His Son *Sadyattes* 12, who gave place to *Alyattes* his Son and Successor. *Alyattes* waged War with *Cyaxares* King of *Media*, and expelled the *Immerians* out of *Asia*, took *Smyrna*, and set upon *Clazomene*. In the 6th year of the War betwixt the *Median* and him, whilst they fought upon equal terms, the Sun was eclipsed, which *Thales*, one of the 7 wise men, had foretold to his *Mileians*. Both the armies seeing the day beginning to be turned into night, left off fighting and then by the mediation of *Syennesis* the *Cilician*, and *Labyntius* the *Babylonian* a peace was concluded; *Ariana* the Daughter of *Halayates* being married to *Astyages* the Son of *Cyaxares*. From the Tables of *Ptoomy* (or of *Hipparchus*) it appeareth that this Eclipse happened in the 4th year of the 44th Olympiad, the 147th of *Nabonassar*, the 4th day of the *Egyptian* month *Pachon*, (which answereth to the 20th of *September*) 3 hours and 25 minutes before noone; 9 digits being eclipsed, and the duration almost 2 hours. *Halayates* pursued also the War left him by his Father, against *Miletus*, the Inhabitants whereof received from him two great blows, for that none of the *Ionians* helped them, except the *Chians*, in way of requital for the aide they had afforded them against the *Erythraeans*. At length, having notice that he intended to send a messenger into the City, at the command of *Thrasylus* their Prince, they brought all the provision they had into the marketplace; which appearing to be much, and as such related to *Alyattes*, he thinking himselfe mistaken in his former belief of their distressed condition, made Peace with them; and died after he had reigned 57 years.

35. *Craesus* his Son succeeded him at the age of 35 years. He made War upon *Ephesus*, which when he besieged, the Towns-men for their security, gave up the City to *Diana*, by a rope fastned from the wall to her Temple; but for all this he brought them under and subdued all the rest of the *Greek* Cities in the continent. He brought into his subjection all the people of *Asia* within the River *Halis*, as the *Phrygians*, *Myrians*, *Bithynians*, *Paphlagonians*, the *Mariandyni*, *Chalibes*, *Thracians*, *Thyni*, *Carians*, *Ionians*, *Dorians*, *Eolians*, *Lycians*, and *Cilicians*. Being grown great, and flowing with wealth, and flourishing with glory, the choicest wies of *Greece* flocked to *Sardis*, and amongst the rest *Solon* the *Athenian*, who being now in his travells, had been with *Amasis* of *Egypt*, and now came to visite *Craesus*. He kindly entertained him, and shewing him his treasures, out of a vain conceit of his own felicity, demanded of him, Whom he thought the happiest Man. He answered, he esteemed for such, one *Tellus* an *Athenian*, who having lived in good credit, and leaving divers Children and Nephews of honest and virtuous carriage, died in the War at *Eleusina*, after he had first helped to put to flight the enemy; for which he was honoured by his Citizens with a publick and stately funeral. *Craesus* expecting, if not the first, yet the second place, asked him, Whom he accounted next to *Tellus*. He replied *Cleobis* and *Biron*, two brothers of *Argos*, who had sufficient to live on, and being very strong, had gotten the better in tryall of Masteries. On a time at the feast of *Juno*, their Mother being to be drawn in a Chariot to the Temple, and the Heifers not at hand, they yoked themselves, and drew her thither. She being much affected with the piety of her Sons, praised the Goddess that whatsoever was best for Man, might be bestowed on them, who sleeping that night in the Temple, were found dead in the morning, and honoured by

\*Vide. f. 20. d. pa-  
ragapho. 21.

Herod. ubi  
supra. c. 26, &c.

the *Argives* with two Statues, erected to their memory at *Delphos*.

36. The King was troubled that his felicity should be so little valued, as not comparable to that of private men. But *Solon* plainly told him, that all things were uncertain in this life, and no man ought to be accounted happy till his End; for which Philosophy, as strange to the Courtiers, he was dismissed with small reputation for learning. *Cræsus*, growing exceeding proud and irreligious; to humble him, had a dream, that the choicest of his two Sons, (whereof one was dumb) should be slain with the iron head of some weapon. Hereupon he removed all things of that nature out of the way, looked to him diligently, and married him out of hand. But at this time it hapned, that a certain wild Boar haunted about the Mountain *Olympus* in *Myfia*, which doing great harm to the Inhabitants, they were in no wise able to master; and therefore sent to *Cræsus*, desiring him to fend his Son, accompanied with a sufficient train, to hunt and kill the Wild beast. He plainly denied, because of his dream, to let him stir from home; but the young Man, having a great desire to the exercise, thereby to approve himselfe for activity to his new married wife, obtained leave to be sent, saying, that no such thing would be used in the game as that of which he had dreamed. He committed him then to the care of one *Adrastus* the Son of *Gordius* (and he of *Midus*) King of *Phrygia*, who having at unawares killed his brother, had been banished by his his Father. When they came into the field, and had dislodged the Boar, *Adrastus* throwing a dart at him, chanced to hit the young Man, and so fulfilled the dream; for which, offering himselfe to be killed, upon *Cræsus* his refusal, as done without any intention, he yet slew himselfe. *Cræsus* took the accident very heavily, and kept himselfe in mourning two years.

37. This mourning was broken off by the prosperity of *Cyrus*, who having now overthrown the Kingdom of the *Medes*, advanced highly the affairs of *Persia*. Herein he found himselfe exceedingly concerned, so as to withstand, if possible, his successe, and make an addition thereby to his own Fortune. For encouragement in this design, he sent to enquire of the Oracles far and near; which answering with one consent, that he should overturn a great Principality, he was much encouraged, not doubting but that of the *Persians* was meant thereby; and much more after the Oracle at *Delphos*, had (in answer to his requiry, whether his Empire should long continue) bid him look to himselfe, when a Mule should have possession of the Sovereignty of *Media*; taking this in a literall sense, notwithstanding the constant ambiguity of such answers. Now (the Oracle giving way to it) he sent to make a League with the *Lacedemonians*, who being obliged to him, easily complied; though no supplies do we read of sent to him. For he, being in great haste, prevented the sending of any; and, with all the force he could make, invaded *Cappadocia*, to revenge, as he pretended, upon *Cyrus*, the injurie offered to *Astyages* his Brother in Law; but indeed to lay that fertile Country to his own Dominions. Having passed the River *Hayis*, he came into a place of *Cappadocia* called *Pteria*, the most safe of all the Country, near to the City *Sinope*, which was situated upon the *Euxine* Sea. Taking up his quarters here, he made incursions, took the City of the *Pterians*, with all the rest round about, and banished the *Syrians* (so were the *Cappadocians* called by the *Greeks*, till subjected to the *Persian* Empire) though they had nothing ill deserved at his hands.

38. *Cyrus* coming against him sent to the *Ionians*, to draw them to his party; but they standing off, he proceeded, and pitched his Camp against *Cræsus*. After some skirmishes the Armies engaged, and a very hot dispute continued till night parted them, many falling on both sides. *Cræsus*, though neither party owned any defeat, was blamed by his Soldiers for engaging with so numerous an Army; so that, *Cyrus* not stirring out against him the next day, he thought it best to retreat to *Sardis*, and sent out of hand for aide to *Amelis* King of *Egypt*, and *Labyrinthus* of *Babylon*, whom he had by a League obliged to him: to the *Lacedemonians* also to dispatch their Auxiliaries within 5. month, with which resting that winter, he would re-invade

*Cræsus Helms  
gressus, magnam  
periclit opus  
sum.*

*Cræsus inva-  
deth Cappado-  
cia.*

Retreateth to the *Persians* the following Spring. Accordingly he dismissed all his mercenaries standing then in no need of them, as he thought; which *Cyrus* hearing, resolved with all speed to follow him to *Sardis*, hoping he might utterly defeat him before he could recollect his Forces: and accordingly marching into *Lydia* he prevented any message of his coming. *Cræsus*, though exceedingly perplexed at so unexpected a thing, gathered his subjects together, as time would give leave, and provided for his defence; which the other perceiving, and fearing the power of his Horse (wherein the *Lydians* excelled all other people of *Asia*) took off the burthens from all the Camels, that followed the Camp, and setting Riders upon them, placed them in the front; the smell of which (when the Armies joyned) the Horses not enduring, turned aside. Yet were not the Riders thereby deterred from fighting, but, dismounting, performed on Foot what could be expected, till over-powered rather with number then valour, they were put to flight, and besieged in the

Overthrown  
in battel.

And besieged.

*Sardis* taken.

*Cræsus* con-  
demned.

His life spa-  
red.

39. *Cræsus* thinking he might possibly be able to hold out some considerable time, sent again to his confederates to hasten their succours. But *Cyrus* on the fourteenth day of the siege offering a great reward to him that should first mount the Wall, one *Hyraades*, a *Mardian*, having taken notice of a place, which because of its height and precipitancy was held impregnable, and therefore neglected by the besieged (where yet he had seen a Souldier come down to fetch his Helmet he had let fall) made means to climb up, and after him more and more followed, till the Citie was thereby surprized. All places being full of slaughterers, a Souldier not knowing *Cræsus*, was about to kill him; which he neglected, as willing to dye with his Kingdom. But his dumb son, affrighted at the danger he saw him in, is said to have broken silence (or dumbness) with this expression; *Man, do not kill Cræsus*, and thenceforth to have enjoyed the use of his tongue. Thus *Cræsus* overturned a great principality, as the Oracle had foretold, after he had reigned fourteen years, and been besieged so many dayes. *Cyrus* adjudged him to death, and had burnt him alive, but that he, almost too late, remembered the words of the wife Law-giver of *Athens*, and cried out *Solon, Solon, Solon!* *Cyrus* commanded the Interpreters to demand of him whom he invoked (thinking it to be some God he mentioned): to which he answered, when compelled to speak, that he named one whom rather then any thing, he would have to speak with all Princes; and, being urged to explain himself, told the whole story concerning the discourse betwixt him and *Solon*. Herewith the Conquerour was so affected, that, considering the uncertainty of his own prosperous condition, though the pile was already kindled, yet commanded he the fire to be quenched, and receiving him into his most inward counsels, held him ever most dear, and in great esteem for his wisdom; wherein, after such manifold experience, he excelled. This hapned in the fourth year of the 58 Olympiad, the fifteenth year of the reign of *Cyrus*. A. M. 3460.

40. When the *Ionians* and *Eolians* heard that *Cræsus*, with so little ado, was utterly subdued, they sent to *Cyrus*, offering to put themselves into his hands, on the same terms as the *Lydians* were received; but he returned them no satisfactory answer, because of their refusal formerly to joyn with him. All of them then, (except the *Milesians*, those having yielded themselves) made their application to the *Lacedemonians*, who refused to grant any aide; but sent some to make discovery how matters went in *Asia*. The Messengers finding *Cyrus* at *Sardis*, according to order, acquainted him with the pleasure of that Republick, Not to suffer him to molest any of the *Greek* Cities. He enquiring what the *Lacedemonians* were, presently sleighted them, and answered, That, if the Gods preserved him, they should have cause to bewail their own calamities, and not busie themselves with what concerned the *Ionians*. He committed *Sardis* to the custody of *Tabalus*, a *Persian*; to *Pactyas* a *Lylian*, the Treasure of *Cræsus* and others: and so set out for *Ecbarane*, making little account of the *Ionians* (against whom he intended

*Vide Herod.  
lib. i. c. 85.  
Aul. Gellium.  
l. 5. c. 9.  
Val. Max. l. 5.  
c. 4. Ext. Exim.  
6.  
Soliman. c. 7.*

*A. M. 3460.  
Olymp. 58. an. 4.  
Cyr. 15.*

*Herodotus, lib. i.  
c. 141. &c.*



Pattias revol-  
teth.

tended to send some Lieutenant) in comparison of Babylon, the Bactrians, Saca and Egyptians, upon all which he had cast an hungry eye with purpose to invade them. After his departure Pattias revolted, and drawing into Rebellion the Maritime Coasts, besieged Tabacus; whereat Cyrus being angry, as esteeming it a plot of the Lydians, Cræsus fearing worse things might come upon them, after an excuse of the generality, advised him to take from them the use of Arms, and enure them to effeminate courses whereby they would easily be kept under. Cyrus, according to his advice, dispatched away with an Army, one Mazares a Mede, who finding Sardis deserted by Patias, put in execution what Cræsus had advised. By this course was brought to passe, that the Lydians, to whom for valour no Nation in Asia could be compared, grew infamous for effeminate and luxury; so that gluttonous (o) and voluptuous persons, (p) such as made it their profession to afford incitements to debauchery, received Epithets from their name.

Taken.

41. Pattias having fled to Cuma, Mazares sent to demand him of the Citizens; but, they dismissing him, he fled to Mytilene, and thence to the Chians, who sold him to Mazares. He then reduced such as had revolted, and harassing the Countrey of Priene, with that lying upon Maander and Magnesia, fell sick and died. Harpagus the Mede succeeded him, and out of hand undertook an expedition against the Ionians. The Phœceans being first besieged, obtained truce for a day, and then shipping themselves, left their ancient seat and passed over into the Island Chios, and thence (for that the Chians refused to sell them the Islands Oenusa, lest they should rhither carry the Traffick) to Cyrrus, where twenty years before, they had built a Citie called Alalia. Here playing the Pirates, they were after five years defeated in a Sea-fight by the Syrrhenians and Carthaginians, and then those that remained passed over to Rhegium in Italy, where they built a Citie named Hyela, in the Territories of Oenotria. The Teians also, after their example departed into Thrace; where they built up a Citie called Abdera, the foundations of it being formerly laid by one Temisus a Clazomenian, whom the Thracians thence expelled. The rest of the Ionians stood it out against Harpagus, who yet utterly subdued and forced them to undergo the yoke the second time, having refused to follow the counsel of Bas the Prienean, (one of the seven wise-men of Greece), who advised them to shun servitude by going to Sardinia, and there planting themselves in one great and common Citie; as they had formerly rejected the advice of Thales the Milesian (another of that number) to set up one common Court at Teus in the middle of Ionia. After the Conquest of the Ionians, Harpagus subdued the Carians, Caunians, and Lycians, and brought all the lower Asia under the Dominion and Sovereignty of Cyrus, who in the mean while not idle, did as much by the upper Provinces; leaving nothing in his way, but clearing all before him.

And the Assy-  
rians or Baby-  
lonians.

42. Having Conquered the rest of the Continent he went against the Assyrians, who, being aware of him, had furnished themselves in Babylon for a long siege. Coming to the River Gyndes (which rising in the Mantiean Mountains, runneth through the Countrey of the Dardaneans, and emptieth it self in Tigris) he could find no found to passe it, and a certain white Horse, sacred to the Sun, boldly taking the water, was overwhelmed in the Floods. Hereat being exceedingly angry, he threatened to reduce it to such a condition, as it should not be knee-deep, and accordingly setting all his Army on work, derived it into 260 Rivolets, in which employment he spent all that Summer. The Spring following he marched for Babylon, the King whereof Labianus opposed him: but, being defeated, retreated into the Citie, to which he then laid close siege. In vain for a long time did he attempt the taking of it. At length he divided his Army, and leaving the two stronger parts of it, the one at this side of the Town where the River entered, the other there where it came out; with the third he retired into the adjoining Fens, and digging great ditches derived the River into them. Hereby he brought it to such an Ebb, that his Souldiers easily passing it, be-  
came

The sum of  
Xenophons Cy-  
ropædia.

came Matters of the Citie, and he of the Babylonian or Assyrian Empire. This is the sum of what Herodotus hath written concerning the prosperous fortune of Cyrus.

43. Xenophon, contrary to the former story, will have Cambyses his father no obscure man; but King of Media: not a word from him of his Grand-father's dream, or exposing of the Infant. When he was twelve years old, he was sent for by Astyages into Media, where having tarried till almost a man, and being admired for understanding and abilities far above his age; he returned to his father, and entered into the College of youth, where he was trained up in all strict Discipline according to the customs of Persia. Astyages dying, Cyaxares his son succeeded him, at what time the King of Assyria having subdued all the Syriani, Arabians, Hyrcanians, and had now slain upon the Bactrians, promised himself the absolute Empire of the East; if he could but bring under the Medes and Persians. He sent therefore to all his Neighbours; to Cræsus King of Lydia, the King of Cappadocia, to both the Phrygians, Carians, Paphlagonians, Cilicians, and Indians, accusing these two Nations of ambitious designs to enslave them all, and procuring them to joyn with him in an offensive and defensive league against them. Cyaxares hearing this, desired of Cambyses his Brother-in-law to send down Cyrus to him with an Army; Cyrus being accordingly chosen General by the people, first subdued the Armenians, who because of this combination of the Princes, had denied to pay their accustomed tribute to Cyaxares, and then persuaded his Uncle to invade the Assyrians, to keep the War from his own doors.

\* Lege de insti-  
tutione Persa-  
rum, Xenoph.  
Cyropæd. l. i.  
ad initium.

44. Making then an inroad into Assyria the King thereof, Cræsus of Lydia, and divers other Confederates came against them, but in the first engagement were worsted, and beaten back into their Camp, and amongst others the Assyrian himself (Neriglissar, if any) was slain. The night following all brake out of the Fortifications and fled; whereupon Cyrus prevailing with his Uncle to suffer him to pursue them, with as many of the Medes as would follow him of their own accord, in his way entered into confederacy with the Hyrcanians through the conduct of whom he overtook, and again defeated them: they also slew the Kings of Cappadocia and Arabia. After this, he invaded the Territories of the Babylonians, went up to the Citie itself, and challenged the King to a single Combat, who refusing it, he, after some few skirmishes thereabout, returned to Cyaxares, upon the Borders of Media, to deliberate about carrying on the War: He found him greatly discontented at his success (our of apprehension that he had robbed him of all the glory) and much averse to the War; but at length he appeased him, and so wrought underhand upon the Officers of the Army, that they unanimously voted the War to be carried on. Some time being necessary then for preparation, he chose out a convenient place for the Army's Quarters, and not long after understood by certain Fugitives and Prisoners that the King of Assyria was gone towards Lydia with much Treasure.

45. Cyrus, supposing his design to be for raising men, prepared for the main chance by horning his Persians, inventing new and more convenient Chariots, and, to get intelligence of the Enemy's purposes, sent one Araspes into Lydia, who, under colour of a revolt, should insinuate himself into their Counsels. This device taking, he disposed of his affairs according as he saw behoofesfull, modelled his Army, and marched against the Confederates, whom without any great difficulty he overthrew, all but the Egyptians. They put him to sore trouble, and endangered his life; but having slain them upon their Rear, and thereby diverted the Front, he so overpowered them both behind and before, as glad they were to deliver up their Arms, and upon promise of better entertainment, willing to change Masters and serve him. Cræsus now, who commanded his Army, and leaving the two other Cyrus pursued him, and getting the Cattle into his hands, by the help of a Persian, who had been slave to an Officer in it, got possession both of the Citie and its King. He, coming to Cyrus, acquitted the Oracle of Delphos from

from all blame, and took the fault upon himself, in that he, overweening of his own condition, had fooled himself continually in a fond opinion of happiness. After this the *Carians* falling into two factions, both sent unto him: and he dispatched to them *Adusias* with some Forces, who overpowering both the one and the other, compounded their differences.

46. Then sent he *Hystaspes* into *Phrygia*, who subdued the Country, and took the King prisoner; at what time the *Greeks* of *Asia* submitted themselves, procuring by gifts, that they should not be constrained to receive any Garrison, but onely pay Tribute, and serve in the Wars. Afterward, in his march to *Babylon*, he brought under the greater *Phrygia*, subdued the *Cappadocians* and *Arabians*. He fare down before that City with a vast Army, the walls whereof after he had viewed, he concluded there was no storming of it, and resolved the best way was to pine them out. Understanding then, that they were provided within for a whole year, he divided his Army into twelve parts, assigning to each a moneth to lye in Leaguer, at which the besieged scoffed as utterly out of danger. But *Cyrus* taking notice how the River ran through the City, caused deep ditches to be made, which by dreining, rendered it fordable, and so taking advantage of a solemn Feast, entered by night, and surprized them all in their cups. The King was slain by *Gobryas* and *Gadatas*, who both, being formerly injured by him, had revolted to *Cyrus*. The Inhabitants, commanded upon pain of death to deliver up their Arms, instantly obeyed. And thus the *Babylonian Empire* being quire overthrown, *Cyrus* assumed to himselfe Royall Majesty, setting his Court with great wisdom, wherein *Xenophon*, in his most exquisite History, maketh him to have excelled, in all things, to admiration.

The sum of that wherein *Ctesias* differeth from other Historians, concerning *Cyrus*.

47. But *Ctesias* will have *Astyages* (whom he calleth *Astyias*) nothing akin to *Cyrus*; tells us how he fled to *Ecbatane*, where he was hid by his Daughter *Amysis*, and her Husband *Spitama*: and how *Cyrus* coming upon them, put them both to the Rack, to make them confesse where he was, with their children *Spitaces* and *Magabemes*. *Astyias*, rather than they should be tortured, discovered himself, and was first bound with fetters, but afterwards honoured as a Father by *Cyrus*, who at length married *Amysis*, having killed *Spitama*, because he had denied he knew where he was. After the marriage, the *Bactrians* gave up themselves to *Cyrus* and *Amysis*, though formerly they made great and effectually resistance. He relateth also how *Cyrus* made War upon the *Saca*, whose King *Amorges* he took prisoner; but *Sperethra* the Queen gathered an Army of 300000 Men, and 200000 Women, and therewith overthrowing *Cyrus*, took him with other prisoners, and thereby redeemed her Husband. With the help then of *Amorges* he made War upon *Crasus*, and besieged *Sardis*, which City he took by a stratageme taught him by *Oebares*; making images of the *Persians*, and placing them upon the Walls, at which the defendants were affrighted. But, before this, *Crasus* deluded by a *Speltrum*, gave out his Son, an Hostage to *Cyrus*, and delaying to perform what he had promised, procured his death, which the Mother beholding from the wall, tumbled her self down headlong, and yet was not killed; but, the City being taken, fled to *Apollo's* Temple and died there.

48. *Crasus* being bound in the Temple, by an art he had of deceiving the sight, three times was loosed, though the place was secured, and committed to the care of *Oebares*; for which, they that were bound with him lost their heads. Then was he brought into the Palace and more strongly fettered, but was loosed again by Thunder and Lightning. Hereat *Cyrus* his anger abated, and giving him his liberty, he used him ever after with great respect, and bestowed on him a great City called *Barene*, near to *Ecbatane*. After this, *Cyrus* sent *Peisifacas* his Eunuch to fetch *Astyias* from the *Barcanians*, both he and his wife having a great desire to see him: But *Peisifacas* through the instigation of *Oebares* left him in a desert place, where he was famished to death. The treachery was revealed by dreams, and *Peisifacas* was given up into the hands of *Amysis*, who plucked out his eyes, his skin over his eares,

Ex Photii Bibliotheca.

Vide Julium Frontinum Stratagem. lib. 3. cap. 8.

and then crucified him: *Oebares* fearing the like punishment, though *Cyrus* promised him indemnity, killed himself. As for the body of *Astyias* it was sumptuously buried, having been guarded by Lyons in the Wilderness till *Peisifacas* fetched it away. These improbable things are related by *Ctesias*.

49. *Berosus* the *Chaldean* left recorded that, in the 17th year of *Nabonidus*, *Cyrus*, having subdued all *Asia*, with a great Army, turned against *Babylon*. That *Nabonidus* meeting and engaging with him in battell, was overthrown, and betook himself into a Town of the *Borsippians*. *Cyrus* besieging *Babylon*, and considering it was not to be taken in haste, returned to *Borsippus*, where *Nabonidus* not expecting a storm, yielded himself; and *Cyrus* using him kindly sent him from *Babylon* into *Caramania*, where he allotted him an habitation. *Abydenus* (g) further added, that *Cyrus* bestowed upon *Nabonidus*, now above 80 years old, the Government of *Caramania*. This is the summe of what the most ancient Historians delivered concerning *Cyrus* his attainment of the Empire of the East; which hapned about the year of the World 3465, the first of the 60th Olympiad, 538 years before the *Era* of Christ.

Apud Joseph. contr. Apion. l. i.

A. M. Olymp. 6. an. 1. V. C. 214.

(g) Apud Euseb. præpar. Evang. lib. 9.

### CHAP. III.

## Of Sacred History.

### Contemporaries with the Babylonian Empire.

#### SECT. I.

From the time of Phaleg, and the division of the Earth; to the departure of the Israelites out of Ægypt.

Phaleg.  
Ren.  
Sarug.  
Nahor.  
Terah.  
Abram.

What year of his Father he was born.  
De istis lege Ludov. Capellum. Chronol. Sacra. notis ad Tabulam 5. Joh. Gerard. Vossii. 1720. Chronolog. Dissert. 5. c. 6. Jacob. Capell. Hist. Sacra & Exotica ad A. M. 2003, & multos alios.

1. **P**haleg being 30 years old, begat *Ren*, otherwise called *Rebu* and *Ragau* by the 70: *Ren* 32 years old, begat *Sarug*. He at 30 years of age, had a Son named *Nachor*. And *Nachor*, one (when he was 29) called *Terah* or *Thare*.

Gen. 11.

2. *Terah* being 70 years old begat *Abram*, *Nachor*, and *Haran*. Not that all these were born at the same time, or are to be accounted in age as we find them in order; priority in years not being constantly observed in Scripture; but rather that of piety and true worth. *Haran* is to be reckoned as the eldest; who died at *Ur* of the *Chaldees*, before his Father departed thence, and left 2 children, viz. one Son named *Lot*: and two Daughters; *Milcah* married to his Brother (and her Uncle) *Nachor*, and *Sarai* (or *Iscah*) to *Abram*. The second was *Nahor*, Father to *Cesid* (or *Chased*;) and so *Abram* the youngest; because he was born, not in the 70th as hath been thought; but 120 year of his Father. For *Terah* lived in all (a) 205 year; and died in *Charan*. *Abram*, when he came out of *Charan* (which was after his Father's death) was (c) 75 years old; which being deducted out of 205, 130 years will remain. But if he was born in the 70 year of his Father; then, at his death, was he 135 years old; and having *Isaac* born to him, when 100, in the Land of *Canaan*, he must with him have returned back to *Charan* (which seemeth very incredible); or else he left it not at his Father's death, as *Stephen* must make us believe he did.

Var. 26.

(a) Vers. 32.  
(b) Acts 7. v. 4.  
(c) Gen. 12. 4.

3. *Abram* therefore was born in the 120 year of his Father's life, and the 2008th of the World; as is clear from the ages of all his Progenitors, taken at the births of their Sons, and laid together. About the 70 year of his age, God

A. M. 2008.

## SECT. I.

He cometh  
from Ur to  
Canaan.

Thence into  
Canaan.

Sojourneth in  
Egypt.

Recovereth  
Lot and the  
Booty from  
the 4 Kings.

Why called  
an Hebrew.

God commanded him to leave his Father's house, and come into the Land which he should shew him; promising to make of him a great Nation, to bless him, and in him all the Families of the Earth. He, obeying this command, drew on his Father also with him, and so (together with Lot the Son of Haran, and Sarai Abram's wife) they came from Ur of the Chaldeans to Charran and dwelt there. Dwelling there seemeth to intimate a longer stay than of one year; so that some probably think 5 years to have been there spent. For Terah, now very old, might detain them by his weakness; they being unwilling to leave him, till they saw him either recovered or dead: But after his death, mindfull of God's command, they left Charran, and came into the Land of Canaan. This journey from Ur to Charran, was the beginning of the 430 years of his, and his posterity's, sojourning in a strange Land; the promise also made to him being so many years before the promulgation of the Law in Mount Sinai, as the Apostle Paul hath observed.

4. The first place of Canaan in which Abram made any stay, was *Sichem*; where God again appeared to him, and renewed his Promise; another of giving that Land to his Seed being added to it; and in this place he built the first Altar to the Lord. Thence he removed towards the hilly Country, and the Eastern tract of *Luz*, (afterwards called *Bethel*) where he built another Altar; and so proceeded into the Southern Coasts, whence a Famine drove him into *Egypt*. There he sojourned, and taught the *Egyptians* Astrology, which *Jos. phus* saith, they were ignorant of, till he communicated to them the knowledge of it, and of Arithmetick. His wife being beautiful; for fear of his life, he counterfeited himself her Brother, so that *Pharaoh* began to cast his affections on her, till, plagued by God, he was constrained to dismiss them both in peace. Out of *Egypt* then he returned to that place, between *Hai* and *Bethel*, where he built the second Altar: Now was he and Lot grown so rich; that no longer could they conveniently live together. Lot being departed to the Plains of *Sodom*, God again renewed his promise to Abram, which he more largely explained, both as to the giving of the Land, and the propagation of his Posterity. After this, as he was commended, he went and viewed the Land; then pitched his Tents in the Plain of *Mamre* near *Hebron*, where he built another Altar to the Lord.

5. At this time 4 Kings about the River *Euphrates*, viz. *Amraphel* King of *Shinar* or *Babylonia*, *Arioch* King of *Ellasar*, (thought to be *Arabia*, because of a City upon the borders of that Country, called *Ellas*) *Chedorlao-mer* King of *Elam* (afterwards *Persia*) and *Idol* King of *Nations* (thought to be many petty Kingdoms, adjoining to *Phoenicia* and *Palestine*) came and fought against the 5. Kings of the *Pentapolis*; viz. *Bera* of *Sodom*, *Birha* of *Gomorrah*, *Shinab* King of *Admah*, *Shemeber* of *Zebajim*, and the King of *Bela* (afterwards called *Zoar*); all who, had 12 years served *Chedorlao-mer*; and in the 1. th rebelled. They overthrew these five petty Princes, led away much pillage, and many Captives, amongst which was Lot, who then sojourned in *Sodom*. Abram hearing this, armed 18 servants; and, pursuing them, recovered Lot, and all the prey, which he restored to the owners. In his return, *Melchisedech* (whom some improbably make *Sem*) King of *Salem* (or *Jerusalem*) Priest of the most high God, brought forth Bread and Wine, and blessed him; to whom he gave the Tithes of all. In this storie Abram is first called an *Hebrew* by *Moses* (And there came one which had escaped and told Abram the Hebrew) which word in Scripture, is not found applied to any other before him.

6. Some (d) think he was so called from *Heber* the Son of *Salah*, and that this appellation onely was proper to his Family, because it kept the most ancient or *Hebrew* tongue incorrupt. But (e) others finding the word to signify one that cometh from beyond the water, or a Stranger; think it was given to Abram upon no other account, then because he came from beyond *Euphrates*. None of *Heber*'s Posterity being called so but onely he, and some of his; they think, addeth much to their reason. They conclude, thur

Gen. 11. 12.  
Acts 7.

A. M. 2078.

Gen. 12.

Chap. 13.

Chap. 14.

(d) Vide Bochartum Phaleg. lib. 2. c. 10.  
(e) Lege Ludov. Cappell. Chronol. Sacra. p. 111, &c.

## SECT. I.

the *Hebrew* language was not appropriate to *Heber* as a reward of his piety, because those that descended of him used it not always; and to others, besides his posterity, it appeareth to have been natural. They instance that *Laban* spake *Syriack*, and the *Canaanites* and *Philistines* the *Hebrew* naturally; as the names of their men, places, rivers, &c. do shew. Therefore they judge it most probable that Abram speaking the *Chaldean* language before (which onely differeth in dialect from the *Hebrew*) got both the name and language, after his arrival in the Land of *Canaan*. The Heathen (f) Writers thought them to have been called *Hebrews* from *Abraham*, as corrupted from *Abraheans*, out of ignorance of the language. *Augustine* also once inclined to this opinion, which he afterwards renounced.

7. Abram, after his victory over the Kings, received a more large promise from God, who engaged to become to him a shield, and a sufficient reward; and (for that it troubled him to go childless) to give him issue, from which should proceed an innumerable posterity, that, inhabiting a strange Land four hundred years, was to return and possess this of *Canaan*, when the iniquity of the *Amorites* would be full, in the fourth Generation. This League made betwixt God and Abram was confirmed by Sacrifice; yet, *Sarai*, seeing her self barren, persuaded her husband to go in unto *Hagar* her handmaid, of which he had a son born to him, and named *Ismael*, in the eleventh year after his coming into *Canaan*, the 86 of his Age and of the World, the 2094. In the 12th year after, God made another Covenant with him concerning the seed of *Isaac*, who was to be born the year following, and Circumcision was instituted as a seal thereof. Now, whereas his name before was Abram, or an High-father, it was changed into Abraham, or Father of a great multitude. And *Sarai*, which signifieth My Princeesse, or Lady, (as of one family) was altered into *Sarah*, or a Princeesse absolute; as of many Nations. Not long after, God made known to Abraham his purpose to destroy *Sodom*, and the other Cities for their abominable wickedness. He interceded hard for them; but there being not so many as five righteous persons in *Sodom*, God having taken care for Lot and his family, rained fire and brimstone down upon the Cities, which together with the Plain were utterly destroyed; onely *Bela* was spared for Lot's sake, who fled thither. Of the rest the *Dead Sea* (into which the ground was converted) remaineth a lasting Monument to this day. In this Sea (or Lake) no living Creature is bred, having nothing but a Sulphureous matter thence taken in great quantities. It is described to be 72 miles in length, and 19 in breadth. Nigh to it fair and pleasant Apples grow, which being touched, turn into a Sulphureous vapour: and a tradition remained amongst the Heathen of these Cities being destroyed with Thunder and Lightning from Heaven. Lot's wife, after she had got out of *Sodom*, looked back, and was turned into a Pillar of Salt. His two daughters, thinking all mankind to have perished, made their father drunk and lay with him; from which incestuous copulation came *Moab* and *Ammon*, fathers of the *Moabites* and *Ammonites*, two great and powerful Nations.

8. A little after (in the same year) Abraham having continued in the Plain of *Mamre* about eighteen years, departed unto *Gerar* the Metropolis of the *Philistines*; where hapned the something concerning his wife, as formerly had done in *Egypt*. *Abimelech* the King having taken her into his house, who therefore was plagued till he restored her with large gifts. The year being precisely finished, *Sarah* bare to him *Isaac* (so called because he laughed when God made mention of it to him) he being now an hundred years old, and the ninety; four hundred before the departure of his posterity out of *Egypt*. At the weaning of *Isaac*, *Sarah* seeing *Ismael* mocking, procured him and his mother to be banished the house, God bidding Abraham fulfill her desire herein, and promising to make of him a great Nation. When *Isaac* was grown up (though of what Age is not expressed, some guessing thirty years; others (unprobably) ten, or twelve, because he must have been of sufficient strength to carry wood) God to try his father's faith, com-

F

manded

(f) Artapanus apud Euseb. & Charax apud Stephanum.

Retractat. l. 2. c. 16.

Gen. 15.

Chap. 16.

Chap. 17.

A. M. 2094.

Vide John. Bilegium fustam, de illa viribus ruminis.

\* Lege Tacitum Histor. l. 5.

Gen. 20.

A. M. 2108.

Chap. 21.

Chap. 22.

## SECT. I.

*Sarah* died. manded him to Offer him up for a burnt-offering on Mount *Moriah*, where afterwards the Temple of *Solomon* stood. He, out of obedience, went about to do it; but God accepting his will for a performance, renewed his promise to him. *Sarah* died aged 127 years, and after her death *Abraham* married another wife, called *Keturah*, by which he had other six sons. To those he gave gifts, and before his death sent them away from *Isaac*, the Heir of the promise.

*Isaac* married. 9. When *Isaac* was forty years old, his father \* procured him to wife, *Rebecca* the daughter of *Beithuel*, who was son to *Nachor*, the brother of *Abraham*. She (married at fourteen years of Age, according to the tradition of the Jews) was barren twenty years; but then her husband beseeching God for her, she brought forth twins (*Esau* and *Jacob*) which struggled in her womb; the elder being, as God foretold, to serve the younger. Fifteen years after *Abraham* died, being 175 years old, having sojourned in the Land of *Canaan* a hundred years; 22 after the death of *Sem*, four before that of *Heber*; in the days of *Inachus* King of the *Argives*, 1821 years before the Era of *Christ*, in the 2183 year of the World. Of *Abraham* (besides *Artapanus* and *Charan* before mentioned) \* *Berosus* the *Caldean* had some knowledge, though he named him not. *Hecataeus* not only made mention of him by the way, but wrote an History of him. *Nicolaus Damascus* in the fourth book of his Histories, related that *Abraham*, a certain stranger, reigned at *Damascus*; having come from a Countrey about *Babylon*, laid to be that of the *Chaldeans*. That he departed thence with his people into the Land of *Canaan*, afterwards called *Judea*, where his posterity grew very numerous; concerning which he should speak in another place. In *Josephus* his time the name of *Abraham* was famous at *Damascus*; where was shewn a certain Village, called *Abrahams dwelling*.

*Abraham* dyeth.

10. After the death of *Abraham*, God blessed *Isaac*, and made the same Covenant with him. In a time of Famine, he also sojourned in *Gerar*, where dissembling concerning *Rebecca* his wife, the same thing happened to them as formerly to *Abraham* and *Sarah*, from another *Abimelech*, which name was common to all the Kings of the *Philistines*. Some years after, *Ismael* died, aged 137 years, 48 after his father, in the year of the World 2221. From his eldest son *Nebaioth*, descended the *Nabatheans*, who (g) inhabited part of *Arabia*, from the River *Euphrates* to the Red-sea, called *Arabia Petraea*, from *Petra* the Metropolis of the Countrey; which, wanting fruits, abounded in Sheep and Cattel. (h) *Diodorus* describeth it to have Iyen like a Wilderness untilld, as without inhabitants; without Rivers or Fountains. It was unlawfull with them to sow or plant, to drink wine or build houses, being extraordinary desirous of liberty, and judging these things but temptations, to such as were stronger, to inherit them. Some of them kept Camels, others Sheep: some used to convey Spices, brought out of *Arabia* the Happy, to the Sea. When they were invaded by an Enemy, they betook themselves into the Wilderness, which being vast and without water, afforded them sufficient protection. Another son of *Ismael*, named *Kedar*, gave name to a place of *Arabia* the Desert, often mentioned in Scripture. It is thought that, though the *Chusans*, *Madianites*, and *Ismaelites* were of several Originals; yet they dwelt promiscuously together, and grew up into one Nation of the *Saracens*.

*Ismael* died.

His posterity.

11. Fifteen years after this, *Isaac* being 138 years old and blind, sent his eldest son *Esau* to Hunt for Venison, that he might eat and bless him before his death. But *Jacob*, by his mother's help, supplanted him, and got the blessing, having formerly bought his birthright for pottage. Hereat *Esau* enraged determined to kill him after his father's death; which *Rebecca* knowing, sent him into *Mesopotamia* to her brother *Laban*, that he might thence also take a wife out of her own kindred, and not make his choice amongst the *Hittites*, of which *Esau* had married two wives. In his journey, God appeared to him in a dream and blessed him; for which cause he changed the name of the place from *Luz* into *Bethel*. Coming to *Laban*, after a months time,

Chap. 23.

Chap. 24.

A.M. 2148.

Chap. 25.

A.M. 2168.

\* Apud Joseph Antiq. lib. 1. cap. 7.

Gen. 26.

(g) Strabo lib. 16. p. 779. C.

(h) Lib. 19. p. 722. A.

Gen. 27.

Chap. 28. 29. 30.

## SECT. I.

A.M. 2246.

*Jacob* fleth from his brother into *Mesopotamia*.

His issue.

His return.

time, he Covenanted to serve him seven years for his youngest daughter *Rachel*; which being ended, *Leah*, the eldest was given to him in her stead, and presently after *Rachel*; for which he agreed to serve him other seven years. *Rachel*, most beloved, continued barren, and *Leah* because neglected, obtained favour of God to be fruitfull, which raised such emulation betwixt them, as *Rachel* first, and then *Leah*, gave her maid to his bed, accounting the Children begotten on them as their own. Within seven years he had by *Leah* seven sons, viz. *Reuben*, *Siméon*, *Levi*, *Judah*, *Issachar*, *Zabulon*, and a daughter named *Dinah*; by *Bilhah*, *Rachel's* maid, two sons, *Dan*, and *Naphthali*; by *Zilpah*, *Leah's* maid, also two sons, *Gad* and *Asher*. Lastly, by *Rachel* her self one son, named *Joseph*, and born the fourteen year of his service ending. Six years longer he served *Laban* for wages (being to have the Cattel of such and such a colour) which his hard master changed ten times; but could not withstand the providence of God in his growing rich.

12. Having served his father-in-law and Uncle twenty years, and observing what envy he had contracted from him and his sons, he stole away with all he had, and proceeded three dayes on his journey, ere his departure was known. Then *Laban* with his friends pursuing, overtook him after seven dayes in Mount *Gilead*, which from the event of this meeting had its name. After several expostulations, they made a Covenant (*Laban* being warned by God not to hurt him) and, in Testimony thereof, hid together an heap of stones, which *Jacob* called *Galead*; but *Laban*, in his Syrian tongue, *Jegar-Sahadutha*. *Jacob* then, continued his journey towards *Canaan*, wrestling with God's Angel in his way; from which he received a blessing, and the surname of *Israel*. His brother *Esaú* also met him, and lovingly received him contrary to his fears. The first place he staid at was *Succoth*, so called because there he built an House, and made Booths for his Cattel. Thence he passed over *Jordan*, and came to *Sichem*, where he bought of *Hamor*, the father of *Sichem*, a Field, for a hundred Lambs, or so many pieces of money. How long he continued in either of these places is not expressed. *Demetrius* \* and *Alexander Polyhistor* wrote that he abode ten years in *Socot*, saying nothing of *Sichem*; perhaps because he made little stay there. Indeed *Dinah* seemeth to have been ravished not long after their first coming thither; *Hamor* speaking to his Citizens concerning them, as persons lately come; and her curiosity to see the women of that Countrey, probably may be thought to have proceeded, from the strangeness of it. At the end of these ten years she was ravished, then sixteen years old; being born a little before *Joseph*, and perhaps the same year. To be revenged upon *Sichem*, who committed the rape, her two brothers *Siméon* and *Levi* slew him, and put the whole Citie to the sword, coming upon them when they were yet fore by Circumcision, which he had procured them to admit of, that he might obtain the maid for his wife.

13. *Jacob* much troubled hereat, was commanded by God to go to *Bethel*, having buried all the strange gods and the earings of his family under the Oake in *Sichem*. At *Bethel* he erected an Altar to the Lord, and here *Deborah* the Nurse of *Rebecca* died. Thence he removed to *Ephrath*, being 107 years old, and when they had almost reached the place, *Rachel* died in Travel of *Benjamin*, having (as *Demetrius* and *Alexander* wrote) lived with her husband 23 years. Eleven years after *Jacob's* return into *Canaan*, when he was now 109 years old, *Joseph* being hated of his brethren, because he had brought to their father their evil report, and for his dreams (which prefiged his preeminence over them) they sold him to the *Ismaelites*; who carried him down into *Egypt*, where *Potiphar* Captain of the Kings Guard bought him, being now seventeen years old. Ten years he lived with him: till refusing to satisfy the wanton desires of his Mistress, he was falsely accused by her of her own fault, and cast into prison. The year after, he interpreted the Dreams of the chief Butler and Baker of *Pharoh*, both which were in prison with him; and accordingly the Baker was hanged, but the Butler restored, who yet forgot *Joseph*.

*Rachel* died.

*Joseph* sold.

Chap. 38.

A.M. 2277.

## SECT. I.

Isaac dieth.

Edom.

Joseph advanced.

Jacob goeth into Egypt.

Dieth.

14. At this time his Grand-father *Isaac* died, aged 180 years, in the 2288 year of the World. He was buried in *Hebron*, by his two Sons *Esau* and *Jacob*; the former having (as some think they have ground in charity to believe) reconciled himselfe to his Brother, and joyned himselfe to the Church; not being estranged from the Grace of God, but onely from the speciall and particular Covenant, as to the promised Seed; which they have the same reason to think concerning *Ismael*: The Funerall past, and the Goods divided betwixt them, being both exceeding rich, and therefore requiring large room; *Esau* departed to his former possession of *Mount Seir*; Providence for ordaining it, that when the *Israelites* should afterwards come to inherit *Canaan*, his posterity might neither be destroyed, nor displaced. He was otherwife called *Edom*, and from him *Idumaea* took it's name, which seemeth from *Sirabo* to have also included the Country of the *Nabataeans*. And likely enough it is, that he who married the Sister of *Nebaius*, might joyn himself to them and praeise over them. This is the famous *Herod*, from whom not onely *Idumaea*, but also the adjoining *Erythraean*, *Edomaeon*, or *Red Sea*, (all signifying the same thing) was so called; being known to the *Greeks*, by the name of *Erythrae*, the same with *Edom*.

15. But two years after *Joseph* had interpreted the Dreams of the servants of *Pharaoh*, he was called up out of prison, to explain the meaning of one, which the King himself had dreamed. This, betokening 7 years of great plenty to come, and after them as many of famine; and it being necessary, as he hinted to *Pharaoh*, to chuse out some wise Man, who being set over the Land, should gather and preserve the fruits of the Earth, against the time of want; *Pharaoh* made choice of him, being about 30 years old, for this purpose: he appointed him next to himself, and gave him in marriage *Asenath* the Daughter of *Posipherah*, Priest of *On* (or *Heliopolis*, where *Sirabo* writeth, that the Priests of old time had their habitation) on which he begat *Ephraim* and \* *Manasse*. According to his prediction, 7 most plentiful years ensued, wherein he gathered into store-houses the Corn that abounded; and after them came 7 other of famine, which prevailed fore both in *Egypt* and the neighbouring Countries of *Canaan* and *Arabia*. *Jacob* amongst others, wanting provisions, in the 2d year of the famine, sent his Sons down into *Egypt* to buy Corn. *Joseph* knowing them, though undiscovered, accused them for coming as Spies, cast them into prison, and dismissed them not, till *Simeon* (the eldest of those which conspired against his life) was bound, and left as an Hostage, for their bringing down of *Benjamin*; that so their story might be confirmed, of their being one Man's Sons, and that their youngest Brother was left behind. The next year, being pressed with famine, they returned and *Benjamin* with them, whom their Father was constrained to let go. Now, after some further terrifying of them, he made himself known, and sent for his Father down into *Egypt*. *Jacob* understanding of his Son's life and promotion (whom he had given over of a long time, for dead) gladly went down, and with him 66 Souls, besides his Sons Wives; in the 3d year of the famine, of the World the 2298th, aged 120 years.

16. By *Pharaoh's* consent, *Joseph* placed them in the Land of *Goshen*, and there nourished them during the famine. He sold to the *Egyptians* the Corn formerly treasured up, and therewith purchased for the King all their Money, Goods, and Lands, except the Lands of the Priests, which were not alienated. The grounds he afterwards granted to the former owners, paying the fifth part of the profit to *Pharaoh's* use. After *Jacob* had lived in *Egypt* 17 years, he adopted the two eldest Sons of *Joseph*; viz. *Manasse* and *Ephraim*, of whom the younger he preferred before the elder: He called his Sons together, blessed them, and told them apart what should befall them in their posterity. From *Reuben* his first born he took the preheminent, because he had defiled his bed, and gave it to *Judah*. He prophesied of Christ's coming, commanded them to bury him in the Cave of *Machpelah*, in the Land of *Canaan*, with his Ancestors, and then died at the age of 147 years, in the year of the World 2315. *Joseph* caused his servants the

A. M. 2288.

Gen. 41.

A. M. 2290.

\* A. M. 2297.

Chap. 42, 43, &amp;c.

A. M. 2298.

Chap. 47.

Chap. 48, 49.

A. M. 2315.

## SECT. I.

Gen. 50.

A. M. 2370.

\* Lib. 36. c. 2.

Exod. 1.

Chap. 2.

Vide Perierium in 2 Exodi.

A. M. 2428.

\* De nominibus Hebraeis in Josepho versis vid. Iacob. Cappellum Hist. Sacra & Exotica ad A. M. 17:9.

the Physicians to embalm *Israel*, and a mourning of 70 dayes (or 72), was observed for him, which number in that Country was onely proper to Kings; Then, obtaining leave of *Pharaoh*, he and his Brethren, with a great company of Courtiers, carried him into the Land of *Canaan*, and buried him there, according to his will, where they also mourned for him 7 dayes.

17. Being returned into *Egypt*, *Joseph* forgave his Brethren the fault they formerly had committed against him (which now they feared he would revenge, after their Father's death,) and as long as he lived, he nourished them and their children. This space of time was 54 years after his Father's death, at the end whereof, having exhorted them to Unity and Concord, foretelling them their departure out of *Egypt*, and commanding them thence to carry his Bones, he dyed at the age of 110 years, when he had governed *Egypt*; under severall Kings, the space of 80. *Trogus Pompeius* (as appeareth out of *Justin* \* his Epitomizer) wrote many things concerning him, partly taken out of the Sacred History, partly mixed with such Fables as the Heathen were not wanting to invent concerning the Jews. *Abram*, *Moses*, and *Israel*, are made by him Kings of *Damascus*, which City took it's name from their Predecessor. *Israel* had ten Sons, to whom he committed the Kingdom, and commanded them to call themselves Jews from *Judah*, who died before the division, and whose portion was divided amongst them all. The youngest of the 10 Sons was *Joseph*, whose excellent wit his Brothers fearing, they sold him to some Marchants that carried him down into *Egypt*. Here learning the Magick Arts, he became very dear to the King, having skill in working Wonders, and interpretation of Dreams: moreover, nothing either Divine or Humane was beyond his reach; insomuch, that he foretold the barrenness of the ground severall years before it hapned, and all *Egypt* had perished with famine, but that the King, by his advice, caused Corn to be treasured up many years: finally, such was his knowledge, that his answers seemed rather the Oracles of a God, then the replies of a Man. Then followeth that *Moses* was his Son, who, being both wise and beautiful, became a leader to such *Egyptians* as were infected with scab and itch, and so returned to *Damascus*, the Country of his Ancestors. Which Iyes (with others hereafter to be mentioned) are to be attributed to the malice of the *Egyptians*. With the life of *Joseph* endeth the first Book of *Moses* his history, called by the *Greeks*, *Genesis*, which containeth the account of 2269 years of the World. The next to it in order of time, the Book of *Job* is thought to be; of which *Moses* also is reputed Author, by the common consent and opinion of the *Hebrews*.

18. After the death of *Joseph*, and all that generation, the Children of *Israel* increased abundantly, and grew exceeding mighty; so that the Land was filled with their numbers. But a certain King arising, which knew not *Joseph*; to keep them down, he pressed them with sore Labour; and lest they should increase, gave order to the Midwives to drown all the Male Children in the River. At this time (58 years after the death of *Joseph*, and 41 after that of *Levi*) *Arumam*, the Son of *Canah*, and Grand-son of *Levi*, by *Jochabed* the Daughter of *Levi* (so called by an Hebraism, and not *Canah's* own Sister as some have thought) was made Father of a Son, whom for his beauty they hid 3 moneths, not fearing the Kings command, and when he could no longer be concealed, put him in an Ark of Bul-rushes, daubed within and without with Pitch, and laid him on the brink of the River. Hither the King's Daughter (by *Josephus* called *Thermisia*) coming down to wash her self, found the Babe; and moved with compassion, sent for a Nurse, which was *Jochabed* her self, through the procurement of *Miriam* her Daughter, which had watched what would become of the Child, and unknown, had offered her selfe for a messenger. Being nursed up, she educated him as her own Son, and called him *Moses*, because she had taken him out of the water. *Moy* in the *Egyptian* tongue, as *Josephus* \* saith, signifying *Waier*, and *Iyes* taken out, though *Mosche* in the *Hebrew* is no compounded word, signifying *drawn out*, *delivered*, or rather a *deliverer*; not without

Joseph dieth.

The Israelites oppressed in Egypt.

Moses born.



SECT. I. without a mystery; he being a Type of that great Deliverer of Mankind. He was learned in all the Learning of the *Egyptians*, and became mighty in words and in deeds.

19. But *Moses* being grown up, by Faith refused to be called the Son of *Pharaoh's* Daughter, and despised the pleasure of his Court; having, according to *Josaphus* his history, thrown down his Crown, sett upon his head when a Child, and trampled it under his feet; for which, as an ill omen, the Priest (who had foretold, that his Nativity would prove disastrous to the *Egyptians*) would have had him slain; but he was spared through the affection of *Thermutis*. Being forty years old, he visited his Brethren the *Israelites*; and looking upon their burdens, when he saw an *Egyptian* smiting one of them, he killed him, and hid his bodie in the sand. But this coming to *Pharaoh's* ear, he was forced to flye for his life, into the Land of *Midian*, where he kept the Sheep of *Jethro*, or *Hebab*, Priest of that Country, who gave him *Zipporah* his Daughter to wife. Forty years he continued with him, till the burthens of the Children of *Israel* were grown so intolerable, after above 80 years continuance, that God, being moved with their cries, called to him out of a burning Bush, as he was feeding Sheep, to send him on a message to *Pharaoh*, about their dismissal. He laboured by all means to make excuse; but at length, confirmed by promise of Divine assistance by Miracles, and the company of his Brother *Aaron*, (3 years elder); he undertook the employment.

20. This message was ill resented by *Pharaoh*, and greater burthens imposed on the people; no Straw being now allowed them, for the making of Brick, in which servile worke they were employed. Many signs and wonders were wrought by *Moses*, in the King's presence, which little availed; *Jannes* and *Jambres*, Magicians, doing the same with their Enchantments. Ten Plagues also by the Ministry of *Moses*, God inflicted upon the Land. 1. The waters were turned into blood. 2. Frogs swarmed in the Land. 3. Lice. 4. Flies and other Insects. 5. A Murrain followed amongst the Cattel. 6. Ulcers in Man and Beast. 7. Thunder and Rain mingled with Fire, and Hail, that destroyed the Corn with the Trees of the field. 8. Locusts covered the face of the Earth, and consumed the fruits thereof. 9. Enfused Darknesse throughout the Land *Egypt*, such as no *Egyptian* could stir out of his house, yet the *Israelites* had light in their dwellings. 10. Last of all, the First-born were slain, from *Pharaoh* that sat upon the Throne, to the First-born of the Captive in the Dungeon, and the first-born of Cattel.

Sent to *Pharaoh*.  
The ten Plagues of *Egypt*.

The *Israelites* depart,

21. The Nine former Plagues *Pharaoh's* heart was so hardened as to withstand; but the Tenth forced him to let the people go. Upon the death of the First-born, he and his Subjects thrust them out with haste, out of the Land, and fogot the Jewells of silver and Jewells of gold, which they had lent them. For the *Israelites* were commanded by God, to borrow these things; and the night before their departure, to kill a Lamb; with the blood of which they were to sprinkle the lintels of their doors, that the Angel appointed to do this execution upon the First-born, might passe by their houses, at the sight thereof. And, in memoriall of the thing, this they were to do every year on the tenth day of that moneth (thenceforth commanded to begin the year, being called *Abib*) eating a Lamb in a travelling posture, with their loyns girt, and staves in their hands. Thus left they *Egypt*, 430 years after the first promise made to *Abraham*, and his leaving *Ur* of the *Chaldeans*, 400 after the birth of *Isaac*, 210 after *Jacob's* descent into *Egypt*, in the 2508th year of the World. This their departure is also attested by *Heathen* Writers; but related to have been upon such grounds, as the *Egyptians* themselves invented; who, as it seemeth, took occasion from the Plague of Ulcers, which they suffered in their own persons, to feign, that because of Leprosie they were forced out of the Land; as will largely appear in the History of *Egypt*.

A. M. 2468.

Exod. 3, & 4.

Chap. 5, & 7. &c.

Exod. 12.

A. M. 2508.

SECT.

SECT. II.

From the departure of the *Israelites* out of *Egypt*, to the death of *Solomon*, and the Rent of the Kingdom.

## SECT. II.

The number of the *Israelites* at their departure.

THE number of the Children of *Israel* may be esteemed by what is recorded concerning their men of War, of the Age of twenty years and upwards. Of these went out about 600000, besides Women and Children; so that if those of that Age be reckoned as two parts of five, of the whole multitude, (which is the usual account amongst all Nations, to reckon men for War, as 40 to 100, in respect of the whole body) then the totall number of all, both old and young, amounted to about 1500000. To these must be added a mixed multitude; which, having taken up their religion, went out with them, and is thought by some to have consisted of as many more; so that the whole sum of all together, at this rate, would arise to 3000000. As for the number of the *Israelites*, it need not seem incredible, that from about 70 persons in the space of 210 years, so many should proceed. For if but one man, in the thirtieth year of his Age should begin to be a father, and had but in all ten Children, who also with their posterity should beget at the same Age, that one man, before 200 years, would have descended from him, of the sixth Generation 1000000. of the fifth 100000. of the fourth 10000. of great Grand-Children 1000. of Grand-Children 100. and of Children 10. But that the *Israelites* began to be fathers before the Age of thirty is more then probable; nature sometimes not requiring half that time, and there is ground sufficient to think that they often exceeded the number of ten Children. The Scripture relateth *Abdon* to have had forty sons, *Abizara* thirty, and as many daughters, *Gideon* seventy sons, and *Ahab* as many. *Egyptus*, *Danaus*, *Priamus*, and *Darius*, are reported to have had fifty Children; *Artaxerxes*, *Justin* relateth to have had 115. and *Hierosimus* 600. These things (to add no more) prove the great increase of the *Israelites* to have been possible in the course of Nature, although not without an especial providence.

2. *Moses* had gathered the people together, as *Josaphus* writeth, about *Ramestes* the chief Citie of *Goshen*, that they might be in a readinesse, and thence they came to *Succoth* where was their second station. Here *Moses* propounded the command of God concerning the annual observation of the Passover, and the Consecration of the first born. A ready way hence to the Land of *Canaan* would have been through that of the *Philistines*; but because the *Israelites* were born in slavery, and therefore hid but low and poor spirits; to exercise them, to stir them up, and left, for want of experience, they should be so terrified as to return, God lead them another and longer way. From *Succoth* therefore they came to *Etham* in the end of the Desert, in two dayes; whither God conducted them by a Pillar of a Cloud by day, and Pillar of fire by night, that never forsook them, till they came to the Borders of the promised Land. From *Etham* they journeyed to *Pihahiroth*, and thence to the *Red-sea*. Hither *Pharaoh* pursued them with all his Forces, repenting he had let them go. They were there exceedingly struck with terror, and murmured against *Moses*, for bringing them out of *Egypt*. In this extremity God divided the waters of the *Red-sea*, which being as a Wall on both sides to them, they passed over on dry ground. The *Egyptians* essayed also to pursue them in this place; but the Pillar then removed from before them, and placed it self between them, giving light to the *Israelites*, but causing great darknesse to their Enemies. Hereupon ensued great consternation, and a pannick fear amongst the *Egyptians*, which causing great disturbance, the Lord also fought against them, and they fled. But then the waters returned to their place and overwhelmed them all, so that neither *Pharaoh*, nor any one of his men escaped. This place of the *Red-sea* being

The *Israelites* passe the *Red-sea*.

Vide Pererium in 12. cap. Exod.

Vide Jacob. Cappell. ad A. M. 2293.

\* Mea memoria, in civitate Lacedaemonensi Nymphopoli: puer minor aetatis duodecim genuit ex puella cognomina sua quae nondum decimum annum expleverat. Rem notam navo & cuius memoria adhuc recens est in Aquitania. Pater hoc ipse de se patri meo testatus est, quod aliqui tunc ne pueri quidem ignorabant. Scaliger. in Pater Deut. 1.

SECT. I. I. ing here not at all fordable, the sole power of God procured their passage; though *Josephus*, to gain credit to the story from the incredulous Heathen, taketh off from the miracle by an unsuitable comparing of it to *Alexander* the Great his passing the shoar of the *Pamphylian-Sea*, which at low water was ever bare, and at other times not very deep. *Vide Strabonem. l. 14. p. 666. D.*

Quails and  
Manna.

3. From the *Red-Sea* they journeyed three dayes through the *Wildernesse of Etham*; (which, as it seemeth, stretcheth forth it self to both the sides of the *Sea*) where they found no water. Thence they came to *Marah*, where they found water, but bitter, and thence the place had its name; which bitterness was removed by the casting in of a certain Tree which God shewed to *Moses*. From *Marah* they came to their fifth station at *Elim*, where were twelve Fountains of water, and seventy Palm-Trees, and thence to the *Red-Sea*; which name seemeth to be applied to some Bay or Creek thereof. From the *Sea* they came into the desert of *Sin*, where they pitched their Tents on the fifteenth day of the second moneth after their departure. Here murmuring for flesh, Quails were rained down upon the Camp at evening, and in the morning was there found *Manna*, which continued every morning to fall, all the forty years they abode in the *Wildernesse*. This *Wildernesse of Sin* being very large, and reaching as far as Mount *Sinai*, they had several stations in it. The ninth was at *Diphka*, the tenth at *Alush*, the eleventh at *Raphidim*, where the people again murmuring for water, the Rock being struck by *Moses* gushed out into streams. Whilst they here continued, the *Amalekites* (descended from *Amalek*, who was the son of *Eliphaz*, and Grand son of *Esau*) fell in upon their rear, and made slaughter of the weaker sort. *Moses* against them sent *Joshua* the son of *Nun*, he himself in the mean time praying to God in the Mount. And as long as his hands were lifted up the *Israelites* overcame, but when he let them down the *Amalekites* prevailed; so that *Aaron* his brother, and *Hur* his sister *Miriam's* husband, bore them up till the going down of the Sun. *Exod. 17.*

The Deca-  
logue.

4. In the third moneth they removed, and took up their station in the desert of *Sinai*, over against the Mountain *Horeb* (which 'tis thought was some part of *Sinai*) and here they continued almost a year; to the 20th day of the second moneth of the next year. Upon this Mountain, God gave the Law of the ten Commandments in a terrible manner, on the 30th day after their coming out of *Egypt*, as \* some of the Ancients apprehended. The day after, several other Laws were promulgated, as it were Commentaries upon the *Decalogue*, both Judicial and Ceremonial. Then *Moses* having Offered Sacrifice, read the book of the Law to the people, and made a Covenant between God and them, and went up into the Mount where he remained forty dayes: six in the lower and cloudy, and 34 in the highest and fiery part. In this space of time he received advice concerning the structure of the Tabernacle, the Ornaments and Consecration of Priests, &c. From this familiar Conversing of God with *Moses*, the Heathen Law-givers took occasion to feign such a privilege to themselves. As amongst the *Greeks*, *Zamolxis* gave out he received two Laws from *Vesta*. *Zabranistes* amongst the *Arimaspians* from a good *Dæmon*. *Mneves*, amongst the *Egyptians*, from *Mercurius*, *Minos* the *Cretian*, from *Jupiter*. *Lycargus* the *Lacedæmonian* from *Apollo*, and *Numa* the *Roman* from the Goddess *Egeria*. To this number \* *Diodorus*, out of Ethnick ignorance, addeth *Moses* himself, writing that he counterfeited conference with the god *Janus*.

The molten  
Calf.

5. But the people missing *Moses* so long a time, and not knowing what was become of him, raised a tumult, and caused *Aaron* to make them a molten Calf of Gold, after the fashion of the *Egyptians*, who made them a molten Calf of Gold, after the fashion of the *Egyptians*, who worshipped two Heifers, *Apis* and *Mnevis*, which they accounted gods. Forty dayes, and as many nights being ended, God gave *Moses* two Tables of stone, wherein was written the *Decalogue* by his own finger, and sent him down, telling him wherein his people were employed. *Moses* something ap-

\* Hieronymus  
ad Fabiolam &  
Leo Sermon. 1. de  
Pentecoste.

\* Biblioth. l. 1.  
p. 59. B. in  
Margine No. 5.  
sat.

Chap. 31. &c.

appealing Gods wrath came down from the Mount; but seeing them dance before the Calf, in a great rage cast the Tables out of his hands and brake them. He put the Calf into the fire, and grinding it to powder threw it into the Brook, and made them to drink of the water; then commanded the *Levites* to take every man his sword, and slay his Neighbour; so that of the people fell that day about 3000 men. After this, going up into the Mount the second time, he interceded for the people, and at his return, removed the Tabernacle, or Tent, wherein he used to speak with God, out of the Camp, in token of the Lords displeasure. He hewed two new Tables of stone like to the former, and having given order for the making of an Ark of Wood, and all things about the Tabernacle, according to the pattern shewed him in the Mount, he went up the third time, and continued there forty dayes and as many nights without eating any thing, as before. In this time God wrote anew the ten Commandments; and, being pacified, renewed the league conditionally, and proposed other Laws to the people. When *Moses* returned his face shone, so that he put thereon a veil when he spake to the multitude, to which he declared Gods commands, urged the observance of the Sabbath, and the offering for making of the Tabernacle; in the work whereof, the latter part of this year was spent by *Bezaleel*, and his Companions.

The Taberna-  
cle reared.

6. On the first day of the first moneth of the second year, was the Tabernacle reared, and in this moneth were these things done which are spoken of in the third book of *Moses*, called *Leviticus*. On the fourteenth day was the passover celebrated in the *Wildernesse of Sinai*. On the first of the second moneth God commanded *Moses* to number all the *Israelites*, except the Tribe of *Levi*, from twenty years old to sixty; the number of whom amounted to 603,550. just so many as had been found seven moneths before, when the contribution was to be made for the Tabernacle. On the 20th of the same moneth, the Cloud which rested on the Tabernacle removed, and they following in in four Armies came from the *Wildernesse of Sinai* to that of *Paran*; where they staid 23 dayes in their 12th Mansion of *Kibroth-Hattaavah*. Here the people, weary of their Heavenly bread, lusted after the flesh of *Egypt*, and were punished with a sudden fire, which devoured many, and was at length quenched by the prayer of *Moses*. Here also *Moses* complaining to God of the great burthen which lay upon him; the *Sanhedrim* of the seventy Elders was instituted. In this place, moreover, God gave the people Quails for a whole moneth on which they feasted, so that a plague arose whilst the flesh was yet betwixt their teeth, and many perished. Hence the place had its name of *Kibroth-Hattaavah*, or the *Sepulchers of concupiscence*.

The Sanhe-  
drim.

Miriam struck  
with Leprosie.

The Spies  
search the  
Land.

7. From *Kibroth-Hattaavah* they removed to *Hazereth*, where *Aaron* and *Miriam* spake against *Moses* about his wife; *Miriam* for that, was struck with Leprosie, and cast out of the Camp; still *Aaron*, confessing their fault, and interceding to *Moses* for her, he prayed to God, and she was healed. She being after seven dayes received again into the Camp, they removed, and came to *Rithma*, near unto *Cades-barnea*, in the same desert of *Paran*. In the fifth moneth of the second year, and the time of Vintage, *Caleb* the son of *Jephunne*, *Joshua* the son of *Nun*, and ten other principal men were hence sent to spy the Land of *Canaan*. After forty dayes they returned, bringing with them of the fruit of the Land. *Caleb* and *Joshua* encouraged the people, but the rest utterly dishonoured them, causing them to despair ever to possess it, because of the strength of the walled Towns and the Gyants which there lived. This raised such a mutiny, that they not only murmured against *Moses*, but spake of making them a Captain, and of returning into *Egypt*, threatening to stone *Caleb* and *Joshua*, who laboured to the contrary. This so highly provoked the Lord, that he threatened suddenly to destroy them, and being prevailed with by *Moses* to mitigate his wrath, denounced that none of twenty years and upwards should ever enter into the promised Land, but wander up and down till their Carkeises fell in the *Wildernesse*; except *Caleb* and *Joshua*. And this sentence was presently executed upon the ten, which had caused the sedition.

SECT. 2.

Chap. 40.

Num. 19.

Num. 1.

Chap. 10.

Chap. 23.

Chap. 11.

Chap. 12.

Chap. 13.

Chap. 14.

G 8. When

## SECT. 2.

The Israelites  
commanded  
to turn back.

8. When they had therefore now arrived at the borders of the promised Land, they were commanded to turn back again into the Wilderness towards the Red Sea. But to make some amends, as they thought, for their late fear and cowardise, they arose in the morning; and, against the expresse command of Moses, went up into the Mountain to fight, where the Amalekites and Canaanites that there inhabited, smote and discomfited them even unto Hormah. At their return they wept before the Lord, but were not heard; and upon this occasion, and the death of those that fell daily in the Desert, Moses, as it's thought, composed the 90 Psalm, wherein complaining of Humane frailty, and shortnesse of life, he signifieth that Man's age was reduced to 70 or 80 years; and so now the third time was it, as it were, cut shorter by the halfe; the two former having been immediately after the Flood; and again, in the time of Phaleg, at the division of the Earth.

9. Thenceforth, from their departure from Cades-Barnea, are numbered 17 more stations in the Wilderness of Paran, wherein they spent 38 years, wandering about, till all the rebellious ones were consumed. The things which hapned in those years, cannot certainly be fixed upon any particular one, Moses herein being silent. Yet it is thought, that the History of the Man that gathered sticks on the Sabbath day, and for it was stoned; of the rebellion of Corah and his Companions, of Aaron's Rod that budded, &c. are to be referred to the latter part of the second year; none of the forty, except the two former and the last of all, being taken notice of by Moses, who recordeth onely the 17 mansions which were taken up, during the 37 years that passed between. The 17th and the last of these (being the 32nd mansion reckoned from the beginning) was at Ezion-gaber, upon the Red Sea in the Country of the Edomites, whence they came to Cades, where they took up their 33 mansion. Hierome and others, account this Cades the same with Cades-barnea the 15th station, making the Israelites to have after so many windings and turnings, in so many years, returned to the same place. But, others finding Cades-barnea in the Southern confines of Canaan, will have this Cades or Kadesh, a place different from it, and near to Ezion-gaber upon the Red Sea, (whence they immediately passed to it) in the Desert of Zin. Whilst they remained in Cades, Miriam died at the age of 126 years, and was there buried. After this the people murmured, because the water which had hitherto followed them from the Rock Rephidim, here failed, being, as somethink, swallowed up of the Red Sea. Hereupon Moses and Aaron were commanded onely to speak to a Rock in that place, to give out water; but Moses, wearied with the untowardnesse of the multitude, uttered some words of impatience and diffidence, and struck the Rock twice, so that the water gushed out in great abundance. Because they did not sanctifie God in the eyes of the people, he was angry with them, and excluded them both from entering into the Land of promise.

10. Moses afterwards sent to the King of Edom, desiring leave to passe quietly through his Country; but, he opposing, he led the people by the borders from Kadesh unto Mount Hor, where Aaron died, some 4 months after his Sister Miriam, at the age of 123; in the 40 year of their wandering in the Wilderness; and Eleazer his Son succeeded him in the Office of High-Priest. In the 6th month of the 40 year, the King of Arad, who inhabited the southern parts of Canaan, came out against them and took many prisoners; whereupon, they vowed, if God would deliver his Country into their hands, to destroy his Cities. Hereunto God assenting, they went up, and prospering, gave to the Country the name of Hormah, which is the same with Anathema, or Cursed. Then journeyed they from mount Hor, to compass about the Land of Edom (against which God had charged them not to fight, because of their Ancestors) and came to the 35th mansion of Tsalmona, which signifieth an image. For here the people murmuring against the Lord and Moses, because of the tediousnesse of the journey, and loathing Manna, were bitten by fiery Serpents sent by God (the Greeks call them Dypsades, and Elian maketh them chiefly to breed in Arabia); so that many perished without

Their Man-  
sions for 37  
years.

Miriam dieth.

Aaron dieth.

The King of  
Arad van-  
quished.

Numb. 33.

chap. 20.

chap. 21.

## SECT. 2.

chap. 33, & 34.

without remedie. At length, Moses by God's appointment erected on a pole a brazen Serpent, upon which as many as looked, were presently made whole.

11. From Tsalmona they came to Punon, thence to Obob, and so to Fie-Abarim, on the borders of Moab, in the Desert thereof, towards the Sun-rising. Here runneth the Brook Zared, towards which, when they passed, God commanded them not to make War upon the Moabites, who had formerly beaten hence Giants called Emmim, as their Brethren the Ammonites had also oured others, known by the name of Zimzumim. Thirty eight years after their removall from Kades-barnea, the Israelites passed Zared, all the carkeises of the rebellious being in that space fallen in the Wilderness, and came to their 39th Mansion of Dkon-Gad. Thence they travelled to Almon-Diblahaim, still in the Desert of Moab, and being to touch upon the borders of the Ammonites, God forbade them to molest these also, because descended of just Lot. He commanded them to passe over the River Arnon; which having done, they removed to their 41 Mansion, in the Mountain of Abarim, over against Nebo.

12. Out of the Wilderness of Kedemoth, Moses sent to Sihon, the Amorite, King of Heshbon, to desire leave peaceably to passe through his Borders; but he refused, and opposed them at Jahaz, where he was discomfited and slain. The Israelites thus became Masters of his Cities and Country, which (as Josephus writeth) lay like an Island between three Rivers; Arnon on the South, Jabock on the North, (which falling into Jordan, Ioseph it's name) and Jordan it self on the West; being on the East, bounded with the Mountains of Arabia. As they proceeded by the way of Basan, Og King thereof, who remained of the Giants called Rephidim, opposing them, was also slain, and his Country wholly subdued, with the destruction of it's Inhabitants; and in like manner all Argob (afterwards called Trachonius) wherein were Sixty Cities. After these Victories, they removed from the Mountains of Abarim, and came to their 42d and last Mansion (taken up by Moses) near Jordan, lying from Jesimoth unto Shittim or Abel-Shittim, in the plains of Moab, which was so called, because the Moabites formerly possessed them, till driven beyond Arnon by the Amorites. Here they continued till they were led thence by Joshua, to passe over Jordan;

13. When Balack King of Moab had heard all that the Israelites did to the Amorites; lest under pretence of passage, they might also seize upon his Kingdom, he consulted with the Midianites, and sent into Mesopotamia for Balaam the Son of Beor, the Soothsayer, to come and curse them; intending afterwards, to fall upon them. Balaam, having the pleasure of God revealed to him, at first feared to come: and though he came at the second message, and laboured all he could to curse them; yet was he over-ruled, and his curse turned into a blessing. But although he had no power to curse, yet he advised the King to that which tended especially to their destruction; To send some of the most beautifull Women into the Camp, to draw them both to Carnall and Spirituall Fornication; the later of which was committed with Baal-peor, the Idoll of the Moabites. God being angry hereat, commanded the principall of the Idolaters to be hanged up before the Sun, and Moses gave order to the Judges, to slay every one his men: A Plague also brake out amongst them, whereby in one day fell 23000 Men; to which those that were hanged and fell by the Sword, being added, advance the number to 24000. Phineas the Son of Eleazar the Priest executing judgment upon Zimri an Israelite, and Cozbi a Midianitish Woman, in the act of Fornication; the Wrath of God was thereby appeased, and the Plague staid.

14. A little after, God commanded Moses the third time to number the people. In this space of 40 years all the Men of War were perished, except Caleb and Joshua, which amounted to the number of 603000. Yet was there by this time such a supply of young ones grown up, that they almost equallized the number of their Fathers; there being found 601730, from 20 years old

G 2 and

Sihon King of  
Heshbon.

Og King of  
Edom.

Balaam.

By his advice  
the people  
drawn to Idol-  
latri.

Moses num-  
bereth the  
people.

Deut. 11.

Numb. 21.

Antiq. lib. 4.  
cap. 5.

Numb. 23.

Numb. 22,  
23, 24. Chap.

1 Cor. 10.  
Numb. 26.



## SECT. 2.

Balaam slain.

The land beyond Jordan divided.

Moses dieth.

The Israelites pass over Jordan into the Land of Canaan.

Jericho destroyed.

and upwards, besides 23000 Levites, reckoned from a moneth old. After this, *Moses*, by Gods command, sent *Phineas* with 12000 Men against the *Midianites*, who had conspired with the *Moabites* against them. He destroyed them, and amongst them *Balaam* the Soothsayer, who, as it appeareth, was not yet returned. The Women they brought away Captives; whereof the Married-ones they slew, and kept the Virgins for themselves. Now were the Lands of *Sihon* King of the *Ammonites*, and *Og* King of *Basban*, divided amongst the *Reubenites*, *Gadites*, and the half Tribe of *Manasse*, on this condition, that they should accompany their bretheren over the River *Jordan*, and assist them in the conquest of the Land of *Canaan*, so long as need should require.

15. The time now drew near, that *Moses* must dye, being not to passe over into the Land of *Canaan*. Therefore in the 11th moneth of the 40th year, he made a repetition of the Law to the people, related God's benefits bestowed on them, and exhorted them to obedience. The Law he wrote in a Book, and commanded it to be read every 7th year, at the Feast of Tabernacles. He also, at the command of God, wrote a Song concerning the future Idolatry, and afflictions of the *Israelites*. *Joshua* being then ordained Captain of the people in his stead, he ascended from the plains of *Moab* to Mount *Nibo*, part of the Mountains of *Abarim*, and whose top is called *Phasga* or *Pisgah*, looking towards *Jericho*. There God having shewn him the Land of *Canaan*, from the one side to the other, he died some 5 months after *Aaron*, being 120 years old (the third part of which time saving one moneth, he spent, as \* *Josephus* writeth, in Government) in the 40 year ending, after he had brought the *Israelites* out of *Egypt*, the year of the World 2548. God buried him in the Valley of *Moab* over against *Beth-Poor*, and no Man knoweth of his Sepulcher to this day. Concerning his body, a contest hapned between *Michael* the Arch-Angel and the Devill; the reason of which is thought to be, because Satan would have had the place thereof known, that the people might be drawn to Idolatry out of reverence to so great a person. The *Israelites* mourned for him 30 dayes, and with his life endeth the *Pentateuch*, or his five Books. The Book of *Joshua* followeth, taking it's beginning from the 41th of the departure out of *Egypt*, and the 2549th year of the World.

16. Whilst the *Israelites* were still mourning for *Moses*, the two Spies were sent over *Jordan*, (as some think) to search the Land. The next morning after their return, the whole Host removed from *Shutim*, and came to *Jordan*, where they lodged that night, and the next day passed over the River. As soon as the feet of the Priests which bare the Ark touched the water, it fell off on both sides and made a way; so that they went over on dry ground, the floods not returning to their place, so long as the Ark remained in the channel. On the 10th day of the first moneth *Nisan*, they arrived in the Land of *Canaan*, and took up their first Mansion at *Gilgal*, not far from *Jericho*. Here, (it's thought the next day) God commanded that all the Males should be circumcised, this Sacrament being omitted ever since they left Mount *Sinai*; because they were in constant expectation of travell: upon which account neither had they kept the Passover since that time. Three dayes they rested, and on the fourth they did eat the Passover, and the day following unleavened bread of the Corn of the Land, at which time Manna ceased, after it had continued 40 years.

17. The first place they fell upon with War, was the City of *Jericho*, which having compassed with the Ark seven dayes, on the seventh the walls fell down of their own accord, the City was taken, and all therein put to the sword, except the Family of *Rahab* (she, having harboured the Spies, had security promised from them) whom *Salmon* of the Tribe of *Judah* married, to whom she bare *Boaz*. All the goods found therein were also accursed, nothing thereof to be made prey: which Law *Achan* transgressing, caused *Israel* to be discomfited at *Ai*, and for that was first stoned, and then burnt, with all that belonged to him. The Kings of *Canaan*, startled at *Joshua's* success,

Chap. 31.

Chap. 32.

Deut. 1, &amp;c.

Deut. ult.

A. M. 2548.

\* Antiq. l. 4.

Joh. 1, 2, 3, 4, Chapters.

A. M. 2549. inuenta. Chap. 5.

Chap. 6.

Chap. 7, 8, 9.

## SECT. 2.

The Sun and Moon stand still.

Joshua vanquisheth the Kings.

The Clerouchia or division of the Land.

successes, combined against him; but the *Gibeonites*, fearing the worst, counterfeited a Message to him as from a far Countrey, and procured safety to themselves and posterity; yet such, as slavery was joyned therewith. *Adonisedek* King of *Jerusalem*, and the Kings of *Hebron*, *Jarmuth*, *Lachish*, and *Deber*, enraged hereat, conspired against them and fell upon their Citie; to the relief whereof *Joshua* being called, raised the siege, and prosecuting his victory against the Kings, at his command the Sun stood still over *Gibeon*, and the Moon in the Valley of *Ajalon*. Upon which strange miraculous accident this is observed, that *Ajalon* being scarce a German mile Westward of *Gibeon*, the Moon, as 'tis probable, was then decreasing, or in the wane, and, these two Luminaries standing still and moving together, the Astronomical account was thereby nothing at all disturbed.

18. *Joshua* drave the five Kings to that streight that they hid themselves in a Cave at *Makkedah*, where after he had utterly vanquished and destroyed their Armies, he took them, and killing them, hanged their Carcases on five Trees till Sun-set: then cast them into the Cave and laid a great heap of bones thereon. After their death he warred with many other petty Kings, as with the King of *Libnah*, *Lachish*, *Gezer*, *Eglon*, *Hebron*, and the rest: there was not one Citie that made peace with *Israel* save the *Hivites*, the inhabitants of *Gibeon*; all others they took in battel, and utterly destroyed, except such as it pleased God to reserve, for a lash and scourge, wherewith to reduce them in times of Rebellion and for their exercise to be as Thorns in their eyes, and Goads in their sides. The *Canaanites* being thus deprived of their ancient habitation by *Joshua* and the *Israelites*; Many of them, as is conjectured, removing to the *Mediterranean-Sea*, (where they were known afterwards by the name of *Phœnicians*) continued not all there, but spread themselves abroad, and sent Colonies far and wide into many places of *Europe*, *Asia*, and *Africk*, concerning which that excellent book of *Bochartus*, called *Canaan*, is to be consulted. That is remarkable, which \* *Procopius* mentioneth concerning Pillars erected in the Province of *Africk*, called *Tingitana*, with a *Phœnician*-inscription to this purpose: *We are they who fled from the face of Joshua the Robber, the son of Nane*. How long this War continued till the division of the Land, is not expressed in Scripture; yet is thence to be gathered. For *Caleb* being forty years old when with others he was sent by *Moses* to search the Land, was at the time of the Division, as he saith, 45 years older. Now the Spies were sent out in the fifth moneth of the second year, after their departure out of *Egypt*, or sooner; so that from that time to the entrance into *Canaan*, followed almost 39 years; (the *Israelites* being forty years in the Wilderness) which being deducted out of the said forty five, six years and some few remain during which the War in *Canaan* must have continued.

19. The *Clerouchia* then, or division of the Land, fell out in the beginning of the seventh year from their entrance into *Canaan*, and in the year of the World 2555 also beginning. It continued about one year, as some gather from the story. First of all, an inheritance was given to two Tribes and an half, viz. the Tribes of *Judah*, *Ephraim*, and the other half Tribe of *Manasse*. Then met the *Israelites* together in *Shiloh*, because seven other Tribes yet remained undisposed of. Therefore certain men were sent from that place to bring a Survey of all the Land, which could not be done in a few dayes; and then after their return the division was perfected; for all which no lesse then the space of a year seemeth necessary. So, there are from the beginning of the World to the end of this Division, 2555 years, containing just so many weeks of years as there are natural dayes in a year, viz. 365. Or if we make a great year consisting of so many years as the solar year consisteth of dayes; then have we six (or seven) such great years. It is further observable, that from the beginning of the World, to the entrance of the *Israelites* into *Canaan* may be reckoned so many Jubilies of years (viz. 52.) as are dayes in the seventh part of a Solar year, one onely excepted. The War having endured six years, they rested on the seventh, wherein the Division was made, as in the Sabatical year.

Chap. 10.

Cosmographus.

Chap. 11. &amp;c.

In Vandelinus.

\* A. M. 2555.

Chap. 14, 15. &amp;c.

Vide Ludov. Capellum in Chronol. Sacra.

20. The

## SECT. 2.

The rise of  
Sabbatical  
years and Ju-  
bilies.

20. The rise therefore, and beginning of the *Sabbatical* year, and of *Jubilies*, some chuse rather to fetch from the first entrance into *Canaan*, then from the division of the Land. For though they began not to sow the Land on this side *Jordan* till after the division; yet before this, had they taken possession of the Country lying beyond the River, which was divided betwixt the two Tribes and the half; whereof, though it must be granted that those which were fit for War, accompanied their brethren over *Jordan*, according to the charge laid upon them by *Moses*, yet is it to be supposed that those which stayed behind were nourished by the fruits of that soyl. For *Manna* had already ceased, and the Corn which the other reaped of the Enemies sowing being but gotten by degrees, according as they Conquered the Country, could scarce maintain them without sending for supplies to those that stayed beyond the River. When they had ended the division, the Children of *Israel* gave for an inheritance to *Joshua* that which he asked, even *Timneth Serah* in Mount *Ephraim*, where he built a Citie, and dwelt therein. The Tabernacle of the Congregation was set up at *Shiloh* by the whole Assembly. As for the *Levites* they had no inheritance assigned them, but (the Lord being their inheritance) they were to live of Tythes & Offerings. Onely 48 Cities on both sides of *Jordan* were set apart for them to dwell in, which were also to be Cities of refuge, whither those that were guilty of casual homicide might fly from the avenger of blood, and there remain in security till the death of the High-Priest. *Joshua* being very old at the division, is by the Jews said to have lived, past the first Sabbatical year, but to have died before the next arrived. Some give to his government twenty years, and some above; but others think he died, not long after the division. There is no certainty thereof from Scripture; but that he lived a hundred and ten years is expressly recorded.

*Joshua* dieth.

The *Israelites*  
fall to idola-  
try.

21. After *Joshua* and that generation were dead, which had seen the wonders of the Lord, another arose after them that knew not the Lord, nor the works he had done; so that the Children of *Israel* followed other gods, serving *Baal* and *Asheroth*. For this cause the anger of the Lord was hot against *Israel*, and he delivered them into the hands of spoilers which spoiled them. He sold them into the hands of their Enemies round about, inasmuch that they could not stand before them; but whithersoever they went out, the hand of the Lord was against them for evil, as he had said and sworn. Nevertheless he raised them up Judges to deliver them out of the hands of those that spoiled them; and yet they would not hearken to their Judges, but went a whoring after other gods, and bowed themselves unto them. Hereupon the Lord resolved not to drive out thenceforth any Nations before them, which *Joshua* left when he died, that by them he might prove *Israel* whether they would keep his way and to teach them War. There were left five Lords of the *Philistines* with all the *Canaanites*, the *Sidonians* and *Hivites* that dwelt in Mount *Lebanon*, from Mount *Baal Hermon*, unto the entering of *Hamath*. The Children of *Israel* dwelt amongst the *Canaanites*, *Hittites*, *Ammorites*, *Perizzites*, *Hivites*, and *Jebusites*; they took their daughters to be their wives, gave their daughters to their sons, and served their gods.

*Cushan* oppres-  
seth them.

22. For this, the anger of the Lord was hot against *Israel*, and he sold them to the hand of *Cushan-rishaim* King of *Mesopotamia*. How long this was after the division, the Scripture expresseth not. We read that he oppressed them eight years, but some think it should be read in the eighth year, viz. after the division, or eighth years, because this servitude ended in the eight. But that it began not immediately after the division, neither after the death of *Joshua*, seemeth evident; because the *Israelites* served the Lord as long as that Generation lasted, which had seen his wonders; which cannot be conceived extinct at the same time with him. Others think a longer time then seven years to have passed betwixt the division and this oppression, assigning fourteen years to the government of *Joshua* after the division, then ten more to the government of the Elders after his death, who might very well live longer then so; none that were twenty years old when they came out of

*Josh. 18.*

*Chap. 20.*

*Chap. 24. v. 29.*

*Judge 11. 3.*

*Chap. 3.*

*Vers. 8.*

*Lud. Cappel-  
lus.*

*Jacobus Cap-  
pellus.*

## SECT. 2.

*Judg. 20.*

*Egypt* having entred *Canaan* except *Joshua* and *Caleb*. After that, as many years they attribute to an Anarchy, in the sixth year of which they will have the Civil War to have broken out betwixt *Benjamin* and the rest of the Tribes, wherein all the *Benjaminites* except 600 were slain. Four years after this War, and at the end of the 10th. *Cushan* the King of *Mesopotamia* afflicted *Israel* for its idolatry eight years. But concerning this there is no certainty.

*Othniel* deli-  
vereth them.

*Eglon* oppres-  
seth them.  
Delivered by  
*Ehud*.

23. At the end of the eight years, God stirred up for a deliverer, *Othniel* *Judg. Chap. 3.* of the Tribe of *Judah*, Nephew to *Caleb* by his younger brother *Kenez*, and his son-in-law. Into his hands the Lord delivered *Cushan*, and the Land had rest fourty years. After his death (which is set to the end of these fourty years) *Israel* turned again to idolatry, and the Lord delivered them up to *Eglon*, King of *Moab* for eighteen years. At the end of this term he stirred up *Ehud* a left-handed man of the Tribe of *Benjamin*, who under colour of a message stabbed *Eglon* into the belly, and gathering the *Israelites* together on Mount *Ephraim*, slew 10000 of the *Moabites*, all men of War. After this, the Land is said to have rested 80 years, the words being taken literally; but then some think none of the years of the Tyrants, or Oppressors, are to be counted severally, and by themselves, but to be included herein as other years after mentioned; else the account will swell much larger then the whole number of years, which the Scripture seemeth to allow of. If we take in all the years ascribed to the Tyrants, then they will have it an Enallage (frequent in all Languages) and instead of 80. *Ehud* governed, or the Land rested under him onely eight years; but others think they have as much reason to take them literally.

*Shamgar* judg-  
eth *Israel*.

*Jabin* oppres-  
seth them.  
And the *Phi-  
listines*.

*Deborah* and  
*Barak* deliver  
them.

24. After *Ehud*, *Shamgar* the son of *Anath* judged *Israel*, but no men-  
tion is made of any time. It followeth, when *Ehud* was dead the Children of *Israel* did evil again in the sight of the Lord, and he sold them into the hand of *Jabin*, King of *Canaan*, whose General was *Sisera*, and who had 900 Chariots of iron: he mightily oppressed them twenty years. It is most probable that in this time the Government of *Shamgar* was included, (he slew with an Oxe-goad 600 of the *Philistines*, who at this time might also afflict *Israel*): or else it being but short might fall betwixt *Ehud*'s death, and the oppression of *Jabin*; there being probability enough that some time passed after his death, before the *Israelites* so highly provoked the Lord as to be given up into *Jabin*'s hands. At the end of these twenty years *Deborah*, the wife of *Lapidoth* (judging *Israel* at this time in Mount *Ephraim*) moved by God sent for *Barak*, the son of *Abinoam* from *Kadesh-Naphtali*, and made him Captain. He, with 10000 men of *Zebulon* and *Naphtali*, overthrew *Sisera*, who flying on his feet to the Tent of *Heber* the *Kenite* (descended of *Jethro*, father-in-law to *Moses*) *Jael* his wife killed him by a Nail driven into his Temples as he lay asleep. So the Land rested under *Deborah* fourty years as we read it, \* another interpreting it in the 40th year, viz. after the \* *Usher*. rest restored to it by *Ehud*.

The *Midia-  
nites* oppres-  
seth them.

*Gideon* deli-  
vereth them.

25. This time expired, and the *Israelites* relapsing to idolatry, God gave them up into the hands of the *Midianites*, and other people of the East, which afflicted them seven years, destroying their Corn, driving away their Cattel, and making havock of all things. This made them cry to the Lord, who first reproved them by a Prophet; and afterwards, by an Angel stirred up *Gideon*, the son of *Joash*, of the Tribe of *Manasse*, to deliver them. He having pulled down the Altar of *Baal*, and burnt his grove, out of 23000 men chose 300. with which number marching against the *Midianites*, he so affrighted them by a stratagem of *Lamps* and *Pitchers*, that he routed their whole Army. The *Ephraimites* took *Oreb* and *Zeeb*: *Gideon* following the Chace beyond *Jordan* wholly discomfited them, and took, and slew two Kings of the *Midianites*; *Zabab* and *Zalmanna*. After so great a victory the *Israelites* offered him the Kingdom; but he refused it, and asked onely the earings of the prey, wherewith he made an Ephod which afterwards gave occasion to idolatry (all *Israel* going a whoring after it) and became a snare to him and his

*Chap. 3.*

SECT. 2. his house. But thus *Midian* being subdued, the Country was in quietness under *Gideon* 40 years, as most read it; but, as others, was quiet in the 40th year; & 2. after quietness restored to it by *Deborah* and *Barak*.

Abimelech his Son maketh himself King. 26. Though *Gideon* refused the Sovereignty, yet *Abimelech* his base Son thinking such a thing was not to be neglected, dealt with the *Sichemites*, of whose City his Mother was native, to make him King: and by their help he seized on the Kingdom, having slain his Seventy Brethren upon one stone, *Jotham* the youngest only escaping. The *Israelites*, after *Gideon's* death, had again turned after Idols, and therefore God not only subjected them to the Dominion of this most wicked of all parricides, but to intestine dissensions, by reason of him. For after he had tyrannized three years, *Gaal* with the *Sichemites* conspired against him, which having timely discovered, he destroyed them and their City (sowing it with Salt) and burnt the house of their god *Berith*, with a thousand Men and Women which had fled to it. Then went he against *Thebez*, and took it, the Inhabitants whereof retired for defence into a strong Tower. Here, as he was about to set fire to the door, a Woman cast down a piece of a Mill-stone upon his head, and so brake his skull, that he caused his Armour-bearer to kill him, lest it should be said, that he died by the hands of a Woman. After his death, *Toiah*, the Son of *Phab*, the Son of *Dodo*, a Man of *Issachar*, that dwelt at *Samir* in Mount *Ephraim*, arose to defend *Israel*, and judged it 23 years. After him *Jair* a *Gileadite* 22 years, thought to be defended of that *Jair*, who took the Towns of *Argob*, and called them after himself *Hanoth-Jair*; as his thirty Sons in like manner, after that example, named so many Cities, which they possessed in the Land of *Gilead*.

Talab judgeth Israel. 27. *Jair* being dead, the *Israelites* returned to their evil courses, serving *Balaam*, *Asherah*, the gods of the *Moabites*, *Ammonites*, and the *Philistines*; for which God sold them into the hands of the *Philistines* and *Ammonites*. It is written, *And that year they oppressed the Children of Israel*, 18 years all that were on the other side Jordan, in the Land of the *Amorites*, which is in *Gilead*. Moreover, the *Ammonites* passed over Jordan, to fight also against *Judah* and *Benjamin*, and the house of *Ephraim*; so that all *Israel* was sore distressed. Some will have this oppression but to begin at the death of *Jair*; others think, they had oppressed *Israel* 18 years before, and now passed over the River, to afflict the other Tribes. The *Israelites* cried to God, and being reproved, put away their Idols: hereupon, the *Ammonites* being got together in *Gilead*, and the *Israelites* assembled in *Mizpah* in the same Country, *Jephthah* the Son of *Gilead*, begotten on an Harlot, was sent for by the *Gileadites* and made Captain, being a mighty Man of valour: He first sent to expostulate with the King of *Ammon*, and to demand the cause of the War. He answered, it was because *Israel* took away his Land, when they came out of *Egypt*, from *Arnon* unto *Jabbock*, and unto *Jordan*; of which he required restitution. *Jephthah* replied, that in their journey from *Egypt*, they sent to the Kings of *Edom* and *Moab*, to desire passage through their Coasts; but this being denied, they turned aside through the Wilderness, and compassed about the Lands of *Edom* and *Moab*, not coming within the borders of *Moab*, and so at length came and pitched on the other side of *Arnon*, which was the limit of *Moab's* Coasts; Then, that *Sihon* King of the *Ammonites* denying them passage, and fighting against them, the Lord God of *Israel* delivered him into their hands: and they possessed the Land of the *Amorites* from *Arnon* unto *Jabbock*, and from the Wilderness unto *Jordan*.

28. Seeing the God of *Israel* had dispossessed the *Amorites*, he demanded a reward, why he should possess that Country; and whether he was any thing better than *Balack* the Son of *Zippor*, King of *Moab*, who never strove nor fought against *Israel*. Lastly, he asked him, why he recovered not the Land all the 200 years which the Children of *Israel* had enjoyed it, and appealed to God for righteous judgement betwixt them. These 200 years, if they be reckoned exactly; the years of the oppressions, and of the Judges, must all along

SECT. 2. along be counted in length, without including the one in the other; but if this be done, still many more than 300 will be found, and 100 years more will arise in the account of time, from the coming out of *Egypt* to the building of the Temple, than the Scripture in another place alloweth of. Some say, if so many years really passed, betwixt the last year of *Moses*, save one, and this time of *Jephthah*, as those successions do make; 400 years was rather to have been mentioned, seeing the number exceeded that of 300; and therefore accounting the other way short of 300, they allege, that it is usual, when a full or round number is chosen, rather to make use of that which most favoureth their cause; and therefore *Jephthah* meant by 300, about, or almost so many. On the contrary, others believe, that the Scripture doth not suffer them to omit the years of Servitude, and contain them under those of the Judges, which they suppose clearly appeareth out of those words before mentioned, which in general describe the condition of the *Israelites*, as successively guilty of Idolatry, then punished, and delivered; after which, falling into an Anarchy at the death of their deliverer, they again relapsed into the same sin. They will have also the particular accounts of these things in Scripture, by their order and distinction, to hold out no less unto us.

Jephthah overthrown the Ammonites.

29. But the King of the *Ammonites* not hearkening to *Jephthah*, was overthrown with a very great slaughter. *Jephthah* at his going forth, vowed, if the Lord would deliver the enemy into his hands, that whatsoever came first out of his house to meet him at his return, should surely be the Lord's, and he would offer it for a burnt offering. It happened that his only Daughter came out to meet him with timbrels and dances; and after she had bewailed her Virginity, he is said to have done so her according to his vow. Some observe that for *And* in the place may be read *Or*, as if, he would offer the thing, if it were to be offered, or, however to consecrate it to the Lord. And their opinion seemeth most probable, who hold she was not offered up as a burnt-offering, but consecrated to God by perpetual virginity and austerity of life, being altogether separated from Humane society, except four days in a year, for a little refreshment; it being said, that he executed his Vow upon her, for that he did not redeem her with money, according to the Law mentioned in *Exodus* but left her consecrated to God in an unmarried state, lest she should seem to be another's and not the Lord's. *Jephthah*, after this, warred against the *Ephraimites*, who spake against, and threatened him and his house. He cut off 42000 Men, all being slain in their passage over *Jordan*, that could not pronounce *Shiboleth*. Having judged *Israel* six years he died, and was buried in *Gilead*.

Abdon, Elon, Abdon Judges. The Philistines vexed Israel.

Sampson.

30. After *Jephthah* arose *Ibsan* of *Bethlehem*, and judged *Israel* seven years, then *Elon* a *Zebulonite* 10, and *Abdon* the Son of *Hillel* a *Pirathonite*, after him eight years. Now the *Philistines* again vexed *Israel* 40 years. Seeing neither of these three are said to have delivered the Land, some think those 40 years, to have included some of their Government. There are that fetch the beginning of them from the 4th year of *Ibsan*, and end them at the death of *Sampson*, whom they will have the immediate Successor of *Abdon*. Of those that are for the lengthning out of the time, some think they are to be reckoned from the death of *Abdon*, and end at the beginning of *Sampson's* Government, which others again infer, by good arguments, to be included in them, or else 20 of them must fall in with the time of *Eli*; the Seventy Interpreters accordingly, giving to *Eli* not 40 years as the Hebrew Copies, but only 20. Still there are not wanting, who think *Eli* to have succeeded *Abdon*, and *Sampson's* 20 years (who was yet unborn) to have been included in his 40. They fetch the rise of the 40 years of the oppression from 17 years before the beginning of *Eli*, and end them so many after his death. *Sampson* was a *Nazarite* from his Mother's womb, no Razor coming on his head, and keeping himself from wine and strong drink all his time. Hence, as his admirable strength is said to have lain in his hair, so others have ascribed it to his abstinence, as if it had not proceeded from the especial

SECT. 2.

\* Judg. 11. 18.

Chap. ult.

Judg. 12.

Usher.

H

Providence

SECT. 2. Providence and Power of God. He was the *Hercules* of the *Israelites*, really performing such things as the *Greeks* would scarce attribute to their's, on whom yet they heaped those things that were done by many. He afflicted the *Philistines* much in his life, but much more at his death, by throwing down the house of *Dagon* upon the chief of them, being therein assembled to make themselves sport with so great an Adversary, whom having got into their power, they had deprived of his fight.

Eli. 31. Had *Eli* preceded *Sampson*, he would have been reckoned amongst his predecessors; according to generall apprehension. The High-Priesthood which hitherto had continued in the Family of *Eliazar* for five Generations, (*viz.* in himself, *Phineas*, *Abisua*, *Bukki*, and *Uzzi*, according to *Josephus*) was in *Eli* translated to that of *Ithamar* another of *Aaron's* Sons. The Sons of *Eli* being very leud, grievously abused their power, and he used not his authority in correcting them, whereby he so far incurred God's displeasure, that he threatened to destroy his house, as it came to passe. The *Israelites*, towards the end of his 40 years, fought with the *Philistines*; but were worsted, and lost 4000 Men. To better their successe, they then sent for the Ark of God from *Shiloh*, promising to themselves victory in it's presence; but of the next Battell the issue was the same. *Hophni* and *Phineas* the Sons of *Eli* were slain, and the Ark taken. This news being brought to *Eli*, upon mention of the captivity of the Ark, he fell backward from a fear, and being 98 years old his neck brake. The *Philistines* placed the Ark in the house of their god *Dagon*, which Idol fell down twice before it; and the multitude was so plagued with the Hemorrhoids, that they were glad to return it back with presents.

Samuel. 32. To *Eli* succeeded *Samuel*, both a Levite and a Prophet, to whose Government, from the division of the Land, passed 450 years, according to St. Paul, as the text of (a) *Luke* now hath it. But to this place another in the first Book of the (b) *Kings*, expressly seemeth to contradict, which maketh the foundation of the Temple to be laid in the 480th year after the *Israelites* departure out of *Egypt*. This later number exceedeth the other but by 30. although in it must be comprehended, besides what is in the former, the 40 years of their stay in the Wilderness, the six years which passed before the division, the time of *Samuel's* Government, the reigns of *Saul* and *David*, with the three years of *Solomon*, that passed before the building of the Temple; all which make up the number of 129; so that the littlerall senses of these two cannot stand together: Some go about to reconcile them by drawing down the beginning of the 480 years, lower than the Text will bear; and by removing that of the 450, higher than is convenient: to whom others joyn, in attempting the reconciliation both of those numbers, and clearing up the matter concerning the 300 years ascribed by *Jephthah*, to the possession of the Land of the *Amorites* before mentioned. But there are, who find a necessity of confessing a mistake, either in the one or other Copie of these places. These are divided in their opinions, one party thinking they have better reason to stick to the place of the *Kings*, which is not so liable to any corruption (through the great care of the *Jews*) as the *Greek* text, hath that, by reason of the similitude of words, might well be changed from one to another, through the ignorance of transcribers. Another will have the 450 years to belong to the division of the Land, and not to the Judges: all which have been mistaken through the wrong reading of the words.

33. Others, both of ancient and modern times, are very confident, that, all considered, the fault must fall upon that place of the *Kings*, which giveth but 480 years, to all that time that passed from the departure out of *Egypt* to the founding of the Temple; and that, instead of 480, 580 was most anciently written. For when any one place disagreeeth with the whole series of History, clearly held out elsewhere, it is rather to be corrected in its number (which may easily be altered by a mistake of one word) than many places wrested to a compliance with it. Now all the times of the *Anarchies*, *liberty*, *War*, and *servitude*, of the *Israelites* laid together, without confusion of years (for

(for which there is no ground at all), clearly hold out a hundred years more than this place of the *Kings*; and so exactly from the several particulars make it up, that it seemeth to take away all doubt. From the departure out of *Egypt* to *Moses* his death, intervened forty years; thence to the beginning of *Othniel* 34. whereof 26 are given to the Government of *Jahna* and the Elders, and eight to the servitude under *Cushan*. Then *Othniel* governed forty years, the oppression of the *Moabites* followed for eighteen. *Abud* ruled 80. The *Canaanites* Tyrannized 20. *Deborah* and *Barak* governed 40. the *Midianites* oppressed the *Israelites* 7. thence *Gideon* judged *Israel* 40. *Abimelech* reigned 3. *Tolab* 23. *Jair* 22. and then the *Ammonites* oppressed *Israel* 18. all which numbers amount to 385 years. After this *Jephthah* judged *Israel* 6 years, *Ibzan* 7. *Elon* 10. *Abdon* 8. the *Philistines* vexed *Israel* 40. and *Heili* ruled 40. which make up the summe of 111 years. Then *Samuel* and *Saul* governed 40 years (as will be seen), *David* also 40. and *Solomon* 3. before the foundation of the Temple was laid, which make up 83 years. Now all these numbers laid together amount exactly to 579 years, to which if the fourth year of *Solomon* be added wherein the Temple was founded, there ariseth the full number of 580. They perceive therefore it was not without reason that so many of the Ancients differed from that place of the *Kings*, which might also be lyable enough to the carelesse of Scribes. According to this account, Students in History and Chronology are to take notice that a hundred years are to be added to the more ordinary *Era* of the World.

34. In the dayes of *Samuel*, the *Philistines* grievously afflicted *Israel*, till such time as by his means, the people being turned to the Lord cast off their idols, and solemnly repented at *Mizpah*: Hereat God was pleased to spare them, and thundring upon the *Philistines*, when they were ready to joyn battle, discomfited them utterly, & so terrified them that they forsook the Cities formerly seized on, leaving onely one Garrison in the Countrey; and no more afflicted the Children of *Israel* so long as *Samuel* had the chief power in his hands. When he grew old he made his sons Judges over the Land; who perverting Justice by bribery, the people thence gladly took occasion to desire a King, that in government they might be conformable to other Nations. Their most urgent reasons were, for that the *Philistines* yet kept an Hold in their Countrey, and *Nabab* the King of the *Ammonites* threatened them with War; at which they were so affrighted that neither trusting in God's providence (who hitherto had been their King, and avenger) nor to the Justice and prudence of *Samuel*, would they be satisfied, or put off without a King. God therefore gave unto them *Saul* the son of *Kish* of the Tribe of *Benjamin*.

35. In the book of *Samuel* no certain years are either given to his own government, or to that of *Saul*, but it seemeth probable from Scripture that he governed about twenty years alone, from the death of *Eli* to the election of *Saul*. For it is said, that the Ark of God abode in *Kiriath-jearim* twenty years; and that, the time being long, all the house of *Israel* lamented before the Lord at *Mizpah*; which passages are joyned unto the serious exhortation of *Samuel* to move them to repentance. So then the end of twenty years, the exhortation, their repentance hereupon, and their moving for a King, with good reason seem to have been about the same time; so that 20. or 21 years and an half are to be given to his government, which began at *Eli's* death. Now *Heli* died when the Ark was taken; which staying seven moneths in the Land of the *Philistines* was then sent away and came to *Bethshemesh*, where the inhabitants losing 50610 of their number, for their curiosity of looking into it, sent Messengers to those of *Kiriath-jearim* to fetch it unto them, with whom it remained twenty years; and these years the *Israelites* counted long.

36. *Saul* was first by *Samuel* privately anointed, and afterwards publicly declared King at *Mizpah*. Not long after (a moneth it's thought) *Jabesh-Gilead* was besieged by *Nabab*, who refused to grant peace to the inhabitants

## SECT. 2.

Raiseth the  
siege at Ja-  
besh-Gilead.

tants upon any other terms than to put out all their right eyes, and lay this for a reproach upon *Israel*. They desired truce but for seven days; in which space, if no relief came they promised to come out to him. But *Saul*, hearing of their distress, got together an Army of 30000 of *Israel*, and 30000 of *Judah*, with which he easily overthrew the *Ammonites*, and raised the siege. Hereupon, at the procurement of *Samuel*, the people again met at *Gilgall*, where the Kingdom was established, and confirmed unto *Saul*: at which time *Samuel*, upbraiding them with their unthankfulness to God, and him, terrified them with Thunder and rain in Wheat Harvest; and again comforted them in the mercy of God. *Saul* having reigned two years, the *Philistins* again afflicted the Land, with whom he had fore War all the days of his life. He fought against his Enemies round about; against *Moab*, the Children of *Ammon*, *Edom*, and the Kings of *Zobah*: he smote the *Amalekites*, and delivered his people out of the hands of them that spoiled them. Yet, his heart not being upright before the Lord, God chose him out a man after his own heart, and rejected him and his family. This man was *David*, the youngest son of *Jesse*, of *Bethlehem-Judah*, whom *Samuel* was sent to anoint some years before his own death, and more before that of *Saul*. In this space, *Saul* persecuted him from place to place; yet such ardent affection was there betwixt *Jonathan* his son and *David*, that the love of a Kingdom it self, joyned with the deep displeasure of a father, was nothing able to interrupt it.

Chap. 13. &c.

David anointed.

37. The Apostle *Paul* declareth; that, after God had destroyed seven Nations in the Land of Canaan, and divided their Lands to them by Lot, he gave unto them Judges for the space of 150 years, untill *Samuel* the Prophet. And after ward, they desired a King, and God gave them *Saul*, the son of *Kis*, a man of the Tribe of Benjamin, by the space of forty years. Some take the words as giving to many years to his reign alone; but by general consent the government of *Samuel* is to be included in them. *Samuel* seemeth to have died not long before *Saul* (two years it's supposed), at such time as *David* was provoked by the churlishness of *Nabal*; and is said to have judged *Israel* all the days of his life. Hence is it certain that *Saul* reigned not alone all those forty years, and probable that *Samuel* having governed alone for one half of them, had still an hand in the publick affairs of the Nation. At length *Saul* was overthrown in battel by the *Philistins*, and lost his three sons, *Jonathan*, *Abinadab*, and *Melchishua*. And he himself being fore wounded, after he could not prevail with his Armour-bearer to kill him, fell upon his own sword and died. His son *Ishbosheth*, by the means of *Abner* Captain of his Host, succeeded him at the Age of forty years; but the Tribe of *Judah* anointed *David*, King over them in *Hebron*, who had formerly been consecrated to this Office by *Samuel*: and he reigned over that Tribe alone, seven years and six moneths. *Ishbosheth* is said to have reigned over *Israel* two years; which is to be interpreted, peaceably, and not disturbed by War; as his father is said to have reigned one year, viz. untroubled by the *Philistins*.

Acts 13. 21.

1 Sam. 25.

Verf. 55.

Chap. 31. and  
1 Chron. 10.

2 Sam. 2. 3.  
&c.

A.M. 2944.

1 Sam. 13. 1.

Saul's three  
sons slain, and  
he killeth  
himself.  
*Ishbosheth* suc-  
ceedeth him.

*Ishbosheth* slain  
after seven  
years.

38. For, after these two years were expired, a long War ensued betwixt *David* and him; his side growing weaker and weaker, as *David's* grew stronger and stronger: *David* to strengthen himself married *Maacha*, the daughter of *Talmai*, King of *Geshur*, on which he begat *Absalom* and *Tamar*. At length *Abner* conceiving a displeasure against *Ishbosheth*, because he had reproved him for meddling with his father's Concubine, revolted to *David*, and laboured to transfer the Kingdom to him; but coming to visit him about this affair, he was treacherously slain by *Joab*, *David's* General, and Nephew by his sister *Zerviah*. All being out of order now in *Israel*; *Baanah* and *Rechab* two *Benjamites*, the servants of *Ishbosheth*, slew their Lord as he slept in his Chamber, and brought his head unto *David*. He rewarded them with death, and was by the Captains, and all the Elders of the Tribes, anointed the third time King at *Hebron*, over all *Israel*; which government he held 33 years. A little after this installment he took *Jerusalem* from the *Jebusites*, and made it the

1 Chron. 12.

2 Sam. 5. 6, 7.  
&c.

seat

## SECT. 2.

1 Chron. 11. &c.

seat of his Kingdom; himself building and fortifying the Citie of *Sion*, and *Joab* repairing the rest. Then twice he overthrew the *Philistins* in *Rephidim*, who came up against him after they heard he was made King. The Ark of God he removed from *Kiriath-Jearim*, to the house of *Obed-Edom* the *Gittite*, and thence after three moneths into *Sion*. He purposed to build God an house, but was forbidden (because a man of blood) that work, which was to be reserved for *Solomon*. For besides his Wars in his younger time; all the space, betwixt this and the birth of *Solomon*, seemeth employed in Wars; wherein he overcame the *Philistins*, *Amalekites*, *Moabites*, *Ammonites*, *Idumeans*, and *Syrians*. The Borders of his Empire he very much enlarged, not onely from *Shihor of Egypt* to the entering in of *Hamath*, but also as far as *Euphrates*, the utmost limits promised by God unto *Abraham*; and onely possessed by him, and his son and Successor *Solomon*.

David's adul-  
tery and mur-  
der.

Punished.

Amnon ravish-  
eth *Tamar*.

*Absalom's* rebel-  
leth.

The conspira-  
cy of *Sheba*.

David num-  
breth the peo-  
ple.

Maketh *Solo-  
mon* King.  
Dieth.

*Solomon* put-  
teth *Adoniah*  
and others to  
death.

39. *Solomon* was the second son begotten on *Bathsheba*, the wife of *Uriah* the *Hittite*; with which woman *David* first committed Adultery, and then for a cover added to it the Murder of her husband. After he had been reproved by *Nathan* the Prophet he repented, and wrote the 51 Psalm upon this occasion. Yet the Infant conceived in Adultery, died as soon as it was born; and, though *Solomon* was born the next year (at it's thought), yet this sin escaped not without a further punishment. For, within awhile, his eldest son *Amnon* ravished his half-sister *Tamar*, and for that was killed by *Absalom*. Some years after, *Absalom* by the advice and policy of *Achishophel* seized upon the Kingdom. *David* hereupon fled to God as his Rock of refuge, and composed the 3d. and the 55th Psalms: then opposing force to force, overthrew *Absalom* in the Wood of *Ephraim* by *Joab* his General, who thrust the young man through with a Dart as he hung in an Oak, contrary to *David's* order, who had charged all the Captains to deal gently with him for his sake. This Rebellion was followed by a new sedition raised amongst the *Israelites*, by one *Sheba* upon this occasion; because they had not the chief hand above the Tribe of *Judah*, in bringing back the King to his house; but this was happily suppressed, after *Joab* had procured the inhabitants of *Abel* to cut off *Sheba's* head.

1 Sam. 11. 12,  
13.

A.M. 2957.  
*David's* 14.

Chap. 15. 16,  
17, 18.

Chap. 19. 20.

40. After these things, several battels ensued with the *Philistins*, in one of which (the last wherein he was present) *David* hardly escaped the hands of *Ishbi-benob*, one of the sons of the Giant; being rescued by *Abishai* his Nephew, who slew the *Philistin*. Not (c) long after, tempted by Satan and his own ambition, he numbred the people: for which God being angry proposed to him three sorts of punishments, viz. *Famine*, *Sword*, or *Pestilence*; as to which, he chose rather to fall into the hands of God than of man. Then God sent a Plague, whereby perished in one day 70000 men; but, as the Angel was also about to destroy *Jerusalem* he was commanded to desist. *David* at length having arrived at seventy years of Age, was so decayed and spent by his many labours and troubles, that he could not receive any heat from Cloaths, and therefore a young maid, one *Abisag*, a *Shunammite* was chosen out, to lye in his bosom. *Adoniah* his son taking advantage at this infirmity, by the assistance of *Joab* the General, and *Abiathar* the Priest, seized upon the Kingdom. When he had notice thereof, according to the prediction of God, and his promise unto *Bathsheba*, he established *Solomon* in his Throne, and having given him a charge, died about six moneths after, when he had reigned over *Judah* alone in *Hebron* seven years and six moneths, and in *Jerusalem* over all *Israel* and *Judah* 33 years; in the year of the World (according to the vulgar way of reckoning without taking in the 100 years formerly mentioned in the History of the Judges) A.M. 2985.

2 Sam. 21.  
1 Chron. 20.

(c) 2 Sam. 24.

1 Chron. 20. 7.

1 Kings 1.

1 Chron. 28. 29.

A.M. 2985.

41. *David* being dead and *Solomon* established in the Kingdom, *Adonijah* asked *Abisag* the *Shunammite* to wife, and for that was put to death, as affecting the Sovereignty. *Abiathar* was removed from the Priesthood, and *Zadok*, of the Posterity of *Phinehas*, placed in his room, as had been foretold by God, against the house of *Eli*, from which the Priesthood now returned;

1 Kings 2.



## SECT. 2.

ned; *Joab* for fear fled to the horns of the Altar, and there was slain by *Benaiah*, who was made Generall in his stead. *Simei*, who had cursed *David* when he fled from *Abfalon*, was commanded to build him an house in *Jerusalem*, and not to stir thence beyond the Brook *Kidron* upon pain of death; which he after two years suffered, having broken the order. *Solomon* within a year after his Father's death, married the Daughter of *Pharaoh*; after which, offering 1000 burnt-offerings at *Gibeon*, where the Tabernacle then rested, God appeared to him in a dream, and offered him whatsoever he would ask. He asked onely wisdom to govern his people, and neither riches nor honour; with which God was so well pleased, that he made him to excell therein all meer men, and accumulated also the other upon him.

Chap. 3.

42. Having all things in a readinesse for building an house to the Lord, (so: which *David* his Father had made large provisions) *Vaphres* King of *Egypt* supplying him with 80000 Men, and *Hiram* King of *Tyre* with as many, besides an Architect named *Hypero* (whose Mother was an *Israelitish* Woman, of the Tribe of *Judah*); he laid the foundation of the Temple in the 4<sup>th</sup> year of his reign, and the second day of the second moneth *Zif*. The Structure being in building 7 years, the work began (according to their computation, who by reckoning the years of the Judges, and the oppressions severally, add 100 years to the *Era* of the World) in the 3089<sup>th</sup> year from the Creation entering, was dedicated in the 3095<sup>th</sup> ending, and in the 587<sup>th</sup> year after the departure out of *Egypt*, also ending; from which if we substract those 40 they lived in the Wilderness, then 547 years will be found to have passed from the Originall of Jubilies to the Dedication of the Temple, which make up eleven Jubilies, and eight years. So the service therein began in the eighth year of the twelfth Jubilie, or in the first year of the second week of the twelfth, which seemeth agreeable to the Ceremoniall Law, wherein most things consist in the number of 7, and are reckoned by Sabbaticall years and Jubilies. And if we divide 3095 by 7, we shall find the Temple dedicated in the first year of the 442<sup>d</sup> week from the Creation, almost twelve intire Jubilies after the Service thereof had been first appointed on Mount *Sinai*.

Chap. 6.  
Clemens  
Stromat. lib. 4.Ludov. Cap-  
pellus.The building  
of the Tem-  
ple.Solomon's  
Navy.

43. About the same time *Solomon* built a Navie at *Ezion-gaber*, on the shoar of the *Red Sea*, in the Land of *Edom*. This furnishing with his own Subjects and the *Tyrians* (then, by reason of the situation of their Countrey, the best Sailors in the World) sent to him by *Hiram*, he dispatched to *Ophir*, once in three years, for gold and other marchandise, whence they brought him 420 talents. The Countrey of *Edom*, *David* had formerly subdued, and thence *Solomon* his Son had the priviledge of building his Ships there. *Aleth* or *Eloth*, called by other Writers *Alana* and *Alannum*, was then a famous City, seated upon the *Arabian Gulf*, to part whereof, lying about it, it gave appellation. As *Ezion-gaber* was the *Arcenall* for building the Navie; so this City seemeth to have been the *Emporium* or *Martown*: and, as long as the *Edomites* continued under the obedience of the Kingdom of *Judah*, it is probable, that thence Marchandise was transported to *Peira*, the chief City of *Arabia*, and so to *Jerusalem*. But when the *Edomites* revolted (which happened after the death of *Jehosaphat*) the course was altered from *Jerusalem* to *Rhincolura*, a City in *Phanicia* upon *Egypt*; and there continued long, till such time as the *Ptolomies* with much ado, brought down the trade to *Alexandria*. To effect this, they made two Ports upon the borders, whereof the one bare the name of *Berenice*, and is mistaken by *Josephus* for *Ezion-gaber*, that lying at a great distance both from this and *Elath*, which seemeth to be the same place, mentioned in (d) *Strabo*, by the name of \* *Albus Pagus*.

(d) *Strabo*-  
nem lege  
lib. 16. p. 780.  
D. & 781.  
A. B. &c.  
Vide Fullerum  
in miscellaneis.

44. As this Navigation of the *Tyrians* gave a beginning to their Fame in that Art; so from it (as is probably conceived) came the name of the *Red Sea*, or that of *Edom*, first to be famous in other Countries. Their Traffick increasing, they might well fend out Colonies into other parts; and hence, as *Herodotus* writeth, the Sea-coast of *Arabia* might be inhabited by them; but

as

## SECT. 3.

as for their coming from these parts to inhabit *Phanicia* (which opinion seemeth to have taken it's originall, from the journey of the *Israelites* out of these Coasts) it is a meer Fable. Sailing out of the *Arabian* into the *Persian Gulf*, the name of *Red Sea* might upon this occasion be given by them to both (which is usually to be expounded of both in ancient Writers) the word *Edom*, being changed into others of the same signification in severall Languages. As for *Ophir*, if we think this Countrey denominated from the Son of *Sem*, (or him from it) either immediately by his habitation therein, or rather mediately by the *Tyrians* imposing that name upon it, which properly belonged to a place in *Arabia*; then need wee not seek for it in *America*, and feign strange circuits to have been made, from the *Red Sea* round about *Africk*, to sail thither; as those, who place it in that part of the World, are forced to do.

His building.

45. *Solomon* after the dedication of the Temple, fortified *Jerusalem* with a treble wall, and repaired *Hazron*, the ancient Metropolis of the *Canaanites*; so did he *Gaza* of the *Philistines*: he built *Beihoron*, *Gerar*, and the *Millo*, or munition of *Jerusalem*. He also built *Megiddo* in *Manasseh* on this side *Jordan*, *Balah* in *Dan*, and *Thadmor*; which may be either *Thamaron*, in the Desart of *Judea*, mentioned by *Ptolomy*, or *Palmyra*, as *Josephus* thinketh, situate in the Desart of *Syria*, on the borders of his Dominions; which being many Ages after rebuilt by *Adrian* the Emperour, was named after him *Adrianopolis*. He built for himself in thirteen years time a Palace, and an house for his Wife the Daughter of *Pharaoh*. After this, he offered twenty Towns, bordering upon the Tribe of *Asher*, to *Hiram* King of *Tyre*, as a reward for the assistance he afforded him in his buildings; but he refusing them, he placed Colonies therein. And from his refusal the Countrey came to be called *Cabul*.

His incontin-  
ency and  
idolatry.

46. In the later part of his reign, he fell into great incontinency, and thence became accessory to abominable Idolatry. He loved many strange Women, as (together with the Daughter of *Pharaoh*) Women of the *Moabites*, *Ammonites*, *Edomites*, *Sidonians*, and *Hittites*: of the Nations, wherewith the Children of *Israel* were forbidden to marry. He had 700 Wives, and 300 Concubines, which turned his heart after other gods, so that he went after *Asherah* the goddess of the *Sidonians*, and *Milcom* the abomination of the *Amorites*: he built an high-place for *Chemosh* the abomination of *Moab*, in the hill before *Jerusalem*, for *Molech* the abomination of the Children of *Ammon*; and so did he for all his strange Wives, which burnt incense, and sacrificed to their gods. This provoked the God of *Israel*, who had twice appeared to him; inasmuch, that for his horrible ingratitude, he determined evil concerning his Kingdom, to be fulfilled in his Son. Yet have we ground to judge well of his eternall condition, seeing he made a recantation of his former errors, and was used as a Pen-man of Scripture by the Holy Ghost. He dyed after he had reigned 40 years, being without parallel for *Wisdom*, *Magnificence*, and *Humane Frailty*. A. M. 3025.

His death.

A. M. 3025.

## SECT. III.

From the death of *Solomon* and the rent of the Kingdom, to the destruction of the Kingdom of *Judah*.

1. *SOLOMON* being dead, *Rehoboam* his Son, by *Naama* an *Ammonitish* Woman, reigned in his stead. The Tribes, when they met at *Sichem* to make him King, petitioned for a relaxation of their burthens imposed by his Father; to which he answered so churlishly (despising the counsel of the ancient and grave Men), that ten Tribes revolted from him, and made King over them *Jeroboam* the Son of *Nebat*, who had fled into *Egypt* for fear of *Solomon*, after that God's intentions came to be known

1 Kings 12.  
2 Chron. 11.  
Ver. 13, 14.  
ofTen Tribes  
fall off from  
*Rehoboam*.

SECT. 3. of giving him part of the Kingdom. With Rehoboam yet remained the two Tribes of Judah and Benjamin, and the greatest part of the Levites, who left their possessions and settled themselves in Judah and Jerusalem, because Jeroboam and his Sons had cast them off from executing the Priest's Office. With the Tribe of Judah is also to be reckoned that of Simeon, whose possessions were within the Inheritance of Judah, for which that part of the division that fell to it was too much, Part also of the Danites had it's seat within that of Judah; for it appeareth that they had some Towns in the division of the Land, which formerly had been assigned to the Children of Judah, who (as hath been observed) had so large a Country at first assigned to them, rather to protect and defend, than solely to possess it. All these still remained the Subjects of Rehoboam, though ten Tribes are said to have revolted, the Tribe of Dan being attributed to Jeroboam, for that Dan the chief City, was within his dominions; and because the Tribe of Manasseh being separated and divided into two parts, might be reckoned for two Tribes. The Kingdom thus divided, the Northern parts fell off; but the Southern continued in obedience to the Son of Solomon, whose successors henceforth are called Kings of Judah, as those of Jeroboam, Kings of Israel; and yet this distinction is not always observed, Jehosaphat being called King of Israel, and also Abaz; though we know they were both Kings of Judah; of that division only.

2. Rehoboam purposed to make War upon the Tribes, but, admonished by God, gave over the enterprize of invading them with 180000 Men; although there was continuall War betwixt the two Kings all their dayes. The Priests and Levites that were driven into Judah, retained it in the true religion three years; but when Rehoboam had established himself, he forsook the Law of the Lord, and all Israel with him, committing sins above all that their Fathers had done. They built them high-places, images, and groves on every high hill, and under every green tree: there were Sodomites in the Land, and they did according to the abomination of those Nations, which the Lord cast out before the Children of Israel. Because of this, the fifth year of his reign, Shishak King of Egypt (perhaps invited by Jeroboam, who had lived with him in exile) came up against him with 1200 Chariots, 60000 Horse-men, and innumerable people, out of Egypt: the Libyans, Suckiims and Ethiopians, with which he took garrisons in Judah, and pierced as far as Jerusalem. Rehoboam, and his Princes humbling themselves at the preaching of Shemaiah, thereby obtained deliverance: which yet, was to be bought at an high rate. For Shishak took away the treasures of the house of the Lord, and the Kings house, with all the golden shields which Solomon had made, in the room of which Rehoboam put others of brass. He died after he had reigned seventeen years.

3. Abiah his Son succeeded him, whose Mother is in one place (a) named Maachab the Daughter of Absalom, and in another (b) Micajah Daughter to Uriel of Gibeah. Some think she was the Daughter of Tamer, which might be married to this Uriel, and adopted by Absalom, who seemeth to have left no issue. He imitated the impiety of his Father; his heart not being perfect before the Lord his God, and yet God remembering the Covenant made with David, brought him by a fatherly correction into order, and acknowledgement of his Sovereignty. He also warred with Jeroboam all his dayes, who coming up against him with 80000 Men, he joyned battell with him having but half so many, and yet trusting in God, obtained Victory, and killed 500000 Israelites, the greatest number we read to have fallen in one battell. He took from him Bethel, Jeskanah, and Ephraim, with their Towns; neither did Jeroboam recover his strength in his time. Abijah waxed mighty, married fourteen Wives, begat two and twenty Sons and fifteen Daughters. Yet he reigned but three years.

4. Asa his Son succeeded him in the 20th year of Jeroboam ending, and did that which was righteous in the sight of the Lord. He reformed what was amisse, commanding his Subjects to seek the God of their Fathers: in his time

2 Chron. 11.  
v. 13, 14

Josh. 19. 9.

2 Chron. 31. 2.  
& 28. 19.

1 King. 12. 14.

He and his  
Subjects rebel  
against  
God.

Afflicted, they  
humble them-  
selves, and are  
delivered.

Abiah.

A. M. 3043.

(a) 2 Chron.  
11. 20.  
(b) Chap. 13. 2.

1 Kings 15.

1 Kings 14. &  
2 Chron. 14.  
15, 16. Chap.

time the Land had rest ten years. In his 12th year, according to Josephus, came Zerah the Ethiopian against him, with 1000000 Men, of Casheans (inhabiting Arabia, where also Zerah his Ethiopia is only to be found) and Libaans, besides 300 Chariots. To those he opposed himself with 300000 of Judah, and 280000 of Benjamin; and, calling upon his God, obtained the Victory, which he profecuted and got much bootie. Returnng to Jerusalem, he was so wrought upon by the words of Azariah the Prophet, the Son of Oded, as together with his own Subjects and others, (that fell to him in abundance out of Israel) he sacrificed to, and made a Covenant with, God. Then proceeding in the reformation of his Kingdom, he removed Maacha his Grand-mother from her dignity, because she was the patronesse of Idolatry. Baasa now who reigned in Israel, provoked with the revolt of his Subjects, and jealous of the growing power of Asa, came up against him, and built Rama, in the 36th year from the division, left any should go in or out to him. Asa to divert him, hired Benhadad the King of Syria to invade Israel. This Benhadad was the Son of Tabrimmon, and Grand-son to Hazrim, or Rezin, the first King of Damascus, and from him the Surname of Hadad descended upon his Posterity. He smote Jion, Dan, Behmaach, all Civeroth, with the Land of Naphali, and constrained Baasa to leave off building Ramah. Asa then destroyed Ramah, and with the stones thereof built Seba and Mizpah; but was checked by God for not trusting in him, but putting his confidence in the King of Syria; and War for this was denounced to be upon him all his dayes. Hereat he grew angry with the Seer that brought the message; and oppressed some of his people: and for this was punished with the Gout in his later dayes, for a remedy to which, he had recourse to the Physicians, and not to God. So he died, in the 41 year of his reign.

5. Jehosaphat succeeded him, to a good Father a better Son. In his third year he sent the Levites throughout the Cities to teach the people, having removed the Sodomites out of the Land. He married his Son Jehoram to Athaliah the Daughter of Ahab King of Israel, and in his 18th year made him Vice-King. This affinity drew him down with Ahab to fight against Ramoth-Gilead, where Ahab received his death's wound, and he escaped narrowly with his life. For joynng himself with this wicked King, he was sorely chidden by Jehu the Prophet, the Son of Hanani; which so affected him, as he reformed his Subjects, travelling himself from Beerseba unto Mount Ephraim to accomplish it: he also constituted Judges, to whom he gave a pious and strict charge. After this the Moabites, Ammonites, and a great multitude of others invaded him; against which he first strove by Prayer to God, and thereby obtained Victory, his Enemies being so stricken with madness, that they fell upon, and slaughtered one another. Afterwards intending to send Ships for gold to Ophir; because he joyned with wicked Abaziah King of Israel, the Lord spoiled the works, and the Ships were broken at Ezion-geber. Some think he made his Son Partner in the Kingdom it self, having formerly been but his Vicegerent, a year or two before he died. He reigned 25 years, or rather 24, with some odd months.

6. To Jehosaphat succeeded Joram being 32 years old, to the best Father the worst Son, who being established in his Seat, made away all his Brethren, and some of the Princes. In his dayes the Edomites, or Idumeans, who hitherto, from the time of David, had been in subjection to the Kings of Judah, revolted. They had heretofore been governed by a Vice-Roy, chosen either out of themselves or the Jews; but now they made themselves a King; the Prophecie of Isaac, the common Progenitor of both Nations, being now fulfilled, that though Esau should serve his younger Brother Jacob, yet the time should come, when he should break the yoke from off his neck. At the same time Libnah (a City of the Priest's in the Tribe of Judah) revolted, because he had forsaken the God of his Fathers; for having married Ahab's Daughter, he followed the example of his house, making high-places in the Mountains of Judah, and causing his Subjects to commit Idolatry therein.

SECT. 3.

1 Kings 22.  
A. M. 3087.

2 Chron. 19,  
20, 21. chap.

2 Chron. 21.  
A. M. 3109.

Gen. 27. 40.

## SECT. 3.

therein. Because of this, there came a Writing to him from the Prophet *Elijah*, rebuking him for his sin, and foretelling his punishment. *Elijah* being before this taken up to Heaven, the Jews have believed that this Letter was sent down thence. Some think, there was another Prophet of this name; but most are inclined to believe, that foreseeing, before his assumption, the Idolatry of this man, he left this Letter with his Schollers to be delivered to him in due time. According to the threatnings therein contained, God first stirred up against him the *Philistines* and *Arabians*, who making an invasion took away all his goods, his wives, and sons, except *Jehoahaz* the youngest, otherwise called *Ahaziah* and *Azariah*. Afterwards God struck him with an incurable disease in his bowels, which after two years came out of his body; so that he miserably died, having reigned eight years; three whereof are to be reckoned in conjunction with his father. He was buried without honour at *Jerusalem*, nor in the Sepulcher of Kings; nor desired, missed, nor lamented.

Ahaziah.  
A.M. 3116.

7. *Ahaziah* his son succeeded him who followed the steps of his Grandfather, *Ahab's* wicked family, and became a Patron of Idolaters. But having scarce reigned one year, he went down to *Jezreel* to visit his Uncle *Joram*, King of *Israel*, where they were both killed by *Jehu*; *Joram* being slain outright, and *Ahaziah* dying shortly after of his wound, at *Megiddo*. *Athaliah* his mother seized upon the Kingdom, wherein to establish herself, she destroyed all the Royal seed. Onely *Jehoshaba* the daughter of *Joram*, and wife to *Jehojada* the High-Priest, withdrew *Joash* an infant, her brother's son, and hid him six years in the house of God. At the end of these years, *Jehojada* brought him out to the people, then seven years old, and anointing him King, slew *Athaliah*, restored the worship of God, and destroyed the house of *Baal*, whose Priest *Matthan* he slew before the Altar.

Joas.

8. *Joas* then succeeded his father after six years, who did what was good and just as long as *Jehojada* the Priest lived, and through his advice took care to repair the Temple, which now had stood 155 years. But *Jehojada* being dead (who lived 130 years; the Jews observing that he, the repaire of the Temple, was born the same year, that the builder thereof died) Idolatry brake out afresh through his connivance. The Prophets exclaimed against it in vain, especially *Zacharias*, the son and successor of *Jehojada*, against whom *Joas* was so far transported beyond the bounds of piety, & gratitude to his father's memory, that he commanded him to be stoned, and that in the Court of the house of the Lord. Whilst as he died, he said, *The Lord look upon it and requite it*. So he did; for after a years time, the forces of *Hazael*, King of *Syria*, though but small, invaded *Judah*, destroyed all the Princes of the people, and sent the spoil to their King. *Joas* himself they left very sick of great diseases, but when they were departed from him, his own servants conspired against him for the blood of the sons of *Jehojada* the Priest, and slew him on his bed, in the 40th year of his reign. A.M. 3160.

9. *Amaziah* his son succeeded him, who also seemeth to have reigned with him the three last years; seeing he is said to have begun his reign in the second year of *Joas*, King of *Israel*. When he was confirmed in his seat, he put those to death that slew his father, sparing their Children according to the Law of *Moses*. In his 12th year, he undertook an expedition against the *Edomites* with 30000 of his own Subjects, and 100000 *Israelites*, which he hired for 100 Talents of silver. But as he was about to begin his march a Prophet deformed him from joining to himself the Idolatrous *Israelites*, so that he dismissed them, and they returned home in great discontent. He prospered against the *Idumeans*, but the Souldiers (dismissed) fell upon his Cities, and smiting 300 of them, took much spoil. Yet he at his return, to amend the matter, having brought home the gods of the *Edomites*, set them up to be his gods, bowed down before them, and burnt incense to them. The Lord being fore angry for this, sent first a Prophet to him whom he rejected. But burning with a desire to be revenged upon the *Israelites* he sent and defied *Joas*

2 Chron. 21.  
verf. 12.

2 Kings 8. &  
2 Chron. 22.

2 Kings 9.

Chap. 11.  
2 Chron. 24.

2 Kings 12.  
A.M. 3122.

Chap. 14.

2 Chron. 25.  
A.M. 3160.

## SECT. 3.

*Joas* their King, who admonished him to be well advised, but this being in vain, they met, and joyned battel, wherein *Amaziah* was taken, and led back to *Jerusalem*; the Wall of which Citie, *Joas* demolished 400 Cubits, and plundering the house of the Lord with the Kings house then departed. Fifteen years after, *Amaziah* lived; but then, having turned away from following the Lord, a conspiracy was made against him in *Jerusalem*; whence he fled to *Lachish*, and there was slain by the pursuers, after he had reigned 29 years.

Uzziah.

10. He left a son named *Uzziah* and *Azariah*, who succeeded him; but being said to have begun his reign in the 27th year of *Ieroboam*, King of *Israel*, an *Inter-regnum* of twelve years must needs have passed betwixt his father's death and his beginning; the Kingdom all this time having, perhaps, been governed by a Lieutenant, or the High-Priest. When he came to the Age of 16. all the people of *Judah* took him, and made him King in the room of his father, and under him the State of *Judah* much flourished. He fought prosperously against the *Philistines* and *Arabians* that dwelt in *Gur-Baal*, and *Mehunims*, or *Mineans*, dwelling in *Arabia* the *Hapite* upon the *Red-Sea*; the *Ammonites* fought to him with presents, and his name was great in those parts. About his 35th year was celebrated in *Greece* the first *Olympiad*, that great help to our understanding in the distinction of times. He invaded the Priests Office in Offering Sacrifice, and for that was stricken with Leprosie, which continued upon him till his death, living in an house by himself, and *Isaiah* his son ordering the affairs of the Kingdom. He reigned 52 years.

2 Kings 15.  
2 Chron. 26.  
A.M. 3201.

Jotham.

11. *Jotham* his son succeeded him, who prevailed against the *Ammonites*, and forced them to pay Tribute two years. He became mighty, because he prepared his ways before the Lord his God; he built the High-Gate of the Temple much on the Wall of *Ophai*; Moreover, Cities in the Mountains of *Judah*, and in the Forrests thereof Castles and Towers. Under him, his Predecessor, and his two Successors, prophesied *Isaiab* and *Hosea*; *Micah* began in his time; and *Nahum* also, according to *Iosephus*, prophesied the destruction of *Nineveh*, which was fulfilled 115 years after; though others think the beginning of these years should rather be placed in the time of his son. He reigned sixteen years, and was succeeded by *Ahaz* his son, whose reign if it be compared with that of *Pechab* and *Hosea*, Kings of *Israel*, it will appear that he reigned seven, or eight years with his father. He did that which was evil in the sight of the Lord, walking in the ways of the Kings of *Israel*: he made molten Images for *Baalam*, burnt Incense in the Valley of the son of *Hinnom*, burnt his Children in the fire, Sacrificed and burnt Incense in the high places, on the Hills, and under every green Tree. Because of this, God stirred up *Pekab*, King of *Israel*, and *Rezin* the son of *Remaliah*, King of *Syria* against him, who invaded his Kingdom, and did much hurt: *Rezin* got *Elath*, which *Uzziah* had recovered and built; the King of *Israel* gave him a grievous overthrow; the *Edomites* also afflicted him and the *Philistines*, whom *Uzziah* had brought under, made inroads upon him. Suspecting his Estate because of these things, he sent to *Tiglath-Pileser*, King of *Assyria* for help, presenting him with the Silver and Gold, which was found in the Temple.

2 Chron. 27.  
A.M. 3253.  
Olymp. 5. an. 4.

Ahaz.

12. *Tiglath-Pileser* accordingly came up, and taking *Damascus*, killed *Rezin*, in whom fell this Kingdom: which having continued ten Generations, and begun in a *Rezin*, ended in one of that name. Then turned he his Forces upon *Pekab*, transporting into *Assyria* the Inhabitants of *Gilead* and *Naphthali*, as formerly he had done those of *Damascus*. But *Ahaz*, to procure those things, having made himself his Vassal, was yet never the better, remained in great fear of him, and still continued in his wickedness. He made his son *Hezekiah* for his three last years partner with him in the Kingdom, and at the end thereof died, having reigned together with his father, and by himself, 16 years. *Hezekiah* succeeding, opened the Temple which his father had shut, and reformed the abuses in Religion. He brake in pieces the brazen

A.M. 3269.  
Olymp. 9. an. 2.  
2 Kings 16.  
2 Chron. 28.

Nicol. Damascus apud Iosephum Antiq. 1.7. c. 6.

A.M. 3276.  
Olymp. 12. an. 3.



## SECT. 3.

Serpent, because the Superstitious multitude fancying some Divine virtue therein, gave it suitable Worship. He shook off the yoke of the King of *Affryia*, refusing to pay Tribute; for which cause in his fourteenth year, *Senacherib*, being to make War upon *Egypt*, led part of his Forces into *Judaea*. Besieging *Lachish*, *Hezekiah* bargained with him to depart; but he brake his promise, and sent *Rabshakes* with others to *Jerusalem*, who blaspheming God, and reproaching the King, laboured to draw the people from their obedience. This being to no purpose, *Rabshakes* returned to him, who had now departed from *Lachish*, and besieged *Libnah*, a strong Citie of *Judah*; removing still nearer *Jerusalem*, that he might seem to pursue what he had given in charge to *Rabshakes* to denounce against *Hezekiah*.

13. But lying before *Libnah*, news came that *Tirhakah*, King of *Ethiopia* (who, as it seemeth, had entred into conspiracy with the *Egyptian* against him) was moving towards him; at which he was so terrified, that he brake up his siege, and departed homewards. Yet having a greedy mind towards *Judaea*, he sent a blasphemous Letter full of threats to *Hezekiah*; but he lost in one night by the stroke of an Angel 180000 men (as some think being on his way towards *Jerusalem*) and confounded hereat, returned to *Ninivah*, where he was slain by his two sons, *Adramelech* and *Sharizer*, as he was worshipping in the house of *Misroch* his God. In the time of these dangers, *Hezekiah* fell sick unto death, the sentence of which he received from *Isaiah* the Prophet. But by his prayers and tears he obtained a prolongation of life for fifteen years, and, in confirmation of the promise, the shadow of the degrees which was gone down in the Sun-dial of *Ahaz* was brought ten degrees backward; and it followeth, *So the Sun returned ten degrees, by which degrees it was gone down*. As for this Sun-dial it's thought that in those ancient times the knowledge of *Dials* was scarce amongst the *Hebrews*. Yet is it possible that *Ahaz* might have something of that nature, though imperfect, from the *Babylonians*, who were of old much given to Astrology; he being otherwise too curious an admirer of forreign things as appeareth, in that he must needs have such an Altar made, and erected at *Jerusalem* as he had seen at *Damascus*. That the Sun went back, hath been generally believed; but one of late hath gone about to prove that the shadow was lyable to reduction, without retrocession of the great Luminary.

The Sun returneth ten degrees backward.

14. The knowledge of this miracle coming to the *Babylonians* (who by reason of their continual observation of the Heavenly bodies might have more occasion to take notice of it) *Merodach-Baladan* their King sent to *Hezekiah* to congratulate his recovery, desirous, it's likely, of his friendship whom he had understood to be so much in the favour of God; especially bearing no goodwill to the *Affrians*. He in a vain ostentation of his Wealth shew'd the Ambassadors all his Treasures, and whatsoever was in his house; for which, *Isaiah* the Prophet denounced the carrying away of all these things to *Babylon*. For the pride of his heart there was wrath upon him and *Judah*; yet he humbled himself, both he and the inhabitants of *Judah*, so that the wrath of the Lord came not upon them in his dayes. He flourished in abundance of riches and honour, stopped the upper water-course of *Gibon*, and brought it streight down to the West-side of the Citie of *David*. He reigned 29 years (3 whereof were together with his father:) being dead, they buried him in the chiefest Sepulchers of the sons of *David*, and all *Judah*, with the Inhabitants of *Jerusalem*, did him honour at his death.

Manasses.

15. *Manasses* his Son succeeded him at the Age of twelve years; and therefore was begotten by him after his recovery. He did evil in the sight of the Lord above those Nations, which the Lord had cast out before *Israel*, being more Idolatrous then any of his Predecessors; he was also given to Witchcraft and Divinations, built Altars for all the Host of heaven, which he served in the two Courts of the house of the Lord, wherein he also set up an Image of the Grove which he had made. He filled *Jerusalem* with innocent blood; amongst other Martyrs *Isaiah* the Prophet (as it's said) being sawn asunder with a wooden saw, because he was free with him in reproving his ungodly

2 Kings 18.  
2 Chron. 29. &c.

Ezay 38.8.

Gregory, of Oxford.

2 Chron. 32.31.

2 Kings 21.  
2 Chron. 33.  
A.M. 3304.  
Olymp. 19. an. 4.

## SECT. 3.

ungodly life; although he was of the bloud royal as the son of *Amos*, the brother of King *Amaziah*, according to the tradition of the Jews, who also have related him to have been father-in-law, nay (as some) Grand-father by the Mothers side, to *Manasse* himself. In such wickednesse continued he for several years, till such time as God sent upon him the Captains of the King of *Affryia* (*Esarchaddon* some think) who took him lying hid amongst the thorns, and carried him bound with fetters unto *Babylon*, which City (as it appeareth from this place) was now again under the King of *Affryia*. Here having leisure and occasion to bethink himself, in his affliction he repented; was humbled greatly, and besought the Lord, who heard his Prayer, and restored him to his Kingdom. After this, he knew that the Lord was God; and purged his Realm of Idolatry; which Reformation the Jews make to have been in the 33<sup>th</sup> year before his death. He reigned 55 years.

16. *Amos* his Son succeeded him in his Kingdom, and Idolatry, but not in his Repentance, worshipping and sacrificing to all the carved Images which his Father had made, and going on to trespass more and more. After two years, his servants conspired against him and slew him in his own house, all whom the people of the Land put to death, and made *Iosiah* his Son (a child of eight years old) King in his stead. He in the eighth year of his reign began to seek after the God of his Fathers, and in his twelfth to cleanse his Kingdom, and all the Land of *Israel*, from Idolatry; although the greatest part of the later, was now subject to the King of *Affryia*. In the 18<sup>th</sup> year of his reign and of his age the 26<sup>th</sup>, he commanded the Temple to be repaired, and the Worship of God therein restored: where also finding a Book of the Law, he renewed the Covenant between God and the people, and celebrated such a solemn Paschever, as had not been kept in *Israel* since the time of the Judges. Now if the time of the Judges, and the Oppressions, be not confounded, but taken at their full length; then this year being the 900<sup>th</sup> ending, or the 931<sup>th</sup> beginning, from the entering into *Canaan*, was the 7<sup>th</sup> of the 133 week, or the last of the 19<sup>th</sup> Jubilee. *Iosiah* in his 31<sup>th</sup> year ending, disguised himself that he might fight with *Necho* King of *Egypt* (who was going up against the *Affrian*) and would not hearken to his words from the mouth of God, labouring with him to refuse fighting against the Lord, who had sent him, and commanded him to make haste. Therefore joyning battell with him in the Valley of *Megiddo*, he was sore wounded, and being carried to *Jerusalem*, died there; all *Judah* and *Jerusalem*, mourning and making great lamentation for him.

Jehoaahaz.

Jehoiakim.

17. Whilst *Pharaoh* was busie in his affairs against the *Affrians*, the people made *Jehoaahaz* the younger Son of *Josias*, King; who continued but three moneths in the dignity. For *Pharaoh* having finished his work at *Euphrates*, and in *Calesyria*, came to *Jerusalem*, whence he led away into *Egypt* this young King, and left his elder Brother *Eliakim* in his place, whose name he changed into *Jehoiakim*, imposing a tax of a hundred talents of silver and a talent of gold upon the Land. Though *Jehoaahaz* be said to have reigned three moneths, yet some will have a year to have passed betwixt the 31 year of *Josias*, and the first of *Jehoiakim*; partly for that *Josias* seemeth to have reigned something more than 31 years, and some space would be taken up in so solemn a mourning for him, before the intalment of *Jehoaahaz*; and also to consult about this thing, seeing it was against right and custom to give this honour to the younger Brother: lastly some time (perhaps some moneths) was requisite for settling the affairs of *Judaea*, about the intalment of *Jehoiakim*, and the tribute. *Ludovicus Cappellus* moreover, giveth a whole year to *Jehoaahaz* and *Jehoiakim* (though the Scripture speaketh but of three moneths a piece) that the last year of *Zedekiah* might fall into the 390<sup>th</sup> year from the rent of the Kingdom; of which more, when we arrive at that time.

18. *Jehoiakim* thus advanced by *Pharaoh Necho*, was 25 years old when he began to reign; which if so, he was born in the fifteenth year of his Father's age; as, if *Jehoaahaz* was 23 when he began his reign, he must also have

A.M. 3359.  
Olymp. 33. an. 4.

Chap. 34.

2 Kings 23.  
2 Chron. 35.  
A.M. 3308.  
Olymp. 35. an. 4.

2 Chron. 36.  
A.M. 3392.  
Olymp. 41. an. 4.

## SECT. 3.

have been born in the sixteenth of *Josiah*. This maketh *Josiah* to have applied himself to procreation of children at least in the fourteenth year of his life; which seeming too early, and not agreeable to the Piety of that Prince, there are that suspect for 25, ought to be read 15, and 13 for 23; so that the one might be born in the 24 and the other in the 25 year of his Father: But there is no necessity for such a reading of the Text. The fourth year of *Jehoiakim* fell in with the first of *Nebuchadnezzar* King of *Babylon*, and was the 23th from the 12th of the reign of *Josiah*, wherein *Jeremiah* the Prophet first began to prophesy; and hence it also appeareth, that *Josiah* reigned at least full 31 years, and that one passed between his death and the beginning of *Jehoiakim*, else 23 onely had passed betwixt the 13th of the one, and the 4th of the other. In this year *Pharaoh Necho* fell upon the *Babylonians* with War, because, as it seemeth, they had solicited *Jehoiakim* his Tributary to revolt, and fought against *Nebuchadnezzar* at *Carchemish* near *Emphates*, (by the *Greek* and *Latin* Writers called *Cercusium*); in which battell he was overthrown and slain.

*Pharaoh Necho*  
slain.

19. After this Victory, came *Nebuchadnezzar* to *Jerusalem*, where he either took *Jehoiakim* captive to lead him to *Babylon*, or at least made him his tributary Vassall. Some account this year, as the beginning of the reign of *Nebuchadnezzar*, so of the Captivity of *Judah*, and the desolation of that Country, because that *Jeremiah*, having spoken first of the 13 years, in which he and the other Prophets had warned the people to no purpose, afterwards addeth, that God would send *Nebuchadnezzar* his Servant against the Land, which should be a desolation and an astonishment, and that these Nations should serve the King of *Babylon* 70 years. But the Prophecy of *Daniel* beginneth thus: *In the third year of the reign of Jehoiakim King of Judah, came Nebuchadnezzar King of Babylon to Jerusalem, and besieged it: and the Lord gave Jehoiakim King of Judah into his hand, with part of the Vessels of the House of God, which he carried into the Land of Shinar, to the house of his God.* This place seeming to contradict the other; some have chosen to clothe with the literall sense of it, and to hold, that in the third year of *Jehoiakim*, began the Captivity of the Jews. Others see more reason to stick to the other place, and, to take away all difference, interpret this third year of the third of the Sabbaticall year, or the week of years, and thus would read it, *In the third year, Jehoiakim the King of Judah reigning, came Nebuchadnezzar King of Babylon unto Jerusalem, &c.* But the Jews with some modern Writers understand by this third year, the third of the rebellion of *Jehoiakim*, against whom *Nebuchadnezzar* coming, about the end of the fifth year of his reign, made him his Tributary, and so he continued three years; viz. the 6, 7, and 8th of his reign. Afterwards, changing his mind, he rebelled in the beginning of his 9th year, and so continued for three years in rebellion, which being expired, in the end of his 11th, *Nebuchadnezzar* took *Jerusalem*, and carried him Captive to *Babylon*, with part of the holy Vessels, and others of the Royall and Princely Race, amongst whom was *Daniel*; and so the Captivity of Seventy years began not till this year.

The beginning of the  
Seventy years  
of Captivity,  
which is variously  
assigned.

20. That this third year cannot be understood of the third of *Jehoiakim*'s reign, is clear from *Jeremiah*, who joyneth his fourth with the first of *Nebuchadnezzar*; and because elsewhere is made mention of his fifth: whence is apparent, that he could not be led Captive in his third year. The second opinion indeed is not amiss; for this was really the third year of the week or the third from the Sabbaticall year. For, the 18th of *Josiah*, in which the Passover was celebrated, being the last year of the 19th Jubilee, and so the Sabbaticall year; from that to the 11th ending of *Jehoiakim*, or the 12th beginning, are counted 31 years: viz. four weeks and three odd years; this being usual with the Pen-men of holy Story, to count their times by Sabbaticall years or Jubilies. *Jacobus Cappelus* \* would have *Nebuchadnezzar*, at the command of *Nabopolassar* his Father, to have come into *Judea* in the second year of the reign of *Jehoiakim*, who then swore fealty to him; but in the third year rebelled: whence *Nebuchadnezzar* came down again in his fifth year,

*Jerem. 25. 11*  
& 3.

*Chap. 8.*

*A. M. 3396.*  
*Olymp. 42. an. 4.*

*Chap. 25. 9.*  
& 11.

\* *Ad. A. M.*  
3391 & 3394.

## SECT. 3.

year, and took him Captive. Then will he have him to have set *Shallum* over the Kingdom, till *Ieconias* his Son, an Infant of a year old, should come to age; but *Jehoiakim* himself there lived miserably in Captivity, till the 11th year, reckoned from his first being made King by *Necho*. He being then dead, and news of it brought to *Jerusalem*, they there made his Son *Jehoiakim* King in his stead. And he beginneth the Seventy years of the Captivity in his fifth year, when he will have him carried to *Babylon*.

21. But *Ludovicus Cappelus* his Brother replyeth, that in no place is there any mention made of *Nebuchadnezzar*'s coming up against him in the second year of his reign, the (d) place thought to make for the purpose, having as much respect to the fifth as the second year. And as little mention is there any where made of *Jehoiakim*'s six years of Captivity, who if he had died at *Babylon*, the Scripture would never have attributed to him the reign of eleven years, but onely so many as he really reigned, viz. 5. The rest, it would either have given to *Shallum* the pretended Viceroy, or to *Jehoiakim* his Son; it being a thing improbable, that the name should be preserved for *Jehoiakim*, whilst *Sallum* indeed reigned: Besides, the *Babylonian* King observed no such matter afterward in *Jehoiakim*, whom taking away he really made King *Zedekiah*, without the title of Vice-Roy or Lieutenant. Nay, though *Jehoiakim* lived long at *Babylon*, and, after the death of *Nebuchadnezzar*, being loosed out of bonds, was honoured and esteemed by *Eulmerodach* above any of his condition (and therein excelled *Jehoiakim*, if he lived there so long); yet is there no more time given to his reign, than that wherein he onely continued in his principality. As for the Regencie of *Shallum*, it is a meer invention, there being no other according to the Jews, then *Jehoiakim*, who was also called by that name. For in the \* place thought to make this out, they are hidden not to weep for the dead (viz. *Josiah*) but for him that goeth away (*Jehoiakim* taken away by *Necho*) for he should return no more into his Native Country.

\* *1 Kings 24. 1.*

22. *Jehoiakim* therefore being taken to be led away Captive, in the third year of his rebellion and the 11th of his reign, died ere he went (as we may suppose) and was cast out or buried, according to the Prophecy of *Jeremiah*, who had foretold he should be buried with the buriall of an Ass; being cast forth beyond the gates of *Jerusalem*, in the day to the heat, and in the night to the frost, which could be done by none, except the barbarous *Babylonians*. After his death, the Conquerour placed in his stead *Jehoiakim* his Son, called also *Conias* and *Jechonias*, who did evil in the sight of the Lord, as his Father before him, and *Nebuchadnezzar*, it seemeth repenting of what he had done, lest he should be drawn from his obedience, by the example of his Father, and the persuasions of those about him, sent his Army before him, (about a year after his former expedition) to besiege *Jerusalem*. When he himself came to the Siege, *Jehoiachim* came out to him with his Mother and Servants, and yielded his person in the eighth year of *Nebuchadnezzar* ending. Then the *Babylonian* entering *Jerusalem*, took away the Treasures found in the house of the Lord, and the Kings house, brake all the golden instruments which *Solomon* had made for the Temple, and so carried *Jehoiakim* with his Mother, Wives, and Servants unto *Babylon*. Besides those, he transported all the best sort of the people from *Jerusalem*, with the ablest and strongest for War from other places, in which number was (e) *Ezekiel* the Priest, the Son of *Buzi*. *Jehoiakim* in (f) one place is said to have been eighteen years old, when he began to reign, but in another (g) onely eight. A fault must needs be in the reading of one place of the two, which may best be laid upon the former. For if *Jehoiakim* his Father was 15 years old when he began to reign, (as some will have it) then was he born to him in the 18th year of his age, being otherwise (according to this tenent) absurdly made to have been begot in his 7 or 8th year.

*Jehoiakim.*

*Zedekiah.*

*Jerem. 23. 11.*  
*Consule Ludov.*  
*Cappelum*  
*Chronol. Sacr.*  
*P. 202.*

*Chap. 22. 18.*  
*19. & 36. 30.*

*2 Chron. 36.*  
*2 Kings 23.*  
*A. M. 3404.*  
*Olymp. 44. an. 4.*  
*Nebuchad. 8.*

(c) *Ezek. 1.*  
*2. 3.*  
(f) *2 Kings*  
*24. 8.*  
(g) *2 Chron.*  
*36. 9.*

23. *Nebuchadnezzar* made King over the Jews that remained, *Mattaniah* the Son of *Josiah*, from whom he received an oath of homage, and thereupon changed his name into *Zedekiah*. He trode in the steps of his Brothers and Nephews,

## SECT. 2.

Nephews, the people also being with him incorrigible. He rebelled against *Nebuchadnezzar*, taking part with the King of *Egypt*, whom he detained a quarter with him, & therefore the *Babylonian* came up in the 9th year after his establishment, took all the Cities of *Judea*, except *Jerusalem*, *Lachish*, and *Azeka*, which he also besieged. The year following *Pharaoh* came with an Army to his assistance, which *Nebuchadnezzar* understanding went to meet him, and he thereupon afraid to engage, retreated into his own Land. *Nebuchadnezzar* then returning fate down again before *Jerusalem*, wherein famine at length prevailing, and *Zedekiah* still refusing to yield, though *Jeremiah* constantly advised him to do it, in the end of his 11th year, and the first day of the month it was broken into, by the *Caldeans*. *Zedekiah* flying, was overtaken, and brought to *Riblah*: where he first saw his Children and Friends slain; and then, having his eyes put out, was carried to *Babylon*, where he miserably ended his days.

Zedekiah taken.

Jerusalem and the Temple burnt.

24. On the seventh day of the fifth month, in the 19th year of *Nebuchadnezzar* came *Nebuzaradan*, Captain of his Guard, and, having got all things ready in two days, set the King's House, with the Temple, and the rest of the buildings in the City on fire. The same month all the Walls were demolished; they that remained in the City, with those which before had revolted, and the rest of the people, together with the Treasures of the King and Princes, and the Utenfils of the house of the Lord, did *Nabuzaradan* carry to *Babylon*. So went *Judah* into Captivity in the 12th year after the death of *Iehojakim*, 390 after the death of *Salomon* and the Rent of the Kingdom (which the Prophet \* *Ezekiel* was commanded to represent by sleeping so many nights upon his left side, the iniquity of the Children of *Israel* having from that time abounded) to which the two years being added wherein the Captivity was compleated at the death of *Gedaliah*, and eight Jubilies are therein contained; 490 from the beginning of *Saul*; so that the Kingdom of *Judah* continued 10 Jubilies, or 70 weeks of years, so many as are given by *Daniel* to the Commonwealth of the *Jews*, from its restitution to the *Messiah*: From the building of the Temple 420. which therefore stood eight Jubilies, with four weeks, or in all sixty weeks of years; from the entrance into *Canaan* 967. as *Ludovicus Cappellus* reckoneth, containing 138 weeks; from the departure out of *Egypt* 1007. during which time *Satan* was as it were bound, and Gods people were free: Lastly, from the beginning of the World 3515. which make 502 weeks, and 71 Jubilies with five weeks of years. The concurrence of all these Accounts do mightily confirm the Discoverer in his opinion of their realitie.

25. \* *Jeremiah* the Prophet had leave, either to go to *Babylon*, there to live honourably, or to stay with the small remnant that were left in the Land. The later of those he accepted, and went to *Gedaliah*, who being appointed Governour kindly imbraced him, and gave encouragement to all the *Jews* left under his charge, promising them favour and liberty, so long as they remained obedient Subjects to the King of *Babylon*: But ere the year went about, one *Ismael*, a Prince of the blood, who during the War had kept himself out of the way with *Baalis* King of the *Ammonites*, slew *Gedaliah* whilst he lovingly feasted him at *Maspha*, with others, both *Jews* and *Caldeans* in his Company. The residue then of the *Jews* being without a Governour, and fearing the revenge of their Lords and Masters, were minded to fly into *Egypt*, and caused the Prophet to inquire of the Lord for them. *Jeremiah* answered, that if they would remain in *Judea*, God would mercifully provide for them; but if they offered to save themselves in *Egypt*, they should undoubtedly perish. They, notwithstanding this warning, went down and constrained him, with *Baruch*, to accompany them, where, by the leave of *Pharaoh*, they inhabited near *Tahpanes*. Here the Prophet often reprehending them for their Idolatry, and foretelling both their destruction, and the ruin of those that harboured them, was by their wretched and ingratefull hands \* stoned to death; but is said to have been exceedingly honoured by the *Egyptians*, so that *Alexander* the Great translated his bones into *Alexandria*,

Gedaliah, the Governour slain.

The Jews constrain Jeremiah to go down with them into Egypt, where they stone him.

2 Kings 25.

Jerem. 39.

A. M. 3415.  
Olymp. 48.  
an. 4.  
Nebuchad. 9.

\* Ezek. 4. 5.

\* Chap. 40.

Chap. 41.

Chap. 42. 43.  
&c.\* XONIAS  
TOMO 1. Ter-  
tullian in  
Scorpiaco.  
cap. 10.  
Jerem.

The last deportation.

*andria*. In the 23th year of *Nebuchadnezzar* (who then besieged *Jyre*) *Nebuzaradan*, Captain of his Guard carried away the reliques of the *Jews* and *Israelites*, to the number of 745. which was the 1st deportation. And the Prophecies both of (b) *Jeremiah* and (i) *Ezekiel* confirm us in this belief, that the *Jews* in *Egypt*, after *Nebuchadnezzar* had subdued that Countrey, were partly slain, and partly carried away Captive to their own Countrey-men with the Natives, being nothing reformed by the forme: punishments inflicted either upon themselves, or their Nation.

SECT. 4.  
Jerem. 52.  
(h) Chap. 43.  
44, 46.  
(i) Chap. 29.  
30, 31.

## SECT. IV.

## The Kingdom of Israel

From the revolt of the Tribes, to their final Captivity under Salmanassar.

Jeroboam.

1. The ten Tribes, falling off from *Rehoboam* upon his Churlish answer, chose *Jeroboam* the son of *Nabar*, of the Tribe of *Ephraim* to reign over them. He, being industrious in the work of Fortifications, had been made by *Salomon* Ruler over all the charge of the house of *Joseph*; but the Lord, after he was provoked by the Idolatry of *Salomon*, sent *Ahijah* the Prophet to him to promise him ten Tribes; which coming to the ears of the King he sought to slay him; whereupon *Jeroboam* fled for his life to *Shishak*, King of *Egypt*, with whom he sojourned till *Salomon's* death. Then he was sent for out of *Egypt*, and accompanied all *Israel* as their Speaker in their address made to *Rehoboam*; whom after they had rejected, they made him King, that the Lord might perform what he had promised by the Prophet.

1 Kings 11.  
12, 13, 14.  
2 Chron. 11.  
13.

A. M. 3016.

Setteth up  
two Golden  
Calves.

2. In the beginning of his reign he built up *Shechem*, which had lye waste well nigh 260 years, from the time that *Abimelech* destroyed it. This place being situated in Mount *Ephraim* he first made his habitation; till he went over *Jordan*, and built *Penuel*, whence afterwards he also removed his seat to *Tirza*. He forsook the Lord, who promised him establishment, if he would keep his Statutes and Commandments, going about by carnal and wicked policy to secure his interest. For, lest his Subjects by going up to *Jerusalem* to Worship, should be turned again from their obedience to him, he set up two Golden Calves, the one at *Dan*, and the other at *Bethel*, having learnt Idolatry towards this sort of Cattel in *Egypt*. To that in *Bethel* he sacrificed, instituting a Feast like to that of Tabernacles: and though, rebuked by a Prophet, he was stricken with Leprosie, and might have been convinced by other Miracles; yet neither these things nor the many judgements of God against him, and his Successors, could reclaim either him, or them. Rejecting the Priests of the sons of *Aaron*, and the Levites, he made of the lowest of the people Priests for the high places: He had War with *Rehoboam* continually, and with *Abiah* his son, who overthrew him in a great battle, and slew 500000 of his men, although he added a stratagem to the force of his numbers (which doubled those of his Enemy) compassing in *Abiah's* Army whilst he was speaking to it. Some years after, he died, having reigned 22. *Nadab* his son succeeding him, walked in the wayes of his father, & in his sin wherewith he made *Israel* to sin; but in his second year, he and all *Israel* besieging *Gibbethon* of the *Philistines*, *Baasha* the son of *Ahijah*, of the house of *Issachar* conspired against him, and slew him there.

A. M. 3047.  
A. S. 2.  
1 Kings 15.

3. *Nadab* is said to have began his reign in the second year of *Asa*, and to have reigned two years: yet *Baasha* to have begun to reign in the third year of *Asa*. To this, either must be said, that *Jeroboam* made his son King whilst he himself yet lived, or else not reigning 22 years compleat, but some part onely of the 22th year (so that the far greater part of the first year of *Nadab* must fall in with the greater part of the second of *Asa*) neither did *Nadab* reign two whole years, but one with a piece of another, and so the first year of *Baasha* will fall in with the greater part of the third of *Asa*.

K

For

## SECT. 4

For in this comparing of the times of the Kings of *Judah* and *Israel*, is to be taken notice; That, 1. A year onely begun is taken for a compleat one. 2. The fathers often yet living communicated the royal dignity to their sons. 3. Some were twice inaugurated, as *Joram* in the Tribe of *Judah*, and *Hishai* in that of *Ephraim*. 4. That there were many vacancies, especially in the Kingdom of *Israel*. *Baasa* cut off all the posterity of *Jeroboam*, not leaving one to pisse against the Wall, according as *Ahijah* had foretold; so that here *Jeroboam*'s policy failed him, the Golden Calves having pushed down his family. When *Baasa* saw that *Asa* had restored Religion, and for that cause many of his subjects revolted to him, he had War with him all his dayes, and in his fourteenth year built *Ramah* to restrain fugitives. *Asa* to divert him hired *Benhadad*, King of *Syria*, who breaking the league formerly made with *Israel* came up with his forces, and smote *Tion* (a Citie of the Tribe of *Asher*). *Dan* of the *Danites*, *Abel-beth-maach* of the *Manassites*, and all *Cinneroth* with the Land of *Naphali*; which forced *Baasa* to leave off building *Ramah*, and return to *Tirza*. He reigned 24 years, viz. 23 with part of another. 2 Chron. 16.

*Elah* slain by *Zimri*.

*Omri*.

*Tibni*.

*Ahab* married *Jezebel*.

4. *Elah* his son succeeded him in the 26th year of *Asa*, and reigned two years; at the end whereof his servant *Zimri*, Captain of one half of his Chariots, slew him at *Tirzah* as he was drinking in the house of *Arza* his steward, and the Prophecie of *Jehu*, the son of *Hanani* was fulfilled against the house of *Baasa*, that it should be made like to that of *Jeroboam*; all of it being destroyed in like manner by *Zimri*. But *Zimri* himself reigned onely seven dayes; for the people then besieging *Gibbethon*, and understanding how things had passed at *Tirzah*, made *Omri* the General of the Army, King. He presently led them against *Tirzah*, and took it; Whereupon *Zimri* withdrew himself into the Pallace, and setting it on fire perished therein, because he also walked in the steps of *Jeroboam*. A Schism now followed, for one half of the people chose *Tibni*, the son of *Gimeth*, and four years (imperfect) as the *Jews* have it: this division continued, till at length *Tibni* dying, *Omri* reigned alone. He is also said to have began his reign in the 31th year of *Asa*, which must be understood of his reigning alone, having slain *Zimri* in the 28th year (beginning) of that King. After he had reigned six years at *Tirzah*, he translated the seat of the Kingdom to *Samaria*, which Citie he had built on an Hill, bought of one *Shemer*, from whom it took the name. Having done worse then any that were before him, he died after he had reigned twelve years. Which if they be accounted from the death of *Zimri*, and so contain his whole reign, then reigned *Ahab* his son, and Successor but two years with him, his 11th year falling into the 38 of *Asa*; but if they be reckoned from the death of *Tibni*, then must *Ahab* have reigned about five years together with him. A.M. 3071. *Asa* 26.

5. *Ahab* exceeded in wickednesse all his predecessors, not onely living in the sins of *Jeroboam*, but marrying *Jezebel* the daughter of *Ethbaal*, King of *Sidon*, whose God *Baal* he served and worshipped. For this, through the prayer of the Prophet *Elijah*, it rained not upon the Land for three years; but at the end thereof he prayed again, and the Heavens gave rain. He took occasion to shew the vinity of the Idol *Baal*, and then slew his Priests; for which being threatened by *Jezebel*, he fled into the desert to Mount *Horeb*. Against *Ahab* came up twice *Benhadad*, King of *Syria*; once with 32 petty Kings, and both times with great forces, but still was overthrown, and at the latter time yielded himself. *Ahab* honourably received him, and making a league with him, let him go in safety; for which he was sharply rebuked by a Prophet, and told that his life should go for the life of *Benhadad*, and his own people for his people; but there followed a peace betwixt *Israel* and *Syria* for three years. In this space *Ahab* fell sick for *Naboth*'s Vineyard, who being by *Jezebel*'s procurement accused of blasphemy, was stoned to death, and so *Ahab* enjoyed the Vineyard by way of confiscation. For this so wicked a fact severe judgement was pronounced against him and *Jezebel*, by *Elijah*; the execution whereof by a temporary repentance they caused to be pro-

## SECT. 4.

be prorogued. But the three years of the peace being expired, he renewed the War with *Syria*; for that *Benhadad* having engaged to restore such Cities, as he had taken, refused to surrender *Ramoth-Gilead*. Four hundred false Prophets perswaded him to undertake the Expedition; onely *Micajah* went from God dissuaded him from it. With him joyned *Jehosaphat* King of *Judah*, whose Son *Jehoram* had married *Athaliah* his daughter. But going down both together, *Ahab* received a wound by an arrow, and thereof died, that day, in the 22th year of his reign.

*Ahaziah*.

6. *Ahaziah* his Son succeeded him, whom he had formerly made his Associate in the Kingdom, and reigned 2 years in all; being said to have begun his reign in the seventeenth year of *Jehosaphat* King of *Judah*, because his Father then dyed, having reigned 21 years, and some part of another. After *Ahab*'s death, *Moab* fell off from *Israel*, to which it had been subject ever since the dayes of *David*. *Ahaziah* falling sick, of a fall which he had through a lattise in his upper Chamber, sent to consult *Baal-zebub* the god of *Eckron* about his recovery; but the Lord commanded *Elijah* to meet the Messengers, and denounce death to him for this his sin. Hereat *Ahaziah* being angry, sent two Captains with their fifties, one after another, to fetch him to him; but he called for fire down from Heaven, which consumed them: then being intreated by the third, he went with him to the King, where denouncing the same to his face, *Ahaziah* accordingly died, not long after. Him his Brother *Joram* followed in the 18th year of *Jehosaphat* King of *Judah* ending, who wrought evil in the sight of the Lord, but not like his Father and Brother; for he put away the Image of *Baal*, erected by his Father, yet cleaved to the sin of *Jeroboam* the Son of *Nebat*, who made *Israel* to sin, because of his carnall interest; all the Kings of *Israel* accounting it an especial piece of policy, to busie the people in the worship of the golden Calves. Chap. 3.

*Joram*.

7. *Joram* made War upon the *Moabites* which had revolted, in conjunction with *Jehosaphat* King of *Judah*, and the King of *Edom* his Tributary, *Elisha* the Prophet miraculously providing the Armies of water, and promising them Victory. When the Sun arose and shone upon the Pits full of water, it appeared, to the *Moabites*, blood; so that they concluding their Enemies to have fallen one upon another, came out to take the plunder of the field; but finding other entertainment, were repelled with great consternation and losse. The *Israelites* then falling upon the Countrey, made havock of all things, and besieged *Melha* King of the *Moabites*, in *Kir-hazareth*, who being streightened, attempted with 700 Men to break through to the King of *Edom*, but could not; whereupon taking his Son, (his own some think, others the King of *Edom*'s) which should have reigned in his stead, he offered him for a burnt-offering upon the wall. This spectacle seemed so horrible, as raised indignation against *Israel*, and such pity towards the Man driven by extreme necessity, (as *Josephus* telleth it), that being mindfull of the mutability of humane affairs, they raised the Siege and departed.

8. *Benhadad* King of *Syria* made severall attempts upon *Israel*, and besieging *Samaria*, reduced it unto extreme necessity by Famine. Him *Hazeael* his Servant slew, and possessed himself of his Kingdom; but having received, together with it, the succession of the War, *Jehoram* went up against him, and was accompanied by *Ahaziah* King of *Judah* to *Ramoth-Gilead*. Here receiving a wound, he returned to *Iezreel*, to be cured; but the Army was left under severall Captains, amongst which was *Jehu* the Son of *Jehosaphat*; to whom *Elisha* sent one of the Sons of the Prophets, to anoint him King. He was presently received as such by the Army, and returning to *Iezreel*, slew *Joram*, (and gave *Ahaziah* his death's wound) after he had reigned twelve years. He caused *Iezabel* to be thrown down out of a window, where her carkeise was eaten by the Dogs; after which writing Letters to *Samaria*, he procured Seventy Sons of *Ahab* to be slain, and their heads sent to him. Then going thither, he slew 42 persons in his way, of the kindred of *Ahaziah* King

*Jehu* anointed King.

Destroyeth the family of *Ahab*.

A. M. 3103. *Jehosaphat* 18.

2 King. 1.

Chap. 3.

Chap. 8.

Chap. 9.

A. M. 3117.

*Athalie* 1.

Chap. 10.

SECT. 4. King of *Judah*, who were going to visit *Iehoram* and *Iesabel*: at *Samaria* he put to death all the Priests of *Baal*, and burnt the Temple with the Images. Yet took he no heed to walk in the Law of the Lord God of *Israel*, with all his heart, departing not from the sin of *Ieroboam*. For his executing of justice upon the house of *Ahab*, the Lord promised that his seed of the fourth generation should sit upon his Throne; Yet because of the rottenness of his heart, he began to cut *Israel* short in his dayes, by the means of *Hazeal*, who now subdued not onely the *Gileadites*, but also whatsoever the *Israelites* possessed beyond *Jordan*, raging with cruelty again Man, Woman, and Child, as *Elisba* had foretold him. *Iehu* coming to the Kingdom at the same time as *Ahabiah* began her usurpation in *Judah*, reigned full 28 years, and then died.

*Jehoahaz*, 9. *Jehoahaz* his Son succeeded him, in the 23<sup>th</sup> year of *Iosh* the Son of *Abaziah* King of *Judah*, who did evil in the sight of the Lord, in the sin of *Ieroboam*; a grove being also in *Samaria*. *Hazeal* mightily oppressed *Israel* all his dayes, so that to him were left but 50 Horse-men, 10 Chariots, and 10000 Foot-men. Yet the Lord was intreated by him, and sent *Israel* a Deliverer; notwithstanding which, yet Prince and People remained incorrigible. After he had reigned seventeen years he died, and left his Kingdom to his Son *Iosh*, who also reigned with him about three years, for that he began his reign in the 37<sup>th</sup> year of *Iosh* King of *Judah*, and is held by the Jews to be that Deliverer, mentioned to have been sent by God. He overcame the *Syrians* thrice, as dying *Elisba* foretold him (whom he visited, and consulted about the affairs of his Kingdom); and thereby recovered the Cities lost to *Hazeal* by his Father. Upon the occasion formerly mentioned, he took *Jerusalem*, with *Abaziah* the King of *Judah*, and, breaking down the wall of the City 400 cubits, plundered the House of the Lord and the Kings house. He also was guilty of *Ieroboam*'s sin, and died after he had reigned together with his Father, and by himself sixteen years.

*Ieroboam* the Second, 10. His Son came after him, *Ieroboam* by name, whom God made instrumental to preserve *Israel*; nay to raise it to the highest top of greatness it arrived at. For he recovered *Damascus* and *Hamath*, which had by right belonged to the Tribe of *Judah*, with whatsoever the *Syrians* had taken from his Predecessors, from the ancient border of the entrance of *Hamath*, to the Sea of the Plains, or the Lake *Asphaltites*, as *Ionas* the Prophet the Son of *Amithai* had foretold, the same with him that prophesied against *Ninive*, being of *Gath-Hepher*, a Town of the Tribe of (*k*) *Zebulon*, in (*l*) *Galile of the Gentiles*; out of which therefore arose a Prophet, though the learned Pharisees so earnestly urged the contrary to *Nicodemus*. In this King's dayes also prophesied *Hosea*, and *Amos*, called from the Herd in *Judea*, to prophecy to the people of *Israel*. Notwithstanding all that God did for *Ieroboam*, he did evil also in his sight, accompanying his Ancestors in the sin of *Ieroboam* the son of *Nebat*. He reigned 41 years, and after his death the affairs of his Kingdom fell to decay; way being made for the ruine of his house, and an Anarchie ensuing for 24 years. For so it must be, if *Zachariah* his Son began not his reign till the 38<sup>th</sup> of *Hzziah* King of *Judah*, the last of *Ieroboam* falling in with the 14<sup>th</sup> of this King, seeing *Hzziah* is said to have begun his reign in the 27<sup>th</sup> of his, and he reigned 41 years. This may well seem strange in this Kingdom, where Princes were often made away by Usurpers; but God had promised *Iehu*, that his Children should reign to the fourth Generation; and this *Zachariah* might be a posthumus, or however very young, and therefore not admitted by the Nobility to govern, till he had attained to such ripeness, as was convenient for so great a charge.

*Shallum*, 11. *Zachariah*, doing evil in the sight of the Lord, as did his Ancestors, reigned but six moneths, being then slain by *Shallum* the Son of *Iabesh* who reigned in his stead in the 39<sup>th</sup> year of *Azariah* King of *Judah*. He enjoyed his usurped royaltie but a short space, being after two moneths served so himself by *Menahem* the Son of *Gadi*, who also reigned in his stead. *Menahem* smote *Tiphshah* and all that were therein, with the Coasts thereof from *Tirzah*,

Chap. 13.

A. M. 3145.  
Joah. 23.A. M. 3159.  
Joah. 37.

Chap. 14.

A. M. 3175.  
Amaz. 16.(k) Joah. 19.  
23.  
(l) Isa. 9. 1.

2 Kings 15.

A. M. 3238.  
Hazzia. 38.Pul King of  
Assyria invadeth  
Israel.

Pekabiah.

Pekah.

The Reubenites,  
Gadites, and the half  
Tribe of Manasse,  
carried into  
Captivity into  
Assyria.Hoshea the  
nineteenth &  
last King of  
Israel.The Israelites  
carried away  
Captivity.The Samaritans placed  
in their room.

*Tirzah*, because they opened not to him; and ripped up the Women with child. He did evil in the sight of the Lord, not departing from the sin of *Ieroboam* all his dayes; wherefore God stirred up the Spirit of *Pul* King of *Assyria*, who invaded the Land; but he gave him 1000 talents of Silver, which he wrested from the richest of his Subjects, to confirm the Kingdom in his hand. After he had held it ten years he died, and his Son *Pekabiah* reigned in his stead, in the 50<sup>th</sup> year of *Azariah*; so that *Menahem* having begun his reign in the 39<sup>th</sup> of that King, and reigning but ten years, here seemeth an *Inter-regnum* of a year or more to have happened after his death, except that be admitted, which some think, viz. that *Menahem* did not peaceably enjoy the Kingdom till about a year after *Shallum*'s death, purchasing it then of *Pul*; so that beginning his reign in the 39<sup>th</sup> of *Azariah*, or *Hzziah*, must be understood peaceably, and in that year ending. Then must *Pekabiah* have begun his reign in the very beginning of the 50<sup>th</sup> year, and so a few moneths being added to the ten years of *Menahem*, at the furthest, there will be no need of an *Inter-regnum*. *Pekabiah* treading in the wicked steps of his Predecessors, reigned two years and then was slain by *Pekah* the Son of *Remaliah*, one of his Captains, who possessed himself of his Seat.

12. *Pekah* joined with the King of *Syria* against *Abaz* King of *Judah*, slew in *Judah* 120000 in one day, all valiant Men, because they had forsaken the Lord God of their Fathers. *Zichri* a mighty Man of *Ephraim*, slew *Maaseiah* the King's Son, *Azrikam* the Governour of the house, and *Elkanah* that was next the King. Two hundred thousand were also carried Captive, with much spoil, all which *Oded* the Prophet, when they came to *Samaria*, procured to be sent back. This made *Ahab* purchase the help of *Tiglath-Pileser* King of *Assyria*, who first destroying the King and Kingdom of *Damascus*, carried the inhabitants thereof into Captivity; and then came against *Pekah* and transported the *Reubenites*, *Gadites*, and the half Tribe of *Manasse* into *Halab*, *Habor*, *Hara*, and to the River *Gozan*: then crossing *Jordan*, he set upon *Galilee* and carried away the inhabitants thereof with all the *Naphtalites* (which remained of those that were left by *Captives* into *Bethdada*) into *Assyria*. *Pekah* doing evil in the sight of the Lord, after he had reigned twenty years, was slain by *Hosea* the Son of *Elah* who usurped the Kingdom.

13. *Hosea* the 19<sup>th</sup> King of *Israel* began his reign in the 12<sup>th</sup> year of *Abaz* King of *Judah*, who reigned seven or eight years with his Father *Joaham*, and began to reign by himself in the 17<sup>th</sup> year of *Pekah*; so that *Hosea* may truly be said to have begun his reign in the 20<sup>th</sup> year from the inauguration of *Joaham*; which we must say except we allow of a kind of *Inter-regnum* for eight or nine years, during which time, *Hosea* for the stirs that hapned could not peaceably enjoy the Kingdom; and then must we lengthen out the time of this Kingdom longer by so many years. *Hosea* did evil in the sight of the Lord, but not as the Kings of *Israel* which were before him. Against him came up *Salmanasser* King of *Assyria*, and made him his tributary Vassal, which he continued for some time, till weary of this bondage, he conspired with 30 King of *Egypt*, and refused to pay his tribute: Hereupon, *Salmanasser* subdued first the *Moabites*, lest he should have an Enemy at his back, then invaded *Israel* and besieged *Samaria*, in the fourth year of *Hezekiah* King of *Judah*, and the seventh of *Hosea*. At the end of three years (in the sixth of *Hezekiah*, and the ninth of *Hosea*) he took the City, and carried the *Israelites* Captive into *Assyria*, where he placed them in *Chalach*, *Chabor*, by the River of *Gosan*, and in the Cities of *Media*, because they had not obeyed the voice of the Lord, but transgressed the Covenant. In their Seat he placed certain *Persians* that inhabited by the River *Chusbut*, and afterwards, in distinction from the Jews, were called *Samaritans*. This hapned to *Israel*, for their abominable Idolatry, 255 years after the rent of the Kingdom; so that this Schism lasted five Jubilees and ten years; in the 832 after the entrance into *Canaan*, according to *Ludovicus Capellus*, and therefore in the end of the seventeenth Jubilee from that; in the

SECT. 4.

A. M. 3250.  
Hazzia 50.

2 Chron. 28.

1 Chron. 9.  
26.2 Kings 17. 18.  
A. M. 3272.  
Ahab. 12.A. M. 3280.  
Ezechia 6.



SECT. 3. the year of the World 3380. or 3381. and so in the end of the 69 Jubily from the Creation; 134 before the destruction of *Jerusalem*, and the Captivity of *Judah*.

## CHAP. IV.

## The most ancient Kingdom of Egypt, Contemporary with the Babylonian Empire.

*Cham* the first inhabitant of Egypt after the Flood. 1. **T**His Countrey falling, at the Division of the Earth, to *Cham* and his Posterity, seemeth also to have been inhabited by himself. For, thence (a) *David* knew it by the name of the Land of *Ham*; (b) *Plutarch* found it was called *Chemia*; *Stephanus*, *Hermochymius*; the Inhabitants themselves calling it (c) *Kam*, who distinguished their *Nomi*, by this Allusion, into *Chemus*, *Psochemus*, *Pstachemus*; the Oracle of *Jupiter Hammon* in *Africk*, and the names of *Ammonis*, and *Ammonia*; given to that Countrey, challenge no other Original. It is not probable that these names should be onely given to it upon this account, that part of his Posterity here fixed themselves, for then the like might have been expected concerning many other places. *Misraim* his second son succeeded him; or he, to whom *Moses* giveth this name, as father of the Inhabitants of the Land of *Misraim*; it scarce being the name of a man, because not of the singular number. The Scripture calleth *Egypt* (d) often by the name of *Major*, which seemeth the singular of *Misraim* contracted from *Mesoraïm*, &c. signifieth a fortified place; no Countrey in the World being more fenced by its natural situation. The *Arabians* at this day know the Metropolis *Alcaïro* by the name of *Mesre*, and the *Egyptians* anciently called their first moneth *Mesori*. The dual word *Misraim* seemeth to hint at the distinction of *Egypt* into (e) *Upper* and *Lower*; whereof the former, watered by the River *Nile*, running in one Channel, was divided into *Thebais* and *Heptanomis*. (*Thebais* being called the Land of *Païbros*, and distinguished from *Egypt* by *Isaiah* and *Jeremiah*) and the lower part was by the *Greeks* called *Delta*, from the Triangular Figure thereof; the River being herein divided into many branches.

2. This *Misraim* is thought to be the same with *Osiris*, so much spoken of by the *Egyptians*, and accounted the son of *Saturn*, the eldest of the gods, and also the son of *Jupiter Hammon*. For *Osiris* being by the *Greeks* named *Dionysus*, \* one telleth us that he had this appellation both from his Father and Countrey, the former part of the word noting the one, and the later the other, viz. *Nysa* a Citie of *Arabia Felix*, built by *Cham*, in which he seemeth to have been born. From the reign of *Osiris*, to the coming down of *Alexander the Great* into *Egypt*, the Priests reckoned, some above 10000 years, others little lesse then 23000. But several forms of years being used in several Nations we are to suppose theirs to have been measured rather by the course of the Moon through the Zodiack, than that of the Sun. *Jacobus Cappelus* therefore thinketh 1889 years to have passed from the reign of this *Osiris* to *Alexander* his going down into *Egypt*, the beginning whereof he fixeth at the 1778th year of the World; 100 and odd years after the Flood, about the same time that *Nimrod* his Nephew began his principality at *Babylon*. This *Osiris* is feigned by the *Egyptians* to have married his sister *Isis*, and they make them the true *Bacchus* and *Ceres*. Much they are both reported to have done for the benefit of mankind, by bringing it to civility; to him they ascribe the finding out of *Agriculture*, and to her the invention of *Corn* and *Laws*. He built *Thebes* the ancient seat of the Kings, with 100 Gates; travelled into the greatest part of the World to teach men civility with the use of *Corn* and *Wine*, taking *Pan* along with him, who being had in great reverence amongst the *Egyptians*, dedicated a Citie to

The same with *Osiris*.

*Osiris*, and *Isis* their renowned acts.

(a) *Psal.* 105. 23, 27.  
(b) *In* 16ide.  
(c) *Isidorus* & *Hieronymus* in *Genesis*. vide cap. 1. Parag. 22.

*Leges* Bocharti *Phaleg*. l. 4. c. 24.  
(d) 2 Kings 19. 24.  
*Esaïas* 19. 6. *Mich.* 7. 12.

(e) *Orosius* l. 1. c. 2.

*Diodorus Siculus* lib. 1. pag. 1.

to him by the name of *Chemmis*. In his time lived *Hermes*, or *Mercurius*; and *Hercules*, who being otherwise called *Gygon*, or *Gygnon*, is said to have helped the gods against the *Gyants*. *Osiris*, when he returned was killed by his wicked brother *Typhon*.

*Osiris* killed by *Typhon*.  
*Typhon* punished by *Isis*, and her son *Orus*.

The Sacred Bull *Apis*.

3. *Typhon*, seizing upon the Kingdom, was by *Isis*, through the help of her son *Orus*, dispossessed again of it, and his life; after which gathering together the 26 parts of her husbands body (into which he had mingled it) the instituted to him divine honours, ordering that the several Tribes of the Priests should dedicate some one of their living Creatures to him, and for him worship it as long as it lived; then at its death, seeking out another of the same kind, to do as much to it. Several things were consecrated in several places, yet by a general consent the Sacred Bull, called *Apis*, or *Maneris*, was most valued, and chiefly adored, because of the special help that kind of Creature affordeth to Tillage. This Bull was black all over, having onely a square white spot in his forehead, saith *Herodotus*; on his right side saith *Pliny*, like to a Crescent, being also sacred to the Moon, as *Marcellinus* will have it. On the back he had the image of an Eagle, a knot on the tongue like to a Crab, and on his Tail double hairs. This kind of beast did the *Egyptians* worship as the greatest God with astonishing veneration, as *Macrobius* termeth it, till it had lived several years; but not being suffered to passe a certain term, it was then drowned by the Priests. Being dead, a great and solemn mourning there was untill another could be found with the same marks. Now some make this beast to be worshipped in honour of *Apis*, King of the *Argives*, who going down into *Egypt*, was there Deified after his death, and called *Serapis*. But there having been several Kings in divers places of that name, they are confounded one with another.

4. Nothing, indeed, but uncertainties attend the most ancient History of that Nation; no two Authors agreeing berwix themselves, concerning the succession of the *Egyptian* Kings. This is not onely to be attributed to the force of time, but the unfaithfulness of their Priests, who having it committed to their charge, to record the Memorables of their Countrey, foysted things of their own heads into the story, concealed from the Natives whatsoever made against their own profit, and from strangers all things that tended to the dishonour of their Countrey. Out of such a kind of design they related not the same things to such as travelled thither with a desire to be informed; so that from the corrupt Fountains of their records have proceeded the Histories of several, who pretending to have taken them out of the very Archives, are no lesse dissonant amongst themselves then from the truth. The Catalogues of their Kings are full of inextricable Labrynth; *Manetho* being of no credit, because of his notable lying, and all those who profess to follow him, as *Josephus*, *Africanus*, *Emsebius*, *Syncellus*, *Scaliger*, *Usher*, and others, not agreeing in their ranking, and ordering of them.

The Dynasties of the Egyptian Kings.

5. Several Dynasties are made to have preceded the time of *Abraham*, with whose birth (as it is placed in the 43th year of *Ninus*) the beginning of the 16th is joyned. Much labour is spent by some, in an endeavour to clear the order of these Dynasties, and to expound them. But, if they should be allowed of; little more then 200 years are to be assigned to the continuance of all the first 15. because the passage of *Cham*, and his posterity from the Mountains of *Ararat* into *Egypt*, and the establishment of a formal Government there, could scarce be performed within one Century after the Flood; time for the increase of mankind, and the unpassableness of the earth duely considered; except we cast the beginning of the first Dynastie back beyond the Flood. It hath been thought therefore that these were not several successions of Kings, which continued for so small a time, but rather certain Ranks and Orders of Governours under the Kings; who might be content to enjoy their ease and quiet together with the Dignity (as the Kings did which *Joseph* served) whilst the management of publick affairs was wholly committed to these Regents, or Lieutenants, of sundry linages; or sorts of men, who by their actions might leave greater impressions upon posterity than the Kings them-

SECT. 4.

*Diadema*.

*August. de Civit. Dei* l. 18. c. 5.

*Ensch.*



whose reign neither dareth he to define; though he be exact, in the years of other Princes, as *Josephus* noteth. Now this *Amenophis*, forsooth, was told by a Priest of the same name, That he might see the gods, if he would cleanse his Kingdom from *Lepers*, and other unclean persons. He, being a very religious Man, gathered all the infirm out of the Land, to the number of 80000, whom he sent with others to cut stones on the East of the River *Niles*; there being amongst them also some of the learned Priests infected with *Leprosie*. Because favour was shewed towards them, the Priest who would have had them destroyed, feared much the displeasure of the gods, as well against himself as the King, and foreseeing they should have power over *Egypt* for thirteen years, he durst not tell the King so much, but wrote a Book concerning the matter, and then killed himself; which cast the King (you must know) into a great melancholly.

12. But being still desired to do something for the security of the diseased people, he gave them *Avaris*, the City of the Shepherds, now not inhabited: whither being entred, and perceiving the place to be very advantageous for rebellion, they made choice of *Osarsiphus*, one of the Priests of *Heliopolis*, for their Captain, swearing to obey him in all things. He presently established for Law, that they should not worship the gods, nor abstain from such creatures as were most sacred to the *Egyptians*; to marry with none but those that were tied to them by the same league, and commanding many other things (especially such as he knew contrary to *Egyptian* customs) he prepared for War. Then sent he to the Shepherds at *Jerusalem*, formerly expelled by *Themusus*, to open their condition to them, and to invite them to give their assistance against *Egypt*. The Shepherds readily closed with the motion, and all, to the number of 200000, marched down to *Avaris*. *Amenophis* much startled hereat, especially because of the Prediction of the Priest, committed his Son, but five years old, to a Friend; and, together with *Apis* and his other gods, went into *Ethiopia*, where he was received with all his multitudes of Subjects, and was kindly entertained by the King, who made provision for them for these thirteen years. The *Solymitans*, or Shepherds, with the unclean multitude, made now great havock of all things in *Egypt*, burning Villages and Cities, and raging against the sacred Animals with their Priests, whom they compelled to be their Butchers, and drive away naked; the forementioned Priest still giving Laws, and framing their Policy; who being from *Osiris* the *Heliopolitan* god called *Osarsiphus*, now changed his name into *Moses*. But at the end of the thirteen years, *Amenophis* returned with great power out of *Ethiopia*, and with the assistance of his Son *Rampses*, fell upon the Shepherds and unclean multitude, whereof killing many they pursued the rest as far as the borders of *Syria*.

13. These ridiculous Lyes are much more augmented by others. *Cheremon*, who professed to write the History of *Egypt*, giveth the same name *Amenophis* to the King, and of *Rhamesses* to his Son; but addeth, that the Goddesse *Isis* appeared to the former, complaining that her Temple was destroyed by War. That *Phrisiphantes* a sacred Scribe, told the King, that if he would be freed from terrors in the night, he must purge *Egypt* from polluted Men: he therefore gathering out 250000 diseased persons, cast them out of his borders: That the two Scribes *Moses* and *Joseph* (the *Egyptian* name of the former being *Tisibes*, and of the later *Petsephus*) became their Leaders, and, coming to *Pelusium*, found there 380000, which *Amenophis* having left behind would not convey into *Egypt*: with those they struck up a league, and undertook an Expedition against the Land. *Amenophis* not expecting the issue of their attempt, fled into *Ethiopia*, leaving his wife big with child, which lying hid in a Cave, brought forth a Son called *Messenes*. He, when he came to age expelled the *Jews*, to the number of 200000 into *Syria*, and received back his Father *Amenophis* out of *Ethiopia*.

14. *Lyfimachus* an Historian, going beyond the other two in the maliciousness of his Lyes, wrote, that when *Bocchoris* reigned in *Egypt*, the people of the *Jews*, infected with *Leprosie*, Scab, and other diseases, resorted to

to the Temple to beg for their living, and many being infected with this disease, barrenesse fell upon the Land. *Bocchoris*, sending to the Oracle of *Ammon* about it, received this answer; that the Temples were to be cleansed from impure and prophane persons, who were to be cast out into the Desert; but the scabbie and Leprous should be drowned, the Sun nor enduring they should live; which being done, and the Temples purified, fruitfulness would be restored to the Earth. *Bocchoris* accordingly ordered the Priests to gather all the prophane out of the Temples, and give them up to Soldiers, who were to carry them into the Wildernesse; and the Leprous and Scabbie to be wrapped in Lead, and cast into the Sea; which being drowned accordingly, the other were exposed to perish in the Desert. But those, consulting for their own safety, kept fires that night, and strict watch; then, the day following, a solemn Fast to God for their preservation. On the next, counsell was given them by a certain Man named *Moses*, that they should march on in one body, till they arrived at some good Soil. Then commanded he them to be kind to no man, to give bad counsell rather than good, and overthrow the Temples of the gods, as many as they should find; which being approved of, they travelled through the Desert, and, after much trouble, came to a fruitfull Soil, where using the Inhabitants very injuriously, and rifling and burning the Temples, they arrived at length in that Country, since called *Judaea*, and building a City feared themselves there. This City was at first called *Hierosyla*, from the spoiling of the Temples; but afterwards, to shun the disgrace of the occasion, they changed it into *Hierosylime*, and took the name of *Hierosolymitans*.

Apion his Lyes.

15. Further than this; *Apion* a Grammarian of *Alexandria*, as he counterfeited himself, but born in *Oasis*, a Town of *Egypt*, amongst severall other Lyes against the *Jews*, wrote, that he had received from the eldest of the *Egyptians*, how *Moses* was a *Heliopolitan*, and, being brought up according to the customs of his Country, changed the rites thereof at his own pleasure. That he led the Leprous, Blind, and Lame, out of *Egypt*; but fairly saith, it was in the first year of the seventh *Olympiad*, the same wherein *Carthage* was built by the *Tyrians*, which happened about 150 years after *Hiram* the King of *Tyre* (as appeareth out of the *Phœnician Annals*) with whom *Solomon* was contemporary. He mentioned the same number of infirm persons as *Lyfimachus*, but addeth a reason why the Sabbath was so called. Travelling six dayes together, saith he, on the seventh day they rested in *Judaea*, for that they were sorely plagued with Ulcers in their privy parts, and named it Sabbath, from the *Egyptian* word *Sabbatosis*, which signifieth that disease. Norwithstandng that he saith they finished their journey in six dayes, yet he further writeth, that *Moses* hid himself for forty dayes upon the Mount *Sinai* (which lyeth betwixt *Egypt* and *Arabia*) whence coming down, he gave Laws unto the *Jews*. As for the *Jewish* Religion, he was not ashamed to write, that in their Temple was set the head of an Ass made of gold, and of great value, which being there worshipped, was taken thence when *Antiochus Epiphanes* spoiled the place.

16. Such absurdities were delivered by the *Egyptians*; and those who out of desire to gratifie them, have, after their example, endeavoured to conceal the truth; to which *Josephus* in his two Books against *Apion*, hath abundantly answered. Severall reasons have moved them to corrupt their Originall Records. The *Israelites* growing great in that Country, out of it they returned to the promised Land by the stretched out arm of God, to the great reproach of their cruel and imperious Lords. The difference of religion raised also betwixt the two Nations (as betwixt the *Jews* and the whole world) mortall enmity, whilst the one worshipped the onely true God, and the base and degenerate spirit of the other fell down to things far inferior to themselves; which difference some (though but few) persons discerning, were ambitious to become Profelytes to the *Jewish* Doctrine: Hence again arose such Envy, that some descended to that indiscretion and weaknesse, as to contradict their own most ancient and authentick Writers. The in-bred blindness of Men's

Josephus Lib. 2. contr. Apionem.

Reason for these Lyes raised by the *Egyptians*, and others against the *Jews*.

minds, increased by Paganish Education, hath so far prevailed, that the (b) greatest part of Heathen Writers have in this contention sided with the Egyptians, (otherwise contemptible enough in their eyes) and subscribed to what they have said concerning the Original of the Jewish Nation; though some (c) have not given credit to such reports.

17. As *Manetho* erreth in the cause of the departure of the Jews out of Egypt, so also in the time thereof, though not so grossly as his Friend *Apion*. *Manetho* nameth the King *Themusis*, by whom they were expelled: Who, if the same with *Amosis*, he lived 230 years before their true departure; and that he is the same appeareth by *Manetho's* Catalogue, taken out of *Josephus*. But (to go on with the storie of the Kings) *Themusis* reigned, according to *Manetho*, 25 years and four moneths after their Expulsion. *Chebron* his Son succeeded him, and reigned thirteen years; next him, *Amenophis* 20 with seven moneths; his Sister *Amesses* 2 and 9 moneths. *Mephres* followed her, and continued twelve years and nine moneths, him *Mephramuthosis*, who reigned 25 and ten moneths; then *Thmosis* nine and eight moneths, *Amenophis* thirty and ten moneths, *Orus* 36 and five moneths. His Daughter *Acencheres* reigned 12 years and one moneth, *Rathoris* her Brother nine years, *Acencheres* twelve and five moneths, another of that name twelve and three moneths, *Armais* four and one moneth, *Armesis* one and four moneths, *Armeses Miamun* Sixty six and two moneths, and lastly *Amenophis* nineteen and 6 moneths. In whose time one who, forsaking *Eusebius*, followeth *Manetho*, in ranking those Kings, holdeth the Israelites to have departed Egypt, and consequently will have this King drowned in the Sea. That *Rameses Miamun* was he, who first began to afflict the Israelites, the length of his reign (as \* one supposeth) maketh probable; whose name also seemeth to him, to have given appellation to one of the Cities, in building of which they were employed.

18. After *Amenophis* reigned *Sethosis*, who having great Forces both by Land and Sea, left his Brother *Armais* deputy of Egypt, and forbidding him the Diadem and meddling with his Wife or Concubines, undertook an Expedition against *Cyprus* and *Phoenicia*, and then against the *Affrians* and *Medes*, all which he brought under, either by the sword or the terror of his name, whereby, elevated in his mind, he confidently marched up and down the East-countries, overturning the Cities and States thereof at his pleasure. Much time being herein spent, his Brother in the mean while acted all things in Egypt contrary to his injunctions, by the advice of his Friends, assuming the Diadem and rebelling. Of this the Chief-Priest secretly gave him intelligence, so that hasting back to *Pelusium*, he recovered his Kingdom. *Manetho* addeth, that this *Sethosis* was also called *Egyptus*, (from whence the Country took the name of Egypt) and this his Brother *Armais* had also the appellation of *Danaus*. If so; then *Amenophis*, who was swallowed up of the Sea, must be taken for *Belus*, the Father of *Egyptus* and *Danaus* according to the Greeks, who not being confounded with the Father of *Ninus* (as by *Mythologists* he is wont to be) is said to have lived 322 years before the destruction of *Troy*, which account Learned *Usher* judgeth fitly to agree with the time of *Amenophis*. He also thinketh *Rameses Miamun* to be *Neptune*, *Mia* coming near to, and therefore seeming to be derived from, *Moy*; which in the ancient Egyptian language, according to *Josephus*, signifieth water. *Neptune* is said also to be Father of *Bufris*, who at this time tyrannizing about the River Nile, cruelly slew such Strangers as came near him. Such a Son indeed was worthy of so cruel a Father as *Rameses Miamun*; and it seemeth likely enough, that the Story of *Bufris* might be taken from his and his Son's cruelty to the Israelites, and so the thing may well enough be applied to *Amenophis*. Further, if we observe what \* another teller us, that the Poets are wont to call cruel and bloody men by the name of *Neptune*, as born of the raging and troublesome Sea; then may we find more reason for *Rameses Miamun* his being so called, because of his inhumanity towards the Israelites and their innocent Children.

19. Now,

(b) As *Diodorus Siculus* in *Eclog.* lib. 34. & 40. *Tacitus Hist.* lib. 5. ad initium. *Justin.* lib. 36. (c) *Strabo* lib. 16. p. 761. *Dion. Cassius* lib. 37.

\* *Usserius Annal. Vet. Test.* ad A. M. 2427. & 2494.

*Manetho apud Josephum* l. 1. contr. *Apionem*.

A. M. 2522.

\* *A. Gellius Noct. Attic.* lib. 15. c. 21.

What the Greeks write concerning *Sethosis*.

His Conquests.

19. Now, to joyn this Storie of the Egyptians with that of the Greeks, (whom yet the other complain of, as corrupting their Antiquities) (d) *Apollo* writeth, how *Neptune*, on *Lybia* the Daughter of *Epaphras* (who being the Son of *Telegonus*, and so the second daughter to *Jasus* King of *Argos*, built *Memphis*, as some say, and reigned in the lower part of Egypt) begat two Sons *Belus* and *Agenor*, whereof the later went into *Phoenicia*, and there reigned. *Belus* obtained Egypt, and of *Anchinos* the Daughter of *Nilus* begot *Egyptus* and *Danaus*. Hesent *Danaus* to inhabit *Africk* or *Lybia* (so called from his Mother); and after *Egyptus* had subdued the Country of the *Melampodi*, or *Black-feet*, named it Egypt after himself, which, according to *Eusebius*, was formerly called *Aeria*, and, according to others, *Potamius*. But he whom *Manetho*, in *Josephus*, calleth *Sethosis*, seemeth to be the same with *Diodorus* his *Sesosis*, and *Sesoftris* of *Herodotus*, concerning whom both of them record (as *Manetho* hath done) very admirable things. Agreeable to what *Manetho* delivereth of *Sethosis*, *Herodotus* (e) writeth, that *Sesoftris* subdued many Nations. (f) *Diodorus* saith, that *Sesoftris* conquered *Arabia* and *Lybia* before his Father's death, and afterwards having a great ambition to do as much by all the World, first secured the affections of his Subjects at home (to keep them in obedience) by his clemency and bounty. Then with an Army of 600000 Foot, 24000 Horse, and 27000 Chariots, he set upon the *Ethiopsians*, towards the South, whom having conquered, he compelled to pay a Tribute of Ebonie, Ivory, and Gold. With a Navy of 400 Ships sent into the Red Sea, he subdued all the maritime Coasts, as far as *India*; he himself with a Land-Army over-running not onely those parts of Asia which afterwards *Alexander* subdued, but beyond *Ganges* all as far as the Ocean it self.

20. After this, he conquered the Nations of *Scythia* as far as the River *Tanais* (which severeth Asia from Europe) and left some of his Egyptians to make a Plantation by the Lake *Maotis*, that gave original to the Nation of the *Colchi*, which the Egyptians supposed they sufficiently proved to be their Colonies from the use of *Circumcision*, imagining that the Jews had also this rite from them. Finally all Asia he subdued, with most of the Islands *Cyclades*; but then passing over into Europe, was in danger of losing his Army for want of Provisions, and by the difficulty of places: therefore in *Thrace* he put bounds to his Expedition, having in all places erected Pillars, wherein was written his successe; and where he found courage, he caused a member of a Man to be ingraven, but where he met with cowardise that of a Woman. At length, after nine years, he returned home with much spoil, where he refreshed, and rewarded his victorious Army. Here he was not idle, but set himself to such works as he thought might eternize his name, wherein he employed none of his naturall Subjects, but the Captives he had brought with him. This the *Babylonians* not enduring, brake out into rebellion, and fortifying a place near the River, held it out in despite of him, till at last by composition they enjoyed a Seat, which they called *Babylon*, in remembrance of their own Country. He raised up great heaps of stones and earth, and to them removed such Cities, as by reason of the lowness of their situation, were obnoxious to inundations from the River: yet, lest there should be want of water, and for convenience of trade, he caused Rivolets to be digged throughout the Land; he also fortified the Country by a wall on the East, and otherwise provided against invasions.

21. For an ostentation of his greatness, he caused such, as being subdued held their Kingdoms of him, or had received new Principalities at his hand, at certain times to come down with their Presents, whom he otherwise used with much respect: but being to go to the Temple, or enter the City, he would loose his Horses out of his Chariot, and be drawn by four of these Princes. At length, having excelled all Men in Conquests, and other Royall Achievements, he fell blind, and killed himself when he had reigned 33 years; for which act he was the more admired by the Egyptians. These amongst other things are reported of *Sesoftris*, before whose Statue many years

(d) Lib. 2.

(e) Lib. 2.

c. 102, &c.

(f) Lib. 1.

p. 34, &c.

His pride.

years after *Darius*, the son of *Hystaspes* causing his own to be erected, the chief Priest contradicted it, alleging that *Darius* had not yet excelled *Sesostris* in honourable actions; with which freedom the King was well pleased, and said, if he lived, he would labour to come no whit short of him. His son succeeded him of the same name and misfortune in the loss of his sight, which to recover he was bid by an Oracle to wash his eyes in the Urine of some woman which never knew any other man than her own husband. Beginning with that of his own wife, he proceeded to make trial of the honesty of many others, but found none effectual to the cure, but the wife of a certain Gardiner, which woman he then married, and burnt all the rest. Many after him followed in order till one *Arnos* came to the Government, who by his Tyranny made way for *Astisanes*, the King of *Aethiopia*. He, using his power with moderation, put no Malefactor to death, but, cutting off their Noses, sent them away into the Confines of *Egypt* and *Syria*, where he built them a City, called from the maimedness of the inhabitants *Rhinocelura*, which was destitute of all sorts of provisions through the barrenness, and unhealthfulness of the place. The soil he chose on purpose, that they might be diverted from idle, and vicious courses, by anxious and effectual care for a livelihood, which they got by a trade of fishing in the adjoining Sea.

22. After his death the *Egyptians* recovered the Sovereignty, and created a King of their own Nation, called *Mendes*. He spent his life in making provision for death by a Sepulcher inimitable for Art, which he made under the notion of a Labyrinth; according to which pattern they believed *Dedalus* to have framed that he made for *Minos*, King of *Crete*, wherein to keep the *Minotaur*. After *Mendes* an Anarchy followed for a long time, till one of ignoble extraction was made King; by the *Egyptians*, named *Cetes*, but by the Greeks *Proteus*, who living in the time of the *Trojan War*, had great skill in Astrology, and the knowledge of winds; whence, and because the Kings of *Egypt* were wont to have several kinds of living Creatures, Trees, Fire, and other things painted, and worn about their heads, the *Greeks* took occasion to invent that fable of his turning himself into all manner of shapes. *Remphis* his Son, and Successor spent his time in the improvement of his revenue and customs, inasmuch that he died far richer than any of his Predecessors, having got together 400000 Talents of Gold and Silver. The next, who was any thing considerable was *Nileus*, who because he took great care about bringing water from the River to furnish the Countrey, changed the name of it from *Egypt* into *Nile*.

23. The 8th. from *Nileus* was *Chemmis*, who being born at *Memphis* reigned fifty years, and built the greatest of the three Pyramids, counted amongst the seven wonders of the World. *Herodotus* writeth that the first King who gave his mind to this work was *Cheops*, and that he prostituted his daughter to raise money for this purpose: That the biggest was twenty years in building by no fewer than 100000 work-men, towards the diet of whom the price of Onions and Garlick onely, amounted to 1600 Talents of silver: That his daughter, of every one who had to do with her, begged a stone, and therewith built a little Pyramid near adjoining. *Diodorus* writeth that the basis of the greatest was on each side 700 foot broad, the height above 600 foot, and at the top it was six Cubits broad, all of solid stone very hard, and of an everlasting substance, which he proveth for that the whole structure in his time remained unchanged and uncorrupted, though raised 1000 years before. But others which within this hundred years have travelled into *Egypt* relate how those monstrous buildings which stand 13 miles off from *Memphis*, and look like Mountains at a distance, are on the North-side much eaten, and consumed with that wind; the *Etesian* winds being there as much purifying as the Southern in other parts. These Piles of stone stand in a sandy place which affordeth not any quarries of stone, some five miles distant from the *Nile*, so that the work may well seem right miraculous, though the *Egyptians* raised many fables thereupon. But so many thousands of men were to be killed

*Sethosis*, or *Se-  
sostris*, the se-  
cond, son to  
the other.

*Astisanes* King  
of *Aethiopia*.

*Mendes*.

After an A-  
narchy.

*Remphis*.

*Nileus*, from  
whom the *Ni-  
leus* named.

*Chemmis* first  
buildeth a  
Pyramid.

*Diodorus*.

*Vide Phicium  
lib. 36. c. 22.*

killed with this toil that one might be fitely buried; which yet they say hapned not to him: For the people were so enraged hereat, that his son durst not there bury him, but laid him in another obscure and ignoble place. And yet he could not contain himself, but to his power must also imitate his father's madness.

24. *Cephren* the brother of *Chemmis* succeeded him, and reigned 56 years, though some would have his son *Chabry* immediately to have followed him. He spent his time the same way, building another Pyramid in workmanship like to the former, but much inferior to it in compass and largeness; being also buried in an obscure place for fear of the rage of the multitude. After *Cephren* followed *Mycerinus* (or *Mycherinus*) the son of *Chemmis*, or *Cheops*, of whom the *Egyptians* made great account, because he reformed much amiss in his Father's and Uncle's dayes. He also built a Pyramid lesse than the other, but in excellency of workmanship far exceeding them. One *Bocchoris* succeeded next, according to *Diodorus*; in body contemptible, but for endowments of mind going beyond all his Predecessors. Then, after a long time came in *Sabac* the *Aethiopian*, and reigned in *Egypt*. But *Herodotus* writeth that *Apychis* succeeded *Mycerinus*, and built a Pyramid of Brick; then followed *Anysis*, who being blind, in his time *Sabacus*, or *Sabac*, invaded *Egypt*, and drove him into the Fens, where he hid himself; but *Africanus* relateth that *Sabac* took *Bocchoris* alive, and burning him quick, reigned in his stead eight years. This cruelty is little agreeable to that humanity which *Herodotus* ascribeth to him, viz. that he put no malefactor to death; but, according to the degree of guilt, imposed upon every one the carriage of so much earth to the place where he dwelt; and hereby the Towns were made much higher, and lesse subject to inundations, at the time of the overflowing of the River. His piety is much commended; for being told by one of the gods, that if he would reign quietly in *Egypt*, he must cut off all the Priests by the middle, he made choice rather to quit his interest in the Kingdom, and the possession thereof, than to hazard the quiet of it, or commit such an act of cruelty. He is thought by some to be the same with *Soo*, King of *Egypt*, who combined with *Hoshea* of *Israel* against *Salmanassar*.

*Sathon*.

*Tirhaka*.

*Psammetichus*.

25. After his departure *Herodotus* brings the blind man out of his lurking hole, where he had now lien fifty years, and maketh him to have recovered the Kingdom. More likely it is that *Sathon* the Priest of *Vulcan* succeeded him, thought to be *Senechus* his son whom *Africanus* placeth after him, and it may seem probable enough that if he forsook the Kingdom himself, yet he might leave his son in the Government. This *Sathon* (or *Sethon*) wholly devoted to his Superstition neglected Military men, and therefore, when *Senacherib* King of *Assyria* invaded *Egypt*, was quite forsaken by them; yet he is said by his importunity so far to have prevailed with his god, that pitching his Tents at *Pelusium*, the Mice did eat the Thongs of the *Assyrian* Targets, and the Horse-Bridles, so that his Enemies were rendered incapable of fighting; and, confounded with fear at so strange an accident, retreated. But whatsoever was done at *Pelusium*, the Prophecies against *Egypt* clearly shew that the *Assyrians* pierced further into the Countrey, and led away a multitude in Captivity. After *Senechus*, *Africanus* placeth *Tiracus* the *Aethiopian*, the same with *Tirhaka*, who affrighted *Senacherib* back into his Countrey, and is said to have made an expedition into *Europe*, and pierced as far as the Pillars of *Heracles*. Him followed an Anarchy of two years, and then happened the Government of twelve men together, which having continued fifteen years, *Psammetichus* one of the twelve, assisted by the *Ionians* and *Carians*, got the power wholly to himself. He reigned 54 years, 29 whereof he spent in the siege of *Azorus*, or *Ashdod* in *Syria*. By placing his *Egyptian* Soldiers in the left Wing of his Army, he gave them such distaste, that, disdaining Strangers should have the chief place, 200000 forsook him, and, do what he could, departing into *Aethiopia*, there seated themselves. He, first of all *Egyptian* Princes, invited the *Greeks*, and others to Trade in his Dominions,

\* *Nahum* 3.  
*Ezay* 20. 30. 31.  
2 *Kings* 18.

A.M. 3288.

*Strabo*.

*Diodorus*.

*Herodotus*.



ons, from which they had been formerly discouraged, either by the severity of his Predecessors, or by giving credit to the fable of *Buſiris*.

26. He left the Kingdom to his son *Neco*, called in Scripture *Pharoh Neco*, who first undertook that fruitless task of cutting a passage from the River *Nile* into the *Red-Sea*, and in that work spent the lives of 120000 men. Undertaking a War at Gods command against the *Assyrian*, *Jofias* King of *Judah* opposed him in the Valley of *Megiddo*, where he was worsted, and so mortally wounded that he died within a short space. After his return he disposed of the Kingdom of *Judah* to *Eliakim*, to whom he gave the name of *Jehojakim*, and made him his Tributary: Him *Nebuchadnezzar* King of *Assyria* withdrawing from his obedience to his own service, *Neco* went up against the *Assyrian* to *Carchemish*, and there was slain as is before (a) shewn from Scripture. *Herodotus* (b) writeth that he got a victory over the *Syrians* in *Magdolum*; and took *Cadytis* in *Syria*, which may well be that *Kadesh* mentioned by (c) *Moses*. He reigned sixteen years, saith *Herodotus*, six saith *Eusebius*, and was succeeded by his son *Pſammis* or *Pſammichus*, who after he had reigned six years made an expedition into *Aethiopia* and died. Him followed *Apries*, his son, called in Scripture *Pharoh Hophra* and *Vaphres*, who invading *Phœnicia*, made War by Land upon *Sidon*. He fought a battel at Sea with the *Tyrians*, whom overthrowing, and returning home with great spoyl, he was so far puffed up, as to perswade himself that no god could deprive him of his Kingdom; so strongly did he think he had established it. But making War upon the *Cyrenæans*, he received from them a great overthrow, and the Souldiers thereupon mutined against him as having wilfully exposed them unto danger. To appease them, he sent one *Amasis* whom they presently chose for their King, and he after some pause accepted their offer. *Apries* fled, but after some time was taken, and by *Amasis* delivered up to his Subjects, who strangled him, having reigned six years.

27. With this report of *Herodotus* agreeth *Diodorus Siculus* his storie, relating how *Apries* vanquished the *Cyprians* and *Phœnicians* in a Sea-fight, took by force and demolished *Sidon*, wan the other Towns of *Phœnicia* with the Isle of *Cyprus*, and finally perished, as is before rehearsed, when he had reigned 22 years. But others of late considering the more sure Testimony of Scripture, and how *Egypt* was promised to *Nebuchadnezzar* as wages for the service he had done against *Tyre*; how *Pharoh* and his Army should be slain by the sword, and the *Jews* in *Egypt*, and *Pharoh Hophra* delivered into the hands of his Enemies as *Zedekiah* had been; resolve that the *Egyptian* Priests notably deluded those Historians, hiding the disgrace and bondage of their Nation. Therefore it is thought fit rather to believe the report of *Josephus*, that *Nebuchadnezzar* in the 23<sup>th</sup> year of his reign, and the 5<sup>th</sup> after the destruction of *Jerusalem* Conquered *Egypt*; killed the King thereof, and appointed another in his stead. Some think *Amasis* might be used as an instrument by *Nebuchadnezzar*, and for that was made Governour by him; others that the Deputy, or Vice-Roy, which he had set over the Land was slain by *Amasis*. Agreeable to this later opinion, the Army of *Ionians* and *Carians* are held to have been none other than the Garrisons of Mercenaries left by the *Assyrian*, for the Guard of his Viceroy, and custody of this his new subdued Province: as likewise the Company returning from *Cyrene* and *Barce*, who, together with the friends of such as were slain in that expedition, deposed, & slue *Apries*, are conceived to have been the *Egyptian* Fugitives, which then recovered their own Countrey, seeing that of the Prophet was verified: *At the end of forty years will I gather the Egyptians from the people where they were scattered, and I will bring again the Captivity of Egypt, and will cause them to return into the Land of Pathros, into the Land of their habitation, and they shall be there a small Kingdom.*

28. *Amasis* being a man of mean extraction, and perceiving himself upon that account, despised of his people, took a Golden Vessel wherein he and his Guests had used to wash their feet, and thereof made an image of a god, which

(a) Chap. 3.  
sect. 3. Paragr.  
18.  
(b) L. 2. c. 159.  
(c) Num. 20.  
16.  
A.M. 3396.  
V.C. 145.  
*Josakim* 4.

A.M. 3426.  
*Nebuchad.* 30.  
*Aſſyagis* 15.

Ezek. 29. 18,  
19.  
Jerem. 43. and  
44.

*Herodotus*.

which when the *Egyptians* worshipped with great reverence, he called them together, and comparing his Original with the former use of the Gold, convinced them of that equal reverence which the change of both ought to beget in them. Under him the *Egyptians* boasted that their Countrey was most happy, no fewer then 1200 Towns of good more flourishing therein, in his dayes. He made a Law that all men should yearly give account how they lived, which if they could not prove to be by some honest calling, they were to be punished with death; and this, *Solon* is said to have translated to *Athens*. He being the first of all others that took *Cyprus*, reigned 54. or 55 years. It seemeth probable enough that he revolted from *Cyrus*, being before tributary to the *Babylonian* Empire (though the Priests hid this amongst other things from *Herodotus* and others); and that this was the chief cause, whatever is pretended, why *Cambyses* came down and conquered his Kingdom. This was not accomplished in his time, he dying in preparation for the War. But his Son *Pſammertius* succeeding him lost all, and so *Egypt* became a Province of the *Persian* Empire; which things involving much of the affairs of *Persia*, and nearly relating to the tragedie of *Cambyses*, are to be referred to a more proper place.

29. The *Egyptians*, accounting themselves the most ancient of all Nations, were not wanting indeed of many reasons to witness their antiquity, although their pride transported them beyond the true *Epoche* of their Original. The Scripture it self witnesseth *Egypt* to have been a mighty Kingdom, every way better replenished then any other Country that we can read of, in so ancient times: in the dayes of *Abraham* it was a flourishing Kingdom, and the *Israelites* were not a People till such time as the *Egyptians* were one of the most flourishing Nations upon Earth. The *Ethiopians* concluded themselves more ancient, because *Egypt*, as they thought; was of old a Sea or Lake, (k) ancient Writers being of opinion, that it was the gift of the River *Nile*, which having once contained within it self all the compasse of the Land, at length warped it up out of it's bowels; so that from it's mud, or dirt, the firm ground proceeded, and became a Continent. They urge, that in the yearly inundations of the *Nile* much mud is left and sticks immovable; that in the mountains of *Egypt* the shells of Fishes are found; that the Springs and Wells there digged, afford water of a brackish taste, as if the reliques of Sea-water yet remained in the Earth: Lastly, they say, that the Island *Pharus* at this day, is scarce a mile distant from *Alexandria*; whereas in the time of (l) *Homer* it was a day and a nights sail off from *Egypt*. But experience sheweth, that for some thousands of years there hath been no accession by any such mud, but that those Towns which anciently stood upon the Shore of the Sea, and River, still continue there. The shells might come from the generall Deluge, being found also in other places as well as *Egypt*. Many describe the Fountain of the Sun at *Heliopolis*, and yet none observe any brackish taste in the water. And as for *Pharus* in the *Trojan* times it was distant from *Canopus*, where *Menelaus* is thought to have arrived, but 120 furlongs; and therefore could not be a day and nights sail from *Egypt*, as *Homer* wrote by virtue of his Poetrick liberty, or rather his ignorance in Geographie.

30. Certainly they had cause enough to charge the *Greeks* with novelty, and to jeer (as they did) at their pedantick pretence to Antiquity; the lustre of any one of their Common-wealths being to that of theirs but as yesterday; their Law and Policy, their Religion and Rites but new upstarts, and (as the *Egyptians* would go about to demonstrate) but copies of their Originall. There was ripeness of literature, civil discipline, and inventions of severall sorts amongst them, before the like did as much as bud forth in *Greece*, *Italy*, *Herod.* l. 2. or other Western Countries. They stick not to instance wherein the *Greeks* c. 49. have borrowed of them. All, or most of the names of their gods, with the superstition belonging to them, were, they say, stolen out of their Country, the Rites being somewhat altered and new stories invented, to blind the World, as to their Originall. *Osiris* they avow to have been the true *Bac-* *Diodorus* l. 2. *chus* or *Dionysus*, in whose Mysteries *Orpheus* the Poet being initiated whilst p. 14. &c. he

*Amasis* his  
Law.

*Pſammertius*.

The Kingdom  
of *Egypt* very  
ancient.

*Egypt* not the  
gift of the  
*Nile*, as was  
generally ima-  
gined.

The antiquity  
of the *Greeks*,  
novelty in  
comparison  
of the  
*Egyptians*.

A. M. 3480.  
V. C. 229.  
*Cambyses* 5.

(k) *Epharus*  
apud *Diodo-*  
*rum*. l. 1. p. 25.  
*Herod.* lib. 2.  
c. 5.  
*Arist.* *Meteor.*  
l. 1. c. 14.  
*Strabo*. l. 12.  
p. 436. D.  
*Plut.* in *Lude*.  
*Plin.* l. 2. c. 85.  
*Amman.* l. 22.  
(l) *Odyss.* l. 4.  
ver. 356.

*Vide* *Brodzi*  
*Miscell.* l. 3.  
c. 5. & *Bo-*  
*charti* *Phaleg*.  
l. 4. c. 24.

he sojourned in *Egypt*, when he was afterwards kindly entertained at *Thebes* in *Boeotia*, to gratify them of that place, raised a Fable of his being born there, and begotten by *Jupiter* on *Semele* the Daughter of *Cadmus*, a certain Bastard having at that time been born of her, and fathered upon *Jupiter*. *Isis* the Sister and Wife of *Osiris*, they affirm to be the true *Ceres*. *Hercules* was an *Egyptian*, nor born immediately before the *Trojan* War, but in the most ancient time, even at the beginning of Mankind, to which season the wearing of a *Club* and *Lyons-skin* was most congruous, when clothes were not as yet found out, as also his cleansing the Country of Monsters and wild Beasts, at that time; the Earth being but inhabited in a scattered manner. *Apollo* in like sort was no other than *Orus*, who was taught the Arts of Prophecy and Healing, by his Mother *Isis*. As to this controversy, is observable the uncertainty of the names of those Heathenish vanities, the same being to some *Isis*, to others *Ceres*, and to others *Themophoris* (or, the Inventor of Laws) to others *Juno*, to others the *Moon*; and to some all those names are one. *Osiris* in like manner, is now taken for *Serapis*, then for *Dionysus*, otherwhiles for *Pluto*, sometimes for *Ammon* and *Jupiter*; and not seldom thought to be *Pan*, as *Diodorus* hath observed.

The uncertainty of the Heathenish Deities.

Colonies pretended to, by the Egyptians.

31. Several Colonies they glory to have sent forth. The first by *Belus* the Son *Libya*, and *Neptune*, into *Babylon*; where, upon *Euphrates*, he constituted *Flaminius* after the custom of *Egypt*, free from all taxes and impositions. These by the *Babylonians* were called *Chaldeans*, who in imitation of the *Egyptian* Priests, and Philosophers, observed the Stars. *Danaus* out of *Egypt* peopled *Argos* the (almost) ancientest City of *Greece*. The Nation of the *Colchi* and the *Jews* they prove theirs by Original, from the rite of *Circumcision*. *Cadmus* and *Phanix* his Brother they report to have been Natives of their *Egyptian Thebes*, whence the former translated the name of that City into *Greece*: but *Agenor* his Father, as is believed, (being the Brother of *Belus* and Uncle to *Egyptus* and *Danaus*) came thence into *Phanicia*, then have they further occasion to boast of a Colony led by him into that maritime tract. The *Athenians* they prove to have been a Colony, led by *Cecrops* from *Sais* in *Egypt*, for that they alone called their City *Astus*, from a place so named in their Country, and because the members of their Common-wealth were distinguished into three ranks; of *Noblemen*, who only were capable of honours as the *Egyptian* Priests; *Country-men* who bare Arms agreeable to that sort of people in *Egypt*, who being called *Husbandmen*, afforded Soldiers for the Wars; lastly, *Artificers*, exercising manual and common Arts, which fitly answereth to the custom of that place. Besides *Cecrops*, *Petes* the Father of *Mnestheus* and *Eristheus* were of the *Egyptian* extraction; of whom the later carrying great store of Corn out of *Egypt* to *Athens*, thereby obtained the Kingdom, and gave occasion to the Story that *Ceres* at that time came into *Greece*.

32. Although it may not passe for currant, that the whole World is beholding to them for the use of Letters, the knowledge of the Stars, Geometrical Speculations, the best Laws, and most of the liberall Arts, as they have bragged; yet most ancient have several of these things been amongst them. Besides the common and usuall way of writing, they had certain Notes, called \* *Hieroglyphicks*, wherein each letter served for a word, and single words exprest whole sentences. As by the image of a Vulture they exprest the word *Nature*, because in that kind of Bird no Male can be found. By the picture of a *Bee* making *Honey* they understood a *King*; hinting, that in a Governour, a *sting* or *sharpness* ought to be mixed with *sweetness*. They also used enigmatically compositions or mixtures of images; as, by a *Scepter* with an *Eye*, and an *Ear* on the top thereof, they signified the Sovereign and all-knowing Majesty of God. As for Astronomy, though the *Babylonians*, for the antiquity of their knowledge herein, had no need to give them place, yet were the *Egyptians* furthered in the due observation of the Stars, by the plainness and evenness of their ground, and the severity of the air; it never raining in *Egypt* in ordinary course of Nature, which defect is supplied by the yearly overflowing of the River. If the World be bounden to them

The Egyptian Hieroglyphicks.

Ammianus Marcell. l. 17. De Hieroglyph. vide Joh. Pierium Valerianum Bellunensem.

them for Geometry, it's to be ascribed also to their River, as another fruit of it's inundation, whereby washing away the marks and removing the fences of their particular Lands, they were forced every year to measure them over again, and thence, through necessity, driven to Mathematicall speculations. Now that the best Laws, and most ingenious Arts were from them conveyed into *Greece*, they evidence by a particular of the bearers.

Greek Poets & Philosophers that borrowed their knowledge of the Egyptians.

33. The Priests, pretending in their Sacred Records to find the Register of their names, and to demonstrate the truth thereof by other tokens, have made mention of *Orpheus*, who out of *Egypt* fetched the Mysteries of *Ceres*, with the Fable of the *Inferi*, or those in Hell; the several places whereof, with the Ferrie-man *Charon*, are taken out of the Fens of *Acherusia*, and the passing over this Lake by boat to bury their dead there. Besides him, they make mention of *Musæus*, *Melampus*, *Dadalus*, and *Homer*, who travelled into *Egypt* to get knowledge. To these they add, of Law-givers, *Lycurgus* the *Spartan*, and *Solon* the *Athenian*, who borrowed many of their Laws, and *Plato* the choicest of his notions. *Pythagoras* of *Samos* from them received his *Sacred Speech*, as it's called; his Principles of *Geometry*, *Arithmetic*, and *The doctrine of the transmigration of Souls*. *Democritus* of *Abdera* they take for granted, to have lived amongst them five years, in which time he proved an excellent Astrologer. *Oenopius* of *Chius*, by his conversation with their Priests and Astrologers, amongst other things, learnt the particular oblique course of the Sun. And, to add no more; *Eudoxus* the Mathematician is beholding to *Egypt* (where he studied) for those instructions which much profited *Greece*, and thereby procured him no small honour.

Diodorus l. 1. p. 60, 61, 62.

34. The invention of Philosophy and Laws, with all the rest of the *Egyptian* wisdom, wherein *Moses* was learned, is ascribed by divers unto *Hermes*, or *Mercurius Trismegistus*; of whom yet either as to his person or time, nothing certainly can be affirmed. Cotta in *Cicero*, reckoneth up five, who have born the name of *Mercury*. The first, begotten by the *Heaven*, or the *Day*; the second, Son to *Valens* and *Pharon*, who liveth under the Earth, called also *Triphonius*; the third, begotten by *Jupiter* the third on *Maia*; the fourth, Son to the *Nile*, whom the *Egyptians* feared to name for reverence sake; the fifth and last, whom the *Phanicians* worship, who slew *Argus*, and flying thereupon, was set over *Egypt*; to the Inhabitants whereof he gave Laws and Literature, and was by them named *Theut*. But others attribute the finding out of Letters, not to the last, but the first *Mercury* truly called *Theut*, *Thoyot*, *Thor*, and *Tantus*; it being utterly against all Antiquity, that any should out of *Greece* transport Learning into *Egypt*. Others account two of this name natural *Egyptians*, of whom the later was Nephew or Grand-son, to the former. Some think *Joseph*, some *Moses* the true *Mercury*. What ever he was, his Works lost and \* those yet extant, shew him to have been a Man very well skilled in true Divinity, and have gained him the credit to be numbred amongst the Prophets, and Sibylls, for that he wrote many things of God, worthy of admiration; nay also, it's believed, of the coming of Christ, of the Trinity, and the last Judgement. Of the Learning of the *Egyptians* he is (n) said to have written 36525 Books, if Pages be not rather meant hereby: And (o) telleth us, that in his time were extant 36 of his Books, viz. of the wisdom of the *Egyptians* sixteen, of Physick six, of the Orders of Priests ten, and four of Astrology.

The ancient Government of Egypt.

35. The most ancient Government of *Egypt*, though Monarchicall, yet left not Princes to the liberty of their own wills, which were restrained by the Laws and Customs, that had such authority over their private and domestick actions, as they could not exceed the bounds of Temperance and Moderation prescribed to them thereby. For no slaves were they suffered to entertain, which might prove instruments for debaucherie, but were attended by the Sons of the most noble Priests, excellently educated. Their hours, both night and day, were destined and set over to particular businesses. In the morning when first awake, Letters were brought in to them; that, having perfect intelligence, they might be better able to provide for the publick safety. When washed

(n) Laertius Jamblicus.

\* Translated by Ficinus & Agulic.us.

(n) Jamblicus. (o) Clemens Stromat. l. 6.

washed and royally apparelled they sacrificed; during which devotion the chief Priests prayed for them, and their subjects extolled their virtues, cursing at last their sins of ignorance, committed without their faults, and reflecting upon their Advisors and Councillors. Then did the Priests read out of the Records, famous Presidents of Council, or Action performed by their most Illustrious Predecessors, which were to them proposed as Copies to take out. Their time was prescribed, not onely of speaking to the people, and distributing Justice, but also of walking, washing, and other more secret employments. Their diet was very moderate: usually Veal and Goose, with a moderate quantity of Wine, as if ordered by an exact Physician. No liberty was there of punishing any man in passion, or choler, either of acting any other wise unjustly; every case being determined by the Laws. Yet neither did they hereby account themselves strained of true liberty, but rather happy in that they indulged not their appetites like other men. Hereby obtained they the love of their subjects who held them more dear, alive, or dead, than their own relations, and the Government continued for many Generations, as long as they submitted to those Rules and Orders.

The divisions  
of the Land,  
and its Inha-  
bitants.

36. *Sesostris*, or *Sesostris*, divided Egypt into 36 *Nomis*; which word, whether Greek, or Egyptian, signified several Cities with certain Villages and Grounds thereto belonging. Of these, 10 belonged to the Province of *Thebes*, or to *The-lais*, other 10 to *Delta*, and the rest to the *Midland Countreys* lying betwixt them; all which had their several *Nomarches*, or Governours, who ruled them, and took care of the King's Tributes. The Lands were divided into three portions, whereof the first belonged to the Priests, who were in great Authority, and high esteem with the people. Of their Revenues they maintained Sacrifices throughout the Land, and their own families; being exempted from all burthen: and impositions. They were chief Counsellors to the Kings, always assisting with their advice, judging of things out of their deep skill in Astrology, and suggesting usefull matter out of the Records; their function hereditarily descending upon their Children. The second portion of Land belonged to the Kings, by which they maintained their State, waged War; rewarded deserving persons, and which affording them sufficient Treasure, they burthened not their Subjects by any Taxes. The third portion belonged to the Souldiers, who were at all occasions ready for the War; it seeming reasonable that such as ventured their lives for the safety of their Countrey should be well rewarded; and good policy not to commit the safeguard thereof to any that had nothing dear, or precious in it: and hereby they were encouraged to be carefull in behoof of their posterity which succeeded them in their possessions. As for the rest of the people, they were divided into three Ranks, or Orders, viz. *Shepherds*, *Husband-men* (that farmed the grounds), and *Artificers*; who all attending their business, and not meddling with State-affaires, neither having any right to Offices, thereby the more improved their Arts, and saved the Commonwealth harmlesse from such distempers, as are bred by the violence of an heady, and ignorant multitude.

The Courts  
of Justice.

37. Their Courts of Justice were furnished with the most upright, and able men that could be procured. Thirty Judges were chosen from *Helio-polis* (or *On*), *Thebes*, and *Memphis*, each of them 10. Which Assembly would not give place, either to that of the *Areopagites* at *Athens*, or the Senate at *Lacedaemon*. One of these thirty being chosen President, the Citie for which he served made choice of another to sit in his place. All had maintenance from the King; but the President in larger proportion: who also wore about his neck, in a Chain of Gold, an image of *Truth* made of precious stones, as a badge of his Office. When they were sate and the Codes, wherein the Laws were contained, laid before them; then the Plaintiff exhibited his Bill of the Crime, the manner of it, and the estimate of the damage. The Defendant having a Copy of the Bill answered particularly to it, either that he did not the thing, committed no Crime in doing it, or else had not deserved so great a punishment. The Plaintiff had liberty to reply, and the other to re-joyn

Diodorus lib.  
1. p. 35. &c.  
Strabo l. 17.  
Aristot. Oeco-  
nom. lib. 2.

Diodorus.

Particular  
Laws.

joyn his answer; but after this, he proceeded to judgement, and the President set the image of Truth towards one of the parties. No Lawyers were suffered to plead, as being thought rather to cast a mist upon the Cause, and darken the Evidence.

38. As for particular Laws; Perjury was punished with death as a great offence, both against God and man. If one man suffered another to be murdered in the high-way, or undergo any other violence, without giving his assistance, he was to die for it; and if he could give him no help, he was bound to discover the Robber, and follow the Law against him, under pain of enduring a certain number of strokes, and being deprived of all sustenance for three dayes. False accusers underwent the punishment due to that fault they accused of. Every one was bound to give in an account to the Magistrate how he lived under pain of death; which Law was made by *Amasis*. Wilfull murder, either of Bond, or Free, was death; onely this Law took no hold on Parents; but such were constrained to continue three dayes embracing the Carcasses. Against Children who killed their Parents most exquisite punishment was devised: for, having first their flesh all cut and flayed, and then being laid upon Thorns, they were burnt quick. Women condemned were not executed before their delivery. For other Laws not-Capital, it was enacted that Souldiers running from their Colours, or disobeying their Officers should not dye; but be branded with infamy, as a means to excite them to regain their former credit. If any held intelligence with the Enemy, his Tongue was to be cut off his head. They that imbrued the Coyne, used new weights, counterfeited Seals; Clarks that falsified and forged Records, were to loose their hands. Ravishment of a free woman was punished with the losse of the Members. Adultery of the man, with 1000 strokes with a Rod; of the woman, with the losse of her Nose.

39. *Bocchoris* enacted, that he who denied the borrowing of any money should be absolved upon his Oath; which was accounted as a sufficient purgation; a mans credit being so much therein concerned. Usury upon Bond was not to exceed the double of the principal; for which it was lawfull to distrain the goods, but in no wise to meddle with the person of the debtor that was owing to his Countrey, and not due to his Creditor; especially if a Souldier, the common safety suffering in him. Upon this account, they were wont to scoff at the Lawgivers of Greece, who forbade seizing upon Plows, Weapons, and other things, but suffered those that should use them to be carried away, and imprisoned. For stealing, they had a peculiar Law: Every Thief entered his name with the Chief of that mystery; and when he had stolen any thing carried it streight to him, where, if any one could tell the time, and place, and prove it by certain tokens to be his, he was to pay the fourth part of the value, and receive it again; the Law-giver thinking this the best remedy against what otherwise could not be prevented.

The Law-  
givers of E-  
gypt.

40. The first man that gave Laws to the Egyptians was *Menevis*, persuading the people to receive them, because they were communicated to him by *Mercury*. The second was *Sesyches*, who amongst other Laws instituted those concerning religion; and, being a man of great learning, taught Geometry and Astronomy. 3. *Sesostris*, who, as he, excelled all others in military glory, so he made Laws for the Discipline of War. 4. *Bocchoris*, a wife and prudent man, several of whose Apocryphs were a long time preserved in the memories of men. 5. *Amasis*, who much amended the whole policy of Egypt, his rare wisdom having preferred him to that high Dignity, for which also being admired abroad as well as at home, he was resorted to by some out of Greece as an Oracle. Lastly, *Darius*, the son of *Hystaspes*, King of Persia.

Particular cus-  
toms of the  
Egyptians.

41. As for particular Customs. The Egyptians married as many wives as they pleased (posterity being with them a thing of greatest consequence) except the Priests, who were allowed but one apiece. Children born of bond-women, and free, were alike respected, and equally legitimate, the father by them being onely accounted the author of Generation, the mother afford-  
ing

ing but place and nourishment to the Child; in which respect also, contrary to the custom of other Nations, those Trees that bare fruit they accounted Males, and the barren ones Females. Their Children they educated exceeding hardly, the expence of bringing one up not exceeding twenty drachms. Each Child succeeded his Father in his Trade, or course of life. All sorts had some kind of learning, especially such as conducted to their callings. Musick was neglected by them as rendering men effeminate. Once a moneth they used to purge, or use some Medicinal course for their health. With them no Physician was found (as *Herodotus* writeth) who professed the Art of curing the whole body; but one was for the head alone, another for the eyes, and so for the other parts: all which yet, as *Diodorus* hath it, were nourished of the publick, and bound to observe Methods, and Medecines prescribed them in books; which if they altered or changed, upon the miscarriage of the Patient they forfeited their lives together with their credit.

42. Such was the constitution of the Egyptian Commonwealth as they themselves related, which from some gaineth little credit, this constitution of policy hardly agreeing with the manners of those Kings that built the Pyramids; so that to them this excellent model of Government seemeth to be of the same nature, and credit with the \* *Cyropædia* of *Xenophon*. This is observable, that according to this constitution the propriety in the Land was carried from that form wherein it was left by *Joseph*, who purchased all the Land (except that of the Priests) for *Pharaoh*, and made the King absolute Lord thereof. The fond and ridiculous superstition, which possessed this people above others taken off much from its reputation. That fordid, and degenerate humour of consecrating, with such blind earnestnesse, Bulls, Sheep, Dogs, Cats, *Ichneumons*, *Ibis*, *Goffehawks*, *Eagles*, *Goats*, *Wolves*, *Crocodiles*, \* *plants* that grew in their Gardens, and other things, is so abominable at the first sight, as none of their pretences can give chere to the least shew of reason, in the opinion of a man but ordinarily qualified with the light of nature.

Their ridiculous superstition.

Ah! what a thing is man devoid of Grace,  
Adoring Garlick with an humble face:  
Begging his food of that which he may eat,  
Starving the while he worshippeth his meat.  
Who makes a Roar his God. How low is he,  
If God and man be sever'd infinitely?

What wretchednesse can give him any room,  
While house is foul while he adores his Broome,  
None will believe this now, though money be  
In us the same transplanted foolery.

Mr. Herbert in his Church Militant.

\* *Vide* *Judicium* *Jacob*, *Cappelli* in *Hist. Jacobi & Exotica* ad *A.M.* 1931. \* *Poivum* aut *cape nefas violare aut frangere mosu.* O *Santiss* *gentes quibus hæc nascuntur in hortis Numina!* *Juvenal.* *Satyr.* 15.2.9.

## CHAP. V.

The most Ancient state, and condition of Greece, during the Babylonian Empire, with a Description of its Kingdoms and Commonwealth.

### SECT. I.

## The State of Greece in General.

1. The most Ancient common name of the inhabitants of this Countrey is more agreeable to the Roman Appellations of *Græci*, *Graci*, and *Grajugena*, than that whereby they have rather chosen to call themselves, viz. *Hellenes*. For, till \* such time as *Hellen*, the son of *Deucalion* reigned in *Thessaly*, which hapned some years after the *Deucalionian Deluge*, no such name as the later was known. From him his Subjects, who inhabited that part of *Thessaly*, being betwixt the two Rivers \* *Peneus* and *Asopus*, were first called *Hellenes*, being formerly known by the name of *Graci*; and the Countrey it self *Hellas*, afterwards named *Pibiote*. *Homer* owneth none by the name of *Hellenes*, but those, who with the *Myrmidons*, amongst others, followed

Whence the Greeks were called *Hellenes*.

\* *Vide* *Apolled.* lib. 1. c. 21. *Thucyd.* l. 1. in *prefa.* *Aristot.* de *Meteoris* l. 1. \* *Strabo* l. 8. p. 383. A. *Ἰζουοί.*

followed *Achilles* to the Siege of *Troy*, neither any place calleth he *Hellas*, but onely one in *Thessalie*, mentioned by *Strabo*, who knoweth not whether it be a Town or Countrey, though he would gladly prove, that, by *Hellas*, *Homer* understood the whole Nation. *Strabo* is in no wise to be heard against *Thucydides*, and *Apollodorus*, whereof the former witnesseth, that the Poet no where mentioneth the *Barbarians*, because all the *Hellenes* were not yet known by one common name, whom he might oppose against them; and the later expressly saith, that he onely called those in *Thessalie* by the name of *Hellenes*. But though in *Homer's* time the whole Nation might begin to be called *Hellenes*, and the Countrey *Hellas*; yet clear it is from many witnesses, that these names came out of *Thessalie*, and were thence transferred to signifie the whole Nation, and their Colonies placed elsewhere; inasmuch, that priding themselves, as it were, in it, they wholly rejected the other of *Graci* (which signifying *ancient*, as it seemeth, they had also out of *Thessalie* from the same people) who were afterwards called *Hellenes*; though the Poet's despise it not, as *Callimachus*, *Sophocles*, and others; and the *Latins* still retain it, taking no notice of the other in their Language, whence these words *Greece* and *Gracians* are derived.

The most ancient Greeks lived in an unsettled condition, preying one upon another.

Nothing considerable done by them abroad till the Trojan War.

Cities begin to be built upon the Sea-Coasts.

The Græcians maintained themselves by tillage and plunder at the Wars of Troy.

2. Greece was not anciently inhabited in any settled or established way, though in after ages it became so famous in its flourishing Commonwealths. Seats and habitations were often changed, according to the power and strength of such as were not satisfied with their own fortune. No commerce was there amongst them, being in continuall fear one of another: they lived onely from hand to mouth, not regarding money, or the improvement of their grounds, knowing not how long they should enjoy anything in present possessions; so that no considerable City was there, or any Fortifications of value. *Attica* indeed was something privileged by its barrennesse, and secured from such violent attempts as other parts were obnoxious to; whence such, as were disturbed elsewhere, flocked thither, and it grew so populous, that not able to maintain the great numbers, under which it groined, it poured out Colonies into *Asia* the lesse, which made up the body of the *Ionians*. Before the *Trojan War*, nothing considerable was done abroad by the *Græcians*; but at that time having got some power at Sea, they were rendered capable of that expedition. For *Minus* King of *Crete*, (whom *Thucydides* would make to have had the first and most ancient Fleet of all others) had not long before obtained the dominion of the greatest part of the *Greek Sea*, and making himself Master of the Islands *Cyclades*, cast thence the *Carians*, and placed Colonies of his own therein, over which he made his Sons Princes. And, to increase his Customs, he scoured the Seas of Pyrats; it being then the trade of those that lived upon the Coasts, to passe over and make prey one of another; which to the last could not be left by some, as the *Ætoli*ans and *Acarnanians* amongst others.

3. The Sea being cleared, Cities began to be built upon the Coast both for trade and security, whereas the more ancient Towns stood at a good distance from the Sea, both in the Continent and Islands. Then came it to passe, that the weaker submitting themselves to the more powerfull for matter of profit, or the other by strong hand procuring it from them, some new and considerable Principalities were erected, which rendered them fit for the Expedition against *Troy*; wherein *Agamemnon* presided, as the most powerfull Prince then reigning, especially at Sea. Yet was there still such scarcity of money and of provisions, that onely so many Forces did they carry over, as they hoped the War might maintain, and used those not all together, and at the same time, but employed them in killing the *Cherroneus*, and in depredations; whereby being thus dispersed, the *Trojans* were the longer able to resist them; which they could not have done, had they been sufficiently furnished with necessaries, and incontinently with all their strength, fallen upon the City. Ten years being consumed in this War, great alterations were thereby produced in *Greece*. For through their absence so long abroad, seditions and tumults arose at home; whence many at their return, or afterwards,

*Vide* *Strab.* lib. 8. p. 370. A.

*Thucyd.*

A. M. 2773.

A. M. 2811.





SECT. 3. held it 33. But *Pausanias* writeth, that when *Lacedædes*, the son of *Hippolytus* reigned at *Sicyon*, *Phalces* the son of *Temennus* (who had been King of *Argos*) seized upon it with the *Dores* in the night time; but, for that both of them were defended of *Hercules*, dealt not roughly with him, but admitted him to partnership in the Kingdom. So, from thenceforth the *Sicyonians* became *Dores*, and were reckoned amongst the *Argives*. This fell out 87 years after the destruction of *Troy*, 120 before the first *Olympiad*, A. M. 2908.

## SECT. III.

## The Kingdom of Argos.

The Kingdom of Argos hath the second place, if not the first.

1. The (a) second place in Antiquity belongeth to this Kingdom, for which (b) some have not been wanting to challenge the first, affirming that many years after the establishment of this, *Egialeus* began that of the *Sicyonians*; and certainly though *Argos* missed something of the *Sicyonian*, yet in fame, dignity, power, and riches it exceeded it. *Inachus* first here began a Kingdom, about 244 years after the beginning of the *Sicyonian*, the 142 of the life of *Abraham*, 676 before the destruction of *Troy*, and 1082 before the beginning of the *Olympiads*. From the Antiquity of *Inachus* came that proverb *Inacho antiquior*, concerning which *Erasmus* is to be consulted in his *Adages*. On his sister *Melissa* he begat *Phoroneus* and a daughter named *Io*, which must not be confounded with the daughter of *Jafus* of a later date, as she is wont to be by *Mythologists*. After fifty years reign, he left his Kingdom to his son *Phoroneus*, who by (b) some was thought the first man, as the son of a River in that place, called *Inachus*, and consequently the father (c) of Mortals, and Author of Mankind. He is said to have (d) built the first Altar unto *Juno*. Against him and the *Parrhasians*, the *Telchines*, and *Caryata* made War; but being overcome betook themselves to the mercy of Wind and Sea, and at length arrived in *Crete*, as some, or *Rhodes*, as others say. He obtained the Dominion of the whole Peninsula and of the Nymph *Lædæce* (e) begot a son called *Apis*, and a daughter named *Niobe*, which *Jupiter* loved the first of all women, and on her begat *Argus*. *Phoroneus*, after he had reigned sixty years, died, and left his Kingdom to his son *Apis*.

Apis.

2. *Apis* turning Tyrant, commanded the Peninsula to be called after himself, *Apis*, and being circumvented by the wiles of *Thelxion*, and *Telchin*, died without issue after he had reigned 34 years. *Apollodorus* saith, he was killed for his Tyranny in *Greece*, though some make him to have gone into *Egypt*, and there dying to have been taken for a God, and called *Serapis*; but there being two Kings of this name besides him, viz. one of *Sicyon*, and another of *Egypt*, most *Mythologists* confound them, and attribute what was done by all unto one; which thing is usual with the *Greeks*. *Apis* dying after he had reigned 34 years, left for his Successor *Argus* his sisters son by *Jupiter*, the King of *Crete*, who lived about this time. In that Island first reigned *Cres*, who gave name to it, and was one of those *Curetes* that were said to have hid *Jupiter* from his father *Saturn*, who would have devoured his youngest son after the other, and nourished him; as also to have built the Citie *Cholos*, and the Temple of *Cybele*. With this man, many others are confounded, according to the custom of Poets, who have observed no distinction in ascribing to one what many did, and fathering things of their own invention upon the common name of *Jupiter*.

Several particular men known to have had the name *Jupiter*.

3. The first man known to have had this name was *Ham*, the youngest son of *Noah*, who was worshipped for a God under the title of *Jupiter Hammon*. His Nephew *Nimrod*, the first King of *Babylon*, and *Assyria*, was named

(a) Euseb. in Chronica.  
(b) Vide Ludov. Vivem in Augustin. de Civitat. Dei lib. 18. cap. 3. A. M. 2149.

(b) Pausan. in Argolicis p. 58.

(c) Clemens Stromat. l. 1.

(d) Nonius.

(e) Orosius l. 1. cap. 7. Apollodorus lib. 2.

A. M. 2260.

named *Belus*, and often called *Jupiter Belus*. In *Crete* lived (f) one very ancient that hath gone under this name; although as many places have challenged him for their Native, as (g) contended for the birth of *Homer*. Some think that he who is reported to have been preserved, and nourished by the *Curetes*, or the *Idai Dactyls*, was more ancient than *Niobe*, and therefore make a second *Jupiter* to have lived in *Crete* about 150 years after; who because he was the first of this name known to have been extravagant towards women, thence arose that saying that *Niobe* was the first woman beloved by *Jupiter*. *Eolus* the son of *Hellen*, and Nephew of *Deucalion*, who lived about *Thebuly*, and gave name to the *Eoles*, became so famous with Posterity, that they gave him the name of (h) *Jupiter* and *Nepheus*. *Picus*, King of the *Aborigines* in *Italy*, father to *Faunus*, and supposed to be begotten by *Saturn*, after he had fled into *Larum* from his son *Jupiter*, is also called *Jupiter* by (i) one, and *Æneus Jupiter Indiges* by the *Romans*. These are such particular men as are known to have had this name, which hath been so far advanced as to signify the best, and chiefest Being, whilst such as at first were revered for their virtue or power, at length were forgotten to have been mortals.

Whence so many.

4. Each Nation of old had its Native *Jupiter*, who was either the Founder thereof, or living in remote times, was by that Generation, which attributeth immoderate things to Antiquity, elevated into a Deity. Here is to be considered what *Annius* his *Xenophon* wrote in his Treatise of *Æquivocals*, as he calleth them. The most ancient King of any great, and illustrious family was wont to be called *Saturn*, the eldest son *Jupiter*, and the most valiant amongst the Nephews, or Grand-sons, *Hercules*. *Jupiter* the ancient King of *Crete*, or some other, by his great exploits, and well-deserving of that Age, might gain this credit to his name; or the word *Zeus*, in the *Greek* tongue signifying what *Ham* doth import in the other language, the Original of this name may better agree with the name, place, and condition of the son of *Noah*. As for *Jupiter* the younger, who is supposed to have begotten *Hercules* on *Alcmena*, the wife of *Amphytrion*, appeareth a meer fiction; so valiant a person as that Child proved, inheriting the repute of his generation: or if this *Hercules* was not the son of *Amphytrion*, but begotten by some other man, then was the name of *Jupiter* given to his father to take away the Odium of Bastardy; it being an ordinary thing for such as were base-begotten to be fathered upon *Jupiter*, *Mars*, or *Apollo*.

From Argus the Citie took its name.

5. From *Argus* the Citie was named (k) *Argos*, before called *Phoronium* from *Phoroneus*, who first gathered the people into it, being before that dispersed; and made them Laws for Government. From him also his Subjects took the name of *Argi* and *Argivi*, and the whole Peninsula named *Apia* before; he would have called after himself *Argos*. In (l) his time *Greece* began to be full of Corn, which being ascribed to his care and industry, he was honoured after his death with a Temple and Sacrifice, which worship was before given to one *Homogyrus*, killed by a Thunder-bolt, so that he had first yoked Oxen in the Plow. His brother (m) was *Pelasgus*, (said also to have been begotten by *Jupiter* on *Niobe*) the father of *Lycæon*, and who gave name to the *Pelasgi*, a people that first inhabited *Arcadia*, (hence called *Pelasgi* & *Pe'asgia*) afterwards spread (n) themselves throughout *Greece*, and sent Colonies into *Latium*. *Argus*, on his wife *Enadæ*, the daughter of *Strymon* begat *Jafus*, *Peiranthus*, *Epidamnus*, and *Criasus*. *Jafus* begat *Agenor*, the father of that *Argus* whom the Poets make all eyes, though some report him the son of *Arestor*. *Criasus* succeeded his father after he had reigned seventy years, and Governed the *Argives* 54. Two of his brothers are added by *Pausanias*, viz. *Piræus* the same with *Peiranthus* and *Phorbas*. *Peiranthus* first built a Temple to *Juno* at *Argos*, where in he placed her image made of a wild Pear-Tree, and made his daughter (p) *Callithya* called also *Callisto*, and *Io* Priest thereof; which Superstition being continued for many Ages, all instruments publick and private were dated from such or such a year of her Successors, as the custom

Criasus.

SECT. 3. Euseb. (f) Vide Pausan. in Messen. p. 143.7.

(b) Idem ibid. p. 154.31.

(i) Apud Suidam.

(k) Hesychius.

\* Lege Strabon. lib. 3. p. 365.

(l) August. de Civit. Dei l. 1. c. 6.

(m) Apollodorus lib. 2. initio.

(n) Dionys. Halicarnassensis l. 1.

(o) Argol. p. 58. 17.

Euseb. præp. 3. Evangel. lib. 3.

SECT. 3. Some hath been from those of the Kings, or Magistrates in other places.

Pirafus.  
Phorbas.  
Triopas.

Jafus.

6. That this *Peiranthus* reigned, appeareth no where but in *Pausanias*, who seemeth to make him the immediate Successor of *Argus*, by the name of *Pirafus*. But *Phorbas* succeeded *Criasus*, and reigned 35 years; after him *Triopas* 46. whose son *Xanthus* being Prince of some of the *Pelafgi*, who went out from *Argos*, seized first upon part of *Lycia*, and there seated himself: afterwards he passed over into the Island *Iffa*, then void of Inhabitants, which dividing amongst his followers he named *Pelafgia*, in processe of time called *Lesbos*. *Pausanias* maketh *Jafus* and *Agenor* the sons of *Triopas*, and *Jafus* to have reigned at *Argos*, though by *Eusebius* he be not reckoned amongst the Kings. His daughter was the famous *Io*, which being got with Child by *Jupiter*, and thereupon, through the displeasure of *Juno* turned out of her wits, or into a Cow, as the Poets sing, passed over the straits of *Thrace*, to which, upon this occasion of her Metamorphosis, was given the name of *Bosphorus*. Then went she down into *Egypt*, where, restored to humane shape, she brought forth her son *Epaphus*, the builder of *Memphis*, and was afterwards taken for a goddess, and called *Isis*. *Herodorus* leading us out of the Labyrinth of fables, relateth that the *Phanicians* after their removal from the *Red-sea* (where he thinketh them once to have inhabited) to the *Mediterranean*, applied themselves unto sailing, and Traffick from *Assyria* and *Egypt* unto other places. On a time coming to *Argos* (which then excelled all *Greek* Cities); on the fifth or sixth day after they had exposed their merchandise to sale, many women came to their ships to buy what they liked them, and amongst the rest this *Io*, the Kings daughter. The *Phanicians* encouraging one another laid hands on those they could catch, and taking her with some others, carried them into *Egypt*. This by *Herodorus* is made one of the first grounds of envy, betwixt the *Asiatics* & *Greeks*; though he confoundeth her with the daughter of *Inachus*, (which is usual) and the *Greeks*, as *Pausanias* hinteth, gave another account of her deportation.

Crotopus.

Sthenelas.  
Galenor.

7. As *Pausanias* reckoneth *Jafus* amongst the Kings of *Argos* (which after him was, without doubt, called *Jafos* (p) and the Citizens *Jafii*); so he nameth *Crotopus*, his brother *Agenor*'s son, for his Successor, whom *Eusebius* will have to have succeeded his Grand-father *Triopas*. His daughter *Psamathe* being with Child by *Apollo*, after her delivery exposed the Infant, which she named *Linus*. It chanced to be devoured by wilde beasts; whereat she was so troubled, that her father perceiving it, got out the matter, and put her to death, for which *Apollo* brought a plague upon the *Argives*, who, to pacifie him, made great and solemn lamentation for the Child, which is not to be confounded with the Poet *Linus*, as some so order the matter. *Crotopus* having reigned 21 years was followed by *Sthenelas* his son, who held the Kingdom for 11. and then left it to his son *Galenor*. In his time, *Danaus*, the brother of *Egyptus*, King of that Countrey, having 50 daughters, refused to marry them to his brother's 50 sons, because he was bidden by an Oracle to beware of a son in Law, and therefore taking them away with him, sailed to *Rhodes*, wherein he built a Temple to *Minerva Lindia*; and thence to *Argos*, where he moved a contest with *Galenor* for the Kingdom, as descended of *Epaphus*, the son of *Io*. Both pleading hard before the people, the cause, as doubtfull, was put off till the day following; at what time there came a Wolf and killed an Ox, which was feeding by the Walls. The people took the Wolf to signifie *Danaus*, because a stranger; and, making this contest of the beasts a leading case, decreed the Kingdom to the *Egyptian*.

Danaus.

8. *Danaus* having obtained the Kingdom, his brother *Egyptus* feared lest by the marriage of his daughters he might get too great alliance and strength, and therefore sent down his 50 sons to *Argos* with an Army, and command, either to marry them, or destroy him. They perswaded their Uncle by fair means to receive them as sons in Law; but he commanded his daughters that each of them should the first night kill her Bridegroom, and gave

Diodorus Siculus lib. 5. pag. 239. in maxime nota. A.

Lib. v. ad initium.

(p) Stephanus.

Apollodorus lib. 2.

Diodorus l. 5. p. 227. D. A.M. 2331.

Apollod. ibid. & Pausan. in Argolicis pag. 61.

SECT. 3.

gave them Poniards for that purpose. They all obeyed him, except *Hypemnestra*, (and some add *Bebrice*); which, dismissing *Lyneus*, with advice to shift for himself, was by her Father accused, and brought to Judgment; but acquitted by the *Argives*, and afterwards had leave from him, to receive again *Lyneus*, now reconciled to him. As for the rest of the Sisters, they were bestowed upon such, as in tryall of Masteries got the better; and became so infamous, that it was believed they were condemned in Hell, to fill with water a Barrell, which having an hole in it, let out as much as it received in.

Acisus and Præus.

Danae.

Mother to Perseus.

9. From *Danaus* those who formerly had the name of *Pelafgiote* were called *Danai*. He built the Castle, and his Daughters are said to have supplied the City with water, by digging of Wells; although (q) *Sirabo* (q) *Virg. lib. 8. P. 376, 371.* proveth, that by reason of it's situation it could never want the commodity of that Element. Having reigned (r) 50 years, he died, and was succeeded by *Lyneus*, who governed 41, and on *Hypermetra* begat *Abas* his Successor. *Abas* ruled 23 years, and begat on his wife *Ocalea*, the Daughter of *Manimeus*, *Acisus* and *Præus* Twins. They are said to have struggled in the womb, and did it to purpose afterwards for the Kingdom. *Præus* first obtained and held it seventeen years, but then was driven from *Argos* by *Acisus*, and forced to fly into *Lycia*, to *Iobas* his Father-in-Law, King of that Country. From him he returned with armed hand, seized upon *Tyrinthe*, and afterwards joyned battell with his Brother, wherein they two are reported first of all others, to have used Targets, The battell ending with æquall successe, they came to an accommodation, and divided the Kingdom, *Acisus* was to stay at *Argos*, and *Præus* to enjoy *Heræus*, *Midea*, *Tyrinthe*, and the maritime parts. *Præus* had by his wife *Sthenobea*, a Son named *Megapenthes*, and three Daughters, which being taken with the fury of *Rachus*, *Melampus* the Poet is said to have cured. *Acisus* on *Eurydice* begat a Daughter named *Danae*, and consulting the Oracle about issue-Male, was answered that he should have no Son, but a Nephew by his Daughter, that should procure his death. Hereupon, he shut up *Danae* with her Nurse in the ground; but *Jupiter* turning himself into a golden shower, thereby got to her, and begat *Perseus*. Both Mother and Son were put into an Ark, and cast into the Sea, which drave them ashore on the Island *Seriphus*, where *Distys* Brother to *Polydectes* the King, educated the Boy. Being grown up, he made an Expedition into *Africk*, where he slew the Gorgon *Medusa*, being sent, as the Fable goeth, by *Polydectes*, who sought to be revenged on him, for hindering him from the Marriage of his Mother; but *Pausanias* not at all regarding the Fable, writeth, that this *Medusa* was the Daughter of *Phorcus*, and succeeded him in his Kingdom which lay upon the Lake *Trionis*; that she was wont to go out to hunt and fight with the *Africans*, over which she reigned; but *Perseus* coming against her with choise Forces out of *Peloponnesus* (so that this Voyage must have been after his return thither, and his Grand-Father's death) she was encramped by him and slain in the night. He admiring her beauty, cut off her head, and carried it into *Greece* for a spectacle.

10. *Perseus*, after this, married *Andromeda*, (Daughter to *Cepheus*, by *Cassiopeia*, who reigned at *Joppe* a maritime Town of *Phœnicia*) having first saved her from being devoured by a Whale. This by one is thus interpreted; That *Phœnix* by her Father's consent, took her away by force, and carrying her in a Ship called the Whale, *Perseus* sailing that way, and hearing her lamentations, boarded the Ship, and delivering her out of his hands, married her. After this, he returned to *Sisyphus*, where he revenged upon *Polydectes*, the violence offered to his Mother; and then, with her and his wife, went to *Argos* to see his Grand-Father, who being afraid because of the Oracle, departed into *Pelafgia* (or *Thessalie*, so called, from the *Pelafgi*, who were now removed thither out of *Peloponnesus*, being a vagabond people, and staying in no place): where when *Tentamias*, King of the *Larissæans*, made Games in honour of his deceased Father; thither also came *Perseus*, amongst other

(q) *Virg. lib. 8. P. 376, 371.*

(r) *Euseb. Apollod.*

*Pausan. in Argolicis.*

*Conon, apud Photium in Bibliotheca.*

*Apollod. lib. 2.*

## SECT. 3.

*Perseus* killed *Acrisius*.  
The Generall  
Council of  
the *Amphy-  
ctiones*.

other lusty and active young Men, and slew his Grand-Father at unawares in the Game, by a stroke of a quoit upon his foot, after he had reigned thirty years.

11. Some (f) think that rather to *Acrisius* then to *Amphyction* the Son of *Deucalion* (who 182 years before began his reign at *Athen*) the founding of the famous Concill of the *Amphyctiones* is to be ascribed. It seemeth probable, that *Amphyction* first of all assembled it in *Thessalie*, near the Streights of *Thermopyla*, (*Pausanias* writeth to have been the common opinion) and that *Acrisius* thence transferred it to *Delphos* in *Phocis*, where it for the most part assembled; this place being the middle of *Greece*, and, as the *Greeks* thought, of the World it self, where was also the famed Oracle of *Apollo Pythius*. For, These Cities which at first had onely right to send their Deputies to the Council, were such as either were seated in *Thessalie*, or near unto it. This was the chief Tribunall of all *Greece*, for deciding of publick and most weighty causes, betwixt the severall Cities, and Common-wealths. The authority thereof was very great; insomuch as it's Decrees have sometimes been executed by the Sword, with the great motions of severall States, some or other scarce ever being wanting to undertake the work. It used to meet twice a year, (and oftener if necessity required) in the beginning of Spring, and Autumne; the Cities sending their Deputies, three, two, or one, according to their bignesse. These were called *Pythagore*, because they met at *Pyla*, a place near to the Temple, of which they also had the oversight, and presided over the Games made in honour of *Apollo Pythius* every other year. This Court continued for many Ages without change, untill the time of *Philip* King of *Macedon*, and Father of *Alexander* the Great, who overthrowing the *Phocians*, in the Sacred War; for their Sacrilege outed them and the *Lacedamonians* their assistants, of their Priviledges of voting therein, and transferred the right to his own Kingdom. Long after, *Augustus Caesar* innovated again, by removing the *Magnesiens*, *Maleans*, and others, from their interest herein, and making *Nicopolis* (a City built by him in memory of his Victory at *Actium*) free of that Society, as *Pausanias* telleth us, who hath also recorded, that in his time, (which fell in with the reign of *Antoninus Pius* the Roman Emperour) this Council was still maintained and kept up, consisting of thirty persons.

12. *Perseus*, after that dyaster, which hapned to his Grand-Father, was ashamed to return to *Argos*, his Inheritance, and therefore went to *Tyrinth*, and changed Kingdoms with his Cousin *Megapenthes*. He built *Mycene* (so called from his Sword's \* *Scabberd*, that fell from him in this place, which thing he took as a sign, that here he should build a City) and making it his seat, therein reigned 58 years. About this time this Kingdom of *Argos*, that had now continued about 544 years, came to be divided into three parts. For *Anaxagoras* the Son of *Megapenthes* contenting himself with a third of his half, gave the other two to *Melampus* the Son of *Amythaon*, and his Brother *Bias*; either for that he (who is said to have found out the way of purging) had cured the Daughters of *Prætus* (Aunts to *Anaxagoras*) of their madnesse, as was told before, or (\*) invented a Remedy for that distemper, which had seized epidemically upon the women of those parts. But *Perseus* begat *Andromeda* five Sons: *Perseus*, *Alcaeus*, *Sthenelus*, *Electryon*, and *Mestor*. Hereof *Perseus* the first, as the *Greeks* believed, gave Originall to the *Persians*, *Alcaeus* was Father to *Amphyction*, *Sthenelus* succeeded his Father in the Kingdom of *Mycene*, and *Electryon* begat *Alcmena*, wife to *Amphyction*. *Sthenelus* on a Daughter of *Pelops* begat *Eurystheus* his Successor, seven moneths after whose birth *Hercules* the Son of *Amphyction* and *Alcmena* was born. *Aphantes* their other Son coming into the World after *Hercules* (for they were Twins) *Amphyction* was accounted the Father of him, and *Jupiter* of *Hercules*, whereupon, *Juno* is said to have ever hated him, and by the help of *Ithyia*, (*Lucina* or the Moon) to have hindred his birth, and kept his Mother in travell for seven dayes. The Boy was first named *Alcaeus* after his Grand-Father; but afterwards, for his

*Hercules*.

(f) *Leges* *Strabon*. lib. 9. p. 419, 420.

(\*) *Leges* *Pausanias*. in *Phocis*.

A.M. 2693.

\* *μύκη*.

(u) *Apollodorus*. lib. 2.  
(\*) *Pausanias*. ut *supra*.  
*Diodor*. l. 4. p. 188.

A. M. 2724

## SECT. 3.

great achievements called *Hercules*, and ascribed to no less a Father than *Jupiter*, who made the night wherein he begat him, as long as three, that his strength might be the greater. That this person was eminent in his time, is easie to be granted; but incredible things contained in twelve labours, being reported to be done by him, are either meant of the passing of the Sun through the twelve Signs of the Zodiack; or what things were performed by several others that lived elsewhere, have been by his Country-men attributed to him, whose Epithere of *Hercules* (signifying fame and glory spread abroad in the air) came also to be given to them; if the word be of no other than *Greekish* Original.

13. *Cicero* reckoneth up six who had the name of *Hercules*. The first and most ancient, he maketh begotten by the ancientest *Jupiter* on *Lipinus*, and to have striven with *Apollo* about the Tripods. The second was an *Egyptian*, Son to *Nile*, who despised the *Phrygian* Letters. The third a Native of *Crete*, and one of the *Idai Daityli*, who first found out the making of Iron, by taking notice of the melting of that Metall in the Hill *Ida* when it burned, and being five in number, had the name of *Daityli* from the fingers, in number so many on each hand. The fourth was son to *Asteria* the Sister of *Latona*, and Father to *Carthage*, being worshipped by the *Tyrians*. *Belus* in *India* is reckoned for the fifth, and then in the sixth place cometh this Son of *Alcmena*. The *Egyptian Hercules* is said to have aided the gods in their War against the Gyants, which being the off-spring of the Earth, *Diodorus* acknowledgeth that this cannot agree with the time of the *Gracian Hercules*, who lived but one Age before the *Trojan War*; but rather hapned at the original of Mankind.

14. *Hercules* the *Tyrian* is believed to have been the Captain of that Expedition which the *Phœnicians* made into *Spain* and *Gades*, which though the *Gracians* attribute to theirs, yet this convinceth their assertion of falshood, that in the Island *Gades*, was a most ancient Temple, wherein *Hercules* was worshipped, nor after the *Gracian* manner, but according to the Rites of *Phœnicia*. This was he, who erected his pillars at the bound or utmost limit of the World, and that overran *Spain*, *Italy*, and *Gaul*. *Ganchemion* a *Phœnician* Author of great antiquity, wrote, that he was the Son of *Demachus*, and that his proper name was *Melcharebus* (which signified the King of the City) by the *Greeks* called *Melicerius* and *Palamon*. He was also called *Diodorus* (for which *Desanans* is thought to be corruptly written in *Hierom's* translation) which *Phœnician* name he seemeth to have had, because he was invocated by lovers; their happy successe being supposed to depend on him. Some think this *Tyrian Hercules* was the same with the *Egyptian* or *Libyan*, by *Pausanias* named *Maceris*, who undertook a journey to *Delphos*, and whose Son *Sardus* leading a Colonie into the Island *Ichnusa*, changed it's name into *Sardinia*. *Tacitus* \* writeth, that the *Libyans* would have the most ancient *Hercules* a native of their Country, and that such as came near him in valour and renown, were named after him. *Diodorus Siculus*, and *Eusebius* mention three of this name, (though the former attributeth all their actions to the youngest, or the Son of *Alcmena*) *Servius* four, and *Varro* 44. And here must be remembred what was before noted; that it was the custom of old, to call the most ancient Kings by the name of *Sarurn*, their Sons by that of *Jupiter*, and their most valiant and active Nephews by this of *Hercules*.

15. This *Heroe* being so much written and talked of, it concerneth beginners to have some account of his actions, and the rather, because they include the labours of many. *Amphyction* his Father, as it seemeth, was Prince of *Tyrinthos*, but thence was forced to flye to *Thebes*, having at unawares killed *Electryon* his Uncle and Father-in-Law, where *Hercules* being educated, slew *Linus* his Musick-Master with an Harpe as he taught him. His Father seeing his disposition, and fearing some such like accident might fall out again, sent him amongst the Herdsmen, where not yet eighteen years old, he slew a Lyon. For his extraordinary strength and courage, he was taken

The story  
of *Hercules* the  
Son of *Alcmena*.

\* *Consule* *Borchartii* *Cassian*  
lib. 1. cap. 14.

\* *Annal*. lib. 2.

*Apollodorus* &  
*Diodor*.

ken notice of by *Thespius* (or *Thespius*) Prince of the *Thespienses*, who made him lye with his fifty daughters, of which begetting so many sons, these afterwards passed over into the Island *Sardinia* with the name of *Thespiades*. A little after this he delivered *Thebes* from the Tyranny of *Erginus*, King of the *Minyans*, who exacted an annual Tribute of 100 Oxen. He destroyed *Orchomenus* with his Palace therein, and for this was rewarded with *Megara*, daughter to *Creon*, Prince of *Thebes*. When he was about 20 years old, he sailed with *Jason* amongst others to *Colchos*, to fetch thence the Golden Fleece so much celebrated by Poets, and variously interpreted by Expofitors of Mythology.

16. This *Jason* was the son of *Aeson*, and the fourth in descent from *Aeolus*, being born at *Ioleus*, which place *Pelias*, King thereof, unjustly detained from his father. He considering with himself what glory *Perseus*, and others of late had gotten, sought how he might accomplish some notable Enterprize for the eternizing of his name, and having at length resolved on this design, published his intentions throughout *Greece*, by a Crier. The young and active spirits of that time were much taken therewith, and 53 of the flower of *Greece* gave their names to the expedition, of whom the most eminent, besides *Hercules*, were *Orpheus*, (Scholar to *Linus*) *Oileus*, *Telamon*, and *Peleus*, the sons of *Aeacus*, *Pollux*, and *Castor*, sons to *Tyndareus*, King of *Sparta*, *Meleager*, and *Argus*, who built the ship, named after him *Argo*, wherein they sailed, and thence were afterwards called *Argonauta*. Having all things in readinesse (*Pelias* supplying *Jason* with all necessaries, to be rid of him, fearing he should call him to account for the Kingdom) they set sail from *Ioleus*, and came to *Lemnus*, an Island in the *Egean* Sea, whence they sailed to the Countrey of the *Doliones*, by whose King *Cyzicus* they were honourably received; but thence lanching out by night, were driven back by Tempest, and being taken by him for the *Pelagis*, with whom he was at feud, he fell upon them, and lost his life in the fight, with many of his followers; but, his error once understood, was magnificently buried by them. From *Cyzicus* they came into *Myfia*, where *Hercules* for want of skill in rowing brake his Oar, and going into the Woods to provide another, whilst his companions rested themselves on the shoar, it happened that *Hylas* his Boy drinking at a Fountain, was intercepted by the Nymphs, as the story goeth. Crying out, *Polyphemus*, the son of *Elatus*, who had married *Laonome*, the sister of *Hercules*, ran out to rescue him, and meeting with *Hercules*, went up and down seeking him in great perplexity; so that they were left behind by their companions, whom *Hercules* followed on foot to *Colchos*.

17. *Jason* with the rest sailed to *Colchos*, and by the treachery of *Medea*, daughter to *Aetes* the King, that fell in love with him, became master of the Golden Fleece, and returned home with her, having finished his journey in four moneths. They lived hapily at *Corinth* for ten years, till *Creon*, King of that Citie, betrothing his daughter *Glauce* to him, *Medea* was commanded to quit the place; whereupon mad with anger, she set the Palace on fire, and slew her own three sons, which she had by *Jason*; as *Euripides* relateth the story. Who, as it's probable, too much indulgeth his poetick liberty, the *Corinthians* having corrupted him with five Talents, as an antient (y) Historian hath discovered. (z) *Herodotus* writeth in that a Messenger was sent from *Colchos* to demand *Medea*, but he was put off with this answer, that they of *Asia* had formerly stoll away *Io* from *Argos*. As the *Argonauta* failed by *Athos* and *Samothracia*, they were driven by Tempest upon *Sigeum*, a Promontory of *Troas*, (a) where they found *Hesione*, daughter to *Laomedon*, King of *Troy*, bound upon the shoar, that she might become a prey to a Whale. This Whale had been sent by *Neptune* to devour Passengers upon the Coast, because (b) *Laomedon* with money taken out of the Temples of *Neptune*, and *Apollo*, had built the Walls of the Citie, and made no restitution. *Apollo*, had answered that no way could they be quit of the Whale, but by the devouring of some one chosen out by lot, which fell upon the Kings

The Argonauta.

*Apollonius Rhodius l. 1. Lege Simsonium in Chronico ad A.M. 2743.*

*Theocritus in Hyla.*

(y) Vide *Parmeniscum*, *Scho-liis ad Euripidem.*

(z) *Lib. 1. c. 2.*

(a) *Diodorus l. 1. p. 171.*

(b) Vide *Pindari interpret. ad 2<sup>am</sup> 3.*

Kings own daughter. But *Hercules* moved with pity, upon promise to have the maid, and certain horses that never were handled, undertook to kill the Whale, which readily performing, he trusted *Laomedon* with his wifes, till his return from *Colchos*. Then he demanded them (c) by *Iphicles* his brother and *Telamon*, whom he sent into the Citie, but the King instead of restoring what he formerly detained, imprisoned the Messengers, and plotted the destruction of the whole company. *Priamus* of all his sons was onely against this treachery, and when he could not otherwise prevail, sent in two swords to the prisoners, wherewith they dispatching their keepers, got out to their companions. In revenge for this afterward *Hercules* took the Citie, slew *Laomedon*, and preferred *Priamus* for his integrity to the Kingdom.

Olympick Games instituted by *Hercules*.

His twelve labours.

18. The *Argonauta* being returned into *Greece*, *Hercules* (d) took an Oath of them mutually to aid one another, as also to chuse out some certain place, wherein to meet and celebrate Games in honour of *Jupiter Olympius*. This matter being left to his care and management, he pitched on the plains of the *Eleans*, lying upon the River *Alpheus*, where he ordained exercises, both to be performed on foot and horse-back, appointed rewards to the Victors, and sent abroad to give notice thereof to the several Cities, which were all hereby wonderfully affectionated towards him. But after *Eurystheus* had succeeded *Sthenelus* his father in the Kingdom of *Mycena*, he began to grow jealous of the strength and prosperity of *Hercules*, and ceased not to presse him forwards into dangerous, though glorious attempts. He at first refusing went & consulted the Oracle at *Delphos*, which is said to have acquainted him with the pleasure of the gods, that at the appointment of *Eurystheus* he should finish twelve labours, and so attain to immortality. Hereat he grew exceeding melancholy, taking it in great disdain to be commanded by him, which discontent arose to a Phrensie, and in this distemper he killed the Children that he had by *Megara*, and put her away; but afterwards coming to his right mind, resolved to venture himself, and returned to *Eurystheus* for his orders.

19. The first task imposed on him was to kill a Lyon in *Nemea*, a Wood of *Achaia*, whom no sword nor any other weapon could peirce. Being onely to be mastered by the hand he caught and strangled him, then taking off his skin, thenceforth wore it as a Garment. The second thing enjoyned him was to kill an *Hydra* with 100 heads, like Snakes, whereof when one was cut off, two others sprung up in its room. The third was to bring home alive the *Erymanthian* Boar, at the sight of which beast upon his shoulders, *Eurystheus* was so frighted that he ran for fear into a brazen Hogthead; and in this expedition he also overcame the *Centaures*. The next thing commanded him was to catch an Hart of marvelous swiftnesse with Golden horns, which he effected, but in what manner is not agreed on. After this he drave away innumerable companies of Birds from the *Symphalian* Fens, which there, and in other places devoured the Corn. Then cleansed he *Augias* his stable; not by carrying the Dung out upon his shoulders, (which indignity was intended him by *Eurystheus*) but by the current of the River *Peneus*, which he brought down thither for that purpose. The seventh thing commanded him was to fetch a wilde Bull out of the Island *Crete*, with which *Pasiphaes* is said to have fallen in love: and berwixt this and the next labour he helped the gods against the Gyants, and pacifying *Jupiter* towards *Prometheus*, loosed this man from the place where an Eagle continually fed upon his Liver for his communicating to men the knowledge of fire. The eighth task was to fetch the Mares of *Diomedes* out of *Thrace*, which had brazen mangers, were tied with Iron chains, and fed not on any other fodder than the flesh of strangers coming that way: But *Hercules* first gave them their masters flesh, and then brought them to *Eurystheus*, who dedicated them to *Juno*, and their breed is said to have continued to the time of *Alexander* the Great.

20. After this it is that *Diodorus* maketh him to have sailed amongst the *Argonauta* to *Colchos*. Then at the command of *Eurystheus* he warred against

SECT. 3.

(c) *Diodorus ibid. p. 175.*

(d) *Ideen pag. 178.*

\* *Diodorus l. 4. p. 219. B.*

SECT. 3. against the *Amazons* in *Africa*, and brought to him the Girdle of *Hippolyta* their Queen. The tenth labour was to fetch the Oxen of *Geryon* out of *Iberia*, or *Spain*, as the fable goeth; whereas *Geryon* reigned not there, but in that part of *Epirus* which lieth about *Ambracia* and *Amphilochus*, as (e) *Arrianus* witnesseth from the Pen of *Hecataeus* a most ancient Historian, (f) and others do testifie. There were afterwards in *Epirus* a very large sort of Oxen, called *Larini*, thought to be of that kind which *Hercules* drove away, and to have had this name from *Larinus* his herdsman. Seeing then that this occasion of invading *Spain*, *Italy*, and *Gaul* is taken away from this *Hercules*, that expedition is to be left to the *Phœnician*, to whom formerly we ascribed it. But *Hercules* is farther said in this journey to have slain *Antæus*, to have gone down into *Egypt*, and made an end there of *Busiris* that cruel Tyrant, and erected his Pillars in the utmost bounds of the World. Within eight years and one moneth he finished these his ten labours. After his return he was enjoined to fetch *Cerberus* out of *Hell*, which having accomplished, the 11th was the fetching of the Golden *Hesperian* Apples; which, whether they were such, and were kept by a terrible Dragon, or by them is to be understood Herds of Cattel defended by some strong and valiant man, he also brought out of *Africa* to *Eurytheus*. Those are his 12 labours, as *Diodorus* describeth, and ranketh them.

His other acts. 21. Having served *Eurytheus* twelve years, he returned to *Thebes*, and there gave *Megara*, whom he had put away, to *Iolaus*, the son of his brother *Iphicles*. He had now no legitimate issue, and therefore married *Deianeira*, daughter to *Oeneus*, King of the *Calydonians*, to pleasure whom he derived the River *Achelous* into another Channel, and thereby rendred the Countrey more fertile; whence the fable arose that he fought with *Achelous*, turned into a Bull, and cutting off one of his Horns, gave it to the *Ætolians* (part of whom the *Calydonians* were) called the Horn of *Amalthea*, wherein was plenty of all fruits. Before this he had won *Iole*, the daughter of *Eurytus* Prince of *Oechalia*, by shooting, which exercise her father had proposed to all comers against himself and his son. Yet was he denied her, whereupon to be revenged on *Eurytus*, he drove away his Horses, and carrying his son *Iphitus*, who was sent to seek them, up into a Tower to see if he could make any discovery of them, when he could not espy them, as if he had wrongfully accused him of theft, he threw him down headlong. For this he was struck with a disease, and had answer from the Oracle at *Delphos*, that if he would be freed from it he must be sold, and the price given to the Children of *Iphitus*. He then passing over into *Asia*, willingly permitted one of his friends to sell him, and was bought by *Omphale*, Queen of the *Mæonians*, to whom her husband *Tmolus* had left the Kingdom. Being freed from his disease, he did his Mistress great service, killing many of the famous Robbers, called *Cercopes*, and bringing some of them alive unto her. *Omphale* admiring his acts, after she knew who he was, gave him his liberty, and took him to her bed. Of her he begat *Lamus*, having already a son by his fellow slave, named *Cleolaus*: he served her three years, and then returning into *Peloponnesus*, went against *Laomedon* King of *Ilium*, as some rank the series of his actions.

His end. 22. Some years after, having subdued several persons, and Cities in *Greece*, he joyned the *Arcadians* and others to him, and went with an Army against *Eurytus*, whom he slew with his three sons, and taking away *Iole*, came to *Cenæum*, a Promontory of *Enbœa*. Here being about to sacrifice, he sent *Lichas* his servant to *Trachine* for his Shirt and Coat, wherein he was wont to perform that religious work. From *Lichas*, *Deianeira* learning how *Iole* was taken, and fearing to be robbed by her of her husbands affections, annointed his Shirt with a poyson given her by *Nessus*, the *Centaure*, as he was dying (who would have ravished her; and for that was killed by *Hercules*) persuading her that it was an oymntent Efficacious to procure love. As soon as the Shirt touched his body the venom also seized on it, wherewith being grievously tormented he dismissed his Army, and returned to *Trachines*, where the dif-

(e) L. 2. *Anab.*  
(f) *Eustathius*  
in *Dionysium*  
*Periegetem.*  
*Athenæus* lib. 9.  
*Scholastes* in  
*Aristoph.*  
*Aves.*  
*Suidas.*

*Diodorus* &  
*Appollodorus.*

*Diodorus* ut  
prius p. 169.  
&c.  
*Appollodorus.*

SECT. 4. disease increasing, he sent to enquire of *Apollo* about a remedy. It was answered, he should be carried up to the Mountain *Oeta*, where a great pile of wood being reared, *Jupiter* would take care for the rest. This done, and all hope of recovery past, *Hercules* in his warlike habit cast himself upon the pile, and desired the flanders by to put fire to it, which when all his own relations refused to do, *Pæas*, who seeking his Cattel, came that way, as *Apollodorus* writeth, or his son *Pholoteios*, as most deliver, (to whom *Hercules* gave for a reward his Bow and Arrows) set fire to it, which also being kindled with lightning, was presently reduced together with the body into ashes. *Iolaus* finding one of his bones, a persuasion arose, that he passed from A. M. 2776. amongst mortals to the Gods, as the Oracle had formerly shewed. He commanded that *Hyllus* his son, when he came at age, should marry *Iole*. As for *Deianeira*, the seeing what she had brought upon her husband, out of vexation hanged her self. Thus perished *Alcaeus*, surnamed *Hercules*, the Son of *Amphytrion* and *Alcmena*, at the age of 52 years, having in a fit of Phrensie, as it's thought, burnt himself. And these are the most remarkable things that are written of him, who lived (according to that Chronology which taketh not in the hundred years formerly mentioned) in the dayes of *Tholab* the Judge of *Isral*.

What hapned to his children. 23. *Hercules* being dead, his children for some time stayed at *Trachine* with *Ceyces*, the King, till *Hyllus* and others of them were grown up. Then *Eurytheus* began to fear them, and therefore resolving to banish them all out of (g) *Greece* (or rather *Peloponnesus*) sent to *Ceyces*, commanding him upon pain of his displeasure, to remove them together with *Iolaus* and the rest of their Friends. They being unable to make resistance, voluncarily quitted the place, and sent about to the principal Cities to beg harbour, which none would afford them except the *Athenians*, who placed them in *Tricorinth*, one of the four parts of their City. After some time, when they were come to ripeness of age, and now bare themselves high upon the glory of their Father, *Eurytheus* much more suspecting their growth, lead down a great Army against them; but assisted by the *Athenians* under conduct of their Cousin *Iolaus* and *Theseus*, they overthrew and slew (h) him with all his Sons, and then invaded *Peloponnesus*. Now a Plague seized on the Countrey, and the Oracle answered, that it was, because they returned thither before their time; whereupon *Hyllus* returned, as some say, and went to *Æpalus* King of the *Dorianses* about *Oeta*, by whom he was (i) adopted, because, by *Hercules* his means, *Ægyrius* had formerly recovered his Kingdom; and (i) *Idem* lib. 9. p. 377. thenceforth the *Heraclide* became imbodyed with the *Dorianses*. *Diodorus* writeth, that *Hyllus* provoking some one of his Enemies to a single Combat, upon this condition, that if he overcame, then were the *Heraclide* to be Masters of *Mycena*, if not, they should depart for fifty years, was slain, and so they accordingly returned, and kept themselves quiet for that time.

24. *Eurytheus* being slain after he had reigned at *Mycena* 43 years, (k) *Atreus* the son of *Pelops* succeeded him, who also at this time had the sovereignty of *Argos*. This *Pelops* above an hundred years before (for so famous a Man must not be omitted) being the son of *Tantalus* Prince of *Phrygia*, had made War upon *Ilium*, where after he was put to the worst by *Ilus* the King, he was forced to fly into *Greece*, and coming to *Pisa*, fell in love with (l) *Hippodamia* Daughter of *Oenomaus* Prince of that City, who being warned by the Oracle to take heed to himself, when she should take an husband, had condemned her in his resolutions, to perpetuall virginity. Therefore he admitted no Suter, but on this condition, to run a race with him in the Chariot, and if he won her not, then to suffer death, to which he brought many, through the swiftnesse of his Horses, till *Pelops* (or *Hippodamia* for him) corrupting the Chariot-driver, obtained the Prize, for grief of which, the old man thinking now the Oracle to be fulfilled, hanged himself. *Pelops* then obtained *Hippodamia* and *Pisa* with her, after which, by little and little, he got most of the Peninsula into his possession, called after him *Peloponnesus*, wherein he reigned 58 years. Of *Hippodamia* he begot many

*Pelops* Ob-  
tained *Pisa*  
with most of  
the Peninsula.



## SECT. 3.

many children, by which he promoted his affairs more than power; for by the marriage of them, he insinuated into the Principalities of most of the Cities. Amongst his Sons the most eminent were *Atræus*, *Thyestes*, and *Plisthenes*. The two former he left his Successors, and *Plisthenes* dying young, left two Boyes to *Atræus*, to be brought up, called *Agamemnon* and *Menelaus*. *Atræus* married their Mother, by name *Acrope*, the Daughter of *Minos* King of *Crete*, with whom his Brother *Thyestes* committing Adultery, he first banished, and after recalling him, feasted him with the flesh of his own sons.

25. Some will have *Atræus* to have outlived *Thyestes*; others say, he died before him, and, being reconciled, left him the Kingdom at his death, on this condition, to restore it to *Agamemnon* when he should come to age. After *Eurystheus* his death, it seemeth, that he became Master of all *Peloponnesus*, and opposed *Hyllus*, who challenging any in his Army, as was said, to a single Combat, *Echemon* King of the *Tegæa* in *Arcadia* accepted the challenge, and slew him. He was very skilful in Astrology, being by some reputed the first that discovered the motion of the Sun to be contrary to that of the Starry Heaven, (m) and that observed the Eclipse of that luminary. He adopted his two Nephews *Agamemnon* and *Menelaus*, who succeeded him. (n) seventeen years before the beginning of the Trojan War. *Agamemnon* a Man of prudence and courage, obtained not onely *Mycenæ*, but *Argos* also, with all as far as (o) *Sicyon* and *Corinth*, and that Country then called *Ionis* and *Egialea*, afterwards *Achaia*. *Menelaus* got *Lacedæmon*, and their reigned at *Lacedæmon*. For *Caster* and *Pollux* the sons of *Tyndareus* the King, (p) dying before their Father, he sent for him to *Sparta*, and delivered up his Kingdom to him, having first given him his Daughter *Helena*, whom *Paris* the second Son of *Priamus* King of *Troy* (by his wife *Hecuba*) stealing away, gave occasion to the famous ten years War, and the ruin of that City; concerning which something is to be spoken.

The Trojan War.

The Original of the Trojan War.

26. The first (q) Man reported to have reigned in *Arcadia*, was *Atlas*, who inhabited about the Mountain of *Caucasus*, and had seven Daughters, which made up the *Pleiades*, whereof on *Electra*, *Jupiter* her husband begat *Jasus* and *Dardanus*. *Jasus* lived unmarried, but *Dardanus* had by his wife *Chryse*, the Daughter of *Palaus*, two sons, *Idæus* and *Dimas*, who succeeded *Atlas* in his Kingdom. Afterwards great inundations happening in this Country, they were forced to divide the people into two parts, whereof leaving one with *Dimas* in *Arcadia*, with the other *Jasus*, *Dardanus* and *Idæus* left *Peloponnesus*, and coasting by *Eupoe*, at length came into the Bay of *Melane*, and arrived at a certain Island of *Thrace*, called *Samo-thracia*, from the Country, and a Man's name who inhabited it; one *Sampon* the son of *Mercory*, by the Nympe *Rhene*. Here finding no convenient habitation, the greater part under the conduct of *Dardanus* (for *Jasus* died in the Island, being struck with a Thunder-bolt, because he attempted the chastity of *Ceris*) passed into *Asia*, and landing in the *Hellepont*, seated themselves in *Phrygia*. *Idæus* with part of the Army, ferled upon the Mountains, which bore his name, and *Dardanus* in that part of the Country, since named *Troas*, built a City of his own name, having some grounds given him by *Tencher* the King of the place, the Son of *Seamander*, from whom the Country was called *Tencheris*, and whose daughter *Batea* he married. He succeeded him in his Kingdom, and changed the name of his Subjects from *Troeri* to *Dardani*, and built the City upon the Sea-side, about the 2530th year of the World, in the days of *Sthenelaus* King of *Argos*. On *Batea* he begat his Son and successor, called *Erichthonius*, reported by (r) *Homer* and others, to have been exceeding rich and fortunate, who on *Callirhoe* the Daughter of *Seamander* begat *Tros*, from whom the Country was named. *Tros* succeeding him begat *Ilus*, *Assaracus* and *Ganymedes*. *Ilus* succeeded him. From *Assaracus* descended *Aeneas*. *Ganymedes* for his beauty was stolen by *Tantalus* King of *Phrygia*, and Father to *Pelops*, whence arose a War, in which many lost their lives, and *Tantalus* (though the son of *Jupiter* by the Nymph

Agamemnon & Menelaus.

Dardanus.

Erichthonius.

Tros.

Ilus.

(m) Servius.

(n) Clemens in Stromat.

(o) Strabo ex Homero. lib. 8. p. 377.

(p) Apollod.

(q) Dionysius Halicarnassensis. lib. 1. Diodorus lib. 4. p. 192. & lib. 5.

(r) Iliad. l. 20.

## SECT. 2.

Nymph *Plota*) was beaten out of *Paphlagonia*. *Ilus* built the chief City in the Plain, which though the *Latins* called it *Troja*, and we *Troy* (which names most properly belong to the Country) yet the *Greeks* constantly *Ilium* from him. Against him and it *Pelops* made an Expedition, and miscarried in the success, as was said before. *Laomedon* his Son succeeded him, who seeking to defraud *Hercules* of his wages, for killing the Whale which should have devoured his Daughter *Hesione*, was outed of his Kingdom and life; and *Priamus* his Son for his love to Justice was placed in his Throne.

Laomedon.

Priamus.

27. *Podarcus* (surnamed *Priamus*, as *Apollodorus* writeth) was exceeding rich, and had a large dominion, extending from *Lesbus* and *Tenedos*, to the upper *Phrygia*, containing (s) nine divisions, and many Towns besides. He had Fifty Sons, (t) whereof seventeen were lawfully begotten. His first wife was *Aruba* the Daughter of *Merops*, on which he begat *Aesacus* or *Sangarius* (all which are mentioned) and by her he had *Hector*, *Paris*, *Helenus*, *Deiphobus*, and others. Before she was brought to bed of *Paris*, she dreamed that she was delivered of a firebrand, which should consume to ashes the whole City. (u) *Priamus* hereupon caused the child to be exposed on the Mountain *Ida*, but by the procurement of his Mother, he was educated amongst the Shepherds, whom because he assisted against robbers, and shewed himself very courageous, he obtained the name of *Alexander*. He (whether out of design or no, is uncertain) came to *Sparta* to the house of *Menelaus* the King, and thence stole his wife *Helena*, which some (x) report he took away by force, and that after the taking of the City; but (y) others affirm of her, as of all others thus taken away, that it was not without her own liking. Fearing he might be pursued, he carried her first to *Sidon* in *Phoenicia*, where he married her, and thence to *Troy*, at which City they were scarce arrived, before all *Greece* was in an uproar, as if the whole Country had been overrun. *Agamemnon*, who was much concerned for his Brother, possessing almost all *Peloponnesus*, by his authority easily persuaded other Princes to engage in the quarrell. He first assembled them at (z) *Agium*, a City of *Achaia*, to consult about the management of the War, where being chosen General, they afterwards met at *Aulis*, a Sea-town of *Boeotia* with their Ships, and there swore, never to return home, till *Troy* should be taken.

The names of the chief amongst the Greek Warriors.

28. The chiefest of these renowned Warriours were (a) *Nestor*, who reigned in *Messenia*, *Ajax* the Son of *Telamon* Prince of the Island *Salamina*, *Ajax* the younger, or the son of *Oileus* King of *Locri*, over against *Eubœa*, *Achilles* the Son of *Peleus* by the goddess *Thetis*, whose principality was *Pehionis*, part of that Country afterwards called *Thessalie*, *Ulysses* the son of *Laertes* King of *Cephalonia*, *Thoas* the *Ætolian*, *Podalirius* and *Machaon*, Sons of the third *Æsculapius*, and *Tlepolemus* the Son of *Hercules*, who now inhabited the Island *Rhodes*. They made up amongst them a Navy of about 1000 ships, and therein transported an Army of 120000 men. From *Aulis* they sailed to *Lemnos*, and thence, missing of *Troy*, into *Myssa*, which mistaking for their Enemies Country, they began to make encursions into it, and were beaten back by *Telephus* Prince thereof; all but *Achilles* and *Patroclus*, the former whereof sore wounded him: and *Thersander* (b) General of the *Boeotians* here lost his life, into whose room, because his Son *Tisamenus* was but young, they elected *Phelœus*. A conflict presently ensued their arrival at *Troy*, wherein *Protesilaus* was slain by a *Dardanian*, as *Homer* calleth him, (either *Hector* or *Aeneas*) and then the *Greeks* sent *Menelaus* and *Ulysses* Ambassadors, to demand *Helena*. *Priamus* calling a Council to deliberate about the matter, *Antenor* was for delivering her up, and so were the rest of the grave and ancient Men, though they attributed much to the beauty of the Woman; but *Antimachus* being corrupted by the gold of *Paris*, urged the contrary, and not onely moved to have the message rejected, but the messengers killed.

29. *Priamus*, though otherwise prudent enough, rejected the counsel of the

Diod. ut supra. Vide Strabon. l. 13. p. 587.

(s) Confulas omni de Strabon. l. 13. p. 184.

(t) Cicero Tuscul. quest. l. 1.

(u) Apollod.

(x) Herod. l. 1. c. 3.

(y) Servius in Virgil. l. 10.

(z) Pausan. in Achaicis. A. M. 2812.

(a) Vide Simonium in Chron. Cathol. ad A. M. 2812. &c.

(b) Pausanias in Boeotia.

## SECT. 3.

VINS.

the old men, and out of indulgence to his son, sent away the Ambassadors without any satisfaction. Then both parties prepared for the War, and another engagement followed, wherein the *Greeks* had the better, who then dividing their forces, left part to continue the siege, and with the other, *Achilles* (who took with him *Palamedes*) was sent to harraze the Countrey, and cut off provisions from the *Citie*. This he so well performed, as he took 23 Towns, and therein got much booty, which was divided. Whilst *Palamedes* was with him cartying on the War in the Island *Lesbos*, *Ulysses* envying him for his great wisdom, wherein he seemed to overtop him, circumvented him by treachery, and by false suggestions procured him to be sent for to the Camp, and stoned as a Traytor, though he had exceedingly well deserved of the Army, being a person of great courage (which he also expressed at his death) and yet so moderate and wise, that he thereby allayed the too much heat of *Achilles*. To him (a) some attribute the invention of 16 Letters in the *Greek Alphabet*, (b) others only 4. but withall the ordering and ranking of an Army, the watch word, Guards, and Dice to divert the Souldiers. His death was grievously taken by *Ajax* the son of *Telamon*, who for some time absented himself, but especially by *Achilles*, who took it so heinously, that for a great while he would not be reconciled, nor brought to fight, having much more cause to be offended for this thing, than the detaining of a woman from him by *Agamemnon*, as the Poet sings, who industriously omitteth whatsoever reflecteth upon *Ulysses*.

30. *Achilles* determined not to fight till the *Trojans* should peirce as far as his own ships, which at length happening, he first sent out *Patroclus* in his Armour, who had desired it. *Patroclus* with the *Myrmidones* (*Achilles* his subjects) put the *Trojans* to flight, who now had begun to cast fire into the ships, slew *Pyrachmes* with his own hand, pursued *Hektor*, and smote *Sarpedon* King of *Lycia* about the heart so that he died; but being wounded by *Euphorbus*, who came behind him, he was slain by *Hektor*. *Euphorbus* endeavoured to get his body, but was killed by *Menelaus*; and the Soul of this *Euphorbus* *Pythagoras* affirmed (according to his principle of commigration) to have passed into his own body. After this, *Achilles* (whose presence formerly had kept the *Trojans* within their Walls) went out to fight, and taking twelve young men alive slew them at the funeral of *Patroclus*. By the River *Scamander* (or *Xanthus*) he killed *Asteropaeus*, Captain of the *Paones*, from whom, though he received a wound in the Arm, yet went he to fight with *Hektor*, who expected him without the Walls, and would not be perswaded to decline his fury, though it proved his ruine, being slain in this single Combat about the 30th year of his age. His body tied to a Chariot, the Conquerour drew in Triumph about the Walls, but afterwards it was ransomed by *Priamus*. After this he slew *Memnon* the Nephew of *Priamus* by his brother *Tithonus*, who was sent out of *Persia* by the *Assyrian* King *Tentamus* to his aid; then *Troilus* his son by *Hecuba*, and lastly *Penthesilea* one of the *Amazons*, who for murder had fled her Countrey, and coming to *Troas* after *Hektor*'s death, did good service against the *Greeks*. When dead, *Achilles* is said to have been enamoured of her body, and with her also the valour of this sort of women is believed to have been extinct.

31. *Achilles*, whom no art nor violence of the *Trojans* could overcome, was taken by the love of a Woman, and slain by treachery. For having a view of (a) *Polyxena*, the daughter of *Priamus*, from the Wall, he became so inflamed to her in his affections, that he proceeded to a Treaty of marriage, wherein he was shot with a Dart by *Paris*, who hid himself behind the image of *Apollo*, which idol is therefore feigned an assistant in the work. Afterwards the *Greeks* had it revealed to them, that except they could take the *Palladium*, or Image of *Pallas* out of the City, till they should get *Hercules* his Arrows, and provide a wooden Horse, *Troy* could never be taken. *Ulysses* therefore, and *Diomedes*, as \* *Virgil* singeth, stole away the Image; *Philoctetes*, who had the Arrows was sent for from the Island *Lemnos*, and with them flew *Paris* the incendiary, after whose death *Deiphobus* the son of *Priamus*

(a) Tacitus lib. 11.  
(b) Plin. l. 7. c. 56.

Leges Simplicium in Chronico Cathol. ad A.M. 2820. &c.

Diodorus l. 2. p. 91.

\* Servius.

(a) Idem ad Virgil. Aeneid. 13.

\* Aeneid. 2.

*Achilles* treacherously killed by *Paris*.

## SECT. 3.

Troy taken.

*mus* obtained *He'ena*, as being of best account for valour next to his brother *Hektor*. Then was a wooden Horse prepared by the hands of *Epeus*, which pretending to dedicate to *Minerva* they left before the *Citie*, having industriously made it higher than the Gates, hoping the *Trojans* would pull down part of the Wall to take it in. They left also some of their choicest men in the Horse's belly, and *Sidon* with his hands bound behind him, who under notion of a fugitive that had been ill used, should perswade them to receive it into the *Citie*; and then giving out that they would raise the siege for some time, they withdrew into the Island *Tenedos*. The *Trojans* with great resolution break down the Wall, and taking in the Horse placed him in the *Citie*; but in the night *Sidon* giving warning by fire, the *Greeks* came from *Tenedos*, and being easily let in by their companions, by reason of the *Trojans* had drunk themselves fast asleep, the *Citie* was taken, sacked and burnt. *Menelaus* killing *Deiphobus* in his bed, took away *Helena*, and *Priamus* was slain in his own house by *Pyrhus* (or *Neoptolemus*) the son of *Achilles*. Of the *Trojans* which escaped, *Antenor* being spared by the *Greeks* came with the *Heneti* into the *Adriatick* Sea, where he built *Padua*, and *Aeneas* the son of *Anchises* at length reached *Italy*. This destruction of *Troy* happened in the 10th year of the siege, 408 before the first *Olympiad*, 1182 before the *Era* of Christ, of the World 2821. in the dayes of *Jephtah*, who judged *Israel*.

32. Of the *Greek* Captains which escaped, *Ajax* the son of *Telamon* striving with *Ulysses* for the Armour of *Achilles*, and overcome by the judgement of the Army, killed himself, or else was circumvented by his adversary. *Ajax* the younger, the son of *Oileus*, having taken prisoner *Cassandra*, the daughter of *Priamus*, unwilling to part with her, was driven by the plots of *Agamemnon* to shift for himself, and putting out to Sea in an unreasonable time miscarried by shipwrack. Of those that returned home, most encountered with many difficulties; *Ulysses* especially, who for many years wandered about, as it is poetically described by \* *Homer*. *Menelaus* after the work was done, presently commanded the *Greeks* to prepare for their return; but *Agamemnon* being unwilling to depart before he had sacrificed to *Minerva*, the Fleet was divided, and a contention arose betwixt the followers of *Menelaus* when they came to *Tenedos*, because some would have stayed for *Agamemnon* there; insonmuch as *Ulysses* then returned back to him. *Nestor* set sayl thence before *Menelaus*, but was overtaken by him about the Island *Lesbos*, whence they sailed together as far as *Attica*, where *Menelaus* staying to bury *Phrontes*, the other left him and came safe home to *Pylus*. *Menelaus* his ships were most of them overwhelmed in a Tempest about the Promontory of *Malea*, and the rest with him and *Helena* driven into *Egypt*, where, and in other places he continued till \* the 8th year. *Agamemnon*, after he had sacrificed, and erected an Altar to the twelve gods in the Promontory of *Troas*, came home, and was presently \* murdered by *Egisthus*, the son of his Uncle *Thyestes*, with whom *Clytemnestra* his wife (the daughter also of *Tyndareus*) had lived in Adultery, and now conspired to make him away.

Orestes.

33. He left a son named *Orestes*, and three daughters begotten on this woman. The Boy (for he was but young) was by his sister *Eletra*, and his Nurse, vvhhen they perceived his life was laid at by *Egisthus* before his fathers return, conveyed into *Phocke*, unto *Strophius*, vvho had married his father's sister, vvhen returning the 8th year after his death he killed *Egisthus* together vvith his mother, and recovered the Kingdom. Because of his mothers death he was vexed by the furies, and found some difficulty in mastering the *Argives*, vvho now opposed him; but by the help of the *Phocians* he recovered his father's Dominions, though *Menelaus* his Uncle, either for that he disapproved the death of his mother, or for private respects, bare him no good vvill, and neglected him, vvvhich he shewed further in taking from him his daughter *Hermione* (vvho had brought him a son) and giving her to *Pyrhus*, the son of *Achilles*. Tormented vvith the furies he vvvent into

A.M. 2821

\* In Odyss.

\* Consulte Strab. l. 1. p. 37. &c.  
\* Homer Odyss. 4.

Leges Simplicium in Chronico Cathol. ad A.M. 2829.

## SECT. 3.

into *Arcadia*, and thence to *Athens*, where he was acquitted in the Court of *Areopagus* about his mother, the suffrages, for, and against him being equal, in which case judgement always passed on the Defendants side. A little after this he is thought to have killed *Pyrrhus* as he was sacrificing to his father at the Temple of *Delphos*, and then resumed his wife. When *Menelaus* was dead he obtained the Kingdom of *Sparta*, the *Lacedaemonians* being more willing to receive him as the Grand-son of *Tyndareus* by *Clytemnestra*, than the base sons of *Menelaus*, *Nicostratus* and *Megapenthus*, begotten on a slave. It is probable that he, as his father before him, was supreme Lord of *Argos*, and that the Successors of *Melampus* and *Bias*, ever since the division of the Kingdom, or for a good space, held their principalities of his Predecessors and himself. But now being King of *Lacedaemon*, and the greatest part of *Arcadia*, lying near to *Argos*, after the death of *Cylabobus*, the son of *Sibonetus* (who left no Children) and that *Amphilochus* was departed thence to the *Amphilochians* (to whom he gave name) having the *Phocians* constant friends to him, he easily made himself sole master of *Argos*, and so this Kingdom was re-united about 140 years after the threefold division of it. Divers years after, he placed a Colony of the *Aeolians* in *Asia*\* (four ages before that of the *Ionians*) and shortly after died in *Arcadia*, when he had reigned 70 years.

34. He left (b) two sons: One legitimate, and named *Tisamenus* (from his revenging his fathers death) begotten on *Hermione*; and another born of *Erigone*, the daughter of *Aegisthus*. *Tisamenus* succeeded him according to *Pausanias*, though *Paterculus* writeth that both of them reigned after their fathers death. Scarce was *Tisamenus* warm in his seat when he was displaced by the *Heraclidae*, or posterity of *Hercules*. They had several times attempted their return into *Peloponnesus*, but were ever frustrated till now; *Hyllus* the son of *Hercules* once or twice, *Cleodaeus* his son after him, and *Aristomachus* his son also with the same success. *Aristomachus* left three sons, *Temenus*, *Cresphontes*, and *Aristodemus*, which being grown up consulted the Oracle of *Apollo* concerning their return, and had the same answer their father formerly had, that they should attain their desire, if they went by the way *Stenygrus*, which word in the *Greek* being of an ambiguous signification, *Aristomachus* thinking by it to be meant the *Isthmus*, as a narrow way, led down his forces through it, and miscarried. *Temenus* objecting this, the *Pythia*, or woman that delivered the Oracles, answered, that their Ancestors by their misunderstanding had been Authors of their own infelicity; for whereas *Hyllus* was told that the third fruit was to be expected, the third Generation was meant, and not the third crop, or summer, as he expounded it, and accordingly perished: And as for *Stenygrus*, by it they were to understand the deep Sea on the right hand as one entereth *Peloponnesus*, and not the narrow *Isthmus*. Having received this answer, and conceiving all things now to be fulfilled and ripe for their effectual return, they built ships in *Aeolia* upon that Sea, the place wherein they were made thenceforth keeping the name of *Naupactus* from that occasion. Whilst they were about this work, a certain Prophet appeared to them, and foretold them several things; but *Hippotes* taking him for a Magician sent on purpose to delude the Army, killed him. For this a Pestilence was sent amongst them, about which consulting the Oracle they were bidde to banish *Hippotes* for 10 years, and use the conduct of a Captain with three eyes, for two years space.

The return of the Heraclidae.

35. Seeking out such a man, they met one (c) *Oxylnus*, an *Aetolian*, son to *Thoas* that went to the siege of *Troy*; who being on horse-back had but one eye, now returning into his own Countrey from *Elea* in *Peloponnesus*, whither he had been banished for killing a man. Him they made Captain of the expedition, bargaining to procure him the possession of *Elis* as (d) *Pausanias* witnesseth, who reporteth him to have ridden on a Mule that had but one eye, and therefore to have been taken for the man meant by the Oracle, through the persuasion of *Cresphontes*. Being ready, they (e) gave out they would march again through the *Isthmus*, and by that means the

*Paterculus* l. i.

*Pausan.* in *Cynthisiacis*.

\* *Strabo* l. 13. pag. 82.

(b) *Vide Pausan.* ut prius p. 60. *Apollodorus* l. 2. pag. 123.

(c) *Apollodorus*.

(d) *Eliac.* l. 1. p. 150.

(e) *Polyenus* *Stratag.* l. 2. A. M. 2901.

## SECT. 3.

the *Peloponnesians* attending their motions there, easily passed over the Sea, and landed at *Molyerium*. Three parts of *Peloponnesus* especially they challenged as their due: *Argos*, because descended of *Perseus*, whereas *Tisamenus* the present King was of the posterity of *Pelops*, who had no right to that Kingdom. *Lacedaemon*, for that *Hercules* killed *Hypocoön*, who had expelled *Tyndareus* thence, and restored the later to the Kingdom, on this condition, to keep it for his children. *Messenia*, because having also conquered it, when he destroyed the City *Pilus*, and slew all the brothers of *Nestor*, he gave it to him of meer goodness and compassion, but on the same condition as *Lacedaemon* to *Tyndareus*. The dominion of *Argos* without much ado they got into their hands; after that, taking a certain Village in the confines thereof, *Temenus* fortified it, and used it for a place of retreat for carrying on the War. One *Philonemus* betrayed *Sparta* into their hands, which they entered with sound of Pipes instead of Trumpets, as most effectual by the tune, to make the soldier attentive, and keep his ranks, which use was constantly observed by the *Lacedaemonians*, together with that of the Harp.

36. *Tisamenus* and the *Acheans* thus expelled these parts, and out of *Messenia* by the *Heraclidae* and *Dorians* their associates, sent to the *Ionians* then inhabiting *Peloponnesus*, their Neighbours, desiring leave to live amongst them. But they being jealous of him, left for his high birth and valour, he should be chosen King of the Country, denied their request. The *Acheans* then, driven by necessity and desperation, attempted to get by force, what they could not by intreaty, and though they lost *Tisamenus* in the fight, drave the *Ionians* out of their Seats, and constrained them to pass into *Attica*, where they were received by the *Athenians*, through the persuasion of *Melanthus* the King. As for the *Heraclidae*, when they came to divide what they had won, *Argos* fell to *Temenus*, *Cresphontes*, by fraud used in the Lot, obtained *Messene*, and *Lacedaemon* became the portion of *Procles* and *Eurysthemus*, the sons of *Aristodemus*, who was slain by the sons of *Pylas* kinsmen to *Tisamenus*, before they entered *Peloponnesus*: They also according to their engagement possessed *Oxylnus* of *Elis*.

*Temenus* obtained *Argos*.

*Cresphontes*.

All regal power taken from his Successors.

37. *Temenus* being settled in *Argos*, after some years incurred the displeasure of his Sons, for marrying his Daughter *Hymerho* to *Deiphontes* his kinsman, he so affected them two above his other children, that he made him his only Counsellour in all affairs; inasmuch that his sons fearing he would transfer the Kingdom from themselves to him, made their father away, by one means or other. And *Cresphontes* his Brother, who had used too much cunning in getting *Messene*, not long after, seeming to be too gracious with the people, incurred the displeasure of the Nobility, and was murdered together with two of his Sons; only *Epitus* then but young escaped, and killing *Polyphontes* the usurper, revenged his Father's death. Recovering thus the Kingdom, he had Successors, *Glaucus*, *Isthmias*, *Dotadas*, *Sybotas*, *Phonias*, *Antiochus*, and *Euphaer*, who dying of a wound, received in a battle fought with the *Lacedaemonians*, without issue, *Aristodemus* was elected in his room, and continued as long as the Kingdom it self lasted, being overthrown by means of the *Spartans*, as will be seen in their story. *Cifus* the eldest son of *Temenus* succeeded him, though the people generally inclined to *Deiphontes*, by whose party they were so stirred up and animated, that *Cifus* being dead, they took away from his Successors all regal power and authority, left them nothing but a meer empty title, and so in reality, this Kingdom fell, being in effect turned into a Free-State. Which change happened about forty years after the return of the *Heraclidae*, 690 after the A. M. 2940.

38. One (f) (and he a great one) there is, who would gather out of an old Tragician, that the ancient government of this Kingdom of the *Ionians* was merely absolute, the King being by the Poet called both *People belli & pacis*, and City, not subject to any Laws, but sustained by the power of his Throne, lib. 1. cap. 3. and acting all things according to his meer will and pleasure. But if credit

*Leges Pausan.* in *Argolicis* & *Strabon.* l. 1. p. 352, &c.

*Strabo.* lib. 18. p. 365.

*Polyenus*.

*Pausan.* in *Achaicis*, *Messenicis* & *Lacenicis*.

*Idem* in *Argolicis*.

*In Messenicis*.

A. M. 2940.

(f) *Gratius ex Aeschilo* in *supplicibus*, de *iure belli & pacis*.

## SECT. 4.

may be given to the expressive words of (g) *Pausanias*, rather than the liberty of a Poet, *Emmius* thence concludeth, their power was but moderate; for the *Argives* saith *Pausanias*, from the most ancient times were exceeding studious of liberty. Out of this principle (being stirred up as it seemeth by the party of *Deiphontes*) they abated the power of *Cisus* his Successors, leaving them nothing but an empty name. And this they further shewed, when *Melias* the Son of *Lacidans*, one of these Kings, nor enduring this abatement, grew as they thought dissolute and imperious in the Government. For impatient hereof, they deprived him of all power, took upon them to condemn him to death, and pluckt up all Supremacy by the roots, nor suffering any afterwards to reign amongst them. For though we meet with one afterwards, called *King of Argos* in *Herodotus*; yet that name signified no more than it did in the Common-wealths of *Athens*, *Carthage*, and *Rome*, where this title was wont to be given to some sorts of Officers, as this work will shew. The Government was now *Democratical*, the chief power lying in the people, divided into three tribes, to which the *Senate* was subordinate, chosen every year for the preparing of matters for the whole body, and the management of the executive power, with authority to enact things of lesser consequence. There was also a Council of State, consisting of 80 persons, besides inferior Magistrates of the City, and Judges for determining of causes, all which are mentioned in the league made betwixt the *Argives*, *Athenians*, and others, described by *Thucydides* in his fifth Book of the *Peloponnesian War*. No fuller intelligence have we concerning the constitution of this Common-wealth, which yet flourished downwards for many Ages, and had great contests with the *Lacedemonians*, especially about the territories of *Thyrea*, to which both laid claim. Sometimes they fell out about their confederates, being moved with much emulation and distaste at each others Government (the one being a *Democracie*, and the other an *Oligarchie*) which once especially brought the State of *Argos* into great danger. But these things belong to another place.

## SECT. IV.

## The most ancient Kingdom and Commonwealth of Athens.

Cecrops.

1. The founding of the *Athenian Kingdom* is ascribed to (a) *Cecrops*, who first reigned in *Attica* (then *Attica*) in the dayes of *Triopas* King of *Argos*, 373 years before the destruction of *Troy*, 780 before the first *Olympiad*, A. M. 2449. The (b) *Egyptians* said he was their Countryman, and brought hither a Colonie of the *Saita*, who inhabited upon one of mouths of *Nile*. He was feigned to be double-natured, consisting both of a Serpentine and Humane shape, because coming into *Greece*, he shook off barbarism and turned civil. Besides this Colonie, he gathered the people of these parts into twelve Towns, whereas before that they lived dispersedly according to the most ancient custom of *Greece*, and called them *Athens*, after the name of *Minerva* in the *Greek Language*. The storie is (c) told, that when the name came to be given, on a sodain an Olive-tree, and a Fountain of water appeared, whereat *Cecrops* moved with wonder, sent to enquire of the Oracle what they should mean. It was answered, that the Olive signified *Minerva*, the water *Neptune*, and that they might name that City from which of these two they pleased. Hereupon, all the men and women were gathered together to make the choice: the men were for *Neptune*, but the women being the greater number, carried the name for *Minerva*. *Neptune* angry hereat, drowned their territories, whom to pacify, they punished the women several ways. They decreed, that thenceforth they should not have a voice in any publick matter; that no child should bear the mother's name,

(g) In *Corinthiacis*, pag. 61.(a) *Eusebius* in *Chron.* ex *Calistore*. A. M. 2449. (b) *Diodorus*. l. 1. p. 17.(c) *Augustin* ex *Varione*, de *Civitat. Dei* l. 18. c. 9.

## SECT. 4.

name, and that they should not be called *Athenae*, but *Attica*. Some women known by the name of *Minerva* there have been, though impure spirits, ambitious to blind men with superstition and idolatry, might well act in this matter, as *Augustine* telleth us, under the name of *Neptune*.

Several Minerva's.

2. *Cicero* (d) mentioneth five several women that have had the name of *Minerva*. The first was the mother of *Apollon* by *Pan*. The second born of the River *Nile*, and worshipped by the *Saita*. The third daughter to *Jupiter Calvus*. The fourth begotten by *Jupiter* on *Cecropis*, daughter to the Ocean, called *Cecropis* by the *Arcadians*; which invented the Chariot drawn by four horses. The fifth was the daughter of *Pallas*, said to have killed her Father, because he attempted to violate her virginity. Of these the second must be she that was thus honoured by *Cecrops*, having founded the City *Sais*, near to *Delta*, being by the *Egyptians* called *Nubis*. To her he had formerly erected a Statue in *Aegypt*, and he, as they say, first give the name of *Zeus* to him whom the *Lains* called *Jupiter*. As there were several *Minervae*, so also more (e) than one City known by the name of *Athens*. From this in *Attica*, the Citizens were by the *Romans* called *Athenienses*, but another there was in *Eubaea*, built by *Cecrops* the Son of *Erechtheus*, the Inhabitants of which went by the name of *Athenae*: and a City in *Nabone*, a Province of *Gaul*, near to *Marseils*, called *Athensopolis*, and the Citizens *Athensopolitae*. There was also in *Laconia* a Town called by the name of *Athens*.

And Athens.

Deucalion his story.

3. In the dayes of (f) *Cecrops*, *Deucalion* the Son of *Prometheus* reigned in *Thessalie*, whose history being remarkable, must be briefly touched. *Lapetus* had three Sons, *Atlas*, *Prometheus*, and *Epimetheus*. For (g) the first, One telleth us there were three that bore the name of *Atlas*. One a Moor, and the greatest of all; another an *Italian*, Father to *Eleftra*; the third, an *Arcadian*, Father of *Maia*, the Mother of *Mercury*; all which the antients confound according to their custom. The first (h) lived near to Mount *Atlas*; to which for his great skil in Astrology, is attributed the hearing up of the Heavens; and he is also counted the Father of *Eleftra*. *Prometheus* found out the instrument to strike fire, and thereupon is said to have stolen fire from the Gods. *Deucalion* his Son married *Pyrria* the daughter of his Uncle *Epimetheus*, and in his time (i) happened that great deluge in part of *Greece*, which is known by the addition of his name; that Country called most antiently and truly *Hellas*, his seat near to the Mountain *Parnassus* being chiefly afflicted with it, on which Hill he is thought to have saved many men by boats, and thence the Fable to have risen of his repeopling the Earth. But (that we may note it altogether) there are three particular Floods which we read to have hapned to this Country of *Greece*. The first, under *Ogyges* (called the *Ogygian deluge*) concerning whom, we shall speak in the History of *Thebes*. This fell 248 years before either of the other, and overwhelmed *Attica* especially so, that as *Pererius* will have it, it remained waste 200 years after. The next was this of *Deucalion*, which happened 727 years before the first *Olympiad*: and the (k) third fell 86 after it, in the dayes of *Dardanus* and *Cadmus*.

His issue, which is especially to be noted, for a distinct knowledge of the several sorts of Greeks.

4. *Deucalion* of *Pyrria* his wife begat *Hellen* and *Amphyktion*. *Hellen* gave the name of *Hellenes* to his Subjects before called *Graci*, and of *Hellas* to the Country formerly named *Pelagias*, from the *Pelagias* (who there inhabited) is *Hamon* from *Hamon*, the son of *Pelagius*, and *Pyrria* from *Pyrria*. He had three sons, *Xuthus*, *Aeolus*, and *Dorus*. To *Aeolus* he left his Kingdom, and sent the other two abroad to seek out seats elsewhere. *Aeolus* grew so famous, that the name of *Jupiter* and *Neptune* came to be given him. *Dorus* inhabited the Country *Histiatis*, about the Mountains *Ossa* and *Olympus*. *Xuthus* after his Father's death was banished *Thessalie* by his other Brothers, for stealing away a great part of his Father's treasure, and came to *Athens*, where he married the daughter of *Erechtheus*, on which he begat *Achaeus* and *Ion*. *Achaeus* getting aid from *Athens* and *Aegialus*, went into *Thessalie*, and recovered his Grand-Father's Kingdom; but afterwards

3<sup>o</sup> De natura Deorum.(e) *Varro* de *Atologia*. Vide *Lydovic*. *Phoenia* in *Augustin*. *De lib. 18*. cap. 9.(f) *Euseb.*(g) *Servius* ad *8. Aeneid.*(h) *Diodorus* l. 5.(i) *August.* de *Civitat. Dei*, l. 18. c. 8. *Oronius*. l. 1.(k) *Diod.* l. 5. p. 223.*Strabo*. l. 8.*Herod.* l. 1. *Pausan.* in *Achaicis*.

## SECT. 4.

killing a man by chance, he fled into *Laconia*, where his posterity continued till expelled by the *Heracleidae* and *Dorians*, as we shewed in the History of *Istamenus*. *Ion* being exceeding famous at *Athens* had a numerous progeny, which, for that *Attica* was now grown too full, was sent out as a Colony into *Peloponnesus*, whence they were thrust out by their brethren the *Achaean*s, after they had denied them harbour (as is formerly said) and returned to *Athens*, from which *Cirie* they were afterwards led out into *Asia*, by the sons of *Codrüs*. But these things hapned in after times.

The Council  
of *Areopagus*.

5. In *Cecrops* his time (1) one maketh the Council, or Senate of *Areopagus* to have had its Original, though no clear light can we discover concerning the true beginning of it. (m) Some write that it began under *Solon*, but (n) another of a more ancient date signifieth that it was a Court of Judicature before. (o) One deriveth the word from *Mars* (in Greek *Are*) making him to have been first tried there for killing *Halmrhodius*, the son of *Nepertune*, who offered violence to his daughter *Alcippe*. Others would fetch a reason from the erecting of his Spear there, or from this, that the Court of *Areopagus* took Cognizance of slaughters, which are usually committed with Swords, or other Weapons of *Mars*. Lastly, some think it thence to have been named, for that the *Amazons*, when they fought against *Theseus*, made *Mars* his Hill their Fortresse, and there offered sacrifice to him. \* *Cecrops* died after he had reigned 50 years, and because *Erysiichon* his son died before him, *Cranus* the most powerfull man then at *Athens* succeeded him in the Kingdom. He, after he had reigned some seven years, was thrust out by *Amphyktion*, the son of *Deucalion*, and his son-in-law, the founder as some have thought of the National Council of the *Amphyktion*s, of which we have already spoken. He is reported to have given entertainment to *Dionysus*, or *Bacchus*, who at this time, as they say, came into *Attica*, and when he had reigned ten years, was also expelled by *Erichthonius*.

*Cranus*.

*Amphyktion*.

*Erichthonius*.

*Pandion*.

*Erechthionus*.

*Cecrops* 2d.

*Pandion*.

*Egeus*.

6. The father of *Erichthonius* was said to be *Pulcan*, and his mother the earth, because he was found in *Pulcan's* Temple upon the earth, with a Snake wound about his feet, whence also they feigned that he had feet like Snakes, and invented a Chariot wherein he might ride and hide them. He instituted Games to *Apollo* and *Minerva*, and having reigned 50 years, left his Kingdom to his son *Pandion*, who also, after 40. gave way to his son *Erechthionus*. He became a man of great account, and whereas the subjects of *Athens* were before his time called *Cecropidae*, thenceforth they were named after the place it self. He made War upon the inhabitants of *Eleusine*, *Ion* the son of *Xuthus*, and his own Grand-son by his daughter being his chief Commander, wherein after he had slain *Immaradus*, the son of *Eumolpus* their General, he also lost his life, when he had reigned 50 years. He left three sons, *Cecrops*, *Metion*, and *Pandorus*, who falling into contention about the succession, put it to the arbitration of *Xuthus*. He adjudged it to the eldest, but yet would they not rest satisfied, which made him leave *Athens*, and go into *Agialea* where he died. This *Cecrops* the second, some think to have gathered the people into twelve Towns, for that living dispersedly abroad, the *Carians* by Sea, and the *Boeotians* (called *Aonia*) by Land harraided the Countrey, as \* *Strabo* writeth. At the end of 40 years his son named *Pandion* succeeded him, who was expelled the Kingdom by the sons of *Metion* his Uncle, and fled to *Pyla*, the King of *Megara* his father-in-law, who left him his Successor. Whil't he here reigned he begat four sons, *Egeus*, *Lycus*, *Pallas*, and *Nisus*, who after his death went against the *Metionidae*, and expelled them *Athens*, the Dominions whereof they divided into four parts, according to their father's injunctions, *Megara* falling to *Nisus*, who reigned there a long time.

7. Though this division was made, yet was *Egeus* Sovereign in effect, for fear of whom *Lycus* fled to *Athens*. *Pallas* the other brother had 50 sons, which growing up gave cause enough to *Egeus* to be jealous of them, having him in contempt because he was childlesse. For though he married two wives, yet had he issue by neither of them, which made him go to *Delphos* to enquire

(1) Euseb.

(m) Cicero of  
fic. l. 1. &  
Plutarch.

(n) Aristot.

(o) Eusebius in  
Attica.

\* Euseb.

Pausan. ut su-  
pra.  
A. M. 3507.

Apollodorus.  
l. 3.

Pausan. in At-  
tica.

\* L. 9. p. 397.  
C.

Pausan. ut  
prius.

A. M. 2723.

Plutarch in  
Theseo.

Begetteth  
Theseus.

quire of the Oracle about posterity. The answer being obscure, in his return he was entertained by *Pitheus*, the son of *Pelops*, a man famous for learning at *Trazene*, who either understanding the Oracle, or otherwise induced, made his daughter *Aethra* to lye with him, after he had caused him to drink good store of Wine. At his departure he put a sword, and a knife under a great stone, bidding her, if she brought forth a Boy, as soon as he could remove the stone, and take those things from under it, to send him with them as tokens unto *Athens*, and he would own him for his son. She accordingly brought forth a son (called *Theseus*, from putting the marks under the stone) whom *Pitheus* brought up, and for that he proved exceeding prudent and courageous, his mother at sixteen years of age brought him to the stone, acquainting him with his Original, and his fathers injunctions. He easily removing it, and taking away the tokens, prepared for his journey; but they were unwilling to let him go by Land, because all the wayes were full of Robbers, since *Hercules* (who went up and down destroying them) after his killing of *Iphitus* had quitted these parts, and was gone into *Lycia*, where for some years he served *Omphale* the Queen. But *Theseus* burning with emulation upon hearing continually the praise of *Hercules* his Kinsman (for their mothers were next Cousins) resolved to take that way to obtain some renown in killing those Robbers, and effected his design upon several of them.

8. Being arrived at *Athens*, he was in danger to be poisoned by his father, through the perswasion of *Medea* (who now was fled to him from *Colchis*, and filled his jealous head with suspicions of this stranger) till thinking it wisdom to make himself known, rather than let another do it, he shewed him the tokens, which he presently acknowledged, & owning him for his son, made his subjects as such to take notice of him. But the sons of *Pallas*, who before had been seditious, now seeing all hopes of the Kingdom taken from them by him, and disdaining that *Egeus* should first reign himself, being not of the blood Royal, but adopted onely by *Pandion* (as *Plutarch* writeth) and then leave for his Successor a stranger, and a Bastard, they took Arms, and the better to accomplish their design, divided themselves into two parties, whereof the one came openly with their father against *Athens*, and the other lay in ambush. *Theseus* having notice of the later sort, surprized, and cut them all off, which so discouraged the other as they separated themselves and fled. *Theseus* after this, to employ himself, and gain the favour of the people, went, and took the *Marathonian* Bull, fetch't out of *Crete* by *Hercules*, and brought him quick into the *Cirie*, after he had infested the Countrey very much. Then failed he to *Crete*, where, as the fable goeth, he flew the *Minotaur*, a Monster kept by *Minos*, King of that Island.

The acts of  
Theseus.

*Minos*.

9. *Minos*, (g) *Rhadamanthus*, and *Sarpedon* were the Children of *Jupiter* by *Europa*, and all adopted by *Asterius* (the Grand-son of *Hellen*, by his son *Tentamus*) King of that Island, who married their mother, and was childlesse. *Minos* was the Law-giver of the *Cretians*; this honour being ascribed to him by the most Authentick of ancient (x) Authors. Yet (f) *Ephorus* in his book of *European* Commonwealths, wrote that he was but an imitator of one *Rhadamanthus* (of the same name with his brother, who by others is also said to have been employed by *Minos* in this work, but more ancient) who first cultivated the Island by Laws, Cities, and Commonwealths, feigning that he had from *Jupiter* all the Ordinances which he published. In (t) imitation of him, *Minos* having continued in the Law of *Jupiter* nine years, produced Laws in writing, and ascribed them to the same Author as *Homer* also hinteth; which (u) word of *Homer*, though *Strabo* taketh to signifie a continuance for ten years, yet *Plato*, and from him (x) *Valerius Maximus* interpret it not of nine years continuance, but every ninth year wherein as it seemeth he amended his Laws. Although *Minos* was a King, yet he directed (according to \* *Ephorus*) the whole model of his Laws to the freedom of his subjects. This liberty he thought to be preserved best by Concord, which would be most established by the prevention of avarice

## SECT. 4.

Apollod.  
A. M. 2725.

Plutarch.

(g) Diogenes  
l. 4. p. 183.

(f) Plato in  
legibus.

Aristot. Politic.  
l. 2. cap. 8.

(t) Apud  
Strabon. lib. 10.  
p. 476.

(u) Eusebius, &c.

(x) Odyss.  
(x) Lib. 1. c. 2.

Exter. Exemp. g.

\* Apud Strab.  
ut prius.

pag. 480. B.  
and



## SECT. 4.

and luxury, the great causes of disagreement. He would therefore have them all live soberly and frugally, to which purpose he ordained that Boys should live together in companies, called *Agela*, when they were grown up, and men, in others, called *Syssitia*, from eating together, (which they also named *Andria* from their in-nood) that taking their meat all in publick, the poor might live in equal condition with the rich.

The form of  
the Cretian  
Common-  
wealth,

10. After the abdication of regal power, the chief Magistracy was exercised by ten *Cosmi*, in power, though not in number, like to the Spartan *Epitri*, being chosen out of the lowest sort of people as those; yet not out of the whole body but particular families, which custom *Aristotle* accounteth worse than the other of *Lacedæmon*. Those *Cosmi* at home Governed the Commonwealth; in War commanded the Army with absolute Authority. There was also a *Senate*, chosen out of those who in this Office had well demeaned themselves, being for life, and not liable to be called to account. There was an Order of *Horf-men*, who were bound to keep Horses for the service of the State, whereas they at *Lacedæmon* had no such tie upon them. In the *Cancio*, or great Assembly, all Members of the Commonwealth had equal Votes, but its power was not great, confirming onely what was propounded by the *Senate* and *Cosmi*. They had publick slaves, called *Periæci*, from their inhabiting up and down the Countrey, who tilled the grounds, and paid in a constant Revenue. All, when ripe of age, were commanded to marry for the propagation of legitimate issue: Yet they did not lead their wives to their houses when newly married, but let them stay till they were fit to govern a family. The Boys took their meat altogether on the ground, serving themselves, and the elder sort. They were clothed meanly, and alike, both Winter and Summer; they used bickerings with one another, both with single hand and Weapon on certain dayes, and had those who exercised them also in shooting, and a varlike kind of leaping invented by *Cures*; moreover in certain Richms, called properly \* *Rythmi Cretici*. The *Cretians* had several commendable Laws, as that which severely restrained drunkenness, another commended by *Plato*, that required an account how publick Corn was distributed and spent. The younger sort were utterly forbidden to make any inquiry into the equity of the Laws, and if the elder were unsatisfied, without their knowledge, they were to have recourse to the Magistrates, and their own equals. But that the Laws might be engraven in their memories, the boyes were wont when they were taught to read, to get some of them by heart, being put into Verse, together with some Musical Notes.

11. *Lycurgus* the Spartan Law-giver made this model the pattern of his new Commonwealth, having travelled into the Island, where he had converse with *Thales*, a man ennobled for his Lawes, and Lyrick Poems; for we must not suppose *Minos* the sole Author of the *Cretian* customs. As the *Cretians* had their *Cosmi*, so the *Spartans* their *Ephori*, though most probable it is that these were brought in after the death of *Lycurgus*. As they a *Senate*, so these also endowed with the like immunities. The *Cancio*, or Assembly of the people in *Crete*, resolved nothing but what was propounded by the *Cosmi* and *Senate*, which was followed by the first constitution of *Lycurgus* the *Senate* propounding at *Sparta*. The *Periæci*, and *Heloti* fitly agreed, though the *Cretians* received lesse damage from the former, because being in an Island there were no Neighbours to hold correspondence with the slaves. The *Syssitia* of the *Lacedæmonians* were fetched, as *Aristotle* proveth, from *Crete*; and their *Phiditia* taken from the *Andria* of that place, as also their education of Children was agreeable to the *Cretian*. *Plato* commendeth much the Commonwealth of *Crete*, and the Legislator for his wisdom and prudence, though he abominateth the immodest love of boyes, and rejecteth his reason for it, which yet *Lycurgus* so approved, as to put it in his model. *Aristotle* condemneth it, as also amongst some other things, the Election of the *Cosmi*, and their too great advantage they had of raising seditions in the State, when they came to be punished. But *Polybius* affirmeth the two Commonwealths of *Crete* and *Sparta* to have vastly differed,

Vide Aristot.  
quo minus  
Strabo.

\* Ρυθμοί  
Κρητικοί.

Strabo, lib. 10.  
pag. 482.

Aristot. Politic.  
lib. 2. cap. 8.

De Legibus  
lib. 9.

## SECT. 4.

ed, nor fearing to blame *Ephorus*, *Xenophon*, *Calisthenes*, and *Plato*, for saying they were very like; because with the *Cretians* it was usual to ingross Land and Money, whence they were avaricious, contentious, sedition, and what not? moreover they had annual Magistrates, whereas the other had two Kings for life. They were, he saith, fraudulent and crafty in their private demeanour, and most unjust in their publick Councils. Though some publick abuses taxed by *Polybius*, might have crept in in ancient times; yet it appeareth from the testimony of that Verse of *Epimenides* a *Cretian*, which *St. Paul* citeth and confirmeth, *Κηρες δει λεγσαι, ναυαδ' εγλας, γαργες δε γω*, that the disposition even of the old *Cretians* (for *Epimenides* is found contemporary with *Solon*) was very naughty.

Lib. 4. & 6.

Proverb. cum  
Cretense Cretica  
sunt, lib. 8.

12. *Minos* succeeding his Step-father, begat *Lycastes*, and left him his Successor, who on *Ida* the daughter of *Corybas* begat *Minos* the second, fathered also on *Jupiter*. He had issue by *Papphae* (daughter to *Sol* and *Crete*) *Descalion*, *Astrea*, *Androgeos*, *Ariadne*, and other children. *Androgeos* going to the solemn Feast of the *Panathenæa*, instituted by *Theseus* at *Athens*, excelled all men in the exercises then performed, whereby he became familiarly acquainted with the Sons of *Pallas*. This when *Aegæus* perceived, fearing they might by his means receive some aid and assistance, he procured him to be made away, at which *Minos* sore aggrieved, came to *Athens* to demand satisfaction, but obtaining none, is said to have procured from *Jupiter* a Famine to fall upon all *Greece*, and especially *Attica*, which could not be abated, till he received satisfaction. A yearly Tribute then he imposed on the *Athenians*, of seven Boys and as many Girls, which being unwillingly willing to submit to, they were sore displeased when they came to part with their children, and repining at *Aegæus* as the author of their calamity, at the third time of sending, *Theseus* offered himself to go amongst the rest. The Fable is, that they were to be devoured of the *Minotaur*, a Monster, whose upper parts were like to those of a Man, but resembled a Bull in the other. Some thought there might be such a Monster indeed, but most account it fabulous, and it is interpreted to be meant of one *Taurus*, the Captain of *Minos*, who might have custody of these children, whom *Aristotle* will not have killed, but made slaves, till their death. *Theseus* promising to kill this *Minotaur*, *Aegæus* with much ado yielded he should go, and commanded the Master of the ship, that, whereas for the sadness of the occasion they used black sails, if his Son came back alive, he should change them for white ones, as soon as they came within kenning of *Attica*.

(b) Plutarch.  
ut supra.

He killeth  
the Minotaur.

13. *Theseus* coming into *Crete* by the help of *Ariadne* the daughter of *Minos*, (which fell in love with him) got into the labyrinth where the *Minotaur* was kept (and which was made by *Dædalus*, who having killed his Sisters son at *Athens*, fled into this Island) and slew him. It is thought, that when he landed, he offered the Combat to whomsoever would accept of it, and that this *Taurus*, who bore himself high upon his valour, and was hated by all for his ill manners, was forced by *Minos* to accept of it. *Theseus* having killed him, was so admired by the King, that he gave him back the children and remitted the Tribute. *Ariadne* fell in love with him, whom some say, he carried away with him, but others, that he left her behind, and she hanged her self; several things, one contrary to another being reported of her. Peace now being made, and *Theseus* returning homewards, they were so transported with joy, that they forgot to set up the white sails; whereupon *Aegæus* despairing of his sons safety, threw himself headlong from a Rock and perished. From this *Aegæus* some would fetch the name of the *Egean* Sea. But others, think it was so called from *Ege*, the Island near *Eubœa*; others from *Ege* a town of *Eubœa*; some from *Ege* a promontory of *Æolis*, and others from the Rock *Ege*, lying betwixt *Tenedos* and *Chios*; Again some from *Aegæus*, the name of *Neptune* in *Phœreædes*; and others from *Aegæon*, the same with *Briareus*, and others from a Goat, because by it's turbulency it leaped like that creature. *Felus* who deriveth the name also from *Aegæus*, mentioneth other two Originals as probable,

viz.

The death of  
Aegæus.

Philochorus  
apud Plutarch.  
cum ut supra.

## SECT. 4.

*viz.* the many Islands, which to one looking at them a far off, appear as Goats, in the Greek language called *Agæ*; and the perishing of *Agæ* the Queen of the *Amazons* in it. Concerning *Agæus*, *Suidas* telleth a long story out of *Nicocrates*, which is refuted by the Scholiast of *Apollonius*, who concerning this, is to be consulted, together with *Strabo* and *Pliny*.

*Theſeus* gathered the Athenians into one City.

14. *Theſeus* ſucceeding his Father, ſet himſelf all manner of wayes to deſerve well of his Subjects; Whereas before they were diſperſed in twelve Towns or more, he gathered them into one City, as being more convenient for ſtrength, concord, and diſpatch of publick buſineſſe. This being hard to effect, by reaſon that the people were unwilling to quit their preſent poſſeſſions for new hopes, he went from place to place, ſhewing them the convenience of the thing, and that he might effectually perſwade, he promiſed them liberty, offering to lay down all power except that of the Generalſhip, and of keeping the Laws; in all other things to be like them, and the power to reſt in the people. The multitude being allured by this promiſe, he made the chief City, called *Cecropia*, his regal ſeat, and built another about it for the people, which he divided into three ranks, of *Nobility*, *Huſbandmen*, and *Artificers*, all under the ſame equality of liberty and Law. But the former ſort he appointed to be the fountain of Magiſtracy; yet ſo, as elective by the ſuffrages of the other two. He aboliſhed the ſeveral Courts of Judicature belonging to the twelve Towns, and conſtituted one general *Prytanæum* in the City. Thus did he deſtroy himſelf of all royalty in a manner, and brought popular government into the State.

His exploits.

15. As *Hercules* had inſtituted the *Olympick* Games in honour of *Jupiter*, *Plutarch*. ſo he ordained the *Iſthmian*, and dedicated them to *Neptune*. He failed with *Hercules* into the *Euxine* Sea (ſome ſay, by himſelf) againſt the *Amazons*, from amongſt whom he got *Antiope* his wife, which gave occaſion to that ſort of women to come againſt *Athens*. They ſore diſtreſſed it by a Siege, till peace was made by *Antiope* or *Hippolyra*, as others called her. Some have affirmed, that he was not partaker in any Exploit with any of the *Heroes* of his time, except in that he helped the *Lapithæ* againſt the *Centaurs*. Others again contend, that hee failed to *Colchos* with *Jaſon*, and aſſiſted *Meleager* in killing the Boar; whence came the Proverb, *Non ſine Theſeo*: he alſo performed many brave things by himſelf, without the aſſiſtance of any, hence he came to be counted *Alter Hercules*. Having contracted near friendſhip and alliance with *Perithous* the Son of *Ixion*, being now 50 years old, he joyined with him in ſtealing away *Helena* the daughter of *Tyndareus* from *Sparta*, and when they coſt loſs who ſhould have her, ſhe fell to him. He carried her to his Mother living at *Aphidna*, there to be kept till ſhe were ripe for marriage: But having agreed that he who obtained her, ſhould help the other to procure him a wife elſewhere, they both travelled into *Epirus*, to ſteal thence the daughter of *Aidoneus* King of the *Moloffians*, whoſe wife was called *Proſerpina*, and his Dog *Cerberus*, he himſelf by the Fable being named *Pluto*. When he underſtood their errand, that they came not to wooe but to ſteal, he laid hands on them both, and cauſed his Dog to devour *Perithous*, kept *Theſeus* in priſon, till *Hercules* deſired he ſhould be ſet at liberty.

16. Whiſt *Theſeus* was abſent, one *Meneſtheus* the ſon of *Peleus* (who was Grand-ſon to *Erechtheus* by his Son *O-neus*) incenſed the people againſt him; and that upon the account of that change he had made in the State, which he would have them believe was intended to inſlave them under pretence of liberty: and at this time came down the *Tyndarida*, *Caſtor* and *Pollux* (ſome think by his procurement) againſt *Athens* in behalf of their Siſter. Finding that ſhe was not there, and diſcovering the place of her retirement, they went to *Aphidna*, and taking it by force recovered her, and took *Æthra* the Mother of *Theſeus*, which afterwards accompanied her as her ſervant to *Troy*, and at the taking of that Town was ſet at liberty by her Grand-ſon *Demophon*. By means of *Meneſtheus*, the *Tyndarida* were received into *Athens*, and great honour was done unto them, which thing contributed

A. M. 2775.

*idem.*

His exile

buted to his deſign. For when *Theſeus* returned, the Citizens were ſo wrought upon, that in no wiſe would they be reconciled, and ſo was he forced to baniſh himſelf into the Iſland *Scyrus*, having ſent away his children privately to *Elpenor* the ſon of *Chalcedon* into *Emboæ*. One writeth, that failing towards *Crete* to *Deucalion* the ſon of *Minos* (whoſe Siſter *Phadra* he had married after the death of *Antiope*) he was driven by tempeſt upon *Scyrus*, the Inhabitants whereof receiving him with great honour for reverence of his name, *Lycomedes* their King, out of jealousie, made him away, having led him up to a Rock, as though to ſhew him the Country, and thence tumbled him down headlong.

And death.

*Meneſtheus*.

17. *Meneſtheus* then began his reign at *Athens*, in the dayes of *Atræus* King of *Argos* and *Mycenæ*, and ſome years after accompanied *Agamemnon* and *Menelaus* to the ſiege of *Troy*, with 50 ſhips. During the War, we hear little or nothing of him, but after the City was taken, he honoured the Funerals of *Ajax* the ſon of *Telamon* with a Funeral Oration, which work belonged to the *Athenians* to perform for thoſe that died in the Wars; but within a while he himſelf afforded matter for that office, dying in the Iſle *Melos* at his return homewards. After his death *Demophon* the ſon of *Theſeus*, (who together with his brother *Achæmes*, (both begotten on *Phadra*) followed *Elphenor* to *Troy*) went to *Athens* and obtained the Kingdom. As he returned, *Phyllis* daughter to *Siſhon* and Queen of *Thrace*, fell in love with him, and wooed him for marriage. He told her he would firſt go to ſettle his affairs at *Athens*, and then come and marry her; but ſtaying ſomewhat long, ſhe had no patience to wait, and thinking ſhe was ſlighted, hanged herſelf. He ſole the *Palladium* or image of *Pallas*, from the *Argives*, who brought it from *Troy*, and in their return with *Diomedes* made encursions unwittingly into *Attica*, being driven by night upon *Phalerus*, and not knowing where they were. He reigned about 34 years, and then left his Kingdom to his ſon *Oxyntes*, who after twelve years ſucceeded by *Aphidas* his ſon, who reigned but one year. Then followed *Thymætes* the fifteenth King, who being a Baſtard, is reported to have murdered *Aphidas* his brother, and after eight years loſt the Kingdom. He was the laſt of the *Erechthida* that reigned at *Athens*.

*Oxyntes*.  
*Aphidas*.  
*Thymætes*.

*Melanthius*.

*Codrus* the laſt King.

18. It hapned that the State of *Athens* had War with the *Boeotians* about *Celæna*, a place ſeated in the confines of both Countries, and it pleaſed the parties that their Kings ſhould decide the quarrel in their own perſons. *Thymætes* declined the combat, and for that was depoſed. *Melanthius* a *Meſſenian*, who was then driven from home by the *Heraclide* accepted it, and overcame *Xanthus* the *Boeotian* King by a ſtratagem; for when they came to fight he cried out: *Thou doſt not juſtly Xanthus, but contrary to our agreement, who accompanied with another perſon, com'eſt to fight againſt me a ſingle man*, at which he wondering, and looking back to ſee who ſhould follow him, *Melanthius* ran him thorow with his Lance. He then reigned in the room of *Thymætes*, and at his death left *Codrus* his ſon his Succeſſor; who willingly offered himſelf to death for the ſafety of his *Athenians*. There were now diſtaſts ariſen betwixt the *Heraclide*, who held *Peloponneſus*, and them, for that they harboured the *Iones*, and other fugitives out of that Country; and at length the *Heraclide* intending to make War upon them, conſulted the Oracle beforehand concerning their ſucceſſe, which answered, that they ſhould have the better, if they kept off their hands from the *Athenian* King, and not otherwiſe. They gave order to their men to beware of hurting him; but he getting knowledge of the matter, diſguiſed himſelf, and going into their Army, by blows provoked them to kill him. This being known, they raiſed their Siege, though ſome of them had already got into the City, on whom then the *Athenians* had mercy, and diſmiſſed them without any harm. This happened 486 years after *Cecrops*, 114 after the deſtruction of *Troy*, 35 after the return of the *Heraclide*, 293 before the firſt *Olympiad*.

The Archon for life.

A. M. 2935.

19. After *Codrus* his death, the people took away the title of King and gave

## SECT. 4.

*Diod. l. 4. p. 184.*  
*Pausanias in Attica.*  
A. M. 2802.

*Philostatus in Heroicis.*

*Servius in Eclog. 1. Virg. gih.*

*Atheneus.*

*Pausan. in Attica.*

*Frontinus Strategem. l. 2. c. 5. Exemp. 41.*

*Justin lib. 2.*

*Strabo lib. 9.*

A. M. 2935.

*Pausan. in Meſſeniciis.*

SECT. 4.

gave the name of *Archon* with a diminished power to his Successor, who might be called to an account for what he did, though he kept the principality during life. This was *Medon* the son of *Codrus*, whom the rest of his brothers despising, as weak, and lame, led our Colonies of the *Ionians*, and some others (*Attica* being now full) into *Asia*, and there founded the 12 famous Cities of the *Ionians*, viz. *Ephesus*, *Miletus*, *Præne*, *Colophon*, *Myus*, *Teos*, *Lebedus*, *Claromena*, *Erythra*, *Phocæa*, *Chius* in the Island *Chios*, and *Samus* in an Isle of the same name over against *Ephesus*, which at first being subjected to several petty Princes, at length joyned in one body politick, and became very famous in after-ages. Twelve other *Archons* succeeded *Medon*, named from him *Medontide*, and in this condition the state remained unaltered for 315 years, during which time there is little remarkable, either concerning Princes, or Commonwealth; only the time of *Ariphron* the 10th. *Archon* fell in with that of *Sardanapalus*, and *Alcmaon* the son of *Æschylus* was the last, who dying when he had scarce reigned two years, the people took another occasion to alter the Government; for being weary of this perpetual power of their Princes, they confined it to the space of 10 years. This change being made about the beginning of the first *Olympiad*, *Charops* was the first that underwent it, in whose time *Dionysius* of *Halicarnassus* will have *Rome* built. Six others succeeded him in the power thus qualified, whereof *Hippomenes* the fourth in order was the last of the posterity of *Codrus*, being deposed for his cruelty to his daughter, whom being deflowered, he shut up with an Horse that had no meat given him, and so caused to be devoured quick. The last of all the six was *Eryxias*, who after he had Governed six years, either died, or being deposed for some Crime, opened the Door to a new and greater innovation, after 70 years continuance of the *Decennial* Government.

20. The people still burning with a desire of greater liberty, abolished quite the power of a single person, and instead of him made nine *Archons*, to be but annual, a new Election being to be made every year out of those who for birth, wealth, or favour were most considerable in the City. The first in order was properly called *Archon*, as principal of the College, and *Eponymus*, because he signed the Calendar, and all things that fell out in that year were said to be done, he being *Archon*. He had the care of their superstition, to him it belonged to take Cognizance of differences arising about inheritances, as also betwixt Husband and Wife, Parents and their Children, and Kinsfolks one amongst another: Moreover, he took care of Orphans, and assigned them Guardians. The second in order had the name of *King*, who taking care also of another part of their superstition, determined causes, both Civil and Criminal, or referred them to the greater Courts of Judicature. The third was called *Polemarchus*, who besides the charge of some religious customs, had that of War committed to him (whence he had his name); was General of the Armies abroad, and at home the Judge of strangers. The other six were termed *Thesmothetæ*, being keepers of the Laws, or Customs, Judges in several Cases, and had power to commit to prison all suspicious persons. These were their distinct Offices. Altogether they had Authority to assemble the people, as the *Kings*, and other *Archons* in former times, and to resolve with them about publick business.

21. Such were the improvements of that liberty, which *Theseus* bestowed on the people: But though they seemed great, yet were they not arrived at that height as to satisfy the heady multitude offended with the too great power of the Nobler and Richer sort; and which finding it self aggrieved with the many inconveniences that arose for want of Laws (the sentence of the Magistrate, or Judge being the only Law) many grudges and discords thence arose, which so far prevailed, as that after 50 years, power was given to one *Draco*, a man honest and wise, but of austere severity, to make Laws. Many he framed, reformed the Court of the *Epheta*, which he made to consist of 51 persons, not under 50 years of age, who were to judge of murders, and

Archons for ten years.

Annual Archons, nine in number.

Draco.

Idem in *Achai- cis* & *Strabo* l. 14.

*Euseb.*

A.M. 3248.

*Suidas.*

*Euseb.*

A.M. 3318.

*Legè Sigonium de Repub. Athen. & Institutionem Ennium.*

A.M. 3384.

SECT. 4.

such like Crimes. But so severe were his constitutions concerning minners (judging no less than death to the least offence) that as they were by *Demas* said to be written in blood, so in proceffe of time they grew intolerable, and little, or no relief had the poorer sort against the power of the great ones, with the usury of whom they were even exhausted: Hence grew great disturbances in the Commonwealth, the Commons hated the Nobility, and the Nobility feared the Commons; nothing but desolation seemed to attend the State, some being earnest for a *Popular Government*, others for an *Oligarchie*, and others for a *middle way*. These tempered, and poised the other two parties; but nothing at length seemed to avail, except all the whole power should be put into the hands of one, and a plain Tyranny erected as the only sufficient remedy for these desperate distempers. The common sort were hot for an equal division of the publick grounds now in the hands of the rich, and fit to make themselves an head, and do it by force; but the most prudent sort taking notice of *Solon*, now very eminent, a man of unblameable life, and unbiassed by the interest of either party; him they besought, having sufficient wisdom, to compose these differences of the distracted Commonwealth; offering him the power and command of all.

*Solon.*

How he became eminent.

22. A year or two before those great disturbances, hapned that which gave a rise to the eminency of *Solon*, and as well out of respect to the Commonwealth, as in relation to him, must be recited briefly. The Island *Salamine* lying not far from *Athens*, had of late time revolted to the Inhabitants of *Megara*, and for the recovery of it several attempts had been made with such bad success, that a Law was preferred whereby it was ordained Capital for any man thenceforth to move about it. *Solon* considering the consequence hereof, counterfeited himself mad, and going into the place of publick meeting, began, as the people came about him, to say a company of odd conceited Verses, whereby he so moved them, that they repealed the Law, and decreed another expedition against the *Megarians*, ordaining him their Captain therein. *Solon* saying towards *Colias*, where the *Athenian* women were keeping the Feast of *Ceres*, sent one to the *Megarians*, who counterfeiting himself a fugitive should tell them, that now at this place they might easily surprize the women. This being done, he sends them away, and in their rooms and cloaths, left there a company of beardless young men, who being provided of Daggers, stabbed the *Megarians* when they came to seize on their prey, and so by this plot (which several Authors say was executed by *Pisistratus* though devised by *Solon*) the *Athenians* again recovered the Island. *Solon* proved it to belong to *Athens*, for that *Phileus* the son of *Euryaces*, and Grand-son to *Ajax Telamonius*, being made free of the City, gave it unto the *Athenians*; and because that such as were buried there, lay with their faces to the West, according to the *Athenian* custom, whereas the *Megarians* buried their dead in a careless manner, not regarding any such position.

*Plutarch. & Diogenes Laertius in vita Solonis, Polyæmus Strategem. l. 1.*

*Frontinus Strat. l. 4. c. 7. Justin. 2. 12. Aeneas Poliorcer. l. 4.*

*Herod. l. 4.*

23. *Solon* having got much credit by the success of this enterprise, procured such to be called to an account, as had been guilty of the death of *Cylon*. This man being famous for his victory at the *Olympick* Games affected the Tyranny of *Athens*, and endeavouring to seize on the Castle, failed therein, and fled for refuge to the image of *Minerva*, whence the Magistrates giving him hopes of life, took him and his companions, and notwithstanding put them to death. This now was accounted a great injury offered to the goddess, and such as both the actors thereof, their posterity and Countrey were esteemed as contaminate, and lyable to heavy punishment. *Solon* persuaded them to submit to tryal, and 300 Judges were appointed out of the chieftest persons, who condemned them to banishment. Whilst this was doing the *Megarians* fell upon the *Athenians*, took *Nisæa*, and recovered *Salamis*: strange sights also appeared, whereat the City was affrighted, and their Prophets told them that certain Crimes were committed, which must be expiated. For this cause *Epimenides* a famous Philosopher (whom some reckon amongst the number of the seven wise-men in the room of *Periander*) was sent for

## SECT. 4.

out of Greece to cleanse the City; a plague having also fallen upon it at this time, as *Diogenes Laertius* writeth in his life. Several Altars upon this occasion he caused to be made, as amongst the rest one ( $\gamma$ ) to *Contumelia* (or Reproach) ( $\gamma$ ) *Cicero de Legibus lib. 2.* and another to *Impudence*. At ( $\epsilon$ ) this time also it is thought that the Altar was erected to the unknown God, they having received no benefit by making addresses to their known ones, but present ease as soon as this Altar and a Temple of the same dedication were made and used. One ( $\alpha$ ) faith this was the Inscription: *To the gods of Asia, Europe, and Africk, to gods unknown and strange*; ( $\beta$ ) another that it ran after this manner: *To the gods of Asia, Europe, and Africk, to the unknown and strange god*, in the singular number. But these calamities increasing publick discontents, made the assistance of *Solon* the more desirable.

24. He feared much to undertake so difficult a task as a settlement; and as for the Tyranny (so then it was termed) he refused it absolutely; though his friends perswaded him that by his moderation and good demeanour he might easily change this odious name into that of a Kingdom. But being elected *Archon* after *Philombrotus*, in the third year of the 46 *Olympiad*, some 93 years after the last change of Government; and in the dayes of *Nebuchadnezzar*, King of *Babylon*, he set himself about the work of reformation, and first of all eased the people of the great burthen of their debts, whereby they redeemed their bodies and estates; which act was in Greek called *Si-sachthea*. Some have thought that it was onely of the interest, but others of the principal too, alleging him to have forgiven 5 (some have said 15) talents that were owing to himself. However, he made them more able to satisfy their Creditors by raising the value of money, as of the *Attick Mina* from 75 drachms to 100. Then for the settling of the *Draco's* Laws, except that way thereto, and in the first place he abrogated all *Draco's* Laws, except that against murder, as too severe. The four Tribes of the people he left as they were ordered by *Erechtheus*, distinguished into *Souldiers*, *Craftsmen*, *Husbandmen*, and *keepers of Goats*; but for that there was no distinction made according to estates, and it concerned those that had most therein to take care of the Commonwealth, he also divided the people into four Ranks, or Classes, according to their substance, and out of the three first ordered all Magistrates to be chosen, the fourth and last having equal Votes in the great Council, or Assembly of the whole body of the State, in which lay the supreme power. The first was called *Pentacosto Medimni*, the second was the *Ordo Equestris*, the third called *Zengia*, and the fourth *Theta*. Hereby he gave a right to the common sort to elect, and call to account the Magistrates, to have an hand in making, and repealing Laws, and in the highest Court of Judicature, by which equal temper he suppressed all these factions that had lately risen. And yet, lest the multitude should be too much elevated, besides the Court of *Arcopagus* he instituted a Senate of 400. (100 to be chosen out of each Tribe) through which all things should passe into the great Assembly, wherein nothing was to be debated, but what was offered from this Council, elected a new every year.

25. The College of the nine *Archons* he left Elective as he found it; but ordained that they should not be admitted to take their Oath, till they had first in the Senate made proof of their descent, and the unblameableness of their life (especially of their duty to their Parents) and then been approved in the great Assembly, after which they were to take their Oath in the Kings Gate, to keep the Laws, and accept of no bribes; or if they should be thereof detected, then to erect at *Dalpos* a Statue of Gold of their own bignesse: and the same Oath they were again to take as they went up to the Castle, and Crowned with Myrtle. Unto them severally he assigned their Offices; for the most part as they were before, onely more certain; and for a reward of their good service, if after much, and through examination they were found upright and faithful, they were to be chosen unto the Senate of *Arcopagus*, to the College of the *Archons* being hereby constituted the seminary of it. To this Council, consisting of most grave, experienced, and upright men, inspection

He reformeth the Commonwealth.

A Senate of 400.

Of Arcopagus.

*Lege Plutarch in Solone. Aristot. lib. 2. Politic. Julius Pollux lib. 8. A.M. 3411.*

*Vide tabernum Emimium in descriptione. Reip. Athen.*

## SECT. 4.

inspection was given into all concerns of State, a power of preserving the Laws and Customs, and also of reforming manners, in which particular they were so severe, that once they condemned a boy, for a custom of pulling out the eyes of *Quails*, as hereby betraying a bad disposition. They met ordinarily thrice a month on *Mars his hill* (whence the Council had its name) but extraordinarily as occasion required, and then in the place called the *Kings Gallery*. As for the Council of State consisting of 400, it had power also to determine great matters and controversies of it self, and if it saw it convenient, to report them to the people. If the assent of the people was had, then passed it's acts and constitutions into firm Laws; if no, they continued in force one year, and no longer. To this Council moreover it belonged, to provide for such as were grown poor, and were to be maintained by the publick; to call all indebted to the State to an account, and provide for the making of Gallies.

The Assembly of the People.

26. To the great Assembly of the people alone belonged the power of making and nulling Laws, of Peace and War, sending Ambassadors, and giving the freedom of the City. When they were met together they took an Oath, with a bitter execration, to consult the best they could for the good of the Commonwealth. Those that were above fifty years of age spoke first, and, after the business was thoroughly debated, they signified their pleasure by holding up their hands. *Solon* ordained that all the Laws should be reviewed once a year, being recited by the *Thesmothetae*. But when any were to be abrogated, or new ones made, the whole Assembly took not that matter of debate upon it self; but committed it to the care of the most grave and prudent amongst them, chosen for that purpose, and called *Nomothetae*, amongst which none were admitted, but such as had dealt in the most important affairs. Before them five Orators (called *Syndici*) pleaded concerning any Law that was to be abolished, which should not be done without mature advice, lest thereby an occasion might be given to sedition and innovation; and what was concluded by these *Nomothetae*, the body of the people alwaies approved. The Assembly was had ordinarily thrice in 35 dayes, at the pleasure of the Council of State or 400; but extraordinarily upon occasion called together, either by the same authority, of the *Strategi* or *Generals* for War, and sometimes of the nine *Archons*.

Courts of Judicature.

27. For Courts of Judicature, besides the *Arcopagites* formerly mentioned, there was that of the *Ephetae*, founded, as its thought, by *Demophon* the Son of *Iphesus*, consisting at first of 50 Judges chosen out of *Attica*, and as many from *Argos*; but *Draco* excluding the Strangers, made the number onely 51 Citizens, and after him *Solon* tempering the rigor thereof, transferred thence the more weighty matters to *Arcopagus*, leaving the Judgment of casual homicide, and lying in weight for life, in some cases to it. The causes brought in thither were reported by the King or second *Archon*. There was another Court most large and common, consisting of 500, 1000, or sometimes 1500 persons, according to the occasion, chosen by lot out of all the Citizens of 30 years old, and upwards. They judged of many, and often, of the greatest causes; and this was called the *Heliastick Council*, because they sat in an open place where the Sun shone. A fourth Court there was of *Arbitrators*, consisting of 220 chosen out of the Tribes, and being equally divided according to the number of them, heard and determined their Causes. A fifth and tenth considerable there was yet, made up of thirty persons at the first, afterwards increased to forty, going in circuit to the several sorts of people gathered by *Thesens* into one City, heard and judged lesser matters. As for the Officers belonging to the several Courts, the twelve men for imprisonment, and execution, with the Officers of the several tribes, they are scarce to be mentioned by this Work.

Particular Laws.

28. For particular Laws, *Solon* knowing what a multitude of people inhabited *Athens*, took such care for prevention of idleness, that he absolved any son from the duty of maintaining his Father, fallen into poverty, that had not procured him to be instructed in some Trade; and the same liberty he gave

*Plutarch in Solon.*

gave

## SECT. 4.

gave unto such as were born of Strumpets. He made a Law whereby he gave leave to the people to make Testaments, which they never could do before; all the estates of deceased persons going to the next Heir. He forbade women to have any portions, lest marriages should be made for gain; yet succeeded they in the inheritances of their Fathers, in default of issue Male. Some things about Marriages and Adultery he decreed, which have been noted, and not unworthily, as absurd. He commanded the Court of *Areopagus*, to take an account of all persons how they lived, and punish those that could render none. He forbade all native fruits, except that of the *Olive*, to be transported out of *Attica*. And nothing is more memorable than this, that he deprived of all honour, and rendered infamous those, that, in a time of faction and sedition in the City, joyned themselves to neither party, concluding, that such as were concerned for the good of the Commonwealth, would according to their best apprehensions, side with such as contended for it. His Laws he exposed to publick view, that none should pretend ignorance in them. He sware the *People*, *Magistrates*, and *Senate*, to observe them for an hundred years, and the Archons, if they brake them, to set up a Statue at *Dolchos*, of their own bignesse. Then to conclude his Work, he reformed the Calender, much amiss at that time, and reduced the year into such a form as was agreeable to the motion of the Sun.

Solon travel-  
leth.

29. The work being over, there wanted not those who would both praise and discommend it. Some would be amending it by addition, others by Substraction or change, so that plainly seeing what stir would be about it, he got leave to travel for ten years; in which time he went into *Aegypt*, where he conversed with *Amesir*, and into *Lydia*, where he had that notable conference with *Craesus*, before mentioned. But while he was abroad, the City anew brake into factions. There were the *Pedians* headed by *Lycurgus*, the *Paralians* by *Megacles*, and the *Diacrians* by *Pisistratus*, one who was descended from *Codrus* the last King. To the later, a company of the poorer sort joyned themselves, such as were most inveterate against the rich, and although they had not much to say against *Solon's* Laws, yet were they desirous of innovation, hoping to be gainers therein. Things were in this posture when *Solon* returned home, who being received with much honour, laboured by his authority to take off the ring-leaders of the several factions, and reconcile them. *Pisistratus* seemed to give ear to him, being a man of deep diffinition, and so much apter to deceive, in that no man appeared so great a friend to equality as he, and therefore a greater Enemy to the change of the present Government. But *Solon* quickly found him out; yet prosecuted him not with any open malice, but sought to draw him from his designs by fair means, often professing, that no man was more inclined to Virtue, or to make a good Commonwealth's-man, if the desire of rule and sovereignty were but taken from him.

30. For all this, *Pisistratus* proceeded, and by his seeming readinesse to patronize the poorer sort against the rich, invaded the Tyranny. He wounded himself and his Chariot-horses, and drove into the Forum, making shew of an escape from great danger, and desired of the people that he might have a guard assigned him to defend his person. He so far prevailed, as to have fifty persons allowed him, though *Solon* stepping to him, told him he did not well to act *Ulysses* in *Homer*, (who, as he counterfeited himself wounded to circumvent his Enemies, so did he the same, that he might cheat his fellow Citizens) and opposed the thing as much as possible. Having obtained the liberty of so many followers, he then took leave to increase their number, and thereby got the Castle into his hands, at which the City was much startled. *Solon* went into the *Assemblee* of the people, where upbraiding them with their former stupidity, he earnestly exhorted them yet now to pluck up that tyranny by the roots, which before they might have so easily prevented, but not at all prevailing, such consternation had seized upon men's spirits, he got him to his house, and laying his weapons before his Court-gate, said, he had discharged his duty towards his Country, and thenceforth kept himself quiet,

continuing

idem ibid. &  
Herodotus l. 1.Plutarch ut  
supra.

A. M. 3425.

Pisistratus inva-  
deth the ty-  
ranny.

## SECT. 4.

continuing in the City, though his friends moved him to flee for his life. But such a reverence bore *Pisistratus* not onely to his person, but also to his Laws, that he retained still the most of them in their former vigour. A few he made himself, as one for maintenance of mimed Soldiers (though some attribute this also to *Solon*, and say, the occasion was given by one *Thesippus*) and another against idleness, whereby he caused the ground to be more diligently tilled, and the City more quiet than usual. By these two he effectually provided for his own interest, obliging the Soldiers by the one, and by dispersing the people into the Country through the other (under pretence of preventing idleness, and keeping up tillage) cutting off from them all occasion of plotting any thing prejudicial to him. For he knew well, that as *Thesius* his gathering them all up into one Town, conduced to the preservation of that liberty he meant to bestow on them, so this contrary way tended as much to the keeping up of his arbitrary power.

Expelled.

31. Being seized of the Sovereignty, he carried it exceeding well to People, Magistrates, and Laws, and much adorned the City, of which he held possession about three years. Then *Megacles* and *Lycurgus*, with their parties, so prevailed, as they banished both him and his tyranny, and being condemned, his goods were set to sale, of which none but *Callias* the Son of *Phanippus* would adventure to buy any. But not long it was, before those that cast him out, became the means of his restitution; for falling out amongst themselves, *Megacles*, upon promise that he would marry his daughter, covenanted to bring it about, and effected it by a strange and ridiculous wife. There was a woman in the City named *Phya*, almost four cubits tall, but otherwise of tolerable beauty: her being armed, curiously dressed and seated in a Chariot, they drove into the City, sending some before to proclaim, that the *Athenians* were to receive *Pisistratus*, whom their goddess *Minerva* esteeming above all mortals, now in her own person reduced into her Castle. This being acted with wonderful confidence, the Citizens were so far befotted, as to adore this woman for *Minerva*, and received *Pisistratus* as brought by her; whereby he recovered the tyranny about five years after his expulsion.

Herodot. l. 2.  
cap. 59.Val. Max. l. 1.  
c. 2. Ext.  
exemp. 2.

Restored.

32. He married the daughter of *Megacles*, according to agreement; but having several sons already in the flower of their age; and *Megacles* being supposed guilty of that heinous crime about the death of *Cylon*, not yet expired, lest he should put them beside their just expectations, and his family be attainted, he neglected to use her as his wife. She concealing this for some time, at length revealed it to her mother, who told it to *Megacles*. He took it in great disdain, and reconciled himself to his Enemies, consulting again how he might out him, which *Pisistratus* understanding, departed of his own accord out of *Attica*, and went to *Eretria* a City of *Euboea* in the third year of the 54th *Olympiad*, about ten years after his restitution. Ten other years he continued in exile, at the end whereof, by the advice of his eldest Son *Hippias*, he laboured again for a recovery of his principallitie. Scraping together all the money he could make, he drew the *Thibans* and *Argives* into confederacy with him, and got *Marathon* a Town of *Attica* into his hands, whither flocked to him from *Athens* and the Country round about those of his Faction. He marched then against the City, and put such to flight as came out against him, but fearing they might rally again, he gave order to his Sons to ride after and bid them fear nothing, so they would but get them to their own homes, and be quiet. Thus recovered he the tyranny once more, which then he laboured to establish, not by the shedding of blood (from which he wholly abstained, and therefore hath the best report of any of his condition) but by seeking confederates, making himself a considerable revenue, and taking the Sons of those his Enemies, that remained in the City, for Hostages, sending them into the Isle *Naxos* to be kept. Not long after his restitution he died (for his whole reign including the exile amounted but to 33 years) about the time that *Craesus* King of *Lydia* was overthrown by *Cyrus*, in the second year of the 57th *Olympiad*, and the 3460th year of the World.

Herodot. l. 2.

A. M. 3460.

33. This

And again re-  
covereth the  
tyranny.



## SECT. 5.

33. This onely could be reprehended in *Pisistratus*, that he had cast the yoke upon his Countrey. For such an one it was as had no great weight in it, more than what lay in the minds of the *Athenians*, not accustomed since the dayes of *Theseus* to stoop to Sovereignty. Though he commanded them to apply themselves to husbandry (contrary to what *Theseus* had done, who gathered them out of the Countrey into the City) that he might take them of from plotting against him, yet required he no other Tribute than the Tenths of their profit, which had wont to be payed to the former Kings. He killed no man, neither banished any; he made spoil of no mans fortune, or estate, injured none by any contumelious demeanour, abused neither the one Sex nor the other through any libidinous carriage. The Laws of *Solon* with the order of Magistrates he left as he found; and though he had most cause to be averse to him, yet detained he him in Town when he would have been gone, desiring his counsel and advice for the better Government of the Commonwealth, contenting himself onely in having a power greater than the Laws, in which respect *Cicero* was wont to call *Julius Caesar*, who trode in his steps, by the name of *Pisistratus*. He was as learned as any in his time, & deserved very well of learning, being the first that erected a publick Library. Whereas *Homer's* Verses before this were scattered abroad and confused, he purchased with Gold whatsoever of his works he could come by, and setting on work the ablest Grammarians, put them into that order of *Iliads* and *Odysseys*, in which they are now found; to which work *Solon* is said to have contributed his diligence. He had two sons, *Hippias* and *Hipparchus*, to whom he left the principality of *Athens*. They for many years reigned, as lovingly betwixt themselves, so with moderation towards their subjects, till the younger being slain by *Harmodius* and *Aristogiton*, upon occasion of some injury supposed to be offered by him to the sister of *Harmodius*, the other exasperated hereat grew severe towards the *Athenians*, and for that was expelled by them four years after his brothers death, and his Tyranny was utterly subverted. But these things falling in with the reign of *Darius*, the son of *Hystaspes*, belong properly to another place.

Plutarch & Diogenes Laertius.

Gellius l. 6. c. ult. Cicero 3. de Oratore. Adian lib. 13. c. 14.

## SECT. V.

## The most ancient Kingdom and Commonwealth of Lacedæmon.

The first inhabitants of Lacedæmon.

1. This Countrey was most antiently inhabited by a people called (a) *Leleges*, so named from *Lelex* their King, said to be an *indigena*, or a natural of the place, because it was obscure from what Countrey he, and his people came. From him this Region was called *Lelegia*, and *Lelegis*. He left two sons, *Myles* and *Polycaon*, whereof the former succeeded him in his Kingdom, and the later marrying *Messene*, the daughter of *Tryopas* King of *Argos*, went, and subdued that Countrey, which from her he named *Messenia*. *Myles* was succeeded by his son *Eurotas*, who perceiving the water to stand in the grounds, drew a Ditch from it to the Sea, which draining the earth, continued to be a River, bearing his name. He, dying without issue-Male, left his Kingdom to *Lacedæmon*, the son of *Jupiter*, and *Taygeta*, from which woman the Mount *Taygetus* took its name. For *Lacedæmon* married *Sparta*, the daughter of *Eurotas*, and when he came first to the Kingdom named the Countrey from himself, and to the Citie which he built gave his wives name; it being ever after most properly called *Sparta*, when any distinction was made betwixt Countrey and Citie; although it be also sometimes read *Lacedæmon*, as in (b) *Thucydides*, and *Latine* (c) Authors. As for the Inhabitants of both places, those of the Citie are by *Herodotus*, *Xenophon*, and *Diodorus* called *Spartians*, in opposition to those that lived up and down in the Countrey, comprehended under the name of *Lacedæmonians*.

(a) Pausanias in initio Lacedæmoniorum & Messeniorum.

A.M. 2598.

(b) L. 1. c. 10. & 11. & 12. & 13. & 14. & 15. & 16. & 17. & 18. & 19. & 20. & 21. & 22. & 23. & 24. & 25. & 26. & 27. & 28. & 29. & 30. & 31. & 32. & 33. & 34. & 35. & 36. & 37. & 38. & 39. & 40. & 41. & 42. & 43. & 44. & 45. & 46. & 47. & 48. & 49. & 50. & 51. & 52. & 53. & 54. & 55. & 56. & 57. & 58. & 59. & 60. & 61. & 62. & 63. & 64. & 65. & 66. & 67. & 68. & 69. & 70. & 71. & 72. & 73. & 74. & 75. & 76. & 77. & 78. & 79. & 80. & 81. & 82. & 83. & 84. & 85. & 86. & 87. & 88. & 89. & 90. & 91. & 92. & 93. & 94. & 95. & 96. & 97. & 98. & 99. & 100.

The

## SECT. 5.

The Citie was built in the dayes of *Crotopus*, King of *Argos*, and *Amphytrion* of *Athens*, 303 years before the destruction of *Troy*, 711 before the first Olympiad. A. M. 2518.

Tyndareus.

Castor and Pollux.  
Helena.

Menelaus.

2. *Amphiclus* the son, and Successor of *Lacedæmon* (d) begat three sons, which are recorded; *Argalios*, *Cynoratas*, and *Hyacinthus*, of which the later, as *Apollodorus* writeth, being for his beauty the delight of *Apollo*, was killed by him at unawares, when they were at play. *Argalios* succeeded his father, and left his Kingdom to his brother *Cynoratas*, whose son and Successor was *Oebalus*, from whence the Countrey was also called \* *Oebalia*, and *Castor* and *Pollux*, by *Scotus*, *Oebalide* fraires. On his first wife he begat *Hippocoon*, and *Icarion*, and on his second *Gorgophone* (the daughter of *Persus* by *Andromeda*, and widow of *Perieres*) his son *Tyndareus*. The former and later after his death, contended about the succession, and *Tyndareus* having the worst of it, was constrained to banish himself for many years, till at length he was restored by *Hercules* (who slew *Hippocoon* and his ten sons, with a great number of the *Spartians*) but on this condition delivered was the Kingdom to him, to keep it for *Hercules* his own Children, and restore it when it should be demanded. *Tyndareus* of *Leda*, the daughter of *Tethys* an *Ætolian*, begat *Castor* and *Pollux* (called *Dioscuri*, as the supposed off-spring of *Jupiter*) and on her, or some other, a daughter named *Helena*. The two sons being famous in their lives, grew more renowned after their death, having the esteem of gods; and from them was named the constellation of *Gemini*. *Helena* was she that made such a broil in the World, being first stolne by *Theseus*, afterwards married to *Menelaus*, and from him stolne again by *Paris*, who kept her till the destruction of *Troy*, as hath been shewed. Her two brothers dying before their father, *Menelaus* with her obtained the Kingdom of *Lacedæmon*, through the special favour of *Tyndareus*, who from amongst 29 suitors, (all Princes of *Greece*) made choice of him. Left those great ones should fall out amongst themselves, he bound them all with an Oath to be Defendants to whomsoever he would give her; which he did by the advice of *Ulysses*, upon promise to assist him in his sure being one of the number. This we do not find that he did; but in way of requital procured for him *Penelope*, the daughter of *Icarion*.

3. *Menelaus* on a slave begot two base sons; but by *Helena* had onely a daughter named *Hermione*, which he married first to *Orestes*, the son of his brother *Agamemnon*, and again taking her from him, gave her to *Pyrrhus* the son of *Achilles*. It's thought that *Orestes* killed *Pyrrhus*; for after his death he presently resumed his wife, and *Menelaus* once dead, he added the Kingdom of *Lacedæmon* to his other two of *Mycenæ* and *Argos*; for the *Lacedæmonians* were more willing to receive him as their Prince, than *Nicostratus* and *Megapenthes* the bastard sons of *Menelaus*. *Tisamenus* his son succeeded him in his Kingdoms, out of all which he was ousted by the *Heraclids*, or posterity of *Hercules*, as before was shewed, by the help of the *Dores*; with him the *Achaans* being also banished, who were Originally of *Phthia* in *Thessaly*; for *Achaus* their Progenitor was the son of *Xuthus*, Grand-son to *Dædalion* by his son *Hellen*. *Argos* fell to *Temennus* by lot; A. M. 2901. *Cresspones* got *Messene*; and *Lacedæmon* became the portion of *Procles* and *Eurythbenes* the sons of *Aristodemus*, who was slain at *Delfos* (for *Pausanias* judgeth this the most probable opinion) by the fraud of *Pylas*, when they were preparing for the expedition. Thenceforth the *Lacedæmonians* were accounted *Dores*; who, if formerly they were part of the *Achaans*, and going to *Troy*, at their return were expelled by those that remained at home, and so forced to seek out new seats, and received the name of *Dores* from their Captain, as *Plato* writeth; then had they full as much right to the Countrey as the *Heraclids* themselves, the title of whom we have formerly shewn. This change hapned 80 years after the destruction of *Troy*, as *Thucydides* gathereth; 327 before the first Olympiad, in the dayes of *Menelaus*, father to *Codrus* the last King of *Athens*, the year of the World 2901.

4. The two brothers *Eurythbenes* and *Procles* were Twins, and that so like

The descent of the Heraclids. Procles and Eurythbenes obtain sparta.

Sparta, whence so called.

R

like

## SECT. 5.

Both Kings  
with equal  
power.

like, as their mother not knowing them asunder, was ignorant which was the eldest, and therefore the *Lacedæmonians* made them both Kings with equal power: only because *Eurythènes* was first washed and fed, he was vulgarly accounted the elder; and though their families were of the same dignity, yet was his accounted something the more honourable. In their minority *Iheras* their Uncle by the Mother's side managed the Kingdom for them, in obeying whom they ever agreed; but in nothing else, though Twins, and so like one another. This difference was in a manner propagated to their posterity, which continued on both sides for many Generations downwards by the names of *Eurythénida* and *Proclida*, and being partakers in what is commonly accounted to bear no corivals, no wonder it is that emulation should be continued, but much that for so long it kept within the bounds of civil concord.

Helota made  
slaves.

After these two followed their two sons: *Agis* for *Eurythènes* (from whom the Kings of this family were also called *Agida*) and *Sons* for *Procles*. In their time it hapned that the Inhabitants of *Helos* (a Town built by *Helios* the youngest son of *Perseus*) were made slaves (both they and their posterity) to the *Lacedæmonian* State; for whereas they as well as others had formerly the freedom of the Citie, and were Members of the Commonwealth, *Agis* took away that privilege, and ordered them to pay Tribute to *Sparta*, which refusing to do, &c. standing out, they were thus punished; all other slaves to that State, though of what Original forever, being called after them *Helota*. *Agis* dying, was succeeded by *Echestratus* his son; and *Sons* some years after, left for his Successor his son *Eurytion* (called otherwise *Eurypon*, and *Euryphon*) from whom the Kings of that family were also named *Eurytionida*. *Echestratus* was followed by *Labotas* his son, and *Eurytion* by *Prytanis*, in whose reign the first quarrel arose betwixt the *Lacedæmonians* and *Argives*: *Labotas* being dead, *Doryssus* his son succeeded him the Kingdom, and in like manner after the death of *Prytanis*, *Ennomus* his son continued the succession of that family.

5. After *Doryssus* followed *Agelilaus*, *Ennomus* of the family of *Procles* still continuing, who of a former wife begat *Polydectes*, and of a later *Lycurgus* born 150 years before the first *Olympiad*. *Archelaus*, the son of *Agelilaus* succeeded his father, and was accompanied in the Government by *Polydectes*, who dying without issue left his inheritance to *Lycurgus* his brother. *Lycurgus* then governed as King, but not long after his brothers wife proved to be with Child. She sent to acquaint him therewith, and to tell him, that if he would marry her she would make away the infant. He desisting from his heart such Villany, yet returned her no denial, but desired her not to practice any thing upon her self whereby she might come in danger, for when the Child was once born he would take care for the destruction of it: and by this deceit he drew her on till the time of her Travel. When that came he sent some to observe her, with command, if it were a Girl to deliver it to the women, but if a Boy, to bring it strait unto him. As he was supping with the Magistrates, a Boy was born and brought to him, who taking him in his arms, told the *Spartans* that there was their King, and presently put him in the Royal seat. And, because all men wonderfully rejoiced at so strange a thing, admiring his Magnanimity and Justice, he gave to the Child the name of *Charilaus*.

Tutor to Charilaus.

6. Then as Tutor to this his young Nephew, he managed publick affairs for some eight months; but there wanted not those of the *Queens* kindred (especially her brother) who reproached him to his face, as intending no good to the Child, which she also now stuck not to say, incensed by his repulse in the matter of marriage. He took this in very ill part, and fearing that some inconvenience might follow these suspicions that were begotten by his adversaries in the breasts of several persons, resolved to cut them off by Travel, wherein he purposed to continue so long, till his brothers son should come to maturity, and had begotten an Heir for his Kingdom. He went first unto *Crete*, where he made observation of the Laws and Customes of that Commonwealth instituted by *Minos* (which afterwards he made his pattern)

Large Plutar-  
chum & Strab.  
lib. 10. pag. 482.

## SECT. 5.

and whence he sent *Thaletas* an Eminent *Lyrick* Poet of those times, by his charming Verses to stir up the *Lacedæmonians* to Love and Unity. From *Crete* he passed over into *Asia* (that he might compare the luxury thereof with the *Cretean* severity, and as good Physick make up a temper out of both) where he found *Homer's* Verses, kept as it seemeth by the Sons of *Creophylus* (the Poet being dead not above thirty years before) which he then copied out, and bringing them home, first made them publick in *Greece*, though in great disorder; in which they continued till the dayes of *Pisistratus*. The *Egyptians* reported that he came down into their Countrey, and there learnt the distinction of *Military* men from *Artificers*, and those of other callings. But whilst he thus improved himself abroad; he was much wanted at home, and often earnestly solicited to return, by all parties.

7. For great need there was of his presence to heal the distempers into which the State was now fall'n, the heady multitude having by its desire of loose liberty brought all things into confusion. The first Government till the coming in of the *Heraclida*, for any thing that can be found, was merely absolute, and afterwards we do not find that the Regal power was diminished, till *Eurypon*, or *Eurytion* most imprudently let loose the reigns of Government. This gave occasion to the Rabble to fly high in disobedience, and contest with his Successors when they endeavoured the recovery of their old Authority. Many great tumults and seditions were hence raised, in so much that *Ennomus* the Grand-son of *Eurypon*, father of *Lycurgus*, and fifth from *Procles*, was murdered in one of them with a butchers knife. These distempers increasing, and the Kings not being strong enough to rule the dissolute Rabble, nothing but absolute ruin and destruction was expected, when *Lycurgus* returning home (of whose prudence and integrity they had had formerly large demonstrations) alone seemed able to give any hope of better things.

At his return  
he anew mo-  
delled the  
State.

8. He thought this opportunity was not to be neglected, now that all were in so good a mind, and resolved to use his utmost endeavour for an alteration. Herein this was the scope he aimed at, to make Provision for equality, which he thought to be the best Nurse of Concord, and the Bulwark of all societies. To accustom the People from their tender years to obey the Laws and Magistrates, and hereby to render them more inclinable to live justly and frugally, to bridle all corrupt affections, to endure labour and hardship, refuse no danger for the publick good, nor death it self if the case required. Having therefore a design to make a full evacuation of all bad humours, as he accounted them, and knowing how full of difficulty and danger this might prove to the body polittick, mens minds much loathing so violent a Purgation, he considered that they were apt to be led by a shew of Religion, and having learnt how *Minos* pretended to have received his Laws from *Jupiter*, with whom he conversed in a Cave, he resolved to go to *Delphos*, and make use of that Oracle to the same advantage. There was he received with encouraging words; saluted, *Beloved of the gods a god, rather than a man*, and received in an Oracle the frame of a Commonwealth, which bringing home, he called *Rhetra* to gain the more Authority to it. At his return he first consulted with his intimate friends; and drew others on by degrees, till having made a party he ordered thirty principal persons to go Armed into the Market-place betimes in the morning, that they might thereby strike a terrour into their Adversaries. *Charilaus* at this much affrighted, as thinking it some plot against himself, fled to *Chalcidæum* (the Temple of *Minerva* much spoken of) where he took Sanctuary; but understanding how things were, came forth and joyned himself to his Uncle, being of a most sweet and mild disposition.

9. The *Rhetra* according to which he framed his Model was of this tenour. Let him build a Temple of *Jupiter Syllanius* and *Minerva Syllania*: Let him divide the People into *Phylæ* and *Obæ*, ordain thirty

R 2

Sena-

SECT. 5. Senators, with the Archageta: then let him call together the People betwixt Babyces and Cnacion, so let him propose concerning matters, or null them. Gamodan, Gorian, &c. In these words of the Oracle, faith Plutarch, Oba, and Phyla (that is Tribes) signifie certain parts, into which the People was to be divided: the Kings are called Archageta, as Captains: and to assemble the People, is in Greek expressed by *apollazein*, for that he attributed the beginning and cause of the Commonwealth to Apollo Pythius. Babyces and Cnacion is at this day called Oenuns. Aristotle writeth, that Cnacion is the name of the River, and Babyces of the Bridge. In the middle betwixt these the Concio was assembled, though there was neither Gallery nor any other accommodation, because he thought, that those things conducing nothing to Council, but rather hindred, for that Statues, Pictures, the attiring Rooms of Theatres, and withdrawing-rooms of the Court, being too curiously adorned, made those that met light and vain, diverting them with toys and idle thoughts. The multitude being assembled into one place, power was not granted no any of the People to propose: they could onely enact what the Senators and Kings had propounded. But in after times the common People perverting and wresting their suffrages, Polydorus and Theopompus then Kings, added this to the Rhetra: *But if the people resolves upon any bad thing, let it be lawfull for the Senators and Kings to dissent*; that is, faith Plutarch, let them not ratifie it, but forthwith dismisie the Assembly; seeing the People depraveth the Decree, and altereth what is best. As for Gamodan and Gorian, Plutarch doth not interpret them, and it cannot be understood what they mean. Another Rhetra was this; that *they should use no written Laws*: another concerning expences, commanded, *that the roof of every house should be made with Axe onely, and the doors with a Saw*: and a third ordained, *that War should not be often made upon the same Enemies*: lest learning to defend themselves, they should thereby be made warlike: which afterwards was laid to the charge of Agesilans in behalf of the Thebans.

10. Having prepared all things for his purpose, he dissolved the Government of his forefathers. For though he left two Kings as he found, with the same right of succession, yet took he away almost their whole power, instituting a Senate to restrain them, and be an equal poise betwixt them and the People, to reduce both parties into order. Without the Authority of this Senate the Kings could not decree nor undertake any thing of consequence. He ordered they should sit in the chieft places as Members of the Senate, first speak their minds, and give their suffrages; but conclude nothing without consent of the Major part. All Magistrates, till the impudent Ephori took so much upon themselves rose up to, and did them reverence. Their employment was to take care of Sacrifices, to command the Pythii, whereof two constantly attended them, to be sent to consult the Oracle of Apollo Pythius at Delphos; they took care of Ambassadors and other Strangers, of the causes of women that were Heirs; adoptious also they had charge of, soas none could be made without them. They gave answer to Ambassadors, and looked to the repairing of high-ways. This was their condition at home, which amounting to no more than titulary Royalty, after that the present Kings had either given away their just right (as Plutarch telleth us, that Charilans joyned with his Uncle) or were deprived of it by the treason and violence of Lycurgus and his party; the attempt of some men is as ridiculous as seditious, who taking it for granted that the Popular Villains, the Ephori, were 130 years after this set up by the People to restrain the Kings (which yet cannot be granted, though most have so thought) thence would draw a precedent to the disadvantage of true Royal Majesty. For these Kings were not real Kings as to Prerogatives of Majesty, being scarcely so much as a Duke of Venice.

11. Abroad

11. Abroad they were the Generals of Armies, which were left to their ordering, or disposal; so as no Council of War, or any in Commission, could thwart their Commands; they onely receiving orders from the State, for their expeditions and returns. They had Judges to accompany them, a General of the Horse, four Polemarchi, besides Colonels, and other inferior Officers, whose advice, as well as help, in the War they might use, but were at their own disposal, and obnoxious to none of them. And what is here spoken of a King, is to be extended to his Protector, Guardian, or Tutor in his minority, by the Lacedæmonians called *Prodicus*. Such were chosen to this trust and charge, as were nearest of kin by the father's side, to the Orphans, and consequently the next Heirs, that whose was the hope, his also might be the burthen. This appeareth by several examples of Lycurgus himself, Aristodemus, and Pausanias, to be related in their due places; which though it be not admitted in other Commonwealths, and perhaps with good reason, yet these *Prodicti* having all in their power, scarcely ever any of them was found to have plaid false, or, by treachery towards their Pupils, gone about to make way for their own preferment.

The Senate. 12. The Senate consisted of 28 persons, besides the Kings, not under 60 years of age. The first were such as had assisted Lycurgus, and been helpfull to him in the settlement, whom he ordered to continue for life, except they committed any offence worthy of seclusion, conceiving it not safe for this his Commonwealth, to have a frequent change of Senators, which the Kings might improve to their own interest. Into this second rank of dignity, were none to be admitted, but such as had well deserved of the State by good Service or eminent virtue; that so it might be a reward to old men, and an encouragement to the younger sort, to be conformable to the Laws. They had in effect the whole executive power in their hands. They had the Supreme power of Judicature, wherein they proceeded not rashly, but with great advice and delay, deferring judgement most commonly for some dayes, till they had heard both parties, and received the testimonies of witnesses: yet it was lawfull afterwards to appeal from them to the people. They were not liable to be called to an account for whatsoever they did; which immunity, as exceeding the moderation of a Commonwealth, (together with their suing to the people for their places, whereas able and honest men should be sought for) amongst other things is taxed by Aristotle.

13. A Reverend and most Learned man observeth, that whatever the Kings lost, the People got little by the alteration, being left out of all employment in affairs of State, and forced to yield obedience unto thirty Masters, whereas before they had but two. For the Kings and Senate assembled, and dismissed them when they pleased, and propounded to them what they thought convenient. For the People so assembled it was not lawfull to propound any thing to be debated or determined, nor to deliver their opinion in the point propounded: there being nothing left to them but to resistie their assent to the Propositions made, either by the Kings or Senate. But the cunning flattery of the Ephori in after times much enlarged the power of the People. By the appointment of Lycurgus it met at the River Cnacion (afterwards called Oenuns) by the Bridge Babyces. Sometimes onely the Spartans, or Inhabitants of the Citie met together, and then it was called the *Lesser Assembly*; but otherwhiles the whole body of the Lacedæmonians gathered together out of all Laconia, that was free of the Commonwealth, which went by the name of *Greater Meeting* or *Assembly*, called then simply \* Ecclesia.

14. Having reduced the Government to this Antimonarchical passe, he rightly judged it could not subsist without levelling. He therefore attempted a thing most difficult, and even beyond all hope of attaining. Many that had got much wealth in the late turbulent times, he perswaded to part with most of it, and to an equal division of the grounds, urging, that no inequality was to be amongst them, but what vice and virtue made; and what by arguments drawn from convenience, as others from necessity that lay upon them from the indigent and displeased multitude, he brought his design to perfection.

SECT. 5.

Leges Plutar-  
ch in Lycurgo.  
Platon, de legib.  
l. 3.  
Xenoph. ut su-  
pra.  
Aristot. Polit.  
lib.  
Demosth. ad-  
versus Leptinem.

Politica. l. 2. c. 8.

Dr. Heylin.

Plutarch, in Ly-  
curo.  
Xenoph. Hellenic.  
lib. 3. c. 6.  
\* Ekklesia.

Plutarch, in vi-  
ta Lycurgi. Et  
in Compar. Ly-  
curgi & Nume.  
Et in Agide &  
alibi.

An equality of  
possessions.

## SECT. 5.

tion. Then divided he the grounds into 20000 lots, or equal portions, whereof 9000 he laid to the Citie of Sparta it self, (the number of Citizens amounting to so many) and distributed the rest to the other *Lacedæmonians* inhabiting the Countrey. Each portion contained so much as to maintain a family in a frugal way, and no more. To the Kings a larger quantity was assigned for the maintenance of their degree, so much as might serve with moderation, and not make them abound in riches.

Iron money.

15. That he might take away covetousnesse, and the desire of hoarding up wealth, he forbade the use of *Silver and Gold Coin*, putting in the room thereof *Iron money*, of which a great quantity amounting but to little value, no considerable payment could be made, without the help of an Horse or Waggon. Hereby it came to passe, that they were unfit to Traffick with other people, no Merchandize being imported, which he herein aimed at, as well as by another Law made expressly against the continuance of strangers in the Citie; fearing more the contagion of the mind in his people than that of the body. And eitherwayes to prevent Luxury, he forbade that any man should eat at home by himself, or with his family, or to make any private feasts, without some special occasion; but ordered them to sup together in common, without any distinction of Dignity or Fortune, by fifteen together. Each one sent in his Provision monethly; as Meal, Wine, Cheefe, and Figs, with a little money to buy other victuals. If any had killed Venison, or offered Sacrifice, whereby any flesh was gotten, the ancient men left that to the younger sort, and contented themselves with Broaths, of which a black sort was most used, of no pleasant taste to such as were not accustomed to eat it. As for fish, and all kinds of delicate acates, they were utterly forbidden. None were to eat or drink beyond such a proportion as sufficed nature: the Kings indeed were allowed a double Messe, but this was, that they might have opportunity to pleasure and countenance others with part of it. All came to these publick meetings (which first were called *Andria* after the name of those of the *Cretians*, from whom *Lycurgus* borrowed this constitution, afterwards *Phyditia* and *Sysstia*) with their Arms, and after Supper were to go home without Torch or Candle, though never so dark, that they might learn, if need should be, to make the same shift when they lay abroad in the field. All stately buildings he forbade, and all Trades that tended any way to the maintenance of Luxury or Excesse.

The Phyditia, or Sysstia.

16. But to have these customes durable, it being highly necessary to breed up the youth in suitable Discipline, he also provided for that in ample manner. The first thing previous to education was very unnatural and cruel; for the Infant as soon as born, was carried to the most ancient of that Tribe to be viewed; and if it was found any way deformed, weak, or sickly, whereby might be judged that it would rather prove burthenfome than beneficial to the Commonwealth, then was it to be exposed upon the craggy places of the Hill *Taygetus*, there to take such quarter as wild beasts, fowls, hunger, and cold would afford it. But if it seemed strong, lusty, and worthy to live, then was it restored to its Parents to be nursed. And nursed it was very harshly, not used to any delicate, or costly feeding, and so used to darknesse and solitarinesse as not to be affrighted at them. When the Children were seven years old they were not committed to any mercenary School-masters, after the custome of other people, but to the care of the publick, being distributed into several Companies, over which some that were most fierce, hardy, and prudent amongst them were set as Captains, who governed them in their sports and exercises, and to whose correction they submitted. There were also most commonly some men present at their exercises, who would rebuke and chastise them, observing which had the most notable spirits; *Lycurgus* leaving it in charge to the *Lacedæmonians* to take care of other mens Children as of their own. All manner of wayes were they inured to labour and pains. Their hair was cut close to their heads, they went bare-footed from their Infancy, fought with one another naked, with as much earnestnesse as might be, and after a certain barbarous and cruel manner, were once a year whip-

The education of boys.

Plutarch.

Plutarch, in Lycurg.

## SECT. 5.

whipped in the Altar of *Dædalicia*, (to which goddess sacrifice could not be offered without mans blood) till the blood ran down in great abundance, their Parents beholding the sight. They would bear it with admirable patience and emulation, cheerfully, (nay, many times with great delight which they took in excelling one another in patience) enduring the strokes unto death it self.

17. When they were past their Childhood, at twelve years of age, their labours and exercises were but increased, lest vice together with years should grow upon them. They were to be content with one Coat, both Winter and Summer, and slept by Companies together upon coarfe, and uneasie beds. The ancient men also overlaw them upon occasion, but the charge was committed to one of the principal, called thence *Pædonomus*, who had power to gather them together and correct them. Over several companies certain young men of twenty years of age, called *Irens*, were set, who, if no men were present, had command over them, exercised them in watches, lying in ambush, and other crafts of War, wherein if any were caught they were severely punished to make them the more wary for the future; as also if they were taken in theft, stealing with them being lawfull, and encouraged as an exercise for War, but to be surprized therein was punishable. The same *Irens* supping with them would make some sing, and others propose questions, in answering which they exercised their wits, accustoming them to make a short, clear, and witty answer, in the dexterity whereof the *Lacedæmonians* excelled all others; Orators with their long-winded speeches being utterly forbidden. When the *Irens* corrected them, there were men standing by to take notice of it, and if it was not rightly done, nor upon good grounds, he had the same punishment inflicted on him. Those boys performed several sorts of exercises; but amongst the rest those called *Platanista* (from the place thick set with *plain Trees*) were most eminent, in which with hands and feet, teeth, and nails, they fought in good earnest, to the putting out of eyes, and sometimes to the danger of life it self, none giving over, or shrinking one jot, than which no disgrace was esteemed more hainous. Such strict, and constant discipline underwent they all their minority, till they arrived at 30 years of age (before which time they married not, went not out to war, neither exercised any Office) so that the greatest trouble in the field afterwards seemed much more easie to be undergone.

Pædonomus.

Iren.

Plutarch, in Apothegmat. Lacedæmon.

The education of young men.

18. The education also of young women was agreeable to this of the other Sex, that by vigilancy, industry, and enduring labour, they might be furnished with courage and resolution against all evils, being married with more ease undergo the pains of Travel, and bring forth Children of the same constitution. According to their age they had exercises of sundry sorts; most of which they performed in publick, naked, and that not onely in the sight of Kings and Senate, but the young men also; which yet because of the *Lacedæmonian* modesty and temperance, with the custome of it, was not judged at all to contribute to vice, but rather to an innocent, and harmlesse emulation, and honest love. Their diet was such as might nourish them, and not any ill disposition in them. Such were their Cloaths, and all things else about them, as long as *Lycurgus* his constitutions were in force; and therefore the too great power of the women, their Luxury, and the many great inconveniences that thence arose to the State, objected so much by *Aristotle*, is to be ascribed to the married sort; & probable it is that this corruption crept in, in after-times, it being well nigh as easie for him to reform the women as to make this great alteration in the Commonwealth, though the contrary be asserted by the Philosopher, who as it seemeth was much satisfied in the wisenesse of that Sex. The set time for marriage of men was at 30. for women at 20 years, before which it was unlawfull; but if a man within some reasonable time after, he took him not to that estate, he was publicly disgraced by command of the Law-giver. Women had no portions; yet the Heirs carried with them their father's inheritance. No plurality of wives did he allow; and yet as for adultery it was not heard of in the Citie, against which neither did he make any Law, having already provided sufficiently against it by such strict constitutions.

Politie. lib. 2. cap. 7.

SECT. 5.  
Travel for-  
bidden.

19. As he provided against the flocking of strangers to *Sparta*, so forbid he any Citizen, or Member of the Commonwealth to Travel, (except in any expedition of War) lest he should bring home with him the dissolute and effeminate customs of other places. Merchandizing was esteemed a base employment, as merely practised for getting of wealth. Drunkenness they rendered more abominable to Children by making their slaves drunk, that then they might behold them in that beastly condition. He that had been so unthrifty as not to be able to bear the charge of the *Phiditia* was excluded from all trust in the Commonwealth. To keep them vigilant, he commanded that the City should not be walled, they having sufficient leisure to look carefully to it; this being even their whole calling, with their heads and hands to attend publick affairs; the drudgery of Tilling their grounds, and gathering their fruits, being imposed upon the *Hilota*, or publick slaves, with other servile and Mechanick affairs. Those slaves it was not lawfull for any one privately to manumit, or sell out of *Laconia*, whereby increasing to so great a number, that they equalized, or exceeded that of their masters, they sometimes afforded occasion of great danger; upon which account this constitution is taxed by the *Philosopher*. For the lessening of their numbers a course was taken not altogether clear from a note of cruelty: Certain young men being sent about into the Countrey, who lying hid in the day time (whence this practice was called *Cryptia*) by night killed as many of them as they could light on.

*Sparta* unwal-  
led.

The *Cryptia*.

20. Such was the form of the Commonwealth instituted by *Lycurgus*, which saved him the labour of erecting any other Courts of Justice than what have been already mentioned. For Gold and Silver being taken away, and the use thereof forbidden upon pain of death, controversies and suits most commonly thence arising naturally fell of themselves. He forbid his Laws to be written in Tables, because he would have them rooted in the minds of the people, to which he thought the strict Discipline he erected might sufficiently conduce. After the thing was done, as it hath hapned usually in this kind, he was but ill rewarded; for such as had parted with their Silver, Gold, or Luxury, were so enraged as to throw stones at him, which to shun he was glad to betake himself to his heels, and looking back had an eye struck out by one *Arcander*, who yet afterwards repented him of the deed, and was very observant of him. \* One telleth us he was cast out by publick rage; but he who hath handled the subject of his life with greatest industry, hath recorded, that when things began to be settled, and he saw the Commonwealth thus constituted able to support it self, he calling the people together, told them, that indeed all things were so already settled as to provide for virtue and happiness, but one thing, and that of greatest consequence was yet behind, which was not to be enacted before first he had consulted the Oracle at *Delphos*. Wherefore he desired them to keep the Laws already made, and change nothing in them till his return with such answer as the Oracle would give him. All consenting, he took an Oath of the King's, Senate, and people, and began his journey. At *Delphos* he enquired whether the Laws already made, and established, were not sufficient for the virtue and safety of the State. It was answered they were, and that it should continue most glorious so long as it would stand to them. This answer then he sent to *Sparta*, but, resolving never to loose them from their Oath, he there made an end of himself by abstaining from all sustenance. Some have said that he died in *Crete*, and that he ordered his body to be burnt, and the ashes thrown into the Sea, lest his Relicks being brought back to *Sparta*, they should account themselves freed from the Oath. But \* *Tertullian* writeth, that he famished himself, because the *Lacedæmonians* went about to alter his Laws.

Kings, Senate,  
and people  
sworn to ob-  
serve the  
Laws, and  
constitutions  
of *Lycurgus*.

His death.

The War  
with the *Ar-  
gives*.

21. *Lycurgus* being dead, and the State settled after this great change, it renewed the War formerly begun with the *Argives*, and afterwards deluded with the ambiguity of the Oracle, commenced another against the *Tegæta*, a people of *Arcadia*, by whom they were worsted, and *Charilaus* the King was taken prisoner, through the especial valour of the women: yet was he pre-

*Plutarch*, ut  
supra.

\* *Valerius*  
Max. l. 9. c. 3.  
Ext. Exemp. 2.

\* *Id. Apolog.*

*Pausan* in *Ar-  
cadicis*.  
*Herod.* lib. 2.

The first  
Olympiad.

The renewing  
of the Olympick  
Games.

presently set at liberty, upon his oath never to fight more against them, which he but ill performed. After this they overthrew divers Cities, on which the *Achaens* had seized, some whereof made their peace, as *Pausanias* telleth us, and departed out of *Peloponnesus*. The Colleague of *Charilaus* (or *Charillus*) for some time was *Teleclus*, whose death gave one occasion to the famous *Messenian* War. *Charilaus* was succeeded by *Nicander* his Son, and *Teleclus* by *Alcámenes*. In \* the 34th year of *Nicander*, was celebrated the first Olympiad, after the restitution of those Games by *Iphitus*, in which *Corabus* a Cook of *Elis* got the Prize in the Course. These solemnities being of so great consequence in the knowledge of times, must not be passed over without some observation.

22. These exercises had in former times been held by divers others, as *Hercules* (both the *Idæan* and the son of *Amphytrion*, as some think) *Pelops*, *Endymion*, *Nelus*, *Pelias*, *Lycurgus*, and others. After the descent of the *Heracleida* into *Peloponnesus*, *Oxylus* the *Ætolian* also (who as we said, was chosen their guide, and according to agreement, had the Country of *Elis* given to him) renewed the Games; but they were interrupted as formerly, or seldom observed, for about 300 years, till *Iphitus* the son of *Praxonidas*, and Nephew of *Hæmon*, descended from him, and one of his Successors, again restored them; after which they never intermitted, but were kept up for many generations. But the occasion of the last restitution was this. *Greece* being almost ruined by seditions and pestilence, *Iphitus* inquired of the Oracle at *Delphos*, how those evils might be redressed: and it was answered, that it was expedient for him and the *Eleans* to restore the Olympick Games, whereupon he proclaimed them, and for the better celebration of them, procured a Truce to be made. The place whence they had their name was *Olympia*, a City situated in the territories of the *Pisæans*, upon the River *Alpheus*, upon which account the *Pisæans* contended a long time with the *Eleans* about their interest in them. There was a Temple dedicated to *Jupiter Olympius*, and a place for races and all sorts of exercises, filled with many goodly buildings which resembled another City. Near to the Town was also a place where the *Eleans* sat and judged of the controversies arising about Victories, to which Crowns were given. As long as the *Eleans* continued under a Monarchical Government, their Prince, of the posterity of *Oxylus*, was sole Judge: but afterwards there were two, chosen by the votes of the people, which were after increased to the number nine, then to ten, and last of all to twelve. This Solemnity was held once every fifth year beginning, so that from the commencing of one to the beginning of another, passed four entire years, by some mistaken for five, because of the commencement of the Games. The time was at the full of the Moon, the change whereof immediately preceded the Summer solstice, in the month by them called *Hecatombaon*.

23. Upon this occasion meetings and consultations were had, concerning the affairs of all *Greece*, besides the Inhabitants of which, many flocked from other Countries. Care was here taken concerning the form of the year, for the intercalation of a day at the end of every fourth. Charge was given to the Priests of the Temple, to take notice of every new Moon, especially of that wherewith the month *Hecatombaon* began, and to proclaim it: they were also not onely to register the names of the *Victors* in the several sorts of Games, with other things that concerned them, but also whatsoever memorable thing occurred in the intervals. The account of time henceforth never failed, and the affairs of *Greece*, and other Countries, were known in a most certain order. And here the second interval of time amongst three reckoned by \* *Varro*, received it's period. The first began with the beginning of things, and ended at the *Deluge*, called by him *unknown*; the second began where the first ended, and concluded with this restitution of the Olympiads, which he termed *Fibulons*, because the Story thereof is mixed with Fables; and the third commencing with the first Olympiad, reached to his own time, which he name *Historical*, for that things done therein, were truly and

SECT. 5.  
*Pausan.* in  
*Messenicis*.

\* *Clemens*  
*Strom.* lib. 1.

*Pausan.* in *Eli-*  
*acis*.

A. M. 3219.  
Olfæ 34.

\* *Vide Censuri-*  
*um de Die Na-*  
*tali.* cap. 21.



SECT. 5. clearly related. This happened 408 years after the destruction of Troy, 774 before the Era of Christ. A. M. 3229.

24. Towards the later end of the seventh Olympiad, a great change was made in the Government of Lacedæmon, by the bringing in of the Ephori, who, according to Plutarch, had their beginning 130 years after Lycurgus. It seemeth that for all the means used by him to gain an equality, and clip the power of the great ones, yet it again grew extravagant within this time, so that the people to provide against that of the Kings and Senate for the future, got these Officers created. Five they were in number (whereof one Elatus was the first) chosen every year by and out of the people, without any distinction of birth or wealth; inasmuch, that sometimes the meanest sort of men were elected, which custom is noted as bad by Aristotle. But their use and end being onely to protect the liberty of the people, such, what ever they were, must be preferred, as made the greatest show of love to freedom, of a sharp and bold wit and avernesse towards the power of the great ones. Theopompus the Son of Nicander, and Grandson to Charilaus was King at this time, who bringing in, or giving way to this Office, his wife rebuked him for so doing, saying, that he would leave the Kingdom to his Son of lesse value than he had it of his Father; to which he answered, that on the contrary, he should leave it to much the greater, by how much more durable. Indeed hereby it came to passe, as Plutarch observeth, that the Kingly power being lesse, was not subject to that envy which ruined the affairs of the Kings of Messene and Argos, who would not moderate their power, nor at all stoop to any popularity; and the government here being poised, continued longer, as freed from the intestine distempers of the neighbour Commonwealth. Yet it is also observed by \* one, that the reason of the prosperity and long duration of the Spartan State, above that of the Athenian and others, is to bee ferched from it's so much partaking of Aristocracy, and the want of that influence which the heady multitude had into the greatest affaires elsewhere.

25. The general and most probable opinion is, that the Ephori were brought in in the time of Theopompus. So writeth Aristotle, Plutarch, and Valerius Maximus; yet (a) Herodotus having reckoned up several things performed by Lycurgus in the framing of his Commonwealth, at length addeth, Further, Lycurgus ordained the Ephori and Elders: of which opinion Xenophon seemeth also to have been in his Treatise of the Lacedæmonian Commonwealth. But though they were brought in during the reign of Theopompus, yet it is not agreed of who was the principal cause of their creation, because the end or design thereof is uncertain, though that ere now spoken of be generally received. (b) Plato, and Plutarch (as he confesseth) from him, will have them created to be as a bridle to the power of the Kings, for theirs it must needs be, which he calleth hereditary. Cicero also in his third Book of Laws testifieth, that the Ephori at Sparta were opposed against the Kings, as the Roman Tribunes against the Consuls, who as well as the Senate were, even at the first institution, feared by the Commons, for that they were the chief Patrian Magistrate at that time, and the animosities in that State were caused by the distinction of the two orders. Valerius Maximus maketh the same comparison betwixt Ephori and Tribunes, and maketh them instituted by Theopompus for this very end, whom Plato also seemeth upon the same account to call the third Saviour of the Lacedæmonians; so that he must have been at the least instrumental in their institution. Aristotle (c) accounteth this Magistracy as the nerves of the Commonwealth joyning the parts thereof together; because the people by virtue of it being partaker of Empire, was quiet; so that the people seemeth especially considered in this Office, by which in another place the Philosopher expressly saith Theopompus moderated the power of the Kings. But Cleomenes King of Sparta, as (d) Plutarch himself relateth the Story, affirmed in a speech to the people, that Lycurgus having added the Senate to the Kings, the Commonwealth was for a long time governed without any other Magistracy. Afterwards, when the Messenian War

A. M. 3256.  
V. C. 5.  
Jothami 10.

Arist. Polit. l. 5.  
c. 11.

Val. Maxim.  
lib. 4.

Plutarch, in  
vita Licurgi.

Plato de Legi-  
bus lib. 3.

Cicero de Legi-  
bus l. b. 3.

\* Machiavelli  
supra la prima  
Decad. di Tito  
Livio.

SECT. 5.

War was drawn out in length, the Kings because they were employed abroad, chose some of their friends to administer Justice, whom they leit as their Deputies over the people: and those were called Ephori from their inspection. Being at first no other than Assistants to the Kings, by little and little they assumed power to themselves, and, no body aware of it, constituted a peculiar Office. Hereof, he said, a sign remained at that day, for that the King being called by the Ephori, refused to come once, and again; but at the third call came to them: besides, Aferopus, who first enlarged the bounds of this Office, was Ephorus many ages after.

26. The power of those Magistrates, for what end soever constituted (as of others in other places) was moderate at the first, but in proceffe of time, as the ambition of them, and the confidence of the people thereupon increased, it exceeded the due and just bounds, and made the Government almost degenerate into a Democracy. They not onely consulted with the Kings and Senate, resolved about the affaires of State, and judged of controversies amongst the people; but afterwards grappled even the whole power into their hands, doing all things themselves that were of moment. They governed the Assemblies of the people, proposing and gathering suffrages, they made and disannulled leagues, ordered what forces were to be sent out, for which they also made provision, they rewarded or punished, according to their pleasure, other Magistrates, calling the very Kings to account for their lives; inasmuch that, as the Philosopher observeth, they obtained a kind of tyranny: the onely remedy was, that their Office was but annual, and being five in number, the designs and indeavours of one or two, were crossed and overthrown by the contrary party, nothing being done without the consent of the whole College. They rose not up, as other Magistrates, in presence of the Kings, with whom they mutually sware every moneth; the Kings that they would rule according to the Laws, and they in the name of the people to preserve their rule thus ordered, safe and entire to them. With their entring into their Office, the year began (constantly in Winter, as we learn from Thucydides) and from one of them as principal, the year was named (who thence was called Eponymus,) as from the Archon at Athens. At their first entrance they were wont to publish an Edict, that the men should take off all the hayr from their upper lips, and observe strictly all the Laws, lest they should be constrained to punish them, requiring obedience in a little, thereby to inure the people to it. In the Wars two of them used to go out with the Kings, to assist them in their Councils. They were wont to proclame open war against the publick slaves or Helots, giving liberty to kill them, and thence is to be derived that cruel custom of the Cryptia, rather than from any constitution of Lycurgus, as Aristotle thinketh. The cause thereof, as Plutarch judgeth, was the conspiring of these slaves against their Masters, during the Messenian War.

The Messenian War.

27. In the second year of the ninth Olympiad this War began, though the ground of the quarrel had been partly laid several years before the bringing in of the Ephori. In the dayes of Teleclus Father to Alcarnenes now King, there being a Temple of Diana in the borders, to which both the Lacedæmonians and Messenians constantly resorted; it hapned that some Spartan Virgins, going thither, according to the custom, were abused by the Messenians, and Teleclus indeavouring to prevent the injury, was there slain: moreover, the Virgins for very shame and grief destroyed themselves, as the Lacedæmonians told the Story. On the contrary, the Messenians pleaded, that at this Temple Teleclus lay in wait for the principal of their City, by sending thither young men, disguised in the habit of Virgins, with Poniards under their clothes; that hereupon the Messenians coming in to help their friends, slew Teleclus, and the counterfeiters, for which at that time, the Lacedæmonians found not themselves so much concerned as to stir. However it was, grudges hence arose, or were rather heightened betwixt them; for the Lacedæmonians often complained, that in the division of the Territories obtained by the Heracleide, Eurysphenes, and Procles, their Kings, were cheated by their Uncle

SECT. 5.

Vide Plutarch.  
& Corn. Nepo-  
tem.

Lib. 3.

Plutarch, in  
Cleomenes ex  
Aristotele.

Pausanias in  
Messeniæ.

Strabo l. 6,  
& 8.

Just. in lib. 3.

SECT. 5. *Cresphontes*, of the far better grounds, for which now they envied the *Messenians*, thinking themselves far worthier of them, as being the much more considerable people.

28. Animosities being raised upon these accounts, another thing hapned which increased them to that height as they brake out into open War. There was one *Polychares* a *Messenian*, who had got the victory in the course at the celebration of the fourth *Olympiad*. He let out some Cows to one *Evaphnus* a *Lacedæmonian*, on this condition, to have part of the profit. *Evaphnus* sold the Cows, and then coming to *Polychares*, told him that they, and their keepers were stolne from him; but while he was labouring to gain credit to his tale, some of the Herd-men (who, as it seemeth, with the consent of *Evaphnus*, were taken away by force) escaped from the Merchants, and acquainted *Polychares* with the fraud, which now the other not able to deny, asked him pardon, told him for how much the Cattel were sold, and promised to send the money, if he would let his son accompany him to *Laconia*, *Evaphnus* most perfidiously mured the young man, with the horridness of which fact *Polychares* grievously move, came several times to *Sparta*, complaining bitterly, and with many tears to the *Kings* and *Ephori*, but found no Justice; infomuch that growing into a great rage against all *Lacedæmonians* in common, he killed them as enemies wheresoever he could meet them.

29. The *Lacedæmonians*, finding themselves concerned herein, sent to the *Messenians*, demanding *Polychares*. At that time *Androcles* and *Antiochus*, the sons of *Phinias* reigning at *Messene*, promised they would report the matter to the people, and know their minds therein. The multitude being called together, *Androcles* was much for the giving up of *Polychares*, but on the contrary *Antiochus* urged how unjust, and lamentable a thing it would be for him to be tormented before *Evaphnus*, and the contention grew so hot betwix the brothers, that it came to blows. *Antiochus* his faction prevailing, *Androcles* with the chief of his party lost their lives. *Antiochus* then reigning alone wrote to the *Spartans*, offering to refer the business to the *Argives*, who were of the same stock with them both, or to the publick Council of the *Amphyctiones*; or else, if neither of these liked them, to the Senate of *Arcopagus*. They returned no answer by the Messenger, and within a few months *Antiochus* died, and his son *Euphaes* succeeded him. Neither then did they send any message, nor yet renounced amity with the *Messenians*, but entering into secret consultations provided for the War, and bound themselves with an Oath never to return home till they had subdued *Messenia*.

30. Being bound with this Oath, and having all things in a readinesse, under the conduct of *Alcamenes*, the son of *Teleclus*, they went out by night and fell upon *Aruphaa*, a Town upon the Borders, which by the suddenness of the onset, no Watch being kept, but the Gates standing open, they easily took; and finding it a place for situation, and convenience of water fit for their purpose, put all to the sword, intending to use it as a Receptracle, and chief Fortresse in the War. After this they made excursions, and rather practised robberies than carried on a War, the *Messenians* declining the fight through the persuasion of *Euphaes*. But after four years, when they were now well exercised, and exceedingly incensed against the *Lacedæmonians*, he gave them leave to make inroads into *Laconia*, where they wasted all about *Targetus*. He then lead down his Army into the Borders to fight, which opportunity the *Lacedæmonians* embraced, and engaged with the horse, and those foot that bare the light Armour. But *Euphaes* having provided matter for making a Trench, caused the place where his other Souldiers lay to be fortified (in them consisting his chief strength) so that, seeing they could not fight with them, and being unprovided to besiege the Camp, they returned home, where they had but cold welcom, because of this retreat made contrary to their solemn Oath.

31. The year after, for that the elder sort exceedingly upbraided them, they

they returned into *Messenia* under conduct of both the Kings: *Theopompus*, the son of *Nicander*, and *Polydorus* of *Alcamenes*, now dead. There they were received by the enemy, and entertained in a great and bloody battel, wherein both parties with much earnestnesse and contention demeaned themselves. The *Spartans* as they surpassed the other in skill, being trained up in exercises from their Childhood, so exceeded them also in numbers; but desperation and necessity made the *Messenians* valiant, as they abundantly shewed it, many breaking their Ranks on purpose to come to hand-to-arms with the enemy. In the main battel the victory continued doubtfull a long time; in the right wing *Euphaes* put *Theopompus* to flight, and in the left *Polydorus* did as much by the *Messenians*, and neither party would give the chase; *Euphaes* for that he thought he had already done enough, and *Polydorus* because the *Lacedæmonians* were deterred from it through their ignorance of the place, being in an enemies Countrey: so that fighting on even terms they were parted by the night. The day following neither side would fight, nor had the confidence to erect a Trophy; but made truce so long as to bury their dead.

32. After this battel none other succeeded for several years. The *Messenians*, for that their Countrey was the seat of War, were pressed with many difficulties. Their Garrisons had cost them so much money, as now they were rendred unable to pay their Army: their slaves fled daily to the *Lacedæmonians*, and a certain disease not much better than the plague, seized upon them, which though not exceeding deadly, yet joyntly with the other difficulties, caused great trouble and perturbation. After a serious debate concerning the main of their affairs, it was resolved, that most of the Towns lying upon the Sea should be dismantled as far remote, and *Ithome*, a Mountain as large as any within the *Isthmus* (whereupon stood a Town more antient than great) was to be fortified because of the natural strength thereof. When they had here settled themselves, they sent to *Delpus* to enquire concerning the event of the War. The Oracle (agreeable to the disposition of the enemy of mankind) required a Virgin of the stock of *Egyptus* to be sacrificed; whereupon all that belonged to that family were subjected to the lot, and the daughter of one *Lyciscus* was taken. She being to be offered, the sooth-sayer forbade it, alleging that she was not the daughter of *Lyciscus*, but brought in under-hand by his wife that was barren, and whilst he was thus persuading the people, *Lyciscus* fled away with her to *Sparta*. All hereat exceedingly startled, *Aristodemus*, another of that family, voluntarily offered his own daughter; but a young man there present that was in love with her, and shortly intended marriage, stiffly impugned it, and contended she was not in her fathers power, because betrothed to himself. Nor herewith prevailing he affirmed he had lien with her, and that she was with Child, whereat *Aristodemus* was so enraged, that he killed her with his own hand, and ripping up her belly, shewed plainly to all that there was no such matter. Yet the sooth-sayer avouched her death could not at all profit the State, and commanded some other to be offered; but *Euphaes* persuaded the people that the Oracle was already satisfied, and required not the life of any other.

33. That rest which the *Lacedæmonians* had in this interval was presently turned into action with the *Argives* about *Thyrea*, a Town situate in the Borders of both Commonwealths. This fell out in the reign of *Theopompus*, whereat yet he was not present, partly by reason of his old age, and also for grief taken at the death of his son *Archidamus*. The controversie was brought before the *Amphyctiones*, who ordered that 300 on each side should decide it. Of the *Argives* two persons survived the Combat; but on the *Spartan* party onely one, by name *Othryades*, as good as many, who lived no longer than to make use of broken Spears instead of Crutches to sustain his body, then to gather together the Targets of the slain, and to erect a Trophy therewith, whereon he made an inscription with his own blood. Because of this Trophy the *Amphyctiones* decreed the Town to the *Lacedæmonians*;

*Pausan. ut supra.*

*Paus. Polyb. l. 6.*

*Idem ibid.*

*A.M. 3262.*

*Olymp. 9. an. 2.*

*V.C. 11.*

*Isidori. 16.*

*Aristodemus*  
killers his  
daughter.

The *Lacedæmonians* make  
War upon  
the *Argives*.

SECT. 5.

*A.M. 3269.*

*Olymp. 11. an. 1.*

*V.C. 18.*

*Isidori 8.*

*Pausan. in*

*Laconicis &*

*Argolicis.*

*Psittar. in Pto-*

*lellis. & He-*

*rod. lib. 1.*

*Suidas in voce*

*Othryades.*

SECT. 5. nians; but the *Argives*, for that two of their party survived, afterwards renewed the War to their own damage.

That with  
the *Messenians*  
renewed.

34. The offering up of *Aristodemus* his daughter seemed to the *Messenians* to have done some good, the affairs of *Lacedæmon* appearing to be in a declining posture, and that State slower in its Enterprizes than formerly. But in the sixth year after the departure of *Lyciscus*, and the eighth from their removal to *Ithome*, the War was again renewed against them. Another battle was fought, but with the same success as formerly. In the midst of the fight was the hottest contest, the most valiant on both sides betaking themselves thither, where *Euphaes* also venturing further, than either stood with his dignity or safety, against *Theopompus*, received many, and deadly wounds. Herewith being so weakened as he fell, the *Lacedæmonians* strove to take him, and a great conflict ensued; but one *Amancer* so far resisting as to lose his own life in the quarrel, *Euphaes* was brought off, and died a few days after, having reigned 13 years, all which time he spent in the War against the *Lacedæmonians*. He dying Childless, a great controversy arose about the succession, for that several of the family of *Egyptus* stood for the Kingdom, amongst whom was *Aristodemus*, who, though it was objected that having polluted his hands in the blood of his daughter, he was not capable, was preferred before all others through the favour of the people. After his Election he sent Presents to the chief of the *Arcadians*, *Argives*, and *Sicyonians*, whom he ingaged to his party. Assisted by some *Arcadians* he made encursions, and the *Lacedæmonians* did the same, proceeding to no greater extremity; but at length, in his fifth year, another battle was fought near to *Ithome*, wherein the *Messenians* were assisted by the three States ere now mentioned, and the *Spartans* by no other *Peloponnesians* than those of *Corinth*. The dispute was very sharp, and the event doubtful, till the *Messenians*, having the upper ground, at last put their enemies to flight, of whom it is credible, as *Pausanias* onely writeth, that many miscarried.

35. The *Lacedæmonians*, after this, almost despairing of success, both parties sent to enquire at *Delphos*, concerning the issue of the War. The *Messenians* received an answer so ambiguous as could not be interpreted: that to the *Spartans* plainly signified, that as *Cresphontes* had obtained *Messene* by a wile in ordering the lots, so by wiles it was to be recovered. Several then they invented, but all were discovered, by the vigilancy, and cunning of *Aristodemus*. But the 20th year of the War approaching, the affairs of the *Messenians* began exceedingly to relapse, and the Oracle again consulted, answered, that whosoever could first dedicate a hundred Treasures (or three-footed stools) to *Jupiter* of *Ithome* should obtain *Messene*. The *Messenians* having made 100 of Clay, and while the *Messenians* were busie about others of Wood (for their purses were not able to reach to brass) disguised himself in the habit of a fowler, and carried them into the Temple. This struck the *Messenians* with great consternation, who were straightly besieged by this time, and hindered from getting in any provisions. *Aristodemus* was also tormented with sad dreams about his daughter, whereat sorely moved, and exceedingly afflicted with consideration that he should kill his Child for his Countrey's good, which notwithstanding was desperate, he slew himself at her Monument.

36. With this sad accident the *Messenians* were more grievously struck, and so despaired as to have thoughts of making their applications to the *Lacedæmonians*; but as yet not able to stoop, they made no overtures, though almost oppressed with famine: they chose them Captains in the room of *Aristodemus*, preparing to sallie out, and fight it out to the last man for their lives and fortunes. Yet at length distrusting their ability to do anything that way, and considering themselves urged hard with the want of all necessities, they left *Ithome*, and yielded in the fifth month after the death of *Aristodemus*, the 28th year of the War being almost finished, in the first of the four-

*Pausanias* in  
*Messenica*.

A. M. 3274.  
Olymp. 12. an. 2.  
V. C. 23.  
Achaz 13.

teenth Olympiad, the *Medonide* at *Athens* yet enjoying the power for ten years, in the dayes of *Hezekiah* King of *Judah*, and the time of the deportation of the ten Tribes. The Conquerours utterly demolished *Ithome*, and, having gotten easily the other Towns of *Messenia* into their power, imposed what Laws they pleased upon the Inhabitants, who were commanded to till their grounds, and send one half of the profits unto *Sparta*; to bind themselves by oath, to remain in perpetual fealty to the *Lacedæmonians*, and both men and women, when the Kings and Nobles of *Sparta* died, to attend upon their Funerals in mourning weeds; which things were enjoined them upon pain of death. As many as would not endure those hard conditions, and had hope of entertainment with the *Arcadians*, *Argives*, and *Sicyonians*, went thither, and such as were Priests to *Elesfine*: all the rest of the multitude departed every one to his own seat, and so the first *Messenian* War ended.

The end of  
the first *Mes-*  
*senian* War.

37. Whilst the *Lacedæmonians* were abroad, and lay under the obligation of their oath, never to return till the War should be finished, fearing, either through the suggestion of their wives, or their own recollection, that their posterity might fail, they chose out of their lustiest young men fifty in number, who coming out under age, were not liable to the oath, and sent them to *Sparta* to lye with their Wives and Virgins (or the Virgins onely) in a promiscuous manner, whence arose a generation called *Parthenia*, as the Sons of Virgins. But after that the war was finished, and the *Spartans* returned home, they looked upon them as a spurious brood, and as such contemned them; which these youths apprehending, and how they could not inherit any thing in the Commonwealth, entred into conspuracie with the *Hilots*, and made one *Philanthus* their Captain, whose Father *Aracus* had given the advice, to send the young Men to the Virgins. This plot being revealed by some of the slaves, they were expelled, and forced to seek out new seats; so that departing into *Italy*, they drove out the *Barbarians* and *Cretians*, who inhabited about *Tarentum*, and seizing upon that place, therein planted themselves.

The *Parthenia*.

The second  
*Messenian*  
War.

38. The *Messenians* thus brought under the yoke, endured it, though with much repining, for 39 years; but then, besides their most hard and servile condition, wearied with the insolency of the *Spartans*, in the fourth year of the 23 Olympiad, a little after the nine Annual Archons were constituted at *Athens*, in the 40th after the taking of *Ithome*, they revolted, at the instigation of *Aristomenes* especially, a young man of a most active and courageous spirit, who had before hand solicited for assistance the *Arcadians* and *Argives* now being jealous of the power of the *Lacedæmonians*, and at open enmity with them. At this time *Anaxander* the Nephew of *Polydorus*, by his Son *Eurycrates*, and *Anaxidamus* the Son of *Zeuxidamus*, and Grandson to *Theopompus*, by his Son *Archidamus*, who died ere he came to reign, were Kings at *Sparta*.

39. *Aristomenes* managed the whole business for the *Messenians*, being of extraordinary abilities both of body and mind. He first ingaged with the *Spartans* at *Dera*, a Village of *Messenia*, where he is said to have behaved himself above the capacity of a man, and seeing he was of the Family of *Egyptus*, was chosen King by the people. Refusing this title, he was created General, with absolute authority, and afterwards, at the Monument of the Boar, (a place in *Messenia*, where *Hercules* made a league with the Sons of *Nileus*) by the assistance of the *Arcadians*, *Argives*, *Sicyonians*, and *Eleans*, overthrew the *Lacedæmonians*, terrifying all where ever he came. In the pursuit he lost his Target, which whilst he was seeking, they had opportunity to escape. After this, he took and plundered a Town of *Laconia*, named *Phara*, whence retreating with much booty, he also overthrew *Anaxander* the King, who pursued him, and having in his intentions to march against *Sparta* itself, is said to have been deterred from it, by the apparitions of *Helena*, and her two brothers *Castor* and *Pollux*.

40. The *Lacedæmonians* much startled at this loss, thought to have put a period

SECT. 5.

A. M. 3282.  
Olymp. 14. an. 2.  
V. C. 31.  
Ezech. 8.

*Justin*, ex  
*Trogo* l. 3.

*Lucæ Strabon*,  
l. 6. p. 278,  
279, 280,  
281.

*Pausanias* in *Mes-*  
*senica*.  
A. M. 3320.  
V. C. 69.  
*Manassis* 17.

SECT. 5. period to the War, but were again encouraged by the Verses of *Tyrtæus*, who persuaded them to fill up their armie with the *Helots*. A year or two before this, sending to consult the Oracle about the War; they had answer, that they must fend to *Athens* for a Counsellor. The *Athenians* were unwilling in the least to promote their affairs, being jealous of their growing power, yet fearing also to do any thing crosse to the Oracle, they sent to them this *Tyrtæus* a School-master, lame on his feet, and not very sound in his brain. In the third year of the War, another batle was fought, at a place called the great *Ditch*, wherein the *Messenians* having no other associates than their friends of *Arcadia*, these also failed them at this time, through the treachery of their Captain; so that, left to themselves, and compassed in by their Enemies, most of them were slain, though *Arifstomenes* omitted nothing worthy of a General, or common Soldier. Having gathered up the reliques of his Army, he persuaded the people to quit all inland Towns, and fortifying onely *Pylus* and *Metbone* upon the Sea, to secure themselves in the hill *Ira*. Here they were presently besieged, and issuing out for booty, made depredations, both in *Laconia* and their own Country, which drew out an Edict from the *Lacedæmonian* State, that the borders of both Countries should, during the War, be left desolate; whereupon a dearth ensued at *Sparta*, and thence a Sedition, which *Tyrtæus* with his Poetry had work enough to suppress.

41. *Arifstomenes* in the mean time, like some fierce and greedy Lyon, with 300 choice men at his heels, to the great fear of all men, ranged up and down the Country, and made continual excursions into the Enemies Country. At length he was taken and carried to *Sparta*, where condemned to death, he was thrown into a deep dungeon; the ordinary way of punishing capital offenders. Coming safe to the bottom, though others were killed by the fall, he perceived a Fox feeding upon some dead carcases, whereat considering that this creature must have some hole to creep in at, he caught it by the tail, and defending himself from it's teeth by the other hand, it led him to the hole, which being but little, he so enlarged with his hands, as contrary to the belief and expectation of all men, he returned safe to his Companions. Presently after his return, he fell upon the Camp of the *Corinthians*, who assisted the *Spartans* in the Siege, and lay carelessly, without any watch, and killing the Captains, plundered their Tents. Not long after a Truce was made for fourty days, during which, he wandring abroad too carelessly, was entrapped by some *Cretians*, who assisted also in the Siege, and being bound with the thongs of their quivers, was carried into a Village, to the house of a certain widow. This woman, understanding who he was, cast in her head how to deliver him, which she effected, by giving his Keepers so much drink, that they falling asleep, with one of their daggers he cut the thongs. Being loosed, he stabbed the *Cretians* and escaped; and afterwards, to requite the womans kindnesse, married her to his Son *Gorgus*.

42. Ten years the Siege of *Ira* continued, the *Messenians* enjoying the grounds at the foot of the Mountain, as far as the River *Neda*, thereby being better provided for to hold out. But in the eleventh, when *Arifstomenes* was rendered by a wound incapable of taking such care about the watch as he had been wont, in a rainy and dark night the sentinels, secure of him, betook themselves to their own homes. Amongst those there was one, whose wife in his absence entertained a certain Herd-man as a Lover, who belonged to *Emperamus* a *Lacedæmonian* now at the Siege. He being hid by his Parimour upon her husband's coming, heard the man tell the Story, how he and his fellows had forsaken their charge, and slipping away, therewith acquainted his Master. Both the *Spartan* Kings were absent at this time, but *Emperamus*, unwilling to let slip so fair an opportunity, led the Army thither, and got into the Fortresse before he was discovered. When the matter was perceived, a great contest there was betwixt the parties; but *Arifstomenes* seeing there was no hope of doing any good, and willing to save what was left of the afflicted *Messenians*, obtained liberty to depart; and so *Ira* being taken

The end of  
the second  
War.

A. M. 3337.  
Ol. 28. an. 2.  
V. C. 86.  
Manassie 34.

taken the War ended, after it had lasted sixteen years; in the first of the 28th *Olympiad*, when *Ausosthenes* was *Archon* at *Athens*, A. M. 3337.

43. When the *Arcadians* understood of the taking of *Ira*, they desired of *Arifstocrates* their King to be led out, either to restore their friends, or die with them; but he having formerly betrayed them at the great *Ditch*, was now also corrupted with money, and refused to do it, alleging there was none left to whom they could give assistance. Yet when it was clearly known that they were alive, they sent some before to comfort them, then met them with clothes, and meat, as far as the Hill *Lycæus*, and kindly invited them to live amongst them. *Arifstomenes* boyling with hatred and revenge against the *Lacedæmonians*, chose out of the Company 500 men, whom he knew to be no whit desirous to outlive the fortune of their Country, and asked them in the hearing of *Arifstocrates* (not knowing any thing of his treachery) and the *Arcadians*, whether they would venture their lives with him. Upon their answer that they would, he acquainted them with his design, to march straight for *Sparta*, which if he could surprize, now that all it's strength was employed in the plunder of *Messenia*, then should he make an even exchange with the *Lacedæmonians*; but, if not, death would be the worst that could happen. Besides the *Messenians*, 300 *Arcadians* gave their names to this Expedition; but being stayed by reason that the entrails of the beast were not propitious, *Arifstocrates* had time to give notice of the design to *Anaxander* King of *Sparta*. The treachery was discovered after the return of the Messenger, by some that suspected it, and the letter sent back from *Anaxander*, was read in the Assembly of the *Arcadians*, wherein thanks was given to *Arifstocrates*, as well for the help he afforded the *Lacedæmonians* at the great *Ditch*, as for this timely notice. Hereat the multitude was so enraged, as they stoned him out of hand, cast him out unburied, and erected a monument to his infamy, with this note, that *Perjury cannot escape God*. They exhorted also the *Messenians* to throw stones at him, who looked upon *Arifstomenes*, as expecting directions from him; but he onely fixed his eyes on the ground and wept.

*Arifstocrates*  
punished for  
his treachery.

44. The *Messenians* desired of *Arifstomenes* to lead them out, to seek some new place to inhabit; but he denied it, resolving to spend his days in doing as much mischief as he could to the *Lacedæmonians*: onely his son *Gorgus* and *Maniclus* he offered to them. Those that had kept *Pylus* and *Metbone*, with others which lived on the Sea-coasts, went by ship to *Cyllene*, the haven of the *Eleans*, to seek out the rest. The following Spring several places being proposed to go to, *Anaxilas* who then reigned at *Rhegium*, and was descended of one *Alciaamidas* a *Messenian* (that after the taking of *Ithome* in the former War, betook himself thither) sent some to convey them into *Italy*. After their arrival, he told them he had continual War with the *Zancleans*, a people of *Sicilie*, that inhabited a fruitful and pleasant Soil, which if they would help him to conquer, he would put it into their hands. He then besieged them by Sea, and the *Messenians* by Land, whereby being distressed, and the greater part of the wall now cast down, they fled to the altars of their gods. *Anaxilas* would have had them slain, and their wives and children sold; but the other unwilling to commit such cruelty against any *Greeks*, (for such they were, the Town being first inhabited by *Rovers*, and afterwards by others from several parts of *Greece*) gave them liberty to continue, and incorporating themselves into their body, changed the name of the place from *Zancle* into *Messene*. *Arifstomenes* for some time continuing in *Greece*, married his daughters very honourably, whereof *Demagetus*, Prince of *Rhodes* at that time, took the youngest to wife, having been advised by the Oracle, to make choice of that man's daughter who was the best in all *Greece*. He carried his daughter to *Rhodes*, whence he intended to go to *Ardys* the son of *Gyges*, then reigning in *Lydia*, and thence to *Ecbatane*, to *Phraortes* King of the *Medes*; but death prevented him, and he finished his days in that Island, being found in the number of those few, that lived and died in great glory.

The *Messenians*  
palle into  
*Sicily*.

A. M. 3339.  
Ol. 28. an. 3.  
V. C. 88.  
Manassie 36.

T

45. *Messenia*

SECT. 5.

## SECT. 6.

Such as continued in Messenia made slaves.

45. *Messenia* thus subdued by the *Lacedemonians* was tilled by the common slaves, amongst whom such of the inhabitants as there still remained were inrolled, and became a proverb for their hard bondage; being worse used than any, because, as some think, the War was carried on with them, not for glory and Empire, but for life and safety, not with a contention which people should rule, but whether should be preserved. The accession of this Country to their demesnes very much increased the power of *Lacedamon*, and so they held it for two hundred years, till an opportunity was offered for the old inhabitants, in despite of them, to return. This thing being brought to passe long after, must be referred to another place: as also (because what further hapned betwixt the *Arcadians*, *Argives*, and this Commonwealth, is not very material) whatsoever we have further to observe concerning the *Lacedemonians*.

## SECT. VI.

## The most antient Kingdom of Corinth.

Corinth first called Ephyræ, and built by Sisyphus.

1. **T**His Citie, seated in the *Isthmus of Peloponnesus*, had first the name of *Ephyræ*, and was built by *Sisyphus* (whose posterity reigned here some 428 years) in the dayes of *Cecrops*, the first King of *Athens*, and a little before *Deucalions Flood*, about the 2486 year of the World. He married *Meropè*, the daughter of *Atlas*, by which he had four sons, *Glaucus*, *Ornytion*, *Thersander*, and *Almas*; was accounted a very wise, and prudent man, feigned also to have returned to life again, that he might chastize his wife for not having performed what was due to his memory. After he was once got up he would not return of a long time to Hell, where he is also said by the Poets to roll a great stone up an Hill, which continually tumbling down again keepeth him in constant toil, having this punishment inflicted on him for discovering to *Asopus* his daughter stolne away by *Jupiter*. *Glaucus* his eldest son was the father of *Bellerophon*, and first celebrated Games in the *Isthmus*. *Ornytion* begat *Phocus*, who led a Colony into, and gave name to the Countrey called *Phocis* after him, and *Thous* a younger son that continued at *Corinth*. *Thersander* had two sons, *Coronus* and *Haliarvus*, who being adopted by *Athamas* their Uncle on the father's side, then reigning in *Bæotia*, (after he had lost his own two sons *Phryxus* and *Helles*, and his daughter *Ino* with her two sons) gave name to two places in that Countrey. *Almus* (called otherwise *Halmus* and *Olmus*) the youngest son of *Sisyphus* had part of the Countrey of the *Orchomenians* bestowed on him by *Ereocles* the King, and from him *Almon*, or *Olmon*, a place of *Bæotia*, was so named.

Bellerophon.

2. *Bellerophon*, having committed man-slaughter at *Corinth*, was forced to fly thence, and went to *Præus* King of the *Argives*, whose wife *Sthenobæa* enamoured of his beauty tempted him to lie with her; but he had the modesty to deny her, wherewith she was so incensed as to accuse him to her husband of an intended rape. *Præus* taking it in great disdain to be so used by his Guest, yet would not kill him, but sent him to *Iolus*, King of *Lycia* his wives father with Letters, wherein he desired him to make the bearer away. To fulfill his request, *Iolus* first caused him to fight with the *Chimæra*, a Monster that vomited fire, not doubting of his destruction thereby; but he mounting the horse *Pegasus*, slew the Monster. Then he sent him against the *Solyms* and *Amazons*, whom he Conquered; then caused some of the strongest young men he could procure to ly in ambush, and fall on him, which also he having slain, *Iolus* admiring his valour gave him his daughter *Philonoe* to wife, and when he died, left him his Successor in the Kingdom of *Lycia*. (a) *Servius* in *Virgil Aeneid*.

The *Chimæra*. able. (a) Some have understood by it a Mountain in *Lycia*, the top whereof

(a) *Servius* in *Virgil Aeneid*.

## SECT. 6.

vomited forth fire, the middle part had Pastures full of Goats, and the foot, or bottom, abounded with Serpents. 'Tis conceived he might make this Mountain habitable, and thence be said to have slain the *Chimæra*, which had a mouth like a *Lion*, middle parts as a *Goat*, and the hinder parts like a *Dragon*. (b) Others again say that *Bellerophon* gave occasion to this fable by killing one *Chimæras* a Sea Caprain, who infested the *Lycians* with piracy, the story being thence raised, for that *Chimæras* his ship had a *Lion* painted on the prow, and a *Dragon* on the deck, and *Bellerophon's* Vessel called *Pegasus*, might have a winged horse for its sign. A third (c) sort think three kinds of enemies to be signified by this Monster: the *Solyms*, *Amazons*, and *Lycians*; the former being for their Valour compared to a *Lion*, the next for their nimbleness in climbing of Rocks to a *Goat*, and the last to a *Dragon*, for their craftinesse in ambushes. Lastly, a (d) modern, and most learned Writer judgeth the three gods of the *Solyms*, whom *Bellerophon* overthrew, to have been painted in their Ensigns; resembling a *Lion*, *Goat*, and *Dragon*, like the three heads of the Monster, as 'tis described by *Hesiod*.

Aletes.

\* A. M. 3048.

The *Bacchiads*.

Colonies of the Corinthians.

3. *Bellerophon* being driven from *Corinth*, *Thous* the son of *Ornytion* obtained the Kingdom, whom succeeded *Demophon* his son, then followed *Propodas*, whose two sons *Doridas* and *Hyantidas* reigning both together, *Aletes* the son of *Hippotes* (son to *Antiochus*, and Nephew to *Hercules*) came down and subdued the Kingdom. The *Heraclids* having, before this, obtained *Peloponnesus*, reserved this part for him, who consulting the Oracle of *Jupiter* at *Dodona*, was answered, that he should then obtain it, when a clod of Earth should be given him. At his return this was fulfilled; for begging some meat of an Herd-man, he, having nothing to give him, offered him a clod, which he gladly accepted, saying, *Aletes* accepteth of a clod, which became a proverb. Who gave the name of *Corinth* to the Citie is uncertain; but however, *Aletes* out of gratitude to the Oracle, named it *Corinth of Jupiter*, which gave occasion to the multitude to believe that *Corinth* the King that built it, was the son of *Jupiter*, wherein they so gloried, and so often vaunted of it, that nothing became more ridiculous, and they were laughed at for it throughout *Greece*. After *Aletes* the eldest of the family succeeded for several Generations. The first was *Ixion*, who reigned 37 years, the next *Agelaus*, who ruled as many, *Prumnus* 25. and \* *Bacchis* full so many, who was so famous, that where as he, and all his Ancestors were called *Heraclids*, his Successors from him had the name of *Bacchiads*. The first after him was *Agelaus*, who governed thirty years, the next *Endemus*, who reigned 25. then came *Aristomedes*, who having ruled 25. left a Child behind him, which his brother *Algemon*, whom he had appointed Guardian, deposed, and held the Kingdom himself sixteen years. After him followed *Alexander* for 25. whom *Telestes* the son of *Aristomedes* slew, and obtained his fathers Kingdom, which he held twelve years. He was also slain by *Arieus* and *Perantas* his Kin-men, and then *Automenes* reigned one year, which being expired, the *Bacchids*, more than 200 in number, seized on the Kingdom, and Governed in common; onely every year they created a *Prytanis* out of their own body to be in the room of the King, and so they continued 90 years in the way of an Aristocracy.

4. During this term, in the fourth year of the eleventh *Olympiad*, the *Corinthians* being powerfull at Sea, sent out a Colony into the Island of *Sicily* under conduct of *Archias*, one of the *Heraclids*, which, expelling the *Siculi* out of that quarter, founded the Citie *Syracuse*. More people flocking thither out of *Peloponnesus*, this Citie grew, and increased exceedingly; so that it became not onely the principal of all in *Sicily*, but the greatest, and most beautifull of all *Greece*, as *Cicero* witnesseth, and in its due place will be further discovered. Much about the same time was there another Colony sent into the Island *Phæacius*, lying nigh to *Epirus*, at a little distance from the Continent, conducted thither by *Cherisierates* another of the posterity of *Hercules*. *Homer* in his *Odysse*. Maketh this Island inhabited in the Trojan

(b) *Plutarch de virtutibus mulierum.*

(c) *Homer Iliad 3. Eust. & Isac. in Lycoph. p. 6.*

(d) *Legè Bocharti Canaan. lib. 1. c. 6.*

*Pausan. ut prius.*

*Vide Simonium ad A. M. 2914.*

*Διὸς Κόρινθ.*

*Euseb. in Chronico & Excerpta Diodori per Georgium Monast. inter. lib. 5. & 10.*

*A. M. 3172. Olymp. 11. an. 4. V. C. 21. Achan 12.*



## SECT. 6.

times, by the *Phaeacians* a most noble people, over whom reigned *Alcinous* the son of *Nausithous*, who received *Ulysses* after his long wanderings, and helped him in his journey home to *Ithaca*. He mentioneth his Royal seat, called *Scheria*, (which *Pliny* from him affirmeth also to have been the name of the Island, as well as *Phaacia*) and saith, the inhabitants were much given to Navigation, and most skilfull therein. In the soyl of this *Scheria*, the old inhabitants being expelled, this new Colony planted it self, which taking the name of *Coreyra*, the whole Island came thence to be so called. The Citie, much befriended by the Commodiousness of the Haven, and the convenience of the place for Sea matters, grew in a short time to be very considerable; so as it founded of it self two Cities, viz. that of *Epidamnus*, as we have it from *Thucydides*, (by the *Romans* called *Dyrrachium*) and *Apollonia*, as *Strabo* writeth; both of them seated in that part of *Illyricum*, inhabited by the *Taulantians*. The form of this Commonwealth was (agreeable to the constitution of all Colonies) like to that of *Corinth* the Metropolis, which then was Governed by the *Bacchiadae* in an Oligarchical way. When *Corinth* was afflicted by Tyrants, *Coreyra* felt also their influence upon its infancy; but at length it grew to that height, as to renounce such obedience as the other challenged, whence great and tedious Commotions were produced in *Greece*.

5. The *Bacchiadae* neither communicated the Government nor marriage to any other person than of their own family, till one of their women being lame, and upon that account despised by them all of her own stock, had thereby an occasion given to break the custom. She (named *Labda*) married *Eetion* (the son of *Echecrates*, and Nephew to *Anaxus* of the *Peirean* Tribe) who, having no Children by her, or any other, went to *Delphos*, and inquired of the Oracle concerning issue. He received an answer to this effect; that he should have a son, who like a stone would fall upon the Oligarchy, and breaking it in pieces, amend the State of *Corinth*. This coming to the ears of the *Bacchiadae*, who had an Oracle before much to the same purpose, though under general terms, they resolved to hold their peace, and kill *Eetion's* Child as soon as it should be born. And as soon as his wife was delivered, they sent ten of their Company to destroy it, whom the mother presented with a sight of the Babe, thinking they had come to Congratulate her husband about its birth. They had agreed amongst themselves, that whosoever first came at the Infant should knock out his brains, but the Child smiling in his face, who first took it in his Arms, he was so moved with compassion, as he would not kill it, but delivered it to one of his fellows, who touched with the same compassion gave it to another, till it passed through all their hands unhurt. Being gone out, and standing at the door, they blamed one another exceedingly, especially the first, whose part it was to kill it, and in they returned now to do the deeds; but the mother, hearing their discourse, hid the Infant under a *Bushell*, or such alike instrument of measuring Corn, so that not finding it they returned, giving out they had done their errand, and so the Child thus preserved was named *Cypselus*, from the measure under which he was hid, in the *Greek* tongue called *Cypsele*.

6. When he was come to man's estate, relying upon another Oracle (whereby he was plainly bidden to be King of *Corinth*, and his Children after him, but not his Nephews) he invaded the Tyranny, which to establish many he deprived of their estates, but many more of their lives. He first lulled the people asleep with good language, and thereby getting all into his hands, made himself Lord of the Citie; his power he preserved by removing those out of the way whom it most concerned; but once established he grew exceeding mild and fair, with good words, and no ill deeds, drawing the people into such a respect of him, that all his time he stood not in need of any Guard; a rare thing in men of his condition, which *Gelo* at *Syracuse* only imitated. This change hapned at *Corinth* in the 2 year of the 31 *Olympiad*, in the dayes of *Phraortes*, King of the *Medes*, and *Ardys* Grand-father to *Crasus*, King of *Lydia*, 20 years after the second *Median* War, and 30 after

Herod. lib. 5. cap. 90. & c.

Kustan.

A. M. 3350.

Consule Arist. Polit. l. 2. c. 12.

after the nine *Annual Archons* were established at *Athens*, A. M. 3350. Upon his seizing the power, *Demaratus*, a man eminent amongst the *Bacchiadae*, and very rich, fled into *Italy*, and seated himself in *Heiruria*, where, of a woman of that Country he begat two sons, *Aruns* and *Lucumon*, the later whereof became King of *Rome*, by the name of *Tarquinius*.

Periander.

7. *Cypselus* having enjoyed the principality of *Corinth* and *Coreyra* the space of thirty years, then died, and left it to his son *Periander*. He was much unlike his father, of a cruel disposition (if we believe *Aristotle* rather than *Soficles* in *Herodotus*) inasmuch as not trusting the good will of his people, he got a guard of 300 men about him, and would rather be feared than loved of his Subjects; yet being hardy and warlike, he held the power longer than he. *Herodotus*, out of *Soficles* relateth, that at first he was very mild and courteous, till by acquaintance with *Thrasibylus* the Tyrant of *Miletus*, he altered his humour; for sending to him for his advice, how he might best order his affairs in Government, he returned no answer to the Messenger, but carrying him out into a plot of Corn, fell a plucking off the tallest and most eminent ears, till he had well nigh marred the whole plot. The Messenger returning told *Periander* what he had seen, who easily guessed, that the most eminent and powerful Citizens were to be removed out of the way; but *Aristotle* maketh him the author of this counsel to *Thrasibylus*. *Laetius* saith, he grew more cruel after it was known that he lay with his Mother *Cratea*.

8. He married *Melissa* the daughter of *Procles* (or *Parracles*) tyrant of *Epidaurus*, on whom he begat *Cypselus* and *Lycophron*, whereof the elder was very blockish and stupid. At the instigation of his whores, he afterwards killed his wife, kicking her when she was great with child, then lay with her when she was dead, and calling together the *Corinthian* women, as well adorned as possible, to celebrate the feast of *Juno*, caused his guard to strip them all naked, and made a parentation to *Melissa* of all their clothes and ornaments. *Lycophron* his youngest son, who onely was capable of Government, moved by *Procles* his Grand-Father, grew exceeding forward and refractory because of his Mother's death; inasmuch as, differences and distrusts increasing, *Periander* banished him, first his house, then forbade all his Subjects to speak to, or comfort him, and at length forced him into *Coreyra*. But after some years growing old, infirm, and unfit for business, he sent for him home, offering to pisse over all to him; but by no arguments or intreaties could he move him to return, till he offered to change places, and devest himself of all power. Now, when this was agreed on, the *Coreyraeans* fearing above all things to have *Periander* come amongst them, to prevent it, killed the young man. *Periander* to be revenged, took away from them 300 of their choicest Boyes, which he sent to *Aliares* King of *Lydia* his friend and allie to be gelded; but they being driven upon the Island *Samus*, the Inhabitants took such pity both on them and their relations, as to send them home safe, and disappointed the Tyrant. This so vexed him, now almost eighty years old, that he dyed of grief, though by some he be reckoned amongst the seven Wise Men of *Greece*. *Snidas* out of most ancient Authors delivereth this character of him; That he was an harsh and cruel Tyrant, very martial, scarce being ever out of War, very powerful at Sea, having for convenient Havens both upon the *Ionian* and *Aegean* Gulfs. He reigned nigh forty years, and dyed in the fourth of the 48th *Olympiad*, seven after the establishment of *Solon's* Laws, A. M. 3420.

Psammetichus.

9. *Periander* being dead, his Tyranny as it were tottered for three years and some six moneths, during which time *Psammetichus* the son of *Gordias*, brother to *Periander*, or rather something akin to him, held it; as appeareth by (\*) *Aristotle*, who onely hath preserved his name to us from utter oblivion. After his removal the power of one man was laid aside, and the people put themselves into a Free-State, which continued as long as the liberty of *Greece* it self. The form thereof is not described to us by any ancient Author; onely this we know from (f) *Plutarch*, that it was inclining more to Oligarchy

SECT. 6.

A. M. 3350.

Dionys. Halic. l. 1. c. 1.

Herodotus & Aristot.

\* Polit. l. 2. c. 9. & l. 5. c. 10.

Laetius in vita Perianderi, & Herod. ut supra.

A. M. 3420. Olymp. 48. an. 4. P. C. 169. Nabuch. 24.

(e) Politic. l. 5. c. 12. (f) In Timoleonte & Dion.

## SECT. 7.

*Oligarchy* than that of *tyranny*; the power of the multitude being more bounded. Yet, for certain, the Government was popular, things of greatest consequence never being resolved on, without the consent and decree of the people, (which kept those of highest concernment in its own power) and, if any other in the World, was a friend to Antimonarchical liberty, and an utter enemy to Monarchy, where ever it was found in *Greece*. For this City undertook many times great Wars for this very cause, and not out of any ambitious design, as is clear in the case of the *Syracusians*, and others; so that a Captain out of it was most desirable upon such an occasion; as may hereafter be discovered.

## SECT. VII.

## The antient Kingdom of Thebes.

Calydnus.

Ogyges.

Cadmus.

1. *Bœotia* had on the West *Phocis*, on the East the *Eubœan Sea*, on the North the Eastern *Locri*, and on the South *Attica* and *Megaria*. The chief seat and Metropolis of this Country was *Thebes*, the builder of which is not certainly known. *Calydnus* is reported first to have reigned here; whence by a Poet of *Chalcis*, it is called the Tower of *Calydnus*, and in *Hesychius*, *Calydnean* is the same with *Antient*. After him was *Ogyges*, or *Ogyus*, from whom *Thebes* by the Poets is called *Ogygian*, and that great *Ogygian Deluge* is named, which is said to have happened in his time, 1020 years before the first *Olympiad*, in the dayes of *Phoroneus* King of *Argos*, (as *Africanus* gathereth) and so overwhelmed all the region of *Attica*, that it made it inhabitable for 200 years, as *Pererius* noteth. *Pausanias* writeth, that he was King of the *Etæna*, the first Inhabitants of *Thebais*, and that from his son *Eleusine* a famous Town in *Attica* took both Original and name, as some were of opinion. These *Etæna* are reported to have been consumed by Pestilence, whom succeeded the *Hyantes* and *Aona*, that continued in those parts, together with the *Temmices* (who came from *Sanium*) and the *Leleges*, till *Cadmus* coming to *Greece*, made himself Master of this place, in the dayes of *Corax* King of *Sicyon*, and *Danaus* of *Argos*, 347 years after the beginning of *Ogyges*.

2. This *Cadmus*, according to the tradition of the *Greeks*, was son to *Agenor* the brother of *Belus*, Uncle to *Danaus* and *Egyptus*, who coming out of *Egypt* into *Phœnice* some 36 years before, on his wife *Telphassa* begat three sons; *Cadmus*, *Phanix*, *Cilix*, and a daughter named *Europa*. This *Europa*, *Jupiter* stole, and carried over Sea into *Crete*, in the likeness of a Bull, where he begat on her *Minos*, *Rhadamanthus*, and *Sarpedon*. *Asterius* King of the Island afterwards married her, and having no children of his own, adopted her sons. *Herodotus* telleth us that some *Greeks* (*Asterius* perhaps, or some for him) in revenge for what the Nation had formerly suffered from the *Asiatics* in stealing away *Ino*, went to *Tyre*, and thence stole *Europa* the Kings daughter, bringing her away in a ship, whose ensign was a Bull, whence occasion was given to feign, that she was carried over upon a Bull's back.

3. *Agenor* sent out his three sons to seek their Sister, charging them never to return without her into *Phœnicia*. *Cadmus* sailed first into the Island *Callisthe*, (lying betwixt *Crete* and *Callisthe*) where he left a Colony, and thence into *Thasus* (so named from *Thasus* one of his Companions, and head of another Colony left here) and at length into *Greece*, where, in *Bœotia*, being past all hope of finding his sister, and consequently of returning into *Phœnicia*, by the command of an Oracle he founded *Thebes*; or re-edifying what was formerly built by *Ogyges*, anew laid the foundation of the *Castle*, which, ever after, from him retained the name of *Cadmia*. The *Hyantes* beaten by his Forces, fled the night following into *Phocis*; but the *Aœna*, upon their submission, were suffered to continue and imbody themselves

A. M. 2244.

In Bœotia &amp; Attica.

Apollod. lib. 2.

Diod. l. 4. p. 183.

Lib. 1. cap. 2.

Diod. lib. 4. p. 147.

Pausan. l. 9. A. M. 2355.

Strabo l. 9. p. 401.

## SECT. 7.

felves amongst the *Phœnicians*. Here he married *Harmonia* the daughter of *Mars* and *Venus*, agreeable to which alliance, the gods are said to have come down unto *Cadmia* to the wedding. Out of *Phœnicia* he first brought letters into *Greece*, giving them their peculiar names and characters, fitted for the language of the place, and thence they were called *Phœnician*, though afterwards *Pelasgian*, because the use of them was, after they were brought over, first made known to the *Pelasgi*.

4. Of *Harmonia*, *Cadmus* begot *Polydorus* his son, and four daughters, *Semele*, *Ino*, *Antiope*, and *Agave*. On *Semele* *Jupiter* enamoured begot *Dionysus*, or *Bacchus*, who found out Wine and Ale, and travelled throughout the then known World, to reduce men to civility. This he did with an Army both of men and women, and after an Expedition of three years returned out of *India*, first triumphing upon an Elephant. *Ino* was married to *Arhamas* the son of *Æolus* and grand-son of *Hellen*, to whom she bore *Actæon* that was devoured by his own Dogs. *Agave* became the wife of *Eetion*, to whom she bore *Pentheus*. After *Cadmus* had reigned some time at *Thebes*, he was called by the *Encheleæ*, who had Wars at that time with the *Illyrians*, and were bidden by the Oracle to send for him and *Harmonia* to be their Captains. He left then the Kingdom of *Thebes* to his son *Polydorus*, and having subdued the *Illyrians*, reigned over them, and begot another son called *Illyrius*, who either gave or took name from that people. The Poets feigned *Cadmus* and his wife, to have been turned here into Snakes, because they seem to have forgot their former civility, and learnt barbarism.

Polydorus.

What the Sidonians said of Cadmus.

5. This is the sum of what the *Greeks* have delivered concerning *Cadmus*. But, though they, for their own credit, made him the son of a King, yet the *Sidonians*, whose Country-man he was, deny this, alleging that being their King's Cook, he fled away with *Harmonia*, a certain minstrel. His time, as it is computed, falleth in with that of *Joshua*, so that he seemeth to have led into *Greece* a Colony of those *Canaanites*, or *Phœnicians*, who were oured of their habitations by the *Israelites*. His family may be gathered to have been that of the *Kadmonites*, mentioned by *Moses*, who were the same with the *Hivites*, and called *Cadmonim*, or *Orientalis*, because they possessed Mount *Hermion*, the most Eastern part of *Canaan*, taken for the East, as *Thabor* for the West. Hence came it to passe, that *Cadmus* his wife was called *Harmonia*, or *Hermione*, and apparent why they were feigned to be turned into Snakes, because an *Hivite* in the *Syrian* language signifieth a Serpent. That he first brought letters into *Greece* is most probable, 1. Because the antientest *Greek* letters, in most things, are like to the old *Phœnician*, which the *Samaritans* at this day use. 2. Their names are plainly *Phœnician*, or *Hebrew*, as may be instanced in *Alpha*, *Beta*, &c. of which the *Greeks* were not ignorant, as appeareth out of *Varro*. For *Crates* the Philosopher, disputing in *Greece* about some points of Grammar, demanded why they said not *Alpha Alphatos* as well as *Gramma Grammatos*, to which the *Grecians* answered, that the names were not theirs, but barbarous; and *Pinsarch* rendered this reason, why *Alpha* is set before the rest by the *Phœnicians*, because they called an Oxe by that name. 3. The *Greeks* kept the same order of letters as the *Phœnicians* did, as appeareth by some acrostick Verses of *David* and *Jeremiah*. *Cadmus* brought over the Rites of *Bacchus* into *Greece*, and thereupon is feigned to be Grand-father to him, who lived many Ages before, and indeed was *Nimrod*. To this City built or re-edified by him, he gave the name of *Thebes*, of which name there was a place in *Canaan* mentioned by the Book of (a) *Judges*, and by (b) *Josephus* also written *Thebe*; in the plural number; so that an end may be put to that controversy about the original of the word, which betokeneth mud or dirt. But concerning all this, *Bochartus* is to be consulted, in the first Book of that admirable Work intitled *Canaan*.

6. *Polydorus*, succeeding his Father, married *Nictis* the daughter of *Nycteus*, by which he had a son named *Labdacus*, whom, dying before he

(a) Cap. 9. 50.  
(b) Antiqu. lib. 3. cap. 9.

came

## SECT. 7.

Laius.

came at age, he left to the tuition of his father-in-law. *Nycteus* had another daughter, *Antiope* by name, which *Epopeus* King of *Sicyonia* stole away, whence a War ensued, wherein both of them received mortal wounds, and *Nycteus* dying, left the tuition of the young King to his brother *Lycus*. After *Labdacus* came at age, *Lycus* restored faithfully the Kingdom to him, wherefore the King dying also not long after, and leaving his son *Laius* a Child but of one year old, having experience of his faithfulness, he committed him to his protection. Afterwards *Amphion* and *Zethus*, the sons of *Antiope*, invaded *Thebes* in revenge for their mother's hard usage and Captivity, she having been taken by *Lycus* in *Sicyon*, or delivered up to him by *Lamedon* King of that Citie, when he led down thither an Army, at the desire of his dying brother, to revenge him upon her and *Epopeus*, as we before shewed. *Lycus* meeting them in the field was slain in battel, *Thebes* lost, and the Child *Laius* had miscarried, but that some well-wishers to his stock withdrew him out of the danger, left the posterity of *Cadmus* should be utterly extinct. *Amphion* then and *Zethus* obtained the Kingdom; said by *Homer* to have built *Thebes*, which must be meant of the lower Citie distinct from *Cadmia*. *Amphion* was so excellent a Musician, that he is said to have made stones to follow him, wherewith he built Towers about the Citie. He married *Niobe*, the daughter of *Tantalus*, and sister to *Pelops*, which brought him many Children, but boasting her self more fruitfull than *Latona* her self, procured the destruction of them all. For *Apollo* was commanded to kill the Boyes, and *Diana* the Girles, whereat she was struck with such stupidity, as she is feigned to be turned into a stone; and *Amphion* with all his family at length died of the pestilence. *Zethus* having his young son killed at unawares by the mother, pined away for grief; so that both brothers being dead, and their families ruined, the *Thebans* restored the Kingdom to *Laius* the son of *Labdacus*.

7. *Laius* married *Jocaste*, the daughter of *Menaceus*, but was admonished by the Oracle to beget no Children, because else he should be killed by his son; which punishment *Pelops* had prayed might fall on him for stealing his son *Chrysippus*, begotten on a Concubine. Notwithstanding this he had a son, but as soon as he was born he thrust his feet in Iron fetters, and exposed him as a prey to wild beasts. Yet, either by those that had this charge, or others that found him, he was carried to *Polybus*, King of *Corinth*, who caused his feet to be healed (from the swelling of which he had the name of *Oedipus*) and brought him up. Many years after when he was grown, *Laius*, either hearing some rumor concerning him, or carried by natural affection, went to enquire of the Oracle what had hapned to his son, and at the same time it chanced that *Oedipus*, having heard of some design against himself, went thither also to enquire who were his true Parents. They met in *Phocis*, where *Laius* bidding the other somewhat imperiously to give way, *Oedipus* moved with choler killed him, being utterly ignorant who he was.

C. cor.

Oedipus.

Unridleth  
the riddle of  
Sphinx.

8. *Laius* being dead, *Creon* the brother of *Jocaste* (called also *Epicafe*) seized upon his Kingdom, and kept it for some time, till *Oedipus* explained the riddle of *Sphinx*. This Munster, which the *Boeotians* also called *Phix*, is feigned to have had an head and face like a woman, the hinder parts like a Lyon, and wings as a Bird, and keeping upon the Hill *Phicion*, or *Phiceon* (so named from her) she proposed riddles, which whosoever could unriddle should have *Jocaste* in marriage with the Kingdom; but if nor, she presently devoured them. Her riddle to *Oedipus* was this: *what is it that goeth both on two Legs, three, and four?* Many having lost their lives for a misinterpretation, he expounded it to be meant of a man, who when an Infant creepeth on hands and feet, when arrived at ripeness of age goeth upright on legs, and when he cometh to be old useth a staff. Some think her a deformed, and savage kind of woman, that living on prey used to lie in wait for passengers. But *Pausanias* writing that she was the Bastard daughter of *Laius*, others judge her to have been for her wisdom preferred to determine the pretences of such as claimed the Kingdom, and that those who

\* A.M. 2601.

Pausan. in  
Boeoticis &  
Corinth.Diodor. l. 4.  
p. 191.

Apollod.

Diodorus l. 4.  
p. 185.  
A.M. 2695.

A.M. 2722.

Apollodorus.

Plutarch, in  
lib. quod bruti  
ratione utuntur.

A.M. 2758.

## SECT. 7.

\* Clemens  
Strom. l. 5.

were cast in the tryal she punished with death; which cruelty the Poets derecting raised the fable. Because of her abilities, this kind of Monster was made by \* the *Egyptians* an Hieroglyphick of wisdom and strength, in both which *Phisarch* maketh her to have excelled.

9. *Oedipus* then married *Jocasta* his own mother, not knowing what she was to him, and obtained the Kingdom of *Thebes*. *Diodorus* telleth us that he had two sons by her, *Eteocles* and *Polynices*, with as many daughters, but others say he had them by *Euryganea*, the daughter of *Hyperphas*. At length all came to light; both that he had killed his father, and married his own mother, whereupon she presently hanged her self, and his sons kept him up close for the filthiness of the thing, as some say, though others will have him driven from *Thebes*, and that going to *Thebes* King of *Athens*, he there died a little after. *Polynices*, while his father was yet living, went to *Argos*, where he married *Argia*, the daughter of *Adrastus*; but after his death returned to *Thebes* to succeed him in the Kingdom. The two brothers then agreed to reign by turns; but *Eteocles*, having the first course, refused to yield up his power at the time prefixed; so that *Polynices* was glad to return to *Argos*. At the same time there hapned to be with *Adrastus* one *Tydeus*, the son of *Oeneus*, who having killed a man in *Etolia*, fled also to him: both these he kindly received, and by direction of the Oracle making them his sons-in-law, promised to restore them to their Countreys and Estates. Beginning first with *Polynices*, he sent *Tydeus* in Ambassage to *Eteocles*, who caused fifty men to lie in wait for him by the way, but he killed them all, and returned safe to *Argos*. *Adrastus*, to revenge the injury, made all possible preparation for a War, and invited all the best Souldiers from all quarters to the expedition. Seven Eminent Captains gave their names, whereof *Amphiaraus*, who had married *Eriphile*, the sister of *Adrastus*, was Chief, though of so ancient a thing as this *Theban*-war, there can be little certainty.

Eteocles &  
Polynices.The Theban  
War.

Laodamus.

The expedi-  
tion of the  
Epigoni.

10. Having each of them his several Army (or Company rather) they marched to *Thebes*, which they besieged, and divided themselves according to the Gares of the Citie. *Eteocles* made all preparations for defence, assigning to every Gate its Officer, and consulted *Tiresias* a Prophet, then blind, concerning the event of the War. He answered, that the *Thebans* should overcome, if *Menaceus*, the son of *Creon*, would devote himself as a sacrifice to *Mars*, which he presently did, killing himself before the Gares. The *Thebans* then made a sally, but were beaten back to the Walls, which, when the *Argives* approached, *Capaneus*, one of the seven Captains, first of all others set to Ladders, and mounted; but he being killed, the other retreated, and many of them were slain in the pursuit. After this it was agreed that the two brothers, in a single Combat, should decide the quarrel, and so doing they mutually fell by the hands of each other: then followed a very sharp fight wherein all the Captains that followed *Adrastus* were slain, and he onely escaped by the swiftness of his Horse *Arion*. Yet this victory cost the *Thebans* so dear, that being themselves almost ruined, hence *Cadmia victoria* became a proverb. This War fell out 28 years before that of *Troy*.

11. *Eteocles* leaving behind him a young son, named *Laodamus*, *Creon*, the brother of *Jocasta*, assumed the Guardianship of him, and would not suffer the *Argives* to be buried, till *Thebes*, and the *Athenians* procured it. Ten years after the War, when *Laodamus* was now grown up, the sons of those Captains that had been slain, called *Epigoni*, made an expedition against *Thebes* to revenge the death of their fathers. Consulting before-hand the Oracle of *Delphos* about the success, they were bidden to chuse *Alcmaon*, the son of *Amphiaraus*, for their General, which having done, and marching into *Thebes*, they wasted all the Countrey round about the Citie. Hereupon the *Thebans* made a sally, and a sharp conflict ensued, wherein *Laodamus* slew *Egialeus*, the son of *Adrastus*, and was himself killed by *Alcmaon*, though *Pausanias* saith he escaped out of the fight, and fled to the *Illyrians*. After this the Citie was taken, and with other plunder, *Tiresias* the Prophet was sent as a present towards *Delphos*; but drinking by the way presently died.

Pausan.

## SECT. I.

Thersander.

Peneleus.

Tisamenus.

Auricion.

Damasichthon.

Ptolomæus.

Xanthus.

This is he, who is said to have experienced both Sexes, and lived seven Generations; even from the dayes of *Cadmus* to this time. The *Epigoni* having taken the *Citie*, and either slain, or driven away *Laodamus*, placed *Thersander*, the son of *Polynices* in the Kingdom, who failed with *Agamemnon* towards *Troy* as General of the *Boeotians*, and was killed in *Mysia* by *Telephus*, as was before shewed. The *Boeotians* chose *Peneleus* for their Captain, because his son *Tisamenus* was then but young, and he was also slain in the War by *Euryphylus*, the son of *Telephus*, who after the death of *Achilles*, brought Auxiliary forces out of *Mysia* unto *Priamus*.

12. *Peneleus* being dead, *Tisamenus*, the son of *Thersander*, reigned at *Thebes*. His son *Anieson* left this place, and went to the *Dorienſes*; wherefore *Damasichthon*, the Nephew of *Peneleus*, and son of *Ophelias*, was chosen in his room. After him followed *Ptolomæus*, and then *Xanthus* the last King of all, who was slain by *Melanthus* the *Messenian* in a single Combat, in behalf of the *Athenians*, about *Celene*, a place situate upon the Borders, as we have \* already shewed. This hapned 56 years after the destruction of *Troy*, 24 before the descent of the *Heraclida*, 57 before the death of *Codrus* the last *Athenian* King, 252 before the first *Olympiad*, A. M. 2877. After his death, together with the possession of *Celene*, the *Thebans* quitted the Government of Kings, it seeming good to them no longer to be Governed by a single person, but by many, as *Pausanias* writeth, from whom yet it appeareth not what kind of rule was erected; whether an *Oligarchy* at first, or the whole power was assumed by the people, which we know assuredly exercised it in after times, in a *Democracical* way. Such was the Government when the *Persians* had obtained the Empire of the *East*, and *Greece* it self most flourished; at which time, in the entire History of this Countrey we shall hear further of the *Thebans*.

*Pausanias* ut  
supra.

\* Chap. 5.  
Sect. 4.  
Parag. 15.  
A. M. 2877.

## CHAP. VI.

## The Original, and Kingdom of Rome, Contemporary with the Babylonian Empire.

## SECT. I.

## The Original of the Citie of Rome.

The ancient  
inhabitants  
of Latium.

1. The Citie of *Rome* was seated in *Latium*, the Western tract of *Italy*, upon the River *Tiber*. The soyl, for as much as can be known, (saith *Dionysius*) was first inhabited by the *Siculi*, who held many other places of that Countrey. These were expelled by the *Aborigines*, who being the posterity of the *Oenotrians* (who seized upon that Tract lying near *Tarentum*) were consecrated first to the gods, & according to the custom of the Countrey, then sent out to seek them new seats, and fortunes. The *Oenotrians* came out of *Lycaonia* (afterwards called *Arcadia*) to seek a more commodious habitation under conduct of *Oenotrus*, the son of *Lycaon*, from whom they received their name. These *Aborigines* here settled, were forced to admit of some *Pelasgians* to live amongst them that fled from *Hemonia* (since called *Thessaly*) where, for some time they had continued, and afterwards certain *Arcadians* who followed *Evander*, son to *Mercury*, and the Nymph *Themis*, from a Town of that Countrey called *Palantium*, which name they gave to an Hill on which they fixed, afterwards reckoned amongst the seven belonging to the Citie. Not long after, the *Greeks* will have *Hercules* come into these parts, as he was returning home from his expedition into *Spain*, and the Western Regions, and here to have left some *Peloponnesians*, who settled themselves upon the Hill called then *Saturnius*, and afterwards *Capitolinus*, at what time *Faunus* reigned over the *Aborigines*.

*Dionys.  
Halicarnassensis*  
l. 1.

2. The

Picus.

Faunus.

Latinus.

Aeneas with  
with the Tro-  
jans arrive in  
Italy.

2. The Father of *Faunus* is said to be *Picus* the son of *Saturn*, who flying out of *Crete* from his son *Jupiter*, came into this Countrey, and here hiding himself, gave occasion for the Region to be called *Latium*. Some say the Father of *Picus* was rightly called *Sierces*, and Sirnamed *Saturn*, from whom the *Laurentine* Kingdom took it's beginning, named from *Laurentum* the Town, and that from *Laurus* or *Laurel*. *Picus* had this name from the Bird *Picus* (a Wood-pecker) which he used, by it's flying to foretell things to come, as *Festus* noteth out of *Verrius*. *Plinarch* saith, that he was by the forceries of his wife changed into this Bird, in the likeness of which he gave forth Oracles, and answered questions; and agreeable hereto, *Dionysius* of *Halicarnassus* compareth this Bird with the Dove of *Dodona*, as performing that to the *Aborigines*, which it did to the *Thesprotes*. But *Servius* thinketh all this feigned, because *Picus* was a Soothsayer, and observed the flying of this kind of Bird; and *Bochartus* telleth us, that *Picea* in the *Phœnician* dialect signifieth a Seer or Prophet; whence, as *Phy* amongst the *Bœotians* was taken for a cunning woman, so he for his skill in such matters, might, according to the termination of *Latin* words, have the name of *Picus*. This man, who in *Suidas* hath the name of *Jupiter*, (except *Jupiter* of *Crete*, that Role *Io*, was called *Picus*) begat *Faunus* or *Favus*, and a daughter named *Fauna*, and *Favna*, which being in a furie would also foretell things to come; whence such as were thus taken, were said *Fatuari*. Being killed by *Faunus* her brother and husband, as it seemeth, she was worshipped as a goddess, and called *Bona Dea*, because she was so modest, that never any man saw her except her husband. *Dionysius* maketh this *Faunus* the son of *Mars*. He is feigned to have served under *Bacchus* in his Expedition into the *East*; and this is their reason, because indeed he was the same with *Pan*, the constant companion of *Bacchus*. (a) One writeth that he was called also *Sylvanus* *Invius*, and *Pan* by some. (b) Another saith, his name in *Latin* was *Invius*, and in *Greek* *Pan*. So that his reigning in *Latium* was a meer Fable, invented by some who knew not that he was the same with *Pan* the *Arcadian*, whose Worship was brought into *Italy* by *Evander*.

*Augustin, de  
Civitat. Dei.  
lib. 18. cap. 15.*

(a) *Aut. Victor  
de Orig. gentis  
Rom.  
(b) Servius in  
Æn. l. 6.*

3. After him reigned *Latinus*, as the story goeth, whom *Festus* maketh his son, but others, as we have it from *Dionysius*, fathered on *Hercules*, who begat him on a certain *Hyperborean* Virgin, which having received as an Hostage from her Father, he kept untouched till he came into *Latium*, and afterwards gave her in marriage unto *Faunus*, therefore accounted the Father of *Latinus*. Fifty five years after the departure of *Hercules*, and in the 35th of the reign of *Latinus*, *Aeneas* with his wandering *Trojans* arrived at *Laurentum*, not far from the Mouth of *Tiber*. *Livie* saith, it is most certain, that *Troy* being taken, the *Græcians* raged against the other Inhabitants, but abstained from *Amenor* and *Aeneas* (the son of *Anchises*, who was son to *Cypri*, and grand-son to *Affaracus*, the brother of *Ilus* King of *Troy*) both for the friendship which had past betwixt them and their families, and because they were ever for peace and the restitution of *Helena*. But *Dionysius* relateth out of *Hellanicus*, that the lower part of the City being taken, *Aeneas* with his associates that came from *Ophryniunum* and *Dardanius*, to the aid of *Ilium*, timely perceiving it, retired into the Castle, where were the Idols and much treasure, protected by the most valiant Soldiers. Hither also betook themselves such as escaped the fury of fire and sword; and they easily repelled the force of the Enemy; but *Aeneas* considering that the City could no way be preserved, resolved to quit the Castle as might stand with the safety of the Company. He therefore sent out with a guard the aged an infirm, in the mean time diverting the Enemy, and then marched out in order of battle, when *Neopolemus* and the *Achaans* had now taken part of the Fortifications. Whilst the *Greeks* were buied in plunder, they all escaped to the Mount *Ida*, where, fortifying themselves, the same night others flocked to them out of *Dardanius*, *Ophryniunum*, and the rest of the *Trojan* Towns, expecting till the Enemy satisfied with this destruction of *Ilium*, would draw off and return into his own Countrey.

A. M. 2822.

V 2

4. But

## SECT. I.

4. But the *Acheans* having wasted the City, and lesser Towns, provided also to storm the Hills; when a Treaty was desired by the *Trojans*. It was there agreed, that *Aeneas* and his Companions, with such things as they had, should depart out of the Country under safe conduct; whereupon he first sent away his eldest son *Ascanius*, with part of his associates (whereof the greater number was *Phrygians*) to the Lake *Ascanius*, for that he was desired by the Inhabitants of that Country to be their King. He continued not long with them, for the *Scamandride*, with others of the family of *Hector*, now dismissed out of Greece by *Neoptolemus* the son of *Achilles*, coming to him, he returned with them to *Troy*, and restored them to their Father's Principality. *Aeneas* with the rest of his children, *Anchises* his Father, and his household, passed over the *Hellepont* into a Peninsula called *Pallene*, whence he sailed to the Island *Delus*, thence to another named *Cythera*, over against *Peloponnesus*. Touching at the promontory *Cinathium* (so called for that *Cinathus* a Trojan was here buried) they renewed their friendship with the *Arcadians* their kinsfolk, and passed on to the Island *Zacynthus*, which was so named from *Zacynthus* one of the sons of *Dardanus*. Thence they came to *Adriam*, and so to *Ambracia*, from which Bay *Anchises* directed his course towards *Barotus* an Haven of *Epirus*, and *Aeneas* by land went two dayes journey to the Oracle of *Dodoria*, which having consulted about new Seats, in four dayes he came to the Navy at *Barotus*. From this Haven sailing towards *Italy*, they touched upon some parts thereof, but passing into the Straights of *Sicilie*, they fell also upon that Island, where leaving part of their Company, they passed over and landed at *Laurentium*, the place appointed to put an end to these wanderings. This account *Dionysius* giveth us, as most probable, amongst others which he briefly toucheth. *Alexander* the *Ephesian*, as he is cited by *Aurelius Victor*, wrote that *Ilium* being betrayed by *Aeneas*, *Aeneas* took his Father upon his back, with his gods, and his little son in his hand, and thus loaded made towards *Ida*, whither being suffered to come by the *Greeks* (who were much moved at his piety) he there built ships, and by the advice of an Oracle came into *Italy*. The piety of *Aeneas* is much spoken of, and commended by many; and amongst others, by the pen of *Xenophon*, that *Antick Muse*; but some wrote that he joynd with *Antenor* in betraying the City.

5. The *Trojans* landing at *Laurentium*, there pitched their Tents in the place called *Troy* from this occasion, distant from the Sea about half a mile. Taking their dinner on the ground, some laid their meat on *Parsley*, that there grew, or, as some said, on *crusts of Bread*, which afterwards they did also eat up, and then understood that they had fulfilled the Oracle, which bad them go so far Westward, as till they should eat up their Tables, and then take the conduct of a *Sow*, which they should follow, till she lay down, and in that very place build a City. Now was *Latinius* busied in War against the *Rutuli* his neighbours, as some wrote, he was first overcome by *Aeneas*, and then made peace with him; but others say, he first sent to expostulate the injury offered him by these strangers in the invasion of his Kingdom, and then, understanding who they were, agreed to give them all the ground lying five miles about the Hill where the *Sow* lay down, upon their engagement to assist him in his War against the *Rutuli*. This accord made, and Hostages delivered on both sides, they soon utterly subdued the *Rutuli*, and then built up the Trojan City which was called *Laurentium*, as the *Romans* said, from the daughter of *Latinius*. *Virgil* too much indulging his Poetick fancy, in imitation of *Homer*, bringeth *Aeneas* into *Italy* not till the eighth year after the destruction of *Troy*. But *Dionysius* and *Solinus* (out of the Annals of *Cassius Hemina*) write, that he arrived at *Laurentium* in the second year, and the later saith, with no more than 600 followers.

6. *Aeneas* in the third year after his departure from *Troy*, and the second of his abode in *Italy*, reigned onely over the *Trojans*, but the next brought him also the Kingdom of the *Aborigines*, by the right of his wife *Laurentia*, daughter to *Latinius* now deceased, and the favour he had purchased of this people,

*Dionys. l. 1.  
Livius l. 1.*

— Nam et  
jam septima  
portat  
Omnibus erran-  
tem terris et  
fluctibus aestat.  
— Ed. 1.

A. M. 3824.

## SECT. I.

people, by his conduct against the *Rutuli*. For they had again revolted through the procurement of a certain fugitive named *Turmus*, who being the Nephew of *Amata*, *Latinius* his wife, out of indignation that a stranger should be preferred to the marriage of *Laurentia*, before him, at the instigation of *Amata* and others, revolted to the *Rutuli* with a party of men which he commanded. *Livius* maketh him King of the *Rutuli*, and to have made War upon *Latinius*, because he had first made him a promise of his daughter. The *Aborigines* had the victory, but lost *Latinius* in the battle. *Dionysius* saith, that *Turmus* was now also slain with many others, but *Livius* will have him again to renew the War, and to call in *Mezentius* King of the *Hebrusians*, who was already jealous of the growing power of the *Greeks*. *Aeneas*, to oblige his new Subjects, caused both them and his own Country-men, to be called by the common name of *Latini*; but engaging in another great and bloody battle with *Mezentius*, which night onely interrupted, he was never seen more, by some thought to be taken up to Heaven, and by others drowned in the River *Numicus*. This happened to him in the fourth year of his reign over the *Latines*, and the seventh after the destruction of *Troy*. He was honoured by a Chapel dedicated to him, under the title of *Jupiter Indiges*.

*Ascanius.*

7. *Ascanius* his son succeeded him, who before was called *Euryleon*, till his name came to be changed in their flight from *Troy*, as *Dionysius* writeth. Some thought him the same with the eldest son of *Aeneas* by *Cressa*, and called *Iulus*, from whom the family of the *Julii* took it's name; but others accounted him younger. *Mezentius* grew very high upon the death of *Aeneas*, and besieging *Laurentium*, forced the *Latines* to submit themselves; but requiring all their wine to be yearly sent as a tribute into *Hebruria*, they would not endure so harsh terms, and encouraging themselves, fell upon their Enemies at unawares, and, killing *Lausus* the King's son amongst many others, forced him to submit to equal conditions. Thirty years after the founding of *Laurentium*, *Ascanius* led out a new Colony, and built another City called *Alba Longa*, whither he betook himself, leaving the old to his Mother *Laurentia*, who, if his own Parent, managed the Kingdom for him in his nonage. He died in the 28th year of his reign, and was succeeded by *Sylvius*, whom some make his son, others his brother, saying, that *Laurentia* being left with child by *Aeneas*, for fear of *Ascanius* fled into the Woods, and there was delivered of this child, who from the place of his birth had the name of *Sylvius*. *Iulus* the eldest son of *Ascanius* contended with him for the Kingdom; but the people conceiving it to belong to him of right, as the Nephew of *Latinius*, gave the Priesthood to the other, in whose family it thenceforth continued. From *Sylvius* all his Successors were surnamed *Sylvii*; whereof the first (after he had reigned 29 years) was *Aeneas Sylvius* his son. *Aeneas* having reigned so many, left *Latinius* his Successor, whom after 51 followed *Alba* for 39. After *Alba*, *Capetus* reigned 26 years, *Capys* 28, *Calpurnius*, or *Carpentus*, 13, and then *Tiberinus* eight, who being drowned in the River *Albula*, bestowed on it the name of *Tiber*. After him *Agrippa* reigned 24 years, then *Aladus* (called also *Aremulus* and *Romulus Sylvius*) 19, who was very wicked and tyrannical, inasmuch that he would counterfeit Thunder, desirous to be accounted a god by his Subjects, and justly perished by Thunder and inundation through excessive rains. *Aventinus* succeeded him, who gave name to one of the seven Hills, and after 37 left *Procas Sylvius* his Successor.

*Alba Longa*  
built.

*Ascanius* his  
Successors in  
*Alba*.

A. M. 2812;  
ante Rom.  
400.

\* A. M. 3081.

8. *Procas* the thirteenth King of *Alba* left two Sons, *Numitor* and *Amulius*, whereof the later and younger violently thrust his brother from the Kingdom, and that he might have no posterity to revenge the injury, caused his son to be made away in a pretended hunting, and his daughter *Rhea* to be devoted to the service of *Vesta*, and a single life. In the fourth year of her Priesthood, as she was going to fetch water for the service of the goddess, she was light upon by some one and ravished: some said by one of her lovers, others by *Amulius* himself, who came disguised upon her, rather out of desire

A. M. 3109.  
Ozia 14.



## SECT. I.

Rhea the daughter of Numitor bringeth forth Twins.

desire to make an occasion against her, than for any affection; but for credit of the cause the fact is laid upon *Mars*, in whose grove it was committed, and who came to her as 'tis said in a terrible manner with Thunder and Lightning. *Rhea* (called also *Sylvia* and *Ilia*) conceived with two boyes, and when they were born, she was either put to death, or condemned to perpetual prison, and they were thrown into the River. At the fall of the water they were left upon the dry ground, and a Wolf moved with their cries came and suckled them with her teats, till they were taken notice of by *Faustulus* the King's Herdsman, who brought them home to his wife *Acca Laurentia*, that had been newly brought to bed of a stillborn Child. Some thought that *Numitor*, aware of his brother's intention to make them away, caused other two to be brought in their rooms, and gave his two Nephews to be nourished by this *Faustulus*. Others write that this *Acca Laurentia* was but the Paramour of the Herdsman, and for the naughtiness of her life called *Lupa* (*Lupanaria* amongst the Romans signifying brothel houses, and *Lupa* a Strumpet) whence the fable arose that the Children were nourished by a Wolf. Their names were *Romulus* and *Remus*.

A. M. 3235.  
Olymp. 2. an. 4.  
Orie 40.

Romulus and Remus

Lead out a Colony.

9. The boyes grown up proved active and courageous suitably to their birth, but being educated as was agreeable with the fortune and employment of their Foster-father, they had occasion to fall out with the Herds-men of *Numitor*, and *Remus* being taken prisoner was carried before the King. Now did *Faustulus* reveal the whole matter to *Romulus* concerning their Original, who got together a company of Herd-men, and therewith falling upon the Palace slew *Amulius*, and restored their Grand-father to the Kingdom. After things were settled at *Alba*, the young men had a desire to build a Citie in the place where they had been brought up, which their Grand-father well approving gave them the ground, with such of his subjects as he knew to be of his brothers faction, and all others that of their own accord would willingly go out in this new Colony. Most of the *Trojans* gave their names (whereof continued to the time of *Dionysius* almost 50 families) the inhabitants of the place also as many as were left about *Palantium* and *Saturnia* were taken in, and the multitude divided into two parts, that by emulation the work might proceed with greater expedition. But what was intended for a laudable contention grew to a greater inconvenience; for hereby were two factions made, which preferring the brothers each before the other raised in them ambitious desire of preheminance. This soon appeared in that they could not agree about the place; *Romulus* would have the *Palatine Hill* (or *Palatium*) to be taken in, and *Remus* contended for *Remuria*, though on the other they were educated. The matter was brought before their Grand-father, who advised them to go apart, and observe the flying of Birds; and to whom happened the most lucky flight, he should be accounted the Author of the Colony. *Romulus* went to the *Palatine Hill*, and *Remus* to the *Aventine* near adjoining. *Remus* first had six vultures come flying by him; but *Romulus* his flock doubled the number, so that both of them were saluted King, and neither would give place to the other.

Dionys.

Remus killed.

10. The contention grew so sharp as to proceed to a fight, wherein *Remus* had the worst of it, and was slain; which *Dionysius* thinketh the most probable opinion. Others write that he scoffed at the lownesse of the Wall which his brother had made, saying, it would easily be passed over by Enemies, and therewith leaped over it himself, for which he was presently killed by one *Celer*, who overlaw the work. *Romulus* compassed in the *Palatine Hill*, and made that the Rudiments of the Citie, with an Heifer and a young Bullock joyned together plowing up a furrow where the Wall should be reared, which use was afterwards observed by the Romans, both in the building, and razing of Cities. This is the most common, and received opinion about the Original of *Rome*, which some make built at another time, and by other founders. *Cephalon Gergithius* a most ancient Historian wrote that it was built in the second age after the *Trojan War*, by *Romus*, one of the four sons of *Enas*; with whom many other Authors agreed. Others made the

Several opinions concerning the builder of Rome.

## SECT. I.

founder of it to be *Enas* himself, whom they will have come in company with *Ulysses* into *Italy*. *Aristotle* the Philosopher wrote, that part of the *Achaens* themselves, in their return from *Troy*, were by Tempests driven upon *Italy*, and forced to plant themselves in *Latium*. *Callias* the Historian, who Recorded the Acts of *Agathocles*, mentioned a *Trojan* woman, called *Roma*, that being married to *Latinus*, King of the *Aborigines*, bore to him two sons, *Remus* and *Romulus*, who building the Citie, named it *Rome* after their mother. *Xenagoras* reckoned up three sons of *Ulysses* by *Phoenice*, *Romus*, *Antias*, and *Ardea*, all which built Cities of their own name. *Dionysius* of *Chalcis*, with others, would have this *Romus* to be the son of *Ascanius*; some of *Emethion*, and some of *Italus* by *Eletra* the daughter of *Latinus*. Besides these, many other *Greek* Authors dissented about the founders of the Citie.

11. Neither have *Roman* Writers agreed amongst themselves. Some of them would have the sons of *Enas* to be founders of the Citie, viz. *Romulus* and *Remus*; others, his Nephews by his daughter, which he gave up as Hostages to *Latinus*, King of the *Aborigines*. Some write how *Ascanius* being left Heir by his father, divided his inheritance with *Romulus* and *Remus* his brethren: he himself built *Alba* and other Towns, *Romulus Capua*, so called from *Capys* his great Grand-father, *Anchisa* from *Anchises* his Grand-father, and that place afterwards called *Janiculum*, which he named after his father *Enas*; then lastly, *Rome* after his own name, which being afterwards desolate, the *Albans* repeopled by a Colony led thither by *Romulus* and *Remus*. According to this History, this Citie should have been twice founded: First, not long after the *Trojan* times, and then again in the fifteenth age after; but more than this, *Antiochus* of *Syracuse* mentioned a third *Rome* that must have been before the War of *Troy*, writing, that from *Rome* came a certain *Sicilian* fugitive to *Morges*, the son of *Italus*, King of *Italy*. By reason of this uncertainty of the founders, some, whose prejudice against the Empire of the Citie moved them with envy, accounted it no other than a receptacle, and fortreffe of Barbarians, Fugitives, and Vagabounds, and were ready to call into question the History of *Romulus*, as a meer invention made to hide the despicable Original of so great a Commonwealth.

Several opinions concerning the time of the building.

12. Whether it was a new Plantation, or reparation of an old Town, there is great variety of opinions concerning the time thereof. *Timaeus* the *Sicilian* made its foundation contemporary with that of *Carthage*, and the 38 year before the first *Olympiad*: But of those which seem to approach nearer to truth, some place the foundation of it in the sixth *Olympiad*; whereof *Velleius Paterculus* assigneth the first year, others the third; and *Varro*, from the opinion of *Tarentinus* a most excellent Mathematician, the fourth; which opinion is followed by many Authors of great note (besides *Augustus*, *Claudius*, *Severus*, and *Philip*, Emperours in their *Secular Games*) as *Plutarch*, *Tacitus*, *Dio*, *Gellius*, *Censorinus*, *Onuphrius*, *Cesar Baronius*, *Tornielius*, *Joseph Scaliger*, and *Jacobus Cappellus*. *Solinus* will have *Pomponius Atticus*, and *Cicero*, to reckon from the third year of this *Olympiad*; but as *Pliny*, *Paterculus* and *Livy*, so *Cicero* varieth, sometimes counting from the Calends of *January* of the foregoing, one while of this, and another of the following year. *M. Porcius Cato* knowing that *Rome* was built something before the seventh *Olympiad*, not standing upon minute and scrupulous deductions, began the Era of the Citie from the first of *January* that fell in the first year of that *Olympiad*; and so the year of his own Consulship he said to be the 758 year of the Citie. This Era is followed by the *Fassi Capitolini*, *Solinus*, *Eusebius*, *Dionysius* of *Halicarnassus*, (who taketh pains to prove the account good) *Polybius*, *Sigonius*, *Pighius*, *Orco*, *Goltzius*, *Isaacus Casaubonus* upon *Polybius*, and others. *Fabius Pistor* wrote that *Rome* was built in the eighth *Olympiad*, the reason whereof, as *Cappellus* thinketh, is, because *Romulus* might then have finished the Wall and Ditch; some deriving the Era of a building from laying of a foundation, and others from the finishing of the structure. Lastly, *L. Cincius*, as *Dionysius* informeth us, held that the Citie was

## SECT. 2.

was built in the second year of the twelfth Olympiad. In this great variety of opinions we have rather more reason to approve that of Varro the most learned of all Romans, which placeth the beginning of Rome in the fourth year of the sixth Olympiad, the sixth of Jotham King of Judah, and the seventh of Pekah King of Israel, about the time that the Ephors were made at Sparta, in the days of Charops the first Archon at Athens for ten years. A.M. 3252.

## SECT. II.

From the building of the Citie to the destruction of the Kingdom,  
the space of 245 years.

The founding  
of Rome.

1. **R**omulus being 18 years old, laid the foundation of the Walls on the (a) eleventh day before the Calends of May, (which answereth to the fourth of October, after the Julian account) betwixt the hours of two and three, The Sun being in *Libra*, and the Moon in *Taurus*; *Jupiter* in *Pisces*; *Saturn*, *Venus*, *Mars*, and *Mercury* in *Scorpio*, according to the Computation of *Tarrutius* the most noble of Mathematicians. (b) *Varro*, (c) *Ovid*, and several others write that Rome was founded on the *Parilia*, or *Palilia*. *Festus* telleth us that *Parilia* were so called a *Pariendo*, from bringing forth; those Stars in the head of *Taurus*, (or which make up the head of themselves as *Gellius* criticizeth against *Tiro*) named *Hyades*, and under which Rome was founded, being also called *Parilicium*, and *Palicium* *Sydus*. *Servius* noteth that *Pales* was the Roman Goddess of fodder, to whom a solemnity being observed on the eleventh of the Calends of May, it had the name of *Palilia*. *Cappellus* thinketh that according to the mind of *Tarrutius*, the first year of the Citie commenced from the first of *January*, and *Capricorn*, in the new Moon, three months after the foundation was laid.

The number  
of the Colo-  
ny.

2. The number of the Colony amounted scarce to 300 horsemen, and 3000 foot, wherewith *Romulus* (which some make but the diminutive of *Romus* his true name) planted this new Citie, called *Rome* after himself. To increase the number of his Citizens, he opened a Sanctuary to all malefactors, and discontented persons, which then resorted to him in great numbers from the Countreys adjoining. Setting about the frame of the Commonwealth by his Grandfathers advice, he remitted it to the choice of the people what kind of Government they would have, whereby obtaining the Kingdom in way of gift his power became the more plausible. He divided the people into three Tribes, every Tribe into ten *Curia*, and every *Curia* into ten parts or *Decuria*, over all which he appointed Officers. According to the number of the *Curia* he divided the grounds into thirty parts, onely excepting one portion for publick use, and another for superstitious Ceremonies. He made a distinction of his people according to honour and dignity, giving to the better sort the name of *Patres*, either for that they were elder, had Children, for the Nobility of their stock, or if detractors may be heard, he therefore named these *Patricii*, because they alone could shew their fathers, the other multitude being a rable of fugitives that had no free and ingenuous parentage; wherefore when an Assembly of the people was called by the King, the *Patricians* were by a Cryer cited by their own, and fathers name, but the inferior sort, or *Plebeians*, were gathered together by the sound of Ox horns. Having distinguished his subjects into these two ranks he ordered what each should do. The *Patricii* were to take care of superstition, bear Offices of Magistracy, administer Justice, and Govern the Commonwealth together with the King: The *Plebeians* till the fields, feed Cattel, and exercise trades; lest by their meddling in the Government, and by mutual contention of the poorer and richer sort, such seditions might arise as were too visible in other Commonwealths.

3. To bind each to the other, he commended to the *Patricians* certain of the

The division  
and distin-  
ction of Citi-  
zens.

(a) *Solinus*  
cap. 2.  
Cicero de divin.  
lib. 2.  
(b) *Plutarch* in  
*Romulo*.  
(c) *De re Ru-*  
*stica* l. 2. c. 1.  
(d) *Lib. 4.*  
*Fast. Vnde*  
*Joseph. Scalig.*  
*de Emend.*  
*temp. l. 5.*  
*pag. 362.*

*Dionys. lib. 2.*  
*Livius lib. 1.*

Patrons and  
Clients.

the *Plebeians*, whom they should protect and countenance; liberty being given to the common sort to make choice of whom they would for their *Patrons*. This custom of *Patron* and *Client* was very ancient in Greece, especially amongst the *Thessalians* and *Athenians*, where yet the *Clients* were very imperiously used, their *Patrons* imposing on them services ill befitting freemen, and beating them like slaves, if they disobeyed their commands: The *Athenians* called them *Thete* for their service, and the *Thessalians* *Penefta*, upbraiding them with their fortune. But *Romulus* refined the use of *Patronage*, rendering it profitable unto both. *Patrons* by him were ordered to advise their *Clients* concerning Law, of which they were ignorant, and take care of them as well absent as present, as their own children, in what concerned money and contracts, undertaking sures for them when oppressed, and procuring them quiet both as to publick and private business. On the other hand it was the duty of *Clients*, to help their *Patrons* with money in the marriage of their daughters, if need should be, and redeem them, or their sons if taken captive: to bear the charges of private sures, or publick fines, and that at their own cost in way of gratitude; to assist them with their purses in defraying the charge of Magistracy, or honourable employments. This was common to both: that neither ought to accuse the other, to give any testimony or suffrage, or to be reckoned amongst his Enemies: which if any one did, he was held guilty of treason by *Romulus* his Law, and it was lawful for any one to kill him. Hereby, for many Ages, this *Patronage* continued in force, and was as effectual for love and mutual help as consanguinity or alliance: it was the glory of the Nobility to have many *Clients* devolved upon them from their Ancestors, and obtained by their own virtue. But not onely the *Plebeians* in the City found themselves secured by this *Patronage*, but in proceffe of time all Colonies, associate Cities, and such as were subdued by war, had their *Patrons*, to whom many times the *Senate* would remit such controversies as were brought before it from the said Cities, or Commonwealths, and ratifie their judgement. Lastly, such firm concord followed this constitution of *Romulus*, that, for 730 years, as *Dionysius* reckoneth, though many and great contests arose betwixt the Nobility and Commons about the Commonwealth (as is usual in all both great and little States) yet it never came to blood or slaughter, but, mutually yielding and granting, all controversies were composed by civil expostulations; till *Caius Gracchus*, Tribune of the people, overthrew the peace of the City; after which, they neither spared to kill and banish one another, nor to commit any other wickedness, whereby they might compass Victory and their own devices.

4. After this, *Romulus* resolved to chuse a *Senate*, which should assist him in the Government, and from amongst the *Patricians* selected too after this manner. Out of them all he first made choice of one particular man, to whom, when he was constrained to be absent in the wars, he committed the Government of the City: Then he commanded every Tribe to chuse three men, such as were eminent for birth and wisdom; and every *Curia* to elect three out of the *Patricians*. This number he called a *Senate*, either for their age, or virtue; or because, as *Festus* will have it, nothing was done without their permission, the *Senate* being named a *Senendo*. Perceiving after this, that he stood in need of a Guard for his own person, he caused the *Curia* by their suffrages, to chuse him out 300 young men, (ten out of each) whom he called *Celeres* from their readinesse to execute his commands, as most have written, or according to *Valerius Antias*, from their Captain, whose name was *Celer*. Under him were three Centurions, and other inferior Officers: this Company with their Spears defended the King in the City, and received his orders: in batrels were the first leaders and the keepers of his body, beginning the fight first, and retreating last of all; which custom *Dionysius* thinketh *Romulus* to have taken from the *Lacedaemonians*. Things being thus appointed, he limited unto all their work and honours. The King's duty was to take care of their superstition; to look to the preservation of the Laws and Customs, either natural or written; to decide the most weighty causes betwixt

The Office of  
King.

## SECT. 2.

*Dionysius.*

SECT. 2. man and man, and refer those of lesser consequence to the Senate, into which he was also to have an inspection. He was to call together the Senate, assemble the people, first to speak his opinion, and ratify what was approved by the major part. This was the King's work at home, who in the Wars had absolute authority. To the Senate this honour and power was given, to debate and resolve about such things as the King propounded, which were decreed by the greater number of voices, as agreeable to the constitution of Lacedæmon, as our Author observeth. To the People he committed three things: to create Magistrates, make Laws, and resolve about War what was propounded by the King; yet so, as that the authority of the Senate interposed. All the whole multitude together gave not their votes, but the Curia apart, and whatsoever seemed good to most, was referred to the Senate, which custom was afterwards changed, when the Senate did not confirm the Decrees of the People, but the People the resolves of the Senate.

Senate.

People.

5. For the increase of the City, besides the opening of a Sanctuary (which Dionysius ranketh after this settlement of the civil policy) he forbade, when any Town was taken, that prisoners of ripe age should be slain or sold, or their grounds left untilld; but commanded a Colony to be sent from Rome, to which part of them should be assigned, and some of the Strangers to be admitted to the freedom of the City; which device our Author esteemeth of great weight and consequence. He made many good and profitable Laws, whereof most were unwritten. He ordained in reference to marriage, that the wife should be partaker of all that was her husband's, when chaste and modest. If he died intestate, she was his absolute Heir, and if he left children, equally with them. When she offended, she was left to his disposal for punishment, who admitted his kindred to judge with him concerning the fault, if she either violated chastity, or drank wine, which Romulus utterly condemned as an incentive to wantonness. So effectual became this constitution to the preservation of the conjugal knot, that for 520 years there happened not any divorce in Rome, till in the 137th Olympiad, when Marcus Pomponius and Cains Papirius were Consuls, Sp. Carvilius an eminent man, put away his wife; and then, though he swore to the Censors, that he did it onely to provide for posterity, yet was he ever hated by the people. He gave to Fathers absolute power over their Sons, and that for all their lives, either to imprison, beat, carry away bound to rustick labours, or kill; although the son bore the greatest Office in the Commonwealth, or publicly commended and honoured. By virtue of this Law, some eminent Persons making Orations to the People in opposition to the Senate, in the midst of popular applause, have by their Parents been pulled down from their seats, and led away to be punished according to their pleasure; and as they passed along the Forum, none could deliver or rescue them; nor the Consul, Tribune, nor multitude itself, which they had flattered. And because of this absolute paternal dominion, several valiant men have been put to death for their valour shewed in some way against the Enemy, contrary to the direction or command of their Fathers.

Prisoners to be preserved.

Laws in reference to marriage.

Parents and their Children, &amp;c.

6. He compelled parents to educate all their male children and their eldest daughters: he permitted a child younger than three years to be made away, if it was born defective in some member or monstrous; and yet then was it not to be exposed without approbation of the five next neighbours. If any one broke this Law, he, besides other punishment, forfeited half of his goods. The Father was permitted by the Law-giver to sell his Son, and that three times over, if it hapned that he recovered his liberty: a greater power than was had over slaves, who if once made free, thenceforth so continued. All fordid Arts, and such as were subservient to luxury he forbade, which being left to slaves and strangers, for a long time the Romans scorned to meddle with. Two courses of life onely he enjoined them, Warfare and Husbandrie, allowing a Market once in nine days. He divided equally to them the grounds, slaves, and money, taken from the Enemy. Concerning injuries, he presently decided all controversies, or referred them unto others, inflicting

Consule Val.  
Max. l. 2. c. 1.

SECT. 2. inflicting punishment according to the crime; and seeing the people to be by fear best retained in order, he set up his Judgment-seat in the most conspicuous place of the Forum, where his guard of 300 Celeres, and twelve Sergeants, or Lictors, carrying rods and axes, and in the view of all men, either beating or putting to death Molefactors, made a terrible shew. This is the form of the Commonwealth, as Romulus first established it, much admired by Dionysius above all the constitutions of his own Country-men the Grecians, whose Religion also (as giving occasion to the vulgar sort to condemn their gods involved in such misfortunes, or to abstain from no iniquity and filthiness to which they heard that their deities were also abnoxious) he esteemeth vain, frivolous, and dangerous, in comparison of that which was instituted by the Roman Law-giver.

The Rape of  
the Sabine  
Virgins.

7. Romulus, considering that there were several powerful Nations round about him, which with evil eyes beheld the growth of his City, berought with himself how he might contract amity with them. Concluding, that affinity was the onely means; by the advice and consent of the Senate, he resolved upon a course to provide wives for his Subjects. He caused at the suggestion of his Grand-father Numitor, a Solemn Feast, and exercises in honour of Neptune, to be proclaimed throughout the Country, to which many flocking with their wives and children, upon sign given, his men laid hold on such Virgins as were come to see, and violently carried them to their houses. The number of them amounted to 683, for which Romulus chose out so many husbands, and married them after their own Country Rites, making them covenant a Society or Communion of fire and water, which custom continued for many Ages. Some write that this happened in the first year of Romulus, but others assign the fourth of his reign for it, which scarce could be done till matters were something settled. Some delivered, that scarcity of women was the cause of this rape: others thought, that by it an occasion was onely sought for War; but a third party will have, that by this violent act an affinity with the neighbouring Cities was endeavoured.

Romulus his  
defensive  
wars.

8. Some were grievously moved, and others put a good construction upon the business: but at length the matter brake out into a manyfold War, of which that with the Sabines was most grievous. The Cities Canina, Antemna and Crustumium first began, after they could not persuade the Sabines to joyn with them. The two former, inhabited by the Aborigines, Romulus presently subdued, and afterwards the later also, which was a Colony of Alba; the grounds were divided betwixt some Romans, sent thither to plant, and the old Inhabitants, of which such, as would, were made free of the City, and without loss of their former estates, reckoned amongst the Tribes and Curia, to the number of 3000; so that now, the Roman footmen were increased to 6000 men. Upon the Victory over Canina and Antemna, he first triumphed, and designed a plot for a Temple to Jupiter Feretrius (so called from Romulus his bringing home in triumph the spoils of Acon the King of Canina, whom he slew; The spoils were named by the Romans Opima Spolia) The plot of ground was about 15 foot long, and this was the original of the Capitol. Having obtained a great name for his valour and clemency, many eminent men went over to him with their families, amongst whom was Calius, who gave name to an hill in the City: and some whole people committed themselves to his protection (having taken example from the Medullini) and received Colonies from Rome. This success the Sabines sore repined at, laying now the blame one upon another, that they had not withstood the beginnings of the Roman greatness: wherefore they resolved to correct their former carelessness by double diligence, and assembling together at Cures, their Metropolis, decreed War against Rome for the spring following, and made choice of T. Tatius their King to be General. Romulus made all possible provision for resistance, fortifying the Capitoline, and Aventine hills. Lucumo from Solonium, a City of Etruria, brought Auxiliary forces, and Numitor was not wanting to the assistance of his Grand-son.

9. The Sabines having demanded restitution of their Virgins, and to have the

## SECT. 2.

the authors of the injury delivered up (that they might have a more specious pretence for their actions) received no satisfactory answer, and therefore both parties drew out into the field. The *Sabines* brought 25000 foot, and almost 1000 horse, and the *Roman Army* contained 20000 foot, and 800 horse, a very great number for a new builded City. *Tatius* pitched his Tents betwixt the *Quirinal* and *Capitolian* hill, where seeing all places strongly fortified, and small hopes for him to attempt any great matter; as he despaired of doing any good, one *Tarpeia*, the daughter of *Tarpeius* who kept the *Capitol*, called to his men from above, and covenanted with them to betray the place into their hands. Concerning the wages she was to receive, several stories, or fables, are related. It is said, that she required to have what they wore on their left arms, meaning their bracelets, but when she let them in, they threw their Targets which they carried on their left arms upon her, and therewith pressed her to death. Being Matters of the *Capitol*, they had thereby great advantage to continue the War at their pleasure, and first some light Skirmishes ensued; but at length they resolved to do their utmost on both sides, and for several dayes continued the fight, so long as till night severed them, for the most part with equal success. This made the *Sabines* seriously bethink themselves, whether they had best carry on the War or retreat; and the *Romans* were rather more to seek how to hold out; yet neither party would stoop to desire a Treaty. Whilst they remained in this anxious condition, those *Sabine* women that were married to the *Romans*, and the cause of the War, through the perswasion of *Herfilia*, one of the principal amongst them, became mediators, and made peace betwixt these Fathers and Sons in Law, after the War had lasted six years. The conditions were, that *Romulus* and *Tatius* should reign at *Rome*, with equal prerogative: that the City from *Romulus* should be called *Rome*, but the Citizens *Quirites* from *Cures* the native place of *Tatius*. Such of the *Sabines* as would, were made free of *Rome*, and a respect was had of those Matrons that procured the peace, that they which would live with their husbands, should bee exempted from all work and service, besides spinning and making of Cloath.

The end of  
Sabine War.A. M. 2363.  
P. C. 12.  
Achaz 2.

Tatius killed.

10. Some write, that from thirty of these women which undertook this reconciliation, to perpetuate their memories, the *Tribes* were named; but *Terentius Varro* denied it, alleging that they had names before, and that by this honour given to thirty the rest of the women were not passed by and discouraged. For five years the two Kings reigned peaceably together, and joyntly subdued the *Camerini*, a Colony of the *Albans*; but in the sixth, it hapned that some of *Tatius* his friends plundering the *Lavinians*, and by him being protected, notwithstanding *Romulus* and the *Senate* judged they were to be given up: moreover killing the Ambassadors sent to demand them, wherein they were also born out by him; when he went to *Lavinium* to sacrifice, or perswade the injured persons to be quiet, the friends of the Ambassadors fell upon and knocked him in the head. *Romulus* to his great contentment thus freed from his partner, made satisfaction to the injured, and burying *Tatius* at *Rome* very honourably, subdued *Fidena*, a Town five miles off, which had seized on provisions coming to *Rome* in a time of famine. Thither he sent some of his own to inhabit, according to his custom, and then punished the *Crustumini*, who had killed those Planters which hee sent amongst them; and over them he obtained his second triumph. The *Veii*, a most powerful people of *Etruria* inhabiting a City no lesse than *Athens*, situated upon a craggy Rock, at some twelve miles distance from *Rome*, found themselves concerned in what the *Fidenates* suffered, and by an Embasie required the *Romans* thence to remove their Garrison, and restore the Inhabitants to their whole demesens. This being denied, they met at *Fidena*, and there fought two bloody battels, wherein *Romulus* had the better, and triumphed the third time. *Plutarch* writeth, that the *Veientes* ridiculously challenged *Fidena* to belong to them, and receiving a scornful answer from *Romulus*, divided themselves into two parts, whereof with one they fought the

The Veii  
overcome.

## SECT. 2.

the *Fidenate*, and with the other went to meet *Romulus*, who slew of them above 8000, with the losse of 2000 of his own men. In the next battel he is fabulously reported to have killed 7000 with his own hand, being half the number that was slain. The *Veientes* now betook themselves to intreaties, and entred into a League with the *Romans* for an hundred years, on these conditions: to quit a great part of their grounds, with the Salt-pits near the River, and give up fifty Hostages of their most considerable families. *Romulus* triumphed over them on the *Ides of October*, leading with him their Captain an aged man, who had badly performed his office, for which he was afterwards perfonated by an old man in all Triumphs.

Romulus  
grown tyrannical,Is made away  
by the Senators.

Called Quirinus.

An Inter-regnum for a year.

Numa.

11. This was the last War managed by *Romulus*, who being grown exceeding high and tyrannical upon his successes, enlarged his prerogative beyond those bounds he had formerly set to it, and made use onely of the *Senate* to ratifie his commands. Hereby hee contracted the hatred of that Order, (though the Soldiers loved him) which brought him to an untimely death. Some think he was torn in pieces in the *Senate* house, and the *Senators* by peece-meal carried out his body under their gowns, so that it was never seen. Others wrote, that having drawn out the people to the place called *Capra Palus*, and there making an Oration to them, a sodain darknesse and Tempest hapned, wherein he vanished and departed from amongst mortals. The *Senators* took occasion from the secrecy of their fact, and concealment of his body, to perswade the multitude that he was taken up amongst the gods; and *Julius Proculus*, a man of prime Nobility and credit amongst the *Patricians*, put all out of doubt, by swearing most religiously, that he appeared to him in the high-way, and told him, that it pleased the gods, from whom he came, so long to let him continue amongst men, till he had founded a City, whose Empire and glory should excel, and then again that he should return to heaven. He bade him farewell, and tell the *Romans*, that if they did but use temperance and valour, they should in power excel all mortals. And he would be a propitious god unto them, under the name of *Quirinus*. He lived 55 years, and reigned 27, in which space he much advanced the State of the City, which who first planted with him, were not much above 2000 foot, and scarce 300 horse, but when he died, he left of the one kind 46000, and almost 1000 of the other sort. After his Grand-fathers death, he succeeded in the Kingdom of *Alba*, which he governed by *Deputies*, continuing his residence at *Rome*. The day on which he died, was the *Nones of Quintilis* (afterwards called *July*) which answereth to the 26th of *May*, as the Callendar was reformed by *Julius Caesar*. It was named *Nona Caprotina*, from the place where he vanished, and *Fuga Populi*, because the people astonished at the King's death took them to their heels. *Tarrutius* the Mathematician observed, that the life of this Prince was signalized by three Eclipses of the Sun: one at his conception, which is also the first that is observed by Authors; another the same day he founded *Rome*, and the third on the day of his death; concerning which, for that the calculation of the former is rather founded upon Astrological than Astronomical Principles, *Jacobus Cappellus* is to be consulted.

12. *Romulus* dying childlesse, the *Senate* for a years space retained the power in their own hands, which is called an *Inter-regnum*. They governed by their courses, each man five dayes; but the People murmuring, and giving out, that for one tyrant they had got an hundred, at length they resolved that a King should be chosen. The *Sabines* thought it reasonable he should be of their Nation, not having had any since *Tatius*, and the other were averse to a stranger, being desirous he should be some one of the *Patricians*; but at length the Fathers fixed upon *Numa Pompilius* a *Sabine*, a man of almost forty years of age, and the most considerable for knowledge and ability of that time, who by consent of the People was advanced to the Government. At first he excused himself; but solicited by his Father, and *Marcus* his kindman, not to let slip so fair an opportunity of his own and Countrie's preferment, he accepted of it. He thought it policy to raise that City by Laws

A. M. 2391.  
P. C. 40.  
Ezechia 17.  
Olymp. 16. an. 3.

## SECT. 3.

LAWS, and religious customs which had been founded by force and Arms, and to soften the Genius of it by diversion from warfare, it being as necessary to employ a people well at home as exercise them abroad. He built a Temple to *Jannus*, which was to stand open in time of War, and be shut in peace, as it continued all his reign. But it only hapned so to be twice from his time to that of *Tiberius Caesar*. The first occasion was in the Consulship of *Titus Manlius*, and *Marcus Atilius*, after the ending of the first *Punic* War; and the second in *Augustus* his reign, after he had subdued *Antoni* and *Cleopatra*, at what time there was an Universal peace. *Numa* disbanded the Royal Guard of the 300 *Celeres*, as standing in no need of them. To the two *Flamines* of *Jupiter* and *Mars* he added the third of *Romulus*. To him is also ascribed the bringing in of the *Pontifices*, whereof he himself was one, and the Original of which name is so much controverted. He also ordained the *Vestal Nuns*, and the *Feciales* a sort of Priests which judged concerning the equity of War, and denounced it. His religion much suited in the manner and strictness thereof, with that of the *Pythagoreans*, which caused the report of his being Contemporary, and conversing with *Pythagoras*; although this Philosopher was born 100 years after his death. The reason of this mistake, besides the ignorance of the times, was his familiarity with *Pythagoras* a *Lacedæmonian*, who gave him advice concerning the ordering of his Kingdom, travelling in *Italy* in the sixteenth *Olympiad*, the third year of which was the beginning of *Numa's* reign, according to *Plutarch*.

His religion much suited with that of the *Pythagoreans*.

13. As *Pythagoras* taught that the principle of all things is not to be perceived by sense, or liable to motion, but invisible, immortal, and to be apprehended by the understanding alone, so *Numa* forbade the *Romans* to use the Image of any God which represented him after the form of a man, or any other living Creature. Neither in these ancient times was there any painted, carved, or molten image amongst them: but for the first 170 years, though they built Temples and Sacred places, yet had they no image at all, because they thought it wickedness to liken more excellent things to those below them, and thought God no otherwise to be perceived than by the mind. *Numa* divided those grounds amongst the poorer sort which *Romulus* had gained in his Wars, causing his subjects to apply themselves to husbandry, to cultivate their minds as well as the earth; and that he might take away the distinction of *Roman*, and *Sabine*, which threatened the State with endless emulation and prejudice, he distinguished them all according to their trades and occupations, making every Art a particular Company and Fellowship. He abated the rigour of that Law made by *Romulus*, concerning the power of Fathers over their Children, ordaining it should not be lawful for them to sell such sons as by their leave had married, because it was unjust that a woman which had married a free-man should be constrained to live with a slave. He reformed the year which in the time of *Romulus* was quite out of all order: some months had fewer than 20 days, some had 35, and some above the variety of the several courses of Sun and Moon was not understood; but only this aimed at, that the year should consist of 360 days.

He reformed the year.

14. *Numa* considering that a Solar year exceeded the Lunar by eleven days (the one consisting of 354, and the other of 365) doubled these eleven days, and every other year, inserted a month after *February*, consisting of 22 days, and by the *Romans* called *Mercedonius*, because at that time wages were wont to be paid. He changed the order of the months, assigning to *March* (formerly the first) the third place; to *January* the first, and *February* the second; whereof this was the last, and the other the 11th in the days of *Romulus*. Many have been of opinion, that *Numa* added *January* and *February* to the rest of the months, and that formerly the *Romans* had but 10, which appeareth by the name of *December*, the last month, and because the fifth and sixth months from *March* were called *Quintilis* and *Sextilis*. Thus *March* must have been the beginning of the year, which *Romulus* so named from *Mars* his supposed father. The second was *April*, so

## SECT. 2.

so called from *Venus*, as some thought (because her superstitious worship was performed in it, when the women were Crowned with Myrtle as they washed) or, as others gathered, from the opening of Planets at that time of the year. The third was *May*, named from *Maia*, and sacred to *Mercury*; the fourth was *June* from *Juno* as some thought, others deriving the names of these two from *Majores* and *Juniores*, the Elder and younger. The rest had their names from their order, as *Quintilis*, *Sextilis*, *September*, *October*, *November*, *December*. Afterwards *Quintilis* was from *Twins* *Caesar* called *July*, *Sextilis* *August* from *Augustus*, *September* and *October*, the Emperor *Dominian* changed into his own names, but presently after he was killed they recovered their former. Only the two last ever retained their first appellations. Of those months which *Numa* either added, or ranked, *February* was so called from the expiations which used to be in it, signified by the word *Februa*: then they were wont to make parentations to the dead, and celebrate the *Lupercalia*, certain Sacrifices and Games in honour of *Pan*, much like to the Sacrifice of Expiations. *January* was named of *Jannus*, which *Numa* seemeth to have set before *March*, because he would shew that Civil virtue is ever to be preferred before what is exercised in War: For *Jannus* was accounted one of the most ancient Gods, or Kings, (from whom reigning in *Italy*, some make the *Romans* descended) very studious for civil society and humane converse, and who changed the course of mans life from brutish and savage to an humane and gentle kind. He is therefore feigned to be double faced, because he brought in another fashion of life than what formerly had been, and had a Temple built by *Numa* with two doors, that were shut in peace, and open in war as was before said. These things *Plutarch* reareth in the life of *Numa*.

15. But *Livie*, and other considerable Authors, (a) *Solinus*, (b) *Macrobius*, and (c) *Censorinus*, write that the first *Roman* year consisted but of ten months and 304 days; six of the months having 30 days, and the other four 31 apiece. But this account differing from the course of the Sun, *Numa*, to make them agree, added 51 days to the year. That he might make up the twelve months; from the six, consisting of thirty days, he took one day apiece, and therewith made up 57, which were divided into two months, whereof the one contained 29, and the other 28 days, and so the year began to have 355. Of this opinion, besides *Junius Granhaeus* and *Fulvius*, both *Varro* and *Suetonius* were, as appeareth out of *Censorinus*. Yet *Licinius Macer* and *Lucius Feneftella*, by the same testimony, (two ancient Writers of *Annals*) delivered that the first *Roman* year consisted of 12 months, agreeable to the former opinion related by *Plutarch*. This a noble pair of modern Criticks prove to have been the truer opinion, affirming that *January* and *February* were not added by *Numa*, but transferred from the end to the beginning of the year, and endeavouring to shew that they who would have the year but to consist of 10 months make it no shorter than they that are for 12, distinguishing it not so much in number as placing of days; for the *Romans* in *Romulus* his time filled up the year, either by assigning more days than thirty to the months, or adding so many in the end thereof as seemed to be wanting. But it sufficeth to have touched these things for the direction of beginners.

16. *Numa*, to gain credit and obedience to his constitutions, feigned that he had converse with the Goddess *Egeria*. He married *Tatius*, daughter to *Tatius* the King, by which he had a daughter named *Pompilia*. Some said he neither had any other wife nor any more Children: but others both as to wife and children dissented from them. He lived above 80, reigned 42 years, and at his death was buried with great honour. His body was not burned (which he forbade) but buried in a stone Coffin under the *Janiculum*; and the Books of his Ceremonies laid by him in another, which being twelve written in *Latine*, and as many in the *Greek* tongue, were 400 years after, when *Publius Cornelius*, and *Marcus Babius* were Consuls, by write wrought out of the earth, and for that it was thought wickedness to have such things discovered

(a) C. 2.  
(b) Saturn.  
lib. 1. c. 12.  
(c) c. 20.

\* Joseph Scaliger de Emendatione Temp. lib. 2. c. 12. dyatus de variis annorum formis cap. 17.



## SECT. 2.

vered to the multitude, (from which he also kept them, after the fashion of the *Pythagoreans*, not communicating discipline by writing but onely by word of mouth) burned by command of the *Senate*. He kept the State in constant peace, and his ability herein contributed to the general quiet of *Italy*; so that, by the example of his reign, *Plutarch* judgeth that saying of *Plato* to be verified: that the onely means whereby men should be made happy, would be, to have a Philosophical mind, and regal power concur in a Prince, who would make vertue superiour to dishonesty. But the fortune of the succeeding Kings added to the lustre of his glory: For of the five which followed, the last was cast out, and died in exile, and none of the rest obtained a natural and quiet end, according to *Plutarch*.

Tullus Hostilius.

17. *Numa* being dead, and the Government devolved upon the Senate, after several *Interreges*, at length *Tullus Hostilius* was created King, by the Universal consent of the Citie. His Grand-father was that *Hostilius*, who most gallantly behaved himself against the *Sabines* at the Citadel, and married A. M. 3333. V. C. 82. Olymp. 27. an. 1.  
 of that Nation the daughter of *Herfilius*. After much valour shewn he was slain in battle, and left a young son, who at ripeness of age, of a noble Maf-  
 tain in battle, and left a young son, who at ripeness of age, of a noble Maf-  
 trone, begat this *Tullus Hostilius* the third King of *Rome*, whose beginning,  
 according to the account of *Dionysius*, was in the second year of the 27th O-  
 lympiad wherein *Emrybaeus* the *Athenian* was Victor, when *Leoftratus* was  
*Archon* at *Athens*, in the 83 year of the Citie, and the 31 of *Manasses* King  
 of *Judah*. At his first beginning he purchased the favour of the poorer sort  
 by dividing unto them, man by man, that portion of Land which the two for-  
 mer Kings had kept to bear their charges, saying, that his own inheritance  
 would suffice for his own expences. Left these should want room he took  
 in the Hill *Calinus*, where such as wanted habitation, and now had gotten  
 grounds, built them houses, and he also dwelt himself. He was not onely of  
 a different temper from *Numa*, but as *Livie* describeth him, more fiery than  
*Romulus*, being as well moved by his proper inclination as the glory of his  
 Grand-father, so that he fought, and greedily imbraced all occasions for War.  
 It was not long ere one was presented from the *Albans*, who made depreda-  
 tions in the *Roman* Territories, and were again robbed by the *Romans*. At  
 that time *Caius Cluilius* Governed *Alba*, who envying the growth of *Rome*,  
 sought to stir up division, and raise War betwixt the two Cities. *Dionysius*  
 writeth, that for this end he privately procured some to prey upon the *Romans*,  
 knowing they would revenge the injury, and when they did so upon such as  
 they could take, he perswaded the *Albans* that they had received a great  
 affront, and excited them to take up Arms.

His War with the Albans.

18. Ambassadors were sent to *Rome* to demand restitution, and such as  
 had been Authors of the injury to be given up into their hands. This *Ho-*  
*stilius* being aware of, and knowing that they who first refused to make satis-  
 faction would bear the Odium of the War, caused some of his friends kindly  
 to entertain the Ambassadors, pretending he was by necessary occasions  
 hindered from giving them audience, till he first sent some of his own to  
*Alba* to demand restitution. They received a sharp repulse from *Cluilius*,  
 whereof *Hostilius* having notice, then gave audience to the *Albans*, told  
 them how those that he sent, had already received such an answer as argued  
 the league quite broken; whereupon he denounced a just, and necessary War  
 against the *Albans*, which he would carry on not onely with his domestick  
 forces, but by the aid of his other subjects and dependents. Both parties then  
 made all possible preparations, and drew out their forces to a place after-  
 wards called the *Ditch of Cluilius*, some five miles distant from *Rome*.  
 When they expected suddenly to decide the quarrel, *Cluilius* was found  
 dead in his Tent, whether by some secret practice upon himself, by grief,  
 or any other means is uncertain. Into his place was chosen *Metius Suf-*  
*fetius*, a man of a turbulent spirit, and scarce able for warlike matters, but  
 thought fit for the place because as great an incendiary as his predecessor.  
 Yet sensible of danger that hung over his head from the *Fidenates*, (who  
 gaped after the destruction of both) he drew out the War in length, and fear-  
 full

## SECT. 2.

ful to lose all, was inclinable to a present composition. *Hostilius* was now  
 also not averse to a determination of the business, being desirous to punish  
 the *Fidenates* and *Veientes*, who, formerly overcome by *Romulus*, had sub-  
 mitted to the obedience of *Rome*, and in the dayes of *Numa* taken occasion  
 of his peaceable Government, to provide for the absolute shaking off of the  
 yoke. This time they thought to present them with a fit opportunity; for  
 gathering together at *Fidena* they were ready, when the *Albans* and *Romans*  
 should have weakened each other, to fall upon both.

19. This plot discovered, wrought so upon both the Captains, that they  
 came to a conference, wherein much being alleged for the justice and right  
 of both parties, at length it was agreed, that three persons on each side should  
 by combat decide the quarrel, and that City, whose Champions should have  
 the better, obtain preheminance and command over the other. Whiles  
 every Officer desired to be one of the three, *Suffetius* bethought himself of two  
 ternions of brothers that were most fit, as he thought, to take it upon them.  
 One *Segunius* of *Alba* had two daughters, whereof one he married to *Curi-*  
*atius* his fellow Citizen, and the other to *Horatius* a *Roman*. It hapened  
 that both being with child at the same time, brought forth, each of them  
 three sons at the first birth, which their Parents educated as the hope of their  
 Families: to these it was that *Suffetius* thought the Combat concerning Prin-  
 cipality was to be committed, being of equal years, strength, and courage.  
 The motion was imbraced by the parties, who dispensed with their private  
 affection (no whit unfuitable to their consanguinity) now that the honour  
 and welfare of their Country was concerned. In the Combat two of the  
*Horatii* were slain first, and the third left to deal with three adversaries, spirited  
 afresh by the great advantage they had of him; but warily retreating, so as he  
 might have but one upon him at a time, he slew them all, and *Rome* in him  
 remained Conqueror. As he returned into the City, he was met by his Sis-  
 ter, that fell upon him with chiding and outrageous words, for imbruing his  
 hands in the blood of his Cousin-germans, whereof one was contracted to  
 her. Now elevated by his success, and transported with a certain kind of  
 Ecstasical love to his Country, he killed her in the place, as one that prefer-  
 ring private respect before publick good, was unworthy to live. Hereof he  
 was accused, and *Tullus* neither thinking it seemly to quit or condemn him,  
 as same say, created the *Duumviri* for capital Judgement, who condemned  
 him; but, if so, there lying appeal from these Officers to the People, the  
 multitude granted his life to the tears of his Father, who not onely took not  
 ill his daughters death, but esteemed it an heroick act, and gave her an igno-  
 minious burial.

The Horatii and Curiatii.

20. *Hostilius* dealt moderately with the *Albans*, but *Metius Suffetius*  
 their *Dilector*, or King, thinking his credit much impaired by the event of  
 the Combat, sought how he might betray the *Romans*, and wrest the power  
 out of their hands. He dealt therefore underhand with the *Fidenates* and  
*Veientes*, who now called to account for their double-dealings, brake out in-  
 to open rebellion, and by promise of assistance, encouraged them in their en-  
 terprize. And when the *Romans* and the other came to ingage, he resolved  
 to stand neuter till he saw which party had the better, intending then to cloze  
 with it. The *Romans* were discouraged to see their friends stand aloof, su-  
 specting the treachery, which *Tullus* also apprehending, gave out, that it was  
 by his order, as meaning by some stratagem to surprize the Enemy, upon  
 which report the *Fidenates* and their companions were discouraged, and at  
 length by the *Romans*, who resumed their courage, put to the rout. After  
 the Victory, he called the *Albans* together, and laying open the treachery  
 of *Suffetius* (which favoured the more of Treason, because he had trusted  
 him as his inward friend, and kept him three years in his place) caused him  
 to be pulled in pieces; having beforehand sent *Marcus Horatius* to *Alba*,  
 who rased the City, and translated the Inhabitants thereof to *Rome*, after  
 it had stood about 487 years, according to the account of *Dionysius*, which is  
 to be preferred before the other of *Livie*, or that of *L. Florus*, an Author  
 Y not

Dionysius l. 3.  
Livius l. 1.

## SECT. 2.

not to be relied on, either as to Chronology or order, and disposition of matters; to say no more.

Alba destroyed.

21. To this end came *Alba* through the power of its own Colony, having flourished with riches, numbers of Inhabitants, and been the Mother of thirty *Latin* Towns. After this, *Tullus*, having brought fully under the *Fidenates*, moved War against the *Sabines*, for robbing such *Romans* as used to traffick into the Country, and refused to make restitution of the goods: he overthrew them at the Wood called *Malitiosa Sylva*, and forced them to beg peace. Now also the *Latines* and *Romans* fell out, because they refused to yield obedience to these, who challenged it as due to their City, which had conquered the *Metropolis*. The War was managed for five years, with great moderation; only, besides continual depredations, *Hostilius* punished *Medallia* for an example, which in the time of *Romulus* had received a Roman Colony. Otherwise no battle was fought, nor any Town taken and plundered, which made both inclinable to peace. But at this time *Tullus Hostilius* died, having reigned 32 years; some say by Lightning, with his whole Family, for neglect of the Religion instituted by *Numa*; but most believed him taken away by the practices of his Successor, though *Dionysius* holdeth their opinion to be improbable.

22. After the death of *Tullus*, the state fell into an *Inter-regnum*, according to the custom, and, by the *Inter-rex* and *Senate*, *Ancus Marcius* was elected King, who being confirmed by the people, began his reign in the second year of the 35th Olympiad, wherein *Sphaerus* the *Lacedemonian* was Victor, at what time *Damascius* was annual *Archon* at *Athens*. He (who according to what *Feftus* writeth, had the Surname of *Ancus* from his crooked arm, which he could not stretch out in length) was Grand-son to *Numa*, by his daughter *Pompilia*. She was married to *Marcus*, the son of that *Marcus*, who being the kinsman of *Numa*, came with him to *Rome*, after he had earnestly persuaded him to take upon him the Kingdom, being elected into the Senate, after the King's death, stood in competition with *Hostilius* for his place, and missing of it laid violent hands on himself. *Marcus* his son marrying *Pompilia* the daughter of *Numa* (whether by *Tatius* or *Lucretia*, is uncertain) begot on her this *Ancus Marcius*, who was five years old at the death of both his Grand-fathers. *Ancus* considering that much of the superstition brought in by *Numa* was neglected, set himself to restore the use thereof, alleging to the people, that the diseases, Pestilence, and other innumerable calamities, which had lately fallen upon the City, together with the disastrous end of *Hostilius*, proceeded from neglect of their gods. He advised them to return to Husbandry, and other peaceable employments, neglecting violence, and the profit that cometh by War. The State being thus restored, he thought as his Grand-father had lived, so to pass his time free from all War and molestation; but he found his expectation crossed, for that he was compelled to be a warrior against his will, and was never free from peril and tumult. Scarce had he began to reign, and had modelled the Commonwealth, when the *Latines* contemning him as a sluggard, and unfit for military employment, made depredations upon the *Roman* Territories. Making preparation for War, *Livie* writeth, that he first denounced it, sending to the *Latines* beforehand, and now constituted the Office of the *Feciales*, the Rules whereof he took from the *Equicoli* an ancient people.

23. He surprized *Politorium* a Town of the *Latines*, the Inhabitants of which, he translated to *Rome*, where, (for that the ancient *Romans* inhabited the *Palatine*, the *Sabines* the *Capitoline*, and the *Calians* had been given to the new Denizens of *Alba*) to them was granted the *Aventine* hill to inhabit, other neighbours being added, when, within a while, *Tilene* and *Sicania* were taken. The *Latines* much concerned at this loss, conspired against him for the Spring following; but at several times he defeated their united powers, and forced them to ask peace; so did he the *Fidenates*, *Volsci*, *Veientes*, and such *Sabines* as, not yet having felt the strength of *Rome*, sorely repined at the success of an upstart City. He laid a wooden bridge over the

A. M. 3058.  
V. C. 100.  
Olymp. 31. an. 4.  
Manassiu 48.

Livie.  
Pliny.  
Putarch.

Dionys. l. 3.

A. M. 3366.  
V. C. 115.  
Olymp. 35. an. 2.  
Jofia 6.

Livius l. 1.

Plutarch in  
Numa.

Livius lib. 1.

Dionys. l. 3.

## SECT. 2.

River *Tiber*, and fortified the *Janiculum* on the other side with a wall, having by a bridge united it to the City: and in the middle of *Rome* he made a prison for Malefactors. Neither did he only extend the *Pomarium* or *Area* of the City, but enlarged its dominion. For having taken from the *Veientes* the *Mesfan* Forrest, his Territories reached to the Sea, upon which, at the mouth of *Tiber*, he built a Town called *Ostia*, to secure the profit of Navigation unto his subjects; for thither Commodities being brought by Ship, were in lesser Vessels conveyed to the City. *Ancus Marcius* reigned 24 years, coming behind the commendations of none of his Predecessors, either for the glory of Peace or War.

24. *Ancus* being dead (of a natural death, as should seem by Historians, save that *Plutarch*, as was said, included him in the number of those four that came to untimely ends) the *Senate* received power from the People to order the affairs of the Commonwealth, and created certain *Inter-reges*, who holding the Assemblies for election, *L. Tarquinius* was chosen King, and began his reign about the second year of the 41st Olympiad, wherein *Cleomidas* the *Theban* was Victor, *Enochides* being *Archon* at *Athens*, the 139th of the City, and the 30th of *Jofiah* King of *Judah*. This man being of foreign extraction, what his Original was, why he came to *Rome*, and how he attained to the Kingdom is to be considered. There was a *Corymbian*, *Demaratus* by name, of the race of the *Racchiada*, who trafficking much into *Etruria*, changed his Merchandise for *Tuscan* Commodities, and thereby growing very wealthy, when troubles arose at home by means of *Cypselus* his Tyranny, with all his goods sailed from *Corinth*, and fixed himself at *Tarquinia* a City of *Etruria*, where marrying a noble Maroon, of her he begat two sons called by the *Etruscan* names of *Atrius* and *Lucumon*. *Atrius* died without hope of issue. *Demaratus* for grief followed him not long after, so that *Lucumon* possessed of the whole Inheritance, began to elevate his designs, and to look after some place of Magistracy in his Country. Here he received a repulse, not being able to procure any mean Office, at which sorely disdainful, he heard that *Rome* received strangers with great courtesie, and gave them free admission unto honours. He then resolved to remove thither with his goods and friends, and after his arrival, was much made of by *Ancus*, to whom offering his Patrimony for the publick good, as exceeding that of a private man, he received freedom of the City, for himself and followers, with ground to build houses, and for their sustenance. Now he changed his name from *Lucumon* to *Lucius*, and his wife from *Tanaquil* to *Gaia Cecilia*, and from the place of his birth superadded that of *Tarquinus*. During the reign of *Ancus*, who chose him into the *Senate*, he flourished in great esteem with him, and in the favour of the people; in War no man shewing himself more hardy, nor in Council more dextrous, prudent, or successful; and his integrity seemed such unto the King, that he left him Guardian to his two sons, whereof both were under age, and one but yet an infant.

25. He took advantage at the minority of the eldest, as yet scarce fourteen years old, whom sending out of the way, under pretence of hunting, he made a Speech to the People, saith *Livie*, wherein he plainly begged the Kingdom, drawing to his private interest the example of *Tatius* and *Numa*, whom being meer strangers, they had chosen to reign over them; whereas he was not absolutely such, having lived a good space in *Rome*, and been trained up both in civil and military affairs, under *Ancus*: He urged then his liberality towards them; which things not being merely pretended, he obtained his end, and was the first that came to the Government through his own ambitious seeking. His first War was with the *Latines*, from whom he took several Towns, and amongst the rest *Collatia*, over which he placed Governour his Nephew *Atrius Tarquinius*, the posthume issue of his brother, and Surnamed *Egerius* from his poverty (having no Patrimony) and *Collatinus* from this place, which Surname continued to his Posterity. Having forced the *Latines* to beg peace, notwithstanding their supplies out of *Etruria*, he turned his Arms against

The pedigree  
of Tarquinius  
Priscus.

A. M. 3390.  
V. C. 139.  
Of 41. an. 2.  
Jofia 30.

Feftus in voce  
Gaia.

He obtaineth  
the Kingdom.

His Wars.

## SECT. 2.

against the *Sabines*, whom after he had also forced to submit, all *Heururia* combined against him, because he retained such prisoners as he had taken of the Auxiliaries sent by them to the *Sabines*. It was decreed amongst them, that what Town soever refused to joyn against him should not be accounted of their body, and they presently possessed themselves of *Fidena* a Roman Colony. But he so ordered the matter, that overthrowing them in sundry battles, and preparing for another expedition, they were humbled; to purchase peace owned him for their Prince, and as tokens of fealty, and allegiance, sent him the Ensigns of Sovereignty wherewith their Kings had wont to be adorn'd. These were a *Crown of Gold*, an *Ivory Chair*, a *Scepter on the top of which was an Eagle*, a *Coat of purple wrought with Gold*, and a *purple Gown pinked*; like to the Roabs of the *Lydian*, and *Persian* Kings, save that it was not four-square, but of a femicircular figure. Some write also that they sent 12 *Axes* for so many Cities, it being their custom for every Magistrate in his own Town to have an *Axe with Rods* carried before him, and in a common expedition twelve to be born before their General. Others contended that *Romulus* used these *Axes* and *Rods* as a Badge of his Authority to punish Offenders; but *Dionysius* replieth, that *Romulus* might learn this custom of the *Heuruscans*, and if not, yet might *Tarquinius* have these sent to him, seeing the people of *Rome* afterwards used to send *Diadems*, and *Scepters* to such Kings as they confirmed; which these Princes received, although they had worn the same Ornaments before.

26. In nine years he finished the *Heuriscan* War, and then fell again upon the *Sabines* (who alone contended with the *Romans* for superiority) a warlike Nation, possessing a large and fertile Countrey not far distant from *Rome*. Over them he obtained his third Triumph, and providing for another expedition they prevented him by their intreaties, giving up themselves fully into his power, whom he received on the same terms as formerly he had done the *Heuriscans*. These were his military actions. At the beginning of his reign, that he might bind the people to him, he chose out an hundred of the *Plebeians*, who for valour, or wisdom, were most eminent, and added them to the *Senate*, which now first consisted of 300. *Romulus* at the beginning chose an 100 out of the first planters, then added an 100 more of the most noble of the *Sabines*, which with these of *Tarquinius* were called *Patres conscripti*, and the last *Patres minorum gentium*. *Zonaras* agreeth with *Dionysius* concerning the number of *Senators* made by *Romulus*, adding, that *Tullius* and he at first consulted with their *Senators* apart, but at length they were joyned together; so that those are not to be heard, who will have but 200 in all during the time of the Kings, and 100 afterwards added by *Brutus*. He increased the number of the *Vestal Nuns* from four to seven, adorned the *forum*, built the Walls of the *Citie* (before patched up in haste) with 4 square stones, whereof each was a Cart-load. He caused the common finks to be made for voiding the filth of the *Citie* into *Tiber*; a work so admirable, that *Dionysius* thinketh, from the magnificence of it, as from the *Aqueducts*, and the high *cawled wayes*, the amplitude of the *Roman* Empire appeared: and this is manifested from what *C. Aquilius* wrote, that those finks being once stopped, the *Censors* spent 1000 Talents in cleansing of them. In the *Circus Maximus* (a place dedicated to the beholding of Games, and exercises, betwixt the *Palatine* and *Aventine* Hills) he caused seats to be raised for spectators, whereas before, all stood; and he distinguished their places according to their dignity.

27. *Tarquinius* intended to add three Centuries of horsemen, named after himself, and his friends, to the former three instituted by *Romulus*. That King first chose 200 out of the three Tribes, or Legions, and, after the taking in of the *Sabines*, increased the Legions, so that each contained 4000. (whence it was called *Quadrata*, as *Festus* observeth) yet afterwards a Legion comprised full so many men as were found convenient for the service of the Commonwealth. But he was forbidden by *Atilius Nevius* to change the constitution of *Romulus*, and therefore, without increase of the Centuries, doubled the

He encreaseth the Senate.

The Vestal Nuns.

Close, or Common finks.

Atilius Nevius.

## SECT. 2.

the number of the men. This *Nevius* was the most famous *Augur* that *Rome* ever knew, and so well versed in his Art, as he never missed in his predictions. *Tarquinius* on a time, to try him, asked if that was possible to be done which he had in his thoughts, who answering *yes*, he laughed him to scorn, saying that he had thought of cutting a Whetstone with a Razor which he held in his hand; but *Nevius* still replying he should do it, and bidding him to strike hard, he cut thorow it. This much increased the reputation of his skill, and he flourished thenceforth with great honour, till at length he was suddenly missing, and his body never could be found, which turned to the disquiet of *Tarquinius*. For the sons of *Ancus Marcius*, now grown men, grudged him their fathers Kingdom, and often thought of thrusting him out, expecting much from martial men, who generally bore love to their fathers memory. Now they accused him to the people of having made away the *Augur* (because he had contradicted his devices) and created him some trouble, till *Tullius* his son-in-law answered the objections, and cleared him of the Clumny. Missing of their design this way, they counterfeited repentance; and being easily reconciled to the old man, out of respect to their father, cloaked their malice for three years. Then they clothed two of their companions like Shepherds, who going to the Court, and pretending to be slain out, did beat each other, and called loud upon the King for Justice, having at their backs other Conspirators apparelled also in rustick weeds, who offered to give Testimony on both sides. Being called in to the King they wounded him to death, and betaking themselves to their heels were caught, confessed who were authors of the plot, and received their just reward. To this end came *Tarquinius* (surnamed *Priscus*, after his Grand-son of the same name had obtained the Kingdom) about 80 years old, when he had reigned 38 years, and done many and great good Offices for the Commonwealth.

Tarquinius murdered.

Servius Tullius his descent and education.

28. *Tarquinius Priscus* being dead, *Servius Tullius* his son-in-law succeeded him in the fourth year of the 50th Olympiad, wherein *Epitides* the *Laconian* was Victor, when *Archestratides* was *Archon* at *Athens*: concerning whose Original, and private life, something is first to be spoken. A certain man of *Corniculum*, a Town in *Latium*, of Royal blood, was slain when *Tarquinius* took the place, and left his wife *Ocrisia* big with Child, which woman *Tarquinius* gave to his Queen *Tanaquil*. *Ocrisia* then was delivered of a son in the Kings house, named *Tullius*, and surnamed *Servius* by her in remembrance of her bondage. When being an Infant he lay in the Cradle a flame of fire is said to have appeared, and encompassed his head, which raised great expectation of him in *Tanaquil* a woman skilfull in the mysteries of her Countrey. She brought her husband into a great opinion of him, so that he was educated by them, and answering what had been conceived of him at length was made their son-in-law: then abroad he had Command in the Army, and at home managed publick Affairs for the King when grown old, in all things behaving himself with such integrity, valour, and prudence, as purchased him the love of all the people. Now whereas *Tarquinius* had at his death no sons (as *Dionysius* maketh most manifest) but left two Grand-sons both Infants, *Tanaquil* having a desire that *Tullius* should succeed him, kept his death private for some time, till he had procured the people to banish the *Marcius*, giving out that the King, dangerously wounded though not dead, had referred all business to him according to his custom. Being secure of the faction of the *Marcius*, he then carried out *Tarquinius* to be buried, as newly dead, and as Tutor to the young Children, executed the Office of King, which *Tanaquil* out of the window had told the people, was her husband's will, when yet she feigned him to be living. But the *Patricians* grudging *Tullius* this honour, conspired how, the next time he assembled the *Senate*, they might constrain him to leave off all the royal ensigns, and then go to an Election according to the usual manner.

29. He coming to the knowledge hereof Assembled the people, and producing the two boyes, pleaded their case and his own: he promised them to pay all their debts, and divide to those that wanted the publick grounds. Hereby

*Dionysius l. 4.*  
*Livius l. 1.*  
*Florus l. 1. c. 6.*

SECT. 2. Hereby retaining the power under the notion *Guardian*; The *Patritians* were sore agrieved thereat, but the wisest sort thought it not good to stir, though they plainly saw the Authority of the *Senate* much infringed. For they considered, that if they should make a King of their own body, the people would not approve the choice, and if it were referred to the multitude, *Tullius* would assuredly be the man: wherefore they thought it more wisdom to suffer him to reign in an unlawfull manner, that so they might ever have some just pretence against him, than by stirring in the matter to procure him a legal Title. But he prevented this their design, going with his mother, mother-in-law, and all his kindred in mourning habits unto the *Forum*, where he shewed the people how lamentable his condition was through the plots of the *Patritians* against him, which he deserved no otherwayes than by his good deeds towards the commonality: he laid to their charge that they would call in the *Marcii* that had murdered *Tarquinius*, and expose his posterity, who had so well deserved of the State together with himself, to the same cruelty, and in conclusion, offering to lay down all, if such was the pleasure of the people, and undergo any hardship rather than be troublesome, he offered to descend from the Tribunal. A great clamour then arose mixed with prayers and tears of those that besought him to retain the Government, and presently some that were provided before and began to cry out that he was to be chosen King, and the *Curia* were to be called to the Vote, which thing was instantly resolved by the multitude. He gladly took hold of the opportunity, thanked them that they were mindfull of the benefits received from him, promised larger if he were elected King, and appointed a day for the *Comitia*, or *Assembly*, whereof he intended to have present those also that were abroad in the Countrey. At the day appointed for the *Assembly* of the *Curia* (called *Curia Comitia*) he was chosen King by the suffrages of them all, and so in despite of the *Conscript Fathers*, who refused to confirm the choice, as the manner was, obtained the principality.

Obtaineth  
the King-  
dom.

30. Presently after his settlement he accomplished his promise concerning the division of the publick Land to such as were forced to preserve themselves by dayly labour in other mens grounds; and in the *Curia Comitia* preferred fifty Laws concerning contracts and injuries. He added two Hills to the former five: viz. the *Viminal* and *Esquiline*, in the later whereof he lived himself, and was the last man that enlarged the *Pomeria* of the Citie, the Wall whereof was never any further stretched out, though very large Suburbs were afterwards added. After he had compassed all the seven Hills within one Wall, he distinguished the Citie into four parts, and instead of three, made four Tribes. And as *Romulus* distinguished the people according to their Seats and Communion in Sacrifices into Tribes and *Curia*, so *Servius* making every one give an account how much he was worth, according to their riches divided them into six Ranks, or *Classes*. Of these, the first and highest consisted of such as were worth 110000 Asles (each of which answereth to ob. 9. of our money) the next four decreased in value a fourth part, and in the last were contained all such whose Estates were of little, or no value.

The Census.

31. The *Classes* he did also so subdivide into *Centuries*, as 192 were made in all; his design herein being to know certainly how many were fit to bear Arms, and what Treasure might be supplied for Wars, or other occasions. He also first ordained the *Lustrum* (so named a *Luendo*, (from paying) saith *Varro*, as *Flustrum* a *Fluendo*) to be celebrated after this Census, or value of each according to their substance. On a certain day after the valuation he enacted that all the Citizens should meet in their Armour in the *Campus Martius*, every one in his several *Classis* and *Century*; where by sacrifice the Citie was expiated, or *Lustrated*. This solemnity was termed *Solitaurilia*, (or rather *Suovetaurilia*), because an *Hog*, *Sheep*, and *Oxe* were sacrificed, as we read in *Quintilian*. These things being performed, the *Lustrum* was finished, which, because of continual change of mens Estates, he ordained should be reiterated every five years, so that he (who begun it according to

*Lipsius*

A.M. 3427.  
V. C. 76.  
Olymp. 50. an. 3.  
Xenob. 38.

De Lingua La-  
tina lib. 5.

Lib. 1. cap. 5.

*Lipsius* in his twelfth year) celebrated it himself four times, according to *Valerius Maximus*. Every fifth year the *Tribute* or *Taxe* (called *Census*) was paid and thence *Lustrum* seemeth to have had it's name. After the banishment of the Kings, the Consuls managed this business, till the *Censors* (Magistrates proper to the work) were brought in. Lastly, *Joseph Scaliger* telleth us, we must distinguish the old *Roman Lustrum* from the later, or *Julian*, which is onely a Systeme of four *Julian* years, whereof the last consisteth of 366 dayes absolutely without any overplus of hours. For the *Old* and *Proper* *Lustrum* contained five years compleat, which thit cited by *Cicero*, concerning the *Censors*, out of the Laws of the twelve tables, *Let them be two, Let them obtain the Magistracy for five years*, maketh manifest; so that this *Lustrum* cannot answer to an *Olympiad*, properly so called; of which beginners are to take notice.

SECT. 2.  
Lib. 3. c. 4.

De legibus l. 3.

Dionys. ut supra.

The Centuries  
and Centuriata  
Comitia.

32. Of the six *Classes*, which contained 192 *Centuries*, the first and richest was divided into 98; the *Equites* or *Horsmen* being counted in: the second into 22, taking in *Artificers*; the third into 20: the fourth 22: the fifth 30, and the sixth and last of the poorer sort, made up but one *Century*. Men and moneys being levied, according to these *Centuries*, and not by poll (each *Century* such a quantity) it came to passe, that the richest being fewer, yet divided into more *Centuries* (here the word is not to be taken for 100 persons precisely, being made use of onely to expresse such a division) were never free from warfare, and contributed also more money than the rest: they that were but moderately or meanly provided of wealth, being exceeded by the other in twenty *Centuries*, went to the War by turns, and paid but little Tribute: and they that had not any estate to speak on, underwent no burthens. This seemed very just and equal to him, that they who were most concerned, should take most pains, and bear the greatest cost; the *Romans* at that time maintaining themselves in the Wars without any pay from the publick. But the richer sort something grieved to undergo all charge and danger, for the preservation of others as well as themselves, *Servius* sufficiently satisfied and required, by giving them in a maner the whole prerogative in matters of State, the poorer being almost wholly removed from any power in the Commonwealth, though at first they did not perceive it.

33. This secret lay in the *Comitia* or *Assemblies*, where the people resolved about the most important affairs; these three things being in their power, viz. *Creation of Magistrates as well Military as Civil, making or abrogating Laws*, and *decreeing Peace or War*; concerning which things the suffrages of the several *Curia* were wont to be gathered, and the vote of the poorest availed as much as that of the richest person: whence the poorer sort being much more numerous than the rich, ever prevailed by their Multitudes. *Tullius* understanding this, instead of those of the *Curia*, called the *Comitia* of the *Centuries* upon such occasions. First of all were called the *Centuries* of the first or richest *Classis*, viz. the 18 of *Knights* or *Horsmen*, and the 80 of *Footmen*, which being three more in number than all the rest besides, if they all agreed they overcame in number, and there was no need of calling any of the others to the vote. If they disagreed, the 22 *Centuries* of the second *Classis* were called, and if need were, the third *Classis*, and the fourth, till 97 *Centuries* agreed in their suffrages. If this hapned not after the calling of the fifth; (192 *Centuries* being divided equally in number, and of several opinions) then was the sixth *Classis* called concerning the last *Century*, free from Tributes and War; and to which side it joyned, that overcame.

34. This rarely hapned, and was almost impossible, the *Comitia* being ended most commonly by the first call; but, however, seldom came it to the fourth *Classis*, so that the two last were supervacaneous. By this constitution the poorer sort were deceived, thinking it enough that every man, as well one as another, gave his suffrage, and not considering that the suffrage of the whole *Century* was but one, whether it contained more or fewer persons in it. But at length, seeing themselves freed from danger and charge, they were content, and the richer enjoying such privileges for their pains and cost, were well

## SECT. 2.

well satisfied; and this order was kept for many Ages, till afterwards, by the violent actings of some, the common sort got more power, as *Dionysius* himself observed the innovation to have broken in, in his time. At the first *Lustrum* were found 84700 Citizens; but to increase their number, hee brought in the custom of making Slaves free of the Commonwealth, whom being before manumitted or set free, he distributed into the four Tribes of the City.

The custom  
of manumit-  
ting Slaves.

35. These Slaves were either made or born such, as *Justinian* the Emperor distinguisheth them. The former sort were either taken in War (then properly called *Mancipia*), or bought of the publick, or of some private man. The later, were those that were born either of both Parents being such, or of the Mother onely. At first they obtained their liberty *gratis*, by well deserving some way of their Masters, or some by payment of money earned by their honest labours, they having a certain *Peculium*, though all was said to belong to their Masters. But in proceſſe of time, when the *Romans* degenerated from their former worth and honour, some by Roberies, others by breaking of houses and other villanies, got money, whereby they purchased their freedom. Some by helping their Masters in these things obtained liberty as a reward; others on condition to let them enjoy the monthly allowance of Corn out of the publick purse, or other Largeſſes conferred by Princes upon poor Citizens. Sometimes they were manumitted through the levity and vain-glory of their Lords; some having by their Testaments set at liberty all their Slaves, to obtain a fame of clemency after their death, and that their Funerals might be celebrated by a great train of such as wore caps upon that occasion; in which pomp a thousand Rogues have been seen, who much better deserved hanging. This was laid to the charge of the Mistressse of the World, that challenging the Empire over all, she should defile her self with such impure Citizens, which custom might have been reformed, as *Dionysius* observeth, by the care of the *Censors*, who inquiring into the lives of *Senators* and *Knights*, never considered what persons were unfit to be admitted *Freemen*.

*Tullius* clip-  
peth the King's  
power.

36. *Tullius* not onely clipped the power of the *Patritians* and *Senate*, but took away half of the King's Prerogative also. Whereas the former Princes called before themselves all controversies, and took cognisance of crimes as well committed against particular persons as the publick, he separated these causes, making himself Judge of such as respected the Commonwealth, and referring the quarrels of private persons unto others, to whom he prescribed Laws and Rules for to go by. After he had thus ordered the Commonwealth, he caused the *Latines* to build a Temple at *Rome* to *Diana*, upon the *Aventine* hill, whereat they should meet and feast every year, and so preserve themselves as one body politick in unity and concord. If any controversy arose betwixt particular Towns, it was to be decided by the judgement of others, in such a manner as the *Amphyctiones* in *Greece* were wont to proceed, the Council of the *Ionians* at the Temple of *Ephesus*, and that of the *Dorians* in the Temple of *Apollo*, built by common consent at *Epiroponum*. These things were done by *Tullius* at home, according to *Dionysius*, *Livie*, and others; to which we may add from *Pliny*, that he first stamped money with the image of Cattel, whence it was called *Pecunia*, whereas the *Romans* before his time used it in a rude lump or Masse. As for his actions abroad; he warred with the *Hetruscans* 20 years, who refused to obey him, as an obscure man, and renounced the league formerly made. In all battels both with the united Nation and particular Cities, he ever had the better, triumphed over them thrice, and at length forced them to submit to the yoke, on the same terms as formerly *Tarquinius* had imposed it, except that from three Towns that had been principal in the revolt, hee took part of their grounds, which he divided to those that had newly been made free of the City. Having done these things at home and abroad, when he was grown old and not far from the natural period of his life, he perished by the devices of *Tarquinius* his son in law, and of his own daughter.

Is murdered  
by his son in  
Law and his  
own daughter.

37. *Tullius*

## SECT. 2.

37. *Tullius* had two daughters by his wife *Tarquinius*, which he married to their two Cousin-germans, the grand-sons of *Tarquinius*, joyning them in wedlock according to their age, as he thought it most equal and convenient. But it hapned that they were married together with those of dispositions clean contrary to one another. *Lucius* the elder, a man of a bold, arrogant, and tyrannical nature, had an honest modest wife, and one most duriful towards her Father: on the contrary, *Aruns Tarquinius* the younger, being of a mild and sweet disposition, light on a wicked woman, one of a bitter spirit against her Father, ready for to attempt any thing. *Lucius* breaking out into passion against his Father in Law, for keeping the Kingdom from him, was still appeased by his wife, but *Aruns* being content to stay his time, and averse to any thing that might savour of disrespect to *Tullius*, was importuned ever and disquivered by his wife's earnest and tedious solicitations, to attempt the utmost, though with the destruction of her Father, for the obtaining of the Sovereignty. This woman being impatient of her husband's backwardness, and bewitched by the fury of ambition, resolved to change husbands if it might be, and march her self to the other *Tarquin*, who suited well with her own humor: she brake her mind to *Lucius*, telling him of what a sordid spirit they were, to suffer an Usurper so long to possess their Patrimony, railing against her own husband, as a man of a poor and degenerate disposition, and at length made a profer for them two to dispatch out of the way their present unequal yoke-fellows, and then unite themselves in that relation, thereby to bring about their noble and gallant design. He was not backward to a compliance, and the device was accordingly brought about, after which, they resolved by force to expel *Tullius* from the Kingdom, if hee would not give place on his own accord, raising a faction of the *Patritians*, that were discontented with the King's new modelling of the State, and the poorest *Plebeians*, whose assistance they purchased openly, without any respect to right or modesty. *Tullius* was not ignorant what they intended, and feared also to be destroyed ere hee could provide for his defence; yet thinking it an unseemly thing to make War upon his son in Law, and his own daughter, and punish them as Enemies, he indeavoured by fair means to take them off, before their Friends, blaming, admonishing, and dehorting *Tarquinius* from the intended injury.

38. Effecting nothing hereby, but the other saying, he would plead his cause in the *Senate*, he called together the *Fathers*, and gave him liberty to speak. *Tarquin* laid his claim to the Kingdom, as his Grand-fathers Heir, and alleged, that *Tullius* kept it from him unjustly, having got all his preferment from their family, and obtained the place illegally, without the consent of the *Senate*. *Tullius* replied, that the Kingdom was in the power of the People, to dispose of it to whomsoever they would, which he proved from the example of *Tarquinius Priscus*, who being a stranger, was preferred before the *Marcii*. He mentioned how well he had deserved of him, by protecting and taking care of him in his minority; and as for his coming to the Government without the ordinary assent of the *Senate*, that concerned the *Fathers* and not him. He then appealed to the *Senate*, whether ever he had wronged or carried himself arrogantly towards any of them, that they should conspire with his son in Law against him, and in conclusion told them, that if they thought *Tarquinius* the fitter man, he should not be against the profit of the Commonwealth, but retire to a private life, and let the World see, he could as readily obey as be obeyed, after he had restored the honour to those from whom he had received it. Having struck a great reverence of him into the *Senate*, he assembled the People, to whom, after a great complaint against *Tarquin*, and a recital of what good things he had performed for the Publick, he offered to resign his place; but was confirmed therein, and after he refused to give ear to such as would have *Tarquin* dispatched, with great acclamations brought home to his house by the multitude.

39. *Tarquin* thus prevented of what he expected from the *Patritians*, counterfeited repentance, and a desire to be reconciled to the King, which

Z

WAS



## SECT. 2.

was easily obtained. Covered with this Cloak he laid his designs anew, and being continually solicited by his wife to attempt something worthy of a Kingdom, took his opportunity on a day when most of the people were out of the Citie, with the Roabs of Estate, and all Royal Ensigns as King, to go to the Senate house. There he presumed to call together the Fathers, and, such being Assembled as were appointed beforehand, took possession of the Kings Seat. *Tullius* having notice hereof, unadvisedly with a few followers, halted thither, admiring the young mans impudence, whom seeing in his Chair, he fell of raring, and received as bad language; then going about to thrust him out, *Tarquin* took him up by the middle, and haling him to the door, threw him down the stairs into the *Comitium*. The old man hardly recovering his spirits was led homewards, when his daughter, and *Tarquin* wife, being come in her Chariot to see the event, saluted her husband as King, but told him his principality would be but uncertain, except, perfecting what he had begun, he would send some who should overtake and dispatch *Tullius*. He took her advice, and the fear being done, she presently returned home the same way. In her passage when she came to the place where the body lay as yet almost gasping, her Chariot driver stood still, confounded at the sight, and not having room to passe besides it. Hereat she reviled him, and caused him to drive her over it, after she had first thrown her footstool at his head. The place formerly called *Cyprum Vicum*, was afterwards named *Sceleratus* from that occasion. To this end came *Servius Tullius*, after he had reigned 44 years, a man just and moderate, who abolished the envy contracted in his illegal assumption, by his after acts, and was thought, if he had not been prevented, to have intended to lay down his Office, and restore absolute liberty with the care of the Commonwealth to the people, which some of the *Patritians* perceiving, took in the interest of *Tarquin*, that they might preserve their own power.

*Lucius Tarquinus*, surnamed *Superbus*.

40. *Lucius Tarquinus* obtained the Kingdom by violence, in the fourth year of the 61th *Olympiad*, wherein *Agatharchus* was Victor, when *Heraclius* (or rather *Heraclides*) was *Archon* at *Athens*. By his Tyrannical, and imperious carriage he soon got the surname of *Superbus*, as that of *Priscus*, for distinction, was given to his Grand-father. He would not suffer his Father-in-law's body to be buried publicly for fear it should give occasion to the people to rise against him, saying, that *Romulus* died without burial. He murdered such as he suspected to favour the cause of *Tullius*; and fearing what end his wickedness might bring upon him, got to him a strong Guard which continually attended his person. He reigned onely by his own arbitrary will, neither standing upon the consent of the Senate nor people. As for the former, he much diminished it by the murder of the richer sort, whose wealth he seized on for his own use, and resolved to chuse no more in, that it might wear out, and grow contemptible. All controversies he decided himself, assisted by his intimate friends, and took cognizance of all offences, so as he might kill, banish, or fine at his pleasure. He sought to establish himself, and confirm his Tyranny by great alliance, marrying his daughter to *Octavius Mamilius*, the greatest man amongst the *Latins*, (being descended from *Telegonus* the son of *Ulysses* by *Circe*) and by false accusation, and a cunning device caused them to stone *Turnus Herdonius*, who had discovered to them his baseness and villainies. He began a War with the *Volsci*, which ended not with him, but lasted above 200 years; and subdued the *Sabines* who refused to obey him. From the *Volsci* he took *Suessa Pometia*, (where getting much plunder he first cast in his head the design of building a Temple to *Jupiter*, which his Grand-father had formerly vowed) and afterwards the Citie *Gabii* by treachery, making *Sextus* his eldest son to counterfeit flight from him for hard usage, whereby he was made their General, and having according to the secret advice of his father (who in imitation of *Thrasibylus* the *Milesian* carried the messenger into the field, and cut down the tallest Poppies, dismissing him without any other message) put to death the most principal Citizens, at length easily betrayed it into his hands.

His Wars.

*Dionys. & Festus in voce Sceleratus Vicus.*

*Dionys. lib. 4. Livius l. 1. Florus l. 1. c. 7.*

*A.M. 3471. V. C. 220. Olymp. 61. an. 4. Cyri 26.*

## SECT. 2.

hands. After this he made peace with the *Aequi*, and renewed the league with the *Tuscani*. Then went he forward with the work of the Temple formerly designed.

Buildeth the Capitol.

The Capitol.

41. *Tarquinus Priscus*, in his last War with the *Sabines* made a vow, that if he got the Victory, he would build Temples to *Jupiter*, *Juno*, and *Minerva*; and with great cost had in his life time levelled the Rock, and formed a plot for the building; but died before he could finish the work. *Tarquinus* his Grandson resolving to perfect what he had begun with the plunder of *Suessa*, set on all sorts of work-men, at which time as they were digging to lay the foundation, a mans head was found bleeding afresh, which belonging to one called *Tolus*, thence the building had the name of *Capitol*. He perfected a great part of the Temple, but could not consummate the work, being prevented by Exile, which was finished by the Citie in the third Consulship after its freedom. It was seated upon an high Cragge, eight Akers in compasse, almost two hundred foot wide on every side, and almost of the same length and breadth, as differing onely in fifteen feet. After it had stood 425 years from its Dedication, it was consumed by fire in the dayes of *Sylla*, when *L. Scipio* and *Caius Norbanus* were Consuls, as *Tacitus* writeth: Yet it rose again with greater cost and Ornament on the same foundation. Its front looking toward the South, had a Porch, or Gallery with three rows of Pillars: on each side were also a double row: the three Temples were contained within the same Walls, the middle belonging to *Jupiter*, and the other two to *Juno* and *Minerva*, under the same roof.

*Hist. l. 3. c. 14.*

Sibyls.

Sibyls books.

42. In the time of this *Tarquinus*, another great blessing, as it was counted, hapned to the *Romans*. A certain strange woman came to the King, offering to sell nine books of the Oracles of *Sibyl*; which when he refused to buy at her rate, she went away and burning three of them, returned and demanded as much for the six. Being derided for a mad woman, she departed, and burning half of them, returned with the other three, still asking as much as at the first; whereat *Tarquin* astonished, sent for the *Augures* to know her meaning, who answered that the nine ought to have been bought, and the three were to be purchased at the same Rate. The woman after the sale and delivery vanished, and never after could be seen. *Tarquin* chose two men out of the Nobility to keep them, to whom he allowed two publick servants. After his expulsion the people Elected most Noble persons, who all their lives executing this Office were freed from all other burthens, both Military and Civil, to whom onely it was lawfull to look in them. No sacred thing was so carefully kept as these *Sibylline Oracles*. They were consulted by decree of the Senate when the Commonwealth was disturbed by any seditions, when any great overthrow was received in War, or any prodigies hapned. They were kept by the *Decemviri*, or ten men appointed to this Office within a Vault under the *Capitol*, in a stone Chest, till they perished at the burning of the place. Those that the *Romans* used afterwards were Copied out of such as belonged to other Cities, and private persons, wherein were some supposititious things, which they distinguished by the difference of the *Acrosticks*.

43. The woman that brought those books to *Tarquin*, having the name of *Sibylla*, and there being many found to whom it hath been given besides, something is to be said of those women, for distinction. The first *Sibylla*, or woman Prophetesse (to which the Council of *Jupiter* was communicated, as the word importeth) was a *Persian*, according to (a) *Varro*, or else a *Caldaan*, or an *Hebrewesse*, born at *Noe*, a Citie near the *Red-Sea*; her name was *Sambetha*, her father called *Barossus*, and her mother *Erymantha*. The second was a *Lybian*. *Themis* of *Delphos* was the third. The fourth was called *Cumaan*, because she was born at *Cimerian*, a Town of *Campania* in *Italy*, near to *Cuma*. The fifth of *Erythra*, a Citie of *Ionia* in *Asia*, at this day called *Cabo Bianco*. The sixth was of the Island *Samos*; her name being *Phyio*. The seventh of *Cuma*, and called *Cumana*, her proper name being

\* Side Eund.  
(a) Vide Ludov. Vruem in Augustin. de Civitate Dei lib. 18. cap. 23.

SECT. 2. *Amalthea* according to some; but *Herophile* and *Demophila* according to others. *Suidas* calleth her *Herophile*, and saith she brought nine books to *Tarquinius Priscus*, and demanded for them 300 Philippines, being Gold Coyn of *Philip* King of *Macedonia*. *Pliny* contrary to the common account of Writers mentioneth three books, not nine, and writeth that she burnt two of them. But the eighth was called *Hellepontica*, being born in the *Trojan* Countrey upon the *Hellepont*, in a Village named *Marmissus* near to *Gergium*, which *Heraclides* of *Pontus* affirmed to have flourished in the dayes of *Solon* and *Cyrus*. The ninth was a *Phrygian*, and Prophecied at *Ancyra*. The tenth was of *Tibur*, by name *Albanea*, being worshipped for a Goddess at that place, near the Banks of the River *Aniene*, wherein her image is said to have been found holding a book in one hand. These ten are reckoned by *Varro*. There were several others also. (b) *Strabo* maketh two to have lived at *Erythra*, whereof the later flourished in the time of *Alexander*. There was another of *Colophon*, a Citie of *Ionia*. *Elissa* and *Cassandra*, the daughter of *Priamus*, were accounted *Sibyls*. There were also a *Thessalian*, *Manto* the daughter of *Tiresias* the *Theban*, and another of *Epirus*. Moreover, *Carmentis* the *Arcadian*, the Mother of *Evander* and *Fauna*, or *Favisa*, the sister and wife of *Faunus*, King of the *Aborigenes* in *Italy*, might be reckoned in the number.

The siege of Ardea.

44. In the work of the *Capitol Tarquin* employed the people, and in other baser works, wherewith he even tired them out; so that to appease them, and especially to recruit his own Coffers, he made War against the *Rutul*, and besieged the rich Citie *Ardea*, five German miles, toward the East, distant from *Rome*. The quarrel he pretended to be for that they received the *Roman* Exiles, and endeavoured to restore them; but the true cause was his thirst after the riches of this most flourishing place, once the Metropolis of the *Rutul*. While he lay before this Town, taking great pains to gain it, and the other as eagerly resisting (yet so as he seemed to have hope to carry it) an act of his eldest son *Sextus* occasioned both the freedom of the one and other Citie. *Dionysius* writeth that he was sent to *Collatia* about some business concerning the War, and going to the house

of *Tarquinius Collatinus* his Kinsman (Grand-son to *Egerius* the Nephew of *Tarquinius Priscus*) he ravished his wife *Lucretia*, the daughter of *Lucretius* a Noble Roman. *Livy* and *Annelius Victor* relate that the Courtiers drinking together in the Camp before *Ardea*, and with them *Tarquinius Collatinus* the son of *Egerius*, they fell severally on praising each one his own wife; in so much as proceeding to an earnest dispute, *Collatinus* said there needed not many words, for that they might see within a few hours how far his *Lucretia* excelled them all; and he desired them to ride to the several places, and judge accordingly as they should find. Being well heard with wine they agreed to this motion, and away they rode. They found not *Lucretia* junketting, and idely spending her time as the Kings daughters in law, but late at night hard at work amongst her maids, so that by consent of all she far excelled the rest, and *Collatinus* nobly entertaining his Guests returned with them to the siege.

45. Now was *Sextus Tarquinius* inflamed with a lustfull desire after *Lucretia* because of her beauty, and, as it hapneth towards difficult, or forbidden things, the more because of her eminent chastity. Within few dayes, without the knowledge of her husband, accompanied onely with one servant he returned to *Collatia*, where being kindly entertained by her, he was brought to his bed-chamber; but when he thought all asleep, having observed where she lay, with a naked Dagger he went to her, and laying his hand on her breast, threatned her with death if she offered to stir. He mixed threats with fair words, but yet could not prevail, till he told her he would first kill her, and then his slave, whom laying by her side he would report it was for having surprized her in Adultery with him, whereby obtaining his prey, in the morning he departed. When he was gone, she sent for her father from *Rome*, and her husband from the Camp, (or say some,

went

Lucretia kill-eth her self.

Junius Brutus.

went her self to the City) desiring they would call together some friends, for that a matter of great importance had befallen her. With *Lucius* came *Publius Valerius*, and with *Collatinus*, *Junius Brutus*, who finding her in her chamber in a sad and afflicted condition, she told them the whole matter, refused to admit any comfort, and increasing them to revenge her cause upon the Author of her sorrow, stabbed her self to the heart before them, with a knife she had kept close about her for that purpose.

46. *Lucius Junius* surnamed *Brutus*, was the son of *Marcus Junius*, who being descended from one of the Companions of *Aeneas*, and, for his Virtue, very eminent amongst the *Romans*, married *Tarquinia* the daughter of *Tarquinius Priscus*, of which he begat this *Lucius*. This *Lucius* was nobly educated, instructed in all disciplines of the City, and of a pregnant wit. But after that *Tarquin* had privily murdered his Father (not for any offence, but to possess his great estate, as he did several others) and with him his eldest brother, who seemed to bear such a mind as would revenge the injury; he being young, and destitute of any assistance from his kindred, counterfeited himself a fool, which he acted all along, and thence had the Surname of *Brutus*, this being the sole remedy against the cruelty of the Tyrant, who thinking his folly not feigned but real, despised the man, and having spoiled him of his Patrimony, kept him as an Idiot in his house, and suffered him to converse with his children, not out of respect as a kinsman, but to make them sport by his ridiculous words and actions, as true Idiots are wont to do. On a time a great Pestilence having seized on the City, he sent him to *Delpbos* with his two sons *Sextus* and *Titus*, to consult the Oracle. They were glad they had him to make them merry, laughed at him for offering to *Apollo* a wooden staff, wherein yet he had secretly put some gold, having made it hollow for that purpose. Having privately enquired which of them should be Prince of *Rome*, it was answered, he who first of all should kisse his Mother, which the young men misunderstanding, agreed betwixt themselves, that at their return they would do it, and so reign joyntly together: but *Brutus* as soon as they arrived in *Italy*, knowing the meaning of the Oracle, fell and kissed the Earth, which is mother of all. When under the Vizard of a Fool, he waited for an opportunity to revenge himself and family upon *Tarquin*, this disaster of *Lucretia* at length presented it self.

He urgeth the banishment of Tarquin.

47. Being sent for beforehand, or coming in with *Collatinus* his kinsman after the death of *Lucretia*, as *Dionysius* writeth, while her husband and friends were lamenting over the dead body, he told them it was not time now to weep, but to study how to revenge the injury. He acquainted them with the cause of his assuming the name and behaviour of an Idiot, and manifesting himself to be a most cunning man, desired they might unanimously joyn for the expulsion of *Tarquinius* and his friends from the City, speaking many things efficacious to perswade them to it. Finding every one very ready, he said there was no need of words and promises but real deeds, if they meant to perform any thing, and that he first would begin. Then went he to the dead body, and taking the bloody knife in his hand, sware by *Mars* and the rest of their gods, to cast out *Tarquinius Superbus* with his wicked wife and progeny, to prosecute them or their friends with fire and sword, or any other way, and never after that, to suffer the *Tarquins* or any other, to reign in *Rome*. He made them all successively take the same Oath; then, for the way how to bring the matter about, said the gates of the City should be safely kept, that the King might not hear the least word, till he, who was Prince of the Sacrificers, should, as he might by his place, assemble the people, to which the dead body being exhibited, and *Lucretius* with *Collatinus* deploring their condition, they might procure the banishment of *Tarquin* by a publick decree, that should be presently dispatched to the Army for it's concurrence.

48. But before *Tarquinius* should be removed, they thought it wisdom to consider what Magistracy was fit to succeed him; lest they should pull down the present dwelling before another house was prepared. Some were for Monarchy,

SECT. 2.

## SECT. 2.

Prescribeth a  
new model of  
Government.

Monarchy, as indeed the best of Governments, others for Aristocracy, or the rule of the *Senate*, and others would have the whole power put into the hands of the People; each party bringing examples of good Government in the several kinds. *Brutus* said the time was straight, and these matters required mature deliberation, which neither at length could produce such a form as would be void of all inconveniences: he said, he hoped that after the expulsion of the Tyrants, they should have leisure to consider how they might best reform the Commonwealth, if any better way could be found out than what *Romulus*, *Pomilius*, and the other Kings had chalked out to them, wherein proceeding, till *Tarquin* forsook the path, the City had been happy and famous, both for its acts abroad, and constitutions at home. This he could not for shame deny, yet however, he thought those incommunities, as he called them, had procured the Kingly power to degenerate into tyranny, and therefore were at present to be abolished, and to be taken heed of for the time to come. As first, because some men made a great matter of very names, he thought that of a Kingdom was to be left, and the other of Commonwealth to be assumed; so that for the title of King and Monarch, some more modest and popular was to be invented. Then, the regal power he judged not safely to be intrusted with a single person; but that two were to be chosen, who should govern with equal command and authority, and so be a counter-poise each to other. Of all royal ensignes or ornaments, such as procured the envy and grudge of the People were to be laid aside: viz. Scepters, golden Crowns, and Purple Robes of Cloath of gold, except upon Festival dayes, and in triumphal pompes, which rare use of them would not be at all spoken against: but as for the Ivory Chair in which they sat in Judgment, with the white Robe edged with purple, called *Prætexta*, and the twelve Lictors, or Sargeants, bearing Rods and Axes, they were to be continued. He added, that the main thing to keep these his Magistrates in order, was to prevent their perpetual power, which would keep them from giving account of their actions; wherefore he thought fit their Magistracy, after the manner of *Athens*, should be but Annual, that so each one might learn as well to be subject as to govern, and this would preserve the mind from being drunk with too much liberty. Lastly, that the name of King might not utterly perish (whence may be concluded, that his judgment was not against the Office though his passion was) he would have the title given to one, who should be called *Rex Sacrorum*, and having this honour for his life, with immunity from warfare, should meddle with nothing else, but these superstitious Rites, of which the Kings had charge before.

49. Having first got a decree of the *Senate* for the Kings banishment, according to the custom of publick proceeding, the *Comitia* were assembled by *Brutus*, and the body of *Lucretia* brought in her gore into the meeting place, where it was set for a spectacle to all. *Brutus* then discovered himself, told them why he had seemed what he now appeared never to have been, and then declared the occasion of their meeting to be, that the *Patritians* might have their assent for banishing *Tarquin*, who having obtained the Principality illegally, had abused it more than any Tyrant that was ever heard of. He illustrated his assertion by a relation of his crimes; as of his poisoning his own brother before he was King, together with his lawful wife, and marrying the other sister that was partaker with him in his wickedness: his killing *Servius Tullius*, and strangling his wife, whom he ought to have respected as Parents; then his invading the Government without decree of *Senate* or Suffrages of the people by force of Arms. He reckoned up the injuries received by the *Patritians*, most of whom he had made away, and reduced the rest to the estate of beggars; how from the *Plebeians* he had taken, Laws, Religious Meetings, the *Comitia* and Suffrages, and used them no better than Slaves bought with money. He then demanded how long they should endure this bondage; whether no longer than till the death of *Tarquin*, when as he had three sons more wicked and mischievous than himself, especially the elder, which he proved by the spectacle before their eyes, telling them

*Dionysius.*

## SECT. 2.

them then the whole storie. This advantage he improved to the utmost, shewing how the King being now absent, and the *Patritians* resolved, nothing could be wanting to them, if they had but courage for the enterprize; nor Men, Money, Arms, Captains, nor foreign aid; urging, that it was a shame they should think of commanding the *Volsci*, *Sabines*, or others, and be Slaves to others at home; or maintain so many Wars for to serve the ambition of *Tarquin*, and undertake none for their own liberty. As for the Army now at the Siege, there was no fear, but, for their own freedom and accommodation, they would readily cloze with them; and if any should be found to intend the Contrary, they had their wives and children as Hostages, in the City, whereby they might easily draw them off.

50. The multitude being variously affected with hope of liberty, and fear to misse of it, during his Speech, yet made acclamations to the particulars, and at the end, with one voice desired he would give them Arms. He said he would, if first they should confirm what was offered from the *Fathers*, as the beginning of their liberty; and therewithall recited the forme of this severe Decree, that the *Tarquinius* should be banished with all their off-spring, and be capital for any one to speak or act for their return. The several *Curie* being called, confirmed it by all their Suffrages, which being done, he acquainted them how it was agreed, that unto two men the Government should be committed, whom they should elect in their *Centuriate Comitia*, which was also passed. Then, according to the custom, by virtue of his Office formerly mentioned, he named *Sp. Lucretius* to be *Inter-rex* for holding of the *Comitia* or Assembly, who adjourned the meeting to the *Campus Martius*, where it was the custom for the *Romans* in their Armour to elect Magistrates. There he named *Brutus* and *Collatinus* (as was formerly agreed on betwixt the conspirators) for to have the Regal power, and the *Centuries* confirmed them by their Suffrages. In the mean time, whilst these things were done in the City, *Tarquinus* having heard by such as escaped out ere the gates were shut, that *Brutus* called the people to their liberty, making none acquainted but his sons and some trustie friends, with them rode away post, to prevent the general defection, but finding the gates fast shut, and the walls full of Armed men, in great grief returned to the Camp. There now he could not be received; for *Brutus* foreseeing his sodain coming, sent Letters to the Army (or went himself by another way than that he knew he would come) wherein he acquainted them with the decree of the People, and desired that they would revolt from the King. The letters were read to the Soldiers by *T. Herminius* and *M. Horatius*, whom *Tarquin* had left to govern the Army, and they being called to give their Suffrages also by Centuries, all thought that what their friends at home had done, was to be approved, and would not admit the King at his return. Frustrated of this hope, he went *Care* in *Hetruria*, faith *Livie*, to *Gabii* faith *Dionysius*, where he had made his son *Sextus* King, now gray-headed, having reigned 25 years. *Herminius* and *Horatius* took truce with the Enemy for 15 years, and breaking up the Siege before *Ardea*, returned with the Army. This happened in the 244th year of the City, after the account of *Cato*, but the 245th, according to the computation of *Terentius Varro*, in the latter end of the 67th Olympiad, or the beginning of the 68th, A. M. 3496. *Pliny* writeth, that it was the same year wherein the *Pisistratide* were banished *Athens*, and *Clemens* joyneth it with the recovery of *Babylon* by *Darius Hystaspis*. This was somewhat above twenty years after the beginning of *Cyrus*, and the destruction of the *Babylonian* Empire.

The people  
decree *Tar-*  
*quinus* his  
banishment.

He is driven  
into exile.

A. M. 3496.  
V. C. 245.  
Olymp. 67. an. 4.  
Darii 13.

AN



A N  
INSTITUTION  
OF  
General History.

*The First Part.*

BOOK II.


*Of the Persian Empire, and the Affairs of  
the World Contemporary with it.*

CHAP. I.

*The Persian Empire.*

SECT. I.

*From the beginning of the Empire of Cyrus, to the death of Cam-  
byses his Son and Successor.*

1.  *C*YRUS having obtained the Empire of the East through the Conquest of *Babylon*, after a three years siege, as *Exa* I. II. is conjectured, was sensible of Gods providence therein (whom he understood to have foretold it, and call'd him by name above 100 years before he was born) and out of obedience to his decree, gave leave to all the *Jews* that were in Captivity in his Dominions, to return to their own Country, the 70 years of their exile foretold by *Jeremiah* the Prophet being now expired. In compliance with this opportunity *Zorubabel* the son of *Salathiel*, and Grand-son to *Jechoniah* as Captain, with *Jo-*  
A a *shua*

The Jews re-  
turn out of  
Captivity.

## SECT. 2.

*Shua* the son of *Josedec* (which *Josedec* was brother to *Esdra*s, and son to *Seraiah* the Chief Priest, who being Counsellour to *Zedekiah* was slain by *Nebuchadnefar*, the year wherein *Jerusalem* was taken) and 42462 Jews (as *Josephus* reckoneth up the number) departed, and went into *Judaea*. Though the other Tribes formerly led into Captivity by *Salmanasar* might have the same liberty of returning, yet having together with the memory of their antient Countrey lost their affection to their God, and it, regarded not the time, the Lord having onely promised liberty of returning to those that were exported by *Nebuchadnefar*. And a great part of the Tribe of *Judah* it self (if not the greater) unwilling to leave their possessions got in a strange Land, as also discouraged by the difficulties and troubles they were to undergo, preferred perpetual banishment before the seat and habitation of their Ancestors.

The second.  
Temple built  
at Jerusalem.

2. In the second year of the Persian Empire, and the second moneth, when all things were in a readinesse, according to Commission given by the King (who defrayed the charge out of his own Revenue, and restored the Golden Vessels carried away by *Nebuchadnefar*) the *Levites* were set over the work of the Lords house, and *Zorubabel* laid the foundation of the second Temple, to the joy of the younger sort born in Captivity, but with the lamentation of the elder, who had seen the glory of the former house. When the *Cherubims* (whom *Eserhaddon* planted in *Samaria*) heard of their progresse in the work, they first fraudulently offered their assistance, pretending the same religion, and being rejected so corrupted the Courtiers (who either kept the thing from *Cyrus*, or he was then busied in his Wars, as *Josephus* writeth) that the building was hindred for several years, untill the second of *Darius*, the son of *Hystaspes*. For this the Prophet *Daniel* (who was yet alive, and nigh 90 years old, as having been carried into Captivity 73 years before) mourned, and fasted three weeks, and had the great, and last Vision concerning the future Kings of *Persia*, of *Alexander* the Great, and his Successors in *Asia* and *Egypt*, untill the time of the *Hasmoneans*, or *Maccabees*. But whether he lived past the third year of *Cyrus* or no is uncertain.

The end of  
Cyrus variously  
reported.

3. Concerning the end of *Cyrus* many and several things are written. According to *Herodotus*, *Trogus* and others he invaded the *Massagetes*, and perished in their Countrey. The Queen of this *Scythian* people named *Tomyris* he first made a pretence to sue to for marriage, but she being aware of this design to entrap her forbade him entrance; whereupon beraking himself from wiles to force he laid a bridge over the River *Araxes*, and provided for the passing of his Army over. Whil't he thus employed himself, she was so hardy as to send him a message, offering him either to invade her Countrey, or else to permit her a passage into his. Amazed at it, he referred the matter to his Council what should be done therein, where some advised him to suffer her to passe the River, but *Cressus* stily opposed it, shewing the danger in case he were overthrown but in one battel, and advised him after he had set over his men, and discovered the enemy, to leave the weakest sort amongst his Army there in the Camp plentifully provided of strong wines, with which liquor being utterly unacquainted, they would make themselves drunk, and so might be easily destroyed. This advice succeeded accordingly, and amongst the rest *Spargapises* the Queen's son was taken prisoner, who as soon as he came to himself desired to be loosed, and put an end to his life with his own hands, out of a deep fence of his condition. His mother knowing nothing of his death, with threatening language required *Cyrus* to dismisse him, and when she saw he returned not, gathered together all her forces, wherewith counterfeiting flight she trained the King into streights, and by an ambush laid in the Mountains, cut him off with his whole Army to the number of 200000 men. His head she cast into a bason of bloud, upbraiding him with cruelty in these words: *Satisfie thy self with bloud after which thou hast thirsted.* To this story *Diodorus* addeth that she nailed his body to a Crosse.

4. But *Cressus* wrote that the last War he made was against the *Derbices*, a people

A. M. 3476.  
V. C. 223.  
Olymp. 62.  
an. 2.

Dan. 12.

## SECT. I.

people also of *Scythia*, whom though he overcame, yet he received a wound in fight, of which he died three dayes after. *Xenophon* saith he died aged, and in peace, and how finding himself almost spent, he called to him his friends, with his two sons *Cambyfes* and *Smerdis*, or *Tanaoxares*, whom (after a long Oration, wherein he discoursed much concerning the immortality of the Soul, and the punishment and reward which is due to things committed in this life) he exhorted by the strongest arguments to perpetual concord and love. If so, he acted like one that had received the knowledge of the true God, which he had opportunity also to know from *Daniel* and others, being by them instructed in the Scriptures. Some think that the variety of these reports proceeded from the study of the *Persians* to conceal the shame of his being overthrown by the policy of a woman. Others observe, that had he lost his whole Army in *Scythia*, it is scarce probable that his son would have transported all his remaining Forces into *Egypt* so soon, and hereby leave that side of his Kingdom destitute and naked, when the *Scythian* Nation bordering upon *Media* was so victorious: not to add that *Cambyfes* would not have been able to undertake, and perform such a Conquest in so little a space. Considerable certainly is that which the Writers of *Alexander's* Acts have committed to memory, as *Curcius*, *Plutarch*, *Arrianus*, and even *Aristobolus* (who by command of the King was an eye witness of it) as he is cited by *Strabo*: That he was buried in his own Citie *Pasagardis* in *Persia*, where his Epitaph was plain to be read, in which after telling the Traveller who he was, he desired him not to grudge him that earth wherewith his body was covered. The Tomb was opened by *Alexander*, either out of hope to find some Treasure, or (what was pretended) out of desire to honour his dead body with some Ceremonies, and in it were found an old Target, two *Scythian* Bows and a sword. The Coffin wherein he lay *Alexander* caused to be covered with his own Roab, and a Crown of Gold to be set thereon. These things something weaken the credit of that opinion which *Herodotus* relateth as the most probable of those that were held in his time. But lesse credit is to be given to that which will have him slain in a Sea-fight against the inhabitants of *Samus*; and another that lengtheneth his life to 100 years, whereas he scarce passed 70. *Herodotus* giveth to his reign 29 years; but most agree that he reigned 30, which must be counted from his first obtaining the Kingdom of *Media*.

Lib. 15. p. 730.

Vide Plutarch.  
in Alexandro.

\* Maleta,  
\* Lucian in  
\* Macrobiis.

His Issue.

5. What time passed from the Conquest of *Babylon*, and the beginning of his Monarchy, unto his death, is controverted amongst learned Writers. Some reckon ten years, or thereabouts, and others but three, of which number was once *Joseph Scaliger*, who afterwards retracted it as an error; but *Ludovicus Cappellus* hath renewed the assertion, making it probable by arguments drawn from Scripture, who therefore is to be consulted in his sacred *Chronology*. *Cyrus* had issue two sons, *Cambyfes* and *Smerdis*, or *Tanaoxares*, with three daughters, *Atossa*, *Meroe*, and *Artystona*, to which *Cressus* addeth *Amysis*. *Atossa* and *Meroe* their brother *Cambyfes* afterwards married; and *Darius Hystaspis* obtained *Artystona*, as also *Atossa* after the death of *Cambyfes*. Of the two sons, to *Cambyfes* he left his Kingdom, and to *Smerdis* or *Tanaoxares* assigned the Government of *Media*, *Armenia*, and the *Cadusians*, according to *Xenophon*.

\* In mris ad  
Tab. 13.

Cambyfes maketh War upon Egypt.

6. *Cambyfes* presently after he came to the Government, made all possible provision for a War with *Egypt*, the cause whereof is to be enquired after. *Herodotus* relateth a story how he sent to *Amasis* King of that Countrey to desire his daughter *Niteticus* in marriage, which he not daring to deny because of the then formidable power of the *Persians*, and not willing to gratifie him absolutely, for that he conceived his daughter would be entertained but as a Concubine, he found out a way as he thought to satisfie *Cambyfes*, and yet keep his daughter. There was one of *Apries* his predecessor's daughters yet unmarried, her he sent to him under the name of his own, who when she had sufficiently ingratiated her self with *Cambyfes*, told him how indeed she was nothing a kin to *Amasis*, but begotten by his Lord and Master; wherat

Lib. 3. cap. 1.

A. M. 3476.  
Olymp. c. 2.  
an. 4. V. C. 223.  
Cambyfes 1.



## SECT. I.

the Persian conceived such indignation, that, to be revenged on him, he invaded Egypt. But that which moved Cambyſes to ſend for this woman, ſeemeth ſomething ſtrange. He had formerly deſired from Amasſis a Phyſician for the eyes, the beſt that could be procured in Egypt, wherewith he gratifying him, the man took it ſo ill of Amasſis to be ſent out of his native Country, that in way of revenge, he moved the matter to Cambyſes, concluding with himſelf, that the King of Egypt would not ſend his own daughter to the Perſians, which Herodotus rather approveth: This was the ſaying of the Perſians, which Cambyſes was ſon to Niſetis the daughter of Apries, and that the Perſians aſcribed that to the Son which be- longed to the Father, becauſe they would have Cambyſes born of Caſſianiane the daughter of Pharnaſpes, of the noble race of Achemenes; and yet he confeſſeth there was a report, that beſides Caſſandane, Cyrus kept Niſetis as his Concubine, whom he moſt affected, and that to revenge his mother upon her, Cambyſes when but young threatned, and after his Father's death made War upon Egypt. However things might go in reference to the daughter of Apries, Cambyſes ſeemeth to have invaded that Kingdom, upon pretence of the right he had to it as Heir by conqueſt to Nebuchadneſar, who ſubdued it, though it revolted from his Succeſſors; which might be concealed from Herodotus by the Priests, who ſpared not to invent lyes for a cover to the diſ- grace of their Country.

7. While Cambyſes was yet buſie in his preparations, one Phanes an Ha- lycarnaſſean by birth, taking ſomething in diſtaſte from Amasſis, whom he ſerved, fled out of Egypt by ſhip, and coming into Perſia, adviſed this King, that for his better paſſage of the ſandy Deſerts, he ſhould ſend to the King of the Arabians for ſafe conſult, who being no good friend to the Egyptian, came and met him with Camels bearing abundance of water, which was neceſſary for the ſuſtenance of the Army in that hot and dry place. Ere Cambyſes could arrive in Egypt, Amasſis had prevented captivity by a natural death, and Pſammenitus his ſon having ſucceeded him, expected his coming at Peluſium one of the mouths of Nile. Here a battle being fought, the Egyptians were overthrown and fled to Memphis, whither Cambyſes ſent after them to yield up themſelves to him; but they tate in pieces the meſſengers, and then being beſieged, ſtood out for ſome time; but at length the City was taken. Pſammenitus had his ſon put to death before his eyes, to try his patience, though the Conquerour too late repented of it, and had given him his life with the Kingdom to govern, as a Province, had he not at- tempted new matters, for which he was forced to drink Bulls blood, and ſo die, having reigned fix months after his Father.

8. This work done in Egypt, Cambyſes betook himſelf to extravagant practices. The dead body of Amasſis he cauſed to be brought forth, to be beaten, pinched, and then burnt, contrary to the practice as well of the Perſians as Egyptians, who abhorred ſuch a thing, becauſe the former ac- counted Fire a god, & the latter a ravenous beaſt, perſiſhing with the thing de- voured by it. Then reſolved he to make a three-fold War: One upon the Car- thaginians, another upon the Ammonians, or the Inhabitants of the place ſituate about the Temple of Jupiter Hammon, and the third againſt the long- lived Ethiopians, who inhabited Africk, near to the Southern Sea. He reſolved to ſend a Fleet againſt the Carthaginians, an Army of Foot againſt the Ammonians, and as for the Ethiopians, he would firſt ſend to diſcover their Country. While his Meſſengers were diſpatching towards Ethiopia, he gave order to the Phœnicians (who having yielded themſelves, were his onely ſtrength at Sea) to fight againſt Carthage, which they ſtubbornly reſuſed, be- cauſe that City was a Colony of their own, and thereby this deſign was diſ- ſipated. After the return of his meſſengers, who brought him word how he was ſlighted by the Ethiopian King, in great rage and hiſte he ſet forwards againſt him, without all thought of victualling his Army, commanding all his foot to follow, except the Grecians. When he was come to Thebes, he ſent about 50000 men againſt the Ammonians, with command after they had ſpoiled

Vide Polyænum  
lib. 8.

Vide Herod. l. 3.  
cap. 4. &c.

Paſſ th  
throu gh the  
Sandy De-  
ſerts.

Conquereth  
Egypt.

His extra-  
vagant p.adi-  
ces.

His fruitleſſe  
Expeditions.

## SECT. I.

spoiled them to burn the Temple; and ſo he marched on with the reſt of the Army. But ere he had paſſed the fifth part of his journey, all provisions fail- ed, and all the beaſts that carried burthens were eaten up; yet did he not now recollect himſelf, but proceeded till they were conſtrained to eat up every tenth man, and then returned he with great loſſe and diſgrace to Mem- phis, where he diſmiſſed the Greeks from his ſervice. The forces ſent againſt the Ammonians, never reached thither, neither ever returned, being all over- whelmed, as was reported, in the Sandy Wilderneſſe.

9. Cambyſes at his return to Memphis, found the Citizens in great mirth and jollity, for that Apis their god had appeared to them lately; which he interpreting as an expreſſion of joy for his bad ſucceſſe, wounded the beaſt in the thigh (thinking to ſtrike him into the belly) of which he died. He derided much the Egyptians for ſuch deities: thoſe that were found re- joicing, he commanded to be ſlain, and the Priests to be beaten with rods. For ſuch impiety they accounted him ſtricken with that madneſſe, which after- wards appeared. For not long after, he ſent his brother Smerdis back into Perſia, having conceived great indignation againſt him, becauſe he alone of all the Perſians, could draw a Bow that was brought him by his meſſengers out of Ethiopia. After this he dreamed, that one came and told him how Smerdis ſate on the Throne, and with his head reached to Heaven, whereupon, he ſent Prexaſpes his greateſt confident to make him away, who murdered him in a pretended hunting, or as ſome ſaid, drowned him in the Red Sea. To this he added the murder of his own Siſter, whom, without any example, he had married, becauſe ſhe upbraided him with their brother's death. Memo- rable is the answer of his Judges, who, when he demanded, whether there was not a Law amongſt the Perſians, that a man might marry his own Siſter, answered, they found no ſuch Law, but one there was, viz. The King might do whatſoever he liſted. Then married he one Siſter, and afterwards ano- ther, whereof the younger he killed being great with child, as the Egyptians reported, ſo that ſhe miſcaried double.

10. To this rage and madneſſe againſt his relations, he added fury towards thoſe that were neareſt about him. Asking Prexaſpes the miniſter of his pa- ricide, what his people thought of him, and receiving this answer, that they thought him too much given to wine, that it might be ſeen how ſober he was to do miſchief, he ſaid it ſhould be a demonſtration, if he could ſhoot with an arrow the ſon of Prexaſpes right into the heart, which accordingly he did. The day after he buried quick twelve other Perſians for no fault at all, and commanded Craſus the Lydian to be ſlain for admoniſhing him gravely con- cerning ſuch enormities, having diſpatched him himſelf with an arrow, if he had not taken him to his heels. His ſervants notwithstanding preſerved Cra- ſus alive, expecting a reward if he ſhould afterwards repent of his death. And he really rejoiced in his preſervation, when he returned to himſelf; but put them to death for their diſobedience. Many more ſuch like things he did whiſt he remained at Memphis, and raged againſt the Images and Temples of the Egyptians.

11. But whiſt he thus ſpent his time, two of the Magi, Medians by birth, conſpired againſt him. One of them he had left Overſeer of his houſ- hold affairs, named Patizithes, who having certain knowledge of the death of Smerdis, though it was kept very ſecret, took occaſion thereat to rebel, becauſe moſt of the Perſians thought this Prince yet living. For, having with him in the Kings houſe a brother as like him in the lineaments and pro- portion of body as in name, him he placed in the Throne, and ſent up and down through the Empire, to perſwade every one rather to obey Smerdis the ſon of Cyrus than Cambyſes. One of theſe meſſengers coming down to the Army towards Egypt, found it at Ecbatane in Syria, where ſtanding in the midſt, he proclaimed what was enjoined. Cambyſes being much ſtart- led, blamed Prexaſpes for having neglected to execute his commands; but he proteſting his obedience therein, and that he had buried his brother with his own hands, the meſſenger was perſuaded and fetcht back, out of whom Prexa- ſpes

He murdered  
his brother &  
ſiſter.

The Magi  
uſurp.

SECT. 2. *Aspes* getting out that he had not himself seen *Smerdis*, but *Patizthes* had given him instructions as from him, easily conjectured what was at the bottom, and therewith acquainted the King. Then too late did *Cambyfes* bewail his brother, and resolving with all speed to march for *Susa*, as he mounted on horseback his sword fell out of the scabbard, and wounded him in the thigh. Demanding the name of the place, he gave himself for lost, for that it had been told him he should die in *Ecbatane*, which he had ever interpreted of the place in *Media* so called, where he hoped it would be in his old age. Twenty days after, he revealed the whole matter concerning his brother to the Nobility about him, conjuring them not to suffer the Empire to return to the *Medes*, but rather recover it the same way it had been betrayed. Nor long after his thigh-bone being putrified, he died, when he had reigned seven years and five months. He left no issue, and so the direct line of *Cyrus* in him received its period.

*Cambyfes* died.

## SECT. II.

From the death of *Cambyfes* to that of *Xerxes*.

1. *Smerdis* the Magician (called also *Mardus*, *Sphendadates*, and *Oropas*) reigned those seven months which were wanting to compleat the eighth year of *Cambyfes*, whom the *Persians* believed not as to his brothers death, but thought that indeed he was alive and reigned, because *Prexaspes* feared to confesse that he killed him. In this time he, or rather his brother, wonderfully pleased all men, except the *Persians*, remitting to other Nations their tributes, and excusing them from War for three years. But in the eighth month he was discovered by the means of *Otanes*, a man of highest rank in *Persia*, who suspected him for a counterfeit, because he never would appear in publick, nor admit any of the Nobility into his presence. He having a daughter then at Court, which had been Concubine to *Cambyfes*, and now was in the same quality to him that reigned, as all the rest of his wives; to her he sent to know, whether it was indeed the son of *Cyrus* with whom he lay. She having had no acquaintance with that Prince, could give him no answer, and neither could she come near *Atoffa*, who being sister to *Smerdis* might easily know him, for that the Magician to prevent intelligence, kept them severed one from another: This increasing the suspicion, *Otanes* sent to her again, charging her as he lay asleep to know whether he had any ears; for *Cyrus* had upon some account cut off the ears of *Smerdis* the Magician. She obeyed her Father when it came to her course, notwithstanding the danger, and the day following confirmed him fully in what he had suspected.

The imposture of the Magi discovered.

A conspiracy against them.

2. *Otanes* presently discovered the matter to *Aspathines* and *Gobryas*, two men of prime rank also among the *Persians*, who easily giving him credit, as having suspected the same thing themselves, agreed to take three more, each of them one, into Council about it. *Otanes* brought *Intaphernes*, *Gobryas* chose *Megabyzus*, *Aspathines* took *Hydarnes*, and *Darius* being then arrived at *Susa* from *Persia*, which his Father *Hystaspes* governed, they also thought fit to add him to their number. *Darius* when admitted, signified, that he had been assured of the cheat; how he was come to Town upon no other account than to kill the impostor, and urged them to joyn with him and attempt it speedily. *Otanes* was much against such hasty proceedings, desiring further to consult about it, but *Darius* alleging the danger of delay, for which cause, if they would not attempt something that very day, hee would go and discover rather than be discovered, at length they agreed to him.

3. But while they were thus debating the matter, the *Magi* knowing that *Prexaspes* had made away *Smerdis* the son of *Cyrus*, and considering how nearly it concerned them to make him their own, had sent for him, and by vast promises endeavoured to purchase his secrecy in that private affair. He seemed

Leg. Herod. l. 3. cap. 67, &c.

A.M. 3483. Ol. 64. an. 3. V. C. 232.

SECT. 2. seemed to comply, and desired that the *Persians* might be called together under the wall, that he might persuade them, that he who now reigned was the true *Smerdis*. But after he had mounted the turret, he began to reckon up the Pedigree of *Cyrus* from *Achamenes*, related his kindnesse and good turns done to the *Persians*, and then telling the whole matter concerning *Smerdis* whom he had murdered, after he had laid many curses upon them, except they recovered the Empire, and revenged themselves upon the *Magi*, he threw himself down headlong and died. The seven Conspirators utterly ignorant of this, arrived at the Court, at such time as the *Magi* were consulting concerning what had happened, where the Porters easily admitted them, because of their dignity, nothing being suspected of them. But coming into the house, they were stopped by such Eunuchs as there waited, whereupon they forced their passage with their Swords, and were encountered by both the *Magi*, who having taken the Alarm, and perceived the matter, betook themselves to their weapons. One of them wounded *Aspathines* in the thigh, and put out the eye of *Intaphernes*: the other retired into another room, whither he was pursued by *Darius* and *Gobryas*. *Gobryas* grappling with him, *Darius* stood idle for fear of wounding his friend; but *Gobryas* bidding him strike though it were thorow his sides, he did it at adventure, and slew the Magician. Both of them being slain, they cut off their heads, and carrying them out, acquainted the *Persians* with what they had done. Then fell they upon such Magicians as they could meet, which the *Persians* taking as an example, did the like, so that if night had not intervened, all that sort of men had perished, and this day was observed annually as a great Festival, in which none of the Magicians stirred abroad. This was the end of the usurpation, wherein seven *Magi* are said by some to have been partakers; but if so, those two brothers are to be accounted the chief, one of them counterfeiting the right Heir.

The *Magi* slain.

The Conspirators consult about a settlement.

Capitulations.

*Darius* obtaineth the Kingdom.

4. This tumult being over in five dayes time, the seven Conspirators fell into consultation about a settlement. *Otanes* spake for the taking away of Monarchy, which he urged, from the example of *Cambyfes* and the Magician, was apt to degenerate into Tyranny, and would have had the Government remitted to the people in a Democratical way; *Megabyzus* was for *Oligarchie*; but *Darius* of all the three sorts preferred Monarchy, as that into which at length the other would passe, through seditions and the ambition of such particular men as should be able to advance themselves above their neighbours. The other four subscribed to his opinion as best, which therefore being agreed on by the major part, several capitulations were made in order to the election. *Otanes* desired that both himself and family might be exempted from the regal jurisdiction, which was granted, and all possible honour further decreed to him for his pains taken in the discovery. It was agreed amongst the other six, that it should be lawful for them at any time to come into the Palace, except the King were with his wife, and the King was prohibited to take a wife any where but out of their families. As for the election, it was resolved, that all the next morning by Sun-rise riding into the Suburbs, he whose Horse first neighed, should obtain the Empire of *Cambyfes*.

5. *Darius* obtained it through the cunning of *Oebares* his Stable-Groom, who having knowledge from his Master of the business, the night before the controversy was to be decided, put his Horse to Mare in the place whither they were to ride. The Horse the next morning remembering his mare neighed, for which, as coming by accident, the other five adored *Darius* as King. Having thus obtained the Kingdom, though he had children already by a daughter of *Gobryas*; yet the more to strengthen his title, he married the two daughters of *Cyrus* which remained; *Atoffa* the wife of her brother *Cambyfes*, and of the Magician, and *Artystonay* a Virgin: he also took *Pariyus* daughter to *Smerdis* the son of *Cyrus*, and *Phaedaina* the daughter of *Otanes*. This he did, being also himself of regal extraction, both allied to ancient and modern Kings. He was issued from *Achamenes*; *Cyrus* and his Father *Hystaspes* being brother's sons, the one to *Cambyfes*, and the other

Valer. Max. lib. 9. cap. 2. Ammian. l. 23.

Herod. l. 3. c. 80.

Herod. l. 3. c. 85.

Valer. Max. l. 7. c. 3. Ext. Exemp. 2.

Justin lib. 1. Polyanus Strategem. l. 7.

Sulp. Severus. Hist. Sacr. l. 2.

## SECT. I.

other to *Arfames*, as some have reported. This translation of the Kingdom is said to have been first revealed to *Cyrus*, at such time as having passed the river *Araxes*, he was marching against the *Massagets*; For he dreamed that he saw the eldest son of *Hystaspes* (which was this; for he had three younger sons, *Ariabannus*, *Atarnes*, and *Artaphernes*,) having wings on his shoulders wherewith he overshadowed *Asia* and *Europe*. At that time he was about twenty years old, and Armour-bearer to *Cyrus* (according to \* *Ælian*) who sent him back into *Persia*, and as some said, caused him to be imprisoned. After his death he was delivered out of Prison, and made Governor of the *Persian Magi*, accompanied *Cambyzes* into *Egypt*, and when he had discovered the imposture of the *Magi*, joyned with the other Princes against them, and then either by the neighing of his Horse, or by strong hand, as some have thought, obtained the Empire.

6. Though thus *Darius* obtained the Sovereignty; yet it seemeth to some, to have been as a perpetual Dictatorship, who think it probable; that the other six had also by turns the exercise of Tribunitial jurisdiction, together with him. First, because *Æschylus* who fought against the Forces of *Darius* at *Marathon*, nameth two Kings, viz. *Maraphis* and *Artaphernes*, betwixt the slaughter of the *Magi* and Empire of *Darius*, who seem no other than *Mardonius* and *Artaphernes*, reckoned by *Cæsius* amongst the seven. Then in the Holy Scripture, together with the edict of *Darius* in the second year of his reign, the assent of *Artabastus* King of *Persia* is joyned, which may well enough be taken for the said *Ariaphernes*; though others do otherwise expound the place. And, to add something not altogether so material, the other Conspirators foreseeing how burthensome they should be to *Darius* (which in what other way could it be than this?) bound him with an \* Oath most sacred amongst the *Persians*, that neither with poison, sword, any other violence, nor by famine should he kill any of them; though it proved not so sacred as to be inviolable.

7. In the second year of *Darius* the building of the Temple which had been interrupted, began again and proceeded. The *Samaritans* bribed the Courtiers in the time of *Cyrus*, to hinder the work, and *Cambyzes* having been formerly no friend to it, when he came to reign stopped it by expresse command, through the calumination of such as bore the Jews no good will. The *Magician* also forbade it upon the same account, it being clear from Scripture, that two several Princes named *Ahasuerus* and *Artaxerxes* withstood it; and that betwixt the reigns of *Cyrus* and *Darius*. But when the Adversaries now betook themselves to *Darius*, expecting from him a countermand to the Jews (who being reproved for their remissness by the Prophet *Haggai*, were fallen again to build upon the foundation formerly laid) he instead of any such inhibition, sent them an expresse command, not onely not to hinder, but at his own cost to further the Structure, allowing also to the Priests expenses for the daily Sacrifices. The Jews therefore encouraged by this new Edict, and confirmed by the Prophecies of *Haggai* and *Zachariah*, proceeded prosperously in the building.

8. In the same year had the Prophet *Zachariah* a Vision, in which the Angel interceding for *Jerusalem*, and the Cities of *Judah*, mentioneth the Lord's having had indignation threescore and seven years. The rise or beginning of these years *Ludovicus Cappellus* fetcheth from the destruction of the Temple. For from the first Edict of *Cyrus*, and the end of the Captivity, to this time, passed about eleven years (*Cyrus*, according to his account, reigning but three after the taking of *Babylon*, *Cambyzes* together with the *Magician* eight, and *Darius* one; from which must be deducted so much as the removal of the Jews would require) even so many as passed from the beginning of the Captivity to the desolation of the Temple, and so the Temple lay desolate full Seventy years. Hence is observable, that as the State and Policy of the Jewish Commonwealth was broken, and much impaired eleven years before the destruction of the Temple, so was it renewed at the end of the Captivity so many years before the re-edifying of it, which hitherto had

Herod. l. 1.

\* Var. Hist. lib. 12. c. 43.

Vide *Ætærium* in *Annal. Ver. Testam. pag. 557.*

Eisa 6. 14.

\* *Valer. Max. lib. 9. cap. 2. extern. exempl. 6.*

The building of the Temple proceeded.

Eisa 4.

## SECT. 2.

been attempted without success, but now renewed, was happily finished in the sixth year of *Darius*, as to the house it self, though three years more seem to have been taken up in the building the porches and other appendices to it. And as the greatest part of the holy Vessels were carried away in the Captivity of *Jechoniah*, eleven years before the destruction of the Temple, so were they sent back again so many years before the restoration of it. Lastly, this also is observed, that as from the destruction of this typical Temple to the rebuilding of it, passed Seventy years, so from the Conception of Christ the true and spiritual Temple, to the final desolation of the shadow or typical one at *Jerusalem*, so many years passed, precisely Seventy.

The Empire divided into twenty Provinces.

Intaphernes put to death.

All the Conspirators made away.

Babylon rebelled.

And recovered.

9. *Darius* after his settlement in the Kingdom, divided it into twenty Provinces (which the *Persians* called *Satrapies*) over each of which he constituted a *Præfident*, withall appointing what tribute each Nation should pay. For, hitherto, under the two former Kings, nothing was appointed concerning tribute, the several people contributing money by way of benevolence, whereupon, because of this new imposition, they styled *Darius* an *Huckster*, *Cambyzes* a Lord, and *Cyrus* a Father. *Cyrus* was mild, and used them as children, striving to deserve well of them; *Cambyzes* was sharp and morose, and *Darius* by all ways possible purveyed for money. The next thing memorable concerning *Darius*, is, his putting to death *Intaphernes*, one of the Conspirators, for abusing the Porters, and violent intruding into the Palace, contrary to the Capitulations agreed on amongst them. Having an intention to go to the King, they that kept the gate stopped him, saying, that he was with his wife, which he thinking to be a lye, drew his Sword, and cutting off their ears and noses, then tyed the reigns of an horses bridle to their necks and let them go. They presenting themselves in this case to the King, he first suspected some treasonable design of all the six, but finding that the rest knew nothing of the matter, he put *Intaphernes* to death, with all his sons except the eldest, whom he granted to the intreaties of the Mother. But not onely him, but all the rest also who were burthensome to him, another telleth us that he made away by a new kind of death. He caused many ashes to be laid betwixt some walls, over which laying a rafter, thereupon he feasted them very nobly; but being fast asleep the floor fell, and they therewith into the ashes, where they perished. If he destroyed them in this strange manner, probable it is, that he desired to be rid of them, because of some power to which they might pretend by virtue of a previous agreement, not enduring any incommbrance or restraint upon his prerogative; for that Sovereignty is impatient of any competition in the throne.

10. About the tenth year of his reign the City of *Babylon* rebelled against him, having of late recovered that greatness of mind which formerly possessed it's Inhabitants. *Cyrus* demolished not their walls, but left them intire with the gates standing, which putting them in a posture of defence, they took courage at the foren Wars of *Cambyzes*, and the stir that happened about the *Magi*. He gathered his forces together, with all speed, and laid siege to it; but they being resolved to stand out to the utmost, chose every one a woman to make ready their meat, and to save provisions, killed all the rest of that Sex except their Mothers. Then, as if they had made themselves impregnable, they derided the *Persians*, saying, they should be overcome when a Mule foaled: And above nineteen moneths they held out, notwithstanding all their attempts and devices. At length in the 20th, *Zopyrus* sonto *Megabyzus*, one of the chief Commanders in *Darius*'s Army, being encouraged by his Mule that foaled, mangled his face, cutting off his ears and nose, and in gore blood counterfeited a flight to the besieged, as thus abused by the King. The *Babylonians* believed, and according to his expectation chose him for their General, after which, he made several sallies, and the besiegers according to the former agreement fled; but within a while he betrayed the City to *Darius*. He demolished the walls, and maiming 3000 of the principal actors unto crosses, pardoned the rest, for whom 5000 women were sought, by whom they might repair their decayed stock. *Zopyrus* was rewarded,

Herod. lib. 3. cap. 118, 119.

Vide *Val. Maxim. lib. 9. cap. 2. extern. exempl. 6.*

Herod. ut prius cap. 150.

B b

## SECT. 2.

rewarded, as with other things in greatest account amongst the *Perians*, to with the City of *Babylon* for his life. The son of this *Zopyrus* was *Megabyzus*, who afterwards conducted the *Persian* Army against the *Athenians* and their companions: and son to this *Megabyzus* was that *Zopyrus*, who revolted from the *Perians* to the *Athenians*.

*Darius* goes  
against the  
*Scythians*.

11. After the recovery of *Babylon*, *Darius* wanting neither men nor money, undertook an Expedition against the *Scythians*, to be revenged on them for holding the (a) dominion of *Asia* 28 years, at such time as pursuing the *Cimmerians* they overthrew and kept under the *Medes*, whom they found Lords of all in the dayes of their King *Cyaxares*. This (b) *Herodotus* maketh the pretended cause of the War, but (c) *Justin* from *Trogus* relateth, that it was because *Lianchius* the *Scythian* King denied him his daughter in marriage. *Darius* caused a bridge to be laid over the *Bosphorus* into *Europe* half a mile long, and thereon passing his forces over, crossed the Sea himself by ship, and gave charge to the *Ionians* his Subjects (who together with the *Æolians*, and others that lived upon the *Hellepont*, made up the *Navie*) to sail up the Sea as far as the River *Ister* (which parted *Scythia* from *Thrace*) over which he also enjoined them to make a bridge. In his march through *Thrace* all submitted to him except the *Gætes*, who out of Ignorance withstood him. The *Ionians* prepared the bridge against his coming, whom, after he had transported his forces, he commanded there to expect him Sixty dayes, at the end of which if he returned not, he permitted them to return into their own Country.

12. The *Scythians* had no constant dwelling or habitation, removing with their wagons, wherein they lay, and cattel, from place to place, according as they were furnished with grasse, living upon milk and raw flesh, without Towns or corn, and taking their conduct from the Pole-Star, as the *Chrim Tartars* their posterity at this day also live, the great *Chrim* himself having no other City than an *Agora*, or one of the *Catts*. Having intelligence of his coming, they sent their wives, children, and cattel towards the North, then stopped all the wells, destroyed all fruits of the Earth, and sometimes appearing to the *Perians*, again retired on purpose to deride them. *Darius* seeing himself thus mocked, and despairing to come at them by reason of their perfect knowledge of the Country, and his ignorance therein, fearing also his provisions might fail, and especially lest the *Ionians* should forsake him at the bridge, now that the Sixty dayes were expired, bethought how he might make a safe retreat. The *Scythians* getting knowledge hereof, laboured to remove the *Ionians* from the bridge, telling them how good it would be for them to return home in safety; for that now the time prefixed by the King was expired. They fell into consultation hereupon, and *Miltiades* Tyrant or petty Prince of the *Chersonesus* besought them, that, having this opportunity, they would not let it slip, but free themselves from the *Persian* yolk. But *Histiæus* Tyrant of *Miletus* a City of *Ionian*, and others, who had enslaved their own Citizens at home, fearing, lest if the power of the *Perians*, by which they were maintained, were broken, they should be reduced into a private condition or worse by their own Country-men, resolved, that nothing more concerned them, than that the greatness of that Empire might be established. Yet it was judged convenient to break the bridge so far, as to be out of bow-shot from the *Scythian* side, therein to comply with that People, who perhaps else might force them to do it. Beginning therefore to break it, the *Scythians* believed their promise of performing the whole, and returned to hunt out the *Perians*. Expecting them to retreat that way which was best for Provisions, they missed of them; for *Darius* returned the same he went, and with great difficulty recovered the banks of *Ister*. Here he arrived, and was much discouraged when he found the bridge broken; but upon the first shout *Histiæus* came with all his Vessels and made it up for the transportation of the Army.

His retreat.

13. *Darius* passing over his Army marched through *Thrace* unto *Sestus*, and thence sailed over into *Asia*, leaving *Megabyzus* in *Europe* with an Army

(a) Vide l. 2.  
c. 2. p. 21.  
(b) Lib. 4.  
c. 1. &c.  
(c) Lib. 2.

A.M. 3497.  
Olymp. 68. an. 1.  
V. C. 246.  
Darius 14.

## SECT. 2.

Earth and  
water de-  
manded of  
*Amyntas* King  
of *Macedonia*.

of 80000 men. *Megabyzus*, according to order, subdued the *Perinthians* and *Paonians*, whom he translated into *Asia*, and having reduced to obedience all the Maritime Coast, sent into *Macedonia* to demand earth and water of *Amyntas* the King. These were Symboles of subjection, signifying an acknowledgement of fealty, and voluntary homage, the chief Sovereignty over all wherein propriety lay, being yielded up with these two Elements. *Darius* had formerly sent to demand them of the *Scythians*, and they in return sent him a Bird, Frog, Mouse, and five Arrows, leaving him to make the interpretation, which he framing according to his own wish, thought that they had yielded all those Elements wherein those Creatures live, and their Weapons withall into his hands. But *Gobryas* construed the meaning to be this: O ye *Perians*, get ye wings like Birds, dive under the water, or creep into the holes of the Earth, for else our Arrows will overtake you; which exposition was accordingly verified. *Amyntas* doubting of his own strength, kindly entertained the Messengers, and granting what they came for, magnificently feasted them, insomuch that being well heated with Wine they desired that women, according to the custom of *Persia*, might be brought in to them. He replied, that was not the fashion of *Macedonia*; but yet he would gratifie them therein, which being done, they began to be uncivil towards the women, whereat he inwardly fretted, but for fear suppressed his indignation. But his eldest son *Alexander* being present, a young man of prompt boldness and little experience, desired him to quit the room, and let him alone to entertain the Guests; and though he suspected him for his courage, and dissuaded him from any rash attempt, yet did he withdraw accordingly. *Alexander* then told the *Perians* they might have liberty to enjoy these women, but for that it now grew late, he desired they would let them go out to wash, and make themselves ready, which done, they should come again. They assenting, he dressed so many bare-faced young men in women's Clothes, who, being brought in, when the *Perians* began to dally with them, according to his command stabbed them with Daggers hid under their Clothes for that purpose. *Megabyzus* hearing nothing of his Messengers, sent one *Prubares* a *Persian* down with an Army to make diligent search after them, but him *Alexander* easily took off by giving him his sister *Gygæa* in marriage, with whom he had fallen in love; so that he suffering the matter to rest in silence, no farther inquiry was made after it.

The *Persian*  
Ambassadors  
killed.

*Histiæus*.

The occasion  
of the *Ionian*  
Rebellion.

14. The year following, being the 26th of his reign, *Darius* sent as Successor to *Megabyzus*, *Otanes* the son of *Sisamnes*, who took in the Cities *Chalcedon*, *Byzantium*, and *Antander*, with the Islands *Lemnos*, and *Imber*. He himself was now returned to *Susa*, whither he carried along with him *Histiæus*, who stood so much his friend at the Bridge of *Ister*. *Histiæus* having begun to build a Citie of his own in *Thrace*, *Darius* out of colour of doing him honour, and using his advice in his most important affairs, drew him away from it, knowing his great abilities, and fearing his restless spirit. There he continued for some years, till not being able to hear so much talk of Empire, and rule, wherein he himself had no share, he much preferred his ancient Dominion though but over one Citie, before this Real, though plausible imprisonment, and therefore sought how he might kindle a fire in *Ionian*, that for his interest in that Countrey he might obtain to be sent thither to quench it, and so with his liberty get some notable advantage for a great achievement. It hapned that his endeavours did but tend to the blowing up of that spark, which was already kindled without his knowledge, in *Aristagoras* his son in Law, who Governed *Miletus* in his absence. The first rise was occasioned by the inhabitants of the Island *Naxos*, who having banished some of their principal Citizens, the Exiles fled to *Anaxagoras* for protection and succour. He knowing not well of himself how to restore them, sent to *Artaphernes* the brother of *Darius*, and his Lieutenant of *Ionian* then resident at *Sardis*, proposing the Conquest of that Island to him, and offering to subdue both it, and all the rest of the *Cyclades* to the obedience of the *Persian* Empire. *Artaphernes* acquainted the King with the business, and he approving of it, he

Herod. l. 5. c. 1.  
&c.  
*Justin* lib. 7.

Herod. l. 5. c. 30.  
&c.

## SECT. 2.

lent him 200 ships under the conduct of *Megabates* his Kinsman. They A.M. 3500. sailed together towards *Naxos*, and it hapned in the way that *Megabates* Olymp. 68. and 4. harshly used one of *Aristagoras* his followers, for which he sharply rebuked him, as having no authority to punish those under his command. This the *Perſian* took so hainously, that he gave intelligence underhand to the *Naxians* of their coming, who being forewarned were forearmed, so that no good could *Aristagoras* do, but spending his time to no purpose, was forced at length to raise his siege. For this fruitless attempt, fearing disgrace, or worse from the *Perſians*, that he might prevent it, he studied how to revolt, and draw the *Ionians* into Rebellion.

15. While he consulted with himself, a Message came from *Histiæus*, Idem c. 35. who because the ways were so watched that he could send no Letters, Polyanus lib. 2. shaved close the head of his trusty Slave, and thereon with an hot iron engraved such marks as served to make out his sence, and after his hair was grown sent him to *Mileus*. *Aristagoras* shaving his head again as he was commanded (which was all the message that the slave carried by word of mouth) presently, and gladly apprehended the matter, viz. that he should excite the *Ionians* to rebell. Going now more cheerfully about his work, that the *Milesians* might more readily receive the motion, he restored them to a shew of liberty, and to oblige the rest of the Cities, by one means or other abdicated the power of their petty Princes, or Tyrants as they were called. But knowing how little able this strength would be to grapple with the whole power of *Asia*, which presently would be upon them, he sailed to *Lacedæmon*, there to desire assistance from *Cleomenes* the King, who refusing to intermeddle, he thence went to *Athens*, where as before he laid open the riches of *Asia*, with the imbecillity of the *Perſians* the present masters thereof; and added, that the *Milesians*, as a Colony of the *Athenians*, might justly expect relief from their hands.

16. The conjuncture of affairs at present were such at *Athens*, as he could not have had a more convenient opportunity. It hapned that *Hippias* the son of *Pisistratus* being expelled from *Athens* had withdrawn himself to *Sardis*, where he laboured with his whole might to make the *Athenians* odious to *Artaphernes*, and bring the Citie into the command of *Darius*, that so it might return to his own Dominion. They sent their Ambassadors after him, praying *Artaphernes* that he would give no credit to their Exiles; but he urging them, that, if they meant to secure themselves, they would receive *Hippias*, they chose rather to become Enemies to the *Perſian*; and therefore complied with the motion of *Aristagoras*. They agreed to send out 20 ships under the command of *Melantibus*, a man of principal note amongst them, with which the *Eretrians* (out of way of requital for aid formerly received from the *Ionians*) joyned other 5. This was the beginning of those many evils, which afterwards fell both upon the *Greeks* and *Barbarians*, and of such Wars as ended not till in the destruction of the *Perſian* Empire. It fell out in the 19th year of *Darius*, the second of the 69 Olympiad, 501 before the *Æra* of Christ. A.M. 3502.

*Aristagoras* with this force went against *Sardis*, which he easily took, all but the Castle wherein *Artaphernes* secured himself. A fire prevented the plundering of the Citie, which was all turned into ashes by the means of a Soldier's burning one particular house. The confusion being great, the *Perſians* and *Lydians* met together in the Market-place, through which ran the River *Pactolus* having Golden Sands, and imbodying themselves prepared to charge the Enemy, which when the *Grecians* perceived they fled for fear to the Mountain *Tmolus*, and thence to their ships lying at *Coresus* in the Territories of *Ephesus*. The *Perſians* in the pursuit slew a great part of them, amongst whom fell *Eualcides* Captain of the *Eretrians* so much celebrated by *Simonides* the *Cæian* Poet, and other eminent men: those that escaped dispersed themselves through the Cities. *Aristagoras* could not by any means persuade the *Athenians* from returning home; notwithstanding, for what had hapned to *Sardis*, *Darius* was exceedingly incensed against them; inso much

Defeated in his retreat.

## SECT. 2.

Cyprius revolted,

that he commanded one of his servants where ever he sat at meat, thrice to sound these words in his ears, Sir, remember the Athenians.

18. At this time all *Cyprus* revolted from the *Perſian*, except the *Amathusians*, whom also the Rebels besieged. Yet *Darius*, blinded by the specious pretences of *Histiæus*, let him go, thinking indeed that being present he might do him especial service in extinguishing the Rebellion. Though the *Ionians* were forsaken by their friends of *Athens*, yet they proceeded, and crossing the *Helleſpont* took *Byzantium* with the Towns adjacent, and thence went into *Caria*, a great part whereof they drew into society with them in the War. But the scene of affairs was presently altered. *Artybius* the *Perſian* with a numerous Army was sent against *Cyprus*, and the *Ionians* followed with a Fleet to the aid of *Onesilus*, who first procured the revolt, and now lay before *Amathusia*. Both parties being well appointed by Sea and Land, they engaged with their Fleets and land Armies. The *Ionians* had the better by Sea, but on Land the *Cypriots* were betrayed by *Stefanor*, Tyrant of the *Cariæſes*, and by the *Salaminians*, so that being utterly routed, *Onesilus* was slain, and *Aristo-Cyprus* Prince of the *Solians*, and son to that *Philo-Cyprus* whom *Solon* commended in his Verses above other Tyrants, or Reguli. The *Ionians* receiving intelligence of this overthrow, and how all the Cities in the Island were besieged, except *Salamis* (which the inhabitants had already given up to *Gorgus* their ancient Prince) hastened away. Of all Towns *Soli* stood longest out; but in the fifth month was taken by the *Perſians*, who undermined the Walls; and thus *Cyprus* was reduced into its former bondage, a year after it had cast off the yoke.

And is recovered.

19. The *Perſian* Lieutenants, or *Satrapæ*, viz. *Daurises*, *Hymeer*, and *Oianes*, who had married the daughters of *Darius*, after they had driven the *Ionians* to their ships, parted the revolted Cities which each of them should fall on. The two former reduced many upon the *Helleſpont* and *Propontis*, and the later by the assistance of *Artaphernes* took *Clazomenæ* in *Ionis*, and *Cuma* in *Eolia*, after which *Aristagoras* was utterly discouraged, and thought of nothing but flight. *Hecataeus* the Historian, who had formerly dissuaded him from Rebellion; now advised him to build a Fort in the Island *Leris*, where he might continue for some time, till it were convenient for him to return to *Mileus*; but his resolution being bent for *Mycinus*, a Town built by *Histiæus* in *Thrace* upon the River *Strymon*, and amongst the *Edones*, thither he soon after departed with as many Volunteers as would follow him, leaving the Government of *Mileus* to *Pythagoras*, a man of the most approved fidelity amongst the Towns-men. He obtained the Country thereabout without much trouble, but besieging the Town was cut off by the *Thracians* with all his Forces.

*Aristagoras* slain.

20. *Histiæus* being dismissed by *Darius* upon that account formerly mentioned was ere this come to *Sardis*. *Artaphernes* demanding of him what should have moved the *Ionians* to Rebell, he answered, that he knew not, but wondred at the thing, whereto the other replied, telling him plainly that he had made that speech which *Aristagoras* had put on. Fearing therefore to stay with him whom he perceived sufficiently to understand the matter, he fled the night after, and conveyed himself into the Island *Chios*, where the inhabitants supposing that he came to promote the affairs of *Darius*, cast him into prison, but upon farther advice restored him to liberty. Then sent he to some *Perſians* lying at *Sardis*, who were partakers of his conspiracy, willing them to rise, but *Artaphernes* having timely notice thereof prevented it by putting them to death. This device failing, he procured the *Chians* to convey him to *Mileus*; but there he could not be received, the inhabitants rejoicing that they were rid both of him and *Aristagoras*; so that endeavouring to get in by night he was wounded in the Thigh, and forced to retire himself again to *Chios*. Here now not being able to procure any ships by all his intreaties, he went over to *Mitylene* where he persuaded the *Lesbians* to furnish him with 8 Vessels, with which he sailed to *Byzantium*; and at this Port he intercepted all such ships of the *Ionians* as coming from *Pontus* refused to obey him.

21. The



## SECT. 2.

Miletus be-  
sieged.

21. The Persian Generals having much weakened the power of the Carians, and subdued all the Ionians that lived upon the Hellespont, were now ready to go against Miletus both by Sea and Land. The Ionian Deputies assembling in Pavionium (the place of their publick Councils) resolved to levie no Land Army against them, but withstand their violence from the walls of Miletus, and make as great and strong a Fleet as possible. They ranged in order of battel near Leda, a little Island lying over against Miletus. The wing that looked towards the East the Milesians themselves made up with 80 Sail; to them joyned the Prienians with twelve, and the Miansians with three. By them stood the Teians with seventeen, and by them the Chians with 100 Vessels. Beyond these were placed the Erybraians with eight ships, and the Phocaans with three. Next to them stood the Lesbians with seventy, and in the last place were seen the Samians making up the Western wing with Sixty ships; the whole consisting of 353 Gallies with three ranks of Oars. But the Persian Navie contained 600 of Phœnicians, Cyprians, Egyptians, and Cilicians.

22. Though the Persian Fleet almost doubled the other in number of Vessels, yet the Captains feared both the skill and valour of the Ionians, and therefore betook themselves to politricks Councils. They sent for the several Reguli or Tyrants of the Cities, whom Aristagoras had deposed at the beginning of the War, and desired that every one would endeavour to draw off his own Citizens. While they were using their utmost indeavour herein, Dionysius the Phocian Captain, and General of the whole Ionian Navie, exercising his men continually for the fight, they being unaccustomed to such discipline, were after seven dayes weary of it, and pitching their tents in the Island, therein shaded themselves, and could not be got to their ships. The Samians doubting whitherto their sluggishness might tend, though it wisdom to hearken to the propositions made from the Persians by Ages the son of Syloson their Prince, who advised them by a timely repentance to save their estates, rather than expose themselves to the anger of the Persian, who though he were beaten at present, was able to bring another Fleet five times as big, so that their labour and danger would know no end. Their Captains therefore took occasion at the disorder of the Ionians, to deny any further obedience, and, when the Phœnicians began to row their Fleet together to fall on, they hoisted up their Sails and departed. After this pattern the Lesbians and a great part of the Ionians withdrew themselves; onely the Chians stood to it, who raking many of their Enemies ships, lost more of their own, and at length fled to Land. Some of them running their Gallies on ground at Mycale, went on foot by night unto Ephesus, where the women then celebrating the Theismophoria, the Inhabitants taking them for thieves issued out and slew many of them. But Dionysius having light on the Persian Gallies, retreated not home, knowing his own Country would go to wrack with the rest, but going into Phœnicia, there robbed certain ships of burthen of much wealth, and thus enriched sailed into Sicilie.

23. The Persians having thus done their work at Sea, presently laid siege to Miletus, which by undermining the walls, and using all sorts of Batteries, they utterly destroyed in the sixth year after the Rebellion was first begun by Aristagoras. Some of those Inhabitants which survived their Country, together with the Samians, transported themselves into Sicilie; the rest being brought to Susa before Darius, he without any punishment inflicted on them, placed in the City Ampia, situated where the River Tigris falleth into the Red Sea. As for their grounds, the Persians took to themselves the Champain Country, and gave the Mountainous parts to the Carians of Pedasus. Histians seeing what was befallen Miletus with some Lesbians subdued Chios easily, being weakened before, whence with many Ionians and Æolians, he undertook an Expedition against Thasus; but hearing that the Phœnicians were gone from Miletus into the other parts of Ionia, he returned back to Lesbos. Here his forces not trusting themselves, he went over into the Province of Asarnes, as it were thence, and from the Territories of the

It is taken.

Idem ibid. Capp.  
6. &c.Idem ibid. Capp.  
18. &c.

Capp. 26, &amp;c.

## SECT. 2.

Histieus taken  
and put to  
death.

the Mysians adjoining to gather forrage, where Harpagus the Persian then lying with a considerable force, engaged with him in a fight at Malewa, and having cut off the greater part of his men, took him alive. Being carried to Susa unto Ariaphernes, they nailed his body to a cross, and sent his head as a present to Darius, who was displeased that they had not presented him alive, and caused his head to be buried, as of a friend, and one that had well deserved of the Persians. Now not onely Caria, but all the Islands and Cities on the continent were also recovered without much trouble: the most beautiful of the Boyes being made Eunuchs, and of the Girls sent to the Persian Court. And thus the Ionians were subdued the third time; once by the Lydians, and twice by the Persians: the tributes were established by Ariaphernes, according to Darius his former prescription, and all things settled at the cost of the revolvers.

24. Two years after the destruction of Miletus, and in the 26th of his reign, Darius withdrawing the commissions of all his late Captains, sent Mardonius the son of Gobryas, who had married his daughter Artabazas, with a great power to the Sea. Mardonius coming into Cilicia, sent away all his Land Forces towards the Hellespont, and passing by Sea into Ionia, there dissolved all the Tyrannies, as they were called, or powers of single men, and brought in the Democratical Government into the Cities. After this with his Fleet he subdued the Thasians, and with his Land Army other Macedonians besides them that formerly obeyed his Master; but looking from Acanthus and coasting by the Mountain Athos, such a Tempest fell upon the Navie as sunk three hundred Vessels, wherein perished above 20000 men. Then quartering his Foot in Macedonia, the Thracians called Brygi, fell in upon him by night, and killing many wounded him also; whereupon, he turned his Forces upon them, and subduing them, carried back the Army into Asia. The year following Darius constrained the Thasians, who were accused by their neighbours of having an intention to revolt, to pull down their walls, and carry all their ships to Abdera. Then to try of what temper the Græcians were, he sent throughout Greece to demand Earth and Water. The Lacedæmonians and Athenians threw the Messengers into pits, bidding them thence to take Earth and Water to carry to their Master; but the Inhabitants of Ægina and other Islands out of fear complied, for which they were accused by the Athenian Ambassadors at Sparta, as intending with the Persians to fight against Athens. Hereupon Cleomenes one of the Kings, was sent to exhort the principal revolvers, but such a contention fell betwixt him and his Colleague Demaratus about it, as ended at length in the deprivation of the latter, who thus unjustly outed of his Patrimony, betook himself to Darius, by whom he was bountifully entertained.

Earth and  
Water de-  
manded by  
the Græcians.Darius sendeth  
forces into  
Greece.They take  
Eretria.

25. When Darius sent into Greece to demand Earth and Water, he gave order to the Cities upon the Sea-coasts to build long ships and flat bottomed boats for the transportation of Horfe. The burning of Sardis by the means of the Athenians and Eretrians, was thrice every time he went to meet still founded in his ears. Hippia the late Prince of Athens was yet provoking him against that City, and at length procured forces to reduce him into his former place. Under colour of restoring him, Darius intended, if possible, to subdue all Greece, and therefore removing Mardonius, under whom the Fleet had of late miscarried, he put in his room Datis a Mede, and Ariaphernes his brothers son, to whom he gave in charge to lay waste Athens with Eretria, and bring the inhabitants thereof prisoners into his presence. In their passage they burnt Naxos, took some Forces and Hostages out of the Islands, and landed their Horfe upon the Coasts of Eretria. They prepared to fight; but, the Enemy keeping himself within the walls, they strongly attempted the storming of the City for six dayes, and on the seventh had it betrayed into their hands by Euphorbus and Philagrus, two of the principal Citizens. The Athenians hearing of their approach, sent Phidippides a famous, though ordinary Foot-post, to Lacedæmon, to desire that State to hasten their succours. They resolved to send aid; but said it was impossible

Capp. 43, 44,  
&c.A. M. 3509.  
Ol. 71. an. 1.  
V. C. 258.  
Datis 26.

Capp. 46, &amp;c.

Capp. 94, 95,  
96, &c.

Speedily

## SECT. 2.

speedily to do it, for that they could not break the Law, which forbade them to go forth on the ninth day of the month *Or*, except the Moon was at the full. Whilst they expected that season, the *Athenians* made choice of ten Captains for the War, and by this time the *Persians*, now Masters of *Eretria*, sailed into *Attica*, wherein they were conducted by *Hippias*, to the plains of *Marathon*, as most convenient for Horse. After the *Athenians* had taken the field, the *Plataeans* came in to their aid, but a great dispute there was amongst the Captains, whether they should stand to the hazard of a battle. Those that were for the Negative had carried it, but that *Miltiades*, who was all for fighting, drew over *Callimachus* one of the *Polemarchi* to his party. The major part of the votes then passing on his side, each Captain assigned his day to him (who had formerly been Prince of the *Chersonesus*, and thence was expelled by the *Persians*) committing the management of the fight to his discretion.

Are over-  
thrown at  
*Marathon*.

26. *Miltiades* accepted of the charge, yet thought good not to fight till his one day (which was the tenth) should be arrived. Then set he the Army in order, and being at a miles distance from the Enemy, led very fast upon him, which the *Persians* attributed to madness, seeing the other so few in comparison of themselves, and badly provided both of Horse and Arms. The fight continued long, wherein, in the middle battle the *Persians* put the other to flight; but in both the wings the *Graecians* prevailed, and turning themselves upon those that worsted their fellows, made great slaughter of them as far as the Sea side, where they also seized upon seven of their ships. Concerning the number of the slain, Writers do not agree. *Herodotus* writeth of 6400 of the *Barbarians*, and 192 of the *Graecians*. On the one side fell *Hippias*, as *Justin* hath recorded out of *Trogus*, and *Callimachus* Lib. 2. c. 9. on the other. What year the battle was fought is not certainly known, but in the second or third of the 72 *Olympiad*, and four or five before the death of *Darius*.

27. *Datis* and *Artaphernes* returning into *Persia*, carried the *Eretrians* captive along with them to *Susa*, where they presented them before *Darius*; though *Ctesias* wrote that *Datis* was slain in the battle of *Marathon*, and that his body was denied to be restored. *Darius* placed the *Eretrians* in *Anderia* in *Cissia*, a Country so called, at 210 furlongs distance from *Susa*, the possession whereof their posterity held a long time together with their own language. Notwithstanding the defeat at *Marathon*, he left not off thoughts of conquering *Greece*, making all possible provision for another invasion. But in the fourth year after, more work fell into his hands; for though *Diodorus* telleth, that the *Egyptians* much honoured him as one of their Law-givers, they now rebelled. The year following he was provided for both Expeditions, and was about to undertake them, when the custom of the Country first required that he should name his Successor. He had three children before he was King by the daughter of *Gobryas*, whereof the eldest *Artabazanes*, (by others called *Artemenes* and *Ariamenes*) challenged the Kingdom by virtue of his birth-right. But it was judged due to *Xerxes* his eldest son by *Mossa Cyrus* his daughter, who was founder of the Empire, and he accordingly was declared at this time; although some make this civil and loving contest betwixt the two brothers, to have happened after their Father's death, and been judged by *Artaphernes* their Uncle. But as *Darius* was about setting forwards for *Greece* he was prevented by death, the first year after the rebellion of *Egypt* ending, after he had reigned 36 years complete, in the third year of the 73 *Olympiad* ending, before the *Æra* of Christ, 485. A. M. 3519.

*Darius* declar-  
eth his Suc-  
cessor.

Dieth.

*Xerxes*.

28. *Xerxes* succeeded his Father in the third year of the third *Olympiad*, being the fourth King of *Persia*, the right to the Empire whereof he fetched from *Cyrus* his Grand-father by the Mother's side. He was scarce settled in the Throne, when *Mardonius* his kinsman stirred him up with earnestness not to give over the War which he had begun with *Greece*, promising to himself great command upon the conquest of *Europe*, which he made *Xerxes* believe

*Idem* lib. 7.  
c. 1, &c.

*Vide Justin.*  
l. 2. c. 10.  
*Plutarch.*  
*Ætoli* *Diadema*  
*Diad.*  
*Apoteb.* & in  
*Antaxer.*

*Herodot.* lib. 7.  
ad initium.

## SECT. 2.

Recovareth  
*Egypt*.

Consulteth  
about renew-  
ing the War  
with *Greece*.

believe would be as readily performed as spoken. He, though ambitious enough, was not at first of himself very forward, but as it concerned him, thought first of recovering *Egypt*, for which all things were left in readiness by his father, and in the year next after his death turned his forces thither with present success. For, he reduced that Country under the yoke, which he laid heavier upon it than formerly, and committed the Government thereof to his brother *Achamenes*, who was after many years slain by *Inarus* the *Libyan*.

29. *Egypt* being thus fortunately recovered, he was therewith much elevated, and now had resolved to follow on the War with *Greece*; but to hear what his Captains would say, he called them together to advise about it, to whom with vanity enough he opened his mind, and was seconded by an indiscreet flattering speech of *Mardonius*, who seemed with words to be able to blast the present condition of *Greece*. His Uncle *Artabanus*, a grave and long experienced man, strongly urged the contrary, shewing how vain humane confidence was, how brittle and instable the fortune of Princes and others, which appeared sufficiently in his fathers expedition against the *Scythians* first, and since that, against the *Athenians*: that the *Greeks* were not so weak a Nation he proved by the battle at *Marathon*, that the thing which he attempted was most dangerous to be thought on again, and again, that without mature deliberation the attempt would be rash however the success should happen; that God many times pulls down the highest things, and humbleth the haughty that trust in their own strength, by making them to fall into sudden calamities: and as for *Mardonius*, he chastised his youthful and ambitious heart with a sharp reprehension, foretelling him what would be the reward of his rashness. But this wise Counsel could not be heard from a grave man, the ears of *Xerxes* being stopped by the suggestions of one more agreeable to his head-strong, and youthful humour; so that he imputed to his Uncle baseness of mind and cowardise, inflicting this punishment upon him for it, that staying at home he should not partake of so glorious an expedition. To this enterprize he was also stirred up by the *Alenada*, or Princes of *Thessaly*, who grieved at the liberties of the *Greeks*: by the son of *Pisistratus* also banished *Athens*, who living in his Court, abused his credulity by the help of a Wizard, or Fortune-Teller.

30. Yet not long after, considering what *Artabanus* had said, he changed his purpose, and calling his Council together again, after he had commended his Uncles opinion, signified the same unto them, at which all the wiser sort much rejoiced; but the thing running much in his mind, so that he was disturbed in his sleep, he returned to his former resolution, and resolved on the expedition. In the preparation for it three years (*Herodotus* saith four) were taken up, all *Asia* being concerned therein so far, as to seem to be removed out of its place. A Navy he provided out of all the Sea-Coasts of his Empire to the number of above 1200 Vessels, which he commanded to meet at *Cuma* and *Phocæa*; and having out of all his Provinces gathered great multitudes of horse and foot, at length he moved from *Susa* in the fourth year of the 74th *Olympiad*, and in the fifth year (not after the *Egyptian* expedition as *Herodotus* hath it, but) of his reign. All the land forces met at *Critaea*, with which he passed the River *Halys*, and came to *Celæne*, a City of *Phrygia*, where *Pythius* the *Lydian* (or *Bithynian* as *Pliny* will have him) entertained him and his Army, & presented him with a vast summe of money, which he returned with advantage. And so at length he came to *Sardis*, whence he sent into *Greece* to demand earth and water, as Symbols of subjection. The Navy was come to the *Chersonesus* by this time, which that it might shun the inconvenience which that formerly Governed by *Mardonius* had incurred, by sayling about the Mountain, or Promontory of *Athos*, he caused the Mountain to be cut off from the main, by a Ditch so broad as two Vessels might sayl a breast, through which the whole Navy passed. And wintering this year at *Sardis*, he commanded a Bridge to be laid over the *Helmuspont* (a mile over, wanting an 8th part) which being shattered and broken

*Idem* *ibid.* Capp.  
22, 23, &c.

He wintereth  
at *Sardis*.

C c

by

## SECT. 2.

by a great Tempest, he took so hainously, as he commanded 300 stripes to be given the Sea, and a pair of Fetters to be cast into it in token of servitude, and causing the heads of the work-men to be cut off, ordered other Bridges to be made.

31. In the beginning of the Spring he moved from *Sardis* with his whole Army and came to *Abydos*, the day being turned into night by a sudden darkness (though no stars appeared) at his setting forth; with which portentous thing (being no true eclipse) *Pythius*, who formerly entertained him, was so terrified, that of his five sons listed in the Army, he desired the eldest, as the comfort of his old age, might be left to him, at which the King was so angry, that he commanded the young man to be cut in two, and the parts so to be laid afunder that the Army might passe betwixt them. When he was come to *Abydos* he had an extream desire to view all his forces, for which purpose he had an high ascent raised for him, where he also desired to see a Sea-fight, which in shew was performed; and wherein the *Sidonians* had the better: With the fight hereof, and all his Land forces on the shore, he was elevated into a great passion of joy, apprehending of how many thousands he was Master, and then presently again into another of weeping, the cause of which *Ariabannus* his Uncle demanding (who had thus far accompanied him) he told him, it was in thinking that of so many thousands not a man should be alive 100 years after. Hence that wise old man took occasion to discourse to him most gravely of the vanity, and miseries of this life, and being again importuned to tell his opinion concerning the expedition, did it with the same faithfulness as formerly, after which he sent him back to *Susa* to Govern as his Deputy in his absence.

Passeth over  
into Europe.

32. Then prepared he for his passage into Europe, and having performed his Heathenish Devotions to the Sun, by one of the Bridges bending towards the *Euxine*, passed over his horse and foot, and by another inclining towards the *Egean*, his slaves and beasts, seven dayes, and as many nights being taken up in the passage. The Fleet sayled Westward to the Promontory of *Sarpedon*, the Land forces marching through the *Chersonesus* of *Thrace* to *Agora*, and so bore down towards the Bay of *Melana*, where a River of the same name failed them in drinking, as *Scamander*, and several others in *Asia* are said to have done before. Passing over, and moving Westward they came to *Dorisus*, where being a vast plain watered with the great River *Hebrus*, there they pitched their Tents, and *Xerxes* mustered his whole Army, both by Land and Sea.

33. The greatest number of men it contained that ever were seen listed under the Banners of one man; but yet great is the variety found in Writers about the true number: *Herodotus* writeth of 1700000 foot, and 80000 Horse, besides Camels, and Chariots; *Diodorus Siculus* not half so many foot, viz. 800000: and yet what he assigns to the foot, *Ctesias* attributeth to the whole Army, which he writeth to have consisted of 80 Myriads, besides Chariots; *Justin* from *Trogus*, and *Orosius* out of him, reckons 700000 men out of his own Dominions, and 300000 Auxiliaries. *Alian* writeth of 700000 in all, *Corhelius Nepos* of 700000 foot, and 400000. (perhaps rather 40000) Horse. *Pliny* 788000 (for the sake of *Darius*, *Xerxes* being to be read) and *Isocrates* agreeth with *Alian*, mentioning onely 700000 in all. As for the Navy there were found 1207 beaked ships, and other Vessels for carrying of Horses, and for other uses 3000. according to *Herodotus*, from whom *Diodorus* little dissenteth as to the number of the Gallies, writing; there were found above 1200 of them, to which he addeth 830 Horse-boats, and other Vessels of burthen of 30 Oars apiece 3000. with the former agreeth *Ctesias* (though often dissenting) and *Cicero*: with the later *Isocrates* and *Lyfias*. *Orosius* mentions 1200 beaked Gallies, and 3000 Vessels of burthen; and as for that place in *Justin*, which encreaseth the number of the Fleet to 10000. there is no doubt of its corruption. *Herodotus* by giving 200 men to every Gally, and furnishing all the other Vessels, conjectures 517610 men to have been bestowed in the whole Fleet, so that at this muster the Land and Sea-forces

*Ibid. Capp. 52.*  
*53. &c.*

A. M. 3525.  
Olymp. 75. AN. 1.  
P. C. 274.  
*Xerxes* 6.

*Herodotus lib. 8.*  
*cap. 60. & 7.*  
*Diodorus l. 11.*  
*ad Olymp. 75.*  
*an. 1.*  
*Ctesias in ex-*  
*cerptis.*  
*Orosius lib. 1.*  
*cap. 10.*  
*Alian lib. 13.*  
*cap. 3.*  
*Cor. Nep. in*  
*Themistoc.*  
*Plin. lib. 33.*  
*cap. 10.*  
*Isocrat. in Pa-*  
*rtheniaco.*

## SECT. 2.

forces being added together, with the 20000 *Arabians* that drove Camels, and the *Libyans* the Chariots, at this rate would amount to 2317610. besides slaves and others that followed the Camp.

34. Notwithstanding all this number, he commanded all the Nations in his passage, from *Dorisus* towards *Greece*, to march along with him, so that hereby came an accession of 120 ships to his Fleet, to which giving 200 men a piece, the number will amount to 24000. and to his Land Army another of 30 Myriads, or 300000 men, as *Herodotus* gathereth (though *Diodorus* thinketh lesse something then 20 Myriads) and so the whole number of his *Asian* and *European* Souldiers would on this account amount to 2641610. and yet he thinketh the number of slaves and attendants to have rather exceeded this, so that if it onely be doubled, the number of those persons that by Land came to *Thermopylae*, and by Sea to *Sepius*, amounted to 5282220. And for the number of women that baked meat, and of Concubines and Eunuchs which followed, no man can assign them, of carriage beasts, and for the Waggon, and of *Indian* Dogs no man could count; so that no wonder it is that to this stupendous multitude some sorts of Rivers failed to afford drink, or that *Plutarch* and *Isocrates* should write 5000000 to have followed *Xerxes* into *Greece*; the wonder is, that no greater plague, aged amongst them, that any concord could be preserved amongst so many Nations, & that provisions could be procured for the preservation of the lives of so many Creatures.

The number  
of his men.

The prepara-  
tions of the  
Grecians for  
defence.

35. The *Grecians* all this while having had intelligence, first of his design all along from *Demaratus* the *Spartan* Exile, and then of his motions, were according to their several interests variously affected. Some, as the *Thebans*, and the rest of the *Boeotians* (except the *Thebians*, and them of *Plataea*) and many *Thessalians* (persuaded by the *Alenade*) and several others, out of fear, had under-hand sent earth and water, as Symbols of subjection: Many also were uncertain in their resolutions, not knowing what to do. The rest meeting at the *Isthmus*, and consulting for the publick safety, resolved, and swore to join together in War against the Persians, and with United power to defend the liberty of *Greece*, at the present to waive all their private differences for that purpose, and to remit the monies owing to each other; to devote the tenth to *Apollo*, i. e. to do to death the tenth man of all those that had already given up themselves to the Enemy. The War which had often been patched up, and still brake out again, betwixt the *Athenians* and them of *Egina*, was composed. By occasion of this War the *Athenians* of late had strengthened themselves exceedingly at Sea, through the procurement of *Themistocles* the son of *Neocles*, a very wise man, who had brought the people to lay out the money, which issued out of the Golden Mines of *Lauria*, and was to be divided amongst the multitude man by man, upon shipping, whereby the Fleet was encreased to almost 200 sayl, and *Greece* came to be preserved. About the same time it hapned that the *Athenians* asking Counsel at *Delphos*, the Oracle answered, that Wooden Walls alone would be security to them; which several interpreting several wayes, he expounded ships to be meant by it, and pressed hard, that a Sea victory was promised them at the Island *Salamine*, which being received by the greater part, they set themselves with all their might to the strengthening of their Navy.

36. But those of the League finding it convenient to call in the help of their friends, and Allies, sent into *Sicily*, *Corcyra* and *Crete*, to desire aid and assistance of the *Greek* Colonies against the publick Enemy; and to *Argos* to excite them to join against him with the rest of their Neighbours. But all was to no purpose; for *Gelon*, who then had all *Sicily* in his power, and was thought to have more ships than all the affociates put together, refused to give any aid except he might be declared Captain General of the whole Army; the *Corcyraans* promised great matters, confessing their safety to be involved in that of *Greece*; but resolving to make use of the success of either party, when danger threatened *Greece* from *Xerxes*, they sent 60 ships, under shew of supply, but commanded the Fleet to hover about *Laconia*, and apply it self to *Xerxes*, if the Conquerour, as coming in

## SECT. 2.

to his assistance, which being observed, after the fight the Officers excused themselves for being absent at the fight at *Salamine*; because the Etesian winds blowing contrary, they could not double the Cape of *Malea*. The *Cretans* very powerful at Sea put off the matter under pretence of hearing an answer from the Oracle at *Delphos*, whither they said they had sent: and the *Argives* out of hatred to the *Lacedæmonians*, proposed such conditions as could not be admitted, and afflicted them sore with the rest of the associates.

37. The *Athenians* then and *Lacedæmonians* being most engaged (against whom the design of the *Persian* was most bent) applied themselves with all their might to make resistance. *Xerxes* being about to passe over into *Europe*; the *Thessalians* sent to them, demanding help to secure themselves, or else being unable to stand out they must yield. The Council General at that time being assembled in the *Isthmus*, thinking it wisdom to withstand him at the first entry into *Greece*, rather than to defend it in broken parts, sent presently away by Sea 10000 men into *Thessalia*, under conduct of *Evenetus* a *Spartan*, and *Themistocles* the *Athenian*, who in conjunction with the *Thessalian* Horse, at the River *Peneus*, flowing betwixt the Straights of *Ofsa* and *Olympus*, might hinder the passage of the *Persians*; but after they came there, it being shewed to them to be but a vain thing there to oppose themselves against so great a multitude, especially seeing there were other passages into *Thessalie*, by *Alexander* King of *Macedonia*, they returned back again to the *Isthmus*, and the *Thessalians* thus forsaken, gave themselves up to the *Persians*. Afterwards the Council again deliberating what should be done, resolved to seize upon the Straights of *Thermopyla*, which are the only passage out of *Thessalie* into *Greece*, and better to be maintained by far than the other, and concluded on sending 6000 Foot thither under command of *Leonidas* the valiant King of *Sparta*. Sea matters were committed to the care of the *Athenians* and *Eginetans* especially, and it was resolved, that the Fleet should sail to the *Artemisian* shore, towards the North part of the Island *Eubœa*, and not far from the Straights. *Xerxes* drawing near, this was done accordingly, both as to Land and Sea Forces; but the Navy receiving an Alarm, through a mischance of three of its ships, retreated into the Straights betwixt *Eubœa* and *Boœtia*, where *Euripus* floweth betwixt *Chalcis* and *Aulis*; but understanding of a great Wreck suffered by the *Persian* Fleet, wherein by tempestuous weather were lost 400 Vessels, with a great multitude of men, and much treasure, it returned back after a few daies; in the mean while *Xerxes* drew down with his innumerable multitudes to the Straights.

38. He sent before a Spie to look how *Leonidas* and his men behaved themselves, who bringing him word how he found the *Spartans*, who then kept watch, exercising themselves in gymnick games, and dressing their heads as on some Festival, he demanded of *Demaratus* their Country-man the reason thereof. He told him they were fully resolved to die for their Country, and ready to fight it out to the last man, if need required, whereat he derided him as before when he spake of the valour of his Country-men, thinking they would be so skared at his multitudes, as not to dare to come to hand-strokes. But finding no such matter, but *Demaratus* his words to be true, on the fifth day after, he commanded a party of *Medes* to fall upon them, who being with great slaughter repulsed, he sent his Band of *Persians*, which being invincible as he thought, he named immortal, and they, though wanting no courage under the eyes of the King, who from an high throne beheld the fight, came off with the same successe; whereat he was astonished, grew melancholy, as being now sollicitous for his whole Army. The next day the fight was renewed, but with the same successe, great slaughter being made of the *Persians*, so that the way being more narrow by the carkeises, there was no room for a multitude to fight, which being driven one upon another, the confusion and consequently the slaughter was the greater. At this *Xerxes* was struck with great consternation, not knowing what to do.

39. There was one in the Army, a *Trachintan*, named *Epiates* or *Ephialtes* (as *Pausanias* writeth it) who understanding his trouble went to him, and offered

## SECT. 2.

The fight at  
Thermopyla.

ferred to shew a way over the Mountains, by which, though with much difficulty, he might send a Party to come about, and fall on the backs of the *Gracians*. Being cheered with this, he sent as many as shewed themselves most forward, with him, under the command of *Hydarnus*, who passing over the River *Aopus*, got in the dark of the night up into the Mountain, where beating down the Guard of *Phocians* which there watched, they began to come into the more plain and easie way, when the thing was carried by some fugitives to the *Gracians*. They were stricken with great terror at the report, all but *Leonidas* with his *Spartans*, who for that the *Lacedæmonians* were told by an Oracle, that they must either lose their City or one of their Kings, was very readie to abide to the utmost. Wherefore he willingly gave way to his associates to depart, bidding them to reserve themselves for the better condition of their Country, who all presently falling off, except the *Thespians*, and such *Thebans* as the rest of the *Gracians* had forced thither, not so much to help them, as to keep them as Hostages; with them and his 300 *Spartans* he prepared himself to fight with a mind devoted already to death. When the Sun was up, and the *Persians* not yet got down, those resolute *Gracians* passing the Straights to redeem their lives at dearer rates, fell in upon the multitudes of their enemies, with which being compassed about, they were all cut off, with *Leonidas*, except such as retiring back into the Straights took an hill, and fighting valiantly with those *Persians* whom *Epiates* had led down upon them, sold their lives as their fellows at a dear rate; 20000 of *Xerxes* his Army with this handful of men being slain. The *Thebans* alone lifted up their Targets begging quarter, crying out they were brought thither against their wills, and that they were *Xerxes* his Subjects, yet were they slain, or being taken were stigmatized for disgrace. The body of *Leonidas* being found was nailed to a cross. These things hapned at *Thermopyla* in the middle of Summer, while some of the *Gracians* in *Peloponnesus* were celebrating the games of the 75th *Olympiad*, in the beginning of its first year, wherein *Callias* was *Archon* at *Athenis*, as we are told from *Diodorus Siculus*, of whose history digested according to the years of their solemnities, that part now extant beginneth with this Expedition; at which time also Philosophy was translated out of *Ionia* to *Athenis* by *Anaxagoras* the *Clazomenian*, Scholar to *Anaximenes* the *Mileasian*, who now being twenty years old began to profess it in that City, way being made for Learning there by the Library collected through the industrie of *Pisistratus*.

40. *Xerxes* having now had experience of what *Demaratus* had said to him, asked his advice for carrying on the War: being in great doubt what to do, after he had heard how they of *Sparta* were able to arm well-nigh 8000 men of such temper as the former; and that the other *Lacedæmonians* though inferior to those were very valiant. *Demaratus* being of this opinion, that all the Land-forces would assemble together at the *Isthmus*, to defend that entrie into *Peloponnesus*, advised him to send 300 ships well manned to spoil the Country of *Laconia*, thereby to keep the *Lacedæmonians* and their neighbours entangled at home, whilst having subdued the rest, he might afterwards fall upon them, who would be then too weak of themselves to sustain his power: he farther also advised, that 300 Vessels should seize upon *Cythera* the Island, which lying near the Coasts of *Laconia*, might serve as a place of retreat or rendezvous for their own security, and endamaging of the Enemy; *Chilæ* the *Lacedæmonian* having been wont to say, that it were better for them to have it drowned in the Sea, than to stand so as it did for their disadvantage. But *Achæmenes* the brother of *Xerxes* stiffly impugned this advice, lest by the severing of the Fleet after such losse by the Tempest, they might prove too weak for the *Gracians* at Sea; and to this out of fear, the King submitted, hoping his Land-Army and Fleet should stand each the other in good stead, both holding one course, and not lying far asunder.

41. The Fleet of the *Gracians* stood all this while at *Artemisium*, as a Herodotus l. 8. bullwark to *Eubœa*, commanded by *Eurybiades* the *Lacedæmonian*, to whom the *Athenians* for quietnesse and safety gave place. But now the *Peloponnesians*

Laertius in vita  
Clemens Strom.  
lib. 1.

## SECT. 2.

*Perians* having every one an eye upon his own Country, longed to go farther into *Greece*, and were only staid by the cunning of *Themistocles*, till such time as the *Eubœans* could secure their wives and children, with the principal of their goods. In the mean time the *Perians* thinking to compass them, sent 200 sail to come behind about the Island, they lying in the Straights betwixt it and the Main. They had knowledge of this devise, and not ignorant of the losse sustained by the *Persian Fleet* in the last tempest, set sail at midnight, and met these 200 ships with a counter-surprise, took and sunk thirty of them, and forced the rest to take the Sea, where by foul weather they were driven upon the Rocks, and all cast away. The news of this was brought to the *Gracians* by 53 *Athenian* ships, sent in to encrease the Fleet, which doubled the joy thereof, so that elevated with new hopes, they set next day upon some *Cilician* ships, which were severed from the rest of the Fleet, and damaging them much, returned to *Artemisium*.

## A Sea fight.

42. The *Perians* taking this in great indignation, and fearing the anger of *Xerxes*, resolved to redeem their credit with some notable exploit, and for that purpose the next day in the form of a crescent invaded the *Gracians*. They cheerfully gave them battle, and the fight indured from noon till night, ending with equal losse to both parties. For though more of the *Persian* Vessels were lost, yet, the lesser damage fell as heavy upon the other, which being smaller could lesse bear it, though they fought most manfully for their Liberty and Country, the *Athenians* deserving best amongst them, and amongst the *Athenians*, *Clinias* the Father of *Alcibiades*, a famous man in the next Age. Amongst the *Perians* the *Egyptians* fought most stoutly; and these things hapned at Sea those same three daies in which the Land-action was at *Thermopylae*, in both the Straights the *Greeks* endeavouring to hinder the Enemies access into their Country. But shortly after they had intelligence by one sent out on purpose, what was become of *Leonidas* and those with him, they would needs depart from *Artemisium*, and draw their Navie, much battered in the former Fights, more inwards and nearer home. *Themistocles* seeing their resolution, before they weighed Anchor, perswaded them to kill up the Cattel of the *Eubœans*, and bring the meat on shipboard, rather than to leave them a prey to the Enemy, and engraved upon stones upon the shore, and at the watering-places, where he knew the *Ionians* would come, an exhortation to revolt to the *Greeks*, and side with their Mother-Country, or else stand neutral in the fight, or fight coldly. This he hoped would either prevail with them, or at least render them suspected with the *Persian*.

## A party sent by Xerxes to destroy the Temple of Delphos, consumed with Thunder and Lightning.

43. From *Artemisium* they sailed to the Coast of *Attica*, and at the desire of the *Athenians* took up their harbour at the Island *Salamine*: the *Persian Fleet* removed to *Artemisium* and the Coast adjoining to *Hissotis*. *Xerxes* now having passed the Streights of *Thermopylae*, marched through the Country of *Doris* into *Phocia*, which being forsaken of it's Inhabitants he wasted, and when he came to *Panopæa* a Town thereof, he divided his Army into two parts. With the one he invaded *Greece*, and the other he sent to rifle and burn the famous Temple of *Delphos*; but, as it's said, this party was almost wholly destroyed without humane help, by Thunder and Lightning, and two Rocks, which breaking off from the Mountain *Parnassus*, overwhelmed it: those that escaped were generally killed by the *Phocians*, who having fled into the Mountain for fear of *Xerxes*, fell upon them; so that few remained and escaped to their Friends in *Bœotia*. *Xerxes* now marched through *Bœotia* the Country of his allies into *Attica*, with intention to do his utmost against the City of *Athens* it self.

44. In the mean time the *Gracian Fleet* lying at *Salamine*, though strengthened with a new accession of ships at the Coast of *Trazene*, could hardly be contained there; for every one being solicitous for his own Country, and despairing of *Attica*, and the rest of *Greece* without the *Isthmus*, was busie in fortifying it, and laboured thither to bring the Navy, whence there might be a safe retreat into *Peloponnesus* if need were; This the *Athenians* understanding,

## SECT. 2.

## The Athenians remove.

ing, were sore troubled, as having justly expected that the *Peloponnesians* would joyn with them, and the rest of the associates in defending *Attica*, as they had fought for them at *Artemisium*; but making the best use of it they could, begged of them so long to stay there till they could provide some way for themselves. Having obtained this, they published an Edict by the procurement of *Themistocles* (who improved the Oracle formerly mentioned to this purpose, and invented other devices) that all fit by age should come aboard, and transport their wives & children out of the Citie, with their slaves, & what they could, which was done, most carrying them to *Trazene*, where they were kindly entertained: and that *Aristides*, a man famous for wisdom, justice, and integrity, but lately banished for a time by the *Ostracism*, by the potent faction of *Themistocles*, might return home; by the same procurement another Order was made to recall all such as were so banished, that they might now in time of need serve their Country, and out of fear lest they should joyn themselves to the Enemy.

45. In the Fleet now at *Salamine* were 358 armed ships, besides other vessels of lesse importance, of which 180 were provided and furnished by the *Athenians*, 161 onely by the *Lacedæmonians*, the *Corinthians* sent 40. the inhabitants of *Egina* 30. which were notable for swiftnesse, the *Megarians* 20. they of *Chalcis* furnished as many, having the Vessels of the *Athenians*: the rest were supplied in lesser numbers by the *Chians*, *Naxians*, *Melians*, and *Seriphians* Islanders. Whilest the Officers were in Council about the place of battle, news came that the Enemy was entered *Attica*, wasting all with fire and sword: for having in *Bœotia* burned the Towns of the *Thebians*, and *Platæans*, who had forsaken their habitations, he hasted into *Attica*, where consuming all things, he entered *Athens* three moneths after he had passed over his forces into *Europe*. The Castle some few who would not leave their ancient seat held out to the last, and were all put to the sword, having refused quarter upon a vain confidence of the Oracle, that the Citie should be defended with wooden Walls, and thinking they fulfilled the same by fortifying themselves with Boards and Pallisadoes: the Temple of *Minerva* in the Castle he burnt to ashes. The message being brought, the Captains departed every man to his ship, decreeing nothing, and all the rest of the *Peloponnesians* determined to sayl to the *Isthmus*.

46. This resolution might have proved fatal to all *Greece*, had it not been prevented by the wisdom of *Themistocles*, who being stirred up by *Mnesiphilus* of *Athens* followed *Eurybiades* the Admiral into his ship, and obtained of him again to Assemble the Council. Here he overcame him by his mildnesse, who lifting up his Rod in an heat to strike him, he bade him strike so he would but hear. When he came to speak of staying at *Salamine*, one *Adimantus* upbraided him with the losse of his Country, saying, It was not fit that such an one should give Counsel to them that had theirs remaining to them; to whom he boldly replied, that though they, the *Athenians*, had left their houses and valls, dead things, and not to be valued at their liberty, yet they had a Citie left them, than which there was none greater in *Greece*, viz. 200 ships, which as yet was present, and ready to help their associates; but if they would depart, and betray them, he would have them know they should presently hear that the *Athenians* had both a free Citie and Territories as good as that they had left, meaning *Sirio*, a Town in *Italy*, in their power: *Eurybiades* hearing this, and fearing to be deprived of the *Athenian Fleet*, so necessary for their support, inclined to his opinion, inso much that the *Gracians* resolved to stay, and prepared themselves for the fight; but the *Persian Fleet* drawing down to *Phalerum* the *Athenian Port*, and the Land army to the Sea-side, the *Peloponnesians* were so affrighted thereat, that having all their minds upon the *Isthmus*, the advice of *Themistocles* was not at all regarded, and they resolved to weigh Anchors; and to be gone that night, and notice hereof was given to the Mariners.

47. For now *Xerxes* his Fleet was drawn down so repaired, and increased by a new Accession of ships; that it was altogether as considerable as before the

Plutarch ut  
supra.

Herodotus &  
Plutarch ut  
prius.



## SECT. 2.

the shipwreck at *Sepias*, and taking all Nations as he passed along with them, his Land Army contained as great a number as heretofore at *Thermopylae*. The King came down from *Athens* to *Phalerus* the Port, and called a Council to deliberate what should be done. All the Captains were for a Sea-fight, the Kings of *Tyre* and *Sidon* being first asked their opinions by *Mardonius*; onely a woman, *Artemisia* Queen of *Halicarnassus*, a wife and valiant woman, who had followed *Xerxes* in this expedition with five ships, with grave and important arguments dissuaded a Sea-fight, and advised him to enter *Peloponnesus* with his Land Army, for thereby he would presently dissolve the *Greekish* Fleet, and finish the War. Though this advice followed would have been enough, and *Xerxes* could not but commend it, yet the major and worse part carried it, and it was resolved to fight the *Gracians* out of hand at *Salamine*. The Anchors then were weighed, and the Fleet made thitherwards; but night coming on suffered them not that day to reach the Island.

48. At this time were the *Peloponnesians* ready to depart homewards, and thereby the Estate of *Greece* to be ruined, by their breaking their united power, and reducing themselves into their particular and inconsiderable conditions, had not *Themistocles*, born for the preservation of his Countrey, relieved it by his wisdom in its great necessity. There was one *Sicinnus* a *Persian*, who, taken prisoner, was a great lover of *Themistocles*, and taught his Children. Him he sent privately to the King, to tell him, that he preferring his good before that of the *Gracians*, gave him now first to understand that they were about to fly, and advised him not to suffer it, but prevent them, and set upon them whilst they were disordered, and the Fleet was severed from their Land Army. *Xerxes* gladly hearing the message, as believing it to proceed out of *Themistocles* his affection to him, communicated it to his Officers, and whilst the rest could be furnished with Souldiers, sent 200 ships about the Island to block up the Straights, so that none of the Enemies might escape. *Themistocles* communicated what he had done to *Aristides*, who approving of it, went to persuade the *Greeks* to fight, when presently, whilst their minds hung in suspense, came a ship of *Tenedos* from the *Persian* Fleet, and acquainted them with what was done in the Straights, so that necessity compleated what was but half effected by the speech of *Aristides*.

49. Then prepared they themselves unanimously to the battel. *Themistocles* made a speech unto them, wherein he shewed where their concernments lay, exhorting them to fight manfully for their Countrey and Liberty; for their Parents, Wives, Children, and whatsoever was dear to them, with which being provoked they applied themselves to their ships, and put forth the Fleet into the Main. *Xerxes* placed himself on an high Throne to behold the fight over against *Salamine*, and had some with him to write down the particulars thereof. A bloody fight was fought with great earnestness on both sides, the one fighting under the eyes of their King, who marked every passage, and accordingly was affected, and the other for as much as could be dear to them in so dangerous a condition. Herein the *Greeks* had the advantage, that they were more exercised in Sea matters, and having all they had lying at the stake, they did it with the more earnestness, and in that they fought with greater order: the *Persian* with so great a multitude of ships, fought in disorder, and hindred one another, and if the Vessels sunk were all lost, whereas their Enemies by their skill in swimming saved themselves. At length their *Ionians*, solicited as was said, by little and little withdrawing themselves from the fight, the rest, what by that discouraged, and overcome by the pertinacious valour of their enemies, began to fly; the *Athenians* pressing hard upon them, and destroying many of their ships; of such as fled towards *Phalerus*, many were intercepted by the *Aeginetians*, the Emulators of the other in deserving well of *Greece*; such as escaped them, and got to the Port, thence withdrew themselves to the Land Army.

50. Of all the *Gracians* the *Athenians* and *Aeginetians* deserved best, and amongst them *Themistocles*, the Captains of the Fleet each one, when upon their

## SECT. 2.

their Oaths they pronounced who merited most, naming him after themselves. Amongst the *Persians* the valour of *Artemisia* the Queen was most conspicuous, acknowledged by *Xerxes* himself, who thereupon said, that *his men were turned women, and women became men*: she was saved as it hapned, and escaped to *Phalerus*. Many Noble *Persians* fell, amongst the rest *Ariabignes* the Kings brother, few of the *Gracians*. *Xerxes* exceedingly discouraged with this great losse, considered of his safe retreat out of *Europe*, fearing the *Ionians* might break the bridge laid over the *Hellepont*; yet that he might colour any such intention, he began a new project by casting earth into the Straights, to joyn the Island *Salamina* with the Continent. But *Mardonius* understanding his temper, and berinking himself in what case he himself might stand for being the first adviser to the War, went to him, and exrenuating the losse, the Land Army being left intire, at length proposed to him, to leave to him 300000 men, with which he would engage to revenge him upon *Greece*, and reduce it all under his power, if he pleased to depart himself into *Asia*, being nothing tainted in honour for that things had not so well succeeded in this encounter, because the miscarriage was procured by the Cowardise of the *Egyptians*, *Phoenicians*, *Cilicians*, and others no better than slaves, the *Persians* having gallantly enough behaved themselves, and he, their Prince, having subdued already the greater part of *Greece*, and taken *Athens* it self, against which the War was principally intended.

51. He liked very well the motion, but still dissembled the matter, answering, he would refer it to his Council, which he accordingly called, and asked the advice particularly of *Artemisia*. She approved of *Mardonius* his Counsel, for that if he should subdue *Greece* it would be to the Kings advantage, and if he miscarried it would be no disgrace to him, who in his own person had accomplished the main design of the expedition, in taking, and wasting *Athens*; he was pleased therewith, sent her beforehand away with his sons he had brought with him, and gave liberty to *Mardonius* to make choice of what, and how many Forces he pleased; all this being done the same day, with the fight at *Salamis*. The night following in great fear and disorder the Fleet loosed from *Phalerus*, and fled amain towards the *Hellepont*, which the *Gracians* seeing, pursued them as far as *Andros* one of the *Cyclades*, and took in there, for that they could then no more discern them, and that Island had been of the *Persian* faction. Here it being debated in the Council of Officers whether the Enemy should be any further pursued, *Eurybiades* the General, for several grave and urgent reasons, dissuaded it, a Bridge being rather to be laid for him, inasmuch that he convinced the rest, and *Themistocles*, who as *Herodotus* saith, was formerly for the pursuit, or else dissembled, for that which followed, changed his mind, and restrained the *Athenians*.

52. And further foreseeing that through their inconstancy, & known ingratitude, he might have cause in time to come to use friends, that now he might make one of *Xerxes*, and therein also further provide for the good of his Countrey, he betook himself to his wonted craft and policy. He dispatched away to him his former trusty Messenger, to acquaint him how carefull he was for his safety, in dissuading the *Gracians* from pursuing him, and to advise him by all means to make towards the *Hellepont*, ere the Bridge should be broken down, which he thought would be within a small time. He being much affrighted hereat retreated presently with all his Forces the same way he came, into *Thessaly*, where delivering to *Mardonius* 300000 men picked out of the whole Army, and settling other matters, with a small and obscure train fittest for haste (all the rest being commanded to follow) he hasted through *Macedonia* and *Thrace* to the *Hellepont*, where he arrived after 45 days. Here, whether he found the Bridge whole, and so passed over it, or (what the *Gracians* have believed) broken in pieces by Tempests, and so passed over obscurely in a fishers Boat, observable is the great change upon him, who with so great pride had formerly beaten the Sea, and cast Fetters into it. His Army following was a great part consumed by the plague, famine, and other casualties, so that the fowls of the aire continually followed it, the way be-

*Herodotus, Plutarch, Diodorus ut supra.*

*Xerxes his Fleet defeated.*

## SECT. 2.

ing full of carkeises. Being shipped also over to *Abydos*, very many died by intemperate use of diet, and drinking too much in the dysenteric, where-with they were sorely grieved. Those that remained, by slow journeys reached to their King lying at *Sardis*.

He flyeth.

53. *Artabazus*, a man of prime note amongst the *Persians*, accompanied *Xerxes* to the *Hellepont*, with a partie of 60000 men taken out of *Mardonius* his Army, who finding at his return the Inhabitants of *Potidea* in *Macedonia* to have revolted, fearing the *Palleniens* round about would do the same, and suspecting also *Olynthus*, which then was inhabited by the *Bottiens*, he besieged both Towns, of which the latter he took, and killing the Towns-men gave it to one *Criobulus* of *Chalcis* to govern, after which, they of that place inhabited it. He then more strongly besieged *Potidea*, but after three moneths having layn before it to no purpose, many of his men being lost in the Sea, which broke in with an unusual Tide, he rose up and departed to *Mardonius*, who, for that Winter was at hand, had taken up his quarters in *Theffalie*, and the adjoining places of *Macedonia*. The *Persian* Fleet being returned to the Coast of *Asia*, wintred at *Cume*, for the greatest part, onely some ships at *Samos*, whither in the Spring they all failed, being increased to the number of 300 by the addition of the *Ionians*, on whose Coast now they lay to keep them in obedience, being little desirous of sailing any more Westward, for the experience they had lately had of the *Gracians* at *Salamina*, and being in as little fear of their coming to them, whom they expected to be kept in awe, so as not to stir far from home, because of *Mardonius*.

54. They stirred not about providing any Land-forces wherewith to oppose *Mardonius*; but very busie they were at *Egina* in rigging their Fleet, over which *Leutychides* King of *Sparta* (issued from *Procles*, and put into the place of *Demeratus*.) was made Admiral: *Xanthippus* Father to *Pericles* being General of the *Athenian* Fleet, which contained the most ships. Whilst they abode here, came six men from *Chios*, who having conspired against *Strathes* their Tyrant, upon discovery of the plot, fled, beseeching them that they would undertake the freeing of *Ionis*; and so far they prevailed, as to get them to *Delus*; but no further would they go, because unacquainted as yet with the affairs of *Asia*, they feared the *Persians*, so that both parties stood in awe of each other.

Mardonius left behind.

55. *Mardonius* thinking of his promise made to his Master, consulted the Oracles, but they refusing to answer, he sent *Alexander* King of *Macedonia*, now in great grace with the *Persians*, through the marriage of his Sister to *Butaris*, in ambassage to the *Athenians*, to take them off from the society with the rest of *Greece*. He knew they gave the most mortal blows in the battle at *Salamina*, and thought, that if they could be taken off, the rest would be conquered with little or no difficulty. The same of this Ambassage flying abroad, came to *Sparta*, which nerled the *Lacedemonians*, and made them with all speed to dispatch away Ambassadors of their own, to prevent the alliance so dangerous to all *Greece*, and the *Athenians* refused to give audience to *Alexander*, till they were arrived, that they might also be present thereto. *Alexander* told them how *Xerxes* had given order to *Mardonius* to signifie to them how willing he was to remit what was past, to restore them their Territories, and more than them if they would, to leave them to their own freedom, and repair up their Temples at his own charges, if they would enter into a league of amitie with him, otherwise they could not be ignorant how great inconveniencies they drew upon themselves from so potent a Prince, able to send other Armies if they now with *Mardonius* should be overthrown: to these things spoken as from *Mardonius*, the Ambassador answered as a friend, not to let slip such an opportunity. After him the Ambassadors of *Sparta* spoke, and shewed how unworthy a thing it would be for the *Athenians* of all others, to forsake the publick cause, they having been the causers of the War, and their Ancestors been forenounced for setting others at liberty, wherefore they hoped that they would not be accessory to the slavery of all *Greece*. Their answer was to *Alexander*, that so long as the Sun should hold

## SECT. 2.

hold his course, they would never enter into alliaute with *Xerxes*, but resist his forces with their own; and him they desired, whom they respected as a friend, nor any more to bring such an unwelcome message, lest he might suffer something from the angry people. To the *Spartians* they answered to this purpose: That they would never any of them as long as they lived enter into confederacy with the *Persian*; they thanked them for their kind offer to maintain their wives and children in case of necessity, which they hoped they should not have much cause to need, so as to be troublesome to them, and desired them to hasten away to them their supplies, for that they thought the *Barbarian* would not lose time after the report of their answer, but presently invade them; and they thought it most convenient to meet him in *Boetia*.

56. *Mardonius* having received this answer from *Athens*, in great wrath marched thitherwards out of *Theffalie*. When he came to *Thebes*, the Inhabitants advised him to go no farther, for that he should never subdue *Greece* united together, but stay there in a commodious place, and corrupt with money those that were most prevalent in each City, whereby he might divide the *Gracians* into factions, and so easily mastering the dissenters, subdue the whole Country. But he not hearkening to this advice, proceeded, hoping by fires made in the Islands, to give notice to *Xerxes* still lying at *Sardis*, that he was again got into *Athens*, which the Inhabitants upon his approach, and the *Peloponnesians* deferring to send their succors, again quitted and departed to *Salamine*. He entered *Athens* the tenth moneth being now completed after *Xerxes* had the possession of that City, and having so done, sent to *Salamine* to the owners of it, once more offering them the same conditions he had formerly proposed by *Alexander* of *Macedonia*, hoping, that upon this extremity to which they were once again reduced, they might change their stubbornness for a more complying disposition.

57. But they were so far from harkening to what he offered, that they stoned one *Lycidusa* Senator, for saying it deserved to be taken into consideration, and to be proposed to the whole body of the people, and his wife and children were used in the same manner by the women. Then sent they (together with the *Megarians* and *Plataeans*) seriously to expostulate with the *Lacedemonians* for the non-performance of their promise, whereby their Country was again exposed to the will and pleasure of the Enemy, and plainly to tell them, that except their associates would better stand to their word, and dispatch away their succours in time, they must needs provide for themselves apart, for as much as yet a way was open for their entry into confederacy with the common Enemy. The Ambassadors found them celebrating annual games, and understood that the *Peloponnesians* were onely intent upon their perfecting the wall at the *Isthmus*, having no regard at all to them, whereof they highly complained to the *Ephori*. They promised them an answer the next day, but deferred from day to day, until after ten dayes the wall of the *Isthmus* was perfected.

58. After this time came a man of *Tegae* to them, and blaming them for their neglect of their allies, convinced them of the vanity of the wall, in case the *Athenians* should joyn with *Mardonius*, for they could with ease convey him otherwise than by the *Isthmus* into *Peloponnesus*, wherewith being startled, in the dead time of the night, and without privy of the Ambassadors, they sent out 5000 men besides 7000 of the Heilors or publick Slaves, under the conduct of *Cleombrotus* Tutor to *Plistarchus* the young King. In the morning the Ambassadors came again to them expostulating as before, whereto the *Ephori* answered, that their succours were already on their way, whom then the other understanding the matter, followed, and with them other 5000 gathered out of the places bordering upon *Sparta*. *Mardonius* having intelligence how things went in *Peloponnesus* from the *Argives*, who all this while were of his party, was something abashed, having till now had some hopes of the *Athenians* their compliance, for which reason he had spared their Territories. But now he destroyed all he could both

Burneth Athens, and goeth into Boetia.

## SECT. 2.

in City and Country, and forsaking *Attica* as a Country dangerous to his Army, by reason of the unevenness of the ground, and hard to be quitted so- dainly in time of danger, he returned into *Bœotia* a Champain Country, and in alliance with him, where in the Territories of the *Thebans* he pitched his Tents at the River *Asopus*, bringing much damage to his friends round about, in taking up such things as were but necessary to the sustenance of his Army. The *Spartans* in the mean time lying at the *Isthmus*, the other *Pe- loponnesians* after their example came also thither, whence they marched to *Eleusine*. Thither came the *Athenians* from *Salamine*, and joyned with them, whence they followed *Mardonius* into *Bœotia*, and fate down over against his Camp at the foot of the Mountain *Cithæron*.

59. The *Greeks* brought into the field 11 Myriads or 110000, according to *Herodotus*, from which number (a) others take the odd thousands, and make them just 100000. The number of the *Persian* Army Amounted to 30 Myriads or 300000, besides the *Greek* Auxiliaries, which he conjectureth to have been about five Myriads more; the 300000 are owned by *Plutarch*, another (b) numbereth but 200000 Foot, & 20000 Horse, but *Diodorus* on the contrary saith, that besides these Forces drawn out of *Xerxes* his Army, *Mardonius* had out of *Macedonia* and *Thrace*, and the associate States, about 20 Myriads, and that his whole Army contained 50 Myriads or 500000 men. *Mardonius* when the *Gracians* were encamped, sent a partie of his Horse to assail them, which objecting cowardise to them, and provoking them, very light skirmishes ensued, wherewith the *Megarians* were sore put to it, being on dis- advantageous ground, but being relieved by 300 stout *Athenians*, all others refusing, a sharp encounter followed, in which *Masistius* who commanded the Party of the *Persians* was slain. A great contest followed about the body, the *Persians* labouring with all their might to redeem it, all the *Persian* Horse coming in to the quarrel, and then the whole Army of the *Gracians*; but at length they were fain to return without it, and it was caried in triumph about the *Greekish* Camp. This as it brought great sorrow to the *Persians*, so the o- ther were much elevated in their minds thereby, and removed their Camp into the Territories of *Plataea*, whither *Mardonius* also followed them, and encamp- ed over against them, both parties neglecting to fight (onely excepting such Skirmishes as was made by the *Persian* Horse) for ten dayes.

60. On the eleventh, it being palpable that the *Greekish* Army daily wasted, by the revolt of many of their Countrymen, and yet that the *Persian* groaned under it's own burthen, *Mardonius* called a Council of his Officers to consult what was to be done. *Artabazus* the son of *Pharnaces*, a man of great Nobility, and an emulator of the General, contended with him, urg- ing that the best was to decline the fight, and march to *Thebes*, where they might have plenty of provision, here wanting, and whence by sending money into the principal Cities of *Greece* (according to the advice formerly given by the *Thebans*) they might dispatch the War with ease. But *Mardonius* being more hot and earnest, thinking his Army to be for the present stronger than the Enemy, resolved to fight, not suffering himself by any persuasions to be removed from his purpose, for that because of his authority the rest durst not contradict it; and it was resolved to fall on the next morning by break of day. Notice hereof was given by *Alexander* the *Macedonian* to the *Athe- nians*, who advised them in case *Mardonius* should not fight to stay it out; for the *Persians* were straightned for provisions. The *Athenians* bring this news to *Pausanias* the General, who being something struck therewith, he desired them to change places, because they were better acquainted with the *Persian* manner of fighting since the battel at *Marathon*, and the *Spartans* were more used to the *Thessalians* and *Bœotians* now opposed to the *Athenians*; they soon condescended hereunto, but *Mardonius* having notice of it, made his *Persians* change place with the *Bœotians* and the other; and though *Pan- sanias* again reduced his men into the former place, yet was neither this hid from *Mardonius*, who still to prevent him did the like.

61. *Mardonius* upon this sent and upbraided *Pausanias* and his *Spartans* with

(a) *Diodorus*,  
*Justin*,  
*Orosius*.

(b) *Emilius*  
*Probus* in *Arifide*.

*Herodotus* ut  
*suprà*.

The battel at  
*Plataea*, and  
*Mardonius*  
slain.

with cowardize, especially seeing he had made a challenge to fight with them with his *Persians*, either a certain number of each, or all together, both which were refused. Then sent he his Horse upon them, which with darts sore troubled the whole Army, and most of all in that it hindred the fetching of water, that the *Gracians* were constrained to change the place, and resolved to passe into an Island compassed about with the River, and near the Walls of the Citie, which was very convenient for watering, and lay also well for provisions. By night they removed, but most missing of the place went to the Temple of *Juno* in the high way to *Plataea*, and there encamped themselves, whom the *Spartans* being commanded to follow, much trouble arose there- upon by the means of one *Amomphareus* a valiant man, who for some time would not stir with his Regiment, crying out, it was contrary to the *Laconick* Discipline to fly from the Enemy, and supposing *Pausanias* and the rest durst not forsake him. But towards morning he came off from his resolution, and so all marched to the Temple of *Ceres*, situate upon the River *Molus*, being followed close by the *Persian* Horse.

62. The Sun being risen, *Mardonius* grievously inveighing against the cow- ardise of the *Gracians*, and *Artabazus* for his late opinion, marched with his whole Army, as to pursue the Enemy flying, and all his Horse began fore to presse upon the backs of the *Spartans* and *Tegeatans*, joyned with them at the Chapel of *Ceres*, so that then ensued a sharp fight betwixt them, and betwixt the *Athenians* who came in to their succour, and such *Greeks* as were confederate with the *Persians*. The *Tegeatans* charged the *Persian* infantry, in which after much royl and bloodshed, *Mardonius* fighting on a white Horse in the midst of 1000 choise men, was slain by *Armenestus* the most va- liant *Spartan*. After his death, his men discouraged, were slaughtered in great numbers, and put to the rout, which *Artabazus* seeing, shifted for himself with a party of 40000 commanded by him, and fled towards the *Hellespont*: the *Greeks* that assisted *Mardonius*, though nothing inferiour to their Countrey- men for valour, were put to flight; and 300 of *Thebans*, who most stoutly be- have themselves, were slain upon the place.

63. In the mean time the *Corinthians*, *Megarians*, *Phliasians*, and the rest, who had taken up their station at the Chapel of *Juno*, hearing of the victory of their friends hastened to the place all out of order, the *Corinthians* over Hill and Dale the nearest way; but the rest through the plain, who were circumvented by the *Theban* horse, and many of them cut off. The *Persians* fled into their Camp, which they had fenced with a Rampire for security, whither they were followed by the *Spartans*, who laboured with all their might to storm the place, but were stoutly repulsed by the Defendants, till the *Athenians* coming in, and better exercised in such attempts, brake into the Camp. The *Tegeatans* followed with great violence, and took, and plun- dred the Pavilion of *Mardonius* with his brazen manger, and then followed an unspeakable slaughter of the *Persians*, so that of those 300000 left to *Mardonius* by *Xerxes*, excepting those 40000 which fled with *Artabazus*, not 3000 remained, 100000 according to *Diodorus*, without mercy being put to death within the Rampire. Of the *Gracians* not many were slain, according to *Herodotus*, who reckoneth 31 *Spartans*, 16 *Tegeatans*, and 52 *Athenians*, mentioned at large by him; but *Plutarch* mentioneth 1360 of the *Greekish* Army to have been slain, and *Diodorus* increaseth the number to above 10000. The *Mantineans* and *Eleans* came after the victory, at which they were so ashamed, that returning home they banish'd their Captains as authors of the delay. The Conquerours thence marched to *Thebes*, where the in- habitants gave up the authors of their revolt to the *Barbarians*, whom being carried to *Corinth*, all but *Attaginus* that escaped, he there put to death.

64. Whilest these things were thus done in *Bœotia*, the *Greekish* Fleet of which *Lentychides* the *Spartan* King was Admiral, harboured at the Island *Delos*: Hither came three Ambassadors from *Samus*, desiring aid against the *Barbarians*, and their Tyrant imposed upon them, shewing that it was most equal

## SECT. 2.

## SECT. 2.

equal that *Gracians* should one vindicate the liberty of another, and that this Enterprize would be without difficulty, for as much as if the *Ionians* did but once see their Fleet, they would revolt from the *Persians*, of whom such as were amongst them would either fly, or might easily be made a prey; Lastly, if the Ambassadors were mistrusted as not representing things according to their Commission, they offered themselves as Hostages, till the truth might be cleared. *Lentychides* taking an Oath of them that they came empowered from the *Samians*, retained *Hegesistratus* (because his name he took for a good omen) who had been the mouth of the rest, and sending the other two before followed the next day to *Samus*. The Sea-men that were there, stricken with great fear at the report of the Fleet approaching, dismissed the *Phœnician* Vessels, and fled with the rest to the Continent, hoping to keep them safe under the protection of the 60000 Foot left on the Coasts by *Xerxes* to keep *Ionian* in obedience, over whom *Tigranes* was General, a man of a most proper and amiable personage.

65. The *Persians* having drawn their ships under the foot of the Mountain *Mycale*, near the Temple of *Ceres Eleusinian*, and barricaded them with great stones, wood, and other materials, came the *Gracians* with their Fleet prepared for a fight. But understanding what was done, *Lentychides* coming near the shoar, by the voice of a cryer aloud (as *Themistocles* had done before) endeavoured either to make the *Ionians* revolt, or at least to render them suspected to the Enemy; which being done, presently he landed all his men, resolving to try the event of a Land battle. The *Persians* suspecting the *Samians* disarmed them, and sent the *Milesians* to keep the passages leading up into the Mountain. As the Armies were going to meet, a sudden rumour was spread abroad through that of the *Gracians*, that *Mardonius* with his forces were cut off, which elevated their spirits, and made them to charge with greater alacrity, which was also increased, for that they were now to fight at the Temple of the same Goddess, as they heard their friends had done with *Mardonius* in *Boeotia*. Then charged they the *Persians* in a double body, the *Athenians* with the *Corinthians* and others, on the plain by the Sea-shore; the *Lacedæmonians*, and others joyned with them, through the mountainous and precipitous places, who whilst they were getting up, the *Athenians* fell on, and calling on one another to endeavour to deprive the *Lacedæmonians* of the honour of the victory, charged the Enemy so furiously, that at length they beat them back, and forced them into their Camp, whither also they brake in with them.

66. Hereupon ensuing a bloody fight, all the rest fled except the *Persians*, who fighting with great resolution, were yet cut off and defeated upon the coming in of the *Lacedæmonians* and the rest. Two of the Sea Captains were slain, two escaped, and with the rest fell *Tigranes*, the General of the foot, and of the *Greeks* perished not a few. The *Samians*, though disarmed, and other *Ionians* came in and helped their friends, and the *Milesians* set to Guard the passages of *Mycale* fell down upon the *Persians* another way, and made great slaughter of them. So was *Ionian* rent from the *Persian* Empire again, and joyned to the *Gracians*. After this performed by Land, the Conquerors burnt all the *Persian* ships in the Haven, and being enriched with great spoil returned to *Samus*. It was found out afterwards that this victory at *Mycale* was obtained on the self same day as the other at *Plataea* in *Boeotia*, the later in the morning, and the former at evening, which caused the wonder how intelligence could be given to these that fought at *Mycale* of the success of their Country-men so far off. This hapned often in following times as will be seen, although some have thought that no report was brought any way to the Army of the victory of *Plataea*, but that it was so given out on purpose as a stratagem by *Lentychides* to animate his Soldiers, who then being wholly ignorant of any such thing, he invented that which afterwards proved accordingly. These two battles, and victories, hapned on the third or fourth day of the month *Boedromion*, in the second year after the invasion of *Greece* by *Xerxes*.

67. The

67. The *Gracians* lying at *Samus* fell into dispute about translating the *Ionians*, and *Æolians*, out of *Asia* into *Greece*, for that they could not be always in a readinesse to defend them, and they could not submit of themselves; and the *Spartans* moved that those who had revolted to the *Persian* should be cast out, and they placed in their rooms; but the *Athenians* fearing to be deprived of the right of their Colony, which yet the *Ionians* acknowledging themselves, might own the rest of the associates for their patrons, upon such a change, dashed the project. Then were the *Samians*, *Chians*, *Lesbians*, and others, who had revolted, religiously and solemnly sworn to the observation of the league, and the *Gracians* departed towards the *Hellestom* to break the Bridge there, which when they found broken to their hands, they consulted about returning home. The *Athenians* were for going into the *Chersonesus* of *Thrace* to recover it out of the hands of the *Persians*, and, though the *Peloponnesians* returned, proceeding in their resolution went and besieged *Sestos* an *Æolian* Town, situate in the *Chersonesus*, over against *Abydos*. Before this Town they continued till the Autumn was far spent, and then pined out the inhabitants, who forsook the Town, but were overtaken, and either slain, or made prisoners, amongst the later sort of which was *Ariagetes* the Governour, who because he had violated the sepulchre of the Chapel of *Proteus*, a great Saint in that place, saw first his son stoned before his face, and then was hanged by command of *Xanthippus* the *Athenian* Admiral. Then returned the Navy home to *Athens*, and nothing was done further this year, which was the second of the 75 Olympiad, and the 7th of the reign of *Xerxes*, of the World 3526. and before Christ the 477.

The Median  
War ended  
after two  
years.

68. *Xerxes* all this while lay at *Sardis*, and thither those few that escaped from *Mycale* betook themselves. In the way *Masistes* brother to the King fell foul upon *Artaynes*, one of the Captains of the Fleet, amongst other reproachfull words telling him that he had in this behaved himself more cowardly than a woman, whereupon the other drew his Dagger, and had stabbed him, but that one *Xenagoras* an *Halicarnassian* interposed himself, whom for this saving of his brother, *Xerxes* rewarded with the Government of *Cilicia*. Whilst he lay still at *Sardis* he fell in love with the wife of *Masistes*, but she being too honest for his adulterous intentions, he married her, and his brothers daughter *Artaynta* to his son *Darius*, hoping to enjoy her this way, which Ceremony being over, he returns home, leaving part of his Forces to continue the War with the *Gracians*. In his flight he burned all the Temples of *Asia* except the *Ephebian*, out of indignation at his late bad success, and amongst the rest the Oracle of *Didymeian Apollo* amongst the *Branchidans*, who because they betrayed the Treasures of their God to him, durst not fly behind but followed him. (b) Some say he went to *Susa*, others to *Ecbatane*, a (c) third, that by *Babylon* into *Persia*. That in his way back from *Grace* he (d) destroyed the Temple of *Belus* in that Citie, we also read, with all the other religious places of the *Babylonians*, taking away a Statue off that Wall of twelve Cubits, and all of beaten Gold, and killing the Priest who offered to hinder the removal of it.

*Xerxes* his in-  
continence.

69. Being returned to *Susa*, he fell from the Mother to the Daughter too, being in love with *Artaynta* his Daughter-in-law, whom incestuously he used constantly. She begged of him a Coat which with much art and industry *Amestris* his wife had made for him. By her wearing of this the Queen knew how matters went, and thence followed the destruction of the whole house of *Masistes*; for on *Xerxes* his birth-day, when he used not to deny her any request, she asked *Masistes* wife to be given up into her power, which he doing, she cut off her breasts, nose, ears, lips, and tongue, and in this case sent her home. *Masistes* enraged at this barbarous usage, conspired with his Children how to be revenged, and resolved to fly into *Bactria*, of which he was Governour, then to stir up that Province, and the *Saca* with whom he was very gracious, into rebellion against his brother. But *Xerxes* coming to the knowledge of the matter sent a party after him, which cut him off with his Children, and all his retinue. These things hapned about a year after his return,

SECT. 2.  
Herodotus ut  
prin. lib. 9.  
cap. 105. &  
Diodorus ut  
prin.

(a) Strabo  
lib. 14.

(b) Herodotus.  
(c) Diodorus.  
(d) Ctesias.  
Arrianus lib. 7.  
Herodotus ut  
prin. cap. 183.  
Strabo, lib. 16.

Diodorus ad  
Olymp. 75. an. 2.  
Polyanius str. l. 1.  
Front. lib. 1.  
cap. 11. Exemp. 7.

The battle at  
*Mycale*.

*Ionian* revol-  
ted.

SECT. 2. return, with which endeth the history of *Herodotus* the Father of history (as *Cicero* called him) seeing he is the most antient of all Heathen Writers now extant.

70. The same year being the third of the 75th Olympiad, and the eighth of the reign of *Xerxes*, a year after the finishing of the Median War, so called by the *Gracians*, the *Lacedemonians* sent *Pausanias*, famous for his Generalship at the battel of *Plataea*, to set at liberty such Greek Cities as yet were under the *Persian*, who accordingly with 50 Gallies set sail out of *Peloponnesus*, and taking 30 more out from *Athens*, commanded by *Aristides*, first went to *Cyprus*, where he set at liberty such Towns as were yet held by *Persian* Garrisons, and thence to the *Hellepont*, where he took *Byzantium*, and therein many Noble prisoners of the *Persians*, whom he delivered to one *Gangylus* an *Eretrian*, to be kept as he pretended, to be put to death, but indeed to restore them to *Xerxes*. For he sent this man secretly to the King, and bargained for his daughter to be given him in marriage to betray *Sparta* and all into his hands. He gladly received the message, and wrote back again to him by *Ariabazus* the son of *Pharnaces* whom he sent to the Sea-Coasts to hold intelligence with him, and for that purpose gave him the Government of *Dascylis*, recalling *Magabates* who was over that Province. But *Pausanias* growing more insolent, hereupon was suspected, and afterwards at length discovered, and punished for his treason, as farther is to be discovered in it's proper place.

71. In the third year of the 77th Olympiad, and the sixteenth of *Xerxes*, *Demotion* being *Archon*, or chief Magistrate at *Athens*, the *Athenians* made choise of *Cimon* the son of *Miltiades* for their General, and with a considerable force sent him into the Maritime Coasts of *Asia*, with order to relieve the Associates, and set at liberty such as were still under the slavery of *Persian* Garrisons. He bends his course towards *Byzantium*, and took *Eione* and *Scyrus*, inhabited by *Pelasgians* and *Dolopians*, and divided the grounds thereof by lot; then casting in his mind greater designs, sailed back to the *Piræus*, and furnishing himself with more ships, increased his Navie to the number of 200, to which he added of the associates 100 more, and with all this power sailed towards *Caria*. Here all the Maritime Greek Cities revolted to him, and what did not, he subdued by strong hand, which having done, he sailed to *Lycia*, where he had the same success, and now requiring ships to be provided by such as had joyned themselves in society with the *Athenians*, he thereby mightily increased his Navie.

72. The *Persians* now levied both a Land and Sea-Army, the former within themselves, and the latter out of *Phœnicia*, *Cyprus*, and *Cilicia*, the General being *Tithraustes* the base son of *Xerxes*, who by some other is said to have only had command of the Fleet, and that *Pharendates* was over the Land-forces, though this place by another is given to *Ariomandes* the son of *Gobryas*. *Cimon* having made discovery that the *Persian* Fleet rode nigh to *Cyprus*, sailed thither, and with 250 ships made head against 340, whereupon ensued a sharp fight, both parties fighting with great courage and animosity, till at length the *Athenians* overpowered the other, and spoiling many of their Vessels, took about 100 with the men in them, the rest escaping to Land at *Cyprus*, the men saved themselves by flight, but the ships fell into the hands of the *Gracians*. *Cimon* not contented with this Victory, sailed towards the Land-Army of the *Persians*, then lying upon the River *Euvymedon*. To deceive the Enemy, he put his most valiant men aboard those Vessels lately taken in the fight, adorned and clothed after the *Persian* fashion, so that the *Persians* not doubting at all but that it was their own Fleet, kindly welcomed these counterfeiters as their friends. Hereby *Cimon* received as such, landed his men by night and fell upon the Enemies Camp, whence ensued great fear and tumult, his men presently killing all they meet, and amongst the rest *Pharendates* Nephew to the King by his brother. Of the common sort many were slain, others sorely wounded, and shortly all put to flight, yet they knew not by whom, not suspecting the *Gracians* to have any Land-Army

*Diodorus ad Olymp. 75. an. 3. Thucid. lib. 1.*

*Diodorus ad Olymp. 77. an. 3.*

*Vide Plutarch. in Cimone.*

*Idem ibid. Diodorus ut prius. Polyænus l. 1. Frontinus Strateg. lib. ult. cap. ult. exempl. ultim.*

Army and therefore concluding themselves surprized by the *Pisidians* upon whom they bordered.

73. Suspecting therefore this storm to come from the continent, they betook themselves to their ships, and the Moon then not shining, and the night being very dark, the error was the more increased, so that not discerning any thing they ran upon their own ruine, and great slaughter was made of them on all sides. All things being thus in confusion, the *Gracian* General fearing the straggling of his Soldiers too far for booty, according to former order, that when he set out a Light they should all come back to that place, gave out that sign by the ships, upon sight of which they withdrew themselves thither. Notwithstanding these two Victories, which in some sense seemed to excel those of *Salamina* and *Plataea*, being fought on the same day, yet would he add one thing more as a supplement to them. Understanding that 80 *Phœnician* ships (expected as *Plutarch* saith, by the Navy at *Euvymedon*, which was the cause why he set upon it so soon, being unwilling they should joyn) to be arrived at *Hydrus*, he sailed hastily thither, where as yet the news had not arrived, but now the *Phœnicians* suspecting the truth, and thereby discouraged, he easily overcame, took and sunk all their ships, and therein the greatest part of themselves miscarried. Hereupon ensued a certain agreement betwixt the King and the *Gracians*.

74. The next thing considerable concerning *Xerxes*, is his death, placed in the fifth year after the former transactions, by *Diodorus*. There was one *Artabanus* an *Hyrcanian* by birth, of great power about him, as Captain of his Guard, who consulted about making him away, and transferring the Kingdom to himself, and for that purpose inveigled *Mithridates* the Eunuch the King's Chamberlain, by whom being let in by night with his seven sons, they strangled him in his bed. He reigned 21 years, or 20 with odd moneths, though some there be that cut off nine years from that number. Their ground is, for that *Themistocles* the *Athenian* being banished his Country, came to *Artaxerxes*, then the new King of *Persia*, according to *Thucydides*, so that *Xerxes* must at that time have been dead. Now the same Author placeth this flight of *Themistocles* betwixt the Siege of *Naxos* which the *Athensians* subdued, and the former exploits of *Cimon*, so that his Expedition must have happened also not in the dayes of *Xerxes* as we have fixed it according to *Diodorus*, but in the reign of *Artaxerxes* his successor: and *Eusebius* placing the flight of *Themistocles* in the fourth year of the 76th Olympiad (though *Diodorus* in the second of the 77th) hence it must follow, that the beginning of the reign of *Artaxerxes* must be placed higher by near to nine years. The authority of that grave Author is in no wise to be despised, yet notwithstanding, this shortning of the reign *Xerxes* which must necessarily follow, is not agreeable to the testimony of other Writers: especially it is to be considered what difficulty will arise hereby to the Chronology of the sacred story, it being most probable, that the seventy weeks of *Daniel* commencing in the seventh year of *Artaxerxes*, end at the death of *Jesus Christ*; which cannot be, if their beginning be to be assigned nine years higher. This may incline us to believe, that some reason *Diodorus* had (who could not but have opportunity to see and compare several histories) not to follow *Thucydides*, and make us rather subscribe to the number of years by general consent ascribed unto the reign of *Xerxes*.

SECT. 2.

*Plutarch ibid.*

*Diodorus ad Olymp. 78. an. 4. Justin lib. 3. cap. 1. Ctesias.*

*ushev.*

E c

SECT.



## SECT. 3.

## SECT. III.

From the death of Xerxes, and the beginning of Artaxerxes Longimanus, to the death of Artaxerxes Mnemon, containing the space of 103 years.

1. **XERXES** left three sons, **Darius**, and **Artaxerxes**, both of them at the time of his death resident in his Court, and **Hystaspes**, who was absent in his Government of **Bactria**. **Artabanus** having murdered their Father, presently in the dead time of the night went to **Artaxerxes**, and made him believe that his elder brother **Darius** had made him away, out of ambition to reign himself, counselled him to provide for his own safety and honour, before he should establish himself, and offered him the guard to rid him of him, whereby he being persuaded, sent and slew his brother. When this was done, **Artabanus** called his sons together, telling them this was the time of obtaining the Kingdom, and drew his sword with an intention now also to kill **Artaxerxes**. But he being onely lightly wounded, laid so about him, that he slew him upon the place, as we have it from one; though others with more reason defer the time of **Artabanus** his death, to whom also seven moneths in the Empire are attributed by \* **Eusebius**.

Artaxerxes.

In Chron.

Artabanus put to death.

2. It is probable, that for that time the treason of **Artabanus** not being discovered, or for some reasons winked at, he might by a Vicegerency govern the Kingdom. By his means came **Artaxerxes** to it in his youth, a Prince of a great spirit, and yet of a mild nature, surnamed **Μακρόχρησ**, or **Longimanus**, because his right hand was longer than the other, in the fourth year of the 78th **Olympiad**, or in the beginning of the 79th, **Lyfisthenes** being then **Archon** at **Athens**. A. M. 3540, 463 years before the birth of **Christ**. Within a while **Artabanus** laid in wait for his life also, communicating his design to **Megabyzus**, who had married the daughter of **Xerxes**, and for her loose life was fallen into a discontent, **Megabyzus** swore secrecie as well as he, but revealed the whole matter, so that **Artabanus** finding not the same successe as in his other treasons, was sent the same way, and by the same means with which he intended to dispatch **Artaxerxes**. Now came out the whole truth concerning **Xerxes** and his son **Darius**, and **Spamitres** (or **Aspamitres**) the Eunuch, who was accessory to the murders, was tortured to death. **Justin** telleth us, how the King fearing the number, and power of **Artabanus** his Sons, commanded his Soldiers to be ready armed the next morning, both for a muster, and to exercise them. Amongst the rest appeared he according to his place, with whom **Artaxerxes** desired to change his coat-armour, pretending his was too short for him, which to do, he first putting his off, the King took the advantage and ran him thorow with his sword.

3. After his death, his party being strong, great troubles ensued, which ended at length in the destruction thereof, three of his sons falling in fight, and **Megabyzus** who opposed them being sorely wounded, for whom now great lamentation was made through the Court, till at length he escaped the danger by the skill and industry of **Apollonides** the Physician, native of the Island **Cos**. The **Bactrians** also, according to **Ctesias**, revolted, with another of the King's Officers named **Artabanus**, who seemeth to have had some other command than over **Bactria**. For we are told elsewhere, that **Hystaspes** the son of **Xerxes** was **Satrapas** or Governour of that Province, and thence may almost conclude him to have been the principal cause of the revolt, out of indignation that being the second brother, the youngest of all the three should be preferred before him. Two battels were fought in this quarrel, in the latter of which the wind being full in the faces of the **Bactrians**, so disturbed them, that thereby **Artaxerxes** became Victor, and reduced all that Country into obedience. **Artaxerxes** having thus revenged his Father's and Brother's death, and brought **Artabanus** and his complices to condign punishment, and recovered **Bactria**, settled the affairs of his Kingdom. He took

Bactria recovered.

Diodorus ibid.

See Justin.

Ctesias.

Diodorus ad Olymp. 79 an. 3. Thucyd. lib. 1.

## SECT. 3.

The Egyptians revolt.

The Persians defeated.

care of his revenue, settled the Militia, displaced suspicious Governours of Provinces, and carrying all things with much moderation and Justice, gained great Authority from his subjects. In the mean while the **Egyptians** hearing of the death of **Xerxes**, and in what disturbance the affairs of the **Persians** were, out of desire to recover their liberty, hearkened to the Counsel and persuasions of one **Inarus** King of **Libya**, the son of **Psammetichus**, so that the greater part of the Countrey revolted, and making him their Prince, sent about to crave aid, and amongst others to the **Athenians**. They thought it their interest to impair all ways possible the interest of **Persia**, and concluding it not amisse to get some footing in **Egypt**, resolved upon sending three hundred ships, and prepared for the setting of them forward with all earnestnesse. **Artaxerxes** hearing on the other hand how things went in **Egypt**, determined to overmatch the revolters in provisions for the War, and for that end levied Forces throughout his Dominions, Rigged his Fleet, and omitted nothing requisite for an expedition of that moment.

4. He thought first of going down himself, but being overruled by his friends sent **Achamenides** his brother, according to **Ctesias**, but according to **Diodorus**, **Achamenides** the son of **Darius**, and his great Uncle, with an Army of above 300000. saith **Diodorus**, or 400000 foot, and 80 ships, who marching as far as the River **Nile** there pitched his Tents, refreshed his Souldiers, and prepared all things for a battel. The **Egyptians** assisted by the **Libyans** expected the **Athenian** Fleet, which at length arrived, and got possession of the River. Presently after this a Land battel ensued, in which, though the **Persians** for a time prevailed by their multitudes, yet the **Athenians**, who were now acquainted with their manner of fighting, pressing sore upon that Wing with which they joyned, did such execution as put it to flight, at which all the rest out of fear betook them to their heels. Great slaughters were then made in the persute, the greatest number of the **Barbarians** fell, and the rest betook themselves to a Fort called **White-wall**, whither the **Athenians** pursuing, took two parts of **Memphis**, and besieged them in the 3d division called by that name, of 400000 that came into **Egypt**, **Ctesias** writeth 100000 to have been slain, and with them their Captain, killed by the hands of **Inarus**, whose body was sent back to **Artaxerxes**. That **Achamenides** the son of **Darius** was slain with many **Persians**, \* **Herodotus** tells us by an anticipation of the story.

5. **Artaxerxes** understanding what bad successe his affairs had in **Egypt**, and knowing the main blow to have been given from the **Athenians**, sent **Megabyzus** with a great summe of money to **Lacedaemon** to hire that State to make War upon them, and give them something to do at home, to divert them from the assistance of his Rebels. The **Lacedaemonians** would not be bribed to fall out with **Athens**, and refused to hearken to any thing else the Ambassador offered on his masters behalf, so that he recalled him home, and gave in charge to **Megabyzus** the son of that **Zopyrus** who recovered **Babylon** to **Darius**, to prepare for another expedition, with whom he also joyned **Artabanes**, making choise of them both out of respect to their great valour, and skill in Military matters.

They by the Spring having got together an Army of (above 300000 men, saith **Diodorus**, 200000 onely saith **Ctesias**) marched down into **Cilicia**, where, and in **Phoenicia** they rested their men, and caused the inhabitants of these places, together with the **Cyprians**, to provide a Navy, which being done, to the number of 300 ships, they furnished them with the ablest Souldiers, and all sorts of Weapons, and whatsoever was requisite for a Sea-fight, and in this preparation, together with the exercising, and training of their men, spent they almost all the Summer. In the mean while the **Athenians** laboured to storm the **White-wall** wherein the **Persians** were besieged, but they made such effectual resistance as they kept them out all this year. When Winter was over, **Megabyzus** and his Colleague led down their Army through **Syria** and **Phoenicia**, the Navy Coasting all along not far off; and at length came to **Memphis**, where the fear of them presently loosed the siege of their Coun-

Diodorus ad Olymp. 79. an. 3. Thucyd. ut supra.

Diodorus ad Olymp. 80. an. 1. Thucyd.

SECT. 3.

Egypt recovered.

they-men, whom joining to themselves they gave battle to the *Egyptians* and their Associates. Many fell on both sides, but most of the *Egyptians*; at length *Megabyzus* wounded *Inarus* in his Thigh, and put him to flight, who betook himself to *Byblus*, a Town situate in an Island of *Nile*, called *Protopitis*, and with him such *Greeks* as had escaped the fight, after which the *Egyptians* returned into obedience, making their peace with *Megabyzus*.

6. *Megabyzus* pursuing them, besieged the place, which yet was so defended that they held it out a year and six months in despite of him. The *Athenian* Fleet lay in the River before the Town, which the *Persians* at length considering, and how it was possible by Ditches to drain the water, and derive that course thereof another way, set about it, and so drained the Channel that the Island was now joyned to the Main, and the ships rested on dry Land. Now *Diodorus* saith, the *Egyptians* forsook their confederates, and returned to obedience, which the *Athenians* understanding, and how their ships by this stratageme of the Enemy were rendered uselesse, burnt them all, and nothing afrighted with so great a danger in which they were involved, called upon one another with exhortations not to commit any thing unworthy of their former noble achievements, so that excelling those their Countrey-men if possible, who lost their lives at *Thermopyla*, they resolved to fight. The *Persian* Commanders seeing their courage, and considering their own losses already great, having lost many thousands, though they had recovered the Island, yet gave them these terms to return with safety out of *Egypt*. Their number being something above 6000. they returned home by *Cyrene* above their expectations, having consumed six years in this War to no good purpose, *Inarus* taken and Crucified; *Artaxerxes* then recovered all *Egypt* except some fenny parts, near which *Amirians* reigned, who by reason of the difficulty of the place, and the fierceness of the people, could not be reduced into order.

In the mean time, whilst the *Athenians* travelled homewards, came 50 ships more to their relief, which being utterly ignorant of what had passed, took up their harbour at *Mendesium*, one of the mouths of *Nile*. Here they were set upon by the *Persians* on Land, and the *Phœnicians* by Sea, and lost most of their Vessels, a few onely escaping home, and such was the end of this expedition of the *Athenians* with their associates into *Egypt*.

7. *Artaxerxes* in the seventh year of his reign made a decree in the behalf of the *Jews*, that whosoever of them would, might go up with *Exra* to *Jerusalem* and inhabit it. He and his Counsellors contributed much Treasure, and gave them liberty to Collect what they could, and commanded his Treasurers beyond the River *Euphrates* to furnish him yearly with what he wanted; as far as 100 Talents of silver, 100 measures of Wheat, 100 Baths of Wine, 100 Baths of Oyl, and Salt without measure, for the sacrifices, and other uses, according to the discretion of *Esra*. He commanded that all things should be done according to the mind and will of the God of heaven, lest his anger might break out against the Kingdom of him and his sons: the Priests and Levites he made free from all impositions, and gave power to *Esdras* to constitute Judges and Governours over the people, for the settlement of the Politie or Commonwealch.

8. Now though here in this Edict be no expresse mention of repairing the Walls of *Jerusalem*, or of the Request of *Esra* in that behalf, yet is it probable enough that he would desire it, because of the often incursions of their Enemies, the *Samaritans*, and others, neither could their habitation in the Citie be secure, nor the work of the Temple go on with safety: and in what could all that Treasure be spent but in Fortifications? So that we may even conclude sufficient Licence and Authority to be included in this Decree, and that *Esra* began to build the Walls, but was either hindered by other occasions, or the negligence of the *Jews*, or (more probably) the molestations of their Enemies; who because the Licence was not expressed, took thence occasion to interrupt the work till thirteen years after it was renewed, and perfected by the procurement and industry of *Nehemiah*, who obtained

Thucyd. lib. ii.  
Diod. lib. ii.  
Ctesias.

Thucyd. lib. ii.

Esra 7. 12.

SECT. 3.

a confirmation rather of the former Edict, than any new Decree; So though *Syrus* had first of all granted Licence for the rebuilding of the Temple, yet because the work was hindered by the Enemies of the *Jews*, there was need of another Edict granted out by *Darius*. As the decrees of these two Kings were in effect the same, so also those were onely put in execution afterwards by *Nehemiah*, because the execution of it, as to the rebuilding of the Walls, was either remitted by negligence, or by malice of the Borderers.

9. If so, the beginning of the seventy weeks of *Daniel*, fitly may be taken hence, ending most probably in the death of our Saviour Jesus Christ. *Seventy weeks* saith the Angel, are determined upon thy people, and upon thy holy Citie, to finish the transgression, and to make an end of sins, and to make reconciliation for iniquity, and to bring in everlasting righteousness, and to seal up the Vision and Prophecy, and to anoint the most holy. Know therefore, and understand, that from the going forth of the Commandment, to restore, and to rebuild *Jerusalem*, unto the Messiah the Prince, shall be seven weeks, and threescore and two weeks: and the street shall be built again, and the Wall, even in troublous times. And after 62 weeks shall Messiah be cut off, but not for himself: and the people of the Prince that shall come, shall destroy the Citie and the Sanctuary, and the end thereof shall be with a Flood, and unto the end of the War desolations are determined. And he shall confirm the Covenant with many in one week: and in the midst of the week he shall cause the Sacrifice and the Oblation to cease, and for the overspreading of abominations he shall make it desolate, even untill the consummation, and that determined shall be poured upon the desolate. Thus the Oracle, in which is contained a Prophecy concerning the rebuilding of *Jerusalem*, and the coming of Christ, who should bring unconceivable benefits along with him, and yet at length be put to death, not for himself, but others, and this should be all accomplished within 70 weeks of years, which contain 490. Lastly, it foretels, that for that horrible sin of the *Jews* in murdering the Messiah, they should lose both Principality and Priest-hood, and be punished with perpetual Exile, and the utter and unrepairable desolation of the Citie.

10. Many are the opinions concerning the beginning and end of these seventy weeks amongst Chronologers. Some begin them in the first year of the Empire of *Cyrus*, and end them in the Nativity of Christ. Others fetch their rise from the second of *Darius Nothus* (Successor to *Artaxerxes*) and conclude them with the destruction of *Jerusalem*, by *Titus Vespasian*. Some make them Commence from the 20 of *Artaxerxes* (when *Nehemiah* obtained another Decree of him) and to conclude with the passion and death of Christ; and others will have them begin in the 20th year of *Artaxerxes Mnemon*, and end in the desolation of the Citie by the *Romans*. But many there are who rejecting all these, with best reason, fix the beginning of them in the seventh of *Artaxerxes Longimanus*, and their conclusion in the death of Christ, in which termination most of the Learned, both ancient and modern, agree.

The beginning  
of Daniel's se-  
venty weeks.

11. For if we seriously consider the account of time, and judge of it according to the best approved Authors, the three former opinions will be found either to exceed, or come short of the number. From the beginning of the *Persian* Empire to Christ's Nativity passed about 530 years. From the second of *Darius Nothus* indeed to the destruction of *Jerusalem*, near upon 490 years intervened; but concerning any Edict made by that Prince; there is not a word in Scripture. From the 20th of *Artaxerxes Longimanus* to the death and passion of Christ, are found 476. or 477. which come too short by thirteen of the 490. and betwixt the twentieth of *Artaxerxes Mnemon*, and the destruction of *Jerusalem*, are found but about 450. which come far short of the true account; as also the Chronology of such as would fetch the rise of the 290 from the first of *Darius Medus*; and the second or sixth of *Darius* the son of *Hystaspes*. And although the Angel mentioneth the punishment:



## SECT. 3.

turned he to the King, from whom he yet obtained leave to come again into *Judah*, where he seemeth to have lived untill the sixteenth year of *Darius Nohus*, in which the first part of the seventy weeks endeth, consisting of 49 years, viz. seven weeks, which are thought to be those of which the Angel spake, that the streets should be built again and the wall, even in troublous times.

Artaxerxes his civil War with Megabyzus.

17. After *Artaxerxes* had made peace with the *Gracians*, he fell into civil and intestine broils with *Megabyzus*, who had done him such service in *Egypt* and elsewhere, if credit be given to *Ctesias*, from whom we have a relation of these transactions. This *Megabyzus*, after he had quieted *Egypt*, and committed it to the Government of *Sartamas*, departed thence and went to the King, leading along with him *Inarus* and some *Greekish* prisoners, after he had obtained a promise from him that no punishment should be inflicted on them, though *Amytis* (or rather *Amestris*) the King's Mother had so layn upon him to deliver into her hands not onely them, but *Megabyzus* himself her son in Law, being enraged for the death of *Achamenes*, who in the former Expedition was slain by the *Ionians*. For five years he endured her importunity without yielding, but at length being wearied and overcome, he gave up the *Greeks* and *Inarus* into her power. His body she nailed overhwart to three crosses, and beheaded 50 of the *Greeks*, which were all she could take. That *Inarus* was crucified *Thucydides* witnesseth, though nothing of this time or manner; and *Herodotus* reporteth, that his son *Thannyras* was restored by the *Persians* to the Principality of his Father.

18. *Megabyzus* being forely moved with the usage of his prisoners, concealed his displeasure for a time; but getting leave to depart to his Government in *Syria*, whither he had privately sent some *Greeks* beforehand, broke out into open Rebellion, and got an Army together of 150000 men. Against him then was sent *Osiris* with 200000, who joyning battel with him wounded him in the thigh, but received two wounds from him, one in his thigh and the other in his shoulder, with the anguish whereof, and losse of blood, he fell from his Horse and was taken prisoner, and though his men well behaved themselves, yet were they overthrown, and *Megabyzus* getting the Victory used him very courteously, and sent him back to the King who desired it. After this was sent more forces, commanded by *Mexistenes* Nephew to *Artaxerxes*, by his Brother *Artarius* the Governour of *Babylon*. He also giving battel to *Megabyzus*, was wounded by him both in shoulder and head though not mortally, and being put to flight *Megabyzus* obtained another famous Victory.

19. Things going thus, *Artarius* dealt with him by Messengers, then *Artaxerxes* the Eunuch Governour of *Paphlagonia*, and *Amestris* also advised him yet to be reconciled to the King, afterwards *Artarius* himself, *Amytis* his wife, and *Artaxerxes* (now twenty years of age) were sent to him to persuade him to go to him: Being perswaded, after his return the King signified to him by a message, that he freely pardoned him all that was past, but going on a time a hunting with him, when a Lyon set upon the King, as he raised himself up *Megabyzus* slew him, whereat *Artaxerxes* was in a great rage that he had stricken him before he could touch him, and commanded his head to be cut off. But by the intercession of *Amestris*, *Amytis*, and others, his life was spared, yet was he banished to *Cyria*, a Town upon the Red Sea, and *Artaxerxes* the Eunuch into *Armenia* for speaking freely to the King in his behalf.

Five years he then continued in exile, at the end of which feigning himself to be a *Pisagas* (which in the *Persian* tongue signifieth a Leper at whom no man might come) he fled away and came to his wife *Amytis* at his own house, by whom scarcely being known, he was by her means and the help of *Amestris* reconciled once again to the King, who made him eat at his own table as formerly, and so continued in great favour till his death at 76 years of age, for which the King was much troubled.

20. Whilst the *Gracians* were busie with one another in the *Peloponnesian* War, of which now several years had passed, *Artaxerxes* sent *Artaphernes* a *Persian*

Thucyd. l. 4.

Persian

## SECT. 3.

*Persian* to the *Lacedamonians*, with a Letter written in *Assyrian* Characters, in which, amongst other things, he desired to know plainly of them how they stood affected, for that he was utterly ignorant of what they thought, many Ambassadors coming, and no one of them agreeing with another, wherefore he desired, that if they intended to declare themselves, they would send some of their own back with *Artaphernes*. What was effected hereby is not known, but we find elsewhere, that the *Lacedamonians* entered into a League with him in one main matter, contrary to that formerly made with the *Athenians*. For whereas it was provided first in the one, that the *Greekish* Cities in *Asia* should be left to their own liberty, in the other they were expressly left under his Dominion; such influence had then the Civil Wars of *Greece* upon the matters of *Asia*; perhaps because the *Lacedamonians* were jealous of the *Ionians*, as the Colony of their adversaries the *Athenians*, who, if not now, entered into War with them, were much suspected, jealousies abounding betwixt them. Not long after this Message, *Artaxerxes* died, having reigned according to *Diodorus* forty years compleat, according to *Sulpicius Severus* 41. but after *Ctesias* 42. amongst which opinions 'tis probable that he died in the beginning of the 42 year, after the death of *Xerxes*, in the second year of the 89 *Olympiad*. A. M. 3582. 421 years before the birth of Christ.

Artaxerxes dieth.

Diodorus. ad Olymp. 84. an. 3.

At Olymp. 88. an. 4.

21. *Artaxerxes* had onely one legitimate son by his wife *Damaspa*, named *Xerxes*, but 17 by Concubines, amongst which were *Sogdianus*, *Ochus*, and *Arsites*. *Xerxes* succeeded his father, but was slain by *Secundianus*, as he was drunk, in the 45th day after his death. *Secundianus* then became King, but causing *Bagoraxus* the Eunuch to be stoned for something done about his fathers body, incurred the displeasure of the Army, which because of this, and his brothers death, could never be taken off by all the gifts he bestowed on them. Being jealous of his brother *Ochus*, whom his father had made Governour of the *Hyrcanians*, he sent for him; but he refused to come, and so did several times, till he had got a considerable Army. For *Arberius* General of the horse revolted to him, then *Arxanes* the Viceroy of *Egypt*, and *Artaxerxes* coming out of *Armenia* caused him to take the *Cidaris* (or *Cisaris*) a Cap peculiar to the Kings and Priests of *Persia*.

Ochus.

*Ochus* thus taking the Royal Ensign and Title of King, changed his name *Idem*, into *Darius*, and was also most commonly called *Darius Nohus*. By the advice of *Parysatis* his wife, he enticed by all means *Secundianus* to come to him, not sparing Oaths, or any other wayes to get him into his hands, and so far prevailed, that though *Menostanes* the Eunuch counselled *Secundianus* not to trust himself, yet he came to him, and being cast into athes he died the same way as *Darius* the son of *Hystaspes* formerly made away his Emulators, though some think this *Darius* to have been the first inventor of this punishment, and that it is falsely ascribed by *Valerius Maximus*, to the son of *Hystaspes*. Then reigned he alone by himself after his brother had reigned six moneths and twenty dayes. The three Eunuchs, *Artaxerxes*, *Artibaxanes*, and *Athons* were in great power with him; but especially, he was advised by his wife, by whom he had two Children, *Amistris* a daughter, and *Arfaces* a son (called afterwards *Artaxerxes*) before he came to the Kingdom. Afterwards he begot of her another son, called *Cyrus*, from the Sun; and others to the number of 13. But all the rest died young, except these two and his fourth son named *Oxendrus*.

His Children.

Ctesias. Scits in his time.

22. After this *Arsites* his own brother, both by father and mother, and *Artyphius* the son of *Megabyzus* revolted from him. *Artasfras* was sent with an Army against them, who falling upon *Artyphius*, was worsted in two battels; but in the third overthrew him, and corrupting the *Greeks* that fought for him, drew away all his Company, except three *Milesiens*; so that upon the Oath of *Artasfras* for his security, for that *Arsites* could not be found, he yielded himself to the King. He was minded to put him to death, but *Parysatis* his wife persuaded him to spare him for a time, for *Arsites* seeing him unpunished would also be moved to yield himself, and then he might

F F

rid

## SECT. 3.

rid himself of them both together, which accordingly came to passe, both being cast into the athes; though *Darius* was hardly brought by her persuasions to make away his brother: now also *Pharnacius*, who with *Secundianus* had slain *Xerxes*, was put to death, and *Menostanes* being apprehended shunned the same punishment by laying violent hands upon himself.

This Rebellion was followed by the revolt of *Pisabanes* the Governour of *Lydia*, against whom *Tissaphernes* and others being sent, he met them, having in his Army *Lycon* the *Athenian*, with such *Greeks* as he had brought with him, who being corrupted by the Kings Captains revolted from him, so that with fair words he was drawn in, and carried to the King, who cast him into the athes, and gave his Government to *Tissaphernes*, and the Cities with the regions adjoining to *Lycon* for a reward of his treachery. After this followed the treason of *Artaxares* in great power with *Darius*, who conspired about killing him, and transferring the Kingdom to himself. For this purpose being an Eunuch, he caused his wife to make him a beard, that he might seem no other than a perfect man; but the matter being revealed by her, he was delivered up into the hands of *Parasitis*, who put him to death.

23. *Arfaces* (afterwards called *Artaxerxes*) the eldest son of *Darius*, married *Statira*, the daughter of *Idarnes*, a man of prime rank amongst the *Persians*; and *Terituchmes* the son of *Idarnes*, who after his death succeeded in his Government, married *Amistris* daughter to the King. She had a sister named *Roxana*, who being very beautifull, and well skilled in shooting, *Terituchmes* fell in love with her, and having to do with her detested his wife, inso much as he resolved to murder her by the help of 300 men, with whom he practised to revolt. Whilst he thought hereof, one *Udiasfes*, a man in great power about him, being promised great matters if he could deliver the Kings daughter from so great a danger, slew him; but the son of this *Udiasfes*, who was Armour-bearer to *Terituchmes*, and was not present at his death, after he had notice thereof cursed his father, and seizing upon the Citie *Zaris* delivered it up to *Terituchmes* his son. Then did *Parasitis* bury alive the Mother, Brethren, and Sisters of *Terituchmes*, and commanded *Roxana* to be cut in pieces alive. *Darius* would have had her to have made away *Statira* his daughter-in-law together with the rest; but through the importunity of *Arfaces* her husband, she spared her; of which *Darius* told her, that afterwards she would sorely repent, as it came to passe.

From the second year of this King, \* *Sulpicius Severus*, and \* many learned men with him, count the beginning of the seventy weeks of *Daniel*, ending them with the destruction of *Jerusalem*, because the number of years do agree, and the Angel maketh mention of that desolation; though nothing be spoken in any place concerning any going out of a Decree during the reign of this Prince, from which those weeks must needs have commenced. They must needs allow the work now to have been carried on by the solicitation of the Prophets *Haggai* and *Zachariah*, which had been interrupted for 115 years, ever since the second year of the return of *Zerubbabel* and *Jeshua*, at which time they began to build. But now at this time, and before this, lived *Malachias* the last of all the Prophets, who exhorts not the people to the building of the Temple as the others did, which is an evidence of the finishing of it before; but reprehends those corruptions which \* *Nehemiah* in his second Government had observed amongst the *Jews*, viz. marriages with strangers, unjust detention of Tithes, and corruption of Divine worship. And because the succession of Prophets was no more to be expected; in the later end of his Prophecie he exhorts the people to keep the Law of *Moses*, untill such time as the great Prophet the *Messias* should be revealed, before whom *John Baptist* was to come, in the spirit and power of *Elias*. The ending of *Artaxerxes Longimanus*. After these Prophets the *Hebrews* held the men of the great Synagogue to have succeeded; but the later *Jews* reckon the three last Prophets amongst them, and *Estra* as the President of the Council.

24. Against

\* Hist. sacr. lib. 2.  
\* Josephus Scaliger, Edm. Livellans, Junius.

\* Cap. ult.

## SECT. 3.

Xenoph. Hel. l. 10.

24. Against this *Darius* the *Medes* rebelled, but were after some time reduced again into obedience. At this time the States of *Greece* being plunged deep in the *Peloponnesian* War, he made his advantage thereof as much as he could, siding with the *Lacedemonians* against the *Athenians*, who did him most hurt in *Asia*, both by their great skill and practice in Navigation, and being allied to the *Ionians*, whom as their Colonies they helped against him; so that much intercourse, and great transactions passed betwixt *Tissaphernes* his Lieutenant, and those of *Sparta*, which are involved in the affairs of *Greece*. In the 17th year of his reign he sent his son *Cyrus* (born since he came to the Government) down to the Sea-side as *Satrapa*, or Lieutenant, with a kind of power over the other his Lieutenants there, and Captain General of all the forces which were wont to muster at the plains of *Casolus*: giving him in charge to assist the *Lacedemonians* in the War against the *Athenians*, and by his help did they recover to the hopes of their former fortune. When he had continued in his charge a year or two, he grew so high that he killed his two Cousin Germans, *Autobasces* and *Mitans*, because they came not to him with their hands folded under their Clothes, which Ceremony was onely observed in the presence of a King. Their Parents of this complaining highly to his father, and alleging how unjust it was to connive at such practices, he sent for him to come to him, alleging he was not well, lying then incamped in the Countrey of the *Medes*, against the *Cadastians*, bordering thereupon, who had revolted.

Cyrus for his mildemeanors sent for.

25. Leaving the command of the Cities, with all his Treasure, and the assignment of his Tributes to *Lyfander* the *Spartan*, he went up, taking along with him *Tissaphernes* as his friend, with 300 *Greeks*, under the leading of *Xenias* the *Parrhasian*. His father lived not long after he came to him, whom in his sickness *Parasitis* his wife having ruled him all his life, loving *Cyrus* above her eldest son, urged him to leave him his Successor, as *Darius* the son of *Hystaspes* did *Xerxes*, for that he was born to him being a King, and the other but a private person. But he thinking it not just refused to do it, but left him those Cities over which he had made him Governour, and his Kingdom to *Arfaces*, or *Artaxerxes* his eldest son, and so died after he had reigned 19 years, in the fourth of the 93th *Olympiad*, the 27th of the *Peloponnesian* War now ending. A. M. 3600. 403 years before the birth of Christ.

Ochus dieth.

*Arfaces* then, by the pleasure of his father, or his interest in the great ones, obtained the Kingdom, and changed his name into *Artaxerxes*, being for the excellency of his memory surnamed *Mnemom*. When he had made sure his possession, his wife *Statira* thinking it then time to revenge the death of her brother, and the rest of her kindred, caused *Udiasfes*, who slew *Terituchmes*, to have his tongue drawn backwards through his neck, and cut off, and got his son *Mitridates*, who had delivered the Citie *Zaris* into the hands of *Terituchmes* his son, to succeed in his Government. Not long after his fathers death *Artaxerxes* went to *Palargada*, there to be initiated by the *Persian* Priests in the royal mysteries. There was a Temple dedicated to some warlike Goddesse, thought to be *Diana*, whose Temple he that was to be initiated entering must put off his own Clothes, and put upon him a Garment worn by *Cyrus* the Great, before he came to the Empire; there was he to eat such a quantity of Figs, to drink Milk mingled with Vinegar, and perhaps used some other unknown Ceremonies. Whilst the King was about these things came *Tissaphernes* unto him, and with him a Certain Priest, who having been appointed the instructor of his brother *Cyrus* had taught him the Magical Arts. He accusing him of treasonable practices, had more credit given to him, because *Cyrus* had resolved to set upon the King in the Temple, and kill him as he should put off his Clothes; some say he was apprehended upon this accusation, others, that he came indeed into the Temple, and being hid by the Priest, was discovered and taken.

Cyrus attempting his brothers death.

26. The King was minded to put him to death, and out of reverence to his Family caused him to be bound in golden chains, but their mother took him

Ff 2

Idem & Xenoph. Expedit. Cyri lib. 1.

Idem ibid. & Exped. Cyri lib. 1.  
Diodorus ad Olymp. 93. an. 1. ad Olymp. 94. an. 2. Justin. lib. 5.

Xenoph. ibid.

A. M. 3600. Ol. 93. an. 4. V. C. 349.

Artaxerxes Mnemom fac. cedeth. Clifius.

Platarch. in Artaxerx.



## SECT. 3.

Is pardoned  
butPractizeth  
new matters.

in her arms, wrapped him in her hair, laid her neck to his, and with great lamentations and intreaties prevailed for his pardon, and sent him back again into his former Province of *Lydia*, and the Sea-coasts. When he came there, not at all contented with this command, nor so much as remembering that he was saved by his mother's intercession, as that he was taken and bound by his brothers, burned more than ever with a desire of reigning. And to this purpose as secretly as he could gathered forces of the *Greeks*; and under one pretence or other, laid out for foreign aid both far and near, hoping to surprise his brother. The *Ionian* Cities given up now into the hands of *Tissaphernes* revolted to him, all except *Miletus*, the Inhabitants of which he finding to practise the same, killed some, and drove away the rest, who flying to *Cyrus*, he besieged the City both by Sea and Land, endeavouring to restore them. Then wrote he submissively to his brother, desiring he might have the Government of those Cities rather than *Tissaphernes*, and herein he was furthered by his Mother, who lying as it were his Lieger at Court, made the best of all things. Hence was *Artaxerxes* deluded, suspecting nothing, but accounting these forces to be kept together against *Tissaphernes*, betwixt whom and *Cyrus* he little regarded though there were a War, and the rather, because *Cyrus* sent him the Tributes due from the Cities, which *Tissaphernes* had formerly kept in his hands.

27. *Clearchus* at this time being banished from *Lacedamon*, came to *Cyrus*, who after conference with him admired the man, and gave him 10000 *Daricks*, wherewith he levied an Army, and passing out of *Cherronesus* waded upon the *Thracians* that inhabited above the *Hellepont*, thereby greatly promoting the affairs of the *Greek* Cities, insomuch that they willingly furnished him with money to maintain his Forces which were onely raised for *Cyrus*, though thus employed for a cover to the design, and till he could be in a readinesse. There was also one *Aristippus* a *Thessalian* a guest of *Cyrus*, who being overpowered by his Country-men of the contrary faction, came to him, and requested him to spare him 2000 Mercenaries and three moneths pay, alleging that thereby he should be able to overcome his adversaries. He granted his request, and doubled both the number of men and sum of money, desiring him withall, not to agree with his adversaries till they two had had conference together; and so this Army in *Thessalie* (though not discovered) was kept on foot and maintained for him. Further he sent to *Proxenus* the *Boeotian*, his friend, to bring unto him as many men as he might, under pretence of warring against the *Pisidians*, who spoiled his Country; and *Sophaneus* the *Stymphalian*, with *Socrates* the *Achaean*, who likewise were both his Guests, to come to him with as many men as they could make, under colour, together with the banished *Milesians*, of making Warre upon *Tissaphernes*.

28. When he was now resolved to march up into the higher Provinces against his brother, and for that purpose must gather all his Forces together, he gave out, that his purpose was to chase the *Pisidians* wholly out of the Country, and so, as for that intent, assembled both his *Barbarian* and *Grecian* Troups. He commanded *Clearchus* with the Army he led to come unto him, *Aristippus* to compound with his adversaries, and send him his Forces, and *Xenius* the *Arcadian* (whom he had appointed General of the Mercenaries that lay in Garrison in the Cities) leaving onely so many as should be necessary to keep the Cittadels, gathered those Forces together, and brought them to *Sardis*, being about 4000 armed Foot. He sent for those that lay before *Miletus*, and invited the banished men to his service, promising, if his affairs succeeded, not to give over till he had restored them, which they gladly accepted of. *Proxenus* came with 1500 heavy-armed and 500 light-armed foot. *Sophaneus* the *Stymphalian* brought 1000 armed, *Socrates* the *Achaean* about 500, *Pasion* the *Megarean* 300, and as many Peltsasts or Targetiers.

29. He had before this sent to *Lacedamon*, desiring of that State, that as he had formerly aided them against the *Athenians*, so they would not refuse

Idem &amp; Xenoph. Exped. Cyn. lib. 1.

Idem ibid.

Diodorus ad Olymp. 94. ann. 4.

now

## SECT. 3.

Plutarch in Artaxerxe.

Justin. lib. 1.

Xenoph. Evag. dit. Cyn. lib. 1.

Diodorus.

Xenoph. ibid.

now in his need to do the same for him: boasting in his letters, that if they sent him Foot-men, he would provide for them Horses; if Horse-men, Chariots, if they had before of their own certain pieces of ground, he would give them whole Villages, and that he would not count but measure their pay to them. They counting it but just and agreeable enough to their own interest (not considering against whom they engaged) decreed aid to be sent to him, thinking hereby if he overcame to ingratiate themselves with him; but if *Artaxerxes* should get the better, to excuse themselves well enough, as having decreed nothing against him absolutely. The *Ephur* then presently wrote to their Admiral, to do whatsoever he should command, who accordingly went to *Ephesus* and joyned himself with *Tamos* the *Egyptian* and Admiral to *Cyrus*, with whom he sailed into *Cilicia*, and there prevailed that *Syennesis* the Prince of that Country hindred not *Cyrus* as he passed by Land against his brother. *Tissaphernes* conceiving that these preparations were greater than fitted the War against the *Pisidians*, with a Party of 500 Horse hastened to the King with all possible speed, who as soon as by him he had the intelligence, made contrary preparations. *Cyrus* after he had committed the care of *Lydia* to some *Persians* of his kindred, and given the charge of *Lydia*, *Aeolia*, and the parts adjacent to *Tamos* of *Memphis* his faithful friend, he presently set forwards toward *Cilicia* and *Pisidia*, it being bruted up and down that some of these people had revolted. From *Sardis* he marched through *Lydia*, and after four encampings, came 112 miles and an half to *Colosse*, a great, rich, and well inhabited City, where he stayed seven dayes, and *Menon* the *Thessalian* came to him with 1000 armed Foot, and 500 *Dolopian*, *Anian*, and *Olympians* Peltsasts. From thence he marched in three encampings 75 miles and an half to *Celene* a great and rich City of *Phrygia*, where he rested thirty daies, & *Clearchus* the *Lacedemonian* came to him with 1000 armed Foot, and 800 *Thracian* Peltsasts, and 200 *Cretian* Archers; and *Sosius* the *Syracusan* brought 1000 armed Foot, and *Sophaneus* the *Arcadian* the same number. Here he also mustred the *Greeks*, and found them to be 11000 Armed, and about 200 Peltsasts or Targetiers.

30. From *Celene* he marched in two encampings ten Parasangs, or thirty seven miles and an half, and came to *Pelte*, where he stayed three dayes; and thence in two encampings 45 miles, and arrived at the Market of the *Caramanians*, a City full of People, and the last in the Country of *Mysia*; and hence in three encampings he marched 30 Parasangs 112 miles, and reached to the Plain of *Cayster*, a City well peopled, where he rested his Army five dayes. Here the Army made much ado for pay, being more than three moneths behind, which he was enabled to pay them, with a moneth over, by the coming of *Epiaxia* wife to *Syennesis* King of *Cilicia*, who brought good store of treasure with her. From thence in four encampings he proceeded 75 miles as far as *Tyriaum*, a City full of people, and hence in three encampings 75 miles and arrived at *Iconium* the last City of *Phrygia*. He stayed here three dayes, and then marched in five encampings through *Lycaonia* 112 miles, which Country he suffered the *Greeks* to spoil as Enemy. Now he sent away the *Cilician* Queen by the nearest way into her own Country, and with her *Menon* the *Thessalian* and his Regiment, to make way for his passage into that Country.

31. *Cyrus* with the rest marched through *Cappadocia* 25 Parasangs, or 93 miles and an half in four dayes, and came to *Dana* a great and wealthy City, where he put to death two *Persians* for treason against himself. From hence attempt was made to break into *Cilicia*, but the Streights were so narrow, that one Chariot could but passe at once, and withall exceeding steep, so that if resistance was made it was impossible, which *Syennesis* the King was said to be ready to make at the height of the Streights, and the Army, for that reason staid in the Plain. But the next day word was brought that he had quitted the passage, after he perceived *Menon's* Troops to be got into *Cilicia* beyond the Mountains, and heard how a Fleet of *Lacedemonian* Gallies were with those of *Cyrus*, under sail to passe from *Ionian* thither, under conduct of

Tamos.

## SECT. 3.

*Tamon*. Then ascended he the Mountain without any opposition, from which descending, in four encampings he marched 93 miles and an half, and came to *Tarsus* and a great rich City of *Cilicia*, where was the Palace of *Syennesis*, and through which runneth *Cydnus*, a River two hundred foot in breadth.

32. The Inhabitants thereof, except such as bought and sold, fled with their King to the tops of the Mountains, leaving the City to be sacked with the Palace by the Soldiers, intruded for the losse of 100 of their Companions of *Menon's* Regiment. *Cyrus* sent for the King to come to him, who refused it, till overcome by the persuasions of his wife, and then he gave him great sums of money to uphold his Army, and received back such gifts as were accounted most honourable amongst Kings, as an Horse with a golden bit, a Chain of gold, Bracelets, a sword decked with gold, a *Persian* Garment, and Freedom of his Land from spoil; as also restitution of Slaves taken in spoil by the Soldiers wherefoever they could be found. Here the soldiers now imagining that they were lead against the King flatly refused to go any farther, it being, as they said, no part of their agreement. *Clearchus* went about to force his men to proceed, but they, as soon as he offered to go forwards, cast stones at him and at his carriage beasts, whereby he was forced to berate himself to a fair and politick way, and to effect it (which with trouble enough he did) *Cyrus* gave out that he went against *Abrocamus* an Enemy of his, who lay upon the River *Euphrates* about twelve encampings from thence, that if he found him there, he would be revenged on him, and if he fled away they should deliberate what to do. Hereupon, though they suspected the matter, yet they resolved to hold on, and upon demanding more pay, he promised them half as much more as formerly they had: viz. a *Darick* and an half instead of one *Darick* to every Soldier. All this while no man heard in publick they were led against the King.

33. From *Tarsus* in five encampings he marched about 83 miles to *Iffor*, the last City of *Cilicia*, well peopled, large, and rich, and situated upon the Sea, where he remained three dayes. Hither out of *Peloponnesus* came to *Cyrus* 35 *Lacedamonian* ships, under the command of *Pythagoras*, together with *Tamos*, who brought from *Ephesus* 25 of *Cyrus* his ships, wherewith he had besieged *Miletus*, and *Cherisophus* the *Lacedamonian* whom *Cyrus* had sent for, and who brought with him 700 armed Foot. Whilst the Army lay here, the *Gracian* Mercenaries that served *Abrocamus*, viz. 400 armed Foot revolted and came to *Cyrus*. From hence in one encamping he came about eighteen miles to the Streights of *Cilicia* and *Syria*, defended with a wall on each side, betwixt which ran the River *Kersos* 100 foot broad. The distance betwixt the walls was three furlongs, admitting no passage by force, the neither way toward the Sea being narrow and fenced with strong walls, and the upper nothing but inaccessible Rocks, in either wall there being set a gate. This passage *Cyrus* suspecting to be stopped by *Abrocamus*, sent for his ships to transport so many men as might force it: but he upon hearing of *Cyrus* his coming into *Cilicia*, returned with all speed out of *Phœnicia* to the King, though reported to have an Army of 300000 men.

34. From the Streights he marched in one encamping eighteen miles, and upwards, and came to *Myriandrum* a City of *Syria*, inhabited by the *Phœnicians*, upon the Sea, being a place of traffick, where many ships of burthen then rode in the Haven. Here he remained seven dayes, and *Xenias* the *Aracadian* Collonel, with *Pasion* of *Megara* shipping themselves sailed homewards, discontented, as was thought, because *Cyrus* suffered *Clearchus* to keep their Soldiers, which refusing to go any further against the King, removed into his Camp, with intent to return into *Greece*. From thence in four encampings he marched 75 miles to the River *Chatos*, 100 foot broad, which was full of great tame Fish, which the *Syrians* counted gods, and therefore suffered them not to be harmed no more than Pigeons. The Villages where-in they encamped belonged to *Parisatis*, being assigned her for her maintenance. Thence in eight encampings he marched 168 miles to the River

*Euphrates*,

## SECT. 3.

*Euphrates*, whose breadth was 3 furlongs, and upon which was built the great and rich Citie *Thapsacus*, where the Army remained 5 dayes.

35. Here it was openly declared to the *Greeks*, that they were led against the King, for which they were very angry with their Officers, who, they said they were sure, knew it before, for not acquainting them sooner with the design; and refused to stir one foot forwarder, except upon promise of as much as their Countrey-men had, who formerly waited on *Cyrus* to his father. He promised to give every man five pounds of silver (of the value of 14. l. 11. s. 8. d. sterling) as soon as they came to *Babylon*, and to continue their whole pay, till they should be sent back into *Ionia*, to which conditions most of them yielded, and *Menon* prevailing with his Regiment to passe over the River first, whilst the other were yet in consultation, thereby to gain greater favour with *Cyrus*, all the Army followed, not a man being wet above the breasts in wading over; so that this passage seemed to be miraculous, and to portend more good to *Cyrus* than followed, the River giving way to him, which they of *Thapsacus* reported never to have been passed over on foot before, but only with shipping, which *Abrocamus* had burnt to hinder him in the passage. Thence in nine encampings he marched fifty parasangs, or 187 miles and upwards through *Syria*, and came to the River *Araxes*. Here they stayed three dayes, and made provision of victuals, and then departing thence, marched through the Wildernesse of *Arabia*, 130 miles in five encampings, having *Euphrates* on the right hand, and proceeding through this Countrey came to the River *Mascha*, where they stayed three dayes in making provision for the army; whence in 13 encampings they marched through the desert 90 parasangs, or 337 miles and an half, and came to the Straights.

36. Proceeding in their journey hence, they might discover the footings, and dung of horses; for a party had been sent of about 2000, which going before the Kings Camp, burnt up the fodder, and made havock of all things profitable for use. Now came *Orontes* a *Persian* to *Cyrus*, whom having fought to betray him in times past, and pardoned by him, attempted now to do the like, but was discovered, and put to death. Marching still forward they proceeded in three encampings 45 miles through the Countrey of *Babylon*. In the third encamping at midnight *Cyrus* set his men in order, thinking his brother to be near, and would give him battel the next morning. The *Gracians* were in number 10400 Armed, and 2400 Targetiers, the *Barbarians* with *Cyrus* were ten Myriads (or 100000) besides about 200 syched Chariots. From hence in order of battel he marched some twelve miles, thinking the King would have fought that day, because at the end of this half dayes journey he found a Trench cast five fathoms broad, and three deep, running up 45 miles into the Countrey, as far as the Wall of *Media*, where the four Channels begin that derived out of the River *Tigris*, fall into *Euphrates*. This Trench the King caused to be made after he heard that *Cyrus* was stirring, who now passing it without any disturbance, he and all his Army were strongly perswaded that the King determined not to fight; whence he had not so great care of his March the next day, and the third day after he advanced sitting in his Chariot: the most of his Army marched confusedly, many of the Souldiers having their Arms laid upon the wains, and carriage of beasts.

37. Now it was time, the Marker was full, and the place of encamping where they should quarter was at hand, when *Patagyas* a *Persian*, one of the faithfullest of *Cyrus* his Train was seen to come upon the spur, his horse dropping with sweat, crying out in the *Persian* and *Greek* language that the King was hard by, with an huge Army, ready and prepared for fight. This news made a great confusion, all thinking they should be charged in that disorder, *Cyrus* leaping from his Chariot, put on his Curace, and mounting on horseback, took his Darts in his hand, and commanded the rest to Arm, and every man to take his place. *Clearchus* stood in the point of the right Wing, by the River *Euphrates*, *Menon* and his Regiment held the point of the left, and *Cyrus* himself the midst with 600 horse-men Armed with great Curaces, and Tases, and all of them with Casks, except he alone, who stood waiting the fight

SECT. 3. fight with his head unarmed, according to the custom of *Perſia*. The King had with him 90 Myriads (or 900000) and 150 Chariots, having on both ſides ſythes prominent, and bearing ſtraight forth from the Axle-trees, and ſome from the former ſeat of the Chariot with their points turned toward the ground, that they might cut in pieces whatſoever they met and ſtruck upon: His purpoſe was to fend them with high ſpeed againſt the Ranks of the *Gracians*, to break and rent them aſunder.

38. The Kings Army came on an equal and ſlow pace, in great ſilence, quietneſſe, and order, which aſaſed, and diſcouraged *Cyrus*, and the *Gracians*, little expecting any ſuch thing. *Cyrus* now galloping up to the right Wing, cried out to *Clearchus* to lead the *Gracians* againſt the middeſt of the Enemies battel, becauſe the King was there, ſaying, that if he were overcome, there would be no more for them to do. *Clearchus* ſeeing the middeſt of the battel, and hearing from him that the King, by reaſon of his multitudes which ſtretched out the body, was far without the point of the left Wing of the *Gracian* Phalang, would not for all that draw away the right Wing from the River, fearing to be confronted, and incompaſſed on both ſides: but answered, he would have a care that all things ſhould go well. The word was betrayed before they joyned, ſo that they were forced to change it to *Jupiter the ſaviour, and victory*, after the giving of which the *Gracians* ſinging the *Pæan*, and running on with a ſhout, the *Barbarians*, before they came within an Arrows ſhot turned their horſes and fled, the other following the Chace with all ſpeed, and crying to one another not to haſte too much, but to follow in good order. The Chariots void of Guides were carried, ſome upon the Enemies themſelves, ſome upon the *Gracians*, who upon a forecaſt opened, and let them paſſe through, onely ſome were overthrown by fear, who notwithstanding were reported to have had no harm, nor yet any other *Gracian* in this whole fight, one onely excepted, who was ſtruck with an Arrow in the left ſide.

39. *Cyrus* beholding this fight much rejoiced, and was now worſhipped as King by thoſe about him; notwithstanding he followed not the Chace, but keeping by him his 600 horſe, obſerved what the King would do, who being in the midſt of his Phalang, without the point of *Cyrus* his left Wing, and ſeeing no man to fight againſt him on the contrary part, wound, and turned his battel to the left hand, to overwing, and encompaſſe in his Enemies. *Cyrus* perceiving it, and fearing, left coming on the backs of the *Gracians* he ſhould cut them in pieces, galloped forth, and met him in front, and charging with his 600. overcame, and put to flight the 6000 that were ordered before him, and with his own hands (as was reported) ſlew *Artagerſes*, one of his Generals. His 600 purſuing hotly were diſperſed, except a few that were left with him, for the moſt part ſuch as uſually ſat at his Table, with which being accompanied, he eſpied the King, and the Troup about him, and after he had ſaid *I ſee the man*, flew out directly againſt him, ſtruck him on the breaſt, and wounded him through the Curace, as *Creſias* of *Gnidus* the Kings Phyſician related, who reported alſo that he cured the Wound. Whileſt *Cyrus* thus fought, one with a Dart hit him a fore blow under the eye.

40. The King and *Cyrus* with their followers in defence of either of them thus coping together, *Cyrus* was ſlain by the King, as his flatterers ſaid, as others by a *Carian*, though *Creſias* writeth his death to have hapned after the King had withdrawn himſelf to an Hill, being firſt wounded beſides the eye, and then diſpatched by a thruſt into his left Leg, by a *Caunian* of a baſe condition, who with other of his Companions had thruſt himſelf, it being now dark, in amongſt his followers. Here he died in the battel of *Cynaxa* a place diſtant from *Babylon* 500 furlongs, or 60 odd miles, a man in the opinion of ſuch as had acquaintance with him, of a moſt Kingly diſpoſition, and moſt worthy a Crown of all the *Perſians* that ſucceeded *Cyrus* the Great. *Clearchus* before the fight adviſed him to keep himſelf behind the Army, and not to venture into danger, to whom he replied as one who wiſhed him to carry himſelf unworthy a Kingdom whileſt he fought for one. In the opinion of *Plutarch*

SECT. 3. *arch*, not ſo much his raſhneſſe (though inexcusable) as the lazineſſe, not to ſay cowardiſe, of *Clearchus* is to be condemned, who having marched ſo many miles for no other purpoſe than to place him in the Throne, not ſo much endeavourd his ſafety and Conqueſt, as his own eaſe and ſecurity: The event of the fight ſhewed, that none of thoſe about the King would have endured the leaſt brunt from the *Gracians*, and that after they had been put to flight, and he with them, or elſe killed in the place, the victory and Kingdom muſt have remained to *Cyrus*. But this advantage was loſt by *Clearchus*, who ſo placed his men that *Artaxerxes* could not have deſired a more convenient order, on his part, they being at greateſt diſtance from him and his Army, inſomuch that he neither perceived himſelf overcome by them, and *Cyrus* was ſooner ſlain than they could reap any fruit of their victory. This battel was fought about the beginning of the fourth year of the 95 Olympiad, *Epanemus* (or *Xenonatus*) being Archon at *Athens*, in the third ending, or fourth beginning of *Artaxerxes*.

41. *Artaxerxes* commanded the head, and right hand of *Cyrus* to be cut off, and following the Chace, chanced upon his Camp, which they plundered, and took thence his *Phocæan* Concubine, called the wife and beautifull, whoſe name in her own Countrey was *Mitro*, but by *Cyrus* called *Aſpaſia*, whom the King moſt loved, and kept amongſt his 360 Concubines. Now were he and the *Gracians* near four miles aſunder; theſe laſt giving Chace to ſuch Enemies as ſtood before them, as if they had been Conquerours of the whole Army; the other riſing the Camp of the *Gracians*, as if his Army had gained the victory. After this, both parties rallied again for a new engagement, but the *Barbarians* received not the *Gracians*, but fled with greater ſpeed than before. Having perſued them ſome way, the *Gracians* made an *Holt*, and reſted themſelves, wondring they ſaw not *Cyrus*, being ignorant what was befallen him. Then after ſome conſultation what was to be done they returned to the Camp about Supper time, where they found the moſt of their other goods riſed, and eſpecially the meat and drink, and the 400 Wains loaden with Meal and Wine, which *Cyrus* had prepared to relieve them, in caſe the Army ſhould at any time be driven to want. The moſt of them therefore were ſupperleſſe, having alſo wanted their Dinner that day: for that the King came in fight before they could reſreſh themſelves. Thus this day ended, and together with the ſtory the firſt book of the *Aſcent* of *Cyrus* commonly aſcribed to *Xenophon* as the Author.

42. The *Gracians* hearing of *Cyrus* his death were much troubled, and offered *Ariaus* (a *Perſian*, who followed *Cyrus*, and commanded his left Wing) to place him in the Throne; but he reſuſed it, for that, as he ſaid, there were many *Perſians* in all reſpects better than he, who would never endure that he ſhould be King. *Artaxerxes* ſent a Meſſage to them to lay down their Arms, and to repair to his Gate, there to ſubmit themſelves to his mercy. The Coronels were divided in their opinions concerning it, and gave ſeveral answers according to their apprehenſions, but *Clearchus*, for all a doubtfull one, viz. that if they might be accounted as his friends, they ſhould be better friends having Arms, than delivering them up to any man; if no remedy there was but War, they ſhould better make War with Arms, than without, after they had rendred them up. And whereas he offered them Truce, as long as they abode in the ſame place, but threatened War if they ſtirred thence, he replied onely, that they would expect accordingly. Then reſolved he, after he knew *Ariaus* his answer, and how he invited them to march back again into *Ionia*, for that the ſacrifice killed about marching againſt the King was not propitious, to joyn the Army unto his, which accordingly he did, *Ariau*, and the Officers of the *Gracians* taking an Oath to be friends, confederates, and not to betray one another. The League was entred into on this manner: They killed a Boar, a Bull, a Wolf, and a Ram; and the *Gracians* dipped the point of a ſword, the *Barbarians* of a Spear in the blood of theſe beaſts, being powred out into the hollowneſſe of a Target.

G

43. The

The *Gracians* having the better in the battel, are ignorant of *Cyrus* his death.

They joyn with *Ariaus*, and retreat.

A.M. 3607.  
V. C. 353.  
*Xenoph. & Plutarch*, ut prius & in Pericle.

*Xenoph. An. lib. 2.*

*Xenoph. ut ſupra & Plutarch. in Artaxerxe.*

*Cyrus* ſlain.

## SECT. 3.

The King  
pursueth  
and is forced  
to dismiss  
them.

Tissaphernes in-  
terrupteth their  
officers.

The Soldiers  
make a new  
choice, in  
which Xeno-  
phon is one.

43. The length of the journey from *Ephesus* in *Ionia* to the place of the battel was 93 encampings, 535 parasangs, 16030 furlongs, 2000 miles and above, which though very long, yet resolved they to take another and longer way through *Paphlagonia*, because the former was destitute of provisions. Then set they forward that way, marching more slowly for the better gathering of necessaries, and after the King had somewhat recovered of his wound, he pursued them, and pitched his Tents hard by theirs; but with the noise of them his men were so affrighted, that some of the nearest to them removed their Tents, and on the next day setting their men in order for battel, he who before had made such large demands, sent and offered them truce, and covenanted to let them have free passage through his Territories till they came to the Sea, and afforded them provisions for their money, which was also granted to all the Mercenaries who served under *Arians* (or *Aridans*) and *Clearchus*. Then proceeded the *Greeks* on their journey, and the King returned to *Babylon*, where rewarding those that had best deserved on him in the last battel, he judged the service of *Tissaphernes* to have been most eminent, therefore as a reward (amongst several other noble gifts) he gave him his own daughter to wife, and the government of such places as formerly had been under *Cyrus*, binding him to him thereby so, as he proved ever most faithful to him.

44. *Tissaphernes* seeing how the King was incensed against the *Gracians*, promised him to destroy them all, if he were but furnished with Forces to that purpose, and could but withdraw *Arians* from them, by whom he doubted not but they might easily be betrayed. The King accepting his offer, gave him leave to chuse of the most valiant of his Army as many as he would, with which he followed after, and incamping near to them, sent for *Clearchus* and the other *Coronels* to come to him, pretending he had somewhat for their good to say to them. They with the Captains of the several Companies going to him, with 200 more (who went to buy Victuals) he secured the *Coronels* called into his Tent, and killed the Captains at the door with the other 200, of which one chanced to escape with the news thereof to the Camp. The *Coronels* were sent to the King, who put them all to death except *Menon*. The Soldiers at first greatly terrified, having now no body left to command or lead them, by the advice of *Xenophon* made choice of other Leaders, amongst whom *Cherisophus* was chief, and he himself was one, being elected into the place of *Proxenus*, who being his ancient friend and guest sent for him, and promised him if he would come, to make *Cyrus* his friend, who, as he esteemed him, would be more to be prized than his own Country. He communicated the matter to *Socrates* the Philosopher and his Master, who, for that *Cyrus* his interest seemed cross to that of the City of *Athens*, seeming to stand with the *Lacedemonians*, advised him to consult the Oracle of *Delphos*. Thither he went, and enquired how he might best accomplish his journey, to which was answered, that he must sacrifice to those gods to whom he ought to sacrifice, which he reporting again to *Socrates*, he blamed him for so propounding his question, alleging he ought to have asked whether he should travel or no, and not as one resolved already to do it; but seeing it was so, he must do as he was bidden, and accordingly he followed *Cyrus* to *Sardis*, where *Proxenus* presented him to him.

45. The *Gracians* marching on towards *Paphlagonia*, were dogged at the heels by *Tissaphernes*, who being affraid of the valour of desperat men, never durst ingage in any battel with them, but onely flanked them or fell in upon their Rear, as he could have opportunity, and yet followed them as far as the borders of the *Carduchians*, after which, seeing he could not do them any considerable hurt, he departed with his men towards *Ionia* another way. The *Carduchians* a warlike Nation and at Enmity with the King, and much exercised in slinging of great and massie stones, much disturbed the *Gracians* in their passage of their Country, and in the passing the Mountains thereof were spent seven dayes. With great difficulty and danger having passed it, they went over the River *Centritus* into *Armenia*; of which *Artabazus* be-

*Xenoph.*  
*Ascens. Cyri.*  
*lib. 2. &*  
*Diodorus ad*  
*ann. 4. Olymp.*  
*94.*

*Xenoph. Exped.*  
*lib. 3.*

*Idem ibid. &*  
*Diodorus ut*  
*supra.*

*Xenoph. lib. 4*  
*Diorus.*

## SECT. 3.

ing then Governour, entred into league with them, and suffered them quietly to passe; but in travelling thorow the Mountains they were near all being overwhelmed in the snow, the discerning of wayes being taken away thereby. The whole Army had perished also by extreame cold, had they not light upon some Villages near hand, wherein being furnished with plenty of necessaries, they refreshed themselves. The houses stood within the ground, into which the Men descended by stairs, and their Carrel by descents made for that purpose. Having here stayed eight dayes, they journeyed thence to the River *Phasis*.

46. Having continued four dayes at this River, they marched through the Country of the *Tacchi* and *Phasiani*, by whom being opposed, they fought, and made great slaughter of them, and then seized upon their Villages, which were plentifully furnished with such things as they wanted, they there rested fifteen dayes. Thence marching through the Territories of the *Chalcidians*, in seven encampings they came to the River *Harpasus*, and thence coming into the Plains of the *Tascenti*, they there refreshed themselves three dayes, and proceeding, in four encampings they arrived at a great City called *Gymnasia*. The Prince of this Country entring into a League with them, furnished them with Guides to the Sea, of which, after fifteen dayes being got up to the hill *Chenias*, they got a sight afar off, at which the Front shoured to for joy, that those in the Rear thinking they had been set upon by some Enemy, prepared themselves for a Fight, and there laid they a great heap of stones as a Monument to Posterity, of the spoils obtained from the *Barbarians*, and the immortal memory of their Expedition.

47. Then came they into the Country of the *Maeri*, with whom they made a League, by taking and receiving a Spear, according to the custom of these *Barbarians*. Having got over their Mountains they came into the Territories of the *Coleti*, where a great multitude opposing them, they made no small slaughter of the Inhabitants, and made great spoil, where they found a kind of Honey, of which whosoever did eat, became according to the quantity eaten, drunken, mad, or as dead, but the next day at the same hour returned to their right Senses, and after three or four dayes arose as having received some Medicine. Thence in two encampings they came to *Trapezond* a *Gracian* City well inhabited, situate upon the *Euxine* Sea, being a Colony of the *Sinopeans*, placed in the *Colchian* Country. Here *Jason* with his Companions are reported to have arrived with their ship *Argos*. They sacrificed to *Hercules* and *Jupiter*, and celebrated Games of Exercise, and hence was *Cherisophus* sent to *Byzantium* to provide ships for the transportation of them home, and for him here they staid thirty dayes, but after that term he returning not, their provisions growing scarce, though they had made excursions both by Sea and Land, they put on shipboard (having obtained a little shipping of the *Trapezuntians*) the sick; all those above forty years of age, with the women and children, and passed in three dayes to *Cerasus* a *Gracian* City situate upon the Sea, being also a Colony of the *Sinopeans* in the *Colchian* Country. Here they remained ten dayes, and taking a muster, found 8600 remaining of those that ascended with *Cyrus* into *Persia*, the rest being consumed by the Enemies hand, or Snow, or sickness. Here also they divided the money that arose out of the sale of Captives, the tenth part of which the Officers took into their hands, being severed as an offering to be made to *Apollo* and *Diana* of *Ephesus*; every one keeping and preserving a share for his gods.

48. From *Cerasus* they came into the Country of the *Mesymecans*, the veriest *Barbarians* they had met with in the whole journey, which they passed by force in eight encampings, and in three more that of the *Tibarenes* through which they came to *Cotyora* a *Gracian* Colony also of the *Sinopeans*. Thus far the Army marched on foot, the whole length of the retreat from the place of the battel in the *Babylonian* Territories hither, being 122 encampings, 520 parasangs, 10820 furlongs, 1353 miles and something more. At *Cotyora* they continued 50 dayes, making excursions upon the neighbouring

Gg 2

people

They came  
to Trapezond  
upon the  
Euxine Sea.

*Exped. Cyri.*  
*l. 5.*

*Diodorus ut*  
*supra.*

## SECT. 3.

people of *Paphlagonia*. Then the *Heracleans* and *Synopeans*, a Colony of the *Milesians* in *Paphlagonia*, furnished them with shipping, into which they put themselves and their baggage, and sailed away, *Cherisophus* meeting them with a few Vessels. Holding on their course they sailed by *Jason's* shore, where the Ship *Argo* is said to have anchored, and by the mouths of the Rivers *Thermodon*, *Halyi*, & *Parthenius*, by which after they had passed, they arrived at *Heraclea* a *Gracian* City and Colony of the *Megaraeans*, situate in the Territory of the *Maryandens*, and came to anchor near the *Cherronneseus* or *Peninsula* of *Acherousia*, where *Hercules* is said to have fetched the Dog *Cerberus* out of Hell; the marks being there shewn of his descent, and the depth of the place, being more than two furlongs.

They part  
asunder at  
Heraclea.

49. Here the Soldiers, through the persuasion of *Lycon* an *Achaian*, making unreasonable demands of money from the *Heracleans*, they shut their gates upon them, and provided for their own defence, which bred a sedition in the Army, so that they parted asunder. The *Arcadians* and *Achaens* being more than 4500 all heavy armed, sailed away first, having got shipping of the *Heracleans*, that falling suddenly upon the *Bithynians*, they might prevent the rest, and make the greatest prey. *Cherisophus* a little before chosen General, having 1300 armed, and 700 *Peltasts*, (who were the *Thracians* that followed *Charchus*) marched on foot from *Heraclea*, and as soon as he entered *Thrace*, led along by the Sea-coast being now sick, and presently dead of a Medicine he took in an Ague. *Xenophon* with 1700 Armed, 300 *Peltasts*, and 40 Horses, taking shipping, landed in the confines of *Thrace*, and marched through the midst of the Land. With great difficulty passed they through the Country on foot, the *Thracians* of *Asia* and the *Bithynians*, grievously afflicting them, till meeting together again, they resolved no more to part, and decreed it should be death for any one to move such a thing. Then came they safe, though with great difficulty, to *Chrysopolis* a City in *Chalcedonia*, whence without much trouble some returned home, others were employed by *Senthes* the King of *Thrace*; and after that *Thymbra* joyning them to the rest of the *Gracian* Forces, made War with them against *Tissaphernes*.

They return  
home.

The Govern-  
ours of the  
King's Pro-  
vinces at their  
return.

50. The Governours of the King's Provinces through which they journeyed were *Artymas* of *Lydia*, *Artacamus* of *Phrygia*, *Mitridates* of *Lycania* and *Cappadocia*; of *Cilicia* *Syeneis*, of *Phanicia* and *Arabia* *Dernes*, of *Syria* and *Assyria* *Bilestis*, of *Babylonia* *Roparas*, of *Media* *Arbacus*, of the *Phasiens* and *Hesperides* *Teribaxus*, The *Carduchans*, *Chalybes*, *Chaldaens*, *Macrons*, *Choleans*, *Mosynacans*, *Coitans*, and *Tibarens*, were free people, and under no man's subjection. *Paphlagonia* was ruled by *Coryllus*, the *Bithynians* by *Pharnabazus*, the *European Thracians* by *Senthes*. The total number of the Ascent and Descent, was 212 encampings, 1150 parasangs, 34255 furlongs, 4281 miles and more. The time of the Ascent and Descent one year and three months. Thus these Strangers wanting all things, ignorant of the Countries through which they passed, over precipitous Mountains, straight and (almost) impassable wayes, notwithstanding the malice of Enemies, sharpness of air, and difficulty of the Soil, by the wonderful Providence of God, and singular prudence of *Xenophon*, returned home into *Greece*, as we have it described by *Xenophon* himself, though the seven Books of this Expedition, notwithstanding the constant opinion of Antiquity, are adjudged by a late Learned Man (by reason of the disagreement of their manner of writing from his other works) from him, and are ascribed to *Themistogenes* the *Syracusan*, whom \* elsewhere he mentioneth to have related these matters. However this service performed to *Cyrus* cost him the loss of his Country, being for that banished by the *Athenians* his Countrymen; but the *Lacedaemonians* taking pity of him, gave him some Lands in the Country of *Elis* and the Territories of *Triphylia*, whence we may very well fetch an account of his writing that elegant Treatise of the form of their Commonwealth.

51. In this mean time whilst the *Gracians* were on their way homewards, *Parysatis*

*Xenoph. lib. 6.  
Diodorus.*

*Xenoph. l. 7.  
Diodorus.*

\* *Hellen. 3.*

*Plutarch in  
Artaxerxe.*

## SECT. 3.

*Parysatis* ra-  
geth against  
such as had  
any hand in  
the death of  
her son *Cyrus*.

*Parysatis* the Queen-mother of *Persia* greatly lamented the death of her son *Cyrus*, and meditated nothing but revenge upon such as had been instruments in his death, whom one way or other getting into her hands, she killed with most exquisite torments. The *Carian*, who vaunted he, and no other, had killed him being designed by *Artaxerxes* to be beheaded, because he robbed him of the glory of so valiant an action, she begged of the King, that she might have the punishing him, and so delivered him to those, who for ten dayes tormented him; then digged out his eyes, and lastly made an end of him by pouring melted brasse into his ears. *Mitridates* guilty of the same Crime of boasting, and thereby greatly incensing the King, who would have had all men to believe that he alone in a single Duel had slain his brother, was condemned to be put to death after an odd kind of punishment full of cruelty then in use in *Persia*. The Malefactor was laid on his back between two hollow things, in form like to Boats, so fitted together that his head, hands, and feet might ly out, and the rest of the body be contained within. Being thus made fast meat was given to him, and if he would not receive it, he was forced to eat by pricking of his eyes; and when he did eat, instead of drink, honey and milk mixed together were poured into him, being so placed as ever to have his eyes against the Sun. Hereby it came to passe, that his face would be wholly covered with flies; and doing that within the Engine, which a man needs must who keepeth constantly eating and drinking, from the putrefaction of the Excrements were Maggots and Worms bred, which creeping up into the entrails fed upon the body, so that the miserable man being dead, and the upper part of the Engine removed, they might see the flesh devoured, and swarms of filth sticking on the Carcasse: After this manner was *Mitridates* by degrees extinct, after seventeen dayes.

52. *Parysatis* after this, having won from *Artaxerxes* her son at Dice, the Eunuch *Megares*, who had cut off the head and hands of *Cyrus*, caused him to be dead alive. Her study then was how to rid herself of *Statira* her daughter-in-law, whom she never cared for, now hated mortally, and emulated her by reason of her hatred against *Cyrus*, and her power with the King her husband, so as she resolved in the procurement of her destruction to hazard her own safety. Being now in appearance reconciled, and all old things forgotten, so as they met and supped together, she thence took occasion secretly to work her death. There was a bird in *Persia*, called *Rhynaceus*, in which being nothing superfluous, or of excrement, all the inward parts were filled with fat. This, as *Ctesias* wrote, she cut it in two with a knife, whereof the one side was onely poisoned, & then taking the clear half to herself, she gave the other which the poyson had touched unto *Statira*, who suspecting nothing, for that she see her eat herself of the bird before her, did eat it up, and died after great convulsions and torment. She suspected her before her death, and possessed the King with the matter, who knew sufficiently the cruel and implacable disposition of his mother. He presently with Tortures examined her nearest servants, but she kept *Gygis* a woman who had been necessary to the fact, and would not give her up to him, till at length having notice that she should go out of the house by night, he surprized, and condemned her to die the death due to poysoners by the *Persian* Law, which was, that the head of the Malefactor being laid on a great stone, with another it was broken and flatted. As for his Mother he hurt her not at all, either by word or deed, but she desiring to go to *Babylon*, he sent her, adding onely this, that he would not see that Citie so long as she lived. This was the state of the Domestick affairs of *Artaxerxes*.

53. After the overthrow of *Cyrus*, he sent down *Tissaphernes* (not *Pharnabazus*, as is falsely written in *Diodorus*) to the Sea-Coasts to recover them into his power, the Governours of which fearing now to pay dearly for their compliance with *Cyrus*, sent to make their peace with this new General, and fought all wayes possible to be received into his favour. But *Tamos* a man of prime note amongst them, and Governour of *Ionis*, shipping his goods,

The Bird  
*Rhynaceus*,  
wherein *Pary-  
satis* poyso-  
ned *Statira*.

*Diodorus ad  
an. 1. Olymp. 95.*



SECT. 3.

goods, and all his sons (except one, named *Cyao*, who afterwards became Captain of the Kings forces) sayled for fear of *Tissaphernes* into *Egypt* to *Psammichus* the King, hoping for former courtesies to be received; but he, without consideration of former benefits, to get his ships and money to himself, murdered his friend with his Children.

In the mean time the *Ionians* fearing *Tissaphernes*, and desirous to enjoy their liberty, sent to the *Lacedæmonians*, now the chiefest State in *Greece*, desiring, that being the Captains, and Protectors of all *Greece*, they would not neglect them Originally of the same stock, but endeavour that they might enjoy their liberty, retain their Lands, and not utterly be destroyed, as danger seemed to threaten them from *Tissaphernes*, whom they had incensed by revolting from him to *Cyrus*. They, who were nothing contented with the doubling of their power by the accession of that of *Athens* lately subdued, but still according to the nature of men desiring more, began to cast in their heads how they might attain to the Empire of *Asia*, being also encouraged by the retreat of their Countrey-men, did not unwillingly receive the embassy; but promising them speedy relief, first sent to *Tissaphernes*, desiring him not to offer any violence to the *Greek* Towns, but he neglecting their Message, and falling upon *Cume*, in the Territories of which he did much harm, and took many prisoners, they then created *Thymbro* their Captain General against the King, giving him 1000 of their own Citizens, and order to take up as many from amongst their Associates as he should think convenient.

*Thymbro* sent to the aid of the *Greek* Cities, fallen on *Magnesia*.

54. *Thymbro* then with these marched to *Corinth*, where making them up to the number of 5000. besides 300 *Athenian* horse, he thence sayled to *Ephesus*. Having there out of the Associates and others, raised 2000 men more, he removed, and fell upon *Magnesia*, a Town subject to *Tissaphernes*, which he took at the first onset, and presently after attempted *Tralles*, a Town of *Ionian*; but it being to no purpose, he retreated to *Magnesia*, which being fortified with no Wall, fearing that *Tissaphernes* might after his departure recover it, he removed it to an Hill hard by, named *Thorax*. Then invaded he, and harazed the Enemies countrey, but hearing that *Tissaphernes* was coming towards him with a great power of horse, he thought himself unable to grapple with him, and therefore returned unto *Ephesus*. Not long after upon promise of pay he procured *Xenophon* his forces to joyn with him, with which then he took the field against *Tissaphernes*, whereupon *Pergamus* yielded to him, together with *Ienubrania*, and *Halissarna* Governed by *Eurythenes* and *Procles*, who were descended from *Demarius* the *Lacedæmonian*. Other Towns also were delivered up to him, and some he took by force, till at length he fare down before *Larissa*, called the *Egyptian*, which attempting for some time to no purpose, his Superiours at *Lacedæmon* were nothing satisfied with his management of the War, so that he received orders from the *Ephori* to leave *Larissa*, and remove the Army into *Caria*. He obeyed, and when he was come on his way as far as *Ephesus*, *Dercyllidas* (a man so famous for his rare invention and cunning, that he got the surname of *Sisyphus*) being appointed his Successor, there met him, and discharged him of his employment. Returning home, he was accused by the Associates for giving his Souldiers liberty to spoyl the friends and confederates of the State, and for that was banished.

55. *Dercyllidas* taking the Army into his hands, and not ignorant how he had to do with two *Persian* Lieutenants, *Tissaphernes* and *Pharnabazus*, who feared and hated each other; lest he should be overmarched with both, he resolved if he could to make peace with one of them. He had conceived some distaste against the latter for an affront he put upon him, when he formerly served under *Lyfander* in *Asia*: wherefore he made peace with *Tissaphernes* upon certain conditions, and lead his Army into *Eolia*, without any hurt to the confederates in the way, which was under the Command of *Pharnabazus*, where taking nine Cities in eight dayes, and getting into his hands all the Cities of *Troas*, he consulted by what means he might so quarter his

*Dercyllidas* succeedeth him.

*Xenoph. ibid. Justin. lib. 6. init. Diodorus ad Olymp. 95. an. 2.*

SECT. 3.

Souldiers in Winter, as not to be burthenfom to the Associates as *Thymbro* was, and yet prevent *Pharnabazus* from troubling the Cities with the excursions of horse, of which he had good store. He sent then presently to *Pharnabazus* to offer him either war, or peace, who making choice of a Truce, for that he stood in fear of *Perga*, which bordered upon *Eolia*, and where he had his fear, he thereupon lead his forces into *Bithynia* to Winter there; the other not being unwilling he should do so, because the *Bithynians* were often troublefom to him.

56. In the beginning of Spring *Dercyllidas* marching out of *Bithynia* came to *Lampsacus*, where he met with three *Lacedæmonians* sent from the State to signify to him the Prorogation of his Command for another year, who also by order from the *Ephori*, rebuked the Souldiers for the injuries offered by them to the Associates in the time of *Thymbro*, and commended them for their great moderation last year, warning them for the time to come, to which one of the Officers answered (who had followed *Cyrus*) that the Souldiers were one and the same, but that the change of Generals produced a change in their behaviour. The messengers being departed out of *Asia*, he sent again to *Pharnabazus*, offering him either peace, or war, as before, who making the same choice, he out off hand passed over the *Hellepont*, and by the hands of his Souldiers, amongst whom the work was divided, fortified the *Isthmus* of the *Cherronesus* of *Thrace* with a Wall, thereby to defend it from incursions of the *Thracians*, who now had fallen upon it, and whom to repel he was sent for. He so encouraged the minds of the Souldiers by hope of reward, that the work being began in Spring was finished before Autumn, being thenceforth a great advantage to the inhabitants. After this he returned into *Asia*, where visiting the Cities he found that the Exiles of *Chios* having seized upon *Atarna*, there lurked, and lived upon such booty as they could make out of *Ionian*; wherefore he besieged the place, though strong, and well victualled, and after a siege of eight moneths forcing them to yield, he committed the care of the Town to *Draco* a *Pellenian*, and returned unto *Ephesus*.

57. In the mean while *Pharnabazus*, after he had made Truce with him, went up to the King, to whom he accused *Tissaphernes*, as not having repelled the *Lacedæmonians* out of *Asia*, but suffered them there to continue at his cost and damage, alleging how unworthy a thing it was to fight more with money than Arms, and to restrain an Enemy more with rewards than valour. He advised him to make ready a Fleet, and give the Command thereof to *Conon* the *Athenian*, a man of great experience in things that concerned War, who since the disaster of his Countrey sojourned with *Evagoras* the King of *Cyprus*. *Artaxerxes* yielding, gave him 500 Talents to provide ships; and *Conon* hoping by this means to do some special service for his Countrey, undertook the charge, but the Fleet being not yet ready, he sayled with forty *Phœnician* Vessels into *Cilicia*, there to set all things in order. About the same time the *Ionians* sent to *Lacedæmon* to declare to that State, that if *Caria* were invaded in which *Tissaphernes* his principal fear was, there might be hope that he would leave them to their Laws and Liberty. This so wrought with the *Spartans*, that the *Ephori* thereupon sent order to *Dercyllidas* to lead his forces into that Countrey, and to *Pharaces* their Admiral to sayl thither with his Fleet.

*Conon* the *Athenian* is made Admiral to *Artaxerxes*.

*Tissaphernes* though impeached by *Pharnabazus* continued in his power.

58. Notwithstanding the secret accusations of *Pharnabazus*, yet still was *Tissaphernes* trusted by the King, and so far as with the Chief power in the War against the *Gracians*; insomuch that *Pharnabazus*, though much against his will, was forced to come to him at such time as *Dercyllidas* invaded *Caria*. He first carried him thither, where taking what order their affairs required, and re-inforcing their Garrisons, they returned into *Ionian*, and *Dercyllidas* perceiving they had crossed the River *Meander*, after he had consulted with *Pharaces* the Admiral about the preservation of the *Ionians* at that time but naked of defence, he also passed the River after them. The *Persian* forces were in number 20000 foot, and 10000 horse; *Dercyllidas* his whole

*Xenoph. & Diodorus ut supra.*

## SECT. 3.

Dercyllidas  
maketh an  
agreement  
with them.

whole Army amounted but to 7000, and though the *Peloponnesians* well enough behaved themselves, yet such as came from *Priene*, and out of the *Ionian* Cities and Islands had lifted themselves under him, some of them throwing their Arms into the Corn (which grew plentifully by the River,) took them to their heels, and the rest insufficiently evidenced what they would do if they came to fight. Yet *Tissaphernes* having not forgot how such *Greeks* as followed *Cyrus* had put them to it, and judging all their Countrymen to be of the same metal, would by no means hear of fighting, which *Pharnabazus* sore pressed him to; but sent to *Dercyllidas*, desiring to come to interview. After Hostages given and received on both sides, they met, and an accommodation was made on these terms: *That the King should leave all the Greek Cities to their own liberty; that the Lacedæmonian Governours from his Cities, and that a truce should be for so long a time, till both parties could hear from their Superiours, concerning their resolutions herein.* Then marched away the Armies to their quarters, the *Persian* to *Tralles*, and that of the *Greeks* to *Lexocophrys*.

59. Notwithstanding this truce entred into by these Captains, yet the rigging of a new Fleet went forwards in *Phœnicia*, and nothing do we hear concerning the confirmation of the Treaty by the King. It hapning that one *Herodas* a *Syracusan*, living with a Sea-man in *Phœnicia*, and taking notice how great diligence was used in preparing a Fleet, which he heard should be completed to the number of 300 Vessels, he took the first opportunity of a ship and sailed into *Greece*, giving notice that such a Navy was providing by the King, and *Tissaphernes*, though he knew not, as he said, upon what design. The *Lacedæmonians* hereat startled, began to look about them, when *Agessilaus* one of their Kings, through the perswasion of *Lyfander*, offered himself to undertake an Expedition into *Asia* against the *Persian*, provided they would send with him thirty of his choosing, by whose advice he might manage affairs; give him 2000 men from home, and 6000 more of the associates, which being granted him, together with provisions for half a year, he sailed with *Lyfander* (who had procured himself to be one of the 300, hoping by this means to restore the *Decemvirates* in the *Asian* Cities, which he having erected, the *Ephori* had again dissolved) unto *Ephesus* with such speed, that he landed his Forces before the *Persian* Lieutenants knew so much as of his coming, and thereby took them at unawares.

Agessilaus the  
Lacedæmonian  
King invaded  
Asia.

60. At *Ephesus* he raised new Forces to the number of 4000, and increased his Army to 10000 Foot and 400 Horse, with which he took the field, a great company of rascally men, not inferiour in number to the other, following the Camp out of greedinesse for prey. *Tissaphernes* sent to him to know the cause of his coming into *Asia*, to whom he answered, that it was to restore the *Greek* Cities to their liberty; to which the other replied, desiring a cessation of Arms for so long a time, as he could send to the King, hoping a cessation of Arms for so long a time, as he could send to the King, hoping to obtain from him that which he required. *Agessilaus* gave little credit to his bare word, thinking, as indeed it was, that he protracted onely the time; but swearing most solemnly, that without any deceit he would do what in him lay to procure a Peace, he also upon this condition swore to hold the Truce; but *Tissaphernes* having little regard of his oath, sent onely to the King for new forces to joyn with his old ones, which though *Agessilaus* sufficiently knew, yet kept he his Faith inviolable in preservation of the Truce; and when he denounced war against him, except he would forthwith quit *Asia*, he gave notice thereof joyfully to his Soldiers, and sent to the *Ionians*, *Æoli-ans*, and the *Greeks* living upon the *Hellepont*, to dispatch their supplies unto *Ephesus*. Contrary then to the expectation of *Tissaphernes* (who thought he would have made for *Caria*) he invaded *Phrygia*, where setting upon the Cities at unawares, he got much booty, and without any losse came to the confines of *Daschylum*, where his Forlorn-hope meeting with a Party of Horse belonging to *Pharnabazus*, were worsted, losing twelve Men, and two Horses, till he with the Infantry coming in to their relief, the *Barbarians*

Xenoph. Hellen.  
lib. 3.  
Plutarch. &  
Æmilius Pro-  
bus in Agessilaus.

Xenoph. ibid. &  
in Agessilaus cum  
Plutarcho &  
Æmilio Probo,  
sive Cor. Nepota

## SECT. 3.

retired with the losse of one Man, and *Agessilaus* spending the greatest part of Summer in waiting *Phrygia*, marched back with his Army mightily enriched, & came back in Autumn unto *Ephesus*, where he took up his Winter quarters.

61. Whilst the *Lacedæmonians* thus acted in *Asia* against *Artaxerxes*, that they might strengthen their interest abroad, they sent to *Nepherus* the King of *Egypt*, which now for a good space had revolted from the *Persian* Empire, to procure him to joyn with them in the War, who sent them 100 Gallies, and 500000 measures of Wheat for a supplie. *Pharax* then with a Navie consisting of 120 Sail departing from *Rhodes*, sailed to *Caunus*, where he set upon *Conon*, who there had forty Ships lying at anchor; but *Artaphernes* and *Pharnabazus* coming in to the relief of the Ships and Place with great Forces, he retired back to *Rhodes*, the Inhabitants of which not long after expelled his Fleet, and revolting to the *Persians* received *Conon* and his Navy. It hapned after this revolt, that those that brought the Corn from *Egypt* being ignorant of what had happened, thrust their Ships into the Haven, which *Conon* and the *Rhodians* seizing upon, thereby well furnished the City. Afterwards came in to *Conon* 90 Gallies more: 10 from *Cilicia*, & the rest out of *Phœnicia*, of which the petty King of *Sidon* had the charge. And here the soldiers of *Conon* mutinied for want of pay, who therefore more earnestly called for their Arrears, because their service was the stricter under so great a Captain.

Diadoms ad  
Olymp. 96. ann.  
1.

Justin lib. 6.

62. *Agessilaus* knowing that without Horse he could not well carry on the War, in Champain places, in the Winter-time took order about it, permitting such rich men in the City as would not fight themselves, to furnish him with each of them an Horse and a Man in their stead. Then upon the approach of the Spring, drawing together all his Forces to *Ephesus*, he trained and exercised them in the management of Arms, that City serving them as the shop of War, during these Exercises. When he had thus prepared their minds, and encouraged them by rewards, and otherwise, he gave out he would march straight into the most fortified places of the Enemies Country, further to exercise them for the Fight. *Tissaphernes* thinking this rumor to be spread on purpose to deceive him, again marched into *Caria*, whither he thought indeed he meant to go; but *Agessilaus*, as he said, invaded the Territories about *Sardis*, which waiting round about, on the fourth day his men stragling about for plunder, were set upon by the Enemies Horse, which slew many of them. He going in to their relief, understanding the *Persians* had no Foot there, and considering how he had all things in a readinesse, resolved to make something of it, so that falling on in good earnest, he got a considerable Victory near the River *Pactolus*, and plundering the enemies Camp, from what belonged to friend and foe, got booty worth above 70 talents, amongst which was Camels which he carried with him into *Greece*.

Xenoph.  
Plutarch. &  
Æmilius Pro-  
bus ut prius.

63. *Tissaphernes* at the time of this engagement (if we may believe *Xenophon*, who accompanied *Agessilaus* in this Expedition, rather than *Diodorus* or *Pausanias*) was at *Sardis*, and upon that account was accused by the *Persians* to have forsaken and betrayed them. About this time it happened that *Conon* the Admiral of the *Persian* Fleet, having to no purpose for a long time solicited the King by letters, for money to pay his men, resolved now himself to go to him, *Pharnabazus* egging him on that he might accuse *Tissaphernes* of treachery. Leaving then his Fleet to the care of two *Athenians*, he came to *Thapsacus* in *Syria*, and passing down *Euphrates* unto *Babylon*, made application to *Tibraustes*, to whom he signified that hee would speak with the King. But none being to be admitted to his presence, except he adored him, he transacted his business by letters and messengers, and prevailed to have *Tissaphernes* adjudged an enemy, the *Lacedæmonians* to be prosecuted with War, and to chuse whom he pleased for the paying of moneys; and with great gifts returned he to the Sea, having commission to charge the *Phœnicians*, *Cyprians*, and other maritime Inhabitants, with long ships, and having *Pharnabazus* for his associate, according to his desire, to provide a Navie for the defence of the Sea against the next Summer.

Diodorus &  
Justin ut supra.  
Æmil. Probus  
in Conone.

64. These accusations of *Tissaphernes* were so prosecuted by *Parysatis* who

Hh

bore

## SECT. 3.

Tissaphernes  
put to death.

bore him mortal hatred in the behalf of her son *Cyrus*, that *Ariaxerxes* made *Tithraustes* Captain General of the War in his stead, enjoying him to make him away, and granting letters to all the Cities and Lieutenants to be obedient to him. He gave him two letters at parting, whereof the one was written to *Tissaphernes*, being a pretended Commission to him to have full and absolute power in the War: the other to *Ariam* Lieutenant of *Larissa*, commanding him to assist *Tithraustes* in the apprehending of him. He delivered the letter as soon as he came to *Colosse* in *Phrygia*, whither *Ariam* procured *Tissaphernes* to come, as to advise together about the War, and as he was in the Bath having laid by his scimitar, caused his servants to take him, and sent him to *Tithraustes*, who carrying him as far as *Celana* cut off his head, which he conveyed to the King. He sent it to his Mother, who greatly rejoiced at the sight, with her also the *Gracian* women who had lost their sons or husbands through his fraud; and the whole Nation in the death of their mortal Enemy.

65. *Tithraustes* now sent to *Agessilau* to acquaint how the incendiary betwixt the King and the *Gracians* was deservedly punished, so that his Master thought it reasonable that he would withdraw his Forces out of *Asia*, and the *Greek* Cities being left to their own laws, should pay their accustomed tribute to him. He denied to do any thing herein without consent of the *Lacedemonian* State, whereupon they agreed that *Tithraustes* paying him thirty talents for the maintenance of his Army, he should depart into the parts subject to *Pharnabazus*, till such time as he understood the will of his Superiors. Then led he towards *Phrygia*, when in the way he met with an order come from *Lacedemon*, whereby not onely the power at Land, but over the Navy also was given unto him, over which he might make Admiral whomsoever he pleased. He then to gratify the King and those who at home studied to pleasure him, made up a Navy of 120 ships, over which he set *Pisander* his wives brother, a man indeed greedy of honour, and of prompt boldness, but of little experience in such great concernments.

66. *Tithraustes* taking notice hereof, and how *Agessilau* did not intend to quit *Asia*, but rather conceived great hopes of overthrowing the King, resolved there was no way to be taken but to find his Countrymen such work at home, that they must necessarily recall him. To this purpose he sent one *Timocrates* a *Rhodian* into *Greece*, with gold to the value of 50 Talents, to the intent that he might therewith corrupt the leading and the principal men of the several Cities, and engage them into a War with the *Athenians* against *Lacedemon*, which was accordingly brought about. *Agessilau* in the mean time entering *Phrygia*, which was subject to *Pharnabazus*, about Autumn, spoiled the Country, and by fair or foul means took many Cities. Thence marched he into *Paphlagonia*, which he withdrew from the obedience of the *Persians*, and received 1000 Horse and 2000 Foot from *Cotys* the King, and after this he went to *Dascylium*, where *Pharnabazus* his Palace was, and there, it being a place plentiful of provisions, he took up his Winter-quarters.

67. Whilst his Soldiers straggled abroad for booty in great contempt of the *Barbarians*, *Pharnabazus* light on a Party of Horse, and thereof slew 100. Three or four days after *Herippidas* (the principal of the 30 Counsellors who accompanied *Agessilau*) having notice from *Spithridates*, that *Pharnabazus* lay incamped in a large Village named *Cave*, 20 miles off, procured of *Agessilau* 4000 Foot and as many Horse-men as he could persuade to accompany him, with which beginning his march as soon as it was dark, by break of day he fell in upon the Enemies Camp, killing most of the *Myrians* who kept the watch before it. Then the *Persians* fled; *Pharnabazus* fearing to be besieged, so that he wandered from place to place like the *Scythian Nomades*, and *Herippidas* got much rich plunder, amongst which the costly stuff of *Pharnabazus*, but seeking out too aufterely all the concealed prey, he took from *Spithridates* and the *Paphlagonians* all that they had gotten; with which disgrace being exceedingly affected, they went away by night to *Ariam* lying at *Sardis*, who had formerly rebelled and waged War with *Cyrus* against the King. At this departure of *Spithridates* and *Megabates* his son (who was

Xenoph.  
Diodorus ut  
prius.  
Plutarch. in  
Ariaxerxe &  
Agessilao.  
Polyenus Strab.  
gem. lib. 7.

Xenoph.  
Hellen. 3°.

Plutarch. in  
Agessilao.  
Pausan. in  
Lacon.

Xenoph. ibid.  
Plutarch. in  
Ariax. & Agessilao.  
Pausan. ibid.

Pharnabazus  
defeated.

## SECT. 3.

most dear to him) *Agessilau* was so troubled, as also at that of the *Paphlagonian Forces*, that nothing more vexed him of all things that fell out in this *Isiaick Expedition*.

68. Afterwards *Agessilau* and *Pharnabazus* met together to treat about a Peace by the procurement of *Apollophanes* of *Cyzicus*, who was guest unto *Agessilau*, them both. *Pharnabazus* professed that if he were not made General of the *Arax. & War* he would revolt from the King; but if he should be, he would carry *Agessilau* on the other side promised he would speedily depart out of his Territories, and as long as any other remained to make War upon, would spare him and his estate. Upon the approaching of Spring, he led down his Forces into the Plains of *Thebes*, where pitching his Tents near the Temple of *Diana Astyria*, he levied all the Forces he could; for he intended an Expedition into the upper Countries, being confident to turn all in his passage from their obedience to the King, his fame being spread abroad far and near, having spent now two years in the War. But the gold sent into *Greece* the last year by *Tithraustes*, had by this time wrought upon the humours of the several States there, that they conspired together in a great and dangerous War against the *Lacedemonians*, who thereupon sent to *Agessilau*, setting him a day by which he must needs be at home with his Army for the preservation of his Country. It troubled him much to leave *Asia*, for the conquest of which he was in so fair a way, yet he resolved to obey the call of his distressed Country, seeing (as he himself expressed in his answer to the *Ephoroi*) General then truly and justly commandeth, when he obeyeth the Laws, and the *Ephoroi* or whatsoever Magistrates else are in the City. At his departure he is reported to have said, that the King expelled him *Asia* by 30000 Archers, wittily intimating the same number of *Daricks* stamped with the effigies of an archer, whereby he had procured the conspiracy of the *Gracian* Cities against *Lacedemon*.

Agessilau called home through the device of Tithraustes.

69. Having passed the *Hellepont*, and being come to *Amphipolis*, he received news of a Victory obtained by the *Lacedemonians* about *Corinth*, whereupon he dispatched *Dercyllidas* presently back into *Asia*, by these tidings to confirm the affociated Cities. In the mean time while he marched through *Macedonia* and *Thessalie* towards the Straights of *Thermopyla*, *Conon* the *Athenian* and *Pharnabazus*, Admirals of the *Persian* Fleet, lay about *Doryma* a place in the *Chersonesus*, with about 90 Gallies, who having notice that the enemies Fleet were about *Gnidus*, prepared themselves for an engagement. *Periarchus* (or *Periander*) the *Lacedemonian* Admiral weying anchor sailed from *Gnidus* with 120 ships to *Physcus* another place in the *Chersonesus*, and thence directed his course strait against the Kings Fleet, and at the first had the better of it, but the *Persian* Gallies coming in apace to the relief of their friends, the *Lacedemonian* confederates began to shift for themselves. The Admiral thought it unseemly and unworthy of the *Spartan* valour to run away, and therefore directed his ship to the front of the Enemy, where first killing many of his Enemies, at length he was slain. Then the followers of *Conon* pursuing the *Lacedemonians* to the continent, took 50 Vessels, and 500 men, the most part swimming to shore and saving themselves; & the rest of the Gallies with safety recovered *Gnidus*. By this victory of *Conon* (who made use of the Kings Forces for the recovery of the estate of his own country) *Athens* and all *Greece* which heretofore were under the *Lacedemonian* yoke, again recovered their liberty. *Diodorus* placeth it in the second year of the 96th Olympiad, when *Diophantus* was *Archon* at *Athens*; but *Lycias* in the year following, being under the government of *Enbulides*, and the eleventh of *Ariaxerxes*.

Conon the Athenian obtained a Victory against the Lacedemonians.

70. *Pharnabazus* and *Conon* for the improvement of this Victory, laboured with the Islands and Maritime Towns of *Ionia*, to revolt from the *Lacedemonians*, which they effected, some casting out the Garrisons, and maintaining themselves in their ancient liberty, others yielding unto *Conon*, onely *Dercyllidas* lying at *Abydos* at the time of the fight, retained that place, and *Sestos* over against it, still in hostility against the *Persians*, though endeavoured also to be reduced. In the next Spring the two *Persian* Generals invaded

Plutarch in  
Agessilao.  
Apotheg. Lacedemon.  
Xenoph.  
Hellen. lib. 4°.

Xenoph. ibid.  
Plutarch in  
Agessilao.  
Xenoph.  
Hellen. lib. 4.  
Diodorus ad  
ann. 2. Olymp.  
96.  
Corn. Nepos in  
Conone.

Justin l. b. 6.

Idem ut supra,  
& Plutarch in  
Apotheg. Lacedemon.

H h 2 invaded

## SECT. 3.

invaded the Maritime parts of *Laconia*, which after they had wasted as they might, and now were about to return, *Conon* persuaded the other to let him have the Navy, with which he said he would sail to *Athens*, and there build up again the long walls, and the *Piræus* or Haven, than which he affirmed nothing could happen more disagreeable to the *Lacedæmonians*. This he easily obtained, and money also to rebuild the walls, for which sailing thither with 80 Gallies he took order; giving those 30 Talents which he had received of *Pharnabazus* unto the *Athenians*.

The *Lacedæmonians* having notice of this, being very fearful the *Athenian* State should again recover its ancient power, sent away *Antalcidas* to *Diodorus* *Teribazus* another of the *Persian* Lieutenants who governed *Sardis*, if possible to draw him to their Party, and reconcile them to the King. After this was known at *Athens*, they also sent *Conon* and others to him, and with them joyned several other States, as the *Bæotians*, *Corinthians*, and *Argives*, who were weary of the power of the *Spartans*. *Antalcidas* declared how those that sent him were ready to imbrace a Peace upon such terms as the King pleased, for that they would no longer contend with him about the *Greek* Cities in *Asia*, thinking it sufficient, that the rest which were elsewhere situated might be left to their own Laws and liberty: he also laboured earnestly to render *Conon* suspected to the King, alleging, that at the King's cost he only promoted the affairs of his own Country, seeking with his Forces to obtain as many Cities as he could for the *Athenians*, to whom under-hand he went about to restore *Ionian* and *Eolian* also. This offer concerning the leaving of the *Greek* Cities to the King's disposal, so nearly concerned his affairs, that the other Ambassadors in no case admitting it, for private respects returned home, without anything concluded of; and though *Teribazus* durst not without commission joyn himself to the *Lacedæmonians*, yet gave he privately monies to *Antalcidas* to enable them to build a Fleet, wherewithall to constrain their adversaries to submit to an accommodation, and laying hold of *Conon* committed him to custody, till such time as going himself to the King he might know his pleasure concerning these things.

71. Some have reported how *Conon* was carried to the King, and by him put to death, but others that he made an escape. Whilst *Teribazus* was yet with the King, he sent *Struthas* into *Asia* the less, to take care of the Sea-Coasts, who shewing himself very bitter against the *Lacedæmonians* for the evils which the Provinces had suffered of *Agesslaus*, and favourable upon that account to the *Athenians*, the *Spartans* sent over *Thymbro* to make War upon him. He with 8000 men took *Ceressus* the high hill some five miles distant from *Ephesus*, whence he made excursions into the King's Dominions; but *Struthas* lying not far from him with a great power of Horse, besides Foot, at such time as with a Party he was ranging about for booty, fell upon him, killed him amongst many others, and putting the rest to flight, took many; the other securing themselves where they might best do it. The year after, the *Lacedæmonians* sending *Ecdicus* to the aid of the exiles of *Rhodes* with eight ships, dispatched away with him one *Diphridas*, with order to pass into *Asia*, there to gather up the remnant of the Forces, with which, and as many more as he could raise, he was to protect those Cities which had received *Thymbro*, and to grapple with *Struthas*. He acted accordingly, and so ordered his affairs, that he proved hard enough for *Struthas*, and amongst other commendable actions took prisoner *Tigranes* his Son in Law, as he was going with his wife to *Sardis*, whom releasing for a great ransom, he seasonably made use of the money for the payment of his Soldiers.

72. Whilst these things passed betwixt *Artaxerxes* and the Commonwealth of *Sparta*, he was also employed about the affairs of *Cyprus*, which he strove to get into his hands. There was in that Island one *Evagoras* of great birth (being descended from those who first built *Salamine* the principal City therein) who being lately expelled through a Sedition, returned with a little force of Auxiliaries, and expelling *Abdomon* the *Tyrian*, who then had the power over the City, and a great friend of the King of *Persia*, made himself

*Antalcidas* sent from the *Spartans* to *Artaxerxes*.

*Isocrat. in Panegy. Emil. Probus in Conon. Diodorus ad Olymp. 97. ann.*

*Xenoph. ut supra.*

*Diodorus ad an. 2. Olymp. 97. Isocrates in Evagora.*

*Artaxerxes* looketh after *Cyprus*.

## SECT. 3.

himself King of *Salamine*, and within a short time growing very rich gathered forces, and by the help of his son *Protagoras* subdued almost the whole Island. But the *Amathusians* with the *Solians* and *Citians* stood out against him, and by their Ambassadors solicited *Artaxerxes* for aid, accusing *Evagoras* for the death of *Agges*, who had been confederate with the King, and offering him their help for the possessing himself of the whole Island. He being jealous of the growth of *Evagoras*, and considering how convenient this Island might be, by reason of its situation, for the promoting of his affairs at Sea, by which especially *Asia* could be defended, resolved to assist them, and dismissing the Ambassadors to their content, gave order to the Cities upon the Sea-Coasts to build ships with all speed, he himself travelling into the upper Provinces for the raising of a great Land Army.

73. Till he had composed matters with the *Gracians*, no considerable thing could he attempt upon *Cyprus*, and though they favoured the cause of *Evagoras* in opposition to him, yet their enmity one against another hindered that effect which their Union might have produced, to the great impairment of his affairs. The *Athenians* sent ten ships to the aid of *Evagoras*; but it hapning that *Telenias* being sent by the *Lacedæmonians* at that time to succeed *Ecdicus* in the Fleet, and to defend their interest in *Asia*, met with them, and intercepted them all, whereby it hapned that those who were Enemies to *Artaxerxes* overthrew those who went to make War against him. After this these two Commonwealths contending for with each other at Sea to their mutual damage, at length *Antalcidas* was sent by the *Lacedæmonians* to the Government of the Fleet, because they knew him to be in great grace with *Teribazus*. He coming to *Ephesus*, left *Nicolachus* his Lieutenant, and according to his private instructions went with *Teribazus* to *Artaxerxes* about a peace, towards whom he so behaved himself (so please him casting off the *Spartan* gravity, and not refusing to dance before him) that the King, who before could not endure the *Spartans*, as counting them the most impudent of all men, imbraced him with singular respect and courtesie.

74. He concluded of a peace with him for the *Lacedæmonian* State, in case the other *Gracians* would not consent to such overtures as the King made, and returned with *Teribazus*, who giving notice that all who would might accept of the conditions which his master proposed, they dispatched their several Deputies to him. He shewing them the Kings Seals, opened the Letters, wherein was contained, that *Artaxerxes* the King accounted it meet that the Cities in *Asia*, and the Islands *Clazomenæ* (since joyned to the Continent) and *Cyprus*, should be under his Dominion: as for the other *Greek* Cities, both great and small, that they should be left to their own liberty; except *Lemnos*, *Imbrus*, and *Scyrus*, which having been subject to the *Athenians* time out of mind, he thought it reasonable they should so continue. Those that should not receive this peace, he with the rest who would embrace it would prosecute with War to his utmost power, both at Sea and Land. The Ambassadors went home, and made report of what was proposed to the several Commonwealths, who grudging it much that the Cities of *Asia*, for whose liberty *Agesslaus* had taken so much pains, should be so unworthily again betrayed. But being necessitated to submit, they accepted of the conditions; and the peace was sworn to at length by all *Greece*, in the second year of the 96th Olympiad, and the 18th year of *Artaxerxes*. A. M. 3618.

75. *Artaxerxes* being thus freed from this tedious controversy with the *Gracians*, set himself to a preparation for the Wars of *Cyprus*, from which as yet he had been diverted. *Evagoras* by this time, through the assistance of *Chabrias*, whom the *Athenians* had sent to his aid with 800 Peltsas, and ten Gallies, had brought under the whole Island, having got together also a most numerous Army, whilst the King was kept in play by the *Gracians*. For he entred into society with *Acoris* King of *Egypt*, who furnished him with great store of money, and *Hecatomnus* the Viceroy of *Caria* under-hand supplied him with some for the hiring of foreign Souldiers; and the King of *Arabia* with others, who bore no good will to *Artaxerxes*, sent a great power

*Xenoph. ut supra.*

*Diodorus ad annum 2. Olymp. 98. Plutarch. in Artaxerxe.*

*Xenoph. Hellen. lib. 5. Diodorus & Plutarch. ut prius.*

A. M. 3618.

*Diodorus l. 16. ad Olymp. 98. ann. 3.*

*Artaxerxes* turneth his forces from the *Gracians* against *Cyprus*.

## SECT. 3.

power of men. He had in a readinesse 90 Gallies, whereof twenty lay at Tyre in Phœnicia, which with other Cities he had got into his hands, and the rest anchored readily furnished before Cyprus. The King gathered together both his Land and Sea forces, the former consisting of 300000 men, and the latter of 300 Gallies. Over his Land Army he appointed General Orontes his son-in-law, and Teribazus Admiral of his Navy, who taking up their forces out of Phœcia and Cuma, marched down into Cilicia, whence passing over into Cyprus with great industry they began the War.

Getteth a victory at Sea against Evagoras.

76. Evagoras having 6000 men of his own, many more Auxiliaries, and having hired a great force of strangers over and above, (money being very plentiful with him) first with his Pinnaces well Armed set upon the Enemies ships as they brought in provisions, whereof some he took, others he sunk, or chased away. Hereby it came to passe, that no Commodities being imported into the Island, a great dearth ensued in the Persian Camp; and hereby a mutiny of the Souldiers, especially of the mercenaries, who fell upon their Officers, and killed some of them. This put Glos the Admiral upon a resolution to sayl with the whole Fleet into Cilicia, whence he brought sufficient supply; which Evagoras seeing, and considering his Navy to be far inferior to the Persian, he got ready other sixty ships, and procuring fifty more from Acoris (who readily furnished him with all things necessary for the War) he made up his Fleet 200 sayl. Then exercised he his men often to prepare them for a fight, and that to the terror of the Enemy who beheld it, and at length as the Persian Fleet sayled by Citium he fell upon it, taking some Vessels, and sinking others, but the Admiral and other Commanders standing close to their tackling, a sharp conflict ensued, in which though Evagoras at the first prevailed, yet Glos with all his power, and with great earnestnesse and valour grapling with him, he was at length after great losse put to flight.

77. The Persians after this victory mustered all their forces, both by Sea and Land at Citium, and presently both wayes laid siege to Salamine. Now Evagoras, though he had had the better of it formerly in some sallies out upon the besiegers, cooled in his courage after this defeat. Though the siege was very straight and pressing, yet resolving to continue the War, he left his son Pythagoras for the defence of the Citie, with full Authority, and departed by night with ten Gallies into Egypt, where he laboured hard with Acoris the King, to perswade him to carry on the War with him, and that with all his power. He granted him some money; but for that he was discouraged by the late defeat, nothing according to his expectation, so that returning, and finding the Citie very much straightened, and himself destitute of succour, he was forced to send about an accommodation: Teribazus offered his consent upon these terms, that quitting all the Cities except Salamine, he should for that pay a yearly Tribute to the King, and be at his command as a servant to his Lord; which though hard, he consented to, except the last, thinking it a great disgrace to be at his back as a servant, and more reasonable to be subject to him as one King to another.

His Captains disgree, and peace is made.

78. Teribazus not admitting of this exception, Orontes his colleague, and emulator, accused him by secret Letters to the King, as well for other matters, as that having an opportunity sufficient to take Salamine, he did not use it, but spent his time in treaties with the Enemy; he farther laid to his charge privately entering into friendship with Lacedæmon sending to consult the Oracle about warring against the King, and especially alluring the Officers by honours, gifts, and promises. Artaxerxes believing these things, wrote back to Orontes to arrest Teribazus, and send him presently unto him, who accordingly sent, earnestly desired to be brought to his tryal, but being for the present committed to prison, and the King employed in the Cadusian War, his judgement was still delayed. In the mean time Orontes being now General with full power and authority in Cyprus, finding that Evagoras with great courage still held out, and that his own Souldiers taking ill the imprisonment of Teribazus refused to obey him, sent to Evagoras to treat of peace, offering

Diodorus ad  
ant. 4.  
Olymp. 98.

## SECT. 3.

offering him the same conditions he was formerly willing to admit of from Teribazus. He being thus delivered beyond hope, concluded a peace on these terms; to pay yearly Tribute for the Kingdom of Salamine, and as King, to be obedient to the King of Persia. And thus the Cyprian War ended ten years after the first preparation for it, and after it had been managed 2 years. Artaxerxes after all this time, and the expence of 50 Talents, leaving Evagoras in effect, in the same condition he was before.

Isocrates in  
Evagora.

79. Gaus the Persian Admiral, after this War, having married the daughter of Teribazus, fearing, lest because of his affinity, he should be suspected also by the King, and suffer upon that account, resolved for a prevention to fortifie himself against him by entering into league with his Enemies. This he did presently with Acoris of Egypt, and wrote to the Lacedæmonians to excite them to break the peace, making large offers of what he could do for Greece. They had of late as before cast in their heads how to make themselves masters of all Greece, and finding that they heard ill for the peace concluded with Artaxerxes, in which the interests of their Countrey-men were betrayed, they sought for, upon a new advice, a fit opportunity to renew the War against the Persians, and therefore now not unwillingly accepted of this confederacy with Gaus.

Gaus out of  
fear conspires  
with the  
Lacedæmonians  
against the  
King.

80. At this time Artaxerxes made War upon the Cadusians, leading against them an Army of 300000 foot, and 10000 horse. He cast himself into great straights marching into a Countrey uneven, rainy, and bringing no Corn, but nourishing onely its inhabitants with Pears, Apples, and such like fruits; so that finding there no provision, and not able to come by it from elsewhere, the carriage beasts were killed for meat, an Asses head could scarce be bought for 60 drachms, the Kings ser meals were laid down, and very few horses remained; the rest being all eaten up. Then Teribazus under disguise saved the King and his whole Army; for there being two Kings of the Cadusians, he himself went to one of them, and sent his son to the other, each of them signifying to him whom he went to, that his Colleague had sent about a peace to Artaxerxes, having left him out, wherefore his advise was, that they should send with him Ambassadors to treat, and conclude a pacification first, which, being both deceived, they did, and a League was entered into by both apart. Then returned he homewards, and in the way, to give a good example to others, alighted from his horse, and with Quiver and Target upon him travelled on foot over the mountainous, and rough places, and coming at length to a place called the Kings Inne, compassed with pleasant Gardens and Groves, because of the extremity of cold, he gave leave to the Souldiers to cut down the Cypresses and other Trees, which because they out of modesty refused, he took an Axe, and himself cut down the most beautifull. But coming home, and upon sence of his great losse, both of men and horses, suspecting he was condemned for his ill successe, he slew many of his principal subjects, of whom he thought he had cause to be jealous.

Plutarch, in  
Artax. cum  
Diodoro ad  
Olymp. 98.  
ann. 4.

Artaxerxes invades the  
Cadusians to no  
purpose.

81. The Cadusian War being finished, he caused Teribazus to come to his tryal, commending the matter to three of his most eminent Judges, who upon consideration of what was alleged, pro and con, and of his former great merits, absolved him, to the satisfaction of the King, who then bestowing on him the greatest honours, expunged the name of Orontes his false accuser out of the Catalogue of his friends, and cast upon him the greatest ignominy. About the same time, following herein the example of Cambyses his Predecessor, he caused certain Judges convicted of unjust Decrees to be slead alive, and their skins spread over the judgement seat, where the rest heard, and determined causes, that they might have a constant Memento before their eyes.

Not long after Gaus the Persian Admiral, who, as before was said, had entered into society with the Lacedæmonians, and the King of Egypt, whilst he was managing his revolt, was slain by some that cunningly laid in wait for him. One Tachos undertook the carrying on of his design, and fortifying himself with an Army, built a Citie in an high Rock upon the Sea, called

Diodorus ad  
Olymp. 99.  
ann. 2.  
Gaus slain.

LENCA,



## SECT. 3.

*Leuca*, where was a Chapel dedicated to *Apollo*; but he dying a little after, great controversy hapned about the place betwixt the *Clazomenians* and *Cymeans* (whereof the former obtained it) and thereby those rebellions in *Asia* fell of themselves, and the *Lacedaemonians*, thinking it best to intermeddle no more with *Persian* matters, gave their minds wholly to establish their power in *Greece*, got into their hands several Cities by one means or other, and not obscurely fought after the Empire of all *Greece*, contrary to the form of the League, made by the means of the *Persian* King at the procurement of *Analcidas*, amongst all the *Gracians*, as *Diodorus* telleth us.

*Acoris* of Egypt  
strengtheneth  
himself a-  
gainst *Artaxerxes*.

82. *Acoris* the King of *Egypt*, who of late had entred into society with *Gaus*, and before had given assistance to *Evagoras* against *Artaxerxes*, as one who laid claim unto his Kingdom, to strengthen himself raised a great Army of Strangers, and for that he gave very good pay, and fought otherwayes to deserve well of Military men, many *Gracians* gave their names and listed themselves in his service. But wanting still some famous and expert General, he procured *Chabrias* the *Athenian*, a man of great command and no lesse valour; though without the consent of the people. *Artaxerxes* made *Pharnabazus* (now of late his Son in Law) the General of his Forces, who furnished with money made great preparations for the War, and sent to *Athens* to complain of *Chabrias*, who as he said, by his service to the *Egyptians*, alienated the Kings affection from that State; and desired that they would send *Iphicrates* to be a Captain in his Wars. The *Athenians* being desirous to have both the King and *Pharnabazus* their friend, presently recalled *Chabrias*, and gave order to *Iphicrates* to assist the *Persians*.

*Idem ad Olymp.*  
100. ann. 4.

*Artaxerxes*  
against him.

83. *Pharnabazus* spent several years in preparation for the War, of which *Iphicrates* being weary, told him he wondred, that he being so quick in speaking should be so slow in doing, to which he answered, that the reason was, that he himself was master of his words, but the King of his actions. The *Gracians* were again fallen into civil dissensions, the former Peace being not long continued through the ambitious practices of the *Lacedaemonians*; which *Artaxerxes* considering, and how needful their help was to him in this *Egyptian* Expedition, he sent to them to mediate and take up their differences, which they all liked well and accepted, except the *Thebans*. At length after three or four years spent in preparation, the King's Forces were drawn down into *Ace* a Town of *Syria*, where being a general Muster, three were found 200000 *Barbarians*, under the command of *Pharnabazus*, and 20000 *Greeks* under the Ensigns of *Iphicrates*: the Navy amounted to the number of 300 Gallies, besides a great number of Vessels of burthen. In the beginning then of Summer they marched for *Egypt*; the Fleet sailing along the Coasts, and coming near the mouths of *Nile*, found the *Egyptians* furnished sufficiently for a War; warning enough having been given them by the delay of *Pharnabazus*, who (as other *Persian* Generals) having not the full disposal of things in his power, was constrained to send to the King, to know his pleasure concerning particulars, whose answer not being quickly obtained at a great distance, procured much slownesse in all Expeditions.

*Idem ad ann. 3.*  
Olymp. 101.

*Pharnabazus*  
and *Iphicrates*  
sent against  
*Acoris*.

84. *Nectanebis* the King of *Egypt* (for *Acoris* was now dead) sent to spie out the number of the *Persian* Army; but his chiefest hope was in the strength of the Country, which was mightily fortified against any invasion, by the seven mouths of *Nile*, whereof each strengthened with a Castel, and a wooden bridge to hinder the passage of any ships up the River. But especially he took care of *Pelusium* the readiest passage from *Syria*, stopping up such places as might be passed by water, and drowning such as gave access by Land. *Pharnabazus* his Officers finding *Pelusium* so strongly fortified, resolved there was no passing there, and to carry the Fleet up to the *Mendesian* mouth of the River, where landing 3000 men, *Pharnabazus* and *Iphicrates* set upon the Castle. The *Egyptians* brought in 3000 Horse and Foot to the relief of it, and thereby ensued a most sharp encounter; but being at length overpowered by the number of *Persians* which coming in continually to the fight,

*Idem ad Olymp.*  
101. ann. 3.

The *Egypti-  
ans* defeated.

## SECT. 3.

fight, encompassed them; a great slaughter was made of them, and many taken alive. The rest betaking themselves to the Fort, *Iphicrates* his men brake in with them, took it, and razing it, carried the Defendants away prisoners.

Emulation  
betwixt *Phar-  
nabazus* and  
*Iphicrates*, frui-  
teth their  
design.

85. *Iphicrates* now understood by these Prisoners, that the Garrison was called out of *Memphis* the strongest City in *Egypt*; whereupon he advised *Pharnabazus* with all speed to sail thither, before the *Egyptians* should have time to unite their Forces. *Pharnabazus* answered, he would first stay till all his Army arrived, by the which the taking of *Memphis* would be more easie; but the other replied, that if he would but let him have all the Mercenaries onely in the Army, he would promise to reduce the City. *Pharnabazus* hereupon grew jealous of his valour, and fearing he might thereby, from his skill and courage bring *Egypt* into subjection, denyed him what he required; to which refusal he opposed this solemn protestation, that if the *Persians* should let slip out of their hands this fair opportunity, this Expedition through their fault would prove successlesse. Nothing being procured hereby but harred and ill words, the *Egyptians* by the means of this delay re-inforced the Garrison of *Memphis*, and with all their Forces came to the Fort which the *Persians* had demolished; when dividing their men into several parties, they set upon the Enemy, and prevailed so much upon him, that making great slaughters, the *Persian* Generals, having spent much time about the Place, and now the *Nile* swelling, and beginning to overflow all the grounds about them; lest they should seem to strive with Nature it self, resolved to retreat out of the Country: And this was the fruit of so long a preparation, and so much expence.

86. Being returned into *Asia*, the differences betwixt them brake out afresh, insomuch that *Iphicrates* fearing lest he might be attached as *Conon* formerly had been, withdrew himself by night, and returned to *Athens*. Thither *Pharnabazus* sent after him, to accute him as guilty of the miscarriage of the Expedition, to which the *Athenians* answered, that if they found him guilty, they would punish him; but within a while they gave him the command of their Fleet. This year *Nicocles* the Eunuch slew *Evagoras* the King of *Salamine*, and seized on the Kingdom, according to *Diodorus*, who in no case is to be believed, as to the Author of the Paricide; for though it be confirmed by one (a) that he was killed by an Eunuch; yet it appeareth from another, that his name was *Thrasylans*; seeing it is clear from *Iphicrates*, that *Nicocles* (to whom he wrote one Oration; another concerning the Office of a King he stiled by his name; and made a Funeral one concerning *Evagoras*) was the very son of *Evagoras*, and succeeded him in the Kingdom, and is not to be reckoned amongst Eunuchs.

(a) *Aristot.*  
*Polit. lib. 5.*  
cap. 10.  
(b) *Theopompus*  
apud *Photium*  
Biblioth. num.  
176.

87. The next year, *Artaxerxes* understanding how *Greece* was shaken with intestine broiles, which he still looked upon as by it's help to recover *Egypt*, sent to compose the differences amongst the several States. They all assented to his offers, except the *Thebans*, who having a design to be Masters of all *Bœotia*, would not enter with the rest into the League, which the *Lacedaemonians* ill resenting, and suspecting their ambitious practices for the dominion of all *Greece*, invaded them as the publick Enemies. Hereupon ensued a great and bloody battel at *Leuttra*, in which the *Thebans* had the better, through the conduct of *Epaminondas*, who so abated the strenght of the *Spartans*, that they sent *Agésilas* their King into *Egypt*, and *Analcidas* to *Artaxerxes*, to desire a supply of money. But the King, either because they fought to his Rebels the *Egyptians*, or upon some other account, slighted the Message, and rejected *Analcidas*, insomuch that returning home, when he found that he was laughed at by his Enemies, and fearing the severity of the *Ephori*, he starved himself to death.

*Xenoph.*  
*Hellen. lib. 6.*  
*Plutarch in*  
*Artaxerxe.*

88. Yet still did the King endeavour to reconcile the *Gracians*, for that as long as they exercised mutual feud, he could not have any considerable supply from them. This year on the former message *Philiscus* of *Abydos* was sent to them, who procured both the *Thebans* and their associates, and the *Lace-*

*Xenoph.*  
*Hellen. lib. 7.*  
*Diodorus ad*  
*Olymp. 102.*  
ann. 4.

I i  
demonians

## SECT. 3.

daemonians to meet at Delphos; but the controversy resting about Messene, and the Thebans refusing to consent that it should be under the Lacedamonians, the Treatie had again the same success: which so offended Philiscus, that he left 2000 Soldiers he had hired to the Lacedamonians, and returned into Asia. The Thebans not long after having a design to bring all Greece into subjection, and knowing their endeavours to be vain, except they made Artaxerxes their friend, or at least induced him to stand neuter, resolved to send Ambassadors to him. Calling together then their associates, they pretended the thing to be necessary, because Euthycles the Lacedemonian was already there, and dispatched away Pelopidas from themselves, Antiochus from the Arcadians, Archidamus for the Eleans, and another for the Argives, which being known at Athens, they also sent Timagoras and Leon from their State.

89. Pelopidas found the most favour at the King's hands, pleading (and not falsely) that the Thebans had onely assisted the Persians at Plataea, and since that had never fought against that Kingdom; and that for this onely cause were they invaded by the Lacedamonians, because they refused to follow Agesilaus against the King, having also prohibited him to sacrifice at Aulis, where Agamemnon sacrificed when he passed into Asia and took Troy. The late Victory of the Thebans at Leuctra, and the invasion of the Lacedemonian Territories, did not a little add to the esteem of Pelopidas, who to inherit the renown of his Country, stuck not also to aver, that the reason why the Argives and Arcadians had of late been overthrown by the Lacedamonians, was, because the Thebans were not at the battel. He obtained of the King, that Messene being exempted from the jurisdiction of the Lacedamonians, should be left to its own liberty, and that the Athenians should withdraw their ships, or else War was to be made upon them, which being read to the publick Ministers of the other Republicks, Leon the Athenian openly said, that the Athenians must find out another friend besides the King, who replied, that if they knew any more equal thing, they should acquaint him therewith.

90. With Pelopidas was joyned in Commission Ismenias the Theban, as we have it from Plutarch. He being brought by Tisibrautes a Colonel into the King's presence, and commanded, according to the custom, to adore him, took off his Ring secretly from his finger, and cast it down at his feet, and then stooping down to take it up, as he thereby satisfied the King, and obtained his request; so he thought he provided sufficiently for the credit of himself and Country. Timagoras the Athenian communicated by letter some secrets to Artaxerxes, for which he was rewarded with 1000 Daricks, a costly Supper, and 80 Cows to feed him with milk for his health; with a costly Bed and furniture to it, and some Persians that knew how to make it, the Greeks being accounted ignorant in these things. But returning home with the rest of the Ambassadors he was put to death; either because he accepted of these gifts, as Plutarch believed; or for that he adored the King after the Persian manner, wherewith they counted their whole State to be reflected on, or (what is most likely) because of this intercourse betwixt him and Artaxerxes they questioned his fidelity; his Colleague moreover impeaching him at their return for refusing his company, and imparting all the secret of their negotiation to Pelopidas.

91. After the return of the Ambassadors, the Thebans sent for the Deputies of the several Cities, whom, when the letters from the King were read, they commanded, all that would be accounted his and their friends, to swear to the contents of them. The Deputies answered, their Commissions were to hear, and not to take any Oath, which if they would exact from the Cities, they must send to them. This they did, hoping that the particular States would not dare to refuse the society of the King and them; but the Messengers first coming to Corinth, and that City refusing to swear, the rest followed their example, and so this device of the Thebans came to nothing. Then fell the Gracians into great broyls again, making havock of the Territories,

Xenoph. ibid.

In Artax.  
& vide Alian.  
var. Hist. lib. 1.  
cap. 21.Val. Max. l. 6  
c. 3. extor.  
exemp. 2.  
Xenoph. ut  
pau.

Idem ibid.

## SECT. 3.

stories, and goods of one another, which Artaxerxes still looking upon as against his design for the recovery of Egypt, sent once more and procured a Peace betwixt them, whereby the Laconick, or Boeotian War (as it was called) ended, after it had endured about five years from the first beginning, in the 39th year of Artaxerxes. Diodorus ad Olymp. 103. ann. 3.

92. This Peace yet effected nothing on his behalf, the interests of the several States being at this time so contrary, that they presently after broke out afresh into civil Wars; and what Forces could be spared out of Greece, being not employed for, but against him. For, three or four years after, the maritime parts of Asia revolted from him, and Tachos now King of Egypt made great provision for the War, both by Land and Sea; and hiring many Soldiers out of several Republicks in Greece, drew also to his party the Lacedamonians, who had conceived displeasure against Artaxerxes, because he made Messene to be comprehended in the general Peace. At the same time had he then to deal with the Egyptians, the Greek Cities in Asia, and the Lacedamonians; and besides them several of his Lieutenants in Asia revolted; amongst whom were Ariobarzanes of Phrygia (who had lately seized upon that Country after the death of Mithridates) Mausolus of Caria, a powerful Prince, having many strong places, especially Halicarnassus, in his power; with whom joyned Orontes of Mysia, Autophrades of Lydia, and of the Ionian race, the Lycians, Pisidians, Pamphylians, Cilicians; and besides these the Syrians, Phœnicians, and almost all that bounded upon the Sea. The General command over all was given to Orontes. By this so general a defection, half of the Tributes were withdrawn from the King; and the other half sufficed not for warlike preparations.

A defection  
from Artax-  
erxes.

93. But Orontes having got the chief command, and therewith received a years pay for 20000 men, betrayed those that had entrusted him with so great a power. For promising himself no small matters from the King, he first sent up to him those that brought him the money, and then betrayed many Towns, and a Band of Mercenaries to those who were sent from him for that purpose. At the same time things went in the same course in Cappadocia, accompanied with some memorable circumstances. Artabazus the King's General invaded that Country with an numerous Army, and Darius the Governour thereof, who had revolted, meeting him with a great Party of Horse, and 20000 Foot, pitched his Tents against him. The Captain of Darius his Horse was his Father in Law, who to ingratiate himself with the King, and to provide for his own safety, having first agreed with Artabazus, by night passed over with all his Troops unto him. But Darius not at all discouraged hereby, exhorted his Mercenaries to constancy, and promising them a large donative, presently led them against the Revolters, whom he fell upon just as they were joyning with the Enemy, and with great violence made great slaughter of both, Artabazus being ignorant of the matter, suspected that the Revolters went about again to betray him, and return to Darius, and therefore gave order to his Souldiers to fall upon the Horse approaching; whence Mithrobarzanes (for so was the Revoltor called) being shut up in the midst, whilst one part laboured to repel the Traitor, and the other to be revenged upon him for his treachery, was reduced into great straits, and out of extreme despair made great slaughter on both sides, till at length having lost 10000 men, the rest were put to flight by Darius, to whom some returned and asked pardon; others betook themselves to a place, whence being not able to stir they were killed, to the number of 500 men.

94. Whilst these things were thus carried on, Rheomithres was sent into Egypt to Tachos for aid, from whom obtaining 500 Talents, and 50 Gallies, he returned to Leuca, a Citie in Asia, where sending for many of the Officers of the revolters, he laid hands on them all, and sent them up to the King, by which Treachery he reconciled himself unto him. Tachos by this time had prepared all things for the War, having obtained out of Greece 200 Gallies, 10000 most valiant Souldiers; and out of Egypt it self raised 80000 foot.

## SECT. 3.

*Agessilaus* the King of *Lacedæmon* he also procured to come to him, promising him the command of all his forces. Upon the report of his landing, all sorts of presents were dispatched to him; but the Courtiers finding no Train, nor any thing of State about him, only an old man, little of stature, not at all trimmed, but with coarse and old Clothes, sitting on the shore upon the grass, they greatly despised him, and were seized with wonder at his poor-ness of spirit, when they beheld how amongst the presents, taking the Meal, Calves, and Geese to himself, he gave the sweet Meats and Oynments to be divided amongst the slaves. And *Tachos* himself gave him not the chief com-mand according to his promise, deriding him for the smallness of his stature, and saying, that the fable was fulfilled in him, *the Mountains are in Travel, and a Mouse is brought forth*; to which with anger and scorn he answered, that afterwards he should have cause to think him a *Lion*.

*Tachos King of Egypt strengthened himself.*

*Agessilaus.*

*Neftanebus King of Egypt.*

*Agessilaus having served him, in his return dieth.*

95. With *Tachos* also was *Chabrias* the *Athenian*, though not sent from the State as was *Agessilaus*, but on his own account, who advised him wanting Treasure, to command his richest sort of subjects to furnish him with as much money as they could spare, and he would repay them out of his yearly Tributes, which course he following got great store of money, and yet injured no man. To him he committed his Fleet, to *Agessilaus* the conduct of the 10000 mercenary *Græcians*, to *Neftanebus* his son (or rather the son of his brother, or sister, being called his Nephew) reserving to himself the com-mand over all; and though *Agessilaus* advised him rather to manage the War by his Lieutenants, and stay in *Egypt*, he sayled into *Phœnicia*, the *Spartan* following him, though against his dignity and disposition. Coming into *Phœnicia*, he sent *Neftanebus* against the Cities in *Syria*, to whom came a mes-sage from the Viceroy of *Egypt* left there by *Tachos*, signifying that he had re-volted, and now invited him to seize upon the Kingdom; to which he con-senting, drew presently to his party, all the Officers by gifts, and the Soul-diers by large promises. *Tachos* now being in fear of his own servants, and *Agessilaus* whom he derided, betook himself to *Sidon*, and thence to *Artaxerxes*, by whom he was courteously entertained, though not declared General in the *Egyptian* War, (and so by the help of *Agessilaus* recovered his Kingdom) as *Diodorus* writeth.

96. Another King besides these two was made by the *Egyptians* of *Men-defium*, of whom 10000 arose, and for him made War upon *Neftanebus*. The case being thus, *Agessilaus* took part with *Neftanebus*, whom he thought more to favour the *Græcians*, took the other prisoner, and confirmed him in the Kingdom, who importuning him to stay and winter with him, he refused, ha-ving homewards, for that he knew the *Lacedæmonian* State to be at this time ingaged in a War, destitute of Treasure, and yet to keep strangers in constant pay for want of their own men. *Neftanebus* when he would not stay, dis-missed him with great gifts and honours, giving him 220. or 230 Talents for the maintenance of the War at home, with which taking ship, he sayled home-wards, though in the midst of Winter; making haste, left through his absence the State should do nothing the next Summer; but being carried by Tempest into a desert place, called the *Haven of Menelaus*, lying betwixt *Cyrene* and *Egypt*, he there fell sick and died. His friends laying his Corps in Wax, for want of Honey, carried it to *Lacedæmon*, where it was buried according to his worth, and dignity.

97. About the time of his death died also *Artaxerxes* the King of *Persia*, after he had reigned 43 years. He had 115 sons, of which three only were legitimate; *Darius*, *Ariaspes*, and *Ochus*, the rest being begotten of Concu-bines, of which he kept 360. with which yet he could not be contented with-out the addition of *Astossa* his own daughter, his own mother to please him becoming a Bawd to his incestuous affections. When he was grown old, per-ceiving his sons to strive about the succession, and especially *Ochus* (who al-though the youngest, hoped by the means of *Astossa* to procure the Kingdom of him) fearing lest after his death he might do as his Uncle *Cyrus* had for-merly done, contrary to the custom of *Persia*, which admitted not of two Kings

*Xenoph. & Plutarch. & Amilius Probus in Agessilaus.*

*Plutarch. Xenoph. Cornelius Nepos & Diodorus usuprad.*

*Plutarch. in Artaxerxe, Ju-lii. lib. 10.*

## SECT. 3.

Is put to death.

*Ochus his wicked practices for the Kingdom.*

Kings at the same time, he made *Darius* the eldest, now 50 years old King, whilest he lived, lest his death should involve the Empire in civil broils. It was the fashion for him that was made King, to ask, and receive something at the hands of him that made him, according to which *Darius* asked *Aspasia* to wife, which formerly having been Concubine to *Cyrus*, *Artaxerxes* took, and afterwards married. He out of indulgence to him first granted his request, for that she being a free woman, and no slave, might chuse whether she would have him, and hoping she would refuse; but she willingly accepting of the thing, and he then repenting of what he had rashly promised, consecrated her as a Nun to *Diana*, that she might live for the remainder of her dayes a single life. *Darius* hereby incensed, through the provocation of *Tiribazus*, (who bore *Artaxerxes* malice for defrauding him of his daughter *Amistris*, whom he promised to him, but married her himself) entred with 50 of his brethren into a conspiracy against the life of his father, and the plot being re-vealed by an Eunuch, was put to death with his complices.

*Darius* being removed out of the way, *Ochus* was more inflamed with a de-sire of reigning, to which he was more incensed by *Astossa* his sister. But he feared two of his brothers; *Ariaspes* legitimate, and the elder, and one *Ar-sames*, who though base born, and the younger, yet was much esteemed for his wisdom, and especially beloved by his father. Both of them he resolved to destroy; the former by his cunning, and the later by down-right cruelty; for he hired some who never ceased to tell *Ariaspes*, as a great secret, that his father was resolved to make him away by a cruel, and shamefull death, and so often inculcating it unto him as speedily to be done, drove him to that fear and desperation that he poisoned himself. *Artaxerxes* mourned for him, but knowing the kind of his death, and suspecting the cause, yet through ex-tream age was unable to search into the matter and find it out: only he im-braced *Arfames* more affectionately than ever, and not obscurely signified that he only could trust, and rely upon him. *Ochus* judging then that no delay was to be used, procured *Harpagus* the son of *Tiribazus* (who fell in the treason of *Darius*) to murder him. *Artaxerxes* was already so spent with age that he seemed to want but the least furtherance to his death, so that word being brought him of the death of *Arfames*, he was not able to bear it, but died heart-broken with sorrow, after he had lived 94 years, in the 43th of his reign; in the third of the 104 Olympiad. A. M. 3644. about 360 before the birth of Christ. He was esteemed mild and loving towards his subjects, which opinion was mightily confirmed by the cruelty and parricide of his successor.

## SECT. IV.

From the death of Artaxerxes Mnemon, and the beginning of Ochus, to the death of Darius Codomannus, containing the space of 32 years.

I. *Ochus* succeeded his father, after whom he was also named *Artax-erxes*, and whose name the *Persians* put upon his Successors for a me-morial of his mild and prosperous Government. Some think him by the *Per-sians* to have been called *Ochosueros*, or *Achosueros*; and that he is to be taken for that *Achesuerus*, or *Ahasuerus* the husband of *Esther*, mentioned in Scripture, who by the seventy, and *Josephus* after them, is named *Ar-taxerxes*. Some have thought *Cambyses* to have been the man, but he reigned only seven years, whereas above twelve are given to *Ahasuerus*. Neither could *Darius* the son of *Hystaspes* be he, if the *Jews* with others rightly accounted the book of *Esther* to have been the last in order of all the Canonical Scripture of the Old Testament, and for that *Vashti* his wife is thought to be *Astossa*, the daughter of *Cyrus*, it cannot be, because he never put

*Diodorus.*

*Ochus succeed-eth.*

*Jacobus Capellanus, alii.*

## SECT. 3.

put away *Aëssa*, on whom he begat *Xerxes*. And although some plead hard for *Xerxes*, because his wife is called by *Herodotus*, *Amestris*, which they take in the *Persian* tongue to be onely *Ham-Esther*; yet 'tis apparent out of the same Author, that she was the daughter of *Otanes* a *Persian* *Satrapa*, by Religion an Heathen, and of a most cruel disposition. Besides, *Abasuerus* in the seventh year of his reign was at *Sushan*; but *Xerxes* in the seventh of his reign was absent in the War with *Greece*, and though the *Greeks* corrupted foreign names, and might call *Xerxes* him, whom the *Persians* named *Artachashta*, or *Artachastia*, yet not one in his own language called *Achosch-verosch*. Neither is it probable that *Longimanus* could be the man, who is both in sacred, and prophane story called *Artachashta* and *Artaxerxes*; but no where *Achasuerus*. The same may be said of *Nothus*, who both by *Nehemiah* and *Greek* writers is called *Darius*, and of *Artaxerxes* *Mnemon*, concerning whose wife *Staira*, such things are written as can neither agree with *Vashti* nor *Esther*. Now if that of *Esther* be the last Canonical book; and *Nehemiah* lived to the time of *Darius* *Nothus*, then is it probable, that *Esther* lived in the reign of his son, or Grand-son, and cannot so conveniently be assigned for a wife to any as to *Ochus*.

*Esther's husband.*

2. *Ochus* knowing of how great Authority his fathers name was to his subjects, and how contemptible he should be after his death was known, procured of the Eunuchs, Chamberlains and Colonels to conceal it for ten months, and in the mean time sending about the Royal Seal commanded in his fathers name, to proclaim *Ochus* King. When all owned, and obeyed him as King, he then confessed his fathers death, and commanded a general mourning, according to the custom of *Persia*, and presently took away all Competition, filled (a) the Court with the blood of his kindred, and relations, no regard being had, either to Sex or Age. Amongst the rest he put to death his (b) sister *Ocha*, being also his mother-in-law, with cruel torments, and his Uncle with his two sons and Nephews, he caused to be set in an empty place, and killed with Darts, who seemeth well to have been father to *Sisigambis* (mother to *Darius* the last *Persian* King) whose 80 brethren together with their father *Curius* reporteth to have been murdered by *Ochus*.

*Polyænus Strategem. lib. 7.*

(a) *Justin. lib. 10.*

(b) *Valerius Max. lib. 9. cap. 2.*

*Ext. ex. 7. Lib. 10. cap. 8.*

3. From *Ochus* revolted *Artabazus*, against whom were sent some of the *Persian* *Satrapæ* with 70000 men, and yet by the help of *Chares* the *Athenian* he overthrew them, and rewarded *Chares* with a great summe of money, which he laid out in the paying of his Souldiers. *Ochus* knowing of this, expostulated seriously with the *Athenians* about it, who hearing that he intended with 300 ships to assist their Enemies (with whom they were now engaged in the social War) presently clap't up a peace with them. *Artabazus* being forsaken of the *Athenians*, betook himself to the *Thebans*, who ordered *Pammenes* with 500 men to passe over into *Asia* to assist him; by whose help *Artabazus* again overthrew the King's forces sent against him in two great and bloody battels, which got no small credit to *Pammenes*, and his *Bæotians*. Yet a few years after, when the *Thebans* were engaged in the *Phœcian* War, and reduced to extremity for want of money, they sent to *Artaxerxes* *Ochus*, and obtained of him 300 Talents, which he did as it seemeth to put an obligation upon them to assist him in the War, which he renewed against the *Egyptians*.

*Diodorus ad Olymp. 106. ann. 1. & 4.*

*Idem ad Olymp. 107. ann. 2.*

4. Although *Egypt* had long before this revolted from the *Persian* Empire, yet *Ochus* not at all affecting War kept himself quiet; for, having sent some Armies thither, by the treachery, or ignorance of their Captains, they miscarried, so that having several times badly sped, though despised on that account by the *Egyptians*, yet being a lover of his ease and quiet he submitted to the disgrace. But now at this time (about the eleventh year of his reign) the *Phœnicians* and *Cyprians* taking heart, and rebelling also, he resolved to chastise them all with Arms, and that in his own person; and making great provision of all things for the War, raised 300000 foot, 30000 horse, and 200 Gallies, besides Vessels of burthen. The first Tempest of the War fell upon *Phœnicia*, which revolted upon this occasion. A famous City there

He invaded *Phœnicia*.

## SECT. 4.

there was therein named *Tripolis*, consisting, according to it's name, of three Cities distant a furlong from each other, and inhabited by *Tyrians*, *Sidonians*, and *Arædians*, in which the assembly General of the *Phœnicians* met and resolved of their most important affairs. Herein the *Persian* *Satrapæ* and Ambassadors, behaving themselves very uncivilly, and abusing the *Sidonians*, they thereupon resolved to rebel, and perswading the other *Phœnicians* to side with them for the obtaining of their liberty, sent to *Neftanebus* King of *Egypt* to desire him to receive them into confederacy against *Ochus*. Then to begin their hostility they cut down the Paradise wherein the Kings of *Persia*, when they came that way, used to divert themselves; burnt the hay which the *Satrapæ* had gathered for use in War, and punished such Officers as by whom they had been abused.

5. *Ochus* having notice of this, longed to be revenged of all the *Phœnicians*, but especially on them of *Sidon*; and gathering his Forces together at *Babylon*, set out thence against them. In the mean time whilst he was on his way, the President of *Syria* and *Maxæus* Governour of *Cilicia*, with joyn't Forces set upon the *Phœnicians*; but *Tennes* King of *Sidon*, having received out of *Egypt* a supply of 4000 *Græcians*, over which *Mentor* the *Rhodian* was General, with them and his Citizens together, fell upon the *Satrapæ*, worsted, and expelled them out of *Phœnicia*. Whilst things were thus carried there; another War arose to the *Persians* out of *Cyprus*, wherein were nine Cities of good account, having the lesser Towns in their subjection, and each of them a King; but all Subjects to the *Persian*, all which now, imitating the *Phœnicians*, revolted. *Ochus* receiving tidings hereof, wrote to *Adrius* Prince of *Caria* (who being newly come to the Government, was by the tenure of his Principality a friend and associate in war to the *Persian* Empire) to provide Forces both for Sea and Land against them, who accordingly with great expedition making ready 40 Gallies and 8000 Mercenaries, sent them into *Cyprus*, under the conduct of *Phocion*, the *Athenian*, and *Evagoras*, who heretofore had held the Island as King. These two landing their men, laid close siege to *Salamine* both by Land and Sea, and the Island having been quiet of late, and for that reason abounding with riches, great numbers flocked out of desire of plunder from *Syria* and *Cilicia*, inasmuch that the number of the besiegers was doubled. Hereupon all the other Cities submitted themselves; onely *Protogoras* held out still, and *Evagoras* thought by force to re-invest himself of that Kingdom, devolved upon him from his Ancestors: But at length *Protogoras* also submitting, obtained *Salamine* still; and *Evagoras* contented himself with a larger Dominion given him in *Asia*, which ill governing, he fled again into *Cyprus*, and there taken was put to death.

*Mentor the Rhodian offered to betray Sidon to him.*

6. The King was on his march towards *Phœnicia*, when *Mentor* the *Rhodian* understanding what strength he had, and how unable the Rebels were to make resistance, sent one to him privately, offering to betray *Sidon* into his hands, and to do him especial service in the conquest of *Egypt*, being very well skilled in that Country and the River. *Ochus* not onely promised him indemnity, but a large reward, if he would perform what he promised, and placing his greatest felicity in the recovery of *Egypt*, sent to the chieftest of the *Græcian* States, to desire aid. The *Athenians* and *Lacedæmonians* signified their desire to retain amity and a good correspondence with him, but at present could yield him no assistance; but the *Thebans* sent him 1000 men, the *Argives* 3000, and the *Greeks* in *Asia* willing to shew their readinesse, furnished him with 6000. Before their arrival the King was got into *Phœnicia*, and fate down not far from *Sidon*, which the Inhabitants had by this time strongly manned within, and fortified with a threefold large ditch, and high walls, besides a Fleet of 100 Gallies. For they exceeded by far all their neighbours in riches.

7. But *Tennes* their King had associated himself with *Mentor* to betray the City, whom leaving therein with command of a part thereof for the better carrying on of the treachery, he himself with 500 Soldiers went out, pretending

## SECT. 4.

Tennes King of Sidon joyne-  
eth with him,  
and yet put to  
death by  
Ochus.

Sidon taken &  
burnt by the  
Inhabitants.

Ochus invad-  
eth Egypt.

tending to go to the publick convention of the *Phanicians*, having with him 100 of the prime Citizens as his Counsellors. These he brought straight to *Ochus*, who put them all to death as authors of the rebellion, and after them 500 more, who came as Suppliants with Olives in their hands, after he had understood from *Tennes* that the City should be surrendered to him without any conditions, thereby to strike a terror into the other Towns. After this, *Tennes* easily prevailed with the mercenary *Egyptians* to let him and the King into the Town, which being done, and *Ochus* having it in his power, judging him now to be of no use to him, he commanded him also to be slain. The *Sidonians* before the King approached had burnt all their ships, lest any private person should convey himself away during the Siege. Now seeing themselves betrayed, and their City full of the Enemy which swarmed on every side, they set fire on their houses, and therein burnt themselves with their wives and children, so that (accounting slaves) above 40000 are thought to have perished in the flames. The King sold the rubbish thereof for many talents, much gold and silver being found, because it had flourished with great riches. By this Tragedy of *Sidon* the other Cities being terrified, yielded themselves unto the *Persian*.

8. The (a) Auxiliaries out of *Greece* being come to *Ochus* after the taking of *Sidon*, he set forward with his whole Army towards *Egypt*, (b) taking *Jericho* a City of *Judea* (as its probable) in his way, and drawing many *Jews* along with him in his Expedition. Coming (c) to the Lake *Sirbonis*, he lost part of his Army in the Whirl-pits and Bogs, through ignorance of the place, and a length arrived at *Pelusium* the first frontier-town, which was held with a Garrison of 1000 men. Now the King divided the *Gracian* Forces into three bodies, and over each constituted a Captain of their own Nation, and joyned a *Persian* with him: the other Forces he kept in his own Command, being greatly intent about the main business. On the other side *Neftanebus* was not a whit discouraged, having in pay 20000 *Gracians*, and as many *Africans*, besides 60000 of his own *Egyptians*, and an innumerable Company of boats for the River. But by his conceitedness and want of skill he miscarried, having formerly prospered whilst he used the conduct of the *Gracian* Captains, but now his Fortune changing upon his sole managing the War, for which he thought himself sufficiently able. After then he had fortified his Garrisons, with 30000 *Egyptians*, 5000 *Greeks*, and half of the *Africans*, he seized upon such places, as were most advantageous for passage into the Country.

9. Things standing thus betwixt them, *Nicostratus* the Captain of the *Argives* getting some *Egyptians* for Guides, passed with the Fleet through a ditch, and in a place something remote and out of sight landed his men, and pitched his tents; which being known by the Garrison, a party issued out, and fell upon them; but the *Gracians*, after a sharp contest, slew their Captain, and of them about 5000 men. *Neftanebus* upon report made of this defeat was greatly discouraged, fearing all the rest of the *Persian* Army might be easily transported, and suspecting lest the Enemy should bend his utmost strength against *Memphis* the Metropolis, was especially concerned for it, and with that party which accompanied him returned thither. In the mean time *Lacrates* the *Thiban*, General and principal of all the *Gracian* Captains drained the Channel by cutting a ditch, and passing over his Soldiers raised a battery against *Pelusium*, by which the walls being much broken the defendants raised still Pallisadoes in the place, and the *Gracians* within stoutly defending the Port, a great contest hapned for several dayes. But as soon as they heard of the Kings departure, they desired a Parley, and *Lacrates* interposing an Oath, that upon yielding of the place, they should depart with such things as they brought out of *Greece*, they presently yielded. Then *Artaxerxes* sent *Bagoas* an Eunuch of great authority with him, with a party of *Barbarians* to take possession of *Pelusium*, who meeting the *Gracians* took from them many things contrary to the agreement. This they received in great disdain, and called to their gods as witnesses of the Oath, which to keep

(a) Diodorus ad  
Olymp. 107.  
ann. 3.  
(b) Solinus  
cap. 35.  
Aristus de 70.  
late-p.  
(c) Diodorus  
ibid.

## SECT. 4.

keep *Lacrates* fell upon the *Barbarians*, put them to flight with the loss of some, and defended his Country-men, for which being accused by *Bagoas*, the King defended what he had done, and punished the Authors of the violence.

10. *Pelusium* being taken, the other Towns were easily reduced by this stratagem of *Mentor* the *Rhodian*, the third Captain of the *Gracians*. These places being held by Garrisons consisting of two sorts of Nations, *Gracians* and *Egyptians*, he caused this rumour to be spread abroad, that *Artaxerxes* had resolved to deal mildly with all those who should deliver up any Towns, but such as should withstand him, he would prosecute with as great severity as the *Sidonians*; and he gave in charge to the Sentinels to let as many Citizens go out as would. By this means this report was presently spread all over *Egypt*, and thereupon mutinies followed betwixt the Strangers and Natives in every Garrison, each endeavouring first to betray their trust, and gain credit of the Conquerors by their speedy treachery. Accordingly when *Mentor* and *Bagoas* laid siege to *Bubastis*, the *Egyptians* secretly sent to the latter to yield to him the Town upon security of a free dismissal. The *Gracians* suspecting the matter, pursued the Messenger, and getting from him the whole truth, in a great rage fell upon the *Egyptians*, whereof some they slew, others they wounded, and drove the rest into a corner of the Town. They signified this to *Bagoas*, and desired him with all speed to come and take possession of the Town, and in the mean time a messenger was sent to *Mentor* from the *Gracians*, who advised them as soon as *Bagoas* should enter the Town to fall upon the *Barbarians*. As soon therefore as part of his Soldiers with him was entered, they shut the gates, and killing all the Soldiers, took *Bagoas* himself prisoner.

11. *Bagoas* (a) seeing his onely hope to be in *Mentor*, earnestly besought him to be the means of his deliverance, promising him to do nothing for the future without his approbation, who procuring his release, and having the Town delivered up into his own hands, as he got the credit of the enterprise, so engaged he *Bagoas* to him, who entered by Oath into friendship and endearedness, which he also kept to the last, and by which union they both became afterwards the most powerful of all the King's Officers. After the surrender of *Bubastis*, the other Cities made their peace, but *Neftanebus* lying at *Memphis*, and seeing what progress the Enemy made in his conquest, would not endanger his personal safety for a Kingdom, but packing up all his treasures got him away into *Ethiopia*. Then became *Artaxerxes* Master of all *Egypt*, and demolishing the walls of the greater Towns, spoyled the Temples, and got much treasure. He carried away the Writings of the Priests, which afterwards *Bagoas* restored to them for a great sum of money, he (b) derided *Apis* and all their gods, and for that the *Egyptians* had for his dulness (c) called him an *Asse*, he sacrificed *Apis* being taken by violence, to an *Asse*, making his flesh also be dressed up for meat. Then rewarded he the *Gracians* with great munificence, according to their particular merits, and making *Pharendates* Satrapa of *Egypt*, he returned laden with glory and spoyl unto *Babylon*, taking (d) in his way a great number of *Jews* captive, of whom some he placed at *Babylon*, and others in *Hyrcania* upon the *Caspian* Sea.

12. *Ochus* rewarded *Mentor* the *Rhodian* with 100 talents of silver, and much costly household stuff, and making him governour of the Coasts of *Asia*, gave him full power to make war upon his Rebels. He used his power moderately towards *Artabazus* and *Memnon*, who formerly had revolted, and now were fled to *Philip* King of *Macedonia*: those he reconciled to the King, and sent for them both with their Families; for *Artabazus* had by the Sister of *Mentor* and *Memnon* eleven Sons and ten Daughters, by which number *Mentor* being much affected, not onely procured him his pardon, but preferred by degrees all the youths to honourable command in the Army. After this promise of pardon he allured *Hermias* the Eunuch Governour of *Atarnus* into his hands, whom casting into prison, he took his Ring and therewith signed

letter,

Neftanebus fled  
eth out of  
Egypt.

(a) Sulp. Se-  
verus Hist.  
Sacr. lib. 2.  
(b) Alian.  
var. Hist. lib. 4.  
(c) Suid. in Ochus.  
(d) Orosius l. 3.  
cap. 7. quere  
Diodorus ad  
Olymp. 107.  
ann. 4.

idem ibid.  
Polyanus lib. 6.  
Strabo lib. 13.

K k



## SECT. 4.

letters, wherein was commanded in his name, that such as had command of any Castles or Towns should deliver them up into the hands of the bearers, which was accordingly done, and then sent he *Hermias* up to the King, who caused him to be hanged. *Aristotle* the Philosopher and *Xenocrates* the *Chalcædonian*, (whom he had sent for to him) made their escape out of such places as the *Persians* had got into their hands. Afterwards *Mentor* either by force or policy, reduced all such Captains as had revolted.

13. *Philip* the son of *Amyntas* at this time reigning in *Macedonia*, grew very potent, and besieged *Perinthus*, a Town in *Thrace*, situate upon the *Propontis*, with 30000 men, and very strong provision for War; so that he straightly pressed the inhabitants, giving them no rest through his continual attempts.

Philip King of Macedonia opposed by Oechus.

This *Ariaxerxes Oechus* taking notice of, and being very jealous of his sudden growth, commanded the *Satrapæ* of the Maritime Coasts of *Asia* to relieve the *Perinthians* as effectually as might be, which they so performed as he mislaid of his design; and this afterwards was objected as a sufficient cause, amongst others, for the invasion of *Asia*.

14. In the reign of *Oechus*, as some think, hapned those things which are said to have been done in *Judea*, during the reign of *Ariaxerxes*, and to have given an occasion of imposing a Tribute upon that Countrey. After the death of *Elisaphib* the Priest, his son *John* succeeded him in his Office according to his birth-right, who had a brother named *Joshua*. This *Joshua* being in great favour with *Bagoas*, the Kings General, had a promise from him that he should have the Priesthood, by which he was so heartned as to strive with *John* in the Temple, and so far provoked him as he slew him there. *Bagoas* hearing this, endeavoured to enter the Temple, and when he was forbidden asked if they counted him more impure than the Carkeys that lay within, and entering by force, took thence occasion to punish the *Jews* seven years for the death of *Joshua*. For two Lambs being daily offered in the constant sacrifices, he imposed upon every one a Tribute of fifty drachms, which amounted to the yearly rate of sixty *Attick* Talents. But if these things hapned in the time of this *Ariaxerxes*, and he be taken for *Ahasuerus*, then must this murder have been committed towards the beginning of his reign, and this Tribute of seven years been exacted before *Mordecai* the *Jew* came in favour, which was after the fall of *Haman*, in the twelfth year of *Ahasuerus*.

Affairs of Judea in the time of Oechus.

15. During the reign of *Oechus*, in his ninth year, died *Mausolus* the petty King of *Caria*, more famous after his death than whilst living, to whom his wife *Artemisia* succeeding, because he left no Children, burned with such affection towards him, that reducing his bones and ashes into powder she drunk it, desiring to become a quick and breathing monument of her husband. She proposed great rewards to such Orators as would speak eloquently in his commendation, in which did several notable men of that time. For the preservation of his memory she raised such a monument as deserved to be reckoned amongst the seven wonders of the World, and in the work whereof the most exquisite artificers that then could be found were employed. *Scopas* on the East part, *Bryaxes* on the North, *Timotheus* on the South, and *Leochares* on the West, who notwithstanding *Artemisia* died of melancholy before the work was compleated, yet proceeded to the finishing of it, intending it as a monument, not onely of *Mausolus* (upon which account the *Romans* called their most exquisite pieces of Architecture *Mausolea*) but also of the excellency of their Art; to transmit their own names as well as his posterity.

Mausolus his monument.

16. *Bagoas* had risen to that power with *Oechus*, that he ruled all things at his pleasure, the King doing nothing without his consent. Yet either misdoubting of his security through the cruel disposition of the King, or willing to have a greater power, owing *Oechus* also some displeasure for killing the *Egyptian* God *Apis* (he belonging to that Countrey) poysoned him by the means of a Physician, after he had reigned 23 years. Being dead, he cast him to the Cats to be devoured, another being buried in the Royal Sepulchre,

Diodorus ad Olymp. 109. ann. 4.

\* Josephus Antiquit. lib. 11. cap. 7.

Diodorus ad Olymp. 106. ann. 4. Strabo lib. 14. Gellius lib. 10. cap. 18.

Plinius lib. 36. cap. 5.

\* Pausan. in Arcadicis.

Diodorus ad Olymp. 111. ann. 2. Asian. Var. Hist. lib. 6. cap. 8.

## SECT. 4.

*Bagoas* killed *Oechus*, and setting up *Artes* made him away within a while. In his stead, and that he might expresse his cruel disposition, of his Thigh-bones he caused sword hilts to be made. In his stead he made King his youngest son *Artes*, killing all his other sons, that the new King being destitute of kindred & friends, might yield the more obedience to himself. In reality he now reigned, usurping all, except the meer Title; but *Artes* beginning to look to himself, when he had ground to suspect that he intended to call him to an account for his wickednesse, he made him away also with all his Children in the third year after he had set him up.

Darius Codomannus.

17. All the Children of *Artes* perishing with him, and the Royal family thereby being desolate, *Bagoas* made choice of one (*a*) *Codomannus* his friend, and placed him in the Throne, whom some Authors would have not at all to be descended of the Royal line, being a Carrier of Letters, but others make him the son of *Arfames* (brother to *Oechus*) by *Sisygambis* his sister, according to the custom of the *Persian* marriages. Whilst a private man in the *Cadusian* War he shewed himself valiant, killing an Enemy, who challenged any one of *Oechus* his Army to a single Combat, and thereby for the present procuring great rewards, honour, and the Government of *Armenia*, after *Artes* his death came to be remembred by the people, which made choice also of him for their King, and that nothing of Royal Majesty might be wanting to him gave him the name of *Darius*. Not long after his presentment *Bagoas* repented him of what he had done, and being much versed in King killing, provided a potion to send him after *Oechus* and *Artes*, which he having notice of, called him to him, and in a pleasant humour offered it to himself to drink, and thereto compelled him, satisfying the people sufficiently in that he thus required him, who sought the same way to entrap him.

(a) Diodorus. Strabo lib. 15. & Plutarch. in Alexand. alibi. Diodorus, Arrianus, Curtius.

Justin. lib. 10.

Curtius lib. 6. cap. 6.

Josephus Antiquit. lib. 11. cap. 7.

By this *Darius* was sent into *Samaria*, as a *Satrapa*, *Sanballet*, a *Cuthæan* by birth, and so of the same Original the *Samaritans* themselves were. He thinking it good policy to procure Amity with the *Jews*, his Neighbours, married his daughter *Nicaso* to *Manasse* the brother of *Jaddus* the High-Priest.

Together with his Kingdom espoused a quarrel with the King of Macedonia.

18. *Darius* with the Empire of *Persia* was necessitated to espouse a quarrel with the greatest Monarch then known in the World except himself, and with such a people in combination with him, as easily excelled all others in Military skill and valour. The quarrels which hapned betwixt the *Persians* and *Græcians* had been many, and as many bickerings and contests in the field had ensued thereupon, wherein as the *Greeks* both at home and abroad had constantly had successe agreeable to their dexterity, so each foil of the *Persians* gave as great a stroak to their credit, inso much as they were sleighted by the other, especially after the retreat of those that assisted *Cyrus*, who in despite of all *Ariaxerxes* could do, marched through the midst of his Territories as Conquerours, and having seen the great riches of those Countreys through which they passed, carried home a longing desire after them, and an indignation that such things should be enjoyed by those who seemed not in capacity to defend them.

19. The disadvantage of the *Persians* was the rising of the Kingdom of *Macedonia*, to that high pitch of greatness to which it had been of late advanced by the abilities of *Philip* the present King, who though he might have pretended a cause where none was, yet was there some occasion of offence given him, though but counted a necessary allay to his rising fortune so terrible to the *Persian* Empire: For when with great preparations he had besieged *Periathus* a Citie of *Thrace*, *Oechus* gave order to his Lieutenants to assist the besieged, which was so powerfully done, as his design miscarried. Yet he having brought all *Greece* to his beck, and established his interest sufficiently in *Europe*, resolved upon *Asia*, and assembling the Estates at *Corinth*, procured himself to be declared General of all *Greece* for the *Persian* War; for which he made mighty preparations, imposing a certain number of Souldiers upon every Citie. The next Spring he sent over as before him into *Asia* three Captains, *Parmenio*, *Amyntas*, and *Apollus*, under pretence of freeing the

Vide Arrianum lib. 1. pag. 41.

## SECT. 4.

Greek Cities there, which hapned the same year that *Artes* died, and he lived himself not long after, being stabbed by one *Pausanias*, as he was solemnizing the nuptials of his daughter *Cleopatra*, with *Alexander* King of *Epirus*. Hereupon *Darius*, who before studied how to turn the War into *Macedonia*, thought himself secure, despising the youth of *Alexander* his son and Successor, who exceeded not the age of 20 years.

20. But *Alexander* being a young man of a great and restless spirit, and of wisdom & valour far above his age, overcame all difficulties, both in *Greece* and *Asia*, which his Enemies had raised (getting himself to be chosen in a little time General of the one, as his father had been, and in the other suppressing betimes the sedition of the Army of *Attalus*, by taking of him out of the way) and most vehemently burnt with a desire of the Conquest of the *Persian* Empire; from an endeavour after which he might by no means be diverted. Having either by fair, or foul means settled his matters in *Europe*, he passed over into *Asia* two years after his fathers death, and landed at *Troas* with a Fleet of sixty long ships. He first cast a spear out upon the shore, and leaped out in a frisking manner, as taking possession of the Continent. Then presently he made a visit to the Tombs of *Achilles* and *Ajax*, to whom he made a parentation, and mustered the Army he had brought over with him. Concerning the number of Forces, those that were there present themselves have not agreed in their relation, but according to the greatest probability, there were of foot 13000 *Macedonians*, of the Associates 7000. and 5000 Mercenaries, besides of *Odryse*, *Triballi*, and *Illyrians* 5000. and 1000 Archers, with such as fought with Darts. Of horse there were 1800 *Macedonians*, 1800 *Thessalians*, and of other *Gracians* 600. besides a Guard of 900 *Thracians* and *Paonians*.

Alexander of Macedonia invaded Asia.

21. *Darius* after he had heard how *Alexander* was declared General of *Greece*, and was much spoken of for his valour, shook off his former security and buckled himself to preparation for resistance. He got together a considerable Navy, and raised great Forces, for command of which he made choice of most expert Captains, and amongst the rest of *Memnon* the *Rhodian*, a man very excellent in Military matters, whom he sent into *Phrygia* with a band of 5000 Mercenaries to reduce *Cyzicus* to his obedience. He passed over the Hill *Ida*, and on a sudden set upon the City, and had well-nigh taken it; but the Defendants making strong resistance, he plundered the Territories adjacent, and then retreated with much booty. In the mean while *Parmenio*, one of the three Captains sent into *Asia* by *Philip*, and who stood close to the interest of *Alexander*, took by storm *Sirynium*, a Town of *Phrygia*, and sold the inhabitants. From thence he went to *Pitanes* to attempt the same upon it, but *Memnon* coming upon him struck such a terror into his men that he was forced to raise his siege. After this, *Callas* with a band of *Macedonians* and Mercenaries engaged with the *Persians* in a battle at *Troas*, but being overmatched in numbers, he was worsted, and betook himself to *Rhacum*. These things fell out before the passage of *Alexander* into *Asia*.

22. After (a) *Alexander* was landed, the *Persian* Captains met to consult about carrying on the War, whom *Memnon* advised by no means to hazard a battle with him; but to lay waste the Countrey before him, thereby to hinder his march any farther for want of necessities, and then to passe all their Forces over into *Macedonia*, and so to transfer the seat of the War into *Europe*. This wholesome Counsel was rejected as below the *Persian* courage, and a resolution taken to engage, so that gathering their forces together they marched into *Phrygia* towards the *Hellepont*, and pitched their Tents upon the River *Granicus* (which runneth through the plains of *Adrastra*) intending it as a defence to them. (b) *Alexander* in his way thither passed by *Lampfacus*, the inhabitants of which either having already revolted to the *Persians*, or else suspected of such an intent he resolved utterly to destroy. As he was thus minded *Anaximenes* an Historian of that place, well known formerly to his father, and also to him, presented himself to him, to whom he swore in so many

Diodorus ad Olymp. III. ann. 3.  
Justin. lib. II.  
Arrianus lib. I.

Diodorus ad Olymp. III. ann. 2.

(a) Diodorus ad Olymp. III. ann. 3.

(b) Valer. Maximus l. 7. cap. 3.  
Euseb. Exemp. 4.  
Pausan. Eliac. lib. 2.

## SECT. 4.

ny words, that he would not grant what he was about to ask, which the other readily apprehending, desired of him that he would destroy *Lampfacus*, so that with his sharpness of wit being circumvented, he was constrained to spare it against his will.

The battle of Granicus.

23. *Alexander* having with great trouble and danger passed the River *Granicus*, then (a) engaged with the *Persians* in a great and bloody battle, wherein much valour was shewn on both sides. *Spithrobatas*, a *Persian* Sa-  
(a) Diodorus. trap of *Ionia*, and Son in Law to *Darius*, a man of a great courage, with a strong body of Horse fell upon the *Macedonians*, whom no one being able to sustain, *Alexander* himself grappled with him, a fierce combat ensued, he wounding the King, who yet at length slew him. But *Rosaces* his brother coming in upon *Alexander*, gave him such a blow on the head as broke his helmet and lightly wounded him, and a second had killed him outright but that *Chimus*, surnamed *Niger*, a *Macedonian*, putting spurs to his Horse, in good time cut off the hand of the *Barbarian*. A great conflict then ensued betwixt the principal *Persians* and *Macedonians*, and many of the former lost their lives upon the place; amongst which of most special note were *Astyxes* and *Pharnaces*, brother to the wife of *Darius*, and *Mithrobarzanes* Captain of the *Cappadocians*. These being slain, those that opposed *Alexander* began to fly, and afterwards all the rest; of the 100000 foot which the *Persians* brought into the field about 10000 being slain; and of the 20000 Horse, 2000. Of *Alexander* his Army one (b) reports nine Foot-men, and 120 Horse-men to have fallen, but (c) another onely 24 in all, amongst which were nine Foot-men. The King by confession of all deserved most commendation for his valour, and next to him the *Thessalian* Horse-men. (d) *Arctes* the *Persian* fled into *Phrygia*, and there killed himself, because through his advice, he seemed to have been author of this overthrow.

24. After he had refreshed his Army, *Alexander* marched through *Lydia*, having *Sardis* delivered up to him, and came to *Ephesus*, where he dissolved the Oligarchical form of Government, and set up a Democratical one in its room, commanding the same to be done in all *Greek* Cities, which he ordered to be left to their own Laws. The *Persians* which had escaped at *Granicus* were come to *Miletus* with *Memnon* the *Rhodian*, against which City he went and besieged it both by Land and Sea, and by his Engines making great breaches in the walls, the Inhabitants yielded themselves to his mercy, to whom he gave both life and freedom, but such *Barbarians* as he took he either slew or scattered them up and down in the quality of slaves. A little after he dissolved his Fleet, consisting of 160 Ships or more, onely reserving a certain number for the conveying of Engines and other instruments for a siege, amongst which were twenty Auxiliary Vessels belonging to *Athens*.

25. *Memnon*, after the taking of *Miletus*, with the most considerable *Persian* Officers, and a multitude of Mercenaries, betook themselves to *Halicarnassus*, the greatest and most elegant City in *Caria*, which he took upon him to defend for the King, to whom he sent as Hostages his Wife and Children, and thereupon command was given to all the Maritime parts of *Asia* to obey him as their Captain General in the War. *Alexander* in the mean time sent his Engines thither by water, together with provision for his Army, and marched himself by Land thitherwards with his whole Force, setting at liberty in his way all the *Greek* Cities, which he left to their own Laws, and freed from Tribute, professing that he undertook this Expedition for the freedom of the *Greeks*. In his way he was met by *Ada* the Queen of *Caria*, who after the death of her Husband *Idrieus*, was deposed by her Brother *Pexodarus*. She delivered up *Alinda*, the strongest City in the Countrey wherein she dwelt, into his hands, and imploring his help for the recovery of the Kingdom, adopted him for her son. He despised it not, and left her the Government of *Caria*, over which he declared her Queen, by which courtesie the Cities being overcome, sent him Crowns of gold, and delivered up themselves into his power.

26. *Orontobates* a *Persian*, Son in Law to *Pexodarus*, after his death kept

Alexander set at liberty all *Greek* Cities.

## SECT. 4.

He taketh &  
razeth Halicarnassus.

The treason  
of Alexander  
Lyncestes.

He cutteth in  
two the Gor-  
dian knot.

kept possession of *Halicarnassus*, with whom *Memnon* the *Rhodian* and other *Persians*, after the taking of *Mileus*, joyned themselves. *Alexander* now besieged it, and with all his might endeavoured the taking of it by assault; but such was the pertinaciousness of the defendants, that they held him out, and making a fallie had given him a defeat, if the old Soldiers buckling their Arms to them had not come in in good time, and repulsed them with great slaughter; after which the Soldiers forsook the City, and so he took it, and levelled it with the ground. The Castle he fortified with a wall, and a notable ditch, in which for the defence of *Caria* he left 3000 foreign Foot, and 200 Horse, under the command of *Psolomy*; and restored to his adoptive Mother *Ada*, the Principality of the Country. From thence he proceeded towards *Lycia* and *Pamphylia*, that reducing the Sea-Coasts into his power, he might render the Enemies Navy unserviceable to him, which he in a good measure performed, and came in the midst of Winter into *Mylias* a Region of *Phrygia*, where he entered into League with the Ambassadors sent to him from *Phaselis*, and the lower *Lycia*, who surrendered all the Cities into his hands. Afterwards he went into *Phaselis*, where he stormed a Castle built by the *Pisidians*, to infect the Country.

27. Whilst (a) he here remained, he understood of a plot against his life, by *Alexander Aeropus*, called also *Lyncestes* (from *Lyncus* a Town of *Epironia*, as it's probable) who was promised by *Darius* the Kingdom of *Macedonia*, and 1000 talents of Gold besides, if he could any way procure his death. His Mother had by letters advised him to take heed of him, and the thing being confessed by *Assines* a *Persian*, whom *Darius* under a shew of a Message to the Governour of *Phrygia*, had sent to deal with him in this matter, he committed him to custody, not thinking it safe to put him to death, lest thereupon some trouble should follow, in *Macedonia*. From *Phaselis* he marched to *Perga* on the shore of the *Pamphylian* Sea, concerning which many ancient Historians reported, that it by an extraordinary providence gave way to him, and herein *Josephus* hath rather been too credulous, whereas (b) at a low water the place used to be dry, and gave way to passengers; only *Alexander* hapning to come thither in Winter-season, and trusting all to the goodness of his Fortune, would march through before the water was fallen off, so that his men waded all the day in water up to the navel. (c) Subduing all in his passage, at length he came to the Lake of *Ascania* in *Phrygia*, and thence in five Encampings to *Celene*, the Castle of which being held by the *Satrapa* of *Phrygia* with 1000 *Carians*, and 100 mercenary *Gracians*, after 60 dayes truce (in which they had in vain expected relief from *Darius*) was yielded unto him.

28. In *Celene* he left a Garrison of 1500 Soldiers, and declaring *Antigonus* *Satrapa* of *Phrygia*, went forward for *Gordium*, having wrote to *Parmenio* to meet him there with his Forces, who accordingly came; and there arrived also a supply of 1650 men out of *Greece*. This *Gordium* a City in *Phrygia*, had been the regal City of *Midas* the Son of *Gordius* King of this Country (concerning whom notable Stories are related) and herein was a Temple of *Jupiter*, wherein *Alexander* heard that there was a yoke belonging to *Gordius*, the bands of which whosoever could untie, the Oracles promised him the Empire of all *Asia*. When he had taken the Town he came into the Temple, and asked for the yoke, which being brought to him, when he could not find the ends of the thongs which were hid amongst the knots, left his frustrate endeavour should be ominous, he cut them in pieces, with his sword, and thereby either eluded or fulfilled the Oracle.

29. *Darius* this while sent a great sum of money to *Memnon*, whom he had declared General of all his Forces, wherewith he raising many men all over where he came, and rigging a Navie of 300 ships, betook himself seriously to his work. He presently reduced *Chios*, and failing to *Lesbus* easily took *Antissa*, *Methymnus*, *Phyrrhus*, and *Eressus*; but *Lesbus* and *Mitylene* more strongly fortified, with great loss of men. His name being blazed abroad by these actions, most of the Islands *Cyclades* sent their Ambassadors about

*Diodorus &  
Arrianus  
ut supra.*

(a) *Arrianus  
lib. 1.*

(b) *Strabo  
lib. 14.*

(c) *Arrianus  
lib. 1.*

*Curtius lib. 3.  
Arrianus lib. 1.  
& 2.  
Plutarch in  
Alexand.  
Justin lib. 11.  
Curtius l. 3. c. 2.*

*Diodorus ad  
Olymp. 11. l.  
ann. 4.*

*Arrianus l. 2.  
about*

## SECT. 4.

*Memnon Darius  
his General  
dieth.*

about a Peace, and a rumour being spread that he intended to fall upon *Eubœa*, a great fear seized upon the Inhabitants thereof, and many of the *Gracians* who envied the Fortune of *Alexander*, began to take courage, and conceive new hopes, amongst which were the *Lacedæmonians*, who alwaies had despised both his Alliance and that with his Father. Thus prosperously succeeded *Darius* his affairs under the management of *Memnon*; but Providence having otherwise determined concerning his estate, *Memnon* died shortly after, and with him the King's success was even extinct. He was in good hope that the War would have been translated out of *Asia* into *Europe*, by necessitating *Alexander* to return; but understanding of his death, he consulted with his Friends whether he should manage the War by his Lieutenants, or go himself in person, and give the *Macedonians* battle.

30. The *Persians* persuaded him to march in the head of the Army, which thereby would fight with more alacrity, but *Charidemus* (or *Eudemus*) an *Athenian*, a man much admired for valour and prudence (who by the command of *Alexander* being banished his Country, was come to the *Persian* Court) advised him not rashly to commit the fortune of his Empire to the hazard of his own life, but keeping the chief power in his own hands to send some expert Lieutenant to the War. He told him that 100000 men would be sufficient for this enterprize; a third part of them being *Gracians*, with which he doubted not to engage to perfect what already was well begun by *Memnon*. The King at first gave ear to what he said; but the *Persians* obstinately opposed it, and so interpreted his words as if he affected the chief command, for that end, that he might betray the Empire to the *Macedonians*. Hereat he grew angry, and in his passion upbraided the *Persians* with cowardise, which so far incensed the King, before this exasperated against him, that his anger overtopping his reason, he cast a belt about him after the *Persian* manner, and commanded him to be put to death, who foreseeing his ruine, cried out as he was led away, that shortly he would repent it, and pay sufficiently for so unjust proceedings. After the cooling of his passion he repented too late of his rashness, and considering the valour of the *Lacedæmonians*, berought himself what man of worth he might find fit to succeed *Memnon*; but finding none to whom he might commit so great a trust, was necessitated to expose himself to danger for the preservation of his Kingdom. Then raised he Forces in all places, which he commanded should meet at *Babylon*, where accordingly were found 400000 Foot, and above 100000 Horse, and with this number (taking his Mother, Wife, one Son of six years of age, and two Daughters marriageable along with him) he marched towards *Cilicia*.

31. *Alexander* in the mean while placed *Satrapas* over *Paphlagonia* and *Cappadocia*, which voluntarily yielded themselves, and hastened towards the Straights of *Cilicia* called *Pyla*, which being quitted by those that were there placed to maintain them, he easily passed, and came to *Tarsus*, which *Arshames* the *Persian* also forsook, and wasting *Cilicia* to straighten the *Macedonian* Army of provisions, fled amain to the King. Here he fell sick of a disease, which (b) one wrote he got by too much toil, (c) others assign no particular cause at all; but according to the general tradition, (d) he contracted it by casting himself all hot and sweaty into the River *Cydnus*, whence such a cold seized upon his Nerves that he fell speechlesse, and so small hopes there were of recovery, that little probability was conceived of proracting the danger. Onely one Physician named *Philip* an *Acaranian*, who used a speedy and desperate kind of course in his practice, undertook the cure. But by letters from *Parmenio* he was lately advised to beware of him, as being corrupted by *Darius* for a great sum of money to make him away. Yet he counting it safer to commit himself to the doubtful fidelity of the man than perish by a certain disease, put himself into his hands, and taking the potion, gave him the letters of *Parmenio* to read, fixing his eyes upon him as he drank, whom as he saw nothing troubled at the matter, he took more courage, and recovered the fourth day after.

*Diodorus ibid.  
Curtius lib. 3.*

*Arrianus &  
Curtius ut  
supra.*

(b) *Aristobolus.  
(c) Diodorus.  
(d) Justin l. 11.  
Curtius.  
Plutarch.  
Arrianus &  
Val. Maximus  
lib. 3. cap. 8.  
extrem. excomp.  
ult.*

## SECT. 4.

32. *Darius* having notice of the sickness of *Alexander* hastened towards *Euphrates*, thinking to prevent him, and seize upon *Cilicia*. But he sending *Parmenio* to beseege to possess himself of the *Pyle*, or Straights that part *Cilicia* and *Syria*, followed from *Tarsus*, and came to *Anchiale* built by *Sardanapalus*; and thence to *Solus*, where he placed a Garrison, and fined the inhabitants 200 Talents of silver for their affection to the *Persians*. Hence he marched against the *Cilicians*, inhabiting the Mountains, which having brought under, he returned, and understanding how *Ptolomy* and *Alexander* his Lieutenants had overthrown *Oromobaces* the *Persian*, who held the Castle of *Halicarnassus*, whereby the parts adjacent were reduced to obedience; upon this good news he sacrificed to *Esculapius*, and restored the Democratical Government to the *Solians*. Then giving order to *Philotas* to lead about the horse to the River *Pyramus*, he marched with the foot by the Sea-Coasts, and came thither, whence he passed over to the Citie *Mellos*, where he had notice that *Darius* lay at *Sochus*, a place distant two dayes march from the Straights. From *Mellos* he passed to the Citie *Issus*, which being forsaken by the *Persians*, *Parmenio* had seized on, and cleared the passage thither, where he consulted whether he had better passe forwards, or there expect his supplies out of *Macedonia*. *Parmenio* perswaded him that no place could be more convenient for him to fight in than that straight one about *Issus*, because both their Armies would then be equal in effect, such narrow places being incapable to receive a multitude. After three dayes he passed the Straights and came to *Myriander*, where much rain falling held the *Macedonians* in their Tents.

33. *Darius* in the mean while by the perswasion of some *Gracians* about him, had made choice of the plains of *Syria*, most capable to receive his multitudes, and opportune for the horse to charge in; and for some time here he continued; but *Alexander* delaying his march, he was perswaded by his Courtiers that he dared not to adventure any further, or look him in the face, and because Winter approached he would lose no time, and therefore sending away his money and stuff of most value, with such as were not fit for War, unto *Damascus*, he hastened into *Cilicia*, where he supposed *Alexander* to have possessed himself of the difficult passages, as not daring to try battel in open field. Supposing that he pretended sickness, and hid himself in the straights, he passed over the Mountain, and went to *Issus*, most imprudently passing by, and leaving him at his back. Taking this place, and therein such of the Enemy as being sick and weak were there left, he cut off their hands, and then fearing their Arms sent them away to tell their King what they had seen; for he thought now the Enemy to have left *Issus*, and fled for fear of him, and for that reason hastened over the Hill *Pinarus*, thinking to fall upon him in the Rear. *Alexander* knowing for certain that he was passed by, took thence occasion to encourage his Souldiers, who now could not be overmatched by multitudes, and sending a party of horse to view the straights, returned thither by night, and repossessed himself of them. Then refreshing his men for the rest of the night, he set a strong watch upon the Rock, and in the morning went down into the path, and set his Army in order for a battel.

The battel  
of *Issus*.

34. This being done, the Armies joyned ere long, and *Alexander* seeing where *Darius* was, made towards him, which when *Oxyathres* the brother of *Darius* saw, to prevent him, he placed a Company of most valiant horse-men before the Chariot, which cut off many of *Alexander* his men, who pressed forwards. But the *Macedonians* giving way to none in valour, with great violence broke in amongst them, and then a mighty slaughter followed, and a great heap of Carcases lay before *Darius* his Chariot. Many of the most noble Captains amongst the *Persians* fell, some of the *Macedonians*, and *Alexander* himself received a wound in his Thigh. *Darius* his Chariot horses being wounded with spears began to fling, & threatened the overturning of him, when fearing he should be taken alive he leaped out, and mounting an horse ready for him, he cast away his Royal apparel, and shifted for himself, after which his horse was put to the rout and ran away. The Infantry discouraged here-

*Ameus Cuius  
tius ibid.*

## SECT. 4.

herewith made no considerable opposition, the great multitudes being unserviceable in so straight and precipitous a place, and being put to the rout so hindered the flight, and trode one another down, that more damage accrued hence than from the meer strength of the Enemy. Of the *Persian* horse *Arrianus* writeth 10000 to have been slain, and of the foot 90000. with whom others consent as to the number of the horse, but as to the foot there is little agreement, some accounting more, and others lesse: 40000 are reported to have been taken.

35. Of *Alexander*'s men 504. *Curtius* saith were wounded; 32 foot-men were slain, and of horse-men 150. which some reckon lesse by 20. though another increaseth them to 300. *Alexander* following the Chace was forced to passe with his phalange over the Enemies dead bodies, and with 1000 horse did great execution, but was not able to reach *Darius*, who rode upon a Mare that had a Foal left at home, and therefore ran with more speed, he being accustomed to have some kept for such necessities. His Tents were easily taken, and therein his Mother, Wife, Son, and two daughters; but of money not above 30000 Talents; the rest being sent before-hand to *Damascus*. The women hearing that *Alexander* was returned with the Robe of *Darius*, made great lamentation, which he understanding, sent *Leonatus* to them to put them out of fear as to his death; to promise them the maintenance of their former dignity, and a Visit from him to be made the next morning. As soon as it was light, he went to them with *Hephestion* his greatest favourite, both whom when the Mother of *Darius* saw, and knew not which was the King, she made reverence to *Hephestion*, as seeming to her from the worth of his Clothes to be the greater person, which when she understood to have been amiss, was troubled at it, and asked his pardon; to which he answered, smiling: *Be not troubled Mother, for he also is Alexander*. This battel of *Issus* was fought in the month *Mamacterion*, *Nicostratus* (or *Nicostrates*) being Archon at *Athens*, in the fourth year of the 111 Olympiad, the fourth of the reign of *Darius*, and the fourth of *Alexander*. A.M. 3672. *Alexand. 4.*

*Darius* his  
Lieutenants  
revolt to *Alexander*.

His offers  
scorned by  
*Alexander*.

36. *Alexander*, after this victory, marched for *Syria*, and sent *Parmenio* before him to *Damascus* to seize upon *Darius* his Treasure, which by *Cophenes* the Keeper thereof was betrayed into his hands, and for that was rewarded with death by one of his Complices, who sent his head to *Darius*. Of Coyne here was found 2600 Talents, besides 500 pound weight of Bullion, and a World of other riches. Of men and women 30000 were also taken, with 7000 beasts that carried burthens. Then was *Parmenio* sent to seize upon the *Persian* Fleet, and others to take in the Cities of *Syria*, which upon the report of the success of the battel at *Issus* was easily done, the Governours of *Darius* yielding themselves with their Treasures. As *Alexander* travelled into *Syria*, many petty Kings met him adorned with their Diadems, whereof some he received into friendship, and others he deprived of their principalities, as they had deserved of him. When he came to the Citie *Marrathion*, he received Letters from *Darius*, wherein he desired the ransom of his Wife, Mother, and Children, with some other conditions of peace; but such as rather became a Conquerour, than one that had now been thrice shamefully beaten, nor vouchsafing in his direction, to *Alexander* the Title of King. He disdaind his offers, justified his War from the invasion of *Greece* by the former *Persian* Kings, and the treachery of *Darius* himself, who hired one to murder him, as *Philip* his father had formerly been by some set on by them. He promised him his relations without Ransom, if he would come himself as a Suppliant for them, and safe conduct, he both knowing, as he said, to overcome, and shew favour to the Conquered. And the next time he wrote he bad him remember that he did it not onely to a King, but to his own King also.

37. *Alexander* marched to *Byblus*, which yielded to him upon composition, and thence to *Sidon*, the inhabitants of which being so hardly used formerly by *Ochus*, in hatred of the *Persians* sending for him. The King of *Sidon* was one *Strao*, who being the son of *Gerostratus* the King of *Aradus* the

## SECT. 4.

Island Governed it in his absence (he joyning his ships, as the rest of the Phœnician Kings, to the fleet of *Darius*) & meeting *Alexander* as he came into Phœnicia, put a Golden Crown on his head, and gave up *Aradus*, and *Mara-thus*, a great and wealthy Town, standing upon the Continent over against it, with *Mariamne*, and all that belonged unto them, into his hands. But now because he had done this rather for that the will of the people was such, than out of his own inclination, *Alexander* deprived him of his Kingdom, and permitted his beloved *Hephestion* to bestow it upon any of his friends. He chose to confer it upon a *Sidonian* by whom he was entertained; but he refused it, for that it was unlawfull for any but one of the Royal stock to possess it. He wondring at the greatnesse of his spirit joyned with so much honesty, bid him choose any one of the Royal Race on whom to bestow it, who accordingly made choice of *Abdalmon* (or *Abdalominus*) a poor Gardiner who wrought for his living, but of unblameable life, and descended of the Royal family. *Alexander* admitting of him, said, the habit of his body could not withstand the noblenesse of his stock, but desired to know with what patience he had endured such poverty, to whom he answered, That he wished he could as well bear a Kingdom, and that those his hands had satisfied his desire: whilst he had nothing, nothing was wanting to him. The King being much taken with his carriage, not onely gave him the house-hold stuff of *Sirato*, but most of the booty got from the *Persians*, subjected the Countrey adjacent unto his power, and afterwards also the Citie of *Tyre*, according to *Diodorus*.

38. Now was all *Syria* in the hands of the *Macedonians*, and whole Phœnicia also except *Tyre*, which Citie was seated in an Island about half a mile distant from the Continent. As he marched thitherwards, the *Tyrians* sent him a Crown of Gold of great value, in a Congratulatory way, and a large quantity of provisions; which he received as from friends, and friendly signified to the Messengers his intention to go into their Citie, to pay some vows he had made to *Hercules*. They told him there was a Temple of *Hercules* without the Citie, in the place called *Old Tyre*, wherein his devotion would be most suitably performed, and so dissuaded him from entrance, that he was enraged thereat, and threatened ruin to the Citie, telling them, that though they were confident in the strength of the place, and despised his Land-Army, yet in short time he would make them find they were in the Continent. And in confidence that their Town, not onely fenced with high and strong Walls, but also with the Sea, was impregnable, they resolved to stand out against him, being encouraged also by the *Carthaginian* Ambassadors, who after their yearly custom (in token of observance to their Mother City) were come to celebrate the sacred Anniversary, and promised them certain, and speedy supply by Sea, which for the most part at that time was commanded by their Fleets.

39. *Alexander* yet having not his Navy at hand, and foreseeing that a long siege would be a great hindrance to his designs, sent to them about an agreement; but contrary to the Law of Nations, they slew the Messengers, and threw them into the Sea, with which affront being much moved, he resolved to besiege them. Ere he could do this, such a quantity of earth or other matter was to be cast into the Sea, as to joyn the Island to the main land, which for the depth of the water, & the force of the Current, was a task almost insuperable; but there being great store of stones and rubbish at hand in *Old Tyre*, he caused it to be utterly demolished, and by the hands of many thousands of his own men, and the people of the neighbouring places, set upon the work. The *Tyrians* (whose King *Azelmicus* being absent with *Darius* his Admiral, had left them to the Government of his son) hindered it all wayes possible, and when it was near concluded, a violent wind spoiled a great part of it, but to repair it he caused great Trees to be cut down in the Mountains, which together with the boughs being cast in, and earth being heaped upon them, resisted the violence of the waves, and at length by the great number of hands, and incredible industry, the Island became but a Peninsula.

*Alexander* his great attempt for the Conquering of *Tyre*.

*Diodorus ad Olym. III. ann. 4.*

*Curtius lib. 4.*

*Justin. lib. II.*

*Diodorus ad Olym. III. ann. 1.*  
*Plutarch. in Alexandro.*

*Arrianus lib. 2.*

*\* Palætyrus.*

## SECT. 4.

But for all this, the *Tyrians* having the command of the Sea, their City seemed yet to be impregnable, whereupon *Alexander* had thoughts of gathering together a Fleet; but in the mean time came in the Kings of *Aradus* and *Byblus*, who had withdrawn themselves with their Fleet from *Autophradates* the *Persian* Admiral, and with them the *Sidonian* Gallies. Besides these Vessels belonging to Phœnicia (which were 80 in number) at the same time came ten from *Rhodes*, from *Solos* and *Mallos* three, and from *Lycia* ten, besides one great Gally from *Macedonia*. All these he pardoned, as having been necessitated to joyn with the *Persians*. And *Azelmicus* the King of *Tyre* now left *Autophradates* and came home; *Arrianus* writing that he was taken in the City.

40. From the Mountain *Libanus* was wood brought for the making of Engines, Towers, and ships, in which work whilst *Alexander* his men were employed, some of the wild *Arabians* fell upon them, slew thirty, and took scarcely so many. He upon notice hereof left the charge of the Siege to *Perdiccas*, and *Craterus*, and speedily with a ready Band of men went into *Arabia*, where when they came to the mountainous parts of the Hill called *Antilibanus*, they left their Horses and marched on foot. When it grew night, and the Enemy approached, though his men were before, yet would he not leave his School-master *Lysimachus* being weary and spent, but still drawing him on was parted from the Army, and forced with a few about him to passe the night in a dark and cold place. But seeing many fires to be kindled afar off by the Enemy, he being nimble of body ran to one of them, and killing two *Babarians* that there sat, brought away a fire-stick burning to his Companions, who therewith kindled a great fire, and thereby struck such a terror into the *Arabians*, as all that night they passed in quietnesse. Then partly by force and partly by agreement he reduced the Countrey into obedience, and in eleven dayes time returned to *Sidon*, where he found arrived out of *Peloponnesus* 4000 *Greekish* Mercenaries, under the conduct of *Alexander* the Son of *Polemocrates*.

41. Having then got together a Navy of 190 or 200 ships, he set sail from *Sidon* and came to *Tyre*, the Inhabitants whereof refused to fight by Sea, but yet let down none of their courage, though 30 Messengers were come from *Carthage* to let them know, that that State being hindred by a domestick War, could not afford them any succour. They sent their wives and children thither to be out of the danger, being thereby the more willing to undergo any themselves, which they little regarded, making stout resistance, but at length the City was taken; one saith by treachery, another by a stratageme, but more by plain force; *Alexander* himself alone first going down from the wooden Tower he had reared, by a bridge laid upon the wall. The Inhabitants, though the Enemy had entred, called one upon another, and fortifying the narrow passages stood out still, till the number of 7000 (the most of those that fought) were slain. The Conquerour condemned the women and children that were found unto bondage, the young men to the number of 3000 he caused to be hanged all along the shore, or crucified, as another telleth us, (which was accounted a servile kind of death) because the *Tyrian* slaves had formerly conspired against their Masters, and slain them all with their whole families, leaving no free people alive, except one *Sirato* and his Son, to whom and his posterity they committed the Kingdom. Fifteen thousand the *Sidonians* saved upon the account of kindred (they reckoning both *Tyre* and *Sidon* to have been built by *Agenor*) from whom the City was again re-peopled, and to such as had fled to the Temple of *Hercules*, *Alexander* granted indemnity, amongst which the King and his family were, with some *Carthaginians* which were come for the honour of *Hercules* to the *Metropolis*. This befel *Tyre* in the moneth *Hecatombaon*, when *Annicetus* (otherwise called *Niceratus* and *Nicetas*) was Archon at *Athens*, in the first year of the 112<sup>th</sup> Olympiad, the fifth of *Darius*, and the fifth of *Alexander*, A. M. 3673.

42. During this Siege, the Officers of *Darius* which escaped from the batel at *Iffus*, with all those that followed them, and the youth of the *Cappadocians*,

A. M. 3673.  
Ol. 112. an. 1.  
V. C. 422.  
Darius 5.  
Alexand. 5.



SECT. 4. *docians, and Paphlagonians, attempted to recover Lydia; but Antigonus who there commanded for Alexander overthrew them thrice in several places. At the same time also Aristimenes, who was sent with some ships by Darius to recover the Coast of Asia, lying upon the Hellespont, was wholly defeated by a Fleet of Macedonians which Alexander had sent for out of Greece.*

Darius sendeth new proposals to Alexander, which he refuses.

43. Whilst Alexander lay before Tyre, another Ambassage came to him from Darius, who now offered him 10000 talents as a ransom for his relations, and all Asia betwixt the Hellespont and the River Halys in Dower with his Daughter; which conditions that he might incline him to receive, he sets before him the difficulties of passing into the Eastern Countries, and laid the loss of the last battel to the straightness of the place: he sought to terrifie him by threatening to encompass him in the plain Countries, and bad him consider how impossible it was to passe the Rivers of Euphrates, Tigris, Araxes, and the rest, with things of the like nature. The proposals being brought before a select Committee of Alexander's friends, Parmenio who was now old, and full of riches and honour, said, that if he were Alexander, he would accept of them, to which the King answered, that so would he, if he were Parmenio. But he returned answer to Darius, that he offered him nothing but his own, and what victory and his own valour had possesst him of; that he was to give conditions and not to receive any, and that having passed the Sea it self, he disdained to think of resistance in transporting his Army over Rivers. As for his Daughter, he said he would marry her, though without his consent, and if he would taste of his humanity, he should come and refer himself to him. Darius having received this answer, prepared himself anew for the War.

44. Tyre being taken, Alexander invaded Judea, resolving to bring all Palestine into subjection. At this time Jaddus was the High-Priest there, whose Brother Manasses married Nicaso the Daughter of Sanballat, who had been sent from Darius to govern Samaria, being both Sons to John, called in Nehemiah, Jonathan and Johanan, who was Son to Jehoiada. Manasses thus matching himself, the people was displeased at it, and thereupon Jaddus desired him to put away his wife; not only the People but the Law so requiring it. Hereupon he repaired to his Father in Law, and told him, that his wife was dear unto him; but he must either part with her or his Priest-hood, who answered, that he would so bring it about, that he should not onely be Priest, but an High-Priest also, being minded to build for him upon Mount Gerizim near to Samaria a Temple like to that of Jerusalem, which thing he would obtain to be confirmed by Darius. Many betook themselves to Manasses, being allured with the newness of the thing, and the liberality of Sanballat; but Alexander at that time passing the Hellespont, the consultation thereupon was disturbed. After Darius was beaten and retired back into Persia, Sanballat revolted unto Alexander, and going over to him with 8000 men, though now very old, desired of him leave to build his new designed Temple, persuading him it would be for his interest, that thereby the Jews being divided amongst themselves, might be the lesse able to resist him. Alexander yielding to his request, he returned, and falling with great industry upon the work, he died not long after.

45. This was at such time as Alexander lay before Tyre, during which Siege, he sent round about to demand an Oath of Allegiance, and assistance from the several Cities, and amongst the rest the messengers came to Jerusalem. Jaddus or Jaddus the High-Priest answered, That he had entred by Oath into society with Darius, and whilst he lived he might not by any means break his Faith; with which answer Alexander being moved, after the raking of Tyre (not of Gaza as Josephus thinketh, for then he must have returned backwards) hee invaded Judea. The High-Priest and People then looked for nothing but ruine, but he imploring the assistance of God, was warned in a dream to go out and meet him, adorned with his Pontifical Vestments, with the Levites and People, as in a solemn Procession. Alexander

Enseñ. in Chronico. Plin. lib. 12. cap. 25. Josephus Antiquit. lib. 11. cap. 8.

But his wrath is appeased. *der meeting this long train, lighted from his Horse, and adored the Priest, at which thing all the rest being amazed, Parmenio asked him the reason thereof, to whom he answered, that he worshipped not the Priest, but the God whom he served, for that whilst he was yet in Greece, and consulted about his Expedition into Asia, such an one appeared to him, advised him to it, and promised him successe. Then going up to the City he ascended to the Temple, and sacrificed according to the directions of the Priest, who shewed him the Prophecy of Daniel, wherein was foretold, that a Gracian should obtain the Empire of the Persians. He accounting himself the man rejoiced thereat; and the next day offered to the People whatsoever they would ask of him, who requested they might live after their own Laws and Customs, that on every seventh year in which they sowed not, they might pay no tribute, and that such of their Country-men as inhabited Babylon and Media, might also be left to their own Laws, all which he readily granted them. He offered them also, if they would follow him, the freedom of the exercise of their Religion, whereupon many gave their names to the Expedition; and then leading his Forces to the neighbouring Cities, he was friendly received by them.*

46. The Samaritans met him in the way, desiring him to visit their City Sicirna, (seated at the foot of the Hill Gerizim, and inhabited by the Runagates of the Jewish Nation) to honour their Temple with his presence, and to remit to them also the tribute of every seventh year, they sowing not therein; for that they were Hebrews, though not Jews, as descended of Joseph and his two Sons Ephraim and Manasseh, all which he referred to his return. By this time his Officers had recovered several places that had revolted, as Callus Paphlagonia, Antigonus Lycaonia, and Balacrus Miletus, after he had overthrown Idarnes the Captain of Darius. Cilicia he had committed to the care of Sostrates, the Country about Tyre to Philotas the son of Parmenio, who had delivered his charge of Cebestia to Andromachus, that he might follow the Expedition. All the Towns of Palestine he had got now into his hands, except Gaza, which Batis the Eunuch resolved to hold out against him. This was a City distant from the Sea about two miles and an half, of difficult access by reason of the depth of sand about it, the Sea near unto it being very muddy, being large, seated upon an high Rock, and compassed with a strong wall. Hither, having commanded Hephestion to go before with the Fleet, he came, and sat down before it with all his Forces.

He besiegeth Gaza.

47. Having viewed the situation of the City, he resolved that light kind of earth to be fit for digging of mines, which he commanded presently to be attempted, and seeing that no wooden turrets could be erected by the walls because of the looseness of the sand, he made a great heap of earth and stones to be laid, which equalled the height of the walls, on which he planted his Engines for batterie. By the advice of Aristander his Prophet, he contained himself for a time without the reach of the Arrows, but the Arabians whom Batis the Governour (called Babernes by Josephus) had hired, issuing forth set fire to the Engines, and beat away the Macedonians from the Mount, he ran in with the Targetiers to the rescue, and kept his men from running, but he himself received a wound on his shoulder. Afterwards those Engines being come by water with which he had taken Tyre, he caused the whole City to be surrounded with mounts two furlongs broad, and 250 foot high, whereby confinding both with Engines above ground and below, at length after two months it was taken, the wall being broken by a Mine, at which breach the Macedonians entred. Alexander himself led in his men, and when his former wound was not yet quite cured, received a bruise on his thigh with a stone. The defendants stirred not from their places, but fighting to the last, were all slain to the number of 10000. The women and children the Conquerour made Slaves, and furnishing the City with a new Colony gathered out of the places adjacent, used it as a Garrison in the War.

48. From Gaza he sent Amyntas the Son of Andremo with ten Gallies into Macedonia, to make a Leavie of the stoutest young men, and bring them over,

Diodorus ad Olymp. 112. an. 2.

Curtius lib. 4.

SECT. 4.  
He marcheth  
for Egypt.

over, because the War though prosperous, wasted his old stock of Soldiers, and he could not so well trust foreigners as his own subjects. Then marched he thither for Egypt, and the seventh day after his removal from Gaza arrived at that place, afterwards called *Alexanders-Camp*, and came to *Pelusium*. Here met him great multitudes of Egyptians, who being weary of the insolence and avarice of the Persians, expected his coming, and gladly received him. Placing a Garrison in *Pelusium*, and commanding that the ships should sayl up the River to *Memphis*, he having the Nile on his right hand, came, through the desert to *Heliopolis*, and thence crossing the River, unto *Memphis*, which when he approached, *Mazaces* the Persian Governour met him, and delivered into his hands 800 Talents, with all the royal household-stuff. Here he sacrificed to all the Egyptian Gods, and celebrated Games, and then sayled down the River to the Sea; and when he came to *Canopus* sayled about the Lake *Mareotis*, betwixt which and the Egyptian-Sea, he chose out a place whereon to build a Citie, which he would have called after himself *Alexandria*.

Foundeth A-  
lexandria.

49. In this place towards the Sea and Haven stood there once a Village named *Rhacotis*. When the figure of the new Citie was to be delineated, for want of Chalk, they marked out the ground with Meal, which presently was seized upon by an innumerable company of Fowls of all sorts, that from the Sea and Lake came flocking thither, and devoured it all. Hereat the King was discouraged, but his Prophets told him, that it signified the Citie should be exceeding populous and wealthy, and nourish all sorts of men. He himself designed in what place the Forum should be, and where the Temples that were to be Consecrated to the Egyptian and Gracian Gods, and herein used the skill of that noble Architect *Dinocrates* (called also *Staferates*) who was employed by the *Ephesians*, in restoring of their Temple formerly consumed with fire. This (afterwards Famous) Citie was founded by *Alexander* in the fifth year of his reign, and the first of 112th Olympiad, the 417th of *Nabonassar*, from which year the moneth *Thoth*, as also the fifth of *Darius*, the supputation of the years of *Alexander* is begun by *Ptolomy* the Mathematician, and a Native of this Citie, A.M. 3673. 329 years before the Era of Christ.

50. Leaving the care of his new designed Citie to fit Overseers, he took a journey toward the Oracle of *Jupiter Hammon*, situate in the vast sandy deserts of *Libya*, because he had heard that *Perses* and *Heracles* had formerly gone thither; or to know his fortune, or that he might at least have occasion to boast of his knowledge of it. In the midst of the way he encountered Ambassadors sent to him from the *Cyrenaans*, who brought a Crown with other great gifts, amongst which were 300 excellent horses trained up and taught for the War; which receiving in good part, he entered into confederacy with them. Two great dangers especially to be met with in this journey, viz. want of water in so dry a place, and of being overwhelmed by heaps of sand, which the South-wind threw upon 50000 of *Cambyses* his army, he escaped wonderfully by abundance of rain which is said to have fallen, whereby the way was made more firm and passable; and two Crows are reported to have been his Guides, and in the night-time when they could not be seen, by their croaking to have given notice which way they tended. When he arrived at the Temple, the Priest, either hired to it, or mistaking the Greek language as it is thought, saluted him by the name of *Jupiter's* son. Hereupon he took the name upon him, and to his Mother *Olympias* as well as others wrote with that Title. She facetiously checked him for flandering, and bringing her in danger with *Juno*, by making her an Whore to *Jupiter*. By the terrour hereof he hoped to do wonders with the Barbarians, & because *Hammon* was painted with the upper parts like a Ram, and the nether like to a man, he also would appear to be horned, for which reason amongst the *Arabians* he obtained the name of *Dulcarnain*. When he received an answer satisfactory, as he pretended, he returned into Egypt the same way he came, or, as another wrote, by a more direct one towards *Memphis*.

Goeth to the  
Temple of  
Jupiter Ham-  
mon.

Strabo lib. 17.

Plutarch. in  
Alexandria.

Idem.

Arrianus lib. 3.

Diodorus ad  
Olymp. 112.  
ann. 2.

Justin. lib. 2.

Gellius lib. 13.  
cap. 4.

51. Being

SECT. 4.

Arrianus, Cur-  
tius, Justin.  
Josephus de  
bello lib. 2.  
Antiquit.  
lib. 11. cap. 8.

Curtius.

Eusebius.

Josephus con-  
tra Apionem  
lib. 2.

Arrianus, Cur-  
tius, &c.

51. Being come to *Memphis*, he received many Embassies from Greece, whence also came a new supply of Forces, viz. 400 Greekish Mercenaries from *Antipater*, and 500 horse out of *Thessaly*. The neighbouring Cities he exhausted for the peopling of his new one, which he ordained should be the Metropolis of Egypt. Amongst other sorts of people the Jews also, whose fidelity he approved, were inrolled inhabitants, having equal privilege with *Gracians*, and obtaining the name not onely of *Alexandrians*, but of *Macedonians* also: and to the Souldiers of *Sanballas* the *Cuthaan*, who followed him into Egypt, caused he Lands to be assigned in *Thebais*, which Province he committed to their defence. He greatly desired to see not onely the remoter parts of Egypt, but *Ethiopia* also: but the War depending yet with *Darius*, hindered him, and therefore disposing of Egypt, he removed in the Spring thence to Tyre in *Phœnicia*. Over Egypt he left *Eschylus* the *Rhodian*, and *Pencestes* the *Macedonian*, with 4000 Souldiers; and the care of the River Nile he committed to *Polemon* with 30 Gallies. As for the Civil Government, he left it to *Dolaspes* the Egyptian, to rule according to the ancient Laws.

52. Ere his departure, he understood of the death of *Andromachus* the Governour of *Syria*, whom the *Samaritans* burnt alive. With all expedition then he removed to revenge his death, but being on his way, the murderers were delivered up to him, whom he punished according to their deserts, and placed *Memnon* in his room. Taking the Citie *Samaritania*, he gave it to the *Macedonians* to inhabit, but the Countrey about it to the Jews, for their fidelity to him, with immunity from Tribute. Coming to Tyre, he celebrated Games, as he had done at *Memphis*, and sacrificed again to *Hercules*; and nominating several Governours over the places already Conquered, took his journey towards *Euphrates*.

53. *Darius* having understood of his design, to find him out whithersoever he should go, gave out orders for all his Forces to meet at *Babylon*, whereof some consisted of such Nations as rather seemed to fill up the names of men than to make resistance. This Army being almost greater by the half than that which perished at *Issus*, many wanted Arms, which were sought for with all diligence. Some have reckoned 1000000 foot, and 400000 horse, besides 200 Chariots, and 15 Indian Elephants; whereas *Alexander* his Forces amounted but to 40000 foot, and 7000 horse. In the moneth *Hecatombeon* *Alexander* came to *Thapsacus*, where he found two bridges on the River *Euphrates*; but such as reached not quite over to the further side. *Mazæus* was sent thither to hinder his passage, with order also if he could not do this, to spoyl, and destroy all things in his way; but upon his approach he made haste away, and *Alexander* then making up the bridges, transported over all his Forces, and so proceeding through *Mesopotamia*, having *Euphrates* and the *Armenian* Mountains on his left hand, made for *Babylon*, not the nearest way, but that which was more convenient for provision and moderation of heat. As he went forwards, he was given to understand by some Scouts which he took, that the King had pitched his Camp on the further side of the River *Tigris*, with intentions to hinder his passage, but coming thither, he neither found him, nor any opposition at all. This River was so swift (being upon that account by the Persians called the *Arrow*) that by the violent force of its stream it drave many weighty stones before it, and those that lay in the bottom were made so round, and well polished by continual rolling, that no man was able to fight on so slippery a footing, so that the *Macedonian* foot-men to wade the River, were forced to entrelace their Arms, thereby making one weighty body to resist the fury of the stream; so deep the Chanel was on the further side, that to keep their Bowes from being wet, as also their Arrows and Darts, they were inforced to lift them above their heads, so that *Darius* might here have easily resisted the *Macedonians*, and given a check to the fortune of the Conquerour, had not the fate of the dying Persian Empire befottered his mind, and deprived him of all common prudence.

Alexander pas-  
seth Euphrates,

And Tigris.

54. Ha-

## SECT. 4.

An Eclipse of the Moon discourageth his men.

54. Having (though with great danger) passed the River without any losse save of a little of the Baggage, he led on through *Assyria*, having on the right hand the River *Tigris*, and on the left the *Gordian* Mountains. On the fourth day after his passage *Mazæus* sent a party of 1000 horse upon him, which was easily repelled by the *Paonian* Captain *Arifon*, who slew their Captain, and bringing his head to *Alexander*, demanded a Cup of Gold as his fee, according to the custom of their Country, to whom he replied, smiling, That an empty one was due, but he would give him one full of good liquor. Two dayes he here continued, giving orders for a march the next morning; but it hapned that in the first watch the Moon was Eclipsed, and seemed of a bloody colour, whereat (as all other common people long time after) the *Macedonians*, not knowing the cause, were marvelously affrighted. They apprehended it as a certain token or presage of their overthrow and destruction, and began to murmur, that for the ambition of one man that disdained to own *Philip* as his father, and would be called the son of *Jupiter*, they should all perish, being forced to make War, not onely against Worlds of Enemies, but against *Rivers*, *Mountains*, and the *Heavens* themselves. He knowing it to be dangerous to lead his Army to fight whilest it was possessed with matter of terrour, called the *Egyptian* Astrologers, to assure them that this Eclipse was rather a certain presage of good successe; and he made it out onely by this reason, that the *Gracians* were under the Aspect of the *Sun*, and the *Persians* of the *Moon*; and therefore the Moon failing and being thus darkened, the *Persian* glory was to be Eclipsed. *Arifon* the Soothsayer affirmed the same, promised *Alexander* good successe, and affirmed a battel was to be fought in that same moneth, for the sacrifices portended victory. Hereby the Souldiers were setled, and their courage redoubled, according to the great influence of superstition upon the common sort of people.

Statira the wife of *Darius* dieth.

55. Thinking it wisdom to make use of the present disposition of their minds he marched thence, and proceeded, till he heard that *Darius* was not much above twenty miles distant from him, upon notice whereof he rested there his Army for four dayes. Here were interrupted Letters written by *Darius* to the *Gracians*, to perswade them to kill, or betray him, which by the advice of *Parmenio* he suppressed, and removing thence it hapned that *Statira*, the Wife and Sister of *Darius*, through the tediousnesse of the journey, and grief, fell into untimely travel, and died, at which disaster *Alexander* shed tears, and spared no cost in solemnizing her Funerals, grieving that he was thus deprived of so fair an occasion of shewing mercy. One of her Chamberlaines, by name *Tiroos*, an Eunuch, slipped away, and carried the news of her death unto *Darius*. He fell of bearing his head, and deplored the fortune of the *Persians*, which not onely suffered the Queen to be taken Captive, but dying in that condition to want the Ornament of a Royal Funeral. Being satisfied that there was no want of any such Ceremonies, or of tears from his Enemy to bedew her Hearse, he fell into a jealous conceit that nothing but unchaste affections had drawn them from *Alexander*, and lamented his Wife's condition, who had been subjected to the lustfull power of the Conquerour. But being with much ado perswaded of his continency, with hands lifted up to Heaven, he prayed that he might be able to restore the fortune of the *Persians* to his posterity as he found it, that so he might be able to requite *Alexander* for his noble carriage towards his relations: But if the fatal time was come, and it so seemed good to *Nemesis*, and the vicissitude of worldly things, that the *Persian* Empire should receive its period; that none but *Alexander* alone might sit in Throne of *Cyrus*.

56. He dispatched away to him then a new Embassy of ten of his principal friends, and offered him for his Mother, and two Daughters Ransom 30000 Talents, and in portion with his Daughter *Statira* all *Asia*, betwixt the *Hellepont* and the River *Euphrates*. He answered, that sometimes he endeavoured to corrupt his friends, and otherwhiles his Soldiers to destroy him, and that therefore he was to be prosecuted not as a just and fair enemy, but

Vide Plut. in vita Alexand.

Justin, Curtius, Diodorus ut supra.

## SECT. 4.

Strabo lib. 16.

as a pernicious murderer: that what he had already gotten, though now offered to him, was the reward of War, by which the bounds of both their Kingdoms should be limited, and that they should both abide by what the fortune of the next day should assign them. *Darius* had before this time come to *Arbela* a City belonging to *Babylon*, where leaving the greatest part of his baggage, he went to the River *Lycus*, over which laying a Bridge, he passed over his Army in eight dayes, and proceeding ten miles pitcht his Camp upon the River *Bumelus*, near to a Village called *Gaugamela*, which in the *Persian* Language signified the house of a Camel; for that *Darius* the Son of *Hystaspis* gave this place to the maintenance of a certain Camel which had been hired in carrying his provisions through the Desarts of *Scythia*. This was a Champain Country round about, and such grounds as were high he caused to be levelled, to be convenient for the fighting of his Horse, and that he might have a free prospect round about him.

A Pannick fear seized on the *Macedonians*.

57. Understanding from his Ambassadors returning, that he must expect nothing but a battel, he sent *Mazæus* to defend a passage which he never yet dared to much as to hazard, the rest of the Army he caused to march above a mile further in battel-array, and there to expect the Enemy. *Alexander* fortifying his Camp which he left with an ordinary guard, went forwards towards the Enemy, and in his march a pannick fear seized on his Army, by reason of the Lightning of the Heavens in the Summer season, which they took as proceeding from some attempt of *Darius*; with some pains he undeceived them, and thought good to fortifie himself in the same place that night. Yet in the night he departed thence about the second watch, as thinking to fall on the Enemy by break of the day. Upon his approach *Mazæus* with his Horse forsook an Hill which he had seized on, and returned to *Darius*, which place *Alexander* by the advice of *Parmenio* chose himself, as safer than the Plain, and from which one might take a full view of the *Persian* Army. Before the Fight his friends came to him and complained of the Soldiers, because in their conferences they had agreed to take all the profit of the plunder to themselves, without bringing any thing to his treasure; whereat he smiled, and said, they told him good news concerning the discourses of such as were resolved to overcome, and not to flie. Many then of the Soldiers resorted to him, and bad him be of good cheer, and not be afraid of the multitude of the Enemies, which would not endure their very shouting for the battel.

Plutarch in Apophthegm.

58. The two Armies lying in the view of each other, in the eleventh night after the Eclipse of the Moon, *Darius* kept all his men in arms, mustring his Forces by torch-light, which made all the Plain betwixt *Niphates* and the *Gordyaan* mountains to be of a flame. *Alexander* in the mean time whilst his *Macedonians* took their rest, was busie in his Sacrifice with *Arifon*. *Parmenio* and others would have had him fallen upon the *Persians* in the dead of the night, thereby to strike more terror into them; but he answered them, that he would not steal Victory; which *Darius* was afraid of, and therefore contained his men in Arms all the night, which not a little injured his affairs the day following. All the night *Alexander* passed without sleep, being careful for the main chance; but about the morning watch fell so fast asleep, that it being full day he could hardly be awaked, and to his friends demanding the cause thereof he replied, that now he was eased by *Darius* of all his care, seeing he had gathered all his Forces into one place, and therefore in one day he hoped to put an end to his daily labours and danger. His whole force consisted of about 7000 Horse, and 40000 Foot, over which his chiefeft Captains were *Parmenio*, with *Philotas* and *Nicanor* his Sons, whereof this commanded the Foot Regiment of the *Argyraspides*, or Silver-Shields; *Cannus*, who commanded the *Elimiois*; *Perdiccas* Captain of the *Orestæ* and *Lyncestæ*; *Meleager*; *Polysperchon*; *Hephestion* Captain of his Life-guard; *Menidas*; *Philip* the Son of *Balacucus*; *Craterus*; *Erigynus* the *Milyenean*; *Philippus* that had the *Thessalian* Troups, and *Clytus* the black who led the Kings Regiment. He himself commanded the right wing, and in both caused the battel to bee made somerhing bending-

M m

wife,

Idem in Alexand. Curtius. Arrianus. Diodorus.

SECT. 4. wife, lest they should bee incompassed with the multitudes of the *Per-  
sians*.

59. *Darius* having marshalled his men according to their several Nations, took the command of the wing opposit to *Alexander*, and lead on against him. After a sound to the charge on both sides, and a great shout, the Armies met, and in the first place the scythed Chariots being driven with great fury upon the *Macedonians*, struck them with great consternation, for that *Mazeus* the General of the Horse following the Chariots close, made the charge the more terrible. But the *Macedonian* phalange, according to the King's order, beating their Targets with their Spears, made such a noise, that the Horses skared therewith bore backwards, and retreated for the most part; and though some went still forwards, yet the *Macedonians* parting asunder, made a lane and let them passe through, yet with the losse of many whom the Scythes had caught. After the Arrows and Darts were spent, the Armies came to hand-strokes, wherein the Horse was first engaged. *Darius* in the left wing was stoutly defended by his followers, who fighting under his eye, laboured all they could with their multitudes to oppresse the *Macedonians*. And *Mazeus* in the left wing charging with great valour, at the first onser did great execution. Then sent he a Party of 2000 *Caducians*, and 1000 of the choicest *Scythian* Horse, to fall upon the Enemies Camp, where a great tumult following, some of the captive women took their opportunity, and betook themselves to their friends, but *Sisygambis* Mother to *Darius* refused to stir, and kept her self quiet in the same place, not thinking it fit to trust her self to the doubtful fortune of an escape, or shew any ingrateful disrespect to *Alexander*: the *Scythians* plundered most of the baggage and departed.

60. In the mean while, part of the Horse that fought about *Darius*, with their multitudes pressed fore upon the *Macedonians*, and forced them back, whereby the second time the Victory seemed to incline towards the *Persians*. *Alexander* seeing how he was concerned to relieve his men, broke out with his own Regiment upon *Darius* himself, and with a Dart slew his Chariot-driver. The Courtiers hereupon crying out, those that were further off supposed the King himself to have been slain, and therewithall betook themselves to their heels, which the next seeing fled also for company. The ranks also about *Darius* began to be broken, till at length all one side was barred, and then he accounted it also time to fly, and therewithall such a dust was raised, *Alexander* with his Troops giving the chase, that it could not be discovered which way he fled, using great celerity therein, and for that purpose mounted a Mare that had lately foaled, as he had done before at the battle at *Issus*. Whilst these things were thus carried in the left wing, *Mazeus* in the right fore pressed upon his adversaries, which *Parmenio* with the *Thessalian* Horse and other for a time sustained; but being put fore to it, he sent to *Alexander* for speedy relief. But he could not be found; so that he was forced to use his utmost skill in making the *Thessalians* endure the brunt; and at length put the *Barbarians* to flight, after they were disheartened with the report of their Princes fortune.

61. *Darius* with a few in his company came to the River *Lycus*, which having passed, when some advised him to break down the Bridge, left the Enemy should make use thereof in the pursuit, knowing that if he should do so, he must leave many thousands of his men as a prey to him, he answered, that he had rather afford way to the pursuers, than take it from those that fled. Here *Alexander* immediately pursued him, but not being able to reach him, he returned, and fought a more sharp encounter than ever with some *Parthians*, *Indians*, and many of the valiantest of the *Persians*, wherein though he had the better, yet he lost Sixty of his followers, and *Hephestion* with *Canius* and *Mendis* were wounded. Of the *Barbarians* (a) one maketh above 90000 to have been slain, of the *Macedonians* 500, and many wounded. Another (b) counteth of the former 300000 to have been slain, and a greater number taken, with all the Elephants, and such Chariots as were

(a) Diodorus.

(b) Arrianus.

not broken; Yet of *Alexander's* men but 100 at most, with 1000 horses, partly killed outright, and partly broken in the chase. A (c) third reckoneth 40000 *Persians*, and lesse than 300 *Macedonians* to have been lost. (c) Curtius. This battle was fought at *Gaugamela* a Village situate upon the River *Burnus*, which being but an obscure place, the *Macedonians* to innoble their Victory, gave out that it was at *Arbela*, a Town of good note, some fifteen miles distant, beyond the River *Lycus*. *Alexander* obtained the Victory on A. M. 3674. the fifth day of the moneth *Boëdromion*, in the sixth year of his reign, as also the sixth of *Darius*; *Aristophanes* (not *Aristophontes* his Successor, as some mistook) being Archon at *Athenis*, in the second year of the 112th Olympiad. A. M. 3674.

Alexander declared King of Asia.

Entereth B. Babylon.

62. *Darius* fled from the River *Lycus* to *Arbela*, where he arrived about midnight, and then concluding that *Alexander* would march to *Babylon* and *Susa*, resolved to flee into the utmost borders of his Kingdom, there to renew the War; and accordingly withdrew himself into *Media*, beyond the Mountains of *Armenia*. About midnight *Alexander* set forwards for *Arbela*, hoping to take him there with all his treasure; but arriving there the next day, he found not him, but met with much treasure, with his Bow and Target. Now seemed the Empire of the *Persians* to all men to be dissolved, and thereupon *Alexander* was declared King of *Asia*, and for joy thereof sacrificed with great magnificence to his Gods, and bestowed riches, houses, and Countries upon his friends. Foreseeing that the air thereabouts, by reason of the corruption of the dead bodies might be infectious, he removed with all speed from *Arbela* towards *Babylon*, being in his way met with *Mazeus* the Governour, who gave it up into his hands, and *Bagophanes* the Keeper of the Castle and the King's treasures, lest he should be exceeded by *Mazeus*, caused the way to be strowed with flowers and garlands; silver Altars heaped with Frankincense and other odours being placed on both sides. The Townsmen came also to meet him; whom he commanded to follow his rear, and so entered the City and Palace in a Chariot, with his armed men about him. Thirty dayes he spent in looking over *Darius* his household stuff, all which time his Army gluttied themselves with the contentments of the Town. Here the *Chaldeans* shewed him the motions of the Stars, and the appointed vicissitudes of times: and *Calisthenes* the Philosopher sent into *Greece* unto *Aristotle* (whose cousin german his Mother was) the Celestiall observations of (a) 1903 years. He consulted these men about his affairs, and at their desire caused such Temples to be rebuilt, as *Xerxes* had out of anger destroyed, after his overthrow in *Greece*. And especial care was taken for that of *Belus* in the midst of the City, the ruins of which were so great, that the labour of (b) 10000 men for two moneths was required for the clearing of the ground. He commanded all his Soldiers to lay their hands to the work, amongst which the *Jews* onely refused to do it, who thereupon received great incommodity, till such time as they were discharged of this task by the King, as (c) *Hecataeus* the *Abderite* wrote in his Book concerning the *Jews*, who also at that time lived with *Alexander*.

63. He committed the charge of the Castle of *Babylon* to *Agathon* of *Pydna*, with a Garrison of 700 *Macedonians*, and 300 Mercenaries, appointing *Mazeus* of the *Sarrapa* of the Country. To *Apollodorus* of *Amphipolis*, and *Menetes* of *Pella*, he assigned the Government of the Militia of the *Satrapies* of *Babylon*, and the other Countries as far as *Cilicia*, leaving them 2000 Foot, and 1000 talents of silver, to hire as many Solders as they could; and to *Mithrinus* who betrayed the Castle of *Sardis* unto him, he granted *Armenia*. Of the money which he found at *Babylon*, to every *Macedonian* Horse-man he gave seven Minæ (each *Attick Mina* containing an 100 Drachmes, and about 3 l. 2 s. 6 d. Sterling) and to every stranger five; to every *Macedonian* Foot-man two, and to every stranger two moneths pay, for a reward. Then set he forwards from *Babylon*, and in his way met with a supply of 500 Horse, and 6000 Foot, sent out of *Macedonia*, with 600 Horse out of *Thrace*, and 3500 Foot; and out of *Peloponnesus* 4000 Foot,

M m 2 and

SECT. 4.

(c) Curtius.

Olymp. 112. an.

A. V. C. 423.

Darius 6.

Alexand. 6.

\* Justin lib. 11.

Curtius.

Diodorus.

(a) Porphyrius

apud Simplici-

um de Cælo, l. 2.

(b) Strabo lib.

16. pag. 738.

(c) Apud

Joseph. contr.

Apionem lib. 1.

## SECT. 4.

and 380. (or according to *Diodorus* little lesse than 1000) horse. These were also accompanied with 50 of the Noblemen's sons of *Macedonia*, for the Guard to the Kings person.

64. Drawing near to *Susa*, he met with the son of the *Satrapa* thereof, sent unto him with a Messenger that brought Letters from *Philoxenus*, whom presently after the battel at *Gaugamela* he had sent thither. The Letters imported that the *Susians* had yielded their Citie to him, and that all the King's Treasure was safe for him, which *Abulites* the *Satrapa* sent his son also to signifie, either for that he sought to obtain favour, or as some thought, being underhand ordered by *Darius* to do so; that *Alexander* being busied with such boory, he might have time to consult the better for his own affairs. On the twentieth day after his departure from *Babylon* he arrived at *Susa*, where he took possession of betwixt fourty and fifty thousand (as is to be gathered from all Authors) Talents of Silver, besides Gold and Rich Furniture. Many things he there found, which *Xerxes* had brought out of *Greece*, and amongst the rest the brazen Statues of *Harmodius* and *Aristogiton*, which he sent back unto *Athens*. He left the Mother and Children of *Darius* at *Susa*, with Masters to teach them the *Greek* tongue, and then committing the Citie to the care of *Archelaus*, the Castle to *Xenophilus*, the Treasury to *Cullicrates*, and the *Satrapy* of the Countrey of *Susa* to *Abulites*, in four encampings he came to the River *Pasitigris*, being resolved to invade *Persia*.

65. Near to the Countrey of *Susa* lieth that of the *Uxians*, running out into the Borders of *Persia*, and leaving a straight passage betwixt it self and the *Susian* Dominions. The inhabitants of the low-land Countrey became without much ado subject to *Alexander*; but the other with some slaughter of them he forced to submit; and whereas they demanded money of him which they used to receive from the Kings of *Persia* for their passage, he imposed a Tribute of 100 Horses, 500 Cattel, and 30000 Sheep yearly to be paid, they living like Shepherds, and using no money. After this he committed the baggage, with the *Thessalian* Horse, the Mercenaries and Associates, with the rest of the Army that used heavy Armour, to *Parmenio*, to lead that way into *Persia*, that was passable with Carriages, and he himself taking the *Macedonian* foot with the horse of the associates, and others, with all speed marched a nearer one through the hilly Countrey. Being arrived at the *Pyla*, or Straights of *Persia*, he found *Ariobarzanes*, a *Persian* *Satrapa*, seized thereof, by whom he was repelled also with some disgrace and losse, being forced to retreat four miles from the Straights; but at length being led by a Shepherd, another difficult way, he came upon his Enemies on a sudden, and put them to flight. But *Ariobarzanes* in the midst of near fourty horse, and 5000 foot, with great slaughters on both sides broke through the Army of the *Macedonians*, which on both sides had beset him, and made for *Persepolis* the chief Citie of that Countrey, but being shut out by those that kept it for the Conquerour, he turned again upon his Enemies, and with great valour renewing the battel, perished with all his followers.

66. Having private notice from *Tiridates* the Eunuch, Keeper of the Treasure at *Persepolis*, that they there had an intention to rife it upon hearing of his coming, he took the horse, and all the night marched thitherwards. Being a quarter of a mile from the Town, about 800 *Grecians* met him in manner of suppliants, whom the former *Persian* Kings had reduced into bondage, and as a token of slavery cut off their Feet, Hands, Ears, or Noses, and having marked them with some *Barbarian* Letters, kept them as laughing stocks for derision. They besought *Alexander*, that as he had done by *Greece*, so he would also deliver them from the cruelty of their Enemies. He offered them to send them back, but they rather chose to receive some grounds to live on, than returning home to carry greater disgrace than comfort to their relations. To each of them then he gave 2000 Drachms, and 10 Garments, with Cattel, Sheep, and Corn, for the stocking of their grounds. The next day he called a meeting of his Officers, whom

Cometh to  
*Susa*.

He is oppo-  
sed at the  
Straights of  
*Persia* by  
*Ariobarzanes*.

He cometh  
to *Persepolis*.

*Diodorus*.  
*Cynthus*.  
*Plutarch*.

*Arianus*.  
*Polyanus*.  
*Strategem*.  
*lib. 4.*

## SECT. 4.

Which he  
causeth to be  
plundered.

He harrazeeth  
the Countrey  
of *Persia*.

Burneth in a  
frolicke the  
Palace of  
*Persepolis*.

Cometh to  
*Pasagade*.

He cometh  
to *Ecbatane*.

he told how there was no Citie more inveterate against the *Gracians* than that, which had been the Seat of the *Persian* Kings, and that therefore by the destruction of it they were to make a Parentation to their Ancestors. The Town, all besides the Palace, he allowed the Souldiers to plunder, who made a great slaughter of Captives, and got unestimable riches in that place, which heretofore of all they had been most secure. Entering the Castle, he received the Treasure which there had been heaped up from the time of *Cyrus* the Great, containing a great quantity of Gold and Silver. *Diodorus* saith, he took thence 120 Talents, Gold being reckoned at the reckoning of silver, part of which he employed in the present service of the War, and the rest sent to *Susa* to be kept.

67. Leaving a Garrison in *Persepolis*, and a great part of the Army with the baggage there, with 1000 horse, and a party of foot, he made an invasion into *Persia*. Much rain fell, and grievous Tempests ensued, but he persevered in his purpose, and also when they came to such places as were full of Snow and Ice, and though the inhabitants fled from their Cottages to the Mountains, and killed his stragglers, yet he brought them to submit, and laying waste the Territories of *Persia*, subdued also the *Mardi*, a warlike Nation, differing much from the customs of the other *Persians*; and on the 30th day returned to *Persepolis*. Then did he distribute gifts to his friends, making no spare of Treasure, and there he wintered four monerhs, rather enervating than refreshing his Army with the delicacies of the place. For the celebration of his victories he offered magnificent sacrifices, and feasted his friends Princely; and to the feast admitted Courtians. Amongst the rest was *Thais* the *Athenian*, the Mistress of *Ptolomy* the son of *Lagus*. She gave out that the King would achieve a most gallant Enterprize, if in a frolicke he would with them set on fire the Palace, and thereby in one moment overthrow the glory of the *Persians* by the hands of women. This finding acceptance amongst the younger sort, now in the midst of their Cups, one amongst them desired that they might now revenge the injuries offered to the Temples of the *Greeks* with burning fire-brands, which was seconded by others; but yet they said, that so great an affair did only belong to *Alexander*. He being moved hereat, was led out by *Thais* in a dance with the Minstrels, and she receiving a fire-brand from him, first set it to the Palace, after which all the rest followed, and so that structure was reduced into ashes. Thus was the fury of *Xerxes* against *Athens* revenged by a Woman, and Native of that Citie, in the same way, though accompanied with derision. But *Alexander* afterward repented too late, alleging that he should more grievously have punished the *Persians*, by forcing them to behold him seated in the Palace, and Throne of *Xerxes*.

68. From *Persepolis* he removed to *Pasargade*, a Citie founded by *Cyrus* the Great, and the antient Seat of the *Persian* Kings, which being delivered up to him by *Gobases* the Governour, he therein found 6000 Talents. Here he saw the Sepulchre of *Cyrus* in a Garden, into which he commanded *Aristobolus* (who wrote the story) to enter, who there found a golden Bed, a Table, and Cups, with a golden Basket, and great store of Apparel, and Robes adorned with Pearl. On this place *Cyrus* overthrew *Astyages* the *Mede* in his last battel, and thereby obtaining the Sovereignty of *Asia*, in memorial of it built this Citie, and a Palace, which being by *Curius* named *Persefagade*, or *Pasagade*, signifieth the Army of the *Persians*. Then *Alexander* either by force, or fair means, became Master of all the other Cities of *Persia*, about the time of the rising of the seven Stars, from which the antients used to begin their Summer. He placed over this Countrey *Phraortes* a *Satrapa*, and then, being minded to pursue *Darius*, set forwards for *Media*, where he heard he was; but being within three dayes journey of *Ecbatane*, there met him *Bisthanes* the son of *Ochus*, who reigned before *Darius*. He assured him that the King was gone thence five dayes before, having taken with him 7000. or 8000 Talents, and being accompanied with an Army of 6000 foot, and 3000 horse.

69. *Darius*

*Strabo lib. 15.*  
*pag. 730.*

*Gad. turn. 1.*  
*Stephanus.*

*Arianus.*



## SECT. 4.

69. *Darius* staid at *Ecbatane* some time to receive such of his Soldiers as had escaped the barrel; and for the furnishing of them with Arms. He raised forces in the Neighbouring Nations, and sent to the *Satrapa* of *Bactria*, and the higher Countreys, to retain them in obedience. And he determined, that if *Alexander* should stay about *Babylon*, or *Susa*, to continue in *Media* in expectation of some better change of fortune; but if he should pursue him, then to betake himself into *Parthia*, or as far as *Bactria*, and lay all the Countrey waste as far as he passed, to cut off the provisions of the pursuer. He sent therefore the women with all his Furniture and Carriages to the *Caspian* Straights, and staid himself, with such forces as he had raised, at *Ecbatane*, till such time as *Alexander* was within less than two hundred miles of him. Then thought he of *Bactria*; but fearing to be overtaken by *Alexander* (against whose celerity no distance seemed to be sufficient) he changed his purpose, and though he fled, yet prepared he himself rather for a fight than flight. His Army consisted now (according to *Curtius*) of 30000 foot (whereof 4000 were *Gracians*, Commanded by *Patron*, (a man for his constant fidelity to *Darius*, never enough to be commended) and 3300 *Bactrian* horse, under the Command of *Bessus* the *Satrapa* of the Countrey.

Curtius lib. 5.

70. *Alexander* being come to *Ecbatane*, sent back towards the Sea the *Thessalian* horse, and other associates, bestowing on them, besides their full pay, 2000 Talents. To *Parthenio* he gave in charge to bring all the Treasure out of *Persia* into *Ecbatane* to be committed to the trust of *Harpalus*, whom he left with a Garrison of 6000 *Macedonians*, besides some horse, and of the associates; and then afterwards he ordered him to march through the Countrey of the *Cadusians* into *Hyrcania*. *Clim* he commanded to go with his own Regiment into *Parthia* whither he himself intended to come, but now with a select party with incredible speed pursued *Darius*, and in eleven Encampings came to *Rhage*. Here seeing no hope ever to reach him, who before this had passed the *Caspian* Straights, he staid five dayes, and then marched for *Parthia*, and on the first day pitcht his Camp by the Straights, and on the next having entred them, news was brought to him concerning the Captivity of *Darius*.

Alexander pursueth him.

Bessus and others bind Darius.

71. For *Bessus* the *Satrapa* of *Bactria*, and *Nabarzanes* a Colonel of horse, though his own servants, rebelled against him, and drawing their men to their party, caused him to be bound, with an intention if *Alexander* should overtake them, to curry favour with him by the delivery of such a prisoner into his hands; but if they should escape, then to kill him, seize upon his Kingdom, and renew the War. They seized on his money and stuff, and taking into their society *Brazus*, or *Barzaenies*, the *Satrapa* of the *Arachoti* and *Drangi*, lead him away Captive in a Chariot, bound in Golden Fetters, as be seemed so great a King, but yet, lest he should be known, they covered over the Chariot with baste skins, and unknown men drove it, his keepers following aloof off, lest he should be discovered to any that asked of him. The *Persians* having none now to follow, joyned themselves to the *Bactrians*, and with the rest owned *Bessus* for their General. But *Artabazus* with his Sons and Soldiers, as also the *Greeks* (whose Captain was *Patron*) separated themselves from them, and taking another way towards the Mountains out of the high road, departed, and went into *Parthiene*.

72. Upon notice of this conspiracy *Alexander* concluded that more haste was to be used, and therefore taking along with him a party fit for such expedition, he left the rest of the Army to *Craterus* to come after with more leisure, and travelling all that night, and the next day till noon, gave his men a little time to rest, and then again setting forward, came the next morning to that place where *Bagistenes* the *Babylonian* (who brought him notice of the condition of *Darius*) had departed. Then again marching fast that night, and the day following, untill noon, he came unto the place where *Bessus* laid hands on *Darius*, as one telleth us; but, as another, where they that conducted him had rested the day before. Here he met with *Melon*, *Darius* his interpreter, who being sick, and not able to follow, now counterfeited himself

\* Curtius.  
\* Arrianus.

## SECT. 4.

himself a fugitive, and fully acquainted *Alexander* with the King's condition. He hereby was further quickened up to use all expedition, but his men spent with continual travel must needs have rest, and therefore he made 500 Horse-men to dismount, and the Officers of Foot, and others most valiant amongst them to take their Horses, being arrived as before, that so they might be both Horse and Foot-men as need should require.

73. Whilst he was thus busied, *Orsillo* and *Mithracenes*, two *Persians* who detested the Paricide of *Bessus*, came back from him, and acquainted *Alexander* that he was 500 furlongs off, but that they could lead him a nearer way, whereby he might soon overtake him. With this conduct he began his journey that night, and being come 300 furlongs encountered *Brocubelus* (or *Antibelus*) the Governour once of *Syria* under *Darius*, who told him that *Bessus* was but 200 furlongs off, that as he thought he made for *Hyrcania*, and marched out of order as fearing no danger, and therefore might easily be surprised. He then continued his industry to overtake him, but he and his complices had notice of his approaching, and coming to *Darius*, bad him mount on Horse-back, and withdraw himself by flight from the Enemy. He refusing to do this, *Salibarzanes* and *Barzaenies* threw darts upon him, and leaving him mortally wounded, wounded also the Horses that drew him, lest they should follow far, and killed two Slaves which accompanied him, having none now to follow him but a Dog which he had brought up. Having done this, the murderers with 600 fled with full speed, and that they might not venture altogether, *Nabarzanes* went towards *Hyrcania*, and *Bessus* with a few Horse-men in his company kept on the way for *Bactria*. The rest of their men stragled, as they were led, either by hope or fear: 500 Horse-men imbodyed themselves, nor knowing, whether to flee, or to receive and fight the pursuing Enemies.

Arrian lib. 6. c. 25.

But *Alexander* having notice of the fear and anxiety of the Enemy, sent *Nicanor* with part of the Horse on before, to restrain their flight, he with the rest following after, and when they were come up, so little courage appeared in the *Persians*, that though they resisted, yet 3000 were presently slain, and the rest stragled about like sheep, *Alexander* giving command then to his Soldiers to abstain from slaughters. Now appeared an incredible thing, more prisoners than they that took them, whilst the conquered were so stupified that they neither considered their own multitude, nor the small number of their Enemies. In the mean while the beasts that drew *Darius* having none to drive them, wandred out of the way for half a mile, and being wearied both by their wounds and heat, stood still in a certain Valley. Not far off was a certain Spring, to which *Polystratus* a *Macedonian* being directed, came almost spent with thirst, and whilst he was drinking water in his helmet, he espied the Horses fainting away, by reason of the darts sticking in their sides, and drawing near to consider of the matter, found *Darius* in the Chariot forcibly wounded, but yet breathing. He desired some water of him to drink, which though none of the best, yet he staid was the best that ever he drunk. He desired him to carry his thanks to *Alexander* for his great humanity and courtesie towards his relations. As for himself, he desired rather a seemly than noble burial, but bad him put *Alexander* in mind how dangerous it would be to all Princes to suffer his death to go unpunished. He wished him the Empire of the whole World, and gave his hand to *Polystratus* as though to be presented to *Alexander*; after which wishing him a reward, for his kindest, from the gods, he expired.

Darius discovered by Polystratus.

Dieth.

A view of his reign.

This was the end of the Life, Reign, and Empire of *Darius*, a man who, if we look at warlike matters, was fit for nothing less, but in other things did nothing unbecoming Royal Majesty. And neither could he; for as soon as he began to reign, was he vexed by the *Macedonians*. Whilst he lived, one crossed presently succeeded after another: neither could he enjoy any rest from the beginning of his reign. For within a while after, he received that overthrow at the River *Granicus*; then lost he *Eolia*, *Ionia*, and both the *Phrygians*: the *Lydians* also and *Carians* (all but the *Hallicarnassians*) and not long

## SECT. 4.

long after *Halicarnassus* it self, and then all the Maritime Coast as far as *Cilicia*. After this he received a great overthrow at *Issus*, in which his Mother, Wife, and Children were taken: *Phœnicia* and *Ægypt* fell off from him. At *Arbela* (or *Gaugamela*) losing a mighty Army consisting of all sorts of people, he disgracefully was forced to flee, then driven from his Kingdom, wandering up and down, and wanting due accommodations, at last he was betrayed by his own servants, and at the same time both a King and Captive, was ignominiously bound in fetters, and perished by the treachery of those, from whom he should have expected safety, as *Arrianus* writeth. This hapned in the year that *Aristophanes* was Archon at *Athens*, in the month *Hecatombæon*, vvhen he had lived about fifty years, in the seventh year of his reign, and the 203d of this Empire, in the third year of the 112th *Olympiad*, A. M. 3675, 328 years before the ordinary *Æra* of Christ.

## Contemporaries with the Persian Empire.

### CHAP. II.

## The affairs of the *Græcians* amongst themselves during this Empire.

### SECT. I.

Of such things as hapned from the beginning thereof until the Expedition of Xerxes.

*Polycrates.*

1. IN the time of *Cyrus* the Great, and afterwards, lived *Polycrates* the famous *Tyrant* of *Samos*, who from a small beginning arrived at such extraordinary power, as no petty Prince of the *Greekish* Nation was ever accounted equal to him for worldly felicity.

The word *Tyrannus* or *Tyrant* whence derived, and who n it significeth.

2. The word *Tyrannus* (which we English *Tyrant*) *Suidas* thinketh to have been derived from the *Tyrrheni*, a people of *Italy*, because they were cruel and given to robbery. Others thought it was derived of the City *Tyre*, by means of it's riches and glory. Most anciently the word was of no ill signification, but was used in a good sense, there being no discrimination betwixt King and it, as \* *Servius* observeth. For, though *Homer* (who never mentioneth *Tyre*) either knew it not, or would not use it, yet the Poets who follow him, call those Kings that lived before the *Trojan* times by the appellation of *Tyranni*. Afterwards through the dissolure and cruel demeanour of some Princes, and the antipathie of the *Greeks* towards Monarchy (after they had generally erected *Oligarchical* or *Democratical* Governments) it came to be taken in a bad sense. Herein it is especially given to those, who, being once private persons, enslaved their Citizens by invading, without any just title, the supreme power; as to *Polycrates*, *Pisistratus*, *Dionysius*, and *Agathocles*. It's also applied to the Children who succeeded their Fathers in the usurpation. And it is also given sometimes to those who governed by the desire and consent of the People, as *Gelon* of *Syracuse*, betokening, as to this particular, a petty Prince or *Regulus*. For it is seldom or never in ancient Authors, when it is taken in an ill sense, found applied to any but the usurping Lords of Cities (not any notable Kingdom) and such Cities as had before been governed in the way of a Commonwealth. And what is said of those Governours called *Tyranni*, must be extended to their Government, in the

*Greek*

*TúguroG.*

\* *Æticiad*, l. 7.

## SECT. I.

*Greek* language called *Tyrannis*, which we english *Tyranny*, though not in any ill sense, wherein the *Athenians* used it not when they would have *Solon* to take the *Tyrannis* or Government upon him; though the word was hurtful. This is hinted to take off any thoughts of the ignorant, as if the word reflected upon Monarchy, the best of Governments when all shall be considered.

*Samos* called first *Parthenia*, and afterwards *Dryusa*.

3. *Samos* is an Island in the *Mediterranean* Sea, lying over against *Ionis*, not far severed from it, containing in circuit scarce 100 miles, so called from the height of it by the Antients in their Language. On the West it looks towards the Island *Icaria*, but on the East the continent of *Asia*, being near to *Ephesus*, and the promontory of *Mysale*, from which it is distant but five miles. The most antient Inhabitants were *Carians* differing much from the *Greeks* both in language and manners. But when the sons of *Codrus* led out Colonies from *Attica*, *Androclus* one of them here settled one, by which the City of the same name with the Island was built; having a very large and commodious Haven. It was presently much beautified with frequency of Inhabitants, riches, and multitudes of buildings, and being very famous for the Temple of *Juno*, which was especially worshipped in this place, it was reckoned amongst the twelve *Ionian* Cities, being partaker of the great Council of *Panionium*, and counted not inferiour to *Miletus*, *Ephesus*, or *Chios*, the most eminent amongst them. From *Herodotus* it should appear to have at first been governed by Kings, the Inhabitants as he saith, in the reign of *Amphicrates*, making War upon *Ægina* which was hurtful to both sides: and this was the cause that in the Age following the *Æginetans* did as much by the *Samians* exiles which had retired into *Crete*. But in what Age *Amphicrates* lived he doth not mention; yet this is apparent from his words, that the *Samians* because Islanders remained untouched by the King of *Lydia* and *Persia*, when the other *Ionian* Cities in the continent were forced by them into subjection.

*Polycrates* his exploits.

His felicity.

4. But when *Cyrus* flourished in *Asia*, and *Pisistratus* at *Athens*, *Polycrates* the Son of *Æaces* one of their own Citizens offered violence to their liberty. When first he seized on the Sovereignty, he made his two Brothers *Pantagnotus* and *Syloson* partners with him, but afterwards he slew the one, and ejected the younger, and so having all the power in his own hands, he contracted amity with *Amasis*, who at that time reigned in *Ægypt*. In a short time his affairs so prospered, that he became famous through *Ionis* and all *Greece*, for wheresoever he made War he prospered, with his 100 Biremes or Gallies with two ranks of Oars on a side, and 1000 Archers, invading all his neighbours without any difference, for that he held it for a rule, that he gratified his friend more by restoring what he had taken from him, than if he had taken nothing away. He subdued many Islands and many Towns in the continent. The *Lesbians* coming to help their friends of *Miletus* with all their force, he overthrew, and took so many, as served him to draw a ditch round about the walls of *Samos*. His affairs being thus prosperous, were not unknown to *Amasis*, but being every day more prosperous than other, at length *Amasis* suspected that his friend and allie for this prosperous Fortune would have some disastrous end, and therefore he wrote to him, and desired him that to make some certain change therein, he would pick out that which was most dear to him, and in the losse whereof he would be most troubled, and make that away, so that he should never more enjoy it. He accordingly took ship and cast into the Sea his signet, which was an *Emerald* set in a gold ring; but it so hapned, that a Fisher taking a very large fish, presented it to him as onely worthy of it, and in the belly of it his servants, when they cut it up, found the signet. *Amasis* hearing this, took such assurance that an unfortunate end must follow such prodigious successe, that lest hee should be troubled with the miscarriage of a friend and allie, hee renounced his friendship.

5. When *Cambyzes* was raising his forces for his Expedition into *Ægypt*, *Polycrates* sent to him underhand, to desire him to send for some supplies.

N n

who

*Vid. Strabonem* l. 14.

*Vid. Herodotus* lib. 3.

*Herodotus* lib. 3. cap. 39.

## SECT. I.

who doing so, he picked out such as he thought were most prone to rebellion, and with them manned out two Triremes, desiring of him that he would not send them back. Yet they after the War withdrew themselves from *Cambyses*, and went to *Lacedæmon* to desire aid of that State against the Tyrant, which was granted them, either for that the *Lacedæmonians* were engaged to the *Samiens* (as these pretended) because they had received supplies from them in the *Messenian War*, or as the *Spartans* alleged, not out of any kindness, but malice to the *Samiens*, because they had in the Age foregoing intercepted certain presents sent by them to *Croesus*, and to them from *Amasis*. The *Corinthians* were also drawn in, having a particular quarrel of their own; the occasion was also given at the same time, the *Samiens* having taken from the *Corinthians* certain Boyes which they were carrying from *Periander* their Tyrant to *Alyattes* King of *Sardis* to be made Eunuchs.

6. The *Lacedæmonians* coming with a great Fleet to *Samus*, besieged the City, but endeavouring the storming of it were repulsed with some loss, and having in vain spent forty dayes in the Siege (so valiantly was it defended by *Polycrates*) they then returned home into *Peloponnesus*. A story went, that *Polycrates* stamped some Lead, and covering it over with Gold, with it purchased the departure of the *Lacedæmonians*; but this was the first Expedition which the *Dores* made against *Asia*. Afterwards at such time as *Cambyses* fell sick, that fell upon *Polycrates* which *Amasis* had forewarned him of. At this time one *Orates* a *Persian* was Governour of *Sardis*, *Ionias*, *Lydia*, and the Sea-coasts, in the place of *Harpagus*, who either for that he was upbraided that he got not *Samus*, so near to his Province, into the King's hand, or for that *Polycrates* slighted and gave no answer to a messenger which he sent to him (both which are reported) fought earnestly to work his destruction. Knowing he had an ambition to become Master of *Ionias* and the Islands, he sent to him to tell him that he heard how excellent things he cast in his head, but that he wanted money to accomplish them, wherefore he having now heard for certain that *Cambyses* determined to kill him, offered to him, that if he would receive him he should have half of the King's money which he had in his possession, whereby he might get the Sovereignty of all *Greece*. And if he doubted of his faithfulness, he desired him to send one of his most trusty servants to whom he would give satisfaction.

7. *Polycrates* with great joy received the message, being greedy after money, and to make the thing sure, sent *Meandrius* his Secretary over to *Orates*, who knowing him a cunning and circumspect man, filled several chests with stones, and covering them at the top with gold, thereby deceived him. *Polycrates* was yet dissuaded by all his friends from going over himself, for that the Oracles were against it, and his Daughter dreamed that she saw him up aloft in the air, where he was washed by *Jupiter*, and anointed by the Sun; but he was angry with her for her importunity, and notwithstanding all dissuasions went over to *Orates*, taking with him amongst others, *Democedes* the Son of *Calliphon* of *Crotona* in *Italy*, the most famous Physician then in his Country. He went over into *Magnesia* as far as the River *Meander*, and then *Orates* laying hold of him, the *Samiens* he dismissed, telling them that they must account it for a great favour so to be used by him, but all the Strangers and Slaves he took to himself, and reduced them into the State of servitude. This end had *Polycrates*, with whom none of the *Syracusan* Tyrants, or any other of *Greece* for magnificence were to be compared. Him succeeded one *Meandrius* his Vicegerent or Procurator, of whom *Herodotus* telleth many stories, and who by the help of *Otaues* the *Persian* *Satrapa*, being removed, by the approbation of *Darius* the Son of *Hystapes*, *Syloson* the Brother of *Polycrates* succeeded, *Samus* paying very dearly for it, what by the War and the ensuing severity of *Syloson*. When *Syloson* died, *Aeaces* his Son succeeded him, by the favour of the *Persians*; but was not long after thrust from his Tyranny, when *Aristagoras* the *Milesian* drew all *Ionias* into rebellion against the *Persians*; which hapned about the eighteenth year of *Darius*.

8. In

## SECT. I.

Eminius de rebus florentis Græciæ.

A League betwixt the *Platæans* and *Athenians*.

Stirs at *Athenas*.

*Hipparchus* slain by *Harmodius* and *Aristogiton*.

The behaviour of the *Pisistratide*, in the Government of *Athenas*.

8. In the second year of *Darius*, and the first of the 65th Olympiad, the inhabitants of *Platæa* in *Boeotia*, who never well accorded with their Neighbours the *Thebans*, being now irritated with their continual injuries, that for the future they might free themselves from such grievances, sent, and offered themselves to the *Lacedæmonians* (who then were of greatest Authority in *Greece*) as Allies and Dependents. But they perceiving themselves to be at too great a distance from them to give any succours when need required, advised them to have recourse to the *Athenians* as nearer to them, and of sufficient ability to relieve them. They accordingly did so, and contracted a straight league of Alliance with *Athenas*, which became a great eye-sore to the *Thebans*, and all their party a long time after.

9. In the third year of the 65 Olympiad, and the 8th of the reign of *Darius*, fell out great stir at *Athenas*, which never ceased till they produced a change in the Government. *Pisistratus* the famous Tyrant at his death left three sons, *Hippias*, *Hipparchus*, & *Thessalus*, and the principality (as it should seem from *Heraclides*) to them all; though *Hippias*, as the eldest, had Supreme Jurisdiction. He had hitherto for the space of thirty years enjoyed his fathers Kingdom, being loving and affectionate towards his brethren, and moderate towards his subjects: *Hipparchus* was accounted a wise man, and lover of learning, being something given to be amorous, and *Thessalus* bold, and head-strong. It hapned that *Hipparchus* fell in love with one *Harmodius*, a young man of the Citie, and sorely solicited him to unlawfull dalliance, who therewith acquainted one *Aristogiton*, a man of a middle rank amongst the Citizens, and who most passionately loved him. He fearing he should be deprived of this his dear one, consulted with himself how he might destroy, both *Hipparchus* and the Tyranny. *Hipparchus* still going on to sollicite *Harmodius*, but in vain, at length resolved to be revenged on him, and executed it on his sister, which being on a certain solemnity to carry up the basket that was to be dedicated to *Minerva*, he put her by as unworthy of the office; though some of late have thought that he ravished her.

10. *Harmodius* taking this in very evil part, and *Aristogiton* much worse, prepared all things necessary for their conspiracy; but expected the great feast called *Panathenæa*, on which day onely the Citizens might be in Armour without suspicion, for discharging the solemnity. They provided not many men before hand, for the more close carrying of the business, and because they hoped all the rest would without any hesitation be ready to come in to them. When the day came, they and their party being ready with their Poniards, espied a man talking with *Hippias*; Whereupon they thought they were discovered, and therefore resolved to do that, wherein especially they were concerned, if they could, and so rushing in violently upon *Hipparchus*, they slew him in the place. *Aristogiton* defended himself for some time from the Guard; but the multitude flocking in, he was taken, after he had received many wounds, and his friend *Harmodius* slain outright. *Hippias* having notice of what had passed, came cunningly upon the Citizens that were Armed for the solemnity, and by his Guard picking out such as had Daggers about them, or whom he suspected, thereby prevented at this time all further trouble.

11. Hitherto he and his brethren had not been distrustfull of their own safety, and therefore had used no great Guards about them; not rendering their power very burthenfom to the people, but acting according to the rules of virtue and prudence. They exacted onely the 20th part of the publick reve nue, exceedingly beautified the Citie, waged War, and left the Citizens to their former Laws; onely some one of them was alwayes Magistrate, and other men held of them yearly Offices, *Pisistratus* the son of *Hippias*, and Nephew to the founder of this Kingdom, as it appeareth from *Thucydides*, having sometimes had the power in his hands. But *Hippias* after this, fearing himself, exercised his power very severely against the *Athenians*, putting many of them to death; and to establish himself by foreign alliance he gave

\* De Politia Athen. Alian. Var. Hist. lib. 8. cap. 2. Thucydides lib. 6.

Endeth briefly.

Meandrius.

Syloson.

Aeaces.

## SECT. I.

his daughter in marriage to *Hippocleus*, the son of *Antides*, the Tyrant of *Lampsacus*, knowing them to be in great grace with *Darius* King of *Persia*. To find out the complices of these two young men, he tortured, amongst others, a woman named *Leana* the Paramour of *Aristogiton*, but she was so constant as to endure all, and biting off her tongue, spit it in the face of the Torturers, left therewith she should discover any one; in memory of which the *Athenians* afterwards consecrated in the Castle a Lioness without a tongue, as also Erected Statues to the memory of *Harmodius* and *Aristogiton*, as the liberators of their Countrey. These Statues were taken away by *Xerxes* into *Asia*, and long after sent back by *Alexander*, or *Antiochus*, or *Seleucus*, as is severally delivered by Historians. They also Decreed that their names should never be given to any slaves.

12. Though these two did not actually procure the freedom of *Athens*, but perished in the attempt, yet it was attributed to them, because that in the 4th year after, some imitating their example expelled *Hippias*, & effectually procured it. At this time the *Alcmaonide* (or those of the family of *Alcmaon*, who was great Grand-son to *Nestor*, and being cast out of *Messenia* by the *Heracleide*, came and lived at *Athens*) being driven into exile by the *Pisistratide* (or *Pisistratus* his sons) having sometimes endeavoured in vain the recovery of their Countreys liberty, still lay in wait for a more convenient opportunity to accomplish it. Being full of money, they hired the *Amphyctiones* to let them build a new Temple at *Delphos*, which was very magnificent, and corrupted the *Pythia* (or the woman that received and delivered the Oracles, standing in a Tripod, or three footed stool) as often as any of *Sparta* came thither, still to propose to them to set *Athens* at liberty. This being constantly done, the *Lacedæmonians* accounted it a piece of their religion to do it, and sent *Anchimolius*, a man of prime Rank amongst them, with an Army to expell the *Pisistratide*, though their friends, and such as had deserved no otherwise than well of them. They being aware of this, had contracted friendship and alliance with the *Thessalians*, and now procured from them a supply of 1000 horse, which by a common decree they sent under the Command of *Cixæus* their King; which falling in upon the Camp of the *Spartans*, slew amongst many others *Anchimolius* the General, and beat the other to their ships, in which they returned home.

13. Afterwards the *Lacedæmonians* sent another Army by Land, under the Conduct of *Cleomenes* the son of *Anaxandrides*, who invading the *Athenian* Territories was encountered by the *Thessalian* horse, which he put to flight, and having killed above forty of them, the rest shifted away, and betook themselves as they could into *Thessaly*. *Cleomenes* then coming up to the Citie besieged the Tyrants, being shut up within the *Pelægick* wall, but being unprovided for a siege, and they furnished sufficiently with provisions, after a few dayes he was about to depart homeward, had not one thing fallen out. As the Children of the *Pisistratide* were privately to be conveyed out of the Countrey, they were intercepted, which overturned the affairs of their Parents, and forced them to Covenant with the *Athenians*, for their Ransom, within five dayes to depart out of *Attica*, which accordingly was done, *Hippias* going straight to *Sigæus*, & thence to *Lampsacus*, from which place he went to *Darius*, and in the 20th year after returned with his Army, and died (as some say) in the battel at *Marathon*. *Sigæus* was a Town situate upon the *Hellepont*, which *Pisistratus* took by force out of the hands of the *Mityleneans*, and made *Hegestratius* his base son, by a woman of *Argos*, Tyrant there. *Hippias* was offered from *Amyntus* the King of *Macedonia*, either *Anthemus*, or *Iolcos*, a Citie in *Macedonia*; but he refused both, and betook himself to *Darius*, whose Army he afterwards conducted into *Attica*.

14. The state of *Athens* great before, grew greater after this grand mutation, in which two men contended for the chief Authority: *Clisthenes* one of the *Alcmaonide* (the Nephew by his Mother of *Clisthenes*, the Tyrant of *Sicyon*) and *Isagoras* the son of *Tisander*. *Clisthenes* being too weak for the other's

## SECT. I.

*Clisthenes* changeth the names of the Tribes.

other's faction, that he might engraft himself with the people, whereas they were before divided but into four Tribes, encreased them unto ten; and whereas formerly they were named from the four sons of *Ion*, viz. *Teion*, *Agicor*, *Argadeus*, and *Hopietes*, now he changed these for other *Heroes*, which were, 1. *Hippoboon* the son of *Neptune*, 2. *Antiochus* of *Hercules*, 3. *Ajax* of *Telemachus*, 4. *Leon* the *Athenian*, who according to the Oracle devoted his Daughters for the publick safety, 5. *Erechthon*, who slew *Immaradus* the Son of *Eumolpus*, 6. *Ægeus*, 7. *Oeneus* the base Son of *Pandion*, 8. *Acamas* the Son of *Theseus*, 9. *Cecrops*, and 10. *Pandion*.

Civil Wars betwixt *Isagoras* and *Clisthenes*.

*Clisthenes* restoreth *Solon's* Laws.

The *Ostracism*.

15. *Isagoras* envying *Clisthenes* that respect, which hereby he obtained, procured *Cleomenes* the King of *Sparta* (with whom he had contracted friendship during the War with *Hippias*) to come once more against *Athens*. He sent a Messenger first, and presently procured him to be banished, and yet came thither with an Army, and besides many of the family of *Alcmaon* formerly cast out with *Clisthenes*, now also expelled 700 families proper for War, under pretence of their being contaminated with them in the business of the death of *Cylon*. Then endeavoured he to dissolve the *Senate*, and commit their power to those of *Isagoras* his faction; but both *Senate* and people resisting, *Isagoras* and he with their men seized on the Castle wherein they were besieged two dayes: On the third the *Lacedæmonians* with *Isagoras* had leave to depart, but the rest were cast into prison, and put to death. Then was *Clisthenes* with the 700 families recalled, who restored the Democratical Government to the Citie, as it was founded by the Laws of *Solon*.

16. To *Clisthenes* is also ascribed the introducing of the *Ostracism* into the *Athenian* State, being generally granted to have been brought in a little after the banishment of the *Pisistratide*. For, considering the calamities which had hapned in their time, the *Athenians* for the time to come would have all of equal power and authority. By the *Ostracism* therefore they forced absence from the Citie for ten years upon the most powerful amongst them for Glory, Nobility, or Eloquence, lest they should grow too great; without any ignominy, or disgrace; they being neither deprived of Goods, Lands, or any things, save their presence at home for that time. The form of it was this. Each of the Citizens wrote the name of that man in an Oyster shell (whence it had the name of *Ostracism*) who seemed to him to be the most powerful for the overturning of the Democracy, and then brought the shell in as a suffrage into the place designed, and so he that was found to have most written with his name, was for ten years ordered to leave the Citie. But two conditions were required that this judgement should stand in force: That no fewer than 6000 should be at the meeting, and the giving of suffrages; and that those that gave them should be no younger than sixty years old. The first that was banished by this Law, was (as *Ælian* tells us) *Clisthenes* the Author of it, though (according to another) *Hipparchus*, and *Charmus* Kinsman to *Pisistratus*: In after times *Aristides*, because of that great Title *Just* given to him, and *Themistocles* for his Military glory.

17. But *Cleomenes* the *Lacedæmonian* King perceiving himself dammified both by word and deed from the *Athenians*, raised forces throughout *Peloponnesus*, intending (though dissembling the matter) to be revenged upon them, and set up *Isagoras* as Tyrant over them. He invaded one part, and procured the *Beotians* on one side, and the inhabitants of *Chalcis* on the other, to fall in upon other places. The *Athenians* thus distressed on all sides, yet first went against the *Peloponnesians* lying in *Eleusine*, and when the Armies were about to joyn, the *Corinthians*, first bethinking themselves of the injustice of their cause, withdrew themselves; and so did *Demaratus* the son of *Ariston* King of *Sparta*, and the Colleague of *Cleomenes*, having never dissented from him formerly. Then the rest of the associates seeing that the Kings agreed not betwixt themselves, and the *Corinthians* were gone, drew off

The *Pisistratide* banished.

*Thucydides* ut supra.

*Herodotus* cap. 66.

*Herodotus* lib. 9. cap. 4. &c.

*Ælian* Var. Hist. lib. 13. cap. 24. *Diodorus* lib. 11. *Plutarch* in vita *Aristidis*. & *Petidis*.

*Plutarch* in vita *Aristidis*.

## SECT. I.

The Island  
Ægina.

off also in like manner : The *Athenians* then to be revenged, fell upon the *Bœotians*, of whom killing many, they took prisoners 700, and then passing over into *Eubœa* the same day, chastized the Inhabitants of *Chalcis* in like manner. Thus, four times the *Dores* out of *Peloponnesus* came into *Attica*; twice in a hostile manner, and twice to the help of the *Athenians*. First when they brought a Colony into *Megara*, which was in the time of *Codrus*, the second and third times to expel the *Pisistratida*, and now the fourth, when *Cleomenes* with the *Peloponnesians* invaded *Eleusine*.

18. The *Thebans* and the rest of the *Bœotians*, seeing themselves too weak for the *Athenians*, desired help of the Inhabitants of *Ægina*, an Island situated in that part of the Sea, which severed *Attica* from *Argolis*, being five miles distant from the former, some eight in circuit, and the Country of *Æacus*, (whence the *Æacida*) having a City of it's own name. The *Æginetans* bearing an old grudge to those of *Athens*, and puffed up with a conceit of their wealth, easily imbraced their society, and when the *Athenians* were busied with the other, passed over in their long ships into *Attica*, and waited the Coasts thereof. The *Lacedæmonians* at this time understanding how they had been deluded by the *Alcemonida* their corrupting the women that gave out the Oracles, and thereby their loss both of their old friends, and all thanks also as to the *Athenians*; hearing further by the Oracles which *Cleomenes* had brought out of the Citadel of *Athens*, that that State should much distress them, and especially seeing how weak it was under Tyrants, but now how it increased in strength after the recovery of it's liberty, called back *Hippias*, resolving to restore him. He was ready at their call, but then it hapned that *Soficles* the *Corinthian* Ambassador and others of their confederates utterly disallowed of this practice, and therefore seeing there was no hope of recovering his former condition, he returned into *Asia*, and there laboured with all his might to possess *Ariaphernes* the *Sarrapa* of *Lydia* against the *Athenians*, that they might be conquered by *Darius* his Brother. They sent to *Ariaphernes*, to desire him not to give credence to their exiles; but, as when two or three years before, when they sent to enter into society with the *Persians*, he told them they must give Earth and Water, as symbols of subjection (which the Ambassadors doing, were much blamed at their return) so now he told them, if they would be safe, they must receive *Hippias*. They refused the *Condition*, and chose rather to be professed Enemies to the *Persian*; and thence presently after joyned with *Aristagoras*, who withdrew the *Ionians* from their obedience, which provoked *Darius* afterwards to invade them, procured the Expedition of *Xerxes*, and the quarrel of that Empire with *Greece*. But these things concerning *Athens* and *Hippias*, hapned in the first year of the 69th Olympiad, the 18th of the reign of *Darius*, A. M. 3501.

19. After the *Ionian War* was over, and the *Græcians* in *Asia* were forced once more to undergo the yoke, *Darius* in the 27th year of his reign, and the third after his victory, sent into *Greece* to demand Earth and Water as tokens of subjection. The *Athenians* and *Lacedæmonians* threw the Messengers into a well, and bad them thence fetch Earth and Water to carry to their Master, but the Inhabitants of *Ægina* and other Islanders, for fear of the *Persians*, promised obedience. The *Athenians* presently took offence thereat, as judging that the *Æginetans* did it out of a grudge to them, that they might fight under the conduct of the *Persians* against *Athens*, and therefore they sent to *Sparta* to complain of them as Traitors to *Greece*. *Cleomenes* was sent from that State, and came to *Ægina*, with an intention to apprehend the principal authors of the revolt; but one *Crim* there openly opposed him, threatening him, in case he laid violent hands on any, for that he knew he did it without any publick decree of the *Lacedæmonians*, who else would have sent the other King with him. This he said at the instance of *Demaratus* the other King of *Sparta*, who disagreeing with *Cleomenes* ever since the invasion of *Attica*, now also grievously accused him in his absence. Hereupon *Cleomenes* returned home, cast out *Demaratus*, upon pretence of his illegitimation,

The *Æginetans* by giving Earth and Water to *Darius*, incense the *Græcians* against them.

Stirs at *Sparta* betwixt *Cleomenes* and *Demaratus* the Kings.

A. M. 3501.  
P. C. 250.  
Olymp. 69. an. 1.  
Darii 18.

Herodotus  
Lib. 6. c. 48, &c.

SECT. I.  
CAP. 61, &c.

The birth of  
*Demaratus*.

*Demaratus* deposed, and  
*Leutychides* put  
in his place.

*Cleomenes* his  
ill end.

mation from his Office, and put *Leutychides* his kinsman in his place.

20. The Father of *Demaratus* was *Ariston*, of the posterity of *Procles*, a man as worthy as any of his Ancestors; who having no children by two wives (for which cause he divorced them) to satisfy the desires of the people (which greatly desired some issue male from him) married a third, which already was the wife of his friend *Agamemnon*, covenanting with him for her, (the being the most beautiful woman next after *Helena*) which by the Laws of *Lycurgus* he might do. Being married, it hapned just after seven monerths, when he was according to the custome sitting amongst the *Ephori*, his household servant came and signified to him that he had a Son born, with the suddenness of which thing being disturbed, he rashly swore that it was not his, coming so much within the Time. The *Ephori* then neglected it, and he afterwards repenting of his rashness, brought up the Child as his own, and because he was so desired by the publick wishes of the People, gave him the name of *Demaratus*. After his death *Demaratus* succeeded, a man of great worth, and who obtained a crown in the *Olympick Games*, which never hapned before to the Kings of *Sparta*. But that speech of his Father was now objected against him, by his Colleague and Emulator *Cleomenes* the Son of *Anaxandrides*, who accused now also for their recreating formerly out of *Attica*, which occasioned all the difference betwixt them; and all this was aggravated by *Leutychides*, who fought for his place, and had a private quarrel with him about a wife, of which he had hindred him by taking her to himself.

21. Great contention hence arising, the *Spartans* resolved to send to *Delphos*, and enquire of the Oracle whether *Demaratus* was the Son of *Ariston*, which being done, *Cleomenes* procured a friend he had at *Delphos* to corrupt *Pythia*, so that being drawn by bribery she gave the answer against *Demaratus*. Hereby *Cleomenes* procured him to be removed from the Kingdom, and *Leutychides* his kinsman to succeed him; yet though thus handled, he ceased not to love his Country, and continuing at home, disdained not to bear inferior Offices, till further affronted by *Leutychides*, who to insult over and deride him, at such a time as overseeing the exercises of the Boyes, he sent and demanded of him how he liked of that Office after the Kingdom. He answered, that he had tried both, but the other not, and that that question should be the original either of great mischief or happiness to the *Lacedæmonians*, and then getting him home with his head covered he sacrificed to *Jupiter*, and sending for his Mother conjured her to tell him the truth concerning his Father. Being assured from her of his Legitimation, he went out of the City, under pretence of going to *Delphos*; but took the way to *Elis*, and thence to the Island *Zacynthus*, and so to *Darius* King of *Persia*, the *Zacynthians* having refused to give him up to his Country-men who pursued him. He was received with great honour by the *Persians*, who bestowed Lands upon him, to maintain him in a Princely equipage; and there his posterity is reported to have endured a long season.

22. Not long after *Cleomenes* received his just reward, his own hands being his executioners; for his treachery against *Demaratus* being come to light, and fearing to be called to an account for it, he first fled into *Thessalie*, and thence returning into *Arcadia* stirred up the Inhabitants against the *Spartans*, and attempted to swear them to be true to him whithersoever he should lead them. The *Lacedæmonians* hearing of this, and fearing what he might do to them, recalled and restored him to his former dignity; but when he was come home, having not had before this time a very ferled head, he now fell into a Phrensie, as he met any one in the City, pushing their faces with his Scepter. His friends then bound him with wooden fetters, in which condition, partly by inreaties, and partly by threats, he got a Sword of his Keeper, wherewith beginning at the cuff of his leg, he cut up his flesh upwards to the thighs, and, when he ripped up his belly, died, leaving no issue behind him, but a pattern of Justice to all *Greece*, which being amused at his end, most attributed it to the corruption of *Pythia*, and that injustice done to *Demaratus*.

Paul. in. in.  
Lacœnicis.



## SECT. I.

18; the *Athenians* to his invasion of *Elenfine*, and his destroying the Temple of their gods; but the *Argives* concluded this judgement to have fallen upon him, because he had basely killed such of their Country-men as escaped from a battel fought with him, after he had got them out of the Temple of *Argus*, and had burnt the grove which he had taken. This passage betwixt the *Lacedæmonians* and *Argives*, is to be described though in the same order *Herodotus* hath done it, it having hapned long before the death of *Cleomenes*, and as *Pausanias* saith, in the beginning of his reign.

23. Consulting the Oracle at *Delphos*, it was answered, that he should take *Argos*, and hereupon he raised an Army and invaded the Territories of that State. The *Argives* in their own defence made hast to meet him, but he setting upon them as they were at dinner, put many of them to the Sword, and besieged the rest in the grove at *Argus*, whither they fled. Then learning their names from such fugitives as were with him, he called them man by man out of the Wood to redeem themselves (which at the *Lacedæmonian* rate was for two minæ a man) and so 50 of them coming out of the grove (in which place they could no see beforehand what was done to their Companions) he put to the Sword. At length one of them climbing up on a tree discovered the matter, after which no man would come out; but then he set fire to the grove and burnt it and them together. After this, asking to whom of their gods the grove belonged to, it was answered to *Argus*, and so he found and acknowledged himself deceived by the Oracle. Returning to *Sparta*, he was accused as having been corrupted, for that he might have taken *Argos* if he would; but the major part were satisfied with his excuse and acquitted him. As for *Argos* it was rendred by this overthrow so desolate of men, that the Slaves governed all things, till such time as the sons of the slain grew up and recovered their Patrimony; after which the Slaves conquered *Tyrinthes*, and held it, till persuaded by *Cleander* a certain Wizard, they returned, and made War upon their Masters, which continued long, till such time as the *Argives* with difficulty remained Conquerours.

24. *Cleomenes* being dead, the *Æginetans* sent and complained of *Leontychides* for the injury he had done to them, in causing together with *Cleomenes* ten of their principal men to be kept as Hostages at *Athens*. He was given up to them, but fearing to carry a King of *Sparta* away prisoner, though for the present the State had given him up, they took him onely to *Athens* to procure them the liberty of their Hostages. But the *Athenians* put them off, as refusing to deliver them without the authority of two Kings, seeing both of them committed them to their custody, and the journey being to no purpose *Leontychides* was dismissed and so returned; but yet he also paid for the injury offered to *Demaratus*. \* For, *Menander* leading an Army into *Theffalie*, of which as of the War he had full and ample power, he was corrupted with money, and betrayed the interest of his Country, after which being discovered, as he held the money in both his hands sitting in his tent, he was apprehended and carried to *Sparta*, where being called to account, he fled to *Tegæa*, and there died in exile, his house being razed as a traitor to his Country.

25. But the *Æginetans*, of old, Enemies to those of *Athens*, were now much more incensed against them for detaining their Hostages, and set themselves to studie a revenge. At that time there was at *Samum* (the utmost promontory of *Asia*) a Gallie which (according to the custome observed every year since the time of *Thesem*) was then going to *Delphos*, aboard of which were the principal men of *Athens*: on this they seized, and taking the men prisoners, bound them all. The *Athenians* hereat enraged, laboured with all might on the other hand to revenge this, and agreed with one *Nicomachus* to have the City betrayed to them; yet for that they could not get their Fleet together soon enough, they came a day too late, and missed of that enterprise. But through the counsel of *Themistocles*, having rigged a Fleet of 70 Gallies (20 of which the *Corinthians* sold them at an inconsiderable rate, because by the Law they could not give them) they set upon the

In Laconicis.

\* Herodotus Lib. 6. cap. 72.

Idem cap. 87.

## SECT. I.

War betwixt the *Athenians* and *Æginetans*. the *Æginetans*, and overthrew them in a Sea-fight. They betook themselves for aid to the *Argives* their old friends, but having offended them not long before, they received a publick denial, yet underhand a supply of 1000 Volunteers, most of whom fell in *Ægina* by the hands of the *Athenians*, against whom yet the *Æginetans* afterwards, reinforcing their power at Sea, in another battel became Victors. But what the issue of this War farther was, is not declared by *Herodotus*, who yet elsewhere affirmeth, that it gave occasion to the safety of all *Greece*, by putting the *Athenians* upon the care of Sea matters, whereby when *Xerxes* came, they became the bulwark thereof. Probable it is, that this War which was begun before the battel of *Marathon*, was not composed till the time that *Xerxes* was about to invade *Greece*, when we read that all the *Græcians* (and these two States amongst the rest) resolved to lay aside all private quarrels amongst themselves, the *Æginetans* being observed by \* another to have had the Dominion of the Sea 20 years, untill the passage of *Xerxes*, which thenceforth they were forced to yield to the *Athenians*.

The battel of Marathon.

Miltiades

His Pedigree and Actions.

26. Whilest the *Athenians* were busie in the War against *Ægina*, *Darius* sent his Forces into *Greece* against them, and the *Eretrians* (inhabitants of the Island *Enboea*) which though they took the Citie of the later, and made them Captives, yet were they overthrown by the former in the battel at *Marathon*. After the fight 2000 *Spartans* came to *Athens* (being hindred hitherto by their superstition, which forbade them from a Law of *Lycurgus* not to stir out till the full Moon) whence they proceeded to *Marathon* to see the number of the slain, and then commending the valour of the *Athenians* returned home. Of these were slain in this fight *Callimachus* one of the *Polemarchs*, *Cynagirus* commended by many Writers, who when the *Persians* fled, and betook themselves to their ships, held one of them with his hands till they were cut off, and then with his teeth, till at length he was slain; and *Hippias* the late Tyrant (who now hoping to recover, after twenty years banishment, his old power, became the conductor of the *Persian* Forces) though neither *Herodotus* nor *Thucydides* make mention of his death, yet is reported by later Authors here to have been slain. *Themistocles* now a young man behaved himself gallantly in the battel; but the successe is ascribed to the valour, and conduct of *Miltiades*, to whom, when *Arifides* one of the Captains had assigned his day's Government, the rest when it came on their turns did the same, after that by the same help he had carried it in the Council for a battel. Yet did he not fight till his own day came, and then ingaging, overthrew the Enemy in that memorable battel.

27. His father was *Cimon*, who in the Tyranny of *Pisistratus* departed from *Athens*, and thrice obtained the Garland in the *Olympick* Games; yet being reconciled to *Pisistratus* afterwards returned, but after his death was slain by his faction. His eldest son, who was called after his Grand-father *Sesagoras*, was brought up with their half Uncle *Miltiades* in the *Chersonesus*, over which he was Prince. His other son was this *Miltiades*, so called after this his Uncle, which dying without Children, *Sesagoras* succeeded him, but not long after was killed by one that counterfeited himself a fugitive, and died also without issue. Then did the *Pisistratide* send *Miltiades* to succeed his brother in the Principality of the *Chersonesus*, and there he ruled when *Darius* undertook the expedition into *Scythia*, and he it was that gave the *Ionians* counsel to break the bridge, and leave him there wandering with his Army. Being settled, he married *Hegesippa* the daughter of *Olorus* King of *Thrace*; but the *Scythians* provoked by *Darius*, and making an excursion as far as the *Chersonesus*, he daring not to withstand them fled, and after their retreat was restored by the *Thracians*. After some years *Darius* being angry with him, sent a Fleet of *Phœnicians* to subdue the *Chersonesus*; whereupon he fled with five Gallies from *Cardia*, and came to *Athens*; but as he fled the *Phœnicians* intercepted one of them, and therein his son *Metiochus*, who being presented to *Darius*, received from him house, lands, and

\* Euseb. in Chronico.

Justin. lib. 2.

Plutarch. in Arifide.

Herod. lib. 6.

SECT. I. a Persian wife. Being returned home, he was accused for possessing the Tyranny of the *Chersonesus*, but was acquitted, and \* having persuaded the *Athenians* to throw *Darius* his Messengers into the pit, was afterwards declared by the people one of their Captains, and thence had occasion to obtain this famous victory at *Marathon*.

His fruitless expedition to *Paros*.

28. *Miltiades* flourishing in great glory, and grace with the people, obtained of them 70 Gallies well manned, not making known his intention, but professing that he would much thereby benefit the State. He sailed to the Island *Paros* (one of the *Cyclades* in the *Egean-Sea*, and famous for the best Marble) the inhabitants of which having assisted the *Persians* at *Marathon*, he besieged, demanding 100 Talents of them. They would not hear of parting with money, but made provision for resistance, whereupon he harassed their Territories, and more closely besieged them, and attempted the City for twenty dayes, but leaping off from a Wall, he hurt his Thigh, and was forced to return home. There, when he was arrived, he was accused by *Xanthippus* (the son of *Ariphron*, and father to *Pericles*, his Emulator) of Treason, as having voluntarily miscarried in the Enterprize about *Paros*. He could not be present himself to answer, his Thigh now corrupting, which held him in his bed, but *Sisagornus*, or *Tisagorus*, his brother (according to *Cor. Nepos*) or rather, other of his friends did it for him, bidding the people remember the battel at *Marathon*, and the taking of *Lemnus*, which he, having expelled the *Pelasgians*, had subdued under the *Athenian* power. The people spared his life, but fined him fifty Talents, which sum this expedition had cost them. One tells us it was not out of any regard to his Crime so much, as having lately been under the Tyranny of *Pisistratus*, they feared now the power of their own Citizens, and him especially, who having been much practised in Magistracy and power, and inclined naturally to a love of it, could scarce as they thought bear the condition of a private life; so that though being called a Tyrant, he obtained that power not by his own seeking, but was ever found to be just, moderate, and humble; yet having a great name for Military matters, and thereby great interest, they chose rather to condemn him though innocent, than continually be in fear, though they might have thought on the *Ostracism*.

He dieth in prison.

29. After this, *Miltiades* died in prison of the corruption of his Thigh, as most have delivered, his fine being yet upon the score; upon which account the *Athenians* would not suffer his body to be buried, till such time as his son *Cimon* offered himself to bonds in the room thereof. As his father before him, so he was unable to pay the fine, and by the Laws of *Athens* could not be released untill he had done it. He had then to wife his sister by the father's side (as we are to take it) named *Elpinice*, \* it being lawfull for the *Athenians* to marry such. One *Callias* there was in the City, a rich man, though of a vulgar cast, who had gained much by the Mines; he being in love with her, offered *Cimon*, if he would part with her to him, to discharge the fine. *Cimon* sleighted the offer, but she avowed that she would not suffer any of *Miltiades* his Children to die in prison, and that to prevent such a thing, she would marry *Callias*, if he would perform his offer. Hereby *Cimon* was persuaded, married her to him, and the fine being discharged, was set at liberty, which he presently improved for his own advancement. These things fell out not long after the battel at *Marathon*.

Xerxes invades Greece.

30. Three years the *Græcians* had rest, as from without, so within themselves, till the coming of *Xerxes*; onely the War betwix the *Athenians* and *Eginetans* still depended, untill common danger drew them to a composition. As the *Athenians* had given most occasion to the invasion of Greece, so they bore the greatest burthen thereof, and by the means of *Themistocles*, one of their Citizens, procured the overthrow and flight of *Xerxes*, in that by his Stratagems the *Peloponnesians* were brought to fight, and not suffered to depart to their several homes, which would have brought certain destruction to them all. Assistant to *Themistocles* was another of his Countrey-men, named *Aristides*, who though banished by the *Ostracism* through his procurement,

\* Pausan. lib. 2.

Herod. lib. 6. cap. 132. &c.

Cor. Nepos in vita Miltiadi.

Valer. Max. lib. 5. cap. 3. ext. exempl. ult. Cor. Nepos in vita Cimonis. Plutarch. in Cimon. \* Vide Janum Rutgersium Var. Lect. lib. 1. cap. 9. & Boetii notas ad Cor. Nepotem.

Vide Plutarchum in vita Aristidis.

for

*Themistocles* and *Aristides*.

for that as they disagreed in temper, so in their way of policy, and Government (*Themistocles* being quick, bold, crafty, and easily changeable, according to the juncture of affairs; but *Aristides* constant and grave, onely intent upon Justice, and who neither in jest nor earnest would give way to lying, scurrility, or deceit) yet now with others was recalled by his means for the safety of the Countrey, and voluntarily laid aside all private quarrels which came into competition with the publick safety. The surname of *Just* which first got this man love, afterward procured him envy, *Themistocles* whispering this into the ears of the multitude, that whilst he took upon him to censure all things, he had prepared for himself a Throne, in the ruine of the Courts of Judicature, and defended with a sufficient Guard. The multitude puffed up with their successe at *Marathon*, and designing great things in their heads, could ill bear any that excelled them in fame and glory, and therefore flocking into the City they banished him by the *Ostracism*, cloaking their envy at his glorie with a specious pretence of fear of Tyranny.

31. When they were come together to give their suffrages, a Countrey-man ignorant of Letters, is reported to have given a shell to *Aristides* (not knowing him, but to be of the common sort) and desired him to write therein for him the name of *Aristides*, at which he wondring, and asking him if ever he had received any injury at his hands, he said no, but that he was troubled to hear him all over go by the name of *Just*. *Aristides* hearing this, answered nothing, but wrote his own name, and gave it to the man, and when he departed out of the City, with hands lifted up to heaven prayed (contrary to what *Achilles* did when he found himself ill used by *Agamemnon*) that the estate of *Athens* might never happen to be such as to give them occasion to think of *Aristides*. But in the third year after, when *Xerxes* now marched through *Thessaly* and *Boeotia* towards *Attica*, the *Athenians* repealing their Decrees, recalled all that were banished, especially for fear of *Aristides*, lest joyning with the Enemy, he might by his Authority draw many of their Citizens to revolt. They were mistaken concerning the mans disposition, for before the Decree for his return was made, he had not been wanting to provoke the *Græcians* as much as he could to defend their liberty; then joyned with *Themistocles*, though one most averse to him, and for the publick good advanced him to the highest degree of Dignity. He joyned in endeavours with him for procuring the *Græcians* to fight, and understanding that *Psittalia* a little Island before *Salamina* was possessed of the Enemy, he passed over thither with a party of such as voluntarily followed him, and put all of them to the sword, except some of the chiefest, to whom he gave quarter. He disposed Soldiers to throughout the Island, that on which quarter soever any of either party should light, he might seize upon them, and so preserve his friends, and provide that none of the Enemy should escape: upon which account a Trophy was erected in *Psittalia*. And when *Themistocles* to try him after the victory, said, that one brave act was done, viz. the overthrow of *Xerxes*, but that another remained, which was, by breaking the bridge to take *Asia* in Europe, he earnestly desired him to reject all such advice, and rather to consider how soon they might expell the *Mede* out of Greece, lest being shut in with such great Forces, and all opportunity of flight being taken away, he might by necessity be egged on to revenge.

The acts of *Themistocles* immediately after the flight of *Xerxes*.

32. After the overthrow and flight of *Xerxes*, *Themistocles* having the greatest authority in the fleet, went therewith against such Islanders as had taken part with the *Persians*, demanding money of them. He urged them with two powerfull divinities *Perswasion* and *Necessity*, so which the Inhabitants of *Andros* (one of the *Cyclades*) trusting in the strength of their Fortifications, opposed two others as strong as the former, viz. *Poverty* and *Impossibility*, whereupon they were close besieged, but it being to no purpose, the Fleet returned to *Salamine*, *Themistocles* without the privy of the rest, going to other Islands, from whom by his threats he exacted much money. After they had at *Salamine* divided the spoil, and consecrated part thereof to

Herodotus lib. 2. cap. 111.

## SECT. I.

their gods, they went to the *Isthmus*, there to reward him who should be thought to have best in the War deserved of *Greece*. When the Captains severally came to deliver their minds in writing at the Altar of *Nepitune*, each one ascribed to himself the first place in merit, but to *Themistocles* assigned the second, which amounted to as much, as if by a silent confession they had acknowledged his merit to be principal. And though by the envy of the Captains his glory was depressed, yet was he accounted the most prudent man of all *Greece*, and being invited down to *Laceaemon*, by the judgement of that severe State, as the praise of valour was given to their own *Eurybiades*, so that of prudence and dexterity unto him. They gave him a crown of Olives, and the best Chariot they had, as a reward, and what before was not done to any mortal man by them, at his departure, to do him honour, they sent 300 Horse to conduct him to the borders of their Dominions. After this, the *Græcians* overthrew *Mardonius*, whom *Xerxes* had left behind him, at the battle of *Plataea*, and the same day the *Persian* Fleet at *Mycalæ* a Promontory of *Ionia*, which they hereby restored to liberty, *Xanthippus* being Archon at *Athens*; in the second year of the 7<sup>th</sup> Olympiad, and the seventh of the Reign of *Xerxes*. During which passages abroad, little happened at home but in relation to them; the summe of which elsewhere hath been related.

His gloric.

33. As for learned men which flourished during this period; some of the Learned Men. seven Wise Men of *Greece* lived in the time of *Cyrus*, and about the beginning of the *Persian* Empire. These seven were, *Pisacus* of *Misylene*, who was born about the 22<sup>th</sup> Olympiad; *Bas* of *Priene*, *Chilon* of *Lacedaemon*, and *Cleobulus* of *Lindus*, all who flourished about the 47<sup>th</sup> Olympiad, with *Thales* of *Miletus*, who being born about the first year of the 35<sup>th</sup> Olympiad, foretold an Eclipse of the Sun, which hapned about the third year of the 48<sup>th</sup>, in the reign of *Alyattes*, and *Astyages*, and about the beginning of the 58<sup>th</sup> having helped *Croesus* over the River *Halys*, by draying it with a ditch, then died. The sixth was *Solon* of *Athens*, who died the same year with *Thales*, and the seventh *Periander* of *Corinth*.

24. Besides these there was *Xenophanes* the *Colophonian*, who being born in the 40<sup>th</sup> Olympiad, came into *Sicilie* when *Hieron* and *Epicharmus* flourished, about the 70<sup>th</sup> Olympiad, *Epicharmus* lived 97 years as *Lucian* writeth, and invented the Comedy eight years before the beginning of the *Persian* Empire. *Phocylides* flourished at the same time, to whom a Poem yet extant concerning Laws is ascribed, though *Scaliger* thinks it made by some *Hellenistic Jew*. Besides these, *Anacreon* the *Teian* Poet, who as *Pliny* writeth, was choked with the stone of a raisin. *Simonides* a Poet of the Island *Ceos*, where he was born in the City *Iulis*. Having lived some time at *Athens* with *Hipparchus* the Son of *Pisistratus*, he went into *Sicilie* unto *Hiero*, by whom being asked what God was, he demanded a daies time to consider of it, and after that another; still professing that the more he studied the point, the more he was to seek in it. Some say he found out the Art of Memory, and that being very covetous, he first exposed the Muses to sale. In the second year of the 58<sup>th</sup> Olympiad, and eight before the *Persian* Empire, died *Anaximander* the natural Philosopher of *Miletus*. *Anaximenes* his Scholar flourished about that time. *Theagenes* of *Rhegium* the most ancient Chronographer. *Democedes* of *Crotona* a Physician, being taken Captive with *Polycrates* by *Oetes* the *Persian*, was carried as a slave to *Darius*, with whom he lived in great esteem, after he had cured his foot and the breast of his wife *Atossa*.

35. There flourished also in *Darius* his time, *Cadmus* of *Miletus* an Historiographer, there having been another of this name and place, according to *Strabo*, who in four Books wrote the History of *Miletus* and all *Ionia*; and *Strabo* nameth *Cadmus*, *Pherecydes* and *Hecataeus* as those who first of all *Greeks* wrote Prose. *Hecataeus* flourished at this time, and gave light to *Herodotus*. *Pirynichus* the *Athenian*, a tragical Poet, who first caused a woman to be perjured, and invented the verse with four feet. *Heraclitus* the

Idem cap. 122.  
&c. &  
Plutarch. in  
Themistocle.

Consule Diogenem  
Laertium.

\* Lib. 7. cap. 7.

## SECT. 2.

the *Ephesian*, a contemner of Heathenish Idols, who out of fear wrote his Book of Nature in such an obscure manner, that thence he got the name of *Scorvius* or *Dark*. *Zeno* of *Egea*, or *Velia*, in *Ia'y*, Scholar to *Parmenides*, who conspiring against *Nearchus* the Tyrant, endured torments to death, rather than he would discover his complices. *Pythagoras* the son of *Mnesarchus* the *Samian*, but born at *Sidon* in *Phœnicia*, about the 53<sup>th</sup> Olympiad. *Dionysius*. Being twelve years old he learnt of *Thales* and *Phocylides*, from the later taking the transmigration of Souls. Travelling into *Egypt* and to *Babylon*, he was drunk in the learning of both places. About the 68<sup>th</sup> Olympiad he went into *Italy*, where he lived first at *Crotona*, and then at *Metapontus*. Here he taught and constituted the *Italian* School or Sect, as *Thales* had done the *Ionick*. Whereas others suffered themselves to be called *Sophot*, he would be called out of modesty *Philosophus*. In the 67<sup>th</sup> Olympiad he found out the nature and course of the Planet *Venus*. In the fourth year of the 70<sup>th</sup> he died at *Metapontus*, where he was so admired, that his house was made a Temple, and that part of *Italy* called *Magna Græcia*. Amongst his Scholars was *Milo* the famous Wrestler; and women through him became famous for learning, their Epistles being yet extant.

Dionysius.  
famulicus.  
Jussu a lib. 20.  
Plin. l. 2. c. 8.

## SECT. II.

Of such things as fell out amongst the Græcians, from their Victories at *Plataea* and *Mycalæ*, until the beginning of the *Peloponnesian* War, containing the space of 48 years.

1. The *Persians* being overthrown in *Greece* both at Sea and Land, and driven utterly out of *Europe*; and those that fled into *Asia* in ships being also defeated at *Mycalæ*, *Leucyctides* the *Spartan* who there commanded in chief, returned home with his associates of *Peloponnesus*. The *Athenians* with the *Ionians*, and those that inhabited upon the *Hellepont*, besieged *Sestos*, which the *Persians* had seized on, all Winter, and reduced it; after which they also all departed home.
2. The *Athenians* having brought home their wives and children, after the overthrow of *Mardonius*, had the popular Government restored by *Arctides*, *Plutarch* & *Themistocle*. and set themselves to rebuild the walls of their City in a greater compass, and stronger than had been formerly, being thereto especially induced through the persuasion of *Themistocles*. The *Lacedæmonians* above all others were hereat exceedingly troubled, as considering that having obtained so great glory by the two Victories at *Marathon* and *Salamina*, the *Athenians* would contend with them for the Principality, and upon that account they wished them as weak as might be. They dissuaded them therefore from going on with their work, alleging that it was dangerous for *Greece* to have any fortified place without the *Peloponnesus*, which the *Barbarians* might seize on, and possess. They said they would send answer by Ambassadors of their own, and *Themistocles* took the business upon him. He first went alone, and ordered that the rest should follow, but not till the wall was brought to a reasonable height; that in the mean time both bond and free should ply the work; and sparing no place, whether holy or prophane, private or publick, rake all such stuff for building as they might soonest light on. When he came at *Sparta*, he demanded no audience, but sought to protract the time, pretending he expected his Collegues. The *Lacedæmonians* complaining that nevertheless the work went on, and that he went about to deceive them, the other Ambassadors arrived, of whom after he knew that the fortifications were almost finished, he laboured to persuade the *Ephori* (who now had the chief power in that State) that the things were false, which they were made to believe, desired them to send persons considerable whom they might trust to make inspection, and keep him as an Hostage till their return.

3. They

The Athenians  
rebuild their  
walls, which  
the Lacedæmo-  
nians grudge.

## SECT. 2.

But are elucidated by Themistocles.

3. They sent accordingly three of their principal men to *Athens*, and with them *Themistocles* his Collegues, to whom he gave in charge that the *Lacedæmonians* should not be dismissed till his return. After their departure, he demanded audience of the Magistrates and Senate, and then freely and openly professed, that the *Athenians* by his advice, & agreeable to the common Law of Nations, had fenced their publick and private goods with a wall, that they might more easily defend them; and neither could that be to the damage of *Greece*, of which *Athens* was the bulwark against the Barbarians, for here the King's Navy had twice suffered Shipwrack. He told them, they did ill to regard more their private ambition, than what was profitable for all *Greece*; and, to conclude, if they expected the return of their Ambassadors, they must dismiss him, or else never expect to see them return; which accordingly they were forced to do with much private regret, though ashamed to own the cause. He advised his Country-men further to finish the work of the *Piræus* or Port of *Athens*, which they had begun a long time before, whilst he was *Archon*; for he persuaded them first to apply themselves to Seamatters, as the way to obtain Dominion, and commended to them that place as most convenient for their design, having three natural Havens. The wall he caused to be made so thick as two Carriages loaded with stones might passe by each other; but brought the height of it but to half of that which he had designed. And with so great a desire was he carried out for the enlargement of the Dominion of that State, that observing the *Lacedæmonian* Navy to be drawn up at *Gysæum*, and so, easie to be set on fire, he much desired to have it done, and told the people he had a thing of great moment in his head, but such as was not to be divulged. The People appointed *Aristides* to confer with him, and if he approved it, resolved he might prosecute it; but he making a report that *Themistocles* advised a thing, than which nothing was more profitable, and more unjust, he was commanded to desist.

4. A little after these things, *Pausanias* the *Lacedæmonian*, famous for the Victory at *Plaræa*, was sent with a Fleet of twenty *Peloponnesian* Gallies, and thirty of *Asia*, against *Cyprus*, where he took many Towns, and *Byzantium* afterwards, held by the *Persians*. He was very imperious towards the associates, inasmuch as he carried himself more like a Tyrant than a General, and being sorely complained of to his Superiours, he was by them recalled to give an account of it. He gaped after the Kingdom of *Greece*, and to that end entered into conspiracy with *Xerxes*, whose Daughter he asked to wife, and being accused of much favour shewed towards the *Persians*, yet for that nothing could be proved, he was dismissed, having the government of the Fleet openly taken from him. Yet returned he to the *Hellepont*, under pretence of the War to continue his intelligence with *Xerxes*; but being expelled from *Byzantium* by the *Athenian* Soldiers, he returned not to *Sparta*, but staid at *Troas*, and for that was again complained of, as holding clandestine consultations with the *Persians*, and not having any just and warrantable cause there to remain. Hereupon he was called home by the *Ephori* the second time, and cast into prison, but appearing again to his tryal, he was the second time dismissed.

5. The *Lacedæmonians* sent *Dorcus* with others to succeed *Pausanias* in the Fleet; but the associates would take no notice of him; for *Aristides* the *Jusf.* Captain of the *Athenians*, so moderately behaved himself, and wrought crosse to the actions of *Pausanias*, that all the Cities of *Asia* hating the others pride, joyed themselves to him, so that he became the means of transferring the chief Command at Sea, which (together with that at Land also) had hitherto been enjoyed by the *Lacedæmonians*, unto his own Country-men, the *Spartans*, at this time not being unwilling, or opposing it in the least, so ashamed were they of the carriage of their own Citizens. The *Athenians* being thus advanced by the associates for their moderation, under pretence of revenging the States upon *Xerxes*, obtained also liberty to lay a Tax upon them all, how much money one, and how many ships another should find. Officers they appointed to receive the Tributes, the sum of all which amounted

Plutarch in Themistocle. Val. Max. l. 6. c. 5. ext. c. 2. Cic. Offic. l. 3.

Thucyd. lib. 1.

Diodorus l. 11. ad Olymp. 75. ann. 4.

Thucyd. & Diodorus ut supra. Plutarch & Corn. Nepos in Aristide.

The Athenians by the means of Aristides draw the chief power to themselves.

## SECT. 2.

red to 460 Talents: *Delos* was appointed for the Treasury, and the place to meet in, to deliberate of the Affairs of all the free States. This assesse (as *Plutarch* writeth) was made by *Aristides* at the desire of the *Græcians*, who relied upon his integrity; and his moderation so much appeared herein, that afterwards the *Athenians* inflaved the States, and drawing the Tributes to their private use, first doubled, and then tribled the sum. For now, whereas the whole Tax imposed by him amounted but to 460 Talents, *Pericles* added almost a third part (as *Plutarch* reckoneth) and increased it to 600. and after his death it was brought to 1300 Talents.

The Naxians inflaved.

6. The *Athenians* having serled the Tribute, under the conduct of *Cimon* *Thucyd.* the son of *Miltiades*, took from the *Persians* *Eione*, a Town of *Thrace*, situate upon the River *Strymon*, which they deprived of its liberty. Then expelled they the *Dolopians* out of *Seyrus* (an Island in the *Ægean* Sea) and therein planted a Colony of their own; then waged they War with the *Carystians* in *Eubæa*, for denying them obedience (which was composed) and besieged the *Naxians* that had revolted from them, whom they forced to submit. This being the first of all *Greek* Cities, which, contrary to the League, was subjected to bondage, after it others were as occasion served, which was taken by the *Athenians*, either for that they sent not the full Tribute, or ships, or would not serve in the War when affairs required it. The *Athenians* also severely exacted what had been appointed, and compelled such as refused, having forgotten their former mildnesse, now in power, and carrying it very imperiously towards their associates whom they could order as they pleased. And this was also effected by the *Greeks* themselves: for, to shun the labour of it, most of them chose rather to send money than ships; whereby the *Athenians*, who had Vessels enough, and alwayes in readinesse, increased their strength, and upon occasion found them unfit for resistance.

7. In the mean time *Pausanias*, who had been called home to *Sparta*, gave not over his conspiracy against his Countrey, though he changed his associates. For he now sought to draw the *Helotes*, or publick slaves, into rebellion with the allurements of liberty, and hereof being detected by one *Argilus* (whom he had unchastly loved, and now being sent with Letters to *Ariabannus*, suspected he carried a Warrant for his own death, and so opening them, discovered both his plot against himself and the State) he took sanctuary in the Temple of *Minerva*, and there the door being made up (to which end his own Mother is said to have brought the first stone) was starved to death. After his death the *Spartans* sent to *Athens* to accuse *Themistocles* of the same Crime, who being before this banished by the *Ostracism*, lived at *Argos* in great esteem, and was much envied by the *Lacedæmonians* for having done many things in his Countreys behalf, which they looked upon as tending to their prejudice. 'Tis said that certain Letters were found in *Pausanias* his Coffers, intimating a correspondence betwixt them for promoting the affairs of the *Persian* King, which though he assented not unto, yet discovered not the thing, hoping *Pausanias* would either be deterred from his design, or the thing would come out some other way. But the *Spartans* laying it heavily to his charge, and his own Citizens envying his glory, though he sought to purge himself by Letters, yet was he condemned, and the people persuaded to send some to lay hold of him, and bring him up. He perceiving this, fled to *Corcyra*, and thence to *Admetus* King of the *Molossians*, with whom, not being able to continue in safety, he went to *Artaxerxes Longimanus*, by whom he was honourably received, and bountifully entertained (having three Cities given him, one for bread, another for wine, and a third for victuals, to which others add two more for Clothes and Linnen) and died at length at *Magnesia* a natural death, though some wrote, that seeing he was not able to perform his promise to the King of Conquering *Greece*, which by this time had many expert Captains (amongst whom of most especial note was *Cimon*) he poisoned himself.

And of Aristides.

8. (a) Four years after the banishment of *Themistocles* died *Aristides*, (a) Corn. Nepos & Plutarch, in Aristide. whose moderation and abstinency herein appeared, that having born such

Offi-

## SECT. 1.

The Thasians  
envied by the  
Athenians for  
the Mines.

The Lacedæ-  
monians dis-  
tressed.

The begin-  
ning of malice  
betwixt the  
Athenians and  
Lacedæmonians.

The begin-  
ning of the  
hatred be-  
twixt Corinth  
and Athens.

The Mycenæ-  
ans and Ar-  
gives fall out.

1. Offices, yet he died so poor, that he scarcely left wherewith to be buried; *Thucyd. lib. 1.* yet so grateful was the State towards his memory, that his Children were provided for at the publick charge. Eight years after the barrel of *Plataea*, *Cimon* being sent out by the *Athenians*, obtained in one day two notable victories at Sea and Land, over the *Persians* at *Eurymedon*, a River in *Pamphylia*, which brought him and the State no little credit. After this they fell out with the *Thasians*, who by their Colonies had taken possession of the rich Mines of Silver and Gold, which were in that part of *Thrace*, lying upon *Macedonia*, betwixt the two Rivers *Strymon* and *Nyssa*. For these Mines the *Athenians* envied them, and raised such a contention, that they withdrew themselves from the association; whereupon they presently commenced War against them, and overthrew them in a Sea-fight, and afterwards besieged them by Land. The *Thasians* besieged, sent to the *Spartans*, desiring them to invade *Attica*, thereby to divert the *Athenians* from them; and, having promised, they were ready to perform it; but that they were hindered by an Earth-quake, which sorely afflicted them, and whereupon the publick slaves (called *Heletes*) of the posterity of the *Messenians*, took their opportunity, and rebelling, seized upon *Ithome* in the Territories of *Messenia*, being acted by that impression, which *Pausanias* not long before had made upon them.

9. The *Spartans* much distressed by this rebellion, having lost 2000 men by the Earth-quake, besides a great losse in their buildings, after three years the *Thasians* were no longer able to hold out, and yielded to such hard conditions as the *Athenians* laid upon them. The *Lacedæmonians* proceeding but slowly in their War, sent to the *Athenians* for aid, which was sent them, but through sinister suspicions they sent it back again, and this was taken as an affront by the *Athenians*, who were very much moved at it. This was the beginning of that mutual malice and enmity which thenceforth passed betwixt these two States, and proved the rise of abundance of mischief. For, the *Athenians*, presently after the return of their men, forsook the League, which they had entered into with the *Spartans* against the common Enemy, and made an Alliance with the *Argives* their Adversaries, in which they also comprehended the *Thessalians*. And they that were besieged in *Ithome*, at length in the tenth year, being forced to yield, and banished *Peloponnesus* by the *Spartans*, the *Athenians* kindly received them with their Wives and Children, and gave them *Naupactus* to inhabit, which they had lately taken from the *Locrians*, called *Ozola*. A little after this, another great accession was made to the strength of the *Athenians*, and that with the detriment of the *Spartans*; for the inhabitants of *Megara*, Neighbours to the former, being fallen upon with War by the *Corinthians*, betook themselves to them for aid, though heretofore they had been the Allies of *Sparta*. This opportunity the *Athenians* embraced, and thereby got *Megara* into their hands, with *Paga*, a Mart-Town adjoining to it; and fortifying *Megara* as far as *Nisaea* upon the Sea, therein placed a Garrison of their own. And this was also the beginning of that inveterate hatred betwixt *Corinth* and *Athens*.

10. During the War betwixt the *Lacedæmonians* and their slaves, happened another in *Peloponnesus*, betwixt the *Argives* and the inhabitants of *Mycenæ*, upon this occasion. The *Mycenæans* standing high upon the ancient Eminency of their Citie, would not be subject to the *Argives*, as the other Cities of *Argolis* were, but would live according to their own Laws and Customs, having nothing to do with the Commonwealth of *Argos*. Moreover, they contended with them about the Temple and Rites of *Juno*, challenged to themselves the Right of Administering the *Nemean Games*, and whereas during the War with *Xerxes*, the *Argives* had made an order not to help the *Lacedæmonians* at *Thermopylae*, except they would yield them part of the Command, the *Mycenæans* alone joyned themselves to them. These things made the *Argives* jealous that their power increasing with the return of their ancient spirit, they would contend with them for Empire it self, and

*Diodorus ad  
Olymp. 77.  
ana. 4.  
Thucyd.*

\* *Vide Strab.  
lib. 9. pag. 427.*

*Diodorus ad  
Olymp. 78.  
ana. 1.*

## SECT. 2.

*Mycenæ* de-  
stroyed.

The difference  
betwixt the  
Athenians and  
Corinthians,  
about *Megara*  
renewed.

A War be-  
twixt the *Pho-  
cians* & *Dores*.

and therefore of a long time they desired to destroy their Citie. Now seeing they had a good opportunity, whilst the *Spartans* being busied at home could afford them no relief, they raised a great Army out of their own, and the Neighbouring Cities, and therewith setting upon them, overthrew them, and laid close siege to *Mycenæ*. They stoutly resisted for some time, but being exhausted by the War, and the *Lacedæmonians* (being busied with the *Helotes*, and lately distressed by the Earth-quake) not being able to relieve them, the Defendants being most spent, the Citie was taken and levelled with the ground, the inhabitants being made slaves, and the tenth part of them consecrated to the god of *Argos*. So, this Citie happy in more ancient times, a Nurse of famous men, and renowned for worthy exploits, was brought to destruction, and continued desolate to the time wherein our Author lived.

11. The difference raised betwixt the *Athenians* and *Corinthians*, about *Megara*, proceeded so far, as the former invaded *Peloponnesus*, and joyning barrel with the *Corinthians* and *Epidaurians*, were worsted; but engaging the second time at the Island *Cecryphalea*, obtained a victory. Nor long after, the War betwixt the *Athenians* and the inhabitants of *Egina* was again renewed, wherein the former obtained a great victory at Sea, and took seventy Vessels from the Islanders, and then besieged the Citie, to the relief of which 300 men were sent out of *Peloponnesus*. Now the *Corinthians* judging it a fit season to be doing something, for that they were both occupied in the War of *Egina* and *Egyptus*, (where their Forces were assisting *Inarus* the son of *Psammithicus* against *Ariaxerxes*) invaded the Territories of *Megara*. But things hapned otherwise than they expected, for the *Athenians* left not the siege at *Egina*, but sent out of the Citie of *Athens* such as were both above and under age for the War, to the aid of *Megara*, which at length carried away the victory, and forced the *Corinthians* to return home with great losse. At this time the *Athenians* began to build their long Walls from the Citie to the port.

12. After this arose a War betwixt the *Phocians* and the *Dores*. The *Lacedæmonians* being Patrons to the latter, sent to their aid 11500 men, which Army forced the *Phocians* and brought them to terms, but being about to return home, it dared neither do it by the *Crissaean Sea* (or Gulf of *Phocis*) nor through the *Isthmus*, for fear of the *Athenians*, and so staid in *Boeotia* for an opportunity: especially being desired by some principal men of *Athens*, who hating the popular Government, hoped by the help of this Army to dissolve it, and hinder the building of the long Walls, which made much for the interest of the people. But the *Athenians* hearing of this stop came out of the Citie to a man against them, having with them 1000 *Argives*, and a great number of other Allies, so that the whole amounted to 14000. who when the *Thessalian* horse joyned with them gave battle to the *Lacedæmonians* near *Tanagra*, a great and famous Citie of *Boeotia*, not far from *Thebes*. The *Thessalian* horse revolting to the *Lacedæmonians*, they obtained the victory, and then presently marching into *Megara*, wasted it, and so returned home through the *Isthmus*. Yet the *Athenians* resolving not to give way to Fortune, 72 days after this defeat marched again into *Boeotia* to revenge themselves, which by the overthrow of the inhabitants they reduced together with *Phocis*; raised the Walls about *Tanagra*, and compelled the *Opuntians* of *Locris* to give them 100 Hostages of their richest men. At this time of *Argolis* they perfected their long Walls; *Egina* was yielded to them, the Walls of which they pulled down, took away their shipping, and imposed Tribute upon them for the future. And *Tolmides* their Captain coasting *Peloponnesus* with a Fleet, burnt the *Lacedæmonian* Arcenal at *Gythium*, took *Chalcis*, a Town of the *Corinthians*, and landing his men, overthrew the *Sicyonians* in fight.

13. But in *Egypt* the *Athenians* had bad success, *Inarus* being taken and Crucified, and few of their men after six years returning home: fifty Gallies also being sent to their relief were most of them taken and sunk by the *Phocians*.



## SECT. 2.

*Plænicians*. Other Expeditions they made also with like success, save that they overthrew the *Sicyonians* again in battle; which made them after three years willing to make truce with the *Peloponnesians* for five years, by the advice of *Cimon*, whom being banished by the *Ostracism* they had recalled, during which time they warred in (b) *Cyprus* under conduct of *Cimon*, and in *Egypt* in the service of *Amyrteus* the King, with good success. (c) After this followed the *Holy War*, as they called it, the *Spartans* taking the Temple at *Delphos* from the *Phocians*, and giving it up to the *Delphians*, from whom the *Athenians* again took it and restored it to the *Phocians*. Afterwards the (d) *Bæotians* revolted from the *Athenians*, who thereupon in great indignation under conduct of *Solmides* invaded them, took *Charonea* and other Towns, in which putting a Garrison, and returning homewards light upon the Enemy, who killed and took them all, and amongst others *Solmides* was slain, who had made this bold attempt, contrary to the advice of *Pericles* the Son of *Xanthippus*, who now had begun to grow eminent. Here the *Athenians* exceedingly dished, to redeem their prisoners parted with all *Bæotia*, and not long after all *Eubœa* revolted from them, their credit being now on the decaying hand. To the recovery of this Island *Pericles* was sent, who scarce being landed, news came that *Megara* had also revolted, and that the *Peloponnesians* were about to invade *Attica*.

They part with *Bæotia*, & *Eubœa* revolts.

14. This constrained him to return, and the *Peloponnesians* accordingly invaded *Attica* under the command of *Plisfonax* the son of *Parfanias* the *Lacedæmonian* King. They went all as far as *Fleusine*; but *Pericles* there opposing them, corrupted *Claniridas* Counsellor to *Plisfonax* with gold, whereby they were deterred, and returned home, where *Cleandridas* was rewarded with death, and *Plisfonax* with banishment. *Pericles* having so easily dispatched his affairs here, returned into *Eubœa*, which he wholly reduced, pulled down the walls of *Chalcis*, and banished only the Inhabitants of *Hestia*, which he peopled with a Colony of his own Citizens. This various fortune inclined both sides to an accommodation, and procured a League to be made for thirty years betwixt the *Athenians* and *Lacedæmonians*, with their Allies on both sides, whereby *Nisæa*, *Achaia*, *Paga*, and *Tezene*, were set free by the *Athenians*, and it was made lawful for any City that had not been associate with either part, to join it self to which it best liked; which Article afterwards was urged by them of *Corcyra* to *Athens*, whereby they demonstrated that they ought not to deny them the liberty of association.

*Pericles* reduceth *Eubœa*, and various fortune inclineth both sides to an accommodation.

15. Six years after, a War arose betwixt the Inhabitants of *Mileus* and those of *Samus*, about *Perene* a Town in *Ionia*, under the Mountain *Mycale*. The *Milesian* affairs going down the wind they sent to *Athens*, where they grievously accused the other, with whom joyned also many of the *Samians* themselves, who not being employed in the Government, desired to have it changed. The *Athensians* being persuaded by them, manned out forty ships against *Samus*, by which power *Pericles* restored the Popular Government, exacted 80 Talents, and taking for Hostages 50 Boys, and as many Men, which they kept in custody at *Lemnus*, put a Garrison of their own into *Samus* it self. But some of the Citizens who had withdrawn themselves into the continent, entered into a conspiracy with the greatest in the Town, and associating to them *Pissuthnes* the Governour of *Sardis* for the *Persians*, with 700 Attendants passed over by night into the Island, and setting upon the People on a sudden (of which they overthrew the major part, and having their Hostages delivered to them by stealth out of *Lemnus*, delivered up the *Athenian* Garrison with the Officers into the hands of *Pissuthnes*) and brake out into open rebellion, and drawing in the *Byzantians* to their party, made War upon *Mileus*.

Stirs in *Samus*. *Pericles* victorious there.

16. The *Athenians*, having notice of this, presently dispatched away 60 Gallies against *Samus*, with 44 of which *Pericles* and his nine Colleagues sailing for *Mileus*, ingaged with the *Samian* Fleet consisting of 70 Vessels (whereof twenty were laden with Soldiers) at the Island *Tragia*, and obtained

(b) *Diodorus* ad *Olymp.* 82. ann. 3.  
(c) *Thucyd.* at *perus*  
(d) *idem.* *Diodorus* ad *Olymp.* 83. ann. 2.

*Thucyd.* lib. 1.  
*Diodorus* ad *Olymp.* 83. ann. 3, & ann. 4. a

*Thucyd.*  
*Diodorus* ad *Olymp.* 84. ann. 4.

## SECT. 2.

obtained the victory, and afterwards with the other part of the Fleet, and a new supply of 40 ships, sailing to *Samus*, overthrew the Inhabitants, and closely besieged them both by Sea and Land. *Pericles*, whilst things were thus ordering, heard that the *Phanicians* were coming to the relief of the besieged, to meet whom he took away with him 60 Gallies, and bent his course towards *Caria*, after whose departure the *Samians* perceiving the Guards thinner than usual, broke out of the Haven, put to flight the ships that lay nearest, overthrew the next, and so recovering the mastery of the adjoining Sea, for 14 dayes exported and imported what they pleased. But *Pericles* being returned with 60 other ships from *Attica* (commanded by excellent Captains) besides 30 others from *Chios* and *Lesbos*, they were besieged closer than ever, and being spent with the War, in the ninth month of the siege yielded up the City. The conditions were hard enough, viz. To demolish their Walls, give Hostages, deliver up their ships, and pay the charge of the War. *Byzantium* affrighted at this success, returned also to its former obedience.

The City yielded to him.

17. Shortly after this, fell out those motions which occasioned the *Corinthian*, and so by consequence laid the foundation of the *Peloponnesian* War, about the second year of the 85th *Olympiad*, and the 25th of the reign of *Artaxerxes Longimanus*.

A. M. 3566.  
*Olymp.* 85. an.  
2. V. C. 314.  
*Artax.* *Longim.* 25.  
*Thucyd.* ut supra  
*Diodorus* ad *Olymp.* 85. ann. 2.

The Inhabitants of the Island *Corcyra*, who were a Colony of the *Corinthians*, some 85 years after their plantation in that Island (formerly called *Phæacum*, situate on the *Illyrian* shore, and being very populous) sent out a Colony which built a City called *Epidamnus*, and afterwards *Dyrachium*, but not without the leave of *Corinth* the Metropolis, which at their request had assigned a Citizen of their own (*Phalimus* of the posterity of *Hercules*) according to the Law and custome, to be Prince of the Colony; and out of the number of their own Citizens and other *Dores* made up the number. This new Colony seated in a very convenient place, in a short time flourished exceedingly, and abounding with plenty of all things, as usually it hapneth, fell out of luxurie unto civil dissensions about the Government, and hereat occasion being taken by their next neighbours the *Taulantians* (who made War upon them) suffered no little damage. At length the People incensed against the great ones expelled them the City, who thereupon betaking themselves to the *Taulantians*, procured them to distress *Epidamnus* both by land and sea, by which the people being straightened sent to the *Corcyraeans* their Founders, and Patrons, humbly to beseech them that by their authority they would make an accommodation betwixt them and their exiles, and bring the *Taulantians* to cease their Hostility. The *Corcyraeans*, whether disapproving the cause, or minding something else, rejected their petition, who then by direction from the Oracle at *Delphos*, betook themselves to the *Corinthians*, Founders of them both, and gave up their Colony into their hands. They were glad of this occasion, and presently promised them all assistance, being angry with the *Corcyraeans*, who upon their good fortune were grown insolent, and paid not the respect to them which was due from a Colonie to the Metropolis; for they were so rich and strong, that giving way to no City of *Greece* in the former respect, they had also 120 Gallies readily furnished, which drew envy upon them from the *Corinthians*, inasmuch that now by the help of their Friends they resolved to chastise them, and sent a Party of Soldiers to defend *Epidamnus*, together with new planters to be imbedded into the Colony.

Stirs at *Epidamnus*, a Colony of the *Corcyraeans*.

Procure a falling out betwixt the *Corcyraeans* and the *Corinthians* their founders.

18. The *Corcyraeans* took this heavily that they should intermeddle with the affairs of their Colony, and being solicited by such exiles as had fled to them, sent a Fleet to *Epidamnus*, commanding it to receive the exiles without delay, and cast out the new Planters with the *Corinthian* Garrison. But the *Epidamnians* refusing to do it, and the *Corinthians* making great provisions for the War, they sent their Ambassadors to *Corinth* with some *Spartans* and *Sicyonians* to bear witness of the matter, and offered to put it to a reference before equal Judges: But the *Corinthians* neglecting their message, as resolved for War, they also made preparation for it. They still continuing the siege

P p 2 before

SECT. 2. before *Epidamnus*, the *Corinthians* sent a Fleet of 75 Gallies, armed with 2000 fighting men thither, but leaving 40 for the carrying on of the siege, with 80 more they engaged with them in a Sea-fight near the Promontory of *Altium*, and got the Victory. The same day *Epidamnus* was yielded to that party they had left at the siege, and so hereby getting the dominion of the Sea far and wide, and growing proud upon their good fortune, they invaded the Territories of the allies of their Enemies, to succour whom the *Corinthians* manned out another Fleet, and landed an Army at *Altium*. They pitched also there their Tents against them, but Winter drawing on, they both departed without any act of Hostility; the *Corinthians* all that year and the year following, out of hatred to the other, using all their endeavours for rigging a new Fleet, and procuring plenty of rowers out of *Peloponnesus* and other parts of *Greece*.

The *Corcyraans* victorious.

The design of the *Athenians* herein.

19. The *Corcyraans* before this time not joyned in alliance with any other State, now began to look about them how they might strengthen themselves. They sent to *Athens*, desiring to enter into society with that State, and to have assistance from it; and the *Corinthians* having notice hereof, sent their Ambassadors to oppose them. The *Corcyraans* were first heard, making a large discourse, and then the *Corinthians* larger than they. The matter was brought twice before the People, which at length resolved that a defensive League should be made with them of *Corcyra*, that the one should assist the other in case they were assaulted by an Enemy: but to make any invasion assistance was denied, lest they should break the Leagues formerly made with other States. The *Athenians* resolved on this course, for that they saw plainly they must have War with the *Peloponnesians*; and therefore desired to have the *Corcyraans* who were very powerful at Sea, on their side; and they thought it would be for their interest to have the *Corinthians* and their associates spend their stock upon those of *Corcyra*, which Island they also looked upon as very commodious for passage either into *Sicilie* or *Italy*. Ten Triremes therefore were decreed to assist the *Corcyraans*, in case they were in any danger, and three Captains sent, one of which was *Lacedæmonius* the son of *Cimon*, whom *Pericles* envying for his fathers sake, procured that no more assistance should be sent, that so the business might miscarry under him; but afterwards out of plain shame he sent another Squadron of ships which came too late. These Generals had in charge by all means to decline the fight with the *Corinthians*, except they set upon the *Corcyraans*, whom then they were to protect to the utmost.

The *Corinthians* overthrown in a Sea-fight.

20. This Squadron of ten ships joyning with the *Corcyraans* made up their Fleet 120 sail, with which they gave battle to the *Corinthians* (who had 90 of their own, and 60 from their allies) betwixt the Island *Corcyra* and the continent of *Epirus*. This fight (described most accurately by *Thucydides*) was the most valiantly fought, and with the greatest number of ships, of any that to those times had happened betwixt the *Græcians* themselves. The *Athenians* mindful of the charge received from their Superiours, at the first rather sought to deter, than to fight with the Enemy, succouring the *Corcyraans* in some places; but they being fully worsted and put to flight in that wing wherein they stood, they then with all their might fell upon the *Corinthians*, and spoiled their Victory in that part, and rendered it ambiguous as to both sides. On the same day both parties rallied for a fresh engagement, and they were sounding to the charge, when unexpectedly the *Corinthians* espied twenty *Athenian* ships which *Pericles* had now sent to assist with the other ten, at which sight being utterly discouraged (as fearing more might follow them) they fell off again, to the admiration of the *Corcyraans*, who knew nothing of the coming of these ships. Great slaughter was made on both sides; the *Corinthians* lost thirty ships, and *Corcyraans* seventy, besides 1000 of their men taken prisoners, whom as the *Corcyraans* carried homewards, they took *Anactorium* (a Town situate upon the Bay of *Ambraeia*) in their way, and therein left some Planters of their own. This battle was fought in the 29th year of *Artaxerxes Longimanus*, the tenth of the 86th Olympiad, and

*Thucyd.*  
*Diodorus ad*  
*Olymp. 85. ann.*  
3. & 4.

*Thucyd.*  
*Diodorus ad*  
*Olymp. 86. ann. 1.*

*Plutarch in*  
*Pericle.*

and five years almost before the beginning of the *Peloponnesian* War, *Lysimachus* being *Archon* at *Athens*.

This with other things exasperate them and the *Peloponnesians* against the *Athenians*.

21. Eight hundred of the Prisoners which had been formerly slaves they sold, and the rest (many of them being of the chiefest Rank of the *Corcyraans*) they kindly entertained. Thus was *Corcyra* as it were made victorious, and the *Athenian* ships dismissed, which proved the first cause of the *Corinthians* making War upon the *Athenians*. Others followed, which not only enraged them, but the other *Peloponnesians* against the *Athenians*. *Fo-dea*, a Town situate in the *Isthmus* of *Pallene* (formerly called *Plegra*, and afterwards *Cassandra* from *Cassander* King of *Macedonia*) was a Colony of the *Corinthians*, but associated with the *Athenians*. The Inhabitants thereof were now commanded by the later to demolish that part of their Wall, which was next *Pallene*, to give hostages, and to cast out the Magistrate which every year the *Corinthians* used to send them, and receive no more from them afterwards. This the *Athenians* did, for that they perceived the *Corinthians* to be much exasperated against them, and feared that joyning with *Perdiccas* King of *Macedonia*, with whom they were at odds, and upon whose Kingdom *Potidea* bordered, they would sollicite the place to revolt, and by its example would entice the rest of the Towns thereabout from their alliance. But *Perdiccas* being first aware hereof (against whom the *Athenians* had Armed his brother *Philip* and *Derdas*) in great wrath sent to *Lacedæmon* to stir them up with the other *Peloponnesian* States to make War upon them, and invited the *Potideaans* to revolt, with other Towns in *Thrace*.

22. The *Athenians* being not ignorant of all this, to prevent the revolt of the Towns, sent order to the Captains of the thirty Gallies lately sent into those parts, first to see the execution of their Commands laid upon *Potidea*, and take all possible care that the other places should not give ear to any sinister advice. They of *Potidea* sent to *Athens*, desiring earnestly that nothing of extremity might be put upon them; but yet they dispatched also Ambassadors (together with some from the *Corinthians* their founders) to *Sparta*, to desire aid thence, that they might provide for the worst. Having no good answer from *Athens*, but affrighted with the coming of the Fleet; and on the other hand being promised by the *Lacedæmonians*, that in case the *Athenians* fell upon them, they would straight invade *Attica*, they took the advice of *Perdiccas*, and revolted with the *Chalcidians* and *Bottians*. The *Athenian* Fleet having notice hereof departed from *Thrace*, where they had arrived, and sailing to *Macedonia*, joyn their power with *Philip* and *Derdas* against *Perdiccas*. The *Corinthians* to help their friends at *Potidea*, sent 1600 men, partly of their own, and partly hired out of *Peloponnesus*, of heavy Armour; and 400 besides light Armed, who fourty days after the revolt of the Town came into *Thrace*, under conduct of *Aristeus*, the son of *Asimanius*.

The *Athenians* getting the better.

23. The *Athenians* hearing of this aid, to give greater strength to their affairs in *Thrace*, sent to their former Forces 2000 Armed men, with a Fleet of fourty Gallies, under the Command of *Callias*, the son of *Calliades*, with whom were joyned in Commission four others. Being arrived in *Macedonia*, they found their friends who had joyned with *Philip* to have taken *Therma*, and now intent upon the siege of *Pydna*, and joyned themselves to them; but seeing how their affairs would be endangered by the Conjunction of *Perdiccas* with the *Corinthian* Forces and *Potidea*, they made up a peace with the King, and attempting *Berrhaa* in their way, made haste towards *Potidea*, and pitched their Tents at *Gigonum*, whither another *Athenian* Fleet of seventy Gallies also came. *Perdiccas* the *Macedonian* King again revolted to the *Potideaans*, and joyned himself with the *Corinthian* Army, betwixt which, and that of the *Athenians* ensued a fight, wherein the *Athenians* were worsted in that Wing wherewith they fought with the *Corinthians*; but got the better against *Perdiccas*, which *Aristeus* the *Corinthian* General seeing, after he returned from the pursuit, broke through, and fled into *Potidea*. Of the *Athenians*

*Strabo lib. 9.*  
*cap. 30. lib. 13.*  
*Thucyd. Prod.*  
*Plutarch in Pericle.*  
*Olymp. 87. ann. 1.*

SECT. 2.

## SECT. 2

Closely be-  
siege Potidea.

nians were slain 150. amongst whom *Callias* the General, but of the contrary part few less than 300. The *Athenians* after this victory drew a line against the Town, and a supply of 1600 fresh men being sent from *Athens* under the Command of *Phormio*, closely besieged it both by Sea and Land. These were the mutual causes of the heart-burnings of the *Corinthians* and *Peloponnesians* against the *Athenians*, &c. of the *Athenians* against them, about *Coreyra*, and *Potidea*, both of them Colonies of the *Corinthian*, of which the *Athenians* defended the former against its founders, whilst they endeavoured to chastise it, and they again inticed the later, with other Towns which were Tributaries to *Athens*, to renounce their allegiance to that State.

24. *Potidea* being thus blocked up, the *Corinthians* were highly concerned, both for the Town itself, and such of their own Citizens as were therein; and resolving that it was no time now to be idle, sent to their associates of *Peloponnesus* to meet them at *Lacedæmon*, where they grievously inveighed against the *Athenians*. Liberty being given to every man to speak, several others also sharply accused them, but especially the Deputies of *Megara*, for many injuries, and chiefly for that, contrary to the agreement made with them, they had interdicted them the Ports and Market of *Athens*. The *Corinthians* cunningly suffered the rest to speak first, that by them the *Lacedæmonians* might be incensed against the *Athenians*, but then, after all, more fully and earnestly laid open their faults, aggravated the injuries received from them, pressed the great danger which threatened *Peloponnesus* from their power, checked the *Lacedæmonians* for their too much remissness in vindicating the cause of their distressed friends and allies, and plainly declared, that if now they would not do it, they must strengthen themselves with other confederates.

25. It hapned at this time that there were at *Lacedæmon* some Ambassadors sent from *Athens* upon other business, who understanding how things went, desired also to be heard, and this being obtained, sought to allay the stomach of the *Peloponnesians* by calm and prudent reasons. They desired not to be understood, as though they came to plead the cause of their State which they neither could acknowledge as guilty, nor own them as their Judges: but desired, and advised them not rashly to resolve upon any violent course, nor give credit to all that was objected, untill such time as they could thoroughly understand the case; for that things being once confounded could not easily again be composed. They mentioned the commodities of peace, and the evils that come by War; charged these calumnies upon the envy of their accusers, who could not behold the power of *Athens* without prejudice, though it was obtained no otherwise than as the reward of virtue, as the associates themselves could not but witness, who knew well enough how the *Athenians* merited at *Marathon* of all *Greece*, as afterwards at *Salamine*; and they averred, that they had used their power so moderately, as none had any reason to complain. That they had increased their strength they denied not, which to endeavour was agreeable to the Law of nature, as also that the weaker should obey the more potent; so that it was without injury, though not without force, which was absolutely necessary for the maintenance of any command, and was practised not onely by themselves, but the *Lacedæmonians* also, and would ever so be in the like cases. Again, they laid before them the uncertainty of the event of War, and concluded with a religious profection, concerning their innocency, and desire of peace.

26. The *Lacedæmonians* having heard both parties, debated the business amongst themselves. They were generally inclined to make War presently upon the *Athenians* as the Authors of many injuries, which *Archidamus*, one of their Kings, and a very prudent, and moderate man observing, by a grave speech dehorted them, not from undertaking a War for the safety of their Allies, but rushing into it; for that the strength of *Athens*, and of their own State (as he said) being compared, there was need of a sufficient time to make provision for it, in which not onely the assistance of the *Græcians*, but of the *Barbarians* also was requisite. He shewed that the *Athenians* could not be subdued

The States of  
*Peloponnesus*  
accuse the  
*Athenians* at  
*Lacedæmon*.

Their Am-  
bassadors an-  
swer in their  
behalf.

*Archidamus*  
King of *Lacedæmon*, his  
prudent dis-  
course.

*Thucyd.*

## SECT. 2.

Which is  
decreed by  
*Stenocleides*,  
and War is  
decreed.

The *Lacedæmonians*  
enquire at *Delphos*  
about it.

They send fri-  
volous mes-  
sages to *Athens*.

subdued by the waiting of *Artaxerxes*, having all provisions in a readynesse, and that it was no policy for them being unprovided to deal with such an Enemy: but that rather the thing was to be deferred till things could be in a readynesse, in which time the *Athenians* might perhaps be in a better mind, and give satisfaction without constraint; and this could not turn to the disgrace of the *Lacedæmonians*, in that they followed the example of their Ancestors: Lastly, that by how much they took Arms with more advice, they should by so much conclude with more happiness and celerity. But *Sthenelaidas* one of the *Ephors*, and who spake last, dissenting from the judgement of *Archidamus*, as violators of the former Leagues, and War was decreed accordingly, not so much at the instance of their confederates, as out of fear of the growing power of *Athens*. This was done in the 14th year after the ending of the *Eubæan War*, and the Truce made for 30 years.

27. The *Lacedæmonians* acquainted the Deputies with what was resolved; but withall told them they would signifie it to all their associates, that if so be the War should be decreed by the common consent, it might be carried on with their joyned force: then departed they to their several homes to know the minds of their Superiours, and the *Athenian* Ambassadors returned. After their departure, the *Lacedæmonians*, before the matter should any further proceed, sent to *Delphos* to enquire of the Oracle concerning the event of the War, whence receiving such answer as they wished, they again sent for their Allies, and propounded the business to them, who unanimously decreed the War, which was exceedingly pressed by the *Corinthians*, who, before this meeting, for fear of the losse of *Potidea* had sent about it. It being not expedient to begin the War unprovided, all were desired to repair home, and make all provisions possible (in which was almost spent a year) and in the mean time Ambassadors were sent to *Athens* to make demands, of which, if any were denied, a more specious pretence might be obtained for the War.

28. In the first Embassie they demanded the expiation of a piacular offence, in which *Pericles* was involved by his Mothers kindred. For, knowing him to be a man of great Counsel and courage, by all means they endeavoured upon this account to have him banished; but the other objected to the *Lacedæmonians*, that they had drawn out of the Temple of *Neptune* some of their *Heirot*, and slain them, and starved *Pausanias* to death in that of *Palus Chalcidæa*, where he took Sanctuary. After this the *Spartans* sent to require them to obtain from *Potidea*, to set at liberty *Egina*, and especially they pressed them to let the Inhabitants of *Megara* have the liberty of their Port and Market, without which they must expect nothing but War: but to none of these demands was there given any satisfying answer, the *Megarians* being accused for appropriating to their own use the ground which belonged to the goddess of *Eleusine*, and receiving such fugitive slaves as fled from *Athens*. In the third message *Ramphius* and his Collegues added but this to the other demands, that the *Lacedæmonians* were desirous of peace, and would grant it, in case the *Athenians* would suffer all the *Græcians* to be free, and live according to their own Laws. These things thus often the *Spartans* demanded, to amuse the other party till they themselves could be provided, and to catch at a specious pretence for a quarrell.

29. The *Athenians* upon the last message called the Assembly of the people to deliberate about the matter, that they might send a clear and positive answer once for all. Many speaking pro and con, at length *Pericles* the most excellent of all the *Athenians* of that age, both for doing and speaking, with his eloquence (wherewith he was aided by the Poets to Thunder and Lighen) easily drew the multitude to his mind. After he had inveighed against the *Lacedæmonians* as swollen with envy, he excused themselves, and encouraged the people from their ability to undertake the War. He advised that this answer should be returned: That the

*Thucyd. lib. 1.  
Diodorus ex  
Ephoro ad O-  
lymp. 87.  
ann. 2.*

decreed

SECT. 2. decree against them of *Megara* should be rescinded, in case the *Lacedæmonians* would give such freedom of their City to the *Athenians* and other of the associates: that they would set all Cities under their jurisdiction at liberty, which were free before, when the League should be entered into; provided the *Spartans* would do the same, and suffer such as were under them to live according to their own customs, and not to be tried to those of *Laconia*: and lastly, that they were content to be judged concerning the things in controversy, according to the leagues; neither would they first make War, but effectually deny of denial. He added, that this was both just and honourable, and if they undertook the War cheerfully, they should find their Enemies less considerable: that out of the greatest extremities the greatest honour was wont to accrue both to their State in general, and to each Citizen in particular, which he made good by instancing in the *Median War*, at which time the City was far less considerable than at the present, and whence it arrived to that pitch of greatness: he told them it was fit they should imitate their Ancestors, and leave not the Empire received from them diminished unto posterity.

30. Why *Pericles* should be so earnest for the War (a) several reasons have been alleged, and this (b) amongst the rest, that he was not able to make account for the publick money he had received to build a Port in the Castle to the honour of *Minerva*. He consumed abundance of treasure in this work, and none looking after him, diverted the publick money taken up under that pretence to other uses. Whilst he considered hereof, and far sorrowful at home, *Alcibiades* a Boy and his Sisters Son (whom after his Brother in Laws death he brought up in his own house, and who afterwards became very eminent) came and asked him why he was so sad, to whom he answered, because he knew not how to give an account of his Office, at which the Boy replied, *Study therefore rather how thou mayst not need to give an account of it*. This most prudent man destitute of advice from himself, used this of a child, and for this reason perswaded the people to the War, that being intranced therein they might have no leisure to call him to account for the disbursement of the money. What ever his motives were, the People (c) decreed what he proposed, and answered the *Lacedæmonians* particularly according to what he said, and in general, that they would do nothing they had enjoyed them, but were ready to acquit themselves of those matters laid against them, before equal and indifferent Judges; and with this answer the Ambassadors returned to *Lacedæmon*, whence no more came. These were the quarrels which foreran the War, being begun about the affairs of *Epidamnus* and *Corcyra*. Notwithstanding this disagreement, yet they continued commerce with each other, went to and fro without any publick Officer, or Herauld; but yet not without jealousy of one another. For these things that hapned made confusion in the Leagues, and ministred matter for War.

31. Several Learned Men flourished in this space, as (a) *Æschylus* the Tragedian, (b) *Iscus* a famous Physician of *Tarentum* in *Italy*, (c) *Anaxagoras* the *Clazomenian* Philosopher, who was defended by his Scholar *Pericles*, when accused of Atheism; (d) *Panyasis* a famous Poet; *Pericles* himself, the Son of *Xanthippus*, accounted by (e) *Cicero* the first *Athenian* Orator. Besides these, (f) *Charondas* and *Zaleucus* both Scholars of *Pythagoras*, whereof the former gave Laws to the *Thurians*, and the other to the *Locrians*; *Melissus*, *Protagoras* the Atheist, and *Empedocles*, (g) all who flourished about the 84th Olympiad. *Herodotus* of *Halicarnassus*, who being sent to *Thurium* in *Italy* with some new Planters to restore the Colony there, lived to the beginning of the *Peloponnesian War* which he mentioneth, and in the 42d year of his age, about the third of the 84th Olympiad, recited his Book at (h) *Athens* in the Assembly of the *Panathenæa*, by the emulation of which *Thucydides* then young was much moved; so that afterwards this stirred him up to write. (i) *Euripides* the Tragedian, the Scholar of *Anaxagoras*, (k) *Sophocles*, who was chosen General of the *Athenian* Forces, and (l) *Phrynichus* the Comædian, and (m) *Pindar* a *Theban* the Prince of *Lyrick Poets*, who died aged 85 years, in the second of the 86th Olympiad.

(a) Vide Plutarch in Pericle.  
(b) Idem ibid. Val. Max. l. 3. c. 1. ext. exempl. Diadorm ut supra.

(c) Thucyd. in fine. lib. 1.

(a) Anonymus ad Ol. 76. an. 4.  
(b) Steph. in Tages.  
(c) Plutarch in Pericle.  
(d) Anonym. ad Olymp. 78. an. 1.  
(e) Is Bryto.  
(f) Diodorus.  
(g) Diog. Laert. Anonymus.

(h) Vossius de script. Græcis.  
(i) Euseb.  
(k) Schol. in vitam Anonym. Suidas.  
(m) Idem.

Olympiad. (n) *Menon* an *Athenian* in the year before the beginning of the *Peloponnesian War* (according to the account of *Thucydides*) *Apseudes* entering into his Office of *Archon*, began his Cycle of the Moon, containing nineteen years. In this space, though not precisely, the *Lunations* do recur; so that if the *Quadrature* of the Moon fall out as at this day this year; the same shall return the same day of the nineteenth year succeeding. Either because it was written in letters of Gold, or for the precious use of it, it obtained to be called, as still it is, the *Golden Number*. It is found by adding an unit to the year of our Lord, and dividing the whole by 19. The remainder shall be the Cycle of the Moon; or if nothing remain, the Cycle is out; that is *Nineteen*.

SECT. 3.  
(a) Cappelus Confortius c. 18. Alon. var. Hist. lib. 10. c. 7. & lib. 13. c. 12.

## SECT. III.

From the beginning of the Peloponnesian War to the ending thereof, containing the space of 27 years.

1. IN the fifteenth year after the recovery of *Eubœa* by the *Athenians*, and the truce concluded for thirty years; the fifth month after the battle fought at *Podida*; in the 48th year of the Priesthood of *Chrysis* the Priest of *Argos*; *Æneias* being the principal *Ephorus* at *Sparta*, *Pythodorus Archon* at *Athens*; in the first year of the 87th Olympiad, the 33th of the Reign of *Artaxerxes Longimanus*, of the World the 3574, began the *Peloponnesian War*, henceforth there being no commerce with one another without an Officer at Arms, and Hostility exercised without intermission.

Thucyd. lib. 2. ad an. 1. Diodorus ad Olymp. 87. an. 1. Et X. an. Hælonic. lib. 2.

The Peloponnesian War beginneth with the surprising of Plataea by the Thebans. Which the Towns-men presently recover.

2. In the second month of *Pythodorus* his Government, and the beginning of the Spring, 300 *Thebans* seized upon *Plataea*, by the treachery of some in the Town, being associate to the *Athenians*; for they perceiving a War to be drawing on, and knowing that Town to be always in peace adverse to them, thought good to make sure of it betimes. The Inhabitants thinking more to have got in, than indeed did, at the first yielded it, but then again apprehending the truth, resolved to rescue their liberty, and set by night upon the *Thebans*, whom they knew to be weary, ignorant of the Town, and would be much troubled with the dirt, by reason of abundance of rain which fell that night. The device prospered, and they slew almost half the number, taking the rest prisoners, which were 180, and amongst them *Eurymachus* the Author of this Expedition. It hapned that from *Thebes* another Party came too late to the help of their fellows if need should be, who seeing what was done, considered whether they should not set upon such *Plataeans* as were abroad in the Country, and waste it round about, thereby to redeem their friends. The *Plataeans* (as the *Thebans* said) sent to them, being afraid of this, and offered them to release the prisoners if they would forbear to spoil their grounds; but in case they did, threatened to put them to death; whereupon the *Thebans* withdrew; and yet for all this the *Plataeans* put their friends to death. The *Plataeans* on the other hand alleged, that they never made any promise to dismiss them; but in case they should agree in treaty. But they sent to *Athens* to give them notice there of this attempt made upon their Town.

3. The message being carried before the *Thebans* were put to death, the *Athenians* sent word to *Plataea*, that they would do nothing against them till they heard further from them; after they had first seized upon such *Bœotians* as were in their Dominions. Then after the truce was known, they sent an Army which victualled the place, and taking out the useless multitude of both Sexes, put a Garrison therein. Thus the League being plainly broken on both sides, both parties prepared themselves for the War, both sent away Ambassadors to the *Persian*, and other *Barbarians*, and set themselves to obtain new alliances. Now were old Prophecies and Sayings in all mens mouths,

Q

which

## SECT. 3.

The Lacedæmonians and Athenians heads of the two Parties.

What Greeks stood with the Lacedæmonians.

And who with the Athenians.

Archidamus invaded Attica.

The Provision of the Athenians for War.

which they interpreted according to their affection. Most were inclined towards the *Lacedæmonians*, who professed themselves the vindicators of the liberty of *Greece*, and hating the *Athenians*, either for that they desired to shake off their yoke, or feared to undergo it. On the *Lacedæmonian* side were all the *Peloponnesians* except the *Argives* and *Achaans*, who were friends to both, all but the Inhabitants of *Pellene* amongst the latter, who at the beginning sided with the *Lacedæmonians*, and afterwards the rest also joyned themselves to them. Without *Peloponnesus* the *Megarians*, *Phocians*, *Locrians*, *Bœotians*, *Ambraciots*, *Leucadians*, *Anactorians*. The *Corinbians*, *Megarians*, *Sicyonians*, *Pellenians*, *Eleans*, *Ambraciots*, and *Leucadians*, furnished them with ships; the *Bœotians*, *Phocians*, and *Locrians*, sent out Horse-men, and the rest of the States supplied them with Foot.

4. With the *Athenians* stood the *Chians*, *Lesbians*, *Plateans*, *Messenians* inhabiting *Naupactus*, most of the *Acarnanians*, the *Corcyraans*, *Zacynthians*, and the rest of the tributary Cities all over, the *Carians* inhabiting the Sea-coasts, the *Dorians* their neighbours, *Ionia* upon the *Hellepont*, several Towns of *Thrace*, and other places not few, the Islands lying betwixt *Peloponnesus* and *Crete* towards the Sun-rising, and all the *Cyclades* except *Melus* and *Thera*. The *Chians*, *Lesbians*, and *Corcyraans*, afforded shipping, the rest, men and money, as *Thucydides* writeth, who in this Catalogue passeth by *Eubœa* and *Samos*, though they abounded with shipping, and sided with the *Athenians*. Presently after the action about *Plataea*, the *Lacedæmonians* sent abroad to their associates to meet at the *Isthmus*, which they did accordingly, two third parts out of each of the Cities. Here *Archidamus* the *Spartan* King and Captain General, having first gravely advised them not to trust too much to their own strength, though they made up such an Army as the eldest of them had never seen, sent to *Athens* to see if that City would now remit any of it's former rigor; but the messenger being sent back without hearing, he marched for *Attica*, the *Bœotians* at the same time having invaded the Territories of the *Plateans*.

5. Ere *Archidamus* invaded *Attica*, *Pericles* his friend, who by the *Athenians* with nine others was appointed General, foreseeing that if he should spare his Villages, either upon the account of their particular friendship, or by order from the *Spartan* State, to render him suspected, it would create him abundance of envy and ill will, to avoid all suspicion, called the People together, and gave the said Villages to the Commonwealth, and advised them to gather all their things out of the Villages, and contain themselves within the City, to take care of their shipping, and not to neglect their confederates, from whom they might be supplied with money, which together with good counsel and advice is the sinews of War. He told them that they had 600 Talents of Tribute yearly coming in, besides other revenues; that they had in the Castle left 6000 Talents of Silver ready coyned, besides in bullion and plate 500 Talents more, and money in the Temples, besides forty pound of pure Gold about the statue of *Pallas*, which it was lawful to use in extremity, making it up again afterwards. They had ready 19000 Foot-men, and 1200 Horse, besides others that used bows on Horse-back, and 6000 Archers on foot: of Gallies fit for sail 200, and he added other things to make them courageously begin the War. They obeyed him in fetching their goods into the City, and shutting up themselves there, though much to their prejudice and trouble; but such authority had he with the people, having first, to ingratiate himself, enlarged the authority and liberty of the multitude, whereby afterwards in effect he ruled alone. They set themselves also with all their might to the rigging of their Fleet, and gathering together the forces of their Confederates.

6. The *Peloponnesian* Army entered *Attica* by *Oenoe* a Castle of the *Athenians*, upon the frontiers of *Bœotia*, and there *Archidamus* staid, providing all things for the storm. Being somewhat long in his preparations, his adversaries thence found matter wherewith to accuse him, as one who affected the

## SECT. 2.

The Athenians send a Fleet into Peloponnesus to divert their enemies.

They eject the Inhabitants of Egina, and plant a Colony of their own in the Island.

An Eclipse of the Sun on the third of August.

the *Athenians*, and on purpose before at the *Isthmus*, and now also protracted the time till they should have removed all their goods out of *Attica*. He indeed thought they might be inclined to a composure for the saving of their goods, and therefore did delay his march, but finding no meslage sent, and not being able to take the Castle, he removed about 80 dayes after the *Thebans* entered *Plataea*, in the height of Summer, Corn being now ripe, and invaded *Attica*, which he wasted as far as *Acharnae*, the strongest Garrison of all the Countrey, and but seven or eight miles distant from *Athens*. When they in the City understood this, having not suspected he would have peirced so far, and afflicted for the losse they sustained, they began to be much moved, (especially they of *Acharnae*, who seemed to themselves a considerable part in the State) and tumultuously gathering together, now began to rail at *Pericles*, for that he being General did not lead them out against the Enemy. He would not call the assembly nor any Company together, for fear they should resolve rashly upon any thing; but was very careful of the defence of the City, and sent out a party of horse, of which some were *Thessalian* Auxiliaries, to restrain the excursions of the Enemy into the parts adjacent, which was beaten back with some losse. At length the *Peloponnesians* seeing the *Athenians* would not come out to fight, removed from *Acharnae*, and wasting other places, departed through *Bœotia* into *Peloponnesus*, and went severally to their own homes.

7. Whilest they were yet in *Attica*, the *Athenians*, to divert them, sent out a Fleet of 100 Gallies, on which were aboard 1000 Soldiers of heavy Armour, and 400 Archers, with which the *Corcyraans* joyned 50 Vessels more, and other associates contributed their numbers. Coasting the *Peloponnesian* shore, besides other harm done, they landed in *Laccœna*, and had taken *Methone*, then unwall'd, and meanly manned, but that *Brasidas* the *Spartan* with 200 men brake through, and getting into the Town, defended it so, as they were glad to retreat to their ships. Then went they to *Elis*, where they seized on *Phia*, and staying there two dayes, harraied the Countrey, and overthrew such as were sent to restrain them: but their ships being sorely tossed with a Tempest, and hardly recovering the Haven of *Phia*, and understanding also that greater forces were coming against them, they departed thence, and grievously distressed such places as they came to. At the same time also another Fleet was sent from *Athens* to infect the *Locrians*, and defend *Eubœa*, which did much harm upon the Coasts of *Loeris*, took *Thronum*, took Hostages with them, and overthrew the *Locrians* that came out to resist them. In the same Summer the *Athenians* cast out the Inhabitants of *Egina*, for that they imputed to them the especial cause of the War, and judged that Island convenient for them to place a Colony therein of their own. The *Lacedæmonians* out of requital for the kindness received from them during the Earth-quake, and War with their slaves, and out of hatred to the *Athenians*, gave them *Thyrea* and its Territories to inhabit (which separate *Laccœna* from the Countrey of *Argos*, reaching as far as the Sea;) but such of them as this place for its straightness could not receive, were dispersed up and down *Greece* it self.

8. This same Summer, at the change of the Moon, hapned such an Eclipse of the Sun (at which time saith *Thucydides*, it is judged that it can onely happen) that at Mid-day the Stars were seen, which according to the *Julian* account hapned on the third day of August, as the Astronomical Tables demonstrate. About the same time the *Athenian* Fleet of 100 Gallies having in *Acarnania* taken several Towns, came to *Cephalœnia*, an Island lying over against *Acarnania* and *Leucas*, which being inhabited in four Towns, they reduced without one stroke, and so returned home. In the beginning of Autumn, the *Athenians* with a vast Army invaded *Megara*, which wasting in an hostile manner they returned, and so they did once a year, till they got *Nisæa* into their hands. At this time also they placed a Garrison in *Sialante*, an Island belonging to the *Locrians* of *Opius*, which hitherto no body had peopled, lest it should prove an Harbour for Robbers that from *Loeris* might prey



## SECT. 2.

The manner of burying those who died in the Wars.

prey upon *Embea*. In Winter, according to their custom, they solemnised the Funeral for those that first died in the War on this manner. First, their bones for three days were laid out to be seen in a Tent, where it was lawful for their friends to come, and do such duties as was usual to the dead. Then when they were carried out, each Tribe came, and putting the bones of their fellows into *Cypresse* Coffins, carried them away on Chariots, and one Chast was carried empty for such as had not been found; the women of their kindred making lamentation as for them. Then were they buried in a publick Sepulchre, in the most famous Suburb of the Citie, called *Ceramicus*, where all slain in War were constantly buried, except they that fell at *Marathon*, who for their greater honour were buried in the place of the fight. After they were buried, some one Eminent for prudence and eloquence made a Funeral Oration in commendations of them, which at this time was most excellently performed by *Pericles*. The scope of his speech was to shew they deserved immortal glory for shedding their blood in their Countreys behalf, and to excite the living to seek after such renown. With this Winter ended the first year of the *Peloponnesian* War, whose History for its influence into the whole is the more considerable.

9. In the Spring the *Peloponnesians* again under conduct of *Archidamus* their former General invaded *Attica*, at which time fell also upon it, a most fearfull plague, as it is described by *Thucydides*, who was sick of it, as seldom hapned; during the rage of which they plundered and wasted the Countrey all over. *Pericles* returning to his former Counsell, hindred the Citizens who were very desirous to issue out and fight, and provided an hundred ships, with which and fifty of the associates of *Chius* and *Lesbus*, armed with 4000 foot and 300 horse, he departed to *Peloponnesus*, the Coasts of which he fore wasted, and forced the Army to return home to defend it, which they were willing to do also because of the plague, after they had been in *Attica* fourty days. After the return of *Pericles*, his Army was sent under the Command of *Agnon* and *Cleopompus*, against *Chalcis* and *Potidea*, at the later of which it was seized by the pestilence, and greatly diminished, and *Agnon* with 1500. which remained of 4000, returned home. But the people being sore afflicted by the plague and War together, were angry now against *Pericles*, as him that moved them to take up Arms, who calling them together sharply reproved them; and they confessed what he said to be true, and that he had advised them upon good grounds, but being intraged at their private discommodities, they fined him 80 Talents, and banished him the Citie, and yet presently after, according to the inconstant nature of the multitude, recalled, and created him General with full power.

10. In the same Summer a Navy from *Peloponnesus* of an hundred Gallies fell upon *Lazynibus*, an Island addicted to the *Athenians*, which wasting, and being not able to do any more, they returned home. The *Peloponnesians* also in the end of Summer sent Ambassadors to the *Persian* King to desire aid, who were also commanded to go to *Sitalces* King of *Thrace*, to desire a League of confederacy with him; but they were taken near the *Hellepont* by some *Athenians*, through the assistance of *Sadocus* the Kings son, and free of *Athens*, and being brought thither, in revenge for some *Athenians*, Merchants, and others, slain in *Peloponnesus*, they were put to death. In Winter every Gallies were sent from *Athens* to *Naupactus* to secure the Straights lying betwix *Peloponnesus* and *Atolia*, and other six to *Caria* and *Lycia*, to gather money, under Command of *Melesander*, who in a fight was there slain with part of his forces. *Potidea* now also being in despair of any supply from *Peloponnesus*, and sore afflicted with famine (which raged so far as they are man's flesh) yielded to the *Athenians*. Of the besieged such as were Males had liberty to depart with one Garment apiece, Females with two, and a little provision. The Citie being thus emptied was replenished with a Colony from *Athens*, to which there this siege stood in 2000 Talents. And so the second year of the War ended with this Winter.

11. In

## SECT. 2.

Idem lib. 2. ad am. 3.

*Archidamus* besiegeth *Plataea*, which holdeth out.

11. In the next Spring *Archidamus* the *Lacedemonian* King marched against *Plataea*, and besieged it. The *Plataeans* sent to him to desire he would forbear to use any extremity against them; but he returned them very harsh conditions, requiring them to forsake the *Athenians*, to give up their Citie, and all they hid, for the time of War, and in the mean time to go and dwell somewhere else, promising that as soon as the War should be over, they should have all entirely restored to them. They desired a Truce, till such time as they could send to the *Athenians*, their associates, and know their mind, who being utterly against it, they then sent *Archidamus* word, that they were resolved to undergo whatsoever the chance of War should lay upon them, for that they neither could, nor would revolt from the *Athenians*. He then fell of wasting their grounds, and with all his might attempted the Citie, which was as valiantly and powerfully defended by the Inhabitants. No way taking, at length the *Spartans* attempted it by fire, which consumed most part of the Town, leaving but a few houses for the *Plataeans* to live in. Yet still the matter succeeded not, and at length despairing to take the place by force, they raised a Wall round about it, which they fenced with a double Ditch to shut them in, and leaving sufficient Guards, departed home. Before this the Townsmen had sent out to *Athens* all their uselesse Company. This same year the *Athenians* fought with various successe in *Thrace* and *Acarnania*.

12. In the later end of this Summer, and the 6th Moneth of the year died *Pericles*, of the Epidemical disease, or the Plague, as *Plutarch* reporteth, though not by its sudden force as others, but in a way of Consumption, which, if so, was extraordinary. As he drew on towards his end, some of the principal men of *Athens* that were left alive of his ancient friends, as they sate by him, not thinking that he understood any thing, discoursed much of his great and many victories and Trophies which he had created, placing therein the main of his commendation. He understanding the discourse, interrupted them, saying, that he wondred they should especially take notice of those things, which fortune made common to him with others, and make no mention of that which was most worthy and remarkable, for *No man, saith he, upon mine account hath put on a black Garment*. A man he was to be had in constant admiration, not onely for his equity and mildnesse, which he shewed in so many businesses of concernment, and such enmities as were exercised against him; but also for his greatnesse of spirit, that this he especially charged upon himself, not to indulge his anger in so great power, or his malice; neither to be implacable towards his greatest adversary: and this seemeth to be the reason that he enjoyed the surname of *Olympius* without envy, because he was of so sweet a disposition, & in the greatest power preserved his life unblemished. The great misse the *Athenians* had of him made them soon perceive what man he was, whose power whilst alive they ill bore, as dassing their eyes; when dead, and they had experience of others, they confessed that no man could in that height of place have carried himself more moderately, or in that modesty more gravely, and that height of power which used to be branded with the name of Tyranny, appeared in him to have been the wholom preservative of the Commonwealth; such depravednesse of manners, and excess of wickednesse falling upon all things after his death, which he weakening and keeping under as long as he lived, procured that it exceeded not the strength of the remedy.

*Archidamus* the third time invadeth *Attica*.

13. The Summer following being the fourth year of the *Peloponnesian* War, rising, the *Peloponnesians* and their confederates made the third invasion of *Attica*, when Corn was now ripe, under the Conduct of the same *Archidamus*, which they wasted up and down as long as their provisions lasted. In the mean time all the Island *Lesbus* (except *Methymna*) revolted from the *Athenians*, having had a great desire to do it before the War, but that the *Lacedemonians* would not receive them. A Fleet of fourty ships were then presently dispatched from *Athens*, and War was denounced to the Inhabitants of *Mitylene*, except they delivered up their ships, and

*Attica* the second time invaded, when it was seized with a fearfull plague.

*Potidea* delivered up to the *Athenians*.

*Pericles* dieth.

His commendation.

*Diodorus*.

Idem in *Pericle*.

*Thucyd. lib. 3. initio.*

## SECT. 2.

The Athenians  
besiege Mit-  
ylene.

and pulled down the walls; which being denied, War was made upon them, their Gallies put to flight, and the Haven blocked up. Hereupon they desired a Treaty, and obtained truce to send an Ambassage to *Athens* about a Peace; but in the mean while they sent underhand Ambassadors to *Lacedæmon*, to desire a straight League and alliance, with present aid. The Ambassadors being ordered by the *Spartans* to stay at *Olympia* at the time of the solemnity of the 88th *Olympiad* pleaded there their cause, and in the name of their City were received into the League, and assistance out of hand was promised to them. Another Expedition was then resolved on into *Attica*, but the *Spartans* being ready, at the *Isthmus*, whereas their associates loitered, and the *Athenians* then with a Fleet of 20 ships preid upon *Peloponnesus*, they being advertized of the losse they sustained in *Laconia*, returned home.

14. Yet the *Peloponnesians* in performance of their promise made to the *Mitylenæans*, dispatched away a Fleet of 40 Gallies, which found another from *Athens* to oppose it, consisting of 100; for the *Athenians* now abounded in shipping, having ready furnished 250 Gallies, on which they expended much, so as to defray their expences, they now first of all were assailed, exacting yet from their confederates the usual Tributes, which they paid with much repining. At the same time the *Mitylenæans* and the rest of the *Lesbians* made War upon the *Methymnæans*, who persisted in their obedience to the *Athenians*. These understanding of it, sent at the latter end of Summer a band of men into the Island, which drew a line round about *Mitylene*, upon which Guards being set, the Inhabitants were straightly besieged. In Winter the Inhabitants of *Plataea* being greatly distressed for want of victuals, and despairing of any aid from *Athens*, resolved to break through the Enemies Fortifications, though exceeding difficult to be passed, and save themselves by flight. Many for the difficulty of the thing changed their minds, but 300 stood firm in their resolution, and taking advantage of an exceeding dark and tempestuous night, 212 with remarkable courage and constancy brake through, and (the rest being repulsed into the City) came safe unto *Athens*. Towards the end of Winter *Salathus* was sent from *Lacedæmon* to *Mitylene*, to encourage the besieged to hold out, by promise of help; and another Expedition to be made by the confederates into *Attica*. And so the fourth year of the *Peloponnesian* War ended.

*Attica* invaded the fifth  
time, and the  
*Mitylenæans*  
yield.

15. In the beginning of the fifth year, the *Peloponnesians* sent 40 ships to *Lesbus* to the relief of the *Mitylenæans*, under the conduct of *Alcidas*, and they themselves with an Army, over which *Cleomenes* (Uncle and Guardian to *Pausanias* their young King yet under age) was Captain, invaded *Attica* the fifth time, which they most grievously distressed; but hearing nothing from *Lesbus* that they liked, and being in scarcity of victuals, they returned the sooner into *Peloponnesus*. The *Mitylenæans* being sorely distressed in the same nature, whether the Magistrate would or not, yielded themselves to the mercy of the *Athenians*, which the *Peloponnesian* Fleet understanding before they arrived at *Lesbus*, went over to the Coast of *Asia*, and there having cast many things in their heads, without any thing of note performed, returned, through the perswasion of their General, into *Peloponnesus*, being from *Lesbus* in vain pursued by *Paches* the *Athenian* Captain. He returning from the pursuit, settled things in *Lesbus* according to his own mind, sent *Salathus* the *Lacedæmonian* messenger (whom he took in the Town) with the authors of the revolt, and some whom the Townsmen sent to intercede for them, unto *Athens*, staying there himself for further orders. *Salathus* was presently put to death, and the people being called together to consult about the *Mitylenæans*, resolved, at the instigation of *Cleon*, a man of bitter severity, that all those of ripe age should be put to death, as well as they that were sent to *Athens*, and all the women and children should be made bond-slaves; and this decree was without delay sent to *Paches* to be put into execution. But considering of this rash and cruel sentence, they repented of what they had done, and the next day met to advise further of it, when again *Cleon* a man in great grace with them, pressed vehemently the former decree.

But

## SECT. 3.

But *Diadotus* one of a milder spirit opposed him, and having endeavoured the day before to no purpose to do it, now by very few voices carried it from him.

Reversed.

16. Then was there dispatched a swift Galley, with order if possible to get before that which carried the former Decree, and command *Paches* to abstain from putting it in execution. Yet the former arrived at *Mitylene* first, having set forth a whole day before it; but whilst *Paches* was considering of the sharpness of the Decree, and how to perform it, the latter arrived, and so the lives of the multitude were saved, being so near to destruction, as scarce any thing nearer. But to punish the revolt, above 1000 of those whom *Paches* had sent to *Athens* as authors of it, the People commanded to be put to death, *Mitylene* was deprived of it's walls and ships, all *Lesbus* except the *Methymnæans* had hard conditions imposed upon them. The fields were taken from all the owners, of which the tenth part being dedicated to the gods, the remainder was distributed to the Citizens of *Athens*, the tillage thereof being left under a vast rent to the *Lesbians*; and all such Towns as were now subject to the *Mitylenæans*, the *Athenians* reduced under their Dominions. The same Summer they seized upon *Minous*, an Island lying before the shore of *Megaris*, and the Port of *Nisa*, and fortifying it, made the Coasts more safe and convenient to all intents. In the mean time those that were left in *Plataea* were forced by meer famine to yield themselves and City to the judgement of the *Lacedæmonians*, who sent five men to hear their Orators, and the *Thebans* their Enemies. These men adjudged them all to death, which accordingly was executed upon them to the number of 200, with whom were slain 25 *Athenians* found in the Town, and the women adjudged to slavery. The City for some time was given to some exiles to inhabit: then, scarce a year being past, was by the *Thebans* utterly destroyed, an Inne only being built out of the ruins of the Temple of *Juno*, and the Temple itself enlarged, all the grounds being seized on by the *Thebans*. This was the fortune of the *Plataeans* (who thought they might have had some favour shewed them for the merits of their Ancestors in the *Median* War) after they had continued 92 years in the society with *Athens*, and no more is to be heard of them till *Plataea* was rebuilt by *Alexander* the Great.

A lamentable  
sedition at  
*Corcyra*.

17. During these things, a most lamentable sedition hapned at *Corcyra*, part of the Citizens being for Popular Government, and the rest for that of a few or the most potent; the former trusting to the aid of the *Athenians*, as conformable to their policy, and the other to the *Peloponnesians*. Twice within the City did they fight, and both the *Athenians* and *Peloponnesians* sent their Fleets to the assistance of their Friends; but the *Athenians* being stronger at Sea, and sending 60 Gallies more to the help of the former Navy, the *Peloponnesian* withdrew themselves, having only lightly skirmished with the Enemy in the fight of *Corcyra*, before the latter Fleet arrived. Then those for the Popular Government, strengthened by the assistance of the *Athenians*, cruelly raged against their adversaries, no mercy being shewn to such as took sanctuary, or hung upon the Altars, neither from Parents to their own Children, insomuch that the City was almost shaken to pieces and made desolate, and a grievous Sedition indeed came afterwards proverbially to be termed a *Corcyraean*. And it was not only fatal to *Corcyra*, but to all *Greece* besides, being drawn into example by other States which afterwards broke out into factions.

Stris in *Sicilie*  
of which the  
*Athenians*  
make advan-  
tage.

18. At the same time the *Greek* Cities in *Sicilie* fell into dissensions, some being of the *Doric*, and others of the *Ionick* faction, the head of the former *Syracuse*, and of the latter *Leontium*, which two made War upon each other. The *Leontines* craved aid of the *Athenians*, for that they were not only of the *Ionian* Stock, but conjoyned with them in an ancient League of confederacy. The *Athenians* willingly took the opportunity to get some footing in *Sicilie*, to hinder thereby the exportation of Corn thence into *Peloponnesus*, and especially to make way for their power and dominion there.

At

A severe sen-  
tence against  
them.

## SECT. 3.

At the end of Summer they sent thither twenty Gallies. In Winter these ships assisted with ten more from *Rhegium* in *Italy*, invaded the *Æolian* Islands near to *Sicilie*, and wasted such as refused to yield. At the same Season the Plague began again at *Athens*, which took away a great number of Soldiers, but much greater of the common people: Earthquakes also hapned in several places. And with this Winter the fifth year of the *Peloponnesian* War ended.

The sixth Summer of the War.

19. In the beginning of the next Summer, the *Peloponnesians* came the sixth time to the *Isthmus*, with intent to invade *Attica*, under the conduct of *Agis* the *Spartan* King; but being affrighted with the frequent Earthquakes, they returned. In the mean while the War in *Sicily* variously proceeded. *Laches* the *Athenian* Captain taking some Towns. The *Athenians* sent out one Fleet to infect *Peloponnesus*, and another the Island *Melus*, which stubbornly withstood their commands, both which did nothing of very great concernment. The *Spartans* planted the Colony of *Heraclea*, in the platform of old *Trachinia* a City in *Ibessalie*, being for the convenience of it's situation upon the Sea, and the Haven, very fit for carrying on the War against the *Athenians*. These received a great losse from the *Æolians*, but in Winter thrice overthrew the *Ambraciots*, who were forsaken by their friends the *Peloponnesians*, which made them now imbrace a Peace with their adversaries the *Acarnanians* and *Amphilochians* (who called in the *Athenians* against them) and entered into a league and society for ten years with them. The war proceeding all this while in *Sicily*, a greater Fleet was sent under conduct of *Eurymedon* and *Sophocles*, to oppose the *Syracusians*, towards the end of Winter, at which time the Hill *Ætna* belched out great store of fire into the Territories of *Catana*, 50 years after it had the last time so done. Thus the first year of the *Peloponnesian* War ended.

Ætna breaketh out into flames.

Attica the sixth time invaded.

20. In the beginning of the next, the *Peloponnesians* under the command of *Agis* the Son of *Archidamus* the *Spartan* King, again invaded *Attica*. The *Athenians* having furnished 40 ships for *Sicilie*, gave order to the Captains, in their way to have an eye to the *Corcyraens*, who were much infected by their own exiles, and were in fear of 60 *Peloponnesian* Gallies sent thither: and to *Demosthenes* was given the command of some ships wherewith he should infect *Peloponnesus*. As all the ships sailed by *Laconia*, *Demosthenes* a man of a prompt and earnest disposition, advised the other Captains to fortifie *Pylus*, which is a ragged Promontory joyned to the main by a little neck of Land. Before it lies a small barren Island of lesse than two miles compass, and within that a Creek which is a good harbour for ships, the force of weather being born off by the head-land and Isle. The Promontory having anciently belonged to the *Messenians*, and now desolate, he pressed sore that they might seize upon, and make their own, being very convenient for the wasting of *Laconia*; but the other Captains dissented from him, halting for *Corcyra*, when in the mean time such a tempest arose as forced them to take into the Harbour. Then did he again urge his former advice, and though he nothing more profited with the Captains, yet the Soldiers desirous to make some stay there, and seeing the commodiousness of the Haven, fell upon fortifying the place, and with wonderful diligence and pains perfected the wall in six dayes. Then was *Demosthenes* left there to keep it with five ships, and the rest directed their course for *Corcyra*.

Pylus fortified by Demosthenes the Athenian.

Draweth the Peloponnesians out of Attica, and being forely laid at the Peloponnesians are worsted.

21. The news of these doings at *Pylus* drew the *Peloponnesians* in all haste thither out of *Attica*, fifteen dayes after their arrival, and they brought their whole Force both by Land and Sea to recover this piece of ground, which they well foresaw how bad a neighbour it might prove in time. In the Island named *Sphacteria*, they placed a number of men all *Spartans*, which were to keep it by their turns, and stopped up the Haven on both sides, that there might be no entrance in for the *Athenian* ships: then furiously did they assault *Pylus* both by Land and Sea, but it was as valiantly defended by *Demosthenes*; So that with several new onsets the storm was continued till the next day, and then the *Peloponnesians* drew off to recruit themselves, and provide

Thucyd. lib. 4.

## SECT. 3.

provide for a new onset. In the mean time came in fourty *Athenian* ships (to which *Demosthenes* had before-hand sent to acquaint them with his condition) and with them some belonging to their Allies, which first offered fight to the *Peloponnesians* in the open Sea; but that being refused, set upon them in the Haven, brake, and sunk many of their Vessels, took some, and forced the rest to run themselves on ground, about which afterwards ensued a great contention, whilst the *Athenians* would become masters of them, and the *Spartans* out of shame, and grief for their friends in the Island, laboured with more earnestness to get them off, which they effected by some, and the rest fell as prize to the Enemy, who now closely besieged the *Spartans* that were left in the Island.

The Lacedæmonians desire a Truce,

And send to Athens about a peace, which Cleon croffeth.

22. *Pylus* being now secure, but the *Spartans* in the Island as good as lost, the Magistrates were sent for from *Lacedæmon* into the Camp (as the custom was in great dangers) who perceiving that there was no other way to rescue their Citizens, than by composition with the Enemies, took Truce for a time with the Captains, till they might send to *Athens* about a peace. The conditions of the Truce were, that the *Peloponnesians* should deliver up to the other all their ships, as well such as were upon the Coast of *Laconia* as there, to be restored to them if the peace should not succeed, and that they should attempt nothing upon the Fort, nor the *Athenians* against their Camp. That a certain quantity of victuals should be daily carried into the Island, but no ships should passe into it secretly; that the Truce should end at the return of the Ambassadors, and if in the mean time it should be broken in any one point, it should be esteemed utterly void in all. The Ambassadors coming to *Athens* put the people in mind of that moderation all men ought to shew in prosperity, & with what credit they might now, at their request, make a peace. But *Cleon* a man very vehement, and much in request, withstood it, so that in stead of a peace on equal terms, and recompence for harm received, the *Athenians* demanded certain Cities, which had been by the *Spartans* long before this War taken from them, and refused to continue the Treaty, except the *Spartans* in the Isle were delivered up to them as prisoners. The Ambassadors returned without successe, and the Truce being ended, both sides betook themselves to their Weapons again about *Pylus*.

The Spartans in the Island Sphacteria yield to mercy.

The Sedition of Corcyra ended.

23. The *Peloponnesians* demanding their sixty ships which they had given up, and now at the end of the Truce were to be restored to them in as good a condition, were put off, under pretence that they had broken the Truce. The Island was also afresh besieged, and the *Spartans* valiantly standing out, things went on but slowly, so that *Cleon* himself, who much vaunted what he could do, was by the people, who now began to relent of their not imbracing a peace, forced, whether he would or not, to command a new supply of men thither. He, and *Demosthenes* (whom he chose for his Colleague) first offered conditions to the *Spartans*, and then upon their refusal forced them, after the losse of 128. to yield themselves to mercy. The number of those that yielded were 292. (whereof 120 of the Nobility of *Sparta*) which were carried to *Athens*, and being closely imprisoned, it was resolved, that when the *Peloponnesians* next invaded *Attica*, they should all be slain; and then was a Garrison of *Messenians* (the old Inhabitants, and bitter Enemies to the *Spartans*) sent into *Pylus*. The *Lacedæmonians* sorely discouraged by these Events, and fearing worse things, sent to *Athens* again about the liberty of the prisoners, and delivery of *Pylus*, but the Ambassadors were often rejected, and nothing done, the *Athenians* being still more puffed up by their good successe. This Summer they overthrew the *Corinthians* in the *Isthmus*. A Fleet being also sent for *Sicily*, assisted the *Corcyraens* in their way against their Exiles (who having got footing in the Mountains, annoyed them) and by their help they now utterly subdued them, and using them with unwonted cruelty, the sedition here had an end. *Anachoriam* a Town of *Corinth*, upon the Bay of *Ambractia*, they also took. In Winter *Artaphernes* a *Persian* being sent from his Prince to *Lacedæmon*, was intercepted in *Thrace*, and brought to *Athens*, where his Letters being opened and read; they contained

R r

no

## SECT. 3.

no secret, and he was sent back with Ambassadors to *Ephesus* to the King of *Persia*, *Arctaverxes Longimanus*, concerning whom they there had intelligence that he was dead, and so the Ambassadors returned home. The Inhabitants of *Chius* being suspected by the *Athenians*, were commanded to demolish their new Wall; with these things the seventh year of the War ended.

A partial E-  
clipse of the  
Sun on the  
11th of March.

24. In the beginning of the eighth year hapned a partial Eclypse of the Sun, which the Astronomical Tables shew to have fallen out on the 21<sup>st</sup> day of *March* after the *Julian* account, before noon, half of the Diameter or above being obscured, the fourth year of the 88 *Olympiad* now drawing to an end; and an Earth-quake hapned on the first of the Month *Munichion*, which some make to fall in with the same day. The *Athenians* this year fell upon the Island *Cythera*, lying near to *Laconia*, and inhabited by a *Spartan* Colony, which they took, and putting therein a Garrison for a time, thence made excursions into *Laconia*. Afterwards they took thence a great part of the Colony, and took, and burnt *Thyrea*, standing upon the Confines of *Laconia* and *Argolis*, given by the *Spartans* to the *Æginetans*, whom now they took away, and plundering the Town set it on fire. Carrying their prisoners to *Athens*, the *Æginetans* were condemned to death, and the *Cytheræans* being dispersed throughout the Islands, such as they left in *Cythera* were subjected to a great Tribute. But in *Sicily*, at this time, an Universal peace was made, and embraced by all the Cities, through the earnest perswasion of *Hermocrates a Syracusan*; so that the *Athenian* Forces were driven to quit the Island, for which at their return two of the Generals were unjustly banished, and the third underwent a great fine.

An Universal  
peace in *Sicily*.

25. The Exiles of *Mitylene* with others of *Lesbus*, and some Mercenaries, seizing upon *Rhetium* in *Asia*, took *Antandrus*; but selling the former again to the Inhabitants, they were drawn out of the later to fight, by *Aristides*, and *Demodocus* (or *Symmachus*, as *Diodorus* calleth him) who overthrew them, and took the Town from them. These two were Captains of the Fleet, which gathered Tribute from the Islands; their Colleague *Lamachus* being gone into *Ponius* against the *Heracleans*, who being in League with the *Persian* King denied Tribute. His ships, by the vehemency of water which ran down the River, were shattered, and he lost the greatest part both of them, and his Forces; so that he could not move thence, either by Sea, or Land; whereupon the *Heracleans* thinking it a more honorable part to do good than to take revenge, furnished him with provisions, and sent him away with a Convoy, esteeming that the wasting of their grounds would be well recompensed if they should make friends of their Enemies. With this Convoy he passed through the Countrey of the *Thracians* in *Asia*, and so came to *Chalcedon*.

Stirs about  
*Megara*.

25. At this time the Inhabitants of *Megara* were much distressed, what by the several inroads of the *Athenians*, and their own Exiles whom they had cast out, and now preyed upon them from the Villages. Wearied with these continual disturbances, they thought of recalling the Exiles; but the Magistrates understanding that, and presently apprehending what danger might arise to themselves from those of whose banishment they had been the cause, conspired with *Hippocrates* and *Demosthenes*, the two *Athenian* Captains, to betray the Town to them. The Gates were opened, and the *Athenians* had been Masters of the place, but that some of the Conspirators changed their minds, and obstructed the business, which the other seeing seized upon part of the long Walls, and casting up a cross work against the Town, set themselves with all their might to compass about the *Nisæa*, or Port, hoping, if they could get it, the more easily to obtain the Town. And the Garrison in it being presently discouraged by the stopping of victuals, which they were wont daily to receive out of the Town, yielded; the *Spartans* to mercy, and the rest upon condition of liberty to Ransom themselves. Then the *Athenians* provided for setting upon the Town: but were hindered by the coming of *Brasidas* the *Spartan*, who hovering about *Corinth*, upon notice how things passed

## SECT. 3.

passed here, halted, thinking to prevent the taking of *Nisæa*, and after he had heard of its surrender, yet used all expedition, hoping to save the Town, and to recover it. But when he came the *Megarians* were divided in their affections, yet both parties feared to let him in, for that they thought it best to reserve themselves for that party that should have the better, and Govern themselves according to Occurrences, and therefore he was forced to depart at this time without having done one thing or other.

The Exiles  
re-admitted  
rage against  
their Adver-  
saries, contrary  
to their Oath.

26. Not long after, the *Bœotians* came, and joyned themselves to *Brasidas*, and thereupon followed an Engagement with the *Athenians*, which ended with equal success to both sides. That party of the Town which favoured the Exiles, being encouraged with the presence of their friends, sent for *Brasidas*, and other *Peloponnesian* Officers into the Town, to consult with them, who confirming them in their resolutions then departed home: The *Athenians* also following, such as sided with them for fear betook themselves to flight. Then were the Exiles recalled, having first taken an Oath to forget all things past, and not consult their own passion, but the good of their Countrey; but having got the power into their hands, and having the Guards of the City at their disposal, they caused 100 of those they suspected to be apprehended, and being condemned by a forced judgement of the people, they put them to death. Then taking all the Government to themselves, it continued in an *Oligarchicall* way a long time.

Several a-  
mongst the  
*Bœotians* at-  
tempting to  
bring in De-  
mocracy are  
disappointed.

27. At the same time, several amongst the *Bœotians* attempted to change the frame of their Government, being much desirous of *Democracy* as it was established at *Athens*; and to this purpose held correspondence with them there, plotting to betray several places into their hands; but the matter being discovered succeeded not, but onely to the losse of the *Athenians*, who were overthrown in battle. In the mean while the *Lacedæmonians* being invited by *Perdiccas* King of *Macedonia*, and some of the Inhabitants of *Chalcis* (who promised them some pay for their men) resolved to send some Forces into *Macedonia* and *Thrace*, to divert the power, and design of the *Athenians*, who now began to be ill thought of by many in those parts, and feared by reason of their growing strength. They made choice of *Brasidas* for their General, a man of approved valour, and remarkable integrity. They did a thing at this time, which is noted with cruelty and injustice. Being something down the wind in their Fortune, they suspected the power and number of their slaves the *Helotes*, lest in this their weakness they should attempt something against them, and took occasion at this expedition, by offering all such of them liberty as would cheerfully embrace the service, to observe who amongst them were most active, and when they expected to be manumitted, instead thereof they made away (though how is not known) about 2000 of them, and sent 700 away with *Brasidas*, together with 1000 Mercenaries hired out of *Peloponnesus*.

They sides the  
Historian, the  
*Athenian* Ge-  
neral.

28. *Brasidas* after his arrival, by fair means reduced *Acanthus* and *Stagirus* (both Colonies of the *Andrians*) from the *Athenians*, and then in Winter set upon *Amphipolis* a famous Colony of theirs, situate upon the River *Strymon*, which almost compassing it gave an occasion to the later name of it, being before called *Nine-mares*. In a dark night he seized on the bridge, and all but the City it self, and 'tis thought had taken it also had he led his Soldiers on, but such as had conspired with him to betray it being overmatched, and stirring not, he onely wasted the grounds about it, and attempted nothing further for the present. The Inhabitants who assisted the *Athenians*, being more in number, sent to *Thucydides* the son of *Olorus*, and the Writer of the History of the *Peloponnesian* War, then the *Athenian* General, lying in *Thasus*, an Island inhabited by a Colony of the *Parians*, half a dayes sail distant from *Amphipolis*, who with seven ships hasted thither to prevent the delivery of it, or however to save *Eione*. But *Brasidas* being aware hereof, to obtain *Amphipolis* before his coming offered them most large conditions; that all should there remain, and live in the same State as formerly, as well *Athenians* as others; or if they liked better to remove, it should be free for them to do,

## SECT. 3.

do, which they accepted of, hearing nothing from *Thucydides*, who yet came to *Eione* that very night, and saved it, whereas *Brasidas* else had taken it the next morning. Yet he took three other Towns near to *Amphipolis*, and left them to be Garrisoned by *Perdiccas*.

29. The *Athenians* were much moved for the losse of *Amphipolis*, which had been of great use to them in affording them Wood for shipping, as well as money, and besides this, how a free passage seemed to be open to the *Lacedæmonians* to invade their confederates, who thereupon might be induced to revolt by *Brasidas*, who being a very moderate, and just man of himself, gave out, that his design was to set *Greece* at liberty. And even so it fell out, for the Cities hearing what had hapned, and great commendations of *Brasidas*, sent him to hasten his march towards them, with promise to revolt, thinking they might safely enough do it, for that they falsely persuaded themselves, that the power of the *Athenians* was not so great as they found it afterwards, when it was too late to repent them of their rash and inconsiderate resolution, into which they were hurried by an earnest desire of liberty. The *Athenians* having intelligence of this, used all diligence to send Soldiers into all of them, as the shortness of the time, and the Winter season would bear. *Brasidas* sent to *Lacedæmon* for a new supply of men, but little heed was given to his message, partly because the great ones there envied his glory, and especially because the people being well wearied now with the War, desired to have their men that were taken in the Island, and to make peace. Yet he having made provision for the building of ships upon the River *Strymon*, went on with the War, drew all the Towns on the Mountain *Arbos*, except two, to submit, and then by surprise taking *Torone*, a Town of *Chalcis*, and tributary to the *Athenians*, he stormed the Castle the third day after. The remainder of the Winter he spent in fortifying the places taken already, and providing for taking of others which he designed. And thus the 8th year of the War ended.

*Brasidas* envied by his own Country men.

A Truce for a year.

30. In the beginning of Spring the *Lacedæmonians* for the reasons above mentioned were desirous to come to a composition, and they hoped that now the *Athenians*, somewhat discouraged by what *Brasidas* had done in *Thrace*, might not be averse to it. And indeed they were inclining to a cessation of Arms, that they might stop his proceedings till such time as they could recruit themselves, intending to Govern themselves in reference to the length of the Truce as their affairs should comport, and so a Truce was concluded for a year, the Articles of which imported these things especially. That what both sides possessed at this time they should enjoy; that free access and regress should be given to Ambassadors and Heralds, and their Confederates, to treat about a peace: that Runagates should not be received; that all controversies should be decided by Law, and not by force: and something was added concerning the use of the Sea; In this Truce the Confederates on both sides being comprised. During this Cessation several Treaties were held about a League, but something hapned which disturbed sorely the minds of the *Athenians*. For *Sciene* a Town of the Peninsula of *Pellene* of its own accord revolted to *Brasidas*, and was followed by *Menda*. *Brasidas* ignorant of the Truce, after the revolt of the former, laboured sore with the latter, and *Poridean*, to reduce them also; but then news came to him of the Cessation, and much contention there was about the places; for that the *Athenians* said that *Sciene* revolted two dayes after the Truce was sworn to, and concluded. Being not able to recover them by words, they sent an Army to effect it by deeds, and *Menda* they recovered, whilst *Brasidas* was absent, assisting *Perdiccas* the King of *Macedonia* in his War with *Archibans*, where such dissatisfaction passed betwixt the King and him, that thenceforth *Perdiccas* began to joyn himself to the *Athenians*. Who compassed *Sciene* about with a Wall, which having finished in the later end of Summer, a sufficient Guard being left, the rest of the Army was brought home. The Winter following all was quiet betwixt the two States by virtue of the Truce; but the *Mantineans* and *Tegentans* fought a battel with equal successe, both parties erecting their

## SECT. 3.

The Temple of *Juno* at *Atheis* burnt.

*Cleon* sent into *Thrace*, is quickly puffed up.

Is slain together with *Brasidas* his adversary.

Both the *Athenians* and *Lacedæmonians* desire peace,

their trophies. The Spring drawing on, *Brasidas* attempted by night to surprise *Poridean*, but missed of his purpose. And with this Winter the ninth year of the War ended, in which the Temple of *Juno* at *Argos* was burnt through the negligence of *Chrysis* the Woman-Priest, which flying for it, another was placed in her room, after she had during this War continued eight years and and half therein.

31. The Truce being expired on the day of the *Pythian Games*, the seventh of the moneth *Thargelion*, *Cleon* having himself persuaded the *Athenians* to undertake the Expedition, was sent into *Thrace* with a Fleet of thirty ships, aboard of which were 1200 Foot, and 300 Horse, besides Confederates. Hearing that *Torone* was but manned with a mean Garrison, he departed from the siege of *Sciene*, and set upon it with such earnestness, both by Land and Sea, that in the same day he took it, and though he attempted *Stagirus* in vain, yet he effectually did it upon *Galapsus*, a Colony of the *Thasians*, after which he staid at *Eione* expecting some Auxiliaries out of *Macedonia*, and *Thrace*. Here he grew very secure, being exceedingly puffed up with his late successe, and that at *Pylus*, which he arrogantly imputed to his own wisdom; but his men disdained to lye idle, and pretended to be wearie of his Government, as thinking him unfit to command. Herewith he moved from *Eione* in a secure posture, thinking of nothing lesse than fighting, which was taken notice of by *Brasidas*, who having fewer men than he, and lesse experienced, thought it not wisdom to trie a battel with him, nor at once to let him have a fight with all his Forces; but pouring them violently upon him by degrees, thereby to confound and overthrow his Army. He had a discovery of *Brasidas* his intents, and began to retreat, but then he fell upon him out of *Amphipolis* in the manner aforesaid, and without much ado put his men to the rout. *Cleon* himself flying was slain outright, and *Brasidas* before this was mortally wounded and carried to *Amphipolis*, where he died, after he had heard how his men had got the Victory, being honoured by the Towns-men, as an Heroe, by Sacrifice, anniversary Solemnities, and naming a Colony after him, which they did to ingratiate themselves with *Sparta*, because of the fear they stood in of the *Athenians*. Of the *Athenians* were slain 600; but of the Conquerours but seven; such disadvantage was there in the battel.

32. In the beginning of Winter *Ramphius* with others in commission with him, was sent from *Lacedæmon* with new Forces, and came as far as *Pieria* an hill of *Thessalie*; but there the *Thessalians* opposed his passage, and news of *Brasidas* his death arriving, other causes also moving him (whereof this was not the least, that the *Spartans* before his coming from home were inclined to a peace,) he returned into *Lacedæmon*. And after the action at *Amphipolis*, and his return, came to be known, both sides for weighty and urgent reasons were much more enclined to it, *Cleon* and *Brasidas* being both slain, whereof the one was a man of a turbulent spirit, and the other a great soldier, who sought after glory in Military matters. The *Athenians* having received two great blows, at *Delium* first (when the change of the Government was to be made in *Bæotia*) and now at *Amphipolis*, had learnt not to trust too much to the smiles of their fortune: therefore they who before would hear of no conditions, as certain of Victory, now were much abated in their confidence, and repented they had not imbraced peace, when it was offered them upon such honourable terms, after the action at *Pylus*, for that they feared their confederates would be encouraged by this change of their fortune to change their affections. On the other side the *Lacedæmonians* who thought they should have ended the War, and brought the *Athenians* to terms by an invasion of *Attica*, now found they were much mistaken; the defeat in the Island they had ever before their eyes, and felt the excursions from *Pylus* and *Cythera*; they feared their slaves, lest they should rise against them; and another danger pressed them sore; for the State of *Argos* which had ancient enmity with them, was now after a truce of thirty years well-nigh expired, and likely to take the benefit of their present troubles, by joyning with

*Thucyd. lib. 5.*



## SECT. 3.

with those who alone found them work enough, being so powerful at Sea. Above all, the liberty of the prisoners at *Athens*, whereof most of them were of the greatest quality, provoked them to a pursuit after peace.

33. The business was much helped on by *Plistonax* the *Spartan* King, and *Nicias* the *Athenian*, the former being weary of those calumnies which were raised against him upon any miscarriage in the War, and the other much enamoured of Peace, by the obtaining of which he thought he should be famous to succeeding Ages. Several treaties all the Winter were on foot about it, and towards the Spring the *Lacedæmonians* to make the *Athenians* the more ready to embrace it, gave out, that they would with the whole force of all their confederates invade *Attica*, and fortify a Castell therein. After much sticking about it, a peace was concluded for fifty years, upon these terms especially: that a restitution of places and prisoners should be made on both sides, except *Næa*, which the *Athenians* might still keep from the *Megarians*, and *Plaræa*, which the *Thebans* refused to restore to its Inhabitants. The two States swore to the performance of it, and all their allies and confederates (except the *Bæotians*, *Corinthians*, and *Megarians*, who liked it not) and it was concluded at *Sparta*, upon the 26th day of *Artemisus* Pleistolas being *Ephorus*, at *Athens*, upon the 24th of *Elaphebolion*, *Alcam* being *Archon*, in the beginning of the Spring, presently after the *Bacchanalia*, ten years and a few days being past since the first invasion of *Attica*, and the beginning of the War.

24. The *Lacedæmonians* were by lot to make restitution first; which they presently did of persons, but as to places, *Amphipolis* was the cause that they could not perform it; for neither the Inhabitants, nor the rest of the associates would suffer it, though the *Spartans* drew out their Garrison, and did all that in them lay to restore it, they being unwilling to come again under the dominion of their old Lords, and counting it unreasonable for the *Spartans* to desire it. The deputies of the dissenting Cities were at *Lacedæmon*, and being desired to sign the League, flatly refused, except some things were changed in it. Which the *Spartans* hearing dismissed them, and very prudently applied themselves to the *Athenians*, making an offensive and defensively League with them, thereby to retain them from joining with the *Argives* and *Peloponnesians*, which confederacy it behoved them above all things for to hinder. After this straight League, the prisoners taken in the Island were set at liberty, the eleventh year of the War now rising, and the peace was observed according to agreement; but all the late confederates of *Sparta* took this exceedingly ill, and let out all their hatred, formerly conceived against the *Athenians* their professed Enemies, upon their unjust friends. The *Corinthians* especially took it in great disdain, who had been the greatest incentives to the War, out of envie to the State of *Athens*, and as their Deputies departed from *Lacedæmon* they took *Argos* in their way, where to the principal Citizens they inveighed grievously against this League, saying, it was made with design to enslave *Peloponnesus*, whose vindicators they the *Argives* must needs be, and that it was incumbent upon them to decree, that all free Cities which would, might enter into an alliance with them for their mutual safety, which if they would so do, they were sure that many, out of hatred to the *Spartans*, would give their names to it.

35. After their departure the thing was first referred to the Magistrates, and then to the People, who chose twelve men, to whom they gave power to make a League with any City or State, except the *Spartans*, and *Athenians*, with whom nothing was to be concluded, without the advice and consent of the whole body of the People. This they did, because they foresaw a War to be made with *Sparta* after the end of the Truce, and hoped by this means to become master of *Peloponnesus*; for as the *Lacedæmonians* were now condemned for their bad success (and the rather more for that all had such vast conceits of their courage, that they thought they would have submitted to no conditions, but have cut out all by the Sword) so they who had been of neither party in this War, but allied to both, had bettered their condition,

## SECT. 3.

and now flourished exceedingly. The *Mantineans* first, who livin in *Arcadia*, stood in fear of the *Spartans* whose confederacy they had shaken off, entered into an alliance with them, and after them the rest of the *Peloponnesians*, who thought they might understand more of the matter than themselves did, and had high thoughts of this great and rich City, conceiving it able to do much, because that of so long it had done nothing. They were grievously incensed against the *Spartans*, and this offended them especially, that in the straight League betwixt them and *Athens* it was provided, that by mutual consent they might add new conditions, or alter the old at their own pleasures. This proviso they looked upon as made to enslave *Peloponnesus*, by the assistance of *Athens*, for that if anything was to be changed, it were but just that it should be done by consent of all the Confederates who were concerned in it.

36. The *Lacedæmonians* knowing well how much they were concerned in these courses, sent Ambassadors to stop the matter at *Corinth*, whence they well perceived the mischief to have proceeded. They expostulated with them for what had been done, and laid perjury to their charge, in case they left their society and betook themselves to *Argos*, and blamed them for not admitting the League with *Athens*, because it was formerly agreed, that what the major part should conclude, it should oblige all; except some divine impediment interposed. The *Corinthians* replied in the Assembly of the Agents of those Cities which refused the League, that in general the *Lacedæmonians* themselves had not fully performed the conditions of the League, who had not taken order that the places forced from them should be restored, and that for their part they could not desert their confederates in *Thrace*, whom they persuaded to rebel against *Athens*, and taken into protection, and to whom they were obliged by oath taken more than once, which to them appeared to be a sufficient divine impediment why they could not enter into a League with *Athens*. And as for their conjunction with *Argos*, after they had advised with their friends, they should do what was right and fitting. After their departure, in the next assembly they entered into a League with the *Argives*, and so did the *Eleans* with the *Corinthian* Colonies, and those of *Chalcis* in *Thrace*.

37. All the Summer of the eleventh year, the *Athenians* and *Peloponnesians* had commerce with one another, though great consultations were on foot, and the associates bickered with one another, and both parties wanted not dissatisfaction. For, the *Lacedæmonians* restored not *Amphipolis*, neither procured the associates in *Thrace*, the *Bæotians*, nor *Corinthians*, to sign the League, though they engaged jointly to cause them to do it, and that if within a certain time they did it not, both were to hold them as Enemies. The *Athenians* seeing that they performed not these things, suspected they dealt deceitfully with them, and for this cause refused to surrender *Pylus*, repented they had dismissed the prisoners, and withheld other places till the *Spartans* had first performed the Covenants. They excused themselves, for that they had done as much as in them lay, having set at liberty their prisoners, drawn out their Forces from *Thrace*, and omitted nothing in their power, in which the restitution of *Amphipolis* was not: and as for what concerned the *Bæotians* and *Corinthians*, they would do what they required. They earnestly desired that *Pylus* might be restored, or, at least, that the *Helots* and *Messenians* might be taken thence, which after much ado was granted, and these men were conveyed into the Island *Cephalenia*.

38. In Winter the Deputies of the Confederates came to *Lacedæmon*, and laboured in vain to dissolve the League betwixt that State and *Athens*. But now other *Ephori* having entered into their Office, who had nothing to do in making the straight alliance, and were also much averse unto it, they dealt secretly with the *Bæotians* and *Corinthians*, to persuade the former to join themselves to *Argos*, and then all to enter into a League with *Sparta*, which they were sure would purchase this willingly, with a breach betwixt them and *Athens*, for that then the War would be more easie out of *Peloponnesus*; only

The Lacedæmonians vindicate themselves at Corinth.

Dissatisfaction betwixt the parties.

Which is concluded.

Several Cities dissent.

And the Deputies of the Corinthians application to Argos.

Those of Peloponnesus apply themselves to that City.

SECT. 3.

The designs  
of the *Bastar-*  
*che* frustrated.

onely they desired much that the *Bæotians* would deliver up *Panætus* into their hands, that therewithall making exchange with the *Athenians* for *Pylus*, they might with less difficulty make War against them. As the Ambassadors were in their way, two of the principal men of *Argos* met them, and were very earnest with the *Bæotians* to imbrace their society, which, when they came home, they laid open to the *Bæotarchæ*, and Ambassadors followed from *Argos* to perswade them to it, who were kindly entertained and dismissed with hope that some Ambassadors should follow them to conclude upon the business. In the mean time the Agents from *Corinth*, *Megara*, and *Thrace*, agreed with the *Bæotarchæ*, that they should bind themselves by Oath to assist him who should want it, and not to begin, or finish any War without the joyned consent of all, and upon these terms, that the Treaty should be signed. But ere this could be done, the *Bæotarchæ* were to refer the matter to the four Councils of *Bæotia* wherein lay the supreme power, which not being made acquainted by them what advice the *Ephori* and others of *Sparta* had given, for fear they should give that State offence by joyning with *Corinth* which had revolted, they judged the contrary, and so by the means of the *Bæotarchæ*, who took it for granted that the Councils would act according to their advice, the matter proceeded no farther now, and afterwards was neglected by them.

39. This Winter also many Treaties were held betwixt the *Athenians* and *Lacedæmonians*, about the restitution of the places; and the *Spartans* hoped, that if *Panæctum* was but restored to the other, they should recover *Pylus*. But such Towns as their old Allies had gotten by their means in the late War, could not be restored without their consent, and therefore Ambassadors were sent earnestly to request the *Ævotians* to deliver up *Panæctum* with the *Athenian* prisoners. They stoutly refused to do it, except they would enter into as peculiar and straight a League with them, as they had done with the *Athenians*. Now this could not be legally done, because in the League with *Athens* it was provided, that neither should make either League, or War, without mutual consent. Yet being possessed with an inflamed desire of recovering *Pylus*, and the more, for that they something now were moved by the *Ephoræ*, and others: that desired a breach with *Athens*, they struck up a League with them. Then did the *Ævotians* utterly demolish *Panæctum* instead of giving it up, and so the eleventh year of the War ended.

40. In the Spring the *Argives* hearing nothing of the *Bœotian* Ambassadors promised to be sent but great talk of the demolishing of *Panattus*, and the League betwixt them, and the *Spartians*, whom they thought to have drawn them in with the content of the *Athenians*, were much perplexed, thinking they now should be run upon by all, though they formerly promised themselves the Dominion of *Peloponnesus* by forsaking the alliance of *Lacedæmon*. They therefore sent presently thither, and struck up another League with them for fifty years. In the mean while three were sent from *Sparta* to receive from the *Bœotians* the *Athenian* prisoners and *Panattus*, who yielded both persons and place, but this utterly demolished, pretending for their excuse, that by an ancient League it was to be held by neither of them in particular, but be common to both. The *Athenians* received their men, but were much moved that *Panattus* was demolished (though the Ambassadors put it off by telling them they needed not now then to fear anything from it) being sensible of a double injury received, both as to the Town, and the League made without their knowledge, and then they called to mind other breaches of the peace, and were jealous that they were circumvented by the *Spartians*. An occasion was hence taken by such amongst them as bare no good will to the peace, to seek all manner of ways to destroy it. Amongst these was *Alcibiades* the son of *Clinias* by the sister of *Pericles*, who though a young man, yet eminent for his Nobility, Riches, and Favour with the people, bare a secret grudge against the *Lacedæmonians*, for that despising his youth, and having no regard to the ancient friendship betwixt them and his family (which

*Parasitus* dis-  
mantled.

The Athenians  
thereat, and  
otherwise of-  
fended.

Are incensed  
by *Alcibiades*,

Who hindreth  
the peace by  
a notable  
stratagem.

*Nicias* labour-  
eth for it.

his Grand-father having dissolved, he fought to restore by kindnesse shewed to the prisoners taken in the Island) made use of *Nicias* and *Laches* in the conclusion of the League before him, which he thought was much to the prejudice of his honour.

41. He cried out, that their design was first to suppress *Argos*, and then to do as much for *Athens*, and at this time there being no good agreement betwixt the *Argives* and *Spartans*, he sent to them privately, exhorting them, as they tendered their own safety, to enter into a League with *Athen*. They who were now not consulting how to become masters of others, but how to save themselves, were well pleased with his message, and though they had Ambassadors now resident at *Lacedæmon* about the League with that State, yet did they send away others to *Athens*, together with the *Eleans* and *Mantineans*, to make one offensive and defensive with them there. The *Lacedæmonians* hereat were at a stand, seeing well, that such a Combination tended to their hurt. To keep in with the *Athunians* the *Ephori* thought that more was done already than stood with their honour or profit; others held it the wisest course, seeing they had done so much, not to stick at a little more, but rather by giving full satisfaction, to retain the friendship of that State, which was more to be valued than all the rest of *Greece*. This resolution prevailing, such were sent away to *Athens* as had most affection to peace, who said in the *Senate*, that they came with full Commission to conclude all, excused the League entred into with the *Bœotians*, as having been done only to please them in the reigning of *Panætus*, and assured them of the readinesse of their State to give all satisfaction, being much grieved that things were not otherwise than according to their pleasure. *Alcibiades* taking notice that they said in the *Senate*, that they came with full Commission to conclude, feared that thereby the people might be drawn to a peace, & interposed by a notable stratagem. He perswaded the Ambassadors of his friendship towards their Citie, and advised them to take heed that their absolute power to conclude might not be known to the Commonalty, lest the multitude should thereupon grow peremptory, and yield to nothing, except they could draw them to unreasonable conditions.

42. The Ambassadors believed him, and ordered their speech to the people according to his directions. Hereupon he took the advantage which their double dealing afforded, and openly inveighed against them as men of no sincerity, come for no other purpose than to draw the people from strengthening themselves with friends, intending to withdraw the *Argives*, and their adherents, to their own alliance, as already they had done the *Boeotians*, though contrary to their Oath. Then he commended the cause of the *Argives*, *Eleans*, and *Mantineans*, to the people, which was much moved, having had before no good opinion of the *Lacedaemonians*; but an Earth-quake intervening before they came to the question, nothing was done that day. At the next meeting *Nicias* perswaded them to let him first go to *Lacedaemon* to know their minds concerning the League with the *Boeotians*, whether or no they would renounce it, and their friendship with *Amphipolis*, and restore *Panactus* in such a condition as it ought. But *Xenares* the Ephorus, and his party, was so strong, that none of these things could be procured; only the peace with *Athens* was again sworn to, to gratify *Nicias*, who was sensible how he should be blamed at his return, being accounted also the cause of the League. After his return the *Athenians* made a League with the *Argives*, *Eleans*, and *Mantineans* for 100 years, at large described by *Thucydides*, but tending to the mutual assistance of each other. Hereby nothing in terms was done derogatory to the League with *Sparta*, and the *Corinthians*, though the Allies of *Argos*, yet refused to be comprised in it (as in the former betwixt the *Argives*, *Eleans*, and *Mantineans*) alleging that the former Convention was sufficient, which did not oblige them jointly to make War upon any one, though to defend one another. This they said, for that they seemed to find reason to forsake these Confederates, and to apply their minds afresh to the *Lacedaemonians*.

SECT. 3.

## SECT. 3.

The Lacedæmonians kept from the Olympick exercises.

43. This Summer the 90th Olympiad was celebrated, from the solemnity of which the Lacedæmonians were kept by the Eleans, being forbidden the Temple, and offering sacrifice, for which a Guard was set, because they had not paid a Fine of 2000 Minæ imposed upon them by them, according to the Olympian Law, for putting some men into the Castle Phorcyæ, and the Town of Leprea, during the Olympian Truce. They sent their Ambassadors to excuse the matter, but nothing was done, so that they sacrificed at home, which bred very ill blood betwixt them. After this solemnity the Argives and their Confederates sent to Corinth, to persuade them there to imbrace their party; but the Ambassadors of Sparta being there, and it being much debated, an Earth-quake hapned, and so they returned without any successe. In Winter hapned a fight betwixt the Heracleots of Trachine (placed there by the Spartans to their losse) and part of the Thessalians with others, wherein they were worsted, and many of them slain: amongst whom Xenares the Lacedæmonian General. With these things the 12th year of the War ended.

Alcibiades marcheth into Peloponnesus.

44. The next Summer Alcibiades with some forces out of Attica, and the assistance of Argos, marched into Peloponnesus, which passing over he came to Patra, where he dealt with the Inhabitants about building a Wall thence unto the Sea, intending also of himself to build another as far as Rhium in Achaia; but the matter was hindred by the Corinthians, Sicyonians, and others, who would have been endamaged thereby. The Argives made War upon Epidaurus upon light occasion, thinking, that if that Town was but subdued, they should be more safe from the Corinthians on that side, and the Athenians would have a readier way to send them aid from Egina. Whilst they were busie about a peace, Epharmidas the Corinthian threw this in their dish, that what they made words of, that they contradicted by their deeds, and upon that account they drew back their Army. But no conclusion coming of the Treaty, they invaded the Territories of Epidaurus again, and wasted the third part thereof. The Lacedæmonians were twice abroad with their Armies this Summer, but were recalled by their superstitious Ceremonies. The Athenians also sent the Argives 1000 men under Conduct of Alcibiades; but they having drawn away their forces, and having no employment for them, they returned home. In Winter the Lacedæmonians conveyed 300 Garrison Soldiers into Epidaurus, which passing through the Borders of the Athenians, the Argives expostulated with them for suffering it, contrary to the League, and complained that they restored not the Helotes and Messenians unto Pylus, whence they had taken them upon the desire of the Spartans. This accordingly was done at the instance of Alcibiades. All others were quiet this Winter, except the Argives and Epidaurians, who skirmished sometimes, and towards Spring the former hearing Epidaurus to be naked, came suddenly with their scaling Ladders, and endeavoured the taking of it, but in vain. Together with this Winter the 13th year of the War ended.

Agis the Spartan King invaded the Argives.

45. The Summer following, the Spartans seeing in how bad a case their friends the Epidaurians were, and that the rest of Peloponnesus had either already revolted, or was ill affected to them, fearing that if they delayed, all things would go worse, they armed themselves, and slaves, with their Confederates, under the conduct of Agis their King. It hapned that the Argives were compassed round about by their Enemies; but when they were about to fall on, two of their Captains stepped out, and persuaded Agis to abstain from fight, saying, that the Argives were willing to do all just things, and make peace with the Lacedæmonians. This they spake of their own heads, without the consent or knowledge of the multitude, and Agis, without acquainting any more of the Captains or Confederates, consented to a Truce for four months, and therewith drew off his Army. The Lacedæmonians and Confederates obeyed him for the rigour of the Law, but grievously blamed him for letting slip, or rather wilfully losing so great an opportunity, having the Enemy at such an advantage, and having such a numerous and well-fur-

Is easily put off, and deservedly blamed.

## SECT. 3.

nished Army as had not been seen of the Græcians to that day; there being met together besides the Spartans, the Arcadians, Boeotians, Corinthians, Sicyonians, Pellonians, Phliasiens, and Megarians, and the choice of all these States, who seemed not onely able to fight with the Argives, and their associates, but with any other in combination with them. The Argives also not considering what danger they had escaped, were sore enraged against their Officers, who had as they thought let the other escape out of their hands, inasmuch that they had stoned one of them had he not taken Sanctuary, and they sold his goods. Not long after a Party of 1000 Foot, and 300 Horse coming from Athens to their aid, the People, by the persuasion of Alcibiades, renounced the Truce made with Agis, and the Confederates gathering together went and besieged Orchomenus, wherein the Spartans had put the Hostages received from the Arcadians, and which was without much to doe delivered up to them.

Severely sentenced.

46. The Lacedæmonians being grievously enraged against Agis, especially after the news came about Orchomenus, beyond all precedent decreed his house should be demolished, and fined him 100000 Drachmes, which he deprecating, and promising to redeem his credit by some notable exploit, they yet made a new Law, that there should be ten men assisting to him, without whose consent he should not as much as lead the Army from the City. News presently was brought that Tegea was besieged, whereupon he took the field, and came to a set battel with the Argives and their confederates, wherein though his right wing was over-borne through the negligence of the Polemarchi (who did not soon enough communicate the orders received from him) yet he put to flight the Enemy in the other, and then coming to the help of it, obtained the Victory. This was that noble fight, as Thucydides extollet it, betwixt the most eminent and powerful States of Greece, than which there was none more eminent that hapned amongst the Græcians themselves. Yet the number of the slain was not great. Of the Argives and their allies about 1100, of the Confederates of Sparta not many, and of the Lacedæmonians themselves 300 were reported to have fallen. The day after, the Epidaurians, whilst Argos was naked, fell in upon their grounds, and killed many of those that came out of the City against them. Whilst the Lacedæmonians were busie in their Carnean Solemnities, the Eleans and Athenians assisting the Mantineans, went and drew a line about Epidaurus, upon which they left a sufficient Guard, and departed.

Yet the Lacedæmonians send to Argos about a peace.

Which is procured by those who affected an Oligarchy.

47. In the beginning of Winter the Lacedæmonians after their solemnity was over, again took the field, but thinking now the Argives might be humbled, sent to feel their minds about a Peace. At this time such as desired a change of the Government at Argos became powerful, and hoped if they could conclude with the Spartans, to take it out of the hands of the multitude, and bring it to a temper agreeable to the constitutions of that State. By the artifices of those men, the Argives were brought to forsake the Mantineans, Eleans, and Athenians, and joyn themselves in a League with the Lacedæmonians to continue for 50 years: It was agreed, that no entercourse should be held with the Athenians, except they would draw out all their Forces from Peloponnesus (The freedom of Epidaurus being especially looked at herein by the Spartans as much concerning them) and that no Treaty or War was to be entered upon without mutual consent. They then took care for several other things, and sent to Perdiccas King of Macedonia, to enter into a League with him, but he did not thoroughly assent to it, though he bore respect to Argos, whence he accounted himself descended: but they renewed the League with them of Chalcis, and obliged others unto them. The Argives sent also to the Athenians, to require them to draw off their Guards from Epidaurus: but they hereupon sent Demosthenes thither to get all the Fortification into their own hands, after which they surrendered it to the Towns-men, and renewed their ancient League with them. The Mantineans at first refused to joyn with the Argives in the League with Athens; but after considering that they could not subsist without them, subscribed, and

## SECT. 3.

On Oligarchy set up a Sicily and Argos.

The Argives recover the Democracy, and renounce the League with Sparta.

The Lacedæmonians in vain attempt to take Argos.

They will not take notice that the League is broken with Athens.

Melus taken.

The Athenians look after Sicily.

gave up those places they had in their hands. After this, 1000 men from *Lacedæmon*, and as many from *Argos*, were sent to *Sicily*, where by the endeavours of the *Lacedæmonians*, the Supreme Power was transferred out of the hands of the People to a few men, which was after effected at *Argos* also, an Oligarchy being introduced, agreeable to the Government of *Sparta*. With this Winter the fourteenth year of the War ended.

48. The Summer following, the People of *Argos* bearing heavily the change of the Government, took their opportunity when the *Lacedæmonians* were busy in the naked exercises of their youth, and killing some of their adversaries, and expelling others, restored the Popular Government, renounced the League with *Sparta*, and renewed that with *Athens*. Then they fell on building of their long walls from the City to the Sea, thinking, that if they should be blocked up by Land, to have intercourse with the *Athenians* by Sea. In Winter the *Lacedæmonians* knowing that they were busied (men, women, slaves and all) in this work, with their associates (all but the *Corinthians*, who stirred not) came against *Argos*, hoping to take the City by means of those within that were of their Party; but being frustrated of their expectations, they demolished the wall, and taking *Hyfina* a Castle of *Argolis*, put to the sword all the males of free condition, and so returned. After this, the *Argives* wasted the Territories of the *Phliansians*, for harbouring their exiles. This same Winter the *Athenians* renounced the League with *Perdiccas*, accusing him of conspiracy with the *Argives* and *Laconians*, of non-performance of the League betwixt them, and laying the blame upon him that the Expedition miscarried which they had made, under the conduct of *Nicias* against the *Chalcidians* and *Amphipolis* in *Thrace*. With these things the Winter ended, and together with it the fifteenth year of the War.

49. The year following, *Alcibiades* with twenty ships sailing to *Argos*, took thence 300 men suspected of *Laconism*, who were carried into the Islands subject to the *Athenians*, and there committed to custody. After this the *Athenians* with a strong force invaded the Island *Melus*, the Inhabitants of which being a Colony of the *Lacedæmonians*, denied them obedience. They first sent Commissioners to the Town to treat with the *Melians*, where there was much canvassing the case; but in conclusion they continuing in their resolution not to yield, Fortifications were made against the City, and strong guards left upon them. Almost at the same time, the *Argives* making excursions into the *Phliansian* Territories, by the lying in wait of the *Phliansians*, and their own exiles, lost 80 of their men. The *Athenians* that lay in *Pylus* now also wasted *Laconia*, notwithstanding which, the *Lacedæmonians* would not take so much notice as to account the League broken, and thereupon to take arms; but onely caused it to be proclaimed by a Cryer, that whosoever of their Subjects would, might prey upon the *Athenians*: the *Corinthians* onely about some controversy made War upon them, all *Peloponnesus* besides being quiet. The *Melians* made two sallies against the besiegers, with good success; but a fresh Army being sent from *Athens* set upon, and by the help of some treachery took it this Winter, upon terms of yielding to mercy. All the males of ripe age that could be taken were put to the sword, the women and children made slaves, and the Town was re-peopled by a Colony of 500 *Athenians*.

50. This same Winter the *Athenians*, with greater preparations than ever, resolved seriously to look after *Sicily*. Their pretence was to give assistance to their friends and allies there, but the true and onely cause was the desire of propagating their Empire, by the bringing under of all that whole Island. A good occasion was now given them by the *Egestans*, who upon account of former alliance, came and sued to them for aid against the *Selinuntians* their Enemies, upheld by them of *Syracuse*, offering them money for carrying on the War; whereupon they thought fit first to send Ambassadors to be informed concerning the money boasted of, and the state of the War. The *Lacedæmonians* this Winter made excursions into *Argolis*, and carried away much booty. The *Argives* caused *Ornea* to be demolished, where their

Thucyd. l. 6.

## SECT. 3.

their exiles harboured, by the help of the *Athenians*, who sent some Forces to *Methone* a Town bordering upon *Macedonia*, thence to infect the Territories of *Perdiccas*. The *Chalcidians* hereupon solicited the *Lacedæmonians* to send aid to the King, but they thinking it not policy to break quite with *Athens*, refused. Thus the Winter with the sixteenth year of the *Peloponnesian* War ended.

51. In the beginning of Spring the Ambassadors sent from *Athens* returned out of *Sicily*, bringing from the *Egestans* 60 talents of Bullion, with a month's pay for 60 ships, as was required. They affirming (though falsely) as well as the *Egestans*, that they had much money in their Temples and publick Treasury; the People thereupon much elevated decreed aid to be sent to them, under the conduct of *Nicias*, *Alcibiades*, and *Lamachus*, to whom they gave in charge, that, if it might be, they should restore the *Leontines*, and do those things which they saw to be most advantageous to the Commonwealth, according to the comportment of affairs. *Nicias* laboured with all his might to divert the People from such a sudden resolution, proposing all the difficulties and dangers of the War, and thought to have excused himself by magnifying the power that was required to such an undertaking; but his mouth was stopped by a Decree, which gave him as much as he could exact. For 100 Gallies were ordered for the Expedition, besides others of their Confederates, which amounted to above 30, over and above Vessels of burthen, and others necessary for the transportation of 6100 men, whereof 5100 bore heavy Armour. All things were prepared, with the greatest care and industry imaginable; the Soldiers were compleatly furnished with Arms, clothes, and all things necessary; and a drachme a day assigned for their wages.

The *Hermæ* broken at Athens.

*Alcibiades* suspected, and desirous to be tried, is yet by his Enemies sent away.

Then again recalled.

The *Syracusians* stand on their Guard.

52. Before the departure of the Fleet, all the *Hermæ* throughout the City (these were the images of *Mercury* set up at every man's gate) in one night were mangled and abused, which was taken as an ill omen, and the People was jealous that it was done by some that were Enemies to the Popular Government. Great inquisition was made in vain to find out the Authors, but the suspicion light upon *Alcibiades* one of the Generals, through the practice of his emulators, who made use of his lofty deportment, which ill suited with their kind of policy. He offered himself to the trial, being fearful to be condemned absent; but his Enemies put it off for the present, and got him to be sent away, intending to make use of that which he feared, that being condemned unheard, he might be the sooner oppressed, because now by his own authority and interest, he had drawn many to give their names to the Expedition, and therefore they could not easily carry any thing against him, because of his popularity. As the Fleet sailed toward *Sicily*, the Generals sent some before to discover further in what condition the *Egestans* were, who bringing tidings clean contrary to what both they, the *Egestans* themselves, and the Ambassadors sent to them had asserted, the Generals were all divided in their opinions what to do, but *Alcibiades* hot and youthful, was for their proceeding, to which *Lamachus* at length assenting, his desire was obtained. They then landed and seized upon *Carana*, attempted *Camarina* in vain, when *Alcibiades* received orders to come and plead his cause at *Athens* about the *Hermæ*, his Enemies having obtained it should be so. In truth he was condemned beforehand, but to colour the matter, he was sent for to plead, and that must be with bonds laid upon him. He was aware of the danger, and departed straight to *Lacedæmon*, with intention to teach the *Athenians* what person they had compelled by unjust Judgment to forsake his Country, and betake himself to their Enemies. After this was known, sentence of death was published against him of his Partners, many (whether justly or no *Thucydides* much questions) being put to death without proof already in the City.

53. The *Syracusians*, though not fully perswaded of the design of the *Athenians* against them at first, (and thereupon not so well provided as they might have been) yet made all possible provision for resistance. The two Generals, after the departure of *Alcibiades*, by a stratagem drew them out of the

## SECT. 3.

The Corinthians and Spartans send them.

the Citie, and in the mean time brought their Forces near unto it, and worsted them when they sallied out, but without any great losse sustained on either part, and then drew off to their Winter quarters at *Catana* and *Naxos*. The *Syracusians* encouraged by *Hermocrates* one of their new Generals (a wife man, who had forwarned them of the design of the *Athenians*) sent to *Sparta* and *Corinth* for aid; strengthened their Fortifications, made excursions to *Catana*, where they waited the grounds, plundred, and burnt part of the *Athenian* Camp which was empty. Both sides laboured to draw the *Camarinaans* to their side, but in vain; yet many Cities, especially in the in-land, embraced the society of the *Athenians*, who sent also this Winter to the *Carthaginians* to procure their amity; the Cities upon the *Tyrrhenian* shore they also drew in, and all *Sicily* was now divided into these two factions. The *Corinthians* readily resolved to send aid to the *Syracusians*, and sent some of their own with their Ambassadors to *Sparta* to procure as much for them from that State. The *Spartans* made difficulty at first to do it, for fear of giving the *Athenians* offence; but hearing from *Alcibiades* what their designs were (who was come thither upon the publick faith) at his persuasions resolved also upon sending Forces under the Command of *Gylippus*: they also imbraced his Counsel concerning renewing the War, and fortifying *Decelen* a Castle in *Attica*. At the same time, the *Athenian* Generals sent to *Athens* for money and horse-men, which was readily decreed to be sent. Herewith the 17<sup>th</sup> year of the War was ended.

54. The next year the *Argives* and *Lacedæmonians* preyed mutually upon one another in *Peloponnesus*. In *Sicily* the *Athenians* with their whole force, and new supply of horse, layled to *Syracuse*, about which they seized upon many places, and several skirmishes ensued about the fortifications, wherein the *Athenians* had the better. Then was the *Athenian* Fleet conveyed into the Haven of *Syracuse*, whence great contention ensued, and *Lamachus* one of the Generals assisting his friends was slain. The *Syracusians* endeavouring the recovery of *Epipola* were repelled by *Nicias*, who thence drew a double work against the Town, and strengthened himself by the assistance of Confederates, and store of provision. The besieged receiving no assistance from *Peloponnesus* parlied with *Nicias*; but the matter succeeding not, they made choice of new Captains, whilst *Gylippus* was not now far off, but despised by *Nicias* for the small number of his men. In *Greece* the *Spartans* distressed the *Argives*, who were assisted by the *Athenians* with thirty ships. These made excursions into the Territories of *Epidaurum*, so that the League which had so long continued betwixt them and *Sparta*, though in a doubtful condition, was now openly broken, and the War resumed; and that more by their fault than any blame of the *Lacedæmonians*, if *Thucydides* be judge.

55. *Gylippus* arriving at *Syracuse* disturbed the work of *Nicias* about the Wall, and changed the constancy of his good fortune, who yet was not discouraged thereby, but proceeded in his utmost endeavours for the service of those that sent him, making preparation for Sea-matters, wherein the *Athenians* seemed to excell all others: hereupon ensued several skirmishes with various fortune, and the remaining of Summer was spent on both sides, in increasing their forces and procuring aid. *Nicias* writing to *Athens* for supplies, new Levies were made, and *Demosthenes*, and *Eurymedon* joyned in Commission with him, whereof the later was sent in mid-winter with ten Gallies, and a great summe of money into *Sicily*, and the other staid till Spring to get ready what was remaining: twenty ships they also ordered to attend the motions of the *Peloponnesians*. These things being known, the *Spartans* and *Corinthians* calling upon their Confederates provided for the invasion of *Attica*, accordingly as *Alcibiades* had advised. With these things the 18<sup>th</sup> year of the War ended.

56. In the beginning of the Spring the *Peloponnesians* under the Command of *Agis* the *Spartan* King, invaded *Attica*, where they fortified *Oecalea*, a place some twelve miles distant from *Athens*, and as much from the

*Thucyd. lib. 7.*

## SECT. 3.

The Athenians defeated at Syracuse.

Borders of *Boeotia*. The *Athenians* sent thirty ships to waite *Peloponnesus*, and sixty (with five of *Chius*) into *Sicily* under *Demosthenes* his command. Out of *Peloponnesus* were sent to the aid of the *Syracusians*, from *Sparta* 500 men, from *Corinth* 500. & out of *Boeotia* 300. to which the *Corinthian* Gallies lying at *Naupactus* were ordered to be a Convoy. At *Syracuse* the affairs of the *Athenians*, through the skill and valour of *Gylippus* and *Hermocrates*, went down the wind, who being also much distressed at home by the excursions out of *Decelen*, yet kept up their spirits to the admiration of all men. After *Demosthenes* had arrived in *Sicily*, and heard of the miscarriages of their Fleet at Sea, he blamed *Nicias*, that he had not as soon as he came applied all his endeavour to *Syracuse* the head of the War, and caused him to agree to set upon *Epipola*, a difficult and craggy place, where falling on in the dark night, they could not discern betwixt friend and foe, all speaking in the same dialect, and thereby great slaughter being made of them, partly by themselves and the Enemy, the *Athenians* received a great defeat. The Generals hereupon consulting together, were not of the same opinion; *Demosthenes* now was for departing away speedily out of the Island, seeing all things hapned crossly therein, though he had been the cause of the fight: on the other side *Nicias*, who had laboured with all his might against the War, now pressed earnestly that it was for the honour and interest of their Countrey to stay and carry on the siege, and though *Eurymedon* was of the same opinion with *Demosthenes*, yet could not *Nicias* be removed from his, so that their departure was deferred till they understood that *Gylippus* was come with new supplies out of *Peloponnesus* and *Sicily*. This resolution he stuck to so much, for that he knew the multitude rather to look at successe than the reason of things, and was unwilling to hazard his life and reputation in the hands of those who would be ready to condemn before they heard him, as they had done *Sophocles* and *Pheidorus* the former Generals, pretending they had taken money for making peace, when indeed there was not any possibility of making War.

57. But upon the report of *Gylippus* his coming, *Nicias* was content, and order was given for the Army to dislodge with the greatest secrecie; when in the mean time fell out an Eclipse of the Moon. By this, which was accounted an ill Omen, was *Nicias* again so terrified, that out of a superstitious conceit he would not have the Camp break up till 27 dayes were past. The *Syracusians* much rejoyced hereat, and resolved to hinder their flight, or force them to transfer themselves to some other place. They first beat up their Camp, and the next day provoked them to fight, both at Land and Sea, and in the mouth of the Haven engaged in a great and bloody battel, wherein *Eurymedon* one of the *Athenian* Generals was slain, and though the Squadron of *Gylippus* was worsted, which made the *Athenians* Erect a Trophy, yet had they the worst of it, all considered. They made them too late repent that they had so ambitiously and unjustly undertaken a War with a Citie as great as *Athens* it self, and one of the same kind of Government, Enemy to *Oligarchy*. But the *Syracusians* were more and more animated, conceiving now great hopes of obtaining much glory and favour amongst the *Græcians*, of whom some they might free from slavery, and others from the fear of it for the time to come, by chastising their Tyrants, as they were accounted. As a way hereto they resolved to block up the mouth of the Haven, that the *Athenian* Fleet should not passe out thence by stealth.

57. The *Athenians* seeing themselves in this straight, concluded it the best for them to make a new, and a more narrow Camp near to their ships, and attempt another battel at Sea, in which, if they had the better, then to remove to *Catana*, but if not, to burn their Vessels and depart by Land to some convenient place. This was attempted with all care and expedition; but the *Syracusians* opposed them, and in the straight of the Haven was such a dispute, as scarce ever before had hapned, which was beheld by the land armies with passion suitable to the condition of their friends: Notwithstanding the *Syracusians* lost almost as many Vessels, yet the other were so weakned, and

Sorely straightned.

the

Demosthenes and Eurymedon joyned in Commission with Nicias.



## SECT. 3.

the Sea-men so discouraged, that though the Generals would have attempted to break out another time, yet they refused any more to go aboard; so that they concluded of going away by Land the next night. If this had been done it might have fallen out well for the Army, but by the cunning device of *Hermocrates* they were circumvented, and persuaded to stay till the third day after.

They fly.

Are forced to yield to mercy.

(a) *Alian. Var. Hist. lib. 13. cap. 12.*(b) *Vide Simplician. in Chron. ad Coan. ann. M. 3590.*

Great joy in Greece.

59. Their departure was most full of out-cries, sorrow, and misery, set out to the life by *Thucydides*, so that none can read it without compassion. *Gylippus* seized upon their 130 ships left in the Haven, then pursued them, and set upon them behind, before, and on all sides, so that distressed for all necessities, they took another way than that which lead to *Catana*, otherwise than they had intended, and they were divided into two bodies, whereof that with *Demosthenes* soon yielded upon promise of their lives. *Nicias* required better terms, and refused to submit; but at length was forced to it, craving favour for himself and men, at the hands of *Gylippus* and the *Spartans*; 18000 in one day were slain, 700 taken and condemned to Mines, were after sold. The two Generals were (contrary to the utmost endeavour of *Gylippus*, who would fain have had the honour of carrying them to *Sparta*) put to death, or as *Diodorus* saith, killed themselves in prison. This was the end of the *Sicilian War*, so indiscreetly overtaken by the *Athenians*, who when they had those already that gave them enough to do, would needs make to themselves more Enemies, and so by labouring to grasp, lost, all. *Meton* (a) the Astronomer (mentioned before) was so certainly persuaded of the danger of this expedition, that when he was enrolled amongst those that were to undertake it, to prevent his going, he counterfeited himself mad, to confirm the belief of which he set fire on his own house. But (b) *Hippocrates* the charge, as Physician to the *Athenian Army*.

60. The *Athenians* were loath to give credit to the first report of the loss of their Army and Fleet, because of the greatness of it, but then knowing it to be so indeed, were much incensed against those that persuaded them to undertake the War, and for that they feared the *Sicilians* would now come upon them whilst they were destitute of all things, the City was filled with great consternation. Yet within awhile, they took courage, and making all provision for defence, gave Commission to some few of the most ancient and experienced amongst them, to consult and provide fit matter for the multitude to decree. In Winter following all *Greece* was elevated upon this their bad success. They who were neutrals before, now offered themselves to join in suppressing those of whom formerly they stood in fear: the Confederates of *Lacedæmon* more vigorously provided against them, and all those that had been subject to them were earnest to shake off the yoke. The *Lacedæmonians* having such encouragement, set themselves very seriously to the War. *Agis* their King went into *Thessaly* to raise money, and a Fleet of 100 Gallies was prepared amongst the Confederates. *Pharnabazus* one of the *Satrapæes* of *Persia*, and Lieutenant of those parts of *Asia* about the *Hellepont*, and *Tissaphernes* another of the *Satrapæes*, sent to *Sparta*, and offered them assistance. These designs were carried as secretly as could be, that the *Athenians* might get no knowledge of them, who laboured also at the same time about the Rigging of a new Fleet. With these preparations the 19th year of the War ended.

61. The next year the *Athenians* were at the beginning somewhat encouraged by some success at Sea, and thereby the *Lacedæmonians* so far discouraged again, that they thought seriously of concluding the War, till otherwise persuaded by *Alcibiades*, who undertook an expedition into *Ionis* to withdraw it from the obedience of *Athens*, and did very much effect it. The *Athenians* hereat abashed, and fearing all their Associates would revolt, took out 1000 Talents, which as yet had been untouched, as forbidden by the Law, and laid them out in this case of extremity in provisions, and especially in preparing a new Fleet. Then by *Alcibiades* his means was a League

*Alcibiades* his  
a Rings against  
his own  
Country.

Thucyd. lib. 8.

## SECT. 3.

of alliance made betwixt *Darius Nothus* King of *Persia*, and the State of *Sparta*, by virtue of which the King allowed money for payment of their Soldiers. The *Athenians* recovered *Lesbus*, and *Clazomenæ*, the *Milesians* and *Chians* (principal in the revolt) were destroyed by them, but again they had the worst of it in a Sea-fight near unto *Rhodes*, which the *Peloponnesians* then by fair means drew to their society, exacting of the Inhabitants 23 talents in the name of tribute, which succeeded, because of the strength of this City, made them confidently despise the money, and alliance of *Persia*.

He lieth from  
the *Spartans*  
out of fear.

He suggesteth  
crafty counsel  
to *Tissaphernes*.

He desireth  
to return to  
his Country.

*Phrynicius*  
standeth in  
fear of him,  
and laboureth  
to destroy him.

To no purpose.

62. For, *Tissaphernes* and they were at some difference about the form of the League, which they complained was not rightly drawn, for therein they were tied to give up to the *Persian* the Islands, *Thessalie*, *Locri*, and *Bœotia*, which heretofore had been under the power of that Empire: which seemed unworthy for the *Lacedæmonians* to do, who pretended themselves the vindicators of the liberty of *Greece*, against the incroachments of the *Athenians*; Herewith *Tissaphernes* was grievously nettled, and departed in discontent from *Cnidus*, where eleven *Spartans* had met him to require that the instruments should be corrected. At this time also it hapned that *Alcibiades* was envied for his glory, and suspected by the *Peloponnesians*, and hated by *Agis* the *Spartan King*, for that he had corrupted his wife, insomuch that order was reported to have been sent to *Astyocheus* the General, to kill him, but he withdrew himself to *Tissaphernes*. He laid open to him the full State of the *Peloponnesians*, persuaded him to diminish the pay that his Master allowed them, by changing a Drachme into three Oboli a day, part of which also he should ever keep unpaid, to keep the Seamen at his devotion. He further suggested crafty counsel to him: especially that they should not suffer the *Athenians* to be suppressed by the *Lacedæmonians*, but to keep those two States ever in an even balance, and let them weaken one another by their mutual enmities; yet to favour a little more the *Athenians*, because they would be content with part of the sovereignty of the Seas, and would go no further, whereas the *Spartans* would not rest here, but contend for the sole Dominion, and to bring all the *Græcians* from under the *Persian* yoke. These things he pressed upon him as great mysteries of State for his Master's service, and as such he embraced them; wherefore the promise he had made of joining the *Phœnician Fleet* with that gallant one of the *Peloponnesians* was not performed, and the power of this weakened by the withholding of the Soldiers pay.

63. *Alcibiades* had a great desire to return into his own Country, which would not be so any purpose except it were preserved, and therefore he communicated these things to *Tissaphernes*. He wrote to some of the chief of the *Athenians* then lying at *Samus* concerning his desire, and told them wherein he was dealing with him; and yet he signified that he had no mind to return, as long as the Popular Government (under which he was banished) should continue. The *Athenians* that lay at *Samus* liked the matter well, and generally inclined to change the Government, for that they were made to believe that *Tissaphernes* by the procurement of *Alcibiades* would be their friend, and they should have money from him for the payment of their Army. But *Phrynicius* the General standing in fear of *Alcibiades*, by reason he had spoken too freely against him, opposed it with all his might, and when he could do nothing by words, very boldly acquainted *Astyocheus* the *Lacedæmonian* General with the matter. He who now had not *Alcibiades* in his power, was no whit eager for his destruction, and being withall corrupted by *Tissaphernes* to betray his trust, went and acquainted him and *Alcibiades* with what he had received. Hereupon *Alcibiades* wrote to the *Athenians* in *Samus*, and acquainted them with the treachery of *Phrynicius*, required them to put him to death as a Traitor to his Country, who hereupon was exceedingly troubled, and boyled with anger against *Astyocheus*; yet in so desperate a case adding one rash act unto another, he wrote again to him, upbraided him with unthankfulness, and signified that he would betray *Samus* with all the *Athenian*

T t

nian

## SECT. 3.

nian Army there unto the *Lacedæmonians*, which he could do, because the Town was unwall'd, and would do, forasmuch as it was lawful in so eminent a danger, as he was in, to provide for his own security.

64. *Ajijechus* without taking this opportunity to serve his Country, made this known also to *Alcibiades*, which *Phrynus* understanding, and knowing that *Alcibiades* would write hereof to the Army, that he might prevent him, he told the Soldiers that the Enemy intended to set upon *Samus* by Sea and Land, now that the City wanted walls, whereupon he commanded them, having absolute authority, to raise a work about it, and keep diligent watch. This was done accordingly, and then though *Alcibiades* his letters presently after arrived, yet no credit was given to the accusation, as proceeding from his bitter Enemy, but more confidence repos'd in him. *Alcibiades* then applied himself to *Tissaphernes* to reconcile him to the *Athenians*, but he being unwilling to lose all his credit, was cool in the business. But whilst he dealt with him, the Soldiers in *Samus* having sent to *Athens* to deal with the People about the change of Government, *Pisander* chief of the messengers labour'd to convince them of the absolute necessity thereof, for that otherwise they could not be freed from imminent destruction. The People being circumvented yielded to it, & gave him with ten other Commissioners power to treat, and conclude whatsoever they found necessary for the State, with *Tissaphernes* and *Alcibiades*: but the former of these standing in fear of utterly losing the *Peloponnesians*, and having this always in his mind to keep the two States in an equal balance, would not give any encouragement, or open his mind fully to *Alcibiades*, who fearing to lose his credit and power with him, which he had so boasted of to the *Athenians*; that he might put them by, demanded such hard Conditions as he knew they could not grant, and so the Commissioners returned with great stomach and disdain, to have been so ill used by him.

Commissioners sent to treat with *Alcibiades*, and *Tissaphernes*, but in vain.

*Tissaphernes* reneweth the War with the *Peloponnesians*;

65. And *Tissaphernes* to prosecute that design of setting the *Græcians* upon each other, and keeping them in equal power; fearing that if he detain'd any longer the pay from the *Peloponnesians*, that they would be too much weakened by the *Athenians*, who now of late had had the better of it in some engagements, and thereby the Kings Provinces should be expos'd to danger, he went this Winter into *Caria*, where he renewed the League on better terms for the *Peloponnesians*, paid the arrears due to the Army, and promised to dispatch away the *Phœnician* Fleet. This new alliance was made in the thirteenth year of *Darius*, (*Alexipidas* being *Ephorus* at *Sparta*) upon the River *Meander*, attested by the names of *Tissaphernes*, *Hieramenes*, and the Children of *Pharnaces*. Towards the end of Winter *Oropus* a Town situate upon the confines of *Attica* and *Bœotia*, revolted to the *Bœotians*, being formerly in the jurisdiction of *Athens*. Hereupon the *Bœotians* conceived hopes to alienate all *Eubœa* from the *Athenians*, especially for that the *Erætrians* who were principal in that Island, inclined to a revolt, and sent away to the *Peloponnesians* to desire they would come into *Eubœa*. But their care for *Chius* which was distressed by the *Athenians* suffered them not to comply with their desire; for they set out a Fleet to relieve that Island, but the *Athenians* being masters of the Sea, it durst not venture further than *Miletus*; and therefore the *Athenian* ships returned unto *Samus*. Thus ended the 20th year of the War.

66. In the beginning of Spring *Dercylidas* was sent from *Sparta* by Land to the *Hellepont*, with no great force, where with ease he brought off *Abydus* (a Colony of the *Milesians*) from their obedience to *Athens*, and after that (*Lampsacus*, but attempted the same upon *Sestus* to no purpose. The *Athenians* and *Chians* had a battle at Sea upon equal terms: but *Strombichides* the *Athenian* hearing what was done in the *Hellepont* hasten'd thither, recovered *Lampsacus*, was repell'd by the Inhabitants of *Abydus*, and then went to *Sestus* in *Europe*, where he plac'd a strong Garrison for the security of those parts. In the mean time *Pisander* and his Colleagues being return'd from *Alcibiades* to *Samus*, in conjunction with those therein, resolv'd without

## SECT. 3.

The Government changed to Oligarchy in *Athens*, and the Cities subject to it.

The Model.

Four hundred men have the executive power.

They send to *Agis* about a peace, who slighteth them.

Refers their second address to *Sparta*.

The Army at *Samus* enraged at them.

without him to change the Government. They first did it in most of the Cities which were subject to *Athens*, and found it almost effected there, after that *Androcles*, a man who was most earnest in the defence of *Democracy*, with some others, were secretly murdered by some Conspirators, who labour'd thereby to gain the good will of *Alcibiades* and *Tissaphernes*. These design'd to have the State governed by 5000 men of the most able with bodies and estates to serve it, and the People durst not contradict them, such factions and jealousies had risen, that no man was secure of his neighbour. But *Pisander* and his Colleagues arriving, obtained of the multitude, that ten men might be impow'd, to conclude and set down in writing such things as seem'd to them requisite for a settlement, which on a certain day were to be referred to the People.

67. When the day came, these ten men first required, that it might be lawful for any one to speak his opinion without danger of incurring any penalty by the Laws. Then they propos'd, that no Magistracy should be undertaken and exercis'd after the usual manner, nor any receive salary for the exercising thereof: that five Presidents should be chosen, who should pick out 100 men, and each of these chuse three more, that all might make up the number of 400. That these 400 men should be invest'd with the Supreme power and authority; should decree and ordain what seem'd good unto them; and might call together the five thousand when they thought it convenient. These propositions, though of so great consequence for the change they were likely to produce, were yet admitted of, not as much as one man gainfaying them, such a change there was made in the minds of the People, which now since the banishing of the Tyrants had onely been governed by it's Laws and constitutions, and not onely not subject to the authority of others, but reigning over many, devested it self of so great sovereignty and power. But these 400 men thus authoris'd, were conducted in a solemn manner to the Senate-house, with daggers under their coats, and compass'd about with armed men, where the old Senate having their Salaries paid were dismissed. They chose the *Prætorians* or *Presidents* out of their own body, and then began to exercise their authority; but not without blood, bonds, and banishment. They sent to *Agis* the *Lacedæmonian* King, then lying at *Decælea*, to treat of Peace, but he not having any opinion of their power as long to continue, but thinking the People would shortly resume it, reject'd their Ambassie, and sending for more Forces out of *Peloponnesus*, came to *Athens*, hoping that in these commotions he might affright the City into a surrender. But he found the contrary; for all agreeing in this to resist him as the common Enemy, they stood notably in their defence, and sallied out upon him; so that having no hopes, he dismiss'd his new forces, and with the other returned to *Decælea*.

68. After his return, the 400 sent other Ambassadors to him about a peace, who refer'd them to *Sparta*, whither they went, but what success they had, doth not appear from *Thucydides*. They knew the common Soldiers at *Samus* (though *Pisander* and his Companions had stick'd so for it) to be Enemies to Oligarchy, and therefore to take them off, they sent to acquaint them that the power was not in them onely, but in the 5000 also, and labour'd to satisfy them in this point, that this was equivalent to *Democracy*, seeing that during that Government, when all things were done by the body of the People, a greater number did not use to meet. But they at *Samus* being impatient of any but Popular Government, after the departure of *Pisander* and his Colleagues, had restor'd it there, and sent to *Athens* to signify so much, not knowing what had hapn'd there, which was very unwelcome news to the 400, who cast some of the messengers into prison. But *Chareas*, hiding himself for some time, escap'd, and carried back a report how things stood, amplifying much the oppression and insolence of these Governours; whereat the Soldiers were grievously enrag'd, and threaten'd death, not onely to the authors of the Oligarchy, but to all that had been partakers of it; and at such a season when the Enemy expected such advantages, they had committed something,

## SECT. 3.

Takes an  
Oath of  
Combination  
against them.

tending to the ruin of their Countrey, had they not been restrained by the interposition of more stayed and prudent men. *Thrasylbulus* and *Thrasylus*, who had been most earnest for restoring the popular Government, that they might do it in a safe and honorable way, caused all the Soldiers, especially such as they knew to favour *Oligarchy*, to take an Oath unanimously to act for the restitution of the power of the people; to fight resolutely against the *Peloponnesians*; to take for Enemies the 400 men at *Athens*, and to admit of no intercourse with them by any Officer at Arms; which Oath also they caused to be taken by all the *Samians* that were at age, whose conjunction they thought necessary for carrying on the design.

Recalleth  
*Alcibiades*.

69. Then did the Soldiers chuse them new Officers, of whom were *Thrasylbulus* and *Thrasylus*, and encouraged one another to the Enterprize, both from the justnesse of their undertaking (for that the Army had not revolted from the Citie, but the Citie from it) as also from their strength, far superior (especially in respect of the Fleet) to that of the 400. adding also, that *Alcibiades* upon promise of security, and restitution, would be assisting to them, and that they might hope well concerning *Tissaphernes*, and the King of *Persia*. In the mean while the *Peloponnesians* sore mutined against *Tissaphernes* and *Asiocyhus*, that they had not their pay, and were not lead out to fight with the *Athenians*, whilst they were so at odds amongst themselves, which forced the later to draw both Sea and Land-forces to *Mycale* for an engagement, but the *Athenians* refusing to fight, for that they were inferior to them in number of ships, when more came from the *Hellepont* presented themselves; but then the *Peloponnesians* conceiving themselves too weak for the encounter, refused to engage. *Thrasylbulus* in the mean while perswaded the Army to recall *Alcibiades*. Audience being given him, after he had complained of the injustice of his Enemies, he discoursed much of the state of Affairs as they then stood; Magnified above measure his power with *Tissaphernes* (which he did, both to discourage them at *Athens*, and to render the *Satrapa* the more odious to the *Peloponnesians*) who he said would assist them to the selling of the bed he lay on. Hereupon the Soldiers mightily elevated with hopes, presently created him one of their Generals, with full power, thinking of nothing but the punishment of the 400. and resolving without any regard of the Enemy at hand to sayl directly for the *Piræus*.

70. *Alcibiades* withstood their resolution, saying, that nothing was rashly to be committed, and seeing that they had put the power into his hands, he must go to *Tissaphernes*. This he did, not onely to transact what he pretended, but also to boast of his new power, to let the *Persian* know he could either pleasure him, or incommode his affairs, and so this crafty man procured, that he both made him fear the *Athenians*, and the *Athenians* stand in awe of him, whilst hereby he made up his own interest. That also which he intended concerning *Tissaphernes*, and the *Peloponnesians*, came to passe; for distrusting him before, they were now very bitter against him, since he hindered the fight at *Mileus*, and defrauded them of their pay, and *Asiocyhus* their own General they had killed in a mutiny, had he not taken sanctuary. Presently upon this came *Mindarus*, sent from *Sparta* to succeed him, who then departed home with an Agent from *Tissaphernes*, whom he sent to excuse himself to that State, and answer such objections as were made against him. *Alcibiades* returned from *Tissaphernes* to *Samus*, where met him the Ambassadors of the 400 men (who upon hearing how things went here, had all this while out of fear staid at *Delus*.) The Soldiers would not hear them, and voted they should be put to death; but he caused them to have leave to deliver their message, which they did with all the advantage they could, in excuse of those that sent them, accusing of falshood what had been reported by *Chareas*; but still the Army was dissatisfied, and cried out to sayl to the *Piræus*. *Alcibiades* now timely interposed himself; for, had the Army then departed for *Athens*, all *Ionia*, and the *Hellepont* had been presently lost; but he put a stop to their heat, and checked those that were so fierce against the Ambassadors.

The Ambassadors of the 400 come to *Samus*.

## SECT. 3.

*Alcibiades* gives them a cross answer.

fadors. He himself bad them return this answer, that the 5000 might retain their power, but the 400 were commanded to desist, and restore the *Senate* of 500 whom they outed; that they should do well at *Athens* to take care of the Commonwealth, and not to give place to the Enemy: for whilst the City was safe, he hoped to make up the breaches; but if either it should be lost, or the Army at *Samus* miscarry, there would want those who should be reconciled to each other.

The Counsels of *Tissaphernes* in the dark.

71. With this answer he dismissed the Messengers in safety, as he did also with much kindnesse Ambassadors sent from *Argos* to offer assistance against the 400. *Tissaphernes* now upon what design is uncertain, went to *Aspendus* where the *Phœnician* Fleet lay, pretending he would purge himself to the *Lacedæmonians*, and give order to *Tamius* his Officer to pay the Arrears due to the Army. But neither did he remove the Fleet from *Aspendus*, according to agreement, pretending frivolous things, nor did *Tamius* accordingly pay the monies; which raised many conjectures and much discourse. *Thucydides* thinketh his design to have been to hold the *Græcians* in suspense, and suffer them to weaken one another, for that if he had joyned himself to either party, by the help of his Fleet he might in a short time, and without difficulty have finished the War, and given the victory to which side he pleased. *Alcibiades* went to him with 13 ships, promising either to induce him to joyn his Fleet with the *Athenians*, or to procure that he should not assist them of *Peloponnesus*; it being likely enough that he knew his intention of not moving to the one part or the other; but this he did, especially by his intercourse, and familiarity with him, to increase the indignation and choler of the *Peloponnesians*, and thereby to constrain him to joyn himself with the *Athenians*. But the return and report of the Ambassadors sent from the 400 men raised great perturbations in the minds of men at *Athens*, whilst those, who either out of some ambitious design (all men being greedy of power over others) or for the publick good, desired the Supreme Authority might be in the 5000. had the advantage of the other factions. The other were as busie as concerned, especially *Phrynichus*, because so obnoxious to *Alcibiades*, *Pisanter*, and others. They sent to *Lacedæmon* to make peace, with that State upon any terms, and Fortified that part of the *Piræus*, which commandeth the mouth of the haven, which made the other party, which affected *Democratie*, very jealous; *Theramenes* crying out that they intended to betray the Citie to the Enemy, who now with 42 Gallies hovered about the Coasts.

How men in *Athens* stood affected to the 400.

The Traitorous designs of the 400.

Tumults at *Athens*.

72. Neither were these mere Calumnies; for these 400 men for the most part desired to retain the Dominion over both Citizens and Allies; but if not that, yet to continue Masters of the Fleet and Fortifications, and if this could not be obtained, then to call in the Enemy, to redeem their lives, and part of the Citie, with the ships and works; being resolved never to give way to the popular Government, from which they could expect nothing but sudden destruction. To this purpose they made the Wall upon the *Piræus* with several Gares to let in the Enemy if need were. But *Phrynichus* returning from *Sparta* whither he was sent Ambassadour (though to no purpose) was stabbed in the Forum by a conspiracy, after which *Theramenes* and his party grew more bold, and by the help of the Soldiers seized upon some of the Chief of the 400. whence ensued a very great tumult, all being ready to fall one upon another, and certain mischief had followed, but that the ancient men somewhat repressed the younger, and *Thucydides* the *Pharjalian*, then sojourning in the Citie, laboured earnestly to perswade them, crying out, that they should not themselves destroy their Countrey, now that the Enemy was ready to assail it, and with much ado he kept them from offering violence to one another. *Theramenes* also checked the Soldiers in the Haven; but he giving way to it, the new Fortifications there were demolished. The next day the 400 met, though in great fear, and sent some of their number to appease the Soldiers, saying, that they would chuse 5000 men, who from amongst themselves should chuse the number of 400 by turns to rule the State, desiring they would not undo the Citie by compelling it to yield to the

## SECT. 3.

the Enemy. Herewith the minds of the Soldiers were somewhat quiered, and with much ado they agreed that a general Assembly should be had at a certain day for an agreement: but when the day came, and the Assembly was scarce gathered together, news came that the 42 ships, under Command of *Hegesandrides* the *Spartan*, held their course directly from the Coast of *Me-gara*, to the Island *Salamine*.

73. The Soldiers now concluded of the certainty of what *Theramenes* had told them, and that these ships intending for the *Piræus*, it was good that the Fortifications were demolished; and likely enough it was that *Hegesandrides* hovering so long about *Epidaurus*, expected some good opportunity to fall on *Athens*. Hereupon all the Assembly halted to the *Piræus*, but the Fleet making towards *Eubœa* at length came to *Oropus*, which making them very solicitous for *Eubœa* wherein their hope onely remained, they sent *Thymochares* with some ships to *Eretria*, which he joyning to those that were in the Island, made up 36 sayl. He was forced to fight sooner than he intended, by the fraud of the *Eretrians*, who delayed to bring victuals to sell as they were wont, and thereby drew the Soldiers further off from the Fleet, and made great disorder; so that the *Peloponnesians* setting upon

The Athenians defeated are seized with great consternation.

them, whilest out of good order, quickly put them to flight. They took 22 ships, killing some, and taking the rest of the men: such as fled to Land, and betook themselves to *Eretria* as to friends, were killed by the *Inhabitants*; then presently all *Eubœa*, except *Oreus*, revolted to the *Peloponnesians*. When tidings hereof came to *Athens*, never did so great consternation seize upon them there, no not after the overthrow in *Sicily*. For the Army at *Samus* dislent from the Citie; they had neither ships left, nor men to serve in them, and were broken into factions, of which they could not foresee the event; and the losse of *Eubœa* was exceeding great, because that Island furnished the Citie with more Commodities than *Attica* it self. And their fear was increased by the nearness of it, from which the Enemy might presently come and seize upon the *Piræus* now destitute of ships, which they did not onely think would be, but imagined to be already done.

74. And had the Enemy been a little bolder, he might easily have done this, and more. Had he besieged the Citie, it would have been more grievously broken by seditions, and constrained to call home the Army at *Samus*, and thereby he might have reduced with ease *Ionia*, the *Hellepont*, all the Islands, and all as far as *Eubœa*; and so consequently all the *Athenian* Dominion into his power. But well was it for the *Athenians* that they had such an Enemy to deal with as the *Spartans*, who were of so contrary dispositions: they being speedy and bold in executing all their designs; but these slow, and something fearfull, especially in Sea matters, whereby they afforded many opportunities to the *Athenians*. These things are confirmed from instance in the *Syracusians*, who being of the same nature as the *Athenians*, were good enough for them at all assaies. The *Athenians* in the midst of all their fears took yet all care possible for their Affairs, furnishing out twenty ships, and meeting together in *Præce*, the usual place for popular Assemblies, they abrogated the power of the 400. and gave it to 5000. amongst whom some were to furnish the Commonwealth with Arms, ordering that none should receive any wages for his employment. Many other meetings then succeeded, in which certain Law-makers were chosen, and other things decreed for the good of the State, at which time *Thucydides* thinketh the *Athenian* Commonwealth to have been better than ever tempered and qualified, a moderate, and equal way being brought in betwixt the power of a few, and that of the whole people. A decree also passed for the restitution of *Alcibiades*, and those with him. Upon this change *Pisander* and the rest that adhered to *Oligarchy* fled to the Enemy.

The contrary dispositions of the Athenians and Lacedæmonians.

The power of the 400 abrogated, and the Government most equally poised.

75. In the mean while the *Peloponnesian* Fleet lying at *Mileus*, in vain expected money from *Tissaphernes*, and the coming of the *Phœnician* Fleet: on the other side *Pharnabazus*, Lieutenant to the King upon the *Hellepont*, promised them all kindnesse, and in particular used his indeavour to draw all the

## SECT. 3.

the *Greek* Citie: within his Government from the society of the *Athenians*, which *Tissaphernes* also had promised, but performed like other things. *Mindarus* the General of the Fleet moved herewith, went from *Mileus* towards the *Hellepont*, with a Fleet of 73 ships, which *Thrasylus* the *Athenian* understanding, made after him with 55 Sail, labouring to get before him. Some stop was made by the way, but nothing very considerable done till they came towards an engagement at *Gnosens*. Sixteen Gallies of *Athens* were first met with by the *Peloponnesians*, who took three of them, and burnt another; and at length both the Fleets joyned battel, being enlarged since they came into the *Hellepont* by the accessse of other ships. At first the *Peloponnesians* put to flight the middle battel of the *Athenians*, and driving the ships to Land had the better of it there; but being too eager in the pursuit, they brake their ranks, which *Thrasylus* and those with him observing in his wing, wound about and fell upon them with such violence, as forced them to flee. They took 21 ships, the rest by reason of the straightnesse of the Sea getting into some Harbour or other, and though they lost fifteen of their own, yet obtained they a seasonable Victory, which made them lift up their heads (having been dejected by so many disasters) and cease to complain of their Fortune.

The Athenians obtained a Victory at Sea.

76. The report of it at *Athens*, as of an unexpected thing, mightily encouraged the people also, so that notwithstanding the revolt of *Eubœa*, and intestine Seditions, they had hopes still, if they prosecuted the War with diligence, to have the better. Four daies after the fight the Fleet removed from *Sestus* towards *Cyzicus*, where in their way they took eight Gallies that came from *Byzantium*, and taking the Town, which then for want of walls could make no resistance, fined the *Inhabitants*; the *Peloponnesians* at the same time endeavouring to recruit their Navie. In the mean while *Alcibiades* having been with *Tissaphernes* returned to *Samus* with thirteen Gallies, bringing word, that he had stopped the *Phœnician* Fleet from joyning with the *Peloponnesians*, and had rendered the *Satrapa* more friendly towards the *Athenians*. Then presently adding nine ships to the former, he constrained the *Halicarnassians* to pay a great sum of money, and fortified *Cos*. *Tissaphernes*, when he heard that the *Peloponnesian* Fleet was gone towards the *Hellepont*, halted from *Aspendus* into *Ionia*, where understanding that the *Inhabitants* of *Antandrus* had received a Garrison from the *Peloponnesians* of *Mydus*, because they had been ill dealt withall by *Astacus*, whom he had made his Lieutenant in those parts, as also that the *Peloponnesians* had cast his Garrison out of *Mileus*, and *Cnidus* (which they did to affront him, laying grievous matters to his charge) left they should proceed any further, and grieving that *Pharnabazus* in a lesse time, and with lesse expence, should make more use of them against the *Athenians*, he determined to follow them into the *Hellepont*, to expostulate with them about *Antandrus*, and purge himself as well as he could of those things laid to his charge about the *Phœnician* Fleet, and other matters. And when he came to *Ephesus* he sacrificed to *Diana*. Here the history of *Thucydides* (a) endeth (with the Summer of the 21st year of the War) which afterwards was continued by *Theopompus* for seventeen years; but by *Xenophon* for 28. The work of the former is lost; and that of the latter extant, but without a beginning, in the judgement of a learned man, who, besides the proeme, will have the history of two years to be wanting; from the end of that Summer at which *Thucydides* left, to the conclusion of the Summer of the 23 year of the War. But *Diodorus* placing the last things of *Thucydides* in the second year of the 92 Olympiad, in the very next relateth those which are mentioned in the beginning of the first Book of *Xenophon*, so that if the whole was extant in his time, he either missed these two years, and so inverted the Chronology of all his history succeeding; or else onely the proeme of the first Book of *Xenophon* is lost (if there was any) and the History entire.

77. Not long after the *Athenians* and *Lacedæmonians* engaged thrice in *Xenoph.* fight at Sea, wherein the *Athenians* had the better first and last, the second *Hellenic. l. 1.* having

(a) *Diodorus ad Olymp. 92. ann. 2.*

(b) *Usserius in Annal. Vct. Test. pag. 216.*

## SECT. 3.

Tissaphernes  
secureth  
Alcibiades.

Alcibiades  
overthroweth  
Mindarus the  
Spartan.

having been fought to no great purpose on either side. *Tissaphernes*, after this coming to the *Hellepont*, *Alcibiades* went to visit him, whom he secured, and committed to close custody, pretending he had orders from his Master to make War against the *Athenians*; but rather for that he feared he should be accused by the *Peloponnesians* to the King, and therefore thought by this enterprize to redeem his credit. But after he had been secured thirty days, he made his escape to *Clazomena*, where pretending to have been sent by *Tissaphernes*, he sailed thence to the *Athenian* Army lying at *Cardia*. Sailing thence to the *Hellepont* or *Cyzicus*, he overthrew *Mindarus* both at Sea and Land, who died also in the fight, taking all the *Peloponnesian* ships, after which he forced from the Town a great sum of money, and prosecuted the Victory by fining and securing other places. In the mean while letters were intercepted, and sent to *Athen*, which were to *Sparta*, written from *Hippocrates* Lieutenant to *Mindarus*, and found to contain the distress of the Fleet in these few words, according to the *Lacedemonian* custom: *All is lost; Mindarus is slain, the Soldiers are famished: we know not what to do.* But *Pharnabazus* laboured with all his might to encourage the *Lacedemonian* Army, telling them they had lost nothing but wooden ships, their men being saved, and that new ones should be built at his Masters cost (who had wood enough on the Mount *Ida*) in which work he was very diligent, and relieved the *Chalcedonians* then distressed.

Plutarch in  
Alcibiade.

A. M. 3594.  
Ol. 92. an. 2.  
V. C. 343.  
Darius Nothi  
13. Belli Pelop.  
21.

Diodorus ad  
Olymp. 92. an.  
3.

The Lacede-  
monians send  
to Athens  
about Peace.

Cleophon hin-  
derech it.

Agis repulset  
from Athens.

78. The news of the successe with the letter of *Hippocrates* coming to *Athen*, filled the People with excessive joy, who offered sacrifice to their gods, and kept holy day. They chose then 1000 of the most valiant Foot, and 100 Horse for prosecuting the War, and sent thirty Gallies more to *Alcibiades*, that he might with greater successe set upon the allies of *Sparta* now the Sea was in his power. The *Lacedemonians* when they understood how things went, dispatched away Ambassadors (the chief of which was *Endius*, unto *Athen*) about a peace. They offered that both States might retain such places as they had already in their power, that the Garrisons might be dismissed on both sides, and the prisoners redeemed man for man; and much in a little was said by *Endius*, to shew that the *Athenians* were more concerned to be for peace, though he denied not but that the War was hurtful to *Sparta*. The most moderate men amongst the *Athenians* were willing to hear of an accommodation; but such as made their own markers out of the publick losse, and gained by the War, withstood the proposition. Amongst these as principal was *Cleophon*, the most eminent of the *Damagogi* (or leaders of the People) at this time, though formerly a maker of Harps, whom many remembered to have been bound with fetters, but he was surreptitiously registred amongst the Citizens. He speaking many things fit for his purpose, especially made use of the late successe; which he so improved, as if Fortune now had forgot to be inconstant. The People herewith puffed up, and conceiving great hopes that by the conduct of *Alcibiades* they should re-obtain their ancient power, refused to entertain the proposals made by *Endius*; of which ill advice they were afterwards sensible, when it was too late, falling so low from this height of presumption, that they could never after recover themselves.

Xenoph.  
Hellen. lib. 1.

79. After this, *Agis* the *Spartan* King made excursions from *Decelea*, as far as the walls of *Athen*, at which time it hapned that *Thrasylbulus* was in the City about business, who leading out his *Athenian* Soldiers and others that were present, offered him battle; at which he was troubled, and hasted away, losing a few of his men in some light skirmishes. This service got *Thrasylbulus* such credit, that he easily obtained what he came for; 1000 Foot of heavy Armour which he himself would pick out, 100 Horse, and 50 Gallies, being decreed to him; but *Agis* seeing that it was to no purpose to besiege *Athen* by Land, as long as they could bring in what provision they pleased at the *Piræus*, sent away *Clearchus* the Son of *Ramphius* to *Byzantium* and *Chalcedon*, to make provision for Sea matters, who got through the *Hellepont* with much adoe, and with the losse of three ships out of his fifteen he had with him, came to *Byzantium*.

80. The

## SECT. 3.

The acts of  
Thrasylbulus  
the Athenian.

80. The next year in which the 93 Olympiad was solemnized, wherein *Emboius* the *Cyrenæan* got the prize in the course, *Euarchippus* being *Ephorus* at *Sparta*, and *Euclemon Archon* at *Athen*, *Thrasylbulus* having obtained the ships decreed to him, with 5000 Sea-men, sailed to *Samus*, whence after three daies he departed, and took *Colophon*, made excursions into *Lydia*, where obtaining much booty, he also went against *Ephesus*. *Tissaphernes* coming in in good time, he was beaten back from the City with double losse, whence he sailed to the *Hellepont*, and in his way at *Lesbos* put to flight a Fleet of 25 *Syracusan* ships, four whereof he took with the men in them. Then departed he to *Sestus* to the other *Athenian* Forces, and thence removed to *Lampsacus* with the whole Army in the beginning of Winter, which Town they fortified, and besieging *Abydus* overthrew *Pharnabazus*, who came with a considerable body of Horse to relieve the Town; which Victory reconciled the Soldiers, who before this were at odds, because those under *Alcibiades* being hitherto victorious, would not be joyned with the followers of *Thrasylbulus* who had been beaten. In the same Winter the *Athenians* made frequent depredations in the territories of the *Persian* King. Then also the *Helors* which had fled from *Malea* to *Coriphassium*, were upon agreement dismissed by the *Lacedemonians*; and the Plantation of *Heraclea*, and *Trachiniae*, were by the *Acheans* the ancient Inhabitants, betrayed into the hands of the *Oiceans* the common Enemy, and 700 of them slain, together with *Labotas* the *Lacedemonian* Governour. Thus the 24th year of the War ended, wherein the *Medes* having rebelled, were reduced to obedience by *Darius Nothus*, and the Temple of *Pallas* at *Phocæa* was burnt with Thunder and Lightning.

Alcibiades be-  
siegeth Chalce-  
don.

81. In the beginning of the next Spring *Pantacles* being *Ephorus* at *Sparta*, and *Antigones Archon* at *Athen*, the *Athenians* with their whole Army and Fleet went into *Proconnesus*; thence to *Chalcedon* and *Byzantium*, and fate down before *Chalcedon*. The *Chalcedonians* aware of their coming, sent all their booty to the *Bythinians* their neighbours, which being known to *Alcibiades*, he went with a sufficient force, and by threats got it delivered up to him, after which returning he compassed *Chalcedon* from Sea to Sea with a rampire, and to the River. *Hippocrates* the *Lacedemonian* Governour of the Town, troubled hereat, sallied out, and fought with that Party that was under *Thrasylbulus*, for a long time with ambiguous Fortune, till *Alcibiades* coming in, *Hippocrates* was slain, and his men repulset into the Town. *Pharnabazus* during the fight came to relieve him, but could not get to them by reason of the *Athenian* fortifications. He, whilst *Alcibiades* was absent, gathering Money from the Cities, made an agreement with the other *Athenian* Captains, that he should pay them 20 talents, that the *Chalcedonians* should pay all their arrears, and afterwards as much as they were wont: in the mean time the *Athenians* should offer them no violence, till the *Athenian* Ambassadors, which he took upon him to convey, should return from the King. *Alcibiades* at this time was at *Selymbria*, which having taken, he returned to *Byzantium* with a body of Horse and Foot newly raised in *Cheronefus* and *Thrace*, where *Pharnabazus* expected him to have his oath to the agreement. He refused to take his oath except *Pharnabazus* did the like, who condescended to him, and so they both swore not to hurt each other. Together with the *Athenians*, others went as Ambassadors to the King from the *Lacedemonians*; as also *Hermocrates* and his brother *Proxenus* now banished from *Syracuse*.

82. The *Athenians* then presently besieged *Byzantium*, which having no hopes to obtain by strong hand, they attempted by treachery, and had it delivered up to them, whilst *Clearchus* the Governour, a *Lacedemonian*, was gone to *Pharnabazus* to sollicite him about money to pay the Soldiers, and to gather a Fleet together wherewith if possible he might raise the siege. News hereof was carried to *Pharnabazus* then wintering at *Gordium* in *Phrygia* with the Ambassadors whom he was carrying to the King. In the beginning of Spring when they were on their journey, they met with some *Spartans*,

U u

tans,



## SECT. 3.

The Athenian Ambassadors and others sent to the Persian King never come at him.

*tans*, who already had been with him, and said they had obtained from him for the *Lacedæmonians* what they desired, and how he had appointed his younger son *Cyrus* his Lieutenant for the Sea-coasts, whom he had commanded also to assist the *Spartans* in the War, bringing a Commission with him whereby he was constituted Governour over all that used to meet upon the plains of *Castlus*. The *Athenian* Ambassadors hearing this, desired first to see *Cyrus*, and then to go to the King; but if not, to return home. But *Cyrus* required *Pharnabazus*, either to deliver them up into his hands, or to send them back, because he would not have the *Athenians* privy to what was done. But he neither sent them to the King, nor dismissed them, but kept them off and on for three years, after which he obtained leave of *Cyrus* to dismiss them, seeing he would not permit them to go to his father, and so procured them by *Ariobarzanes* to be conveyed through *Myfia* to sea: and so they sayled to the *Athenian* Army.

83. *Alcibiades* having a great desire to return to *Athens* with the Army, first betook himself to *Samus*, whence he went and gathered up 100 Talents amongst the *Carians*, and returned thither. *Thasybulus* with thirty ships going into *Thrace*, reduced several places into his power, and *Thafus* amongst the rest, solely at this time distressed with Seditions, Famine, and Pestilence. *Thasybulus* with the rest of the Army sayled to *Athens*, before whose coming the people had created anew three Generals, *Alcibiades*, and *Thasybulus*, who were absent, and *Conon* present in the City. *Alcibiades* encouraged hereby sayled to the City, where at his landing multitudes of people came to meet him, admiring his person, and the present posture of affairs, which they ascribed to his good conduct, whom they now acquitted from what was laid formerly to his charge, and excused him for siding with the Enemy, seeing he was thereunto led by necessity. He spoke to the *Senate* and people in his own defence, and gave such satisfaction, no body opposing, that he was created General with full power, as able to restore the Commonwealth by his own industry to its ancient power. He first on Land (which of late had not used to be done for fear of the Enemy) celebrated the *Eleusinia*, and then in the third month after his arrival, with a Fleet of 100 Gallies, aboard of which were 1100 foot of heavy Armour, and 150 Horse, he sayled to *Andrus*, the Inhabitants of which he worsted in fight, and thence departed to *Samus*, intending to make use of that Island as the Seat of War. At this time *Lysander* was sent from *Sparta* to succeed *Craissippidas* in the Fleet, who went to *Cyrus* to desire him in earnest to undertake the War, blaming the backwardness of *Tissaphernes*. *Cyrus* promised him his utmost assistance; but he desired that the saylers might have a drachm a day assigned as their wages, thereby to entice the *Athenian* Mariners to forsake their Masters. He answered, he could do nothing against his fathers order, who had appointed for every ship 30 *Mina* a month, it being in the power of the *Lacedæmonians* to furnish out as few, or as many ships as they pleased; but afterwards he condescended to increase their pay to four *Oboli* a day: Moreover, he paid them all their Arrears, and gave them a months pay before-hand, which made them very chearfull, and ready for all duty.

Who refuseth to meddle with the *Athenians*.

*Alcibiades* going to speak with *Thasybulus*, leaveth his Fleet with his Pilot, who fighting with *Lysander*, contrary to his expresse command, is defeated & slain.

84. The *Athenians* were much troubled hereat, and sent also to *Cyrus* to obtain his favour, but could not be admitted, though *Tissaphernes* used all his interest in their behalf, relating, that his design had been according to the wise Counsel of *Alcibiades*, not to promote the Affairs of either, but to suffer them to destroy one another. *Alcibiades* understanding that *Thasybulus* being gone from the *Hellepont* fortified *Phocæa*, went thither to speak with him, leaving the Fleet with *Antiochus* his Pilot, whom he commanded expressly not to fight, no, not although he were provoked to it, untill his return. But he being not at all used to command any thing except the Helm of a ship, could not bear his new power without making trial of it, and with two Gallies went, and provoked *Lysander* in the Haven of *Ephesus* (where he was intent upon mending his Fleet consisting of 90 sayl) who first sent out some parti-

*Xenoph. ibid. Plutarch. in Alcibiade.*

## SECT. 3.

For which *Alcibiades* is discarded.

An Eclipse of the Moon.

*Callicratidas* succeeding *Lysander* defeated, and be siegeth *Conon* in *Mitylene*.

The *Athenian* Generals overthrow *Callicratidas*.

particular ships against him; but the whole *Athenian* Fleet coming in to his aid, he was also forced to carry out his, and so engaging with it, there ensued a sharp conflict upon uneven terms. For, the *Athenians* came on without order, and so within a short time were discomfited, *Antiochus* slain, and fifteen ships lost; the other returning back to *Samus*. *Alcibiades* returning within awhile, in great chafe for what had happened, went, and offered battel again to *Lysander*, but he contenting himself with his former victory would not stir, & not long after the *Lacedæmonians* took *Delphinium* and *Eion*, two Towns in *Thrace*. This loss was at *Athens* by *Thasybulus* imputed to the neglect, and luxury of *Alcibiades*, who thereupon by the people was outed of his Command, and ten other Captains chosen for the management of the War, amongst whom was *Thrasibulus* himself, *Conon*, and *Pericles* the son of *Pericles* the Great. He then went and made War upon the *Thracians* that were not under the command of that King, and thereby enriched himself with great Treasure, having built a Castle for his security, called *Bisanthe*, in those parts. *Conon*, who at this time was Governour of *Antandrus*, *Phanisthanus* being assigned his Successor, according to the decree of the people, went to *Samus*, took *Thuria*, and made excursions into the Territories of the Enemy. So this year ended, in which the *Carthaginians* with a Fleet of 120 Gallies, and 120000 men invading *Sicily*, overthrew the *Agriegines*, whom after a seven months siege they also forced to a surrender.

85. The year following wherein the Moon was Eclipsed in an evening (April the 25. some three hours after Sun-set, as the Astronomical Table demonstrates) and the old Temple of *Pallas* was burnt at *Athens*, *Pitamus* being Ephorus at *Sparta*, and *Callias Archon* at *Athens*, the 26th year of the War commencing, *Callicratidas* was sent from *Lacedæmon* as Successor to *Lysander*, whose time was now expired. He having furnished himself with money subdued *Methymina*, and charged *Conon* the *Athenian* General to depart out of those Coasts, and when he perceived him putting out to Sea, made after him, intending to stop his passage to *Samus*. He pursued him to the Haven of *Mitylene*, where he worsted him, took thirty of his ships, and then besieged him in the Town, from which he cut off all provisions. *Conon* sent out two Gallies to carry word hereof at *Athens*; one of which escaping clear from the Enemy, came thither with the news, whereupon relief was presently decreed to be sent. *Callicratidas* in the mean time overthrew *Diomedon*, who came to relieve *Conon* with twelve ships, ten whereof he took, but when he heard that the *Athenian* Fleet was now come to *Samus*, consisting in all of 150 sayl, he left *Eteonicus* with fifty ships to continue the siege, and with the other 120 betook himself to *Malea*, a Promontory of *Lesbus* over against *Mitylene*, where he supped, and it hapned that the *Athenian* Fleet coming to *Arginusa* (a place also over against *Lesbus*) supped there the same night. Here they fought the next morning a long, and earnest battel, wherein at length *Callicratidas* his ship being sunk, and he in it, his men begun to flee towards *Chius* and *Phocæa*. The *Peloponnesians* lost 79 ships, and the *Athenians* 19. with most of the men in them.

86. The *Athenian* Generals resolved that *Theramenes*, *Thrasibulus*, and others, with 42 ships should hasten to such Vessels as were as good as lost, to preserve them and the men, and the rest should sayl to *Mitylene* against *Eteonicus*; but a vehement Tempest arising they were all hindered, and forced to continue in the same place, during which stay, *Eteonicus* having notice by a Pinnace how things went, told his men the clear contrary, with which artifice encouraging them to take the Sea, he escaped. It might have been expected that the ten Captains, who joyntly had the command in Chief over the *Athenian* Fleet, might have received great honour for such a victory: But they were instead hereof, by the especial endeavour of *Theramenes*, brought to judgement, for suffering many Citizens to perish in the broken, and sunken ships; whereas, as it was pretended, they might have saved them.

## SECT. 3.

And for that 8 are rewarded with a sentence of death executed upon six of them there present, amongst whom *Pericles*, whom *Pericles*, the son of *Pericles*.

They alleged justly for their excuse the Tempest which followed the fight; but after much canvassing, both in the Senate and Assembly of the people, the malice of *Theramenes* (who set persons on to make great lamentations for those that were dead) so far prevailed, together with the forgery of a certain fellow (who saying that he himself escaping in a Meal-Tub, had been intreated by those that were in peril of drowning, to desire the people to revenge their death against the Captains) that against the form of Law (contrary to which *Socrates* the Philosopher onely resolutely refused to act as one of the *Prytanes*) eight of them were condemned, and six being present were put to death; amongst whom was *Pericles* the son of *Pericles*. Those that were absent escaped, the heady multitude quickly repenting of their rashness, and the accusers of them were bound over to answer what they had done. Afterwards a sedition being raised, wherein *Cleophon* was slain, they took the opportunity and fled; but *Callixenus* one of the most faulty returning to the City, and hated of all men, was famished to death.

87. The Soldiers of *Ereos* wintering in the Island *Chios*, where they wanted both victuals and clothes, most of them conspired together to seize upon the City *Chios*, to which whosoever agreed was to wear a Reed as a distinction. He having notice of it, was sensible what ill will, disgrace, and damage it would bring upon him if it proceeded, and fearing his own life, he boldly killed one of the Soldiers, whom he met with the Reed upon him, and being asked the reason of it, said as boldly, it was for wearing that mark of Sedition, whereat the rest were so daunted that they for fear cast away their Reeds, and so the plot was broken in pieces. Then received he money of the *Chians*, and gave them a months pay, and taking no further notice of the plot, encouraged them with fair words, and promises, and so sailed away. After this the Allies met together at *Ephesus* to consult about their affairs, where it was agreed, that ten men should be sent to *Lacedæmon* to desire that *Lyfander* might be sent back to the Fleet, of whose abilities they had already sufficient proof. By the Laws of *Sparta* he could not be twice General, and therefore they found out a middle way, to appoint *Aracus* to that place, and send him as his Lieutenant. Five and twenty ships were then delivered to *Lyfander*, at the end of the 26th year of the War, wherein *Cyrus* killed his two Cousins *Autobasaces* and *Mitranus*, because they had not given him the honour due to Kings of *Persia*, by holding their hands within their clothes when they came to him. For this he was accused to his father, who upon pretence of sickness sent for him to come to him.

88. The year following wherein *Archytas* was *Ephorus* at *Sparta*, and *Alexis Archon* at *Athens*, *Lyfander* gathering his Navy together, went to *Cyrus* for money, which being obtained with some difficulty he paid his Soldiers and Sea-men their Arrears. At *Samus* also the *Athenians* provided for fighting; where in the mean time came a Message to *Cyrus* from his father, who now being sick desired to see him, although at this time the King lay incamped against the *Thamneri* of *Media*, Neighbours to the *Cadusians*, who had revolted. *Cyrus* hereupon sent for *Lyfander*, and consulting with him about the War, desired him not to fight the *Athenians*, except he overmarched them in number of men, told him his father and he were able enough to encrease the Fleet upon occasion, and to bind him and the state of *Sparta* to him, he gave him all the Revenues he had in those parts, with all the ready money, and so took his journey. *Lyfander* neither daring to fight the Enemy with so few ships, nor to be idle with so many, subdued some places, and having given *Agis* a visit in *Attica*, sailed unto the *Hellepont*, which finding clear, he besieged *Lampsacus*, and took it. The *Athenian* Fleet, which consisted of 180 Gallies, hearing of this, came from the *Cherronesus* to *Sestus*, and thence sailed to *Agospatamos*, a River over against *Lampsacus*, the *Hellepont* at this place being not two miles broad. *Lyfander* contained his men in great order, and refused to fight without an advantage, which was at length given him by the *Athenians*, who braved him, but were in continual disorder, carelessly running up and down, inasmuch that *Alcibiades* having

The *Athenian* Fleet quite defeated at *Agospatamos* by *Lyfander*.

Idem ibid.  
Corn. Nepos &  
in Plutarch. in  
*Lyfand.* & in  
*Alcibiades*.

## SECT. 3.

ving notice of it, came and advised the Captains to look better to themselves, but returned with no other recompence than bad words. But *Lyfander* keeping diligent watch upon them, observed his time when they were most of them landed, some eating and drinking, others looking for victuals, and others vandering up and down, and setting upon the Fleet easily became Master of it all without any opposition, except eight, where-with *Conon* fled into *Cyprus* unto *Evagoras* the King, knowing how bad entertainment he should have at home.

A consultation what is to be done with the prisoners.

All of them put to death except *Adimantus*.

89. Such *Athenians* as had confusedly got into their ships were slain or taken, and those that were yet on Land by the Land Forces, which *Lyfander* had in a readinesse for that purpose. He took 3000 men, with the Captains and all the ships, except those eight of *Conon*, and a Packe-Boat, which tacking to his own ships, with the sound of Pipes and the paan sung, he returned in triumph unto *Lampsacus*. Then called he the allies together to consider what was to be done with the prisoners. Many crimes were objected against them, as that they had done many unjust things, and now had determined, if they had got the Victory, to cut off the right hands of the *Peloponnesians* (or the thumbs rather, as *Plutarch* hath it, of their right hands, that they might never be able more to handle spears, but row with oars) and having taken the two Gallies of *Andrus* and *Corinthus* to cast headlong all the men into the Sea; the persuader to this being *Philocles*. Hereupon it was resolved, that they should all be put to death, except *Adimantus* who had withstood the Decree of cutting off the hands, which sentence was accordingly executed. *Lyfander* then sailing about to the Cities under the *Athenian* power, dismissed the Garrison Soldiers and all others he found, with charge to get them to *Athens* under pain of death, which crafty policy he used to fill the City with men, that it might not be able long to endure a Siege for want of Victuals. When they of the City heard the news, they were affected accordingly, bewailing not onely the fortune of the slain, but their own also, expecting now that should be done to themselves, which heretofore they had done to the *Melians*, a Colony of *Sparta*, and to the *Histiæans*, *Scioneans*, *Toroneans*, *Æginetians*, and many other *Greek* Cities, not in way of revenge for any injury, but out of indulgence to their own lust; for that they rejoiced in other mens miseries. Yet as grief would give way to prudence, they took care for fortifying the City against a Siege, in which they could not look for any assistance from elsewhere, all their Confederates, except the *Samians*, having forsaken them, and such as they had banished from their dwellings being again restored to those places which they had filled with Colonies of their own.

*Lyfander* besieged *Athens* both by Sea and Land;

90. *Lyfander* having taken away *Democracy*, brought in the power of a few into all the Cities. Herein he dealt with much cruelty and ambition, (putting in such men onely as were his creatures, that he might obtain an unlimited power or Tyranny over all *Greece*) and sending for Land forces from *Sparta*, he besieged *Athens* both by Sea and Land. The *Athenians* continued so resolute for a long time, that till many were already dead of famine, not a word was heard of asking Peace. Then Ambassadors were sent to *Agis* the *Spartan* King about it, who referred them to *Sparta*, having as he said no commission to entertain their overtures. Thither then they went, offering, that they might gain the friendship of *Lacedæmon*, to part with all places besides the City and *Piræus*, where they would retain the Fortifications; but they had for answer, that if they seriously desired peace, they must repair home, and not return till they had better advised of the matter. Hereat the *Athenians* were much abashed, thinking now of nothing but servitude; none daring to propose the demolishing of the walls; for the *Lacedæmonians* having offered them Peace upon these terms, *Archestratus* for advising them to embrace it, was imprisoned, and it was decreed that it should be unlawful to mention it for the time to come. *Theramenes* then procured to be sent to *Lyfander* to get out what his intention was, whether to enslave them, or to have the walls demolished, and thence he returned not till the fourth month, that in this time they might be constrained to resolve of something. At his return,

## SECT. 4.

return, he said he could get no other answer, but that they must send again to Sparta; and thereby he procured himself and others to be sent with full authority for concluding a Peace.

91. The Ambassadors of the Confederates being assembled at Sparta, many of them, especially the *Corinthians* and *Thebans*, urged that no composition was to be made with them, but that *Athens* should be destroyed; but the *Spartans* would not give way to it, saying, it was not their intention to destroy a City, which in the greatest dangers of *Greece* had done the greatest things for its deliverance. They then without much delay made peace with them upon these terms: *That the long walls and the fortifications of the Piræus should be demolished; that they should deliver up all their ships except twelve, receive their exiles, follow the Lacedæmonians both by Sea and Land in the Wars, and have the same Friends and Enemies with them.* Some at

Which yield-  
eth.

The walls de-  
molished, and  
the Gallies  
burnt.

the return of the Ambassadors would have refused these terms; but the far major part siding with *Theramenes* accepted of them. *Lyfander* then seized upon the ships, and the walls, upon the sixteenth day of the month *Munichion* (on which they had formerly overthrown the *Persians* at *Salamine*) and went about to alter the Government, which the People strongly resisted, inasmuch that he sent back to Sparta to complain of them, saying, they had broken the League, in that their walls were not demolished; and though no worse thing was yet decreed against them though pressed by force, yet this made them willing to receive any thing. Then sent he for all the Pipers out of the City, to whom joining those in his own Camp, at the noise of their instruments he caused the walls to be demolished, and the Gallies to be burnt, the Confederates making great solemnity, as if that day gave beginning to the liberty of *Greece*. Herewith, the 27th year, and the War it self ended, which being carried on for so long a time with most various fortune, dubious and inconstant events, with infinite charges, all sorts of contests, and the ruine of so many Captains, as had not perished in all the Wars of *Greece* besides, was finished by the politick industry of one man, whom some thought thereupon they could not sufficiently admire, in the 780th year after the end of that of *Troy*, in the fourth of the 93d *Olympiad*, the nineteenth of *Darius Nothus* (who died presently after the conclusion of the Peace) A. M. 3600.

## SECT. IV.

From the end of the Peloponnesian War to the beginning of the reign of Philip King of Macedonia, containing the Space of 44 years.

1. The year following being that wherein the 94th *Olympiad* was celebrated, in the course of which *Crocinas* the *Thessalian* got the prize, *Endiclus* was *Ephorus* at Sparta, and *Pythadorus* Archon at Athens, whom yet the *Athenians* did not so account, because that the *Oligarchy* being brought in this year, they esteemed it as *anarchical*. As soon as the long walls and the *Piræus* were demolished by the command of *Lyfander*, thirty men were chosen to make *Lavvs*, by which the Commonwealt might be governed. After their creation and investiture in the power, they deferred both to publish or write the *Lavvs*; but constituted the Senate and other Magistrates at their pleasure. Then, first, they laid hold of all such as had under the *Democracy* lived by informing, and false accusing of others, which was not displeasing to honest men. So that those being condemned by the Senate, they were put to death. But afterwards they began seriously to lay their heads together, how they might make themselves Masters of all. They sent *Æschines* and *Aristotle* two of their company to Sparta to desire a Garrison for the better government of the City, till they had taken out of the way all naughty persons, and had settled the Commonwealt, promising themselves

The 30 Ty-  
rants at  
Athens.

Xenoph. ut prius.

A. M. 3600.  
Ol. 93. an. 4.  
V. C. 349.  
Darii Nubis 19.  
Bellis Pelop. 27.

## SECT. 4.

to pay the Soldiers. *Lyfander* being made use of procured what they desired, and *Callibius* was sent as *Harmostes* unto Athens, whom they so flattered, that they brought him to consent to whatsoever they should act. Now then they fell upon, not onely naughty and dissolute persons, but on the best, who- soever they thought ill affected, and would endeavour to stop their proceedings. *Theramenes* one of them protested against this cruelty, and added, that it was impossible their power should continue in that State without a sufficient company to assist them. Hereupon they fearing him, lest he should make himself Captain of the discontented, which was almost the whole City, chose out of the Citizens 3000 which they thought meetest for their purpose, and gave them some part of the power, with this privilege, that none of them should be put to death without the consent of the Senate; all the rest of the People being left to the discretion of the thirty, whom they also disarmed at a general muster.

2. Now thinking themselves secure enough, they filled all places with murders, not onely of their private Enemies, but such whose wealth might enrich them, of which they were excessive greedy; and to this purpose they agreed, that every one should name one man whom he would put to death for to seize upon his goods. *Theramenes* having disliked the election of the 3000, uttered now also his detestation of this wickedness, refusing himself to commit it. For this they were more jealous of him, fearing he might cross their abominable practices, and resolved upon his destruction; so that having provided a Company of young men with daggers to assist them, they called the Senate together, and therein *Critias* (his once familiar friend, but now his deadly Enemy, because the most cruel Tyrant of the thirty) bitterly accused him as a turbulent and unsettled man; being now for the People, and another while against them; he objected against him the death of the six Captains procured by him, and concluded he was not a fit man to live in a Commonwealt, especially so constituted. *Theramenes* replied with undaunted courage, and gave satisfaction to the Senate, as *Critias* perceived by their muttering, who thereupon concluding, that if he escaped it would endanger his own life, he consulted with his Companions, and then returning to the Senate, told them, that having first expunged his name out of the Catalogue of the 3000, and hereby he being subjected to their censure, they condemned him to death. *Theramenes* replied again, that his name was no more easy to be blotted out than any other mans, in consideration whereof, he advised them all to make his case their own: but none daring to oppose, for that they knew the men that were present to be privily armed, he was led away, and compelled to drink poyson, which he did with a resolute and gallant Spirit. After this the Tyrants, as being at liberty to do what they pleased, forbid all that were not contained in the Catalogue, to come into the City, from which they expelled them and the borders, that they and their Associates might enjoy their Lands. The Citizens betook themselves to the *Piræus*, but being thence also expelled, they filled *Megara* and *Thebes* with their multitudes.

*Theramenes*  
one of them,  
for detesting  
their wicked-  
ness, is put to  
death.

3. This banishment of the *Athenians* procured their liberty. For, now they entered into consultation, and resolved to hazard their lives for the freedom of their Country; seeing that now what would have been treason at home, would have no danger abroad, but such as might be found in the execution. First *Thrafsybulus* who was then at *Thebes*, with but thirty in his company, seized upon *Phyla*, a Castle in the Territories of Athens; which the Tyrants understanding, endeavoured to recover, but to no purpose; for he having gotten to him within a while 700 men, put to flight the Garrison Soldiers of Sparta, whom they had set to watch two miles off from the Castle, killing of them about 120 men. Herewith the Tyrants were something discouraged, but thinking it best to get *Elenfine* into their power, they went thither, and perceiving the Inhabitants that were able to bear Arms to go out at the gates, that they might onely as they pretended take the number of their heads, most wickedly murdered them. After this *Thrafsybulus* with 1000 men

*Thrafsybulus*  
opposeth the  
Tyrants.

\* Corn. Nepos  
in Thrafsybulo.

## SECT. 4.

men seized upon the *Piræus*, against whom, though the Tyrants came out with their whole power, yet he obtained the victory against them, killing 70, and what more, *Critias* the Arch Tyrant, with *Hippomachus* one of his Collegues, and *Charmides* one of the ten Captains which had been placed over the *Piræus*. When the slain were delivered up to be buried, and thereupon both parties met, *Cecropius* a Cryer belonging to the Priests, and a man famous for his loud and audible voice, expostulated with those who sided with the Tyrants for expelling them their fellow Citizens, educated together, partakers heretofore of the same things, sacred and profane, prosperous and adverse, and all for to satisfy the lust of those Monsters, who had kindled such a flame as had already consumed more than the *Peloponnesian* War did in ten years. His speech produced such effect, that the 3000 fell at difference amongst themselves; such as had been busied in the destruction of other men, together with the Tyrants, vehemently contended that nothing was to be granted to them in the *Piræus*; but those that were confident in their own innocence, crying out, there was no reason that they should obey the will and pleasure of the thirty, and suffer the Citie to perish, prevailed against them. Then was the power of the thirty abrogated, and ten chosen into their room, one out of every Tribe, after which they quitted the Citie, and retired to *E-leusine*.

Their power is abrogated.

They send for aid from *Sparta*.

*Lyfander* is sent and besiegeth *Thrasylbulus*, and his fellows in the *Piræus*.

4. Notwithstanding the change of the Government, yet there was no accord betwixt them in the *Piræus* and those in the Town, but several acts of Hostility they committed against one another. At length the 3000 in the Town, and the Tyrants of *Eleusine*, sent to *Sparta* to desire aid against the other, saying, that the people revolted from the *Lacedæmonians*; and *Lyfander* procured them 100 Talents to be sent out of hand, himself ordered to go General to assist them, and his brother *Libys* General of the Fleet. Then besieged he the *Piræus*, both by Land and Sea, and sorely straightened them; but *Pausanias* the *Spartan* King thinking much that he should get the glory of Conquering *Athens* the second time, which he would make as his own, he persuaded the *Ephori* to give way, that he should follow him with another Army, under pretence of assisting him; upon which account the *Corinthians* and *Bœotians* amongst the Confederates refused to follow him, alleging they should break their Oaths by fighting against them, who had done nothing prejudicial to the peace. This they did, concluding that the *Lacedæmonians* would lay the Territories of *Athens* to their own demains. *Pausanias*, after his arrival, sent to them in the *Piræus* to bid them depart, and they refusing it, for a colour to his designs, he lead his Forces against them. But returning without any thing performed, he went to view the Walls the next day, at which time they filled out upon him, and still fresh supplies coming in on both sides, wrought, and received considerable damage.

But *Pausanias* the *Spartan* King emulating *Lyfander* taketh up the matter.

5. Yet for all this he underhand sent unto them about a composure, and instructed them what they should offer. They obeyed him, and he persuaded also those in the Citie to end the controversy, that both might become friends to the *Lacedæmonians*. The two *Ephori* present with him (for two used alwayes to accompany the *Spartan* Kings in their expeditions) inclined to his opinion, rather than to the severity of *Lyfander*, and so accordingly they sent Ambassadors from both parties to *Lacedæmon* about an agreement. The *Lacedæmonians* after audience presently dispatched ten Commissioners with them back to *Athens*, who, together with *Pausanias*, might make an agreement. They presently composed all on these terms: That all should return home to their own habitations, except the 30. and the 10. and 11 men which had commanded in the *Piræus*: and if any feared the people they might remove to *Eleusine*. These things being done, *Pausanias* drew off the *Spartan* Army, and those that were in the *Piræus* went up with their Arms into the Citie, and there sacrificed to *Minerva*. Then by the persuasion of *Thrasylbulus* the popular Government was restored, and all things ordered as in former times. A little after it being heard that they in *Eleusine* hired Soldiers abroad, attempting new matters, the whole Citie rose against them, took

The popular Government restored.

## SECT. 4.

took their Captains as they came to parley, and slew them: the rest by their friends sent to them were persuaded to agree. Then passed a general Act of Oblivion for all that was past, confirmed by an Oath, to keep which they being very careful, even yet saith *Xenophon*, jointly manag'd the affairs of the Commonwealth. By which wise order the Citie returned to its former quietnesse, upon this Sedition raised by the 30 Tyrants, who being created by a Decree of the Senate, as \* another saith, put to death 1400 Citizens unheard, and forced more than 5000 to fly into the *Piræus*.

*Socrates* in *Alcibiades*.

The thirty Tyrants procured *Alcibiades* to be made away.

6. But this Tyranny of the 30. not onely produced the destruction of many in the Town, but of *Alcibiades* also then living in *Asia* with *Pharnabazus*, whom he intended to make use of to bring him to the King, hoping he might deserve no worse of that Prince than *Themistocles* had done of his Predecessor. When the *Athenians* were deprived of their liberty by the means of *Lyfander*, and the Tyranny of the 30. they then began again to repent of what they had done to him, judging that if he had been yet at the Helm, they should never have made shipwreck of their liberty, and still their confidence was in him, and thought their cause was not utterly desperate as long as he was safe. The Tyrants also were jealous of him, procuring all the intelligence they could concerning all his actions, and at length *Critias* remonstrated to *Lyfander*, that things could not stand as they did long, if he lived, who yet was nothing perished to procure his death, till he received a *Scytala* from the Magistrates at *Sparta*, who either feared his great abilities, or did it to gratifie *Agis*, to remove him by some means out of the way. He sent to *Pharnabazus*, requiring him to dispatch him, who enjoyned his brother *Magas*, and his Uncle *Susambres* to be his Executioners: They coming to the Village in *Phrygia* where he lived, durst not enter his house, but compassing it about set it on fire. He perceiving what was done, took some Clothes, and casting them into the fire, which keeping down the flame for some space, he brake out, whereupon the Barbarians fled, not daring to stand to him, but at a distance killed him with Darts, after which his body was burnt (with that matter that was prepared to consume him alive) by the care of his Paramour *Timandra*, the Mother of *Lais* the famous *Corinthian* Courtesan. Thus he died in the flower of his age, scarce exceeding forty years, a man very beautiful, of most excellent parts, fit for any employment, able to accommodate himself to all, both times and customs, though never so repugnant, and therein yet esteemed also to excell. *Socrates* upon him exercised the true *Platonick* love, labouring to infuse such virtue into him as might make him truly lovely; but such were his temptations, and inclination, that counterpoising the instructions, nature in this man seemed to try what she could do; it being agreed by all, saith \* one who wrote of him, that none was ever more eminent, both for vice and virtue.

*Xenophon* lib. 3.

*Timandra* sent into *Asia*.

7. After these things *Cyrus* made War upon his brother *Artaxerxes*, as hath been said elsewhere, at what time he sent to *Lacedæmon*, demanding a return for his kindnesses shewed to them, who thinking it most just, sent their Admiral to keep in play *Syennesis* the *Satrapa* of *Cilicia*, till he passed that Countrey. After his overthrow, *Tissaphernes* his greatest Enemy, being a most insolent man before, now grew more haughty (after the King had laid the Province of *Cyrus* to his *Satrapie*) and began to be more troublesome to the *Greek* Cities in *Asia*. They sent to complain hereof at *Sparta*, which State sent to their relief *Thimbron* with an Army of 1000 new raised Soldiers out of *Laconia*, 4000 Foot of *Peloponnesus*, and 300 Horse from *Athens*, which the Citie willingly parted withall, with no good prosperity wished to their persons, for that they had been in the service of the thirty Tyrants. What he did in *Asia*, and how he returned home after *Dercyllidas* was sent to succeed him, and was banished upon complaint of the Confederates, is related in the Affairs of *Asia*. At the same time as *Dercyllidas* managed the War beyond the Seas, the *Lacedæmonians* and *Eleans* reviving their old grudges and complaints, broke out into another War, which was begun by the

X x

*Lacedæ-*

## SECT. 4.

*Lacedæmonians* at the instance of the *Ephori*. They sent out *Agis* their King, who led an Army into the Territories of the *Eleans*; but an Earth-quake hapning at his first entrance, which was counted ominous, he returned without any thing at all performed. The year after, he undertook another expedition, the *Athenians*, and all the other Confederates, except the *Corinthians* and *Bœotians*, following him, wherein he sorely afflicted all the Countrey, sparing the Citie *Eitis* it self, and though he retreated, yet the Garrison he left behind him, continuing these depredations all the next Summer, and the Winter following, the next Summer the *Eleans* were constrained to receive such conditions as their Enemies would give them. The Wall about *Patra* was demolished, *Cyllene* relinquished, five Towns delivered into the hands of the *Spartans*, and three to the *Arcadians*; the management of the Affairs of the Temple belonging to *Jupiter Olympius* being onely left remaining to them.

8. Not long after these things *Agis* died, having fallen sick in his return from *Delphos*. He had born to him by his wife *Timæa*, a son called *Leuty- chides*, but conceived at that time when *Alcibiades* sojourned at *Sparta*, by whom there were great presumptions that he was begotten. He had not been with his wife ten months before the Child was born; *Timæa* her self was wont when she would play with it to call it *Alcibiades* more commonly than *Leuty chides*, as was acknowledged by her maids; and neither did *Alcibiades* himself forbear to acknowledge that he had to do with her, saying, it was not out of any carnal affection, but out of a desire that those who should proceed from him might reign at *Lacedæmon*; upon these grounds *Agis* owned not *Leuty chides* for his son, but told the *Ephori* he was none of his, divorcing also his Mother; but when he lay sick, having no Children, and moved by his prayers and tears, he owned him for his son before many witnesses. After his death a great contention ensued about the succession betwixt *Leuty chides* and *Agisilaus* brother to *Agis*, a man lame of one foot, but of a most noble and valiant disposition. *Agisilaus* was bred after the ordinary strict way, as not having expected the Kingdom being a younger brother, and yet was in great favour with the people, and pressing the illegitimation of his adversary had their ear; but one thing they much stuck at, which was an old Prophecie much urged by *Diophites* their Prophet, that *it should go very hard with Sparta when it should have a lame King*. Yet *Lysander*, who had taken a great affection to him, answered, that by a lame King was not meant lame of a foot, which could be no hinderance to virtue, but one of spurious extraction; and herewith, and by his private interest, procured the sentence to passe for *Agisilaus*.

9. *Agisilaus* had not been a year in his Office, before that being to sacrifice for his Countrey according to the custom, the entrails of the beast three times did not permit it, which being viewed by the Prophet, he foretold that a grievous conspiracy was hatched against him, and all Magistrates, both in Town and Countrey. Five dayes after this a notable conspiracy indeed was disclosed to the *Ephori* by one of the Complices, the head of which was *Cinadon*. They presently referring it to the Senate, it was thought fit that he should be sent out of the Citie, under pretence of some employment, and that some should go after him to make him reveal his fellows, which accordingly was done, and an ignominious death was executed upon them. After the execution *Herodus of Syracuse* came with news out of *Phœnicia*, that a Fleet of 300 Gallies was prepared by *Tissaphernes*, and the King, but upon what design was not known. The *Lacedæmonians* moved at this, called the Deputies of their Confederates to *Sparta* to consult about it. Now *Lysander* had a great mind to return into *Asia*, desirous to relieve those his friends, who being by him placed in the Government of the Cities, ten in a place, were for their violence and great misdemeanours, either killed, or driven into banishment. He therefore perswaded *Agisilaus* to undertake so noble and pious an expedition, and wrote to his friends in *Asia*, to desire of the State that he might be sent. Being perswaded, he offered his service on condition

*Idem. ibid.*  
*Corn. Nepos, & Plutarch. in Agisilaus, & Lysandro.*  
*Xenoph. in Orat. de Laudibus Agisilaus.*

A contention betwixt *Leuty chides* and *Agisilaus* for the *Spartan* Kingdom.

*Agisilaus* carried off by the means of *Lysander*.

## SECT. 4.

He is sent into *Asia* by the same means.

they would grant him thirty Assistants, by whose directions and advice he might manage the War; with 2000 choice men newly to be raised, and 6000 of the Confederates: These were all decreed to him by the dealing of *Lysander*, who procured himself to be sent as chief of the thirty, to which place he might well pretend for the great glory of his achievements, and his friendship to *Agisilaus*, whom as he judged he had more obliged by procuring this employment, than by the former courtesie of preferring him to the Kingdom.

10. Having his Army and Provisions in a readinesse, he marched to *Aulis*, that thence, after the example of *Agamemnon*, he might passe over into *Asia*; but going about to sacrifice a Doe to the Goddess, with which he thought she would be better pleased than she was with *Agamemnon* for his daughter, he was hindred by the *Bœotians* from doing that which was contrary to their custom, and was constrained in a great chafe to passe over without the Ceremony, the Omission of which he accounted as a bad presage. When he came to *Ephesus*, it appeared that he onely bore the name, and *Lysander* had all the credit and authority, all men making application to him, and observing him as a man of whom they had had former experience to exceed all men in earnestnesse to gratifie his friends, and destroy his Enemies. This much moved *Agisilaus*, though a man of a most mild spirit (who was famous for bearing with any thing) and troubled also his own Collegues, so that the King resolving to cut off his authority, rejected all the sutes he made for any, and plainly shewed that his design was to crosse him in all he attempted. *Lysander* hereupon told his friends how the case stood, that they must make no more addressees to himself, and being sensible of the disgrace expostulated with him about it, who let him understand that he could not endure to be overtopped by him; He then desired some employment of him, wherein he might both save his own credit, and do him service, wherein he promised to be faithfull. He then sent him to the *Hellepont*, where finding *Spithridates* the *Persian* to be offended by *Pharnabazus*, he brought him over to him with a great Treasure, and 200 Horse, although hereafter it was found that he took very hainously the diminishing of his reputation.

11. *Agisilaus* in *Asia* prospered in the War to admiration, gaining great glory for his wisdom, valour, and courtesie, both at home and abroad; inso-much that the *Spartans*, in confidence of his abilities, and integrity, committed the Fleet also to his command, judging it most convenient for expedition, and that both the Armies might joyn the readilier upon occasion, that they should be in the hands of one man whom they could trust. But in this one thing he is accounted to have erred, in that not having respect to the publick good, he passed by many far more Eminent for prudence and gravity, and pitched upon *Pisander*, his wives brother (a man very bold, but meanly practised in business) for his Admiral. As he was going towards the Fleet, and *Agisilaus* marching for *Phrygia*, *Tithraustes* (who having cut off the head of *Tissaphernes* had succeeded in his place) considering in how great danger his matters affairs stood, sent *Timocrates* a *Rhodian* with much *Persian* Gold into *Greece*, wherewith to corrupt the principal men in the Cities, and procure them to make War against the *Lacedæmonians*. This was effected at *Thebes* and *Argos*; and the *Athenians*, though they had no Gold, yet were very ready to embrace the War, believing that therein they should have the Chief command. Those that were corrupted then grievously inveighing against the *Lacedæmonians*, procured that the chief Cities entered into a Combination against them. The *Thebans* knowing that they would not begin the War except first provoked, took occasion to do it by the *Locrian Opuntians*, whom they procured to quarrel with the *Phocians*, and their other Neighbours, about some grounds in question amongst them, concluding, that thereupon the *Phocians* would break into *Locris*. They did so, and did more hurt than they had received; whereupon *Andocides*, who had received much Gold, procured the *Thebans* to assist the *Locrians*. The *Thebans* then invaded

*Tithraustes* by Gold sent into *Greece*, corrupted the States to War against *Lacedæmon*.

A.M. 3608.  
Ol. 95. an. 4  
V. C. 357.  
*Alexandris*  
*Athenas*. 8.



## SECT. 4.

vaded Phocis, which they wasted, and presently did the Phocians send to Lacedæmon to desire aid, shewing that they had not been the beginners of the War.

12. The Lacedæmonians not unwillingly embraced this occasion of falling out with the Thebans, to whom they bore many grudges. They exacted the tenth part assigned to Apollo at Decælea, refused to make War against the Piræus, persuading also the Corinthians, as they judged, to do the same; they remembered also how they had forbidden Agesilaus to sacrifice, casting the sacrifice from off the Altar, and would not follow him into Asia. They resolved now that they had no War in Greece, and that their affairs were in good a condition in Asia, to curb their insolence. Lysander was then dispatched to Phocis, where he should gather the Forces of the Confederates together, and stay for Pausanias the King, who was to bring the Forces of Sparta and the rest of the associates to Haliartus. He marching into Boeotia drew Orchomenus from the league of Thebes, and impatient of delay tarried not for Pausanias, who hovered about Tegea, but went with such Forces as he had already to Haliartus, which he summoned, but in vain, the Thebans which already were in the City hindring the surrender. Upon refusal he led his men to the walls, and they of Thebes upon notice hereof hastened out of their City to help their friends, and falling upon Lysander (whether aware of their coming or not is uncertain) slew him in the place, and routed his Forces, of which were slain 1000 men, and of the Thebans 300. This was the end of Lysander, which he partly brought upon himself by his eagerness to make this Expedition, being in his old age fallen into melancholy, which rendered him more peevish than usual. He left a great name behind him, but purchased rather by his good success than Virtue. He would neither spare for cruelty nor falsehood to compass his designs, taking no estimate of any thing by any balance but that of profit. He scoffed at such as said, that those who were descended of Hercules (amongst which he was reckoned, though not of the royal families) ought to manage Wars without deceit, saying, that where the Lyon's skin would not serve, the Foxes was to be sowed to it. A design of his was discovered after his death, whereby he intended to have taken the Regal power out of the two families, and have made them common to all in general. To this purpose a writing was found containing a speech he intended to offer to the People; which Agesilaus would have published, that it might have been seen what kind of Commonwealths-man he was; but was dissuaded by Lacratidas chief of the Ephori, who said, that Lysander was not to be digged up again, but rather that speech to be buried with him. Notwithstanding his ambition, yet he died poor, which rendered him the more famous, so that to do honour to his memory the Spartans imposed a mulct upon certain Citizens, who being contracted with his Daughters before his death, afterwards when his poverty appeared, refused to marry them.

13. The Thebans having lost so many men in the late fight, thought they had but small cause to triumph, counting their loss equal with that of the Enemy. The day after, when they understood that the Phocians and others had retreated, they took more courage; but again, when they perceived Pausanias to draw near, they esteemed themselves in no small danger. Yet the day following the Athenians joining themselves to them, and Pausanias not moving forwards, they then had no small confidence in the goodness of their Fortune. Pausanias being doubtful what to do, called a council of the Confederates to consult, whether he had best by main force or by truce recover the body of Lysander, who for that it lay near the Town walls, and it was very dangerous to fetch it off by strong hand, concluded a truce was to be desired; and the rather, for that the Corinthians refused to join with them, and the Enemy had good store of Horse which they wanted. The Thebans refused to give up the dead bodies, except the Lacedæmonians would ingage to depart out of Boeotia, and therefore to their great grief they were constrained to do it, and in their retreat the Thebans grown very insolent, killed such as staid behind never so little in the Villages. The Expedition was unfortunate to the

Lysander slain.

His character.

Xenoph. ut supra.

Cora, Nepos &amp; Plutarch in Lysander.

## SECT. 4.

Pausanias sent the Spartans in general; but especially to Pausanias, who at his return was accused capriciously for not meeting Lysander in convenient time, according to agreement, for that he had not by fight but truce recovered the slain, and dismissed such Athenians as had been taken in the Piræus; and lastly, had not appeared at his trial. Being condemned he fled to Tegea, where afterwards he fell sick and died.

14. The Lacedæmonians awakened by their loss, and now knowing for certain that money had been sent out of Asia to the several Cities, which had moved them to take arms, they thought themselves in some danger, and recalled Agesilaus to defend his Country. He having had success in the War suitable to his Military skill and valour, was now gathering of greater Forces, wherewith he intended to march into the higher Countries against the King himself; but notwithstanding this, and that it troubled him to leave Asia, yet he resolved to obey, acknowledging in his letter to the Ephori, that then a General truly and justly commands, when he is governed by the Laws and Magistrates, upon which account he said, he would follow the letter, if not prevent it (seeing they had set him a day, and that he commanded not for himself but the City and Confederates) although he had subdued a great part of Asia, overthrowing the Barbarians, and had made great preparations for the War in Ionia. He left Euxenus the Harmostes of Asia with a guard of 4000 Soldiers, but making all provision for his Country, drew over many out of the Cities to the Service. Having passed the Hellespont into the Chersonesus, he held the same way that Xerxes formerly had done, when in the mean time the Ephori and Aristodemus guardian to Agesipolis the young King, with an Army of 15000 overthrowing that of the Leaguers, consisting of 20000 (whereof 13000 bore heavy Armour) making great slaughter, though they lost no more than eight of their number. Care was taken that Agesilaus should have notice of this success (with the Confederates in Asia) who grieved only that Greece should destroy so many of its own Worthies. As he passed through Thrace, he would not ask any of the Barbarians leave to go through their Countries; but only sent to know whether he should pass as a Friend or an Enemy. All friendly received and conducted him, except the Tralles, who having formerly sold the passage to Xerxes, now also demanded of him 100 Talents, and as many women. He jeered at them, asking why they came not to receive what was demanded? and going forwards made great slaughter of them. The King of Macedonia, when he asked the question of him, said he would consider of it; so let him, said he; but in the mean time we will proceed in our journey, which boldness so awed the King, that he suffered him to pass quietly.

The Sun Eclipsed August 24. and Agesilaus invaded Boeotia. Where he obtained a Victory against the Leaguers.

15. Having passed through Thessalie notwithstanding all opposition, by order of the Ephori he invaded Boeotia, judging always obedience best, though he could have wished, and had intended first to have been better provided. As he invaded Boeotia the Sun was eclipsed (August 24 according to the Astronomical Table) and he received the news of the overthrow of Pausander upon the Coasts of Asia by Pharnabazus, and Comon the Athenian, who being for his skill in Sea-matters in great request with the Persian, improved his interest for the restitution of the Fortune of his Country. Upon this report he put on a good countenance, lest he should discourage his men, telling them Pausander the Admiral was slain, but that his Fleet had obtained the Victory. But now in Boeotia, when he was come near to Coronea, the Leaguers opposed themselves against him, being the Boeotians, Athenians, Argives, Corinthians, Eubœans, Enianes, and both the Locrians, with whom was fought such a battle as had not hapned in that Age. At the first onset Agesilaus had the better in one wing, but the Thebans in the other, and being in the pursuit were forced to retire to help their friends, where he charging upon the Front of the Thebans, and not on the Rear, as he might have done, did great execution, and was wounded himself, notwithstanding the valour of his Guard, consisting of Fifty stout young-men, lately sent him from Sparta to do him honour. At length he had the better of it, and dismissed

Xenoph. lib. 4. Plutarch in Agesilaus, & Avothegmat. Xenoph. in Orat. de laudibus Agesilais.

## SECT. 4.

missed un-hurt 80 of the Enemies, who had taken Sanctuary near hand, after which he went to *Delphos*, and consecrated the tenth of his spoils, which amounted to no less than 100 Talents. In the mean time *Gylus* the *Polemarchus* brake out into *Locris*, where the Soldiers being greedy of plunder, were fallen upon by the Inhabitants, whom though they repelled at first, yet night coming on they were so intrangled, that *Gylus* himself and very many others were slain, and all of them had been lost, but that the Alarm being taken by the Camp, relief was thence sent to them. After this, the Soldiers were dismissed to their several homes, and *Agessilaus* went by ship to *Sparta*. Yet notwithstanding the War continued, the *Athenians*, *Boeotians*, *Argives*, and their Confederates, making excursions from *Corinth*, which they had made the seat of Warre; and the *Lacedæmonians* with their allies from *Sicyon*.

16. The *Corinthians* considering that their grounds were wasted, and many of them slain, because of their being so near to the Enemy, but their Confederates free from these mischiefs, the most and best of them desired Peace, and began to consider of it amongst themselves. This being understood by the *Argives*, *Boeotians*, *Athenians*, and especially by such amongst themselves as had received the *Persian* Gold, and caused the War, they fearing *Corinth* would return again to the *Lacedæmonians*, to prevent this, they resolved to massacre all such as were for the Peace. This they performed on a Festival, when most were got together, sparing none that took Sanctuary in religious places, so that most of the elder sort were killed, and the younger fled out of the City. Many of them, by the intreaty of their friends, and upon the Oath of the Magistrates, that they should be safe, returned home within a short time; but seeing plainly the City was in the way to ruine by the tyranny of those that governed, as that for *Corinth* it was to be called *Argos*, the Laws of which City they must be forced to receive; moreover being sensible that they had no more power at home than meer strangers, some of them resolved it was better, by attempting the freedom of their Countrey, to die in the quarrel, if it should fall out, than to live in that slavish condition. In prosecution hereof they let in *Praxitas* Governour of *Sicyon* for the *Lacedæmonians* within the long walls, who having no great force with him, fortified himself as well as he might, which being understood at *Argos*, they flocked out thence to assist their friends, and the *Lacedæmonians* opposing themselves they came to a fight, wherein after much difficultie and various Fortune, the *Lacedæmonians* were conquerours, making great slaughter of their Enemies. This Victory was the more eminent, for that so small a number had vanquished such multitudes, after which, they put to the sword a Garrison of *Boeotians*, which held the Haven called *Lochaus*.

17. *Praxitas* pursuing his Victory, brake down part of the walls to make a passage for his men, and then going on in the way towards *Megara*, took two Towns, wherein he left a Garrison and departed, after which followed onely some light bickerings, till at length the *Lacedæmonians* issuing out of *Lochaus*, with their friends besieged *Corinth*, at which time the *Athenians* fearing they might passe the long walls and invade their territories, came out of the City with Mafons and Workmen, and repaired that part which was towards them. The *Lacedæmonians* grudging that the *Argives* should flourish at home, and prosper abroad, sent *Agessilaus* with an Army against them, who laying waste all their Territories, brake through to *Corinth*, and took the walls which the *Athenians* had repaired, his Brother *Teleutias* Admiral, taking the ships and Arcenals upon the Gulf. Returning home, he was not long after sent out again, who when he came to *Corinth*, thought to have surprised it, but the Citizens aware of it, called in a Garrison of the *Athenians*, under the command of *Iphicrates*, and thereby prevented him. At this time Ambassadors came to him from several parts, and amongst the rest from *Boeotia*, to know what terms of Peace he would propound; but he carried himself so high, that he would take no notice of them; though *Pharax* interceded out of an inveterate grudge he bare towards the *Thebans*. But before

Scits at Corinth.

*Agessilaus* sent against the *Argives*.

## SECT. 4.

before their departure there came news that the party he had left in *Lechaus* was defeated by *Iphicrates*, at which unusual message being much affected he leaped out from his Throne, and in all haste went to relieve them, but in his way met with three Horse-men, who acquainted him how late his assistance would be. Hereupon he returned, and the next day sent for the Ambassadors to hear what they had to say; but they something incouraged at what had hapned, and minding to requite him for his disrespect, made then no mention of peace, but desired leave to go to *Corinth*.

18. He easily apprehending them, told them they should the next day see their friends in the Town rejoicing, and the defeat of his men, which was the true cause of their desire to go to *Corinth*, and accordingly waiting all about the Citie, went to the Walls, and having in vain provoked the Inhabitants to fight, marched to the *Lechaus* the place of the defeat, after which he dismissed the Ambassadors, not suffering them to go to *Corinth*. His Army now beholding with their eyes the monument of the late mischance, were sorely afflicted, having not at all been accustomed to such a sight, onely the Parents, Kindred, and relations of the slain, according to the *Lacæonian* custom seemed to rejoyce in the Calamity of their Countrey. Having reinforced the Garrison of *Lechaus*, he returned home his men, shunning the light and fight of all men, out of shame for what had hapned in this expedition contrary to their former fortune. But *Iphicrates* after his departure, in confidence of his good successe proceeded, and reduce such places as had been taken by *Praxitas* & *Agessilaus*. After these things the *Acheans* being put to it by the *Acarnanians*, who endeavoured to wrest from them *Calydone*, Town formerly belonging to the *Ætolians*, sent to *Lacedæmon*, and expostulated with them for not assisting them, who alwayes were ready to follow them into all places. The State upon this complaint sent *Agessilaus* to aid them, who invading *Acarnania*, wasted the Countrey, made prey of most of their Cattel, and being opposed by them, was much put to it on the mountainous and precipitous places, by Darts and Arrows; but coming to hand-froaks, they were presently put to flight, and 300 of them slain. Then consumed he all things with fire and sword, and attempted some Towns by the perswasion of the *Acheans*; but in vain. Now Autumn growing on, he could not be staid by their intreaties to prevent the *Acarnanians* from sowing their Corn, telling them they were not well advised in their request; for his intention being to return the next year, how much more Corn they should have upon the ground, by so much would they be the more desirous of peace.

19. And according to his promise, the Winter being over, he returned, at the report whereof the *Athenians* seated in a mid-land Countrey, and thereupon more obnoxious to damage in their Corn, and in great danger of losing their Towns, made an agreement with the *Acheans*, and entered into a society of War with the *Spartans*. This War being over, the *Lacedæmonians* not thinking it safe to contend with the *Athenians* and *Boeotians*, whilst the *Argives* were at their back, they resolved to send their Forces against them. The conduct of them falling to *Agessilaus*, the other King, he would not undertake it, till he had consulted both the Oracle of *Jupiter Olympius*, and that of *Apollo* at *Delphos*, concerning the lawfulness of the War, because the *Argives* desired a Truce, but being satisfied therein, he invaded, and wasted their Territories; yet ere long terrified with divers prodigies, he retreated without any considerable thing done. In the mean time *Pharnabazus* and *Conon*, having overthrown the *Lacedæmonians* in a Sea-fight at *Cnidus*, freed the *Greek* Cities from the *Lacedæmonian* Governours, which *Conon* suggested to the other as the onely way to make them his own, and not to attempt to deprive them of liberty, which would force them to combine against him, and thereby give him work enough. He attempted *Sestos* and *Abydos*; but *Dercyllidus* having secured them, he lost his labour, and gave order to *Conon* to procure a Navy from the Cities upon the *Hellepont* against the Spring, being much

*Agessilaus* sent to relieve the *Acheans*.

*Agessilaus* the other King sent against the *Argives*.

*Pharnabazus* and *Conon* their acts against *Lacedæmon*.

## SECT. 4.

much incensed against the *Lacedæmonians*, and resolving to invade their Dominions. At Spring he did so, and having strengthened the Enemies of *Sparta*, as much as possible, he furnished *Conon* with a Fleet, and money to rebuild the long Walls of the *Piræus*, than which *Conon* persuaded him he could not do any thing more suitable to his own interest involved in the damage of the *Lacedæmonians*, and gaining the good will of the *Athenians*. The *Spartans* understanding that their own affairs must necessarily decline as much as those of *Athens* were advanced, (notwithstanding *Telemachus* brother to *Agessilaus* had recovered the Sovereignty of the Gulf of *Corinth*) yet thought it necessary as much as in them lay to prevent it.

20. Left *Conon* should again recover the Islands to the *Athenian* State, they thought good to advertise *Teribazus*, another of the *Persian* *Savapæes*, hereof, hoping either to draw him to their party, or at least to procure that no more furtherance should be afforded to the design of *Conon*. To this purpose they sent *Antalcidas* to him, to lay open these things, and to try what could be done with him about a peace, who according to his instructions, to gain it the more easily, fully left to his disposal the *Greek* Cities in *Asia*, provided those without were but left to their own freedom. *Teribazus* liked well of this, but the *Athenians*, *Bæotians*, *Corinthians*, and *Argives*, having also dispatched away their Ambassadors upon report of his employment, refused to assent upon their own private interests. The *Athenians* feared, if the Islands should be left to their own liberty, lest they should lose *Lemnus*, *Imbros*, and *Sciros*. The *Thebans*, lest they should be compelled to set at liberty the Cities of *Bæotia*, and the *Argives* concluded, that then they must lay aside all thoughts of *Corinth*, which they had conceived great hopes to make their own. Their dissention hindered *Teribazus* from concluding a peace with the *Lacedæmonians* without the Kings special Warrant, but underhand he supplied them with money to maintain their power at Sea, and committing *Conon* to custody, went to the King to know his pleasure.

21. The King upon his giving account how affairs stood, sent *Siruthas* to take care of the maritime affairs, who being sensible what damage *Agessilaus* had done his master, was inclinable towards the *Athenians*, which being understood at *Lacedæmon*, they sent *Thymbro* into *Asia* to keep him in action, who at first sorely afflicted the places subject to his command, but at length was slain, and his Forces defeated. At this time certain *Rhodian* being banished by the people who had the power in their own hands, came to *Sparta*, and complained that the *Athenians* had brought the Island under their power by that kind of Government. The *Spartans* understood their interest in so powerfull an Island, and sent *Ecdicus* with eight Gallies to revive, if possible, the *Oligarchy* which was agreeable to their own model; and in this Fleet they ordered him to convey *Diphridas* into *Asia*, who was to gather up the Reliques of *Thymbro's* Army, and renew the War against *Siruthas*. He ordered his affairs very well, being a man fitter for the purpose than *Thymbro* was. But *Ecdicus* fearfull of the power of the people did nothing at *Rhodes*; into his room *Telemachus* was dispatched, and with a Fleet of 27 Gallies did that for which he was sent. The *Athenians* hearing of these motions sent out *Thrafsybulus* against the *Spartans*, who despairing of *Rhodes* went into the *Hellefont*, where in *Thrace* he reconciled two Princes, *Odryses* and *Seuthes*, and made them friends of the *Athenian* State. Departing thence, he recovered several Cities, and amongst the rest *Byzantium* and *Chalcis*, whence going to the Island *Lesbus* (all the Towns whereof except *Mitylene* were joined to the *Lacedæmonians*) he had good success, taking several places, and waiving the Territories of the other.

22. From *Lesbus* he sailed victoriously unto *Rhodes*, where he obtained money from the Inhabitants of *Aspendus*; but his men after the receipt thereof dealing injuriously with them, they issued out in great anger, and killed him in his Tent. This is he, who if virtue be to be valued without fortune, one doubts whether he be not to be preferred before all others, seeing that for faithful esse, constancy, greatness of mind, and love towards his Country, no

*Antalcidas* sent into *Asia* by the proposals of a peace to counter-work them.

*Thrafsybulus* sent against the *Lacedæmonians*.

Is slain.

## SECT. 4.

no man is to be preferred before him; and whereas it hapned rarely to any to free his Country from the slavery of one man, he did it from the Tyranny of thirty. But whereas no man excelled him in worth, many overtopped him in nobility, and hereupon it fell out, that though in the *Peloponnesian* War he doing many things of himself, *Alcibiades* did nothing without him, yet the eminency of that man easily swallowed the glory and profit of all achievements. The *Lacedæmonians* having notice of what he had done, and fearfull of what the friendship of *Pharnabazus* to the *Athenians* might produce, though they had nothing to say against *Dercyllidas*, yet sent *Anaxibius* out to restore their fortune, who had prevailed with the *Ephori* for this employment, and promised great matters if he were but assisted with money and shipping. They gave him three Gallies, and pay for 1000 men. He coming to *Abydus* skirmished with *Pharnabazus*, and then getting three ships more, infected the *Athenians*. But the *Athenians* being solicitous for keeping what *Thrafsybulus* had recovered, though they had nominated *Argyrius* to his place, yet now sent *Iphicrates* with eight Gallies and 1200 men, who was lately returned from the *Corinthian* War. He setting upon *Anaxibius* whilst he carelessly went abroad, slew him as he was going to *Abydus*, and with him twelve more Governours of Towns, and thence berook himself into the *Cherronesus*.

23. At this time *Ægina* was withdrawn by *Egeonius* from the *Athenians*, who thereupon besieged it, but to no effect. At Sea both sides as it were played the Pyrrus with each other for some time: But *Telemachus* being made General of the *Lacedæmonian* Fleet, fell in upon the Haven at *Athens*, where he took some Vessels laden, with the men, and putting the Citizens into a great fright, in his return preyed upon the Coasts, whence he took many Fisher-boats with other booty, the places being not aware of any such things. In the mean while *Antalcidas* the *Spartan* returned with *Teribazus* from the *Persian* King, having concluded a League offensive and defensive with him, in case the *Athenians* and others would not consent to their proposals for a general peace. He coming to Sea took eight *Athenian* Gallies which came from *Thrace*, under the Command of one *Thrafsybulus*, and making up the Fleet to the number of 80 sayl, with 20 *Syracusan* Gallies, and others which he procured of *Teribazus*, obtained the Sovereignty of the Seas. The *Athenians* were startled hereat, fearing the issue of this War might be the same with that of the *Peloponnesian*, especially the *Persian* being now Confederate with the *Lacedæmonians*, and the Inhabitants of *Ægina* infecting their Borders; upon all which accounts they were very desirous of peace. The *Lacedæmonians* also being much straightened in maintaining Garrisons in so many places, both affected to them, & weary of them, began to have enough of War, having moreover much trouble about *Corinth*. The *Argives* not ignorant that War was decreed against them, and that their old shifts and pretences would stand them in no stead, were also ready to imbrace peace. They all then sent their Agents to *Teribazus* to know what was proposed by *Artaxerxes* *Memnon*.

24. *Teribazus* shewing them the Kings Seals, read the Contents of the writing, which imported, that he thought it just that the Cities in *Asia*, the Islands *Clazomenæ* and *Cyprus*, should be under his Jurisdiction: and all the rest, little and great, should be left to their own freedom, except *Lemnus*, *Imbros*, and *Sciros*, which having been time out of mind subject to the *Athenians*, he thought it fitting they should so continue. And such as would not admit of these conditions, he with the rest of the Confederates would prosecute with War, both at Sea and Land, to the utmost ability. The Agents returning home, all the States embraced the conditions, except the *Thebans*, who were unwilling to set at liberty the Cities of *Bæotia*; but *Agessilaus* making preparations to invade them, they were so far awed thereby as to receive them. He constrained also the *Argives* to leave *Corinth*, from which the Authors of the late massacre then flying, the Exiles returned home. These things being done, and the League sworn to by all parties, this first peace was

Y y

made

The parties desire peace.

The peace of *Antalcidas*.

*Xenoph. lib. 5*  
*Diod.*

*Corin. Nepos.*

## SECT. 4.

made betwixt the *Lacedamonians* and *Athenians* with their followers, after the ending of the *Peloponnesian* War, and casting down of their Walls, being called the peace of *Antalcidas*; for so it was termed, from the procurer, being indeed the shamefull betraying of those Cities into the hands of *Ariaxerxes*, for which *Agessilaus* had profecured the War in *Asia*.

A.M. 3618.  
Ol. 98. an. 2.  
V.C. 367.  
Artax. Num. 18.

The Spartans  
hereupon  
grew high.

25. The *Lacedamonians* were they who had the benefit thereof, being the Protectors and Patrons of it, and grew so high upon the successe, that now they resolved to chastize such of the Associates as had in the late War born greater affection to their adversaries than themselves. First they fell upon the *Mantineans* as guilty of this Crime, whom by their King *Agessipolis* (for *Agessilaus*, because of the friendship that passed betwixt his father and them, desired to be excused) they forced first to break down their Walls by turning the River upon them, which ran through the Citie, and then to divide themselves into Villages. After this they forced the *Phliasians* to receive their Exiles, and made War upon the *Olynthians* in *Thrace*, at the request of the *Acanthians* and *Apollonians*, who accused them of clandestine practices with the *Athenians* and *Thebans*. By these courtes they hoped that all the small Towns in *Greece*, upon occasion, would willingly follow them in their Wars as Authors of their liberty; and the great Cities, having lost their Dependents, would be unable to make opposition. And in particular they had conceived an emulation against *Olynthus*, now grown so mighty, that not onely she commanded her neighbour Towns, but was become terrible to places far remote, and to *Sparta* her self. The *Olynthians* had taken a great part of *Macedonia*, together with *Pella* the Metropolis of that Kingdom, and now imitating the old pretence of the *Lacedamonians* to set at liberty the places over which *Amynias* did Tyrannise, had almost driven him out of his Dominions, and taken all to themselves. They of *Acanthus* and *Apollonia* further adding, that either they must War upon *Olynthus*, or become subject to it, and fight shortly in its defence, *Endamidas* was sent before with 2000 men. He arriving in *Thrace*, fortified the Cities, and recovered *Potidea*, which had associated it self to the *Olynthians*, and managed his affairs with successe answerable to such force. In the mean time his brother *Phabidas*, according as he had requested of the *Ephori*, was employed in raising the main body of the Army, and having compleated the leavy marched away for *Thrace* to joyn with him.

The practices  
of the Olyn-  
thians.

Cadmea the  
Citadel of  
Thebes be-  
trayed.

The fact is  
unjustly ex-  
cused by *Age-  
silas*.

26. At this time the *Thebans* were much divided amongst themselves, being headed by two *Polemarchi*, *Ismenias*, and *Leonidas*. When *Phabidas* was come on his journey as far as *Thebes*, *Ismenias* out of his hatred to the *Lacedamonians* would not see him, but his Colleague betrayed *Cadmea* the Citadel of *Thebes* into his hands, seized on *Ismenias*, and got the command of the whole Citie, whereat those of the contrary faction to the number of 400 fled to *Athens*. Then another being chosen into the place of *Ismenias*, *Leonidas* went to *Sparta*, where he found the *Ephori* and people much displeased with what *Phabidas* had done, being both against the League, and without any Commission from them; and such as were Enemies to *Agessilaus*, especially aggravated the matter, labouring to draw him into suspicion about it. He otherwise as great both a commender and practiser of Justice as any, yet took upon him to defend the fact, saying, that *Phabidas* was worthy to be punished if he had done any thing that was hurtfull to the Commonwealth; but if it was profitable, then according to the ancient custom he was not bound, in such cases where haste is required, to stay for a Warrant. Following herein his ambition, or giving way to his passion (which most shewed it self against the *Thebans*) he not onely indemnified *Phabidas*, but perswaded the Citie to own what he had done, to keep the Castle, and prefer *Archias* and *Leonidas*, who had betrayed it, to the chief command of *Thebes*. The rest of the *Gracians* were fore aggrieved at what was done; but the Confederates durst not contradict it, and each Citie joyned one Commissioner to three sent from *Sparta*, who all together should take Cognisance of, and judge the cause of *Ismenias*. He was accused before them of having favoured the

Xenoph. ut su-  
pra, Plutarch. in  
Agessilaos.

## SECT. 4.

*Ismenias* put  
to death.

*Teletias* sent  
by the Spartans  
against the  
*Olynthians*.

Is slain.

*Agessipolis* sent  
after him, di-  
ctch of a Fea-  
ver.

*Olynthus* taken  
by *Olybiades*.

The *Phliasians*  
subdued by  
*Agessilaus*.

the *Barbarians*, and held intelligence with the *Persian*; that he had received part of the money sent from him to corrupt the *Gracians*, and together with *Andocides*, had been the great incendiary who kindled and fomented their intestine broils. He answered feverally and apart to all; but being believed to have attempted great and pernicious things, was condemned and put to death. Then was the power established in *Leonides* and his Complices, who did more in favour of the *Lacedamonians* than was desired of them.

27. Things thus prospering, the *Lacedamonians* more cheerfully pursued the War against *Olynthus*. They sent General thither *Teletias*, who with the help of *Amynas* the *Macedonian*, and *Derdas* Prince of *Elimeia*, overthrew the *Olynthians* under their walls, and wasting their grounds, for that Summer was ended, withdrew to their Winter quarters. But the next year when he returned, the *Olynthians* sallied out against him, whom to repel, he sending a party which drave them back beyond a River which ran by the Town, and followed them over, they then thinking they had his men at an advantage, turned back upon them, and slew to the number of 100. He being in a great chafe hereat, went in to the rescue with all his Forces, and following them within bow-shot from the walls, his men were sore galled by those that stood on the Turrets, and forced to give back, and then being hotly charged he lost his life, with many others, so that the rest clearly put to the rout, and shifting for themselves to several places, the strength of this Army was broken, which defeat *Xenophon* chargeth upon the passion of *Teletias*, shewing how dangerous it is in the Leader of an Army. The *Lacedamonians* having notice of what had hapned, dispatched away *Agessipolis* their King with all convenient speed into *Thrace*, who upon better advantages invading the *Olynthians*, took *Torone* one of their confederate Towns, and harazed the Country, but at Midsummer by extremity of heat got a Fever, of which he died the seventh day, being much lamented by *Agessilaus* his Colleague, for their long familiarity, though emulated by him. Being put into Honey and brought home, there he was interred with Royal rites, and *Polybiades* was sent to command the Army, who besieging the *Olynthians*, at length forced them by famine to yield on these terms: To have the same Friends and Enemies with the *Lacedamonians*, and to follow them as associates whither soever they should lead them in their Wars.

28. In the mean time the *Phliasians* grown confident upon the absence of *Agessipolis*, began to act very insolently and unjustly against the Exiles which of late they were made to re-admit. The Exiles complained of them at *Lacedamon*, and they thereupon in their absence put a mulst upon them, which understanding, they still continued and praised justice from that State. At length the *Ephori* resolved upon War, and *Agessilaus* was sent against the *Phliasians*, who thereupon offering largely to do all things fitting, he refused them, saying, he must have deeds and not words, to which now without further confirmation he could give no credit. They asking what he would demand, he required their Castle to be delivered up to him, which being utterly refused, he besieged the City. They held out longer than he expected, because the Magistrate suffered them not to eat above half of the ordinary proportion, and by means of one *Delphion*, who with 300 assistants, imprisoned such as spake of a surrender. But at length consumed with famine, they desired a Truce, to send Commissioners to *Sparta* to treat of Peace. *Agessilaus* stomached that they should passe him by, and therefore sending his friends to the City, he obtained that the matter should be referred back to him. He ordered that 50 should be chosen of the Exiles, and as many others, who should determine which Citizens should be suffered to live, and which put to death, and that then power should be given them to make Laws for the Government of the City. Whilst these things should be done he left a Garrison in the Town, and so departed, having spent Twenty moneths in this businesse.

29. All things thus falling out to the *Spartans* according to their wish, they judged

## SECT. 4.

judged their Empire sufficiently established; but another event (as *Xenophon* gravely discourseth of divine vengeance) taught the contrary, it being clear, both from the Histories of *Greeks* and *Barbarians*, that God suffereth not to escape unpunished wicked and ungodly actions. They had sworn not long before to leave the Cities to their own liberty, and yet they kept in their hands the Citadel at *Thebes*, and therefore being formerly invincible, were now sufficiently plagued by those alone whom they had injured. There was one *Phillidas* Secretary to the present *Polemarchi* of *Thebes*, who being not at all suspected by his Masters, went to *Athens* where the Exiles lay, and there entered into a conspiracy with *Mello* one of them, for the killing of the *Polemarchi*, and recovery of their Countries liberty. *Mello* and six others being let in by *Phillidas*, were in womens apparel brought in to the *Polemarchi* as Courtezans, whilst they were drinking and celebrating the Feast of *Venus* at the end of their Office, whom they stabbed with daggers hid under their clothes; after which they did as much to *Leontides* the chief reveller, as he lay in his bed, *Mello* being easily admitted to him without suspicion. Then went they to the common prison, and killing the Keeper set at liberty their friends, when now they called the people together, and exhorted them to stand in defence of their native liberty. They presently besieged the Castle, wherein the *Lacedæmonian* Governour seeing the alacrity of the assailants, was forced to yield upon this condition, to go out with his Army, and for that was put to death at his return to *Sparta*. The *Thebans* then slew such as they could come by, who sided with *Leontides*, and, too rigorously, extended the same punishment to their children.<sup>1</sup>

*Thebes recovered by the Exiles.*

30. The *Ephori* solicited by the Exiles that fled to *Sparta*, and moved by the authority of *Agefilas* (who pretended a sufficient quarrel, for that *Archias* and *Leontides* were slain) sent *Cleombrotus* their King against the *Thebans* now in the depth of Winter. He in his passage slew those whom *Phillidas* had let out of prison, to the number of 150, who kept watch upon the mountains, but did nothing farther considerable, onely he left *Sphodrias* Governour of *Thebes* to raise new Forces, and be a refuge to the discontented party amongst the *Thebans*, and so returned. Yet herewith were the *Athenians* exceedingly affrighted, inasmuch that one they put to death, who had conspired with the *Theban* Exiles, and condemned another who fled upon it. The *Thebans* also despaired of being able to grapple with the *Lacedæmonians*, and therefore betook themselves to a politick device, which was invented by *Pelopidas* and *Gorsidas* principal of the late Conspirators. A Merchant was sent to *Sphodrias*, then lying at *Thespiæ*, a rash and ambitious man, to perswade him to fall upon the *Piræus* or Haven of *Athens*, as a work very grateful to his superiours, for thereby he should cut off the *Athenian* power at Sea; and he might be sure the *Thebans* would not assist them being already too much incensed. He pricked forwards by these conceits, invaded *Attica* as far as *Eleusine*; but there his design being known, and his Soldiers unwilling to proceed any further, as not sufficiently prepared for such an enterprize, he was forced to return.

*Sphodrias invaded Attica by the cunning of some Thebans.*

31. The *Athenians* cast into prison the *Spartan* Ambassadors as conscious of such an unlawful act; but they utterly renounced the least knowledge of it, and promising *Sphodrias* should answer it with his life, they were content to expect the justice of the State upon him. The *Ephori* called him to account indeed, and yet though he appeared nor, was he acquitted, to the great admiration of all men, especially because of the author of his acquitment, which was *Agefilas*. For the King, though at first he refused several times to hear any thing in his behalf; yet *Cleonymus* the son of *Sphodrias* beloved by *Archidamus*, made such means to him, that at length being very indulgent to his children, he excused the matter, and saying, he held *Sphodrias* to be an honest man, and that the Commonwealth stood in need of such Soldiers, he got him acquitted, to his great dishonour. The *Athenians* hereupon out of indignation joyned themselves to the *Thebans*, and the *Boeotians* and they sent to the Cities under the command of *Sparta*, to draw them to their party, which

*Agefilas moved by his son Archidamus, perswaded him to acquitment, whence the Athenians joyned with the Thebans.*

*Xenophon prius. Diodorus ad Olymp. 100. an. 3. Plutarch & Corn. Nepos in Pelopidæ.*

*Xenophon & Plutarch.*

*Xenophon. Plutarch.*

## SECT. 4.

which they effected with most, they groining under the yoke of *Lacedæmon*. They appointed a Common-council to be held at *Athens*, for carrying on the War, made up of one out of every confederate City, by which course and other ways of self-denial, the *Athenians* recovered much authority, having constituted their Captains, *Timotheus* the Son of *Conon*, *Chabrias*, and *Calisthratus*.

*Agefilas undertaketh another fruitless Expedition against the Boeotians.*

32. The *Lacedæmonians* to counterwork them, took off their severity from their Subjects which had not yet revolted, whereby they kept them fast to them, and renewing Military discipline, sent *Agefilas* into *Boeotia* with a great Army; for *Cleombrotus* liked not the cause so well as to engage in it; and thereupon he was forced to lay aside his excuse of superannuation (being above 40 years older than one of ripe age) and submitted to the employment. The *Thebans* opposing themselves against him with the *Athenians* and others, took an hill, where by direction of *Chabrias*, they received him carelessly, with their shields let down to their knees, and their lances advanced, which courage of theirs as it seemed made him to retreat, and so having done great damage to their Country, and lost many of his men, he returned, leaving the Horse still to make excursions, under the command of *Phæbias*. Several skirmishes then hapned after his departure, in one of which *Phæbias* himself was slain, with 300 of his followers. This made the *Thebans* take more courage, and many then revolted to them. The *Spartans* sent a party to reinforce the Garrison of *Thespiæ*, and in the beginning of Spring prevailed with *Agefilas* to undertake another Expedition, which was performed to little purpose. He broke a vein in his sound thigh, and the blood caused such an inflammation, that though opening a vein at his ankle gave him some ease, yet at his return he was forced to keep his bed for a long time, the blood at the orifice having ran night and day, till at length he swooned, which stopped the flux of it. The year after *Cleombrotus* was again sent out; but the *Thebans* and *Athenians* disputing the passage with him in his way, after he had lost 40 men he returned. By these conflicts the *Thebans* were so exercised, that they became excellent Soldiers, as *Antalcidas* said jeeringly to *Agefilas* at his return, that he was very well rewarded by them, whom without either will or knowledge he had taught to fight.

*Diodorus ad Ol. 101. an. 1. Xenophon. Plutarch.*

33. The Confederates being met at *Lacedæmon*, accused themselves of idleness, for that they had not stroven with the *Athenians* at Sea, and being now confident they could starve them in the City, they rigged a Fleet of 70 ships for that purpose. And hereby they for some time as it were besieged *Athens*, so that the Corn-ships durst not approach, till *Chabrias* overthrew them in fight, and brought in plenty of provisions. The *Lacedæmonians* preparing to send new Forces into *Boeotia*, the *Thebans* desired of their friends at *Athens* to invade *Peloponnesus* by Sea, to divert them; which they readily did, under conduct of *Timotheus*, the *Thebans* at the same time taking several Towns upon their borders. The *Spartans* sent out one *Nicolochns* to Sea against *Timotheus*, who not staying for six Gallies of *Ambracia*, which he expected, with 55 sail set upon the *Athenian* Fleet consisting of 60, and was worsted. Hereupon *Timotheus* erected a Trophy, but *Nicolochns* getting the six ships of *Ambracia*, went and offered battle again, and *Timotheus* not stirring erected another Trophy as a Conquerour. But *Timotheus* mending his ships, made up his Fleet above 70 Vessels, and prevailed at Sea. The *Thebans* having got all the *Boeotian* Cities into their power invaded *Phocia*, to the succour of which *Cleombrotus* was sent from *Sparta*, and there the associates both of the one side and the other met; but the *Athenians* thinking now that the *Thebans* became too potent by their assistance, were desirous of a Peace. The *Thebans* with 500 men went against *Orchomenus*, held by a Garrison of the *Lacedæmonians*, which sallying out against them, a hot dispute ensued, wherein, although the *Spartans* were double the number, yet they were beaten, which thing had not happened in former Ages. This added courage to the *Thebans*, and their military glory daily increasing, it now became evident that they strove for the Sovereignty of *Greece*. With this

*Xenophon, lib. 6. Diodorus.*

*The Lacedæmonians beaten.*



SECT. 4. this year *Hermæus* of *Metymna* concluded his History of *Sicily*, which consisted of 10. or, according to some, of 12 books.

34. The next being the second of the 101 *Olympiad*, the 30th of the reign of *Artaxerxes Mnemon*, *Hippodamus* being *Archon*; *Artaxerxes* having a design to make War upon *Egypt*, and to use the *Græcians* therein, sent to persuade them to agreement. They being weary of War contented to it, all the Cities being to be set at liberty, and the *Garrisons* drawn out; onely the *Thebans* left out of the general peace. *Thebans* refusing to quit the Cities of *Boeotia* were not comprised in the League, being very confident in their good fortune, and much incouraged by several excellent good Soldiers amongst them, the principal of which were *Pelopidas*, and *Epaminondas*, who from a poor Philosopher became the most renowned for martial affairs of all *Greece*. This change produced great Commotions in the several Cities, but especially in those of *Peloponnesus*, which by the *Lacedæmonians* had been subjected to *Oligarchy*, and now having the popular Government restored, knew not how to use it moderately, but by unjust decrees opposed many worthy men, driving some into Exile, and selling their goods. Great stirrs especially hapned amongst the *Corinthians*, *Megarians*, and *Phliansians*, whilst those that were unjustly banished endeavoured by force or policy to restore themselves. Those that were for *Democracy* were maintained by the *Athenians*, and the *Spartans* assisting the *Oligarchical* faction, the peace was but for a small time observed by these two States, whilst both favoured such as bare most affection to their form of Government, and so they renewed the War: such is the fruit of Antimonarchical Government, viz. nothing but sedition, confusion, and disorder.

The peace continueth but a short time.

Plataea and Thebes demolished.

35. They (a) contested first about the *Zacynthians*, and afterwards in *Corcyra*, where the *Spartans* besieging the City, the Inhabitants almost all famished, yet sallied out, and killing *Mnesippus* their General, with many others, the rest hearing of the coming of *Iphicrates* the *Athenian* with a great Fleet, with such plunder as they had got, disgracefully raised their siege and departed. At this time the *Plataeans* having a design to commit themselves to the Protection and Alliance of *Athens*, the *Thebans* thereupon demolished the Town, and not long after did the same by *Thebes*. The ruin of *Plataea* is by (b) *Pausanias* referred to the next year when *Astæus* was *Archon*, in which also (being the fourth of the 101 *Olympiad*) hapned (c) such Earth-quakes, and Inundations of the Sea in *Peloponnesus*, that *Helice* and *Rura*, two Towns of the *Achaens*, were together with the Inhabitants swallowed up. Hereof *Diodorus* assigneth several causes, laying the stress upon an injury formerly offered by them to *Neptune*, in refusing to lend the *Ionians* their Statues, to which they should have sacrificed. Five dayes before the ruin of these Cities, all the Mice, Weasils, Serpents, and such like Creatures came out of *Helice* in great numbers, and took the way which leads to *Coria*. The Inhabitants admiring so strange a sight, had the next night their thoughts diverted by the Earth-quake, which made way for that Inundation wherein they perished, and with them ten ships of the *Lacedæmonians* then lying in the Haven.

36. The next year being the first of the 102 *Olympiad*, wherein *Damon* the *Thurian* got the prize, *Alcisthenes* being *Archon*, *Artaxerxes* sent his Ambassadors into *Greece* again to persuade the States to an agreement. The *Athenians* were now grievously displeased with the *Thebans* for destroying *Plataea* and *Thebes*, two Cities which had so well deserved of *Greece* in the *Median* War, and thereupon would no more joyn with them. They sent Ambassadors to *Lacedæmon* about a peace, who used such Rhetorick to that State, specially *Callistratus*, that they brought the *Spartans* to assent upon these Terms: that the Cities should be set at liberty, the Armies disbanded, and whosoever would not acquiesce in these conditions, it should be lawfull for any of the Confederates, if they pleased (not being constrained to it) to help the distressed. All others except the *Thebans* subscribed the League, for they were unwilling as before to quit the Cities of *Boeotia*. Hereupon the Spar-

Diodorus ad Olymp. 101. ann. 2.

(a) Xenophon, Diodorus ad Olymp. 101. ann. 3.

(b) In Boeotia. (c) Diodorus ad Olymp. 101. ann. 4. Strabo lib. 9. p. 385. Pausan. in Achaicis.

Alianus Hist. Anim. lib. 11. cap. 19.

Diodorus ad Olymp. 102. ann. 1.

Xenoph. ut prius.

*Cleombrotus* the Spartan King invaded *Boeotia*. *tans* jealous of them, resolved to make War in the behalf of all *Greece*, and gave order to *Cleombrotus* their King (who now lay in *Phocis*, expecting what they would command him) to invade *Boeotia*. The *Lacedæmonians* having great Forces of their own, besides their Allies, and none willing to assist the *Thebans*, every one gave them for lost, who yet upon *Cleombrotus* his Summons refused to set free the Cities of *Boeotia*, except the *Spartans* would restore *Messene*, and permit the *Laconians* to enjoy their liberty. In summe, they desired they would no more meddle with what they did in *Boeotia*, than they were concerned in any thing done in *Laconia*.

37. They created *Epaminondas* General, of whose rare skill and valour they had had abundant proof, joyning with him the *Boeotarcha*. He levying 12000 men marched away, and possessed himself of the Straights of *Coronea*, which *Cleombrotus* hearing, marched through *Phocis* another way, and came into *Boeotia* by the Sea's-side; coming to *Leuctra*, he there rested himself, which the *Boeotians* understanding, passed over the Mountains, and came near to him, but seeing such multitudes to overspread the plain, were not a little discouraged. The *Boeotarcha* then deliberating what to do, were divided in their opinions, three being for fighting, amongst whom was *Epaminondas*, and as many for departing; but whilst they were still in doubt came in the seventh, and through the persuasion of *Epaminondas* cast the ballance on his side. *Plutarch* saith, that *Pelopidas* first approved of his advice, being Captain of the Sacred Company, which was made up (as is most probable amongst many opinions) of intimate friends and lovers, who fighting earnestly for one another, when in danger, did great harm thereby to the Enemy. Whilst *Epaminondas* was several wayes encouraging his men to the fight, came in *Jason* the *Pherean*, the most Eminent leading man of *Thebans*, with 1000 horse and 1500 foot, in shew to help the *Thebans*, but with intention to take up the quarrel; and he persuaded both parties to accept of a Truce.

Epaminondas overthrewed him in the battel of Leuctra, wherein he is slain.

38. *Cleombrotus* was then departing out of *Boeotia*, when a new Army met him from *Sparta*, under the Command of *Archidamus*; for the *Lacedæmonians* seeing the courage and resolution of the *Thebans*, whereas otherwise they could not do it, resolved to oppress them by their numbers. The General then thinking it to be disgracefull at all to fear the *Thebans* valour, marched back to *Leuctra* without any regard of the Truce, where they found the *Boeotians* ready to receive them. *Cleombrotus* and *Archidamus* (both descended from *Hercules*) lead the Wings of their battel. *Epaminondas* gave leave to all that would to depart, which was done by the *Thebans* and others, who bore no good will to the *Thebans*. His prime men he placed in one Wing, and the other by themselves, whom he ordered to give back, as though they fled. Making then an oblique battalion, he with the stoutest men began the fight, and whilst the other retired from the Enemy he followed him close, who now brake his order to get into it. The success remained doubtfull as long as *Cleombrotus* lived; but he being slain whilst he most valiantly demeaned himself, first a great and bloody contest hapned about his body, which at length his men recovered, and gave back in order, and by degrees. But *Epaminondas* still pressing upon them, and doing great execution, at length they fled, having nobody to govern them. About 4000 of them were slain, and 300 of the other party. This battel hapned in the 34th year after the end of the *Peloponnesian* War, the second of the 102d *Olympiad*, the 34th of *Artaxerxes Mnemon*, *Pharacides* being *Archon*. A. M. 3634.

39. The message of this overthrow came to *Sparta* the last day of their gymnick solemnities, wherewith, though the *Ephori* were so affected, as those that saw now a conclusion of that Principality they had almost enjoyed 500 years, yet suffered not the exercises to be broken off; but sending the names of the slain to their relations, finished the Festival. The day after, when it was known who were slain, and who escaped, one might see the Parents and Kindred of the dead to meet together in the Forum with cheerfull looks and minds, shaking one another by the hands; but on the other side the friends of such

SECT. 4.

Diodorus ad ann. 2.

Xenoph. Plutarch. in Pelopidas. Pausan. in Boeotia.

Δὲ Ἐπᾶμεινον Πατριωτικὴν τὴν Ἐλευθερίαν περὶ Συνοπτικῶς Εὐαγγελιστοῦ.

A. M. 3634. Olymp. 102. ann. 2. *Urbis cond. 383.*

Artax. Mnem. 34.

Xenoph. & Plutarch. ut supra.

## SECT. 4.

The behaviour of the Spartans after the battle of Leuctra.

such as were living, as in some solemn time of mourning to keep themselves at home, or if they came abroad, to signify their sadness in their habit, speech and countenance: and this was especially remarkable amongst the women. But when their associates had revolted, and Epaminondas was thought to be about to invade Peloponnesus, they then called to mind the Oracles, concerning what should happen to them under a Lame King; yet reverencing the valour, power, and glory of Agesilaus, they not onely retained him in his several places of King and General, but made use of him as a Physician in this sad distemper. Now whereas by the Laws of Sparta, such as had fled from a battle were not onely made incapable of Magistracy, and of marriage with others, who thereupon were noted with ignominy; but were to be stricken by every one that met them, walking in a dejected posture, in Fools Coats, with their beards half shaved; there being many and powerfull who fled from Leuctra; lest any inconvenience might follow upon their discontent, Agesilaus procured that the Law for his time should be silent, and (without repealing) obtain its antient vigour for the time to come. Then to recreate the minds of the Soldiers he led them out into Arcadia, where industriously abtaining from fight, he took a little Town of the Mantineans, and made excursions into their Territories, to give his Citizens a little hope, and shew them that the fortune of Sparta was not altogether desperate.

Archidamus invaded Beotia.

40. The Ephori made new Levies, listing those now that were above 60. the Tegeans, Mantineans, Corinbians, Phliasians, Achæans, and other Cities sent their numbers, the Conduct of all which was committed to Archidamus, because his father was not yet recovered. The Thebans presently after the victory sent a Messenger Crowned to Athens, to let them know their successe, and demanded aid; but the Athenians being not a little troubled at what had hapned gave him no audience. Then sent they to Jason the Phœæan Prince of Thessaly, who though he was otherwise employed with the Phocians, yet came, and when Archidamus had now invaded Beotia, procured a Truce betwixt them, and thereupon the Spartan Army returned home. This by Xenophon is related as done after the battle at Leuctra, and because he maketh no mention of any Truce made by Jason betwixt them, before the fight, we may suspect a mistake in the time, either of him, or Diodorus, who relateth the story as before. Jason returning home was murdered by seven young men, having great designs in his head, after he had, partly by persuasion, and partly by awe, caused all Thessaly to receive him as General, the Lacedæmonians having refused to send him aid to defend themselves from his power. After his death his two brothers Polydorus and Polyphron, Authors of his death, were made Generals, of whom the former was slain within a while by the later, who turning his Principality into Tyranny, held it but one year, being then slain by his brother Alexander, under pretence of revenging the death of Polydorus, and overthrowing the Tyranny. But he proved ten times more Tyrannical, \* burying men alive, converting them in beasts skins, and so setting them before the Dogs to be devoured, and killing others with Darts, to make himself sport. At length having a plot against his Wives brothers, he was slain by them by her means, and Tisiphonius the eldest of all the brothers succeeded, who continued in the Government when Xenophon wrote his History.

\* Plutarch, in Pelopida.

Xenoph.

41. The Athenians considering that the Lacedæmonians still expected they should follow them in the Wars as formerly, and would compell them thereto if they could, thought it best for saving their credit to revive the peace formerly made with Artaxerxes. They sent therefore fifty men about it, to the Cities, to take an Oath of them to this purpose: That they would observe the Truce established by the King, and confirmed by the Athenians and their Associates; and if any injury should be offered to any that took the Oath, to assist them with their full power. All the States willingly admitted of it, and received the Oath, except the Eleans, who after the example of the Thebans, pretended that the Margarians, Scillunians, and Triphyllians ought

## SECT. 4.

A Sedition at Tegea.

ought not to be set at liberty, because they belonged unto them. All Cities both little and great being by virtue of this peace to be set at liberty, the Mantineans taking occasion thereat, made a Decree to build their Citie again, and to fence it with walls, which formerly had been demolished by the Lacedæmonians. They were agrieved that this should be done without their consent, and sent Agesilaus to them to stop their proceedings; but the Magistrates refused to call the People together to give him audience, though a friend upon his fathers account, telling him what was once deceed by the people could not be altered. Some of the Arcadians sent and promised them assistance, and the Eleans helped them with thirty talents of Silver. At this time the inhabitants of Tegea fell out amongst themselves, whilst some would have all the Arcadians meet together and choose some one man to be their Prince, but others were for living under their own Laws onely, and the maintenance of their liberty. These at the first had the better of it; but by the help of the Mantineans, at length the other prevailed, and killing some, drove the rest of their Enemies to Lacedæmon, to the number of 80.

Alias Diodorus, vide.

Megalopolis built.

42. The Lacedæmonians thought they were bound by Oath to revenge the cause of the Exiles upon the Mantineans, who by falling on them had broken theirs, and gave order to Agesilaus to invade them. They by the advice of their friends the Arcadians contained themselves within their walls nevv built, and suffered him to spoil their Country, vvich doing vvith great caution and warinesse, yet without any losse of honour, he returned home. At this time it must be, according to \* Pausanias (who placeth it in the same year with the battle at Leuctra) that by the persuasion of Epaminondas the Arcadians built them one City to inhabit (destroying there many small Towns) which thence had the name of Megalopolis. The fame of Plato being now spread abroad, the Thebans and Arcadians sent to him to desire his help, not onely for the instruction of their youth, and to teach Philosophy, but also to prescribe them Laws for their Commonwealth. At first he intended to go, but asking the Ambassadors how their Superiours stood affected to an equal distribution of goods and honours, and hearing they were utterly averse to such a constitution, he thereupon refused to go to them. At this same time also Epaminondas sent into Sicilie, Italy, as far as the Islands Eusseriæ, and all over where the old Messenians dwelt, to invite them home into their antient Country, which was restored to them, and called after the old name Messene. Which restauration hapned 298 years (reckoned from the first of the year of the 102 Olympiad, Dysicretas being Archon. During all this time of their Exile they preserved intirely their antient Rites, and the Dorick dialect unchanged, which in our Age (saith Pausanias) by them, and onely by them, is also preserved uncorrupt and natural.

\* In Arcadicis.

Asian var. hist. lib. 2. cap. 42.

Pausanias in Messenicis.

The Messenians recalled & re-established.

An unparalleled Sedition at Argos, the fruit of Antimonarchical Government.

43. The same year hapned such a Sedition and Massacre at Argos, as could never be paralleled in Greece. That City was then governed in a Democratical way; but the Orators so stirred up the People against the Nobility, that some being accused, for fear conspired against the Popular Government, to prevent their own ruine. Being hereupon suspected and examined, some fearing to be tortured made away themselves, and one in the midst of his pains accused thirty of the most eminent in the City. The common sort giving credit to this accusation, put all those to death unheard, and confiscated their goods, and then many others being accused who were wealthy, they put them all to death, and in this manner made an end of 1600. The Orators themselves now were afraid, lest in this so general a Massacre they themselves also might unexpectedly miscarry, and therefore ceased from their calumniations; which being understood by the multitude, as though they now forsook them, they put as many of them to death as they could find in the City, the vengeance of God thus repaying them.

Diodorus ad Olymp. 102. an. 3.

44. The next year, the Lacedæmonians sent 1000 of their Citizens, and 500 Argives and Boeotian Exiles, under the command of Polytropus into Arcadia, who there fortified Orchomenus, but meeting with Lycomedes the

Idem ad ann. 4. Xenoph.

Z z

Mant.

## SECT. 4.

Epaminondas  
invadeth La-  
conia.

*Mantinean*, General of the *Arcadians*, he was slain in battel with 200 men. The *Arcadians* after this desiring help of the *Athenians* in vain, procured it of the *Bœotians*, who dispatched into *Peloponnesus* *Epaminondas* and *Pelopidas*, to whom the other *Bœotarchs* of their own accord left the command of the Army. When they were come into *Arcadia*, all the Confederates made up the number of 50000 men; but yet the *Thebans* were very unwilling to invade *Laconia*. They considered that the Country was well fortified, and that the *Lacedæmonians* terrible every where would fight more desperately at their own doors. But the other pressing them much to it, and some bringing word how the borders were desolate of defence, and offering to conduct them into it, at length they invaded it in four several bodies, and bearing down all opposition, met together at *Sallasia*, whence they marched for *Sparta* it self, burning and consuming all things in their passage. Six hundred years had the *Dores* now inhabited *Laconia*, and for all this time not an Enemy had dared to appear in it, so that this unusual fight caused great tumults in the City, the women having never before seen as much as the smook of War, nor the men able to endure a Siege. *Agessilaus* contained them within, bestowing them as he found convenient in several places, for the defence of the City, which had no other walls than the bodies of it's Inhabitants. He was much moved at the arrogance of the Enemy, who challenged him by name, as the cause of these dissensions, to come out and fight; yet so contained himself, as taking great pains for the preservation of his Country, he shewed clearly, that if he had not been, the City could not have continued.

Plutarch &  
Corn. Nepos in  
Agessilaus.Iphicrates sent  
to assist the  
Spartans.His conduct  
is censured by  
Xenophon.

45. The *Bœotians* laboured to provoke the *Spartans* to fight, bidding them either do it, or confesse themselves to be inferior to their Enemies; to which they answered, that when they saw occasion, they would not fear to try a battel with them for all. They left then the City, and making great waste of all *Laconia*, returned into *Arcadia*. The *Spartans* in the time of this their extremity, had promised liberty to such of their Slaves as would fight for them, and sent to *Athens* to procure assistance from that State, which the Ambassadors procured to be decreed, especially by this motive, that the *Lacedæmonians* had saved that City, at the end of the *Peloponnesian* War, when the *Thebans* were earnest for it's utter destruction. They made choice of *Iphicrates* for the General in this Expedition, who otherwise a man of excellent conduct, yet is judged by *Xenophon* to have been far overseen in the management of this employment. For having loitered at *Corinth*, and the *Thebans* being about to return home, he ought to have fortified *Cenchrea*, where they had the most convenient passage, and when he sent to spie whether they had passed *Onius*, he sent both all his own and the *Corinthian* Horse, whereas few had been sufficient to spie, and better for a speedy retreat, and hereby he lost no fewer than twenty men, and the *Thebans* returned without any great molestation. The *Lacedæmonians* having got 4000 Auxiliaries, besides 1000 Slaves newly manumitted, and many men out of the neighbouring Towns, thought themselves then fit to try a battel; yet convenient for them first to send to the *Thebans* about a peace. They offered it to them on these terms; that *Messene* should be restored by them, and the *Laconians* left to their liberty. Most inclined to receive these terms, till *Archidamus* rising up, said, that peace was not to be received upon such unequal conditions by them, who were wont to give and not to receive it; that *Messene* was justly destroyed 300 years before, and could not be restored, but to the great distresse and damage of the *Lacedæmonians*.

Epaminondas  
retaining  
questioned for  
his life.

46. But *Epaminondas* having to his great honour restored *Messene* fully (the grounds being divided, and all things done) after 85 dayes spent in this Expedition, returned home, and being in his way molested by *Iphicrates*, pursued him home to the walls of *Athens*. But there was a Law at *Thebes*, which made it capital for any one to retain the chief command longer than was in that case provided by the constitutions of the City, new Magistrates being to be chosen the beginning of the new moneth *Bacatus*. This *Epaminondas* knowing to have been made for the good of the City, would not keep

Diodorus ad  
Olymp. 102.  
ann. 4.

## SECT. 4.

Plutarch in Pe-  
loponda & Cora.  
Nepos in Epa-  
minonda.Asian. v. v.  
Hist. lib. 13.  
cap. 42.Plutarch in Bœo-  
tia.Xenoph. lib. 7.  
Diodorus.Xenoph.  
Diodorus ad  
Olymp. 103.  
ann. 1.

keep it to the damage thereof, and continued his command four moneths longer than his Commission warranted. After his return, he and his Colleagues were accused, and he permitted them to lay all the blame upon himself. They being hereby freed, no man expected any defence from him, as having nothing to say for himself. He appearing, denied nothing that his adversaries objected, confessed what his Colleagues said to be true, and refused not to undergo what the Law inflicted, onely he made one request to them: that this might be written upon his Tomb: *Epaminondas was punished with death by the Thebans, because he constrained them at Leuctra to vanquish the Lacedæmonians, whom, before he was General, none of the Bœotians durst once look on; and for that in one battel he not only saved the Thebans from ruine, but also restored liberty to all Greece; and brought matters to that pass, that the Thebans fell upon Sparta, and the Lacedæmonians had enough to do to preserve themselves; and left not off till Messene being restored, he besieged their City.* Having said this, the People affected with joy set up a laughter, and none of the Judges dared to passe sentence.

Epaminondas  
again invad-  
eth Pelopon-  
sus.

47. In the same year, according to *Diodorus*, but the next, according to *Xenophon*, *Epaminondas* was sent again into *Peloponnesus* to the assistance of *Arcadians*, *Argives*, and *Eleans*, who afresh had made War upon the *Lacedæmonians*. The *Lacedæmonians* and *Athenians* had lately established a League betwixt themselves on these terms: That each should command the Army five dayes in their course, which before was solely left to the *Spartans*. The *Athenians* hearing of the coming of *Epaminondas*, sent *Chabrias* with an Army to stop his passage. He coming to *Corinth*, with the *Lacedæmonians* and other allies, made up an Army of 20000, and then all joyning together fortified the passage into *Peloponnesus*, making a ditch and a wall crosse the Isthmus from *Cenchrea* to *Lacæum*. But *Epaminondas* observing at what place the guards were weakest, there with some difficulty brake thorough, harazed the Country, had *Sicyon* and other places delivered up to him, but coming to *Corinth* was gallantly repulsed by *Chabrias*, who falling out of the City, and getting advantageous ground, not onely sustained his charge, but did good execution upon the assailants. At this time 2000 *Gauls* and *Spaniards* were sent by *Dionysius* Tyrant of *Sicilie* to the aid of the *Lacedæmonians*, who arriving at *Corinth*, the *Græcians* to try their valour led them out against the Enemy. They behaved themselves very well, did good service against the *Bœotians*, many of whom and their allies they slew, for which receiving great commendations and rewards besides, they returned in the later end of Summer into *Sicilie*.

The Arcadi-  
ans fall out  
with the The-  
bans.

48. The *Thebans* being returned home, the *Athenians* conceived indignation against them, through the complaints of *Lycomedes* the *Mantinean*, who urged it was an unworthy thing for the *Arcadians*, being more noble (as the onely ancient Inhabitants of their Country) and more deserving, to be commanded by the other, and follow them in the War. Being much puffed up with such conceits, the *Thebans* began to be alienated from them, and the *Eleans* bore them malice, because they could not obtain of them the Towns which the *Lacedæmonians* had taken from them. Things being at this pass, came *Phyliscus* of *Abydos*, sent from *Ariobarzanes* the *Persian Satrapa*, with much money, to perswade the States to Peace. The *Thebans* yet would not come to any conclusion, alleging that *Messene* ought to be exempted from the jurisdiction of the *Spartans*, with which he being offended, nor enduring that old pretences should be again revived, he left 2000 men already paid to the aid of the *Lacedæmonians*, and returned into *Asia*. The *Arcadians* having chosen *Lycomedes* their General, sent him into *Laconia* with an Army, where he took by storm *Pallene*, and therein put to the sword 300 of the *Lacedæmonian* Garrison Soldiers. To return the like unto them the year following (the first of the 103 Olympiad, wherein *Pyrrhostratus* the *Athenian* was Victor) *Archidamus* was sent into *Arcadia* with the Confederates, and a new supply of men sent from *Dionysius*. He took *Carya*, and put all therein to the sword, and going on in his attempts, *Cissidas* the General of

## SECT. 4.

the *Sicilian* Forces, pretending he had staid his full time set him by *Dionysius*, would needs be gone; but in his way was circumvented by the *Messenians*, and was forced to crave aid of *Archiaamus*.

49. He hastned to relieve him, and in his march the *Arcadians* and *Argives* opposed themselves, whom charging with great resolution, he got a most famous victory, killing 10000 of his Enemies without the losse of one man; so that as the Priests of *Dodona* had sung (that it should be a fight without tears to the *Lacedæmonians*) yet the message being come to *Sparta*, *Agessius*, the *Senators*, and the *Ephori*, are all said to have wept for joy. As this successe revived the spirits of the *Spartans*, which had been almost extinct by the battel at *Leuttra*, so, as *Diodorus* telleth us, the *Arcadians* now fearing their in-roads, for their better security built them one great Citie, twenty of the *Menalian* and *Parthasian* Villages being taken in for the site thereof, though *Pausanias* will have *Megalopolis* built two years before. The *Thebans* and *Eleans* only rejoiced in the misfortune of their friends the *Arcadians*, as tending to the humbling of them. The *Thebans* casting much in their heads how to obtain the principality of all *Greece*, resolved upon sending an Ambassage to the *Persian* King to contract a straight League and Alliance with him, and assembling the Confederates they pretended a necessity thereof, because *Euthycles* the *Lacedæmonian* was now with the King in behalf of that state. They sent *Pelopidas*, with others for the *Arcadians*, *Eleans*, &c. *Argives*: the *Athenians* also understanding hereof sent *Timagoras* and *Le-n*. *Pelopidas* being very famous even in *Asia* for his valour, by his demeanour got all the favour from the rest. He urged the King with the merits of the *Thebans*, who had never of all *Greece* born Arms against him, or his Ancestors, either of old in the *Median* War, or of late in assistance to *Agessius*, and he extolled their valour, shewing that the reason why the *Arcadians* were of late overthrown by the *Lacedæmonians*, was because of their absence. For the truth hereof he appealed to *Timagoras* the *Athenian*, whom being at odds with his Colleague, he drew off to his party. He obtained of *Artaxerxes* what he demanded, viz. that *Messene* should be held exempted from the Jurisdiction of the *Lacedæmonians*, the *Athenians* should abstain from the Sea, and all the other Cities left to their own Laws: Lastly, that the *Thebans* should be esteemed the near Friends and Allies of the Empire.

50. This employment got *Pelopidas* abundance of credit (who not long after was slain in a victorious battel, fought in the behalf of the *Thessalians* against *Alexander* the Tyrant) but *Timagoras* returning home received a great Present from the *Persian*, and being accused by his Colleague of siding with *Pelopidas* was put to death. The *Thebans*, though they had got what they desired of the King, yet their design came to nothing, for the Commissioners of the Cities first refused to take the Oath of this new League, and then most of the Cities themselves after the example of *Corinth*, the answer of which was, that there was no need of this new Engagement. This plot then of *Pelopidas* having not taken good effect, *Epaminondas* thought of another to reduce the *Arcadians* and Allies to obedience; and that was, first by subducing the *Acheans*, to which purpose he went again into *Peloponnesus*. He easily effected this, and receiving an engagement from them to continue faithfull to the *Thebans*, returned, for which being much blamed by the *Arcadians*, and the rest of that faction, Governours were sent from *Thebes* into the several Cities, who bringing in the popular Government, thereupon drove away many of the principal men, who uniting themselves, seized again upon their several Cities, and then stood no more Neuters, but openly declared for the *Lacedæmonians*. So this second device of the *Thebans* came to nothing, and the *Arcadians* were pressed both by the *Lacedæmonians* and *Acheans*. At this time *Enphron* the *Sicyonian*, a man of great power in his Countrey, perswaded the people to bring in the popular Government, which done, and he with others being chosen *Prætors*, he murdered some of his Collegues, expelled the rest, and openly established a Tyranny. The associates he put off by doing them pleasures, through which the *Argives* being in-

*Megalopolis* now built according to *Diodorus*.

*Pelopidas* sent by the *Thebans* to the *Persian* King.

Getteth much credit by his Ambassage.

*Xenoph.* ut supra, *Diodorus* ad *Olymp.* 103. ann. 2.

## SECT. 4.

couraged, together with him fell upon the *Phians*, & brought them to great straights, because of their faithfulness to the *Lacedæmonians*, wherein they excelled beyond President, no adversity nor any advantage being able to affright, or allure them from it, as is largely discouried by *Xenophon*. The *Athenians* sent *Chares* with relief to them, who overcame the *Argives* in two fights, and restrained their violent attempts against them.

Stirs about *Sicyon*.

51. But *Enceus* the *Symphalian*, General of the *Arcadians*, judging things not to be at *Sicyon* as they should, seized upon the Cattle there, and forced *Enphron* to leave the Town, and give up the Haven to the *Lacedæmonians*. Yet a Sedition following in the Town he took occasion thereat, and repossessed himself, joyning with the people against the Nobility, but the Cattle being held by a Garrison of *Thebans*, he thought there was no long continuing without their leave, and so taking money with him, went to *Thebes*, to procure the good will of the people there. Thither several of his adversaries followed him, to withstand his design, and finding that he wan upon the Magistrates and Senate, to hinder the progresse of the business, killed him in the Cattle, at such time as the Senate was sitting there. One of them taking all the fault upon himself, made such a discourse in his own defence, by telling what the *Thebans* themselves had lately done in the like case, and by other arguments, that *Enphron* was pronounced justly slain, and he was absolved. Yet being carried to *Sicyon* he was honorably buried in the Forum, and worshipped by the people as one of their greatest benefactors. The *Phians* now had by the assistance of *Chares* taken *Thymia*, which was fortified against them by the *Sicyonians*, but their Exiles had seized upon *Oropus*; the *Sicyonians* and *Arcadians* recovered the Haven at *Sicyon*, and no body assisted the *Athenians* at *Oropus*, but all forsook them, so that it was committed to the trust of the *Thebans*, till the controversie about it should be decided. *Lycomedes* seeing them dissatisfied with their Allies, drew the *Athenians* to enter into society with the *Arcadians*. The conditions were, that the *Athenians*, in case *Arcadia* was invaded, should send succours of horse, without being constrained to invade *Laconia*.

The *Athenians* enter into society with the *Arcadians*.

And consult how to become masters of *Corinth*.

52. The *Athenians*, as soon as this was done, cast in their heads how they might make *Corinth* their own, through the perswasion of *Demeion*; which being known there, their Soldiers were dismissed, and the society broken betwixt them. This made the *Corinthians*, who now had gotten so new and potent Enemies, look about them for their own security; and to this end levying all the force they could, they made also their peace with *Thebes*, in which they would have the *Lacedæmonians* concluded, saying, they were constrained to this accommodation; but the *Lacedæmonians* giving them, and all other their Confederates leave to provide for themselves (which was accepted by the *Phlians* and others) said they would persist in the War, and commit the issue to God, being resolved never to consent that *Messene*, which they had received from their Ancestors, should be taken from them. The condition of this peace was onely that each Citie should enjoy its own; for the *Corinthians* flatly refused to enter into a society of Arms, because they would not offend those that had well deserved of them, but presently a contention was revived betwixt the *Phlians* and *Argives* about *Thymia*, which was seized on, and held by the later, notwithstanding all that could be objected. At the same time were twelve ships, under the Command of *Timocrates*, sent to the aid of the *Lacedæmonians* by *Dionysius* the younger (who now had succeeded his dead father) which they used in the storming of *Sellasia*, and then the Fleet returned back into *Sicily*. At this time *Artaxerxes* sent once more to mediate about a peace, which was submitted to by the Cities, and so the *Laconian*, or (as it is also called) the *Bæotian* War ended, after it had continued above five years.

*Artaxerxes* procureth another peace.

53. But in the very next year such sparks were kindled, (first betwixt the *Eleans* and *Arcadians*) as brake out at length into another mighty flame. *Lasion* a Cattle of *Triphylia* first belonged to the *Eleans*, but being in the

*Xenophon*, *Diodorus* ad *Olymp.* 104. ann. 1.

pos-

## SECT. 4.

The Eleans  
and Arcadians  
at odds.

possession now of them, and another while of the *Arcadians*, continual controversies were moved about it. The later now having it in their hands, the *Eleans*, by means of the *Arcadian* Exiles with them, seized upon it. This being taken in great disdain by the *Arcadians*, they procured help from *Athens*, and recovered it by force; after which they overthrew the *Eleans*, and wasted their Territories to the Citie Gates. This put them upon craving aid of the *Lacedæmonians*, and desiring them to invade *Arcadia*, who accordingly sent *Archidamus* the year after the first action at *Lasion*. He took *Cromnus*, and therein leaving a Garrison returned; but after his departure the *Arcadians* recovered the place, and going into *Elis*, gave the management of the solemnities of the 104th *Olympiad* now drawing on, to the *Pisæans*, who by old and fabulous arguments pretended it once to have belonged unto them. For this purpose they seized on *Olympia* before-hand, and going on when the time was come in the management of the exercises, the *Eleans* with all their strength fell in upon them, and with incredible boldness so laid about them, that they put the *Arcadians* to flight, and though they could not keep the place, yet with great honour retreated to their Citie, having never before been at all accounted of for valour. This *Olympiad*, because the *Pisæans* managed it by force, was not registred in the Annals of the *Eleans*, neither is it certain who overcame in the course, *Phocides* the *Athenian* being named by *Diodorus*, but *Eubotus* the *Cyrenean* by *Pausanias*, in the second of his *Etiacks*.

The Pisæans  
put in possession  
of Olympia  
are fallen  
upon by the  
Eleans at the  
time of the so-  
lemnities.

Epaminondas  
persuades the  
Thebans to  
look after  
Sea matters.

54. At this time *Epaminondas* labouring all manner of wayes to get the Sovereignty of *Greece* for his Country-men, perswaded them as a means here-to first to obtain the Dominion of the Seas. He shewed it was an easie thing for those who were strongest at land, to obtain, by instancing in the *Lacedæmonians*, who though in the War with *Xerxes* they furnished out but ten ships for 200 of the *Athenians*, yet for their power on land were obeyed by them. By this, and other arguments, he got them to ordain that 100 Gallies should be provided, and that the *Rhodians*, *Chians*, and *Byzantians* should be invited to joyn with them in these preparations. He himself going with a little Force to these Citie, induced them to side with the *Thebans*, and so terrified *Laches* the *Athenian*, who indeavoured to crosse his design, that though he commanded a strong Fleet, yet did he quit these parts. During his absence, some of the *Theban* Exiles having a great desire to change the Government into an *Aristocracy*, drew into their plot 300 horse-men of the *Orchomenians*, who when they were about to execute their design, it was revealed by some principal contrivers to the *Boeotarcha*. The *Thebans* had conceived a grudge against the *Orchomenians* of a very long date, ever since that Citie having paid Tribute to them formerly, was exempted from it by *Hercules*. Having now then an opportunity to vent their malice, they first put to death the 200 horse-men, then taking the Town, they put to the sword all the men, sold the Women and Children, and so utterly destroyed *Orchomenos*. This cruelty was utterly detested by *Epaminondas*, who said, if he had been present, he would have in no case suffered such wickedness to be committed by the *Thebans*.

The Thebans  
destroy Orcho-  
menos.

Stirs betwixt  
the Arcadians  
and Mantineans.

55. The *Arcadians* having the *Olympian* Temple in their power, the Magistrates converted the money thereof to the paying of their *Epariti*, being the strength of their Army. This the *Mantineans* first protested against as Sacrilegious, and sent the money which was due from them for the payment of the Soldiers, which being taken as an affront from the other, they called the *Mantinean* Magistrates before the Council of the 10000. who refusing to appear, they sent to fetch them by force, but being repulsed, at length others in the Council appeared for them, being of their opinion, that the money was not to be touched, which would brand them for ever with a note of infamy. This was decreed by the Council, which the great ones seeing, and apprehending in what danger they were, sent to the *Thebans* to tell them, that except they would come in time *Arcadia* would wholly revolt to the *Lacedæmonians*.

The

*Diodorus idid.*

*Pausanias in  
Boeotia.*

*Xenoph. lib. 7.*

*Diodorus ad  
Olymp. 104.  
ann. 2.*

## SECT. 4.

The most sober men amongst the *Arcadians* hereupon perswaded the Council to send to the *Thebans*, to protest against the coming down of their Army unsent for, and by restoring to the *Eleans* the Temple, to make peace with them. All took the oath of the League, and amongst the rest the Governour of *Tegea*, who lay in Garrison with 300 *Thebans*; but the great ones who feared to be called to account for the money, prevailed with him to lay hold upon the *Mantineans* and other *Arcadians*, who at *Tegea* were making merry for the peace. But the *Mantineans* making demand of their Citizens, promising if they had done amiss they should appear before the Council, the *Theban* General was at a stand, knowing not what to do, and at length dismissed the prisoners, purging himself by saying, he heard the *Lacedæmonians* were about to invade *Arcadia*, and that some of the *Arcadians* had designed to betray *Tegea* into their hands.

56. Though they believed him not, as knowing the contrary, yet they dismissed him, but sent to *Thebes* to accuse him as worthy of death, for attempting a matter so contrary to the good understanding betwixt the States. But *Epaminondas* excused him, laying the blame upon the *Arcadians*, who having drawn the *Thebans* into the War, would offer to make peace without their consent, and thereby were guilty of treachery: and he plainly declared, that the *Thebans* would march into *Arcadia*, and there assist their friends. The *Mantineans* and others understanding this, sent to *Athens* and *Sparta* to desire aid, laying open the design of the *Thebans* plainly to be this: To weaken *Peloponnesus*, and bring it all into subjection to themselves. They jealous of this, entered into League with them, wherein it was provided, that each State should have the command over the Army in their own dominions. Whilst this was a doing, *Epaminondas* marched from *Thebes*, leading with him, besides the *Boeotians*, some *Thessalian* Horse, and Soldiers out of *Eubœa*. When he came to *Nemea* there he staid a little, having a great desire to meet with the *Athenians*; but understanding that they passed by Sea into *Peloponnesus*, he arose and moved towards *Tegea*. Having notice in his way that *Agefilas* with the whole power of *Lacedæmon* were come into *Arcadia*, and that the City must needs thereupon be desolate, he marched in all haste thither, and had become absolute Master of it, but that by meer divine Providence (as *Xenophon* himself acknowledgeth) a certain *Græcian* gave notice of his intention to *Agefilas*, who sent word in all haste to *Sparta*, willing them to stand upon their guard; with promise to be with them as speedily as possible.

Epaminondas  
again invades  
Peloponnesus.

Sees upon  
Sparta and re-  
treatheth to  
Mantineia.

His Horse put  
to flight.

His case how  
it stood in re-  
ference to his  
return or stay.

57. *Archidamus* his son being there left, set the old men and boys upon the Houses to annoy the *Thebans* with stones, and disposed so of those that were fit to fight, in the several places of the City, that though *Epaminondas* had continued his march all night, yet found he that his design was betrayed, and such was the opposition he found, that although he chose the sleepest descent into the Town, to have the upper ground, yet was he repelled, the *Lacedæmonians* losing the most in their too long pursues. Then understanding the *Lacedæmonian* and *Arcadian* Forces to be all coming to relieve *Sparta*, he thought it not wisdom to hazard a battel with them all; but judging that *Mantineia* would be left naked, and at this time of the year the Inhabitants would be much abroad in the fields about their Corn and their Cattel at pasture, he thought it fit to try if he could surprise them all, and sent before the Horse for that purpose. At this time it hapned well for the *Mantineans*, that 6000 *Athenians* under the command of *Hagelochus* were come through the *Isthmus* into the City, who upon their desire, notwithstanding they should have to do with such Horse as exceeded theirs in the number, and the best esteemed of in all *Greece*, resolved to do their utmost in their behalf. In the engagement they had the better of it, and thereby preserved all that the *Mantineans* had without their walls. *Epaminondas* after this thinking with himself that he must be gone within a few dayes, the term of his commission being almost expired, was full of various thoughts. If he should leave those, for the aid of whom he was sent, to be besieged by the Enemy, he saw he should

*Idem & paulo  
aliter Polybius  
lib. 9.*



## SECT. 4.

should lose the honour he formerly had obtained, especially seeing he had been repulsed at *Sparta* by so few a number, and now also had miscarried at *Mantineia*: and he considered that by this Expedition of which himself was author, he had given occasion to the *Lacedæmonians*, *Arcadians*, *Achaans*, *Eleans*, and *Athenians*, to enter into a straight League of offence and defence. From these reasons he concluded he could not in honour depart without a battel, in which if he overcame, he should make amends for all, and if he should die, such a death could not but be glorious, which should be undergone in an endeavour to make his Country Mistress of all *Peloponnesus*.

58. Ere long the Armies of the *Lacedæmonians* and *Mantineans* appeared, consisting, with their allies, of 20000 Foot, and about 2000 Horse. To the *Boeotians* were assistants the *Tegeatans*, and such other *Arcadians* as were most powerful and wealthy, the *Argives*, *Eubæans*, the *Theffalian* Horse which the *Thebans* brought, the *Messenians*, *Sicyonians*, and other *Peloponnesians*; the number of all which amounted to 30000 Foot, and little fewer than 3000 Horse. This is much admired by *Xenophon*, that *Epaminondas* should so discipline his Soldiers, that neither night nor day they should shun any labour, refuse to undergo any danger, to be contented with any kind of provision, and very ready to obey all orders. When he had ranged his men in order of battel, he led them not straight on against the Enemy, but fetched a compass towards the Mountains of *Tegea*, and made as though he would there pitch his Tents. This made the Enemy secure, which he well understanding, formed his battalia like a wedge, thereby to break them sooner, and led with speed against them, who now were all to seek, and in a confusion, some hasting to bridle their Horses, others to buckle on their harness, and all in a condition rather to suffer than act any thing. And left the *Athenians* should relieve their Companions from the left wing, he placed a Party of Horse and Foot in the hills to keep them in awe, by being continually ready to fall upon their rear.

The battel at *Mantineia* wherein *Epaminondas* was mortally wounded.

59. His expectation was not crossed, for on what part he fell he carried all before him, the Enemy not daring to stand; but rushing more violently amongst them, the *Lacedæmonians* taking notice of him, flocked to him, and laid at him again with darts, some of which declining, and fencing himself from others, those that stuck in his body he took thence and retorted. Whilst he heroically thus contended for the Victory, he received a mortal wound from one *Anticlete* a *Spartan*, who gave him so mortal a stroke with a dart, that the wood of it brake, leaving the iron and a piece of the tranchion in his breast. By the vehemency of the wound he sank down, and then ensued a most bitter contest about him: but the *Thebans* inflamed with wrathful indignation at this sad mischance, with great slaughter compelled their Enemies to give back, but knew not how to improve the Victory. For neither Foot nor Horse pursued them flying, but continued still in the same place, and at length went off carelessly, inasmuch that many of the Foot fell into the hands of the *Athenians*. Which so falling out, another thing hapned than men generally had expected. For almost all *Greece* being here gathered together, one State against another, in two factions, every one supposed, that when they should once come to fight, they that overcame would obtain the Dominion over the rest, who should be forced to submit to their yoke: But God so poised affairs, saith *Xenophon*, that both sides, as if they had overcome, erected a Trophy, not being hindred by each other. Both sides also as Conquerors gave up the slain, and as Conquered received their dead by composition. And whereas both sides said they had the better of it, neither obtained thereby either Country, City, or Dominion, other than they before enjoyed; but a greater disturbance thereupon followed in *Greece*. So much for these matters saith our Author; as for what is behind, perhaps some other will take care to commit them to writing, and so he endeth his History with this battel, though he lived almost three years after it, as we have from *Laertius*. *Anaximenes* also of *Lampsacus*, who began his History with the beginning of the gods and mankind (and therein in twelve Books almost

*Xenophon* which he endeth his History. As also *Anaximenes* and *Philistus*.

A. M. 3642.  
Ol. 104. an. 2.  
P. C. 390.  
Ante Adam  
Christi 362.  
Artax. Mæm.  
41.

## SECT. 4.

comprehended all the affaires of the *Greeks* and *Barbarians*,) finisheth it with the Battel at *Mantineia*, and the death of *Epaminondas*. So did *Philistus* his History which he wrote of *Dionysius* the younger in two Books.

60. *Epaminondas* being carried alive into his Tent, the Physicians affirmed that as soon as the dart should be drawn out of his body he would die. He then called for *Diaphantus* to declare him General of the Army; but it being answered he was slain, he bade them send for *Iolaidus*, but it being answered that he was dead also, he advised the *Thebans* to make peace, whilst with advantage they might, for that they had none left that was able to discharge the Office of a General. Understanding of his approaching end, he inquired of his Armour-bearer if his Shield was safe; (which to have lost was a great dishonour.) It being answered it was, he asked which side had the Victory; answer being made the *Boeotians*, then said he, *It's time for me to die*, and comforting his friends who mourned he should die childless with this answer, that he left behind him two daughters, the battel of *Leutira* and *Mantineia*, which should propagate his fame to all posterity) he thereupon caused the dart to be drawn out, and so expired. This was the end of the worthiest Soldier that ever *Greece* brought forth, and hardly to be parallel'd in any other Country, all the Virtues which in others were but singular having concentrated and united themselves in him. In strength both of body and mind; in Eloquence, Justice, Temperance, Wisdom, Magnanimity, and Sincerity, he excelled all men; and so far in Military skill, the art of a General, and in valour, that he could not adequately be called a Valiant, Politick, Wary, Bountiful, Industrious, or Prudent Captain; all these Titles and many others being due unto him. His modesty was incredible, shewing it self especially in this, that after the Victory of *Leutira*, and many other rare achievements, he refused not to go in the Expedition into *Theffalie*, in quality of a private Soldier. He was grave, yet affable and courteous, as a means to all those virtues, having great insight into all parts of Philosophy and Learning, being therein instructed by *Lycis* the *Tarentine*, a *Pythagorean*. But enough will be said in his commendation, if this be added, that the City *Thebes* before the birth and after the death of *Epaminondas* was ever subject to the command of others; but as long as he had to do in the management of the affairs thereof, was the head of all *Greece*; from which may be gathered, that this man was of more consequence than the whole City.

61. For with *Epaminondas* all the strength of the *Theban* Commonwealth was extinct, as if he had not onely died, but all the rest of the Citizens with him, who as before him they did nothing memorable, so now after were famous for nothing but their overthrows and disasters. After this battel of *Mantineia*, all the *Græcians* being tired out with War, entered into a League offensive and defensive together, out of which *Agessilaus* would have excluded the *Messenians*. But *Artaxerxes* stood for them, as having Territories as large and fruitful as the *Laconians*, whereupon the *Lacedæmonians* burning with an implacable grudge against them, refused to subscribe, and alone by themselves refused to be comprehended in the League, hoping still to recover *Messenia*. This reflected something upon *Agessilaus*, who out of an insatiable thirst after War, had by his utmost endeavour hindred the union of *Greece*, and the burying of publick quarrels. And he seemed to increase the infamy, by undertaking an Expedition shortly after into *Egypt*, though it was by his service in his decrepit old age, to get some money for the supply of the now very poor and exhausted State. For it appeared a thing unseemly, for the best man in *Greece*, and one who had filled the world with his fame, to go serve a mean man, and a Traytor, and venture his life, credit and all, for a little gain, when as because of his old age, he had refused the Office of General at home, and in his own Country, though for the liberty of *Greece*. But he thought nothing too much wherein he might serve the Commonwealth, and in this respect undervalued his own honour, and having served in *Egypt* in a condition far unworthy of him, after he had received

*Agessilaus* blamed.

Vide *Diodorum* ut *super*.  
*Justin* lib. 6.

*Valerius* Max.  
lib. 3. cap. 2.  
ext. exempl. 9.

*Alcian* var. lib.  
l. 12. cap. 3.

*Plutarch* in  
*Anticlete*.

*Cicero* *Epist.*  
lib. 9. cap. 12.

\* *Corn. Nepos*  
in *vita* *Epamin.*

*Justin*.

*Diodorus*.

*Corn. Nepos*.  
*Plutarch* in  
*Agessilaus*.

A a a received

## SECT. 4.

## His death.

ceived 230 talents of Silver as a reward from *Nectabes*, died in his return, when he had lived 84 and reigned 41 years. A most excellent Captain, in whom Nature inwardly made amends for that wherein outwardly she had been deficient, most ambitious of glory, and yet of exceeding great humility, which he shewed in his house, and in his constant conversation. Though his justice was overruled by his passion in the business of the *Theban War*, yet generally he held it most sacred, and as a punishment for his default therein, that great glory whereby he even reigned over *Greece* till then, was afterwards (together with the splendor of the *Lacedæmonian* greatness) much eclipsed by the rising Fortune of *Epaminondas*.

Stirs amongst  
the *Megalopolitans*.

62. *Artaxerxes* King of *Persia*, and *Agæfilans* of *Sparta*, died both in the same year, and the next after the death of *Epaminondas*. And the same year the peace of *Greece* was again broken by some *Arcadians*, who having been transited out of the neighbouring places into *Megalopolis*, took occasion at some words of the League (which gave leave to all to return home) to quit the City and return to their old habitations. The other *Megalopolitans* endeavoured to reduce them by force, and thence ensued a great controversy, they calling in to their help the *Mantineans* and the rest of the *Arcadians* and *Eleans*. The *Megalopolitans* sent to the *Athenians* for aid, who sent them 3000 Foot, and 300 horse, under the command of *Pammenes*. He with this Force took some of the Towns, and terrified others into composition, and so reduced them all to *Megalopolis*. The year following *Alexander the Phæacian* Tyrant subdued several of the *Cyclades* and took thence abundance of Captives. The *Athenian* Garrison commanded by *Leosthenes* opposed him in *Peparethus*, whereupon he set upon the *Athenian* Gallies, and took them, together with one belonging to *Peparethus*, and 600 prisoners. The *Athenians* enraged hereat, condemned *Leosthenes*, and sent *Chares* with a Fleet into those parts, who spending his time in scaring the Enemies, but oppressing the Confederates, thereby contracted an ill name. For going to *Corcyra* he there caused such a Sedition, as could not be ended but in the ruin of many, and committed other things which much tended to the disgrace of those that sent him. With this year *Diodorus* concludeth his fifteenth Book, having, according to his promise, related such things as hapned before the reign of *Philip* King of *Macedonia*, and such, as together with other affairs of the *Greeks* related by others, shew that peace, security, and order, are things little akin to Antimonarchical Government.

Learned Men  
during this  
period.

*Hippocrates*.

63. Of Learned Men Contemporary with this period, in the first place is to be remembred *Hippocrates* native of the Island *Cous*, Prince of all Physicians. He was the son of *Heraclidas* and *Phanarete*, the twentieth in descent from *Hercules*, and the nineteenth from *Æsculapius*. Some have written that he was born in the first year of the 80th Olympiad. But a certain passage mentioned in his life of his curing *Perdiccas* of an *Erotick* Fever, argueth him at this time to have been famous. This *Perdiccas* King of *Macedonia* (who having reigned 28 years according to *Ensebins*, or according to others 53, died about the third of the 93 Olympiad) fell in love with *Phila* his Father *Alexander's* Concubine, but modesty forced him to conceal his grief, till he fell into a Consumption and languished. *Hippocrates* by the motion of his eyes found out the cause of the distemper, and told *Phila* it was in her power to save the King's life, whereupon she was willing though with the impairment of her own credit to redeem it. The like story is told of *Erasistratus* the Physician, who discovered that *Antiochus* the son of *Seleucus* was in love with his Father's Concubine, which *Galen* \* mentioneth, adding, that he had made the same discovery in a certain woman.

64. *Hippocrates* grew so famous in his Art, that *Artaxerxes Longimanus* hearing of him, sent for him, with large offers to come and cure his Army, then seized on by the plague. But he said it was not fit for him to touch any *Persian* Gold, or cure the *Barbarians* who were Enemies to the *Greeks*. The letters of intercourse betwixt the *Persians* and him, are amongst others yet extant. Having lived as some said 85 years, but as others 90, or 104,

*Diodorus ad  
Olymp. 104.  
an. 3.*

*Sordanus.*

*Lib. 7. cap. 76.  
apud Warner.*

## SECT. 4.

His oath.

or 109, he died amongst the *Larissæans*, in the first of the 94 Olympiad. He left two sons, *Thestius* and *Draco*; but the fruit of his brain hath been far more effectual for the propagating of his name to all posterity, wherein he hath not only been a benefactor to the mystery of Medicine by his writings, but also by his religious care of the integrity of those who should profess it. For he framed an Oath to be taken by all that entered into his School, which for his honour, and the shame of those who have more reason to be convinced of their duty, together with the information of the ignorant, it is convenient to exemplifie.

65. I swear by *Apollo* the Physician, and *Æsculapius*, and *Hygia*; and call all the gods and goddesses to witness, that to the utmost of my strength and judgement I shall observe what now I swear and covenant by writing. Namely, that I will esteem as my Parents my Master who taught me this Art, and thank fully communicate to, and supply him with all things necessary both for sustentance and convenience, as also account of his issue as mine own brethren, and if they desire to learn the Art, teach them without any wages or contract. That I will communicate the precepts, and what I have heard, and the whole discipline to mine own children, to his who taught me, and my Scholars who have given their names and faith in this Oath, and none else whatsoever. That I shall also to my utmost power and judgement prescribe a wholesome course to the sick, and defend them from all harm and injury. Neither through the procurement of any will I give, or cause to be given, any deadly medication. Neither in like manner will I procure any Woman to miscarry of her burthen; but preserve my life and age alwaies chaste and pure from all wickedness. Neither will I cut any of the Stone, but leave this work to be done by those Chirurgeons who are skilful in it. If I come into any house I will do it for the health of the sick, shunning all suspicion of injury, or corruption, especially as to the fithiness of Venerie both towards women and men, free persons and slaves. Whatsoever things I shall see or hear, either in administering Physick, or otherwise in common intercourse, which I think ought not to be told abroad, I will conceal them. Now if I shall religiously observe this Oath, and in no case break it, let me live in great esteem alwaies an happy life amongst all men; and reap ample fruit from mine Art. But if I break it and forswear my self, may the contrary happen to me. Much skill in Physick therefore corrupteth not the conversation; for though a little Philosophy may occasion Atheism, yet a great deal is an antidote against it, not suffering a man to rest in second causes; but discovering a necessity of looking higher. But more concerning this, as also to the praise of this excellent person, may be said in a particular account of the original, cause, professors, succession, progresse and matter of the Art of Medicine.

66. Besides *Hippocrates*, there lived at this time (a) *Democritus* of *Abdera* the Philosopher, who died in the same year, and was well known to him, having alwaies laughed at the folly of men. Four years after, (b) *Socrates* the *Athenian*, the Father of *Ethicks*, was made drink poyson for speaking against plurality of Gods and the superstition of his Country-men; *Anax* having first procured *Aristophanes* the Poet, and then *Melitus* to accuse him. But afterwards the *Athenians* repenting of what they had done, in a way of mourning forbade all publick Exercises, and then animadverting upon his accusers, condemned *Melitus* to death, and the rest to exile. (c) *Plato* at this time being 28 years old, and having heard *Socrates* 8 years, went to *Megara* to learn the Mathematicks of *Euclides*, who now also flourished. The year after, (d) *Sophocles* died, six years after, *Euripides* the Prince of Tragick Poets. At this time also flourished (e) *Ctesias* the Physician often mentioned before, who concluded his history in the third year of the 96 Olympiad. (f) *Aristotle* the Father of *Peripatetick* Philosophy was born at *Stagira* a City of *Macedonia*, in the first year of the 99 Olympiad. In the third year after, (g) *Demosthenes* the famous Orator. (h) *Endoxus* of *Cnidus*, a famous Astrologer and Geometrician, flourished about the 103 Olympiad, who (i) found out the supposed motion

(a) *Anonymus.*

(b) *Diodorus,  
Laertius.*

(c) *Laertius.*

(d) *Suidas.*

(e) *Diodorus.*

(f) *Laertius.*

(g) *Anonymus.*

(h) *Laertius.*

(i) *Seneca natural. quest. l. 7.*

## SECT. 5.

motion of the Stars from West to East, unknown to the *Greeks* in the time of *Democritus*. *Zeno* the *Citican*, father of the *Stoicks*, was born in the third year of the 104th *Olympiad*. And we must not forget *Thucydides*, nor *Xenophon* the Scholar of *Socrates*, and equal to *Plato*, with whom he exercised some emulation. He was a great Philosopher; the greatest master of eloquence in his time, inasmuch that for the sweetness of his style he got the name of *Attick Muse*; and so great a Soldier, that his retreat with the *Greeks* out of *Persia* after the death of *Cyrus*, to one who duely weigheth all circumstances, will appear to have surpassed the exploits of *Alexander* the Great.

## SECT. V.

From the beginning of the reign of Philip King of Macedonia, to the Monarchy of Alexander his Son, containing the space of 31 years.

1. *Macedonia* having been formerly called *Emathonia* from *Emathon* a certain King, and afterwards *Macedonia* from *Macedon* the Son of *Orestes*, or as others say of *Jupiter* and *Atira* was bounded on the North and Northwest by the *Thracians* and *Illyrians*, on the South and Southwest by *Thessaly* and *Epirus*, and on the East with the *Egean Sea*.

2. The people were first called *Pelasgi*, saith *Justin*, and the Countrey *Euseb. in Chron. Baotia*. In *Paonia*, which afterward became part of *Macedonia*, *Telegonus* nico. *Justin* l. 7. Velleius lib. 1. reigned, the father of *Astriopaus* an eminent Warriour and friend to *Priamus* in the siege of *Troy*. On another side *Europus* reigned. But *Caranus* an *Argive*, the sixteenth in descent from *Hercules*, some five years after the fall of *Sardanapalus*, by the command of an Oracle led a Colony into these parts, and having settled himself by force reigned 28 years. *Cannus* succeeded him and reigned 12. then *Tyrinus* 28. *Perdiccas* a Prince much renowned 51. after him *Argæus* 28. *Philip* the first as many, *Euripus* 26. in whose infancy the *Illyrians* invading his Kingdom, his subjects carried him in his Cradle into the field, thinking he being pretent could not but be victorious, or that his people durst not forsake him, who was unable to defend himself. *Alcetas* after him reigned 29 years, *Amyntas* the first 50 years, to whom *Darius Hyaspis* sent for earth and water as tokens of subjection. *Alexander* his son who slew the Ambassadors sent to his father, reigned 43 years, and by marrying his sister *Gygæa* to *Dubares* the *Persian*, grew into such grace with *Xerxes*, that he obtained all the Region between *Olympus* and *Hermus* to be united to his Kingdom, and yet during the War held secret intelligence with the *Græcians*, discovering to them all his intents and purposes. He left three sons, *Perdiccas*, *Alcetas*, and *Philip*, the eldest of which succeeded him, whose story is sometimes by pieces related by *Thucydides*. *Perdiccas* left behind him *Perdiccas* and *Archelaus* his base son. *Perdiccas* was drowned in a Well by *Archelaus* his Guardian at seven years of age, the murderer to excuse himself alleging to his mother that he fell in by chance as he hastily followed a Goose that way.

3. *Archelaus* having dispatched his brother out of the way, did the same by *Alcetas* his Uncle, and *Alexander* his Cousin, son to *Alcetas*; and yet though he came in this way, is said to have done many things to the advantage of the Nation, which is usual with Usurpers. He fought by all means to draw *Socrates* to him, and greatly loved and honoured *Euripides* the Tragedian. He had two sons, *Archelaus* & *Orestes*. *Archelaus* succeeded him, and reigned seven years, some confounding father and son together, and making this, who reigned but seven years, to have succeeded *Perdiccas*. *Archelaus* at the end of seven years was slain in hunting, either by chance or on purpose by *Craterus*,  
*Aristot. Politic. lib. 5. Vide Raleium lib. 4. cap. 1.*

*Cratenas*.  
*Orestes*.

*rus*, called by *Ælian Cratenas*, who relateth the cause to have been for that having married his daughter to him, he took her away and gave her to another. *Cratenas* had enjoyed the Kingdom scarce two or three dayes when he was also slain by others. *Orestes* then a Child succeeded, who was served by his Guardian as his father had served his Pupill, being killed by *Ægeus* one of the bloud Royal, who held the Kingdom six years: the same who at first denied passage to *Agessilas* when he returned out of *Asia*. He left three sons, *Pausanias*, *Argæus*, and *Alexander*. *Pausanias* when he had reigned one year was slain by *Perdiccas* the son of *Thacileus* or of *Philip*, who being son of *Perdiccas*, and Grand-son to *Alexander* the Rich, was preserved when *Archelaus* the Bastard slew his brother *Perdiccas*, his Uncle *Alcetas*, and *Alexander* his Cousin German.

*Amyntas*.

4. (a) *Amyntas* was by the *Illyrians* driven out of his Kingdom, but restored by the *Thessalians*, held it (though very unquietly) 24 years. Some wrote how after his expulsion *Argæus* obtained the Kingdom for two years, till again he recovered it. (b) When he was overcome by the *Illyrians*, having little hope to recover his Kingdom, he gave the *Olynthians* a great part of the grounds adjacent; but after his restitution required it again. They refused to restore what was freely given them. He hereupon gathered an Army, and sent to the *Lacedæmonians* for aid, who sent *Phabidas* to him with 10000 men at such time as he surprized *Caamea*, the Citadel of *Thebes*, having sent before his brother; but the *Olynthians* had taken much of his Kingdom, and made themselves Masters of *Pella* the Metropolis of *Macedon*. He had issue by his wife *Eurydice*, three sons; *Alexander*, *Perdiccas*, and *Philip*; besides one daughter called *Euryone* or *Exione*. He had also by his second wife *Gygæa* three sons; *Archelaus*, *Argæus*, and *Menelaus*, afterwards slain by their brother *Philip*. *Alexander* reigned not much above one year, in which time he was invaded by *Pausanias* the son of *Æropus*, but defended by *Iphicrates* the *Asbenian*, who declared his fidelity in this as well as other things, towards the Children of *Amyntas*, that *Eurydice* flying to him with her two Children, *Perdiccas* and *Philip*, he defended, and sustained her. Against him *Ptolomy Alorites* made War, and both called *Pelopidas* the *Theban* to judge betwixt them, who having decided the controversie (as *Plutarch* saith) took *Philip* the Kings brother, and 30 other of the sons of the chief Nobility, as Hostages to *Thebes*. But within a year after *Ptolomy* murdered him, not being his base brother as some suppose, saith *Scaliger*. *Justin* telleth us he was slain at the procurement of his mother *Eurydice*, which having agreed to marry her son-in-law (which must be this *Ptolomy Alorites*, and thence cometh he to be called the brother of *Alexander*) Consulted in her husbands life time how she might kill him, and transfer the Kingdom to the Adulterer, which being betrayed by their daughter, *Amyntas* for his Childrens sake would not use any severity towards her, little thinking she would really accomplish her wicked design upon any of them at length.

*Alexander*.

*Ptolomy Alorites*.

*Philip educated at Thebes*.

First Guardian of his Nephew.

5. *Ptolomy Alorites* held the Kingdom of *Macedonia* for three years, and then was slain by *Perdiccas* the brother of *Alexander*, who succeeded him and reigned five. He was then slain in battel against the *Illyrians* according to *Diodorus*; but *Justin* saith he perished by the wicked practices of his mother, as *Alexander* did. *Perdiccas* left behind him a young son, of whom *Philip* his brother was constituted Guardian in the second year of *Ochus* King of *Persia*, in the first year of the 105th *Olympiad*, *Callimedes* being *Archon*. *Plutarch* maketh him to have been carried as an Hostage to *Thebes* by *Pelopidas*. *Diodorus* writeth that his father gave him as an Hostage to the *Illyrians*, and that they committed him to the *Thebans* to be kept, who delivered him to the custody of *Polymnus* the father of *Epaminondas*, with whom he was brought up, though *Plutarch* saith he lived with *Pammenes*, and thence became an emulator of *Epaminondas*. *Justin* saith he was twice given as an Hostage by his brother; once to the *Illyrians*, and another time to the *Thebans*, which mightily conduced to his education; for being three years at *Thebes*, he laid the found-

SECT. 5.  
Var. Hist. lib. 8. cap. 9.

*Diodorus ad Olymp. 56. ann. 3.*

(a) *Idem ad ann. 4.*

(b) *Ad Olymp. 99. ann. 2. Xenoph.*

*Diod. ad Olymp. 103. ann. 4.*

## SECT. 5.

foundation thereof in a Citie full of ancient severity, and in the house of *Epaminondas* a great Scholar and General. If he there continued but three years, he seemeth to have returned home at the beginning of the reign of his brother *Perdiccas*, but *Diodorus* saith, it was after his death that he made an escape from *Thebes*. At first, as it seemeth from *Justin*, he bore but the Office of Tutor, or Guardian to his Nephew; but afterwards great Wars happening, in which the expectation of the Child could nothing avail, he was constrained to take upon him the Dignity of King by the people.

Then King.

6. For, the *Macedonians* having lately received an overthrow from the *Illyrians*, were much dejected thereat. The *Paones* their neighbours made excursions, and the *Illyrians* prepared for another terrible invasion. The King of *Thrace* was minded to set up *Pausanias*, and the *Athenians* *Argæus* (both sons of the late Usurper *Æropus*) having sent *Mantias* with 3000 men, and a Fleet readily furnished for that purpose. But *Philip* seeming nothing to be discouraged at these things, by his good language (wherein he was very able) and his courteous deportment, bare up the spirits of his people. He amended military Discipline, and instructed the *Macedonian* *Phalange*. Understanding the *Athenians* to have a great desire to recover *Amphipolis*, and to have *Argæus* established King, he left that Citie to its own liberty. The *Paonians* and the King of *Thrace* he bought off with money, and overthrew *Argæus* at *Methone* assisted by *Mantias* the *Athenian*, by which victory he mightily encouraged his men.

He Conquereth all difficulties.

7. The year after he made peace with the *Athenians*, who readily accepted of it, because he was content to quit *Amphipolis*, giving him great commendations also for his clemency, in that he had suffered the Reliques of their Army at *Methone* to depart with their lives and liberty into *Attica* when he had them at his mercy. Being thus freed from the *Athenian* War, hearing that *Agis* King of the *Paonians* was dead, he invaded, and brought them into subjection to himself. Then entered he the Countrey of the *Illyrians* with about 10000 foot, and 600 horse, whose King *Bardylis* sent to treat with him, offering that each should retain such places as they already held; but he returned answer, that though he was also desirous of peace, yet would he admit of no terms, except the *Illyrians* would quit all the Cities which belonged to his Kingdom. *Bardylis* then met with him with a strong Army, and a great and bloody battel was with great animosity on both sides fought, wherein at length *Philip* had the victory, and the *Illyrians* having lost above 7000 men, were forced to relinquish all places belonging to *Macedonia*.

8. After he had brought under all the *Illyrians* as far as the Lake *Lycabitis*, and made an honourable peace with them, he returned into *Macedonia* with great fame. The year after, for that the Inhabitants of *Amphipolis* had several wayes provoked him, and ministred occasion of quarrels, he went against them with a great force, and having cast down the Wall with his battering Rams, entered the Citie, whence banishing all his Enemies he granted indemnity to the rest. This place being very conveniently sited for his occasions in *Thrace*, much conducing to the progresse of his affairs. For hereupon he presently took *Pydna*, and to ingratiate himself with the *Olynthians* (the friendship of whom was very necessary for such as would grow great) having taken *Potidea*, he gave up *Pydna* with the grounds belonging to it into their hands. Then going to *Crenide*, he enlarged this Town with an accession of new Inhabitants, and called it after himself *Philippi*. Here were rich Mines of Gold, which having been formerly neglected he now so far advanced as to bring him in yearly a Revenue of 2000 Talents, which mightily tended to the advancement of his affairs, and the Majesty of his Kingdom, for now stamped he that piece of Golden Coyn, called the *Philippick*, raised great forces, and afterwards with bribes drew many *Græcians* to betray their Countrey. But he proceeded in his affairs with more confidence and freedom, for that now the *Athenians* were busied in the

*Diodorus ad Olymp. 105. ann. 1. A.M. 3645. Olymp. 105. ann. 1. V.C. 394. Ochi. 2.*

*Diodorus ad Olymp. 105. ann. 2.*

*Idem ad ann. 3.*

## SECT. 5.

The Social War.

the Social War began this year, and thereupon could not take such care as was necessary, about the preservation of *Amphipolis*.

9. The Social War, which continued three years, had its original from the revolt of the *Chians*, *Rhodians*, *Coans*, and *Byzantians*, from the State of *Athens*. The *Athenians* sent against them two Generals, *Chares* and *Chabrias*, who when they came to *Chius*, found there the succours sent from other Cities, and from *Mausolus* the Prince of *Caria*. They fell upon the City; *Chares* on the Land, and *Chabrias* by Sea, but the later whilst too boldly he ventured by himself into the Haven, was slain, and then the rest retreated without any thing done. One\* in his life telleth us, that in this Expedition he was a private man, but excelling the Commanders in Military skill and fame, was more regarded by the Soldiers; which thing proved his destruction. For endeavouring first of all to enter the Haven, when he had broken in none followed him, so that being compassed with Enemies his Gallie was sunk, out of which casting himself, he might easily, as the rest did, have swum to his friends and escaped; but preferring an honourable death before an ignominious life, fighting alone was slain, in all fights having been daring, though otherwise he was accounted slow and heavy.

\* *Corn. Nepos.*

10. The year following, for any thing we understand, was spent altogether, or for the most part, in preparations on both sides to decide the controversy in a Sea fight. The *Athenians* having sent before under the command of *Chares* a Fleet of 60 ships, sent other 60 after, which they committed to the trust of *Iphicrates* and *Timotheus*, two of the most noble in the City, who were to joyn with *Chares*, and in equal authority to manage the War. On the other part the Confederates with 100 Gallies wasted the Islands *Imbros* and *Lembus*, and coming into *Samus*, after they had harassed the Countrey, besieged the City both by Sea and Land, and making depredations upon many other Islands under the jurisdiction of *Athens*, got much money thereby. But the *Athenian* Generals uniting their Forces resolved to besiege *Byzantium*, which the Confederates understanding, raised the siege at *Samus* to come and relieve it. They were about to joyn in battel, when suddenly arose a mighty Tempest, which made *Iphicrates* and *Timotheus* decline the fight, but *Chares* would not acquiesce in their opinion, but sent to *Athens* and accused them to the People, as wilfully having neglected a good opportunity of doing their Countrey Service, which so incensed the heady multitude, that they condemned them in many Talents. *Corn. Nepos* relateth, that *Menesthen* the son of *Iphicrates*, and son Law to *Timotheus*, was sent as General, and they two as his Advisers. That the action was about *Samus* wherein *Chares* miscarried, and whereupon he accused them to the People. That *Iphicrates* being quitted, *Timotheus* was fined ten Talents, which he being unable to pay departed to *Chelus*, where dying, the multitude repented of their rash judgment, and remitting nine parts of the fine, caused his son *Conon* to pay the other, towards repairing of the Wall. So that the Walls which *Conon* the Grandfather built with spoils, *Conon* the Grandson was forced to repair at his own cost and dilgrace of his Family. This was the last Age of the famous *Athenian* Captains, which concluded with the lives of *Iphicrates*, *Chabrias* and *Timotheus*, those that followed being not at all worthy the reckoning.

*In vita Timothei & Iphicratis.*

11. *Chares* having got all the power into his own hands, assisted *Pharnabazus* the Persian *Satrapa*, who had revolted from his Prince, and was so rewarded for his service after the Victory, that he was enabled to pay his Army. This was very acceptable to the *Athenians* at first; but when the King had once sent to expostulate the matter with them, and a rumour was abroad that he intended with 200 ships to assist the Enemies in the Social War, they were far otherwise affected, insomuch as they resolved to make peace with the revolters, which was easily done, they being no less desirous of it. *Philip* having the year before married *Olympias* the daughter of *Neoptolemus* late King of the *Molossians*, and Niece (not Sister as *Plutarch* hath it) to *Arymbas* or *Aribbas* the present, was much envied for his good success by the three Kings of the *Thracians*, *Illyrians*, and *Paonians*. Since they had been overthrown and

*Diodorus.*

*Crenide changed into Philippi.*

**SECT. 5.** and subdued by him, they had no strength severally to encourage them to a revolt; Yet joining their Forces together they were confident of good success. But before they had compleated their Army, and whilst they were as yet incompos'd, he set upon them suddenly, and easily reduced them to obedience.

12. The same year being the first of the 106 Olympiad, the sixth of *Alexander the Great* is born. *Ochus*, *Elpines* being *Archon*, *Alexander* the Son of *Philip* and *Olympias* was born at *Pella* in *Macedonia*, in the Attick moneth *Boedromion*, if that be true which *Aristobolus* relateth in *Arrianus*, that being 32 years and eight moneths old at his death, he died on the last day, but one, of the moneth *Thargelion*. If this be true, (and *Aristobolus*, if any, might have occasion to know it) then could it not be on the sixth day of the moneth *Hecatombeon*, as *Plutarch* relateth, whose error (into which others also fell) arose from thence, because anciently the *Macedonian* moneth *Lous* fell in with the Attick *Hecatombeon*. The same Author telleth us in the life of *Alexander*, that *Philip* received at the same time three several messiges : One, that the *Illyrians* had received a great overthrow from *Parmenio* his General. Another, that he had got the prize at *Olympia* with his swift-footed Horse. And the third concerning the birth of *Alexander* : and this was a little after he had taken *Potidaea*. But *Potidaea* was taken two years before, as appeareth not onely from *Diodorus*, but also from *Demosthenes* ; and strange it is, that *Philip* should not know of his Sons birth a good while before he could have intelligence of the *Olympian* Solemnities, concerning which judgement was given on the sixteenth day of the moneth : So that the relation of *Trogus* is more true, that he received two messiges at the same time : viz. one of his Victory over the *Illyrians*, and another of his prize at *Olympia*. The same day that *Alexander* was born, was the (a) Temple of *Diana* at *Ephesus* set on fire by (b) one who desired by such an act to be rendred famous to all posterity, as he confessed upon the Rack. But the Council of *Asia* decreed that none should dare to name him ; and for any thing we certainly know, his name is buried in oblivion, or at least, their is incertainty in it ; for though *Theopompus* in his History recorded it, and some (c) tell us it was *Herostatus*, yet by another he is called *Lygdamis*. (d) This being destroyed by this means a more excellent Structure was raised, the women contributing their ornaments, and the men their goods ; to this purpose money being also made of the old pillars. *Timaeus* as (e) one, or *Hegesias* the *Magnesian* as (f) another, said the reason of the burning to have been, because *Diana* that might be ing busied in Midwives work at the travel of *Olympias*, had no leisure to look to her Temple, which Jest *Plutarch* counteth so frigid, as to have been able to have quenched the flame. Perhaps both conceits put together might have done it.

13. The year after wherein *Callistratus* was *Archon*, began the *Phocian* or *Sacred War* (as it was called) in *Greece*, which arose upon this occasion. The *Lacedæmonians* after their overthrow in the battel of *Leuctra*, had been fined much money by the Council of the *Amphyctiones*, to the use of the *Thebans*, for seizing upon *Cadmea* their Citadel, which was exacted of them. The *Phocians* also having plowed up a great piece of the ground belonging to the Temple at *Delphos* and called *Cyrrha*, were also fined by the same Common-council of *Greece*, many Talents. This Decree being confirmed by all the *Græcians*, and about to be executed by seizing on their grounds, *Philomelus* a man of principal note amongst them told them the Decree was unjust, and perswaded them by force to rescind it, for that they had advantage enough so to do, because the Oracle it self was once in their possession, and tuition, citing to that purpose two Verses out of the second Book of the *Iliads* of *Homer*. He perswaded them therefore to get it again into their hands, promising, if they would give him power, to do it, and all other things for their profit and honour. They made him General, with full power according to his desire, who straight went to *Sparta*, where he pressed also the injustice of the *Amphyctiones* towards that State about their fine, and shewing how it

A. M. 2649.  
Ol. 106. an. I.  
V. C. 348.  
Ochi, 6.  
Philippi, 5.

Vide *Usserum*  
in *Annal. Vet.*  
*Tectam.* p. 271.

*Justin lib. 12.*  
cap. 16.  
(a) *Plutarch*  
in *Alexandro.*  
(b) *Val. Max.*  
l. 8, c. 14. ext.  
exemp. 5.  
Gell. l. 2, c. 6.  
(c) *Val. ibid.*  
*Strabo l. 14.*  
p. 640.  
*Solin. cap. 40.*  
(d) *Strabo*  
*idem.*  
(e) *Cicero. l. 1.*  
de *Divinat. &*  
2 de *natura*  
*Deorum.*  
(f) *Plutarch.*

*Diodorus ad  
Olymp. 106.  
An. 2.*

A. M. 3650.  
Ol. 106. an. 2.  
V. C. 399.  
Ochi, 7.  
Philippi, 6.

## СНАР. II.

also concern'd them to have the sentence of the Council nulled, he perswaded *Archidamus* the King to joyn with him. He supplied him with money, wherewith raising Soldiers he invaded the Temple, and bearing back the *Locrians* that came to oppose him, with great slaughter, pulled the Decrees of the Council from the pillars, and brake in pieces the tables wherein were registred the names of the condemned. He caus'd it to be told abroad, that he neither intended to rob the Temple, nor to have any other dishonest intention; but the *Bootians* not believing him, in their General Council decreed, that the Temple was to be recovered, and gave order for Levies for the same purpose. *Philomelus* in the mean time fortified the place, and made all possible provision for defence. He invaded the *Locrians*, who killing some of his men, refused to restore the bodies, alleging the Law, that all sacrilegious persons ought to be cast out unburied: but he on purpose ingaged with them in another Skirmish, and with some of theirs redeemed them formerly denied. Then forced he the Prophetsse to ascend the *Tripos* to give him advice concerning the Warre. She out of fear, told him he might do whatsoever he pleased.

14. The Temple of *Apollo Pythius*, and the Oracle at *Delphos*, one of the two chief Cities of *Phocia* (*Elatea* being reckoned with it) till made a Commonwealth of it self by the *Lacedaemonians*, was of ancient Original, as appeareth by the (a) Poets making *Agamemnon* before his Expedition to *Troy*, to have received answer from it. The place thereof was accounted the middle of all *Greece*, and also the navel of the whole World, a Fable being invenred (related by *Pindar*), that two Eagles (some say Crows) being sent out, the one from the East, and the other from the West by *Jupiter*, met here. The (b) Original of the Oracle is to be fetched from Goats, which feeding about that cave or hole (where afterwards the Temple was built) were seen to skip and utter voices unusual to others and themselves at other times, which the Herdsman perceiving, went thither himself, and was affected in like manner, withall foretelling things to come. This being blazed abroad, and many who flocked thither experiencing the same thing themselves, it came to be judged an Oracle. For a time one gave answer to another indifferently but many were transported with the fury, and leaping down into the hole were utterly lost, so that it was judged best, to set apart one woman, who should attend constantly, and a certain Engine to be made, wherein standing safely over the place, she might give out the Oracle. This Engine having three feet, came thence to be called *Tripos*; the woman was named *Pythia*, from asking, said *Strabo*, and the first of all others was called *Pheemonoe*. Virgins at first were onely destinated to this work, till one of them being ravished by *Echecrates* the *Thessalian*, women of about 50 years, but in the habit of Virgins were onely allowed of. The Temple in more ancient times was very famous for the Oracle; for the fitting of the *Amphyctiones*, the *Pythian* Games, and the riches thereof; but in the time of *Strabo* it was decayed in reputation, being nothing so much accounted of, which we may gather from it's poverty, seeing by gifts it was not able to recover the wealth taken out of it in after times, as it did that which it enjoyed in the time of *Homer*, having been rifled before it was recruited again by the present of *Craesus*, his Father *Alyattes*, the *Italians*, *Sicilians*, and others.

15. *Philomelus* sent to *Athens*, *Lacedæmon*, and the other eminent Cities of *Greece*, to excuse himself, professing he only intended the recovery of the Temple into the possession of his Country-men; and nor with any desire or design to pillage the treasures, adding, that he should be always ready to account for the money or gifts belonging thereto. He desired that if any, out of ill will to the *Phocians* bare Arms against them, that they would enter into League with them, or at least to forbear all Hostility. The messengers effectually soliciting according to their instructions, brought the *Athenians* and *Lacedæmonians* to enter into society, and to promise aid; but the *Bæotians*, with the *Locrians* and some others, thought the contrary, and resolved that the Temple was to be rescued, *Philomelus* seeing what kind of a bruit

ed · SECT. 5.

(a) *Odyss.* 9.  
75. vide *Strabo*. lib. 9. p. 417.  
D.  
(b) *Diodorus*  
*ad Olymp.* 106.  
an. 2.

The original  
of the oracle  
at Delphos.

Idem ad an. 3.



## SECT. 5.

The Council  
of Amphyctio-  
nes decreeth  
War against  
the Phocians.

he must undergo, laboured all ways to strengthen himself, for which purpose abtaining yet from the Treasures of the Temple, he took a great summe of money from the Citizens of *Delphi*, wherewith he hired Soldiers. Having got together a considerable force, he took the field, and overthrew the *Locrians* who made head against him. They then sent to *Iebes* requiring aid for *Apello* and themselves, and the *Boeotians* thinking their demand to be just, desirous to shew their Devotion, and conceiving it to concern them that the Decrees of the *Amphyctiones* should not be nulled, sent to the *Thessalians*, and the rest of the *Amphyctiones* to joyn with them in this War against the *Phocians*. The Council meeting together, then Decreed, that War was to be made upon them, which caused great motions and factions through- out all *Greece*.

16. Some thought Religion bound them to relieve the God, and punish the *Phocians* as sacrilegious persons; but others inclined to defend them, according to their particular interests. The *Boeotians*, *Locrians*, *Perrhebeans*, *Dorians*, *Delopians*, *Athamanians*, *Achaans*, they of *Phtiotis*, the *Magnetes*, *Enianes*, and some others were for rescuing the Temple. With the *Phocians* stood the *Athenians*, *Lacedæmonians*, and some others of *Peloponnesus*, whereof the *Lacedæmonians* were now more than before concerned, for not having paid their Fine imposed on them by the *Amphyctiones* within the time limited, at the last sitting they were Fined 1000 Talents more. This made them desire that the Decrees of the Council should be invalid, as well as the *Phocians*, and being unwilling to contract the Odium of making War in their own name upon that account, they were glad to do it as it were in the name of the other, endeavouring withall to get the Temple into their own hands. *Philomelus*, when there came certain intelligence that the *Thebans* would invade them with a strong Army, to furnish himself with mercenaries, seized upon the Treasury of the Temple: then offering half as much more wages as formerly, he had multitudes offered themselves to the service. With 10000 he invaded the *Locrians*, who being assisted with the *Boeotians* opposed him, and having the worst of it, afterwards taking some of his men as they were gathering forage, put them to death as sacrilegious persons condemned by the *Amphyctiones*. This the *Phocians* complaining of, procured of their General, that to stop such proceedings for the time to come, he should punish such prisoners as he took in the same kind. After this the Armies removed into other parts of the Countrey, where ingaging in Woody and difficult places of passage, the *Phocians* were overmarched with the number of their Enemies, and being put to flight, *Philomelus*, after he had omitted nothing worthy of a Captain, for fear he should come into the power of his Enemies, leaped down a Rock, and perished with the fall. With *Diodorus* consenteth (a) *Pausanias* as to the kind of his death, though (b) *Justin* writeth him to have been slain in the beginning of the fight.

*Philomelus*  
slain.

*Onomarchus*  
succeedeth  
him.

17. *Onomarchus* his Colleague taking upon him the Office of General after his death, gathering up the reliques of the Army, therewith retreated home, and the *Boeotians* rejoycing they had wrought the destruction of so infamous a man, returned into their own Countrey, hoping his hap would deter others from the like Enterprize. But the *Phocians* (being perswaded by *Onomarchus*, who himself had also been Fined by the *Amphyctiones*, and therefore for his own ends stirred them up to continue the War) resolved to perfect if possible what was begun, and to that purpose created him General. He as his Predecessor had done, with large pay allured many unto him, corrupted the *Thessalians* to quit the society of the *Boeotians*, and invading the Territories of the Enemy took *Thronium*, forced the *Amphissians* to submit, and wasted the grounds of the *Dorians*; he took *Orchomennus* in *Boeotia*; but at besieging *Charonea* was worsted by the *Thessalians*, sent over forces into *Asia* to *Antabazus*, who had revolted from the King, and now began to decline after *Chares* the *Athenian* had left him. The War was renewed betwixt the *Argives* and the *Lacedæmonians* who had the better in a batel fought

(a) In *Phocia*.  
(b) *Lib. 8.*

*Diodorus ad*  
*ann. 4.*

## SECT. 5.

*Philip* believeth  
*Meibymneans*, a Town situate in *Magnesia*.

fought at *Ornex*. *Chares* going into the *Hellepont* took *Sestus*, and *Keisblepes* the son of *Corys* King of the *Thracians*, bearing ill will to *Philip* of *Macedonia*, drew all the Cities of the *Cheroneus* to the party of the *Archeians*, except *Cardus*, into which the people were about to send Colonies. *Philip* considering that the *Meibymneans* suffered his Enemies to use their Citie seated in *Magnesia* for a refuge, and as a place convenient for carrying on the War, besieged it. They held out against him for some time, and in the siege he lost one of his eyes with a stroke of an Arrow; but at length they desired to be dismissed with one sute of Apparel apiece, and this being granted, he destroyed the Citie, and divided the grounds amongst the *Macedonians*.

Is twice de-  
feated by *Onomarchus*.

Who getteth  
*Charonea*, but  
is again utter-  
ly defeated by  
*Philip*, and is  
hang'd.

18. After this he was called into *Theffaly* by the Inhabitants against *Lycophron* Tyrant of the *Phereans*, who in like manner desiring aid of the *Thracians*, *Phayllus* the brother of *Onomarchus* was sent to assist him with 7000 men. Him *Philip* worsted, and expelled out of *Theffaly*. *Onomarchus* then, who had already attained the Dominion of all that Countrey in his mind, with all his strength marched to the aid of *Lycophron*, and overmarching *Philip*, and the *Theffalians*, in number of men, overthrew them twice with great slaughter, and sorely distressed *Philip*, insomuch that hardly containing his Soldiers in obedience, he presently retreated into *Macedonia*. *Onomarchus* improving the credit this victory had got him, overthrew the *Boeotians*, and got *Charonea*. *Philip* recruited himself, and returned into *Theffaly* against the Tyrant, who being straighten'd sent again to *Onomarchus*, promising if his affairs succeeded, to do his work in the Cities of *Theffaly*. *Onomarchus* with 20000 foot, and 500 horse was ready at his call, but ingaging in batel with *Philip*, and the *Theffalians*, was utterly defeated by the power and courage of the *Theffalian* horse, and fled amain with such as could get away towards the Sea. It hapned that *Chares* the *Athenian* hovering then about the Coasts with a Fleet, saved many that took the Sea, and swom to his ships. But of the *Phocians* and their assistants 6000 were slain, and as many taken, amongst whom was *Onomarchus*, whom *Philip* caused to be hanged, and the rest to be drowned in the Sea as sacrilegious persons. This batel hapned in the year wherein *Mausolus* the famous Prince of *Caria* died, and *Clearchus* the Tyrant of *Heraclea* a Citie in *Pontus*, was slain, to whom succeeded his son *Timotheus*, and reigned fifteen years. *Clearchus* having obtained the Tyranny, and his designs prospering imitated in all things *Dionysius* *Vide Justin. lib. 16.* of *Syracuse*, and enslaved his fellow Citizens very magnificently twelve years.

*Phayllus* suc-  
ceedeth *Onomarchus*.

And dieth of  
a Consumpti-  
on.

19. The year after, being the first of the 107th *Olympiad*, wherein *Smicrinus* of *Tarentum* was Victor, and *Aristodemus* Archon, *Phayllus* was made General in the room of *Onomarchus* his brother. He having plenty of money, therewith allured nor onely obscure men, but the principal Cities of *Greece* to joyn with him in the War. The *Lacedæmonians* sent him 1000 foot, the *Achaans* 2000, and the *Athenians* 5000, besides 400 horse. *Lycophron* and *Pitholans* the *Pherean* Tyrants, after the death of *Onomarchus* being destitute of succour, were forced to quit their power by *Philip*, and gathering together 2000 men, lead them to the service of *Phayllus*. With such forces and those of his own he invaded *Boeotia*, but was worsted several times, first at *Orchomennus* where he lost many men, then at the River *Cephissus*, and again at *Charonea*. After this he invaded the *Locrians*, called *Epicnemidii*, several of whose Towns he took, and received some losse from the *Boeotians*, who invading *Phocia* he came suddenly upon them and revenged himself. But having conflicted long with a Consumption, nor long after in great pain, as his impiety (saith *Diodorus*) had deserved, he ended his life. He left for his Successor *Phalaeus* the son of *Onomarchus*, who being but young, he joyned as Counsellour to him, one *Mnaseas* his familiar friend. The *Boeotians* falling by night upon them, slew 200 of the *Phocians* with their Captain *Mnaseas*, and within awhile in a fight at *Charonea*, *Phalaeus* himself was also worsted, and many of his followers were slain. *Philip* of *Macedonia* having

*Diodorus ad*  
*Olympo. 107.*  
*ann. x.*

## SECT. 5.

Stirs betwixt  
the Lacedæmo-  
nians and Mc-  
galopolitans.

having restored the *Theſſalians* to liberty by taking away the yoke of the *Phæ-  
raan* Tyrants (which bound them ever after very fast to him and his son)  
went towards the *Pyle*, or Straights, to make War upon the *Phocians*; but  
the *Athenians* hindring his passage, thence he returned with great honour into  
his own Kingdom.

20. Whilst these things were adoin, the *Lacedæmonians* being at En-  
mity with the Inhabitants of *Megalopolis*, sent *Archidamus* their King to in-  
vade them, who being too weak for them of themselves, desired aid of their  
friends. The *Argives*, *Sicyonians*, and *Messenians* helped them with their  
whole strength, and the *Thebans* sent them 4000 foot and 500 horse. The  
*Lacedæmonians* had 3000 foot from the *Phocians*, and 150 horse from *Lycop-  
hron* and *Pitholans*, by the assistance of which forces they took *Ornea*, a  
Citie of *Argolis*, before their Enemies could come to relieve it. The *The-  
bans* afterwards coming down, a battel was fought with equal successe, after  
which the *Argives* departed to their several homes, and the *Lacedæmonians*  
invading *Arcadia*, took, and plundered *Elissus*, and returned unto *Sparta*.  
After some time the *Thebans* had the better of it at *Telphussa*, and after that  
in two battels more, wherein they killed many of their Enemies; but then  
again the *Lacedæmonians* by a notable victory recovered their credit, and the  
Armies returning home, a Truce was made betwixt them and the *Megalopo-  
litans*. This was done whilst *Phalacrus* in *Boeotia* took *Cheroidea*, and pre-  
sently lost it again to the *Thebans*, who then with a numerous Army entered,  
and wasted *Phocis*, and then having taken some inconsiderable places with  
much booty they returned into *Boeotia*.

21. The next year the *Thebans* being spent with the *Phocian* War, sent to  
*Ochus* the *Persian* King to desire a supply of money from him; who with-  
out any difficulty, or delay, bestowed on them 300 Talents. No memorable  
thing passed betwixt the *Phocians* and them this year, which was spent in skir-  
mishes and mutual depredations. Two years after (a) *Philip* cast out again (a) *Idem ad*  
*Pitholans* the Tyrant, who had seized upon *Pheræ*, and setting upon (a) *Idem ad*  
the Cities of *Thrace* which belonged to *Chalcis*, took by storm the Castle *Zeira*,  
which he demolished, & forced other Towns to submit to his yoke, (b) though,  
upon desire of the *Chalcidians*, *Charidemus* had been sent from the *Athe-  
nians* to help them, then lying in the *Helleſpont*. The (c) year following  
wherein was solemnized the 108th Olympiad, whereof *Polycles* the *Cyrenæan*  
was Victor, having great designs in his mind, he hastened to get into his hands  
the Cities of the *Helleſpont*, and without any strokes got *Micylerne* and *To-  
rone* by treachery to be delivered up to him. Now he quarrelled with the  
*Olynthians* (because his affairs were improved by successe) whom before he  
courted as fearing their power, which had been ever too much for his pre-  
decessors. 'Tis said he pretended a quarrel because they received his two  
half brothers, whom after he had taken in the Town he murdered; all things  
being lawfull to him now that might any way serve his turn, all his affec-  
tions and passions being swallowed up in his ambition, which made him  
not stick to break faith himself, and by his Gold to tempt others to do it.  
He thought it to no purpose to practise the winning of *Olynthus*, till he had  
first inclosed all their power within the Walls, and therefore he first overthrew  
them in two battels, and then besieged the Citie, which attempting with ma-  
ny assaults and great losse of men, at length it was betrayed into his hands  
by *Eubycrates* and *Lasthenes* the chief Magistrates, whom he had corrupted  
with money. He sacked it, and sold the Inhabitants with the rest of the plun-  
der, whereby he much enriched himself, and was enabled to buy in Cities  
which he dayly did, having been advised by the Oracle at the beginning of his  
undertaking, to make his assaults with silver spears; inſomuch that he boasted  
that his Kingdom was more increased by Gold than Arms.

22. The *Athenians* being sensible of his incroachments, jealous of his grow-  
ing power, and warily providing for the liberty of *Greece*, supplied, as they  
might, such as he fell upon with war, and now sent up & down to the Cities to  
desire them to value their liberty, & punish capitally such as were treacherous  
amongst

## SECT. 5.

The *Athenians* amongst the n, promising them their alliance and utmost assistance, in this  
began to look work. And now at length by the special advice of *Demosthenes* (the greatest  
to themselves. Wit and Orator of *Greece*) they openly declared themselves his Enemies,  
and undertook the quarrel. But so far were the spirits of the *Greeks* degene-  
rated, that this endeavour of theirs could not counterwork the efficacy of his  
Gold, so that having a mind to take a Town that was strongly fortified, and  
one of the place telling him it could not be done, he asked him if he thought  
it not possible for his Gold to get over the walls. He had in all the Cities up  
and down his instruments and secret workers, who fought for a little gain to  
undermine the fortune of their own Country. After the taking of *Olynthus*,  
he celebrated the *Olympick* Games, and feasted all Comers; and entertain-  
ing them with great magnificence, by this cunning ingaged many to betray  
their Faith.

23. The following year the *Boeotians* and *Phocians* mutually preyed upon  
each other, and several Skirmishes hapned betwixt them, which produced  
no great losse on either side. But *Phalacrus* the *Phocian* General, being  
accused to have stolen the sacred money, was put out of his place, and three  
Generals substituted in his room, *Democrates*, *Callias*, and *Sophanes*, who  
were to make inquisition about the money which was stolen, and call the  
Trustees who had the management thereof to account. The chief of the  
Trustees was *Philo*, who being not able to give an account, was racked, and  
confessed many of his fellow thieves. They had taken out of the Temple  
4000 talents of gold after the rate of silver, and above 6000 talents of Silver of  
such presents as *Crasus* and others had sent: and there wanted not some who  
affirmed as much to have been rifled out of this Temple, as *Alexander* af-  
terwards found in the treasures of the *Persians*. *Phalacrus* was about to search  
in the pavement for treasure, hinted at by *Homer*; but when the Soldiers  
came to dig near to the *Tripes*, such Earthquakes hapned, as deterred them  
from proceeding any further. The *Phocians* assisted with these riches caried  
on the War, and by this time had got into their hand three strong places in  
*Boeotia*; *Orchomenus*, *Cheronea*, and *Corſias*. The *Boeotians* being much  
pressed herewith, having lost very many men, and wanting money, sent Am-  
bassadors to the King of *Macedonia* for aid. *Philip* was very glad to find  
them in so weak a condition, desiring to abate that Spirit which they had got  
at the battel at *Leuſtra*, yet he sent them a considerable number of men, be-  
cause he would not seem to be wanting to so religious a cause, as vindicating  
the right of the Oracle. At this time the *Phocians* building a Castle near  
*Abe*, were fallen upon by the *Boeotians*, and shifting for themselves into  
the neighbouring Towns, 500 of them stepped by into a Chapel of *Apollo*  
near *Abe*. Fire being left in their tents, seized upon some straw there,  
whence a great flame arising, caught hold at length of the Chapel, and there-  
in burnt alive those that had fled thither, for an example (as *Diodorus* account-  
eth it) to all sacrilegious persons.

24. *Philip* being now employed in the War of *Thrace*, which was to the  
great damage of the *Athenians*, to lull them asleep, promised he would en-  
ter into a straight league and alliance with them, and pretending fair things,  
so corrupted some of the chief Orators, (a) (*Æschines* accuseth *Demosthenes*,  
and (b) *Demosthenes* layeth the load upon *Æschines*) that a peace was  
made up which continued seven years. (c) *Demosthenes* advised them to  
send away their Ambassadors to *Philip* with all speed, to ratifie the League,  
lest he delaying the matter according to his custom, should still proceed to in-  
concommodate their affairs. Accordingly five Ambassadors were dispatched  
away, whereof one was *Æschines*; but coming into *Macedonia*, they  
were there forced to stay till *Philip* had settled all things in *Thrace*, according  
to his own pleasure, and passed through the *Pyle* or Straights into *Phocis*.  
The *Athenians* hearing of his coming, notwithstanding the place, were in  
great fear, and caused all their goods to be brought into the City. The *Theſſali-  
ans* and *Boeotians* earnestly now desired of him that he would undertake the  
conduct of all *Greece* against the *Phocians*; and on the other side the Am-  
bassadors

The *Boeotians*  
crave aid of  
*Philip*.

A remarkable  
accident.

*Philip* lulled  
the *Athenians*  
asleep.

*Philip* getteth  
*Olynthus*.


(a) *Orat. contra*  
*Æschin.*  
(b) *Orat. neg.*  
*Æschin.*  
(c) *Idem ibid.*  
*Justin lib. 8.*

*Idem ad an. 2.*

(a) *Idem ad*  
*an. 4.*

(b) *Anagraphe*  
*Olympiadum.*  
(c) *Diodorus*  
*ad Olymp. 108.*  
*ann. 1.*  
*Justin lib. 8.*

*Diodorus ibid.*

SECT. 5.  balladors of the *Phocians*, *Lacedæmonians*, and *Athenians*, earnestly de-  
 hortet him from the War. He hearing both sides, being accustomed to  
 double dealing, promised them he would do as all had desired, and so mi-  
 king them secure hereby, seized upon the Straights of *Thermopyla*.

He endeth  
 the *Phocian*  
 War.

25. The *Phocians* having sent to *Lacedæmon* for aid, procured 1000 Foot-  
 men of heavy Armour, which were commanded by *Archidamus*. *Philip* in  
 conjunction with the *Thessalians* with a strong Army went down into *Locris*,  
 where finding *Phalacrus* restored to his Generalship, he halted to decide the  
 controversy by action, but the other lying at *Nice*, and perceiving himself  
 too weak to fight, sent to treat with him, and they agreed that he should  
 have freedom to depart with his men whither he pleased. Faith being given  
 and received, he departed with his Mercenaries to the number of 8000 into  
*Peloponnesus*, and the *Phocians* being thus deserted, were forced to yield. So  
 the War was ended by *Philip* without a stroke, in the tenth year after the be-  
 ginning thereof, in the third year of the 108 Olympiad, according to *Dio-  
 dorus*, when *Archias* was *Archon*; but as \* *Pausanias* writeth, in the first of  
 this Olympiad, and in the government of *Theophilus*.

*Diodorus ad  
 Olymp. 108.  
 an. 3.*

\* In *Phocia*.

26. *Philip* calling a Council of the *Boeotians* and *Thessalians*, it was re-  
 solved to remit the matter of the *Phocians* wholly to the judgment and sen-  
 tence of the *Amphyctiones*. They decreed that *Philip* as a reward for his  
 good service should be enrolled in the number of themselves, and have the  
 double voice which the *Phocians* formerly had. That the *Phocians* should be  
 debarred from the Temple. That they should neither have Horse nor Arms  
 till such time as they had repayed the money which they had stolen from *Apol-  
 lo*. All their Exiles and as many as were guilty of Sacrilege in their own  
 persons should be accounted piacular, and it might be lawful to take them out  
 of any place. All their Cities were to be levelled with the ground, and they  
 reduced into Villages, not exceeding the number of Fifty little Families apiece,  
 and distant a furlong one from another. They were to pay to the Tem-  
 ple a yearly tribute of Sixty talents, till the money stolen was made up. But  
 from this punishment, *Pausanias* telleth us the *Abeans* were excepted, who  
 alone had not contaminated themselves. The Council then took order for re-  
 storing of the Oracle, and for the establishment of peace in *Greece*; and  
*Philip* having confirmed their Decrees, embracing them all with singular kind-  
 nesse, returned into his own Kingdom, flourishing with great glory both up-  
 on the account of Piety and Martial matters. This Expedition made not a  
 little for the enlargement of his Empire, and the improvement of his design  
 already laid, to procure himself to be chosen Captain General of *Greece*, and  
 to make War upon the *Persians*.

*Diodorus ibid.  
 Pausan. ut pri-  
 us.*

The *Phocians*  
 how punished  
 by the *Am-  
 phyctiones*.

27. Two years after, and in the 17 of his reign, he invaded the *Illyrians*  
 his old Enemies with a potent Army, took therein many Towns, wasted the  
 Country, and with rich booty returned into *Macedonia*. Then went he into  
*Thessalia*, where casting out the Tyrants out of the Cities, he much won up-  
 on the People, having a design hereby to make use of their favour, as a de-  
 coy to bring in the affections of the rest. And it failed not; for their neigh-  
 bours led by their example, very readily entered into League with him. The  
 year after he prosecuted this design to a further advantage, for *Kersobleptes*  
 the King of the *Thracians* much distressing the *Greek* Cities in *Thrace*, he ex-  
 hortet them to join together, and with a strong force going against him over-  
 threw the *Thracians* in several battels, and forced them to pay the tenths of  
 their Lands to the Kingdom of *Macedonia*. He built Forts in such places  
 as were convenient for the bridling of their power, whereby the Cities being  
 delivered now from their fear, most gladly embraced his alliance and society.  
 The year after this, *Arymbas* King of the *Molossians* died, who left a Son  
 named *Eacides*, the Father of *Pyrrhus*, but *Philip* deprived him of the  
 Kingdom, and gave it to *Alexander* the brother of his wife *Olympias*. \* Ano-  
 ther saith, that he deprived *Arymbas* yet alive, and expelling him the King-  
 dom seized *Alexander* therein.

*Diodorus ad  
 Olymp. 109.  
 an. 1.*

*Idem ad an. 2.*

*Idem ad an. 3.*

\* *Justin l. 7. & 8.*

*Diodorus ad  
 an. 4.*

*Philip over-  
 throweth the  
 Thracians.*

28. The next Expedition *Philip* undertook, was against *Perinthus* a strong  
 City,

Besegeth *Pe-  
 rinthus*.

Marcheth  
 thence to  
*Byzantium*.

He invadeth  
 the *Scythians*.

At his return  
 wounded and  
 distressed by  
 the *Triballi*.

City, situate upon the shore of the *Propontis*, the Inhabitants whereof in fa-  
 vour of the *Athenians* crossed his designs. With his utmost might, he fell  
 upon it, continuing the storm without intermission, by fresh men sent in the  
 place of the dead or wounded: he built Turrets higher than theirs, and with  
 battering rams and mines brake down a part of the wall. But the defend-  
 ants being relieved from *Byzantium*, manfully resisted, and built a stronger  
 wall in the room of that which was thrown down. By this means the Siege  
 being drawn on in length, and great talk being in *Alexa* of the power of the  
*Macedonian*, *Ochus* the *Persian* King being now jealous of his power,  
 thought it wisdom to ballance him, and for that purpose gave order to his *Sa-  
 trapæes* upon the Sea Coasts to assist the *Perinthians*. They uniting their For-  
 ces together, gave them their utmost assistance, which with the natural  
 strength of the place enabled them to stand it out. For it was seated upon  
 the cliff of a Peninsula about a furlong in length, the houses were thick and  
 high, rising one rank above another, according to the ascent of the hill, so  
 that the whole Town represented the form of a Theatre. Hereby, though  
 the wall was battered down, yet stopping the ends of the streets, their defence  
 was little diminished, which *Philip* perceiving, and how all things necessary  
 for the War were abundantly supplied from *Byzantium*, he left a strong  
 party under expert Captains to carry on the Siege, and with the rest of the  
 Army halted against that City, the inhabitants whereof having sent their men  
 and arms to the *Perinthians*, were thereby much straightened.

29. By this time the grudges betwixt *Philip* and the *Athenians* were so  
 heightened, that now the peace was held as broken on both sides. *Phocion*  
 the *Athenian* was sent against *Cliarchus* the Tyrant of *Eretria*, who was  
 made by *Philip*, and cast him out, being by (a) *Plutarch* called *Plutarch*.  
 (b) They sent aid also to the *Byzantians*, at the perswasion of (c) *Demosthe-  
 nes*, contained in the fourth Oration of his *Philippicks*. With them joyned  
 the *Chians*, *Coans*, *Rhodians*, and other *Greeks*, which so terrified *Philip*, as  
 he was glad for the present to yield to necessity, and made a peace with them.  
 For *Demosthenes* having perswaded his Citizens forgetting all committed in  
 the Social War, to send relief to the *Byzantians* and *Perinthians*, and he  
 himself being sent Ambassador to the Cities, wrought so effectually with  
 them, that besides their ordinary Militia, they raised 15000 Foot, and 2000  
 Horse, and liberally contributed money for their pay; at which time the *At-  
 sociates* desiring that the sum of the tax might be set, *Crobitus* the Orator  
 said, that War had no set rate of allowance. At this time (d) *Atas* King of  
*Scythia* being invaded by the *Istrians*, sent to *Philip* for aid, promising him  
 succession in his Kingdom; which being sent whenas the *Istrians* retreated,  
 he also sent back the *Macedonians*, and recalled his promise concerning  
 the succession. *Philip* hereupon demanded money to pay the men, but he  
 also refusing it upon pretence of poverty, raised his Siege from *Byzantium*  
 to go against him, and sent messengers before to let the *Scythians* know he  
 had vowed to set up to *Hercules* a Statue upon the bank of *Ister*, and to de-  
 sire peaceable access and recess for that purpose. He answered, that if he  
 pleased to send the Statue it should be erected, but refused to give leave for  
 him to enter his borders with an Army, saying, that if he set it up by force,  
 he would pull it down after his departure, and turn the Brasse thereof into  
 heads of Arrows. *Philip* entering *Scythia*, a battel was fought, wherein he  
 overcame them by craft, who in courage exceeded, and took 20000 women  
 and children, with multitudes of cartel, but neither Gold nor Silver. Twer-  
 ty thousand Mares of the choicest were sent into *Macedonia* to breed. As  
*Philip* returned, the *Triballi* opposed themselves, refusing to give him passage  
 except he would part with some of his booty. He disclaiming the thing, for-  
 ced his passage, but received such a wound in his thigh, that through it his  
 Horse was killed under him, and being taken up for dead, so little care was  
 had of the prey, that it was left. *Isocrates* the Orator taking occasion at this  
 disaster, fought by his second Epistle to draw his mind to a peaceable inclina-  
 tion; but to no purpose.

SECT. 5. 

(a) In *Phocion*.  
 (b) *Diodorus  
 ad Olymp. 110.  
 an. 1.*  
 (c) *Plutarch  
 in Demosthen*.

(d) *Justin l. 9.*

## SECT. 5.

30. Two years after, having drawn most of the *Græcians* into society with him, he longed after the Empire of all *Greece*, in his way to which the *Athenians* onely seemed the main obstacle. He resolved now to daunt them, and obtain his purpose, and for that end seized first upon *Elatea* a Citie of *Phocis*, and calling his forces thither resolved speedily to make War upon them, hoping his work would be the lesse, because he should take them altogether unprepared, and secure upon the account of the peace. The *Athenians* exceedingly struck hereat for some time stood mute, after they were met together, being come of their own accord, for that the Magistrates caused an Allarm to be sounded all the night after they received the news. At length all their eyes were turned upon *Demosthenes*, who perswaded them to send to the *Boeotians* to desire their assistance in the vindication of the liberty of *Greece*, and being sent himself by his Oratory perswaded them to it, though they held themselves upon the account of the *Phocian* War obliged to *Philip*. The *Athenians* were encouraged by this accession of the *Boeotians*, which doubled their force, and dispatched their Army under the conduct of *Chares* and *Lyficles* towards *Charonea* in *Boeotia*, all of flourishing age willingly giving their names to the expedition, and the *Boeotians* admiring their readinesse hastened also themselves, and joyning to them expected the coming of the Enemy. He sent his Ambassadors to the Council, one whereof was *Pythion* an eloquent man, to withdraw them from the *Athenians*, but prevailing not, he notwithstanding resolved to fight them both, and with an Army of 30000 foot, and 2000 horse invaded *Boeotia*. He overmarched his Enemies as well in skill as numbers, all the *Athenian* Captains of note being now dead, and *Chares* Chief, who was nothing better for conduct than an ordinary Soldier. A cruel and bloody fight was fought with great animosity on both sides, and with equal successe, till *Alexander*, *Philip's* son, first made his Enemies give ground in his Wing, and then his father had the same successe in the other, and obtained the victory. Of the *Athenians* above 1000 fell, 2000 were taken, and of the *Boeotians* a great number. *Demosthenes* being in the battel made his actions far disagreeable to his words, and cowardly with the first casting away his Arms (though Good fortune was ingraven upon his shield) ran away.

He obtaineth a victory over the *Athenians*, &c. at *Charonea*.

31. Together with this battel was lost the liberty of *Greece*, and in effect the ancient glory thereof here had its period, being never able to recover its power, and first enslaved by one, and then another for ever after. (a) *Isocrates* the *Athenian* Orator was so sensible of the advantage *Philip* had got, that being ignorant how he would improve the opportunity, and resolved not to see *Athens* besieged the fourth time, killed himself by abstaining from all sustenance four dayes, aged 98 years. (b) Presently after the victory, *Philip* carouzed for joy, and walking amongst the Captives upbraided the badnesse of their condition, when *Demades* the *Athenian* Orator took him short, asking him, if he who had obtained the fortune of *Agamemnon* shamed not to act the part of *Thersites*? with the wit of which castigation he was so struck, that he cast off the former countenance, imbraced the author of it with singular kindnesse, with him gave liberty to all the *Athenian* prisoners, and forgetting his pride, made a League and Alliance with that Commonwealth. (c) He is also reported to have appointed a Boy every morning to bear this into his Ear; that *He was a man*. He was a great Master of his affections indeed. He was never passionate to his disadvantage, and upon this account, to procure that with more ease which he had long designed, he might thus gratifie the *Athenians*, whose interest in the other Estates being the same with the Common of all *Greece*, he might be unwilling to force them to the utmost. But he placed a Garrison of his own in *Thebes*; and *Justin* writeth, how he sold for slaves all the prisoners of that Citie; and the bodies of such as had been slain to their friends for burial: that of the chiefeft of the Citizens some he put to death, and confiscated the goods of the rest, being sufficiently sensible of their ingratitude. After the fight, when the *Athenians* fortified their Citie as expecting a siege, (d) *Demosthenes* at his own charge re-

*Diodorus ad Olymp. 110. ann. 3. Plutarch. in Demosthen.*

A.M. 3667. Ol. 110. ann. 3. V. C. 416. Aris 1. Philippi 23.

(a) *Plutarch in vitis Rhetorum & Dionysius in Isocrate.*

(b) *Diodorus.*

(c) *Alban. Var. Hist. lib. 8. cap. 15.*

(d) *Plutarch. in Demosthen.*

## SECT. 5.

edified part of the Wall, for which service *Ctesiphon* thought he was to be honoured with a Garland at the publick meeting of *Greece*; but *Eschines* contended it was against the Law: and so his Oration against *Ctesiphon* concerning the Crown, or Garland, was written this year, *Charonides* (or *Charondas*) being *Archon*, the third of the 110th Olympiad, and the first of the reign of *Arjes* the *Persian* King.

Obtaineth to be named General at Sea for all *Greece* against the *Persian*.

Differences in his house by a new marriage.

32. (a) *Philip* by his successe having utterly broken the courage of the principal Cities of *Greece*, now gave out that he would undertake a War against the *Persian* for the general commodity all the Estates, and thereby, and with his great courtesie, gained much upon some sorts of people. At length he called them together at *Corinth*, and largely discoursing of the War, shewed the certain hope of successe, and earnestly exhorted them to undertake it; to which all either out of love or fear assented. He was chosen Captain General for the expedition, allowance of men and money were appointed to the several Cities, the (b) *Lacedæmonians* alone scorning both him, and the conditions of his peace, accounting that slavery, and not peace, which was imposed by the Conquerour. The Auxiliaries of *Greece* amounted to 200000 foot, and 15000 horse, over and above the forces of *Macedonia*, and the barbarous Nations thereto adjoining. Whilest he thus prospered in his affairs abroad, (c) great differences arose in his own house by his putting away *Olympias* upon pretence of incontinency, and marrying *Cleopatra* the Niece of *Attalus*. *Olympias* a woman of an high spirit, and melancholick nature, took it exceedingly to heart, & incensed all she could her son *Alexander*, who at the Wedding hearing *Attalus* in his Cups to exhort the *Macedonians* to pray for a lawfull Heir of the Kingdom from *Philip* and *Cleopatra*, calling him naughty fellow, asked him if he counted him a Bastard, and therewith threw a Cup at him. *Philip* hereupon with his drawn Sword made at *Alexander*, but to the good of both, being light headed with Wine, and mad with anger, stumbled and fell. After this *Alexander* carried his mother into *Epirus*, and went himself into *Illyricum*, whence his father shortly recalled him by the procurement of *Demetrius* the *Corinthian*. Nor long after *Pexodarus* the Governour of *Caria* sent to offer his eldest daughter in marriage to *Arideus* the base son of *Philip*, whence great talk being raised that *Philip* did it on purpose to devolve the Crown upon *Arideus*, *Alexander* sent one *Thestalus* a player to *Pexodarus*, to perswade him to neglect a Bastard and a Fool, and transfer his affinity upon himself, which was very well liked by *Pexodarus*. *Philip* smelling out the matter, checked *Alexander* grievously, as degenerate, and unworthy of the hope of a Kingdom, being ambitious to become son-in-law to a *Carian*, who was no better than a slave to a barbarian King.

He is stabbed.

33. The next Spring having enquired of the Oracle concerning the successe of the *Persian* War (which gave him answer as ambiguous, and to the same purpose as formerly to *Crasus*) he sent three Captains over into *Asia* under pretence of setting the *Greek* Cities at liberty; *Attalus*, *Parmenio*, and *Amyntas*. He himself, whilest the forces were gathering together, made a magnificent sacrifice to the gods, and celebrated the marriage of his daughter *Cleopatra* with her Uncle *Alexander* of *Epirus*, to which he invited all that would, and gave large entertainment, being willing to shew to the *Græcians* how thankfully he took their making him General of all *Greece*. Feasting and Musick there was in abundance, and the Feast being done for that day (but all the solemnity to be renewed on the next) whilest it was yet night all the people ran together into the Theatre. Thither were carried twelve Images of his gods in solemn procession, and his own next after in a Divine habit, as arrogating to himself a place in the Council of the gods. Then followed he himself apparelled in a white Robe in the midst of the two *Alexanders*, his son, and son-in-law. As he thus proceeded in the ruff of his pride, the people sending up loud acclamations to the skies, and Echoing his felicity, one *Pausanias* met him in the straightest place of his passage, and stabbed him into the side, the wound being so mortal that he fell

C c c

down

(a) *Diodorus ad ann. 4.*

(b) *Justin. lib. 9.*

(c) *Plutarch. in Alexandro.*

*Diodorus ad Olymp. 111. ann. 1. Pausan. in Arcadicis. Justin.*

## SECT. 5.

A. M. 3668.  
OL. 110. ann. 4.  
V.C. 417.  
Ages 2.  
Philippi 24.

down dead. This *Pausanias* having been invited to a Feast by *Aistalus*, had been carnally abused by him after he was drunk, and then prostituted to the filthy lust of base fellows, for which having complained to the King, partly because of their affinity, and because *Philip* intended to use him in the War, he could have no satisfaction, and for this cause took this revenge upon his unjust judge; yet *Alexander* objected to *Darius* that his father was made away by his procurement.

His great achievements.]

34. The murderer having mounted on horse-back had got away whilst the tumult was about the body, but that his shoe catching hold on a Vine he was thereby pulled down, and then slain by *Perdiccas* and others. This end had *Philip* after he had reigned 24 years, and lived 46. to which *Olympias* is reported by some to have contributed, by encouraging *Pausanias* to commit the fact, and neither knew they how to clear *Alexander* of the matter. She put a Golden Crown upon *Pausanias* his head as he hung on the Cross, and a few days after burnt his body upon the Reliques of her husband, and built him a Monument in the same place, and caused a yearly parentation to be made to him. After this having killed *Cleopatra's* young son in her bosom, she then hanged her, or as one saith, fried them both to death in a brazen Vessel, and consecrated the sword wherewith *Philip* was slain to *Apollo*, under the name of *Myrtalis*, by which she was called when young. The foundation of a great Empire was laid by *Philip*, and a great pattern left unto his son, which to make, was far more hard than what with greater glory was achieved by *Alexander*. The recovery of *Macedon* when there were two Competitors that had such assistants, was a work of much prudence and dexterity. The regaining of such places as were lost to the *Illyrians* and *Olynthians*, with the overthrow of the neighbouring Kings, and the State of *Olynthus*, were such things as would have seemed too difficult for many ages to his predecessors. The matters achieved by him required both *Mars* and *Mercury* for assistants, and therein he bred so many choice Commanders, as for their skill and valour being worthy to wear Crowns; He seemeth most to deserve that glory which his son by the influence of his abilities afterwards attained.

Alexander succeeds him.

35. *Alexander* his son succeeded him, aged about twenty years, in the first of the 111th Olympiad, wherein *Cleomantes* was Victor, *Pithodorus* being Archon, in the first of the reign of *Darius Codomannus*, and the year of the World 3669. being by the father's side descended of *Hercules*, and the mother's from *Achilles*, neither of which lines he disgraced by the course of his fortunes. Of a great and lofty spirit he was from a Child, easie to be persuaded, but hard to be compelled. His father apprehending his wit, procured *Aristotle* to be his School-master, offering him very large rewards, whose Native Citie *Stagira* being before by him demolished, he re-edified for his sake. By such a Master he was not onely instructed in morality, but had some insight into the more abstruse Sciences, and seemed to have some skill in Physick, being wont to give directions to his friends about their health. Being sixteen years old, *Philip* undertaking an expedition against the *Byzantians*, left him his Deputy in *Macedonia*, where improving his time, he subdued the *Medæans* who had revolted, and taking that Citie, planted it with new Inhabitants, and called it after himself *Alexandropolis*. At the battel of *Charonea* he behaved himself very stoutly, which with other his good parts drew great love upon him from his father (inasmuch as he willingly suffered the *Macedonians* to call him King, and himself General) but *Philip's* mind towards his later end being withdrawn from his mother and fastned upon *Cleopatra*, thereupon ensued great dissatisfaction on both sides, whilst his mother stirred him to great indignation, inasmuch as he escaped not suspicion of being privy to her designs against his father's life.

36. Yet began he his reign with justice against such as had an hand in the murder, killing them upon his Grave, and blamed his mother that in his absence she had dealt so cruelly with *Cleopatra*. Then celebrating the funeral of his father with royal Rites and Ceremonies, he began to take care of his

idem ibid.  
Diodorus ad  
Olymp. 111.  
ann. 2.  
his

## SECT. 5.

He beginneth his publick affaires, and being contemned for his youth and little experience, his reign well above all expectation explicated himself out of all difficulties, by imitating his Fathers courtesie, and overcoming many by the invincibleness of his spirit, which through the course of his life bore down all opposition. He renewed the discipline of War, and gained the affections of the Army; knowing also that *Aistalus* upon the account of his Niece *Cleopatra*, lay at all advantages to do him mischief, he sent *Hecataeus* with a band of men with order to attack him and send him over alive if possible, or else to kill him one way or other, which was at length effected. In the mean time *Demosthenes* having had secret intelligence of *Philip's* death, went to the people, and pretending to have dreamt it, stirred up the *Athenians* all ways possible to contemn the youth of *Alexander*, and not to suffer him to obtain the Principality of *Greece*, and to this purpose they sent unto *Aistalus*, and entred into conspiracy with him, how they might best effect it. The *Aetolians* intended to restore the Exiles of the *Acarnanians* banished by *Philip*. The *Ambraciots* expelled the Garrison there, and the *Thebans* decreed to do the same by that in *Cadmea*. As the *Arcadians* had refused to consent that the Father should be General of *Greece*, so were they now nothing better inclined towards the Son, and the rest of the *Peloponnesians*, as the *Argives*, *Eleans*, and *Lacedæmonians* were ready to do anything for the asserting of their own liberty and power. The Nations about *Macedonia* began to stir, being altogether inclining to renounce their obedience.

His difficulties in Greece,

Which he overcometh.

37. *Alexander* as an earnest of his future successe easily removed those obstacles, reducing some by entreaty and good words, others by awe, and some by force of Arms. He first obtained of the *Thessalians* by a publick Decree to be owned as his Fathers Successor in the Generalship, and then easily bringing the neighbouring People to do the same, passing the *Pyla*, called the Council of the *Amphyktionians*, and procured by their suffrages to be elected the Captain General of all *Greece*. Having done this, to bring over the rest by fear, he led down his Army into *Boeotia*, where pitching his tents by *Cadmea* he affrighted the *Thebans* and the *Athenians* also so much, that these getting in all their goods to the City, and fortifying it as well as they might, they sent to beg his pardon, that they had owned him no sooner. One of the Ambassadors was *Demosthenes*, who came not with the rest to *Alexander*, but returned back when he was come on his way, either for that he stood in fear of him for the Orations made against his Father, or because he would not crack his credit with the *Persian* King, from whom *Aschines* accused him to have received much money. He answered the Ambassadors to their satisfaction, and then sent for the Deputies of the Estates to meet him at *Corinth*, where speaking very courteously to them, he was again declared General against the *Persian*, and aid decreed to him for carrying on the War; after which he returned into *Macedonia*. Whilst he here was in the *Isthmus*, many Philosophers came to salute him; \* onely *Diogenes* the *Synopian* made no reckoning of him. The King understanding this, went to visit him then at *Athens*, and finding him suining himself in his tub, saluted him kindly, and desired him, to ask any thing of him whatsoever he pleased. He onely desired him to stand out of the Sun, which greatnesse of mind *Alexander* so much admired, that when his followers laughed and jeered at the man, he answered, that *If he were not Alexander, he would be Diogenes*.

\* *Diogenes* Laertius & *Plutarch*, alii.

But the Thebans fall upon his Garrison in Cadmea.

38. In the beginning of the Spring he made an Expedition into *Thrace*, where he subdued several People, and afterwards prospered in the same manner in *Pæonia* and *Illyria*. In the mean time came intelligence, that many of the *Greeks* had a design to revolt, and not a few Cities, amongst which *Thebes* was most eminent, and had renounced his authority. Hereupon he returned into *Macedonia*; the *Thebans* in the mean while besieging his Garrison in *Cadmea*, which, being supplied with Arms by *Demosthenes*, they fell upon and slew many. They implored the assistance of the *Argives*, *Eleans*, *Arcadians*, and *Athenians*. The *Athenians* were persuaded by *Demosthenes*

Diodorus & Plutarch.



## SECT. 5.

*Demosthenes* to send them aid, who reigning in the Assemblies by the power of his tongue, wrote also to the Kings Captains in *Asia*, thence to oppose *Alexander*, whom he called a boy and a fool. But *Alexander* marching with speed into *Bacria*, the valour of the *Athenians* well abraded; and *Demosthenes* himself grew very cool. The *Thebans* uncertain what their allies would do, and surprised with the Kings coming, called a Council of Officers to consult what should be done, where it was resolved to fight for their liberty, and this was confirmed by the People, which with great alacrity prepared for resistance, though they might have had good terms of *Alexander*. Who delayed also to do any thing, that they might have time to advise; for his mind being fully intent upon the *Persian War*, he would gladly have been rid of all trouble on this side of the Seas. But when he saw their wilfulness, he fully resolved to make this City a terror to the rest. Yet he first offered indemnity to all such as would come over to him, which they to cross, out of emulation, caused to be proclaimed from an high Tower, that if there were any who had a desire to joyn with the great King and the *Thebans* in vindicating the liberty of *Greece*, and suppressing the Tyrant thereof, they should repair unto them.

Whereupon  
he bessegeth  
Thebes.

He taketh

39. Then fell he with all his might and skill upon the City, which they as stoutly defended, knowing else what would follow, and encouraging themselves with their former successes at *Leuttra* and *Maninea*, they made resistance to the wonder and discouragement of their Enemies; till at length *Alexander* perceiving a little dore to be left unguarded, sent *Perdiccas* thither with a party, who breaking into the City made way for the rest of the *Macedonians*. Now were the *Thebans* on one side by them, and the other by the Garrison in *Cadmea* (which like a tempest fell upon them) cut in pieces, the Law of War not being allowed them, because of that Proclamation they had made from the Tower. The *Gracians* also that served under *Alexander*, as the *Phocians*, *Thespians*, *Plataeans*, *Orchomenians*, and others, bearing them malice, spared them no more, so that great slaughter was made, they fighting it out to the last, having no other regard to their lives than this, to sell them at as dear a rate as possible. There were slain 6000 (*Alien* \* by some mistake hath 90000) and 30000 were taken captives. *Alexander* having buried all his slain (to the number of 500) assembled a Council of the *Gracians*, to which he referred what should be done with the *Thebans*. There their Enemies urged against them, that they had conspired with the *Barbarians* against the *Gracians*, in the time of *Xerxes*, had fought amongst other allies of *Persia* against *Greece*, and since that been acknowledged and rewarded by his Successors as well deserving of them. By these things they incensed the Council, as to decree the City to be levelled with the ground, the Captives to be kild, and such as had fled to be sought for and brought to punishment. The King acquiescing in this severe sentence, executed it accordingly, selling all he had taken, except the Priests and those that had entertained his Father when he was young, and their kindred, with the posterity of *Pindar* the Poet, whose house alone he left standing. This famous City then was demolished the last day of the *Boedromion* month, after it had continued in a settled condition almost 800 years.

And demolisheth it.

40. *Alexander* publishing an Edit, whereby all *Gracians* were forbidden to receive the *Theban* Exiles, the *Athenians* alone refused to obey it, setting open their gates to them, being then celebrating the mysteries of *Ceres*. Hereat he was enraged, and when they had sent to deprecate his indignation the second time, forgave them only on this condition: to give up to him the ten (*Plutarch* nameth but eight) Orators who had stirred them up against him, and the principal whereof were *Demosthenes* and *Lycophron*. The People hereupon not knowing how to demean themselves, *Phocion* the Good, who went ever cross to *Demosthenes* in managing State affairs, made a quartel betwixt him and them, wherein he would have persuaded the Orators to kill themselves like good Citizens, rather than to bring their Country into danger; but the People

\* Plut. hist. lib.  
13. cap. 7.

ill resisting this, expelled him in a tumult. At length *Demades* the Orator being hired by *Demosthenes* with five talents, persuaded the People to mercy, and so framed an answer to the King, that it should signifie their readiness to punish them if they should find them worthy thereof. They sent him then to *Alexander*, with order, not only to take up this matter, but also to intercede for the *Theban* Exiles, and obtain leave for them to receive them. This he did by the power of his persuasions, saith *Diodorus*, although *Plutarch* saith it was done by *Phocion*, who after *Alexander* had cast away from him the former Decree, and rejected the messengers, was kindly received by him, after the King had understood that his Father respected him. He not only admitted of his request but his counsel also: that if he loved an idle life he should lay aside all thoughts of War, but if he thirsted after glory he should transfer his Armies from the *Greeks* to the *Barbarians*. *Justin* writeth, that he gave them leave to keep their Orators, but forced them to banish their Captains, who going over to *Darius* much incommodated his affairs beyond the Seas. *Arrianus* only mentioneth *Charidemus* to have fled to the *Persians*.

In Phocione.

He passeth  
over into Asia.

41. *Alexander* returned into *Macedonia* with his Army, where consulting about the *Persian War*, *Antipater* and *Parmenio* his choicest Warriours advised him first to marry, and beget children, and then to undertake the Expedition after he was provided of heirs. But he being of a most quick and active spirit, and impatient of delay, would not hear of any such thing, seeing as he said, he was now created General of *Greece*, and had such Forces lent him by his Father. After then he had by proposing the commodities of such an undertaking, inflamed the minds of his Soldiers with a desire thereof, he sacrificed to his gods, and solemnized the playes to *Jupiter*, formerly instituted by *Archelaus* his Predecessor. The solemnity continued nine dayes, one being allotted to each of the Muses, during which in his Royal Pavilion which had twenty beds to eat on, he feasted the officers of his Army, and the Ambassadors of the Cities. In the Spring, all things being now ready, he marched with his Forces towards the *Hellepont*. They who account the least, saith *Plutarch*, reckon 30000 Foot, and 5000 Horse, and who the most 34000 of them and 4000 of these. For the maintenance of such an Army *Aristobolus* wrote that he had no more than 70 talents. *Darius* said he had provision but for thirty dayes, and *Oesicritus* delivered, that he ought besides this 200 talents. And though he was thus handsomely furnished, yet before his journey making inspection into the estates of his friends, to one he assigned a Village, to another a piece of ground, to this a certain rent, and to that the Customs of such a port. When he had almost distributed all he had, *Perdiccas* asked him what he left for himself, and he answered *Hope*; then replied the other, That shall be common to us with thee, and refused to receive any thing, which was followed by many; but such as would be willingly gratified, and thereby passed away most of the revenues of *Macedonia*. He passed over his men in 60 ships to *Troas*, and first of all cast his Spear upon the shore, and skipping out, as it were, took possession of *Asia*, in the second year of his reign, and the second of *Darius Codomannus*, the third of the 111 Olympiads, *Euboea* being *Archeon*, and in the third month before his leaving of the Office, and the succession of *Ctesicles*, under whose Government *Diadarius* placeth this Expedition, A. M. 3670.

A. M. 3670.  
Ol. 111. an. 3.  
V. C. 420.  
Darius Codomannus.  
Alexand. 3.

42. To *Antipater* he committed the Government of his affairs in *Europe*, with whom he left 12000 Foot, and 11500 Horse, as *Diodorus* hath it, if \* 1500 be not rather to be read. The *Lacedemonians* after his departure grudging his success, and lay watching for an advantage how to begin a War, and if possible divert the course of his good fortune, which after the battel of *Arbela* they supposed to be fully presented. For the issue of that battel being reported in *Greece*, many of the Cities who were jealous of his power resolved to contend for their ancient liberty, before the strength of the *Persians* should be utterly spent, which they might have to their assistance. They were incouraged to revolt from tumults now raised in *Thrace*. For *Memnon* being

μνηστος being  
crept in.  
Diodorus ad  
Olymp. 112.  
an. 3.

SECT. 5. being sent General thither, having Soldiers at his devotion, stirred up the Barbarians to rebel, and got together a great Army. Antipater hereupon was forced to march against him and leave Macedonia; the absence of whom the Lacedæmonians thinking a sufficient occasion of working some notable fear, excited the Grecians to agree together with united force to recover their liberty. The Athenians conceiving themselves engaged to Alexander, who had respected them above all others, refused to stir, but most of the Peloponnesians, and some others, gave their names willingly, and raised amongst them 20000 foot and 2000 horse, which were commanded by Agis the Spartan King. Antipater hearing this composed the matters of Thrace as he might, and with an Army of 40000 men raised out of the Confederates of Greece marched against them, and joining battle, after much opposition slew 5300 with the loss of 3500 of his own men. Agis himself fighting most valiantly, after he had received many wounds was to be carried out of the fight and so to be conveyed home. But being encompassed with Enemies, and seeing there was no hope to escape, he bade his men shift for themselves, and reserve their lives for the further service of their Countrey: he on his knees received his Enemies as well as he could, till having first killed some of them, at length he was slain after he had been King nine years.

But are vanquished by Antipater his Lieutenant,

43. Antipater having obtained this victory, was willing to put an end to the War out of fear of envy, by seeming to proceed further than the modesty of a subject should require. For he knew the high spirit of Alexander, who rejoiced in the victory, but not in him being Victor, which he not obscurely grudged at, thinking so much to be detracted from his own glory as was added to that of another. The Lacedæmonians therefore being constrained to send to him, he remitted them for answer to the Council of Greece, which having heard what could be said on both sides, referred the whole matter to the Cognisance of Alexander. They then gave up to Antipater fifty Hostages, and sent into Asia to Alexander to beg pardon. Most of such learned men as were Eminent during this period have already, upon occasion, been spoken of.

And send to him into Asia to beg pardon.

### CHAP. III.

## The affairs of Sicilie during this Empire.

### SECT. I.

*The first Names and Inhabitants of this Island, with a relation of such things as preceded the Persian Empire.*

1. SICILIE is an Island of the Mediterranean Sea, lying over against Italy at five miles distance; from which it is thought to have been severed by some Earth-quake, or the violence of the Sea, being joyned formerly by an Isthmus, or neck of Land, to the Continent.

The old Inhabitants of Sicilie.

2. It was first, from the Triangular Figure, called Trinacria, then Sicania, and afterwards obtained the name of Sicilie. The most ancient Inhabitants were Cyclopes, or Gyants with one onely eye in their foreheads (as the Poets fancied) and the Lastrygonies of the same Original. After them succeeded the Sicani, by some said to be indigene, or naturals of the place; but by others a people of Iberia, or Spain, and so named from Sicani, a River in that Countrey, whence they were expelled by the Ligyes, and coming into the

Island

Greek Colonies.

Gyants in Sicilie.

Island Trinacria changed its name into Sicania. After these, the Siculi a people of Italie (so named saith Thucydides from Isalus a King of Arcadia) being expelled by the Opici, passed into this Island, and overthrowing the Sicani seized upon the best parts of it, and gave it the name of Sicilie, almost 300 years before the Greeks found it out. When Ilium was taken, some Trojans fled by ship from the Achæans into this Countrey, and fixing themselves near to the Sicani, were all called Elymi, whose principal seats were Eryx and Egesta. To these were added some of the Phœnicians, of those who in their return from Troy being driven by Tempest into Libya, or Africk, thence passed into Sicilie. The Phœnicians also inhabited all over the Island in the Maritime parts, and the little Islands near adjoining, for the benefit of Traffick with the Siculi; But after that many Greeks arrived, they removed, and joyned themselves to the Elymi, and inhabited Motya, Soluns, and Panormus, because thence was but a little passage unto Carthage. So many Barbarians, and after this manner, inhabited Sicilie saith Thucydides, with whom in the main of their relations, consent Diodorus, Strabo, Dionysius of Halycarnassus, Pausanias, Constantinus Porphyrogeneta and others.

### SECT. I.

A.M. 2821.

Lib. 6. ad initium.

3. The first Greeks that came into Sicilie (as Thucydides proceedeth) were some from Chalcis in Eubœa, who under conduct of Theocles planted Naxos. The year following Archias the Corinthian, descended from Hercules, drove the Siculi from that place where stood the Citie afterward called Syracuse. About the same time Lamis brought a Colony from Megara, which he first placed upon the River Pantacius, in a place called Troilus. In the 45 year after Syracuse began to be inhabited, Antiphernus from Rhodes, and Eusimius out of Crete, with their several Colonies planted Gela, so named from the River by which it stood, the Inhabitants whereof 108 years after erected the great and Magnificent Citie Agrigentum, or Agragus, so called also from a River of the same name. Zancle was first inhabited by some Pyrates of Cuma, a Citie belonging to Chalcis; but afterwards by a multitude that came promiscuously from Chalcis and other parts of Eubœa, under the conduct of Perieres of Cuma, and Cratamenes of Chalcis, and were hence cast out again by the Samians and other Ionians, who fled from the Medes into Sicilie. Zancle was so named by the Siculi, from a Sicle, in their language Zancle, which it resembled. Not long after Anaxilas Tyrant of Rhegium banishing the Samians filled it with a mixed multitude, and called it Messana, after the name of his own Countrey. Himera was planted by the Zancleans, and many Chalcidians amongst them, with whom also joyned certain Syracusians being expelled by the contrary faction, and called Myletida. Their language was mixed betwixt the Chalcidian and Dorick tongues. These were the Colonies which from several parts of Greece planted Sicilie. As for other Towns that were Colonies of these Colonies, they shall be told whose they were upon occasion.

A.M. 3271.

P. C. 20.

Achaz. 10.

4. That Gyants inhabited Sicilie (although to some it hath seemed no other than the invention of Poets, who usually speak monstrously of ancient things) the discovery of the last age hath made most manifest; at what time were in several places of the Island found the bones of such kind of men, and the perfect proportion of one or more within the earth, which upon touch mouldred all into dust. Cluverius in his Description of Sicilie, and Fazellus, herein give abundant satisfaction, which might be further strengthened from what the discoverers of America relate concerning men of such stature; but that the Testimony of Scripture alone sufficeth to make evident the being of Gyants. That they were indigene, or first Inhabitants of Sicilie, is probable, and the very same with the Lastrygonies. As for the Sicani, no credit is to be given to the Testimony of Thucydides in this point that they came out of Spain, for that Diodorus being this Countrey-man, and certainly rather more concerned in the delivery of the Antiquities of it, than other Nations, averreth the most accurate Historians to have affirmed them indigene, which Timæus, who lived under Agathocles the Tyrant, did fully demon-

## SECT. I.

The Sicani  
came not out  
of Spain.

demonstrate. *Thucydides*, who first obtruded this fable upon the *Greeks*, confesseth that they themselves were of a contrary opinion, and though they in a matter concerning their honour might not be heard, yet this may satisfie, that in *Spain* there is no such River to be found as ever had the name of *Sicanus*, which some of those who follow the opinion of *Thucydides* change into *Sicoris* (at this day *Segre*) and others speak of a Citie called *Sicania*, and one *Sicanus* Captain of the Colony, all which are as true as any. Neither could these *Sicani* be driven from their seats by the *Ligures*, whose habitation was not in *Spain* beyond the *Pyreanean Hills*, but in *Gaul* near the River *Rhodanus* and the *Alps*. Lastly, that difficult journey which those obscure people must have taken by Land (for the use of shipping was much later in *Spain*) through the Countreys of the *Tyrrhenians*, *Umbri*, *Ligures*, *Ausone*, *Opici*, *Oenotrians*, and other fierce and warlike Nations, after the passage of the *Pyreanians*, *Alps*, and *Gaul*, may justly induce as to give credit rather to the opinion of *Diodorus*, and of *Demetrius Calatianus* a most ancient Writer; who, as the *Scholiast* of *Theocritus* telleth us, derived the *Sicani* from the *Cyclopes* or *Gyants*.

Neither the  
Siculi out of  
Italy.

5. That the *Siculi* came out of *Italy* several grave Authors relate, as amongst others *Diodorus* and *Dionysius* of *Halicarnassus* from the credit of *Hellanicus* the *Lesbian*, *Philistus*, and *Antiochus*, both of *Syracuse*; but they so diversly relate the story, that it appeareth to be no other than dubious, and so intricate as nothing certainly can be pitched on. In *Thucydides* the *Opici*, in *Antiochus* the *Oenotrians* and *Opici* drove out the *Siculi*: But in *Hellanicus* instead of *Siculi* the *Elymi* and *Ausone* were expelled, with *Siculus* their King, by the *Oenotrians* and *Japyges*. Again, according to the mind of *Philistus*, neither any *Siculi*, *Ausone*, nor *Elymi* transported themselves out of *Italy*; but the *Ligures* under conduct of *Siculus*. *Solinus* and *Martianus* make this *Siculus* the son of *Nepitune*, *Isidorus* the brother of *Italus*, *Servius* Captain of the *Sicani*, and *Antiochus* will have him a *Roman* Exile, whom *Morges* the Successor of *Italus* entertained. Further, *Dionysius* writeth, that the *Siculi* were Native Inhabitants of *Latium*, and thence beaten by the *Aborigines*, which is plainly out of the road of history, the *Siculi* never having been masters of *Rome*. It would be too tedious to recite the several opinions concerning the time when these *Siculi* should make their passage out of *Italy* into this Island. And what *Thucydides* bringeth for a confirmation of his opinion, viz. that in his time some of the *Siculi* remained in *Italy*, cannot but be false, no foot-steps of them being to be found out in that Countrey by the discovery of any Geography; so that others, on the contrary, grant that the whole Nation passed over. These arguments drawn from the uncertainty of reports constrain us rather to acquiesce in the opinion of *Bochartus*, who concludeth that no other stranger came from other parts to inhabit *Sicily*, but all were *Indigena*, except the *Greeks* and *Phoenicians*, the *Siculi* and *Sicani* not being distinguished in Nation but onely in place. From the *Phoenicians* (who especially lived about the Promontory of *Lilybaeum*, though they were dispersed throughout the Maritime Coasts) he sheweth the Island itself, and every notable Town and River to have been named, in the first book of that admirable work intituled *Canann*.

6. *Sicily*, saith *Justin* out of *Trogus*, was from the beginning the Countrey of the *Cyclopes*, which being extinct *Cocalus* made himself King of the Island. To him fled *Dadalus* for protection, from the presence of *Minos* King of *Crete*. This *Dadalus* was an *Athenian*, of the family of the *Erechthidae*, and a famous Artificer in all manner of Graven and Carved works. It hapned that he had a Scholar, his own Nephew by his sister, named *Talos*, who going beyond him in skill, he privately murdered him, and the matter coming out, was forced to fly for his life, and went into *Crete*. There being courteously entertained by *Minos*, he wrought many rare pieces of Architecture, but at length so displeased the King in something which concerned *Pasiphae* his wife, that he also fled thence into *Sicily*, where he was entertained by *Cocalus* King of the *Sicani*, then reigning at *Inyus*, called also *Camicus*. Some thought

## SECT. I.

thought that by the means of *Pasiphae* he escaped by boat, his Son *Icarus* accompanying him in another, and that having invented sails, (whereas before oars onely were in use) *Icarus* not managing his with skill enough, his Vessel sunk, and thereupon arose the Fable that they escaped with wings made of feathers waxed together, and of the young man's soaring so high, till the Sun melting the wax, he thereupon fell headlong into that part of the Sea which afterwards bare his name. Others thought *Icarus* was drowned as he took water. But *Minos* getting notice whither *Dadalus* was fled, pursued him with an Army, and required *Cocalus* to give him up. *Cocalus* returned him a satisfactory answer, and invited him unto his house, where he stified him in a bath, or else his daughters, for the love they bore to *Dadalus*, when they came to wash him (which was the custom for women and maids to do unto guests, according to *Athenaus*) instead of warm water, poured on him scalding pitch. He gave up his body to his men, pretending he had slipped by chance into hot water, and perswaded them to stay and plant in the Island, where they built *Minoa* and *Engyum*, now *Gange*, the two first Greek Cities founded in *Sicily*, as some note. The *Cretans* afterwards in revenge for their King's death, came and besieged *Camicus* five years to no purpose, and were shipwrackt in their return upon the Coast of *Italy*, where then resolving to stay and hide their disgrace, they built *Hyria*, betwixt *Tarentum* and *Brundisium*, and from them descended the *Japyges* and *Messapii*. This passage concerning *Minos* the younger, happened in the dayes of *Hercules* the *Gracian*, an Age before the *Trojan War*.

7. After *Cocalus* the several Cities (because they wanted rightful and successive Kings, as it seemeth, and lived under loose Democracy) became the prey of Tyranny, whereof no Country was ever more fertile than this Island, saith *Justin*. Of these, *Anaxilaus* his Justice vied with the Cruelty of the rest, and was not unrewarded. For at his death leaving his children young, whom he committed to the trust of *Micythus* his faithful slave, his Subjects so prized his memory, as they chose rather to obey him, and suffer the Majesty of a Kingdom to be managed by a slave, than desert his sons. But if by these Tyranny be to be meant, such as after the settlement of the Greek Colonies, made themselves Masters of the Cities (as we have no other ground than to believe; the name of *Anaxilaus* sufficiently declaring it's original) then *Cocalus* living an Age before the *Trojan War*, and the first Greek Colony mentioned by *Thucydides* being planted in the \* 11 Olympiad, this after *Cocalus* is with great liberty used by *Trogus* or *Justin*; several hundreds of years, (viz. five or six) intervening betwixt *Cocalus* and those Tyrants. For the Cities were many years after their founding governed by the People, according to the custom of Greece, till *Phalaris* usurped in the State of *Agri-genium*, which *Suidas* writeth to have happened in the 52 Olympiad, and *Eusebius* in the 54. This difference betwixt them may well be reconciled, if, with *Cappellus*, we believe that *Phalaris* coming to *Agri-genium*, there was kindly entertained for eight years, at the end whereof took occasion from a guest, and perhaps a Judge of Controversies, to make himself Tyrant, and the People slaves.

Phalaris the  
Tyrant.

8. *Phalaris* was born at *Astypalea* a City in *Crete*; his Fathers name was *Laodamus*, who died whilst this his son was an infant. He married *Erythia*, and on her begat *Panrolas*, a little before whose birth being banished, and deprived of the greater part of his estate, he continued long in a desolate condition, not knowing what to do, till at length a Sedition being raised in the State of *Agri-genium*, he was sent for by the weaker faction, and in conclusion got all the power into his hands. He kept the Tyranny by the same arts he first obtained it, viz. fraud and cruelty, for which cause he was grievously hated by many, and his life laid at by those of whom he had well deserved. *Erythia* continued all her life with her son *Panrolas* at *Astypalea*, where though she was much importuned by many Suters, yet she remained steadfast in fidelity to her husband. The Citizens of *Astypalea* when they saw *Phalaris* had so advanced himself, either for that now their hatred was allai-

D d d ed,

A. M. 3441.  
Olymp. 54. an. 1.  
V. C. 190.  
Evilmoda-  
chis. 2.

## SECT. I.

ed, or out of fear of revenge, sent to him to intimate that they had revoked what had been formerly done against him, as unjust. He despised not this late repentance, but sent them his hearty thanks, and rewarded them. Having obtained a victory over the *Leontines*, his son *Paurolas* sent him a Crown of Gold, which he returned back unto his wife *Erythia*. She was at length poisoned by *Pythion* one of her Suters, enraged at a repulse; which thing *Phalaris* took most impatiently.

*Perillus* and  
his brazen  
Bull.

9. It hapned that one *Perillus* an *Athenian*, and an excellent Statuary, came to *Agrigentum*, where shewing his rare skill, he was kindly entertained by *Phalaris*. He taking notice of *Phalaris* his cruelty, framed a brazen Bull, which being heated and a man put in his belly, would by the roaring of him that was thus tormented, imitate the voice of a natural one. Presenting him with this exquisite piece, as incomparable for the torturing of men, he admired his skill, but detesting his wickednesse, caused him first to make a tryall of it, and excused himself to the *Athenians*, who took it ill, as having done nothing but what was just and meet. If *Perillus* had onely made experimenters, *Phalaris* had satisfied all reasonable men; but threatening his Enemies with this Engine, and making good his word upon them as often as he could have occasion, he thereby incurred, and slighted the hatred of mankind. At the same time flourished one *Stesichorus* a Poet of *Himera*, who died eight years before *Phalaris*. He wrote verses against the Tyrant, and raised an Army, animating the Inhabitants of *Himera* against him, with whom joyned *Conon* a most leud and naughty man, and divers others, all which, together with the Poet, at length fell into his hands. *Conon* was presently condemned to the Bull. He doubted at first what to do with *Stesichorus*, but at length beholding his worth, he not onely dismissed him unpunished, but with large gifts; and ever after mightily revered him both alive and dead; inso-much as he desired the *Himerians* to build him a Temple, and Altars (offering for that purpose men, money, and all necessaries) and most lovingly comforted his daughters.

10. He was so great a contemner of Popularity, and so conscious of his wickednesse and publick infamie, that he refused the honours offered him by them of *Melia*, not for any pride, but with a friendly admonition, that it would be to them infamous, and to him not at all advantageous. So when *Stesichorus*, *Cleanetes*, *Theano*, and others, thought of writing in his praise, he seriously desired they would forbear, wishing rather that his name might be buried in oblivion, than celebrated in the Writings of Learned men, and to no purpose, adorned with false commendations. Being grievously provoked by the affronts of the *Messenians*, *Caranians*, *Leontines*, *Zancleanes*, and *Tauromenites*, he prosecuted them to the utmost, often saying, that he most certainly knew they would fall into his hands, which accordingly came to passe. He confesseth that he had tortured in the brazen Engine 37 men, seriously wishing they might be the last; but he foresaw that *Lamachus* and *Epiterfes*, though absent, would increase the number. These things are related in the Epistles that go under his name, which some Learned Men think written by *Lucian*. But whoever so drew to the life another's disposition as he there doth his own, inso-much as *Suidas* accounteth them \* very admirable. If one consider their style, accutenesse, and invention, there are no Epistles of any Tyrant, nor not of any Orator or Philosopher to be compared with them. But if one look at the disposition of the man, he was a portentous thing, born for the chastisement of the naughtinesse of men, of cruel hatred and unparalleled cruelty; yet of a most propense and munificent mind towards his Friends, and withall reverencing Virtue so much in his very Enemies, that for it's sake he would pardon injuries, and relinquish hatred.

*Phalaris* his  
disposition.

11. That is scarce credible which *Clearchus* relateth in (a) *Athenians*, that he was transported with so great cruelty, as to have served up to his table sucking and new born Infants. (b) *Alian* hath a more likely story concerning *Chariton* and *Melanippus*. *Chariton* loved *Melanippus* with an extravagant

(a) Lib. 9.

(b) Lib. 2. c. 4.

*Chariton* and  
*Melanippus*.

travagant and immodest Love, as appeareth from the historian. *Melanippus* having a contest with one of *Phalaris* his friends, was commanded, and at length forced to desist, which taking very ill, he complained of it to his Lover, and desiring his assistance for killing the Tyrant, thought of taking in other young men into the conspiracy. *Chariton* desired of him to trust him alone with the matter to take an opportunity to revenge him, unwilling that both of them should miscarry in it if it were discovered; and on a time made at *Phalaris* with his dagger, but was prevented by his Guard, which he had continually about him. Being examined concerning his Complices, he endured great tortures, so long, that *Melanippus* more sensible of them than he himself, went to the Tyrant, and revealed the whole matter. He admiring the courage and love of both, dismissed them, with this condition, that they should depart the same day out of *Sicilie*. This love which appeareth to have been no better than an unnatural lust, was afterwards by *Apollo* called *divine*, whence, as in other respects, these impure Spirits, the gods of Heathens, betrayed themselves what they were. And hence it is no wonder that the Philosophers of old, such as *Socrates*, *Plato*, *Xenophon*, *Aeschines*, *Cebes*, and the rest, might approve of this affection towards Males, which the (c) *Romans* yet abhorred in some Ages, the (d) *Lacedamonians* held as Capital, and the Lake wherein *Sodom* and *Gommorah* were swallowed up, evinceth to have been contrary to the Law of God and Nature. But as for *Phalaris*, after he had tyrannized sixteen years, he perished by the fury of all the multitude of *Agrigentum*, which, as (e) *Cicero* writeth, fell upon him. Some thought that his subjects conspired against him, being principled thereby the doctrine of *Pythagoras*, of which opinion is also (f) *Jamblich* in the life of this Philosopher. But the whole relation concerning *Pythagoras* his entercourse with *Phalaris* is therefore deservedly suspected, because the Philosopher being yet young had scarce passed into *Italy*. The death of *Phalaris* hapned about the first year of the 58 *Olympiad*, and the twelfth year of *Cyrus* his Reign, reckoned from his first obtaining the Kingdom of *Media*.

## SECT. 2.

## SECT. II.

Of such thing as were Contemporary with the Persian Empire.

1. AFTER the death of *Phalaris*, the Citizens of *Agrigentum* recovered their liberty, and enjoyed it till *Thero* again brought them under. He was the son of *Enesidamus*, and boasted that he was descended from *Oedipus*. He got the prize at the race with the Chariot in the *Olympick* games, and is celebrated by (a) *Pindar* the Poet, whose *Scholias* teacheth us, that he was Father in Law to *Gelon* Tyrant of *Syracuse*, by his daughter *Damaris*, and married also his brother's daughter: At this time *Panatus* made himself Lord of *Leontium*, and *Cleander* of *Gela*. *Cleander*, after seven years, was succeeded by his brother *Hippocrates*, who fore assisted the people of *Naxos*, of *Zancle*, or *Messana*, and *Leontium*, whom he forced to acknowledge him for their Lord. After seven years, he was also slain in a battle against the *Siculi*, having before this made war with the *Syracusians*, and by composition got from them the City of *Camerina*. After his death *Gelon* the son of *Dinomenes* (descended of the race of the *Rhodians*, who with the *Cretans* and other *Greeks* had seated themselves in *Sicilie*) that had commanded his Forces with great successe, and to whom he committed the trust of his Children, breaking all obligations made himself Lord of *Gela*. After he was in possession of this Town, a Sedition happening in *Syracuse*, betwixt the Magistrates and People, he being called in to the assistance of the Governours that were driven out by the multitude, made himself Prince. Such being the danger and infirmity of all Governments, except rightfully successive Monarchy. This fell out in the second year of the 72 *Olympiad*;

(c) Val. Max.  
l. 6. c. 1.  
Plut. in Mar-  
cello.  
(d) Alian  
l. 3. c. 12.  
(e) Offic. l. 2.  
(f) Cap. 32.

A. M. 3525.  
Ol. 75. an. 1.  
V. C. 274.  
Xerxis 6.

(a) Olymp.  
Herod. l. 7.  
c. 153, &c.  
Panfan. l. 6.  
Sive Eliac. l.  
posteriore.

D d d z

when

## SECT. 2.

when *Hybridides* was *Archon* at *Athens*, the 31th of *Darius Hystaspis*, and the fame, as some reckon, wherein the battel at *Marathon* was fought. Now the comportment of *Sicilian* affairs constraining us to speak most concerning *Syracuse*, so considerable a place, both as to its self, as a Citie, and as the scene of so great transactions, requireth a more accurate description.

The Original of *Syracuse*.

2. *Syracuse* was first inhabited by some *Greeks* of *Ætolia*, and had the name of *Ortygia*. These were expelled by the *Siculi*, who possessed themselves of the place, and at length were outed also by a Colony led hither out of *Peloponnesus* by *Archon* the *Corinthian*, in the eleventh *Olympiad*, *Romulus* then reigning at *Rome*, and the *Messinian* War being very hot in *Peloponnesus*. This new Colony, because of *Archias*, and for that many followed him from *Corinth*, owned that Citie for its Metropolis, which at that time was most powerfull at Sea. But many afterwards flocked out of other parts of *Peloponnesus*, and by little and little the Citie of *Syracuse* so increased, as it became not onely the greatest, and most beautifull of all in *Sicily*, but of *Greek* Cities whatsoever, as *Cicero* affirmeth. It contained, as he writeth, four great Cities; the *Island*, *Acradina*, *Tycha*, and *Neapolis*. Its compass was 180 furlongs, having, besides Suburbs, two Ports very commodious for shipping, being separated by the *Island*, and grounds about it very fertile, in some places rising into little Hills, but compassed about with Fennes. The first Inhabitants dwelt in the *Island* anciently called *Ortygia*; then as the Citie increased the other parts were added, whereof the latest was *Neapolis*. As for the state of the Citie, after it received a new beginning from *Archias*, the form of the Commonwealth was without doubt the same that then was in the Metropolis under the Government of the *Bacchiadae*, viz. *Oligarchical*, bordering upon *Aristocracy*. Afterwards the common people waxing heady outed the better sort of the possession of the grounds, and seizing on the Government, made had to be worse, as the sad changes and desolations will shew. The Exiles (by *Herodotus* called *Gamari*) betook themselves to *Gelon* the *Tyrannus* of *Gela*, who coming to restore them with an Army, the people resisted not, but received him into the Citie, whereby obtaining the whole power, he restored it not to the Nobility, but made himself master of *Syracuse*. This hapned at the time aforesaid, and about 244 years after the Plantation of *Archias*.

The acts and power of *Gelon*.

3. *Gelon* so used his power as he was loved by all, and feared by none. He every way much enlarged, adorned, and enriched the Citie; out of all Conquered Towns he took the Noblest, and worst disposed Citizens, and brought them to *Syracuse*. He procured the affections of almost all that dwelt in *Sicily*, and so greatly strengthen'd himself, that he was able with a Navy of 200 Triremes, and as great an Army as all *Greece* could set forth against *Xerxes*, to help the *Gracians* in the *Median* War; and had gone to their assistance, if they would either have granted him the Command of the Land Army or the Fleet. When he could obtain neither of those, he employed his forces against the *Carthaginians*, who had been called into *Sicily* by the *Egestians*, and on the same day wherein the *Greeks* obtained their victory at *Salamine*, got so great an one over them at *Himera* a Maritime Town, that his glory is thought to have equalled, if not exceeded, the other of *Themistocles*. At this time the *Carthaginians* were very powerfull, and become Eminent; whose affairs being by necessity to be joyned with such matters as relate to this *Island* of *Sicily*, a more convenient place cannot be had, to speak something (as this work requireth) of the Original, and progresse of their Commonwealth.

The Original of *Carthage*.

4. *Carthage* was a Colony of *Tyre*, and *Tyre* of *Sidon* the most ancient Metropolis of *Phœnicia*, mentioned by *Homer* with commendation for ingenious industry (who hath not one word concerning *Tyre*) and built by *Sidon* the eldest son of *Canaan*. *Tyre* was built about the 2747 year of the World, and 240 years before *Solomons* Temple, as (a) *Josephus* hath observed. The *Greeks* thought it received its name from *Tyrus* the Founder: and

(a) *Antiquit. l. 8. c. 2.*

## SECT. 2.

and (b) some invented a fable of a Nymph, called *Tyros*, beloved by *Hercules*. But *Tor* in the *Phœnician* language signifying a Rock, the situation it self sufficiently declareth the Original of the name, which upon this account was communicated to three other places, besides this eminent Citie, viz. (c) two in the Continent, and another in the same Island. Near the Island of this famous City stood *Palatyrus*, or *Old Tyre*, mentioned by *Josephus*, and called a strong Citie even at the division of the Land of *Canaan*, which hapned about 200 years before the building of that whereof we speak. Now (d) *Josephus* maketh the Temple of *Jerusalem* to have been founded in the eleventh year of the reign of *Hiram* King of *Tyre*, who was son to *Abibaal*, by *Josephus* called *Abibalus*, and by *Eusebius*, *Abelbalus*. *Hiram*, or *Haram* according to the *Hebrews*, (by the *Greeks* called *Irom* and *Syron* (for *Horum*) by *Eupolemus*;) was a great friend to *David*, and supplied *Salomon* his son with materials, and work-men for building the Temple. He also proposed hard questions to *Solomon* to be unfolded, as *Menander* testified, who translated the *Tyrian* Annals into the *Greek* language: He strengthen'd, and enlarged the Citie of *Tyre*, as *Dion* also wrote, and reigned 34 years. After him his son *Baleastartus* reigned 7. and *Abdastartus* 9. who being slain by the four sons of his Nurse, the eldest of them reigned twelve years. Then *Astartus* the son of *Baleastartus* 12. his brother *Astarimus* 9. who was slain by his brother *Phelles*. *Phelles* reigned but eight moneths, being killed by *Ishobalus* the Priest of *Astarta*, who reigned 32 years; after him *Badezorus* his son 6. then *Metinus* his son 9. and lastly, *Pygmalion* 40. in the seventh of whose reign his sister *Dido* built the Citie of *Carthage* in *Africk*. Therefore from the beginning of *Hiram's* reign to the building of *Carthage* intervened 155 years and eight moneths; and whereas the Temple was founded at *Jerusalem* in the twelfth of his reign, from the building of the Temple to that of *Carthage* passed 143 years and eight moneths, as *Josephus* collecteth from the Testimony of *Menander* the *Ephesian*, in his first book against *Apion*.

The several opinions concerning the building of *Carthage*.

It consisted of three parts.

5. But *Appian* in his History of the *Punic* Wars, writeth that *Carthage* was built by the *Tyrians*, 50 years before the destruction of *Troy*, which precedeth the former date 360 years. He nameth as founders *Zorus* and *Carchedon*, according to the opinion of the *Greeks*, who thought them the Captains of the Colony; whereas *Tor*, or *Zor*, was the name of the Metropolis, and *Carchedon* of the new Citie, *Carthada* signifying a New Citie in the *Phœnician* language, as *Solinus* witnesseth. *Strabo* again will have the *Phœnicians* to have led out Colonies as far as the Pillars of *Hercules*, and planted some, a little after the *Trojan* War, upon the Maritime Coasts of *Africk*, with which *Virgil* closing, feigneth *Dido* to have reigned at *Carthage* at that time; whereas she was 300 years later, according to the Testimony of the *Phœnician* Annals; so as *Servius* upon the Poet affirmeth the whole story of *Aeneas* and *Dido* to be a fiction, and utterly against the course of History. Further, *Eusebius* noteth that some accounted *Carthage* built 143 years after the destruction of *Troy*, about the 2966 year of the World, and the 23 of the reign of *David*, 164 years or more before the time assigned to *Dido* by *Menander*. For the reconciliation of these several assertions it must be considered that *Carthage* consisted of three parts, viz. *Cohen*, *Megara*, and *Byrsa*, whereof the first was the Port, and the last the Citadel compassed about by the second, called *Magalia* and *Magaria*, but more truly *Megara*, signifying properly in the *Punic* language, dwellings in a strange Country. 'Tis conceived that these might be built at several times; as that part about the Haven before the War of *Troy*; the other some time within 144 years after the destruction of it, which might rightly, in respect of the other, be called *Carthada*, or *New Town*; and lastly, the *Byrsa* by *Dido* 165 years after. For the *Phœnicians* being masters at Sea, might according to their pleasure, as they had occasion, send out Colonies, which they began to do from the time that *Joshua* expelled them out of the Land of *Canaan*. The *Greeks* themselves believed that *Cadmus* made an expedition into *Africk*, and there

(b) *Stephanus Byzantius. Pollux. lib. 1. (c) Scylax in descriptione Phœnicis vide Ezechiel. Canaan lib. 2. cap. 17. (d) Antiquit. lib. 8. cap. 2. & contra Apionem lib. 1.*

Lib. 1. p. 48.



## SECT. 2.

there built many Cities, as appeareth out of *Nonius*; and he built the Citadel at *Thebes* about the time of *Joshua*. In *Procopius* his age, who lived under *Justinian* the Emperour, about the 540 year of Christ, the two Pillars were yet standing, which those *Canaanites* erected that fled from the face of *Joshua*, in that part of *Africk*, called *Tingitana*, as the inscription testified, which we formerly mentioned, and *Ensebius* writeth that these same *Canaanites* led Colonies into *Tripolis* in *Africk*. Lastly, amongst several other Cities built by the *Phœnicians*, the most considerable, after *Carthage*, was *Utica*, some ten miles distant from it, which *Aristotle*, from the *Phœnician* Histories reporteth to be 287 years antienter than *Carthage*, and *Velleius Paterculus* to have been built by the *Tyrians* a few years after *Gades*, about the time of *Codrus*, who being Contemporary with *Saul*, this Citie obtained the name of *Utica* or *Lyca*, that is (saith *Bochartus*) in the *Phœnician* language, *Old* or *Antient*.

The story of  
Dido.

6. *Dido* was sister to *Pygmalion* King of *Tyre*, & wife to *Sichæus*, or *Sicharbas* their Uncle the Priest of *Hercules*. *Sichæus* being murdered by *Pygmalion* for his Wealth, she out of hatred to, or for fear of her brother fled into *Africk*, with all she could take, & thereby disappointed the murderer of his prey. The story goeth, that coming into *Africk*, she & her Companions were repelled by *Hiarbas* the King of that place, till they craftily desired to buy of him so much ground as an Ox's hide would compasse. The *Africans* laughed at their folly, and out of desire to see what use they could make of so little ground, swore to make good the bargain. The *Phœnicians* then cut the Hide all into one small thong, with which they encompassed twenty furlong, and thereon built a Castle, thence, (saith the *Greeks*) called *Byrsa*. But learned men explode this story of the Hide as a meer invention, and a fable raised from a false explication of the word, which in the *Hebrew* tongue is *Bosra*, and signifying a fortified place, or *Castel*, is changed into *Byrsa* for the better sound, because the Genius of the *Greek* language suffereth not *S* & *R* to be joyned together. *Justin* out of *Trogus* relateth that *Hiarbas* King of *Mauritania* sent for ten of the principal *Carthaginians*, and required *Dido* in marriage, threatening else to make War upon them. At their return they told her he desired some one who might reach his people breeding and manners, but none could be found that was content to leave his Countrey, and joyn himself with the *Barbarians*, whose lives were like to those of wild beasts. She blaming them all exceedingly, that they preferred their private commodity before the good of their Countrey, to which if need required they ought their very lives, they opened to her the whole matter, saying, that what she would impose upon others, she ought not her self to refuse. Being caught with this wile, she long called on the name of *Sichæus*, her husband, with many tears and great lamentation, then taking three months time for the doing of what there was necessity for, she made a pile of wood, as though to make a *Parentation* to *Sichæus*, and appease his Ghost before her second marriage. Having killed many beasts, she ascended the Pile with a Sword in her hand, and turning to the people said, that now she was going to her husband, and therewithall killed her self. Before the name of *Dido* (which some make to signifie *Loved* or *Amiable*, and others more probably *Wandering* or *Erratick*) she had that of *Elissa*, be- rokening a *Divine Woman*, or *Virago*. The *Latin* word *Virago*, in *Greek* written *Ouirago*, is in *Ensebius* corrupted into *Origo*, and being applied as a name to the Citie, and not to the woman, by a misunderstanding hath much perplexed *Joseph Scaliger* and others.

The form of  
Government  
at Carthage.

7. *Carthage* then being re-edified, or enlarged by *Dido*, and the Colony she brought thither, about the 3122 year of the World, in the dayes of *Jo- has* King of *Judah*, and *Jehu* of *Israel*, 310 years after the destruction of *Troy*, 97 before the first *Olympiad*, and 120 before the building of *Rome*, was at first under Monarchical Government; but afterwards rejecting it, indured many hazards and hardships, which followed loose liberty, where- of most are briefly recited by *Justin* in his eighteenth book, and those that follow. The (a) Philosopher compareth this Commonwealth with those of

Alexander E-  
piphanius apud  
Josephum ut  
prius. Justin  
lib. 18.  
Appian. lib. de  
bellis Punicis.  
Servius in  
Æneid. lib. 1.

Vide Bocharti  
Canaan.  
lib. 1. c. 14. &  
Simson. ad  
A.M. 3132.

## SECT. 2.

the *Cretans* and *Lacedæmonians*, saying that it was mixed of *Aristocracy* and *Policy*, as he calleth it. (b) *Polybius* saith it was composed of *Kingly*, *Aristocratical*, and *Democratical* Governments, and (c) *Isocrates* maketh it *Oligarchical* at home, and in War *Monarchical*. As two Kings at *Lacedæmon* had the first rank of Magistracie with equal power, so at *Carthage* two persons, by them called *Suffetes*, and by *Aristotle*, and *Polybius*, and *Corn. Nepos*, termed *Kings*, yet onely nominally; As the former were for life, so these but *Annual* (in which respect (d) *Livie* compareth them with the *Consuls* of *Rome*) and their dignity being hereditary, those were yearly elected out of any noble Families. Such were especially preferred as were accounted most eminent for Virtue, and able to defray the charges of their place. *Aristotle* commendeth this above the *Lacedæmonian* custom, all but that concerning their wealth, imputing it as an error to the Legislator; who ought another way to have provided for Magistrates, that they might attend publick businesse without any detriment to themselves, and so be preferred merely for their Virtue.

The Suffetes.

8. These *Suffetes* were more rightly in their own Language called *Sophetims*, the *Hebrew* name of those chief Judges amongst the *Israelites*, who from *Joshua* to *Saul* governed their Commonwealth, and the History of whose actions by us called *Judges*, hath the same title of *Sophetims*, for that interpretation which renders it *Sophims* (i.e. *Overseers*) at the first sight appeareth lesse probable. Their Office was to assemble the *Senate*, in which doublelesse they presided and proposed. They decided causes Criminal, but their power was confined to home, nothing appearing of their meddling with warlike matters, or having command of the Armies. To these *Suffetes* was added a *Senate*, which because *Aristotle* compareth it with that of *Lacedæmon*, may be supposed elective out of the best sort and most antient men, and the Senators it's likely, enjoyed the dignity all their lives. How many they were in number doth not appear; but that herein this Senate exceeded the other of *Lacedæmon*, is to be gathered from \* *Justin*, who speaketh of 100 persons that out of it were chosen for Judges, to take account of the actions of all Generals at their return from the Wars. This Senate, as that at *Rome*, was the chief member, and as the Soul of the State, wherein the *Suffetes* propounding, as the *Consuls* there, all things of moment were brought to it; especially what concerned those great things of Empire: viz. *Peace*, *War*, and *Leagues*. The *Suffetes* deliberating with the *Senate*, if it was unanimous, and they resolved the same thing, their Decree was Law to the whole State; but if the *Senate* and *Suffetes* disagreed, then was the matter referred to the People.

Concio or As-  
sembly.

9. In the *Concio* or *Assembly* of the People, any one of the rabble might speak his mind freely, and without danger contradict the Magistrates. The People's Decree concerning any thing referred, was taken for the ultimate determination of the whole and State, and being once passed was so binding, that it was not lawful to offer any thing against it, which *Aristotle* reprehendeth (and well may he) as too Popular, and too much declining from the best form of a Commonwealth, affirming this Constitution to have no place in the best modelled States. But \* *Polybius* dissenting from the Philosopher, where he compareth the *Carthaginian* with the *Lacedæmonick* and *Roman* Commonwealths, sheweth that it was poised of the three kinds of Govern- ment, that the *Suffetes* were as *Kings*, the *Senate* held the place of *Opti- mates* or *Nobility*, and the People a convenient power. Yet he addeth, that when *Hannibal* made War upon the *Romans*, (which happened ten years after the death of *Aristotle*), the State of *Carthage* declined from it's antient and best condition, the People having assumed more than formerly, when the *Roman* Senate's authority was yet whole. This he thinketh to have much incommodated their affaires, and brought great advantage to the *Romans*. But what authority the People had during the best and most antient State, he no where in those Books and fragments that are remaining, declareth. *Epimi- nus* thinketh that it consisted in electing Magistrates, making Laws, Leagues, Peace,

(b) Lib. 16.  
(c) In Nycopie  
pag. 61. totius  
opus editi  
Geneve 1636.

(d) Lib. 10.

\* Livius ibid.  
Legge Mbonum  
Emmum in  
Defer. Resp.  
Carthaginiensi-  
um.

\* Lib. 19.

\* quo supra.

Consulte Poly-  
bium.

## SECT. 2.

Peace, and War; in appointing and ordering Negotiations, Customs, Tributes, and such like things, which concerned the generality, and respected the profit of the multitude. But some of these things seem rather to have fallen under the consideration of the Kings and Senate; however the disorders that followed, as in all other such Governments, will satisfy the Reader in his opinion of the excellency of Monarchy.

Council of  
104.

10. Besides the Senate there was a Council of 104 men, whereof *Aristotle* only informeth us, and which, according to the round number, from him we may call the *Cennumvirate*. They had power to chuse five men out of their body, who had very large and great authority; Both these sorts of Magistrates retained their power longer than any other, enjoying it both before and after they came to be of the five, which thing was plainly *Oligarchical*. But in that they were not chosen by lot, but by the Suffrages of the People, and served without wages; in that they alone took cognisance of, and judged controversies, and publick actions, none being remitted to others, as the custom was at *Lacedæmon*, this he taketh notice to be *Aristocratical*. He compareth the power of the *Cennumvirate* with that of the *Ephori* at *Sparta*, whereby he teacheth us, that the power of judging lay in it. And as the *Ephori* were (according to him) Conservators of Popular liberty at *Sparta*, protecting the *Plebeians* against the power of the great ones, so it is likely, from these words of *Aristotle*, that those 100 men at *Carthage* were the Keepers of the *Popularity*. Herein he prefereth them before the *Ephori*, that they were not chosen out of the rabble, but the better sort of Citizens, wherein lay also a piece of *Aristocracy*; for mean persons being preferred to greatest places, do much hurt a *Commonwealth*, saith he, and have already endamaged that of the *Lacedæmonians*. Amongst civil Officers there were some that made inspection into the manners of the Citizens, as *Corn. Nepos* telleth us in the life of *Amilcar*, the Father of famous *Hannibal*, from whom they removed a beautiful young man called *Asdrubal*, because he was reported to be more familiar with him, than modestly required. There was also a *Prætorship* which had authority to look to the Customs and Tributes, and also to prefer Laws, as appeareth by *Hannibal*, who being chosen into this office, not only reformed the Customs, but also taking notice of the corruption of Judges, procured a Law for them to be chosen every year. But whether there were more than one of these Officers, is not to be discovered from ancient Writers.

Censors.

Prætorship.

Faults in the  
Common-  
wealth.

11. Besides the faults before mentioned, *Aristotle* reprehendeth the Custom of chusing the *Suffetes* for their riches, which openeth a dore to avarice and indirect practices thence arising. He also noteth it as a fault, that one and the same man had several Offices, which yet they esteemed as a great honour. One detestable practice they used of old, to sacrifice to their gods humane Sacrifices, when any affliction or disaster fell upon them, and even their own Sons, as *Plato* witnesseth, which custom they seem to have brought with them out of *Palæstine*, every year sending thither such kind of presents unto *Hercules*, as we find in *Pliny*. Another absurd Law they had, which forbade any Citizens to learn the *Greek* Language, lest they should hold intelligence with the Enemy, because one *Sunior* had so done with *Dionysius* the elder, as *Justin* writeth. This indeed was laudable, that this City abominated Drunkenness, and severely prohibited Wine as much as to be tasted in the Camp, as *Plato* recordeth in his Laws. This also *Aristotle* commendeth, that, for an encouragement to warfare, they had a Law which gave liberty to a Soldier to wear so many Rings as he had served times in the field.

Lib. 30. cap. 1.

Good Laws.

The People were by their natural constitution, morose and surly, obedient to their Magistrates, tyrannical towards their Subjects, most dejected in time of fear, and cruel in anger, resolute in their designs, notwithstanding all force of flattery, and so infamous for their breach of faith, that the *Punic* faith or trust became a Proverb. As for their greatness and Dominion, the description thereof is to be left to its proper place. Now must their affairs abroad in *Sicily* and other parts, be defined with the matters of that Island.

12. At

## SECT. 2.

(a) Decad. 1.  
lib. 4.

(b) Lib. 18.

Mazæus.

Mago.

Darius his  
message to the  
Carthaginians.

12. At what time, or upon what occasion the *Carthaginians* first came into *Sicily* is uncertain, (a) *Livie* will have them first called in by the Sedition of the Islanders. in the year that *T. Quinius* (Surnamed *Cincinnatus*, as also *Penno*) and *Cn. Julius Meno* were Consuls, which was in the beginning of the *Peloponnesian* War, the 323 year of the City, 50 years after the passage of *Xerxes* into *Greece*, and consequently as many from the Victory which *Gelon* got over them; a grosse mistake. (b) *Justin* out of *Trogus*, having first related their impious custom of pleasing their gods by humane Sacrifices, addeth, that the divine powers being therewith displeased or averse to them, when they had long unhappily made War in *Sicily*, they translated it into *Sardinia*, and there losing the greatest part of their Army, received a grievous overthrow, whereupon they banished *Mazæus* their General, (by whom they had conquered a great part of *Sicily*, and done great matters against the *Africans*) with that part of the Army which remained. The Army taking this in great disdain, sent to the City to desire a repealing of the Act of banishment, and threatened by force to rescind it, in case they were thereto constrained by a denial of their sure. Their message being despised, they besieged the City, and after a few dayes took it. *Mazæus* calling the People together, complained of the injury, excused the necessity of the War, and inveighed against the contempt of his Victories. He said he would pardon all, but such as had been authors of the injurious Exile of their fellow Citizens; and accordingly putting ten of the Senators to death, he restored the City to its Laws. Not long after being accused of an intention to make himself absolute, he was punished both for his parricide committed against his Country, and his own Son (as *Justin* termeth it) whom being a Priest, he had crucified, for refusing to come to him before he had finished his superstitious rites, and when he came appeared in his purple and other ornaments, which *Mazæus* thought unsuitable with the condition of him his Father. Him succeeded *Mago*, by whose industry the wealth, dominion, and reputation of the *Carthaginians*, for matters of War, increased.

13. *Mago* being the first, who by ordaining military discipline, had laid the foundation of Empire, and added to the strength of the City, as well by introducing Virtue as the Art of War, left two Sons behind him, *Asdrubal* and *Amilcar*, who by treading in his paths, succeeded as well to the greatness as the Patrimony of their Father. Under their conduct the State made War in *Sardinia*, and fought against the *Africans*, who demanded Tribute for the ground on which *Carthage* stood, which also at length they constrained the *Carthaginians* to pay. *Asdrubal* died of his wounds in *Sardinia*, whose death was ennobled by publick mourning, eleven Dictatorships, as *Justin* calleth them (by which seemeth to be understood no other than so many times sending out, or commissioning as General, with full power in the field, yet so as to be under the commands of the State) and four Triumphs: and the Enemies of *Carthage* took heart, as if with the Captain its force and power was also dead. The Inhabitants of *Sicily* then vexed with the continual injuries of the *Carthaginians*, betook themselves to *Leonidas* the brother of the King of *Sparta*, and a great War ensued, wherein both parties long struggled with various Fortune. At this time came Ambassadors from *Darius* (the Son of *Hystaspes*) King of *Persia*, commanding the *Carthaginians* to forbear offering humane Sacrifices, and eating mans flesh, requiring them to burn their dead rather than bury them, and demanding assistance against the *Greeks*, with whom he was about to engage in War. They denied to afford any succours because of their continual Wars with their neighbours; but obeyed him in the rest, lest they should seem too stubborn, saith *Justin*; yet that they stood not to their word, the testimonies of *Plato*, *Diodorus*, and *Pliny*, do certify. Whilst these things passed, *Amilcar* was slain in the War of *Sicily*, leaving three Sons: *Amilco*, *Hanno*, and *Gisgo*. *Asdrubal* also left so many: viz. *Annibal*, *Asdrubal*, and *Sappho*. Of these, *Annibal* is mistaken for *Annibal* the great, by one who hath made some short Notes upon \* *Justin*, and *Amilcar* his Uncle, for *Amilcar* Bar-

E e e

\* Margine ad  
l. 19. excus.  
Londini, pro  
Felice, Kingsto-  
no. 1651.  
chad

## SECT. 2.

\* Vide infra  
paragr. 53.

chas Father to the famous *Annibal*, and *Mago* also for another of this name, that lived \* many years after in the dayes of *Dionysius* the younger, and *Timo- leon*. The Annotator wondreth what came into *Justin's* mind to make *Annibal* (the great) the son of *Asdrubal*, and well he might, if any such thing had been intended: he also referreth the Reader to the life of *Timo- leon*, to find that *Mago* killed himself, and was after his death nailed to a crosse, because he fought unprosperously in *Sicilie*, which *Plutarch* intren- deth of another person. Of this grosse mistake of one (whosoever he was) that took upon him to inform beginners, Students in History are to take no- tice and beware.

The great de-  
feat of *Amil-*  
*car*.

14. For this *Amilcar* seemeth no other than the very same that was slain in the battel fought with *Gelon* of *Syracuse*, in the sixth year of *Xerxes*, Son to *Darius* King of *Persia*, from which was made a digression into the af- faires of *Carthage*. With *Amilcar* perished 150000 *Carthaginians*; the Captives that remained of his Army, filled all the Cities of the Island, and the State of *Carthage* was constrained to beg peace, having, as some say, made this War at the instance of *Xerxes*, that thereby the *Greeks* in *Sicilie* might be diverted from helping their Friends. After this, *Gelon* was offered the Kingdom of *Sicilie*; but he generously refused it, whereby he obtained the greater glory and love. At length, having settled all things well, he died full of honour at *Syracuse*, after he had held the Principality about thirteen years. In the third year of the 75 *Olympiad* his elder brother *Hieron* succeeded him. He rebuilt *Catana*, and changed it's name into *Aetna*, the Moun- tain of which name about this time brake out into flames, as fifty years after it did also. In the beginning of his reign he was much unlike to his brother *Gelon*, being suspicious, cruel, covetous, and turbulent: then caught with a lingering disease, he was much amended by the conversation of most Learned men. After this he fought prosperously against the *Carthaginians*, who now again returned into *Sicilie*, overthrew *Thrasydaus* of *Agri-genium* in a great battel, and drove him to desperation: at length he incurred the hat- red of the *Syracusians*, uncertain for what cause, and shortly after with- drawing himself to *Catana*, there died in the second year of the 78 *Olym- piad*, when he had held the Principality from the death of *Gelon* eleven years and eight moneths.

*Thrasybulus*.

15. After him his brother *Thrasybulus* seized upon the power, whose practices stirred up the Citizens to recover their liberty with the ha- stening of his ruine. For being set upon by them, he was overthrown, and reduced to such a straight, that he fled into *Locri* on the Coast of *Italy*, and there killed himself, having held the Sovereignty ten moneths from the death of *Hieron*. The *Syracusians* now gladly resumed their liberty; yet not therewith content, that they might the more secure it, they freed also many other Cities of *Sicilie*, from *Tyranni* and forein Garrisons. But not long af- ter they fell into a most pernicious Sedition. For excluding those from ho- nours whom *Gelon* had brought into *Syracuse* for the establishment of his own interest, they themselves bearing all Offices of Magistracy, and governing the Commonwealth, though they took not away from the other the freedom of the City, the lately made *Denizons* not enduring it, conspired together, being in number 7000 of 10000 which *Gelon* had brought in. Three years after liberty recovered, they sodainly fell upon two parts of the City: the *Island* and *Acradina*. The natural Inhabitants overpowering them in num- bers, besieged them close, and overthrowing them in a Sea fight, at length constrained them to acquiesce in the present state of things, or else quit the City, after the Sedition and tumult had endured two years. In the mean time by the conduct of *Duceius* a *Sicilian*, those planters that *Hiero* had placed in *Catana*, were thence ejected, and the old Inhabitants restored to the place, whom he had cast out: now also the whole Island was restored to it's ancient condition, the Exiles being repossessed, and new comers driven out, who settled themselves at *Messana*, the utmost part of the Island.

16. That

The form of  
the *Syracusian*  
Common-  
wealth.

16. That form of a Commonwealth was now established at *Syracuse*, which *Aristotle* properly calleth *Policie*, mixed of *Oligarchie* and *Democra- cie*; which, how dangerous it was, appeared shortly. For, after some years, the State continuing in this form, and the number of Citizens increasing, one *Tyndarides*, an Eminent man, and very rich, egged on by his ambition, brought it into great danger. For binding to him the indigent rabble by his gifts, and using them as a Guard, he manifestly pressed towards the sovereignty, but by the Union of those who were in greatest grace with the people, he was re- pressed, and when the beggerly sort would needs undertake his protection, killed in a tumult. When others not at all deterred by this example aspired after such power as threatened liberty, the people for to humble those that carried their heads highest, in imitation of the *Athenians* brought in the use of the *Petalism*. As they by their *Ostracism* removed such Citizens for ten years, who for their reputation and interest were dangerous to the freedom of the Citie, so the *Syracusians* by the *Petalism* removed such like for five years. This kind of banishment, without losse of honour, or fortune, was cal- led in Greek *Petalismos*, because his name whom any one would have ban- ished was written in a leaf of an Olive, according to \* *Diodorus*, both which in the same language were signified by the word *Petalos*. But this constitu- tion, as the other at *Athens*, could not long continue. For those Eminent persons who were most fit for State Affairs, for fear thereof by little and little withdrew themselves from publick businesse to a private life. Hereby the Commonwealth fell into the hands of bold, rash, unskilfull, and the naugh- tiest sort of men, whence grievous incommodities and dangers followed. By these things the people were moved to abrogate the Law of *Petalism*, and the better sort returned to the care of the Commonwealth, after which it re- mained in quietnesse for some time, but again relapsed, as necessarily it must, from the infirmity of Antimonarchical Governme...

The *Petalism*.

Quickly abro-  
gated for  
weighty rea-  
sons.

The Wars of  
the *Syracu-*  
*sians*.

17. Abroad the *Syracusians* had War with the *Tuscan* in *Italy*; with *Duceius* Captain of the *Siculi*, as also the *Agri-genines*, *Trinacrians*, *Leon- tines*, and *Egestans* in *Sicily*, wherein most commonly they had the better, and either fully brought under, or bound to them by Leagues, most of the Ci- ties in the Island. *Leontium* a most flourishing Town was utterly destroyed when it now gaped after the Empire of *Sicily*, the principal Citizens being re- moved to *Syracuse*, and the multitude driven into Exile. Out of these mo- tions they fell into the *Athenian* War in the first year of the 91th *Olympiad*, concerning which we have already sufficiently spoken. *Syracuse* was so ex- hausted therein with expences and slaughters, that upon the brink of ruin it was meerly preserved by the wisdom and valour of *Gylippus*, a stranger of *Sparta*; and not onely preserved, but made victorious to admiration, and in- abled to return to the *Athenians* so great overthrows by Land and Sea. This War which begun in the 50th year after the recovery of their liberty (by means of the *Egestans*, who craved aid of *Athens* against them and the *Seli- nuntians*) lasted not fully three years, leaving a sufficient warning to all, of the vicissitude of humane affairs, and shewing, that they who gape after Do- minion, and are busie to enlarge their bounds, being carried out by the force of ambition rather than reason, often fall into a necessity of defending their own Estate, and sometimes lose all.

The State  
new modelled  
by *Dioctes*.

18. The multitude grown exceeding high upon this successe, would not rest satisfied with its former privileges, but so ordered the matter, that the temper of this Commonwealth more and more degenerated. *Dioctes* a man of prin- cipal note, who had perswaded them to put to death *Nicias* and *Demofthenes* the *Athenian* Generals, being of a most severe and rigid disposition, elo- quent tongue, and great reputation for wisdom, perswaded the people to change the Commonwealth, and elect Magistrates by lot, whereas formerly they were left to the suffrages of the people. The former way inclined to *Oligarchy*; but, by this, admission was given to the meanest and unfittest person to Govern, which ill agreeth with the same of *Dioctes* his wisdom. Some think that the multitude having got a promise from the great ones in

Ecc 2

the

## SECT. 2.

\* Quam lege ad  
Olymp. 81.  
ann. 2.

Lib 2. cap. 4  
Diod.

A.M. 3593.  
Olymp. 92.  
ann. 1.  
V.C. 342.  
Datis North.  
12.

## SECT. 2.

the late danger, in case they would well demean themselves, now wrested this Law from them, that *Diocles* perswaded the Nobility, and the better sort to give way to the time for avoiding some greater mischief, and then he with his Collegues having power from the whole State, as *Diodorus* addeth, form'd this new Commonwealth with convenient Laws, whereby this liberty was bounded, and other things defined as they thought, but falsely, made for publick good. This *Diocles* was in punishment of vice rigid, and inexorable, and yet most just in what was deserved by any man. His Laws were so well thought of by the vulgar, that many Cities of *Sicily* received them on their own accord, the whole praise of the invention being given to him, though he had others joyned with him in the work, that were excellent for wisdom and prudence. In after-times one *Cephalus* under *Timoleon*, and *Polydorus* under *Hieron*, were deputed to the making of Laws, but neither of them were accounted Legislators, but both Commentators upon him, who in the form of his speech was something short and obscure.

19. *Diocles* amongst other Laws ordained, that it should be Capital for any man to come into the Forum, or place where the people was wont to meet, with his Arms, and that neither the plea of ignorance nor any other excuse should stand him in stead that so offended. Afterwards it hapned that he himself having issued out against the Enemy who made incursions, as he returned with his sword, heard of a tumult in the Forum, and so went directly thither, not thinking what he had about him. Being for this reprehended by a private man as breaking his own Laws, he cried out he would do no such matter, but establish them with his blood, and therewithall killed himself. In the Commonwealth thus new modelled by him, 'tis uncertain what order there was, or what method was observed in acting. There was a Senate consisting of 600 men, as we understand from *Diodorus*; but the same of it was very obscure, and the power, as may be gathered, exceeding small, which maketh it be so seldom mentioned. The multitude was sole Lord of all, and dayly meeting together created the chief Magistrates, disposed of the Militia, placing, and displacing Officers therein, decreed War, made peace, contracted Leagues and Alliances, exercised power as to life or death, granted Indemnity, banished, and recalled at their pleasure. Other things of lesser moment were left to Magistrates, which were various, as in other popular Commonwealths. They were annual, as the Generals abroad, 2. 3. 4. or more, as the people pleased, the General at home who was over the Militia of the Citie in time of peace, and had great authority. Others were chosen by lot, as Judges, Treasurers, Censors, and such like, amongst which were also those that oversaw the matters at Sea, the Citie having an excellent site for trading. But things could not thus long stand, the Government being such, and wherein the wisest sort could do least, and the foolish unexperienced rabble was most powerfull, though having no skill in State affairs they little minded what they did, and onely aimed at their private advantage. Hereby they were easily led aside by one, who cunningly, though underhand, wrought his own designs. For scarce were 8 years passed over from the overthrow of the *Athenians*, when *Dionysius* the son of *Hermocrates*, a man of a subtle head, and deep dissimulation, so fooled the multitude, as obtaining from it a Guard for his person, he invaded the Tyranny in the fourth year of the 93<sup>th</sup> Olympiad, the very same that the Citie of *Athens* was yielded up to *Lyfander*. How this was effected must more particularly be related, to let the reader behold the danger of Antimonarchical Government, and the happiness of a people under that of hereditary Kings.

*Dionysius* in-  
flaveth *Syra-*  
cuse.

How this was  
effected by  
degrees.

20. The Citizens of *Agesta* (who had entred into League with *Athens* against the *Syracusians*, and been cause of the *Athenian* War, by reason of the controverfie betwixt the *Selinuntians* and them about some grounds) were in great fear after the overthrow of their friends to be called to account, quitted those grounds for which they had contested. But their adversaries not resting satisfied with the restitution of these Territories, but seizing also upon part of the adjoining Region, they sent to *Carthage* for help, giving up them-

*Diod. ad Olymp.*  
91. ann. 4.

## SECT. 2.

themselves into their protection. The *Carthaginians* were very desirous to be masters of this Citie, so fit for their purpose of Conquering *Sicily*, but on the other hand they stood in fear of the *Syracusians*, who had so lately grappled with, and worsted the power of *Athens*. Yet their ambition prevailing, they promised them aid, which they committed to the care of *Hannibal*, then one of their principal Magistrates, giving him Commission to make War if the case should so require. After the death of *Amilcar* the affairs of *Carthage* had been managed by his, and his brothers sons, being six in number, under whose conduct War was made upon the *Moors* and *Numidians*, and the *Africans* were also constrained to remit the Tribute which had been formerly paid them for the site of the Citie. Now it was, that this great & numerous family being dangerous to the liberty of the Citie, by doing, and judging all things, 100 Judges were chosen from amongst the *Senators*, who received an account from the Generals at their return from the War, that by this awe they might so manage affairs abroad, as having an eye upon Justice, and the Laws at home. To *Amilcar* in *Sicily* succeeded his son *Amilco*, who having good success in the War, both by Land and Sea, on a sudden lost his Army by the force of Pestilence, for which disaster there was a sad mourning at *Carthage* (as it is largely described by *Justin*) and he at his return killed himself. *Hannibal* was his brothers son, being the Grandson of *Amilcar* by his son *Gesco*, or *Gisgo*, as *Diodorus* informeth us.

*Justin. lib. 19.*

\* *Ad Olymp.*  
92. ann. 3.  
A.M. 3595.  
*Olymp. 92.*  
ann. 3.  
V.C. 344.  
*Darius Xerxi*  
14.

*Selinus* taken  
by the *Cartha-*  
*ginians*.

And *Himera*.

21. *Hannibal* having an inbred hatred against all *Greeks*, and an earnest desire by his own acts to redeem the credit of his family, was glad of an opportunity to gratifie his Countrey, and near upon seventy years after the overthrow, and death of his Grand-father, undertook the employment. He first sent to the *Syracusians*, referring the matter betwixt the two Cities unto them, that the *Selinuntians* refusing to stand to any award, as he knew they would, a more specious pretence might be obtained for the War. They accordingly opposing it, the *Syracusians* decreed to hold them as Allies and Confederates, and also to be at peace with the *Carthaginians*; but the two concerned Cities falling upon each other, both *Syracuse* and *Carthage* was thereby drawn into the quarrel. *Hannibal* then having both in *Spain* and *Africk* made great preparations, the next year landed at *Lilybaeum* the most Southern Cape of *Sicily* towards *Africk*, and setting upon the *Selinuntians* at unawares with a vast Army, took their Citie in the 10<sup>th</sup> day of the siege, wherein he made Captive 7000 persons, 16000 being slain, and 2600 escaped to *Arigentum*. He permitted *Empedion* and his kindred to people it anew, under condition of paying Tribute to *Carthage*. This was the condition of *Selinus*, after it had stood 242 years from its first founding by the *Megarians*, who being descended from *Megara* in *Greece* first came into *Sicily* under conduct of *Lamis*, and built a Town upon the River *Pantacius*, called *Trotulus*. Thence *Lamis* departing with some of his Colony went to the *Leontines* and *Chalcidians*, with whom having lived some time he was driven out by them, and planting some Inhabitants in *Thapsus*, after his death they left the place, and under conduct of *Hyblon* the *Sicilian* King, who betrayed the Countrey, inhabited *Megara*, and were called *Hyblaens*. After 245 years they were driven hence by *Gelon* of *Syracuse*, but 145 years before this, they sent out a Colony with *Pamphilus*, which built *Selinus*.

22. *Hannibal* from *Selinus* marched to *Himera*, having a particular grudge against that place for his Grand-father's death. Falling on it with all his might, he was repulsed for a little time by the resolute valour of the Inhabitants, but the Wall being bearen down with his Engines, he shortly took it. Many Women and Children had withdrawn themselves out of the Citie; of those men which he took he carried up 3000 to the Hill where his Grand-father had been slain, and there killed them, being before used with all kinds of indignities; then rased he the Citie which had been inhabited 240 years, and dismissing his Mercenaries and Subjects of *Sicily* departed home, where he was received with greatest expressions of honour and affection for having

## SECT. 2.

having done in three moneths what other Captains would have required far larger time to effect. After his departure, *Hermocrates* the *Syracusian* (who having been sent as General to the assistance of the *Lacedæmonians*, was condemned to banishment in his absence, through the malice of his Enemies) returned with a considerable Force into *Sicilie*, and to ingratiate himself with his Country-men, repeopled *Selinus*, and fell upon the tributaries of *Carthage*. The more still to indear himself, he took up the bones of those *Syracusians* that fell at *Himera*, and in a cariage sent them to the City, well knowing, that this would procure as love to him, so envy and hatred to *Diocles* his main adversary, who having been the Captain of the slain, had taken no care for their burial. *Diocles* much opposed their publick Sepulture, but the People resolutely decreed it, then banished him, and yet they recalled not *Hermocrates*, being jealous lest he should improve his power and abilities to the making of himself absolute. He then being in despair of returning by fair means, attempted to do it by force, and getting in to the City, was amongst his complices killed by the multitude.

23. In the second year of the 93 Olympiad, the *Syracusians* sent to *Carthage* to complain of the late War, and to desire that for the time to come they would forbear all hostility, to which they returned an ambiguous answer, and made all possible provision for an Army, wherewith to subdue the whole Island. Before they transported any Forces they sent a Colony thither, which at the hot waters built a City, and called it *Therma*. The year following they ordered *Hannibal* to go over as General, who excusing himself by reason of his Age, they joyned with him *Imilco* the son of *Hanno*, one of the same Family. These two Generals then made Levies throughout *Africk*, hired Soldiers out of *Spain*, the Islands *Baleares*, and *Italy*; and got together an Army of 120000 men according to *Timæus*, but after *Ephorus* his reckoning 300000. As they were passing over, the *Syracusians* met them, and sunk fifteen of their Vessels, but with the rest *Hannibal* passed safe over, and fell upon the rich and stately City of *Agrigentum*, which contained 200000 persons. The *Agrigentines* wanted not assistance from their friends, all the *Greek* Cities being deeply concerned in their welfare, and the *Syracusians* gave the besiegers a considerable defeat, who demolishing the Tombs and Monuments the better to get to the walls, had thereby pulled down a Pestilence upon themselves, saith *Diodorus*, wherein *Hannibal* died. But *Imilco* (or *Imilcar*) thereby not discouraged, continued the Siege, expiating the offence, as he thought, by sacrificing a Boy to *Saturn*, and drowning a company of Priests in the Sea as an offering to *Neptune*. His Soldiers mutinying for provisions, he supplied, by taking of the ships which loaded with necessities were sent from *Syracuse* to the besieged. Hereby he starved them within, and constrained them to quit the City, being guarded to *Gela* by armed men. *Imilcar* found extraordinary rich plunder in it, whereof some rarities he sent to *Carthage*, amongst which was *Phalaris* his Bull, though *Timæus* the Historian carping at all others, by denying that there was ever any such thing, is justly censured by *Diodorus*. For *Scipio Africanus* the younger, 260 years after, having destroyed *Carthage*, restored this Engine to the *Agrigentines*, with whom it was yet remaining when *Diodorus* wrote his History.

24. *Imilcar* having, after a Siege of eight moneths, thus mastered *Agrigentum*, a little before the Winter solstice, destroyed it not presently, that therein he might quarter his Soldiers that Winter. All the Island was struck with great fear upon report of what had happened; some of the *Sicilians* departed to *Syracuse*, and others transported their wives and children with their wealth into *Italy*. The *Agrigentines* being got safe to *Syracuse*, accused their Captains, as having betrayed their Country, and the *Syracusians* were also blamed by the rest for having chosen such Generals, as by their dishonesty had brought *Sicilie* into extreme danger. A meeting being had at *Syracuse*, and great fear of a War possessing all men's minds, none dared to speak one word, or give any advice. All sticking at the matter, at length stood up *Dionysius*

*Diodorus ad  
Olymp. 93. an. 1.*

*A. M. 3598.  
Ol. 93. an. 1.  
V. C. 347.  
Idem ad an. 2.*

*Ad an. 3.*

And *Agrigentum*.

## SECT. 2.

*Dionysius* the Son of *Hermocrates*, and accusing the Captains of having betrayed *Agrigentum*, earnestly moved the People to punish them forthwith, and not stay the time prefixed by Law. For this unlawful and seditious motion, the Magistrates fined him; but one *Philistus* a wealthy man, who afterwards wrote his History, bade him proceed, promising to pay his fine, though it were a whole day together. Animated hereby he proceeded, urging that the Captains had been corrupted to betray the interest of *Sicilie*, and accusing others of the better sort of Citizens as affecting *Oligarchy*. He therefore moved that new Officers might be created, such as were not eminent for power, but good will towards the People, for that the other usurping dominion despised the common sort, and made their own markers out of the publick; whereas those being of lower fortunes, by a consciousness of their own weakness could not attempt such a matter.

25. Having discoursed these things fitly to the humour of the multitude, and his own design, he made no small impression in the minds of the Vulgar, who having had the fidelity of the Captains in question before, gave credence to these slanders, and deposing them, made new, amongst which was *Dionysius*, having got much credit for his valour against the *Carthaginians*. The foundation thus laid, he beat his head all manner of waies how to accomplish his device, and resolved if possible to get his Colleagues removed. For this purpose he never would meet in council with them, giving out they hatched clandestine designs against the State, and seeing the Citizens much affrighted at an approaching War, procured the Exiles to be called home, hoping that they being obnoxious to him, and desirous of innovation, would be fit for his purpose, taking great delight in seeing their Enemies killed, and their goods sold, their own Estates being restored to them. At this time it happened that a Sedition falling out in *Gela*, he had an opportunity to lead thither 2000 Foot, and 400 Horse, where procuring their principal men to be put to death, and their Estates confiscated, he thereby much ingratiated himself with the multitude and Soldiers. At his return he found the People just departing from the shows of the Theatre, which asking him news, he said he knew none, but that their Governours were greater Enemies to the State than the *Carthaginians*, by whose flatteries they now kept holy day, and who fleecing the Commonwealth, cheated the Soldiers of their wages. Now was an innumerable Army hovering upon the borders, and ready to invade, which they not at all regarded. This he understood a little before, but now fully, having received a message from *Imilco* that desired his connivance. Wherefore for his part he would lay down his Office, not induring that others making merchandise of the Commonwealth, he alone should, together with the Citizens, bear the burthen, and undergo the danger; and yet also be accounted as treacherous as the rest. For this night every man in great fear went home to his house. The next day he called them together, and loading his Colleagues with great invectives, so stirred the multitude, that some beginning to cry out he was to be made Dictator, for that they had formerly had experience how convenient the conduct of a single Person was, by the example of *Gelon* his Victory over *Amilcar*; the multitude out of hand created him General with full power. Then to bind fast the Soldiers to him, he procured a Decree for double pay, alleging it would make them more valiant in that time of danger, and bidding the People take no thought about raising money.

The misery of  
People destitute  
of right-  
ful and hereditary  
Prin-  
ces.

26. The wiser sort had all along sufficiently understood whither these actions tended, but the multitude stopped their ears against all accusations, as proceeding from the malice of the great ones. But now upon further consideration they began to suspect him, and repent they had put the power out of their own hands, which he being aware of, lest the discontent should so seize upon the generality as thereby to procure him any let or hindrance in the full completing his design, he drew out the Army to *Leontium*, which now was used as a Fortresse or Garrison, and there shutting himself close up, pretended a great conspiracy against his life. The day following he called the multitude



## SECT. 2.

multitude together, and alleging many probable reasons to persuade them of the danger, obtained to have 600 men as a guard for his person, which he should chuse out where he pleased. This number he increased to 1000, picked out, and consisting of such as were desperate in fortune, and thereupon backed with stomach and resolution. He called the Mercenaries, and engaged them to him with good words, then new modelling the Army, gave such commands therein as he knew would best serve his own turn: he gave free admision to all Exiles and malefactors, knowing such would be effectual to all his purposes. Having thus in imitation of *Pisistratus* got him a guard, and made himself Tyrant, at his return to *Syracuse* he openly shewed himself such, placing his Tent in the Arcenal. The People murmured in vain, being beset with strangers and mercenaries at home, and in continual fear of a War hanging over them from abroad. To establish himself he took to wife the daughter of *Hermocrates*, who did such service against the *Athenians*, and was slain in attempting to seize on the City: he also gave his own Sister in marriage to his wives Brother, thinking it his interest to be allied to so great a Family. Then assembling the People, by his devices he procured *Daphneus* and *Demarchus* the most potent of his Adversaries to be put to death; and so from a Scribe and a man of mean condition, he became Master of the greatest Greek Citie, continuing such for 38 years, unto his end.

27. *Imilcar* having wintered in *Agirgentum*, at Spring-time razed the City, and then fell upon *Gela*. The Inhabitants betook themselves to *Dionysius* for help; but his indeavours not well succeeding, they were forced to quit the Town, and leave it also to the disposal of the Enemy. *Dionysius* made the Citizens of *Camarina* to do the same, possessing them with a fear of the *Carthaginians*; so that departing thence in haste, some with their Gold and Silver, others with their wives and children onely, and the wayes being full of both sexes and ages, who miserably shunned servitude by exile, the *Syracusan* Horse-men pitted them exceedingly, and accounting this but a fetch of their Tyrant, to make himself Master of the place, conspired how they might kill him in the way, and the rather, because they had observed how remiss, or rather indutiously treacherous, he had been in the relief of *Gela*. He keeping the Mercenaries close to him, they could not execute this design, but rode fast to *Syracuse*, where being easily admitted, they rifled his Palace, and used his wife very harshly that she died. Being secure of him as at a great distance from them, he conjectured the same, and in post-haste coming to *Syracuse*, set fire on one of gates, and so got in. Then slaughtered he such of them as he could light on, as also of those Citizens whom he knew to be most averse to him, some he slew, and others he expelled the Town. Scarce were things settled, when a message came from *Imilcar*, inviting the *Syracusians*, though conquered, unto Peace. *Dionysius* most gladly imbraced the offer, so that it was made upon these terms: The *Carthaginians* were to have subject to them, besides their old Tributaries and Colonies, the *Sicani*, *Selinuntians*, *Agirgentines*, and *Himerians*, and also the *Gelaans*, and *Camarinaans*, who might inhabit their Towns unvalled, but be tributary to *Carthage*. The *Leontines*, *Messenians*, and all *Sicilians*, were to be free, and the *Syracusians* subject to *Dionysius*. All ships taken on both sides were to be restored. These things confirmed, *Imilcar* passed over into *Africk*, having lost half of his Army by the Plague, which so raged also in *Africk*, as great multitudes both of the *Carthaginians* and their Associates fell thereby.

28. *Dionysius* knowing that the *Syracusians* now eased of the War, would bustle their heads how to recover their liberty, to prevent such a design, fortified that part of the City called the *Island*, which he caused to be inhabited with his own confidants: he also divided the publick grounds to such as he thought fit, and admitted strangers to equal privileges with the Citizens. Having thus as he thought secured his estate, he resolved to march against such *Sicilians* as he thought most assisted the *Carthaginians*, and was about to besiege *Erbessa*, when the Citizens of *Syracuse* now armed, considering what

A conspiracy  
against him

Disappointed.

He maketh  
peace with  
the Carthagi-  
nians.

A. M. 3599.  
Ol. 93. an. 3.  
V. C. 348.  
Darius Nothi  
18.

Idem ad an. 4.

## SECT. 2.

Another de-  
sign against  
him

Frustrated.

His Wars.

an opportunity was put into their hands, and repenting they had not assisted the Horsemen in their revolt, resolved to declare for their liberty. The attempt generally took, the Citizens stood upon their defence, and the Tyrant was besieged, for whose head a great sum of money was offered. He was much cast down, and thought to resign his power, according as some advised him; but *Philistus* turned his mind, and made him resolve to venture all rather than do it. Bethinking himself how he might circumvent the Citizens, he sent to them, pretending a willingness to quit all, if they would but permit him to carry away his goods; and at the same time he dispatched a message to the *Campanians* (mercenary Soldiers of *Campania* in *Italy*) offering them larger rewards if they would stand by him. The *Syracusians* consented he should depart with five ships, and then, as if their liberty was fully recovered, grew secure, remiss, and idle, disbanding some of their men, neglecting their guards, and taking their pleasure in the fields: The *Campanians* allured by his promises broke in to him, some Troops of Mercenaries also came to his assistance, with which he set upon the Towns-men, and easily putting them to flight recovered his power. He hindered his men from killing, and a great number flying to *Etna*, he sent to them, offering them pardon, which some embraced, and others refused to venture themselves upon it.

29. When he had well re-setled himself, he made War upon several Towns in *Sicilie*, some of which he took, and having an eye upon the *Carthaginians*, strongly fortified his City of *Syracuse*. He resolved with himself to make War upon them, hoping that all those Towns which in time of Peace willingly submitted to their yoke, would then revolt to him. Understanding that in the *Athenian* War a line had been drawn before *Syracuse*, from Sea to Sea, and thereby access into the Country cut off, with admirable celerity he raised a wall to prevent this for the time to come, labouring himself amongst the workmen, to cause them the more cheerfully to undergo the toil: Then did he make extraordinary provisions of all sorts of Arms, compleatly furnished himself with shipping, and hired Soldiers from all parts. Thus provided, he caused all the goods of the *Carthaginian* Marchants, and others dwelling there, to be seized by the multitude of the *Syracusians*, to whom now he carried himself more mildly, being very ready to begin the War; especially upon so profitable terms. Other *Sicilian* Towns followed his example, out of hatred to the *Carthaginians* for their cruelty, of whom such as were amongst them they unmercifully handled in way of requital, which taught that State to deal more favourably afterwards with such as they took, in remembrance of the vicissitude of humane affairs. Then dispatched he a messenger to *Carthage*, to denounce war from the people of *Syracuse*, except they would set at liberty all the Greek Cities of *Sicilie*. They were much struck therewith, being exceedingly spent by Pestilence, but rejected the terms, and as they might, made provision for resistance. *Dionysius* besieged *Motya* one of their Colonies, and chief Fortresse for War; upon whose ships *Imilco*, as yet not sufficiently provided, made an attempt, and beating up the Camp presently retired again; so that *Dionysius* became Master of the Town.

30. Ere he had taken *Motya* he besieged *Agesta*, the Inhabitants whereof would not betray their trust, and made excursions into the Territories of their Friends. But the Spring following the *Carthaginians* having created *Imilco* King, sent him over with a vast Army, wherewith he first wrosted *Lepetines*, whom *Dionysius* had commanded to attend his motions; then took *Eryx*, and presently recovered *Motya*. He had *Panormus* betrayed to him: he took *Lipara*, and after that *Messana* with his ships, the Inhabitants having sent their Forces out of the Town to meet his Land-Army. When he took *Motya*, *Dionysius* brake up his Siege and retreated to *Syracuse*; now hearing that he intended to set upon *Catana* both by Sea and Land, he sent *Leptines* with the Fleet after *Mago* the *Carthaginian* Admiral, and he himself marched by Land to meet with *Imilco*. *Leptines* according to order made after as

F f f

fast

Diod. ad Olymp.  
95. an. 3. 4.

Idem ad Olymp.  
96. ann. 1. 2.

A. M. 3609.  
Olymp. 96. an. 1.  
V. C. 358.  
Artax. Mne-  
monis. 9.

## SECT. 2.

fast as he could, and attaching the Enemy's Fleet, at first sunk diverse Vessels; but when he was now almost encompassed with *Mago's* ships which were in number 500. not able to fight at such disadvantage, he was forced to fly out into the main, and in his flight lost 100 Vessels. *Dionysius* kept on his march, intending to fight *Imilco*; but was stopped by the intercession of his friends, who feared lest in his absence *Mago* might with his whole Fleet set upon *Syracuse*, and take it. He therefore returned to the Citie, and dispatched away Messengers into *Greece* and *Italy* for aid.

*Syracuse* besieged.

31. *Mago* by Sea with nigh 200 ships, and *Imilco* by Land with 300000 foot, and 3000 horse, besieged *Syracuse*, who for that the Citizens refused to give battel, walked their grounds for 30 dayes, and after that took the Suburbs of that part of the Citie called *Acradina*. His Army was taken with a sudden Pannick fear, and seized by a sore disease; yet notwithstanding he drew a line for the Fortification of his Camp, and built three Forts upon the Sea, wherein he put his provisions, and sent into *Sardinia* and *Africk* for more. Afterwards *Polyxenus* father-in-law to *Dionysius* returning out of *Peloponnesus* and *Italy* with 30 long ships, and *Pharacidas* the *Lacedemonian*, to the assistance of the *Syracusians*, they took a victualling ship from the *Carthaginians*. They doing their endeavour to rescue it, the *Syracusians* drew out their whole Fleet, and engaging, took the Admiral Gally, and spoyled 24 Vessels. After this the *Carthaginians* durst not stir abroad, and the *Syracusians* puffed up with this victory, thought of recovering their former liberty. *Dionysius* coming in at the Port, called them together, encouraged them in the War, and gave them hopes of finishing it shortly to their satisfaction. Here before his face, one *Theodorus* in many words exhorted his fellow Citizens to throw off the yoke, and either take the Militia into their own hands according to the Laws, or deliver it up to the *Lacedemonian* General. But *Pharacidas* the *Lacedemonian*, according to his instructions from his Superiours (who had now established an Oligarchy wherever they could, agreeable with their own Government and interest, or gave way to the power of a single man rather than that of the people) said openly, that he was sent to help them against the *Carthaginians*, and not to overthrow the power of *Dionysius*; so that the people were at so unexpected a thing utterly quelled, murmuring much against the *Lacedemonians*, who had now twice deceived them in the recovery of their freedom. *Dionysius* affrighted hereat, made shew afterwards of great humanity, to gain the affections of the people.

Another attempt against him.

Frustrated.

32. The *Carthaginians* were at this time seized with a most grievous Plague, which *Diodorus* attributeth to their rifling the Temples of *Proserpina* and *Ceres*, as the Meritorious cause, and to the unwholesomnesse of the place beset with Fens, as the effectual means that wrought the distemper. A grievous disease had formerly fallen upon the *Athenians* in the same place. For before Sun-rise, because of a cold vapour that rose from the Fens, a cold and shaking seized on the body, then at noon a suffocating heat. So many men being gathered together into one place, the contagion first began with the *Africans*, who, though they died in great numbers, were at first buried. Afterwards the number increasing, such as looked to the sick dying also shortly after them, none would venture to come near the infected. But besides want of attendance, no remedy could be had for the evil. For from the stench of the dead, and putrefaction of the Fennish aire, in the beginning of the disease a Catarrhe, and then presently an *Angina*, or swelling of the neck, took the patient. These were followed by a Peaver, pains in the Spine, and numnesse of the legs, which drew after them a Dysentery, and Spots over all the body. Some were taken with madnesse, and abolition of memory, who wandering up and down the Camp bear all they met. At length all the endeavours of Physicians were void, through the vehemence of the disease, and suddennesse of death, for on the fifth, or at furthest on the sixth day they died in great torment. *Dionysius* understanding this sad condition of the besiegers, thought it convenient to fall out upon them, and sent 80 ships to fall

A grievous plague seized on the Carthaginians.

## SECT. 2.

on their Navy. The Land Army first arriving took two of their Forts, and diverted them from their ships, which as soon as they saw in danger, they again retired to them; but with little advantage. For the *Syracusians* boarded and slaughtered them in great numbers, and *Dionysius*, with his Land Army, fired 40 of their Gallies that rode at Anchor in the Haven of *Dafco*. The night approaching broke off the fight, and then the *Carthaginians* sent to *Dionysius* 300 Talents, begging leave to depart; which he granted (with exception to all *Sicilians* and other Mercenaries) being unwilling they should be quite defeated, that through fear of them his subjects might be the better contained in obedience. After the flight of the *Carthaginians*, the *Sicilians* departed home, and all the rest were slain or taken, except the *Spaniards*, who gathering themselves into a round body, sent to *Dionysius* to enter into Alliance with him; which he accepted.

33. *Dionysius* being secure of the *Carthaginians* for some considerable time, provided against his Mercenaries, which badly affecting him, he prevented, by taking of their Leader, and bestowing on them the Citie and Territories of *Leontium*. Then did he make new Leavies, and replanted *Messana* with its ancient Inhabitants the *Messenians*; but seeing the *Lacedemonians* his friends offended with it, he removed them to another place near the Sea, which they called *Tyndarides*, and wherein they did thrive exceedingly, Conquering, and laying several places to their demesnes. Having fortified *Messana*, the Inhabitants of *Rhegium* (who formerly jealous of his growth, had shown their bad affection to him) conceived it to proceed from some design against their Citie, which stood over against it in *Italy*, upon the very Crag of the Promontory, where *Sicily* was supposed to have been broken off from the Continent, whence it had the name of *Rhegium*. They sent *Helois* to besiege *Messana*, whereupon he determined to make War against them; but the *Sicilians* seizing upon *Tauromenium*, he first resolved to recover it. He continuing his siege all Winter, in a dark night got a certain Fort into his hands, and made way for all his Army into the Town; but the Inhabitants gathering together, and resisting, from the higher ground, beat back his men, whereof 600 were slain, and he himself escaped very narrowly, after which the *Agrigentines* and *Messenians* forsook him. The year after, he set upon *Rhegium* on a sudden; burnt the Gates, and set Ladders to the Walls; but was repulsed by the strong opposition of the Citizens. By this the Inhabitants of these Sea-Coasts of *Italy*, seeing how far his covetousnesse and ambition extended, made a League amongst themselves, and appointed a common Council, both for the resistance of him and the *Lucanians*, who made War upon them at the same time.

*Diod. ad Olymp. 96. ann. 3.*

*Idem ad ann. 4.*

*Dionysius* set upon *Rhegium*.

*Mago*

34. *Mago* was yet in *Sicily*, and was once overthrown in battel by *Dionysius*. The year following his Superiours sent over great supplies, gathered as well out of *Sardinia* and *Italy*, as *Africk*, to the number of 80000 men, wherewith he overran the Countrey, and withdrew most of the Cities from their obedience, till he came to the *Agrigineans*, whom he could neither remove by fair nor foul means from their resolution. *Dionysius* with his Mercenaries and *Syracusians* marched out against him, sending before to the *Agrigineans* to be in readinesse, who thereupon met him, and joyned their Forces with his Army. *Mago* now in an Enemy's Countrey was fore straightened for provisions, which made the other resolve to draw out the War in length, and not try his fortune quickly by battel. The *Syracusians* being earnest for fighting, upon his refusal forsook him and departed home. This put him upon a resolution to make free and list all slaves, but even then came Ambassadors from *Mago* to treat of peace, which he accepted upon this condition, that the *Sicilians* should be under his authority; and so *Mago* returned home. After this *Dionysius* seized on *Tauromenium*, and then banished the greatest part of the *Sicilians* from that Town.

*Idem ad Olymp. 97. ann. 1.*

Forced to return.

*Dionysius* his second expedition against *Rhegium*.

35. The next year but one, being the 261<sup>st</sup> year of the World, into which fell part of the third year of the 97<sup>th</sup> Olympiad, wherein *Rome* was taken by the *Gauls*, as some compute, *Dionysius* once more undertook an expedition

*Ad an. 3.*

## SECT. 2.

Rhegium.

dition against *Rhegium*. He landed his Army, consisting of 20000 foot and 1000 horse in the Territories of *Locri*, wasting all with fire and sword, his Navy, which consisted of 120 Gallies, attending his motions all along, till at length he pitched his Camp near the Straights. The *Italians* inhabiting that part of *Italy* called *Magna Græcia*, hereupon dispatched away sixty ships to help them of *Rhegium*, upon which he fell, and had taken or destroyed them, but that the besieged issuing forth, repelled him with Darts and Arrows, and taking the opportunity of a storm, drew the ships to Land; so that in this fight he lost seven ships with 1500 men, and escaping drowning but narrowly, fled to *Messena*. Then Winter drawing on, he made a League with the *Lucanians*, who after his departure, for a private quarrel betwixt them, invaded the *Thurians*. These sending for aid to the rest of the *Italian* Cities, would not stay for it, which they might justly expect according to Covenant, but issuing out against the Enemy, pursued them into their own Territories, who then taking them at advantage cut off many thousands of them. The rest seeing some ships sayl by, cast themselves into the Sea to swim to them, thinking they belonged to *Rhegium*. But it proved *Dionysius* his Fleet sent under conduct of his brother *Leptines* to aid the *Lucanians*; yet *Leptines* took pity of them, and landed them safe; he also perswaded the *Lucanians* for a pound of silver a man to release their Prisoners, passing his word for the money; and at length made them friends. But hereby he lost the favour of his brother (who hoped to devour both sides, and make himself master of *Italy*, when they should have sufficiently weakened one another) so that, being displaced, *Thearides* the other brother was made Admiral in his stead.

A. M. 3615.

Olymp. 97.

ann. 3.

V. C. 364.

Artax. Anem.

15.

His third expedition.

36. *Dionysius* his mind was still upon *Rhegium*, to which Citie he bore mortal hatred, because some years before having sent to them for a wife, they returned him answer, that their Hang-man had a daughter, which if it pleased him to accept they would give to him. Therefore the year following he set sayl once more against them, who then looking for no mercy in case he should take the Town, sent to him, desiring they might be moderately used. He required a Tribute of 300 Talents, all their ships, with 100 Hostages, and then went against *Caunonia*, the Inhabitants whereof he removed to *Syracuse*, razed the Town, and bestowed the ground upon the *Locrians*. But his design was not thus accomplished against them of *Rhegium*; his resolution was not to dismiss them upon the former terms, but by taking away their ships to prevent the bringing in of provisions by Sea, that he might the more easily starve them in a siege. Bethinking himself how with any shew of credit he might break the League, at length hovering yet about the Straights, he desired a supply of provisions from them, pretending he would shortly return to *Syracuse*; but he put it off from day to day, excusing himself by his own indisposition, or some other pretext, so that plainly seeing his drift, at length they flatly denied to send him any more victuals. This he pretending to receive with great indignation as an affront, he laid close siege to the Town, and battered the Walls. The Inhabitants making one *Phyo* their General, armed all that could carry Weapons, and making many brave sallies out upon him, burnt his Engins, and gave him a dangerous wound with a Lance. But the siege continuing, after eleven months they were driven to such want, as a Bushel of Wheat was sold for ten pounds, & at length they were forced to come out of the Walls, and there graze like Cattel, whereat he was so far from being moved with compassion, that he sent beasts thither to eat up the Grasse from them. Great heaps of Carkasses lying in the Town, and the visages of the living being by famine rendred like unto them, they at last delivered up the Town. Such as could redeem themselves with a pound of silver he released, and sold the rest. *Phyo* the General, after grievous torments, he drowned in the Sea, with his whole family.

Idem ad ann. 4.

Olymp. 98.

ann. 1, 2.

He taketh it.

A. M. 3618.

Ol. 98. ann. 4.

V. C. 367.

Artax. Anem.

18.

His studies.

37. After the destruction of *Rhegium*, *Dionysius* lying idle at home, applied himself to Poetry, being heretofore much addicted to it. Whilest he lay before *Rhegium* he sent his brother *Thearides* to the celebration of the

Idem ad ann. 3.

Olymp.

## SECT. 2.

*Olympick* games, there to repeat his Verses, which by their baldness drew the auditors into such a distast, that they rifled the Ambassador's rents. He called together the best Poets from all quarters to judge of his skill. He also drew over to him *Plato* the Philosopher, whom at first he used very courteously, but afterwards offended at him for his freedom of speech, he brought him into the common Cage, and there for five pounds sold him as a Slave. The Philosophers coming over on purpose redeemed him, and then sent him into *Greece* with this memento in his ear, That *A Philosopher must either very rarely, or very pleasantly converse with Tyrants*. A year or two after this he put out to Sea with 60 Vessels, pretending an intention to clear the Coasts of Pyrates, but wanting money, according to his custome towards the Temples of *Sicilie*, he seized upon a Chapel near *Argylla*, on the Coasts of *Italy*, which being exceeding rich, he plundered of 1000 Talents, and got much spoil from the Inhabitants of the place, who opposed him. Being now furnished with money, he resolved to renew the War against the *Carthaginians*, and the next year drew divers of their tributary Cities from their obedience. The *Carthaginians* made great preparations for defence, raising a numerous Army, which they committed to the conduct of *Mago*. He poured out a great number of men both into *Sicilie* and *Italy*. In the Island, *Dionysius* overthrew him in a battel near *Cabala*, wherein were slain more than 10000 of his men, and 5000 taken: he himself with the rest retired to an hill, where fighting manfully he was slain, and his men sent to *Dionysius* to desire Peace.

Idem ad Olym.

99. ann. 1.

Ad ann. 2.

He overthrew the Carthaginians.

And receiveth an overthrow from them.

He dieth.

His wives &amp;c. illuc.

38. *Dionysius* answered, that the onely way to obtain their desire, was to quit *Sicilie*, and pay the charges of the War. To this he seemed to assent, but alledged they had no power to deliver up the Cities, and therefore desired a truce for some time to advise about it. During the truce, *Mago's* son being advanced into his Father's place, trained the Soldiers, and exercised then continually, so as he brought them into a good condition for fighting, and then at the end of the Truce led them down, and gave battel in stead of receiving Peace. Now were the *Sicilians* so puffed up by their late Victory, as the other took advantage of their carelesnesse, and so played the men, that though *Dionysius* in his wing, and *Leptines* his brother in the other, fought most valiantly, and the former prevailed; yet the later being slain, his party was presently put to flight, in which great execution was done, the *Carthaginians* giving no quarter; so as 14000 *Sicilians* are said to have been slain. The Conquerours departed to *Panormus*, and thence sent to *Dionysius*, offering to have the quarrel taken up, which he gladly imbraced. Both sides were to retain what they already had, onely the *Carthaginians* took to themselves the City and Territories of *Selinus*, with so much ground belonging to *Agrigentum* as reached to the River *Helycus*, and required of *Dionysius* 1000 Talents. Long after this he rested from War, but still grudging the *Carthaginians* any footing in *Sicilie*. This moved him at length with great preparations both by Sea and Land to invade their Territories, wherein he took some Towns, wasted the Country, and besieged *Lilybaum*; but perceiving it very strong presently again rose up from before it. Then hearing that the Arsenal at *Carthage* was fired; he carelessly behaved himself, and sent 130 Gallies to seize on the Haven of the *Erycinians*, commanding all the rest to return to *Syracuse*; but the Enemy unexpectedly with 200 Ships well manned, fell upon them in the Haven, and took most of them; then winter coming on, they made Truce, and each departed to their own places. Not long after, *Dionysius* died of a Surfer he got by feasting, for joy he was pronounced Victor in Poetry at *Athens*, after he had reigned 38 years, in the first of the 103 *Olympiads*, A. M. 3637. 366 before the ordinary Era of Christ. It had been told him by an Oracle, that he should die when he overcame his betters, which he had applied to the *Carthaginians*.

Diodor. ad

Olymp. 103.

ann. 1.

39. *Dionysius* married two wives in one day: *Doris* born at *Locri*, and *Aristomache* daughter to *Hipparimus* of *Syracuse*, and sister to *Dion*. By the

Vide Alian var. Hist. lib. 13. c. 10.

## SECT. 2.

the former he had a son called also *Dionysius*; by the later no children for a long time (for which cause he put to death the mother of *Doris*, upon suspicion of her having practised something upon *Aristomache* to cause her barrenness) but afterwards begot of her two sons and as many daughters. When he lay sick, *Dion* inquired of the Physicians concerning his condition, whether he was in any danger, that if so, he might move him about the shairing of his Kingdom; for that he thought his sisters children might justly expect their part therein. The Physicians told this to young *Dionysius*, who found himself so concerned in it, that to prevent his Father's discoursing with *Dion*, he compelled them to give him that which laid him so fast asleep as he never could awake, and so he solely succeeded him.

*Dionysius* his son succeeded him.

His disposition.

40. *Dionysius* the younger at first gave such hopes of a pliable disposition, that *Dion* prevailed with *Plato* to return to *Syracuse*, thinking that by his instruction he might be made a good and temperate Prince. But *Dion's* emulators fearing he might be changed from his former course, which though bad in it self was more convenient for them, recalled *Philistus* (one who was banished by the late *Dionysius*, and being a learned man, wrote the history of his life) that they might have one to oppose to *Plato*. He according to what was enjoined, and his private interest, upheld him in his extravagances, as many other flattering Philosophers did; especially *Aristippus* of *Cyrene* the Scholar of *Socrates*, who had so great a command of his own temper, that he could apply himself suitably to all times and persons. *Plato*, when he came, found *Dion* in great troubles, being for his nobility and courage both envied and feared by *Dionysius*, who, four months after, seeing the People much addicted to him, banished him to *Corinth*, pretending he sent him thither for the good of them both, that one might be out of fear of the other. Because he saw that this displeased all men, he sent him all his movables, but kept his wife and his son, marrying her afterwards by constraint to *Polycrates* one of his Guard. This much startled *Dion's* friends, and *Plato* amongst the rest, by whom *Dionysius* fearing that something might underhand be wrought against him, gave them good words, and laboured to keep *Plato*, who earnestly desired now that War was begun in *Sicilie* to be dismissed; especially seeing his mind far remote from the love of Philosophy. By his importunity he got leave to depart, upon condition that, when Peace was made, *Dion* should be recalled, and he return with him.

Omnis Aristippum deicit color & status & res. Horat. Vide Dion. Lactantium in vita.

41. When the time came, *Dionysius* earnestly desired the return of *Plato*, but would have *Dion* discontinue a year longer, who earnestly besought *Plato* to return to *Syracuse*, for that it was reported that the Prince now was wonderfully taken with Philosophy. He stiffly refused to do it, objecting his age, with the breach of Covenants, but being again urged on all sides, a ship was sent for him, and large letters were written, wherein the Tyrant promised to deal with *Dion* as his friends should judge reasonable; many of the best sort also in *Sicilie* and his acquaintance were sent to accompany him over. Wherefore *Plato* once more undertook the journey, with intention to reconcile *Dion* to *Dionysius*, and reduce the Tyrant to a more strict and commendable life. But not long after his arrival *Dionysius* stopped *Dion's* Revenues, which *Plato* taking ill, once prevailed to have the stoppage removed, for otherwise he would be gone; but when the ships were departed, and *Plato's* passage thereby prevented, he again sequestered the Estate. After this he fell plainly out with *Plato*, for holding that faith was to be kept with *Heraclides*, who was suspected to have raised a Sedition, and put him out of his Court, so as the Philosopher was glad to take up his quarters with the mercenary Soldiers, amongst whom also slanders were spread concerning him, whence he signified his condition to his friends at *Tarentum* in *Italy*, who with much ado prevailed with the Tyrant to send him home safe. Such was the entertainment of *Plato* with *Dionysius* both father and son.

42. Though *Dionysius* had left to him an hereditary War with the *Carthaginians*, yet giving up himself wholly to luxury and sluggishness, he was unfit to manage publick affairs, and therefore made peace with them. But

Plutarch & Corn. Nepos in Dion.

Plutarch & Nepos ibid.

A. M. 3637. Ol. 103. an. 1. V. C. 386. Atax. Mem. 37.

Alian var. hist. l. 12. c. 47.

Diodor. ad Ol. 95. an. 2. &c.

Dion

## SECT. 2.

*Dion* invadeth *Sicilie*.

*Dion* being now at *Corinth*, together with *Megacles* his brother, and *Charicles* the General of *Dionysius*, raised as many Mercenaries as he could, which not in number passing 500, he transported in two ships of burthen into *Sicilie*, leaving *Charicles* (or rather *Heraclides*) behind, to bring after more ships; such was his courage, that he durst venture with so inconsiderable a force upon so great a power. After his landing, multitudes flocked to him as he passed through the Island; and out of *Syracuse* it self, whom *Dionysius* in suspicion had disarmed. To them he gave weapons, having brought many over with him for such a purpose. By the time he got unto the City he was 5000 strong, which he easily entred, notwithstanding the opposition of those Captains that *Dionysius* had left there, who at this time was upon the Coasts of *Italy*. Upon his declaring to the People that he came to restore them to their ancient liberty, they made him and *Megacles* their chief Generals with full power. *Dionysius* seven dayes after returned and got into the Castle, which standing in the Island was severed from the rest of the City, whence he sent for Ambassadors to treat of Peace, that he might gain time. The People overreached, sent their Commissioners, whom he kept with him, till seeing the Citizens negligent and careless by reason of their hopes, he poured out his Mercenaries upon them; but *Dion* with much labour repelled them, and slew 800 men. After this he sent again to desire a Treaty, but *Dion* answered, that his onely way to obtain peace was to lay down his power, and content himself with certain honours; whereat he was much vexed, and took counsel how any way he might revenge himself.

43. *Philistus* whom he had made Admiral, fought with the *Syracusians*, now not inferior to him in number of ships, and losing the day lost also his life; having either killed himself, because he would not be taken, or been tormented to death, after he fell into his Enemies hands, both which are said. Then did *Dionysius* offer half of his Kingdom to *Dion*, and afterward was content to quit it all; but he was answered by him, that he must leave the Castle, and be content with certain goods and honours: and it was agreed, that with his movables and Mercenary Soldiers he should have leave to passe into *Italy*. The People hardly granted this, as being confident to subdue him by force; but he leaving some stout men to defend the Castle, departed in the twelfth year of his Reign, with his treasure and rich stuff into *Italy*, undiscovered by *Heraclides*, who ere this arrived out of *Peloponnesus* with a good force, and was set over the Navy. *Heraclides* being much blamed for this, that he might re-ingratiate himself, perswaded one to stir up the multitude to an equal division of the grounds, which being opposed by *Dion*, he out of emulation procured him ill-will, and caused the People to create 25 Prators, whereof he himself was chosen one. *Dion's* Mercenaries by this new Model deprived of their pay, desired him to use their help in revenging himself upon his ingrateful Country-men. He then took upon him to be their Leader, and marched away to *Leontium*. The *Syracusians* pursued, and opposed them in their way; but being forced with losse to retire, the *Leontines* received him with much honour, gave to the Soldiers their arrears, and made them free of their City.

He expelleth *Dionysius*.

Is disobliged.

Redeemeth *Syracuse*.

44. But ere long there was an occasion for the recalling of *Dion*. The Soldiers whom *Dionysius* had left in the Castle of *Syracuse*, being distressed by want of provisions, resolved over night, that the next day they would yield it up; but that very morning appeared a Fleet sent to their relief, over which *Niphus* a *Neapolitan* had the command. The *Syracusians* issuing forth against it, had the better; but then growing secure, and giving up themselves to gormandizing and drunkenness, *Niphus* thought a good opportunity to be offered for the redeeming of his credit, and fell upon the City, sending some over the wall, who killing the sentinels, opened the gates for his Soldiers. The new Captains of the *Syracusians* being drunk, could take no order for resistance, so as great slaughters were made in every place, the Garrison Soldiers issuing out of the Castle, and great plunder with many prisoners were taken away. Now the Citizens saw that no help remained for

A. M. 3649. Ol. 106. an. 1. V. C. 398. Ochi 6. Philop. 5.

## SECT. 2.

for them, but onely in *Dion*, to whom they sent, begging of him, that laying aside all thoughts of private injuries, he would now succour his distressed Country. He being armed by precepts of Philosophy against private grudges, marched for *Syracuse*, and was met by a number of old men, women, and children, who with lamentable cries implored his help. As the Garrison Soldiers were busie in plunder, and had set the houses near the Forum on fire, he brake in upon them, distributing his men to the several quarters of the City. They fell upon them all in disorder, and burthened with plunder, killed 4000; and so forcing up the rest into the Castel, cleared all.

Enviied

45. *Dion* having atchieved much honour by this act, was made General of the Land Forces; but *Heracles* his emulator still retained his Admirallship. This vexed him so, that he gave out some words that a *Commonwealth could not be well governed by many*, which procured him great envy, as if he thereby signified that he would get the Sovereignty over all. He studied not how to palliate the matter, but sought to cary on all things by an high hand, and in a way of force; and either procured *Heracles* to be made away, or connived at those whom he formerly hindred from doing it; after which he seized on the goods of his Enemies, and distributed them to his Soldiers.

Plunged into great difficulties.

But presently again money failing him, and having none to run upon but his friends, he was constrained either to lose them or his Soldiers, who being also displeased for want of pay, the common People might safely revile him, affirming that the Tyrant was not to be endured. Whilst he with thoughts of these things tormented himself, came to him one *Callicrates* (or *Callippus*) an *Athenian*, a most cunning dissembler and irreligious person. He told him, that seeing he was in such danger, both in reference to Soldiers and People, his best way was to have some friend, who counterfeiting himself his Enemy, should hold intelligence with his adversaries, and thereby discover all their plots and practices against him. This part, by *Dion's* consent, he took upon himself, and under this pretence really and indeed practised his destruction, which *Dion's* wife and sister hearing of, therewith acquainted him; but he regarded them not, giving too much credit to what *Callicrates* had promised. The women nevertheless brought *Callicrates* into the Temple of *Proserpina*, and there made him swear, that he had not at all plotted against *Dion's* life; but he minding no Religion, but being egged on more forward to the accomplishment of his design, sent certain young men, natives of *Zachynthus*, in to him, whilst he was private in his chamber, who being easily admitted, for the knowledge his family had of them, fell upon and presently bound him: but being unarmed could not kill him, till one *Lycus* a *Syracusan* reached them a sword in at a window; his Guard hearing, but stirring not. He died in the 55 year of his age, and the fourth after his return out of *Peloponnesus*, being much lamented after his death, though before called Tyrant, and what ever else could expresse him odious.

Circumvented by Callicrates, and slain.

Callicrates expelled by Hipparinus, and slain.

46. *Callicrates* after *Dion's* death seized on the Principality, which he held but thirteen moneths; for then *Hipparinus* son to *Dionysius* the elder, by *Aristomache* *Dion's* sister, expelled him, and placed himself in his father's Kingdom, which he enjoyed two years. *Callippus* (or *Callicrates*) with *Leptines* went against *Rhegium*, which was held by a Garrison of *Dionysius* his Soldiers, which taking, he was there slain by *Leptines*, and *Polypharchon*, it's said, with the same word wherewith *Dion* was killed. After *Hipparinus*, *Nasaus* obtained the Sovereignty over *Syracuse*, and then *Dionysius* recovered it in the tenth year after his expulsion. In this time of his exile he made himself Lord of *Locri*, where his mother was born, and tyrannized over the Inhabitants six years in a most cruel manner; ravishing their Virgins, and playing other pranks suitable to his disposition. There he raised a Company of men, and coming over on a sodain to *Syracuse*, where finding all men in deep security, he expelled *Nasaus*, and erected his Tyranny afresh. When he was gone, the *Locrians* expelled his Garrison, and in revenge for his ravishing their Virgins tormented his wife and two daughters

Nasaus.

Dionysius recovereth Syracuse.

Corn. Nepos in Dion.

Justin. 1. 21.

Alian l. 9. c. 8.

## SECT. 2.

ters to death, by thrusting sharp Needles under their Finger Nails. The Commonwealth of these *Locrians* being very famous, is commended much by the antients, not onely *Diodorus Siculus* and *Sirabo*, but more ancient than they, as *Plato* and *Demosthenes*; the former in his discourse which he maketh to have been betwixt *Socrates* and *Timaeus* a *Locrian* Philosopher of the *Pythagorean* Sect, concerning the nature of things, and Original of the World; and the later in his Oration against *Timocrates*, an Author of new and pernicious Laws. Something is therefore according to the nature of our design to be said of it.

Zaleucus modelled the Locrian Commonwealth.

47. *Zaleucus* (as he was accounted) a wise, just, and honest man, born of an Eminent family at *Locri*, was the modeller of this Commonwealth. *Ensebius* thinketh he flourished about the 29th Olympiad, but *Dionysius* and several others making him a Scholar of *Pythagoras*, who taught in *Magna Gracia*, reckon him as Contemporary with *Charondas* the Law-giver of the *Thuriasts*, another of *Pythagoras* his Scholars, and who is famous for the strictness and severity of his Laws, which he is said to have confirmed by his death in the same manner as *Dioctes* did his; the same story being told of him. According to their account he must have flourished about the 80th Olympiad. In the beginning of his Laws, or his Preface to them, this to some appeareth to have been his design; to affect the minds of his people with piety towards God, as the Original of all Right and Justice, the Lord and Governour of Heaven and Earth, as also an harer and punisher of wickedness. Then mentioned he Laws, not very many in number, but most effectual for the defence of Justice, restraining Vice, preserving concord and tranquillity in the State, preventing innovations, and for the establishment of themselves; which as long as observed (and they were observed long) preserved the Commonwealth in safety. He thought a few stable and unalterable Laws well obeyed, to be more profitable for a State than an infinite multitude of weak ones, which are easily changed by those that have a mind to innovate, and he concluded, that the speediest way to the ruin of a Commonwealth was by change and innovation. That his opinion was true, the example of *Athens* abundantly demonstrated, which erring in this point paid dearly for it, as *Demosthenes* often complaineth; and *Rome* also, which being infected with this itching distemper, at length was constrained to submit to the power of one man. It being almost impossible, but that popular Governments should totter, what ever might happen to this inconsiderable Citie. He commanded his Laws to be strictly observed, and the Magistrate to proceed according to the Letter of them, without giving his own gloss, or pronouncing sentence according to his private fancy. To this purpose is most memorable of all his Laws, that which *Demosthenes* and \* *Polybius* relate concerning one who should afterwards prefer a new Law, abrogate any old one, alter any thing in it, or dispute concerning the meaning of it. He was to come into the Council of 1000 men with an halter about his neck, where speaking his mind, if to them he should demonstrate his opinion to be profitable for the State, then was he to be dismissed safe, and the Law admitted; but if it should appear contrary, then was he to be strangled forthwith in the sight of the Council.

The form thereof.

48. *Zaleucus* chose 1000 men out of all the people, in whom he appointed the Supreme power to reside. It is not to be doubted but he ordained also a Senate of a far lesse number, by which dayly and lesser matters should be dispatched: that there were also certain Magistrates and Courts of Justice, which had orders prescribed to them, we need not question; though we find one onely Magistrate in \* *Polybius*, called *Cosmopolis*, who seemeth either to have presided in the Senate, or the greater Council. *Zaleucus* took care for preventing dissensions amongst Citizens, pride in the greater ones, and either favour or hatred in Courts of Justice. For to cut off the pride and vanity of women, he forbade any to go abroad with more than one waiting woman, except she were either drunk, went out of the Citie by night, or be took her self to an Adulterer; to deck her self either with costly apparel, ex-

Ggg

cept

A.M. 3658. Of 108. ann. 2. V. C. 407. Ochi 15. Phil. 14.

Leges abbonem Emimium de Repub. Locrensi.

\* Lib. 11. 7.

\* Quod prius.



## SECT. 2.

cept the professed the trade of a Strumpet. He forbid men in like manner to wear Gold Rings, or a *Milesian* Garment, under pain of being accounted Whoremongers and Adulterers. *Alian* \* mentioneth a Law of his, prohibiting any one to drink strong Wine, except by the Physicians order, though for health's sake, upon pain of death, and another, \* command-  
 \* *Var. Hist. l. 2. c. 37.*  
 \* *Lib. 13. c. 24.*  
 ing that an Adulterer convicted should lose both his eyes. Concerning the later a notable thing hapned to the Law-giver himself, whose son being found guilty of this Crime, all the people were willing for his sake to remit the punishment, but he would not suffer his Laws to be broken, but to preserve fight to his son, commanded that one of his own, and another of the young man's should be pulled out.

49. (a) *Demosthenes* maketh mention of another Law, commanding that he who struck out his Neighbours eye should be punished with the loss of one of his own, as a *Lex talionis*. It hapned that a naughty man bearing a grudge to his Neighbour that had but one eye, threatened him to strike it out, though with the loss of one of his own. The poor man terrified exceedingly herewith, and judging continual blindness worse than death, with a rope about his neck came into the Council, and asked a Law, that *whoever should strike out his eye should have but one, or deprive him of the use of one who was pur-blind, should lose both his own, or be punished with the like calamity and loss that he should bring upon his Neighbour*. This as just he easily obtained, and this was the onely new Law which in 200 years time was brought in, the Insolency of innovators being repressed by the severity of the former constitution, as the Orator observeth. Another there was, that a thing controverted should remain in the possession of him whose it was when the sute commenced, till such time as a definitive sentence passed; concerning which

(b) *Polybius* telleth a notable story of two men that contending about a slave, the one having had him long in possession, the other got him into his hands two dayes before the tryal, and then the former went and taking him away, possessed him the second time. The Judges referred the matter as an hard case to the *Cosmopolis*, who determined in favour of the first and last possessor; but the other contended with him about the sense of the Law, to whom he offered that both of them should go with ropes about their necks and dispute about it. The young man told him, he was old, and expecting but three or four years longer to live, dying now would be no great loss to him, whereas he expecting a far longer time, according to the course of nature, should have the far worse bargain; with which factious reply he handsomely ended the dispute, and the Judges confirmed the opinion of the *Cosmopolis*. (c) *Aristotle* mentioneth a Law of *Zaleucus*, which forbid inheritances to be sold except in urgent necessity, and this was to be proved, which Law being neglected amongst the *Leucadians*, made their Government degenerate into too much Popularity. (d) *Heracides* mentioneth other two, whereof the one forbid mourning for the dead; it being the custom of the *Locrians* to feast after Funerals. The other inhibited all retailing shops, commanding Husband-men to sell their own Commodities. This was the form of the Commonwealth of *Locri*, called *Epecephyrii*, from the Promontory *Zephyrium* near adjoining, being a Colony of *Locri* (e) *Ozola*, one of the two *Locri* of *Phocis* in *Greece*; whereof the other was called *Locri Opuntii* and *Epinepidii*. *Dionysius* the elder having got footing in *Italy*, made himself master of this place; but yet left them to their own freedom, but *Dionysius* his son Tyrannized in the manner aforesaid.

50. When *Dionysius* recovered his Principality over *Syracuse*, the Citizens were more inclining to one *Hicetas* born amongst them, who at that time was Lord of *Leontium*; yet notwithstanding all their attempts he kept his possession. But within awhile the *Carthaginians* from without invaded them, being thus at odds within amongst themselves, which constrained the *Syracusians* to send, and beg aid of *Corinth* their Metropolis. *Hicetas* with the Messengers sent some of his own, as desiring the same thing; but held secret intelligence with the *Carthaginians*. The *Corinthians* resolving to send

The *Syracusians* beg aid of the *Corinthians*.

*Plutarch*, in *Timoleon*.

## SECT. 2.

*Timoleon*

Sent to their aid.

send aid to their Colony, pitched upon *Timoleon* for their Captain. He was the son of *Timodemus* or *Imenatus*, of a quiet and loving disposition, but a great Enemy to such as mastered their neighbours, which he shewed effectually against his own brother, whom, having made himself Lord of *Corinth* by the help of some Mercenaries, he gave way to have killed, being in the room, and bursting out into tears, whilst his two companions did it. Some accounting this act as unnatural and impious, though others commended it, he thereupon abstained from all employment for twenty years, till this charge was laid upon him. Whilst he was preparing for the Expedition, *Ictas* dealt underhand with the *Carthaginians*, that he might be advanced into the place of *Dionysius*, wrote to *Corinth* to stop their proceedings, and procured the *Carthaginians* to send to forbid *Timoleon* from setting foot in *Sicily*. He besieged *Dionysius*, but rising up upon other thoughts and returning homewards, the besieged followed him, and falling on his rear, forced him to fight. Having the better in this engagement, he killed 3000 of *Dionysius* his men; then pursuing the rest to *Syracuse*, got it all into his hands, except the Island. *Timoleon* being more earnestly pressed forwards by his fellow Citizens, upon discovery of *Ictas* his treachery, though he fell into the hands of the *Carthaginians* sent from him to intercept him, yet escaped, and arrived in *Sicily* with ten ships, and 1200 men. The several Cities in the Island being accustomed to be deceived and ill used by others, suspected him also; but finding the Inhabitants of *Adranum* to be part for him and part for the *Carthaginians*, he using admirable expedition, fell suddenly upon the Enemies Camp, which taking, he was admitted into the Town. After this diverse other places joyned with him, and with speed marching to *Syracuse*, he unexpectedly also broke into the City.

51. *Syracuse* was now held by three several parties, *Timoleon's*, and that of *Dionysius*, and *Ictas*, in so many several quarters; moreover the *Carthaginians* were in the Haven with 150 Gallies, which carried 50000 men. It troubled *Timoleon* to see himself overmatched, but presently things turned very well for him. Ten ships came laden with men and money from *Corinth* to his aid, and *Mamercus* Tyrant of *Catana*, and divers forts joyned themselves to him, which so discouraged the *Carthaginians*, as they weyed anchor and departed into their own dominions: *Ictas* being destitute of their assistance was quite discouraged, and *Messana* now also declared for *Timoleon*. *Dionysius* too being terrified at this his success, sent to him, and yielded up himself with all he had into his hands, whom he suffered upon his delivery of the Castle, and laying down his Principality, to depart *Corinth*; some four years after the recovery of his former estate. Thenceforth, having lost all by his sluggishness, he lived in great contempt and penurie, so as he would walk up and down in poor ragged cloathes, frequent the Stewes and drinking houses, gaze upon that meat in the shambles which he had no money in his purse to buy, and at last took upon him the office of a Pedagogue, in which he might best imitate his former carriage towards his Subjects, in tyrannizing over his boyes. *Alian* reporteth, that *Philip* of *Macedon* meeting him on a time, asked him the reason why he kept not that great and strong Principality left him by his father; to which he answered, That his father left him that inheritance, but not his fortune, whereby he defended both himself and it. This was the end of the Tyranny of *Dionysius* father and son, 64 years after the first beginning of it, in the second year of the 109 Olympiad, A. M. 3661.

52. *Ictas* very unwilling to lose his hopes of preferment, procured the *Carthaginians* to return to *Syracuse*. *Mago* filled the Haven with his ships, and landing 60000 men, pitched his Camp in the City; *Ictas* then laid siege to the Castle, which the *Corinthians* now held from the resignation of *Dionysius*. *Timoleon* relieved them by provisions sent from *Catana* in little Vessels through the *Carthaginian* Fleet; whereupon *Ictas* and *Mago* drew out a strong party and besieged *Catana*; after whose departure, *Leon*, Captain of the *Corinthians* sallied out of the Castle, and falling upon the besiegers

A. M. 3661.  
 Ol. 109. an. 2.  
 V. C. 411.  
 Ochi 19.  
 Philippi 18.  
 Justinus supra.

*Var. Hist. l. 12. c. 60.*

## SECT. 2.

fiagers lying in a secure and careless posture, killed some, and, the other flying, took *Achradina* the strongest quarter of the City. This the two Generals understanding, quickly faced about and returned; but missed of both places, out of desire to possess both. *Timoleon* having secured *Messana*, returned with 4000 men towards *Syracuse*, whereupon *Mago* for fear hoisted up sails and departed for *Africk*, having, by his laziness and cowardize, lost a fair opportunity of reducing all *Sicilie* into the power of his Superiors. Afterwards *Timoleon* dividing his men, set upon such places of the City as *Hicetas* yet retained, and by force got them all into his power, without any bloodshed of his own party: then threw he down all the fortifications and monuments of the Tyrants, except *Ge'on's* Statue, calling the People to the work by a publick Crier. Then he applied himself to the making of Laws agreeable to a Popular Government, which yet he endeavoured but to little purpose so to restrain, as to prevent the inconveniencies which formerly had their rise from too much popularity. In explaining and illustrating *Diocles's* his Laws, he used the help of *Cephalus*, and *Dionysius*, both *Corinthians*. He ordained a new annual and chief Magistrate, whom he would have called the *Servant of Jupiter Olympius*, in memory of their recovered liberty, commanding that by his name the year should be signed, as by the *Archons* at *Athen's*, and the *Consuls* at *Rome*. The first that bore this Office was *Callimedes*, a man of prime note, being chosen by the Suffrages of the People. Now whereas by reason of Wars, Seditions, and Banishments, the City was even exhausted, he recalled the Exiles out of *Sicilie*, *Greece*, and *Asia*, which being in number 10000, he increased by a far greater, consisting of *Sicilians* and *Italians* of *Greekish* Original, to whom being made free of the City, he distributed Lands and possessions.

*Timoleon* recovereth *Syracuse*, and sedeth the State thereof.

53. *Iccus* having retired to *Leontium*, *Timoleon* laid siege to that City; but finding it strongly manned, rose up from before it, and went about to other places, to which he restored liberty, expelling their Tyranni. In this mean while *Iccus* went against *Syracuse*; but was forced to retreat with great loss. *Timoleon's* renown was by this time so spread abroad, that many towns of the *Sicanians*, and others subject to the *Carthaginians*, sent to him, to desire they might be admitted into the social League. The *Carthaginians* herein were so concerned, as to prepare again for the renewing of the War, procuring Soldiers out of *Gall*, *Liguria*, *Spain*, and *Africk*. *Mago* had killed himself after his shameful return, and his dead body was nailed to a cross for the mal-administration of his Office; therefore in the third year after they sent over *Asdrubal* and *Amilcar*, with 200 long-ships, and above 1000 of burthen, wherein were so many men transported as made up those already in *Sicilie* 70000 Foot, and 10000 Horse, which with warlike Chariots marched against *Timoleon*. He, having composed the difference with *Hicetas* mustered all his forces, and judging it wisdom to transfer the War into the Enemies Country, for this purpose he chose out of all 12000 men, with which he marched away in haste; but in his journey a great mutiny happened amongst his Soldiers. For one *Thrasius* a rash impudent fellow, who with the *Phocians* had rifled the Temple at *Delphos*, cried out, that *Timoleon* being mad, led them into most certain death, for that the *Carthaginians* in number so far exceeded them: and he advised the Mercenaries to return to *Syracuse*, and demand the pay already due to them. *Timoleon* had much ado to take up the matter, and 1000 utterly refused to follow him. But he rejoiced that the mutineers had already fallen off, before they came to any engagement, and with the rest hastened toward the Enemy.

54. By the convenience of a mist he got near to the Enemy undiscovered, then lying upon the River *Crimeus*. Ten thousand of the *Carthaginians* passing the River, he fell down upon them from the hills, and made great slaughter, and their friends coming in to their relief, the fight was sharply renewed, and the *Carthaginians* by their great numbers began to encompass the other round, when fell such a storm, as, together with the valour of the *Greeks*, forced them to their heels. Flying into the River by heaps, the

Foot

## SECT. 2.

The *Carthaginians* receive a great overthrow.

Foot amongst the Horse, and Chariots, multitudes perished, being either pressed, wounded to death by the swords of their Companions, drowned through the swiftness of the stream then increased by rain, or else killed by the Enemy on their backs: the *Sacred band* so called, consisting of 2500 of the choicest Soldiers, fighting most valiantly, all died in the place. Near upon 13000 were slain, and 15000 taken, with 200 Chariots (the greatest part whereof was broken in pieces) and 1000 brigandines with 10000 shields; though most of the Arms were swallowed up in the water: Those *Carthaginians* that remained, in great consternation escaped to *Lilbaeum*. Their friends at *Carthage* hearing of their defeat, were in no little fear, out of conceit that *Timoleon* would now come over thither. Wherefore they recalled *Gisco* the brother of *Hanno* out of banishment, and made him General over the Army, which they raised with money out of other Nations, not thinking it meet to thrust themselves into such danger for the time to come. But *Timoleon* returning to *Syracuse*, found it a convenient time to punish the mutineers, whom he banished *Sicilie*, commanding them to depart the City before Sun set. Passing over into *Sicilie* they settled on a Town amongst the *Brutii*, who rising and besieging them, took the place, and therein put them all to the sword.

*Timoleon* taketh and putteth to death *Hicetas*.

Overthroweth *Mamercus*.

*Hippo* and *Mamercus* put to death.

*Nicodemus* & *Apolloniades* put out of their power.

55. *Hicetas* often mentioned before, and *Mamercus* Tyrannus of *Caiana*, joined with the *Carthaginians* against *Timoleon*, persuading them, for fear of losing their share in *Sicilie*, to send over some forces. They sent away *Gisco*, who hired some *Greeks*, the first which served that Nation. They cut off some hundreds of *Timoleon's* Mercenaries, and *Hicetas* invaded the *Syracusan* Territories, whence getting much booty he marched into *Calauria*, in contempt of *Timoleon*, who lay there now with inconsiderable forces in comparison of his. *Hicetas* being pursued by *Timoleon*, got over the River *Damyrus*, and then endeavoured to hinder his passage; but he pressing upon him, slew 1000 of his men, and putting him to flight, pursued him into the Territories of *Leontium*, where he took him alive, with his son *Eupolemus*, and put them both to death as Traitors to their Country, together with *Euthymus* his General of the Horse; for that in a speech to the *Leontines* he had scoffed at the *Corinthians*, saying, they needed not to be afraid, though the *Corinthian* women were come from home, terming *Timoleon* and his men no other than women. After this *Timoleon* overthrew in battle *Mamercus*, killing 1000 of his men, whereof the greater number were *Carthaginians*, who thereupon earnestly begged peace, and had it granted on these conditions: That they still retaining all in their hands within the River *Lycus*, it should be yet lawful for any one to remove thence to *Syracuse* with his goods and family, and to renounce alliance with them, and with all the Tyranni in *Sicilie*, which at this time had enslaved many Cities of the Island. *Mamercus* fled over into *Italy*, and *Cinna* was delivered up to *Timoleon*, who be took himself to *Messana*, where he besieged *Hippo* by Land and Sea, and taking him in his flight, delivered him up to the Citizens, who put him to death. *Mamercus* yielded himself to *Timoleon*, who having promised him he would not be his accuser, he cast himself upon the People of *Syracuse*; but perceiving them as he began to speak enraged against him, he attempted to dash out his own brains, and that not dispatching him, he was taken up and executed as a robber.

56. *Timoleon*, after this, drove away *Nicodemus*, who ruled over the *Centorippini*, and forced *Apolloniades* to lay down his power, which he exercised over the *Agyneans*, whom having restored thus to liberty he made free of *Syracuse*. Then did he restore all the other Cities to their desired liberty, one after another, and received them into confederacy with *Syracuse*; and it was proclaimed by the voice of a publick Crier throughout *Greece*, that The People of *Syracuse* offered houses and lands, to all that would join themselves as members to their Commonwealth. Hereby it came to pass that multitudes flocked thither as to a new inheritance. *Timoleon* setting himself to the care of the State, corrected and expiated the Laws of *Diocles*, and

A. M. 3666.  
O. 110. an. 2.  
V. C. 415.  
Ochi 23.  
Phil. 22.

## SECT. I.

Timoleon's death.

and acted other things necessary, as he thought, to the well being thereof, till growing old he lost his sight, which calamity as he bore very moderately, so by reason of it he intermitted not publick business. Not long after, he died, and was buried by the confluence of all *Sicilie*, the affaires whereof he had settled; games being celebrated yearly in memory of him, as for an *Hero*. This happened in the 58 year of his government, the last of the 110 *Olympiad*, and the last also of the reign of *Philip* of *Macedon* father to *Alexander* the Great; about the year of the World 3668; the second of *Artes* King of *Perfia*, and seven before the beginning of the *Macedonian* Empire, to the time whereof, what we have further to say concerning the affairs of *Sicilie*, is to be referred; which affaires will shew, that the infirmity of Popular Government is greater than that *Timoleon* by his constitutions could heal the distempers thereof, and further evince the worth of Monarchy.

A. M. 3668.  
Ol. 110. an. 4.  
V. C. 417.  
Artes 2.  
Phil. 24.

## CHAP. IV.

## The affairs of the Romans contemporary with the second Empire.

## SECT. I.

From the Banishment of *Tarquinius* and first change of the Government, to the alteration made by the Decemviri, the space of 57 years.

Consuls.

Whence so called.

I. The Kingly Office being banished with *Tarquinius* (though both rebelliously and impudently) that of *Consuls* succeeded. Who were so called a *Consulendo*. *Festus* observeth out of *Verrinus*, that the word *Consul* was used by the Antients, not onely for *Consilium petas*, and *percontaris*; but also for *judices* and *statuas*: Moreover the word *Consulere* is many times taken for *providere*, or *prospicere*. According to this Etymology various is the opinion of Learned Men concerning this Office. Some derive it from the duty or work of consulting the Senate, which was incumbent upon the Consuls. Others interpret it of judging, which, saith (a) *Lipsius*, I onely read in (b) *Quintilian*, who puts the question; whether Consul was so named from consulting, or judging, seeing that *consulere* was used also for the latter, whence arose that phrase: *Rogat boni Consul*, that is, *judices*; but not only *Quintilian*, but *Festus* also, in the word *Consul*, giveth this Etymology. Lastly, some derive it from the end of the Office, which was *consulere*, or *providere*, as (c) *Florus* and *Justinian's Code*. But those Magistrates were not first of all named *Consules* but *Pratores*, which name, although it was common to others, yet stuck to them by way of excellency. (d) *Festus* saith it expressly; and so doth (e) *Justinian* in his *Novelle Constitutiones*. *Xonaras* saith the name of *Prator* continued till the *Decemviri*, who being banished, then at length crept in the name of *Consul*. But he should rather have said, that then the name of *Judex* crept in; for it appeareth out of *Livie*, that they were called *Judices* next after *Pratores*, before the name of *Consul* came in. The Historian in his third Book speaking of such things as happened in the first year after the writing of the twelve *Tables* addeth: In these times it was the custom not to call the Consul by the name of *Judex*, but *Prator*. (f) *Varro* out of ancient Commentaries confirmeth this, and (g) *Cicero* giveth the Etymology of all these Offices thus, a *praenando*, *judicando*, *consulendo*, *Pratores*, *Judices*, *Consules appellantur*. Some upon good grounds conjecture, that after the creation of *Pratores*, who were peculiar Judges, the name of *Judex* was left, and that of *Consul* succeeded, which continued to the last.

(a) De Magi-  
strat. pop. Rom.  
cap. 7.  
(b) Lib. 1. c. 9.

(c) Lib. 1. c. 9.

(d) In voc.  
Pratoria Porta.  
(e) 24. & 25.

(f) De Ling.  
Latina, lib. 5.  
(g) De Legib.  
lib. 3.

2. The

## SECT. I.

Their power.

2. The power of *Consuls* was at first the same with that of *Kings*, allayed onely by plurality of persons and shortness of time, so that *Cicero* calleth it *Regium Imperium*, and *Regia potestas*, and the *Greeks* chose to call them *Hypatoi*, which signifyeth those that are most excellent or chief, as *Dionysius* telleth us. In the beginning they might imprison and sentence at their pleasure, having the power of life and death over the Citizens, though scarce the authority to make peace and war, as *Lipsius* affirmeth. By degrees this great power was diminished, and that especially by two things, viz. *Appeal*, and *Interposing*, called *Provocatio* and *Intercessio*. The former was presently brought in after the banishment of the *Kings*, by *Valerius Poplicola*, who preferred a Law for taking away animadversion upon Citizens from the *Consuls*, and giving liberty of Appeal to the People as the higher Judge. But by the Interposition of the *Tribunes* of the people who were afterwards created, all actions of the Consuls whatsoever might be obstructed, as by the voice of the people it self, whose power and dignity thenceforth daily increased, and took authority over all Magistrates. Hereby was that of the Consuls much diminished; Yet not quite broken and dissolved as long as the Commonwealth continued; their Offices being both many and large. For first they were the head of the State, all ordinary Magistrates being subject and obnoxious to them, (except the *Tribunes*) in whose actions they might interpose. Secondly, they had the chief Command in the War over Citizens and Associates, as also over Provinces and Subjects, whom they might punish; and Authority to appoint Officers in the Army, as appeareth out of *Cicero* and *Polybius* in several places. Thirdly, they assembled the people, consulted with it, preferred Laws also, which if enacted bore their names. Fourthly, they received Letters from Governours of Provinces, from Nations and Cities: gave audience to Ambassadors, and what was to be done either by Senate or people passed through their hands as chief Ministers of State. Fifthly, as the Senate handled and executed all things in peace and war, so did they govern it in some sence, they assembled and dismissed it: therein they asked the Members their opinions, counsed and divided them: and in conclusion they steered the ship of the Commonwealth. This was their power while the free State continued; but after it was subjected to the power of one person, their authority was again much impaired, few of all these privileges remaining to them; for that the Prince assumed the rights of all Magistrates, but especially those of the *Consul* and *Tribunes*. Under the Emperours they were employed in consulting the Senate, administering Justice, assigning Tutors or Guardians, manumitting Slaves, letting out to farm the Customs (which Office formerly belonged to the *Censors*) and managing publick Games: besides, they had the honour of having the year characterized by their names, as formerly. These things will be sufficiently evinced (at least most of them) in the sequel of this History concerning Roman affairs.

Certain Rites concerning them.

3. There were observed certain Consular Rites, which it will rather be-  
hove us in this place to relate, than scatteredly hereafter to give an account of them. First of all the time wherein the Consuls assumed their Office was not set or constant, but various, till the year of the City 532. when both they and other Magistrates entered on the Calends of *January*, having before, as *Simplician* and others observe, Commenced on the Calends of *Quintilis* called *July*, as well as at other times. The first day was an high day, and very creditable to them, the Senate and people meeting at their houses, saluting, and accompanying them to the Capitol, where they took their Oaths and Sacrificed. Thence they went to the Senate house, where they were ordered by a *Senatus Consultum* to give thanks to the Prince of the Senate; then sent they gifts to their friends, and threw money to the people, which later expense was afterwards taken away by the Emperours, and appropriated to the repairing of aqueducts. They twice swore to govern according to the Laws (as all other Magistrates did, none being to keep his Office above five dayes, except publicly sworn) when first they entered; once

\* Ad  
A. M. 3676.

in

## SECT. I.

in the *Capitol*, and then again in the *Roftra*, in their hands to whom they succeeded : and at the laying down of their Office again at the years end they swore in like manner, that wittingly and willingly they had done nothing, contrary to the said Laws. Another Rite there was, as *Lipfius* termeth it, about their power, which thereby was so increased as to become as absolute as the Kingly was. This was onely upon an extraordinary occasion, or in extreme necessity, when all lay at the stake, and the Citie was in danger. Then a Decree of the Senate passed in this form : *Viderint Consules nequid Resp. detrimenti accipiat, or Dent operam Consules nequid Resp. detrimenti Capiat*, as \* *Sallust* hath it, who addeth, that this greatest power was given by the Senate to these Magistrates, to raise forces, make War, all manner of wayes to punish Citizens, and associates, to have, both at home, and abroad in War, absolute command and judiciary power. Otherwise without the command of the people no Consul could do any of these things. In a word, by this Decree was reitord to them that power (or rather more given) which was taken away by the *Appeal*, and other Laws.

The age capable of this Office.

4. What the Ornaments and Ensigns of the *Consuls* were, we have formerly observed out of *Dionysius*, to which shall be added upon occasion what may be thought requisite. As for the age wherein a man was capable of this Office, (a) *Tacitus* observeth, that of old it was lawfull at any age to sue for the *Consulship*, and the supream power of *Diktator*. But afterwards being taught otherwise by experience (in the 573th year of the Citie) the Romans thought fit to set bounds to juvenile heat and ambition. This was, as (b) *Livy* writeth, by a Law which *L. Julius* (or *Villius*) Tribune of the people preferred, whereby was limited a certain age before which it was not lawfull to stand for any place of Magistracy ; but from *Cicero* it should rather appear that there were several Laws made for the several Offices ; and at length the *Lex Julia* or *Annaria*, included, and abolished all the rest. For (c) he maketh them many, calling them in the plural number *Leges Annales* ; and *Livy*, saying that then first of all a Law was preferred by *Julius*, in effect contradicted himself, relating elsewhere a (d) passage concerning *Scipio Africanus* ; that when he stood for the *Edileship*, the Tribunes of the people opposed him, alleging that he was not yet arrived at the lawfull age which was required for that Office ; and yet he was many years before *Julius* or his Law. *Cicero* (e) declareth the 43th year to have been the age of *Consulship*, saying, that *Alexander* the Great having died in his 33th year, came ten years short of the *Consular* age. If his words be taken strictly, the 43th, but if more largely, the 42th was the year, and this rather as many examples do confirm. A grave age became this most grave and weighty Office ; but sometimes the people dispensed with the Law, as will be shewn, the Emperours neglected it, and *Caesar* Dictator before them, who made *Dolabella* Consul at 25. Lastly, as for the Term or duration of the *Consulship*, it was annual, as we before hinted in *Brutus* his model, and so continued, till *Julius Caesar* made several in one year, so that afterwards *Consuls* were nominated for three, two, and one moneth, and others substituted one after another. Hence came it to passe that there were two sorts of *Consuls*, *Ordinary* and *Substitute*, the former beginning on the *Calends* of *January*, and the later at other times. This custom continued till *Constantine*, who again made the Office Annual, and instead of the *Suffetti*, or *Substitute*, ordained a new kind, called *Consulares*, and *Consules Honorarii*, whose Office was not called *Consulatus*, but *Consularatus*, having derived its Original from the *Consular* Ornaments invented by *Julius Caesar*. Of this titular promotion, (f) *Cassiodorus* is to be consulted.

The first Consuls.

5. But (to come to the matter in hand) the first *Consuls* were *L. Junius Brutus*, and *L. Tarquinius Collatinus*, who began this Office, according to (a) *Dionysius* his Computation, in the beginning of the 68th Olympiad, wherein *Ischomachus* of *Crotone* was Victor, *Isagrus* being Archon at Athens. Because they could not deny that many good things had been done by Kings for the Commonwealth, they would have the name preserved for ever in the State,

## SECT. I.

A.M. 3496.  
O.C. 444.  
V.C. 245.  
Date 13.

State, and therefore gave order to the *Pontifices* and *Augurs* to chuse out some one, who taking care of *Superstition*, and being exempted from War, should be called *Rex Sacrificulius*, to which Office allotted unto the *Patrians*, *Manlius Papirius* of that Order first attained. Next after this, fearing that the people might have, as they well might, an ill opinion of their intentions, and say that for one they had got two Kings ; to diminish envy, whereas each of them had as yet twelve Axes carried before them, as the Kings used to have, they ordered that but one of them should have twelve Axes, and the other twelve *Lictors* with Rods alone, and each his moneth should have the Axes. This contained the people better in obedience, as other things whereby they laboured to render themselves popular. For they revived the Laws of *Servius Tullius*, concerning publick meetings and assemblies, with other things which conduced to the satisfaction of the common sort, who now looked upon their lawlesse liberties as recovered.

6. *Tarquinius* after his banishment first stayed at *Gabii* for some time, whither many of his party flocking to him, after he could not prevail with them of that place to make War in his behalf against the Romans, he betook himself into *Toscany*, or *Etruria*, where he could claim kindred by his mother, and there winning mens minds by his munificence, and moving them with his tears, he procured Ambassadors to be sent to Rome in his behalf. First they moved that he might be received again, promising on his behalf very good demeanour for the time to come, and when this equity could not be heard, they (or others sent afterwards, as *Plutarch* writeth) desired he might have his goods, especially such as were descended upon him from *Tarquinius Priscus* his Grand-father, who had in no wise ill deserved of them. *Brutus*, according to his furious and malicious temper, very vehemently opposed it, saying, that it would shew little foresight in them to furnish him with money to employ against themselves ; but his Colleague was for restoring the goods, and prevailed to have the Decree passe on his side, by one Vote onely overpowering the contrary party, according to *Dionysius*. The Ambassadors having it in charge to labour with the friends of *Tarquinius*, that they might do something effectually, drew out the time in length, pretending they wanted carriages, and must sell such things as could not be removed. They stayed so long as to draw over to them some of the two notable families of the *Aquillii* and *Vulsi*, viz. two persons of this, and three of that. Of all these *Collatinus* the Consul was Uncle, and *Brutus* also had married the sister of the *Vulsi*, by which he had several Children, whereof two youths they drew in, having convinced them of their fathers vehemency, madnesse, and folly, and given them good hopes of great things to be done for them by *Tarquinius*.

7. These men met in the house of the *Aquillii* to ripen their business. There in the dark, a certain slave, *Vindicius* by name, seating to be found in that room when they came in, and not with any intent to harken, had himself behind a Chest, and heard their whole debate concerning their purpose of killing the *Consuls* ; about which they gave Letters then to the Ambassadors (who lodged in the house, and were present at the meeting) to be delivered to *Tarquinius*. The Slave in this case knew not how to carry himself ; for, to go to *Brutus*, and to accuse his own sons to him seemed an hard and bold attempt, as no lesse to do it unto *Tarquinius* their Uncle ; no private person he knew to whom he might communicate so great a matter, and yet a thing of such consequence he thought was not to be buried in silence, nor yet the discovery thereof deferred. At length he betook himself to *P. Valerius*, who had also a great hand in casting out the King. *Valerius* exceedingly struck with the thing, that he might proceed warily, first secured the slave to have him forth coming, then sending his brother *Marcus* to seize the Kings house, and watch the servants there, that they should carry away no Letters, he himself with his Clients and Friends went to the house of the *Aquillii*, where he got into his hands what was written to *Tarquinius*. The *Aquillii* being abroad met him at the Gate, where they endeavoured to recover by force the

Revealed.

Leges inter alios  
Dionysium l. 5.  
& Plutarch.  
in Poplicola.

H h h

Letters

## SECT. I.

Letters from him; but he through the help of those about him drew them into the Forum, as his brother also having seized on other Letters at the King's house, forced some of his servants thither. The tumult being appeased by the Consuls, *Vindicius* related the Story, and the Letters were read. The parties said nothing for themselves; all were astonished and silent; at length some to flatter *Brutus* mentioned banishment; *Collatinus* shedding tears gave the prisoners hope, and this was increased because *Valerius* held his peace.

*Brutus* putteth  
to death his  
sons.

8. But furious and implacable *Brutus* calling both his Sons by their names (*Titus* and *Tiberius*) asked them why they said nothing to what was laid to their charge, and when they answered not at the third time, he turned to the *Lictors* or Executioners, and said, *Now is it your part to perform the rest*. They presently took the youths, and stripping them tied their hands behind them: then did they beat with rods, and after that behended them, he, whilst others could not behold so abominable a spectacle, feeding his angry eyes with the object, till all was done. Then left he the rest to the discretion of his Colleague and departed; after which a stupidity, horror, and amazement, as the things required, for a time possessed all. *Collatinus* his backwardness and delay encouraged the *Aquilis* to desire time to answer, and that *Vindicius* their Slave might be given up to them, and not continue in the hands of their accusers. The Consul was about to do both, when *Valerius* who kept the Slave all this while in the midst of his followers, would neither deliver him, nor suffer the People to depart without censuring the accused, though *Collatinus* was ready to dismiss the Assembly. He laid hands upon the *Aquilis*, and sent for *Brutus*; crying out, that *Collatinus* did unworthily, to impose upon his Colleague a necessity of killing his sons, and think of granting the lives of the other unto women. The Consul being vexed, commanded the *Lictors* to take away *Vindicius*, so that they laying hands on him, wounded those that kept him, and *Valerius* his friends fighting in his behalf, the People cried out for *Brutus*. When he came he said, that by his full authority he had animadverted upon his own Sons, and left the other delinquents to the People, giving leave to every man to speak. There was no need of this, saith *Plutarch*. (though *Dionysius* relateth a great contest betwixt the two Consuls) but the rabble called to the vote, condemned them by all their Suffrages; according to which sentence they were behended. *Collatinus* now, who for being a kin to the King had been suspected, and whose name was hateful to the People, having by his carriage in this business offended the generality, voluntarily laid down his Office and departed from the City, seeing now to what a sad passe he had helped to bring things, and too late repenting of his rebellion. To him succeeded *Valerius* (the *Comitia* being held for an election) whom *Brutus* much desired to have had his Colleague at first, but that the greatness of *Collatinus* carried it from him.

*Valerius* Consul  
in the  
room of *Tar-*  
*quinius Colla-*  
*tinus*.

9. *Valerius* being with the good-will of all the multitude created Consul, thought the first fruits of his Office due to *Vindicius*, whom manumitted he made free of the Commonwealth, this privilege being given to him first of all *Liberti* or *Freed-men*, according to *Plutarch*, (which *Appian* long after communicated to them all) and from him a perfect and full manumission had the name of *Vindicta*. This done, the Consuls gave the goods of the King to be rifled by the People, demolished his house, and laid the *Campus Martius* which he had to himself, open as before, wherein lying Corn cut down already, they threw it into the River, and sending trees that grew there after it, these receiving gravel and such rubbish as came down the channel, at last grew into an Island called *Insula Sacra*; though some say, this happened in after times, when *Tarquinius* a Vestal Nun gave the adjoining field to the Publick, and for that obtained great honours, as these amongst the rest; of all women alone to appear as a witness in any cause, and liberty to marry, which she refused. But *Tarquinius* seeing that reason failed, betook himself to force, and brought a great Army of *Tuscan*s against Rome.

The

*Dionys. lib. 3.*  
*Livius lib. 2.*  
*Val. Maxim.*  
*l. 1. c. 8.*  
*Plutar. in Po-*  
*plicola.*  
*Plin. l. 29. c. 1.*  
*Festus in voce*  
*Insula.*

## SECT. I.

*Brutus* slain.

The Consuls opposed him with another, and when they came to joyn, *Brutus* the son of *Tarquinius*, and *Brutus* the Consul, with greater wrath and fury than discretion, singled out each other, and so carelessly demeaned themselves, as both of them lost their lives. A great and bloody battle was fought betwixt the Armies, which night onely broke up, and that with such equal fortune, as neither party could boast it self, till at length either by a voice out of a grove, as the story goeth, that the *Etruscans* had lost one man more, or some other way, the *Romans* were so revived, and the other discouraged, that the latter forsook their tents for fear, and being fallen upon by the Enemy, were nigh 5000 taken prisoners, having lost 11300 in the fight. *Valerius* triumphed at his return to the City (leaving an example to posterity which was duly followed) and then buried his Colleague with great honour, making himself a funeral Oration in his commendation, which custom *Dionysius* will have more ancient at Rome than in Greece; although *Anaximenes* wrote that *Solon* was the Author of it.

A. M. 3497.  
Ol. 68. an. 1.  
V. C. 246.  
Dail 15.

*Valerius* suspe-  
ced

Clearer him-  
self.

10. But when the People considered how *Brutus* the father of their liberty, as they accounted him, would not govern alone without a Colleague, and yet *Valerius* made no haste to take a partner, they began to complain, that he had not taken to himself so much the place of *Brutus* (which yet not at all belonged to him) but that of *Tarquinius*, and were much offended with him. They confirmed themselves in their hard opinion, from his having all the Rods and Axes carried before him, and with them, in greater state than *Tarquinius* used, marched from his house, which was much larger than the Palace that he demolished. His house was very fair, situate in such a place as afforded him prospect round about, and had a difficult ascent; so that the convenience of the site, considered with his Kingly port and attendance, seemed to threaten their infant Commonwealth, now an Orphan by *Brutus* his death. His friends remonstrating to him these particulars, he attended not; but that very night sent for Carpenters; who demolished the house ere morning: the next day the People were presented with a new and unexpected sight, which fully altered their opinion concerning *Valerius*, who now wanting an house of his own, was glad to accept of the courtesy of friends, till the People gave him a place, wherein he built a mansion less stately than the former. Further, that he might render not onely himself, but also his Office, in stead of terrible, familiar and acceptable to all, he removed Axes from the bundle of Rods, and the Rods themselves, when he came into the Assembly, he bowed or vailed to the People, thereby intimating, that in them lay the chief power; which custom his Successors followed. Hereby, as to his own person, he lessened not himself, but cut off envy, and got so much power, as he renounced of liberty; the People willingly submitting to him, because he flattered them, out of which respect they gave him the Surname of *Poplicola*, not *Publicola*, as *Siganus* hath evinced. He gave free leave to any to sue for the Consulship; but before a Colleague should be joyned with him, being ignorant what might happen, and fearing he might either through emulation or ignorance cross his designs, by his sole authority, he gave birth to several Popular Constitutions, which at length produced such effects as shewed the excellency of that Government which he had helped to destroy.

His constitu-  
tions.

11. First he filled up the Senate which had been exhausted, by an addition of 164 Persons, as some delivered the number. Then made he several Laws, which gave beginning to that paramount or rampant liberty, whereof the People was afterwards possessed. By one he gave leave to an accused person, to appeal from the Consuls to the People. By another, he made it death for any one to take upon him an Office of Magistracy without the People's order. A third gave relief to poor Citizens, by taking away the payment of Tribute. Another punished disobedience towards the Consuls, and appointed the mulct to be the price of five Oxen, and two Sheep: the price of a Sheep was ten *Oboli* (each *Obolus* was worth 1 d. q.) and 100 the value of an Oxen. For at that time the use of money was but rare amongst the

H h h 2

Romans;



## SECT. I.

*Romans*; wealth consisting in plenty of Cattel; whence riches were afterwards called *Pecunia* from *Pecus*, and upon the ancient money an Oxe, Sheep, or Hog was stamped, which gave it the name of *Pecunia*; and hence they imposed upon their sons (as *Plutarch* observeth) the names of *Smillii*, *Bubulci*, *Capvarii*, and *Porcii*. Another Law *Valerius* made, which gave power to any man to kill him unheard, that affected the Supreme power, if he could demonstrate the crime. The last was a Law for the creation of two *Quaestors* or publick Treasurers, as *Plutarch* writeth. For it being necessary that the People should contribute money for maintenance of Wars, he would neither undertake the keeping of it himself, nor commit the care of it to his friends, neither thought it convenient that the Publick money should be kept in a private house: therefore he made the Temple of *Saturn* the *Ararium*, or Treasury, and caused the People to chuse out two young men to be

The *Quaestors*.

*Quaestors*. The first were *P. Valerius*, and *M. Minucius*. A great quantity of money was now brought into the *Ararium*. For at the *Census* 130000 were cessed or valued, besides Widdows and Orphans. Thus much *Plutarch* delivereth concerning this Office.

When first made.

12. But some give a more ancient beginning to the *Quaestors*, making theirs antienter than any Office, except that of the Kings. (a) *Gracchanus* a Lawyer wrote, that both *Romulus* and *Numa* had their *Quaestors*, created by the consent of the People; however he saith it is certain that *Tullus Hostilius* had his. (b) *Ulpian* confirmeth the later, and (c) *Tacitus* seemeth to agree with either of them, affirming that under the Kings there were *Quaestors*, which the *Lex curiata* sheweth, that was renewed by *L. Brutus*. He addeth, that the *Consuls* had power to chuse them, till the People took that honour to it self, and first of all created *Valerius Potitus*, and *Emilius Mamercus*, that they might follow the Army, in the 63 year after the banishment of *Tarquinius*. *Lipinus* thinketh this number should be read 23, that it might agree with (d) *Dionysius*, and also (e) *Livie*, who first mentioneth the *Quaestors* in the 269 year of the City, 23 years after the banishment of the King, and differeth onely in one of their names, having for *Emilius*, *Caso Fabius*. Concerning the antiquity of these Officers (f) *Pomponius* also the Lawyer agreeth with the rest. They had their name à *quarendo* saith (g) *Varro*, because they made inquiry after publick money, and also Malefactors, or the actions of such, which later employment was afterwards committed to the *Triumviri* for capital matters, so that *Quaestor* is written as for *Quaestor*. *Iustus Lipsius* is of opinion, that though the Kings might have these Officers for the punishment of vice, yet the Treasurers were not created till the change of the Government, when the Publick Treasure being increased there was need of such. At the beginning they were but two by consent of all; and those were made for the City, retaining afterwards the name of *Urbani*. But afterward when they were to look to the paying of the Armies abroad, and selling plunder and booty, then were there other two made, to accompany the *Consuls*, as *Livie* saith, which hapned about the 232 year of the City.

Their number.

13. This number long continued, until all *Italy* was brought in; then was it again doubled, no fewer than eight being thought to suffice for the Tribures of the Provinces; and this hapned when Silver money was first coined, about the 439 year of the City, as may be gathered from the Epitome of *Livie's* 15 Book. Not long after *Sylla* procured by a Law, that twenty should be made for the assistance of the Senate, as *Tacitus* writeth, to which he had delivered the judicial power: and for such an end did *Cæsar* cause fourty to be created. The *Quaestorship* was the first step to Offices of Magistracy. Their duty, as is clear from several Authors, was to gather, lay up, and pay out the publick revenues, to keep the military Ensignes of Gold and Silver (for they then used no banners) in the Treasury, to sell plunder and booty, receive, lodge, and carry our Ambassadors. They had also the government of certain places, as *Osia* and *Cales*. They received from *Augustus* the privilege of keeping the *Senatus consulta*, which formerly belonged to the

*Ædiles*

(a) Lib. de Potestatibus.  
(b) Lib. de officio Quaestoris.  
(c) Annal. 16.

(d) Lib. 8.  
(e) Lib. 3.

(f) Lib. a. ff. de Orig. Juris  
(g) De Lingua Latin. lib. 4. pag. 22. ex Edit. Joseph. Scalig.

## SECT. I.

The *Ararium* or Treasury.

*Ædiles* and *Tribunes*. And the Emperours had a certain *Quaestor* of their own called *Candidatus Principis*, and *Quaestor Principis*, or *Augusti*, whose Office *Ulpian* describeth. This gave origin to the *Quaestor Palatii* (saith *Lipinus*) to whom was granted great authority, as to make Laws and Decrees, subscribe Petitions, return answers, and to be as it were the keeper or President of the Laws, which name is now changed into *Chancellor*. But, to speak something of the Treasury, the Temple of *Saturn* was first made use of to this purpose, as *Plutarch* telleth us. Here also were kept the *Libri Elephanini*, Books wherein the 35 Tribes were written, and the Decrees of the Senate; but the *Libri Lintei*, or the *Annals*, were kept by the *Pontifices*, who therein recorded such things as were memorable. In the *Ararium* was also a more secret place, where the twentieth part of the revenues were reserved for cases of extremity onely. The *Ararium* was afterwards called *Fiscus*, from the *Fiscella*, or bags wherein the money was kept, according to *Varro*. The first *Advocatus Fisci* was instituted by *Adrian* the Emperour, as *Spartianus* witnesseth. Amongst other tributes, the People of *Rome* had the twentieth part of all revenues of Corn throughout *Italy*, besides Salt, which was the device of *Livie*, thence surnamed *Salinator*. Those that farmed the Tributes or Custom were called *Publicans*, and the principal of them *Mancipes*, according to *Podians*, whom *Volateranus* followeth.

Lucretius Consul.

14. *Valerius Poplicola* having finished his constitutions of Settlement, held the Assembly of the People for the election of another Consul. *Lucretius* the father of *Lucretia* was chosen, to whom, as the elder, *Poplicola* granted the *Fasces* or bundle of Rods; which respect of age was ever after observed by their Successors, till the time of (a) *Plutarch*, as himself writeth. This granting of the *Fasces* was yet but for the first moneth, which indeed afterwards was wont to be granted to the elder Consul; but no longer than till the *Lex Julia*, in the seventh Chapter whereof this privilege was given to him who had most children, either still in his own power (that is to be understood not emancipated), or already lost in War. But if both Consuls had an equal number of children, he who at present was a married man was preferred. If both were husbands and fathers alike, then the ancient custom returned, and he who was eldest had first the *Fasces*. Concerning such who were both unmarried, had the same number of children, or were both married and had no children, the Law commanded nothing. But I hear, saith (b) *Gellius*, that those who were exempted, were wont to yield the *Fasces* of the first moneth to their Colleagues that far exceeded them in age, or in birth, or entered upon their second Consulship. In the mean time that Consul who had no *Fasces*, that he might be known by some note of distinction, had an *Accensus* (a certain Bedle or Crier, concerning whom (c) *Varro* is to be consulted) that went before him, and *Lictors* followed with Rods and Staves, as (d) *Dionysius*, (e) *Livie*, and (f) *Suetonius* de testifie.

(a) In *Poplicola*.(b) *Noct. Attic. lib. 2. c. 15.*(c) *De Ling. Lat. pag. 62.*(d) *Lib. 5.*(e) *Lib. 3.*(f) *In Julia.*

Horatius.

15. *Lucretius* died also a few daies after his creation, to whom succeeded *M. Horatius*, who continued the Collegue of *Poplicola* for the remaining part of the year. Novv was the Capitol finished vvhich had been vowed by *Tarquinius Priscus*, and begun by *Superbus* his grand-son. *Poplicola* had a great ambition to dedicate it, but the Nobility envied him the honour, and stirred up *Horatius* to stand for it, whom when the other was constrained to be absent in the War, they injoyed by a Decree to do it, and carried him up thither, knowing that in the presence of *Poplicola* they could not have prevailed. Some write, that by lot the War fell to *Poplicola* much against his will, and the Dedication to *Horatius*. On the Ides of September, which fell in with the full Moon of the Greek moneth *Metagirtion* (answering to August the 28 of the *Italian* year, as *Jacobus Cappellus* computeth) when many flocked to behold the Solemnity, *Horatius* having commanded silence, and finished all the usual rites, touched the door, and pronounced the words of Dedication. Then *Marcus* the brother of *Poplicola* standing near for that purpose, and watching for an opportunity, said, Thy son O Consul is dead in the Camp, whereat when all others were struck, *Horatius* nothing disturbed

## SECT. I.

The Capitol dedicated.

disturbed answered onely, *Then cast him out whither you please, for I admit not of mourning*, and went on with the matter in hand. Neither was the story true, but feigned by *Marcus* to deter him from the Dedication. The same fortune hapned to the Dedication of the second Temple of *Jupiter Capitolinus*, after this was burnt in the Civil Wars. For *Sylla* having rebuilt it died before the Dedication, as *Tarquinius* was banished, and so that honour came to *Caius*. When this had perished in the sedition of *Vitellius*, *Vespasian* built the third, and was herein more fortunate than *Sylla*, that as he died before the Dedication of his, so the Emperor lived not to see the destruction of this, which presently after his death was also burned. The fourth which stood in *Plutarch's* time was both built and dedicated by *Domitian*. *Tarquinius*, as was reported, spent 40000 pounds of silver in founding his Temple; but the fourth was not gilded for so little as the wealth of the richest private man. The Marble Pillars *Plutarch* saw at *Athens*, being then of a thickness answerable to their length, but afterward when they were new cut at *Rome*, they got not so much splendour as they lost of proportion and beauty, being rendered too slender in bulk or substance.

16. In the \* Consulship of *Junius Brutus* and *M. Horatius* (that is in the same year that *Horatius* succeeded, though not immediately, into the place of *Brutus*, who with *Tarquinius* his Colleague governed but 4 moneths) when the Temple of *Jupiter Capitolinus* was Consecrated, 28 years before *Xerxes* his expedition into *Greece*, the first League was made betwixt the *Romans* and *Carthaginians*. Herein it was provided, that the *Romans* should not say beyond the *Fair Promontory*, which lay before *Carthage* towards the North. *Polybius* thinketh the cause was, for that the *Carthaginians* would not have them take notice of the places about *Byzacium*, nor the little *Syrus*: which for the fruitfulness of the soyl they termed *Emporia*. But if it hapned that any, either by Tempest or Pirates, were forced in thither, they promised they would furnish them with all things necessary, but forbade any thing to be taken by force, and commanded all to be gone thence within five dayes. It was lawfull hereby for the *Romans* to Traffick to *Carthage*, and all that part of *Africk* which lieth on this side the *Fair Promontory*, as also *Sardinia*, and that part of *Sicily* then under the *Carthaginians*, who promise upon their publick faith that all Justice shall be duely executed. From this League it appeareth that the *Carthaginians* speak of *Africk* and *Sardinia* as absolutely their own, but far otherwise concerning *Sicily* expressly distinguishing of that part thereof which they had subdued. The *Romans* also include in this League onely *Latium*, making no mention of the rest of *Italy*, which was not in their power. After this another League was made, or rather this renewed, wherein the *Carthaginians* comprized the *Tyrians*, and the people of *Utica*. To the *Fair Promontory* were added *Maffia* and *Tarsetum*, beyond which it was neither lawfull for the *Romans* to make any depredations, nor build a Town. These things *Polybius* observeth concerning these Leagues, which he also exemplifieth, and to which we referre Students in History.

17. *Tarquinius*, after that great battel wherein he lost his son *Aruns* in a Combat with *Brutus*, took himself to *Clusium*, the King whereof *Porfena* by name (one of great account for his power and munificence amongst the Kings of *Italy*) he procured to take upon him his gurrel. He first sent to *Rome*, commanding them to receive their King according to their duty, and upon refusal, both threatened, and made War upon them. Now were created Consuls *Poplicola* the second time being absent, and *T. Lucretius Tricipitinus* on the Calends of *October*, according to the *Pompilian* year, which answered to *September 14.* of the *Julian* in the new Moon. *Jacobus Cappelus* observeth that the Consuls Commenced at this time of the year from the first of *Poplicola*, till fifteen years after, in the 261<sup>st</sup> year of the Citie. *Sp. Cassius* and *Posthumius Cominius* began their Office a moneth sooner, viz. on the Calends of *October*. The reason might be, for that the new Moon fell in with the Autumnal *Aequinoctial* on the 29<sup>th</sup> of *Julian September*, from

## SECT. I.

from which the *Pompilian*, or *Numan*, *September* seemeth to have Commenced that year, the Moon increasing, although without order. For the Calends of *October* ought rather to have been on that day; but such errors were frequent in the *Pompilian* year, either through the negligence, or willfull neglect of the Priests. After the third year the Calends (or first day) of *January* recovered their true place, viz. the next new Moon to the Winter Solstice; but *September* obtained to be the beginning of the year untill the 278<sup>th</sup> year of the Citie, wherein the *Comitia* for Creation of Consuls were cast back to the Calends of the moneth *Sexilis* (afterwards called *August*) at what time *A. Virginii Tricostus*, and *Sp. Servilius Structus* were made Consuls, in the Summer Solstice, as *Dionysius* observeth.

18. *Poplicola* returning to *Rome*, first resolved in magnanimity to out-vy *Porfena*, and for that purpose, when the King was now approaching, founded the Citie *Siglinia* (or rather *Sigina*) which with great expence he fortified, and then planted it with 700 Inhabitants, making hereby a show that he could without any trouble or fear sustain the War. But *Porfena* laying close siege to *Rome*, very fiercely with all his might set upon the Citie. The two Consuls with much ado repelling the *Toscans*, at length were both so wounded as they must needs be carried off, after which the *Romans* fled from before their Enemies, who in their retreat into the Town followed them close, and flocked upon the bridge. There *Horatius* surnamed *Cocles* (either for that he had but one eye, having lost the other in War, or because his Nose was so depressed that both his Eyes seemed to go into one, whence intending to call him *Cyclops*, by ignorance of the language they pronounced it *Cocles*) together with *Herminius* and *Lartius*, opposed himself against the *Toscans*. *Cocles* stood before the bridge, and repulsed the Enemy so long till it was broken down behind him, which done, he cast himself armed as he was into the River, and swam out to his friends, having received a wound with a Spear. To requite him for the lameness he contracted by this wound, and in admiration of his valour, *Poplicola* caused all the *Romans* to give him, every one so much provision as would serve one for a day, then conferred he on him so much ground as he could plow round about in one day, and they erected to his memory a Statue in the Temple of *Vulcan*. But *Porfena* drawing out the siege in length fore straitned the Citie. *Poplicola* now executing his third Consulship, together with his last year's Colleague *M. Horatius Pulvillus*, led forth his men, and giving the King battel, overthrew him, and killed 5000 of his men. Yet this little availed, the honour of finishing this War being reserved for the valour and policy of *Mutius Cordus*.

19. *Mutius* a man of excellent courage, and no lesse skill in War, resolving with himself to ly in wait for the life of *Porfena*, put on the *Tuscan* habit, and using that language, came into the King's Camp, where observing the place in which the King was, but being ignorant of his person, he stabbed his Secretary who sat with him amongst several others. Being taken in the act, when they went about to examine him, he thrust his right hand into the fire, as intending to punish it for so great a mistake, and whilst it burned beheld *Porfena* with a steadfast and angry countenance, who admiring his resolution dismissed him, and reached him back his sword from his fear. *Mutius* took it with his left hand (whence he had the name of *Scævola*, which word signifieth one that useth his left hand, saith *Plutarch*) and telling the King that he was now overcome by his bravenesse of spirit whose threats he had contemned, he said in way of requital he would reveal a thing to him which no force of torment could have compelled him to discover. He affirmed there were 300 *Romans* now in his Camp watching an opportunity to kill him. As for his part, having been by lot destined to make the first attempt, it did not trouble him that he had failed in killing him a right good man, & one much worthier of the friendship than hatred of the *Romans*. *Porfena* hearing this, inclined presently to a compoüre of the difference, not so much out of fear of the 300. as admiration of the *Roman* courage. *Poplicola* having notice hereof, was glad of such a friend, and content to make him Umpire be-

Horatius - Cocles.

Mutius Scævola.

The first League betwixt the Romans and Carthaginians.

Porfena warreth against Rome.

\* Polyb. lib. 3. p. 160.

Livius lib. 2.

Plut. ut prius.

Ad A.M. 349. & 3507.

Plut. in Poplicol. Dionys. lib. 5. Livius lib. 2. Florus lib. 1. cap. 10. Avel. & Villor de viris illust. Val. Max. lib. 3. cap. 2. 3. Vide etiam Polyb. lib. 6.

A.M. 3498. Ol. 68. ann. 2. V.C. 247. Datis 15.

## SECT. I.

Peace made  
with Porfena.

betwixt the Commonwealth and *Tarquinius*. He often challenged *Tarquinius* to put the matter to arbitration, to which the King answered courageously, that he would not admit of any Judge, much less of *Porfena*, who having promised him aid now basely falsified his word. *Porfena* hereat displeased, especially through the solicitation of *Annus* his son, made peace with the *Romans* on these conditions: that they should quit those *Tuscan* grounds they had got into their hands, restore all prisoners, and receive all their fugitives.

Clotia.

20. For the establishment of this peace the *Romans* gave up twenty Hostages, viz. ten young youths, and as many Girls, amongst which was *Valeria* the daughter of *Poplicola*. All acts of Hostility ceasing, the young Virgins went down to the River to wash, and taking an opportunity, when none were present to hinder them, got over the water, and returned home. Some reported, that one amongst them named *Clotia* went over on horse-back, and persuaded the rest to swim after. When they presented themselves to *Poplicola*, he neither admired their resolution, nor approved of their return, fearing it would be objected as a breach of faith to the *Romans*; so that apprehending then all, he sent them back to *Porfena*. *Tarquinius* aware hereof placed in ambush a party to entrap them and their Convoy; but *Annus* the son of *Porfena* hearing of it, came in, and rescued them out of danger. When *Porfena* saw them, he demanded which had been the cause of their departure, and finding *Clotia* the principal, bestowed on her one of his own horses sumptuously adorned. Then to give a further Testimony of his respect towards the *Romans*, besides other things wherein he shewed his magnificence, he commanded his Soldiers to depart out of the Camp only with their Arms, delivering up to the besieged his Tents furnished with victuals, and all other good things. Therefore for a long time after, when publick goods were set to sale, first of all the stuff of *Porfena* was cried, to preserve the memory of his kindnesse: And about the Court-house was erected his Statue in a plain and ancient fashion. For the next year *Dionysius* nameth as Consuls, *Sp. Lartius* and *T. Herminius*, of whom *Livius* maketh honorable mention, but not as executing this Office. He writeth that at the bridge *Sp. Lartius* and *T. Herminius* both nobly descended, together with *Horatius Cocles*, sustained the first brunt of the *Horrufrans*. But Learned men tell us that it ought to be written *Lartius*, not *Lartius*.

War with the  
Sabines.

21. The year following being the 250 of the City, and the fifth after the banishment of *Tarquinius*, the first of the 99th Olympiad, saith *Dionysius*, wherein *Ischomachus* of *Croton* was Victor, *Aeschylus* being again Archon at *Athens*, in the 18th year of *Darius Hystaspis* King of *Persia*, A. M. 3501. *M. Valerius* the brother of *Poplicola*, and *P. Posthumus Tubannus* were Consuls. Now the *Sabines* made depredations in the *Roman* Territories, and proceeded so far in their injuries that it engaged the parties in a War: *Marcus* by the Counsel and assistance of his brother obtained great honour in his undertakings. He overthrew the *Sabines* twice, in the later of which battles were slain of them 12000. and not one of the *Romans* lost. Wherefore besides triumphs this was given him as an addition of honour, to have an house built for him in the Palace on the publick cost. Besides, whereas all the doors of other houses opened inwards, they would have this of his house to open outwards toward the street, as a mark of honour in this respect, that he was ever ready to move for the publick good. Indeed all the Gates of the *Greeks* are said most antiently to have opened this way, and that by Testimony of the *Comedies*, wherein they that are going out first knock within, that such as either go by or stand near, may prevent being hurt of the door, which was cast forward into the street. The next year, wherein *Poplicola* was Consul the fourth time, and his Collegue *T. Lucratius Tricipitinus*, the whole Nation of the *Sabines* with the *Latines* conspired against *Rome*, which was also much disturbed by superstition, for that all the women with Child miscarried of murtherous births, and nothing came into the World perfect. When these things much dejected the minds of the *Romans*, another erected them, and af-

A. M. 3501.  
OL. 99. ann. 1.  
V. C. 250.  
Darius 18.

## SECT. I.

*Attius Clausus*. afforded considerable encouragement to the War. *Appius* or *Attius Clausus*, an eminent man amongst the *Sabines* for riches, valour, virtue, and eloquence, being much against the War, was therefore malign'd by his emulators, as favouring the *Romans*, and designing to bring his Country under their yolk. His Enemies gaining credit with the Vulgar, he feared to put himself upon trial, and therefore raised a commotion, which retarded the War. Then did *Poplicola* invite him to *Rome*, whither he came with 5000 Families of his Country and dependents. The Families were made free of the City, and to every man assigned two Akers of Ground by the River *Aniene*; but to *Clausus* himself twenty Akers, and the degree of a Senator. Having got this opportunity, he so improved it, as to become equal to the greatest, and raised his house so much, that the *Clausi*, afterwards called *Claudii*, became inferiour to no one Family.

Poplicola di-  
eth.

22. His revolt much more exasperated the minds of his Country-men to the War, who coming with an Army to *Fidena*, placed in ambush 2000 Foot, and then sent some Horse to make incursions, commanding them to retreat, as if they fled, and so draw on the *Romans* into the snare. *Poplicola*, having notice hereof by certain fugitives, divided his Army into three parts, and taking the advantage of a mist, fell upon the *Sabines* on so many sides, and did such execution, as the nearness of *Fidena* onely hindered the destruction of them all. The *Romans*, beside the advantage of much plunder, obtained that good by this Victory, to be furnished with courage for all assays; yet imputed they the whole merit to the Consul, and stuck not to fly, but he delivered into their hands their Enemies, blind and lame, onely to be dispatched with the Sword. Having triumphed, and given up the charge of the Commonwealth to the two new Consuls, *Agrippa Menenius Lanatus*, and *Publius Posthumius*, shortly after he died, finishing his life, as he had lived, in great grace with the multitude whom he had so flattered. The People, as if they had nothing at all required him when living, but ought him yet his whole reward, decreed he should be buried at the publick charge, every one contributing a small piece of money. Some say, that he was so poor, as he left not enough to bury him. The women by universal consent mourned for him, as formerly they had done for *Brutus*, an whole year. He was by a special Decree buried within the City, (which honour (saith *Dionysius*) hath onely happened unto him to this day) and that privilege was also granted to his family. But now, (*Plutarch* writeth) none of them is there interred: the Funeral is onely drawn out thither, and the coffin being set down, one puts under fire, and presently again taketh it away, showing, that the deceased hath a right there to be buried, but on his own accord quitteth the privilege. This being done, the body was carried away.

23. The same year that *Poplicola* died, the *Sabines* provided of numerous Forces, invaded the *Roman* Territories, as far as the City walls. The Consuls taking the field against them, *Posthumius* was entrapped in an Ambush, and escaping narrowly himself, lost many of his men, which defeat struck the Citizens with great terror, who now ran to the walls, expecting the Enemy would fall upon the City. But nothing being attempted in this kind, they marched out, resolving to redeem their credit; and *Posthumius*, much more concerned in honour than the rest, so behaved himself, as he made amends fully, and both the Consuls obtained a notable victory, which had been compleated by the slaughter of all the *Sabines*, if the darkness of night had not interposed. The Senate ordered the Consuls to return in pomp; *Menenius* with full honour in triumph, sitting in a Chair, drawn in way of a Chariot, but *Posthumius*, because of his late defeat, in a more humble manner, which the *Romans* called *Ovation*, so named (saith *Festus*, or *Paulus* from him, as he from *Verrius*) from the letter O, which the Soldiers in way of joy were wont to echo at their return from a Victory; or corruptly pronounced for the *Greek* word *Euvaste*, as *Dionysius* conjectureth. *Ovation* differed herein from a *Triumph* properly so called, that the General entered not the City in a Chariot, but on foot before his Soldiers; for the Robe interwoven *Dionys.*

Iii

with

Ovation  
what.

## SECT. I.

The Sabines  
beg Peace.

with Gold, he only wore the *Prætexta togæ*, the ordinary habit of *Consuls* and *Prætors*; neither had he a Scepter, but only Laurel; and on his head a wreath of Myrtle, when the War had not been denounced, or finished without bloodshed. The year following, wherein *Sp. Cassius Viscellinus*, and *Opiter Verginius Tricostus* were *Consuls*, the *Sabines* were overthrown in a great battle at *Cures*, 10300 being slain, and about 4000 taken, which defeat caused them to beg peace, and purchase it with Corn, Money, and part of their grounds. Whilst *Sp. Cassius* did this good service against the *Sabines*, his Colleague subdued the *Camarinians* who had revolted, and having put to death the Authors of the injury, sold the rest, and razed their City.

24. The year that followed, being the first of the 70 *Olympiad* (wherein *Nicias* of *Opus* (a Town of *Locri*) was Victor, (*Myrus* executing the Annual Office of *Archon* at *Athens*) had for *Consuls* *Posthumius Cominius*, and *T. Larginus*. Now all the *Latines* (to the number of thirty several Cities, saith *Livius*) conspired against *Rome*, by the procurement of *Mamilius Octavius*, son in Law to *Tarquinius* (who at present was with him at *Tusculum*) though *Valerius* the Roman Ambassador pretended to disswade the several People of *Latium*. In the mean time also the *Slaves* at home contrived how to seize upon the *Capitol*, and burn the City, but were discovered, and nailed to crosses. The following year wherein *Ser. Sulpitius Camerinus*, and *Manius Tullus Longus*, were *Consuls*, a Faction in *Fidena*, having received some men from *Tarquinius*, killed or expelled their adversaries, and caused the Town to revolt from the *Romans*. The Senate would not make War upon the *Latines* in general, knowing many amongst them were inclined to Peace, and thought it sufficient to block up *Fidena*, for which they sent out *Manius* with a strong Army. The besieged implored assistance of the *Latines*, who in their general meeting heard also the complaints of *Tarquinius*, and though they were much importuned by some amongst them, yet they only ordered Ambassadors to be sent to demand the reception of the Kings, and the removal of the siege from *Fidena*, which was done also meeterly to gain time, giving the *Romans* a year to consider of the matter, and taking so large a space for to make preparations, in case the overture were rejected. *Tarquinius* and *Mamilius* having little hopes to prevail this way, seeing that the minds of the generality were averse from War, endeavoured to bring his right about in an easier way, by raising in *Rome* an unexpected and intestine difference betwixt the rich and poorer sort.

25. For at this very time, as *Dionysius* writeth, a great part of the common People, especially the indigent and such as were burthened by usury, did not like of the present state of affaires, which dissatisfaction was caused by the extravagant course of Creditors, who seizing upon the bodies of their Debtors, used them no better than *Slaves* purchased with money. *Tarquinius* not being ignorant hereof, sent certain of his friends with Gold, who gave them some in hand, promising more after the King's restitution, and procured thereby a conspiracy of many poor Citizens, with such *Slaves* as had been offended with their Masters the year before, for the severity shown towards their fellows. The matter was discovered to *Sulpicius*, who after he had returned a denial, though very civilly, to the *Latin* Ambassadors, by a wiledrew the Conspirators into the Forum; where encompassing them about, he put them all to the Sword. The stir being thus allayed for a time, the *Consuls* of this and the following year looked abroad, and, in the next, *Fidena* was yielded up to *T. Larginus Flavius*. Hereat the *Latines* were exceedingly startled, and now all railed on their principal men, for that no order had been taken for relief of the Town. *Tarquinius* and *Mamilius* so improved this opportunity, that all the Cities (24 in number, as they are reckoned by *Dionysius*) decreed War against the *Romans*, engaging that none should forsake their associates, nor make Peace without common consent, sealing it with an oath, and direful curses against such as should break the

Tarquinius his  
endeavours  
for the reco-  
very of his  
Kingdom.A. M. 3504.  
O. 96. an. 4.  
V. C. 253.  
Davii 21.  
Posthumus  
Cominius  
Ambascius,  
T. Lartius,  
Ruffus. Coss.

## SECT. I.

War with the  
Latines in his  
behalf.

the League, who were to be held as Enemies by all the rest. They gave liberty to *Tarquinius* and his son in Law to levie what Forces they thought convenient, and that they might have some kind of pretence, sent a message to *Rome*, whence the Senate returned a stout and resolute answer.

26. Great were the preparations of the *Latines*; the *Romans* sending round about, could make no friends, and yet were not dejected, but trusting to their domestic strength alone, were thereby rendered much more resolute and courageous, as such upon whom lay a necessity of being aliant. But a great difficulty was found in lifting Soldiers; for the poor, and those that were furcharged with debt, of which there was a great number, being cited, would not appear, saying, they had nothing to do with the *Parritians*, except their debts were remitted by Decree of the Senate, nay some talked of leaving the City, and exhorted one another not to stay in that place, where no good thing was communicated to them. The *Parritians* by good words laboured to appease them, but all in vain; so that the Senate fell into a serious debate about so weighty a matter. Some were for a free remission of the debts, after the manner of the *Athenian Sischitheia*, as the only way to remove all prejudice, and beg a fair correspondence betwixt Nobility and Commons. Others condemned this as too great a condescension, and which would encourage them to like Seditions for the time to come, thinking it the better way to list such as would give their names, and not at all value the rest, who though gratified at present, would hereafter be unserviceable. Betwixt these extremes several other ways were propounded; but this at length prevailed, that nothing should now be determined, but the War being happily finished, the *Consuls* should report it again to the Senate, and in the mean time all lutes and processs concerning debts were to cease, that Magistrates might make effectual provision for the matter now mainly incumbent. This expedient, though something it wrought, had not sufficient strength to end the difference; and therefore the Senate was put upon another exigent. Whereas by the Law of *Valerius*, power of life and death was taken away from the *Consuls*, and all constraint, by an appeal to the People, so that no man could be forced to the War; It seemed necessary to create a Magistrate, who for six moneths should rule as absolute above the Laws, and from whom should lye no appeal. Thus having renounced Monarchy in effect, they had again recourse to it, and shewed as well the necessity as excellency of it.

The Dictator.

27. This Supreme Officer was called *Dictator*, either for that he was *dictus*, or named, by the *Consul*, according to (a) *Varro*, or rather from dictating, or shewing and commanding what was to be done, which Etymology (b) *Dionysius* approveth. He was also called (c) *Magister Populi*, and (d) *Prætor Maximus*. Both name and thing came from the *Albans*, whose Dictator *Mæcius Sufferius* we have formerly mentioned. *Spartianus* saith, it was an ordinary Magistrate of old *Latium*. *Dionysius* bringeth the testimony of *Licinius Macer* for this opinion; yet he thinketh the Office first taken from the *Greeks*, who had their *Æsymneta* or extraordinary Kings made upon some urgent occasion, with absolute power. The Dictator was created upon some urgent occasion of War or Sedition, for fixing a nail in time of a Plague, to hold the *Comitia* for election of *Consuls*, celebrate Games, make inquiry, choosing Senators, or in sum, when there was need of a sodain and extraordinary command. The manner of his creation was not, as of other Magistrates, by the Suffrages of the People; but, at the command of the Senate, the *Consul* named some one of Consular dignity whom he pleased, in the night, and who was approved by the *Auspicium*, or divination from birds, a ceremony observed ever in the election of some Officers. The occasion being many times sodain, they could not stay for the Suffrages of the People, and the design being to restrain, or constrain, the multitude, many times, he was not to be chosen out of their body, although sometimes these rules were not fully observed, either through the absence of the *Consul*, or some other respect. *L. Cornelius Sylla* alone was named by the *Interrex*, as

(a) De Ling.  
Latina l. 4. p. 56.  
(b) Lib. 5.  
(c) Varro quo  
pius.  
Cicero de Fin.  
l. 3.  
Festus in voc.  
Optima Lex.  
(d) Lex An-  
tiqua.

SECT. I.  
His power.

*C. Caesar* by the *Prætor*; both which nominations *Cicero* in his *Epistles* conceiveth done contrary to right and order. The authority of the *Dictator* was exceeding large. He had power of Peace and War, to levie Forces, lead them forth, and disband them, and act all things according to his pleasure, without referring them to the Senate. So that not onely had he the power of both *Consuls* (whence the *Greeks* called him *Disypnos*, or Double Consul) but more also, in that upon his Creation all other Magistracies, except the *Tribunes*, laid down their Offices, and the whole Government was left in his hands. He could punish as he pleased, without all appeal, and for the ostentation of his power, had 24 bundles of Rods caried before him, with as many Axes, or Hatchets, as *Plutarch* and *Polybius* do testifie; although *Livie* dissenting from them, will have *Sylla* first of all others to have had 24 bundles. Hence this Office came to be so terrible, as the Edict of the *Dictator* was ever observed as the command of a Deity.

The bounds  
of his Office.

28. It was necessary, according to the *Roman* Government, that this extraordinary power should be bounded by certain limits, wherein might lie redresse of inconveniences thence arising. Six moneths were the time assigned for it's duration, and never was it lengthened, except for meer necessity, as might be instanced in *Camillus*, *L. Papirius*, and *Fabius Maximus*: for the perpetual Dictatorships of *Sylla* and *Caesar* were notorious violations of the Laws. And not onely the time but the place also was limited, it being unlawful for the *Dictator* to stir out of *Italy*, lest being out of sight, he should take advantage at the distance of place, to attempt some new matter; and this constitution was never violated but once whilst the old Commonwealth stood, by *Attilius Collatinus*. He was not to come on horse-back, but march continually on foot, to shew, saith *Plutarch*, that the *Roman* strength lay in the Legions, or rather to teach him humility. Now because in great Expeditions this could scarce be observed, he formally before his departure asked leave of the People that he might ride, as *Livie* informeth us. But those restrictions were inconsiderable, in respect of the Appeal which afterwards came to be made from him to the People. *Festus* in these words *Optima Lex*, saith, that first the power of the *Magister Populi*, or *Dictator*, was full or absolute, as that of *Marcus Valerius*; but afterwards an Appeal lay from this Magistracy to the People. *Livie* seemeth also to hold out the same thing, where he bringeth *M. Fabius* in behalf of his son thus speaking to *L. Papirius* the Dictator: *Seeing that neither the authority of the Senate, nor mine age, which thou goest about to bereave of my son, neither the virtue and Nobility of the Master of the Horse-men named by thy self, prevail with thee; nor yet prayers and intreaties, which are wont to appease an enemy, and the anger of the gods: I appeal to the Tribunes of the People, and the People it self which I make our Judge, (seeing thou regardest not the judgment of the Army and Senate) which alone can do more than thy Dictatorship. I shall see whether thou wilt give place to that Appeal to which the Roman King Tullus Hostilius yielded.* Hereupon the People assembled, and the Tribunes were present at the meeting. *Papirius* denieth neither the power of the one nor the other, but continueth resolute for the punishment of the Master of the Horse-men, who had fought in his absence contrary to his command, shewing how all discipline else would be destroyed. A way was found out to preserve the honour of both Offices, the power of People, Tribunes, and Dictator, with the strength of discipline. For the People betook it self to intreaties, and was seconded by the Tribunes. Whereupon the Dictator pardoned the party, granting his life to the request of those, who, as he confesseth, might have commanded it.

29. At what time this Appeal was brought in, or how long it continued in force, seeing that *Sylla* and other Dictators made use of the old and absolute power, is uncertain. It is probable, that the People being overwitted in ratifying the Decree of the Senate (as *Dionysius* telleth us they were) grew sensible, how they had thereby given the power again out of their hands;

## SECT. 2.

hands; it being lawfull for the Senate at any time when they should pretend a necessity, and that for the bridling of the People it self, to give order to the Consul to name a Dictator, and therefore resumed its ancient power of *Appeal*, without which no lawlesse freedom could be enjoyed. But in the declining condition of the Commonwealth, when Dictators grew more imperious, their Soldiers more dissolute, and the Tribunes of the people especially more factious, an opportunity might be wanting for it to exert that right which as yet it had not given up to any other. If what *Dionysius* writeth of the Dictator's being approved by the people after the Consul's nomination be true, the State stood in lesse need of the Appeal; but it being not possible for a multitude never to mistake in its opinion of a person, this defect might at length experimentally be discovered, and thence a recourse had to that remedy which was ever certain whilst it could be applied. By these cautions and restrictions, with the modesty of the *Romans*, this Grand Office was for 400 years managed for the publick good, as it was accounted, till *Sylla*, and afterward *Caesar*, converted it into a Tyranny, as the multitude counted it, and rendred the very name thereof so odious, that after *Caesar's* death, in the 710 year of the Citie, when *M. Antonius* and *P. Cornelius Dolabella* were Consuls, a Law was made (from the former Consul called *Lex Antonia*) whereby it was for ever banished. The Dictator when he was Created made choice of one who had either been Consul or Prætor, to be *Magister Equitum*, who, saith *Varro*, had chief power over the horse-men, and *Advers* (Criers, Beadles, or publick Messengers) as the Dictator had over the *Roman* people, whence he also was called *Magister Populi*. The rest, because they were of lesse value than these Magistries, were named *Magistratus*, as *from alius Albutus*. If the Dictator was absent, the Master of the horse-men executed his place in the Army, but if he present, he commanded the horse, yet so as to be obedient to the Dictator's orders, and not to fight, either contrary to, or without his command. In the second *Punic* War, *M. Fabius Buleo* was made Dictator for filling up the Senate, without a Master of horse-men. But he alleged, that he could not approve of two Dictators to be at the same time, nor a Dictator without a Master of horse-men, and having perfected his work on the same day laid down his Office.

The Magister  
Equitum.

De Ling.  
Latin, lib. 4.  
p. 22.

The time of  
the first Di-  
catorship.

## The Person.

30. Concerning the time of the first Dictatorship, Authors differ in the space of two years, and do not full agree about the person. *Dionysius*, a grave, faithful, and wary Author (by consent of the most learned sort of men) referreth it to the 255 year of the Citie; but *Livy*, and most *Latine* Authors assign it to the 253. *Dionysius* saith expressly, that *T. Largius Flavius* was the first Dictator, being Consul that year. *Livy* saith it could not be certainly known from ancient Authors who was the first, yet confesseth that the most ancient mentioned *Largius*, and upon good grounds approveth of their opinion rather than that which maketh *M. Valerius* the son of *Marcus* yet living, and Grand-son to *Voleius* the first of all, which *Festus* seemeth to follow. *Livy* mentioneth no other cause of the Original than a falling out with the *Sabinis*, and the conspiracy of the 30 *Latine* Cities, putting off the Sedition till after the finishing of the *Latine* War; but as there can little hold be taken of one who uncertainly relateth matters; so no need would there have been of an absolute Authority for the *Latine* War, if no stir had been made in the Citie, all giving their names with alacrity, and obeying the Consuls, as in former Wars. And if the Consuls had been suspected to favour the cause of *Larginius* (as some wrote they were) then new ones might have been made in their rooms, nothing being prevalent to alter the ordinary form of Government, but a necessity of absolute power for a time; and no ordinary accident about War could make this necessary; so that compulsion must have been the end, and the taking away that help from the multitude, which was unalterably given to it against the Consuls by the *Valerian* Law. Thus might the Nobility, if they had had that duty, have seen cause to repent in time of their Kings banishment.

31. T. Lar-



## SECT. I.

31. *T. Larginus*, the first Dictator, having named *Sp. Cassius* for his Master of horse-men (who had born the Office of Consul in the 70th Olympiad) crossed Axes to be carried before him with the Rods, as had been wont, till the time of *Poplicola*, before the chief Magistrates, both Kings and Consuls. Having with these & other Ensigns of power terrified the Seditious, he began the *Census* after the Pattern of *Ser. Tullius*, according to the Tribes, taking the names and ages of such as were Cessed, and of Children. In a short space, fear of losing freedom of the Citie, and Estates, so prevailed, as 150700 of such as were ripe of age gave their names, which he distributed into four parts, whereof taking one to himself, he gave the rest to his Master of horse-men, and two others, one being to continue in the Citie for the defence thereof. This done, he sent some who underhand dealt with the several *Latine* Cities, and procured them to suspend the War, and make a Truce for a year, notwithstanding all that *Mamilius* and *Sexius Tarquinus* could do to the contrary. Then returned he home with the Army, and ere his 6 months were out, the Consuls being appointed, laid down, no Citizen being killed, banished, or otherwise chastized by any grievous punishment; which carriage was imitated by his Successors, untill the third age from that wherein we live, saith *Dionysius*. But in the time of our fathers, 400 years from the Dictatorship of *Larginus*, *L. Cornelius Sylla* first of all others behaved himself cruelly in this Office, so that the *Romans* conceived then what before they had cause to be ignorant of, that the Dictatorship was a Tyranny.

The *Latines* overthrown at the Lake *Regillus*.

32. When the Truce betwixt the *Latines* and *Romans* was ended, both parties prepared for the War: The former were against their wills, 'tis said, drawn in by the interest of *Mamilius*; but the later with all cheerfulness embraced the opportunity. The *Romans* thought fit a Dictator should be Created, and accordingly *Virginius* the Senior Consul named *A. Posthumus* his Colleague, who chose for Master of horse-men *T. Ebutius Helva*, and hasting his Levies, divided his Forces into four parts, whereof one he kept to himself, assigned the second to *Virginius*, the third to *Ebutius*, and the fourth to *Sempronius*, who therewith was to defend the Citie. News being come that the *Latines* had taken the Field, the Dictator with speed marched to the Lake *Regillus* (at this day called *Il Lago di Santa Severa*) in the Countrey of *Tusculum*, where he fortified his Camp against the Enemy, who as yet had not united his forces, & expected assistance from the *Volsci*. The *Roman* Army divided into three parts encompassed the *Latines*, who in-deavoured to beat off *Ebutius* from an Hill he had seized on betwixt them and home; but he kept his ground in despite of them, and fortified himself. The *Latines* hereupon being hindred from all Provisions, resolved to fight: the Dictator at first was minded to end the War without blood, by famishing his Enemies, but understanding that the *Volsci* were expected within three daies, changed his resolution. The right Wing of the *Latines* was led by *Mamilius*, the left by *Sexius Tarquinus*, and the middle battel by *Titus Tarquinus* his other son. On the other side against *Mamilius* stood *Virginius*, *Ebutius* was opposite in the right Wing to *Sexius Tarquinus*, and the Dictator led the middle battel against *Titus*, and the *Roman* Exiles. The *Romans* brought into the field 24000 foot & 1000 horse, but the *Latines* 40000 foot and 3000 horse. When they joyned, both parties missed of their expectation; for the one trusting to their numbers, and the other to their valour, thought to bear all down before them. The Dictator gave the first opportunity of victory by over-powering *Titus*, after which, though *Mamilius* and *Sexius* omitted nothing requisite to valiant and able Captains, yet both losing their lives, their followers were discouraged and overthrown; scarce 10000 escaping home of the whole number. Of the *Romans* fell *M. Valerius*, whose dead body his two Nephews by his brother *Poplicola*, *Publius* and *Marcus*, endeavouring to get off, were also slain in the attempt.

33. After the fight, the *Volsci*, whom the *Latines* had expected, arrived at the Camp, which seeing full of dead bodies, and learning the issue of the battel, some of them were for falling on the *Romans* now weary; but another

## SECT. I.

other party prevailed to send Messengers to the Dictator, to tell him they came to his assistance, thereby to ingratiate themselves with the Conquerors. But the Dictator convinced them of falshood by their Letters which he had intercepted, and giving leave to the Messengers to return, whom the multitude would have pulled in pieces, resolved on the morrow to fall on them; but in the night they deferred their Camp and fled. From the place of this action the Dictator obtained the surname of *Rhegillensis*.

The *Latines* sent to deprecate the anger of the *Roman* State, laying all the blame upon their Nobility. The Ambassadors managed their work with such earnestness and humility (casting themselves at the Feet of the Senate, and making great lamentations) that the motion of *Larginus* prevailed in their behalf for the former League to be renewed. This was the end of the War which in behalf of the *Tarquinius* had been carried on for fourteen years: *Tarquinius* himself being onely left behind of all his stock, now almost ninety years old, for that the *Latines*, *Hebruscan*, and *Sabines*, refused to harbour him, as also all other neighbouring Cities which were free, went into *Campania* to *Arsidomus* the Prince of *Cuma*, with whom he shortly after died. Of the man we may judge charitably, because his story was onely related to posterity by his bitter Enemies. However, his banishment our religion must censure as rebellion. And such were the firs, seditious and tumults afterwards, and so many changes and rechanges, as if the Reader seriously consider them, he will see that the *Romans* suffered much for want of Monarchy, and the contrary Government did not contribute to their happiness. That this may appear, he hath here a fuller view of their changes than in any other modern Writer.

Great stir in the Citie

34. The *Romans* now freed from this War, fell into a grievous sedition in the Citie, the Courts of Justice being again opened by the Senate, and the processes against debtors revived. The *Plebeians* alleged they were not able to pay their debts, by reason of their losses sustained in the late Wars through want of tillage, and plundering of their Carrel by the Enemy. Their Creditors replied, that these losses had also befallen them, which made the remission of the debts impossible; and so neither sort would yield at all, but many tumults were raised, wherein the parties did not abstain from blows. *Posthumus* the Dictator perceiving some expedition to be necessary for the quiet of the Citie, created Consuls for the following year, and laid down his Office. The Consuls were *Appius Claudius* the *Sabine*, and *P. Servilius Priscus*, who being of the Dictators mind as to the War, resolved to go out against the *Volsci*, who had assisted the *Latines* against the State, and now were making new preparations for War; when they came to make Levies none of the *Plebeians* would give their names, complaining that they having already undergone the heat, and danger of the War, both for liberty and dominion, they were by their fellow Citizens at home kept in bondage (it being the custom then for Creditors to make use of them as Slaves bound in fetters) and many times cruelly beaten, till they could pay their debts. They cried out, that the security of the common sort was more provided for in War, and amongst their Enemies, than in peace, and with their friends. The disagreement of the Consuls amongst themselves added to the present distemper; *Servilius* being willing to comply something with the desire of the poor, but *Appius* inveighing against them with great bitterness, and earnestly urging force and rigour to be the most suitable means for appeasing these tumults. The Senate was forced to betake it self to the popularity of *Servilius*, who with fair words drew the people out against the *Sabines*, and when he had by this good service deserved a Triumph, the honour was denied him through the suggestions of his Colleague to the Fathers, for that by bearing with the multitude he impaired the Dignity of their Order.

Diverted by War.

35. After the finishing of the War the common sort thought again of their own concerns, and expecting performance of what *Servilius* had promised, *Appius* exacted the payment of debts as rigorously as ever: This doubled

## SECT. I.

Renewed.

doubled the people's rage, and made them carry on all things by force, so that they rescued their Companions out of the hands of Sargeants, and holding secret councils by night, denied to the succeeding Consuls to take Arms, till they could have a relaxation of their burthens. This putting the Senate to a stand, *Appius* still urged that nothing was to be granted to the rabble, and procured a Dictator to be created. When most looked upon him as fittest for the time, the Consuls judged quite otherwise, and made choice of *M. Valerius* the brother of *Publius*, and son of *Volesus*, a popular man, being persuaded that the terror of the Office alone would do the work, and that a man of mild temper would best manage it. The Dictator promised the People, in case they would freely follow him, not onely what they justly required concerning their debts, but other rewards also, and by this means lifted ten Legions against the *Volsci*, *Aequi*, and *Sabines*, who were all up in Arms, which being brought under, he divided amongst his soldiers some grounds taken from the *Volsci*, but requesting of the Senate, that his and their promise might be made good, was checked for his love to the multitude, and because he was an old man above 70, being unfit as he said to contend, he laid down his Office. The People hereat much enraged, kept private meetings, and consulted how to separate themselves from the *Patritians*, which when the Senate perceived, they gave order to the Consuls not to disband the Armies, pretending that the *Sabines* and *Aequi* had conspired against *Rome*. The Soldiers being bound by the Oath taken at their listing (called by them *Sacramentum*, and ever strongly observed) could not forsake their Standards, but the Consuls having their Camps near to each other, they all went into one by the advice of one *Sicinius Bellulus*, and taking away the Ensignes from the Consuls, departed to the Mount called afterwards *Mont Sacer*, lying three miles from the City beyond the River *Aniene*, now called *Taverone*.

The first separation of the Commons.

36. Notice hereof being brought into the City, filled all places with marvelous tumults. The *Patritians* were in great fear lest War should be made upon them; the *Plebeians* grew exceeding high, and many flocked to the Army, though the other hindered it as much as possible. The Fathers had also great strife amongst themselves, while some pleaded for the multitude, and others would hear of nothing but carrying the matter through by strong hand. But the former sort prevailed to send a message to the Armies, desiring them to return home; promising that for the future all things should be forgot, and the Senate would be ready to reward their faithfulness and serviceableness to their Country; withall, the Ambassadors had it in charge to know the utmost of their desires. To the message nothing would be returned but disdainful words, and high complaints, something mixed with threatening language, which more grievously afflicted the Fathers, not knowing what way to procure a reconciliation; and now would not such as they had by their authority and interest hitherto retained in the City, be withholden from going to the Army. The time for creation of new Consuls was now at hand. The old ones appointing the Comitia, no Candidates (so called because they appeared in white garments) would stand for the Office, nor any accept of it, till at length the Consuls appointed by their sole authority *Posthumius Cominius*, and *Sp. Cassius*, who had born it before, and were equally in favour with the Nobility and Commons. They having entred on the *Calends of September* (sooner than usual) in the 72 Olympiad (wherein *Tesicrates of Crotona* was Victor, and *Diogenes Archon*) first of all consulted the Senate about the return of the Commons. *Agrippa Menenius* a man of great wisdom and temper, being first asked his opinion, by all means possible exhorted the Fathers to a compofure. He shewed what necessity there was of it in regard of the *Roman* Dominion, which could not be either preserved or increased without the inferiour sort of People, and made it clear, that they could not expect to have any of better temper than the present were, for as much as all, whosoever they were, who by their labour and blood obtained power and sovereignty for the City, would expect to be sharers in it's advantages.

## SECT. I.

tages. He pressed the danger they were now in from their Enemies round about, and having used other motives, concluded with his advice, that they would send messengers with full power to treat and conclude what they should find convenient, without any more consulting the Senate.

The Prophecy of Appius concerning the lawless rabble.

37. After *Menenius* spake *M. Valerius*, and upbraided the Senate for not giving him credit when he foretold these distempers. He advised them to cure the wound while it might be healed, shewed what reason the Commons had to be concerned more of late, because of the Dictatorship, which took from them their former Appeal, as also for that the Senate had denied the honour of triumph to *Servilius* when they desired it for him, because he was suspected to favour them, and for that neither he, the Consul, nor he himself the Dictator, could at all profit them in what had been promised. He inveighed against the avarice and cruelty of creditors, and particularly fell foul upon *Appius* for his rigour, and raising a Faction, which if others were not wise to prevent, would utterly destroy the Commonwealth. Lastly, he commended the advice of *Menenius*, and desired it might speedily be executed, so as whatever the Commons required might be granted. *Appius* a man of an high spirit, most studious of the Patrician dignity, and also of a sober and venerable carriage, being asked his opinion next, in excuse of himself recriminated *Valerius*. With great animosity he noted the ambition and senselessness of the multitude, admiring that any of the Fathers should be so absurd, as having denied remission of debts to them when friends, would grant it to them now Enemies, who would not rest here, but require also a communication of honours, and what not? so that at length the power would come into the hands of the rabble, and the Commonwealth degenerate into a Democracy. He lessened, or rather endeavoured to remove, the danger which threatened either from the Armies revolt, or the hostility of old Enemies. He endeavoured to persuade them, that they were able enough to reduce them by force, having their wives and children in the City; and alleging for further confirmation of this, that the multitude were without any persons of good conduct, whereas the Patrician order abounded with experienced commanders, concluded with this advice, neither to send any message to them, nor remit them their debts, nor do any other thing which might shew the least fear or trouble: If they would lay down their Arms and returning into the City, submit to the Senate, then moderately to determine concerning them; seeing that all fools, especially the *Vulgar*, are insolent against such as condescend, but cowardly towards those that resolutely demean themselves.

38. The wise speech of *Appius* so inflamed those of his party, especially the younger sort, that nothing could be determined for the heat of contention. This put the Consuls upon dismissing the Senate for that time, admonishing the younger sort to carry themselves more respectfully and modestly for the time to come, or else they would neither use them as Advisers nor Judges, but prefer a Law for limiting a certain age for Senators. The graver men they exhorted also to concord, letting them know they had a way to end the controversy, by referring the matter to the decision of the People, which had right to judge of it, as a case about Peace and War. At the next meeting the ancient men were of the same opinion as formerly, but the younger modestly referred themselves to whatsoever they should determine; so that the major part by far, being wearied with the cries and sollicitations of those who had relations in the Army, rather than any reason, notwithstanding *Appius* stuck close to his former resolution, resolved to follow the advice of *Menenius*, who with nine others were commissioned with full power, both by Senate and People, to compose the difference. At first the offers of the Commissioners could not be heard through the instigation of two cunning and turbulent fellows, *Sicinius*, and *L. Junius*, who conceited of his abilities, affected the name of *Brutus* also. *Menenius*, to give full satisfaction, promised that such as were unable to pay their debts, should be discharged both from obligation and imprisonment, and for the time to come matters of this nature should be ordered by the joyned consent both of People and Senate.

K k k

Then

## SECT. I.

Then adding the Fable of the several members falling out with the belly, as consuming all which they provided, and thence the ruine and decay of the whole body, he so improved it to the present occasion, likening the Senate to the belly (which digesterh and distributerh sustenance to all the rest, though they provide it) that the whole multitude convinced of the necessity of Union, cried out, *He should lead them home without delay.*

39. Little wanted of their departure without any other security than the bare word of the Commissioners. But *Junius Brutus* a *Plæbian* formerly mentioned with-held them, saying, that they were gratefully to acknowledge the kind offers of the Senate; but whereas some men of tyrannical spirits might reserve their anger to a convenient opportunity, the Commons wanted such good security for the time to come, as might defend them from the unreasonable malice of great ones, and he moved, that they might have certain Officers created yearly out of their own bodies, whose power should only be to give relief to such *Plæbians* as were injured, and suffer none to be defrauded of their rights: and therefore not to resist the Consuls, as some thought. This being received by the multitude with great approbation, was insisted on to *Menenius*, and his fellows, who thought not good to admit of a matter of such large consequence, without leave from the Senate, and demanded time to know the pleasure thereof. The Consuls reporting the matter, *Valerius* thought this favour was to be granted to the Commons, and, though *Appian* opposed it earnestly, crying out, calling their gods to witness, and truly foretelling what calamities they would bring upon the Commonwealth, yet the major part inclining to Peace, it was carried for them, and the Commissioners were sent back with the resolution of the house. The Commons by the advice of *Menenius*, first sent to take from the Senate a religious confirmation of this privilege, and afterwards in the Assembly of the Curia elected *L. Junius Brutus*, and *C. Sicinius Bellutus*, to whom they afterwards joyned *C. and P. Licinius*, and *Sp. Icilius Rugea*. These five first entered this new Office on the fourth of the *Ides of December*, according to the History and computation of *Dionysius*, sixteen years after the expulsion of *Tarquin*.

A compofure  
by bringing  
in the Tri-  
bunes.

40. These Officers were called *Tribuni Plebis*, there having been from the beginning other *Tribunes* in the City named *Tribuni Celerum*, so called from the Peoples being divided into three parts at that time, from which so many were sent into the Army, as (a) *Varro* and (b) *Pomponius* derive the word; or because they were elected by the Tribes, or oversaw them, as others. *Varro* seemeth to hold that the *Tribuni Plebis* were called *Tribunos*, because they were first made of the *Tribunes* or Colonels of the Soldiers. *Livie* nameth *C. Licinius*, and *L. Albinus*, for the first two, to whom were shortly after added three more, viz. *Sicinius*, the Author of the departure, and two others, concerning which, saith he, Authors differ. In the 297 year of the City five more were added, and this number of ten so continued. As these Officers were elected by the Commons, so ever out of their body, except where we read in *Livie* (in his third Book) of two *Patricians*; Nay most commonly of the lower sort, till a Law ordained that they should be created out of the Senate; that is, out of such *Plæbians* as were admitted into the Senate. What time this Law was preferred, cannot certainly be discovered. (c) *Appian* saith, it is not certain whether *Sylla* did it. It should appear from (d) *Gellius*, that there passed a *Plæbiscium* or Decree of the People, for this purpose, called *Plæbiscium Atinium*; but what *Atinius* this should be is also obscure, there being one *P. Atinius* *Tri-* bune of the Commons when *Julius Cæsar* and *Bibulus* were Consuls. As bunc of the Commons when they were opposed against the Consuls concerning their power, (e) *Cicero* saith, they were opposed against the Consuls: but this is not true, the occasion of their making not rising from the Consuls: but this is not true, the occasion of their making not rising from the Consuls. At the beginning their power was onely to relieve the oppressed, as a shield to keep off evil, and not as a weapon to inflict it. They nulled the unjust (as they accounted them) Decrees, and Commands of the Senate and Magistrates; and to shew their readinesse to protect the

Their num-  
ber.

Power.

A. M. 3511.  
Ol. 71. an. 3.  
V. C. 160.  
Darii 28.  
A. Virginio  
Montano,  
T. Veturio  
Geminio, Coll.

(a) Ling. Læ.  
L. 4. p. 22.  
(b) D. Orig.  
Julius p. 1. 20.

(c) Bel. civil.  
lib. 1.  
(d) Lib. 14.  
c. 8.

(e) De Legib.  
lib. 3.

Privilege.

The ballance  
to their  
power.

The extrava-  
gancy of their  
power.

Several other  
sorts of Tri-  
bunes.

meanest, (f) their doors stood open night and day to their complaints. (g) *Gellius* telleth us, that they could not be absent from the City one day; not an hour saith (h) *Dion*; and (i) *Appian* going further, confineth them within the Walls. They interposed by this one word *Pæco* solemnly pronounced. They procured themselves afterwards to be accounted *Sacro-sancti*, so as by a Law confirmed with an Oath, none might compel a *Tribune* to do any thing, as one of the vulgar, neither strike, nor command him to be beaten; neither kill, nor command him to be killed. If any did contrary, he was to be held as *Sacer*, and his goods being Confiscated unto *Ceres*, it should be lawfull for any to kill him. And lest afterwards the people should abrogate this Law, they made all the Citizens take the most solemn Oath that could be devised, both for themselves and posterity, to preserve it for ever inviolable, as (k) *Dionysius* writeth, who hath also exemplified the Law it self. To this (l) *Cicero* addeth, that they were not onely by sacred Laws fortified against Force and Arms, but against words also, and interruption of speech.

41. But as their power of *Interposing* was most powerfull against Consuls and Senate, so also against themselves; the dissent of one man being sufficient to hinder whatever all his Collegues designed. This appeareth to have been the onely constant effectual means for moderation of that power which afterwards they assumed, when the *Patricians* could prevail with one of the College to interpose. By that awe which their *Sacro-sancti* Magistracy struck into all men, improved through their prompt boldnesse (very common in men of meanest condition) they took advantage to enlarge their bounds. \* *Valerius Maximus* writeth, that at first it was not lawfull for them to enter into the Senate, but they had seats placed before the door, where examining the Decrees of the Fathers, such of them as they suffered to passe they signed with the letter T. But nothing in *Dionysius* is more common than their speaking in the Senate, and their contentions with the Members thereof in that very place at the very time, and that in the infancy of their Office. However, these fellows at first presumed not to Tyrannise and disturb all, as afterwards they did, they presumed not at first to assemble the Senate, which afterward they did in the 277 year of the City, & in proceffe of time to dismisse it also, when called by another. Within a small time they assembled the people, preferred Laws, executed their sawcy Decrees against the Magistrates themselves, commanding the Consuls to be carried to prison, (especially after the enacting of the *Horatensian* Law, whereby the *Plæbiscia* obliged the whole *Roman* people) for that they were the chief Officers of the Commons.

42. Great were the Seditions and Tumults, which turbulent spirits backed with such liberty, stirred up; so as notwithstanding their first end was to preserve right, *Lucan* rightly termeth them *Turbantes jura*. *Sylla* was the first that bridled their extravagancy, by depriving them of liberty to prefer Laws, to make Orations, and obtain any Office of Magistracy; but after his death *Aurelius Corra* by a new Law restored the later privilege to them, and all the rest they recovered when *Pompey* and *M. Crassus* were Consuls. Their power thus recovered they kept till the Emperours swallowed it up themselves, and left them little more than a name, which continued till the time of *Constantine*. As for the Ensigns of their Office, they wore not the *Prætexta*, had no *Lictors* or Sargeants, neither used they a *Curule* Chair; onely a sort of Beadle, called *Viator*, went before them. For want of these Ceremonies, as because they entered not at the beginning of the year, and laid not down their Office upon the Creation of a Dictator, which others did, *Plutarch* writeth that some held them to be no Magistrates, but rather a curb and restraint to such. Lastly, besides these *Tribunes*, and the *Tribuni Celerum* formerly mentioned, there were afterwards many other sorts, as *Tribuni Militum*, and *Tribuni Aerarii*, during the Commonwealth: under the Emperours are found *Tribunus Voluptatum*, *Tribunus Matrimoniorum*, *Tribunus Chartariorum*, *Tribunus Provinciarum*, *Tribunus Forti*, and *Tribuni*

Kkk 2

## SECT. I.

(f) *Plutarch*.  
probl. 81.  
(g) *Lib. 3. c. 2.*  
(h) *Lib. 37.*  
(i) *De bell.*  
*civil. l. 2.*

(k) *Lib. 6.*  
(l) *Pro Sext.*

\* *Lib. 2. cap. 2.*  
*Exemp. 7.*

bunns

## SECT. I.

*bunus Scholarum*, concerning which *Cassiodorus* in his Epistles, and *Livius* in his Commentary of the Magistrates of old Rome are to be consulted.

The *Ediles* created.

43. The Commons having got from the Senate a confirmation of the Office of *Tribunes*, obtained further, that they might yearly chuse out of their own body two, to be as Ministers to these Officers; to Judge certain causes referred to them from the *Tribunes*, take care of publick buildings and provisions. These were first called the *Ministers and Assistants of the Tribunes*; but afterward faith *Dionysius* from one of their Duties had the name of *Ediles*. Many things of great consequence were committed to their trust, being very much like to the *Agoranomi* amongst the *Greeks*. *Festus* acknowledging that in the beginning *Ediles* was a Magistrate who took care both of publick and private buildings, yet faith he was so called, *quod facilius ad eum plebis adiuvaret*. Truer is the derivation which *Varro* giveth, agreeable to that of *Dionysius*; that they were named *Ediles*, from *Edes* the buildings, of which they took care, or those particularly, wherein the *Plebiscita* were kept, of which they had the oversight. This later Etymology is rendred by *Pomponius*, who in his second book of the Original of Law, describing the several Offices of Magistracy, maketh the end of the constitution of the *Ediles* to have been, that they might take care of that house where the Decrees of the people were laid up. Whence soever the word was derived it came out of *Latium*, being a name of certain Magistrates in the *Latine* Towns, as was also *Diktor* and *Duumvir*, as some observe out of *Spartianus*. To these *Ediles Plebis*, who were instituted in the 271 year of the Citie, at the same time with the *Tribunes*, were added two more out of the *Patritian* order 117 years after, called for distinction *Ediles Cures*, because they used the *Curule* Chair, whereas the other onely sat on Benches, as the *Tribunes* and *Quaestors*. The occasion of creating those shall be shewn in its place, the end was onely then for celebrating of Games.

Their Office.

44. This number continued till the time of *C. Julius Caesar*, who in the 780 year of the Citie added two more, whom he would have created also out of the *Patritians*. They were called (a) *Cereales* from *Ceres*, being appointed to take care of, and make provision for Corn. This number of six thus distinguished, continued till the time of *Constantine*, as is probably conjectured, and were as most other Offices of Magistracy taken away by him. The *Ediles*, faith (b) *Cicero*, are the *Curators of the Citie*, of provisions, and of solemn Games. Of the Citie, because they looked to publick works and Temples; made provision against fires (which *Augustus* seemeth to have charged upon them faith *Lipsius*) had inspection over Funerals, and such like Rites of smaller moment; over Marriages and Adulteries, Baths, Aqueducts, Sinks, and Streets, both for repairing and cleansing of them. Of Provisions, for that they had the oversight of all things to be sold, men, and other creatures, determining, judging, and censuring by their words and edicts. Of solemn Games, and onely solemn (not votive and private ones) as the *Ludi Florales*, *Circenses*, *Megalenses*, *Romani*, &c. Sometimes at their own charge they made these shews, and ever examined the Fables written before they were acted. And (whether from this inspection of Play-books it came or no is uncertain) they seem to have been *Licensers* and *Judges* of other writings, being ordered by a Decree of the Senate, as (c) *Tacitus* telleth us, to burn the Papers of *Crematius Cordus*. It is further (d) observed, that the *Generals* when they returned home after some victory, delivered up the Corn and Provisions which had been made prize, to them, as the Captives to the *Prator*, and the money to the *Quaestor*. All such Victuallers as offended against the Laws, as also Monopolizers and others that transgressed in this kind, they accused to the people, and with the Fines celebrated Games, made Presents to their gods, or some publick works. Lastly, 'tis observed, that they took care that none but *Roman* gods, and those after the *Roman* manner onely, should be worshipped.

(a) *Diod. lib. 43.*

(b) 3. de *Legibus.*

(c) *Annals. lib. 4.*

(d) *Janus Gualterus.*

45. But

War with the *Volsci*.

*Marcus*.

Sirnamed *Coriolanus*.

A dearth.

Which causeth a Sedition.

45. But, to return to the story, the rabble having obtained these Officers, willingly gave their names to the Expedition against the *Volsci*, under conduct of *Posthumius Cominius* the Consul. He took *Longula* and *Pointia* with no great difficulty, and presently laid siege to *Corioli* a strongly fortified Town, and the head of the Nation. The *Ansiates* coming to the relief of this place, he left part of the Army to continue the siege under the Command of *Titus Lartius*, and with the other went to give them battel. *Lartius* attempting to storm the Town, the Inhabitants sallied out, and charged the *Romans* so furiously, that they forced them back into their Camp: all but a few whom *C. Marcus*, a *Patritian* of great Nobility, and greater Valour, kept about him. This *Marcus* with so small a Company received the violence of the Enemy, and doing great execution, forced him at length into the Town, and following himself rushed in with him, whereat the besieged were so affrighted, that not considering their own numbers, they fled to the contrary part of the Citie, and suffered him to let in the rest of the Army. When the Soldiers now fell to plunder, he suffered them not, but hastened to the battel to help the Consul, and with the good news of his successe to cheer the Army.

46. He desired of *Cominius* that he might be suffered with his men to fight against the middle battel, wherein the chief strength of the Enemies lay, which obtaining, he shewed there more valour than formerly, and was the greatest cause of the victory. The day following the Consul gave him extraordinary commendations, and a good share of booty before it came to be divided amongst the Soldiers; but he would accept of nothing except an horse, which gained him greater honour from the whole Army, and moved *Posthumius* to bestow the surname of *Coriolanus* upon him for his incomparable valour shewn at that place. The *Volsci* were by this overthrow forced to submission, and made their peace. This year was the League of Amity and Confederacy renewed with the *Latines* with all cheerfulness, because they had been faithfull in the late Sedition and War, and had sent to congratulate for the peace made betwixt Nobility and Commons. The Senate for this Civil Union decreed supplications or thanks to their gods, a third *feria*, or Holy day, to be added to the other two *Latine Ferie*, whereof *Tarquinius* had dedicated one, when he Conquered *Hebruria*, and the People the other after the banishment of *Tarquinius*. In this Consulship died also *Agrippa Menenius*, whom the People out of gratitude resolved to bury at the publick charge, every man contributing something, because he died poor, and when the Senate would needs defray the charge out of the Treasury, they bestowed the money upon his Children. Now also the *Consus* being celebrated above 10000 heads were Cessed.

47. The year following wherein *T. Geganius Macerinus*, and *P. Minucius* were *Centurils*, a great dearth fell upon the Citie, the effect of the late Sedition. For, the Commons having departed a little after the Autumnal Equinoctial, about the time of sowing, the Countrey was forsaken of husband-men; the richer sort beraking themselves to the *Patritians*, and the poorer to the Army, and the division continued till a little before Mid-winter. All the middle space of time there was no tillage, though it was most proper for sowing, and for some time after the agreement, it could scarce be renewed, for that Slaves had run away, and there was great scarcity of Cattel by these means for the year following they were little beforehand in Corn, either for seed or provisions. This put the Senate upon sending into several parts of *Italy*, and also into *Sicily*, to buy Corn. But notwithstanding their care, the multitude being exceedingly pinched with Famine, raised tumults, getting together by companies, and laying all the fault upon the *Fathers*, as if by their willfull neglect they had in this way revenged themselves. The *Volsci* being acquainted with this new Sedition, and the weak Estate of *Rome*, conspired how to improve the advantage; but were diverted by a grievous plague, which so raged, as *Velitra* a Noble Citie of that Countrey was almost utterly exhausted, the small remnant of the Inhabitants whereof gave up them-

## SECT. I.

*Dionys. lib. 6.*  
*Plutarch. in Coriolano.*

A.M. 3512.  
Ol. 71. ann. 4.  
V.C. 261.  
Darii 29.  
Sp. Casio 2.  
Postumo Cominio Coll.

*Dionys. l. 7.*

## SECT. I.

themselves to the *Romans*, desiring they would send a Colony thither. 48. Of this advantage the Senate was very glad, to lessen the multitude of the City; and the poor were content to inhabit so fertile a place; but when they considered the danger of infection, they were again discouraged, and wrested this to so bad a sense, as to make it a design to destroy them. But the Senate laying a great penalty upon such as refused to go, many obeyed and went thither, as also to *Norba* a *Latin Town*. This enraged more such as staid behind, being still pinched by the famine, so that raising great multitudes, they called the *Tribunes* into the Comitium. Great strife hapned betwixt the Consuls and them; The *Tribunes* affirming they had promised not to interrupt them in their discourses to the People, to which the other answered, that it was only when they called the People together, not when the Consuls themselves did it, as now they had done, to promise them all fair accommodation from the Senate. Hereupon *Brutus*, who being so great a stickler before, was chosen one of the first *Tribunes*, devised a Law, which under such a penalty as the *Tribunes* should impose, forbade any one to contradict or interrupt them, when they spoke to the People. Such as could or would not give security for the payment of the fine, were to be put to death, and their goods be sacred to *Ceres*. If any controversy arose about the fine, it was to be determined by the judgment of the People.

And this a new Law in behalf of the *Tribunes*.

49. This Law being enacted by the Suffrages of the *Tribes*, caused greater disturbance; the Senate refusing to ratifie the resolves of the People, and the People the Decrees of the Senate; yet proceeded it not to any greater inconvenience than words; and some blows without weapons. For the poor broke not into the store-houses of the rich, but were content to purchase victuals at an excessive rate; and when money failed were contented with roots and herbs: neither did the rich deal harshly with the poor, but carried it towards them as indulgent fathers, so that we must say, it was the infirmity of the Government, and not any bad disposition of the People which caused the Seditions. The Consuls, to divert their minds, and ease the charge, offered to lead them out into the Enemies Country, but few or none would give their names; so that *Marcus Coriolanus* with some *Patritians*, and a few of their Clients made incursions, and returned home laden with booty; the knowledge whereof made the poorer sort murmur against their *Tribunes*, who had dissuaded them from the Expedition. The following Consuls *M. Minucius Augurinus*, and *A. Sempronius Atratinus*, famous for their abilities both in War and Peace, bent themselves, by making provision for Corn, to allay the present distempers; though not with wished success. They procured much to be imported, and this Summer returned those that were

Corn brought sent into *Sicilie*, with a great quantity of Wheat, whereof half they bought at a very cheap rate, and half was bestowed on them by *Gelon*, the Son of *Dinomenes*.

Now the *Patritians* considering how to dispose of the Corn; some were for selling it to the poor at easy rates, thereby to win upon the multitude, but others urged they were to be harshly used and afflicted, and the Corn to be sold to them on dear rates; that by necessity they might be brought to sobriety, and become subject to the Laws.

50. Amongst these was *Coriolanus* the chief, being offended with the Commons, as was given out, for a repulse at the last election of Consuls. He had been ever an extraordinary assertor of the power of the Nobility, which made the People afraid to chuse him; but now incensed he much more shewed his inclination, openly declaiming against the innovation of the multitude, and exhorting others to resist the petulant endeavours of the *Tribunes* and rabble. The Consuls calling together the Senate, he enlarged himself in a set speech to this purpose, and pressed that by force they should take away the *Tribunship*, as the only means for the recovery of the State; concluding with his opinion, that no favour at all should be shewed to the multitude in the sale of Corn. Some were offended with this freedom, perceiving what inconvenience it would bring; but others approving of it, the *Tribunes* who were present (say both *Dionysius* and *Plutarch*) ran forth, and crying

## SECT. I.

crying out, called the People together, and declared to them the effect of *Marcus* his speech. The multitude enraged, would have violated the Senate instantly, but that the *Tribunes* stayed them, laying the whole blame upon *Marcus*. They sent some Beadels for him to come and answer it before the People, but they returning with nothing but ill words, they went themselves, and commanded the *Adiles* to apprehend him. These were *Brutus* and *Isidius* the first *Tribunes*, who going to do what was enjoined, were repulsed and beaten by the young *Patritians* he had got about him. This put all into a flame, the whole City being gathered together and ready to destroy it self; but by the wisdom of the Consuls the matter was put off till the following day. Then the Consuls laboured to heal the breach, confirming as from the Fathers, what was formerly granted to the Commons, and palliating as much as might be the supposed offence of *Marcus*. The *Tribunes* answering, inveighed against the Senate, as desirous to break their faith, and laying open the fault of *Marcus*, concluded the action with a Decree of their College, That he should be forthwith cast down headlong from the *Tarpeian Rock*. For, having given him liberty to speak, he was so far from recanting his former speeches, that he flew out into the same invectives, as they were termed.

Put all into a flame.

51. The *Adiles* laying hands on him, the *Patritians* again rescued him, the sorer part even of them taking it ill he should be condemned to death without due process, and the more understanding sort of the Commons not approving of the attempt; so as a great tumult being raised, the *Tribunes* nullified their former Decree, and set him a day wherein to answer, and stand or fall by the judgement of the People. In the mean time the Senate, by selling the Corn at moderate rates, and by intercessions, sought either to procure the trial to be utterly laid aside, or at least to defer it till the wrath of the multitude should be appeased, which was also to be employed in a War against *Antium*. When the former could not be done, and the War was blown over, the Consuls being very unwilling to let the People take so much upon themselves, as without Decree of the Senate first had (according to the ancient custom) to pass their judgement in any case, procured the *Tribunes* first to sue out such a Decree, on this condition, that they might be heard speak their minds, and each Senator before he gave his judgment, swear solemnly, as was usual in judicature process, to deliver what he thought most behoveful for the Publick. The *Tribunes* then argued much in behalf of the Commons, who they said had undergone the heat of all Wars, both in the time of Kings, in the expulsion of them, and since in the enlarging the *Roman* Dominion; in consideration whereof, they could not in conscience have lesser privileges than of late they had obtained. They aggravated by several circumstances the crime of *Marcus*, who in so high a manner had gone about to infringe them, and therefore as well for maintenance of right, as the safety of the City, they desired he might be left to the justice of the People. *Appius Claudius* stiffly impugned the Decree, arguing that the Senate would be enervated, and the Commonwealth betrayed, if they granted to the People power of judging *Patritians*.

52. *M. Valerius*, and other popular men made a better construction of the People's desire, thinking they would use this power moderately, and in opposition to *Appius* his politicke reasons, strangely conceived it would make for the security of the Commonwealth, and particular members thereof, if the Commons were admitted to some share in the Government; that so it might neither wholly lye in the *Patritians* nor *Plébeians*, but be tempered and poised betwixt both. He urged, that they had allated the Kingly power, by giving it to two annual Magistrates, and that therefore there was no fear of it's degenerating into Tyranny, being also awed by the oversight of 300 most prudent and worthy persons, of which the Senate consisted. But for the Senate itself, there was no curb; so that it might afterwards (though of the present members he had no cause to judge so) draw all things into extremity, and indeed ruin the State, except the People might be admitted to



## SECT. I.

to have an hand in the judgment of such faults as concerned the Commonwealth, as when any was accused of moving Sedition, affecting Tyranny, Treason, or the like crimes; because the more solemn and severe the trial was, ambitious men would be the more terrified from such attempts. The generality inclining to give up the man, *Marcins* demanded of the *Tribunes* whereof they would accuse him. They consulting with themselves apart, knew not well how to form an impeachment out of his former words, which might pass with the Senate, and therefore answered, they would lay the affectation of Tyranny to his charge. Hereat he very cheerfully put himself upon trial, not refusing the severest punishment, if it could be proved; and a Decree of the Senate passed accordingly, time being given him till the third Market day, to prepare for it. For a Market was kept once in nine days, at which time the People that lived in the Country, came either to traffick, receive justice, or give their Suffrages in such matters as either primarily concerned them, or were referred from the Senate. When the day came, a greater multitude of Country-men than ever formerly was seen, early in the morning placed it self in the Forum, and the *Tribunes* called the People to the *Comitia Tributa*, or *Assemblies of the Tribes*, severing each Tribe from another by cords. Now it having been the custom for the People to give their suffrages by *Centuries* in the *Campus Martius* in arms, and under their Centurions, the *Patricians* called hard for them, and protested against this innovation; but by the other way of *Centuries* brought in by *Servius*, the ordinary sort of People being excluded, (for that most commonly the two first Classes carried it from the other four) the *Tribunes* would in no case suffer it, and the crime of *Coriolanus* seeming to concern all alike, at length they obtained the consent of the *Patricians* to this innovation.

He answered  
before the  
People.

53. *Minucius* the Consul beginning the action, declared the worth of the person now to be judged, and exhorting the People to mildness, signified that the Senate became petitioners in his behalf. *Sicinius* one of the *Tribunes* said, he would neither betray the liberty of the People, nor suffer another to do it; therefore if the *Patricians* would, as they pretended, subject him to their judgment, he would give forth the balls without any more to do, to which the Consul replied, they did so, but on this condition, that he should answer to the charge of affected Tyranny, and therewith protesting, went down. *Sicinius* then ripping up all that ever *Coriolanus* did, that might any way make for his purpose, laboured to put a bad construction upon it. But when the party came to speak, he so related what particular services he had done the State, and shewed the scars received all over his body; with all, those that he had saved in the Wars, made such lamentation in his behalf, that the People generally cried out he was to be discharged. Then *Decius* another of the *Tribunes* stepping up, said, that seeing the Senate, as the Consul alleged, had absolved *Marcins* from those words he had spoken in their house, and suffered him not to be accused for them, he would wave his words, and come to actions, by which he would make good the charge. Their was a certain Law, that all booty and plunder got in War, should be appropriated to publick use, so as no General was to meddle with it, but give it up into the hands of the *Quæstor*. Now, whereas no man ever brake this Law, or so much as spake against it, this *Marcins*, faith he, hath dared to condemn it; for when in the late incursion into the Territories of *Antium*, we had got great plenty of Slaves, Cattel, and Provisions, he neither delivered these things up to the *Quæstor*, nor payed any money unto the Treasury, but divided all the booty amongst his friends, which could not but be taken as an argument that he intended to inflame his Country; it being the custom of Tyrants, this way to procure themselves instruments for their purpose. Though he had done this not with any sinister intention, but for the service of his Country, at such time as all were full of Seditions at home, and the Enemy from abroad wasted the *Roman* Territories; yet the multitude interpreted it in the same sense as *Decius*, and the whole matter was quite changed; he being abashed at so unexpected a charge, and the

Consuls

## SECT. I.

Is banished.

Consuls and *Patricians* utterly to seek what to answer. The *Tribunes* then named perpetual banishment, and gathered the suffrages of the Tribes, which being 21 in number, 9 onely absolved him, and so he stood condemned by the major part.

54. This was the first sentence passed by the people upon any *Patrician*, and henceforth the *Tribunes* were wont to let the day to whomsoever they pleased; whereby the power of the Commons was enlarged exceedingly, and the interest of the *Patricians* was more and more diminished; *Plebeians* at length being admitted into the Senate, Offices, and Priesthoods, which in former times were onely communicated to the other; the Senate partly against their wills and by constraint; partly by a wise foresight giving way to it, as will be seen in due place. *Marcins* being accompanied home with the lamentations and tears of many, saluted his Mother, Wife, and Children, as they made pitifull complaints, and without any appearance of trouble, bidding them bear their condition cheerfully; straitway departed out of the Citie, attended onely by a few Clients, and without any thing to bear his charges. He went to *Antium*, and there in the habit and posture of an obnoxious suppliant betook himself to *Tullus Attius*, a man of royal condition amongst the *Volsci*, both for Nobility, Riches, and Valour, whom he knew to be his greatest Enemy in that Nation, because in battle they had often challenged each other, and out of Emulation added a private to the publick hatred. But knowing him to be of a magnanimous mind, and most willing to catch hold of any advantage against the *Romans*, he cast himself at his feet, bidding him either avenge his Country of him, or else him against *Rome*, which by her unnatural carriage toward him had forfeited all duty and service that she might have expected at his hands. *Tullus* embracing him with singular kindnesse, resolved to make use of his great abilities. *Marcins* advised that some fair pretext might first be sought for War, and for that purpose sending many of the *Volsci* to behold the solemn Games at *Rome*, caused one to go to the Consuls, and accuse them of having some design against the Citie, that so they forcing them out on a sudden, might be said to have broken the peace. This accordingly succeeding (for the Consuls commanded all by Proclamation to be gone before Sun-set) *Tullus* so aggravated the matter to his Country-men, that he procured them to send to *Rome* to demand back all the Towns and Territories which by War had been taken from them.

Scirreth up  
the *Volsci*  
against *Rome*.

Invadeth his  
Territories.

55. The Senate taking the message in great scorn, answered, that if the *Volsci* first took up Arms, the *Romans* would last lay them down. *Tullus* then persuading the *Volsci* to the War, procured *Marcins* to be joyned with him as General, with full power; who presently invading the *Roman* Dominions, wasted all such grounds where ere he came as belonged to the *Plebeians*, not suffering any thing to be touched which belonged to any of the Nobility. His design was accomplished; for this raised great envy and malice against the *Patricians*, who upbraiding the people that they had banished unjustly so considerable a man, were accused with greater indignation, that to be revenged for former injuries they had procured *Marcins* to invade the Country, seeing they were idle spectators, when others were undone, and kept their goods, being out of all danger of the War. *Coriolanus* leading home his men richly laden with booty, was sent out shortly after with one half of the Forces; and taking by surrender the Town of the *Circetians*, a *Roman* Colony, thence invaded the *Larines*, who being Confederate with *Rome* sent thither for relief; but the common people were averse to the War, and the Consuls being almost out of their Office were unwilling to begin any thing; so that the Messengers were dismissed without any satisfactory answer. *Marcins* then by storm took *Tolerium*, *Lavici*, *Pes*, and *Bola*, which he plundered, and made the Inhabitants Slaves. Such as yielded he mildly treated, but having stormed *Bola*, which lay within thirteen miles of *Rome*, he put almost all to the sword that were of age. The *Volsci* now so admired him, that such as were left to defend the Towns would not stay, but all flocked to him,

*Dionysius Halicarnassensis* l. 3.

**SECT. I.** owning him onely for their General. At *Rome* there was nothing but confusion, all being in despair, and seeking no relief any other way than by venting their spleen one against another: but when news came that *Lavinium* was besieged, it made a marvelous, yet absurd change in their minds. The people now cried out that *Coriolanus* was to be restored by a repeal of the Decree for banishment; but the Senate utterly refused to assent to it, and plainly forbade it in full house; either for that they desired to oppose the people in all things, or would not have his restitution ascribed to the Commons; or else were incensed against *Marcus*, who was become Enemy to all, though but injured by some, and had declared against his own Countrey, wherein he knew the greater and better sort to sympathize with him, and account his no other than a common grievance.

He marcheth  
towards *Rome*.

56. The resolve of the Senate being published, the people could do nothing as to his restitution, the custom requiring that the Fathers should propound. *Marcus* hereupon rose from before *Lavinium*, and marching towards *Rome* it self, pitch'd his Camp at the *Ditches of Clatlia*, five miles from the Citie. This forced Senate and people into agreement, all in common being seized with horreur and amazement, so that it was agreed a message should be sent to him, offering him his restitution. The Messengers were Patricians, and such as for their love to him he had most cause to favour; but though with all advantage possible they made their addresse, yet he received them with wonderfull severity in a Council of Officers, and gave them this answer, that if they would expect peace, they should restore to the *Volsi* all Towns and Territories taken away in War: and make them free of the Citie as the *Latines* were: and he would give them 30 dayes time to consider of it. Hereat the Captains of the *Volsi*, especially *Tullus*, took occasion to malign him, though he employed this time of Truce very profitably, subduing seven great and strong Towns. When the time was out, and he returned, another Message came to him, desiring that refraining himself he would draw off the *Volsi*, and then consult in common; for they would do nothing by constraint or fear: but if he thought the *Volsi* were to be gratified, they would yield to him if they would lay down their Arms. He replied, he carried himself not as General of the *Volsi*, but as a *Roman* Citizen, and desired, that, having a respect to justice and moderation, they would return within 3 dayes with a grant of what he had formerly demanded; else he must proceed in his enterprize. Hereupon the Senate, in so great a Tempest which threatened all, betook them to their sacred Anchor as they accounted it, and ordered all the *Pontifices*, *Priests*, *Governours of their superstitious houses* and *Augurs*, in their several habits, should go & beseech him to compose the matter: But neither was *Marcus* moved with this Pompous train; but required they should either accept of the terms, or expect hostility to the utmost.

57. The *Priests* being returned, the Citizens were warned to be ready at the Walls, thence to repel the Enemy if he came, for that no other hope remained, than what time, and vicissitude of fortune might afford. The whole Citie being full of tumults, trembling, and amazement, the women flocked to the Temples, but the most, and especially the chiefest, made their supplications at the Altar of *Jupiter* in the *Capitol*. Amongst these was *Valeria* the sister of *Poplicola*, into whose mind came this device, that they should go to *Veturia* (say *Dionysius* and *Livy*), or *Volumnia* (saith *Plutarch*) the mother of *Coriolanus*, and procure her, with *Volumnia* (say they) or *Virgilia* (saith he) her daughter-in-law, to go, and intercede for their Countrey. *Veturia* earnestly pressed to undertake so pious a work, answered, they had little hopes to obtain their sure, for that her son had never sent to see them since his departure, being fallen out with his own family as well as his Countrey; yet she was ready to improve that interest she had in him, and set forth towards him with her daughter-in-law, and two Nephews. *Coriolanus* seeing the women come, resolved fully to give them a denial; but when he perceived his mother amongst them, he descended from his Tribunal, and went to meet her. Having courteously received her with his Wife and Children, he gave

ear

His mother  
prevaileth  
with him to  
retreat.

ear to her request, which she made with all the Oratory that she could compass out of the impending ruin of his own Countrey, and the infamy which would necessarily follow a fruitlesse attempt. When herewith she could not prevail, she put him in mind how much nature, together with a careful education of him in her widdowhood, had engaged him to obedience, and in conclusion cast herself down at his feet which she embraced and kissed. He presently lifted her up, and cried out, *Mother, thou hast got the victory, advantageous to my Countrey, but destructive to my self*, and accordingly drew off the *Volsi* into their own Countrey, who were variously affected. Some blamed both him and the action: others that were studious of peace did neither; and some, though they condemned the thing, yet absolved the man, who was constrained by so great necessity to do it; yet none refused to obey his orders, but followed him, more through the authority of his virtue than of his power.

58. But when he was come to *Anrium*, *Tullus*, the great Emulator of his glory, supposing he had a sufficient advantage against him, required him to lay down his Office, and give an account of his actions to the people. He refused to resign his place, except commanded by the people to do it, unto which he said he was not afraid to give an account of any thing he had done, at that present. The people being called together, the principal of *Tullus* his faction instigated them against him, but when he arose to speak for himself, those turbulent spirits for shame gave way, and all sober and peaceable men openly declared they would hear him candidly, and judge him according to right and equity. *Tullus* then fearing the mans eloquence, and sufficiently apprehensive how much repute the very Crime objected would bring him (for they could not seem to be injured by him in not taking *Rome*, without considering that he had brought things to that passe by his incredible valour and dexterity, that they were near taking of it) would not expect the judgement of the multitude, but crying out with his complices, that the betrayer of the *Volsi* was not to be suffered to hold the Tyranny over them by refusing to lay down his Office, rushed out, and slew him in the place. Though no man stood up in his defence, yet that this wicked act displeased most, it presently appeared. For upon report of his death they came generally out of the Towns and buried him honourably, adorning his sepulchre, as of a General and a famous Warriour, with Arms and Trophies. Such was the end of the Eminentest man of that age for valour, who by his four rigidity procured extreme hazard to his Countrey, and destruction to himself, whilst he preferred private revenge before publick good, and yet would not stoop to any provision for his own safety.

59. At *Rome* upon *Marcus* his retreat was such exultation, as is suitable to the joy of those that are rescued from utter desolation. The Senate Decreed to the women what honours they would ask, but they onely desired they might build a Chapel to *Women's fortune*, in the place where they had delivered their Countrey, which was done at the publick charge, and they at their own dedicated the image. When the death of *Coriolanus* was heard, there was neither expression of joy nor sorrow further than this, that the women were permitted to mourn for him ten moneths: the longest time allowed by *Numa* for the nearest relations, according to *Plutarch*. The Consuls not long after took the field with a considerable Army, but had no occasion to make trial of it; for the *Volsi* and *Aequi* joyning their forces together resolved to take the *Romans* unprovided; but in their march they fell out about a General, of whether Nation he should be, and from words to blows, in such a manner that they fought a great battell, and if night had not severed them, one party had been utterly destroyed. The year following the new Consuls; *C. Aquilius* and *T. Sicinius*, overthrew the one the *Hernici* and the other the *Volsi*, amongst whom fell *Tullus Aetius*, a man of personal valour, but no good conduct. Their Successors, *Proculus Virginus*, and *Sp. Cassius* took the field with the Legions; the *Aequi* falling to the former, as the *Volsi* and *Hernici* to the later. The *Volsi* presently asked

LII 2

peace.

SECT. I.

A.M. 3517.  
Ol. 73. an. 1.  
V.C. 266.  
Darii 34.  
Sp. Nautio  
Serv. Furius  
Coll.

SECT. I. peace, having in the last battle lost the flower of their strength, and after them shortly the *Hernici*, refusing any more to contest for equality with the *Romans*. *Cassius* having received money and provisions, as from such as confessed themselves conquered, gave them truce, and referred them for conditions to the Senate.

60. After a long debate, the Fathers resolved they should be received into amity, and that *Cassius* at his discretion might prescribe the conditions of the League, confirming whatsoever they should be. *Cassius* returning home, asked, and obtained a triumph, though he had neither taken any City, worsted any Enemy, nor had any Captives or spoils for ornament of the solemnity, which possessed men with an apprehension of his arrogance, and procured him envy. After his triumph he published as conditions of peace, the very same that were granted to the *Latines*, which gave great dislike, it being conceived an unworthy thing to make strangers equal in privilege with their kinsmen the *Latines*; such as could allege no merit, with those who had exceedingly well deserved of the State: the Patricians took it also disdainfully that he would determine fully on his own head a matter of such weight, without asking any of them his advice. His three Consulships, and two Triumphs, made him seem to himself far superiour to any of the same rank, so that no less than the Principality would now content him. Knowing that the ordinary way to it was to gain the favour of the People, by some great act of kindness, he resolved upon that course, and first to divide amongst them certain publick grounds, which through the neglect of the Magistrates, had been seized on, and possessed by the rich. The success might have been dubious had he stayed here; but he would also have the *Latines* into the lot with the *Hernici* his new denizens, that he might procure the favour of those Nations. The day after his Triumph, calling together the People according to the custom, he recalled to their memories the great services he had done in his several Consulships: how in the first he had subdued the *Sabines*, in the second reduced the Commons into the City, after the appeasing of the Sedition, as also received the *Latines* into fellowship and Communion: in the third, the *Volsi* of Enemies were made friends, and the *Hernici*, a great and powerful Nation, received into close and inward confederacy. By these discourses he insinuated, as if above all others he took charge of the Commonwealth, and so would continue to do. And he concluded with a promise to do more for the Commons, than any man ever did who was most in favour, and that should presently appear.

61. The day following, he called together the Senate, which was very much troubled at his speech, and declared, that because the Common People were very useful both in procuring Dominion, and defending Liberty, it was convenient to divide to them those publick grounds, which were most impudently held from the State by some Patricians, and pay the money back out of the Treasury, that they had laid out for that Corn, which being given freely to the City by *Gelon* the Tyrant of *Sicily*, ought to have been divided amongst the Inhabitants. The Fathers heard him with great disdain, and rejected the motion, his Colleague *Virginus* grievously accusing him as seditious. For several daies after, *Cassius* discoursed of this to the People, and *Virginus* held the Senate consulting how to withstand him. The Tribunes of the People at length, either for that they were jealous of some designe, or were displeased that they themselves had not first proposed this thing, withstood it, alleging it was an unjust thing that what they had dearly purchased with their labour and blood, should be common to strangers as well as themselves. As this raised some dislike, so *Cassius* again drew them to his party, by propounding that the grounds might be divided amongst such as had most need, and by urging that it was better to have a little, than by expecting much to be frustrated of all. As the People were thus perswaded to and fro, *C. Rabuleius* one of the Tribunes found out a way, which for the present ended the dispute. *Virginus* pretending that he was for a division of the grounds, but not unto foreigners, hoping that these would ever be joyned;

and

and *Cassius* being both for Citizens and strangers; he took them both at their words; for the one and the other yielding there should be a division, he bade the People accept of that, and defer that wherein they dissented to another time.

62. For some daies after this, *Cassius* kept his house, pretending sickness, and studied how he might cause his Law, called *Lex Agraria*, to passe by force. For this purpose he sent for the *Latines* and *Hernici* to be present at the Comitia, that he might carry it by greater number of voices, so as the City was filled with them. *Virginus* hereupon made Proclamation, that all such as dwelt not in the City, should depart within a short time prefixed, and *Cassius* caused it to be proclaimed, that all such as were free should stay till the matter were determined. No end of the contention appearing, the Fathers feared it might come to blows, or further inconvenience, and therefore assembled to make some effectual provision for the publick Peace.

After a little debate they came to this resolution, that ten men of Consular dignity should be created to survey the grounds, and declare how much of them was to be let out to farm, and how much divided to the People. That it should be declared, that for as much as it was inequitable for the new associates, or denizens, to expect part in such Lands as were gained to the State before their admission, if any afterward should be got by their assistance, to each several People should be assigned it's portion, according to the League. That for the choice of the ten men, and the distribution of the ground, the succeeding Consuls should make provision. This Decree being published to the People, appeased all, and frustrated the design of *Cassius*.

63. In the year following, being the first of the 74 Olympiad, wherein *Astylus* of *Syracuse* was Victor, *Leostreus* executing the place of principal Archon at *Athens*, according to the computation of *Dionysius*, in the first year of *Xerxes* his Reign, *Q. Fabius* and *S. Cornelius* were Consuls. Now two most noble young men, *Cato Fabius*, the brother of the Consul, and *L. Valerius* the grand-son of *Poplicola*, being *Quaestors*, and thereby having authority to assemble the People, set a day to *Cassius* the late Consul to answer in the Comitia to the charge of affected tyranny. Then in full Assembly did they lay open his actions; how he had bestowed upon the *Latines* the third part of the plunder, who thought it happiness sufficient to be made free of the City: then the *Hernici*, who could expect no less than to be deprived of their own Lands, he chose rather to make Friends than Subjects, and Citizens than Tributaries, whence both grounds and plunder being divided into three parts, two of these must go to Subjects, and Strangers, so that if it were found necessary afterwards to give others the same privilege of the City, the Roman Citizens being by right Lords of all, should not have remaining one third to themselves. They aggravated this with the management of the business, as his doing all without consulting the Fathers, and against the interposition of the Tribunes. That these things tended to the designed establishment of a Tyranny, they proved from the money and arms wherewith the *Latines* and *Hernici* had furnished him, as also from the company of stout young men of those Nations which he had about his person. In testimony hereof they produced several credible persons, both Citizens and Associates, who averred it. To these the People giving credit, notwithstanding his premeditated Orations, and his three children, who with many friends and clients accompanied him in mourning habit, and interceded for him; notwithstanding all his services, and the honour obtained by them, they would not at all pity him, but out of extreme hatred to Tyranny condemned the man, and that to death, lest being banished, he should procure the State such trouble and danger as *Marcus* lately had done. Therefore judgement being passed, the *Quaestors* presently led him to the Rock near to the Forum, and thence cast him down headlong in the sight of the People, this being the then ordinary kind of punishment. His estate was confiscated, and his house razed. Some

would

His design frustrated.

He is condemned, and put to death.

A. M. 3521.  
Ol. 74. an. 1.  
V. C. 269.  
vel 70.  
Xerxis 1. acta.

## SECT. I.

would have had his sons also put to death, but the Senate refused to use such severity, and at Rome the children never suffered for their Father's fault, although for high Treason, till the *Marſian War*, wherein those that broke the custom miscarried, and he who destroyed them restored it to the State, as *Dionysius* observeth, who disliketh the practice of some of his Countrymen the *Gracians*, in killing, or condemning to perpetual banishment the sons of Tyrants themselves.

64. By the death of *Cassius* the Patritians were more elevated, and the Commons grieved after they saw this, and considered how serviceable a man to their interest, as they foolishly thought, they had cut off. They now called hard for the execution of the *Agrarian Law*, but the Senate being resolved to put it off, caused the Consuls to make provision for an Expedition. None would give their names, and the Tribunes interposing hindred the Consuls from punishing any; but it being given out that a Dictator would be created, the multitude fearing to fall into the hands of *Appius*, lifted themselves, and so *Cornelius* wasted the Territories of the *Veientes*, as *Fabius* those of the *Aequi*. The year following, being the 270 of the City, when *Nicodemus* was *Archon* at *Athens*, the Patritians procured *Cassio Fabius* one of *Cassius* his accusers, and *L. Aemilius*, to be created Consuls, during whose Office all was quiet at home, the *Volſci* renewing the War upon the *Romans*. *Fabius* was sent to the assistance of the *Latines* and *Hernici* whom they had invaded, and *Aemilius* led the other part of the Forces to *Aniurn*, where he was worsted by the *Volſci*; and being forced to desert his Camp, had with his whole Army been cut off, but that his Colleague in good time sent some choice Companies to recruit him. For the next year *M. Fabius* brother to *Cassio*, and *L. Valerius* son of *Marcus*, who put *Cassius* to death, being Consuls, proposed it to the Senate to fill up the Army at *Aniurn*. A Decree passing for new Levies, the People refused to be listed, calling for the division of the grounds, and one of the Tribunes withstood the Consuls. This put them upon this device, to sit in the *Campus Martius*, where whosoever was cited and did not appear, they punished him, if he had any Lands, by cutting his trees, and pulling down his houses; or if he hired grounds, by driving away his Cattel, or other ways, the Tribune not being able to do them any good, for that the power of his Office was confined within the walls; so as it was unlawful for them to lye one night out of the City, except in the *Latine feria*, where all the Magistrates for the common safety were wont to sacrifice in the *Albanian Mount* unto *Jupiter*.

65. This forced the Commons to submit, and so the Consuls making Levies led out the Legions, *Fabius* to the defence of the associates, and *Valerius* against the *Volſci*, who engaging with him in battel, came off on equal terms; and afterwards neither party were forward to fight. It was believed in the City, that the *Roman Army* wilfully neglected an opportunity of victory, out of hatred against the Consul, whom they despised as a man of no experience, and in revenge against the Fathers who had so long frustrated their hopes about the division of publick grounds. At this time one of the Vestal Nuns *Opimia* by name, being convicted of incontinencie, was shut up within the ground in the Forum, and her corrupters scourged and put to death. At the next election of Consuls there was great contention, the Patritians having a desire to prefer some in whom they could confide, and particularly pitching upon the son of *Appius*, a man of the same temper with his Father; and the Commons as much labouring the Contrary. When the Consuls held the Comitia, the Tribunes interposed, and when the Tribunes called the People together, the Consuls would not suffer anything to be done, contending that it belonged to their Office. Both parties being incompassed with those of their Factions, railed, and sometimes came to hand cuffs, so that worse threatening, and the Senate consulting what was to be done, some moved to have a Dictator named, who might first correct all distempers of late brought in, and then deliver the power to men of approved integrity; but a middle way pleased; to create *Interreges* for holding of the Assemblies.

Commotions in the City.

## SECT. I.

The first was *A. Sempronius*, who for his five dayes governing affaires in a peaceable manner, the other Magistrates having laid down, created according to the manner *Sp. Largius*. He in the *Centuriata Comitia* made Consuls with the well liking of both sides, *C. Julius* a favourite of the Commons, and *Q. Fabius* now the second time elected, a man addicted to the power of the great ones. In their Consulship the *Aequi* and *Volentes* invaded the *Roman Territories*, and did much hurt. Against the latter they were sent with the Legions, after some contest with the People (who were hardly drawn in by *Largius*, because the Senate had now deferred the execution of the *Agrarian Law* five years) and harazing the Country returned home with much spoil; neither was any thing else of moment done that year.

66. The year following (which was the first of the 75 Olympiad, wherein *Xerxes* made his Expedition into *Greece*, *Callius* being *Archon* at *Athens*) had for Consuls *Cassio Fabius* again, and *Sp. Furius*, to whom came messengers from the *Latines*, desiring assistance against the insolence of the *Aequi*; and all *Hetruria* was reported now to be in arms at the desire of the *Veientes*. The Consuls were ordered to assist the one, and suppress betitties the other; but when they came to raise men, *Leilius* one of the Tribunes interposed upon the old pretence of the *Agrarian Law*. The work being hereby hindred, *Appius* advised the Senate to set one Tribune against another, by drawing ever some of them unto their side, as the onely way to abate the power of that Office now so sacred and inviolable. This course both at present and afterwards was effectual, and the Consuls with their Armies departed each one into his Province; *Furius* against the *Aequi*, and *Fabius* into *Hetruria*. *Furius* harazed the Enemies Country, and returned home with great booty. *Fabius*, though an able Warriour, was so hated by his men, that when they had in battel routed the Enemy, they refused to pursue or do any thing more, but departing against his command to their Camp, thence also marched home, lest they should procure him the honour of a Triumph. The following Consuls *Cn. Manlius*, and *M. Fabius*, again were both sent to carry on the War in *Hetruria*, where they held the Soldiers in the Camp so long, till the Enemy was ready to fall upon it, and for shame they desired to be led forth. *Fabius* taking this opportunity, upbraided them with their disobedience to the Consul the last year, in that place; and shewing them how little cause he and his Colleague had to trust them, having sufficiently humbled them, led them forth. A greater and longer battel was never fought by the *Romans*, who were thought to be Victors onely, because the *Hetruscans*, the night following, forsook their tents. *Manlius* was slain, and for that cause his Colleague refused the Triumph, saying, it was not right for him to take the Laurel at his funerals. Having disbanded his Army, he laid down his Office two moneths before the time, because his wounds disabled him for service; and by the second *Interrex* in the Comitia, were declared Consuls *Cassio Fabius* his brother (who having extraordinarily deserved in the late battel, was now honoured with this Office the third time) and *T. Virginus*.

67. *Virginus* being sent into *Hetruria* against the *Veientes*, was overpowered by them, and had lost his whole Army, but that *Fabius* upon the intimation of his extreme necessity came out of the Country of the *Aequi*, and brought him off. When the *Romans* were retreated, the *Veientes* made excursions very near the City, to the great losse and disparagement of the State. The Senate found it necessary to have a constant guard upon the borders, but the Treasury was low, the tributes of private men were not sufficient for this new charge, and it seemed that none would give their names willingly to so constant a work. When they were at a stand, the whole family of the *Fabii*, by the procurement of the Consul, voluntarily offered to take both the charge and trouble upon it self onely, which was gratefully accepted. The *Fabii* then under conduct of *Marcus* the last year's Consul, fortified a Castle near the River *Cromna*, and not far from *Veii*. Their whole number was at first 4000, whereof their Clients and friends made up the greater part, and of such as bore the name of the Family there were 306: afterwards

The family of the *Fabii* engage against the *Veientes*.

*Dionys. l. 9.*

## SECT. I.

terwards another Company followed, being led by *Caso Fabius* the Consul. Out of this Castle, which they named *Cremera* from the River, they made excursions, and much endamaged the Enemy. This caused the *Volentes* again to implore the aid of all *Heurulia*, which making preparations, news came that the *Aequi* and *Volsci* also had agreed upon an invasion. The Senate hereupon ordered their Armies to be provided; whereof *L. Aemilius* the next year's Consul led one against the *Heuruli*, with whom joyned *Caso Fabius* as Proconsul. *C. Servilius* the other Consul, marched with another part against the *Volsci*; and *Serv. Furius* with the third against the *Aequi*, having also the power of Proconsul. *Furius* did less happily than *Servilius* finished his work. *Servilius* rashly managing his affairs lost many men, and nor daring to adventure all in a battel, drew out the War in length; But *Aemilius* giving battel to the *Volentes* and their Associates, overthrew them, and then storming their Camp, forced them to beg Peace.

68. Having purchased a Truce by the grant of provisions for two moneths to the Consul's Army, and six moneths pay, they had leave to tend to the Senate. The Fathers upon reading of *Aemilius* his letters, who advised them by all means to finish the War, resolved to make Peace, and left the conditions thereof to him. He having a respect rather to equity than the profit of the Conquerours, made a League with them, neither taking from them any grounds, nor any more money, nor receiving any Hostages to secure their obedience, which procured him much evil will, and deprived him of the due honour of a Triumph. They ordered him to assist his Colleague against the *Volsci*; but he complaining grievously of them to the People, and suggesting to the multitude that they were angry, because the War was finished, out of a desire to have the Peoples thoughts diverted from the *Agrarian Law*, disbanded his Army, as also that of *Furius*, and hereby afforded much matter for contention betwixt the Nobility and Commons. The year following, being the first of the 76 Olympiad, wherein *Scamander* of *Milyene* was Victor in the course, and *Phadon* Archon at *Athen*, the new Consuls, *C. Horatius*, and *T. Menenius*, found some obstruction in the Levies; the Commons still complaining that the *Agrarian Law* was not executed. But necessity cut off the dispute, eleven several Cities of *Heurulia* having declared against the *Volentes*, for making Peace without publick consent, and forced them to break it. The pretence was, for that the *Fabii* were not drawn off from *Cremera*, who sending intelligence to the Senate of this intended breach, it ordered *Menenius* to march into *Heurulia*, as *Horatius* against the *Volsci*. While *Menenius* sojourned in his Expedition, *Cremera* was taken, and the *Fabii* all cut off. Some wrote that it was by an Ambush, as they were returning to *Rome*, to sacrifice for the whole family, according to their custome. But others delivered more probably, that being accustomed to make depredations, they were drawn into snares by the *Heuruscans* (who caused herds of Cattel to be driven thither, where they had bestowed a sufficient quantity of men) and being overpowered, were all at length destroyed, though with the great losse of the assailants, except such as they had left to keep the Cattel. These were so far from being discouraged at what had befallen their fellows, that they also stood it out to the last man, enduring all extremity, and fighting when half dead, with weapons wrested from the hands of their Enemies.

69. A tradition remained to posterity, that 306 of this family being cut off, none remained except one Boy, who for his youth could not serve in the Expedition. *Dionysius* sheweth the vanity hereof, by these reasons. 1. All except one could not be unmarried, or without children, for an ancient Law commanded all at a legitimate age to marry, and provide for Posterity, which being diligently observed till their age, the *Fabii* alone would not condemn

Whether one- but, 2. Grant this; it is not to be granted, that none of those had a brother A. M. 3528. ly one Boy re- of young years. 3. If their Fathers had been so utterly deprived of their Ol. 15. an. 4. 2. mained of the Sons, yet certainly all would not have been so old and dry, as to despair of P. C. 277. family. Xerxis 9. any more issue, and consequently make no provision for it by marriage. 4. And if

## SECT. I.

if they had no fathers living, yet would it be a prodigious thing to suppose that none of them left any son as yet an Infant, a Wife with Child, or a young brother. This is true, that of the three brothers, *Caso*, *Marcus*, and *Quintus*, in the family of whom the Consulship had continued for seven years, *Marcus* onely left a young son, besides whom none of this name afterwards being famous, thence the report might rise that none else was preserved. Concerning the time of this defeat Authors something differ. (a) *Macrobius* maketh the day to have been the 17th of the Calends of *Sexilis*; (b) *Plutarch* after the Summer solstice, and about the full Moon in the middle of the moneth *Quintilis*. (c) *Livy* and (d) *Tacitus* on the fifteenth of the Calends of *Sexilis*, which suiteth with that of *Plutarch*, and (e) *Ovid* on the Ides of February.

The *Volentes* peirce within two miles of the Citie.

70. The *Volentes* having recovered the Castle, went confidently against the *Roman* Legions, which lay incamped not far off, and as was thought might have relieved the *Fabii*, but that *Menenius* the Consul out of envy would not make use of the opportunity. They took the advantage of his unskilfulness, and seized on an Hill near unto him, where placing a Guard, they made sallies upon the Camp, and so straightened it, that they brought him to fight upon very unequal terms, and put his Army to the worst. The *Romans* took their Camp, and fled in so tumultuous a manner, that had the *Volentes* not been too greedy of plunder, they might utterly have destroyed them. The day following they invaded the *Roman* Territories, and came as far as the Hill *Janiculum*, two miles from the Citie, whereon they seized, and thence made excursions to the great disgrace of the *Romans*. *Horatius* the other Consul returning from the *Volsci*, overthrew them twice, and gave the people some respite from their fear. The following year two skilfull men in Military matters, *Sp. Servilius* and *A. Virginius*, entered the Consulship after the Summer solstice in the moneth *Sexilis*. Now the *Heuriscan* Warre, though difficult enough, seemed profitable, compared with domestick affairs; for the seizing upon the Mount, and the depredations thence made had hindered Tillage for the last Winter, and no Traffick having been for that time, there was such scarcity of Corn that the Citie was brought into extreame want, containing 110000 men of ripe age, as appeared at the next Census, besides Women and Children, Slaves, Merchants, and Artificers (for no *Roman* Citizen was allowed to keep a Victualling-house, or to exercise any sordid Trade) thrice as many. The people made great tumults, and were ready to take away violently the provisions of the rich: the *Tribunes* also made great disturbance.

*Menenius* fined for the miscarriage of the *Fabii*.

71. The Consuls laboured to satisfy the poorest sort by buying in all they could, and causing such as had Corn to sell it, till their Levies were finished. Then led they out by night against the Enemy, and passing the River before day, unexpectedly fell upon him, and got a bloody victory; after which the Mount was forsaken by the Garrison, which having no relief sent in, retired to *Veii*. This War being ended, *Menenius* the last year's Consul was called to an account, and condemned in a pecuniary mulct for suffering the *Fabii* to miscarry, whom the people so gratefully esteemed, that they hated all who seemed to have been to blame as to their defeat, and placed the day thereof amongst their *Nefasti*, or unlucky ones, wherein no good work was to be begun. The following year also, when *Servilius* was out of his Office, he was called before the people, for that in the last battel against the *Heuriscans*, he had so unadvisedly pursued the Enemy, as thereby to lose the flower of his Army; but the man's abilities being considered, and his own defence with that of his Colleague weighed (who desired either to stand or fall with him) he was acquitted. This year and that following, the *Volentes* were so overpowered, having been overthrown in battel together with their associates the *Sabines*, and now closely besieged, begged peace once more, and having with a whole year's pay for the Consuls Army, and money for two moneths provision purchased leave to send to the Senate, obtained a Truce for forty years. The next year being the first of the 77th Olympiad, wherein *Dares* an

M m m

Argive

(a) Lib. 1. c. 16.  
(b) In *Camilla* & *Prothem.*  
(c) Lib. 6.  
(d) Lib. 18.  
(e) *Eist.* 2.



## SECT. I.

Great stir  
about the  
Agrarian.

*Argive* was *Victor*, and *Chares* *Archon*, *L. Aemilius Mamercus* the third time, and *Vopiscus Julius* were Consuls. Their Consulship was very turbulent through the attempts of *Cn. Genucius Tribune* of the People, who required them to divide the grounds formerly Decreed to the people by the Senate. They denied it belonged to them to execute what had been Decreed in the Consulship of others, and alleged that a *Sennius Consul* was not of force, but for one year. Because he could not compel his Superiors, he set the day to *Manlius* and *Furius*, the last year's Consuls, to answer before the people, why they did not divide the grounds, pretending some reasons wherefore they ought to be questioned more than others, though it was now 12 years since the passing of the Decree, and alleging, that except the present Magistrates were quickened by a fence of punishment inflicted upon others, they would never set upon the work.

72. The Patricians exceedingly startled at so bold and impudent an attempt, resolved by force of Arms, if fairer means would not prevail, to protect the accused, and the City might have been in blood had not *Genucius* died suddenly that very morning, no sign of violence appearing on the body. This allayed the fury of the multitude, and the Sedition might have been quite appeased, had the Consuls born their success with moderation, and considered what was fitting for the time. But making new Levies, they would force one *P. Volero*, who had before-time been an Officer, to go in the present expedition as a Common Soldier, and when he alleged that he ought not to be compelled so to serve, for that he had not deserved it by any offence, they commanded him to be strip't and beaten. He flying to the assistance of the *Tribunes* appealed to the People, wherewith they not being at all moved; he became a *Tribune* to himself, with blows repelling one or two *Lictors*: and when the Consuls sent all their Officers to take him, such *Plebeians* as stood by calling one upon another rescued him from their hands. This diverted mens minds from thoughts of Land, and raised a zeal for privilege and liberty; the Patricians complaining that the Chief Magistrates should be so contemned; and the *Plebeians* alleging it was a great breach upon their right for a *Roman* Citizen not to be heard when he appealed to the people, but scourged like a Slave: and they demanded Justice of the Senate against the Consuls; with these stirr, without any other thing of moment, was their Consulship passed over. For the following year *Volero* an impudent fellow, obtained, though a man of meanest condition, to be *Tribune*, having made himself popular by resisting that Office, which was once equal to the Kingly, and promising that he would clip the power of the great ones. He proposed a Law for holding the Assemblies of *Tribes* at the Election of *Tribunes*, instead of the other of the *Curia*: betwixt which there was this difference. In the *Curia* *Comitia* were such things treated on, and confirmed by the suffrages of the *Curia*, as the Senate had first Decreed, and that with the *auspicia*; for except the birds predicted good, the *Comitia* were null and frustrate. But the *Tribuna Comitia* were managed without any consulting of the Senate, without the superstitious observation of birds (called *Auspicia*); and observed at the Election also of Patrician Magistrates) and all things were determined by the suffrages of the *Tribes* gathered apart.

73. When the day for determination of the question was come, great endeavours were used on both sides; the whole time consumed in speeches, for, and against the Law. The *Tribunes* then put it off till the *Trinundinum*, against which time the Patricians improving all their interest, *Volero* resolved by force to keep them from the *Comitia*, and the Consuls from dissuading the thing, because they carried it mighty highly, and with their friends, and Clients, took up a great part of the Forum. He was prevented by a grievous plague, which like a Torrent carried away multitudes, so as his year being out before he could accomplish his design, by his great promises he obtained to be *Tribune* again, as also his two Collegues who sided with him in this enterprise. The Fathers to ballance him procured to be made Consul *Appius* *Clau-*

## SECT. I.

Appius and  
Quintius Con-  
suls.

*Claudius*, the son of *Appius*, absent, against his will, and to their own prejudice. His Collegue was *T. Q. Quintius Capitolinus*, of a contrary disposition. *Appius* was all for Wars, that by expeditions the multitude might be diverted from Seditious attempts, the effects of idleness; and *Quintius* contended that causes were not to be sought for, lest the ordinary sort being forced to unnecessary War, should break out into rage, and trample Magistracy under their feet; and the Government being his, faith *Dionysius*, this moneth, he prevailed. But *Volero* renewed his endeavour for the Law, and thereto added, that the *Adiles* should be Elected by the *Tribuna Comitia*, as also whatsoever should concern the Commons, might be transacted, and passed in them; which tended to no other than to transfer the power from the Senate to the people. *Appius* now earnestly pressed to make Levies, and undertake some expedition; but *Quintius* prevailed that they should rather go about to dissuade the people by reasons, than to compel them by force.

Appius Spoil-  
eth all.

74. *Quintius* to this purpose made a seasonable speech in the Assembly, and so far prevailed, that the Law as unjust had been laid aside, but that his Collegue used, though just and true, yet unseasonable words, speaking to the Commons, not as free Citizens, who had an hand in making, and abrogating Laws, but as a rabble of base persons. He upbraided them with unchristianesse, defrauding of their Creditors, revolting from the Consuls, and voluntary Exile; as also perjury, and turning of the Weapons taken up in defence of their Country, into its bowels. He said, it was no wonder that such as they were should proceed thus from one wicked act to another, instancing in their Seditious attempts for the gaining of the just power of the Patricians. Having spared no contumelious, or affronting language, he came to that which gave most offence: that the State would never be at rest so long as the *Tribunitial* power remained; for as much as it was impossible that what took its Original from violence, iniquity, sedition, fear of a Civil War, and other abominable things, could produce any profitable effects. He concluded with an asseveration, that as long as he was Consul, he would neither suffer this, nor any other Law to pass without approbation of the Senate, and this he would stand by both with Words and Deeds also if need should require; so that, if never before, they should learn in his Office, of what force was the Consulship. Then stood up *C. Licinius*, the principal man amongst the *Tribunes*, and in answer to his accusations related what labours the Commons had sustained before, and since the banishment of *Tarquinius*; how, for all this pain and danger, they were not made partakers of any thing which they had obtained by their blood, till forced to separate from the Patricians. That then they got this Office of *Tribuneship*, as a protection for the poor, with other Laws afterwards, as of judging the Patricians, and translating the suffrages from the *Censurata* to the *Curia Comitia*, all which he accounted nothing. Then reproving *Appius* sharply, he told him he would shew him of what force that Office was upon which he had trampled, and of the people called by him *fordid*, and without House or Harbour. Having spoken this, he swore most solemnly that he would, and not live except the Law passed, and commanding silence, when all men expected earnestly what he would do, he lawfully required *Appius* to depart the Assembly.

Is command-  
ed to depart  
the Assembly,

And to be sent  
to prison.

Is defended.

75. *Appius* not obeying, but incircling himself with a Company he had brought for that purpose, having made silence to be proclaimed by a Crier, he declared that the College of *Tribunes* commanded the Consul to be carried to prison, and therewith sent an Officer to apprehend him. He was bearen back by the *Lictors*, wherewith *Licinius* himself exhorting the multitude to stick to him, went to lay hands on him. *Appius* being defended with a company of stout young men, a great and unseemly Contest followed with railings and thrustings to and fro: and at length it came to blows, and throwing of stones. The Consul *Quintius* by his intreaties throwing himself into the middle, and the more grave Senators, hindred the tumult from proceeding to a further inconvenience, which was ended shortly after by the night.

M m m 2 Several

A Law pro-  
posed for  
Creation of  
*Tribunes* in the  
Assembly of  
*Tribes*.

## SECT. I.

The People  
seize on the  
Capitol.

The Law pas-  
seth.

Appius his Sol-  
diers refuse to  
fight.

He crosseth  
the Agrarian,  
for which he  
is called to  
answer for his  
life.

Before the  
Trial he  
killeth him-  
self.

Several dayes were spent with mutual recriminations; but at length the Tribunes and People seized on the Capitol, and there kept watch night and day. The Senators very solicitous what to do, both in respect of the danger, and the difference betwixt the Consuls; for *Quintius* thought the Commons desiring no unjust thing, were to be gratified; but *Appius* would rather die than yield. *Quintius* taking great pains, at length procured the Tribunes to refer the Law to the discretion of the Senate, which after a long dissuasion of *Appius*, and perswasion of the Tribunes, permitted it to be put to the question of the *Comitia*, wherein the Commons readily passed it. After this, the Consuls were sent out with the Armies; *Quintius* against the *Aequi*, whose Territories he wasted, and returned with honour, which his Soldiers were careful to purchase for him; but *Appius* going against the *Volsci*, bore himself so austere towards his men, that they would not obey him, but out of hatred, and to procure him an ignominious retreat, when they came to fight, retired to their Camp without striking a stroke, and no more could he draw them forth against the Enemy, so that he was constrained to depart homewards, and in his way put to death such Centurions and Ensignes, as had been faulty, with every tenth man in the Army. Some were beheaded, and some knocked on the head with clubs: this decimation being an usual punishment amongst the *Romans*, of such as had forsaken or lost their Colours.

76. The following Consuls *Q. Valerius* again, and *Tib. Emilius*, being both well affected towards the Commons (the former out of envy to the Patricians, for that they had denied his Father a Triumph, and the later because he would reconcile himself to the multitude, offended by him for accusing *Cassius* the Author of the *Agrarian Law*, when he was *Quæstor*) promised the Tribunes to promote in the Senate the division of publick grounds. The Tribunes in confidence of their assistance, came into the Senate, and spake very mildly in favour of the Law, which the Consuls would not contradict, lest they should seem to seek after contention; but asked the ancients Senators their opinions. *L. Valerius* Father to the Consul, pressed the division of Lands; but *Appius* so severely and plainly withstood it by several invincible reasons, that he carried it against the other, for which the Tribunes set him a day to answer before the People for his life. The crimes were: That he gave ill advice against the Commons, raised Sedition, laid violent hands forsooth on the Sacrosanct body of the Tribune, and being General of an Army had received a defeat, and returned with ignominie. The Patricians exceedingly concerned, left nothing unattempted to save him, and desired him, that giving way to the time, he would take the habit agreeable to his condition; but he flatly refused to do any thing poorly, or unworthy of his Ancestors, adding, that he would die a thousand deaths rather than touch the knees of any, as was the custome of Suppliants. He forbade his friends to supplicate for him, saying, his shame would be doubled, if he saw any do that in his behalf, which he himself disdained to do. Giving out many such like speeches, he neither changed apparel, nor his countenance, nor remitted any thing of his antient magnanimity, and when he saw the whole City earnestly intent upon his trial, a few dayes before the appointed time he killed himself. His friends gave out that he died of a natural death, and the body being brought forth into the Forum, his Son was there ready, and asked leave of the Consuls to commend him in a funeral Oration, according to the custome. The Tribunes commanded the body to be taken away without any ceremony; but the People were thereat displeased, and suffered the young man to perform this last and usual Office of honour to his deceased Father.

77. For this and the two following years the *Romans* fought successively against the *Aequi*, *Sabines*, and *Volsci*. From the later was taken *Antium*, being surrendered to *T. Quintius Capitolinus* the Consul, who placed therein a Garrison. In the following year, wherein were Consuls *Tib. Emilius* again, and *Q. Fabius* (son to one of the three brothers, that with their Friends and Clients died at *Cremora*) the Tribunes made new stirrs about the

*Agrarian*,

A most grie-  
vous Plague.

War with the  
*Aequi* and  
*Volsci*.

Fresh stirrs  
about new  
Laws.

*Agrarian*, and *Emilius* furthering the business, the Senate to gratifie the multitude, decreed that some part of the Lands lately taken from the *Volsci* and *Antians*, should be divided. Yet not many would give their names, being unwilling to forsake their native Country, so that the Colony was made up out of the *Latins* and *Hernici*. The Consuls marched, *Emilius* against the *Volsci*, and *Fabius* against the *Aequi*; both had success; the latter forcing the *Aequi* to beg Peace, the conditions whereof were left to him by the Senate. But the *Aequi* receiving the Fugitives of *Antium*, suffered them to make excursions into the Territories of the *Latins*, and refused to give them up, whereupon succeeded another War, though the *Romans* obtained a bloody Victory, in the third year after the making of the Peace. In the next Consulship which was executed by *L. Equitius* and *P. Servilius Priscus*, fell a more grievous plague upon the City than ever before hapned. It first consumed almost all Cattel, and from the Country came into the City, wherein it swept away an innumerable company of slaves, and a fourth part of the Senators, and amongst these the Consuls, with most of the Tribunes. *Livie* writeth, that the *Ediles* supplied the place of Consuls. The disease began about the *Calends* of *September*, and continued that whole year, sparing no Sex or Age.

78. When this was known by the neighbour Nations, the *Volsci* and *Aequi*, supposing the time of destroying the *Roman Empire* to be come, provided all things for a Siege, and to divert the *Romans* invaded the *Latins* and *Hernici* their associates. These sending to *Rome* for aid, *Emilius* was already dead, and *Servilius* as yet alive, in small hope assembled the Senators, who were brought half dead in their Litters to the Court. They gave them liberty to defend themselves, which doing, when the Enemies had wasted their grounds at their pleasures, they marched for *Rome*, but contrary to their expectations, they found it sufficiently guarded, though with sick and feeble men. When the next Consuls were created, *L. Lucretius* and *T. Veturius Geminus*, the Pestilence ceased; and all things being quiet at home (for the Tribunes making adoe according to the custome about the *Agrarian*, were commanded by the People to desist, and expect better times) they invaded those who had taken advantage at the publick calamity. They had good success abroad, and better near home, when the *Aequi* in their absence came and thought to have surprized the City. For understanding the walls to be furnished with armed men, and four cohorts of 600 apiece to stand before the gates, they altered their course when they came to *Tusculum*; but *Lucretius* met and gave them battel, which they were hasty to embrace before the coming of his Colleague. For a time they fought courageously; but seeing a band of men behind them, which came from a certain Castle, they thought it had been the other Consul, and fearing to be inclosed ran away, having lost both their Captains, and many other valiant men. Afterwards without any let, the Consuls wasted the Territories both of the *Aequi* and *Volsci*, and returned home at the time of the *Comitia*; *Lucretius* in full triumph, and *Veturius* in the other called *Ovation*, by decree of the Senate, with the like pomp in all things, except that he entered on foot, and not in a Chariot; which words conclude the ninth Book of *Dionysius* his *Roman Antiquities*.

79. For the year following (which was the first of the 80 *Olympiad*, wherein *Torymbas* the *Thessalian* was Victor, and *Phraescles* Archon) *P. Volturnius* and *Ser. Sulpitius Camerinus* were created Consuls, who having nothing to do abroad, employed themselves at home in defending the power of the Patricians against the Commons, now much instigated against it by their Tribunes. They were come so far, as to assert, that it was most agreeable with the constitution of a free State, for the Citizens to have equal power in Government. The People now would have all things done by the precept of Laws, whereof as yet there were none written, the Kings having judged according to their own discretion, and the Consuls by certain presidents of those Princes formerly in power. The least part was recorded in the

Books

A. M. 3545.  
Ol. 80. an. 1.  
V. C. 294.  
Attax. Longin.  
5.

Dionys. l. 10.

SECT. I. Books of the *Pontifex*, which none could come at except the *Patricians*. *C. Terentius*, or *Terentillus Arsa* according to *Livie*, Tribune of the Commons the foregoing year, had endeavoured to circumscribe within certain limits the power of the Consulship; but left the matter unfinished, because the greater part of Citizens were employed in the War; the Consuls on set purpose drawing it out in length, till the Comitia. Now the whole College of Tribunes renewed the attempt by the procurement of *A. Virginii* one of the number; the whole City being divided about it. Much contention there was in the Senate, betwixt the Tribunes and the contrary Faction; but at length, not doing any good in that place, they called the People together, and proposed a Law, that ten men might be chosen in Lawful Assembly, such as were most eminent for age, prudence, and dignity, and who especially respected their repute, and honour: that these men should publish Laws both concerning private and publick business, by which right should be prescribed, both to private persons and Annual Magistrates. The Question they put off till the *Trinundinum*, giving any one leave to speak freely, either for or against it.

*Caso Quintius* called to an account.

80. The *Patricians* extraordinarily moved, that the Senate's authority in this matter was utterly neglected, both by fair and foul means laboured to hinder the debate; casting the meanest sort like Slaves out of the Forum, who minded their private commodity more than the publick Peace. Amongst those sticklers *Caso Quintius* the son of *L. Quintius Cincinnatus*, was principal, one of great Nobility, beautiful in person, and very stout and expert in War. Him the Tribunes resolved to make an example to all young men, and called him to answer for his life before the People. He refused to answer, except at the Tribunal of the Consuls; but his Father earnestly intreated for him, recounting the several eminent services he had done for the State, and imputing this miscarriage to his youth, and indiscretion. The multitude plainly declared by signs, that they were ready to gratify him, which when *Virginii* perceived, knowing, that if *Caso* escaped without punishment, the insolence of the young *Patricians* would be intolerable, he procured *M. Volscius*, one of his Colleagues, to tell feigned a story, how in the time of the Plague he and his brother returning from a friend's house in the night, were set upon by *Caso* and his drunken Companions in the Forum, who killed his brother outright, and left *Volscius* himself half dead. He added, that both the Consuls dying of the Plague, he could have no satisfaction, and in the succeeding Consulship, whensoever he cited *Caso* before the Magistrates (as several could bear witness) he received nothing but blows. This so enraged the multitude, that they had torn him in pieces, but that the Consuls and some of the Tribunes kept them off. His trial then was deferred, not without a great controversy, whether he should lye in prison, or be out upon bail, the latter whereof at length was accepted by the interposition of the Senate, and he fled into *Hetruria*, leaving his ten sureties to pay the money, which was exacted of them by the Tribunes, who also condemned him. His Father sold the greatest part of his estate to reimburse the sureties, and content with a small quantity of ground beyond *Tiber*, and a little cottage, sustained himself very laboriously by the help of a few slaves; for grief and poverty abstaining from the City and his Friends, and neglecting to divert himself with publick solaces.

Fleeing and is condemned.

81. The Tribunes were much crossed in their expectations. For the calamity of *Caso* was so far from moderating the insolency of the young *Patricians*, that they grew much higher, opposing the Question both by words and deeds; so as in this Consulship the Law could not be preferred. For the following year *P. Valerius Poplicola*, and *C. Claudius Sabinus*, were created Consuls; and the Commons made the same Tribunes as the year before, who perceiving the Law was not by persuasion to be enacted, sought to terrify both People and Consuls. They caused various rumours to be spread, that Enemies had hatched a great conspiracy against the Commons, then coming into the Senate, there affirmed it, pretending they had letters from

A plot of the Tribunes.

Discovered by the Consul.

*Ap. Herdonius* seizeth on the Capitol.

Which is retaken.

*Quintius* made Consul.

some friends to assure them of it. They said certain Senators were in the plot, but that the greatest part consisted of the order of the *Equites*, which it was not seasonable then to name; but they had designed in Conjunction with *Caso Quintius* the Exile, to murder the Tribunes with others by night, and then at their leisure to rescind whatever had been granted by the Senate unto the Commons: In conclusion they desired the inquiry of so grievous a design might be committed unto themselves. The Senate being very solicitous, *Claudius* the Consul (who was fully persuaded that what the Tribunes went about was the onely conspiracy) by ripping up their designs concerning the *Agrarian* Law, and the bad success of their endeavours which put them upon this exploit, fully convinced the Fathers how the matter stood, especially when they would neither name their friends from whom the Letter came, nor the Messenger: and though the Tribunes highly complained of him, and the Senate, unto the People, yet the most sober amongst the Commons were satisfied with his reasons. Whilst the heat of this contention remained, the City fell into such danger from outward Enemies as never before, which, saith *Dionysius*, had been foretold by *Sibyll's* books: that it would arise out of intestine division, and was likewise signified by the prodigies of the foregoing year, when besides strange sights and noises, it rained pieces of flesh, of which some were devoured by all sorts of birds before they fell to the ground, and the rest continued long upon the earth, without either change of colour or smell.

82. *Ap. Herdonius* a Sabine with 4000 men seized upon the Capitol, and called the Slaves to their liberty. At this time of extremity of danger, the Tribunes made what disturbance they could, instigating the multitude not to fight against the Enemy, except the *Patricians* would engage by Oath to Create ten men for the making of Laws, and suffer the Commons to live with them upon equal terms of privilege. *Claudius* would have wholly omitted them, and carried on the War by the *Patricians*, and their *Clients* onely; but *Valerius* thought it necessary to have a closure in the body before it should go about to defend itself from outward attempts, and therefore promised with an Oath, that if the people would cheerfully carry on that War, as soon as peace was restored, he would permit the Tribunes to put the question, and endeavour to satisfy the desire of the Commons. *Claudius* then being appointed to look to the City, *Valerius* on all sides set upon the Capitol, which was taken by storm, though he lost his life, having omitted neither the part of an able General nor valiant Soldier; For though he had received many wounds, yet he gave not over, till climbing the Walls a great stone was tumbled down upon him, which took away his life. The War being ended, the Tribunes required of *Claudius* to make good the promise of his Colleague; but he deferred the matter by several pretexts, and at length alleged he could do nothing of himself. He appointed then the Comitia for Creation of a new Consul into the room of *Valerius*. The *Patricians* were very solicitous to get some chosen that would defend their interest, and resolved upon *L. Quintius* Father to *Caso*, lately banished, who at the day appointed was chosen by all the Centuries of the first Classis, as well *Equites* as the other, so that the rest of the Classes were not called. They that were sent to fetch *Quintius* into the City, found him at Plow without as much as a Coat about him, onely in his Truffe, and a Cap on his head. Seeing the company make towards him, he wondered what it meant, but being told by a Viator that run before, he put on other apparel, and in a seemlier habit presented himself. Being saluted not by his own name, but by that of Consul, invested with Purple, honoured by the Fases, and other Ensigns of Magistracy, he was desired to begin his journey, whereat pausing a little he answered with tears: *Then for this year this little field shall be untown, and we shall be in danger of want.* After this, taking leave of his Wife, and commending his household affairs to her care, he departed for the City.

83. *Quintius* restrained the Tribunes from preferring the Law, by denouncing, that except they were quiet, he would lead out all the Citizens against

## SECT. I.

against the *Volsci*. When they said they would not permit him to make Levies, he called the people, and put the younger sort in mind of their *Sacramentum*, or Military Oath, whereby they had bound themselves to the Consuls to follow whithersoever he would lead them, and not be wanting to the Majesty of the *Roman* people. He affirmed they were all obnoxious to him by this Oath now he was Consul, and swore he would animadvert upon Offenders according to the Laws. Herewith he commanded the Standards to be moved out of the *Arvarum*, and told them that to make them know they should have no leisure for Tribunal actions in his Consulship, he let them understand, he would not return out of the Enemy's Countrey till his Office was at an end, and bade them prepare for wintering in the Camp. The multitude terrified hereat, desired him to forbear this rigour, and he did it upon this condition, that they would not molest him for his whole time, but suffer him to spend it in administering Justice. He behaved himself with such prudence, Justice, painfulness, and courtesie, that the Commons thought they stood not in need now of any new Laws, and the Senate was desirous to have him Consul for the following year, to oppose him to the *Tribunes*, who executed that Office now the third time. But as he approved it not in them, so he himself would not commit the same fault as he counted it, and in the Assembly speaking much against such as would not quit their Office when their time was finished, swore most religiously, that he would not accept the Consulship till he had laid down his present charge. Having finished a new Election, he betook himself to his little Cottage, and his former laborious course of life.

His carriage  
in his Office.

He is made  
Dictator.

He over-  
throweth the  
*Aqui*.

84. The year following, the *Aqui* surprized *Tusculum*, which action caused a War betwixt them and *Rome*, wherein they were worsted, together with their friends the *Volsci*, and forced to beg peace. But in the next Consulship they were drawn again to revolt, and making War upon the *Laiines*, by *Gracchus Claius* their Captain, an industrious man, who had improved the power granted him by his Countrey almost to regallity. He drew the *Roman* Army into so disadvantageous a place, that it was thought convenient to make a Dictator, which was *L. Quintius Cincinnatus*. The Messengers found him newly dressed; for when he espied the company, suspecting they came to him, he left the Countrey-work he was in hand with, and put on his better Clothes. Seeing himself made Dictator, by the trapped Horses, the 24 Axes, the Purple, and other royal Ensigns, he was so far from being delighted with this honour, that he said with indignation: *This year's Crop will also be lost by reason of mine employment, and my family must be famished.* When he came to the Citie he encouraged the people, and named Master of Horse-men, *L. Tarquinius*, a man of no great esteem by reason of his poverty, but a good Soldier: Having gathered together the Forces, he gave *Claius* batrel, and beat him into his Camp, which having besieged some time, he forced the *Aqui* to give him up, with other incendiaries, to be punished with death according to their deserts, as also to passe under the Jugum (two Spears set in the ground, and a third laid over upon them in form of a pair of Gallows) in token of servitude; and because they had the year following without any provocation plundered *Tusculum*, to suffer him to deal in the like manner with *Corbio*. The choicest part of the plunder he caused to be carried to *Rome*; the rest he gave to his own Soldiers, and those of *T. Quintius* the *Quaestor*, saying, that the other of *Minutius* the Consul; who had been besieged by the Enemy, ought to be content that they fell not as a prey into his hands. Having caused *Minutius* to lay down his Office, he returned to the Citie with a more illustrious Triumph than any Captain before him, (the General of the *Aqui*, and other Eminent prisoners in Chains preceding his Chariot) having overthrown a strong Army, and plundered, and fortified a Citie of the Enemy within seventeen dayes after his Creation. That absolute power which he might have kept for six moneths he presently resigned, having first given an account of his administration. And when the Senate and his private friends would have enriched him with publick Ground, Plunder, and Contributions, he utterly refused it, and betaking himself again to his

*Dionysius ut supra  
Livius lib. 3.*

## SECT. I.

his small Cottage, preferred a laborious life before Kingly power, for that he pleased himself more in his poverty, than others in the abundance of their wealth.

85. The year following, the *Sabines*, whose grounds the other Consul *Nautilus* had wasted, as also the *Aqui*, were in Arms, having retaken *Corbio*, against whom when Levies came to be made, the *Tribunes* again withstood them, being all new Created the fourth time. Hereupon the Fathers with weeping eyes signified to the People, that being forsaken by them, who hitherto had stiled themselves their Children, they would go forth and fight against the Enemy in their own persons, wherewith the multitude being sore moved, and *Virginius* seeing that do he what he could they would give their names, he averred it to be the resolution of the Commons to live and die with them; onely they desired some reward for all their pains and danger, which was, that they might live in equal freedom. If this could not be granted, they waved it, and desired another thing, which he was sure would not in-trench upon the Senate's privileges. The Consul affirming the thing should be proposed if they would but refer it to the Senate, he desired that the number of the *Tribunes* might be increased unto 10. The Senate debating the matter, *C. Claudius*, the son of *Appius* the Elder, spake against it, alleging, that the Commons would never be satisfied; but *Quintius*, who now bore the greatest sway, commended the opinion of *Appius*, that the onely way to crosse the design of the *Tribunes* was to set them one against another; and if so, it would make more for the interest of the Senate to have their number increased. Accordingly a *Senatus Consultum* was drawn, that it should be lawful for the Commons to increase their College of *Tribunes* to the number of 10. and it was presently confirmed by the People. After this the Sedition being appeased, the Consuls levied Forces, and managed the War successfully against the *Sabines* and *Aqui*.

The number  
of *Tribunes* in-  
creased to 10.

Their in-  
croachments.

A Law for di-  
vision of cer-  
tain grounds.

86. The ensuing year, being the second of the 81 *Olympiad*, and the 297 year of the Citie according to *Cato*, as the 298 after the account of *Varro*, had for Consuls *M. Valerius* and *Sp. Virginius*, who having nothing to do abroad, had too much employment in the Citie. Before this time, the *Tribunes* onely reigned in the Assemblies, neither taking upon them to call together the Senate, nor give their voices therein. But now they ventured to assemble the Fathers, by the procurement of *Isilius* principal of the College, an industrious, and eloquent man, who presumed to make a further innovation in the State, requiring the *Aventine* Mount for the People to build upon, which being a mile and an half in circuit, was not as yet fully inhabited, but publick, and full of wood. The *Tribune* moving the Consuls to procure a Decree of the Senate for his new project, and they deferring the matter, an Apparitor was sent from the College to cite the Consuls before it. He applying himself to one of their Lictors, was beaten, and sent back, which so enraged the *Tribunes*, that apprehending the Lictor, they led him to the *Tarpeian* Rock, the Consuls, though much troubled, not being able to rescue him; for that none could hinder the execution of what the whole College resolved; all they could do was to desire some of the *Tribunes* themselves to interpose. But this could not be effected, they having resolved at the beginning not to dissent from one another, that thereby they might preserve their Authority inviolable. As concerning the Lictor, then they answered they were resolved, yet they put not the man to death, giving his life to the intreaties of the graver sort of Paritians, lest that order should be driven by just indignation to attempt something extraordinary. Having then assembled the Senate, the Consuls sharply reprehended them, but *Isilius* excused what had been done to the Lictor, by the sacred Laws, which forbade all, both publick and private, to crosse a *Tribune*. By a premeditated Oration he endeavoured to shew, that he had not unjustly assembled the Senate, and when he had seemed sufficiently to have answered the charge of the Consuls, he mentioned the Law: That what private men were possessed of, and was justly gotten, should remain unto them; what ground by force, or fraud, was already furnished

N n n

with

*A. M. 3350.  
Ol. 81. ann. 2.  
V. C. 280.  
Art. Longim.  
10.*

*\* Vide supra  
Parag. 66.*

## SECT. I.

with buildings, the expence of building being considered by arbitration, should be recovered to the use of the People, and what was yet publick be divided amongst them. He shewed that this Law would be exceedingly profitable for the suppression of all Agrarian Seditions, inasmuch as the Commons would be satisfied with possessions at home. No man dissenting, except C. Claudius, a Decree of the Senate passed for it accordingly.

Diffentions renewed.

87. The remainder of the year was spent in building. For the next were created Consuls T. Romulus and C. Veturius; Scellius and his Colleague being continued in their Office: The civil diffentions supposed to be removed by the late Law, were again revived, and the foreign Enemies of the Commonwealth were in Arms, to the greater profit than discommodity of it. For such a vicissitude now there was, that Peace brought Sedition, and Warre procured Concord, which the chief Magistrates apprehending, wished for nothing more than external motions, and when there was Peace abroad, fought occasion for War; as understanding the growth of the City's prosperity to be procured thereby. The present Consuls were of this mind, being jealous of the beggerly and idle multitude. And their opinion was right, that they were to be diverted; but there they failed, that whereas in so ill a crisis of the State, they ought to have proceeded gently, they admitted the excuse of none who desired exemption from the War, but severely inflicted penalties upon all; which gave occasion to the Tribunes to make disturbance, crying out, that they violated the privilege of their Office, by imprisoning such as appealed to it. From mutual revilings sometimes it came to blows, both parties being surrounded with those of their faction, and the People not fully complying with the Tribunes in their demands, they went into the Senate, where they required, that the Consuls might either lay down their Offices, or answer their crime against the Sacrosanct Tribunitia power before the People. The Senate determined nothing, seeing it dangerous to diminish the power either of the Consuls or Tribunes, at which the later much discontented, returned to the multitude. Some were for departing again from the Patricians; others more moderate, would expect the course of Law against those who had violated so sacred an Office; and a third (the most sober party) disliked this as well as the other, for that the Consuls were the Supreme Magistrates; and thought it meet to punish their abettors. If the Tribunes had not at length restrained their anger against Senate and Consuls, the City that day had destroyed itself, so intent were both parties upon Arms and War. But they set the Consuls a day to answer before the People, and then were prevailed with to let the matter fall, telling the Commons, that they remitted what concerned themselves for their sakes whom they ought not to deny it, but would revenge the injury done to the whole, to prevent an ill example.

The Agrarian Law after 30 years with another of equal right published.

88. This was by promulgating the Agrarian Law, which hitherto had lay dormant for thirty years, to which another was added of equal right, which the former year could not be passed. Having with an oath promised to prefer these Laws, they appointed a day for the Comitia, wherein having first themselves spoken largely, several others related what good service they had done for the Commonwealth, and laboured to shew how unworthy a thing it was for them to be defrauded of those grounds, which by their labour and danger they had gained, and admitted to no part of reward. The multitude gladly hearing such discourses, none more affected mens minds than L. Siccius Dentatus, a man of admirable shape, 58 years old, and furnished with military eloquence, for a seditious attempt. He told them, he had served his Country in the Wars forty years, and been an Officer thirty; sometimes a Centurion, afterwards a Tribune. He was raised to that honour by Siccius the Consul, for defending the Ensign of his Cohort, when the Centurion was slain, for which he was also adorned by his fellow Soldiers with agolden crown. In another batrel, wherein the Tribune of the Camp was struck to the ground, and the Eagle (or Standard) taken, fighting for the whole Legion, he recovered it and saved him, for which the Tribune

## SECT. I.

The achievements of Siccius Dentatus.

Tribune would have given him his place, but he refused it, and the Consul made him Tribune of the first Legion, which Office was then void. Having thus purchased himself honour; to maintain his credit he spared no labour, nor refused any danger, being ever rewarded by the Consuls with spoils, crowns, and other rewards and honours.

89. In short; during those forty years, he had fought 120 batrels, received 45 wounds, all before and none behind, whereof twelve that day where-in he fought against Herdonius, who seized upon the Capitol. As for rewards after the several batrels, he had obtained fourteen Civic Crowns (which faith Gellius, were bestowed upon him who had preserved the life of a Citizen, and were made of Oake, because the most ancient meat was thought to be the fruit of that tree;) three Murals (which were given by the General unto him who first mounted the walls, and entered a Town, being adorned with an image of the batlements) and eight Golden Crowns; besides 83 Golden Chains, 60 Golden Bracelets, 18 pure Spears, which were Spears having no iron at the ends of them, being also called *Hasta donatica*, and *Hasta grammææ*, and 23 Horse trappings, whereof nine were for killing Enemies that he had challenged to single Combats. To this relation of Dionysius, Gellius addeth a Crown, called *Obfidionalis* (which was given to one who had freed the presenter from a Siege) and increaseth the number of Bracelets to above 160; that of Spears to 22, and the other of Horse trappings to 25. He calleth him L. Siccius Dentatus, and writeth, that for his incredible achievements, he had the appellation of *Achilles Romanus*.

Tumults about the Law.

90. Siccius proceeded, saying, that though he had fought so many years, served in so many Expeditions, received so many wounds, and helped to gain such large Territories for the Roman People, yet neither he, nor his fellow-soldiers partakers with him in the same dangers, had received any portion of those Lands, being possessed by others, who could neither shew title nor merit for them. After this, he accused the Patricians of having put Cassius to death, for no other cause than favouring the Commons, as also of privily murdering Genucius the Tribune, eleven years after, which had terrified others since from such attempts as his were. He mentioned the affronts lately made to the Tribunes, and concluded with an exhortation to the multitude, to free themselves from this Tyranny of the great ones, by passing the Law without giving heed to the dissuasions of any. The Assembly was so moved by his words, that they seemed impatient of any thing to be said against it; but Scellius rising up, after he had extolled the worth of the man; said, it was neither just, nor agreeable with the custome of the City, to hinder any one from speaking against the Law, especially such an one as asserted right, and opposed violence. He adjourned then the Comitia till the next day, when he commanded all to be present, who would speak any thing against it. The Patricians meeting at the Consul's house in the evening, resolved, if they could not with words, by deeds to hinder the passing of the Law, and sometimes in the morning took up the Forum, spreading themselves all over to hinder the uniting of the Commons. The Comitia being full, those that spake could not be heard, some encouraging, and others interrupting them with great clamours. The Consuls protested against this carriage, and that if any violence succeeded, the Commons were the procurers of it; and the Tribunes answered, that they had heard long such discourses as they were now making. The day being far spent, the People required the ballots; but then the young Patricians hindered them from uniting in their Tribes, and snatched away the pots and ballots, bearing out of the Forum the Officers attending for the gathering of Suffrages. The Tribunes crying out, and casting themselves into the throng, they gave way to them, where ever they went, but hindered such as would have followed, and rendered their Office thereby unserviceable. At length the Patricians prevailed against the passing of the Law, by the means of three Families especially, viz. the *Posthumii*, *Sempronii*, and *Clavii*, most eminent for Nobility, Riches, and Clients, who also especially hindered the confirmation of the Agrarian by a *Plebiscitum*.

N n n 2

91. The



## SECT. I.

Diverted by War.

A plot against Siccus.

He escapeth as Conquerour.

He revengeth himself upon the Consuls.

A new Law.

91. The Tribunes consulting how to vindicate their cause, the most moderate opinion prevailed, that neither the Consuls, nor any other Patricians, save those of the three Families now mentioned, should be called to answer before the People; and not for their lives, but estates, for resisting the Tribunes in preferring the Law. The Patricians gave way to it, and having redeemed the estates, restored them to the owners. Afterwards, when the Tribunes again went about to prefer the Law, news came that the Enemy was on his march to Rome, as far as *Tusculum*, which place onely stopped him, but could not long hold out. Levies now being to be made, according to a Decree of the Senate, the Tribunes endeavoured to hinder them, but another Decree being published, that the Patricians with their Clients, and such as voluntarily came in, would undertake the War; some for shame, some for plunder, and others to gratifie the Nobility, gave their names; and amongst the rest *Siccus* himself, whom followed a Cohort of 800 old Soldiers to do him honour, though excused from warfare by the Laws. A strong Army being presently raised, the Enemies retired, and were followed by the Consuls to *Antium*, where the Armies lying incamped one against the other, the *Aequi*, confident of their strength, at length provoked the Romans to fight. *Romulus* having then the command, sent for *Siccus*, as the story goes, and gave him order with his Cohort to go a certain way, and fall behind upon the Enemies Camp; intending either to disgrace him upon refusal, or destroy him by so impossible an undertaking. When *Siccus* laboured to shew him that the thing could not be done, he upbraided him with his speeches used in the *Comitia* concerning his own exploits, and objected to him pretended valour. Hereat he undertook the matter, and giving all to understand his case, departed with his men all weeping, to the regret of the Army, who expected of these 800 to see no man return alive. *Siccus* led them not the same way as the Consul thought, which being mountainous, would have brought certain destruction to them ascending, but another through a Wood, by which they came upon the Camp of the *Aequi*, where it was forsaken of the guard, now gone to behold the fight of the two Armies, before this time joyned. Falling in with a shout, the *Aequi* supposing the other Consul present, forsook the Camp and fled, after which *Siccus* and his Cohort marched down towards the battel, whom the Enemy discovering on their back, and knowing their Camp to be taken, were also discouraged and fled: The Romans pursued them till night, and did great execution, but none so valiantly demeaned himself as *Siccus Dentatus*.

92. *Siccus* having lodged himself and his men in the Enemies Camp, the next day set it and all the stuff therein on fire, and with haste marched for Rome, on purpose to deprive the Consuls of the honour they expected. Coming into the Forum, he related to the Tribunes and People the whole passage, how he and his old men being destined to ruine, had obtained the Victory. Hereby he not onely ingratiated himself with the People, but procured the displeasure of the Senate also against the Consuls, who were denied the honour of a Triumph. The Commons gratified *Siccus* in the highest measure they could, making him one of their Tribunes for the following year, wherein *Sp. Tarpius*, and *A. Ternius* (or *Thermus* rather as *Gellius* hath it) were Consuls. The first he did relating to his Office, was to set the former Consuls a day to answer before the People, for violating the power of the Tribuneship, and devising the destruction of him and his Soldiers: and so resolved was the whole College, that the judgment passed without interruption intended by the Patricians, and they were both condemned in a pecuniary mulct. The present Consuls were hereby rendered more inclinable towards the Commons; so that they procured a Decree of the Senate, and a Law passed in the *Centuriate Comitia*, that *All Magistrates should have liberty to punish such as violated their authority*, which was formerly the privilege of the Consuls onely. But the mulct was not left to their discretion, provision being made, that it should not exceed the worth of two Oxen, or thirty Sheep; which Law was long observed by the Romans. After this, the

## SECT. I.

*Romulus* perswaded the Senate to submit to new Laws.

Commissioners chosen to fetch some out of Greece.

the Tribunes propounded to the Senate, that Laws might be made, which the Citie should use for ever. After a grave debate, the advice of *Romulus* the late condemned Consul prevailed, who contrary to the expectation of both parties spoke in behalf of the thing propounded. He said, he was for the interest of the Patricians as long as there was any hopes of its continuance, but finding things in such a condition, as it must necessarily decline, he thought it wisdom to comply with that necessity, and advised that Ambassadors might be sent to the Greek Cities in Italy, and to Athens, thence to fetch such Laws as were most excellent, and befitting the Commonwealth. After their return was to be propounded to the People the choice of Law-makers, what their power should be, for how long, and what other things should appertain to them. *Siccus* extraordinarily affected with the mans ingenuity, said he was now friends with him, and remitted his fine; but he refused to forbear the payment of it, because already sacred to their gods. A *Senatus Consultum* being made, and confirmed by a *Plebiscitum*, Ambassadors were chosen to fetch Laws from the Greeks. These were *Sp. Posthumius*, *Ser. Sulpitius*, and *A. Manlius*, to whose use Gallies were assigned, and furnished at the publick charge, as was suitable with the Majesty of the Roman People.

92. For the following year, being the first of the 82 Olympiad, wherein *Lycus a Thessalus* of *Larissa* was Victor in the course, *Charephanes* exercising the Office of principal *Archon*, the 300th year of the Citie being now ended (as *Dionysius* computeth, following the account of *Cato*) *P. Horatius* and *Sex. Quinsilius* were Consuls. Now fell a greater plague than ever had been known, upon both Citie and Countrey, which swept away *Quinsilius* the Consul, and *Sp. Furius* chosen in his place, with four Tribunes, and many Senators. The succeeding Consuls were *L. Menenius* and *P. Sextius*, who took care for Corn to supply the Citie, which laboured under a famine, by reason that the grounds lay untilld the former year. In their year the Ambassadors returned out of Greece with Laws, presently after which the Tribunes required, that according to the Senates Decree, law-makers might be appointed. The Consuls knowing not how to deny them, yet unwilling to weaken the interest of the Patricians, deferred the matter, saying, that the time of the *Comitia* was at hand, after which they would labour, jointly with the Consuls Elect, in the business. The Tribunes were content; but when the *Comitia* were past, wherein *Appius Claudius*, and *T. Genucius* were chosen, they grew idle, and neglected the administration of affairs, as now belonging unto others; and *Menenius* was sickly, pining away, as was thought, by melancholy; of which *Sextius* took advantage, pretending he could do nothing by himself. The Tribunes then betook themselves to the Consuls Elect, and though they had not yet entered upon their Magistracy, importuned them to gratifie the Commons, by proposing great honours and rewards. *Appius* being elevated with the hope of a new kind of Magistracy, grew popular, and perswaded his Colleague to a compliance, so that *Sextius* was forced to call together the Senate, and propound concerning Laws.

93. Many things were spoken, as well by those that desired a new model, as others, who thought it sufficient to rest satisfied in the customs of their Countrey. But the opinion of the designed Consuls prevailed, which *Appius* the principal of the two delivered, being asked his advice, according to the custom, before any other Senators. Their sense was, that ten men out of the chief of the Senate were to be Elested, whose power continuing for a year should be the same with that of the Kings and Consuls, and all other Magistracies cease till they might be renewed according to Laws: in the mean time the ten men, or *Decemviri*, were to administer Justice to private men, and model the Commonwealth. When the day came wherein this *Senatus Consultum* was to be confirmed by the People, the designed Consuls resigned their Office, for which they were exceedingly admired, and remembered in the choice. In the *Centuriate Comitia* were created *App. Claudius* and *T. Genucius*, late Consuls Elect; *P. Sextius* Consul for that present year, the three

SECT. 2. three Ambassadors who fetched Laws out of Greece, *P. Posthumius, Ser. Sulpicius, A. Manlius*, and one of the former year's Consuls *T. Romulus*, who had been condemned by *Siccius* the Tribune, and afterwards was the author of this popular act: besides these, out of the Senate *C. Julius, T. Venturius*, and *P. Horatius*, all of Consular dignity. The Tribunes, *Ediles, Quaestors*, and all other Magistrates were for a time devoted of all power. Instead of *Horatius*, *Livy* mentioneth *P. Curatius*.

## SECT. II.

From the Creation of the Decemviri to the war of Privernæ, which fell out the same year that Darius Codomannus died: the space of 121 years.

The second change of Government when.

1. The second change in the Government (from Consuls to Ten men, or Decemviri, as the first was from Kings to Consuls) hapned in the 302 year of the Citie, according to the account of *Cato*, and the 303 after the computation of *Lartius* and *Varro*, which fell in with the 2 and 3 years of the 8<sup>th</sup> Olympiad, the 14<sup>th</sup> of the reign of *Artaxerxes Longimanus*, 449 before the Era of Christ, A. M. 3554. and, as may be gathered both out of *Dionysius* and *Livy*, on the Ides of May.

A. M. 3554.  
Ol. 82. and 2.  
V. C. 302.  
Artax. Longim.  
14.

The acts of the Decemviri for the first year.

2. The Decemviri having taken upon them the Government, in reference to a new constitution, agreed that onely one of them at one time should have the *Fasces* and other consular Ensigns. He assembled the Senate, confirmed the Decrees, and did other things agreeable with chief Magistracy. The rest (for to lessen envy) differed little in habit from private men, having onely an *Accensus*, or sort of Beadle, going before them, which *Livy* addeth to the relation of *Dionysius*. They succeeded by turns, for a certain limited time, till the year went about. The present Possessor of the *Fasces* onely saith *Livy*, but all of them as *Dionysius* seemeth to mean, judged private causes together with publick ones belonging to their subjects, and associates. All things they managed with such Justice and moderation, that the Commonwealth seemed most happy under them, having no need of appeal. *Appius* above the rest grew exceeding popular by his familiarity with the ordinary sort; so as in a manner he carried away the praise from the whole College, for that he had a further design than any of the rest.

3. At length having made a model out of such Laws as were brought out of Greece, and their own Countrey's customs, they proposed it to the view of all men in ten Tables, that any one might make exceptions; liberty being given to private persons to inform the Law-makers, who consulted much with the Nobility about the work. When all approved of them; a *Senatus Consultum* passed, *nemine contradicente*, for the ratifying of these Laws, and the question being put to the People in the *Centuriata Comitia*, they were confirmed most religiously in presence of the Pontifices, Augurs, and Priests. Then were they engraven in brasse, saith *Dionysius* and others, in Ivory saith *Pomponius* the Lawyer, and proposed to the publick view in the most conspicuous part of the Forum, as *Minos* of old, according to *Plato*, and long after him *Solon*; caused his Laws to be written in Tables by the *Athenians* called *Cybes* and *Axones*. The year being almost out, the Decemviri moved the Senate about the *Comitia*. After a great debate it was resolved to continue this kind of Magistracy for the following year; because something seemed yet wanting to the new model, through the shortness of time allotted to the work; but especially for that by this Office the Tribuneship was suspended, of which the Patricians had cause to be most jealous. The commons thought they had good reason to concur with the Fathers in this choice, and the day for holding the *Comitia* was appointed.

4. The

## SECT. 2.

Appius obtaineth to be Decemvir the second time by cheating the credulous multitude.

The most ancient and honorable of the Fathers stood for this Office, fearing that if turbulent spirits were possessed of it, they might have a great advantage against the State. Above all others was *Appius* extolled to the skies, the Commons labouring earnestly to retain him in his place, for that none had behaved himself better than he. He desired to be excused, pretending he had rather be discharged of so troublesome and ingratefull a work. At length overcome as it were by the intreaties of the people, he professed himself ill will for his publick spirit, made way for himself and his friends. In the *Centuriata Comitia* he was made Decemvir the second time, and with him was joyned *Q. Fabius Vibulanus*, who had been Consul three times, a man hitherto of unblameable carriage: out of the other Patricians by the procurement of *Appius* were created *M. Cornelius*, *M. Servilius*, *L. Minucius*, *T. Antonius*, and *Manius Rabulius*, persons of no great Eminency, and out of the Commons *Q. Perilius*, *Casus Duellius*, and *Sp. Oppius*, whom he took in, the more to ingratiate himself with the rabble, saying, it was just that the Commons should share in that Magistracy, which was to govern and command all.

He and his Collegues labour to establish themselves.

4. *Appius*, a man more popular than any Magistrate that ever governed, either King or Consul, with his nine Collegues, entered his Office on the Ides of May, which saith *Dionysius* hapned in the full Moon, according to the course whereof months at that time were observed. The first thing the Decemviri did, was mutually to agree and confirm by Oath to be of one mind, not to hold the Assemblies, but perpetually to retain the power in their own hands: to admit none into their number, and to be of equal power and authority amongst themselves: to make use of *Senatus Consultum's*, and *Placitum's*; but rarely, and never except in case of necessity, acting most things by virtue of their own power. On the first day (which to the Romans was ever Festival and Religious) after their superstitious Ceremonies were over, they all appeared with regal Ensigns, which exceedingly terrified the people, especially the Axes added again to the Rods, which *Poplicola* had laid aside, and none of his Successors the Consuls used in the Citie. By this fear they sought to procure themselves security, each of them getting about him a company of stout young men, such as were most addicted to him.

Some preferring their private commodity before the publick good flattered them, and even amongst the Patricians themselves were not wanting, who though Eminent both for birth and estate patiently bore the oppression of their Countrey. The Decemviri indulging their pleasures, exercised now their authority with all licentiousness, nothing valuing the Roman Senate and people. Being both Legislators and Judges, many Citizens they unjustly put to death, and deprived others of their Estates, whose causes were all formally judged, that they might have some shew, and pretence of Justice, accusers being suborned out of their Dependents, each one affording all assistance herein to his Collegue. Such private persons as in their fears feared their cause were constrained to joyn themselves to the party of their Judges; so as it came to passe in a short time that most of the Citizens were also corrupted. Such as were offended with the extravagancy of the ten retired themselves, expecting the *Comitia* for the Creation of new Magistrates.

They add two Tables of Laws to the ten.

5. The Decemviri added two Tables of Laws to the ten that were made the year before. Amongst these new Laws there was one which forbade marriage betwixt the Patricians and Plebeians, for no other cause as *Dionysius* conjectureth, than lest the families being joyned together, concord should ensue betwixt the two orders. These Laws thus by accident, saith (a) *Pomponius*, came to be called the Laws of the twelve Tables, being written by the Decemviri, through the perswasion of one *Hermodorus* an Ephesian, as some reported, then banished into Italy, concerning which person (b) *Cicero* and others are to be consulted. These Laws being established,

(a) Lib. 2. Dig. de Origine Juris.  
(b) *Tusculan.* lib. 5. *Plin.* lib. 84. & *Strabo* lib. 14.

## SECT. I.

The Original  
of the Civil  
Law.

blished, it followed, that disputes and controversies of the Court should be necessary, for as much as an interpretation was to be built upon the authority of the Learned. This dispute, or this unwritten Law, composed by the Learned, is not called by any peculiar name, but all other parts, but by the common one of *Jus Civile*, or *Civil Law* only. Besides, out of these Laws, at the same time almost, were composed certain cases, wherein men contested one with another, which cases, left the People should make them at their pleasure, were to be certain and solemn; and this part of Law is called *Actiones Juris*, or *Cases at Law*. Thus almost at the same time these three sorts of Laws arose, viz. the *Laws of the twelve Tables*; from these flowed the *Civil Law*: and from the same were composed *Cases at Law*. But the knowledge of expounding all these, and the Cases themselves, were kept by the College of *Pontifices*, who appointed yearly those that judged *Private Persons*, which custom the People used almost 100 years. Afterward, when *Appius Claudius* had propounded, and reduced these *Cases* into form, (c) *Gnaeus Flavius* his Scribe, and the son of a *Liberine* (or of one whose father was once a Slave) stole the Book, and gave it to the People, which accepted to thankfully of the gift, that he was made *Tribune of the Commons*, a *Senator*, and *Ædilis curulis*. This Book was called *Jus Civile Flavianum*, as the other *Jus Civile Papirianum*. Yet *Flavius* added nothing of his own to the Book. The City increasing, and there being as yet wanting certain sorts of *Cases*, not long after *Sexius Ælius* composed other Cases, and gave a Book to the People called *Jus Ælianum*.

How the parts  
of it came in  
by degrees.

6. There being now in the City, the *Lex* or Law of the twelve Tables, the *Jus Civile*, or *Civil Law*, and the *Cases of Law*, it came to passe, that the *Commons* disagreeing with and separating from the *Patricians*, appointed Laws of their own making, called *Plebiscita*. After their return, there being a great controversy about these, it was thought good to receive them also for Laws, and so it was enacted by a Law preferred by \* *Horatius* the *Dilector*; so though there was a difference in the form of making a Law (called *Lex*) and a *Plebiscitum*, yet the authority was the same. Then for that it was difficult for the People to meet, because of its multitudes, necessary it self devolved the care of the Commonwealth upon the *Senate*. So the *Senate* began to interpose, and whatsoever it resolved was observed: and that Law was called *Senatus Consultum*. At the same time the Magistrates also administered Justice, and that the People might know what they would determine concerning any thing, and to fore-arm themselves, they published *Edicts*, which *Edicts* of the *Prætors* constituted the *Jus Honorarium*, so named from the honour and authority of the *Prætor*. Lastly, as the course of affaires reduced the making of Laws to fewer fashions, at length it came to passe through several Factions (viz. of *Sylla*, *Marius*, *Pompey*, and *Cæsar*) that there was necessity of the Commonwealth's being governed by a single person. For the *Senate* not being able to govern all the Provinces, a *Prince* was ordained, and what he appointed was taken for Law. So that in the Commonwealth of *Rome*, all Law was either so constituted by a Law called *Lex*, as that of the twelve Tables; or properly called *Jus Civile*, which being unwritten, consisted in the interpretation of the Learned; or *Cases of Law*, which contained the form of Pleas; or a *Plebiscitum* made without the authority of the Fathers: or the *Edict* of a Magistrate, called *Jus Honorarium*: or a *Senatus Consultum*, which without a Law (*Lex*) was ordained by the sole authority of the *Senate*: or *Præcepta consuetudo*, which the Prince himself enacted.

7. These things are written by *Pomponius* in this narrative of the Original of Law; for the better understanding whereof, it is to be noted, that the word *Jus* signifieth all Law or right in general, and is that genus whereof *Lex* is but a species, being defined by (a) *Justinian the Emperor* to be that which the People of *Rome* upon the question put by a *Senatorial Magistrate* (for example a Consul) did enact. As for the twelve Tables, they were furnished with Laws, partly borrowed from the *Gracians*, partly added at the

(c) Confule  
Valer. Max.  
l. 2. c. 5. exemp.  
A. Gellium  
Noct. Attic.  
l. 6. c. 9. &  
Cicero. pro Mu-  
rena.

\* Vide Livi-  
um, lib. 3.  
A. Gellium  
l. 15. c. 26.

(a) Scilicet Scrib-  
manus Instituit.  
l. 1. Tit. 2.

## SECT. 2.

Cicero his  
commenda-  
tion of the 12  
tables

The Decem-  
vir retain  
their power.

They assem-  
ble the Se-  
nate about  
War.

Stirs in the  
Senate.

discretion of the Lawmakers, and partly the same as formerly were in use. Of the first sort were such especially as concerned private interests. Of the second was that which forbade marriage betwixt the Nobility and Commons. And of the third, that Law which from *Dionysius* we formerly mentioned to have been made by *Romulus*, giving power to a man to call together his wives kindred, and judge her for drinking wine, or dishonesty: this is attested to have been taken into the twelve Tables by (b) *Plinius*; and (c) *Gellius* also hinteth as much. From (d) *Ausonius* is observed, that these twelve Tables were divided into three parts, whereof the first contained what belonged to the Religion of the Romans, the second what concerned the publick; and the third the rights of private men. Great are the commendations which many give of them, but the most eminent is *Cicero's* Encomium, that we name no more. Disputing under the name of *Crassus*, in (e) one place he thus speaketh: If diversity of Studies please any, in the twelve Tables there is a great image of Antiquity: because the ancient use of words is known, and certain kinds of actions declare the life and custom of our Ancestors. If any look at Policy, you shall find it all in the twelve Tables, which describe all the interests and parts of the State: or if any one be taken with this glorious Philosophy, I will speak more boldly, these are the fountains of all his disputes contained in the Civil Law (*Jure Civili*) and Laws (*Legibus*). Though all be displeased, I will speak what I think: this little Book of the twelve Tables alone, in my opinion excelleth the Libraries of all the Philosophers (if one view the fountains and heads of Laws) both in weight of authority and copiousness of advantage. In another (f) place he writeth, that when he was a boy, they were wont to learn the twelve Tables as some necessary Poem. Lastly, a collection of the fragments of these Tables out of approved Authors (such especially as conduce to the explication of the Institutions, and of ancient Law with deep Antiquities) hath been made by *I. Crispinus*, to which the Reader is referred.

8. But (to return) the *Decemviri* at the usual time of the *Comitia* bidding farewell to the customs of their Country, and the new Laws, neither regarding the approbation of Senate nor People, continued themselves in power for the year following, which was the third of the *Decemvirate*, the first of the 83 Olympiad, according to *Dionysius*, wherein *Criso of Himara* was Victor, *Phyliscus* being Archon at Athens. They so ordered the matter shortly, as even all the considerable part of the Citizens, (*Patricians* and others) they either killed, or forced to quit the City. This pleased them well enough, but the *Sabines* and *Æquians* thinking it a fit time to attempt some great matter against *Rome*, invaded the territories thereof, and of the *Latines*. The *Decemviri* much troubled hereat, after a consultation how to make resistance several ways, found themselves constrained to assemble the Senate, wherein *Appius* with a premeditated Oration propounded the matter of the War. *L. Valerius Potitus*, the son of him that besieged the Capitol, and grandson of *Poplicola*, first arose, and though he was commanded by *Appius* to forbear, flew high against the tyranny of the present Usurpers. He being forced to silence, was seconded by *Marcus Horatius Barbatus*, great grandson of the Colleague of *Poplicola*, who having expressed great indignation, the *Decemviri* incensed with his biring words, threatened to cast him down headlong from the Rock. All the Senators at this cried out as at a breach of their privilege, and made a tumult, whereat the Ten repented of what they had done, and excused themselves, saying, they deprived none of speaking to the matter in hand, but interrupted Seditious Orations, which they might do by their power of Consuls and Tribunes received from the People, nor for a year onely, nor any limited time, but till the work of Laws were finished, untill which time they were resolved to act, and then give an account of their administration. *Appius* having delivered this in the name of all, asked the opinion of *C. Claudius* his Uncle.

9. *Claudius* beginning his Oration with the occasion of their meeting, firstly shewed what was the occasion of it. The War he demonstrated to be begun

(b) Lib. 14.  
cap. 13.  
(c) Lib. 10.  
cap. 23.  
(d) *Jus triplex*  
*tabula quod*  
*ter Sanxere*  
*quaterne Sa-*  
*crum, Privu-*  
*tum, Populi*  
*commune quad-*  
*usquam est.*  
(e) Lib. 1. de  
Oratore.

(f) De Legibus  
lib. 2.

## SECT. 2.

begun by no other inducements than what the present distempers of the State afforded, which were bred by the arbitrary and tyrannical carriage of his Nephew, and his nine Companions. He made out what these distempers were, and by virtue of his relation to *Appius*, took upon him, after a sharp reproof, by the nearness of their blood, their Ancestors, and the *Decemviri's* Father, with all that was dear and religious to them both, to conjure him, that putting a stop to his ambitious course (destructive to himself as well as the publick) he would resign his usurped power, and restore the Commonwealth to its former government and liberty. *Appius* answered him not a word, which so moved him, that with tears he signified he would depart to *Rhegium*, the seat of his Forefathers, and there continue till that fell upon the *Decemvirate*, which he guessed would happen in a short time; for as much as he could not endure to behold his Nephew degenerate so much from the ancient worth of their Family. As concerning the War, he advised the Fathers to resolve nothing, till the accustomed Magistrates were first created. The graver and more eminent sort of Senators that spake after, were all of this opinion, which made the Ten resolve to ask none now according to their age, as the custom was, but *M. Cornelius* called upon his brother *Lucius* to deliver his opinion. He attributed all that had been said against the *Decemviri* to envy, saying, it was because the speakers themselves could not compass the Office, and laboured to shew, that it was most foolish counsel to resolve upon new elections, which would require time, and defer the War that threatened ruine and desolation. By pressing the danger very close, and urging what necessity there was of committing the War to the management of the *Decemviri*, he drew almost all the younger sort to his party, there being many even in the Senate from whom fear wrested compliance. After all these, the *Decemviri* gave *Valerius* leave to speak, whom first of all they had interrupted. He professed he was of *Claudius* his judgement as to the whole, and answered all the reasons of *Cornelius* by one proposal; that a Dictator might be instantly named, shewing, that if they missed of this opportunity, they could not expect again to be assembled by the *Decemviri*.

10. Few that delivered their opinions after him remained unconvinced, and many were changed from the sense they had before delivered. He required then of the Ten, that the matter might be further considered of, and all might have liberty to recall their votes, which caused a great contest betwixt him and *Cornelius*, who desiring that the *Decemviri* might have the command in the War, cried out, that the thing was already decided in a legal manner, and desired the parties might be counted. Much heat being shewed by both, the Fathers were also divided, which advantage the Ten took to do what they pleased. *Appius* then formally declaring for what cause they had been assembled, told them they were divided according to the three several opinions of *Claudius*, *Cornelius*, and *Valerius*, every one having had liberty to speak his mind freely: and seeing that most had approved of what *Cornelius* had propounded, he declared his party to have overcome. Then commanded he the Clerk to draw up a *Senatus Consultum*, whereby power of raising Forces, and commanding them, was given to the *Decemviri*; and therewith the Senate was dismissed. They were by this kind of victory rendered more confident, and imperious, as having now in their own thoughts established themselves, by having an Army at their command, which *Valerius* had advised the Fathers earnestly to beware. *Horatius* and *Valerius* made provision for their own defence, by gathering together their Clients and dependents, and *Claudius*, as he had said, departed into the Country of the *Sabines*, whose example multitudes following, left their native seat, with their wives and children departing into voluntary exile. The *Decemviri* troubled hereat, endeavoured at first to hinder them by shutting the gates, but again fearing they might out of fury attempt some dangerous thing, they let them depart, but seized on such goods as they left behind, having accused them of defection. These things being added to the former miscarriages, incensed much more both

They make use of the Senate to their own advantage.

## SECT. 2.

both *Patrians* and *Plebeians* against them. Yet had they proceeded no further in such like outrages, they might probably for a much more longer time have secured their power, through that influence which the mutual emulation of these orders afforded. For the *Plebeians* were glad to see the high spirits of the *Patrians* dejected, and the Senate void of all power: on the other side, the Nobility rejoiced that the Commons had lost their former liberty, having not the least help, because the *Tribunitial* power was taken away. But they neither using moderation in War, nor temperance at home, constrained all to unite for their destruction, which followed certain hainous offences committed against the Commons.

They lead out an Army against the *Sabines* and *Equi*.

11. They divided their Army into three parts, whereof one remained with *Appius* and *Oppius* in the City, the two other their Collegues led forth against the *Sabines* and *Equi*. The latter forced the *Romans* to forsake their Camp, and shamefully to fly, which caused great rejoicing in *Rome* amongst the Enemies of the *Decemviri*, so that *Appius* fearing some attempt, wrote to his Collegues in the Army, by one means or other to destroy their known adversaries, which was effected upon diverse. But at *Rome*, *Siccus Dentatus*, the Roman *Achilles* as he was named, amongst others spake much against the Captains as Cowards and unskilfull, which *Appius* understanding, with good words persuaded him to go as Lieutenant or *Legatus* to the Army then lying at *Crustumia* against the *Sabines*. He not suspecting what was designed, undertook the employment, for that the Office of *Legatus* was most sacred and honorable amongst the *Romans*, having the authority and power of a General, and the inviolableness and veneration of a Priest. When he came to the Camp he was sent out with 100 men upon service, who had order to kill him. He fought with them all, slew fifteen, and wounded twice as many, so that finding it too difficult a task to kill him by hand-strokes, they threw Darts and Stones at him, and thereby at length, and at a distance, performed what was enjoined them. Though the murderers according to agreement gave out he fell by the Enemy's hand, yet the Soldiers fetching him off to give him honorable burial, by several circumstances plainly perceived the truth, and demanding Justice against the instruments, when that was put off, and they concealed, they easily understood who were the principal cause, and thought of nothing more than how to revolt.

*Siccus Dentatus* made away by them.

12. The Army lying at *Crustumia* and *Fidene* being thus incensed against the *Decemviri*, another wicked act of *Appius* caused the other which lay incamped at *Algidum* against the *Equi*, not onely to think of, but fully to effect a revolt. There was one *L. Virginius* a *Plebeian*, who had a daughter the most beautiful of all *Roman* women. The maid being but young and at School near the Forum, *Appius* as he passed that way fell in love with her in such a measure as by no means could he allay his brutish passion. Marry her he could not, being a *Plebeian*, neither could he hope to obtain her for his Concubine: there remained then no other way for him to enjoy her, than by procuring *M. Claudius* one of his Clients to challenge her as his Slave, so that the matter being brought before him to judgement, he might judge her so to be. *Claudius* laid his claim, by affirming she was the true and natural daughter of his Slave, and that the wife of *Virginius*, now dead, her self being barren, procured the Child, and brought it up for her own; which though he and others knew well enough, yet being young, he had not opportunity till now to right himself. The pretence was so impudent, as raised the indignation of all persons no otherwise concerned than as in the publick liberty. *Numitor* the maid's Uncle by her mother, and *Scilius* the son of *Scilius* one of the first *Tribunes* of the Commons, to whom she was already contracted, sufficiently evidenced the truth; but *Appius* being bent upon his lustfull design, would hear no reason, and had not a tumult hapned out of the indignation of the multitude, would have given her up in the hands of *Claudius*, till such time as her father could be sent for from the Army to defend her cause. Being hardly drawn to put off the matter till the next day, and not giving any more time, wrote to *Algidum* to hinder *Vir-*

O o o 2 ginus

## SECT. 2.

*ginus* from coming, bidding *Antonius* the Commander of that Legion to confine him, lest he should hear any thing of his daughter. But *Numitor*, and the brother of *Leilius*, prevented the Letters, and *Virginus* pretending the death of a near relation, getting leave to depart, through by-ways returned to the Citie, fearing a pursute after the arrival of the Letters, which accordingly hapned, but he thus evaded it.

13. *Virginus* then was present in the morning to the great astonishment of *Appius*, when his daughter was commanded to be brought forth. He proved the maid to be his own daughter, and no supposititious brood; but *Appius*, a man of no great natural abilities, besides the brutish, corrupted by the greatness of his power, and inflamed with the excess of his passion, neither considered the defence of *Virginus*, nor was moved by the bitter tears of the Virgin, being angry at the pity of the standers by, who apprehended the case of Father and Daughter no otherwise than as their own, as if he himself were more to be pitied, enduring more for her beauties sake than she herself. Interrupting those that spake in her behalf, and commanding them silence, he told them, that this was not the first time he had had knowledge of this matter, for that *Claudius* his father being a Client to their family had committed him yet a Boy, when he died, to his protection. In the time of his Guardianship he said it had been cleared to him how *Numitoria* had procured the Girl of *Claudius* his Slave, but he thought it more convenient to let the matter rest till *Claudius* was grown up, either to take, or sell her as he should like best. Since he came into employment he had not meddled with his Clients affairs, but he himself it seemeth making an inventory of his goods, and having notice of this Slave, now challenged his right, and accordingly he both witnessed, and judged him to be the right Lord and owner of her. Great outcries and lamentation being made, as well by the by-standers as the Virgin's relations, *Appius* commanded all to depart, and gave order to *Claudius* to take possession of his Slave. *Virginus*, seeing there was no way but to yield to the Tyrant's lust if his daughter lived, desired he might speak with her a little aside, as to take his last farewell, which being granted, he drew her, hanging upon him, and pitifully bewailing her condition, towards a Butchers stall, whose knife taking into his hands, he said, *Daughter, I will send thee to our Ancestors, both free, and of honest repute; for the Tyrant will not suffer thee to be either here; and therewith he stabbed, and dispatch'd her.*

14. With the bloody knife in his hand he ran through the Citie, calling the People to their liberty, and coming to the Gate, rode Post to the Army; a company of 400 *Plebeians* following after. In the same posture he came to the Camp at *Algidum*, holding the knife, which together with his cloaths was all bloody. Calling the Soldiers together, he took occasion from his own misfortune to let them see in what condition their liberty stood, and with urgent reasons perswaded them to revolt from the ten, and redeem their Countrey. They being conscientious, as to their *Sacramentum*, or Military Oath, whereby they had sworn not to forsake their Leaders, but follow them whithersoever, he told them they were discharged from any Obligation, because the Law for the Oath supposed the Captains should be created according to the Laws, which the ten were not, having usurped the power ever since the last time for the *Comitia*. Being satisfied herewith, the Army departed, some few Centurions onely remaining, and took up its station in the *Aventine Mount*, and the next day fortifying the Camp chose ten Captains, whereof *M. Oppius* was the Chief. Presently there came a great party from *Fidena*, and joyned with them, being offended with the murder of *Siccus*, and they chusing also ten men out of their body, to the twenty the whole mutter now contented for was referred. *Appius* in the mean while having gone by force to suppress the tumult he had raised in the Citie, was overpowered by the faction of *Valerius* and *Horatius* formerly mentioned, and now perceiving that most of the odium lay upon himself as the principal cause, he

*Appius his abominable practices for Virginus.*

## SECT. 2.

Procureth the destruction of the Decemvirate.

The next Consuls prefer Popular Laws.

Yet the multitude being insatiable and restless demand the Consulship.

Publick business hereby hindred.

kept himself in his house. *Sp. Oppius* therefore assembled the *Fathers*, at which time came the Captains from *Fidena*, requiring that the revolvers might be punished. *L. Cornelius* accordingly moved that they should all be remained back to their charges, which if they obeyed, the Ring-leaders onely were to be punished, but if they refused, the Senate then should consider how all those might be dealt with, who had betrayed their trust. But the *Fathers* were too sensible of present grievances, to hear the motion of such corrupt interest, and were prevailed with by *Valerius* and *Horatius*, to make Peace with the Army (which by this time was departed to the *Holy Mount*) on condition that the same form of Government should return, as was in being before the creation of the *Decemviri*.

15. *Valerius Potius*, and *M. Horatius Barbatus*, both inheritors of popularity, were created Consuls in the *Centuriate Comitia*, who (according to their promise to the *Commons* when they procured them to lay down Arms, that they would by all means possible procure their benefit) preferred divers Laws to the regret of the *Patritians*. One was, that such Laws as the *Commons* enacted should passe in the *Comitia* of the *Curia*, wherein they were more prevalent than the *Patritians*, as those in the *Centuriate*, by reason of their influence upon the *Equites*, and the richer sort of *Plebeians*, were ever too strong for the multitude, by reason of the distribution of the several *Classes* into *Centuries* formerly shewn. After this the *Tribunes*, whereof *Virginus* was one, thought fit to call the *Decemviri* to an account. *Virginus* being appointed the accuser of *Appius*, insisted most, saith *Livie*, upon that Law, which commanded the defendant to have liberty till such time as his or her slavery was proved, which *Appius* had gone about to violate in his daughter's case. Before the trial, being committed to prison, for that no bail would be taken, he was there found dead, as some thought secretly made away by the *Tribunes*, but as they and others gave out, having hanged himself. After him *Sp. Oppius*, as next to him in guilt, was accused, and being condemned, died the same day in prison by his own hands, saith *Livie*. The other eight banished themselves, and *Claudius* the pretended Master of *Virginus* was driven out after them: with which justice the State was satisfied, and indemnity given to all others. Things thus seeming to be settled, the Consuls took the field against the *Aqui*, *Volsci*, and *Sabines*, against whom their successe was such, as deserved a Triumph, but the Senate gave them a repulse, being grieved at the Laws they had made in behalf of the *Commons*. *Claudius* also the Uncle of *Appius* accused them of the murder of his Nephew, and other violent courses taken against the *Decemviri*, and their party, whereas all ought to have been (according to agreement) buried in oblivion. The Consuls appealed to the People, and complaining much of the Senate, procured by the help of the *Tribunes* a Law to passe for their receiving the privilege of Triumph from the People.

16. The *Commons* by all the privileges already obtained, were but more inflamed with a desire of greater, each morsel out of the prerogative of the *Patritians*, adding unto their appetite. After three years they required to be made partakers of the Consulship, which hitherto the other had enjoyed, being elected in the *Centuriate Comitia*, wherein they themselves had the power. The *Tribunes* provided a bill for making the People free, and at their own choice, whether they would create *Patritians* or *Plebeians* at every election, which thing the *Senators* bearing most hainously, as seeing their privileges utterly ruined thereby, thought all things to be endured, rather than the Law should passe. The Allies of *Rome* now sent for aid against the *Aqui*, and *Sabines*, who invaded them, and news was brought that the *Veientes* and *Ardeates* would revolt; but the *Tribunes* those Popular Tyrants hindred all Levies, suffering none, that refused to be listed, to receive punishment; neither could the Senate prevail with them, to defer the matter till the Warre should be ended. The Consuls in so difficult a time held a private conference of certain *Senators*, whereof *Claudius*, according to the genius of his Ancestors, was all for resistance, urging that nothing was in this matter to be yielded



## SECT. 2.

An expedient  
found out by  
Claudius.

yielded to the Commons, who went about to change the constitution of the State, and thereby were enemies to it. But *T. Quinctius* shewed what inconvenience force and civil War might bring, and the rather, for that their Ancestors had made the *Tribunes* inviolable, by a curse laid upon themselves and posterity, in case their persons were hurt, or the conditions then sworn to in their behalf should be broken. When the rest were all of his opinion, *Claudius* proposed an expedient as seasonable in so great necessity. He advised by no means to suffer the Consulship to come into the hands of *Plebeians*; but to create certain Governours in the room of *Consuls*, six, or eight, whereof an equal number at least should be *Patricians*; for hereby they should seem not to take too much power to themselves, and yet not give up the other Office, wherein lay the secret of their prerogative, to be managed by base and unworthy men. When this project marvellously pleased all, that nothing might seem to be designed beforehand, he advised the *Consuls* not to ask them the graver men their opinions first, as the custom was, when the Senate should meet, but the younger and most popular: and hee appointed *T. Genucius* the *Consul's* brother to propound this way of reconciliation as his private sence.

17. When the Senate was assembled, *Cannuleius* the Tribune, who chiefly prosecuted the matter in hand, without pressing it, inveighed against the *Consuls*, as holding secret meetings, and hatching clandestine designs against the State: and those Senators who had not been called took the thing in some disdain. But the *Consuls* protesting their innocence by an oath, said they would also by deeds declare it, and therewith gave any of the younger sort leave to speak, and when none rose up asked *Valerius* first of all his opinion. He advised the *Fathers* to favour the Commons, who had deserved so well both in acquiring dominion, and in getting and preserving liberty, and urged that the City could not be free if there were not an equality of right; yet for that the War was now urgent, he desired the thing might at present be forborn till that was finished, upon promise that then the Law should be propounded. *Horatius* being asked next, and others, seconded him; and at length *Claudius* being desired to speak, that he might conceal the design, according to his own custom, and that of his Family, flew out into invectives against the Commons, and advised that the Law might never passe, neither then nor ever after. A greater tumult following, *T. Genucius* was asked his opinion, and as of himself propounded the expedient, that six Governours might be chosen, three out of each order, who having Consular power, when the time of their Magistracy should be expired, then the Senate and People meeting together, might resolve whether they would have the same Office or that of *Consuls* for the following year; and what was concluded by most voices, should prevail at the end of every year. This was gladly embraced, both by *Senators* and *Tribunes*, and leave given to any *Plebeians* to stand for the new Office. But so fickle a thing is desire without reason, and so easily changing into the other extreme, especially of the multitude, that those who so earnestly before sought that the chiefest Magistracy might be communicated to their body, threatening else to leave the City as formerly, and take arms, when they had their desire, were glutted with it, and changed into the other extreme. For many *Plebeians* standing for the Office, and using their utmost endeavours to be preferred, they thought none of them worthy of that honour, but bestowed it upon eminent *Patricians* onely, who appeared as *Candidates*.

The fickle &  
inconstant  
humour of  
the multitude.

18. This third change of the Government at *Rome*, hapned in the third year of the 84 Olympiad, as *Dionysius* computeth, *Diphilus* being then *Archon* at *Athens*; but as others, in the first year of that Olympiad, which fell in with the 310 year of the City, and the 21 of *Artaxerxes Longimanus*, *M. Genucius* and *C. Quinctius* according to him, but *L. Papyrius* and *L. Sempronius* according to them, being *Consuls*. These new Magistrates called *Tribuni Militum*, were *A. Sempronius Atratinus*, *L. Atilius Longus*, and *T. Clatius* (or *Cacilius*, as *Livie* hath it) *Siculus*. Thus at first they

A. M. 356.  
Ol. 84. an. 1.  
V. G. 310.  
Artax. Longim.  
21.

were

SECT. 2.  
L. 2. ff. de  
Orig. Juris.

Another  
change after  
73 days to  
Consuls  
again.

Consuls.

The Censors,  
and here *Dionysius*  
his history  
is broken off,  
the following  
part being lost.

It's commen-  
dation.

were but three in number, afterward it arose to six, and at length to eight. *Pomponius* the Lawyer writeth, that sometimes there were twenty, and sometimes more, which seemeth incredible, no other Author agreeing with him herein, so that *Budans* with reason thinketh the place to be corrupted from *Seni* to *Viceni*. This number of Collegues, together with the mixture of *Plebeians* who afterwards pressed in, procured, that although they had both the power and ensignes of *Consuls*, yet their privilege and dignity seemed unlike, whence a *Tribune* in way of contempt called them a *Proconsular* image, and *P. Manlius* the Dictator, shewing that a Master of horse-men was inferior to a *Consul*, compareth his power to that of theirs. Having been for some years created, and for others laid aside, at length in the 388 year of the City, they were quite cast off, at what time *Q. Sextius* a *Plebeian* was admitted to the Consulship. But these first *Tribunes* having held their Office 73 days, then were constrained to lay it down, for that the *Augurs* found some flaw in their election, and the Government returned into it's former course, the Senate naming *T. Quinctius Barbauius*, who in the *Comitia* created *L. Papyrius Mugillanus*, and *L. Sempronius Atratinus*, although it be doubtful, to say truth, whether there were *Tribunes* onely, or *Tribunes* and *Consuls* both for this year.

19. But to be sure, for the year following the People having it in their power whether to elect *Tribunes* or *Consuls*, resolved upon the later, and created in December, the Moon being then full, *M. Geganus Macerinus* the second time, and *T. Quinctius Capitolinus* the fifth. This year were the *Censors* made, Officers who being but contemptible at the beginning, rose to great dignity and power. Their original and power might have been more clearly discovered, but that *Dionysius* his History is here in the beginning of this story broken off, the remaining part being lost, to the great damage of the studios in Antiquity. For not to speak of his smooth style, and the Attick purity thereof, he hath therein delivered the Antiquities of *Rome* from the first Original, with such diligence, that he seemeth in this respect to have excelled all Writers, both *Greek* and *Roman*. For what *Latin* Authors have neglected, as vulgarly known amongst themselves, as *Sacrifices*, *Games*, *Triumphs*, *Ensigns* of *Magistrates*, the universal discipline of the *Roman* Commonwealth, the *Census*, *Auspices*, *Comitia*, that difficult distribution of the whole People into *Curia*, *Classes*, *Centuries*, and *Tribes*: further, the authority of the Senate, and Commons, with the Power of *Magistrates*, he of all others hath delivered most accurately. That these things may be better understood, he compareth them with the customs of *Greece*, as where he speaketh of *Clients*, he occasionally maketh mention of this relation amongst the *Athenians* and *Thessalians*, as *Caesar* also writeth it to have been ordinary amongst the *Galls*. He compareth the *Roman* Dictator with the *Harmostes* of the *Lacedaemonians*, the *Archons* of the *Thessalians*, and the *Æsymetes* of the *Mitylenians*. The Laws of *Romulus*, *Numa*, and *Servius*, had perished but for him, as also the knowledge of the Original of *Rome* in a great measure: and so choice are all his Collections, that they rend, as to the instruction of the Reader in the depth of State mysteries, so also to his acquiring or retaining a religious awe of Providence. Such is his History (saith \* one well able to judge) that if it had been kept intire (for it consisteth of twenty Books, as *Photius* informeth us) there would have been no cuse of bewailing the losse of *Varro's* treasures, with whom he was very familiar, as well as *Pompey the Great* and *Tabero*; and from whom he seemeth to have derived his choicest Antiquities. These things render a sufficient account, why he is made use of in the History of *Roman* matters, rather than any other.

20. *Servius Tullius* the sixth King of *Rome* first instituted the *Census*, as was shewn before, and did the work himself, without any peculiar Officer, as also did the *Consuls* untill this time. But now in the 66th year from the banishment of *Tarquinius*, and the 311 of the City, there having been no *Census* for seventeen years, for that the *Consuls* were necessarily diverted from

\* *Bodinus* Method. Histor. cap. 4.

## SECT. 2.

from that work by more urgent business, the Senate procured out of their own order two peculiar Officers to be created, who were called *Censores*, because according to their *Censio* or estimation the People was cessed, saith *Varro*, or because every one accounted himself worth so much, *quanti illi censuissent*, as they judged, or estimated, according to *Festus*.

The duration  
of the Office  
of Censores.

Their power.

21. At the beginning they were created for five years, because according to *Servius* his constitution the People were to be cessed at ever *Lustrum*, which contained so many. But their dignity and power so increasing, that they seemed of too long a continuance, nine years after, in the 320 of the City, by a Law which *Mamercus Aemilius* the Dictator preferred, the duration of their Office was confined within the term of one year and an half. Though their Office at first was onely to take an estimate of mens Estates, and describing all publick and private riches, to distribute the People according to their wealth into *Classes* and *Centuries*; yet within a while they came to have inspection into manners also. For they upon misdemeanour put out of the Senate, took away publick horses, and cast out of the Tribes. The former kind of punishment was inflicted upon *Senators*, the second upon *Equestes*, and the last upon meer *Plebeians*. Their removing *Senators*, was by passing them by at the new election. For, such *Senators* saith *Festus*, as were passed by in former times, were lyable to no disgrace, because as the Kings chose and substituted whom they pleased, so after them became as the Kings chose and substituted whom they pleased; in; first *Patritians*, and then after *Plebeians*, till by the *Tribunial Law* of *Ovinus*, it was ordained, that the *Censores* out of every order or rank, should (*curatim*) elect the most worthy into the Senate, whence it came to passe, that such as were passed by or removed, were noted with ignominie. This note out of *Festus* hinteth to us the antient power of the Roman Kings in making *Senators*, one of the greatest supporters of the Throne of their Empire.

22. As for the disgrace which they put upon *Equestes*; It was the custome for every *Eques* at the publick *Census* to appear before the *Censores* with their Horses in their hands. If they approved of them, they bade them passe by and lead away the Horse; if they determined otherwise, they took away the Horse, and commanded him to be sold. The third note of disgrace concerned the *Plebeians*, whom they either removed from their own Tribe into another lesse honourable, according to *Livie*, or made them *Ætarii*, and registred them in the tables of the *Carites*, whereby they were deprived of their *Centurie*, and remained Citizens onely in this respect, *ut pro capite suo tributi nomine ara solverent*, as writeth *Asconius Pedianus* upon the Oration of *Cicero* against *Q. Cæcilius*, called *Divinatio*, which disputeth who ought to be admitted the Accuser of *Verres*. *Gellius* telleth us what was meant by the *tabula Caritum*. The *Carites* (inhabitants of *Cære* in *Tuscany*, once called *Agylla*) we understand to have been first of all made *Municipals*, without any right of *sufrage*: and it was granted them that they might receive the honour of being free of *Rome*, without any trouble or burthen, for that they received the *Sacra* (or idols) of the Romans, and preserved them in the *Gallick War*; that is, when *Rome* was taken by the *Galls*, as *Livie* hath the story also in this fourth Book. Hence were those called *Tabula Caritum*, *vice versa*, wherein the *Censores* caused such to be registred as they deprived of the right of *sufrage*. Although these several sorts of punishment respected the several ranks of men, yet sometimes those of higher degree tasted of all or most of them, so that *Senators* might not onely be passed by, and *Equestes* deprived of their Horses, but lose their Tribes also, and be reduced to the condition of *Ætarii*.

23. This Office being committed to the prudent management of able persons, became effectual to the repression of such vice, as fell not under the particular cognisance of penal Laws. Private faults, and domestick miscarriages were by them noted, with such actions sometimes as now would not simply incur the censure of precise illegality or indecency. Some of their

*Livius lib. 3.*

In voce *Prætorii*.

*Vide Plutarchum historiam narrantem in Pompeio. Livium lib. 29. Festum in voce censo.*

*Lib. 16. cap. 13.*

*Livie lib. 4.*

## SECT. 2.

questions upon oath were such as these: (a) *Hast thou a wife according to thy mind?* to which one once making a jesting answer, was made an *Ætarius*. A certain man yawning before the *Censores* had been punished in that sort, but that he swore he did it unwillingly, being troubled with that disease which the Romans called *Oscedo*. *P. Scipio Nasica* and *M. Pomptilius* being *Censores*, and finding a certain Knight very fat and comely, whose horse was exceeding lean and ill favoured, they asked him the reason of that difference, to which he answered: *Because he looked to himself, but Statius to his horse*; for which irreverent answer he was registred amongst the *Ætarii* according to the custom. Now *Statius* was a servile name, given by the antients to most Slaves, whence *Cæcilius* the famous Writer of *Tragedies* was called *Statius*, though it was afterwards as it were turned into a surname, and he called *Cæcilius Statius*. They were wont also to take away horses from very big and corpulent men, as unfit for service, but (*b*) *Gellius* observeth, that this was no punishment, as some thought, but a taking away of the employment without ignominy. This *Census* was managed in the *Campus Martius*, and it being completed, the *Lustrum* was made, with prayers for the publick safety, and a sacrifice of the *Suovianaurilia* formerly mentioned. Besides these employments, the *Censores* (*c*) let to farm the customes, and sent (*d*) out their constitutions throughout the Provinces, called *Leges Censoria*. They erected (*e*) publick buildings, made other publick works, and took care for their repair, as also of the high-ways, in, and about the City more early; and in other places afterward: they also provided for the expence of publick sacrifices. But not onely were there *Censores* at *Rome* (as the *Gracians* also used the *Census*) but the Colonies also had their *Subensores*, who gave account to the other, what numbers of men, and what wealth they found in the several places, which upon information was registred in the publick Tables.

24. The power of the *Censorship* remained untouched (although the power of the *Censores* was weakened by restraining their time to a year and an half, though they were named every fifth year) untill the Tribuneship of *P. Clodius*, who by a Law which he preferred (*a*) forbade any Senator to be passed by, or any of the other Ranks to be noted with ignominy, except lawfully accused, and condemned by sentence of both the *Censores*. He took an advantage (as it seemeth from (*b*) *Pedianus*) at the hatred which had possessed the multitude against the severity of the Office, which procured it to be intermitted for certain years. But afterwards (whether by reason of the corruption that was crept amongst Judges, or for other reasons) *Metellus Scipio* the Consul procured *Clodius* his Law to be abrogated; and so the antient Vigour of this office returned. *Lipsius* writeth, that under the Emperours it was diminished, and lay for dead till the time of *Decius*. But *C. Cæsar* the Dictator, that he might better execute the *Census*, went to every ones house; and because the principal part of the Office consisted in forming of manners, he called himself *Magister Morum*, not *Censor*. Then the form of the State being changed after the victory of *Actium*, *Augustus* having the care of manners committed to him by the Senate, looked to nothing more diligently than the *Census*, for thrice he performed it, not onely in reference to Roman Citizens, but all Subjects of the Empire, with such care and diligence as none ever before him. Under *Tiberius* and *Caligula* the *Census* was not observed, but under *Claudius* the 74th *Lustrum* was celebrated. Being intermitted during the reign of *Nero*, *Vespasian* renewed it, and celebrated the 75th *Census*. *Domitian* named himself amongst his other titles *Perpetual Censor*, but made no *Lustrum*, so that for 160 years the *Census* was intermitted till *Decius* the Emperour created *Valerian* Censor with unlimited power. After this the *Censorship* was utterly omitted to the great detriment of the Roman Empire, which being at length broken into Eastern and Western, the Emperours of the former (*Greekish* Emperours) made use of it, as others also of later times, and it appeareth that in the intermission thereof, in the dayes of *Trajan*, particular Provinces and Towns had their *Censores*, who made choice of

P P P

their

(a) *Leges A. Gellium, l. 4. cap. ult.*

(b) *Lib. 7. c. 22.*

(c) *Liv. lib. 39. Cicero de Legib. l. 3. (d) Idem ad Attic. Ep. 1. & Jcti passim. (e) Liv. lib. 42. Festus in voce Prætorii, ubi meminit Legis censoria. vid.*

(a) *Asconius Pedianus in Orat. Cicerois cont. L. Pisonem. (b) Idem Divinat.*

*Diod. lib. 54. pag. 527.*

*Sueton. in Augusto.*

*Idem in Domitiano.*

*Trebellius.*

*Consule Bodiniani de Reipub. lib. 6. cap. 1.*

SECT. 2. their Senators. Lastly, the *Censors* during the popular Government were of *Consular* dignity, ever after the second *Punic* War, though it was otherwise sometimes before. The same persons were never created twice. And in case one of them died in his Office, his Colleague continued not therein, neither was any put into the place of the dead, because in that year wherein *Rome* was taken by the *Galls* it had so hapned; whereupon it was counted ominous, and a Law made against it for the time to come. Their dignity was exceeding great, they being therein though not in power above the Consuls, and having all other Ensigns the same with them except *Li-*

Liv. l. 5.

25. The *Fathers* rejoiced they had got these Officers Created out of their own body, and the *Tribunes* counting that power inconsiderable, which at first was pretended to, gave way unto it. But the Commons egged on by the continual complaints of the later, proceeded in their grudge against the *Patritians*, taking it in ill part that marriage was forbidden betwixt the two orders, and breathing after no lesse than equal power in the State. This animated *Sp. Melius*, a rich Knight, by his large bounty towards the poorer sort in time of a great dearth, to hunt after popularity, and through it to aspire to the Sovereignty. He was hereof accused by *L. Minucius*, to whom the care of provisions was committed, and the Senate afrighed with the strangeness of the matter, by the advice of *T. Quintius* the Consul, commanded a *Dictator* to be named. *Quintius Cincinnatus* now 80 years old was the man, who chose *C. Servilius Ahala* for his Master of horse-men. The *Dictator* summoning *Melius* to appear, when he would not obey, *Ahala* killed him in the Forum, and was justified for so doing by *Quintius*, who commanded his goods to be sold, and his house razed. It should seem from *Livy* that *Ahala* escaped without punishment: But *Cicero* and *Valerius* on the contrary affirm, that he was banished by the incensed multitude. This hapned in the 315th year of the Citie after *Varro's* account. *Valerius* and *Livy* say, that the Area of his house for a memorial of his punishment had the name of *Æqui-Melium*.

Leg. Liv. l. 4.  
Val. Max.  
lib. 5. cap. 3.  
Exemp. 2. &  
Lib. 6. c. 3.  
Exemp. 1.  
Flor. lib. x.  
cap. ult.  
Cicero, pro  
domo sua &  
pro Meliore.

Sp. Melius his  
attempt for  
the Sovereignty  
blasted.

26. The *Tribunes* enraged about the death of *Melius*, procured for the year following *Tribunes Military* with Consular power to be created now six years after their Institution, hoping that into the number of six some *Plæbeian* might creep, which thing would give them an opportunity to revenge the death of *Melius*: But three onely were created, and their expectation unanswered thereby. This year *Fidena*, a *Roman* Colony, gave up it self to *Tullius* King of the *Veientes*, and by his instigation murdered the Ambassadors sent thither. For this war *Mamercus Æmilius* was named *Dictator*, who overcame the Enemies in battel, wherein *Cornelius Cossus* a *Tribune* in the Army, slew, and spoiled *Tullius*, thereby obtaining *Opima Spolia*. *Varro* thought they were called *Opima ab opibus* for their riches; but *Plutarch* thinketh rather *ab opere*, because the consecration of them was granted to a Captain, who with his own hand slew the General of the Enemy. They were consecrated to *Jupiter Feretrius*, so called, because the Trophy was carried in a *Feretrum*, or certain little carriage, as some thought, at that time there being many *Greek* words in use with the *Latines*, or a *Feriendo*, from *Jupiter* his smiting with Thunder-bolts, or else from the blows given in battel. This honour of carrying in Triumph the *Opima Spolia* hath onely thrice hapned to *Roman* Captains faith *Plutarch* untill our time. First to *Remulus*, who slew *Acron* King of *Canina*; secondly to *Cornelius Cossus*, who killed *Tullius*, (the *Etruscan* in one place he calleth him, and the *Tyrrhenian* in another) and thirdly to *M. Marcellus*, who so killed, and spoiled *Britomartus* (in one place, but *Virdumarus* in another) King of the *Galls*. A controversy there was of old, whether any but a General from a General could take *Opima Spolia*, which maketh *Livy* Apologize for what he writeth in honour of *Cossus*; but *Varro* wrote, as (\*) *Festus* witnesseth, that a *Manipular* Soldier might rightly be said to take them, so it were from a General of the Enemy.

In Romulo &  
Marcello.

\* In Voc. Opi-  
ma Spolia.

27. Two

After four  
courses of  
Consuls Tri-  
bunes Military  
again.

Consuls a-  
gain.

Tribunes Mi-  
itary again.

A passage  
shewing the  
excellency of  
Monarchy.

Consuls.

Tribunes Mi-  
itary.

Consuls.

Tribunes Mi-  
itary.

Consuls.

Disturbances  
made by the  
Tribuni Plebis,  
the Grand  
Popular Ty-  
rants.

27. Two years after this, *Fidena* was taken by another *Dictator*, *A. Servilius*, through the working of a Mine. But when the Consuls had kept the power four years, they were forced again to give way to the *Tribunes Military*, for the Creation whereof, though the *Tribuni Plebis* prevailed, yet the Chief of the Commons missing all this while of being joyned with the Nobility in the honour, were much offended. At the end of two years the Senate took occasion from the War wherewith the *Æqui* and *Volsci* threatened *Rome*, to bring in Consuls, which also gave way to a *Dictator*, *A. Posthumius Tubero*, against their wills, through the power of the *Tribunes*. He finishing the War successfully, laid down his Office. And in this year wherein *T. Quintius Cincinnatus* the son of *Lucius*, and *Cn. Julius Meno* were Consuls, *Livy* by a grosse mistake would have the *Carthaginians* to have passed over into *Sicily* the first time, by an occasion of the disagreement of the Islanders amongst themselves. After five years the Commons prevailed to have *Tribunes Military* created the fifth time, four in number, who shewed how unprofitable the equal command of many in an Army is, and gave occasion to the making of a new *Dictator*. For, *Fidena* having now again revolted, and joyned with the *Veientes*, three of those *Tribunes* were sent against it and them, and the fourth left to Govern the Citie. When they came to engage with the Enemy, One cried *fight*, but another said *Stay*, and each one being of a several mind, matters were at length brought to that passe, that the *Roman* Army fled. The Citie was struck with great amazement at the report, and was in an uproar, which caused *Mamercus Æmilius* the third time to be named *Dictator*, though the *Censors* had removed him from his Tribe, for that in his second Office (to which he was called, because of the stir made by the *Ætruscans* upon the taking of *Fidena*) he confined their Office to the term of one year and an half. *Æmilius* being named *Dictator*, appointed for his Master of horse-men *A. Cornelius Cossus*, who obtained the *Opima Spolia* of *Tullius* King of the *Veientes*.

28. By the prudence & valour of these two *Fidena* was retaken, and sacked after the *Ætruscans* were overthrown; and the *Dictator* returning to *Rome* in Triumph, laid down his Office when he had held it 17 days. For three years the *Tribunes Military* continued, at the end whereof the Senate took occasion at the War which threatened from the *Volsci*, and at their absence, to bring in the Consuls again, notwithstanding the *Tribunes* of the Commons opposed it. But *C. Sempronius*, one of the Consuls, in managing this War very carelessly, the *Tribunes* thence took advantage, and the *Tribunes Military* again resumed the Chief power. This was for one year, at the end whereof the Senate again procured Consuls to be made. When this year was expired, there was so great contention about two *Quæstors*, which the Commons would have created out of their body, that the State fell into an *interregnum*. *L. Papirius Mugillanus* being *Interrex* for a Comprosure procured the *Tribunes Military* to be again admitted, and four *Quæstors* for the following year to be created, either out of *Patritians* or *Plæbeians*, as the People should think fit in their *Comitia*; but this satisfied not the *Tribunes*, nor the better sort of *Plæbeians*, nor one of this order being preferred (though some stood) either as *Tribune Military* or *Quæstor*. In the second year after this, the Slaves conspired to set fire on the Citie, and seize upon the Capitol; but the plot was timely discovered. The *Tribunes Military* held the Government for seven years, and then another *Interregnum* because of the Contention following, *Fabius Vibulanus* the *Inter rex* brought in Consuls again.

29. The *Tribuni Plebis* according to their custom made a bid construction hereof, and having now and then mentioned the division of publick grounds, pressed it earnestly with an extent now to all that at any time had been gotten by War. The *Patritians* no lesse vigorously opposed it, and the *Tribunes* hindred the Levies of Soldiers, so that with much ado, and upon extreame necessity onely could the Consuls procure any to oppose the *Æqui* and *Volsci*, who now made incursions. In the fifth year the Com-

## SECT. 2.

Tribunes Military.

Commons being crossed in their intentions by the Senate, of refusing the *Tribunes Military*, created three of the *Quaestors* of their own rank, and the chief amongst them designing to be created *Tribune Military* for the next year, stikled hard for that kind of government. The Senate at length was constrained to yield; else no opposition could be made against the former Enemies, who now again made inroads into the *Roman Territories*, and by confederacies exceedingly strengthened themselves. For this cause also, though much against the mind of the *Tribunes*, a *Dictator* was named, who overthrowing the Enemy in one battel, wasted his Country and returned. In the third year after this, the two orders were something reconciled, by the plunder of a Town taken from the *Volsci*, and especially by a Decree of the Senate for the publick pay of the Armies (with brasse money) before which time every one bore his own charges in the War. But such was the contentious disposition of the *Tribunes*, those grand incendiaries, that they drew this into odium, as grievous to such who had formerly maintained themselves in the Wars, and now were to pay others. They effected, that for a time the pay was denied, and after three years they procured one Plebeian (*P. Licinius Calvus*) to be chosen amongst the *Tribunes Military*, wherein they mightily applauded themselves, and readily permitted the pay of the Army to be gathered. *Licinius* carried himself so well in the Office, that for the year following all the *Tribunes Military* save one, were Plebeians.

The first Plebeian amongst the Tribunes Military.

30. For these several years the War abroad was carried on with the *Hebrusians*, with various success, and *Veii* the principal of their Cities was besieged, no lesse in compass than *Athens*, and exceeding wealthy, being within twenty miles of *Rome*. Its Inhabitants, called *Veientes*, had in behalf of the *Fidenates*, waged War with *Romulus*, afterwards being conquered, had seven times rebelled, and ever perfidious in time of Peace, always wasted the *Roman Territories*. They compelled the *Fidenates* also to rebel, persuaded them to kill the Ambassadors, and the *Romans* thither sent to inhabit, for, they vied with the *Romans* themselves for power and riches. They had moreover injured the *Roman Ambassadors*, and not once procured *Hebruria* to rise against the State; wherefore the People offended with so many injuries, resolved utterly to destroy *Veii*. Whereas the Soldiers untill this time, were wont in Summer onely to be abroad in War, and winter at home in the City, now were they constrained both Winter and Summer to continue the Siege. The seventh year thereof drawing towards an end, the *Tribunes Military* were blamed of remissness, so that for the following year new ones were created in their rooms. Amongst them was *Enrius Camillus*, who having got much credit in the battel fought with the *Aequi* and *Volsci* under *Posthumus Tubertus* the Dictator, was honoured other ways, as by being created Censor; in which Office he caused the Bachelors to marry the Widdows of such as had lost their lives for their Country, and first of all others obliged Orphans to pay Tribute, for that the depending Wars, especially the Siege of *Veii*, were very chargable to the State. Being now *Tribune Military* the second time, he did nothing against *Veii*, it having fallen to his lot to repress the *Falerians* and *Capenates*, who disturbed the *Romans* in their enterprize. At length in the tenth year of the Siege, they created him Dictator, as the most fit person they had to finish it.

Enrius Camillus.

Made Dictator.

31. *Camillus* appointed *Cornelius Scipio* to be his Master of Horse-men, and first overthrowing in a great battel the *Falisci* and *Capenates*, went against *Veii*. Finding it full of difficulty to take a place of such strength by storm, he wrought a mine up into it, through which his Soldiers issuing, he easily surprized it. Being elevated by so great an achievement, whereby he had thus subdued the corival of *Rome*, in the tenth year of the Siege, he triumphed in a Chariot drawn by four white Horses, which his Country-men thinking proper onely to the King and Father of their gods, were much offended at it: and indeed no man neither before nor after him (saith *Plutarch*) assumed to himself so much honour. Being offended with this carriage, they found themselves as much concerned in another matter. The Tribunes

Surprizeth Veii.

Plutarch in Camillo.

## SECT. 2.

Incurrerth the displeasure of the multitude, for hindring the separation of Patricians and Plebeians, and otherwise.

bunes of the Commons proposed a Law for dividing asunder the Senate and People, whereof the one should stay at *Rome*, and the other remove to *Veii*; this passing as they thought, being a ready means for the enrichment of both, by the possession of two such considerable Cities. The *Plebeians* now many and rich vehemently pressed it, and the *Patricians* judging it would prove the overthrow of the State, as earnestly opposed the Law, breaking themselves to *Camillus*, who put it off by diverting the multitude into other courses. Having contracted an alienation of mind from them upon these accounts, another thing cast him into an absolute hatred, and that if not upon a just, yet a plausible pretence. He had made a vow, that if he took *Veii*, he would dedicate the tenth part of the plunder to *Apollo*, but when the City was taken, either because he was unwilling to displease the Soldiery, or forgot it, the thing was omitted. After he had laid down the Office of Dictator, he moved the People in it, and the Priests reported that the sacrifices portended the anger of their gods, which must be appeased by gifts; so that the Soldiers who had already spent what they had got upon their necessary uses, were forced upon oath to restore the tenth part, wherewith a present was made to *Apollo*. Because there was little Gold in the City, the women contributed their ornaments, in way of requital whereof the Senate decreed, that at their burial they should also be commended by funeral Orations, which before this had not been in use.

32. The Tribunes again moving for a separation, the War with the *Falisci* opportunely fell out to divert the multitude, for which *Camillus* was chosen *Tribune Military* with five others. He besieging the *Falerii*, who inhabited a strongly fortified City, the School-master thereof drew out his boyes into his Camp, and offered to give them up into his hands, which treachery he so far derided, as to cause the Pædagogue to be stripped, and put rods into the hands of his boyes, wherewith they drove him back into the Town. Herewith the *Falerii* were so affected as they yielded, and the Senate referring them for conditions to *Camillus*, he onely fined them a sum of money, and received them with all the *Falisci* into friendship. But the Soldiers who hoped to have enriched themselves with the plunder of this place, inveighed grievously against him, and now the Tribunes pressing again the Law for separation, he used such freedom in opposing it, that they out of revenge accused him of having pilfered the plunder in the *Hebrusian* War, whereof some brazen dories had been, as they said, seen in his house. The multitude now upon several accounts exasperated against him, resolved to shew their spleen. So that not having any way to evade their displeasure, he went into exile, lifting up his hands towards the Capitol, and praying, that if he was unjustly and meerly by the lust and malice of the multitude banished, they might sodainly repent it, and that it might appear to all men, how much the *Romans* stood in need of and desired his presence. Being gone, he was fined 15000 *Ara*, which sum in Silver made up 1500 *Denarii*. For *Ara* or brasse was then used for money, and *Denarius* thence had the name, for that it contained ten *Ase* thereof. But within a while it fell out, that *Camillus* was both missed any desired, according to his wish.

He goeth into exile.

33. Many thousands of the *Galls* called *Celta*, finding their own Country too narrow for them, with their wives and children left it, to seek out new seats. Some of them passing over the Sea, pierced as far as the *Riphean* mountains, and placed themselves in the utmost limits of *Europe*, others took up their habitation betwixt the *Pyrenaans* and the *Alps*, near the *Senones* and *Celtorii*. These a long time after having tasted of some *Italian* wine, were furiously transported with a desire of inhabiting so rare a Soil, as brought forth such fruit, and passing over the *Alps*, got into their power all that Country once belonging to the *Etruscans*, and which reached from the *Alps* to both the Seas: for, that the *Etruscans* once inhabited all this Country, *Plutarch* proveth thence, that the Northern Sea was named *Adriatick*, from *Adria*, one of their Towns, and the Southern, *Tyrrhenian*, from the *Tyrrhen* the same with *Hebrusci*. At this time the posterity of those *Galls* *Senones*

## SECT. 2.

*The Galls besiege Clusium.* Senones under the conduct of their King *Brennus*, besieged *Clusium* a City of *Hetruria*, whose inhabitants sent to *Rome*, desiring of that State to interpose, by sending Ambassadors and Letters to their unjust oppressors. The Senate performing this neighbourly part, the *Galls* required part of the Territories of the *Clusini*, who were, as they said, unable to manage them all, and *Brennus* not condescending to any other conditions, the Ambassadors (all three of the *Fabian* family) in great anger went into *Clusium*, and caused the Inhabitants to make a sally out against the besiegers. It hapned, that in the fight *Fabius Ambustus* one of the three killing a *Gall*, whilst he disarmed him, was discovered; whereupon *Brennus* conceiving just indignation, broke up his Siege, and marched towards *Rome*.

Defeat the  
Romans at *Alia*.

Come to *Rome*  
which is for-  
taken all but  
the Capitol.

34. Yet because he would not seem to proceed unjustly, he sent thither, requiring that the Ambassadors might be given up to him, as having broke the Law of Nations. But favour so far prevailed above equity, that the matter being referred from the Senate to the People, no satisfaction could be had from either: nay the Ambassadors on the contrary, were with three others created *Tribunes Military*, for carying on the Warre. *Brennus* then continuing his march, and breathing revenge, was met by the *Tribunes* at the River *Alia*, eleven miles from the City, who scarce striking one stroke, quickly betook them to their heels, and their Army after them. The *Galls* pursued them, being amazed at the flight and cowardize of those who had already obtained for their valour a great name in the World; but were astonished when they found the gates of *Rome* open, and none upon the walls to make resistance; for it had been resolved to quit the City and secure the Castel. The greater part of the People departed into the adjoining Country; the rest possessed themselves of the Capitol, all but certain old men of Senatorian degree, who in their robes placed themselves in the Forum, resolving to take such quarter, as the disposition of the Enemy would afford them. *Brennus* at first fearing some stratagem, after he perceived all to be clear, entered the City. His Soldiers were amazed, to see the grave Senators sitting without fear in the Forum, and hurt them not, till one handling the long beard of *M. Papirius*, the old man struck him with his staff upon the head, whereupon the *Gall* slew him, and then all the rest were killed, with all of both Sexes and all ages that were found about the City, which was also now burnt to the ground, and the Capitol closely besieged.

*Camillus made*  
Dictator.

35. While the *Galls* lay before the Capitol, they carelessly demeaned themselves, as secure of any Enemy, and were scattered into the Country adjoining. *Camillus* at this time living in exile at *Ardea*, procured the Inhabitants of that City to issue out upon them, and killed many; which the *Romans*, who lay at *Veii*, understanding, chose him for their General, desiring him to forget injuries, and succour his distressed Country. He objected his condition of banishment, and refused to act, except by commission from those in the Capitol, whom he considered to be the body of the Roman State yet surviving. There was one *Pontius Cominius*, who undertook to procure him leave from their friends in the Capitol, whither by a strange adventure he got, passing by the Enemy, and swimming the River till he came to the Rock, which then he made a shift to climb, and having procured the Senate to pronounce *Camillus* Dictator, returned in the same manner. By this time as well the besiegers as besieged were well wearied, both parties for want of provisions, and the *Galls* by reason of a Plague which raged amongst them; so as (having once attempted to surprize the Castel, by climbing up the Rock, they were discovered by the crying of the Geese, consecrated to *Juno*, and repelled by the valour of one *Manlius* especially) they agreed for fifty pounds of Gold to rise and depart. Yet so covetous were they, that they took out the Gold as it was weighing, and added to the weight, which being complained of, *Brennus* cast in his Sword also, crying *Ve victis*, which afterwards became a proverb. But in the mean time came *Camillus*, and nulling this compact, as made without his consent, who before was Dictator, and therefore alone had power of making Peace, overthrew them in fight,

A. M. 3615.  
Ol. 97. an. 3.  
V. C. 364.  
Avtax. Mmm. 15.

## SECT. 2.

Overthrow-  
eth them &  
rescueeth  
*Rome*.

Hindereth the  
multitude  
from depart-  
ing to *Veii*.

and did such execution upon them in pursuit, as what remained of them, was overpowered and cut off by the Country. Thus *Rome*, which was unexpectedly taken by the *Galls* about the Ides of the month *Quintilis*, was more unexpectedly recovered about the Ides of *February*, so that as *Plutarch* writeth, the *Barbarians* held it seven months, in the 365 year of the City, and the sixteenth of *Arsaxerxes Mnemon*.

36. The *Tribunes* now renewed their importunity about removing unto *Veii*, which caused the Senate to procure *Camillus* his holding of the Office of Dictator, though contrary to the custome, for the whole year. He with gentle language appeased the multitude, shewing them, how unworthy a thing it was to forsake the seat of their Ancestors, and of their Country rites (which were appropriate to the same place) for to inhabit a conquered and enslaved City. Then was *Rome* rebuilt in great haste, whereby afterwards it became rather an heap of houses than a well ordered Town, and that the warrecourses formerly laid in the streets, now ran for the most part under private houses. *Camillus* having laid down his Office was forced the year following to reassume it, because of the *Volsci*, who now took *Arnes*, as also the *Aequi* and *Etruscans*, all which he overthrew, and forced the *Volsci* to yield themselves after the War had continued with them for 70 years. In the third year after this he overcame them again, and with them the *Hernici* and *Latines*, whereof the later had ever from the battel at the *Rhegillan* Lake been trusty and faithful until now: and from the *Etruscans* he recovered two Towns which they had taken from the Allies of *Rome*. This he did being *Tribune Military*, though envied by *M. Manlius*, who having done special service in the Capitol, by repelling the *Galls*, obtained the Sirname of *Capitolinus*. Being naturally haughty and ambitious, he was herewith puffed up, so as to extenuate the deserts of *Camillus*, and by ingratiating himself with the common sort, through paying their debts, and raising against the great ones, plainly to aim at the Sovereignty. This, together with the War depending with the *Volsci*, which was also aggravated by the defection of the *Hernici* and *Latines*, caused the Senate to resolve that a Dictator should be created.

*Manlius*  
thrown from  
the *Tarpeian*  
Rock.

37. This was *A. Cornelius Cossus*, as *Livie* writeth, though *Plutarch* nameth *Quintilius Capitolinus*, whom the other reporteth to have been Master of the Horse-men to *Cossus*. He triumphing over the Enemies from without, called also by the help of the *Tribunes* *Manlius* to account, and shut him in prison. The multitude much afflicted hereat, took mourning garments, and made such disturbance, that after some time he was set at liberty. But holding private meetings in the night, and growing more bold in his design, the Senate committed it to the care of the *Tribunes Military*, whereof *Camillus* was one, (as afterward in cases of great exigency to the Consuls) to take care that the Commonwealth should receive no damage. Being then brought to his trial again in that place, whence a view of the Capitol might be had, he would ever point to it, and put the People in mind of what he had done there for them; whereupon *Camillus* caused his Judges to remove without the gate, into the grove called *Lucus Petelinus*, where being no sight of the Capitol, he was condemned. He was thrown headlong from the *Tarpeian* Rock, the place both of his honour and infamie: and it was decreed, that none of the *Manlii* should afterward be called *Marcus*.

38. After these things the *Latines* rebelling, and the *Volsci*, were severally overthrown without, and great tumults hapned within, by reason of the debts of the *Commons*, now again exceedingly increased. Their *Tribunes* incensed them against the *Patritians*, and the contest was sharpened by *Fabius Ambustus* one of this order, who having married one daughter to a *Patritian* and another to a *Commoner*, this took such distaste at her husbands condition, being void of honour, that *Fabius* told her he would so order the matter, that the same dignity should be communicated to her house, as was to that of her Sister. From this time he consulted with *Licinius Solo* her husband, and *L. Sestius*, about the preferring of a Law, for making one Consul out of the

*Livius lib. 6.*

*Plutarch in*  
*Camillo.*



## SECT. 2.

Wonderfull  
Sedition and  
confusion a-  
bout the Con-  
sulship.

Camillus the  
fifth time Di-  
tator again  
overthroweth  
the Galls at  
the River A-  
niens.

Unheard of  
Seditions.

Procure to the  
Commons the  
Consulship,  
and the Offi-  
ces of Praetor  
and Aediles  
Curius to the  
Patricians.

What the Cu-  
rle Chair was

the Commons. These two being made *Tribunes* of the People, laboured so vigorously about it, that after long and great contention it came to that passe, that for five years they suffered no Supreme Magistrates to be created. Nine years this dispute continued, those two continuing *Tribunes* still, and the matter had come to another separation or worse, but that *Camillus* reconciled the parties. He was made *Dictator* the fourth, saith *Plutarch*, for this purpose, but finding the multitude too stubborn, which threatened to Fine him except he complied, he again laid down his Office. The Senate then caused another *Dictator* to be named, under whom *Licinius Stolo* preferred a Law, which forbade any man to possesse above 500 Akers of ground, and afterwards being found himself to have above, was punished by virtue of his own constitution. Whilest the Contention was on foot about the Consulship, news came that the *Galls*, many thousands in number, were marching from the *Adriatick-Sea* towards *Rome*, which composed the difference for the present, and made them cast their eyes upon *Camillus* as *Dictator* the fifth time. He being near 80 years of age refused not the employment in this time of so great danger, and perceiving the *Galls* to fight with swords, striking at the heads and shoulders of their Enemies without any art or dexterity, he furnished his men with light iron Helms, and bound their Targets about with brasse, teaching them how to fence, and receive the strokes. By this device he rendered the swords of the *Galls* so unserviceable, that giving them battel at the River *Aniens*, he easily overthrew them, in the 23<sup>th</sup> year after he had recovered *Rome* from their Countrey-men.

39. After this fight the *Romans* despised the *Galls* whom before they exceedingly feared, insomuch that whereas by a Law immunity from War was granted to Priests, an exception and Proviso was added as to that with the *Galls*. *Camillus* in his retreat had *Velitra* given up into his hands; but having now finished all his warlike exploits, a very considerable one remained to be performed by him at home. For at his return he was received with fierce and impatient Contentts betwixt the Senate and Commons about the Consulship, and retaining his power, that thereby he might serve the interest of the Nobility, an Officer was sent from the *Tribunes* to pull him down from his seat in the Forum, and bring him before them. His attendants repelling the man, such a noise and tumult followed as never before had been known, the multitude crying out, pull him down. He laid not down his Office, but departing to the Senate-house, had a serious debate with the Fathers about the matter, and after a great and various Contention, that party prevailed which granted to the Commons that one of the Consuls might be created out of their body. For this they desired, and obtained of the Commons, to have a *Praetor* created yearly out of the Patrician order for administration of Justice in the Citie. By this agreement a good understanding being revived betwixt the parties, for as long a time as the infirmity of the Government could bear, a Temple was dedicated to *Concord*, which *Camillus* had vowed, moreover a fourth day was added to the *Latine Feria*, and the greater sort of Games were solemnized, which when the *Aediles* of the Commons refused to manage, the young Patricians offered themselves, and the Senate procured also of the People that two Patricians every year might be made *Aediles*, who from the Chair called *Sella Curulis*, had the name of *Aediles Curules*. What their Office was hath been shewn before. As for this Chair, *Gellius* writeth, that antiently such Senators as had born a *Curule* Office, were for honour's sake wont to be drawn to the house in a Chariot, wherein was a Chair in which they sat, and which thence (from the Chariot or *Currus*) was called *Curulis*. But others think that both the Orthography of the word, and the dismenfion of the thing crossed this derivation, and that it was called *Curulis* from *Cures*, a Town of the *Sabines*. The form of it upon old Coins represents that of *Spanish Chairs*, used by Princes as Chairs of State: It had also crooked feet, as *Plutarch* in the life of *Marius* describeth it; several ascents there were to it: it was covered with Ivory, as several Authors shew, and carved or ingraven, according to *Ovid*.

40. But

What the  
Praetorship.

## SECT. 2.

40. But as for the *Praetor*, there were two causes of the Creation of this Officer: *Emulation* and *Use*. The former was wrought in the Patricians by the Commons, who now had wrested into their own hands the Consulship. The later was brought about by reason that the Consuls were for the most part employed abroad in Wars, and therefore there was a necessity of a Magistrate, whose peculiar work it should be to administer Justice in the Citie. The *Praetor* was so called a *praetor*, as write both (a) *Varro* and (b) *Cicero*, and agreeably with this Etymology it was once the name of (c) Consuls also, as we shewed before, and of all, or most other Magistrates, Civil or Military. It is probable, that this name, as the other of *Dictator*, *Aediles*, and *Duumvirs*, might come out of *Heiruria*, there being such Officers there of old, as *Spartianus* seemeth to hint, and otherwise may be gathered. There being but one created at his time, viz. in the 388 year of the Citie, afterward about the 500 year another was added, who administered Justice unto strangers, so that for distinction the one was called *Praetor Urbanus*, and the other *Peregrinus*, the former being in Dignity above the other, and his Constitutions called *Jus Honorarium*, as we shewed before out of *Pomponius*. This same Author (having shewn, that after the bringing in of this *Praetor Peregrinus*; the *Decemviri* for judging of Causes, the *Triumviri* for counting of Brasse, Silver, and Gold, the *Triumviri Capiteles* for keeping of Priests, and the *Quinquerviri* for both sides of *Tiber* for executing what belonged to Magistrates in the evenings (at which time they were not to be abroad) were created by degrees) writeth further, that *Sardinia* being made a *Roman Province*, after that *Sicily*, then *Spain*, and after *Norbonensis*; so many *Praetors* were made as there were Provinces, who partly governed at home, and partly abroad. *Lipsius* more particularly affirmeth, that, in the 520 year of the Citie, *Sardinia* and *Sicily* being both made Provinces, there were two added, who as the former two assisted the Consuls in administering of Justice, so these in the government of the Provinces. When *Spain* (*Hispania* in the plural number) was subdued, in the year 557. two more were added. So there were in all six *Praetors*, whereof two onely remained in the Citie, and the other, as soon as declared, departed into the Provinces, as they fell to them by lot: this order continued till the examinations called *Quaestiones Perpetuae* were appointed, at which time the Senate resolved that all the *Praetors* for the year of their Office should continue in the Citie, and judge some controversies, either publick or private.

41. *Pomponius* proceedeth, saying, that *Cornelius Sulla* appointed other publick Examinations or Inquisitions: As, for example, *De falso*, *De Parricidio*, and *De Siciariis*, for which he added four *Praetors* more; but *Lipsius* saith he is mistaken in the number, proving out of *Cicero* that he made but two. *C. Julius Caesar* appointed other two, as also two *Aediles* called *Cereales*, and afterward 16 *Praetors*, as appeareth from *Dio*, who also relateth the *Triumviri* with greater liberty to have made 64. *Augustus* filled up the number to 16. saith *Pomponius*, though first *Lipsius* will have him to have confined the number to 12. *Claudius* added two, who where to judge onely concerning *Fidei Commissa*, as the Law term is. *Tiberius* took one from the number: but *Nerva* restored and appointed him to hear and determine Causes betwixt the Exchequer and private persons. Another was appointed by *M. Antonius Philosophus*, called *Praetor Tuetarius*. So, in all there were 18. till, as the Empire decreased, they decreased also in number, and at length were reduced to that of three by a Law of *Valentinian* and *Marcian*. As for the Office of *Praetors*, the *Praetor Urbanus*, who was also called *Praefectus Urbi* (though the *Praefectus* was afterward onely chosen for the *Latine Feria*) in the absence of the Consuls executed their Office in the Senate and *Comitia*. But three things especially belonged to them: *Games*, *Sacrifices*, and *Judicature*. The former onely continued to them in a manner when the Empire decayed. Their Judicature was either in publick or private matters. Private causes concerning *numm* and *numm*, two onely handled, viz. the *Urbanus* and *Peregrinus*; Publick or Criminal matters were managed by all the rest,

Q q q

Lib. 3. cap. 18.

## SECT. 2.

## SECT. 2.

rest, who yet had their several and distinct Crimes, one or two, which they judged; and yet sometimes in their Provinces they managed Civil matters also. They had the same Ornaments and Ensigns of power as the Consuls; onely but six Lictors apiece, whereas the other had twelve. In respect of their power and honour, as also because they were created by the same *Auspicia*, *Livy* calleth them the *Collegues of Consuls*.

42. The first Consul out of the body of the Commons was *L. Sextius*, by whose Law the privilege was obtained; the first *Prætor Sp. Furius*, the son of *Camillus*, and the first *Ediles Cærules* were *Ch. Quintius Capitolinus*, and *P. Cornelius Scipio*. To *Sextius* was given as Collegue from amongst the Patritians *L. Emilius Mamercus*, and so the Consuls again returned after 23 years, these being the 88 pair as they are found in *Livy*, and the *Tribunes Military* were for ever laid aside after 48 courses of that Office, and besides changes from the Consulship to it, and from it to the Consulship. Fifteen these changes of Government in *Rome*, there were the two Grand ones from Kings to Consuls, and from Consuls to the *Decemviri*; and to this time from the first of these alterations had intervened 26 Dictatorships, besides the several *Interregnums*. The first *Interregnum* was extraordinary, being betwixt the reigns of *Romulus* and *Numa*, when the Senate governed for the space of a year: the other were ordinary, and continued but for five dayes under particular men, at the end whereof another was Elected, and called *Interrex*, having for that time the power of Consuls. All these charges of Government, except the *Interregnums* betwixt the reigns of the Kings (whereof none but one is considerable) hapned to the Commonwealth of *Rome* within the space of 134 years, scarce so many having completely passed from the banishment of *Tarquinius*, to this alteration in the Consulship. It is not in vain to have made these observations, that the Reader may plainly see the ridiculous ficklenesse, weaknesse, and danger of the *Roman* Government after that it came to be Antimonarchical.

43. In the beginning of the year, news came of the *Galls* their meeting together, who had before been dispersed through *Apulia*, and of the intended revolt of the *Hernici*; but all preparations were deferred by the Senate, because it troubled them that any thing should be done by a *Plebeian* Consul, and there was a great silence with a general intermission of businesse as in some great Vacation. Onely the *Tribunes* were not silent, because that for one *Plebeian* Consul the Nobility had got three Patritian Magistrates, who sat as Consuls in their *Cærule* Chairs, and their *Prætexta*: especially were they concerned about the *Prætor*, who administered Justice, was a Collegue of the Consuls, and created by the same *Auspicia*. Modestly therefore suffered not the Fathers to create both the *Ediles Cærules* out of their own body; so that it was agreed first that every other year they should be chosen out of the Commons; but afterwards they were Elected promiscuously. The year following fell a grievous plague upon the Citty, which took away, besides great multitudes of the common sort, One *Censor*, one *Edile Cærule*, and three *Tribunes*: And who was more than all, *Camillus* himself now died, having born the Office of Consul more than once, been five times Dictator, having Triumph four, and done such things as he deservedly was written the second founder of *Rome*. The plague raging both in this and the following year, gave place to no means that were used, so that all mens minds being superstitiously bent, the Stage-plays were brought up to appease their impure gods. The Actors were sent for out of *Hærvia*, in the language of which Countrey *Hister* signifying a Player, thence was derived the *Roman* word *Histrion*: these plays were very barbarous and antick at the first. Two years after this the ground cleaving asunder in the Forum, *M. Curtius* is said to have rode into the hole, and so being swallowed up, purchased conquest for his Countrey, according to the Declaration of their gods. After this there was action abroad with the *Hernici* and the *Galls*. One of these provoking any one *Roman* to a single Combat, *T. Manlius* accepted of the challenge, and killing his Enemy took

Torquatus.

Corvinus.

A Plebeian Dictator made which causeth great discontent.

The War with the Samnites.

took a *Torques* or chain from his neck, whence he and his posterity obtained the Surname of *Torquatus*. In this fight the *Galls* had the worst, so also three years after, and eight years after that, when *M. Valerius* a young man, and Tribune of the Soldiers, fighting with another *Gall*, as *Manlius* did, had the same successe. As he was fighting a Crow came, and sitting upon his head, with beak and wings assisted him in his combat, whence he had the Surname of *Corvinus*. At this time also were several Victories obtained against the *Latines* and *Hærvians*.

44. But, (that we may joyn domestick affairs with those of the Camp) after the Commons had enjoyed the Consulship nine years, the Patritians took it from them again, out of disdain that the year before *C. Martius Rutilius* a *Plebeian* had been Dictator. Hereat the multitude was so enraged, that at the end of three years more, the Senate was forced to restore the Office, and because Usury was again grown exceeding burthenom to the poorer sort, they appointed five men to order the payment of debts out of the Treasury. For the following year also one of the *Censors* was chosen out of the *Plebeians*. Hitherto were the Wars of the *Romans* as it were at their gates: now they were removed further off, and henceforth continued longer: For in the 412 year from the founding of the Citty, and the 46 from it's restauration, began the War with the *Samnites*, a People of *Italy*, descended from the *Sabines*, from whom also they had their name, or from *Sannia* or *Sannia*, which in the *Greek* tongue signifie *Spears*; or from the hill *Samnium*, where, as they came from the *Sabines*, they seated themselves, according to *Festus*. They had the *Sabines*, *Peligni*, and *Equi* on the West, the *Picentini* and *Apuli* on the East, on the South the *Campanians* and *Sidicini*, and on the North the *Marucini*, *Dauni*, and *Apuli*, as is observable out of History, saith *Joh. Stadius*. It was the custome of the *Romans* by helping others to espouse quarrels. The *Samnites* having unjustly molested the *Sidicini* with War, they betook themselves to the *Campanians* for succour. These being luxurious and effeminate, were easily worked, and sent to *Rome* for aid, their Ambassadors imploring it with tears, and giving up themselves and Country into the hands of the Senate and People. The Senate was at first unwilling to use any force, for that the *Samnites* were their friends in confederacy; but upon the importunate cries and prayers of the Ambassadors, and the scornful denial of the *Samnites* to abstain from the Territories of *Capua* and *Campania*, their request was granted, and the Consuls sent forth, the one to *Capua*, and the other into *Samnium*, where the *Samnites* were overthrow in both places, and many thousands of them slain: For, in *Campania*, *Valerius* after a bloody battel became Master of their Camp. In *Samnium* *Cornelius* having unvarily led his Army thither where they lay in vvaire for him, *P. Decius* a Tribune in the Army, possessed himself of an hill above the Enemy, vvhich much vvhondring thereat, applied themselves thither, and so gave liberty to the Consul to dravv forth his men into a more convenient place. Then brake he through, though besieged, whereat the Enemy was so much astonished, that the Consul falling on obtained so great a Victory, that 30000 of the *Samnites* were slain.

45. This defeat, together with inroades made upon them the next year, drew them to make a peace, the *Sidicini* being left to their mercy. They desired that the *Latines* and *Campanians* might be commanded not to assist the *Sidicini*; but because the Senate would not deny that these Nations were under their command, and were also afraid to provoke them, so ambiguous an answer was made, as the *Samnites* being left but dubious, the *Latines* and the other thought themselves so far disobliged as to rebel. *T. Manlius Torquatus* now Consul the third time, with *Decius Mus* his Collegue, was sent to chastize the *Latines*. Upon dreams which they both had, that one General on the one part, and the Army on the other, belonged to the *Dii Manes* and *Tellus mater*, they agreed, that in what part the *Roman* Army should be distressed, he under whose command it was should devote himself, and that strict discipline should be observed, so that all were forbidden to fight without or-

Q q q 2 ders.

The many alterations in the Roman Government.

Camillus with many others dieth of the plague.

M. Curtius.

Strabo l. 5. p. 228. c.

\* In Florio l. 1. c. 16.

## SECT. 2.

Decius Mus  
devoreth him-  
self.

ders. The Army being forely put to it in *Decim* his wing, he devored him-  
self, and rushing into the midtt of his Enemies, after great slaughter made,  
lost his life. *L. Manlius* the other Consul's Son, passing with his Troop, be-  
fore the battel, near the Camp of the Enemy, was challenged by *Geminus*  
*Mertus* Captain of the *Tusculans*, whom when he had slain and stripped, his  
Father for a reward caused him to be put to death; whence cruel Commands  
were wont to be called *Manliana Ditta*. Of the manner of the Com-  
bat \* *Anlus Gellius*, or *Agellius* is to be consulted. The *Latines* being o-  
verthrown were wholly subdued, and begged Peace; which being given to  
them, though not with the same condicions to all, *Manlius* returned, and was  
met by ancient men onely, the young ones refusing to do him that honour,  
who ever after both hated and cursed him in reference to his son.

A. M. 3666.  
Ol. 110. an. 2.  
V. C. 415.  
Ochi 23.  
Philippe 27.  
Lib. 9. cap. 13.

The *Latines*  
overthrown.

46. After his return, the *Antiates* and *Ardeates* made incursions into the  
*Roman Territories*. Being by sicknesse rendred unfit for War, he named  
*L. Papyrius Crassus* for Dictator, who appointed *L. Papyrius Cursor* his  
Master of Horse-men; but nothing memorable was done. The Consuls for  
the following year, *T. Aemilius Mamercus* and *Q. Publius Philo*, overthrew  
the *Latines*, who had rebelled because of the grounds taken from them. *Pub-*  
*lius*, by whose conduct and auspiciu the Victory was obtained, receiving in-  
to amity such Cities as had been worsted, *Aemilius* led the Army against  
*Pedus*, which received supplies from several places. Though he had the bet-  
ter in all skirmishes, yet the Town holding out, and he hearing that his Col-  
league was returned home to his deceed Triumph, he also left the Siege, and  
departed to demand that honour. The Senate was offended, and denied to  
permit him the honour, except *Pedus* was either taken, or surrendered, which  
caused him out of revenge all the year following to joyn with the Tribunes a-  
gainst the Fathers, his Colleague not opposing it, because a Plebeian. The  
Senate having a desire to be rid of them, commanded a Dictator to be named,  
but it belonging to *Aemilius* to name him, he whose were the *Fasces* for this  
moneth, named his Colleague, who appointed *Junius Brutus* his Master of  
Horse-men. And his Dictatorship was very grievous to the Nobility, being full  
of investives against them, and the procurer of three Laws, whereof the  
first altered the very constitution of the State. This was, that the *Plebiscita*  
should bind all the *Quirites*, or the whole People, comprising all ranks, and  
degrees. The second, that such Laws as passed in the *Centuriata Comitia*,  
should be proposed by the Fathers before the Suffrage. The third, that one  
of the *Censors* at least should be a *Plebeian*, whereas now it was come to that  
passe, that both might be such. Thus did the Government of *Rome* devolve  
fast to a Democratical temper, the interest of the *Patricians* being now quite  
broken by the force of the former Law (which proved as a *Lex talionis*) to  
them, and as a punishment for their rebellion against their Kings) in the  
416 year of the City, after *Varro's* account, which fell in with the first of  
*Arses* King of *Persia*, and the 23 of *Philip* King of *Macedonia*.

The very con-  
stitution of  
the State  
changed.

All *Latium*  
subdued.

47. In the following year, wherein *L. Furius Camillus* and *C. Manius*  
were Consuls, *Pedus* was taken by storm, and the Consuls in pursute of the  
Victory subdued all *Latium*, for which they triumphed, and had Statues on  
horseback set up in the Forum; an honour but rare in those dayes. The se-  
veral People of *Latium*, had several conditions of Peace set them. To *An-*  
*sium* was sent a new Colony, and the old inhabitants were forbidden the Sea,  
had all their long-ships taken from them, had leave to enter themselves in the  
Colony, and were made free of the City. The ships were partly brought in-  
to the *Roman Arcenal*, partly burnt, and with their *Rostra* or beaks was  
the Gallery or Pulpit for Orations adorned, which was built in the Forum;  
whence that Temple was afterwards called *Rostrea*. The year following *Mi-*  
*nucia* a Vestal Nun was buried quick in the *Campus Sclernatus*, which I be-  
lieve, saith *Livie*, had it's name from Incest; for so the fault of incontinen-  
cy in those women was termed. And in this same year *Q. Publius Philo* was  
made the first *Prator* out of the Commons; the Senate not regarding now  
what hapned in this kind, because they had been overpowered in things of  
greatest

The *Rostrea* at  
Rome whence  
so called.

## SECT. 3

greatest consequence. Now also a War arose betwixt the *Aurunci* and *Si-*  
*dicini*, whereof the former were constrained by the other to forsake their an-  
cient seat, and depart to *Suessa*, which was afterwards called *Aurunca*.  
The *Aurunci* had given up themselves to the *Romans*, who thereupon order-  
ed them relief, but the Consuls deferring it, this fell out in the mean time.  
But the next year the *Sidicini* and the *Ausones* who inhabited *Cales* were  
overthrown, and *Valerius Corvinus* now the fourth time Consul for the fol-  
lowing year, and the greatest *Roman* Captain of this time, took *Cales* also,  
where a Colony was placed. In the second year after the taking of *Cales*,  
the Census was solemnized, and two Tribes added, *Meria* and *Scaptia*, for  
the newly admitted Citizens: the *Acerrani* were also made free of the Ci-  
ty, without the privilege of Suffrage, by a Law preferred by *L. Papirius* the  
Prator.

War with the  
*Privermates*.

48. In the year following, above 170 women were put to death for the  
art of poysoning, being discovered by a she Slave, whereas heretofore there  
had been no inquisition made after this crime, which therefore was counted  
such a prodigie, that a Dictator was made for fixing of a nail, which they had  
read in their Annals to have been a remedy for the distempers of the State,  
when the Commons separated from the Patricians. For the two succeeding  
years a War was managed against the *Privermates*, who were drawn into it by  
*Viruvius Vallus*, a man of principal note amongst the *Fundani*. In the first  
year they were overthrown, in the next he was either taken or delivered up,  
and *Privernum* either stormed or surrendered, both being affirmed by Writers,  
of whom *Livie* is to be consulted: the principal actors were together with *Vi-*  
*ruvius* put to death, and the rest of the Inhabitants made free of the City.  
The first year of this Warre fell in with the last of *Darius Codomannus*, the  
last King of *Persia*, being the 424 of the City, when *L. Papyrius Crassus*  
the second time, and *L. Plautius Venox* (or *Venuo*) were Consuls.

A. M. 3675.  
Ol. 122. an. 3.  
V. C. 424.  
Darii 7.

AN



AN  
INSTITUTION  
OF  
General History.

*The First Part.*

BOOK III.

Of the Empire of the *Macedonians*, and  
Affairs of the World Contempor-  
ary with it.

CHAP. I.

*From the beginning of the Monarchy of Alexander to his death;  
containing the space of six years and ten months.*

Alexander be-  
wailed Da-  
rius.



Alexander riding hard after Darius, came a little after he had expired, saw the body, and bewailed his death with tears: he cast his own Garment over him, and sent him to his Mother to be royally interred amongst his Ancestors. His brother Oxybates he received into the number of his own friends, and maintained him in his former Dignity. Then did he begin to pursue Bessus; but finding that he was fled far before into *Bactria*; he left off his pursuit, and returned to *Hecatompolis* in *Parthia*, where his Soldiers being tickled with a rumour that the *Macedonians* should

*Curtius lib. 5.  
cap. 14.  
Diodorus ad  
Olymp. 112.  
ana. 3. & 4.*

should have leave to return home, roused him up from his idleness and luxury, to which now he began to give way after the Persian fashion: but they were at length quiered, and persuaded by him to perfect the work thus far carried on in Asia. Leaving then Craterus in this Country with some Forces, he marched into Hyrcania which Nabarzanes had seized on, who yielded it up, and himself to him. After this he invaded the Mardi, a neighbouring people, who, not being wont to be thus provoked by any, made resistance with 8000 men, and intercepted Bucephalus his most beloved horse, which, being given him by Demetrius the Corinthian, when unfadled would suffer none to come on his back, and when adorned, none but the King himself, whom to receive he bowed down. Alexander exceedingly moved with the loss of him; after he had slain, and taken most of these men, cut down all the Trees, and threatened the Nation with utter destruction in case they did not restore the horse, so that for fear they did it, and with him sent their Presents, and asked pardon, by 50 Messengers.

2. Returning back, he received 1500 men which had been sent out of Greece to Darius with 90 Ambassadors. Over this party he made Captain Andronicus, who brought them to him, and then went on to Zadracarga, the principal City of Hyrcania, where he staid fifteen days. Hither Thalestris Queen of the Amazons, as said, with 300 women, to have come to have issue by him, which story, though it be delivered for a truth by some, yet is there better ground to suspect it, seeing that neither Ptolemy the son of Lagos, who was then with him, and wrote his Acts, neither any other good Author of those times approved of it: and Alexander himself in his Letters to Anipater, wherein he gave him an account of his affairs, mentioned how the Scythian King offered to him his daughter in marriage, but not a word of this matter. After this, he returned into Parthia, and purposing now to go against Bessus (who in Bactria had taken upon him a royal Robe, and the name and title of Artaxerxes King of Persia) he thence removed into the Country of the Arii. Satibarzanes the Governour thereof meeting him at the City Susia, he confirmed him in his place, but after his departure he revolted from him, whereby the King was constrained to march back against him, which he hearing fled with 2000 men towards Bessus; so as Alexander following him some time, but in vain, reduced the Country to obedience, and returned to his former expedition. Then came he into the Country of the Zarangai, which was governed by one Barfanes, who having had an hand in the murder of Darius, now fled into India, whence he was afterwards sent, and put to death. Here in this Land of the Zarangai (or Drangia) was a conspiracy against Alexander discovered; first by Dymnus to Nicomachus, who, though he swore secrecy, communicated it to Zeballinus his brother. Zeballinus (or Ceballinus) acquainted with it Philotas the son of Parmenio, who, delaying to tell it to the King, either through heedlessness, or on purpose, thereby procured the destruction of himself and family.

3. For, Ceballinus suspecting him to be in the plot, because of his delay, discovered the matter to Metro a young Nobleman, and Master of the Armory, who acquainting the King therewith, he presently caused them all to be apprehended. Dymnus knowing wherefore he was called, killed himself. Ceballinus cast all the blame upon Philotas, who denied not that he had been told of such a business, but said he revealed it not to the King openly through neglect, and because he esteemed it of no consequence. Being brought to the Rack, he either confessed the thing as it was, or feigned a story, and wrongfully accused himself to escape the extremity of torment; after which he was put to death. Now was Parmenio his father, a man of 70 years of age, Governour of Media, one who had done especial service for the King, and his father Philip. Alexander, either for that he feared he was privy to the conspiracy, or thought it not safe that he should outlive his son, sent one away with speed, who delivering a counterfeited Letter to him as from Philotas, slew him as he read it. Amongst others that were shot

Curlius lib. 6.  
Cap. 23.

A.M. 3676.  
Ol. 112. an. 4.  
V. C. 425.  
Alexand. 8.

Consule Plu-  
tarchum in A-  
lexandro &  
Arrianum lib. 7.

Legge Cautum  
lib. 6. & 7.  
Plutarch. &  
Diodorum ut  
prius.  
Arrianum lib. 3.

to death for this conspiracy, was Alexander Lyncestes the son-in-law of Anipater, who had conspired the destruction both of Philip and Alexander, and for his treason been kept in durance now three years. This being done, the King proceeded in his Expedition against Bessus.

4. Though the Soldiers condemned Parmenio and his Son while living, yet they pitied them when dead, and conceived great indignation against their Judges. Alexander understanding this, that he might know their several minds, gave out, that he was sending into Macedonia, and whosoever would, might have an opportunity thereby to write to their friends. By their Letters, all which he caus'd to be opened, he knew who were discontented and ready to Mutiny, and all those he gathered into one company, lest they should corrupt the rest, setting over them one Leonidas, an intimate friend of Parmenio. The King in his March came to the Country of the Arimaspi, or Agriaspae, called also Emergetae by Cyrus the Great; for that when he went against the Scythians, they furnished him with Provisions in his great necessity. He used them very curiously, bestowing upon them Money, and as much Ground as they would ask, which was not much: And here he heard that Satibarzanes, being returned from Bessus, had withdrawn the Arii from obedience. Against him he sent 6000 Greekish Foot and 600 Horse, under the command of Erygius and others, who joining Battel with him, he pulled down his Helmet, and challenged any one to a single Combat. Erygius accepting of the Challenge, slew him in the place, and then his Soldiers, who had followed him rather by constraint, than out of any good will, yielded themselves. Alexander having staid among the Emergetae 60 days, passed on, and in his way subdued the Gedrosians, the Drangi and Dragogi, as also Arachosia, where he got that Army into his power of which Parmenio had the command, consisting of 6000 Macedonians, and 200 Gentlemen, besides 5000 other Greeks, and 600 Horse.

5. The next People he passed through were the Paropamisadae. This being in the Winter-season, his Army suffered extremely from the coldness of the Climate: Thence he came to the Mountain Caucasus or Paropamisus, (as that part of it was call'd) which he passed in 17 days, and built some Cities about it. Bessus had now in Bactria about 8000 of the Inhabitants up in Arms, who thinking that Alexander would rather turn towards India than come against them, kept with Bessus, till they plainly perceived that the King invaded their Country: Then they all betook them to their own homes, and Bessus with his other followers passed over the River Oxus into the Country of the Sogdians, being still accompanied with Spitamenes and Oxyartes, in whose fidelity he confided. But Alexander invading Bactria, after he had taken divers Cities, had the whole Country yielded to him; after which he passed to the great River Oxus, but in his way was so distressed for water, that his Army languished; and when it came at the River, so many drunk intemperately, that he lost more men thereby than he had formerly done in any Battel. Ere he passed the River, he sent home 900 Macedonians and Thessalians, the former being old and wounded; and the latter the remnant of the Volunteers: those he rewarded, and gave thanks to such of the rest that remained as were willing to serve in the Wars yet behind. He passed over the River upon Skins and Bladders joyned together, wanting materials to make a better Bridge, and came to the place where he heard Bessus lay with all his Forces. Bessus was now forsaken by his friends, for Spitamenes conspiring against him with Dataphernes and Catanes, snatched the Diadem from his head, tore Darius his Robe from off his back, and gave notice to Alexander, that if he would send any of his Captains with some Forces they would deliver him up. Alexander sent Ptolemae the son of Lagos, and one of his Guard, who brought him to his presence in an Halter, whence he was delivered to Oxyartes the brother of Darius, to be tormented to death in that place where he had most wickedly slain his Sovereign, his Lord and Master.

6. About this time he utterly destroyed the City of the Branchida, with all its Inhabitants, in revenge for a fault committed 150 years before. For,

R r

Xerxes

Diodorus ut  
prius.  
Curlius lib. 7.  
cap. 3.  
Arrianus.

A. M. 3677.  
Ol. 113. an. 1.  
V. C. 426.  
Alexandri 9.

The King  
marcheth a-  
gainst Bessus.

Passeth the  
Mountain Pa-  
ropamisus.

Invadeth Ba-  
ctria.

Bessus deliver-  
ed up to him.

Macedonians  
Hyrcania.

Whether the  
Queen of the  
Amazons ever  
came to him.

He cometh  
into the  
Country of  
the Arii.

That of the  
Zarangai.

Philotas put  
to death for  
Treason.

And Parmenio  
his Father.

Curlius l. 7.  
Strabo l. 11, &  
14.



He destroyeth *Xerxes* flying out of *Greece*, they betray'd the Treasures of *Didymæan Apollo* into his hands; and for this, not daring to stay behind, they left *Mileus* and followed him, who gave them this place, where their Posterity dearly paid for their fault. After this, he marched to the River *Tanais*, (another than that which severeth *Europe* from *Asia*) falling down from the Mountain *Caucasus* into the *Hyrcanian* Sea. Here some of his Soldiers going forth to gather forage, were intercepted by the Enemy, which to the number of 20 or 30000 betook himself to an Hill, and thence was beaten down and wasted to 8000, yet with great difficulty, and hazard to the King himself, who received a wound in his thigh. Thence in four days he marched in a Litter to *Maracanda*, the chief City of *Sogdiana*, where leaving a Garrison, he over-ran the neighbouring Territories; and shortly came an Ambassage from the *Scythians*, called *Abii*, who thereby gave up themselves into his power. But in the mean time the Barbarians of *Maracanda* slew the Garrison of the *Macedonians*, being, together with the greatest part of the *Sogdians*, drawn back by those that took *Bessus*, who also drew to their party some of the *Bactrians* and *Susians*. *Alexander* sent to suppress them *Spitamenes* and *Caitenes*, who had delivered up *Bessus*; but they confirmed them in their Rebellion, and became Leaders in the Revolt, giving out, that the *Bactrian* Horse was sent for by the King on purpose to be made away.

Cometh to  
Maracanda.

7. To reduce these Revolters, *Alexander* presently sent *Craterus*, who besieged *Cyropolis* the chief City, so called, because built by *Cyrus* the Great; and he himself besieged another called *Gaza*, which he took, and put all of ripeness of age to the sword, for a terror to their Country-men. After this he reduced several other Cities, and then went to the assistance of *Craterus* against *Cyropolis*, which was defended by 18000 men. Here he lost many a valiant Soldier, and by a stroke of a stone on his neck was fell'd down senseless; but this increased his natural vigor, so that out of indignation he set furiously on, and presently took the place. Eight thousand of the Inhabitants were slain, and the rest retiring into the Castle, shortly after yielded for want of water; and then one City remaining onely of seven, whither the Barbarians had fled, he reduced that also in a short time. *Spitamenes* now had shut himself up in *Maracanda*, where he besieged the *Macedonians* in the Castle. Against him he sent a Party, and began to build a City upon the River *Tanais*, which being raised in few days, with a wall six miles in compass, he called after himself *Alexandria*. His design was to have a convenient Fortrefse for the Invasion of *Scythia*, which the *Scythian* King, inhabiting beyond the River, suspecting, sent his brother with a party of Horse to beat away the *Macedonian* forces, and demolish it. Comming to the narrowest place of the River, they not onely cast over their Darts, but opprobrious speeches, which so incensed *Alexander*, as though he was extream ill, and for some time had not been able as much as to speak to his Soldiers, yet he resolved to passe over against them.

Marcheth a-  
gainst the *Scy-  
thians*.

8. With admirable industry he got over his men, partly in Boats, and partly upon Bladders, notwithstanding the earnest opposition of the Enemy, whom he put to the Rout, and, though he was very much indispos'd in his own person, pursued them 80 furlongs, then fainting, he commanded his men to follow the chase as long as the day would permit. The want of water in this place was such, that the Army was thereby exceedingly distressed, and the King himself drinking of some that was corrupt, fell into a Diarrhea. But not long after the *Scythians* sent to excuse themselves, denying that the War had been undertaken by their general consent, but onely by a certain party that lived upon robbery. Giving themselves up into his hands, he dismiss'd the Ambassadors courteously, and with them the Prisoners he had taken. By this time *Spitamenes* had cut off the party sent against him, which *Alexander* understanding, in three days time marched 1500 furlongs to *Maracanda*, whither he had notice that he was returned; but hearing of the Kings comming, he fled again, and was pursued for some time, but to no purpose. *Alexander* then dividing his forces, over-ran the Country which

Curtius & Ari-  
anus.

Curtius ut supra  
Justin. l. 12.  
Arianus l. 4.

# CHAP. I

Cometh to  
Bactra.

Bessus punish-  
ed for his exe-  
cutable Treas-  
on.

had revolted, and gave command, that all of ripe age should be put to the sword, for a reppor to others, by which severity fell 120000 of the Inhabitants of *Sogdiana*. Leaving *Pencolans* there with 3000 Foot, he departed to *Bactra*, (a City so called from the River *Bactrus* which runneth through it, being otherwise named *Zariaspa*) where he caused *Bessus* to be brought to the head of his Army: Here he made his nose and ears to be cut off, and then sent him to *Ecbaiane* to be judged and executed by Sentence of a Council of *Medes* and *Persians*. Thus *Diodorus* relateth the story; but *Plutarch* writeth, that by *Alexanders* command, the boughs of two Trees being first drawn together, and he made fast to them both, they then were suffered to return to their natural site, and he was thereby pulled assunder.

9. Having much encreased his forces by the comming in of fresh supplies, *Arianus*. he once more over-ran the Country of the *Sogdians*, as yet not fully subdued, and the five parts of his Army afterwards met and united at *Maracanda*, whence he sent *Hephastion* to lead out Colonies into the Cities of *Sogdiana*, as *Canus* and *Artabazus* against the *Scythians*, for to them he heard that *Spitamenes* was fled, who with a company of *Bactrians* and *Sogdians*, and about 800 Horse of the *Massagets*, got a Castle near *Bactra* into his hand; then came against *Zariaspa*, or *Bactra*, & by an Ambush cut off many of the Defendants in their Sally out against him. Upon *Canus* his approach the *Massagets* fled, but he pursued & killed many of them. *Alexander* having subdued more of the *Sogdians* returned to *Maracanda*, whither the King of the *European Scythians* inhabiting above *Rosporus*, sent to him, offering him his daughter in marriage; or if this liked him not, he desired, that the principal *Macedonians* about him might contract affinity with his Nation; moreover he offered to come in person and receive his commands. After this, *Alexander* hunted in the Forrest of *Bazaria*, which had been untouched for four Ages. Herein a Lion coming upon him, *Lyfimachus* (who afterwards reigned, and had slain a Lion ere this) went about to slay him off; but the King forbade him, and receiving the Beast, slew him at one stroke. Four hundred Beasts more being killed, he feasted his whole Army, and again repaired to *Maracanda*, where he slew *Clytus*.

Alexander kil-  
leth a Lion.

Killeth Clytus.

10. In a Feast (to which he had invited him) being heated with Wine, he fell of commending his own acts, and therein soared so high, as to speak scornfully of the things performed by his father *Philip*. *Clytus* having also drunk sufficiently was nettled with this, and defending *Philip*, in his replies plainly reproached *Alexander*; who therefore ran him through and killed him outright, having a little before designed him to the Government of *Sogdiana* in the room of *Artabazus*, who excused himself by his old age; For being the son of *Dropis*, and brother to *Hellanicus Alexander's* Nurse, he had done good service to both Kings, and was now an old Soldier. *Alexander*, when he came to himself, considering what he had done, would have made way for following him by his own hands, and when he was hindered by his friends from violent attempts, would have done it by fasting four days. On the fifth, his attendants brake into his Tent, and comforting him, caused him to eat. The *Macedonians* judged *Clytus* rightfully put to death, and decreed he should not be buried; but he commanded this last office to be performed to him. Leaving a good Guard with *Canus* to defend *Sogdiana*, and take *Spitamenes* if he should come that way in Winter, he marched to *Xenippa*, where, after a sharp Encounter, he received the *Bactrian* Exiles, who having revolted had betaken themselves to that place, lying upon the confines of *Scythia*. In the Spring following, being the 10th. year of his Reign, he set upon a Fort in *Sogdiana*, situate upon a Rock, so strong by Nature through its excessive height, that the Defendants counted it invincible, (many having fled thither out of the Country) and upon his summons, *Arimazes* the Governor, who held it with thirty thousand armed men, demanded if the *Macedonians* could sie? But he proposed large rewards to such as would first mount it, whereby certain young men being animated, made a shift to climb and help one another up, and being got to the top, the besieged were amazed, and thinking their number greater than it was, yielded the place. In this Fort amongst others

Curtius lib. 8.  
cap. 1.

Item. ibid.  
Arianus lib. 4.  
Cicero Tuscul.  
Quæst. 4.

A. M. 3678.  
Ol. 113. an. 2.  
V. C. 427.  
Alexand. 10.

Maricth  
Roxane.

was *Oxyartes* the *Satrapa* or Governour (who had revolted from *Alexander*) with his wife and children. Of his daughter *Roxane* the King was so enamoured, as he shortly after married her, and perwaded the great ones about him to take them wives out of that place.

11. He thence departed into *Naura* (or *Paratata*) where he understood that many *Barbarians* had possessed themselves of another Fortresse, situate as the former, and fortified moreover with an exceeding deep ditch. This yielded to him through the perswasion of *Oxyartes*, and then with his Horse he cleared the Country of the revolters. About the same time *Spitamenes* coming into *Sogdiana* was encountered by *Canns*, who drew from him the naturals of the place, and the *Bactrians*, so that he had onely left him a Company of *Massagetes*. Those flying with him into the Wildernesse, when they heard that *Alexander* pursued them, cut off their Captains head and sent it to the King, though some write, that his own wife cut it off, and presented it to *Alexander*, who detesting the treason, commanded her to depart his Camp. After this the *Daba* who had revolted by the procurement of *Dutaphernes*, delivered him up, and returned to obedience, and *Craeterns* with *Polysperchon* having finished the War against the revolters in a short time, they all met at *Bactra*. *Alexander* was now so puffed up, as to require divine honours from his followers; which *Callisthenes* the Philosopher fittly refusing to give him, felt the effect of his ambition.

12. It hapned that the King hunting on a time, one *Hermolaus* a Gentleman of his guard, and Scholar to *Callisthenes*, killed a wild Boar, which *Alexander* himself intended to have struck, for which he was beaten by his Command. The young man bearing the disgrace most heavily, as also *Sofstratus* his inward friend, they conspired with others of the Guard to kill the King, which to perform, they agreed that one night they would all watch together. It was long ere they could so change their courses as to bring this about, but at length having done it, it chanced that the King fate up drinking all that night, so then the matter being frustrated, was revealed by one of them, and they were all stoned to death. Now whether any of them accused *Callisthenes*, as some reported, or *Alexander* did it himself, he was made away, though as to the manner of his death, they who were present themselves agreed not in their relation. *Callisthenes* was the Scholar of *Aristotle*, and the son of his Cousin germane, of so severe a temper, that he could not order himself according to his Master's directions, who when he sent him to *Alexander*, advised him, *Either very pleasantly or very rarely to converse with him, that so he might be either more acceptable for his discourse, or safe by his silence.* *Aristotle* also himself seemeth to have been threatened in a letter written by the King to *Antipater* in *Macedonia*.

13. *Alexander* had ere this time resolved to make War upon *India*, and bound his Conquests with the East. That he might not leave any impediment at his back, he commanded 30000 men to be raised out of the Provinces, that he might have them both as Soldiers and Hostages. Out of a conceit of the glory of the Expedition, he adorned the shields of his Soldiers with silver plates, their Horses with golden bridles, and their Armour was set out with gold and silver. Leaving then *Amyntas* in *Bactriana* with 3500 Horse, and 10000 Foot, he set forwards in the Spring, leading an Army of 120000 men. In ten dayes he passed over *Caucasus* and came to *Alexandria*, which he had caused to be built in the Country of the *Parapomissada*, whence he marched to the River *Cophenes*, and sent to *Taxiles* to meet him, who came with such presents as *India* afforded. Dividing now his Army, with one part of it he sent *Hephestion* and *Perdiccas* another way, with command, that when they came at the River *Indus*, they should provide things necessary for passing over it. He with the other invaded the *Aspians*, *Thyrans*, and *Arafacans*; and crossing the River *Choe*, the first City he came at opposed him. He himself and *Ptolomy* the son of *Laqus* were wounded in the storm, but he took the place, and putting all the Inhabitants to the sword, burnt it. In the Country of the *Aspians* he got a booty of 40000 men,

Arrianus.  
Curtius.

Curtius ut supra.  
Plutarch in Alexand.  
Orosius lib. 3. cap. 18.  
Arrianus lib. 4.

Valer. Max.  
lib. 7. cap. 2.

Alexander  
marcheth for  
India.

men, and 230000 head of cattel, whence marching toward the *Grurani*, with difficulty he passed over the River *Grurans*. Invading the *Assacians*, he took the City *Massaga*, the King whereof being lately dead, his mother *Cleophis* reigned, and by the prostitution of her body to *Alexander*, procured a confirmation in the Kingdom.

14. After this, he took *Bacira*, and *Nora* was forsaken by it's defenders, who betook themselves to a strong rock called *Aornus*. This place was exceedingly fenced by it's wonderful height, and the River *Indus* which ran by one side of it; as also by deep pits and craggie rocks, by reason whereof the report went, that *Hercules* himself attempted, but could not take it. The story of *Hercules* inflamed the King with a desire to master it, who having first taken several other places, brought his forces, and by means of an old man who shewed him the onely passage, closely besieged it. By incredible diligence he filled up the ditches, so as he could bring his men to fight, but yet he was not able to storm the Rock, and therefore resolved to starve them out, leaving a way for their escape; and they seeing his resolution, took the advantage, but many were slain in the persure. Taking order then for the full clearing of the Country, he passed on to the River *Indus*, near to which he hunted Elephants, and continuing in the plains thirty dayes for the refreshment of his Army, sacrificed to his gods, and celebrated games and exercises. Now *Hephestion* and *Perdiccas* had finished all things necessary for passing the River; and not of this onely, but others also with one (almost) and the same labour. For, divers Rivers running through *India* (as besides *Cophenes*, *Coer*, and *Indus*; *Hydaspes*, *Aefines*, *Hyarotis*, *Hyparus*, and *Ganges*,) they so framed the boats, as they might easily be taken in pieces, and being conveyed in carriages, be as easily, upon occasion, again joyned together.

Crosseth the  
River Indus

15. In the eleventh year of his reign, and the fourth after the death of *Darius*, in the Spring, *Alexander* passed over the River *Indus*, and was received above his expectations. For, *Omphis*, or *Mophis*, King of the Country, had perswaded his Father when yet living to submit himself, and now having succeeded in the Kingdom met him in the way, and gave it up into his hands, who restored it to him, and permitted him to assume the name of *Taxiles*, common to all Kings of that Country, of what family soever. Coming to *Taxila* the Metropolis, he was sumptuously entertained, and receiving great gifts, gave also very liberally, to the disdain of those about him, of whom *Meleager* in his cups congratulated with him, that at length in *India* he had found a man worthy to receive from him in way of free gift 1000 Talents. *Alexander* remembering how he had repented the killing of *Clytus*, contained himself, but not impercipiently answered him, that *Envious men are nothing else than their own torment*: The next day *Abisarns* King of the *Indians* inhabiting the mountains, and who together with *Porus* had wars with *Taxiles*, by Ambassadors gave up himself and Kingdom. *Alexander* leaving a Garrison in *Taxila*, marched towards the River *Hydaspes*, beyond which reigned *Porus*: Thinking by the terror of his name to affright this Prince into obedience, he sent to him beforehand, willing him to pay tribute, and meet him on the frontiers of his Kingdom, to which he answered, that he would do the later onely, and that armed. Near unto *Porus* reigned another of his name, and his Nephew, who out of hatred to him, sent Ambassadors, and gave up all he had into the hands of *Alexander*.

16. The boats formerly spoken of being conveyed from *Indus* to the River *Hydaspes*, *Alexander* with *Taxiles*, several other great persons of the Country, and 5000 *Indians* more came thither: *Barsantes* the Governour of the *Dranga* being presented to him in his way, whom he afterwards put to death for his treason towards *Darius*. On the opposite bank of the River lay *Porus* with an Army very great indeed, though the dissention of Writers about the numbers almost equalize the bignesse of it. He had his Elephants ready to affright the Horses, and keep the Army from landing, which *Alexander* perceiving, made as if he intended to passe the River at the place over

A. M. 3699.  
Ol. 113. an. 3.  
P. C. 428.  
Alexand. 11.

Curtius ut supra.  
Diodorus.  
Arrianus l. 4.  
Orosius l. 3. c. 19. &  
Plutarch in Alexand.

And Hydaspes, over against which *Porus* stood, leaving some there to make a noise, as if he still remained, and in a dark and rainy night got into a little woody Island, which lay lower down the River, whence in the morning, though with much difficulty (through the rising of the water by abundance of rain) recovered the further bank, where he defeated a Party led by *Porus* his Son, who by some is said in this engagement to have lost his life. *Porus*, understanding this, drew down his battel in the form of a City, whereof the Elephants, being many in number, were as walls. They grievously distressed the *Macedonians* for some time, and the *Indians* continually retired to them as a bulwark; but at length being driven up close together, they made great slaughter of the *Indians* themselves, whom *Alexander* also encompassing with his men did great execution upon them. *Porus* himself, a person terrible to encounter (his height, as is said, being five cubits, and his breadth such as his Armour extended it to the proportion of two lusty men) fought himself most valiantly, and encountering *Alexander* hand to hand, slew his Horse under him, so that he was saved merely by the interposition of his Guard, many of his men having fallen at his side.

Overthrow-  
eth and tak-  
eth *Porus*.

17. *Porus* gave not over as long as he had any to stand to him; when all had left him, he retreated on his Elephant most stately to behold. As many of the *Indians* were slain in the chase as had been in the battel, by reason that *Craterus* and others, who had been left behind, came over afresh to the pursuit. *Alexander* having a great desire to save their King, out of respect to his great valour, sent after him *Taxiles* the *Indian*, whom perceiving to come towards him, he ran at him with his lance as his ancient Enemy. But others being still sent, and amongst the rest *Merces* an *Indian*, *Porus* hearing his voice, and being sore distressed by thirst, stood still, and then alighted from his Elephant. *Alexander* coming on spake to him first, and asked him what the thing was which he desired, to whom he answered, that he might be used like a King. The other replied, that this should be done for his own sake, and bad him ask for his own commodity what he pleased, to which he made answer, that all things were contained in his former demand. With this the Conquerour was so well pleased, that he received him into the number of his friends, and restored to him his Kingdom, enlarged with new Territories. *Alexander* hoping that by his late Victory all *India* was laid open to him, intended to sail into the Ocean; and perceiving there was in this place much wood, he caused such a quantity to be cut down, as might suffice for the building of ships. He gave order also for the building of two Cities: one in the place where the battel was fought, which he called *Nice*, and another on the other side of the River, named after his Horse *Bucephalus*, who here died, being about thirty years old.

18. Leaving *Craterus* to perfect these Cities upon the River *Hydaspes*, he marched into the Country adjoining to that of *Porus*, which having subdued he bestowed on him, and also the Kingdom of the younger *Porus*, who out of fear of his Uncle had now fled, with as many as he could draw after him to the *Gangaride*. After this he subdued several Nations beyond the River *Hydrates*, and invaded the *Cuthians*, who together with the *Ocydrace* and *Malli* opposed him, of whom in the siege and storming of the City *Sangala* perished 17000, and about 70000 were taken Captives. These *Cuthians* had a Custom, that when any man died, his wife was to be buried with him, to which the wickedness of one woman that poisoned her husband gave occasion. The City *Sangala* was destroyed, and their Lands given to certain *Indians*, who lived in the form of a Commonwealth, and had formerly given themselves up into the hands of the Conquerour. This severity made other Cities without any resistance surrender themselves. Then advanced he into the Kingdom of *Sopithes*, who meeting him with his two Sons, with a Rod of Gold adorned with precious Stones, delivered up into his hands himself, his children, Kingdom, and all he had. Having received back his Kingdom, he magnificently entertained *Alexander* and his whole Army. Amongst several other presents, he gave him 150 Dogs begotten of

*Sopithes* yield-  
eth.

*Curtius lib. 9.  
cap. 1.*

*Alian Hist.  
animal. 13.6.1.*

Tigers,

Tigers, as is reported, and of strength and activity, as appeared by four of them which were let out upon a Lion extraordinary for strength and bignesse.

19. Ere *Alexander* stirred from this place, *Hephestion* returned to him from his expedition, (having subdued *India* in a great compass that way he was sent) whom he received with honor suitable to his worth. Afterward he departed into the Kingdom of *Phlegus* (or *Phgelus*) who also submitted himself, and receiving the Conqueror, entertained him very magnificently. After two days he marched toward the River *Hyphasis* (or *Hyparis*) taking *Phlegus* and *Porus* along with him. At the River side he enquired of *Phlegus* what Countries lay beyond it? He answered, That there was a vast Wilderness of 11 or 12 days journey, and next to that ran the River *Ganges*, beyond which inhabited, besides others, the *Gangaride*, over whom reigned *Aggrammes* (or *Xandrames*) provided of 20000 Horse, 300000 Foot, above 2000 Chariots, and about 4000 Elephants. These things seeming incredible to the *Macedonians*, he asked *Porus* of the truth of them, who confirmed what the other had said as to the strength of that King, but withall added, That being by a Barber begotten on the Queen, who had killed her Husband that he might reign, he was for this cause despised by his People. *Alexander* now considered the labors and perils undergone by his Soldiers, who from the beginning of his reign had followed him eight years; withall, how of late for 70 days together they had been sorely distressed by Rain, Thunder, and Lightning; that he might oblige them, he gave them the plunder of the enemies Country, being very rich, and in their absence gratified their wives and children. Then after their return to the Camp, with a premeditated Oration he laboured to persuade them to undertake the War with him against the *Gandaride*, but in vain.

20. For, *Cannus* the son of *Polyrates*, answered him in such a manner, as he might easily perceive how contrary the affections of the Soldiers were to the Expedition. After which, as *Arrianus* writeth, he kept himself close in his Pavilion for three days, and would admit none of his friends to his presence. Then sending for his Officers, he told them, That seeing the minds of his men were averse from proceeding any further, he intended to return home; yet, ere this, he had sacrificed for passing over the River, but finding that the Intrails of the Beast were not lucky, he settled himself in a purpose to retreat. He caused twelve large Altars of fifty cubits heigh, like to some warlike Towers, to be erected near the River, whereon he sacrificed according to the custom of his Country, and he celebrated Games in the grounds adjoining. After this he caused to be made a Ditch 15 foot broad and 10 foot deep, whereon, of the earth, he raised a considerable Wall, making the compass of his Camp seem three-fold larger than indeed it was. He commanded the Foot, that each one in his Tent should get two Bedsteads of five cubits apiece, and the Horsemen to make theirs with the Mangers of their Horses as big again as they were wont to be. He caused Arms, Bridles, and other things to be framed after the same proportion, to amuse posterity with a false appearance of a Gigantick proportion of his own person and his followers.

21. He returned the same way he came, settling the Government of the Provinces in his passage, till he arrived at the River *Hydaspes*. Ever since his departure hence, the weather had been rainy, which spoiled much of his new City *Bucephalus*; but he caused it to be repaired; and here died *Cannus* his trusty and faithful friend, but one who had grieved him by his Answer to his late Oration. Down this River *Hydaspes* he resolved, according to his former purpose, to sail into the Southern Ocean, and therefore providing for such places as he should leave, he reconciled *Porus* and *Taxilos* by affinity contracted betwixt them, and made the former King, not of that Country only lying betwixt *Aceinus* and *Hydaspes*, which formerly he had given to him, but also of such free Nations, as lying betwixt *Aceinus* and *Hyphasis* he had lately subdued. Having increased his Army by a new supply sent him out of the West, he divided it into three parts, whereof two he committed

to

*Curtius lib. 9.  
Diodorus.  
Arrianus.*

He sailerth  
down the Ri-  
ver Hydaspes.

to *Craterus* and *Hephestion*, commanding them to march on either side the River, down which he sailed with the third in a Fleet of 1000 Vessels. Loosening from shoar about the beginning of *November*, he first landed upon the coasts of the *Sibari*, who being reported to be defended of those *Greeks* that with *Hercules* attempted the storming of the Rock *Aornos*, claimed kindred of him, and submitted themselves. Making excursions into the neighbour Countries, he destroyed many thousands of the Inhabitants that would not yield; and then returning aboard, hastened against the *Oxydrace* and *Malli*, who, as he heard, had carried their wives into their strong Towns, and intended resistance.

He fighteth a-  
gainst the  
Malli and Oxy-  
drace.

22. Coming down thither where *Hydaspes* and *Acesines* meet, the Chnel being narrow, and the Stream exceeding great, two of his tallest Ships miscarried, and he himself missed narrowly of being Shipwrack'd: Here his Soldiers also began to murmur that they should begin a new War, but he quiered them easily by a Speech. The *Indians* having gathered together 80000 Foot and 10000 Horse, shewed themselves near the River, having chosen their General out of the *Oxydrace*, who made many fires, and used other vain attempts to affright the *Macedonians*; yet as soon as these began to Arm, either out of fear; or by reason of dissention amongst themselves, away they fled to the craggy Mountains. *Alexander* then marched with all speed, through a large, drie, and barren Country, against the *Malli*, to defeat them ere they should joyn with the other; and coming unexpectedly upon them, many he slew, both in the Country, and those strong places which he stormed. After this he marched to the River *Hydraotes*, where he killed many of them, and thence to a City of the *Brachman*, whither he heard that some of them had fled: This he took, with the Castle into which they retired, as also the chiefest City of the *Malli*, whence they fled beyond the River *Hydraotes*, on the bank whereof they drew up into a Battalia. He followed, and with his Horse skirmished a little, not thinking it fit to engage with them in Battel, being 50000 in number, till the Foot came up. Then they betook themselves to the next fortifi'd Town, where by his hardiness he ran into extreme danger.

23. *Demophon* his Priest acquainted him, how that by his art great danger was portented to his person, and therefore he advised him, either to omit, or at least to defer the siege. But he rebuked the man; because hereby he weakened the valor of his Soldiers, and dividing them into two parts, set upon the Town, whereat the Defendants left it and fled into the Castle. The King with those about him broke open a Gate, and entred first; Then he commanded Ladders to be set to the Castle wall; which being but slowly performed, he took one from a *Macedonian*, and rearing it mounted himself: after him went up *Pencestes*, who bore usually his Shield before him, (which being taken out of the Temple of *Pallas* at *Ilium*, he would always have so carried) and after him *Leonatus* by the same Ladder, and one *Abreas* by another. The *Argyraspides* also, (or those who used the silvered Shields) solicitous for the Kings safety, mounting hastily broke the ladders, and thereby hindered others as well as themselves. The King upon the Wall was laid at with Darts on every side, and when his left arm was wearied with holding his Target, his friends would have had him leap down again unto them, who were ready to receive him in their arms. But by an unparallel'd attempt he leaped down on the other side into the Fort; where if he had not by good chance light upon his feet, he might presently have been slain or taken. But casting himself to fall upon them; and seeing a Tree hard by, he applied himself to it, so as he had it on his right hand, and the wall on his left.

24. None of his enemies were so hardy as to come near him, only they plied it with Darts afar off, whereof the greatest part being kept off by the boughes and leaves of the Tree, the rest he received on his Target. But the *Indians* drawing nearer, threw showers of Darts upon him; and with stones broke his Helm. Being spent, and not longer able to stand, he fell upon his knees, whereupon despising him they came to him; and yet he so received them

Casteth him-  
self into ex-  
tream danger.

Curtius & Dio-  
dorus ut prius.  
Arrianus lib. 6.  
Plutarch ut  
supra, &  
Orosius.

them with his sword, as two fell down dead before him, and after this he killed their General who boldly set upon him; then none would venture to approach nearer, but plied it with Darts afar off. By this time those three that mounted the wall after him were got down, and fought stoutly for him, of whom *Abreas* was shot in the face and fell; the King also in the breast with an Arrow, which piercing through his Armor near his Pap. some affirmed, that blood and breath issued together out of the wound, and he swooned, being covered by *Pencestes* with his shield. Now the *Macedonians* brake into the Castle, and put all to the sword, sparing neither Sex nor Age. They carried their King out on a Target, nor knowing whether he was alive or dead; but shortly after he came to himself, and his wound was dressed, (some say by *Critobulus* the Physician, others by *Perdiccas*) out of which much blood issuing, he swooned again, and that very thing stanchd the bleeding. While he layed a little in this place, a report flew to the Army then lying with the Fleet at the meeting of the two Rivers *Hydraotes* and *Acesines*, that he was dead, and it gained such belief, that the Letters he sent were taken but as counterfeits. Therefore he hastened to the Camp, where he presented himself to the view of them all there.

Sailerth into  
Indus.

25. Having escaped this great danger amongst the *Malli*, (for amongst them it was, and not amongst the *Oxydrace* as some have mistaken) and returned to his Fleet, he sailed down the River, and on the fourth day came to a place forsaken of its Inhabitants, but convenient for to make some stay in. Here he rested many days for the better curing of his wounds, and employed his men this while in building of ships. Hither the *Malli* and *Oxydrace* sent to ask pardon, and submit themselves. After which he sailed further, and came to the confluence of *Hydraotes* and *Acesines*, the former whereof loseth it self in the later. Proceeding further, he came through *Acesines* into *Indus*, subduing a certain People in his way who lived in a Free State; and here he made *Phlip* Governor of the *Malli* and *Oxydrace*, with all the Country down to this place, wherein he also gave order for a City to be built. Following on his voyage, he arrived at the Country of the *Sanbesta*, (or *Sabraca*) who living also in a popular way of Government, were very populous and strong, and hearing of his coming had got together 60000 Foot, and near 8000 Horse, but upon a sight of his Fleet they let fall their courage, and sent fifty of their principal men to ask peace. From this place on the fourth day he came to the fear of the *Sogdes*, who also yielded themselves; and here by the River *Indus* he caused to be built another *Alexandria*, which he furnished with convenient Havens and Arsenals. Thence he sailed down with such expedition into the Country of *Musicanus*, that he was upon him ere he heard of his coming; therefore the *Indian* met him with such gifts as his Country afforded, and gave up himself with all he had into his hands, acknowledging his fault that he had no sooner done it.

Upon which  
he buildeth an  
*Alexandria*,  
and subdueth  
*Musicanus*.

and *Oxyanus*.

26. Having here commanded *Teryestes*, whom he had set over the *Paropamisada*, to be put to death, for abusing that People by a covetous and tyrannical Government, he caused a Fort to be raised in the chief City of *Musicanus*, wherein he left a Garrison, because the place seemed very convenient for keeping the neighbouring Nations in obedience. Leaving *Musicanus* in his former power, though not authority, he sailed down to the *Prassi*, another *Indian* Nation, over which ruled *Oxycanus*. Here he stormed two Cities, in one whereof their King being retired into the Castle, sent to him to beg pardon, but too late; for ere the Messengers could come at *Alexander*, two Towers fell down, which made way for the *Macedonians*, who entering, killed *Oxycanus* amongst the rest; which being reported to the other Cities, they all yielded themselves. After this he came into the borders of the *Brachmans*, whose King *Sabus* (or *Sambus*) caused the Gates of his principal City to be opened, but afterwards revolted at the instigation of his Subjects, some of whom paid dearly for it in a certain City wherein they were taken, *Sabus* himself with thirty Elephants escaping. Some of them were upon pain of death to answer to certain hard Questions, which

SSf

having

having done, they were dismissed with rewards, as *Ptolemy* informeth us. But ere this, *Musicanus* had revolted, against whom *Pithon* was sent, who overpowering him took him prisoner. He was Crucified in his own Countrey by *Alexander's* Command, with all such *Brachmans* as had drawn him to revolt.

27. Returning to the River *Indus*, in the fourth day he came to a Citie of the *Brachmans*, called *Hamatelia*, the inhabitants whereof hearing that he was invincible, poisoned the heads, of their Arrows, trusting to their own valour, and the natural strength of the place. He sent a party, which by approaching their Walls, and then retreating, drew them forth, by which stratagem, of 3000 he took 1000. and killed 600. Many of his own men died, and those who survived were brought into extreame danger, amongst whom was *Ptolemy* the son of *Lagus*. He being almost ready to die, the story goeth, that *Alexander* in a Dream had an Herb shewed to him, which drunk, and outwardly applied, helped against the poyson; the truth being, that the virtue of this plant was by some declared to him, and this story feigned out of flattery. For all this, the besieged yielding, had indemnity granted to them, and then came *Marius* King of the Island *Pattalena*, which he gave up into the Conquerours power. *Alexander* restored, and sent him back, commanding him to provide all necessaries for his Army; but failing down thither he found that he had left the Citie, and retired to the Mountains, with all his subjects, both of Town and Countrey. *Alexander* sent some horse-men to perswade them to return, which accordingly divers did. Then did he order *Hephestion* to build a Fort in the Citie, and sent a party to dig Wells in that Coast of the Countrey which wanted water. The Enemy fell upon these men out of the Wilderness, and killed many of them, which forced the King to send others for a supply. Now had he sayled almost 10 moneths when he came to *Pattalena*.

*Strabo lib. 15.*

He sayleth to the Island *Pattalena*.

Is distressed upon the water.

28. At this Island the River *Indus* parteth into two branches, whereof both retained the name as far as the Sea it self. *Alexander* taking the right hand sayled down that Channel, his Army being led according to the custom, near the Rivers side. The next day arose such a Tempest, as exceedingly distressed the Fleet, some ships being driven so far as scarcely could they be recovered; whereupon for some time the King stayed here at a certain Island, and sent men on shore to take up some Natives to be their Guides. Coming lower, where the Chnel was very broad, another Tempest forced them into a certain Creek, where as great a fear seized on them, and so much the greater, because they were unacquainted with the occasion of it. It hapned, that the Tide being exceeding high (as it is at this day at *Cambaia*, where the River *Indus* falls into the Sea) all the grounds near the River were overflown, except certain Hills, which appearing like so many Islands to them, the *Macedonians* swam, and left their Boats. When the water fell again, the Vessels were left on the drie ground, some being overwhelmed, and others turned upon their sides. But the River according to the course of the Tide overflowing again at the due time, such Vessels as stuck fast in the Mud were lifted up unhurt, but those that the water found otherwise placed, were either dashed against one another, or miscarried after some other fashion.

29. Repairing his Navy, as he could, he sent before two Boats to make discovery of another Island below, by the *Indians* called *Ciluta*, but by him *Scillastru*, near which he must needs sayl down into the Ocean. Hearing that it was large, and very Commodious to harbour in, he gave order for the Fleet to go thither, but he himself proceeded further, to search whether there was easie passage at the River's fall for the whole Navy into the Sea. Having passed some 200 furlongs, he discovered another Island, and then returned to the Fleet, where having sacrificed to some gods, he went back, and performed this service to others after another fashion, saying, he was commanded so to do by the Oracle of *Jupiter Hammon*. Saying out of *Indus* into the Ocean, he sacrificed Bulls to *Neptune*, and after the burning of Incense cast

out

Passeth into the Ocean.

out a Golden Vial with Golden Cups into the sea, praying for a prosperous voyage to his Navy, (which he intended under command of *Nearchus* his Admiral should sayl through the Ocean into the *Persian* Gulf, and so up *Euphrates* and *Tigris*) and that no mortal after him might passe the bounds of his expedition. Then returned he up the River to *Pattala*, whither he found *Pithon* come with the Forces, purposing to leave half the Fleet at the Citie (to this day called *Pattala* in *Cambaia*) he commanded *Hephestion* there to make an Haven, and provision for shipping. He himself sayled down the stream on the left hand, which first lead him to a Lake, where he left *Leonnatus* with most of the Soldiers, and with 30 ships passed through this Mouth of *Indus* into the Ocean.

*Nearchus* the Admiral sayleth the Ocean.

30. His design was to see whether the Fleet might not best sayl this way into the Sea; and he satisfied himself that it might. Then did he Travel up the shore, and caused Wells to be digged thereon to furnish the Navy with water. Returning then to *Pattala*, he sent part of his Army to dig more, and going to the Lake, he caused Havens to be made, and provision for shipping; he also left there a Garrison with necessaries for 8 moneths. At this time the *Etesian* vvinds in this Countrey blowing from the South (though in other places from other quarters) hindered Navigation, wherefore he was constrained to leave *Nearchus* at *Pattala* with the Fleet till they should cease. He journeyed through the Countrey of the *Arabite* (or *Arbite*) to the River *Arabius* (or *Arbus*), digging pits on the shore for the use of the Fleet in its passage by these Coasts. *Nearchus* and his followers were two moneths after *Alexander's* departure driven out by the Inhabitants of *Pattalena*, and compelled to begin their Voyage ere the season of the year well served. Coming to the mouth of the River, they were forced to cut through a Rock (for some way) such a Ditch as by the help of the Tide might convey their ships safe into the Ocean. The *Arabite* hearing of *Alexander's* approach, fled into the Mountains, so that without opposition he passed over the River *Arabius*, and came into the Countrey of the *Oritae*, of whom killing some, and taking others, (because they had not submitted themselves) he thence marched into the Borders of the *Gedrosians*, with whom the *Oritae* had joyned, but upon his approach sent and begged peace, which he granted, on condition that they would depart to their dwellings. He set over them *Apelophon* with whom he left *Leonnatus* one of the keepers of his body, with a party of horse and foot to expect the coming of the Fleet, and in the mean while to build a new Citie, and settle the affairs of the Countrey.

*Alexander* passeth the Countrey of the *Gedrosians* with incredible difficulty.

31. In his passage through the Countrey of the *Gedrosians*, greater losse and damage hapned to him than in all his expedition through *Asia* besides; because, what for want of water, by excesse of heat, ill diet and hunger, he carried out the fourth part of those forces he brought into *India*. Yet was not this losse sustained through ignorance; for some tell us that he knew of the danger very well; but hearing that this Countrey had been formerly invaded both by *Semiramis* and *Cyrus*, whereof the former was forced to fly but with 30 Attendants, and the later with 7. he had an itching desire to passe through it, and in the glory of his adventure to excell them. After incredible trouble undergone, for 60 dayes, he came to *Pura* the chief Citie, where (as it was time) he refreshed his Army, and thence marched towards the Borders of *Caramania*. Hither news came that *Philip*, Governour of the *Oxydraca*, and of other *Indians*, was killed by the Mercenary Soldiers; but that his death was revenged upon them by the *Macedonians*; whereupon he wrote to *Taxiles* and *Eudemus* to take care of the Countrey, till such time as he could send one to succeed *Philip*. Coming into *Caramania* not far from *Persia*, he animadverted upon the Governour, as upon *Cleander* and *Sitalces*, vvho being sent to kill *Parmenio*, had after his death committed grievous outrages upon the people in those parts. He also punished *Ozines* and *Zariaspes*, who had solicited the *Persians* to revolt, and *Heracon*, who had rifled the Temple at *Susa*: here also he made *Panaces*.

Stiff 2

one



one of the keepers of his body, they being before this seven in number. In the mean time *Nearchus*, having passed the borders of the *Arabii*, *Orie*, *Gedrosians*, *Ichthyophagi*, came into the *Persian* Gulf, and arrived at *Armusia* (now called *Ormus*) where understanding that his Master was but distant five dayes journey, he went to him, and having made a report of his Voyage, returned presently to the Fleet, with order to passe up to the mouth of *Euphrates*, and thence row unto *Babylon*.

He cometh to  
*Pasargadae* in  
*Persia.*

**To Persepolis.**

32. It being now very good failing, *Alexander* sent *Hephestion* by Sea into *Persia*, with the greatest part of his Army, and shortly after departed himself and came by Land to *Pasargadae*, where he bestowed money on the women, according to the custome of the *Persian* Kings when they came thither. Here he much lamented the violation of *Cyrus* his Sepulchre, which since his former being here, had been robbed of all it's riches, except a Litter, and a golden Urn wherein was the body; and this also was cut and mangled, the cover being taken away, and the body cast out. He commanded the Urn to be repaired as well as might be, and the reliques of *Cyrus* being therein deposited, the dore-place to be walled up. From *Pasargadae*, now called *Chelquara*, he came to *Persepolis*, the seat of the *Persian* Kings, where great complaints being made against *Orxines* (who being descended from *Cyrus* and the seven Conspirators, had contained the *Persians* in obedience after the death of the Governour *Phrafortes*) he was crucified through the malice of *Bagom* the Eunuch, *Alexander*'s minion, who hated him, upon no other account, than for that bestowing great gifts upon the Courtiers at their return, he neglected him. *Phradates* also, who had been Governour of the *Mardi*, *Hyrcanians*, and *Tapyri*, was here put to death, for affecting Kingly power. But, *Pewestes* who protected the King among the *Malli*, and as a reward had been received amongst the Keepers of his body, was now further made Governour of *Persia*, and thereupon fully conformed himself to the fashions of the Country.

Curtius lib. 10.  
Diodorus, 8c.  
A. M. 3680.  
Ol. 113. an. 4.  
V. C. 429.  
Alexand. 12.

33. *Alexander* had a great desire to sail through *Euphrates* and *Tigris* into the *Persian Gulf*, to compass about *Arabia* and *Africk*, and so to pass through the Straights leading into the Mediterranean (now called the Straights of *Gibraltar*) for which purpose he commanded wood to be cut down in *Libanus*, to be caried to *Thapsacus* in *Syria*, and being made into ships, thence to bee conveyed to *Babylon*. No: long after, *Nearchus* brought the fleet up *Pasitigris* to a bridge newly made for the passing over of the Land-army, where for the meeting of both the Armies, after six moneths sail, *Alexander* sacrificed, and celebrated games. Thence marching to *Susa*: the Provinces, by their Deputies there accused many of their Officers, besides other offences, of violating their Temples. He caused them all to be put to death, without respect to any former friendship, and with them *Cleander*, *Sitalces*, and *Heracon*, whom he had formerly condemned in *Carmania*. This severity noised abroad, netled many that knew themselves faulty; Some scraped together much money and fled, and others that commanded the mercenaries revolted, which caused him to send up and down *Asia* to disband the Stipendiaries, who being thus put out of employment, robbed all over, and at length met at *Tenarus*, a Promontory of *Laconia* in *Greece*, whither many of their Captains fled to them. *Alexander* now married *Statira* the daughter of *Darius*, and gave her younger sister *Drypetis* to his beloved *Hephestion*, having a great desire that his children might be cousins to him. To some 80 more of his Commanders he gave wives of the daughters of the chieftest *Medes* and *Persians*, to which he assigned dowrs. He made one great wedding-feast for himself and them all: and to the other *Macedonians* that had married wives in *Asia* he gave gifts.

He married  
Statira the  
daughter of  
Darius.

34. Moreover he paid the debts they had contracted in *Asia*, and because they were unwilling by giving up their names to let him see how bad husbands they had been (for they suspected him of such an intention) he caused the money to be given them, without taking account to whom, and this expence reached not fully 10000 talents (as appeareth from *Diodorus*, *Curran*, and *Plutarch*;

### The Macedonians mutinied

35. The King enraged, presently caused thirteen of the ringleaders to be apprehended, and drowned in the River; and reviling the rest bade them all be gone home. Then entering his Palace, for that day and the next he would admit none to his presence. On the third, having confined the *Macedonians* to their tents, he called such strangers to him as followed his Camp. Their faithfulness to him and the former Kings he commended, he related what favours he had shewed them, and told them he now took them as fellow Citizens, gave them the Arms of the *Macedonians*, and would have the Kingdom of *Europe* and that of *Asia* the same thing. Out of them he chose 1000 young men, to whom he committed the charge of his person in the Court; he bestowed the commands of the Army amongst them, and made choice of some, whom naming his kinsfolk, he permitted to kiss him. These things cut the *Macedonians* to the heart, and made them seriously repent of their rashness. Coming to the Palace, they threw down their Arms at the gate, and with great lamentation desired to be admitted, offering to give up the incendiaries, and desiring him rather to kill than thus disgrace them. He refused to admit them, but they continued still two days and as many nights before the gates, professing that they would not depart till he had compassion on them. On the third day, perceiving them thus humbled, he came forth to them, and *Callines* after mutual weeping, told him, that it troubled them to know others received into his kindred, and themselves excluded from it. He answered, that he received them also, and so would call them thenceforth; then he offered himself to be kissed by as many as would. Being thus received again into favour, they returned with great joy to their tents, and afterwards were feasted by him, together with *Persians* and others, to the number of 9000 guests.

But having humbled themselves he is reconciled.

36. He diffimised now such as were unserviceable for the Wars (though some say it was not till a little before his death) to whom he paid not onely their arrears, but gave them money to bear their charges, and a talent to every man besides. He sent home with them *Craterus* his beloved friend to govern *Greece* and *Macedonia* in the room of *Antipater*, who was to bring over a supply of men. Then made he a progresse through several places, and came to *Ecbatane* the chief seat of *Media*, where *Hephaestion* by drinking got a Fever, and then impatient of a strict diet, died of it in seven dayes. In the absence of *Glancus* his Physician (who was gone to the Theater to behold the sports) he eat his dinner, and after it drank a cup of cold wine, which, as it was thought, increased the distemper. *Alexander* took his death most heavily, fasted three dayes, and refused to be comforted. He commanded the Physician

He cometh to  
Ecbatane in  
Media, where  
Hephestion  
dieth

Physician to be crucified, bespoke an universal mourning, wherein the Cities shared by the removal of their ornaments from the walls. He ordered *Perdiccas* to convey the body to *Babylon*, where he intended him a most sumptuous monument, and refused to fill up his place of Captain of his Thousand friends, lest his name should be forgotten, by which he would have the Company still called. Then, for diversion, he made War upon the *Cossai*, a People bordering on the *Oxii*, which having stood out against the *Persians*, despised him also, in respect of their valour, and the strength of their Country, situate upon the mountains of *Media*. Yet for all this, and the coldness of Winter, he brought them under within 40 days.

He cometh to  
Babylon,

37. Having a great desire to sail the *Caspian* Sea, he sent *Heracles* with divers Ship-carpenters into *Hyrkania* to build ships, and then he took his journey towards *Babylon*. Being distant from the City two or three days journey, the *Chaldeans* sent to warn him that he should not come into the City, for they were told by their god *Belus*, that, if he did, it should be fatal to him. He intended to follow their advice; but being persuaded otherwise by *Anaxarchus* and other *Gracians*, at length he resolved on the contrary. Then they desired him that he would not enter with his face upon the West; but it being difficult not so to do, by reason of the Fens about the City, having slighted their former advice, he also rejected this. Being arrived, he gave audience to Ambassadors sent to him now from all parts, not only out of *Asia*, but from *Africa* and *Europe* also. Out of *Africa*, from the Nations situate upon the Sea-Coasts as far as the *Atlantick* Ocean: from *Europe*, besides the *Gracians*, *Thracians*, *Illyrians*, and *Scythians*, from some Nations of *Italy*, as the *Bruttii*, *Lucani*, *Tusci*; from *Sicilie*, and *Sardinia*; as also from the *Spaniards* and *Galls*, then first known to the *Macedonians*; but as for the *Romans*, though some ranked them in the number, yet have we no reason to give credit to their report. At the celebration of the *Olympick* games, he caused it to be proclaimed, that all *Greek* Exiles might return home, except such as were banished for Sacrilege or murder, against which the *Athenians* and *Etolians* only made resistance. Then celebrated he the funerals of *Hephaestion* with vast magnificence, and sacrificed to him as an Heroe. After this he made great preparations for shipping, intending also to invade and conquer *Arabia*, which, hearing that it was no less than *India*, he sent some to discover.

Where he  
falleth into a  
Feaver.

38. While these preparations were making, and an Haven in digging at *Babylon*, he passed through *Euphrates* into *Pallocope*, a River, which being supplied with water from the former, thereby hindreth it from overflowing the Country. Here he opened the passages, made a new one towards the Lakes, and coming into the borders of *Arabia*, built there a City. Then deriding the *Chaldeans*, for that he had both entered, and failed in safety from *Babylon*, he thither returned, and liking the City exceedingly, intended to make it the seat of his Empire; though it was but for a short space, as it fell out. For, having sat up feasting and drinking very late one night, as he was departing to go to bed, he was again invited by *Medius* a *Thessalian* to another carowze, where challenging, and being challenged, he drank so much wine as put him into a Feaver, whereof he died the eleventh day. Some have delivered that he was poisoned by the procurement of *Antipater*, who suspecting he was through the malice of *Olympias* called out of *Macedonia* for no good towards himself, sent his son, *Alexander* with poison to be delivered to *Iollus* and his other sons, that then waited on the King. Indeed *Cassander* was not at all favourable, as he ought to have been, to the interest of *Alexander*'s posterity, as neither to his reputation; and coming to him a little before his death, he did but little strive to suit his humour. For seeing the *Barbarians* adore him, and being unacquainted with such sight, he burst forth into laughing, for which *Alexander* caught him by the hair, and knocked his head soundly against the wall, as *Plutarch* telleth us. But as for matter of poison, the long lying of his body in so hot a Country, during the contentions of his Captains, betrayed no symptoms thereof, and therefore others give no credit

A. M. 3681.  
Ol. 114. an. 1.  
urbis condita  
436.  
Alexand. 13.

Vide præter  
Plutarchum &  
Diodorum Sen-  
cæ Epist. 83.  
Athenæum l. 11.  
c. 17.  
Macrobius  
Saturnal. lib. 5.  
cap. 21.

to the report. Moreover, the course of his sickness presenteth us with no such symptoms, as it is described to us by *Plutarch* and *Arrianus* out of his Diaries.

39. On the 18th day of the (Macedonian) month *Dæsius* (May the 12) he slept in a Bath, because of his feaver. The day following, he returned to his Bed-Chamber, and spent it with *Medius* at Dice: then being washed at night, and having finished his devotions, he supped something liberally, and all the night was much disordered. On the 20th day he washed, and having finished a solemn sacrifice, in the Bath heard *Nearchus* relate the story of his Navigation, and of what he had seen in the Ocean. On the 21st, having done the same thing his Feaver increased, and he had an ill night. The day after he was held with a sharp Feaver, and was removed near the great place for swimming, where he discoursed with his Officers about supplying *Vacant* places in the Army with the fittest persons. On the 24th his disease increasing he sacrificed, being borne out to the place, and commanded the principal of his Officers to stay in the Court, and the rest to march before the Gates. Being removed into the inner Palace on the 25th day he rested a little; but the Feaver abated not, and when the Captains came to see him he spake not a word. So he passed over the 26th day, whereupon the *Macedonians* thinking him to be dead, came with great noise to the Door, and compelled his friends to let them in; so in their Coats every man of them passed by his bed's side. The same day *Pithon* and *Seleucus* were sent to the Temple of *Serapis*, to ask if he should be removed thither, and received answer, that he should continue where he was. On the 28th day towards the evening he expired. Though he (a) fainted by the violence of his disease; yet leaning on his Elbow, he reached out his hand to all Soldiers that would touch it in their passage, and (which seemeth incredible) (b) continued in the same posture he had set himself, till the whole Army had saluted him.

Of which he  
dieth the ele-  
venth day.

40. The Soldiers being all gone, he asked his friends about him whether they thought they should have such another King. When all kept silence he said, that as he was ignorant hereof, so he knew, could *Prophecie*, and almost see with his eyes how much blood *Macedonia* would shed in this controversy, with what slaughters and bloodshed it would make him a Parentation when he was dead. At length he commanded his body to be buried in the Temple of *Hammon*, and when his friends asked him to whom he would leave his Kingdom, he answered, to the most Valiant. Yet having taken his Ring from his finger he gave it to *Perdiccas*: whereby all conjectured that he commended his Kingdom to him till his Children should grow up. Again, *Perdiccas* demanding of him when he would have Divine honours given to him, he replied, then, when they (his followers) were happy: which were his last words, and a little after he departed. He \* lived 32 years and eight months, reigned twelve, and also eight months. He died six years and ten months after the murder of *Darius*, in the first year of the 114 *Olympiad*, A. M. 3681. 222 years before the *Era* of Christ. *Sisigambis* the Mother of *Darius* having with some patience born the loss both of her Son's life and Empire, when she heard of *Alexander*'s death refused to live any longer. So, refraining from all sustenance she died the fifth day after.

(a) Val. Max.  
lib. 5. cap. 1.  
Exter. Exemp. 1.  
(b) Curtius  
lib. 10. cap. 7.

Justin lib. 12.  
Corn. Nepos in  
Eumene.  
Curtius ut su-  
pra.

\* Justin. Chri-  
stus. Diodorus.

## CHAP. II.

Of such things as hapned after the death of Alexander amongst his Captains, till their Cantonizing of his Empire into their particular Kingdoms, and their taking the Stile and Title of Kings upon them, containing the space of 17 years.

Alexander's Issue and Lineage.

1. Alexander, though he had taken several Wives, yet left but one Son already born of *Baryne*, the Daughter of *Artabazus* a Persian, and another in the belly of *Roxane*, the Daughter of *Oxyaries*. His Son called *Hercule* was despised upon his Mothers account by the Captains, who much scorned the Conquered Nations. He had a sister named *Cleopatra*, Widow to the King of *Epirus* and their Uncle, who was slain in *Italy*; and a base brother called *Aridaus* (begotten on *Philinna* a woman of *Larissa*) who married *Eurydice* the daughter of *Amyntas*, whom being the right Heir, and his Nephew, *Philip* kept from the Kingdom of *Macedonia*, after he had excised the Office of his Protector, and on him bestowed a daughter of his own marriage. This *Amyntas* bore patiently the want of the Kingdom all *Philip's* time, but in the beginning of *Alexander's* reign, with the losse of his life, attempted something. His title through the prowess of the two late Kings was utterly forgotten; *Cleopatra* (as a woman perhaps) was not thought of. *Aridaus* neither by birth, personage, or qualities was fitly endowed; yet upon him the election fell, for want of a better, because the Captains were at a losse what course to take.

Contention amongst his Captains about the succession.

2. For, *Ptolomy* the son of *Lagus* (as he was called; but reputed the son of *Philip*, who, as it's said, having used the company of *Arfinoe* his Mother, put her off in marriage to *Lagus*, when great with Child) rejecting the title of the half Persian brood, though as *Alexander's* Children they should have been considered, was for the Captains their taking the rule upon them, and deciding all things by Vote of the major part. But as he might think this course most likely to serve his own ambition, so *Aristonius* perhaps on the same grounds betook himself to the words of *Alexander*, which he interpreted as meant of *Perdiccas*, because, saying, that he left his Kingdom to the worthiest, at the point of death he delivered to him his Ring. He was seconded by many, who either bore good will to *Perdiccas*, or out of fear that he would carry it, would not venture to oppose him. But he would needs make a shew of modesty, thinking thereby the more to indear himself, whereat *Meleager* an envious man, and one who bore to him a particular grudge, took advantage to inveigh against him, and disturbed all Councils, by persuading the Soldiers that whosoever was the Empire, they had the best title to the Treasure. During the uproar *Aridaus* was mentioned, and his name laid hold on by some peaceable spirits, who labouring betwixt the parties wrought a compofure for the time, wherein yet *Perdiccas* had the better of his adversary. It was agreed, according to the desire of the Infantry, that *Aridaus* the base son of *Philip* should be King, and for as much as he was stupid and dull (rather through the practising of *Olympias* upon him, as some thought, than any Original indisposition) *Perdiccas* was made his Protector, and Commander of his Forces, who hereby in effect was King for a time, though that title, with the name of *Philip*, for a greater grace was conferred upon the other.

The Provinces distributed amongst the Captains.

3. Then did the Officers distribute the Provinces of the Empire amongst themselves. *Macedonia* and *Greece* were left to *Antipater*, *Thrace* with the neighbouring Countreys was assigned to *Lysimachus*; *Egypt*, with all that which of *Cyrene*, *Africa*, and *Arabia* had belonged to *Alexander*, was set over to *Ptolomy* the son of *Lagus*. *Syria* and *Phoenicia* were committed to *Loomedon*; *Armenia* to *Neoptolemus*; *Mesopotamia* to *Arcefilas*. In *Asia* the lesse, *Cappadocia* and *Paphlagonia*, with the Countreys thereto adjoining,

which *Alexander* had passed by in his Conquests, were assigned to *Eumenes*; *Pamphylia*, *Lycia*, *Lycaonia*, and the greater *Phrygia* to *Antigonus*; the lesser *Phrygia* as far as the *Hellepont* to *Leonatus*; *Cilicia* to *Philotas*, together with *Isauria*; and *Caria* to *Cassander*. *Menander* was confirmed in the Government of *Lydia* given him by *Alexander*. The Isle of *Cyprus* remained in the power of certain Governours to which he had granted it; and all that part of his Empire from *Babylon* Eastward continued in the state wherein he left it. Thus was his Dominions disposed of otherwise than he intended, for one telleth us that he made a Will, which he delivered to the *Rhodians*, and another affirmeth, that thereby all was given to one onely Successor. After this his Funerals were thought of, his body having lyen seven dayes neglected. Yet no corruption had seized on it, and it looked as fresh in the face as though it had been living, which as it's said made the *Egyptians* and *Chaldeans* afraid to touch it, but having prayed that mortals might lawfully do it, they embalmed, and after that adorned it with royal Ensigns. The care of the burial was committed to one *Aridaus* (not the King, though some have so mistaken) another of the Captains, who spent two years in making preparation for it, which made *Olympias* tax the late ambition of her son, and bewail his misfortune together in the same speech, as *Elia* observed. For, the burial of *Alexander* was to be ushered in by the Funerals of many of his followers.

*Ptolomy* getteth possession of *Egypt*.

The Lamiian War in *Greece*.

*Perdiccas* subdueth *Cappadocia*.

Civil Wars amongst the Captains.

*Perdiccas* goeth against *Ptolomy*.

4. *Ptolomy* got possession of *Egypt* without any trouble, and settled himself therein, partly by his fair carriage towards the Inhabitants, and partly by the power of an Army, which he raised by the virtue of 8000 Talents. Hearing that *Perdiccas* had an intention to deprive him of his Government, he contracted affinity with *Antipater*, and making away *Cleomenes* his Lieutenant, because he was much addicted to the Protector, fortified the Countrey. *Antipater* was now employed in the Lamiian War against the *Athenians* and *Etolians*, who refused to receive their Exiles, as was hinted before, and so distressed him in battel, that he was forced to fly to *Lamia*, a Citie of *Phthiotis*. Here *Leosthenes* the *Athenian* General besieged him; but when he perceived him forsaken by the *Etolians* he issued out, and slew him in the charge, being an excellent Soldier, and one who had deserved well of *Greece*. *Leonatus* Governour of the lesser *Phrygia*, allured by promise of his daughter, came over to help *Antipater*; but marching through *Thessaly* was driven into a Fen by the *Gracians*, and there slain. At his mishap *Antipater* (who coming thither the day after, united his Forces with his own) is said to have rejoiced, because he had determined to make himself Master of *Macedonia*. At this time *Perdiccas* taking the King along with him, went against *Ariarathes* of *Cappadocia*, whom getting into his hands he Crucified, and subduing those Countreys which *Alexander* had passed by, gave them to *Eumenes*, according to agreement. *Craterus* not long after passed over into *Macedonia*, to the assistance of *Antipater*, with 10000 *Macedonians*, and 150 *Persians*, which Force united to the Army of *Antipater*, overpowered the joyned strength of the *Gracians*.

5. After this begun the Civil Wars betwixt the Captains themselves. For, *Perdiccas* breathing after the Sovereignty, and knowing how able the other were to withstand him, grudged *Ptolomy* exceedingly the possession of *Egypt*, and through the perswasion of *Eumenes* procured much enmity, in that having married *Nicaea* the daughter of *Antipater*, by his advice, he resolved to put her away, and take *Cleopatra* to wife, the daughter of *Philip*, and sister to *Alexander*. This being made known to *Antigonus*, he certified *Antipater* of it, and being calumniated by *Perdiccas* (who intended to make him away) he fled unto him, with *Demetrius* his son. *Perdiccas* consulting with his Officers what in this case was to be done, resolved first to set upon *Egypt*, left *Ptolomy* during his absence in *Greece*, should seize upon *Asia*. And to keep *Asia* against *Antipater* and *Craterus*, he left *Eumenes* with large power over the Provinces, joyning with him *Alcetas* his own brother, and *Neoptolemus*. *Perdiccas* taking along with him *Aridaus* the King, and

T t t

young

A. M. 3682.  
Ol. 114. ann. 2.  
V. C. 431.  
Ante Christum  
321.  
Ptolom. 1.

Diodorus l. 20.  
ad Ol. 118.  
ann. 4.  
Ammianus  
Mar. l. 23.

Justin.  
Curtius l. 10.  
Diodorus ad  
Olymp. 114.  
ann. 2. & 3.

\* Var. Hist.  
lib. 13. c. 30.

A. M. 3682.  
Ol. 114. ann. 2.  
V. C. 431.  
Ptolom. 2.

Diod.  
Arianus.  
Justin. l. 13.

young *Alexander* now born of *Roxane* (who was eight months gone with child of him when his Father died) for a more specious pretence, marched against *Psolomy*. *Antipater*, and *Craterus*, hearing how things went, clapped up a Peace presently with the *Ætolians*, and leaving *Polyperchon* to govern *Macedonia* and *Greece*, passed over the *Hellepont*, and dispatched away messengers to *Psolomy* to enter into a league and society with him.

A. M. 3684.  
Ol. 114. an. 4.  
V. C. 433.  
Psolom. 3.

*Eumenes* left by him in *Asia* getteth the better.

6. *Alceas*, with those *Macedonians* he commanded, flatly refused to fight against them; and *Neopolemus* envying *Eumenes* the chief command, plainly revolted. After this, some were sent to feel *Eumenes*, but he answered, that he would rather die than betray his trust, whereupon *Antipater* and *Craterus* divided their Forces. *Antipater* marched towards *Egypt* to joyn with *Psolomy*, and *Craterus* staid to oppose *Eumenes*, with whom fighting in *Cappadocia*, his Horse stumbled, and he was run through with a Lance, and after the fight died of the wound: *Neopolemus* also grappling with *Eumenes* was slain by him. By this time *Perdiccas* with the two Kings came to *Pelusium* in *Egypt*, where though *Psolomy* purged himself of the crimes objected against him, yet he would pursue his enterprize, though contrary to the inclination of his Soldiers, his end being hereby to be brought about. Divers of his friends presently forsook him; yet he set upon a Castell near the *Nile*, and not being able to gain it, marched away and came over against *Memphis*, where the River parting into two streams, maketh an Island very convenient for the lodging of his Army. Endeavouring to bring his men into it, he lost 200 in the Ford, for that those who first waded over so removed the sand at the bottom, that the River was too deep for such as followed. Yet did he command those who had got safe over to return; of whom part were drowned, some carried down the stream to the Enemy, and others being tossed to and fro in the River were devoured by Crocodils. By this imprudent act the minds of his followers were so turned against him, that too of his chief Officers revolting, he was slain by certain Horse-men, after he had continued in his power almost three years. \* One reporteth, that he was slain at the River *Nile* by *Seleucus* and *Antigonus*.

Idem, Pausan. in Atticis.  
\* Corn. Nepos in Eumene.

7. *Psolomy* came over to the Kings, whom with the Officers he magnificently entertained, and then an election being to be made of a new Governor for them in the room of *Perdiccas*, though he could easily have procured himself to be chosen, yet he got two others elected, viz. *Pithon* one of *Alexander's* most intimate friends, and *Aideus*, who having the care of the funeral committed to him, had at the desire of *Psolomy* buried the King's body at *Memphis*, against the will of *Perdiccas*. The Army now being displeased at the death of *Craterus*, declared *Eumenes* an Enemy, and chose *Antigonus* together with *Antipater* Generals for the subduing of him. But *Pithon* and *Aideus* held not their places long, for *Eurydice* the wife of *Alexander* the King, being a woman of a notable spirit, would have nothing done without her knowledge, and grew so intolerable, that *Pithon* therewith wearied, and seeing the *Macedonians* too much addicted to her, called the Soldiers together, and laid down his Protectorship. Into his room then *Antipater* was elected with full power.

He createth *Antigonus* General against *Eumenes*.

8. Against him also *Eurydice* raised such a Sedition in the Army, taking occasion at the want of pay, that with much ado he escaped the danger of his life, by the means of *Antigonus* and *Seleucus*. After this, he anew divided such Provinces as he saw convenient, placing and displacing Governours. He created *Antigonus* General against *Eumenes*, sending his own son *Cassander* as Colonel with him, by whom he might be certified, in case he attempted any thing for his own establishment; and then with the two Kings he marched for *Macedonia*, *Eumenes* having intelligence concerning these Councils, made all preparations possible for resistance. In the Spring *Antigonus* came against him into *Cappadocia*, where he first attempted by Libels thrown into his Camp, to draw his Soldiers from their obedience, offering a great reward for his head. *Eumenes* gave his Soldiers thanks for their fidelity, but told them, that these Libels were feigned by himself to try them, which was a notable device (and

A. M. 3685.  
Ol. 115. an. 1.  
V. C. 434.  
Psolom. 4.

*Eumenes* worsted through treachery.

Besieged in *Nora*.

*Antipater* dieth and leaveth his place to *Polyperchon*.

His death procureth the enlargement of *Eumenes*.

of such he was full) to make them wary of giving credit to such for the time to come. Yet some proved false to him, as one *Perdiccas*, who drew away a considerable party, but was pursued and taken, and being put to death, the Soldiers returned to obedience. But *Apollonides* his General of the Horse did most mischief, for being corrupted by *Antigonus*, when they came to joyn battel he passed over with his Troops to him, whereby *Eumenes* had the worst of it, and lost about 8000 men, with his Carriages.

9. *Apollonides* the Traytor he caught and hanged: then, flying a private way, he returned to the Camp, and there buried his dead, to the wonder and amazement of the Enemy, after which he could have plundered the carriages of *Antigonus* but for burthening his Soldiers with the booty. Being driven to and fro in this flight, at length he betook himself to a Castell called *Nora*, situate in the Confines of *Cappadocia* and *Lycaonia*, and dismissed all his Army, except 500 Horse-men, and 200 Foot, as also such friends as were unwilling to undergo the hardship of a Siege. *Antigonus* before he would lay close siege to the place, called him forth to a Treaty, requiring him to come to him a Superiour, to which he answered, that he accounted no man his Superiour so long as he had a Sword by his side. This parley, though managed with much respect, came to nothing, and *Antigonus* leaving a party sufficient to carry on the Siege, marched against *Alceas* and *Attalus*, two of *Eumenes* his confederates, whom he suppressed. About this time *Antipater* died in *Macedonia*, and at his death more swayed by the Publick good than any selfish respect, left *Polyperchon* (who after himself was the oldest of *Alexander's* friends now living) Protector of the Kings, and Captain, with full authority. *Cassander* his son stomached this very much, and consulting how to advance himself to be chief, secretly entered into confederacy with divers Captains. Amongst these was *Psolomy*, whom he desired that he would send him some ships out of *Phœnicia* (for all that Country, together with *Judea*, hee had now got into his power) into the *Hellepont*. But the death of *Antipater* strangely also made way for the enlargement of *Eumenes*.

A. M. 3686.  
Ol. 115. an. 2.  
V. C. 435.  
Psolom. 5.

10. For, *Antigonus* now being left chief in *Asia*, thought of no lesse than getting it all into his power, and for that end strove to ingratiate himself with the several Captains. Judging that the conjunction of *Eumenes* might be of great advantage to him, he sent *Hieronymus* his Country-man (who being an \* Historian, wrote of the acts of *Alexander* and his Successors) to desire him, that forgetting the fight in *Cappadocia*, he would enter into society with him, and receive a larger Province. He required that he should take an oath, which, slightly passing over the Kings, he had framed to his own advantage. *Eumenes* unwilling to swear fealty to him, with the assent of *Hieronymus* and the besiegers, changed the form of the oath, and swore to have the same friends and enemies, not onely with him, but with *Olympias*, and the Kings. Hereupon the Siege was raised after a years continuance, which he had born with admirable chearfulness and prudence; and now being let loose drew many followers after him, so that within a few dayes, besides the 500 which had continued with him in the Castell, he had 2000 at his devotion. *Antigonus* was very angry that he had changed the form of the oath, and by Letters checked the besiegers, for admitting of it, requiring them to besiege him again; but it was too late. Thus, they were as far from closing as before, and still were further set at distance by the affaires which now were on foot in *Macedonia*.

11. *Polyperchon* having succeeded *Antipater* (as was before said) recalled *Olympias* out of *Epirus*, whether her enmity with *Antipater* had driven her, inviting her to take the care of her young grand-son upon her. But *Cassander* resolving to venture for *Macedonia*, entred into confederacy with *Psolomy* and *Antigonus*, the later whereof gladly promised him assistance, out of love to the memory of his father, as he pretended, but indeed desirous that he should be diverted by so great a Warre, whilst he in the mean time might make sure of *Asia*. *Polyperchon* to secure *Greece*, in the name of

A. M. 3687.  
Ol. 115. an. 3.  
V. C. 436.  
Psol. 6.

Cassander la-  
boured for  
Asia India,  
Eumenes is  
stirred up to  
stand for the  
King's in-  
terest.

the Kings published an Edict for the abolishment of all such Oligarchies, as since the passing of Alexander into Asia, had been erected in any of the Cities, which by virtue hereof he restored to their former liberty, hereby to oblige, and keep them from yielding to Cassander. In the same name he also wrote to Eumenes, upon whom he confirmed his former Government, and bestowed more, beseeching him, that together with himself, he would take upon him the protection of the King's house; if he pleased, in Macedonia, but rather in Asia against Antigonus, who now had visibly revolted from it: Moreover, he wrote to the Treasurers in Cilicia, to furnish Eumenes with money, and to the Argyraspide (or the old Soldiers with Silver Shields) to obey him in all things. Olympias also by letters desired his help, owning him as the most faithful of those remaining, who could assist against the ruine and desolation of her family.

12. Eumenes not able to stay any longer in Cappadocia, because Menander was sent from Antigonus against him, halted into Cilicia, where the Argyraspide being 3000 in number joyned with him. Fearing the envy of the Macedonians, for that he was but a Stranger of the Cherronesus of Thrace, he carried it with great civility towards all, and made himself but equal to the other Captains. To contain them in order, he feigned that Alexander had appeared to him in a dream, sitting upon his Throne, and commanding as formerly, in compliance wherewith, he caused a Throne to be erected in a Tent as for the King, whereon was also laid a Diadem and Scepter; and here the Council of Officers were alwaies to assemble: Then sending his friends abroad he raised many men, the report of the largesse of his pay drawing Soldiers out of Greece it self. Ptolomy and Antigonus sent to take off the Argyraspide, and Teutamus one of their Captains was persuaded by them, but was reduced to his former resolution by Amigenes his Colleague, and the common Soldiers were quieted by Eumenes, who came upon them while yet they were in fear of Antigonus, who threatened, that except they would deliver him up, he would come and destroy them with his Army. After this, Eumenes marched into Phœnicia, intending there to provide shipping, that if need were, he might have intercourse with Polysperchon. He also intended to rescue Phœnicia out of Ptolome's hands; but finding himself unable to accomplish this design, he began his march through Cœlesyria, and passed on till he came to Carra near Babylon, where he took up his Winter quarters.

Who march-  
eth to Carra.

13. Antigonus having overthrown at Sea Polysperchon's Navy, and attempted something against the Governours near the Hellespont, now halted to make a full conquest of Asia. He chose out of all his Army 20000 Foot, and 2000 Horse, wherewith, for expedition, he marched with speed into Cilicia to suppress Eumenes his forces ere he could get them together, which caused the other sooner to depart into Phœnicia, whence he marched to Carra. Whilst he here remained he sent to Seleucus Governour of Babylon, and Pithon of Media, for aid against the enemies of the Kings; to which they answered, that they were ready to assist the Kings, but not him, who was condemned by a Council of the Macedonians, and they solicited the Captains of the Argyraspide to forsake him; but in vain. After this he resolved for Susa, thinking to get aide out of the upper Provinces, and money out of the Treasury, and thither he came with much difficulty, Seleucus having so drowned his Camp, that he was forced to get off his men with boats. It hapned that the Governours of the Provinces were at this time gathered together with many forces against Pithon, who having slain Philotas, had placed his own brother Eudramus in his stead. Fearing the like might be attempted against themselves, they armed, and having overthrown him in batrel, drove out of Parthia to Babylon, where he fled to Seleucus for relief. Having formerly sent them Letters from the Kings, he now also solicited them for aid when thus met together, to which they agreed, and came down. These were Peucestes Governour of Persia, one of the Keepers of the late King's body, and now chosen by the rest for their Generalissimo; Polemon of Car-

The Govern-  
ours of the  
upper Provin-  
ces joyn with  
him.

Diod.  
Plutarch &  
Corn. Nepos in  
Eumene.  
Polyænus Strab-  
onem. l. 4.

A. M. 3688;  
Ol. 115. an. 4;  
V. C. 437.  
Ptolom. 7.

mania, Sibyrtus of Arachosia, Sisanaer of Aria, and Drangiana; Andrabazus, who was sent from Oxyartes Governour of the Parapomisada, and Eudamus (or Eudamon) Governour of the Oxydrace and Malli, who brought with him out of India 120 Elephants (besides other Forces) which he got into his hands after he had slain Porus the King. Their united Force consisted of above 18700 foot, and 4600 horse, which being joyned to Eumenes his Army, made up a considerable body.

Antigonus  
marcheth a-  
gainst him.

14. They had fallen out about choosing a new General, had not Eumenes his former device of setting up Alexander's Pavilion and Throne prevented it, whither he persuaded them to repair, and rule in common; after which he took as much money out of the Treasury at Susa as his wants required. In Spring Antigonus being come into Mesopotamia marched to Babylon, where joyning in Confederacy with Seleucus and Pithon, he received some Forces from them, and passed the River Tigris. Eumenes hearing of his coming went down to Pasiptus, where he fell upon such of his Soldiers as were got over the River, which he filled also with Carkeises, and took 4000 prisoners. Antigonus therefore bent his course another way to the Citie Badaca situate upon the River Eulans, whence he journeyed through the Countrey of the Cossæans with great difficulty, & hardship, into the habitable parts of Media, where he refreshed, and quieted his men now ready to mutiny, by reason of their tedious journey. Eumenes marched into Persia, where the whole Army was Magnificently entertained by Peucestes the Satrapa, who now thought to establish himself in the Chief power, but by the great cunning of Eumenes, together with the other Captains, was retained in his former condition, and brought to a greater observance of him. Antigonus, following him into Persia, he returned to meet him, but feasting his Army, he drunk to excess, that a great distemper thereby contracted, stopped him for some dayes, and then was he carried in a Litter out of the noise, till such time as the Front would not march without him in the head of them. He was therefore constrained to lead them, and shortly after to frame the batrel in his Litter, which Antigonus saw, and laughed at it.

They meet.

15. Four dayes were spent in light skirmishing, during which time Antigonus endeavoured to draw away Eumenes his men; but to no purpose; and afterwards resolved to go 3 dayes journey off into Gabiene, for that the Armies were both much straitened for necessities. Eumenes hearing this, sent some, who as Fugitives should acquaint him how as that night he intended to fall in upon his Camp, which he believing, stayed, expecting him, and then did Eumenes make haste to get into Gabiene before him. Antigonus seeing himself deluded, marched after with great expedition, and leaving behind the rest of his Army, with a party got before him. He presented then himself to his view upon the Mountains, which Eumenes seeing, and thinking he had all his Forces with him, made an Alt, and so they mutually deceived each other. Here in the Countrey of the Paratraceni they joyned batrel, wherein Eumenes had the better, though the other got the advantage of ground; but then his Soldiers beginning to be refractory would needs depart to their baggage, and not stay to bury their dead. Whereupon Antigonus doing this first, the victory came to be controverted.

The victory  
controverted.

16. Antigonus finding himself to have had the worst of it, went his way to Gamarga in Media, where was plenty of Provisions, and then Eumenes finding his Army in no good case to pursue him, departed to Gabiene. Here he divided his Forces into their Winter quarters, not according to his own desire, but the pleasure of the Soldiers, for the old ones which had followed Alexander in his Conquests were grown so high, as they would rather give Laws to their Captains than receive them. Antigonus hearing this, thought to surprize them on a sudden, and for that they should know nothing of it, resolved to take a by-way, which yet was declared to Eumenes, who not being able to call his Soldiers together so soon as was requisite, betook himself to his seldom failing policy. He caused fires to be made on the Mountains where the Enemy was to passe, which they beholding, thought he had there

A. M. 3689;  
Ol. 116. an. 1.  
V. C. 438.  
Ptolomei 8.

Diodorus ut  
supra, Plutarch,  
in Eumene, &  
Cornel. Nepos.



there with him his whole Army, and so took the common way, after they were come into the midst of their journey. *Antigonus* stayed one day to recruit his Army, and *Eumenes* gathered in the mean time his Forces together, which admired his prudence so much, as they ordered him to be the Chief, which made him come into the danger of life, divers of the great ones conspiring against him, which made him say he was amongst a company of wild beasts, and caused him to make his Will, and tear his Letters, lest any of them that had wrote unto him should be troubled after his death. This as it was faithfully done to his friends, so was it also in good time, as it after fell out.

*Eumenes* get-  
teth the bet-  
ter,

But is be-  
trayed by his  
men,

And killed.

17. For, shortly after, *Antigonus* and he came to a Pitch-battel, which decided the controversy, though not for the Conquerour. *Eumenes* lead into the field 36700 foot, 6050 horse, and 114 Elephants, *Antigonus* brought 22000 foot, 9000 horse, and 65 Elephants. The *Argyraspides* (or silver shields) got the victory, for they put all *Antigonus* his foot to flight, and killed 5000 of them, so that though *Pencestes* withdrew himself out of the fight with his own horse, and 1500 more; yet *Eumenes* with the losse of 700 on his side got the day. But neither valour nor wisdom could befriend him, for the place where they fought being exceeding dusty, so as ones sight was taken away at a little distance, *Antigonus* sends a party of his horse to plunder his Enemies baggage, so that the *Macedonians* though Conquerors, after the battel fell into a deep melancholy for the losse of their Wives and Children taken away, and *Teumamus* first without the knowledge of any one sent to *Antigonus*, who Covenanted with him to restore him all, on condition *Eumenes* were delivered to him, and they would all passe into his Camp, whereupon the *Macedonians*, the 1000 which *Pencestes* commanded, and most of the other Captains revolted, and *Eumenes* having his hands tied behind him was delivered up; his Army shamefully following him to the Tents of *Antigonus*, leading it self in Triumph after him. *Antigonus* for shame would not see *Eumenes* his old fellow Soldier in that condition; but assigned him to Keepers, at first requiring he should be strictly looked to, but afterwards remitting that rigour till almost all perswaded him to make an end of him. This he was loath to do, and took 7 dayes to consult in; but then fearing some Sedition might arise in the Army, he commanded his dayly allowance of meat should be withdrawn, saying, he would never lay hands upon him. Two or three dayes he languished in this condition, and then the Army being to march, one was sent in, and killed him without the knowledge of *Antigonus*; so fell this brave man, excelled in Military glory but by few Captains, in the eighth year after the death of *Alexander*.

18. *Cassander* having obtained of *Antigonus* 35 ships, and 5000 men, *Diodorus* l. 18. sayled with them to *Athens*, which together with the Haven he had got into his power, by means of *Nicanor*, whom he had sent before-hand for that purpose. Against him came *Polyperchon*, intending to besiege him, but his Provisions failing, he left his son with a party in *Attica*, and with the greatest part of the Army marched into *Peloponnesus* against the Inhabitants of *Megalopolis*, who onely amongst the Cities had refused to take away their Oligarchy, and had joyned with *Cassander*. Here he had the worst of it, and that brought him so into contempt, as most of the *Greek* Cities revolted from him to *Cassander*, and the *Athenians* seeing they could not shake off his Garrison, agreed with him that he should retain the Fort *Munychia*, till the War was finished with the Kings, but that the Citie should be governed by one whom he appointed, which was *Demetrius Phalerens* the Philosopher, *Theophrastus* his Scholar, who Governed ten years with moderation, and was honored with 360 Statues. Then *Cassander* making an expedition into *Macedonia*, found there many friends. The year after, *Polyperchon* by the help of *Acida*, King of the *Molossians*, reduced *Olympias* with *Alexander* the son of *Rhoxane* her Grand-Child into *Macedonia*, whereupon *Eurydice* the Wife of *Arideus* the King fortified herself, and sent to *Cassander* for aid, but the *Macedonians* fearing the Majesty of *Olympias* fell away from her,

*Laetius* in  
vita  
*Phocionis*.

*Olympias* de-  
stroyeth *Ari-  
deus* and his  
Wife.

Killerh *Nica-  
nor* and others.

She is also  
murdered by  
*Cassander*.

*Pithon* put to  
death by *An-  
tigonus*.

Who ordering  
matters as he  
pleaseth in the  
East,

*Seleucus* flyeth  
into Egypt.

her, and she with her husband being both committed to prison, he was first made away, and then *Olympias* sent her a Sword, an Halter, and Poyson, to chuse which of them she pleased; so she praying the gods that she might have at length such gifts sent unto her, hanged her self with her Garter. This hapned after *Arideus* had enjoyed the title of King six years and four monerhs.

19. *Olympias* killed *Nicanor* the brother of *Cassander*, and destroyed the Sepulchre of his other brother *Iollas*, and then chusing out 100 of his chiefest friends put them to cruel deaths. But he hearing she was arrived in *Macedonia*, marched out of *Peloponnesus* against her, whereupon she made *Aristonous* her General, and commanded him to meet *Cassander*, she betaking herself, with *Alexander* her Grand-son, his Mother, and others, into *Pydna*, hoping he should have many assistants, but she was deceived. For, *Cassander* besieged her by Land and Sea. *Acida* was coming to assist her, but by his means his men fell away from him, and banishing him his Countrey, joyned themselves and Kingdom to the other; others in *Macedonia* intended to aid her, but fearing *Cassander*, fell off also to him, and as for *Polyperchon* in whom rested now all her hope, *Callas* being sent against him corrupted also most of his Soldiers. The siege therefore lasted without any let, till famine so prevailed in the Citie, as many of the Defendants came out, and she was then driven by necessity to yield, very hardly obtaining promise of safety to her person. Afterwards he caused such as whose Kinsfolks she had put to death to accuse her to the *Macedonians*, who naturally hated, and now incensed by them, condemned her. Then did he send some of her friends to her, willing her to fly, but she denied it, and resolved to plead her cause before the people, so that he fearing their affections might be moved towards her, sent some Soldiers to kill her. They were so struck with her Majesty, as they returned without doing their errand, but then some the friends of whom she had made away came in, and slew her, not at all amated, or behaving herself otherwise than as the Mother of *Alexander*, whom she had outlived for eight years.

20. *Pithon* the Governour of *Media*, envying *Antigonus* his power, and greatness, laboured to draw most of the Soldiers now in their Winter quarters to his own party, intending to establish himself, which *Antigonus* being aware of, gave out that he would commit the East unto him, and by divers friendly Letters drew him to him, after which he got him condemned in a Council of his Associates, and put him to death. Then marched he into *Persia*, being received by the Inhabitants as King, for that now without controversy he was Lord of *Asia*. Here calling a Council, he confirmed divers in their Governments, and amongst the rest *Sibyrtius* of *Arachosia*, to whom he delivered 1000 of the most turbulent *Argyraspides* (who had delivered up *Eumenes*) under pretence to serve him in the Wars, but indeed to destroy them, giving him secret order to expose them to ruin, that so they might never see more *Macedonia* nor the *Greek* Sea. Perceiving *Pencestes* to be in great favour here, he removed him from the Government, to the great grief of the people, and then got the Treasure at *Susa* into his hands, out of which he made 25000 Talents. Thence he journeyed to *Babylon*, where *Seleucus* the Governour royally entertained him, but offering to punish a certain Officer of the Army without his knowledge, he called him to an account for the Revenues of the place. *Seleucus* denied to account, saying, that place was given him by the *Macedonians* for his faithfull service performed to *Alexander*; but the Contest grew sharper every day, so as he remembering, and fearing the case of *Pithon*, with fifty horse in his Company fled into Egypt. *Antigonus* was glad he had gotten *Babylon*, and that without any violence offered to his ancient friend; but being told by the *Chaldeans*, that if he let him go he should get all *Asia* into his power, and he himself should die in a battel against him, he sent some to pursue him, but in vain.

21. *Seleucus* being courteously entertained by *Ptolomy*, sent his friends into *Europe* to stir up *Cassander* and *Lyfimachus* against *Antigonus*; who suspecting

*Diodorus* l. 19.

A. M. 3690:  
Ol. 116. ann. 2.  
V. C. 439.  
*Ptolom.* 9.



Hercules his  
brother.

of *Barfines* (never married to *Alexander*) was held as illegitimate by the Captains, though born before his Father's death. His name was *Hercules*, being now kept at *Pergamus*, whence he was called shortly after the death of the other, by *Polyperchon*, who now being in *Peloponnesus*, and envying *Cassander* the Principality of *Macedonia*, sent about to his friends, intreating, that the youth being seventeen years old, might be brought, and established in his Father's Throne. The *Etolians* especially, with others, embraced the motion, so as he got together about 20000 Foot, and 1000 Horse, in no great space, and within a while after gathered up a numerous Army, with which he marched and came on his way to *Symphalia*. Here *Cassander* opposed him, and seeing that his *Macedonians* took well enough this reduction of their Prince, and fearing they might revolt to him, sent to *Polyperchon*, and with vast promises secretly persuaded him to make away the young man, which accordingly was performed. About this time *Demetrius* overthrew *Ptolomy* his Lieutenants in *Cilicia*, and he to be revenged invaded *Licia*, where he took some Cities, after that failed into *Greece*, where he endeavoured in emulation to *Antigonus* to set the Cities at liberty, but the *Greeks* not keeping their promise of sending money and corn, having received *Sicyon* and *Corinth* from the Widdow of *Alexander* the son of *Ephastion* (who had revenged stoutly her husband's death, and kept still these places) he agreed with *Cassander* that each should retain such places as he had in his power, and returned.

Made away,

26. *Alexander* had yet a sister living called *Cleopatra*, formerly the Widdow of *Alexander* King of *Epirus* (who making an Expedition into *Italy*, perished, against the *Lucanians*, as *Livie* tells us) and after that married to *Perdiccas*, whom also now being at *Sardis*, *Antigonus* seems to have wooed. But she inclining rather to *Ptolomy*, Role out of *Sardis* to go to him, whereupon *Antigonus* took such order by the Governour of the Town, that she was not onely stopped in her journey, but by means also of some women secretly made away, after which to colour the matter he put some of them to death, and buried her body with royal magnificence. Shortly after this, *Demetrius* was sent into *Greece* to set the Cities at liberty, which he accomplished at this time for *Athens*; *Demetrius Phalareus* being driven out, and conducted to *Thebes*, where he lived till *Cassander's* death, and then fled to *Ptolomy*. After this, *Demetrius* being recalled to make War in *Cyprus*, thither he passed, where he overthrew *Menelaus*, *Ptolomy* his brother and Governour there, and pursuing him to the City *Salamine*, slew 3000 of his men, and took 1000, and then besieged him in that place. *Ptolomy* hearing of the defeat of his men, came both with Sea and Land forces, and engaged the besiegers in battel, wherein though he overthrew that Wing against which he himself fought, yet the other prevailing, he was discomfited with the losse of 8000 men, and all his ships save eight, with which he fled away, and *Demetrius* became Master of the Town and Island. *Antigonus* being elevated with this successe, received the title of King given him by his friends, and a Diadem set upon his head, which title and honour he also gave to his Son *Demetrius*. The *Egyptians* also hearing this, left they should seem to be dejected for their losse, gave the name of King to *Ptolomy*, who thenceforth in all his Letters stiled himself so. Neither now would the other great ones come behind these; for *Seleucus*, *Cassander*, and *Lysimachus*, after their example, took upon themselves the same dignity and title, all the near relations of *Alexander* being quite extinct.

Demetrius his  
Victories a-  
gainst Ptolomy  
whereupon  
Antigonus and  
then the rest  
take the title  
of Kings.

Diodorus ad  
Olymp. 117.  
Justin lib. 15.  
A. M. 3696.  
Ol. 117. an. 4.  
V. C. 445.  
Seleuc. 4.  
Ptolom. 15.

Diodorus l. 20.  
ad Olymp. 118.

idem ibid.  
Plutarch in  
Demetrio.  
Justin lib. 15.  
A. M. 3698.  
Ol. 118. an. 2.  
V. C. 447.  
Seleuci 6.  
Ptolom. 17.

# CHAP.

## CHAP. III.

From Alexanders Captains taking the Title of Kings, to the death  
of Seleucus the Survivor of them, containing the space of  
24 years.

1. *Antigonus* animated by his late successe against *Ptolomy* in *Cyprus*, now thought of no lesse than ouing him also of *Egypt* it self; wherefore recalling his son from the Island, he commanded all his Forces to meet at *Antigonia* (a Citie newly built by him upon the River *Orontes* in *Syria*, as convenient for the lying in wait against the upper Provinces & *Egypt*) which afterwards *Seleucus* destroyed, & translated the Inhabitants to his *Seleucia*. *Antigonus* leading the Land-forces himself, committed the Fleet to his son, which was to lay along upon the Coasts with the Army as it marched. Having good Provision both for men and beasts, he marched through the desert; the Navy went through great hazard at Sea, but the Tempest ceasing in good time, they came all together unto *Nile*. *Ptolomy* by this time had fortified the several mouths of the River, as the Sea-forces could do no good, though they removed from one to another, and the Land-Army could not find any food at that time of the year, the water being very high: Moreover, many fell away to the Enemy, being allured with his promise of 2. l. to every common Soldier, and a Talent to an Officer; so that *Antigonus* was fain to retreat into *Syria*. *Ptolomy* being exceeding glad hereof, sent to his Confederates to acquaint them with his good successe, and now having thus defended his Kingdom, accounted himself rightly to enjoy it, and hereupon some have accounted the beginning of his reign from this very time, fixing it at 19 years distance from the death of *Alexander*.

Antigonus his  
fruitlesse ex-  
pedition a-  
gainst Ptolom-  
y.

And as fruit-  
lesse against  
Rhodes.

A Combina-  
tion against  
him.

Stirs prece-  
ding the great  
battel.

2. This want of successe allayed not the ambition of *Antigonus*. For, he sent his son *Demetrius* presently against the *Rhodians*, who had formerly displeased him by a denial to send him aid, and ships. For, they endeavouring as near as they could to keep in with all these great onessyer were drawn by their private interest, especially to favour *Ptolomy*, from whose Kingdom they got the greatest part of their livelihood by way of Traffick. *Demetrius* according to his fathers command, went, and besieged their Citie, lying before it nigh a whole year, during which time he made all sorts of opposition he could, till ordered by his father to make peace with them, which they were prone to accept of, though *Ptolomy* with others sent them Provisions, and supplies of men. Departing from *Rhodes*, *Demetrius* passed into *Greece* to restore the Cities which *Cassander* and *Polyperchon* had lately mastered through the absence of *Antigonus* his Forces. *Chalcis* he freed from a Garrison of the *Bacotians*, whom he also withdrew from *Cassander's* friendship, joyned in society with the *Etolians*, and afterwards restored *Sicyon*, *Corinth*, *Athens*, and other places to their freedom. *Cassander* seeing things by the help of *Demetrius* to go well with *Greece*, sent over to *Antigonus* to desire peace, but he refused it, except he would refer himself whole unto him. He being affrighted at this, sent to *Lysimachus* in *Thrace*, to come and Consult with him, and then they both dispatch away Messengers to *Ptolomy* and *Seleucus*, to let them see how they were concerned also to resist *Antigonus*. They hearkned willingly to the offers made unto them, and joyned in Confederacy against him as their common Enemy, promising great supplies for carrying on the War.

3. *Cassander* thinking it good policy not to stay for the Enemy to come upon him, but invade him first, gave part of his Army to *Lysimachus* to passe over with it into *Asia*, and with the rest marched for *Thessaly*, there to oppose *Demetrius* and the *Greeks*. There meeting, and incamping with vast Armies, neither of them would begin the battel, expecting how things went in *Asia*, till *Demetrius* was recalled thither by his father. *Lysimachus* being landed there,

Diodorus ibid.

A. M. 3699.  
Ol. 118. an. 3.  
V. C. 448.  
Seleuci 7.  
Ptolom. 18.  
Ptolomeus in  
Regum Canone.

Diodorus ibid.

A. M. 3700.  
Ol. 118. an. 4.  
V. C. 449.  
Seleuci 8.  
Ptolom. 19.

there, the Inhabitants of *Lampachus* submitted to him, whom he restored to their liberty, stormed *Sigens*, and placed a Garrison there; then he took in *Phrygia* upon the *Hellepont*, and divers other places, by the means of *Docius*, an Officer of *Antigonus*, whom he had drawn over to him; *Prepelas* also, whom he sent with a party to subdue the Cities of *Eolis* and *Ionia*, took other Towns. *Antigonus* was at this time celebrating publick Games at *Antigonia*, when hearing this news, he presently broke them off, and with all speed marched against *Lyfmachus*. Whom he reached, and besieged him in his Camp for some time, till he taking the opportunity of a dark and rainy night fled away: Then hearing that *Seleucus* was drawing down his Forces from the upper Provinces, he sent for *Demetrius* to come over with all expedition. *Seleucus* had lately made peace with *Sandrocotus* (or *Andro-cottus*) who being a man of no quality, had solicited the *Indians* to revolt after the death of *Alexander*, and to kill his Officers, and thence took an occasion to subdue them under himself. *Bactria* being subdued, *Seleucus* had waged War with him, but now for a Composition gave to him some Countrey lying upon the River *Indus*, which *Alexander* had taken from the *Arrians*, and received 500 Elephants again of him in exchange. *Ptolomy* with a compleat Army had come into *Calefryia*, where he reduced divers Cities; but as he was besieging *Sidon* came a false report that *Antigonus* had overthrown *Seleucus* and *Lyfmachus*, and now was coming thitherward, wherefore he made a Truce with the *Sidonians* for five months, and returned, but not long after came up again to that fatal engagement with *Antigonus*.

4. The Forces of these several Princes were drawn down to be in readiness against the Spring. *Antigonus* had an Army of 70000 foot, 10000 horse, and 75 Elephants, the contrary party had made up amongst them 64000 foot, 1500 horse, 400 Elephants, and 120 Chariots. *Antigonus* bragged that he would scatter the meeting of these Kings together, as one might do the flocking of birds gathering Corn, with the throwing of a stone; but when they approached, he was more melancholick than usual, and was seen to discourse with his son in private in his Tent, which he never used to do; commended him also to the Army as his Successor. This battle was fought at *Ip-fus*, a Town in *Phrygia*, in which *Demetrius* leading the best party of horse, engaged with *Antiochus* the son (and afterwards Successor) of *Seleucus*, whom he routed, and put to flight; but being too hot in the pursuit undid all: for retiring back he could not again joyn himself with the foot, by reason that the Elephants were gotten between them. *Seleucus* seeing this, made as if he would have fallen upon the Infantry, thus destitute of the horse, wherein his expectation failed him not, for they fearing it, part revolted to him, and the rest were broken, and put to flight. *Antigonus* standing his ground, expected continually *Demetrius* to come to relieve him: but in that expectation ended his life by a multitude of Darts thrown against him, being now something above 80 years old. *Demetrius* his son with 5000 foot, and 4000 horse fled to *Ephesus*, but there fearing his Soldiers might be some way false to him, he fled to *Salamine* in *Cyprus*, which he then held. This fell out in the 3704 year of the World, the fourth of the 119 Olympiad, 23 years after the death of *Alexander*, and six after their taking the Title of Kings upon them.

5. The Conquerours parted his Dominions amongst them, as we are told; but it seems to have been chiefly *Seleucus* and *Ptolomy*, who did not well agree about their prey, and upon this account left a contention to their Successors. *Seleucus* fell presently upon building Cities, the first of which he called after himself *Seleucia*; and the later, to which he transferred the Inhabitants of *Antigonia* (to the number of three thousand five hundred) as we said before, he called *Antiochia*, either after his father or son's name; for both are affirmed, and this afterwards proved the Metropolis of *Syria*. *Ptolomy* after the death of *Antigonus* got *Syria* again, with *Cyprus*, and afterwards *Cyrene* also into his power, and married his daughter *Arfinoe* unto *Lyfmachus*, as few years after his other to *Agathocles* the son. *Seleucus* see-

Plutarch. in  
vita Demetrii,  
Appianus in  
Syriacis.

A. M. 3704.  
Ol. 119. ann. 4.  
V. C. 453.  
Seleuci 12.  
Ptolom. 23.

Idem.

Vide usum  
in prima parte  
Annal. pag. 461.

The Alliances ing that thus these two strengthened themselves in affinity, thought not amiss to joyn also with *Demetrius*, though gone down the wind; and accordingly sent to him for his daughter *Straionice*. He receiving this unexpected Message, sailed with her into *Syria*. Passing by *Cilicia*, which then *Cassander* held, *Plistarchus* his brother cried out that he would invade his Territories, and went straight to *Seleucus* to expostulate with him his being reconciled to the common Enemy. But *Demetrius* landing went to *Quinda*, where finding yet 200 Talents left in the Treasury, he took them away, and so went and met with *Seleucus* at *Oroffus*, who taking his wife away with him to *Antioch*, *Demetrius* seized upon *Cilicia*, and sent his wife *Phila* to *Cassander* her brother, to purge him of those things laid to his charge by *Plistarchus*.

Notwithstanding *Cassander* he held *Cilicia*; but *Seleucus* his son-in-law required, that for a sum of money he would give it up into his hands, which he refused, and then he with some anger demanded *Tyre* and *Sidon* of him, not being content, though he held all from the *Syrian* Sea, as far as *India*, that his father-in-law should rest quiet with it, being sufficiently tossed with adverse fortune, but he as stoutly denied this also, saying, that though he were a thousand times more overcome, yet would he never purchase the affinity of *Seleucus*, and fortified the Cities with Garrisons. The next year *Cassander* King of *Macedonia* died of a Dropsie (which was so loathsome, as Lice withall broke out of him) after he had ruled that Countrey 19 years; 26 after the death of *Alexander*, A. M. 3707.

Cassander  
died.

Scire betwixt  
his sons about  
the Kingdom.

6. He left three sons by *Thessalonice* the daughter of *Philip*, and sister to *Alexander*; *Philip*, *Antipater*, and *Alexander*. The first succeeded his father, but died presently of a Consumption, *Antipater* coming after him killed his mother, for that after her husbands death she seemed to favour his younger brother *Alexander* more than him in the division of the Kingdom; though she besought him by her breasts that gave him suck to spare her life. After her death he endeavoured to expel his brother out of *Macedonia*, who therefore craved aid of *Demetrius*, and *Pyrrhus* King of *Epirus*, who being expelled out of his Kingdom, had married *Ptolomy's* Wives Daughter, and by him was restored. *Demetrius* being now employed otherways, the other came, and received some Countreys in way of encouragement and reward for his service, which he fortified with his own Garrisons. *Antipater* now had his recourse to *Lyfmachus* his father-in-law, who being also hindered with other affairs, and fearing *Demetrius* his coming, advised him to make an agreement with his brother; and for that he knew *Pyrrhus* would in any thing seek to gratifie *Ptolomy*, that he might take him off, he feigned a Letter to him from him, wherein he adviseth him for 300 Talents received from *Antipater* to forsake his Enterprize. *Pyrrhus* as soon as he opened the Letter, easily discerned it to be counterfeit, for that it was not directed after the usual manner, as from the father to the son, but as from the one King to the other.

Procureth the  
destruction of  
them all.

7. *Lyfmachus* his persuasion seems to have wrought so with the Elder, together with the presence of *Pyrrhus*, as they came near to an agreement; but the coming of *Demetrius* spoiled all. For, he having lost *Cyprus* lately to *Ptolomy* (which forced him to quit *Lacedamon*, after he had taken *Athens*, and now had almost taken it also) came into *Macedonia* to amend his fortunes. *Alexander* being troubled at his coming, seeing he knew the peace was partly made, went out to meet, and received him with great honour, but told him he now had no need of his help; but he either having, or pretending to have a suspicion of him, procured him to be slain, telling the *Macedonians* a fair tale afterwards, who seeing the one of *Cassander's* sons thus dead, and hating the other for his impiety towards his mother, received him as King. Some have delivered that *Alexander* used *Demetrius* his help, first in killing his brother *Antipater*, and so revenged the death of his Mother upon him. Others say that *Lyfmachus* after *Alexander's* death, for that he was employed in a War with *Dromicheus* King of the *Getes*, delivered also up to *Demetrius*, that part which belonged to *Antipater* his son-in-law, and afterwards

Plutarch. ibid.

A. M. 3707.  
Ol. 120. ann. 3.  
V. C. 456.  
Seleuci 15.  
Ptolom. 26.

Idem ibid.  
& in vita  
Pyrrhi.  
Jul. lib. 16.

Plutarch. in  
Demetrio.  
A. M. 3711.  
Ol. 121. ann. 3.  
V. C. 460.  
Seleuci 18.  
Ptol. 30.

Pausanias in  
Bæoticis.

Justin ut  
supra.

wards flew him also, when he complained to him that by his means he had lost his Kingdom, and imprisoned *Eurydice* his wife, his own daughter, for partaking with him in the complaint. But thus (one way or other) *Antipater* was revenged for his mother's death; and so in a short time fell the posterity of *Cassander*, by the just Judgment of God, as Heathen Writers observe.

Demetrius getting Macedonia aspires still after his former height.

8. For some time *Demetrius* enjoyed *Macedonia*, during which he still aspired after his former height and power: for now having this Kingdom and *Thessaly* in his hands, as also *Athens* and *Megara*, and the greater part of *Peloponnesus*, he subdued the *Boeotians*. Then hearing *Lyfimachus* to be taken prisoner by the King of the *Getes* (who shortly after yet set him at liberty) he resolved to return for *Thrace*; but the *Boeotians* revolting caused him to retreat, though on his march thither; coming back he found that his son *Antigonus* had overthrown the revolters in fight, but *Thebes* still remained untaken, and whilst he was going about that, *Pyrhus* of *Epirus* (being now alienated from him since the death of *Deidamia* his sister which *Demetrius* had married) invaded *Thessaly* from his own Frontiers, and pierced as far as the Straights of *Thermopylae*. *Demetrius* hearing this, left his son in the Siege, and hastened against him; but he staid not his coming but retired, and then *Demetrius* fortifying *Thessaly* returned to *Thebes*, where the Inhabitants so stoutly defended themselves, that he lost many men, and himself was wounded in the neck; yet according to his skill and fortune in taking of Cities (whence he had the Surname of *Polioretes*) he stormed the place, and though he pretended at first severely to punish the Inhabitants, yet he satisfied himself with the death of ten or thirteen, and banishing a few, pardoned the rest.

9. Finding that his *Macedonians* were quiet when abroad, but seditious at home, he fell upon the *Aetolians*, to divert them. Wasting their borders there he left *Pantauchus* with some Forces, and with the rest marched against *Pyrhus*, who hearing it, came out to meet him, but they missed of each other, and went several ways; *Demetrius* into *Epirus* which he harraled; *Pyrhus* light upon *Pantauchus*, who challenging him to fight gave him a wound, but he received two for it himself, and thereupon falling he had been slain, but that his friends presently rescued him, after which his Army was put to flight, and 5000 of them taken. After this, *Demetrius* fell sick at *Pella*, and then *Pyrhus* again invaded his Territories a great way, no body resisting him; nay, he had such an opportunity, as scarce could he have desired a better, for seizing upon the whole Kingdom, many revolting to him, and *Demetrius* his Captains making but slow endeavours to hinder his progress. But he having his mind set more upon booty than any thing else, stayed not their coming, but fled away, losing many of his men in the retreat. For all this *Demetrius* seeing him have a restless spirit, thought it not amiss to reconcile him unto him; but especially at this time, for now he resolved to make for his Father's Kingdom with all the might he possibly could, and therefore left he should leave an Enemy at his back, concluded a Peace, and entered into a league with him.

But labouring to get

10. Greater preparations he made than ever had been since *Alexander* his time. For he got together little less than 100000 Foot, and 12000 Horse, a Navie also of 500 sail; some ships whereof were of extraordinary bignesse; *Seleucus*, *Ptolomy*, and *Lyfimachus*, being startled hereat, combined together for resistance, and jointly sent to *Pyrhus* to move him to break the league which *Demetrius* had made with him, as they alleged, not to rest in peace, but to make War upon whom he pleased. He believing as much, agreed with them, for that he hoped *Demetrius* might as easily lose *Macedonia* as he had got it, and then *Ptolomy* sailing into *Greece*, solicited there the Cities from their obedience. *Lyfimachus* from *Thrace*, and *Pyrhus* from his borders made inroads into *Macedonia*. *Demetrius* first began to march against *Lyfimachus*, but afterwards hearing that *Pyrhus* had gotten *Berrhaea* into his hands, returned and went against him thither, where when he was come, divers from the Town came into his Camp, and so ex-

A. M. 3717.  
Ol. 123. u. 1.  
V. C. 466.  
Seleuci 25.  
Ptolom. Lag.  
30.

Loath all,

rolled the valour and kindness of *Pyrhus*, as the *Macedonians*, first in little Companies, and after all the Army revolted to him; so as *Demetrius* was much deceived, who fearing they might do so to *Lyfimachus*, little suspected this towards the other being a stranger. *Pyrhus* thus obtaining all the Army without a stroke, was saluted King of *Macedonia* by the Soldiers; but *Lyfimachus* coming shortly after, alleged the endeavour of suppressing the Enemy to have been common to them both, and demanded the parting of the Kingdom; to whom he assented, for that he did not trust the *Macedonians*, and so the Countries and Cities were divided amongst them.

And flying up and down.

11. *Demetrius* thus outed of his Kingdom fled to *Cassandria*, and thence into *Greece*, where after a little time he got some Forces together, and being angry with *Athens*, for that revolting from him, the Inhabitants had sent for *Pyrhus*, he besieged it; but upon the entreaty of *Crates* the Philosopher (whom being a man of great authority they had sent to him) he gathered together his ships and sailed away into *Asia* with 11000 men. His design was to take, if he could, *Caria* and *Lydia* from *Lyfimachus*, and he took divers Towns, and seized upon *Sardis*, but *Agathocles*, *Lyfimachus* his son, coming down with an Army against him, he marched for *Phrygia*, with intention to passe into *Armenia* and *Media*; and so attempt to make himself Master of some of the upper Provinces of *Asia*, which at the worst would afford retreating places enough, and other helps to a beaven party. In his way hee was superiour to *Agathocles* who pursued him, but being brought into great distresse for want of provisions, there fell withall such a Plague upon his Army, that he lost 8000 men, and so was forced to retreat, and came to *Tarsus*. This place being under *Seleucus*, he was very loath to hurt, for fear of giving him offence, but being forced by want, he wrote to him, whereby he excused himself, and sadly lamented his condition. *Seleucus*, pitying him at first, commanded his Governours to use him and his Army with great respect; but *Procles* one of his most familiar friends, filled his head with such suspicions, that he led down an Army towards *Cilicia* against him, whereat hee wondering retired to the most convenient place of the mountain *Taurus*, where he sent to him to give him leave to seize upon some Country of the *Barbarians*, where he might put an end to his flight and wanderings, and spend the residue of his dayes.

At length is forced to yield himself to Seleucus.

12. *Seleucus* making a bad interpretation of the message, onely would give way, that giving up for Hostages the chiefest of his friends, he might quarter for two moneths in *Catoania* (a Country bordering upon *Cappadocia*) and secured the passage out into *Syria*. Here he was kept up as a wild beast, what by *Seleucus* on one side, and *Agathocles* on the other; so that he was constrained to berate himself to force, and wasting the Territories alwaies had the better of *Seleucus* in their encounters, and got possession of the Straights which led into *Syria*. This so encouraged him, that he thought now of giving battel to *Seleucus*, but falling into a sicknesse thereby his affaires were ruined, his Soldiers falling away from him to the Enemy, or running away, yet he recovered after forty dayes, and away he marched, and getting over the hill *Amannus* wasted the bordering Territories. Then *Seleucus* coming near him, he joyned and fought him, and overthrew one of his wings, but then all his Army revolted, and he with a very few fled into the Woods, whence endeavouring to passe to the Sea through the mountains, his discovering there the Enemies fiers prevented that attempt, and then one saying he must even yield himself, he drew his Sword and would therewith have ended his life, but being hindered by his friends, he sent to *Seleucus* by their advice and yielded. *Seleucus* caused him to be royally received at first; but the great confluence thereupon to him lessened that respect he else would have allowed him; so as sending *Pausanias* with 1000 men, he caused him to be carried straight (without as much as seeing him) into a Peninsula of *Syria*. Here he wanted nothing desirable, not onely for necessity but pleasure; onely his liberty, which yet to comfort him there was hope given of, after that *Antiochus* should come with his wife *Stratonice*, whom his Father *Seleucus* upon



upon his passionately falling in love with her, had yielded to him. *Antigonius* his son much interceded for him; so did divers Princes and States; onely *Lyfimachus* offered 2000 Talents to have him killed, which *Seleucus* abhorred. At first he exercised himself much with hunting and such toiles; but by little and little grew sluggish, and, as if he had never been *Demetrius Poliorcetes*, gave up himself to drinking and dice, whereby he grew fat, and contracted a disease of which he died 54 years old, after he had continued three of them in restraint.

And dieth after three years in restraint.

13. *Lyfimachus* and *Pyrrhus* after his expulsion out of *Macedonia* presently fell out, for the former seeing *Demetrius* thus made sure and captivated by *Seleucus*, grew secure of his condition, despised *Pyrrhus*, and upbraiding the *Macedonians* for suffering him (being an alien, whose Ancestors alwaies had served them) now to reign over them, drew many from him, and afterwards overthrew him and *Antigonius* son of *Demetrius* in a great battle, and so quite dispossessed him of *Macedonia*. After this he killed his eldest son *Agathocles* at the instigation of his wife *Arfinoe* who was solicitous for her own children, if they should fall into their brother's hands after their Father's death. *Lyfandra* the widow of *Agathocles*, and sister to *Arfinoe*, accompanied with *Alexander* another son of *Lyfimachus* fled to *Seleucus*, whom they desired to make War against him; and after this he putting divers of his chief Subjects to death for bewailing the young man, many of his Captains and Governours followed, all earnestly desiring that Prince to make War upon him. *Seleucus* was easily persuaded to it now, having the whole strength of *Asia* and *Syria* united into one Kingdom after the fall of *Demetrius*, which the other being aware of, thought it best first to begin with him, and so passed over the *Hellepont*. These two being now only alive of the 26 Captains and fellow-soldiers of *Alexander*, joyned in a great and bloody battle in *Phrygia*, where *Lyfimachus*, though fighting most valiantly, was overthrown and slain, having formerly lost fifteen children divers wayes, and now completing the ruine of his Family, after he had lived 80 years, and held *Macedonia* four, A. M. 3722, the second of the 124 *Olympiads*, and 40 after the death of *Alexander* the Great.

*Lyfimachus* having expelled *Pyrrhus* out of *Macedonia* is slain in battle against *Seleucus*,

A. M. 3722.  
Ol. 124. an. 2.  
P. C. 471.  
*Seleucus* 30.  
*Ptolom.* *Philadelphus*, 2.

*Justin* ut prius.  
Memnon apud *Photium*.

Who being the survivor of *Alexander's* Captains is slain by *Ptolomy Ceraunus* the same year.

14. *Seleucus* being exceedingly elevated with the thoughts of his Victory, and more with consideration that he onely survived of *Alexander's* followers, resolved to passe into *Macedonia* and there to end his dayes, giving up *Asia* to his son *Antiochus*. Hee passed the *Hellepont*, and journeying towards *Lyfimachia* came to a place called *Argos*, where his time being but to live seven moneths after *Lyfimachus*, he was slain by *Ptolomy* surnamed *Ceraunus* the son of *Ptolomy* the first by *Euridice* daughter to *Antipater*, who having fled out of *Egypt*, for that his Father preferred his younger brother before him, joyned himself first to *Lyfimachus*, who had married his sister, and afterwards to *Seleucus*, by whom he was lovingly entertained, though he thus required him. *Ptolomy*, as soon as he had done his fear, posted away to *Lyfimachia*, when putting on a Diadem, and taking a Company of Gallants along with him, he went to the Army, which received him as King, having all *Seleucus* his money given unto them. *Antigonius Genatas* (so called it's probable, from a place in *Perrhabia*, where he was born) son of *Demetrius Poliorcetes* presently after undertook an Expedition for the recovery of *Macedonia*, hoping to justle out *Ptolomy* ere he could be well settled; but he having notice of his coming, and enjoying *Lyfimachus* his Fleet, went and met him at Sea, where he overthrew him, and forcing him to retire into *Boeotia*, then confirmed himself in his Kingdom.

## CHAP.

## CHAP. IV.

## The Macedonian Kingdom.

From the death of *Seleucus* to the Captivity of *Perseus*, and the end of this Kingdom, containing the space of 139 years.

*Ptolomy Ceraunus* King of *Macedonia* maketh Alliances.

1. *Ptolomy*, that he might provide for the time to come, made Alliances with other Princes, as *Antiochus* of *Asia*, and *Pyrrhus* of *Epirus*, who now being about to passe into *Italy*, made him Overseer of his son, and Kingdom: he also wrote to his brother *Ptolomy Philadelphus*, pretending to acquiesce in the missing of that his fathers Kingdom, being sufficiently satisfied with this taken from his fathers Enemy. Moreover, he counterfeited himself to be in Love with his sister *Arfinoe*, and married her, for that it was according to the custom of *Egypt*, promising to adopt her Children, which he badly performed, for being received by her into *Cassandria*, he caused them to be first killed in the bosom of their mother, and then thrust her out of the Citie, from whence she went to *Samothracia*. At this time the *Galls* being too many for their own Countrey, under three Captains went to seek their fortunes so many several wayes; some towards *Thrace*, under the Conduct of *Cerethrius*; others unto *Pannonia* under *Brennus* and *Acichorius*, and the rest to *Macedonia*, being headed by *Belgius* or *Bolgus*. These *Ptolomy* met with a stragling company, being more heady than wife, refusing 20000 men offered him by the King of the *Dardaniens*; and peace by the *Galls*, if he would but buy it, which he scornfully rejected, and answered, he would not yield them it, except they would give up the Chiefest amongst them as Hostages, and deliver up their Arms. Joyning battle, his Army was overthrown, and he being fore wounded was cast by an Elephant on which he rode, and so taken alive by the Enemy. They tore him in pieces, and cutting off his head, put it upon a Lance, and carried it about to the terror of his followers, of which a few escaping, all the rest were either taken or slain. This end came *Ptolomy* to, after he had held *Macedonia* scarce a year and a half.

Is slain by the *Galls*.

2. *Meleager* his brother succeeded, but onely for two moneths; for then the *Macedonians* cast him out as unworthy of the Dignitie, and in his room placed *Antipater* son to *Philip*, the brother of *Cassander*, whom they surnamed afterwards *Etesia*, because he continued but 45 dayes, during which term the *Etesian* winds blew. After this succeeded an Interregnum (if we look at the title of King) for *Softenes*, who gathering together a company of young men, and thereby restraining the pride and coverousnesse of the *Galls*, though he might have been preferred before divers of Royal Rices; yet refused the name, and made the Soldiers swear to him onely as General. But *Brennus* hearing of the good successe of *Belgius*, and what plunder he had got in the East, with 150000 foot, and 15000 horse marched thitherwards; but 20000 falling off from him by the way, and turning up for *Thrace* (where they brought under the Cities of the *Propontis*) he came into *Macedonia*; where he made havock of all things. *Belgius*, as it seems, before his coming being repelled or gone, *Softenes* went, and met him with an Army; but carrying too few against so great a number, was easily overthrown; after which the *Macedonians* securing themselves in the Cities, *Brennus* wrought his pleasure in the Countrey and Villages throughout the Land. When he had satisfied himself here, with an Army of 152000 foot, and 20400 horse; of *Celts* (or *Cimbres*) and *Illyrians* together, he invaded *Greece*. Each horseman had two servants followed him on horse-back, who were to succeed their dead Masters; which custom they called *Trimarkasia*, or *Trima asia* rather; for, *Mare* in the *Teutonick* signified the whole species, as also in our own

*Porphyrius* in *Græc.* *Eusebii.* *Justin* lib. 24.

*Softenes* overthrown by *Brennus*.

X x x

Saxon

Who with his  
whole Army is  
destroyed.

Saxon tongue) and so furnished, they entered *Thessaly*, and came to the Straights of *Thermopylae*. Here they were opposed by the *Greeks*, so as they lost many men, till being lead over the Mountains (the same way that in the expedition of *Xerxes*, *Hydarnes* passed, and getting over, came upon the backs of the *Spartans*) the *Greeks* then fled away, and they went to *Delphos* then to spoyl the Temple, where with Thunder and Lightning, Cold, falling of Rocks, and the opposition of the Enemy, most of them came to their ends. *Brennus* himself being wounded, and not willing (or not daring) to outlive this shamefull expedition of which he had been the Author at home, first drinking much Wine killed himself, the rest flying were taken with a Pannick fear, and killed one another for Enemies, and what by this means, the rage of the Countreys through which they passed, with hunger, and cold, scarce any of them ever returned to their homes.

Antigonus Gonatus.

Defeateth other Gauls.

3. During their stay in *Greece*, *Softenes* died after he had ruled 2 years, *Euseb.* and then *Antigonus Gonatus* having made peace with *Antiochus Soter*, returned, and obtained his fathers Kingdom. *Brennus* departing into *Greece*, *Justin lib.* had left some *Gauls* to defend the borders, and they left they should be idle, with 15000 foot and 3000 horse, first fell upon the *Geta* and *Triballi*, whom overcoming, they then sent to *Antigonus*, offering him peace if he would purchase it with money; but especially to spy his Camp. He entertained nobly the Ambassadors, and to deter them from any warlike attempts shewed them his strength at Land and Sea; but they were so far from being afraid, as having an itching desire after prey, they stirred up their Companions to endeavour the attaining of that which they saw, no wayes in words diminishing the goodliness of any thing. By night therefore they set upon his Camp, but he being aware of some such thing, had withdrawn his Army and all things into the Wood; therefore they go and endeavour to plunder the Navy, but are so repelled thence with such slaughter, as the credit of the victory over them procured *Antigonus* his quiet, not onely from them, but his Neighbours round about him. About this time these *Gauls*, which parting at *Dardania* from *Brennus*, and going into *Thrace*, had at several places passed the Sea into *Asia*, where uniting again under 17 Captains (of which *Lutaius* and *Idem ibid. & Leporius* were Chief) they helped *Nicomedes* against *Zypæus*, who held part of *Bithynia*, and after he was overcome, wasting the Countrey far and near, divided the Kingdom with him, and fixed themselves about the River *Halyz*, in that place which since has been known by the name of *Galligracia* or *Galatia*, A.M. 3727. the third year of the 125 Olympiad, the *Romans* being now engaged in the War with *Pyrrhus*.

But is expelled by Pyrrhus.

4. But *Pyrrhus* having finished his fruitlesse expedition into *Italy* and *Sicily* after six years, and being returned home, now wanting money sought an occasion to divert and maintain his Army. He made therefore an excursion into *Macedonia* (having strengthened himself with a supply of some *Gauls*) where he took divers Towns, & 2000 Soldiers revolted to him; then marching against *Antigonus* himself, joyned battel with him. The *Gauls* on *Antigonus* his part fought very valiantly; but those which governed his Elephants being compassed in yielded themselves, and the beasts, after which the foot being affrighted, *Pyrrhus* making sign to them, and calling by name the Officers, drew them all over to his own party. *Antigonus* fled, but kept some of the Maritime Towns still in his possession, and *Pyrrhus* became Master of the upper part of *Macedonia*, and of *Thessaly*. For all this, *Antigonus* gave not out, but retiring to *Thessalonica*, there recruited himself with Mercenary *Gauls*, and then endeavouring to re-establish himself, was again defeated by *Ptolemy*, the son of *Pyrrhus*; so that again retiring to hide himself, *Pyrrhus* jeered him, and called him impudent, because for all this he put not on a Coat but wore the purple still. He in way of return compared *Pyrrhus* to a Gamester, which could throw the Dice well, but knew not how to improve his chance; for he knew how to Conquer Kingdoms, and get Victories, but could not improve his Victory, nor retain what he had Conquered, as it had hapned as to this Kingdom before, and now also shortly followed.

5. Scarce

Who endeavour  
to restore Cleo-  
nymus.

5. Scarce two years did *Pyrrhus* hold *Macedonia*; for, *Cleonymus* the *Spartan* being rejected by his Citizens from being King in the room of his father, procured him to march down against his Enemies. He went down thither with an Army of 25000 foot, and 2000 horse, and wasting their Territories deferred the entering of the Citie till the next day, out of contempt of the small number of the Defendants; who taking that occasion, and making what means they could for resistance, especially the Women, hindred him a little from entering, and when entered, his horse being killed under him, forced him notwithstanding to retreat. During his absence, *Antigonus Gonatus* recovered again the Cities of *Macedonia*, and taking it for granted, that after he had done his work in *Laconia* he would return again thither, thought it best to hasten into *Peloponnesus*, and prevent him. Being come to *Argos*, *Pyrrhus* provoked him to fight for the Kingdom, but Embassadors came to them both from the Town, desiring they would depart from their Citie, and not suffer it (which was observant of both) to come into the power of either. *Antigonus* obeyed, and sent his son to them for an Hostage, *Pyrrhus* pretending he would, entered the Citie in the night, being let in by *Aristeus*; whereupon *Antigonus* was sent for. He sent in a strong party, & *Aeneas* King of *Sparta* was at hand with 1000 *Cretians* and other *Lacedemonians*; *Pyrrhus* marched up into the Market-place, and there saw a brazen Bull and a Wolf standing in a fighting posture, set there in memorial of *Danau's* his election, and ejection of *Gaius*, 1200 years before, which startled him sore, for that it had been told him by an Oracle, that he should die when he should see a Wolf and a Bull fighting together. Hereupon he would have retreated, but fearing the straightness of the Gates, sent to his son *Helennus* to break down part of the Wall, and come in; but he mistaking, brought his men and Elephants through the Gate, which stopped so up the way, that *Pyrrhus* in his coming back could not passe, and that occasioned his death.

Is slain at  
Argos.

Antigonus re-  
covering Ma-  
cedonia, pre-  
sently loseth it  
again.

Demetrius his  
son again re-  
covereth it.

6. He being sore crouded, what by them, those at his heels, and the Enemy, and sensible of his danger, endeavoured by force to remove the later. Then receiving a wound through his Brigandine with a Lance, turned himself against him that ran at him. This was the son of a poor Woman, who beholding the fight from the house, and seeing him engaged thus with *Pyrrhus*, took up a stone with both her hands, and cast it down upon the Kings head, which bruising the *Vertex* of his Neck, he fell down from his horse, after which his head was cut off by one *Zopyrus*. It being brought to *Antigonus* by *Alcyonius* his son, who rejoiced at the sight of it, he checked him, and wept over it, and after caused it and the body to be magnificently burned: his bones being put in a Golden Urn, he delivered to his son *Helennus* to carry them to his brother *Alexander* into *Epirus*, and then receiving his Army, dealt very well with all his friends. After this the Cities of *Peloponnesus* were betrayed to *Antigonus*, which caused great stir in that part of *Greece*; the *Gauls* revolting from him, he cut off at *Megara*, besieged *Athens*, and notwithstanding that *Patroclus* from *Egypt*, and *Aeneas* the King of *Lacedemon* came to relieve them, yet he kept all Provisions from them, and after they had long stood out came to composition, whereby he placed a Garrison in their Fort *Museus*, which yet not long after he drew forth again. *Aeneas* for want of necessities was forc'd to return home; but they met again afterwards at *Corinth*, where *Antigonus* slew him, and not long after was forc'd to return home; for *Alexander* King of *Epirus*, to revenge his fathers death, had invaded *Macedonia*. Coming thither, his Army revolted from him, so that once more he lost his Kingdom, and was compelled again to shift for himself: But his son *Demetrius* in his absence gathering some forces together, so ordered the matter against *Alexander*, that he not onely recovered his fathers Kingdom, but spoiled him also for a time of his own. After this, nothing of great concernment occurs of *Antigonus*, who died after his first possession of *Macedonia* 36 years, (having ruled in some *Greek* Cities ten years before) when he had lived above 80. A.M. 3762. in the 24 of the 134 Olympiad.

X x x 2

7. De-

Plutarch.

A.M. 3733.  
Ol. 127. ann. 1.  
V. C. 482.  
Antiochi Sote-  
ris 11.  
Ptol. Philad.  
13.  
Justin lib. 26.

Plutarch. in  
Pyrrho.  
Justin ut suprà.

A. M. 3731.  
Ol. 126. ann. 3.  
V. C. 480.  
Antiochi Sote-  
ris 9.  
Ptolom. Phila-  
delphi 11.

And succeed-  
eth him.

7. *Demetrius* his son succeeded him. He hired *Agron* King of the *Illyrians* to relieve the *Mydionians* whom the *Ætoli*ans had besieged, which he performed, though the besiegers were before ready to fall out about their prisoners, whether the old or new *Prator* should have the honour to dispose of them and their goods. When it was agreed that both in common should do it, the *Illyrians* falling upon them, and killing many, forced them to break up their Siege, after which *Agron* possessed with incredible joy, gave himself up to surfeiting and drunkenness, and thereby falling into a Pleuresie ended his dayes, and was succeeded by his wife *Tertia*. She being elevated also with the former Victory, and not thinking of any thing from without, gave leave to her Subjects to invade all persons in what place soever by Sea, whereupon they took *Phœnice* the wealthy City of *Epirus*, and injuring those of *Italy*, drew upon themselves the displeasure of the People of *Rome*, which the rashness of their Queen heightened to a War, as will be seen hereafter. But by this act, *Demetrius* so set the hearts of the *Ætoli*ans against him, that whereas before they took part with his Kingdom against the *Achaans*, now they joyned in league with them against him.

8. He holding yet the *Piræus* or Haven of *Athens*, *Aratus* the *Prator* of the *Achaans* pretending a desire to set the *Athenians* at liberty from that bondage which thence lay upon them, endeavoured to take it out of his hands, but was overthrown by *Bithyes* his General, whereupon a rumour arose that he was slain or taken. *Diogenes* the Governour of the *Piræus* hearing this, sent word to *Corinth* to command all the *Achaans* there to depart the Town; and the *Athenians* to please him and his party very solemnly rejoiced, wearing *Garlands*. But *Aratus* himself then was at *Corinth*, and hindring *Diogenes* his design there, marched down to be revenged on the *Athenians*, and he came as far as the *Academy*, but then being overcome by entreaty, did them no harm. Some years after this the *Ætoli*ans endeavoured to take away part of *Acarnania* from *Epirus*, which then *Olympias* sister and wife of *Alexander* now dead, governing in right of her sons *Pyrhus* and *Ptolomy*, betook her self to *Demetrius*, and gave him her daughter *Othia* in marriage. He had before this the sister of *Antiochus* King of *Syria* to wife (*Antiochus Hierax* as it seemeth, who endeavouring to dispossesse his brother *Seleucus* of his Kingdom, is called King by *Justin*) who thereupon fled to her brother, and stirred him up to make War upon her husband. The *Acarnanians* fled to the *Romans* for help against the *Ætoli*ans, who were then commanded to abstain from their incursions, but despising the Ambassage, harraied the borders both of *Acarnania* and *Epirus*; and *Olympias* having delivered up the Kingdom to her son, they all shortly after died. *Demetrius* also (whom we read to have also enjoyed *Cyrene* and all *Lybia*, but know not how he got it) survived not long after, dying when he had reigned ten years, and so after the death of *Alexander* the great.

9. He left behind him a son called *Philip*, who being very young, and the Princes of *Macedonia* fearing an Anarchy, they constituted *Antigonus* (the brother or uncle of the deceased, for both are affirmed) his Tutor, giving his mother to him in marriage. At first he held the Office by the title of Captain General, but afterwards being found moderate and civil, he was saluted King, being Surnamed *Dofon*, for that he promised more than he did perform. After the death of *Demetrius*, the *Greek* Cities began to lift up their heads, and the several Tyrants, which, through the encouragement of him and his Predecessors, had got many places, for fear renounced their power, and joyned themselves with the *Achaans*, who being much revered of a long time by all their neighbour Cities of *Peloponnesus* for their Justice and Prudence, had united themselves together, in the 124 *Olympiad*, and drawn some others into a body against the *Macedonians*. Their affairs were mightily strengthened by *Aratus* the *Sicyonian*, who drayning his own City, though but young, joyned it unto them, and afterward by his great wisdom and industrie secured and bettered their condition. The *Athenians* being encouraged at *Demetrius* his death, now thought again of recovering their liberty, and he having done what

Polybius ad  
principium l. 2.

A. M. 376a.  
Ol. 134. an. 2.  
V. C. 511.  
Seleuci Calli-  
nici 4.  
Ptolom. Euer-  
getæ 4.

Plutarch in  
Arato.

Justin. l. 28.

Porphy. in  
Græciis, Euseb.

Plutarch in  
vita Amili-  
i & Pausan. in  
Achaicis. 5.

Vide Polybius  
lib. 2.

A. M. 377z.  
Ol. 136. an. 4.  
V. C. 521.  
Sel. Callinici 14.  
Ptolom. Euer-  
getæ 14.

War betwixt  
the Ætoli-  
ans & Achaans,

Wherein Cleo-  
menes King of  
Sparta cometh  
to be engaged  
and how.

he might before to help them, though in vain, and they again imploring his assistance, though sick, he made himself be carried thither; and whereas *Diogenes* held for the *Macedonians*, *Piræus*, *Sunium*, *Atunychia*, and the Island *Salamis*, he persuaded him for a reward of 150 Talents to deliver them all up, twenty of which Talents he presented of his own money. Whilst he thus laboured for the Publick good, especially of the community of the *Achaans*, the *Ætoli*ans envying their condition raised a dangerous War against them; in which *Antigonus Dofon* came to be engaged.

10. The *Ætoli*ans though they had been helped by the *Achaans* against the house of *Macedonia* of late, being vexed about the business of *Mydionia*; yet now seeing their union, and the flourishing condition of their body, envying and also fearing it, resolved to disunite if possible, and withdraw the Cities one from another. At this time *Cleomenes* reigned at *Lacedæmon*, who resolving to better the constitution of his Country by reducing it to it's ancient form, and taking away the *Ephori* those impudent and rashly Tyrants, sought for an opportunity of War as most fit to bring about his purpose. Ever since the Victories of *Lyfander*, luxury and other vices had crept into *Sparta*, together with the use of riches. And the equality of possessions in Land was taken away by one *Epiades* an *Ephorus*, who having a son that displeased him, that he might disinherit him, procured a Law to be passed, that any one might dispose of his Lands, either in his life time or at his death, to whom he pleased. Hereby it was come to that passe, that there being 700 Citizens of *Sparta* and more, of those not above 100 possessed all the Lands and Estate, and the rest being void both of wealth and honour lay idle at home, unwillingly engaging in War, and expecting an occasion of change. The *Ephori* tyrannized with unparalleled impudence, domineering over the Kings, and ordering those at their pleasure, the servants of whom they had formerly been. *Agis* one of the *Spartan* Kings, of the family of *Eurytion*, the son of *Eudamidas*, and the sixth from *Agesslaus*, burned with a desire of bettering the state of affaires, and as a means unto it, endeavoured the reduction of *Lycurgus* his model for the equal division of Lands; but *Leonidas* his Colleague being of a luxurious temper opposed him, and he was wickedly murdered by the hands of the Popular Villains the *Ephori*.

11. This noble spirited man being taken away, and his brother *Archidamus* destroyed, *Cleomenes* the son of *Leonidas* was King alone, and being of a far different temper from his Father, upon hearing what *Agis* had gallantly endeavoured, resolved to pursue and accomplish what he had attempted, and to take away utterly the power of those Popular Tyrants, who usurped the whole authority. Neither did these two Kings desire to become assertors of Popular power by the restitution of the Lots of *Lycurgus*, but rather of Monarchy; for the restitution of those Lots would not promote the power of the Commons who were still to be kept under, as they were by the Laws of *Lycurgus*; but onely reduced them to that equality of wealth which might secure them from being insulted over by their fellow Commoners, as they had been of late, by such as had ingrossed the riches of the State. As this might be intended by the two Kings, so it appeareth from *Plutarch*, that *Agis* attempted to get himself reputation, and *Cleomenes* for his preservation, by gaining the good-will of the People, and making them sure on their side when soever they should be ready for the great design of destroying the *Ephori*. Now though *Agis* miscaried in his attempt, yet *Cleomenes* perfected what he had intended. For he surprized the *Ephori* by his Mercenaries, killed four of the five, overthrew all their chairs except one, which he intended as a Chair of State for himself. Then restored he the Laws of *Lycurgus*, as to equal possessions and discipline, and for that there was none left of the family of *Eurytion*, made his own brother *Leonidas* King with him. But as was said, perceiving this change would be better made in War than Peace, he caused the War betwixt the State, and the *Achaans*, and bribed the *Ephori* to send him forth in the Expedition.

12. To him therefore the *Ætoli*ans sent, and stirred him up against the *Achaans*;

Idem ibid.  
Plutarch in  
vita Arati &  
Cleomenis.

Legè Plutar-  
chum in Agide  
& Cleomene.

Cleomenes kil-  
leth the Ephori  
and restoreth  
Lycurgus his  
Laws.

Antigonus Do-  
fon.

*Achaans*; and that they might strengthen themselves, and more easily suppress them, they made peace again with *Macedonia*, and without doubt had brought about their purpose, had they not had to do with *Aratus*, who undermined their Councils. They suffered *Cleomenes* to take in divers Towns which belonged unto themselves, not onely not opposing but confirming him in the possession of them, which *Aratus* knowing well enough to be intended onely to strengthen him against his party, yet thought none were to be first opposed with War; but after that *Cleomenes* with great boldness had begun to build a Fort in the Territories of *Megalopolis*, then were the *Lacedemonians* declared Enemies. At first the *Achaans* undertook the Warre against them by themselves; partly for that they thought it more honourable and safe to defend their own Estate, and partly for that they were loth to displease *Ptolomy* (who had been formerly a good friend to them) by seeking for the patronage of any other; but the War going on (*Cleomenes* now having overthrowen the *Achaans* in divers battels) *Aratus* thinking it a disgrace for him to be worsted by the young *Lacedemonian*, and being jealous still of the knavery of the *Etolians*, concluded it was high time to look about him; at least for a supply.

13. Considering with himself the power of *Antigonus* King of *Macedonia*, and withall his faithfulness; and that he was prone to enter into Leagues and alliances, he resolved to make a Confederacy with him; but that secretly, as well because he knew the *Etolians* would seek to prevent him, as for that his people would be discouraged at the thought of expecting help from an Enemy. Knowing therefore the *Megalopolitans* to be sore pressed with the War (having little help from the *Achaans*) and how good affection they bore to the *Macedonian* Court ever since *Philip* the son of *Amyntas*, who deserved very well of them, he sent for two of his friends thence (*Nicophanes* and *Cercidas*) and dealt privately with them to persuade their Citizens to crave aid of *Antigonus*. These two were therefore sent to the *Achaans*, and to *Macedonia* if they should think fit, who giving way to it, they coming to the King, according to the instructions from *Aratus*, proposed to him to consider, whether this conjunction of *Cleomenes* and the *Etolians* would tend; and whether when the *Achaans* were eaten up, he himself would not be in danger, seeing the covetousness of the *Etolians*, and *Cleomenes* his ambition could not be contained in lesser limits than those of *Greece* it self. He answering, that if it should seem good to the *Achaans*, he would send aid to those of *Megalopolis*: these being at this much encouraged, laboured to persuade them to give way to it, but *Aratus* then fearing that if the coming down of *Antigonus* should breed any inconvenience, the blame would fall all upon him, dissuaded his People from receiving as yet any aid, and made them try first what they could do of themselves, exhorting each particular City to fight stoutly for their liberty: but *Ptolomy* finding the *Lacedemonians* now to be more for his purpose to withstand the *Macedonian*, stirred up *Cleomenes* against him, and furnishing him with money, he also had brought the *Achaans* by divers engagements to such a low ebb, as they were now in great danger to lose all, and therefore they implored aid of *Antigonus*, and *Aratus* sent his son to confirm whatsoever had been offered on his part.

14. He then marched down, though a great difficulty there was at first for this to be hoped for by the *Achaans*, by reason that the Castle of *Corinth* which they had taken out of the hands of the *Macedonians* together with the Town, and which would be now mighty convenient for the carrying on of the War, they knew not how to restore unto him. But *Cleomenes* now prospering exceedingly, and having reduced nine Cities into his power, the *Corinthians* sent to him, offering him their City, and commanded all the *Achaans* to be gone; so that at this *Aratus* taking occasion (who before durst not give them up into the hands of the *Macedonians* without their consent) restored the Castle into the power of *Antigonus*. *Cleomenes* (who after his taking the nine Cities, went and sat down before *Sicyon*) hearing the intention of the

Who march-  
eth down.  
And also An-  
tigonus,

*Achaans*

*Achaans* and the King, marched with great speed to the *Isthmus*, and then fortified the place between the Castle of *Corinth* and the Mountains *Onis* with a ditch and bulwark; *Antigonus* with 20000 Foot, and 1400 Horse, coming through *Arthia* (for that the *Etolians* had forbidden him at his peril to passe through the Straights of *Thermopyla*) found no little opposition from *Cleomenes*, till *Argos* revolting to *Aratus* (by the means of *Aristotle* his friend, who with help from *Sicyon* set upon the Castle, *Megistonus* who was sent to relieve it being slain) for that he feared if this Fort should be taken the Enemy might thereby stop up the passage, and at his ease invade *Laconia*, he drew down his forces from *Corinth*; then *Antigonus* entering *Peloponnesus* took *Corinth* in his way; where placing a Garrison he followed *Cleomenes* to *Argos*, who having by a wile entered the Town, laboured again to reduce it, and took some parts thereof; but seeing him come down from the Mountains against him, withdrew himself out, and so by *Maninea* returned to *Lacedamon*. *Antigonus* coming to *Argos* commended and encouraged the Citizens, and thence marching presently for *Arcadia*, reduced divers Forts, which he delivered into the hands of the *Megalopolitans*: after which coming to *Argium* to the general meeting of the *Achaans* (where he held consultations with them) he was declared General of all the *Achaans*, and there took up Winter-quarters for his Army, viz. at *Sicyon* and *Corinth*.

Is victorious,

He taketh  
Maninea.

15. At the beginning of Spring he gathered up his forces, and besieged *Tegea*, where the *Achaans* met him. Having this Town yielded to him, he thence marched speedily into *Laconia*, where *Cleomenes* meeting him upon the borders there passed some light skirmishes betwixt them, and then he hearing that the Garrison Soldiers at *Orchomenus* were coming to help the Enemy, departed sodainly thither, and presently stormed the place at the first onset. Thence moving to *Maninea*, that Town presently was taken, the chief of the inhabitants whereof (because though when *Atalus* took the City, hee restored them to their former privileges, yet they again revolted, and put all his Garrison to the sword) for their ingratitude were put to death; of the rest part were sold, and part sent into *Macedonia*, their wives and children made slaves; and their Town was given by *Antigonus* to the *Argives*, who thither resolved to send out a Colony, and *Aratus* being made *Prator*, made a Decree for changing the name of it into *Antigonia*. After this, *Antigonus* took *Heraca* and *Telphussa*, and Winter then drawing on he went again to the general Assembly of the *Achaans*, sending out his Soldiers to their quarters, which *Cleomenes* taking notice of, and that *Megalopolis* was three dayes march from *Argium*, and wanted a sufficient Garrison, brake in thither secretly in the night, where though he found such opposition as both he and his were brought into great danger, yet became he Master of the place, and so cruelly raged against it (as *Polybius* a Citizen thereof telleth us) that no hope then seemed to be left of Peopling it again. This City being taken, he marched away to *Argos* (where *Antigonus* wintered) to harraße the Territories; a rash enterprise as the Vulgar judged, but prudent enough of it self, considering that the King's Army being at a great distance, and he thereby unable to resist, the *Argives* would then murmur against him, and he thereby be brought into contempt. This hapned just as he imagined, but *Antigonus* though very much spent of the Priskick, lived to the next Summer to regain his credit.

*Polybius ibid.*  
*Plutarch, in*  
*Arato.*

16. In the beginning of Summer he led towards *Laconia* an Army of 26800 men (his own and of the associates) which *Cleomenes* expecting fortified the passage betwixt the two mountains *Eva* and *Olympus*, placing his brother at the former, and securing the later himself, having in all about 20000 in his Army. *Antigonus* wondering at his skill and industry in this fortification, pitched his Tents upon the River *Gorgylus*, bethinking himself what he should do; at last finding all passages made up, they both agreed to try the matter in battel. At the beginning of the fight those on *Cleomenes* his party with the light Armour placed amongst his Horse, seeing the *Illyrian* cohorts not

to

to be backed by the *Achaens*, fell upon their Reer, and had done great mischief, but that *Philopomenes* a *Megalopolitan* (then but young) giving notice of it to the Officers, and they not regarding him, stirred up his fellow Citizens, and fell upon the Enemies horse, which made the other return to their former place to help their Companions. After this the fortune of the day inclined to *Antigonus* his side, for *Euclidas* undid himself by the bad choice of his ground, receiving the *Illyrians* not on the side of the Hill, (whereby though he might have been repulsed, yet still he might have had the advantage being higher than the Enemy) but just on the top, so that being thence removed, and forced downwards on the other side, the *Illyrians* had the advantage of him. *Cleomenes* perceiving his brother overthrown, and the horse on the plain to have the worst, for fear the Enemy should compass him in, was forced to remove the carriages from behind his Army, and draw it out as well as he could to prevent that. Then the Files coming to be engaged, *Antigonus* pressing upon the *Macedonians* in great violence with his doubled Files, put them to flight, and many being slain, *Cleomenes* escaped with a few in his Company, and got to *Sparta*.

Defeateth  
*Cleomenes*.

27. *Cleomenes* coming to *Sparta*, advised the people which flocked about him to receive the Conquerour, and then by night getting to *Gyrbium*, thence went to *Alexandria* in *Egypt*, whereas if had either deferred the battle a little longer, or stayed at home, he might easily have recovered his former condition. For, *Antigonus* suddenly following him got *Sparta*, and very nobly, and with great humanity used the Citizens, restoring to them their ancient liberties, but shortly after was constrained to leave that place, and *Peloponnesus* also, being called home by an invasion of the *Illyrians* into *Macedonia*, where they made havock of all things. From *Sparta* he came to *Tegae*, which he again restored into the form of a Commonwealth, and thence to *Argos*, at the time of the Celebration of the *Nemean Games*, where by the Decree of the General Assembly of the *Achaens* in common, and each of the Cities in particular, he had all possible honour given him. After this he marched with great speed into *Macedonia*, where he overthrew the *Illyrians* in battle, but got his own death; for with exhorting his Soldiers, and shouting in the fight, he so strained his Lungs that he spat blood, and thereby his Consumption was heightened, which in a short time made an end of him, after he had discharged the Office of a faithful Guardian, a good King, and of an expert and valiant Captain ten years, A.M. 3782. and the 24 of the 139<sup>th</sup> Olympiad, 100 years after the death of *Alexander*.

*Polybius ut  
supra.*

Dieth of a  
Consumption.

18. *Philip* then succeeded this his Uncle, and once his Guardian, being sixteen years old, in whom the Prediction of *Sibylla* was verified, that the *Macedonian* glory, as it began in a *Philip*, so it should end in one of that name. Some three years after his coming to the Government he was also engaged in the Social War of *Greece*, of which the *Ætolians* and *Achaens* were the chief parties. For now the *Ætolians* (who used to live by Piracy and Robbing) being weary of peace, though awed by *Antigonus* as long as he lived, and having in contempt the youth of *Philip*, and judging themselves stronger than the *Achaens*, they desired occasion to begin a War. The first occasion was given by *Dorimachus* one of their body, who being sent to *Phigalea*, a City of *Peloponnesus* in the Confinis of *Messena* (under pretence of securing it, and its Territories) to spy what was done in those parts, and seeing the *Messenians* to live in security, and neglect of any martial Discipline, ever since the peace was made by *Antigonus*, being coverous gave leave to certain Pyrats to prey upon their grounds and drive their Cattel thence, though they were friends to the *Ætolians*. They complaining of this to him, he went to *Messena*, but instead of giving them any relief, he derided, and threatened the Owners of the Cattel, and by the persuasion of *Sciron*, then *Priest* of that City, he was secured. It so hapned, that at this time there was one *Babyrta* a filthy fellow, so like to this *Dorimachus*, that one could scarce know them asunder had they been clothed alike, as therefore on a time *Dorimachus* was malapertly inveighing against the *Messenians*, *Sciron* answered him,

*Pausan. in  
Achaica.*

*Polyb. lib. 4.*

A. M. 3782.  
Ol. 139. ann. 7.  
V. C. 531.  
*Antiochi  
Magn. 1.  
Ptol. Euseb.  
24.*

him, *Dost thou think, O Babyrta, that we either care for thee, or thy threats?* This Jeer so affected him, as to be gone he restored them their goods; but getting him home, it sat so deeply upon his heart, as by pretence of this injury alone did he stir up War against the *Messenians*.

The Original  
thereof.

19. He durst not in publick Conventions persuade the *Ætolians* to the War, for that his private grudge was sufficiently known, but one *Scopas* being then *Priest*, him he persuaded to joyn with him in the invasion of the *Messenians*. They two therefore, without any publick Decree, took the advantage of that time, wherein a few dayes onely were remaining to *Timoxenus*, the *Priest* of the *Achaens*, to continue in his Office (during which time yet *Aratus*, who was to succeed him, could not execute it) & calling together the *Ætolians* to the Promontory of *Ægium*, sayled over into *Peloponnesus*, and invading the *Messenians* (who being unable to resist, had secured themselves within their Citie Walls) waited all with fire and sword. Not onely the *Messenians*, but the *Epirotes*, *Achaens*, *Acarnanians*, and *Macedonians* also being declared Enemies by *Scopas*, they gave out Commissions to Pyrats to infect them by Sea. A ship of the King of *Macedonia* was taken, and being brought into the Haven was sold, with all the men, and things belonging to it; the Sea-Coasts of *Epirus* were invaded, *Thyreas* a Town of *Acarnania* was set upon, and a band of men being sent privately through *Peloponnesus*, a Cattle there was seized on in the Territories of the *Megalopolitans*, which yet *Timoxenus* reduced by the help of *Taurion*, whom *Antigonus* had left to oversee his affairs in those parts.

*Aratus* is de-  
fected by the  
*Ætolians*.

20. The *Achaens* meeting at *Ægium*, Decreed that aid should be sent to the *Messenians*; but *Timoxenus* whose time was not yet out, being slow in his preparations, *Aratus* who was to succeed him got the publick signet five dayes before the time, made Levies, and sent to the *Ætolians* to draw away their Forces out of the *Messenian* Territories, and not to trouble *Achaia* upon pain of being prosecuted as Enemies. *Scopas* and *Dorimachus* hearing the *Achaens* were gathered together, marched towards the *Eleans* their Allies (with whom the *Ætolians* always maintained friendship, that they might the better Prey upon *Peloponnesus*) so that *Aratus* hearing this, very indiscreetly, and not like himself (as *Polybius* sheweth) for that he thought they would retreat, dismissed all his Soldiers except 3000 foot, and 300 horse, with which, and *Taurion* his party, he marched against them. He constrained them to fight in a disadvantageous place for himself, so that his forces were overthrown by them, and many being slain, the rest secured themselves in the Towns thereabouts, and the *Ætolians* passing without let or hindrance through *Peloponnesus*, attempted to take *Pellene*, and wasting the Territories of the *Sicyonians*, passed through the *Isthmus*, and so returned home. After this the *Achaens* assembling together, *Aratus* was grievously accused for taking up the Office before his time, disbanding the Army when he knew *Scopas* and *Dorimachus* were in *Peloponnesus*, fighting the Enemy with so few, when he might have easily had aid from the Towns thereabout, and, which was worst of all, for engaging not his best Soldiers in the plain, but onely skirmishing at the Roots of the Mountains, where the Enemy had the advantage of the ground, besides their being the greater number. But as soon as *Aratus* appearing put them in mind of his former services, answered to the things objected against him, and craved pardon in case he had failed of his duty in the fight, and desired they would examine the case not maliciously, but with humanity, the people changed so in their affections, as they were angry a long time with his accusers, and rested upon his Counsels alone for the future.

*Idem ibid. &  
Plutarch. in  
Arato.*

21. These things having given the occasion to the Social war, it presently was decreed against the *Ætolians*. For, the *Achaens* meeting together, ordered that some should be sent to the *Epirotes*, *Boeotians*, *Phocians*, *Acarnanians*, and unto *Philip*, to acquaint them that they had broken the League now twice by the invasion of *Achaia*, to desire help against them, and to receive the *Messenians* into the alliance; moreover it was resolved, that the

Y y y

Præ-



*Prætor* should agree with the *Lacedæmonians* and *Messenians*, what Forces should be raised by their States. The *Ætolians* also assembling, that they might make a breach betwixt the *Achaans* and their associates, resolved to make Peace with the *Lacedæmonians* and *Messenians*, but as for the *Achaans* themselves, they absurdly decreed, that on no other condition would they have Peace with them, except they forsook the society of the *Messenians*. The *Epirotes*, and *Philip*, after audience given to the Ambassadors, willingly received the *Messenians* into the alliance; but as for the *Ætolians*, not at all wondering at their carriage (for that it being but agreeable to their custome of piracy and robbing, their custome something excused the badnesse of the action) they resolved still to keep Peace with them. But *Scerdilaidas* the General of the *Illyrians* making an agreement with the *Ætolians* about his part in the booty, with them invaded *Achaia*, and took the City of the *Cynæthenses*, being betrayed by some Exiles, which their Citizens had lovingly received again; but to pay for their ingratitude, these Exiles were put to the sword as well as the rest, and their City was burnt down to the ground upon the report of the *Macedonians* coming into *Peloponnesus*. For, *Aratus* had sent to *Philip* again for aid, who came presently with an Army down to *Corinth*, where the Commissioners from the several associated Cities met him, and unanimously decreed a War against the *Ætolians*, in the first year of the 140 Olympiad (as *Polybius* telleth us) and about that time that *Hannibal* took *Saguntum*.

Philip marching down the Social War is decreed against the Ætolians.

Changes at Lacedæmon.

22. Whilst *Philip* was about *Corinth*, great stirs hapned at *Lacedæmon* by reason of him. For such as were his Enemies there, caused some of his party, lest they should tell how they stood affected, to be slain, and afterwards the *Ephors* (who had brought the People to decree a continuance in the league with him) to be murdered as they were sacrificing, and then joynd their State to the *Ætolians*, and after they had heard of *Cleomenes* his death in *Egypt*, made a new election of Kings (whereof one was *Lycurgus*, an obscure man, and not of the race of *Hercules*) having lived in way of a Free State about three years, ever since they were set free by *Antigonus*, till this time, when their liberty so called, had bred great strife and emulation. *Philip* coming to *Ægium* to the general meeting, the *Achaans* renewed the leagues and confederacies formerly made with his Ancestors, and then with a great deal of credit he returned into *Macedonia*, there to make provisions for the War, where spending the Winter in levying Forces, and fortifying that Country against foreign attempts, he also so dealt with *Scerdilaidas*, as hee drew him over from the *Ætolians* to his own party, by reason they had not made him partaker of the booty, as they had covenanted with him. During this time several associates were sent to for assistance in the War, and amongst the rest the *Messenians*, who though they gave the occasion of it, yet answered, being overpowered by the *Prætors* of the *Ætolians*, that seeing *Phygalea* was situate in their borders and belonged unto them, they would not assist in the War, except it was first taken out of the hands of the *Ætolians*. *Lycurgus* the *Lacedæmonian* King getting some Forces together, invaded the borders of the *Argives*, and took several Towns, they not standing at all upon their guard, expecting no acts of Hostility from their friends as they counted them, and then was War proclaimed by the *Ætolians* against the *Achaans*. They were much elevated being now in a flourishing condition, the other on the contrary were put to it, for that *Philip* in whom was their chiefest hope, was onely yet providing for the War: the *Epirotes* would do nothing till they saw him begin, and the *Messenians* remained neuters; but shortly after, the marching of *Philip* from *Macedonia* revived their drooping spirits.

23. For having got together an Army of 15000 Foot, and 500 Horse, he departed from *Macedonia*, for *Thessalie* and *Epirus*, intending through them to invade *Ætolia*. Coming into *Epirus*, he was perswaded there by the Inhabitants to set upon the City *Ambracus* and recover it, (which the *Ætolians* had gotten out of the hands of the *Epirotes*) to which he was so unwife

A. M. 3785.  
Ol. 140. an. 1.  
V. C. 534.  
Ant. Mag. 4.  
Ptol. Philopat. 3.

unwise as to agree, and thereby lost the opportunity of finishing the Warre presently, by neglecting to invade the inland Countries of *Ætolia*, and by harkening to the *Epirotes*, who more regarded their private profit than the publick good. In the mean time, in *Peloponnesus* things went on in favour of the *Ætolians*: for though they had been repulsed with some losse from *Ægira*, a City of the *Achaans*, yet *Euripidas* the General of the *Eleans* made inrodes upon divers of the associates, got much booty, and took divers Towns, with the Castle of the *Dimaans*; *Lycurgus* the *Lacedæmonian* took *Athenens* a Town belonging to the *Megalopolitans*, and *Aratus* son to the other the Captain of the *Achaans* could hire no Soldiers (because behind already with much pay) and with fear and indiscretion managed the businesse. *Scopas* the *Prætor* of the *Ætolians*, through *Thessalie* invaded *Macedonia*, where wasting all with fire and sword about *Pieria*, he thence went to *Dium*, which the Inhabitants thereof not staying his coming, he burnt, and overthrew the images of the Kings. *Philip* by this time had taken *Ambracus* in the space of forty dayes, and thereby satisfied the greedy desires of the *Epirotes*; then hearing what *Scopas* had done in *Macedonia*, he passed speedily over the Bay of *Ambracia*, and through *Acarnania* invaded the *Ætolians*.

Scopas the Ætolian invadeth Macedonia

And Philip Ætolia.

24. Pitching his tents before *Phæteas*, after many sharp skirmishes he received that Town upon composition, and overthrew a party of 500 *Ætolians*, who were coming to relieve it; after which, as he was wasting the Country, the Ambassadors of the *Achaans* came to him desiring help. He promised to take their businesse into consideration, and marched for *Metropolis*, the Inhabitants of which flying into the Castle, he burnt the Town, and thence moving towards *Conope*, some Horse endeavoured to hinder him from passing the River, but finding it to be in vain, retired into the Town, and after this, none daring any more to shew themselves, he passed unmolested through the Country, taking many Towns and Castles, the walls of which he demolished, onely *Oeniada* he resolved to fortifie. Whilst he thus employed himself, news came from *Macedonia*, that the *Dardanians* had resolved to make an invasion: whereupon judging it requisite to look home, he dismissed the *Achaan* Ambassadors with this answer, that as soon as he had provided for the security of his own Kingdom, he would use his best endeavour to relieve them. Returning that way he came, with great journeys he passed through *Epirus*, and when he had arrived at *Pella*, the *Dardanians* hearing of his return disbanded their Army, and then he presently marched back into *Thessalie*, intending to passe away the remaining of the Summer at *Larissa*. *Dorimachus* now being created *Prætor* of the *Ætolians* invaded *Epirus*, and harassing the Country, robbed, and then destroys the *Dodonæan* Temple; but *Philip* now in Winter, when it was little expected by any, leaveth *Larissa*, and passing over his Army from *Thessalie* into *Eubœa*, passed through *Bœotia*, and the confines of *Megaris*, and about the Winter solstice, cometh to *Corinth*, whither calling *Aratus* the elder to him to consult of affaires, he writes to the *Prætor*, and several Cities of the *Achaans*, assigning them when and where to meet him.

And Peloponnesus.

25. Having taken this order he departed from *Corinth* to *Dioscurium*, a City of the *Phliasiens*, and thence to *Caphye*, where he had appointed the *Achaans* to meet him, lighting in his way upon a party which *Euripidas* was leading towards the Territories of the *Sicyonians* to waste them, whereof 2200 he took; the other being slain by his men, and perishing amongst the high Rocks, 100 onely escaped with their Leader. This victory got him abundance of honour (it being heard he was come, and had overcome also at the same time) which to maintain and increase, after he was come to *Caphye*, he joynd *Aratus* the younger to him with about 10000 men, and marched to *Psophis* an ancient Town of *Arcadia*, situate in the middle of *Peloponnesus*, and upon the confines of the *Eleans*, who then had it in their hands, and whither *Euripidas* their Captain had now withdrawn himself after his defeat. This place *Philip* had a great mind unto, as very convenient for the carrying on the War. He got the Town presently, and after that

Idem ibid.

Yyy 2 had

His exploits. had the Castle yielded to him, and staying there some time gave up the place into the hands of the *Achaens*, as also *Lafone* shortly after, which upon his approaching was forsaken by a Garrison of the *Eleans*. After this he came into the Country of the *Eleans*, which giving his Soldiers liberty to sack and plunder, he passed the River *Alpheus*, and came into *Tryphalia* including nine Towns situate betwixt *Flea* and *Messena*, which also the Inhabitants of the former had got into their possession a few years before, with *Aliphira* that belonged to *Arcadia*. Passing his men over by a bridge he caused to be made, he presently took *Aliphira*, and within six dayes all *Tryphalia*, though *Phylidas* was sent from the *Ætoliens* to aid the *Eleans* with 600 men, to which were joyned 500 Mercenaries, and 1000 of the Inhabitants of *Elea*. Placing a Garrison in the Castle of *Lepreatans*, he came to *Heræa*, where he divided all the booty amongst his Soldiers, and thence marching to *Megalopolis*, in the midst of Winter, he afterward came to *Argos*, where he spent the remainder of that Season. During these motions *Chilon* the *Lacedemonian* killed the *Ephori* who had made *Lycurgus* King, but the fact being nor approved, he was glad to betake himself to his heels.

Apelles his  
plot against  
Aratus and  
others.

26. Philip invaded again the Territories of the *Ætoliens*, and thence took very much booty, and returning to *Argos* to winter, sent his Army into *Macedonia*. At this time *Apelles* (who was one of them whom *Antigonus* had left his Guardians) much maligned *Aratus*, and joyning with *Leontius* Captain of the *Ceræi* (called so from the wearing of a short buckler) and *Megaleas* the King's chief Secretary, resolved to remove *Taurion* from the Government of *Peloponnesus*, and *Alexander* from his command of the Life-Guard, and had he not been hindered by *Aratus*, he had accomplished his purpose. He had procured also one *Eparatus* to be chosen *Prætor* in the room of *Aratus* the younger, and he managing his affairs very indifferently, the King could get neither money nor provisions, but was fain to flee to *Aratus* for relief; and now it being resolved to carry on the War by Sea, he consulting with his two creatures, determined to stop up provisions from coming to the Army, and went to *Chalcis* for that purpose. He so managed his business, as he forced the King to pawn his plate, who now failed against the *Cephalenians*, whose ships the *Ætoliens* constantly used in their invasions of *Peloponnesus*, and coming to *Païra*, there drew up his ships on shore. He laid siege to the City of the *Patænsians*, and having undermined a piece of the wall, sent *Leontius* to take the place, but he remembering the conspiracy of *Apelles*, *Megaleas*, and himself, to hinder the affairs of his Master, had corrupted the chiefest of the Officers, and suffered himself to be repelled, so that *Philip* raised his Siege, and consulted what was to be done. By this time *Lycurgus* the *Lacedemonian* King had invaded the *Messenians*, *Dorimachus* also the *Æolian* had made an inroad into *Thessalie*, so that from both parts came Ambassadors to crave aid. *Leontius* counselled *Philip* to go to *Messenia*; but *Aratus* to invade *Æolia* again, to whom he agreed, having had experience of his wisdom, and beginning now a little to trust the other.

27. Writing to the *Prætor* of the *Achaens* to relieve the *Messenians*, he invaded their Country, and taking *Thermus*, gave his Soldiers leave to plunder the Villages, in revenge for what the *Ætoliens* had done at *Dius* in *Macedonia*, rifled and burnt the Temple, for which he is grievously reprehended by *Polybius*. After this returning on shipboard, *Leontius* and *Megaleas* in their cups so abused *Aratus*, as to throw stones at him, for which the former escaping, the later was imprisoned and fined twenty Talents at a Council of War. *Philip* then sailed to *Corinth*, whence sending messengers to the associated Cities to meet him at *Tegea*, he marched thither in two dayes, and getting some Forces together he invaded the *Lacedemonians*, and wasted their territories far and wide, put to flight *Lycurgus* who came out of the City against him, and then returned again unto *Corinth*. Whilst he prepared to attempt some notable thing upon *Phocis*; *Leontius*, *Megaleas*, and *Ptolomy*, moved the Soldiers to sedition, which though he knew very well, yet dissembled he it at present, but *Leontius* sent for *Apelles* from *Chalcis*, who there

*Polybius lib. 5.*

The treason  
of him and  
his complices  
discovered.

there had very naughtily behaved himself, and now returning was not entertained by the King after the usual manner, nor admitted to the Council. *Megaleas* hereat being affrighted fled, leaving *Leontius* behind him engaged for the twenty Talents, whose Soldiers *Philip* sent with *Taurion* into *Triphylia* as upon service, and then threw him in prison for the payment of the money, and not long after (the Soldiers malapertly interceding for him, that he should not be tried till their return, otherwise they should take it as a great affront) he put him to death. Then came he to *Patra*, where he had appointed the Deputies of the Cities to meet him about a Peace with the *Ætoliens*, which the *Rhodians* and *Chians* had by Ambassadors moved both parties to. Here letters of *Megaleas* were brought to him, wherein he stirred up the *Ætoliens* to proceed in the War, for that he would be in great straits for provisions, whereupon he judging *Apelles* to have been the chief cause of those evils, sent him in custody to *Corinth*, and ordered *Alexander* to go to *Thebes* and pursue *Megaleas*. He hearing this killed himself, and *Apelles* died soon after.

*Ptolomy* put to  
death for  
treason.

28. The *Ætoliens* hearing of these stirs in *Philip's* Court, and thinking thereby some great sedition would be raised, put off their meeting at *Rhium* about the peace, which he was not at all sorry for, but exhorted the associates rather to bend their minds towards thoughts of War. Then, coming to *Demetria*, there was condemned *Ptolomy*, *Apelles* his Companion, by the *Macedonians*, and put to death; then, for that Winter was now begun, having sent his Army before, he himself followed into *Macedonia*. The next year he got *Bylazora* the chiefest Town of *Paonia* into his hands, and *Thebes* *Pbiotick* also, which the *Ætoliens* holding, much molested *Thessaly*: but receiving news that *Scordilaida* being revolted, made great waste of all things about *Malea*, he returned into *Peloponnesus* at the time of the celebration of the *Nemean* Games. Here he received letters that *Hannibal* had overthrown the *Romans* at the *Lake of Thrasymene*, and *Demetrius Pharius*, who had waged War with the People of *Rome*, for the *Illyrians*, advised him to make Peace with the *Ætoliens*, and undertaking the affairs of *Illyricum* passe thence into *Italy*, and think of no less than arriving at the Monarchy of the World. Being elevated with this fancy, he persuaded the *Achaens* to agreement, and then sending *Taurion* and *Aratus* to the *Ætoliens*, who desired a Treaty, at their request he went also himself down to them, and made Peace on this condition, that all parties should enjoy what now they held. *Agelaus* of *Naupactus* persuaded the *Greeks* to imbrace amity, left cutting one another throats thus, they might be devoured by the *Carthaginians* or *Romans*. So all the Cities returned to their ancient wayes and customs, and this Social War ended after it had continued four years, in the sixth of the reign of *Philip*, the first of the 141 Olympiad. A. M. 3789.

*Philip* having  
vast things in  
design, put-  
teth an end to  
the Social  
War.

29. *Philip* applied himself to the recovery of the Cities which had revolted from him, and then thought of nothing more than settling the affairs of *Illyricum*, necessary for the promoting of his designs, especially the invasion of *Italy*, upon which his mind was so settled, as sleeping and waking his fancy ran wholly upon it, being spurred on by *Demetrius Pharius*, not so much for any great affection born to him, as for the others private interest, who thought hereby to recover the Island *Pharus*, which once he enjoyed; and out of hatred to the *Romans*, who having overthrown him in War, about this time sent to demand him of *Philip*, to whom he had fled. After he had recovered the Cities, and sent his Army to the Winter quarters, he thought him that there would be need of ships for the carrying on of his project; not for fighting with the *Romans*, but conveying of his men, so that he caused 100 swift Barkes to be built, and in the Spring exercising his Soldiers a little in rowing, away he goes through *Euripus* near to *Cephalenia*, hearkening continually after the *Roman* Fleet. But the report of it's coming, after a short time put his men into such a pannick fear, that though he was now going towards *Apollonia*, he tacked about, and in great disorder after a day and a nights sail came back again to *Cephalenia*. For all this he was not

A. M. 3789.  
Ol. 141. an. 1.  
V. C. 588.  
*Antioch*, M. 8.  
*Ptolom*, *Philop*.  
7.

*Polyb. lib. 5.*

*Livius l. 22.*

He sendeth to Hannibal in Italy. not discouraged from his enterprize, but understanding how Hannibal prospered in Italy, thought good to make him his friend, and thereby get an entrance in thither. So this year being the 4th of the 24 Punic War, he sent Ambassadors to him.

The Terms of their Alliance.

30. The Ambassadors landing near to the Temple of Juno Lacinia, went through Apulia towards Capua where Hannibal then lay; but in their way fell into the Roman Guards, by which they were brought to M. Valerius Laevinus the Prator, then lying about Numeria. Being thus entangled, Xenophanes, one bolder and wiser than the rest, told the Prator they were come from Philip to make a League and Alliance with the People of Rome; at which he rejoicing, that after the revolting of their Associates in Italy so great a Prince should desire their friendship, entertained him and his fellows very lovingly, and sent them away with some to conduct them, so that coming into Campania they presently got to Hannibal. The Alliance was made on these terms, that Philip with as great a fleet as possible (200 ships he thought he could procure) should passe into Italy, waste the Maritime parts thereof, and help to carry on the War both by Sea and Land: that Italy being Conquered should all fall to Hannibal, and the Carthaginians, with all the spoil; and then they should passe into Greece, and there make War upon what Princes or States Philip pleased, who should enjoy whatever places could be got, either in the Continent or Islands, he being willing to content himself with these conditions for a beginning. Things being thus concluded, the Ambassadors were dispatched away, and with them some sent from Hannibal, who shipping themselves again where they landed before, were discovered by the Romans, who lay upon the Coasts of Calabria, and taken. Xenophanes, having had such good fortune before, with his skill attempted the same thing again, but the habit and language of the Carthaginians discovered them, and the League being found about them, all was brought to light, and confessed; and then they were sent to Grachus the Consul to Cuma, and by him to the Senate.

Others sent with better success.

31. The Fathers entred into serious debate about it, being much troubled to find, that though they were scarce able to undergo the Carthaginian War, they should be ingaged in another with the Macedonian; yet notwithstanding they were not dismayed, but considered how they might make work for Philip at home, thereby to divert him from Italy. Having therefore imprisoned the Ambassadors, and sold their followers, they gave order for fifty ships fitly furnished to hover about Italy, and if the Kings attempts should appear answerable to the Ambassage, Marcus Valerius the Prator was then to invade Macedonia. Whilest these things were in hand, one of the ships which being taken accompanied the Ambassadors to Rome, escaped, and acquainted Philip how things had passed, who then not knowing what was done or concluded betwixt Hannibal and himself, sent Messengers, who dispatched the business with better success, but the Summer was too far spent for him to do any thing this year. These high thoughts and designs he now had in his head did so puff him up, that from an excellent Prince as he was at the first, he turned tyrannical as men judged, so that he began to wax harsh against the Cities of Greece, being set on by Demetrius Pharius, who advised him to get Peloponnesus into his own power, and for that purpose to seize on the two horns of that beast, (as he accounted them) the Castle of Corinth, and also that of the Messenians, who being now at odds amongst themselves, he laboured to increase their differences; and for that Aratus was displeased at it, and laboured to disswade him, he cast him out of favour. The year after he had entred into League with Hannibal, finding it yet not convenient to make for Italy, he took Oricus a Town of Illyricum, in order to the besieging of Apollonia, both which had joyned themselves in society with the Romans fifteen years before. But when Laevinus the Prator heard of it, leaving the Coast of Brundisium to the care of P. Valerius, he hastened to Oricus, and presently recovered it, and afterwards sent a party under the Conduct of Nevius Crispus, which getting into Apollonia, afterwards fell upon the Macedonians

He is beaten at Apollonia, and driven home.

cedonians lying so securely in their Camp, that about 1000 men entred the Trenches before it was perceived. Hereupon followed such a Pannick fear, as no body endeavoured to repulse the Enemy, and 3000 were slain and taken here, the King getting out of his bed, fled half naked to the ships, which Laevinus being aware of, secured the mouth of the River, so that he was forced to fly with a poor and unarmed Army by Land into Macedonia.

Poysoneth Aratus.

Laevinus the Roman Prator maketh him work enough.

32. About this time, being angry with Aratus, for being agrieved at his ill usage of the Messenians, he now procured him to be poysoned by the help of Laurion his Lieutenant in Peloponnesus. At the first the thing was not known, it being a slow working poyson, but Aratus himself was not ignorant of it, yet shewed such calmnesse of mind as he acquainted none with it, but Cephalo his nearest attendant, who observing him to spit blood upon the Wall, he onely said, *This reward O Cephalo have we for our friendship to Philip*; but after his death he was honoured by all the Achaeans as an Hero. Philip about this time casting his thoughts upon Illyricum, got Lyffus a strong Town thereof, and Acrolyssus its Castle into his power, having divided his Army into two parts, one whereof he hid on the Land-side, and drew the Defendants towards the Sea with the other, so as they in ambush entred the Castle without opposition (otherwise impregnable) after which he got the Town, though with much trouble, and then most of the Cities out of fear submitted unto him. But the same year M. Valerius Laevinus withdrew the Aetolians from their society and alliance with him, by shewing them the civility of the Romans towards their friends, and especially by putting them in hopes to recover Acarnania again into their power, having Scopas the Prator and Dorimachus to back him in this perswasion. In the League also were to be included the Eleans and Lacedaemonians, Attalus King of Asia the lesse, Pleuraus of Thrace, and Scerdilaidas of Illyricum, if they pleased. Laevinus took presently Zacynthus an Island near to Aetolia, having a Citie in it of the same name, Oeniada also and Naxos, Towns of Acarnania, all which he gave to the Aetolians, and then judging he had made work enough for Philip to keep him at home, that he should not think of the invasion of Italy, or of Hannibal, or the Carthaginians, he departed to Corcyra.

33. He was Wintring at Pella, when the news first came to him, therefore as he had determined to passe into Greece in the Spring, and first to invade, and awe the Illyrians, he now made incursions thither, after that into Pelagonia, and then took a Citie of the Dardanians in the Borders of Macedonia, being as it were the Key into their Countrey. After this he hastened into Thessalie, where leaving Persens with a party to restrain the Aetolians, he thence marched towards Thrace against the Medi, which were wont to make inroads into Macedonia when the King was absent in the Wars; from them he took Jampharnia, and attempted other places. But the Aetolians now aiming at, and expecting great things, because of their conjunction with their Romans, struck terror into almost all the other Greeks; wherefore the Achaeans, Boeotians, Euboeans, Epirotes, and Acarnanians implored his help, for all which he provided as well as he might, and sent a party to defend Preparesus the Island, at which he heard that Attalus coming into Europe, arrived, being chosen by the Aetolians their Commander in Chief. Scopas the Aetolian hearing he was gone into Thrace, invaded Acarnania, the Inhabitants whereof sending away their Wives, Children, and Aged into Epirus, vowed never to return except as Conquerors, rather than to be again enslaved under the Aetolians. This the Enemy hearing, was something amazed at their resolution, and then knowing of Philip his coming, returned home, and he when he heard they had so done, returned also unto Pella. The year after he succoured the Achaeans fore molested by Machanidas Tyrant of Sparta, and the Aetolians, & went against Lamia, a Citie of the Aetolians, who coming out to meet him, he overthrew them in two several engagements, after which they shutting up themselves in the Town, he drew down his Army to Phalara a Maritime Citie of Thessaly, whither Ambassadors came from Ptolemy, the Rhodians, Chians, and Aethenians, to compose the difference betwixt him,

A. M. 3791. Ol. 141. ann. 3. V. C. 540. Antioch Mag. 10. Ptol. Philog. 9.

Idem lib. 8. Excerpt. 9.

Idem ibid. Excerpt. 10.

Livius lib. 26.

Idem ibid.

Polybius lib. 10.

Idem lib. 27.

Polybius ex lib. 7. excerpt. 3.

him, and the *Ætolians*, though not so much out of love to these, as for fear that *Philip* and his Kingdom should grow too great, and become burdensome to the liberty of *Greece*. The Treaty was put off to the meeting of the States general of the *Achaëns*, and a Truce made in the mean time for thirty dayes.

34. It was also began with this design, to keep *Attalus*, or the *Romans*, from coming into *Greece*; but the *Ætolians* observing the Term of the Truce almost to be expired, and hearing that *Attalus* was come to *Ægina*, and the *Roman* Navy to *Naupactus*, hindered the conclusion; first complaining of some things done during the Truce, and then plainly refusing to agree, except the *Achaëns* would restore *Pylus* to the *Messenians*, and except the *Romans*, *Athamanians*, *Sec. dilaidas*, and *P. euratus* were included in the peace. *Philip* holding it an unworthy thing that those who had the worst of it in the War should give Laws to the other, broke up the meeting, and leavying 4000 men for a defence to the *Achaëns*, went to *Argos*. In the mean while *P. Sulpicius* coming with the *Roman* Fleet from *Naupactus*, landed betwixt *Corinth* and *Sicyon*, and wasted the Countrey; but *Philip* lighting upon his men drove them to their ships, and then going to *Dyme*, cast off thence the Garrison of the *Ætolians*, called thither by the *Eleans*. Their Territories he also wasted (*Cycliadas* the General of the *Achaëns* having united his Forces with his)

and then went against the *Citie* it self. It hapned that *Sulpicius* was secretly got in thither with 4000 men, which struck a terror into the besiegers as soon as they espied the *Roman* colours, and *Philip* would fain have drawn off his men; but a skirmish being begun he was forced to charge the *Roman* Cohort with his horse. His own horse being shot under him, a sharp conflict followed about his person now on foot, but being overpowered, he was rescued by his followers, and mounting another fled away. Then pitched he his Tents five miles from *Elis*, and the next day marching to *Pyrgus* a Castle not far off, there took a multitude of Countrey people, which with their Cattel had fled thither for protection; but as he was dividing the plunder, a Messenger came out of *Macedonia*, and informed him, that a certain man of the *Æropians* had taken *Lychnidus*, and was raising the *Dardaniens*; wherefore leavying 2500 men under the Government of *Menippus* and *Polyphus*, for a Guard to the *Achaëns*, away he marched into *Thessaly*, where he heard the *Dardaniens* had invaded his Kingdom, and that he was reported to be slain. After his departure *Sulpicius* went and wintered at *Ægina* with *Attalus*, and the *Achaëns* fought prosperously against their Enemies.

35. The year after, *P. Sulpicius Galba* the *Proconsul* and *Attalus* departing from *Ægina* with their Navies joyned together (which made up fifty sayl) came into *Eubœa*, and there took *Oreus* through the treachery of *Plator* the Governour. *Philip* now being at *Demetrias*, great complaints came to him of the *Ætolians*, who being very high, troubled grievously the Associates; the *Achaëns* moreover being molested again by *Machanidas* Tyrant of *Lacedæmon*, and desiring aid, he dismissed the Messengers with promise to provide for the safety of all as near as he could, and appointed fires to be made on the tops of the Mountains, with a Watch-Tower, to give him warning if the Enemy invaded the Sea-Coasts. The fires upon the coming of the Navy to *Oreus* were by the cunning of *Plator* made too late; but upon the sign given he hastened with his Army (having beaten off the *Ætolians* who opposed him at the Straights of *Thermopyla*) and came to *Elatea* a Town in *Phocis*. *Attalus* at this time, & the *Proconsul* having attempted *Chalcis* to no purpose, came to *Opus*, which being taken, the King's Soldiers were to have the plunder of it, as the *Romans* had before of *Oreus*. Here he staying too long to gather money, was almost surpris'd by *Philip*, and hasting to his ships, had not got all his men aboard before he fell upon him; then departing to *Oreus*, he there received news that *Prusias* King of *Bithinia* had invaded his Kingdom, so that he presently returned home, and *Sulpicius* to *Ægina*. *Philip* chiding the *Opuntians* for yielding so soon, went, and took *Thronium* inhabited by them of *Thebes* *Phiotick*, who being outed thence by

A. M. 3996.  
Ol. 142. ann. 4.  
V. C. 545.  
Antioch. M. 15.  
Ptolom. Philop. 14.

Livius lib. 28.

by him 8 years before, as we said, the *Ætolians* had given them this Town to dwell in. After this returning to *Elatia* (where the Ambassadors of *Polomy* and the *Rhodiens* stayed his coming to move him again about the peace) and hearing that *Machanidas* had determined to set upon the *Eleans*, he resolved to prevent him. *Machanidas* hearing of his coming, retreated presently to *Sparta*, and then went he to *Ægium* to the general Council of the *Achaëns*, to whom he restored *Heræa* and *Triphylia*; and *Aliphera* to the *Megalopolitans*. He made some depredations upon the *Ætoliam*, then returned to *Oreus*, and so to *Demetrias*, where he gave order for making of ships; (things being quiet there after the departure of *Attalus*) and so into his own Kingdom against the *Dardaniens*.

36. The two years following, little or nothing was done by the *Romans* in *Greece*, so that the *Ætolians* being destitute of their aid (in which they most confided) were forc'd to make a Peace with him on his own terms. Scarce was it concluded, when *Publius Sempronius* the *Proconsul* was sent to succeed *Sulpicius* (who carelessly managed his affairs) with 10000 Foot, 1000 Horse, and 35 Gallies, who coming to *Dyrrhachium* raised the *Parthini*, and set upon *Damallum*. Coming a little after to *Apollonia*, *Philip* having received the news of his arrival, marched down thither, and would have given him battle, but the *Proconsul* refusing it, and he not daring to attempt the Town, as also because he was now inclinable also to Peace, he returned again into his own Kingdom. Not long after the *Epirotes* bearing also the same mind, sent to him, desiring he would think of Peace, which they despaired not of, so he and *Sempronius* would but meet together. He condescended to go down into *Epirus*, and then came to an interview with the *Proconsul* at *Phonice*, together with *Aminander* King of the *Athamanians*, and the Deputies of the *Epirotes* and *Acarnanians*, where it was agreed that the *Parthini*, the *Cities* *Dimalum*, *Bergulum*, and *Eugenium*, should fall to the share of the *Romans*, and the *Atintana* (because they had desired it from the Senate at Rome) to *Philip*: in the confederacy were included on the Kings part, *Prusias* King of *Bithinia*, the *Achaëns*, *Beotians*, *Thessalonians*, *Acarnanians*, and *Epirotes*, and on the Roman, the Inhabitants of *Ilium*, King *Attalus*, *Pleauratus*, the *Eleans*, *Messenians*, and *Athenians*, with *Nabis* Tyrant of *Sparta*, and successor of *Machanidas*, slain in battle by *Philopomenes*, who now had begun to defend his Country from the *Lacedæmonians* and others. A Truce was made for two moneths, to have the consent of the People of Rome, who now having turned the War into *Affrick* upon the *Carthaginians*, were glad to free themselves from all other troubles, and therefore the Peace was confirmed by the suffrages of all the Tribes.

37. But *Philip's* mind was so inured to action, that he could not but make himself work; for perceiving *Philopomenes* (now *Prætor* the second time of the *Achaëns*) to be in great respect for his military skill and valour, he sent to murder him at *Megalopolis*, which being discovered, he deservedly incurred the displeasure of all *Greece*. He kept some correspondence (together with *Antiochus* the Great) with *Polomy* *Philopator*, when living; but after his death, they two consulted together to deprive his young son of his Kingdom, and might well have done it (especially seeing the *Ægyptian* Court was much vexed by the discord of the great ones) had they not both been diverted by the *Romans*, and punished justly, as *Polybius* observeth. And though he had been reconciled to the *Ætolians*, and used them as his friends and allies, yet now without any pretence did he withdraw *Lyfimachia* from their society, and joyned it to himself, after that *Chalcedon*; and to gratifie his Son in Law *Prusias* of *Bithinia*, enslaved the City of the *Ciani*, though the *Ætolians* had sent them a Captain who commanded in chief, whose cruelty so incensed the *Rhodiens*, as ever after they became his Enemies, and joyned with *Attalus* King of *Asia* against him. Very stoutly did he deal with these his adversaries, never being discouraged by any bad success. He had the worst of it in a battle at Sea near *Chius*, but driving *Attalus* on Land, and taking his ship (though he had never lost so many men in any battle whatever

7. 22 before)

The *Ætolians* forced to make a peace with him.

A general peace made betwixt him, the *Romans*, and others.

He incurreth odium several wayes.

And Having other enemies

Idem lib. 29.

*Polybius* l. 11. except. c. 7.

*Plutarch* in *Philopomenes*.

Lib. 5. except. 20. c.

Ibid. c. 2.

He ingageth  
against the  
Romans.

before) he ascribed the Victory to himself. For all this War in which he was employed by two powerful adversaries, yet feared he not to undertake another with the People of Rome, which now a few months after the end of the second Punic was decreed against him, about fourteen years after his entring into confederacy with Hannibal, of his own reign the 23, and the first of the 145 Olympiad. A. M. 3805.

The grounds  
of the War on  
the Roman  
part.

38. For though there had been a peace made, yet it was conceived he had broken it by his molesting the *Aetolians*, and other associates, and of late by sending aid to *Annibal* in *Africa*, and the *Carthaginians*: The *Athenians* by their Ambassadors also called upon the Senate for help, whose Territories he had waisted, and forced them up into the City. The occasion of the War betwixt him and them was from the *Acarmanians*; for two young men of that Nation coming to *Athens*, chanced to go into the Temple of *Ceres* with the other company at the Feast, being not initiated, and for that reason were put to death, as having committed an unpardonable offence, though ignorantly they did it; now this the *Athamanians* took so to heart, as they procured *Philip* to make War upon them. At the same time were come to Rome Ambassadors also from *Assalus*, and the *Rhodians*, complaining that the Cities of *Asia* were also molested by him; so that now having little to do after the ending of the second Punic War, the Senate unanimously made a Decree, by virtue whereof *Marcus Levinus* the Viceprator was sent into *Macedonia* with 38 ships brought out of *Sicilia* by *Cn. Octavius*: Afterwards came news further that he was about to take *Athens*, and then it being proposed to the People, the War (through the perswasion of *Publius Sulpicius* the Consul, to whom it fell by lot) was decreed against him. He had not besieged that City himself, but, sending down *Philocles* one of his Captains thither, went and subdued the *Chersonesus* of *Thrace*. Onely the Inhabitants of *Abydos* stood out against him, and that with such resolution, as following the example of the *Saguntines* in *Spain*, they fought it out to the last, and made an end of themselves, after he had denied to receive them upon any other terms than yielding to mercy. Yet *Attalus* and the *Rhodians* might have relieved them had they not loitered.

Idem ibid. &  
Polyb. excerpt.  
lib. 16.

Livius ibid.

Philip's fruit-  
less Expedi-  
tion against  
Atheas.

39. *Sulpicius* the Consul coming to *Apollonia*, upon the desire of the *Athenians*, sent *C. Claudius Ceno* with twenty ships out of the Fleet which lay at *Corcyra*, furnished with Soldiers, to relieve their City. He hearing that *Chalcis* was badly looked to, though fortified with a Garrison of the *Macedonians*, went thither, took it with ease, then plundering it set on fire, and returned to the *Piræus*, or Haven of *Athens*. *Philip* was now come down to *Demetrias*, where hearing this news he passed over *Euripus* on a bridge, and through *Boeotia* hastened to *Athens*, thinking to surprize the Town; but the Inhabitants having got notice of his coming, stood upon their guard, and then he perceiving his craft failed him, betook himself to force; but this being to no purpose (the Romans coming in, and the Soldiers of *Attalus* from *Egina*) wasting all about the Town, and not sparing so much as the Sepulchers, he went to *Eleusine* thinking there to get the Temple and Castle into his power; but the guards being strong, and the Navy coming to help from the *Piræus*, he marched thence to *Megara*, and so to *Corinth*. Hearing now that the *Achaens* were met at *Argos*, to consult how to resist *Nabis* Tyrant of *Sparta*, he went down thither, and came upon them unawares, and promised he would make War upon him, on condition they would but find him Soldiers to keep *Oreus*, *Chalcis*, and *Corinth*. His design was to ingage them in the War against the Romans, which they very well understood, and therefore *Cycliades* the Prator answered, that it was not lawful to propose any other matter than that for which they were assembled, and so a Decree being made for raising an Army against *Nabis*, hee broke up the meeting.

40. Nothing yet was done by the Roman Consul of himself, but encamping upon the River *Apfus* between *Apollonia* and *Dyrrhachium*, he sent *L. Apustius* his Lieutenant with a party to harraße the Enemies Country, who

He courteth  
the Aetolians.

But his bad  
success a-  
gainst the  
Consul mak-  
eth them joy-  
n with the Ro-  
mans.

Tappulus the  
Consul doth  
nothing.

Flamininus suc-  
ceedeth,

With whom  
Philip hath a  
fruitless trea-  
ty.

And is beaten  
by him.

who performed what he went about, taking divers Towns of *Macedonia*, and then returned with much booty. *Philip* being come home, made all provision possible for the War, and knowing the restlessness of the *Aetolians*, for fear they might side with the Romans, (which yet they had not done) sent his Ambassadors to the general meeting of them called the *Panætolium*, which came also *L. Furius Purpureo*, sent from the Consul, and others from the *Athenians*. The *Macedonian* being first heard, advised them to remain in their society with him; the *Athenians* inveighed bitterly against *Philip*, as having broken the Laws of humanity and religion, in violating their Sepulchers, and Temple; then *Purpureo* sheweth how the Romans had undertaken the War for them, though they formerly made Peace without them, and now how good an occasion was offered them of being restored into their friendship and society, except they would rather perish with *Philip*. This inclined all their minds towards the Romans; but *Demetrius* the Prator thought the business was to be put off to the next Council. But not long after *Philip* fought twice with the Consul, and that so unprosperously, as he had like to have been taken himself, and then they embraced the society of the Romans, and invading *Macedonia*, took and burnt *Cercinium*, after which going into *Perrhabia*, *Philip* set upon them at unawares, and killing many, forced the rest to flee for their safety under the conduct of *Aminander* into their own Country. This year the Roman Navy joyning to that of *Attalus* and the *Rhodians*, took the Island *Andrus*, and *Oreus*, the City we have often spoken of, in *Eubœa*.

41. *Philip* taking all care possible for the managing of his affaires, the next Spring sent down his Auxiliaries and others through *Epirus* into *Chaonia*, to seize upon the Straights near *Antigonis*, and he himself following after with the strength of his Army, fortified the Vallie betwixt the Mountains, through which the River *Aous* runneth; *Athenagoras* his Lieutenant he commanded to look to the Mountain *Asnaus*, and he himself pitched his Tents upon the hill *Æropus*. To *Sulpicius* the Consul succeeded *P. Villius Tappulus*, who coming late did nothing at all, for leading towards the Enemy, he with a few went to view the Moors, through which his nearest way lay to him, and consulting many dayes whether he should passe that way, or take the same *Sulpicius* went into *Macedonia*, before he could determine, news came to him, that his Successor was already come to *Corcyra*. This was *T. Quintius Flamininus*, created Consul ere he was thirty years old, who falling this Province came sooner than usual, bringing over with him 8000 Foot, and 800 Horse. Being arrived at the Camp, after some consultation, he determined to set upon *Philip's* Army in the place where it yet lay; but how to do it was hard to be resolved, and forty dayes were spent in this deliberation, which time *Philip* was content to make an opportunity to look after Peace, and attempt the procurement of it through the *Epirates*. They met at the River *Aous* (or *Apfus*) but the Consul demanded things seeming so hard to the other, that he asked him if he would impose more hard conditions upon one conquered? and so withdrew himself from the conference.

42. The next day followed some light Skirmishes, neither part receiving either much good or damage, but as they continued in this condition, came a certain Shepherd, sent by *Charops* Prince of the *Epirates*, undertaking to lead the Romans through the Mountains an easie way, and bring them upon the Enemies back. The Consul glad of this opportunity, sent a party with him, and then gave an Alarm with the whole Army to the Camp, which the *Macedonians* received willingly enough, and both Armies being greedy of fighting, they marched out of their Trenches to receive the battel; but then those on their backs setting up a shout, struck them with such terror, that some of them ran away, others by reason of the difficulty of the place for fight were compassed in, and 2000 slain. The King fled again till he came five miles off, and then rallying his men upon an hill, with a great Company went into *Thessaly*. Where wasting divers Towns to deprive the Enemy



The Consul  
taketh in fe-  
veral places  
in *Thessaly*.

of Provisions, he thence passed into *Macedonia*. The Consul following him into *Thessaly*, laboured to get the good will of the *Epirotes*; and called to him *Aminander* King of the *Athamanians* to conduct him on his way; then took he *Phaleria* (where were in Garrison 2000 *Macedonians*) which he plundered and burnt, at which also others being affrighted yielded themselves, and *Philip* not daring to oppose, but keeping within *Tempe*, sent relief upon occasion to such places as wanted. At *Rhaga* the Consul found such opposition as he raised his siege, but thence departing took in divers Cities of *Phocis*, and besieged *Elatea*, during which things the Navy under the conduct of *L. Quintinus* his brother, in Conjunction with *Attalus* and the *Rhodians*, took two of the most considerable Towns of *Eubœa*, and then prepared to venture for *Corinth*; but by the Consul's advice, they first sent to the *Acheans* to see if they might draw them from *Philip* to their own party.

The *Acheans*  
joyn with the  
Roman party.

43. *Aristannus*, or *Aristinethus* (as he is called by *Polybius*) their Prætor, laboured to persuade them by all means to imbrace the society of the *Romans*; at which the *Dymeans* and *Megalopolitans* out of distaste went out of the Council, as unwilling thus to betray *Philip*, and the rest unanimously entered into Alliance with *Attalus* and the *Rhodians*, and for that they could not do as much with the *Romans* without consent of the People at *Rome*, put it off onely till they might send their Ambassadors thither, and Decreed at the present to dispatch away three to *Lucius Quintinus*, and their Army also to *Corinth* before which he now lay. The Town was stoutly defended by the Inhabitants, and *Androphenes* the Governour for the King, till such time as *Philotes* came with 1500 fresh men to their relief, after which it seemed best both to *Attalus* and *Quintinus* to raise their siege, and then *Philotes* had *Argos* betrayed to him. The Consul in this mean time got *Elatea*, and then taking up his Winter quarters, news came that the *Opuntians* were at odds amongst themselves, some calling the *Ætolians*, and some the *Romans*, desirous to give up their Citie to them. The stronger and richer part called the Consul, but the Castle was still held by the *Macedonians*, who could not be got out by any fair words or foul; and when it should have been stormed came an Herald from *Philip*, desiring a time and place might be set for a meeting to treat again of peace, which being granted, they met in the Bay near *Nice* at the day appointed, where *Philip* would not come ashore for fear as he pretended of the *Ætolians*. Much talk there was on both sides, *Polybius* except. 2 lib. 17.

Another  
Treaty.

He sendeth  
Ambassadors  
to *Rome*.

44. The *Greeks* sent their Ambassadors also, and all came to *Rome*, when the debate was about the Provinces of the new Consuls, whether one of them should have *Macedonia*, according to the custom, or both stay, and carry on the War against the *Gauls* then depending; for the *Tribunes* of the people opposed the custom, alleging that the reason was why Wars were so lengthened, because there was every year a new General according to the succession of the Consuls. This being referred to the Senate, it was thought fit to continue the Command to *Quintinus*, and then had all the Ambassadors audience. The *Greeks* inveighed sore against *Philip*, and earnestly laboured that he should not be allowed to hold *Chalcis*, *Corinth*, and *Demetrias*; for otherwise *Greece* could have no thoughts of liberty. They alleged it to his own saying, that these three were the Pillars of *Greece*, and that not without reason; for if he held *Corinth*, *Peloponnesus* could have no breathing time; if *Chalcis*, the *Locrians*, *Bœotians*, and *Phocians* durst not mutter; and if *Demetrias*, the *Thessalians*, and *Magnets* should not be able as much as to taste of liberty: seeing therefore he pretended to be willing to quit all other places, this was but a shift for the present, seeing if he was Master of these places he might recover what he had before; therefore they desired he might either relinquish them, or that the War might be carried on, seeing the greatest part

To no effect.

Is overthrown  
at *Cynosce-  
phale*.

of it was finished already. The Kings Ambassadors beginning a long Orator, were interrupted at the first, and asked whether their Master would be willing to leave the three Cities; they answered they had no Commission to answer any thing to that point: and so being chidden by the Fathers they made an end, and the affairs of *Greece* were again left to the management of *Quintinus*.

45. *Philip* seeing how things went, wrote to *Philotes* to deliver up *Argos* to *Nabis* the Tyrant of *Sparta*, on condition that if he prospered he should again restore it to him; but he presently after his getting into the Town, sent word to *Quintinus*, who giving him a meeting, desired he would make peace with the *Acheans*, and send aid against the King; the later of which he promised to perform, and as for the peace granted a Truce for four months. *Philip* shortly after came down again into *Thessaly* (it being no policy at all to expect the Enemy in his own Kingdom) which *Quintinus* understanding marched thither, where wandering after each other, they both at length in a thick mist came near to some Hills, from the likeness of the heads of Dogs, called *Cynoscephale*. Here both their foreguards fixing came to the discovery of each other, and from the skirmishing, and engagement of them, to a set battel, though the King at first did not intend it. The victory seemed at the beginning to incline towards the *Macedonians* in one Wing; but the other being overpowered, they both at length were overthrown by the skill and valour of the *Romans*, 8000 perishing, and 5000 being taken prisoners: Of the *Romans* 700 were slain. *Philip*, when he saw how things went, fled towards *Tempe*; at the entry of which he stayed for such as had escaped, and then passed through that Countrey into *Macedonia*. The *Romans* coming to plunder the Enemy's Camp, found the *Ætolians* got thither before them, at which they sore repined, and grumbled at their General, as if he exposed them to danger, and granted the Prey to others. *Flaminius* was sore displeased to see the greediness of the *Ætolians* after Prey; and as this gave occasion to that hatred, which afterwards manifested it self, so it made him the more willing to agree with the Enemy, that he might not leave them Masters of *Greece*.

46. *Philip* sent presently to the Roman General to desire another Treaty about a peace, who receiving them in a Council of Officers, without calling the *Ætolians*, used them very respectfully, and presently granted a Truce for fifteen dayes. This seeming strange to the *Ætolians*, they presently concluded he was bribed to it by *Philip*, not accounting better of others than according to their own covetous humour; but he being displeased with them, not onely for the matter of the plunder, but also for that they gave out sleighting words of the Roman valour (attributing the good success to themselves) hearing also that *Antiochus* King of *Asia* was coming towards *Europe*, and so fearing *Philip* might joyn with him, and then a new Consul coming might take the glory of concluding the War away from himself, he resolved to make an end of the difference, and appointed a day and place to meet at, to which he summoned the Allies. Being met together he willed them to declare their minds concerning the peace, on what terms they would have it made. *Aminander* very modestly desired Provision might be made for him, else he was like to undergo the malice of *Philip*; who would be able presently to crush him. The *Ætolians* were point blank against the peace, saying, all would prove fruitlesse, except the *Macedonian* were out of his Kingdom, and that *Quintinus*, except he did it, would neither answer the expectations of *Greece*, nor of those that sent him; to which he replied, that it was not the custom of the people at *Rome* utterly to undo at once those with whom they warred, and that the liberty of *Greece* would better be provided for by the standing of the *Macedonian* Kingdom, so weakened as it was like to be, than by the destruction of it; seeing then it would be obnoxious to the invasion of the *Thracians* and *Gauls*. The day after arrived *Philip* himself, and the next, coming into a full Council there, very wisely allayed the heats of all parties against him, offering to ratifie the former demands

*Livius in su-  
pra.*

*Polybius ex-  
cerpt. 2 lib. 17.*

A. A. 3808.  
Ol. 145. ann. 4.  
V. C. 557.  
*Antioch, Mag.  
27.  
Ptolom. Epi-  
phanis 7.*

*Idem excerpt.  
Legation. 6.*

Obtaineth a  
Truce, and  
sending again  
to Rome,

mands of the Romans, and for the rest to submit himself to the pleasure of the Senate. Therefore four moneths Truce was granted to him, according to his desire, and paying to *Quintius* 400 Talents in ready money, and giving up *Demetrius* his Son, and others for Hostages, he had leave to send to Rome about the conclusion; but with this caution, that if the business should not succeed, he was to have the Hostages and Money returned back unto him.

Procureth  
peace.

47. Both Senate and People admitted of peace, though *Marcellus* the new Consul laboured against it, out of desire to be sent into Macedonia. *Philip* was enjoined, besides the setting of all Greece at liberty, before the celebration of the *Isthmian Games*, to restore all Captives and Renegadoes, to give up all his covered Gallies except 5. and one with 16 Oars on a side, to pay 1000 Talents, half at present, and the other half in the space of 10 years, at so many payments. Into Greece were sent 10 men of the Chief, with whom *Flaminius* was joyned in Commission, to compose affairs, and restore liberty to the several States thereof, which exceedingly affected all with joy, except the *Aetolians*, who carped at the Decree, and affirmed that Greece had onely changed its Lords; seeing the Romans had *Corinth*, *Demetrius*, and *Chalcis*. When the Commissioners came to sit, some controversie indeed arose about these Towns; for they having it in expresse charge to set all others at liberty, these were left to their discretion because of *Antiochus*, who, as all men thought, had intentions to attempt something upon Europe: therefore *Flaminius* perswaded them to give up *Corinth* into the hands of the *Achaean*s, and keep that Castle, *Demetrius* and *Chalcis* in their own power. Then going to the solemnity of the *Isthmian Games* he there pronounced liberty, in that great audience, unto all Greece, which so affected the hearers, as with admiration of the thing they were scarce themselves.

*Livius lib. 39.*

48. During the War between the Romans and *Antiochus*, which shortly after followed, *Philip* behaved himself suitably enough to the expectation of the Conquerours: afterwards considering, and comparing his present condition with his former, he grew something impatient, and especially amongst other things, this vexed him, that power of animadverting upon those *Macedonians* who had revolted in the War, was taken from him; for after that *Antiochus* was overcome, and the War with the *Aetolians* was now in hand, *Acilius* the Consul taking *Heraclea*, and *Philip* besieging *Lamia*, when he was in a fair way of taking of it, he was commanded to depart from it, that so it might be surrendered to the other. *Acilius* to pacifie him, gave him leave to make War upon *Athamania*, and to recover the Cities which the *Aetolians* had taken from the *Thessalians*; so that he presently drove out *Aminander* from *Athamania*, recovered divers Cities, amongst which was *Demetrius*, and possessed himself of the Countrey of the *Magnetes*, and some Cities in *Thrace* also. This pacified him for the present, yet did he not let fall his indignation, but in time of peace made all provision possible for another War, increasing his Revenues not onely by Customs, but by renewing the works of the Mines, and digging others, as also taking care for increasing the number of his people now exhausted. Whilst he thus employed himself, there wanted not an occasion to inflame his mind anew; for the *Thessalians* and *Athamanians* sent to Rome to complain of him; *Eumenes* also about the Cities of *Thrace*. The Senate not being willing to judge the matter in his absence, sent three Commissioners into Greece, to hear and determine it, who sitting, and hearing all parties as Arbitrators, were something provoked by some words he uttered, affirming, that as yet the Sun of all the dayes he had to live was not set; and all being heard, they Decreed he should withdraw his Guards from all the Greek Cities, and that the Kingdom of Macedonia should be terminated by its ancient limits. As for the Cities of *Thrace*, much being alleged pro and con, betwixt him and *Eumenes*; they kept the middle way, reserving the decision of that to the Senate, and ordered in the mean time that his Garrison Soldiers should be drawn out of them. The Senate resolved he should quit them, and all the Maritime Coasts of *Thrace*;

so

His dissatisfa-  
ction after the  
War.

so that now being sufficiently incensed, he wanted but convenient Forces to make him revolt.

49. Being commanded to quit *Enus* and *Maronea*, with all the Sea Coasts of *Thrace*, he procured the principal of the *Maronites* who were strongly bent against him, to be murdered in the night, and then the Romans complaining of it as an unworthy deed, he denied it, and when *Onomastus* and *Cassander* the instruments of the fact were required to be sent to Rome, the later he gave way for to go, but then (it's thought) procured him to be poisoned in the way, lest he should tell tales; and as yet his affairs not being ripe for a revolt, he sent *Demetrius* his younger son to Rome, to purge himself, and deprecate the displeasure of the Senate. Underhand he solicited the inhabitants upon the River *Ister* to break into Italy. *Demetrius* had got heretofore so much good-will at Rome, as coming to have audience in the Senate, though he was abashed at that presence, and the heavy loads of imputations laid upon his Father by the Ambassadors of his Enemies, Yet were his Father's faults passed over at this time for his sake, and so much signified to *Philip* by *Q. Marcius*, sent into Macedonia to see whether he had done all that was enjoined him. Then did he quit all the Cities of *Thrace* inhabited by the Greeks, and performed all other things which the Romans required, that he might not give any suspicion, but get leisure to provide for the intended War. With *Demetrius* his son he was not well pleased, for that the Senate making no account of himself, had given him the credit of deserving onely favour; but especially *Perseus* his elder son conceived great indignation and malice against him, not onely for the credit he had at Rome, but being jealous he might deprive him thereby of his Father's Kingdom. Indeed the *Macedonians* looking upon *Demetrius* as one to whom they were obliged for saving them harmless from the Romans, designed the succession to him, whom also they held legitimate, but not *Perseus*, whose mother was no better than his Father's Concubine.

He is displeased at the favour of the Romans towards his younger son *Demetrius*

Which advantage *Perseus* his eldest son improves,

50. *Perseus* growing more and more sensible of the favour his brother was in both with the Romans and *Macedonians*, bent his mind to bring him into the jealousy and hatred of his Father, and thereby to work his destruction. His visit in way of merriment and jollity to him he represents as an opportunity taken to make him away, whereby the young man is called for by his angry Father, and is forced with tears to make an apology, to which credit is hardly enough given, suspicions and jealousies getting ground. At length *Perseus* accuseth him of having dealt with them at Rome underhand about the Kingdom and place of his Father, who sends two thither to enquire of it, but such as were *Perseus* his creatures and partners in the plot. *Philip* having a mind to go up to the top of the Mountain *Hemus*, for to have a view and prospect of the Countrey round about, took with him his eldest, and sencerly his youngest into Macedonia to look unto it, with whom he sent one *Didius* Governour of *Paonia* with a small guard. He being also one of *Perseus* his Complices, he gave him in charge to insinuate into him, and thereby get out his most inward intentions, which he easily did, the poor young man being resolved to flee to the Romans for shelter, and desirous to use his help therein. This is presently made known to *Perseus*, and by him with improvement to *Philip*, who having wearied himself and Soldiers to little purpose, and being troubled with this report, returneth home, casts *Herodorus*, *Demetrius* his chiefest friend, into prison, and causeth him also to be narrowly looked to. Some moneths remained the King thus exceedingly troubled and anxious in himself, till the Ambassadors returning from Rome, put an end within a short time to his resolutions.

And compasseth his brothers death by false accusations.

51. These men being returned, feigned grievous accusations against *Demetrius*, and amongst the rest brought counterfeited letters as from *Quintius*, wherein he begs pardon of the King, if the young man had dealt with him in any kind out of his desire to the Kingdom, but promiseth he will do nothing against any one that belongs to him, for that he would not be accounted for the time to come the author of any evil purpose. Credit being given hereunto, *Herodorus*

is

*Livius lib. 40.*

is racked to death, confessing nothing, and *Demetrius* being again accused by his brother of intended flight, is destined to die, though for fear of giving any offence to the *Romans*, and discovering his intentions against them, it's resolved to be done cunningly. Being sent to *Astræum* a Town of *Peonia*, and thence called to *Heraclea*, he is there first poisoned by *Diadem*, crying out against the cruelty of his Father, the paricide of his brother, and wickedness of *Didas*. Being tormented with the working of the Poyson, two lusty Ruffians were let into the room, who stifled him with the tapestry, and so the innocent young man was murdered. His Father within a year or two fell into a sad melancholy for the losse of him, which being perceived by one *Antigonus* the son of *Echecrates*, and Nephew also to *Antigonus* who was *Philip's* Father, he having been alwaies a faithful friend to the King, labored to discover to him the whole device, and brought to him one *Xyeni*, who was privy to the whole design. He laid open the series of all things to him. Hereupon *Philotes* one of the Ambassadors that were sent to *Rome* being present, was put to death; *Apelles* the other, hearing the businesse was come out, fled into *Italy*. *Persus* onely kept him out of sight, but his Father intending to frustrate his expectations of the Kingdom, which he so wickedly sought after, declared *Antigonus* his heir and successor, saying, he had rather his Kingdom should be destroyed, than ever come into the hands of *Persus*. Not long after being spent with extreame grief and melancholy, and having commended *Antigonus* to the States of *Macedonia*, and uttered many a bitter curse against *Persus*, he died at *Amphipolis*, after he had reigned 44 years. A. M. 3826, the second of the 150 Olympiad, 146 years after the death of *Alexander* the Great.

The device is discovered,

Whereat *Philip* laboureth to disinheret *Persus* and dieth of Melancholy.

Yet *Persus* getteth the Kingdom, and resolveth to renew the War with the *Romans*.

52. Had *Philip* lived a little longer, *Antigonus* had got possession of the Kingdom by his means; but things being not now ripe, he lost it by the procurement of the Kings Physician, who when he saw there was no hopes of life, sent and acquainted *Persus* with it, and kept close his death till his arrival, so that then having opportunity to oppress his Enemies not once thinking of it, he obtained the Kingdom. Being a little ferled therein, he caused *Antiochus* to be slain, and then sent to *Rome* to renew the League made with his Father, and to desire that he might be owned as King, doing this onely to secure himself for the present, and intending as soon as his affairs would permit, to make use of the preparation his Father had made for another War; as it afterwards proved. His Father a little before his death had prevailed with the *Bastarna*, who lived near the River *Ister*, to leave their ancient seat, and come and live in the Country of the *Dardanians*, which he intended to give unto them, that there leaving there wives and children, they might together with the *Scordisci* (who being some of those *Galls* that invaded *Thrace*, had feared themselves at the meeting of *Danubius* and *Sabus*, and so called themselves) invade *Italy*. They re-entred *Thrace* again with quietnesse, but after *Philip's* death falling out with the Inhabitants, and pursuing them to the Mountains, they were set upon with such a tempest as seized on the *Galls* at *Delphi*, and being pressed also by the *Thracians*, onely 20000 got into *Dardania*, the rest of the multitude returning back beyond *Danubius*. Those that arrived in *Dardania* now did *Persus* stir up against the Inhabitants as much as possible, which being distasteful to the *Romans*, their Ambassadors also returning from *Carthage*, reported to the Senate that he held intelligence with them there; for his Ambassadors had private audience of them by night, and others were sent by them into *Macedonia*.

53. About this time some of the *Dolopians* refusing to obey him, and willing to submit their cause to the *Roman* Senate, he went down, and by force brought all their Country into his power; he laboured then to curry favour with several Cities of *Achaia* and *Thessaly* in his passage, and either sent or wrote to several others in *Greece*, desiring them that an end might be put to the ancient grudges betwixt his Father and them; the *Achaans* especially. The *Roman* Senate upon the report of the stirs in *Dardania*, sent three to see how matters went, but he refused to see them; it being alleged sometimes that

A. M. 3824.  
Ol. 149. an. 4.  
V. C. 572.  
Seleuci Philop.  
6.  
Ptolom. Epiph.  
22.

A. M. 3826.  
Ol. 150. an. 2.  
V. C. 575.  
Seleuci Philop.  
9.  
Ptol. Philom. 2.

Livius lib. 41.

that he was absent, and otherwhiles that he was sick; but it clearly appeared to them that he was providing for the War, and so much the more, for that the *Ætolians* were now so seditious, as though their commissions gave them power to take up the differences amongst them, yet could they not prevail by their authority. Indeed now he was better provided to make War than the *Romans* to resist, having 30000 Foot, with 5000 Horse, in a readinesse, and provisions too for ten years. *Thrace* was at Peace with him, and though he was so infamous for his cruelty, not onely in respect of his brother's death, but also the killing of *Apelles*, whom he used as an instrument in that businesse, and also for making away his wife, and upon other accounts, yet either out of reverence to the Court of *Macedonia*, or by reason of their emulation against the *Romans*, were both the *Greeks* and *Asiaticks* generally more favourable to him than to *Eumenes* the King of *Pergamus*, though of a clean contrary disposition. *Eumenes* himself came to *Rome* to complain against him; to answer to whose accusations he sent Ambassadors, and with them the *Rhodiens*, who inclined to his side, and as *Eumenes* returned home, he most basely sent some to murder him, whom though that King escaped as to his life, yet was he fore wounded in the straight passage to the Temple at *Delphi*: This as it lost *Persus* much with his friends, so it made him be the sooner declared an Enemy by the *Romans*.

His bad carriage towards *Eumenes* maketh him the sooner be declared an Enemy.

He desireth Peace which will not now be granted.

His consternation of mind.

He is overthrown,

54. It was thought good that some forces should be raised to be in a readinesse, and that certain Commissioners should be sent into *Greece* to retain the States in their fidelity, with Soldiers also to put into such places as wanted. He perceiving their resolutions, began to repent himself, and procured a truce, that he might send Ambassadors to *Rome*, the Commissioners giving way to it, for that they knew him in a good posture for War, and themselves unprovided as yet; but the Senate for all this would not grant him Peace, his faults being so aggravated against him, that the War was denounced. *P. Licinius Crassus* the Consul being sent against him, he had the better of it in an engagement; but yet his heart failed him, so contrary to his former humour, as that then he sent and desired Peace, offering to perform all his Father was tied to; but had answer by the stout *Romans*, that on no other terms could it be granted, except he absolutely referre himself and Kingdom to the courtesy of the Senate, and cast all into their hands. After this he sent to *Genthius* King of the *Illyrians*, to draw him to his party, having taken divers Towns from him, and might have done himself good thereby, had he not been before-ferd; for that Prince was inclinable enough to him, onely he said, he wanted money, which though he had enough by him, yet neglected he to send. He laboured also to draw into his aid *Corys* King of *Thrace*, and subdued again the *Dardanians*, but *Quem vult Jupiter perdere, demorat prius*. *Q. Marcius Philippus* coming against him, by reason of the difficulty of the wayes, and want of provisions, might easily have been utterly defeated; but he cried out he was conquered, without fighting ran away, left the Straights open for his Enemy, sent to *Thessalonica* to burn his ships, to *Pella* to cast his treasures into the Sea, and then being angry with his messengers, the one for that he had not obeyed him, the other for that he had, he put them both to death, and recovering most of his treasure, by those that dived, out of the water, onely satisfied himself for this madnesse, by recovering *Dius*, which had been taken by the Enemy.

55. *L. Paulus Æmilius* the Consul was at length sent against him, who found some difficulty at first to come at him, having incamped himself near the Sea under the mountain *Olympus*; but *Scipio Nasica* getting over a Rock led the way, and then *Persus* retired, and pitched his tents near to *Pydna*. The Consul was warie of engaging with him (who now had an Army of 30000 Foot, and 4000 Horse) his own men being tired, but the night before the fight the Moon being eclipsed, so terrified the *Macedonians*, that they accounted it to preface the ruine of their Kingdom, which made the *Romans* (to whom it was foretold on purpose) more eagerly to begin the fight. *Cato* son to *M. Cato*, and son in Law to the Consul, behaved himself so stoutly, as

A a a

this

Idem lib. 42.  
43, 44.

A. M. 3836.  
Ol. 152. an. 8.  
V. C. 585.  
Aut. Epiph.  
nis 8.  
Ptol. Philom.  
12.

Livius ibid.

Plutarch in Æmilio.

this encouraged the rest, and thereby he was the means to gain the victory. Of the *Macedonians* were slain 20000, and 6000 taken; of the Conquerours but 100 lost their lives. *Perseus* fled to *Amphipolis*, and finding there no relief, sayled to *Samothrace*, where hoping to be secure in that sanctuary, *Cn. Octavius* the Admiral being sent after him, promised by the voice of a Crier safety and freedom to all that would come in, whereby he was forsaken of almost all his followers, & *Ion of Thessalonica* gave up his young children into the hands of the *Romans*. He thought now of escaping to *Crete*; but, being left thus, gave up himself, and eldest son to *Octavius*, when he had reigned 11 years; and after being lead in Triumph by the Consul was cast into prison at *Alba*, where for seven dayes he lay in a most sad condition, till through the importunity of *Amilius* it was changed into a better. Two years he thus continued, and then through desire of life and liberty, encouraging himself in new and vain hopes, ended his dayes, some say through the barbarousness of his Keepers, who would not suffer him to take any rest, but others, by course of nature in free custody, having his funeral discharged at the publick cost. Thus ended this *Macedonian Kingdom*, being changed into a free State through the seeming bounty of the Conquerours, A. M. 3837. the first of the 153 *Olympiad*, 156 years after the death of *Alexander* the Great.

Yieldeth himself, and dieth in custody after two years.

## CHAP. V.

## The Asian and Syrian Kingdom.

From the death of *Seleucus*, to the reducing of Syria into the form of a Roman Province by *Pompey*, containing the space of 220 years.

1. **F**our or five years after the death of *Cassander*, it hapned that *Antiochus* the eldest son of *Seleucus* fell in love with *Siratonice*, daughter to *Demetrius* (which woman we said before that *Seleucus* married, after her father was overthrown, and bearen out of *Asia*) and for that he was ashamed to reveal his affection, pined away, and resolved to starve himself, had not his disease been discovered by *Erasistratus* the Physician, by the changing of his countenance when she came in or out, and by other tokens. *Seleucus*, who was ready to redeem his sons life with his own blood, presently gave him her to wife, though he had a Child by her; and that the businesse might seem to proceed of himself, calling his Army together, he declared it to be his pleasure to make them two King and Queen of all the upper Countreys, having married them together; and that he thought his son, who had hitherto been obedient to him in all other things, would also herein be ruled by him; but if his wife should displease so unusual a thing, he desired his friends to shew and perswade her, that whatsoever the King should think fit, and the affairs of State required, that she ought to account of as just, and fitting. After this he took *Demetrius* her father, and imprisoned him in the *Cheronefus* of Syria, where he died, after three years as was before said, and within a year after his death fought his last (and the last of *Alexander's* Companions) battell with *Lysimachus*, in which he being Conquerour, and his Enemy slain, left *Asia* wholly to his son, having a desire to go into *Macedonia* (where he had never been since he came over with *Alexander*) and end his dayes in his Native Countrey. But as he was journeying towards *Lysimachia*, he was traiterously slain by *Ptolomy Ceraunus* whom he had lovingly entertained. A. M. 3722. 23 years after he had taken the title of King, being aged 71. and 42 after the death of *Alexander*. From his Conquests he was called *Nicator* and *Nicator*, and is reported to have had the print of an Anchor on his Thigh, and his posterity also after him, as a note of their Original.

Plutarch, in Demetrio. Valerius Maximus lib. 5. cap. 7. Appianus in Syriacis.

A. M. 3712. Ol. 121. ann. 4. V. C. 461. Seleuci 20. Ptol. Lagi 31.

Vide Justin. lib. 25.

2. An-

Succeededeth his father.

His Wars.

Antigonus Gonatas maketh a League with him.

He repelleth the Gauls, and thence hath the name of Soter.

The Original of the Kingdom of Pergamus.

2. *Antiochus* succeeded his father, and was surnamed *Soter* from repelling the *Gauls*, which in his time at the invitation of *Mithridates* King of *Bithynia* had seized on part of *Asia*. Having with many battels recovered (though not all) his fathers Kingdom from divers, which now begun severally to pluck the parts of so great a body, he sent over a strong party under the Command of *Patrocles* beyond *Taurus*, who took to himself *Hermogenes* for his Lieutenant. He intended amongst other places to fall upon *Heraclea* a Citie of *Pontus*; but the Inhabitants coming out, and pacifying him, he made a League with them, and thence through *Phrygia* invaded *Bithynia*, where in an ambush laid for him he was cut off, though he fought stoutly with his whole Army, after which *Zipates* the King built a Citie upon the Hill *Lyperus*, which being called after his own name became famous, and nor long after he dying, left his Kingdom to *Nicomedes* his eldest son. Against him *Antiochus* being about to undertake an Expedition, he craved help of those of *Heraclea*, promising them to requite them with the like favour in their necessity, which they took as an occasion to fall off again, and break the League made with *Hermogenes*; and partly by force, and partly by purchase recovered divers places taken from them, and attempting to do so by *Ame-stris*, which one *Eumenes* held, he chose rather, out of anger, to deliver up the Town to *Ariobarzanes* the son of *Mithridates*, than to sell it to them. Not long after *Antiochus* and *Antigonus Gonatas* being at difference, and preparing for the War on both sides, *Nicomedes* joyned himself with *Antigonus*, against whom therefore the other thought first to try his strength. *Mithridates* strengthening himself, procured 13 Gallies from *Heraclea*, which adding to his own Fleet, he went against that of *Antiochus*, but facing one another for some time, they departed at length without a fight.

3. *Antigonus Gonatas* being resolved to venture for *Macedonia* (where his father *Demetrius Poliorcetes* once reigned) though he had once already been overthrown by *Ptolomy Ceraunus*, who now held that Kingdom, made a League with *Antiochus*. This Prince might be the more willing to embrace it, by reason that the *Gauls* were now come into *Asia*, brought by *Nicomedes* of *Bithynia* to help him against *Zybeas* (or *Zipatus*) the younger, who held from him (whether his brother or no is uncertain) the Maritime part of that Countrey. After they had helped him to recover *Bithynia*, they harraided all the Countreys far and wide, and, though they were but 20000. and of them but half fighting men, yet struck they such a Terror into all Nations on this side *Taurus*, as most, though they had never seen them, submitted unto them. But *Antiochus*, as we have it from *Appian*, repelled them from his Territories, and thence, for saving the Countrey harmless, had the name of *Soter* or *Saviour*, having before sent as aid into *Greece* 500 men against their Countrey-men, under the conduct of *Telearchus* the Syrian. After this having married his daughter *Apame* to *Magas* King of *Cyrene*, and brother to *Ptolomy Philadelphus*, he was perswaded by his son-in-law to break the League which his father *Seleucus* had made with *Ptolomy*, and invade *Egypt*; but as he was about to do this, and was gathering forces for it, *Ptolomy* sent several parties of Soldiers into all the Countreys over which he reigned, whereof some acting the parts of Robbers, and others of Enemies, diverted him from his purpose. The last ingagement he was in that we read of, was with *Eumenes*, the first King of *Pergamus*, near *Sardis*, from whom he received an overthrow.

4. For there was one *Phileterus* an Eunuch born at *Tios* in *Paphlagonia*, and belonging to *Lysimachus* who made him Keeper of his Treasure placed at *Pergamus*, which he built very strong upon the Hill. He continued very faithfull to him, till such time as *Arifnoe* caused him to murder *Agathocles* his eldest son, at which he being troubled, and thereupon the accusing him to her husband, he revolted from him, and sending to *Seleucus* offered himself, and the money to him: then in the troubles betwixt them two so cunningly behaved himself, as he kept possession, and alwayes fawning upon, and obliging the next, and most potent Prince, remained Master of the place and

A a a a 2

Trea-

Appian in Syriacis.

Memnon ex-cerpt. cap. 16. &c.

A. M. 3723.

Ol. 124. ann. 3.

V. C. 472.

Ptol. Philad. 3.

Pausan. in Phocis.

Idem in Atticis.

Strabo lib. 13.

Strabo ibid. &

Pausan. in Atticis.

Treasure for twenty years; For *Seleucus* being murdered by *Ptolemy Ceraunus*, he redeemed the body with a great sum of Gold, and sent the ashes thereof to this *Antiochus* Soter his son. This *Philoterus* had two brothers, *Eumenes* and *Attalus*, the former of which had a son of his own name, who succeeded his deceased Uncle, and having in his possession the places lying about *Pergamus*, overthrew *Antiochus* (who now it seemeth counted him an incroaching neighbour) as we said before. *Antiochus* also built a Citie in Syria, which he called by his wives name *Apamea*, and after that another of the same name called after his mother, who was the daughter of *Arrabazus*; herein imitating his father. At length having killed one son, and nominated another his Successor, he died, after he had reigned 19 years, A. M. 3742: the second of the 129 Olympiads.

Prolog. in Trogi  
Pomp. lib. 26.

Appian in Sy-  
riacis.  
\* Lib. 41.

Strabo lib. 11.

Cap. 11. vers. 6.

Appian in Sy-  
riacis.

Idem ibid.  
Justin lib. 27.

A. M. 3759.  
Ol. 133. ann. 3.  
V. C. 108.  
Ptol. Euerget. 1.

Antiochus Theos  
from whom  
the Parthians  
revolt,

And the Ea-  
stern Provin-  
ces.

Seleucus fir-  
named Calli-  
nicus and Po-  
gon.

Ptolemy Euer-  
getes reven-  
geth the death  
of his sister  
Berenice.

5. *Antiochus* his son succeeded him, surnamed *Theos* most prophanely by the *Milesiens*, because he rid them of *Timarchus* their Tyrant. From him the *Parthians* first revolted, who being (as \* *Justin* out of *Trogus* tells us) Exiles out of *Scythia* (in the language of which Countrey *Parthus* signifieth such an one) were very obscure under the Government of the *Medes* and *Persians*, and being Conquered by *Alexander*, when none of his Captains after his death would accept of the Sovereignty over them, fell to the lot of *Satagenor* a stranger, but a friend to the *Macedonians*. They followed first *Eumenes* in the Civil Wars; after his death *Antigonus*, and then submitted themselves to *Seleucus* and his Successors, till now they took occasion to revolt at the instigation of *Asiaces*. His brother *Tiridates*, *Arguthocles* the Governour of these parts endeavouring filthily to abuse was slain, and then the *Macedonians* were thence expelled. At the same time *Theodotus* the Governour of the 1000 *Bactrian* Cities revolted also, which the people of the East using for a pattern, in like manner fell off from *Antiochus*. He waged many Wars with *Ptolemy Philadelphus*, till such time as both being weary they contracted an Alliance, *Ptolemy* giving his daughter *Berenice* to the other, who had two sons already, *Seleucus* and *Antiochus*, by *Laodice* his former wife. Herein that Prophecie of *Daniel* is taken to be fulfilled, which saith, that in the end of years they shall joyn themselves together; for the Kings daughter of the South shall come to the King of the North, to make an agreement. But, as it followeth, she shall not retain the power of the Arm, neither shall he stand nor his Arm, &c. For, *Philadelphus* dying shortly after, *Antiochus* took again his former wife *Laodice*, who being sensible of the injury, and fearing her husbands inconstancy, poysoned him; after he had reigned 15 years.

6. *Laodice* his wife kept his death close, till such time as she had secured the Kingdom to *Seleucus* her eldest son, surnamed for his victories (though of none but one we read) *Callinicus*, and from his beard *Pogon*. The next thing she went about was to make away *Berenice*, who understanding that some were sent to kill her, shut up her self in *Daphne*, a Town near *Antioch*, and when she was besieged, news flying about the Cities of *Asia*, they commiserated her condition, and out of respect of her Fathers and Grandfathers Dignity, sent men to her relief. But above all, her brother *Ptolemy Euergetes* being affrighted at her danger, hastened out of his Kingdom with his whole power. Yet ere any relief could come she was taken by treachery (promise of safety being made to her) and quickly slain; at which base and unworthy act the Cities conceiving great indignation, provided a great Fleet, and to revenge her death, gave up themselves to *Ptolemy*, who invading Syria slew *Laodice*, seized upon *Calesyria*, with *Seleucia*, got into his hands *Syria*, *Cilicia*, and the upper Provinces beyond *Euphrates*, and almost all *Asia*, even as far as *Bactria*. Without doubt he had Conquered all *Seleucus* his Kingdom, had he not been forced by a Domestick Sedition to return, after whose departure *Seleucus* having prepared a great Fleet for the reducing of those Cities which revolted from him, lost it in a great Tempest, at the which they were so far from rejoicing, that pitying him for this shipwrack, they voluntarily returned to obedience.

7. Re-

He invadeth  
Ptolemy and  
thence is cast  
into great  
straights.

Antiochus  
Hierax his  
brother rebel-  
eth.

Asiaces per-  
fecting his  
revolt esta-  
blisheth his  
Parthian  
Kingdom.

The two bro-  
thers renew  
the War and

Dye.

7. Rejoicing that he fared so well by his shipwrack, he now made War upon *Ptolemy*, but being overthrown fled to *Antioch* in great fear, being as destitute as before, though he found not such relief. For, writing to his younger brother *Antiochus*, he craved his help, offering him all *Asia* within the Mountain *Taurus* for a reward, who (though he was but yet fourteen years old) being greedy of reigning embraced this occasion, and then behaved not himself as an helper or brother, but like a robber, intending to get the whole Kingdom. He shewed incredible boldness in invading and snatching, whence he had the Surname of *Hierax* or *Goshawk*. *Ptolemy* hearing of his aiding his brother, lest he should have two to deal with at once, made Peace with *Seleucus* for ten years; and then *Antiochus* hiring the *Gauls*, with them made War upon his brother in the other's stead, in which he had the better of it, and they supposing *Seleucus* to be slain in the battel (that cutting off all the Royal race they might be Lords of *Asia*) turned their force against him that hired them; so that *Antiochus* was glad to purchase his freedom with Gold, and enter into society with his Mercenaries. The two brothers being thus at odds, and every one gaping after *Asia*, *Eumenes* of *Bithinia* puts in amongst the rest, and overthrowing the *Gauls*, and after them *Antiochus*, got a great part of it into his possession. Now also *Asiaces* hearing of the distresse of *Seleucus*, perfected the revolt of the *Parthians*; for, invading that Countrey with a band of robbers, he slew the Governour *Andragorus*, and invaded the Principality, and nor long after seizing on the Kingdom of the *Hyrcanians*, so strengthened himself thereby, that after some years he overthrew *Seleucus*, and established his Kingdom. Hence the *Parthians* accounting ever after the day of this Victory as the day of their liberty, constantly observed it, and *Asiaces* being no lesse memorable to them than *Cyrus* to the *Persians*, *Alexander* to the *Macedonians*, or *Romulus* to the *Romans*; out of honour to him they called all their Kings by his name. This beginning of *Asiaces* fell out in the first of the 135 Olympiads, of the City 510, the second of *Seleucus*, and the third of *Ptolemy Euergetes*. A. M. 3761.

8. Now understanding that *Eumenes* had got the greatest part of *Asia* into his power, and both the brothers had even lost their Principalities, yet could they not agree, but instead of opposing the foreign and common Enemies, fought the destruction of each other, by renewing the War. In the next battel *Antiochus* was overthrown, and flying many dayes, and nor knowing how to bestow himself, at length being wearied, he went to *Artamenes* King of *Cappadocia* his Father in Law, by whom at first being received very civilly, he afterwards understood there was a plot laid against him, and fled thence. Whereupon not knowing where to be secure, he betook himself to *Ptolemy*, judging he might rather trust to him than his brother, being (as well he might be) mindful of what he would have done to him, or had deserved of him. *Ptolemy* commanded him to be narrowly looked to, but by the help of a certain whore with whom he had been too familiar, he deceived his Keepers and got away. Yet as he was flying he was slain by thieves. *Seleucus* also almost at the same time, being outed of his Kingdom, and thrown by an horse, ended his life, after he had reigned about twenty years. A. M. 3779, the third of the 138 Olympiads, 98 years after the death of *Alexander*.

9. He left two sons, *Seleucus* and *Antiochus*, of which the former succeeded according to his birthright, in the seventh year of *Antigonus Doson* King of *Macedonia*, and was surnamed *Ceraunus*. *Eumenes* King of *Pergamus*, who had got so much of *Asia* into his power now being dead of Drunkenness, *Attalus* his younger brother's son succeeded him, and had got all on this side *Taurus* into his power, which being understood by *Seleucus Ceraunus*, he thought it concerned him to look about him, and with *Achaus* (whose Father *Andromachus* was brother to *Laodice* his wife) passed over *Taurus* with an Army against him: but then was poysoned in *Phrygia* by the treachery of *Apanturius* a *Galatian*, and *Nicanor*, after he had reigned scarce three years. *Achaus* to revenge his death presently slew the conspirators,

Idem ibid.

Idem lib. 41.

Idem lib. 27.

Seleucus Cerau-  
nus.

Polybius lib. 4.  
Appian in Sy-  
riacis.



Antiochus the Great.

rators, and then ordering the Army with great wisdom and courage, recovered all on this side the Mountain *Taurus*, which had been lost; inasmuch that the People admiring him would have accepted of him as King, if he would have taken this opportunity; but he refused it, and kept the Sovereignty for *Antiochus* brother to *Seleucus*, who afterwards was called the Great. He in his brothers time lived a private life in the upper Provinces, and now was called from *Babylon* by the Army in *Syria*, to take upon him the Government, being about fifteen years old; after which he entrusted *Achaus* with all that Region he had lately recovered, made *Molon* Governour of *Media*, and his brother *Alexander* of the Country of *Perfis*.

Falleth immediately into great troubles by the means of *Hermias*,

10. He fell into great troubles immediately upon his first entrance upon the Kingdom; for *Molon* and his brother considering his youth, and hoping that *Achaus* would joyn with them in their enterprize, especially out of fear and hatred of one *Hermias*, who now ruled all at Court, conspired together to withdraw all the upper Provinces from their allegiance. This *Hermias* a *Carian* by birth, had been left by *Seleucus* to look to his Kingdom when he took his Expedition over *Taurus*, and then being set in so high a place, began to envy the power of all others, grew proud and cruel, his malice above all others being against *Epigenes*, who had been *Seleucus* his General; for that he saw him to be a wise and prudent man, and the Army much at his devotion. A Council being called to consult about the rebellion, *Epigenes* advised that the King should go in person to suppress it; for thereby the rebels would either be terrified and desist, or the Country at his presence would be moved to cross their designs, and deliver them up; but *Hermias* interrupting him, imputed this to a desire that the King should miscarry, that thereby he might seize upon his estate, and prevailed that two others should be sent against *Molo*, and the King go against *Ptolomy Philopator* (who now thinking himself secure in the youth of *Antiochus*, and *Philip* of *Macedonia*, had given himself up to all luxurie) hoping thereby to have an easie War of it, for that he was of a cowardly disposition, and hoped by exposing the young King to dangers and hazards, to escape the punishment due to him, and maintain that power he already enjoyed. *Antiochus* being very young, was very earnest to get *Calefryia*, and *Hermias* to prick him still forward, framed a letter from *Achaus*, wherein he tells he is desired by *Ptolomy* to take the Diadem and assume the title of King to himself, promising to send him ships, money, and all things necessary for that enterprize.

A. M. 3779.  
Ol. 138. an. 3.  
V. C. 528.  
Ptolom. Euergeta 21.

Polyb. lib. 5.

Who procur-eth him to march against *Ptolomy*, though *Molon* rebelled.

11. Having married first *Laodice* daughter of *Mithridates* King of *Capadocia*, he prepared for his Expedition, when news came that *Molon* went on with his design, and how the Captains sent against him, out of fear had secured themselves in Garrisons. Hereupon he bent his mind to go himself, but *Hermias* being tenacious of his purpose, again diverted him, telling him, it was fitter for Subjects to fight against such, and Kings against their equals, and so sending one *Xinatus* an *Achaean* against *Molon*, again turned his mind now obnoxious to him for want of years. Then marched they to *Laodicea*, and thence through the Desert to the Valley called *Marfya*, lying between the Mountains of *Libanus* and *Antilibanus*, where about the Straights he took in divers Towns; but the principal Fort held out and put him to a stand, which made him the more desirous to go now against *Molon*; For *Xinatus*, who was sent against him with full power, growing arrogant and careless, had rashly ventured over the River *Tigris*, and then *Molon* making as if he fled, came upon him in the night, and cut him off with most of his men, and those that escaped the Sword taking the River, scarce any got to the other side. After this, *Molon* pursuing his Victory took *Seleucia*, all the upper Provinces, the Principality of *Babylon*, those parts lying upon the red Sea, all about *Tigris* as far as *Europus*, and *Mesopotamia* as far as *Dura*; onely the Castle at *Susa* stood out, the Town being taken; *Antiochus* at this report called a Council to consult what was to be done, where *Epigenes* expostulating that his former advice was not followed, moved the same again; but was taken up as before by *Hermias*, with foul language, who desired the King

A. M. 3783.  
Ol. 139. an. 3.  
V. C. 532.  
Antioch. M. 2.  
Ptol. Philom. 1.

He is necessitated to go against *Molon*. King, he would not think of leaving *Calefryia*; but all being for going against *Molon*, it was concluded, and he was glad to comply for his own turn.

12. The Army before it stirred mutinied for pay, and then *Hermias* taking advantage at the Kings necessity, offered to lay down money, on condition *Epigenes* might be removed from his preference, which having obtained, he procured the mun to be murdered. The Army marched and came to *Antioch* in *Mygdonia* at the Winter solstice, where staying 40 dayes till the extremity of the cold was over, after 40 dayes it came to *Liba*, *Molon* then lying at hand about *Babylon*. Here a Council of War being called to consult which way was to be taken, that they might not fail of provisions; *Hermias* was for going along by *Tigris*, that it, and two other Rivers, *Lycus* and *Kapros*, they might have for a defence; but *Zeuxis*, though fearful to speak because of him, shewed the danger of that advice, because it would be a great compassse, and after six dayes travel through a Desert, they should come to place called *The Kings Ditch*, which if the Enemy got before them, they should in no wise be able to passe, and be reduced into great straights for want of Victuals; but on the contrary, if they passed over *Tigris*, there was no doubt but the Inhabitants of the Country called *Apolloniatis* would return to obedience, obeying *Molon* at present onely out of necessity; further, in that plentiful Country they should have plenty of victuals, and (what was most considerable) *Molon* would be hindered from retreating into *Media*, and thereby being straightened, after that the place where he yet remained was emptied of provisions, would be forced to fight, or if he durst not do that, then his Soldiers would revolt to the King. This counsel being taken, all things fell out accordingly; for *Molon* fearing his passage into *Media* might be stopped, little trusting those parts in which he then was, determined to get if he could, to the hilly Country of *Apolloniatis*, but it hapned that the Scouts of both parties met there, and skirmishing for some time, afterwards retreated to their several Bodies, and so gave occasion to a total ingagement the day following.

13. *Molon* considering how dangerous it was to bring his Soldiers out in open face against their King, thought it the best way to chuse out the most strong and valiant, and set upon his Camp in the night. Going about to do this, ten young men went over to the King and told him the design of the rebels, so that *Molon* was glad to return, and put his other Army left behind him into such an Alarm, for that they were ignorant of the enterprize, that much ado he had to quiet them. The King being provided to fight, drew out his men by break of day, and placed them in a batallia; *Molon* could but do it in great disorder and confusion, by reason of that consternation which fell upon his men in the night. In the fight which presently followed, the right wing of his Army stood fast to him, and fought very earnestly, but the left as soon as it came in sight all revolted, which he understanding, now compassed in with Enemies: and considering the torments he was likely to undergo if taken alive, killed himself, and so did all his companions in the conspiracy, but his body being found was nailed, for an example, to a crosse in the highest parts of *Media*. After this Victory *Antiochus* settled the affaires of these Countries, dealing more mercifully with his Subjects than was desired by *Hermias*, and then resolved to invade the Territories of the *Barbarians* lying upon his borders, to terrifie them from assisting his rebels for the time to come; which *Hermias* disliked for the danger of the War, his mind still running upon *Calefryia*, but news being brought that a young son was born to the King, he was content he should expose himself to this danger, hoping that in case he should miscarry he must be made Guardian and Protector of the infant, but he was ignorant that his just reward hung over his head. For one *Artabazanes*, his Country being invaded, being unfit for resistance because of old age, made Peace with *Antiochus*, submitting to what soever he demanded, and at the same time *Apollonphanes* the Physician to the King, and his great favourite, perceiving *Hermias* not able to bear that high condition to which

*Molon* and his Army destroyed.

And *Hermias* put to death.

which he was advanced, any longer, being solicitous for his Masters safety, and much more for his own, so wrought the King (inclination enough to it before) as being called to walk abroad one morning more early than usual, before his return he was made away.

*Achaus* traitorously assumed the Diadem, and Title of King.

Yet *Antiochus* maketh War upon *Ptolomy* for *Calestria*.

And getteth into *Seleucia*.

With several other places.

Is by the practices of *Achaus* recalled.

14. *Antiochus* his mind was now turned towards *Achaus*, who, though at the first he had born himself very modestly, being elevated with success, and thinking that the King in his expedition against *Artabazanes* might possibly miscarry, or if he did not, yet hoping that he being at so great a distance, he might have opportunity enough to break into *Syria*, and have help to seize upon the Kingdom, marched with his whole Army from *Lydia*, and coming to *Laodicea* in *Phrygia*, then set the Diadem upon his head, and first took the Title of King upon him. He continued his march till he drew near to *Lycaonia*; but there the Soldiers mutined, refusing to fight against their natural King, so that seeing this, he strove to persuade them that he had no intention to invade *Syria*, and diverted his course to *Pisidia*, which harassing, and enriching the Army with booty thereby, he returned home again. The King not being ignorant of any of this, first expostulated it with him, and sending him threatening messages, put off the rest for this time, and set himself with all his might to prepare for the War against *Ptolomy*. Consulting then what way to invade *Syria*, he was persuaded first of all to attempt *Seleucia* (held by the *Ptolomies* ever since the invasion of *Eumegenes*, to revenge the death of his sister *Berenice*) being the Chief Seat almost of the whole Empire, from whence would arise much trouble being thus in the Enemies hands, and very commodious by its situation for carrying on the War both by Land and Sea. He first then corrupted some of the Officers of the Garrison within, who promised, that if he could but take part of the Suburbs, they would procure the whole Town to be yielded. This being done, the Conspirators came to the Governour, and moved him to yield, as from the necessity of the thing, who being struck at this conternation, as it appeared, of the Soldiers, surrendered presently the Town upon Composition.

15. Whilest he was employed about this Town, Letters came to him from one *Theodotus*, desiring him with all speed to come into *Syria*, signifying that he would betray it all into his power; for he being an *Aetolian* born, had done the Kings of *Egypt* special service, but was so well requited for it as he was brought into danger of life, and therefore at what time *Antiochus* went against *Molon*, looking upon *Ptolomy* as a despicable Creature, and distrusting his Courtiers, he had seized upon *Ptolomais* and *Tyre*, and solicited him to come down. Now therefore *Antiochus* putting off the business of *Achaus* till another time, marched down to *Marsya*, the same Valley and Straights as before, where hearing *Theodotus* was besieged in *Ptolemais*, he went, and relieved him, and then having that and *Tyre* delivered up unto him, and bearing the Enemy out of the Straights, he had then determined to march towards *Pelusium*, but understanding that *Ptolomy's* Army was come thither, and all opposition possible making for hindering his passage, he went on in taking in the Towns thereabouts, divers whereof presently submitted, and others stood it out. *Ptolomy* himself being given wholly up to sluggishness, though thus betrayed, took no order about his affairs; All the burthen of them lay upon *Agathocles* and *Sosibius*, then the greatest Officers of State, who being able men, sent up and down to raise Forces, and make all speedy preparations for the War, though to divert *Antiochus* they sent Ambassadors to him to treat of peace (as desiring onely to go that way to work) and procured Embassies from the *Rhodians*, *Byzantians*, *Aetolians*, and them of *Cyzicus*, to mediate betwixt them, during which they gained time, and deceived the Enemy, carrying all things so close as his Ambassadors could understand nothing of their Provisions. A Truce was granted by *Antiochus* for four months, during which time he willed them to send to him to *Seleucia*, giving hopes to make up the difference, but contrary to his intentions: though now he was in a manner constrained to return into his own Kingdom, for that *Achaus* plotted against him, and held intelligence with *Ptolomy*.

16. The

A Treaty betwixt him and the King of *Egypt*.

His Plea for *Calestria*.

The answer of *Ptolomy's* Commissioners, and the Treaty ends without effect.

Hostility thereupon in Spring is renewed, where by *Antiochus* getteth much.

\* Called by *Josaphus* *Beibin* in the Tribe of *Manasse*, through whose grounds *Jordan* flows.

*Ptolomy* in the Spring following taketh the field.

15. The Commissioners coming to debate the particulars according to their instructions, *Antiochus* laboured to overcome them with his Arguments for the justness of his cause, as well as with his Weapons, pleading he had done *Ptolomy* no injury in making that invasion, for that he had but recovered his right, alleging much the Conquests of those parts by *Antigonus* *Cocies*, and the possession of them by *Seleucus*, and that *Ptolomy* the first waged not War with *Antigonus* for his own particular, but to help *Seleucus* to the Sovereignty of that Province, but above all he pressed the common agreement of all the Kings, made at that time when *Antigonus* was overthrown, wherein by *Lysimachus* and *Cassander*, all *Syria* was decreed to *Seleucus*. On the contrary, *Ptolomy's* Commissioners aggravated the height of the injury offered to him, by the unworthiness of closing with the treasonable practices of *Theodotus*, and affirmed, that *Ptolomy* the son of *Lagus* intended the Dominion of *Syria* to himself, and joyned with *Seleucus* on no other terms, than that indeed all *Asia* should be his, but *Syria* fall to his own share. Such like objections and replies as these were made often to no purpose, but that which put the greatest stop to the Treaty, was the comprehending of *Achaus* in the League, which *Ptolomy* stickled hard for, and the other as impatiently heard, crying out of the unworthiness of the thing, that he should protect, or make any mention of Rebels. Winter being thus spun out with these discourses, and Spring drawing on, *Antiochus* intending to set upon the Enemy both by Land Sea, drew together his Forces, to the taking in of what remained unconquered of *Syria*; and *Nicolaus* on the other part, as the *Egyptian* General, with *Periger* the Admiral, made all possible provision for resistance.

17. *Antiochus* going to *Marathus*, there entered into Confederacy with the *Aradians*; then entering *Syria* through *Therapropos* came to *Berytus*, in his passage taking in *Botris*, and burning *Trieres* and *Calamus*. The Mountain *Libanus* straightning much the passage betwixt it and the Sea, and almost making it impassible, *Nicolaus* with a party also placed himself in the Straights, not doubting but to stop *Antiochus* there; but he dividing his Forces, and having his Fleet constantly near him, caused it first to engage with the *Egyptian*, in which fight both sides came off on equal terms, but *Theodotus* bearing back the Enemy upon the Mountain, got over, and then cleared the passage below for the King. He after this came near *Sidon* with his Army, but judging it to no purpose to set upon the Town very strong with men, and full of Provisions, he gave order to *Diognetus* his Admiral to go with the Fleet to *Tyre*, and marched to *Philoteria* situate upon the Sea of *Tiberias*, which he took, together with *Scythopolis*. Now he conceived great hopes of the perfecting his work, being come into a Countrey plentiful of Provisions, so that placing Garrisons in these two Cities he took in *Arabyrium* by a Stratagem, making as if he fled before the Inhabitants; but having men lying in wait who arose against them, and then the whole Army with such violence, as put them into a great fear, and they yielded up the place. After this, *Karans*, one of *Ptolomies* Chiefest of Officers revolted to him. *Hippolochus* the *Thessalian* brought over with him 400 horse, and the *Arabians* moved by his success joyned themselves to him. Shortly after he took in *Galatia* and *Gadara* beyond expectation, because of the strength thereof; but the Inhabitants terrified at his preparations yielded themselves: then hearing that a great number of Enemies had met at *Rabath-ben Amon*, or *Rabatana*, a City in *Arabia*, and thence made incursions into the Territories of his friends, he marched thither, and striving by force in vain to be Master of the place, at length he effected it by stopping the course of water, for want of which it was then surrendered. Then leaving a strong Garrison here, and sending *Hippolochus* and *Karans* to Govern the Coasts of *Samarita*, he went to *Ptolemais*, and there took up his Winter quarters.

18. *Ptolomy* to give him a stop, prepared against the Spring a great Army, and then marched from *Alexandria* with 70000 foot, 5000 horse, and 73 Elephants, and came to *Pelusium*. *Antiochus* hearing this, gathered his Forces

Bbbb

Forces

Forces together, amounting to 72000 foot, 6000 horse, and 102 Elephants. *Prolomy* proceeding on his journey came to *Gaza*, and thence near to *Raphia* (the first Citie of *Syria*, except *Rhinocerus*, as one cometh from *Egypt*) and *Antiochus* passing by that place shortly after pitched his Tents at first within ten furlongs of the Enemy, and the next day, partly for the commodiousness of the ground, and partly to embolden his Soldiers, approached within five furlongs of them. Being so near, several skirmishes fell out amongst those which on both sides issued forth for provisions, and *Theodorus* the *Ætolian*, after a most bold adventure taking but two in his Company, for that he had been in *Prolomy's* Court, and knew his manner of life, went out in the dusk of the evening, and not being known got into the Kings Tent where he used to give audience, and though he missed of him being in a more obscure place, yet wounded he two which waited there, and killing outright *Andreas* his principal Physician, escaped back in safety to his own Camp; having onely failed of his purpose for want of informing himself when the King was wont to take his rest. For five dayes continued these two Princes in this posture, and then both resolved to try the matter in a set battel.

A pitch't battel.

The manner of the fighting of Elephants.

19. *Prolomy* first drew out his men, and then presently *Antiochus* ranged his in battel aray against him. Each of the Armies had two wings, wherein the two Kings met each other, guarded with Elephants, betwixt which the fight was begun, after *Antiochus* had caused the charge to be sounded; their manner being first with their Trunks to thrust each other, and strive for the ground, and then after that for the one by force to remove the other's Trunk, and to fall upon him like a Bull, and gore his sides. Few of *Prolomy's* beasts would fight at all, for that being *Africans*, they could neither endure the smell nor noise of those of *India*, so that the ranks being disordered by them, his left Wing was quite broken by the charge of the Enemy, and put to flight. *Echecrates*, who commanded in the right, stayed first for the engagement of the former, then seeing that his Elephants would not fight, gave order to *Phinidas* Commander of the Mercenary *Greeks* to invade his opposites, and he himself also wheeling about to be out of the danger of the beasts, fell upon the Flanks and Rear of the Enemy's horse; so that both together they made them all being *Arabians* and *Medes* to give ground, and put all the Wing to flight, thus being even with *Antiochus*. Then came the bodies themselves to engage: *Antiochus* was busie in the pursuit of that Wing wherein he fought; but *Prolomy* coming to his Army much encouraged the Soldiers, and disheartened his adversaries, who being charged by *Andromachus* and *Sosibius*, the *Syrians* for some time maintained their ground, but the rest scarce fighting one stroke shifted for themselves. *Antiochus* being yet unskilfull and young, was still following the chase, (thinking because he had the better of it in his Wing, that therefore his whole Army overcame) till admonished by some one about him, he returned, and seeing things so contrary to his expectation, endeavoured to break in with his Guard, to the place where his Army stood, but finding all his men fled, retired also unto *Raphia*, being perswaded that he had done as became him, however, by reason of the Cowardliness of others the work had miscarried. On his part were slain little lesse than 10000 Foot, about 300 Horse, and 4000 taken prisoners; three of his Elephants were slain outright, and two afterwards died of their wounds. *Prolomy* lost 1500 foot, and 700 horse, 16 Elephants were killed, and the rest taken for the most part.

*Antiochus* beaten.

20. *Antiochus* had intended after the rallying of his men to have fortified himself without *Raphia*; but most of them being got into the Town, he desired leave to bury his dead, and then returned into his own Kingdom. *Prolomy* presently received all *Calefryia* again into his power, the Inhabitants accommodating themselves to his present condition (as indeed bearing always great reverence to his family) and striving who should first yield themselves. *Antiochus* coming to *Anisach*, presently dispatched *Anisater* his brother's son,

A. M. 3788.  
OL. 140. ann. 4.  
V. C. 537.  
*Antiochi* Mag.  
ni 7.  
*Prolog. Philop. 6.*

Desireth peace and easily obtaineth it.

He besiegeth *Achaus* in *Sardis*.

For whose safety *Sosibius* plotteth.

son, and *Theodorus Hieronolius* in an Ambassage to him, fearing exceedingly he should be prosecuted with War, distrusting his Subjects because of his adverse fortune, and suspecting *Achaus* might make use of this opportunity against him. But *Prolomy* thought of nothing lesse than molesting him, being overjoyed that he had above all expectation recovered *Calefryia*, and desiring exceedingly to be quiet, out of his sluggish disposition, and other vices familiar to him; wherefore at first receiving the Ambassadors with threatening language, and complaints of the injuries received from their Master, he presently granted a Truce for a year, and then sent *Sosibius* to confirm the League, wanting onely courage and resolution to spoil *Antiochus* of his Kingdom.

21. *Antiochus* spent all the Winter in preparations, and in Spring marched over the Mountain *Taurus* against *Achaus*, whom he besieged in the City *Sardis*. Above a year he lay before it, having onely some times light skirmishes with the defendants, till *Lagoras a Cretian*, a man of great experience, observing that the strongest Cities are many times taken at such places as are by reason of their strength least looked to, and perceiving a piece of the wall, beyond which they used to throw carion and filth into a pit, to be destitute of any watch, by the sitting of fowls upon it, which came to feed on the carkeises, he took unto him *Theodorus the Ætolian*, and *Dionysius*, with some Soldiers, and they made a shift to get over and open the gates, the King to divert the Enemy making as if he would give the onset at another place, and so the Town was taken. *Achaus* and *Aribazus* the Governour got into the Castle, and then were straightly besieged again, till such time as *Sosibius* the chief Minister of State in *Egypt*, plying the condition of the former, made means for his deliverance, which by the treachery of the instrument wrought his destruction. There was at that time in the *Egyptian* Court one *Bolis a Cretian*, second to no one Captain, as he was reputed, for prudence, extraordinary boldness, and Military skill; with him *Sosibius* dealt, having obliged him by his favours, and assured him that nothing could he perform more acceptable to the King his Master, than some way or other to work the deliverance of *Achaus*. He asking some time to consider of it, within two or three dayes took the business upon him, which to effect he had as he said a good opportunity, for that *Cambylus* the Commander of the *Creteans* serving under *Antiochus* was not onely known to him, but his kinsman, and had the charge of a Fort behind the Castle, which, because it could not be fortified with works, was kept by a continual Guard of Soldiers.

22. Being supplied with money largely by *Sosibius*, and loaded with promises, away he sailed for *Rhodes* to *Nicomachus*, and thence for *Ephesus* to *Melancoma*, his acquaintance, and friends of *Achaus*, with whom dealing about his business, he sent one *Arianus* to *Cambylus* to let him know that he was sent from *Alexandria* to raise Forces, and that he must needs speak with him, desiring he would appoint time and place for their meeting, without the privacy of any. Having obtained this, and bethinking with himself what to do, he gave him a letter concerning which like *Creteans* they had a Conference, as *Polybius* termeth it. For not respecting the safety of the besieged, or their faith given to those that employed them, but agreeing to divide the ten Talents already given in advance by *Sosibius*, they resolved to acquaint *Antiochus* with the matter, and undertake upon promise of money in hand, and a good reward afterwards, to deliver *Achaus* into his power. This being with great earnestness promised, *Bolis* prevails with *Nicomachus* and *Melancoma*, wholly ignorant of his treacherous intent, to write letters in cipher to *Achaus*, which he sent by *Arianus*, for whom passage was procured into the Castle by means of *Cambylus*. *Achaus* being earnestly advised by his two friends to trust *Bolis* and *Cambylus*, and withal considering the difficulty for him to escape; hoping if he got out to passe presently into *Syria* whilst *Antiochus* was yet at *Sardis*, and then to get all the parts about *Anisach* into his power, yielded to put himself into the hands of *Bolis*, who

Idem excerpt. lib. 7.

Idem excerpt. lib. 8.

Bbbb 2 was

was sent presently by *Melancomus* with great entreaties and promises if he could accomplish the business. *Bolis* went to *Cambylus* at night, and staying with him the next day to consult of the business how it should be managed, after he had been with *Antiochus*, and was much encouraged by him, he went up for *Achaus* into the Castle.

But he is betrayed by the instrument into the hands of justice.

23. Receiving *Bolis* with great respect, and after all his sitting of him perceiving nothing disagreeable to seriousness, he much rejoiced; but bethinking himself how weighty a thing it was, and what a hazard he was like to run, he trembled again at the thought of it, and at first resolved to send some before to *Melancomus*; but at length out he went of the Castle, and according to former agreement, *Bolis* coming behind him by a whistle gave a sign to those in ambush, and held him by the clothes till he was taken. Being brought into *Antiochus* his Tent, who sat late at night with a few attendants to see the issue of the project; the King was amazed, and could not forbear weeping to see him, so eminent a man, lye bound before him upon the ground in so sad a condition; but a Council of War being called, after several ways of punishment proposed, at last it was agreed, that he should have his outward members and limbs cut off, after that his head, and that being sowed into an Asses bladder, his body should be nailed to a cross, which was executed accordingly. This end had he who was son to *Andromachus* the brother of *Laodice* wife to *Saleucus*, who had married *Laodice* daughter to *Mithridates*, and had held all *Asia* on this side *Taurus*, having recovered it by his own industry and valour; a man he was exceeding wise, and of great experience, yet left (as *Polybius* observe for us) a double warning to posterity, not to trust any rashly, and not to be puffed up with prosperity, or be secure of any thing incident to mankind, to which we may add another, viz. that none presume to rebel against their Sovereigns, for punishment will overtake them. His death being known within, as they all first agreed in making lamentations for him, so shortly after they fell at odds, being divided into two factions, of which the one stuck to his wife, and the other to *Antiochus* the Governour; so that having suspicion of each other, both parties yielded themselves and the place to *Antiochus*.

A. M. 3791.  
Ol. 141. an. 3.  
V. C. 549.  
Ant. Mag. 10.  
Ptol. Philom. 9.

24. A year or two after, *Antiochus* undertook an Expedition into the East to reduce *Media* and *Parthia* which had revolted, and he passing through both, thereupon caused *Arfaces* to withdraw himself into *Hyrcania*, which he considering, and judging that he would not have forsaken this Country if he had been able to have defended it, resolved to follow him, so that with great difficulty he passed over the hills, and entered also into that Region, where we find that he took some Towns; but what further he did against *Arfaces*, or upon what terms he returned, if *Polybius* his history had been kept entire, we might have known. After this he quieted the upper *Asia*, and coming into *Bactria* for a good while endeavoured to drive out thence *Euthydemus* the King thereof, whom he defeated, and behaved himself most stoutly; whence he got great credit for his valour. At length *Euthydemus* complaining that he was injurious in opposing him thus who had not revolted from him, but cut off the posterity of those that had, beseeching him also not to envy him the name of King, especially considering that by this dissension neither of their affairs could be secure, for that a number of the *Scythian Nomades* hovered at the borders, and were like to overrun the Country, *Antiochus*, who being tired with the tediousness of the War, had sought occasion to make a Peace, not unwillingly now heard the overtures of it, especially after that *Euthydemus* sent his son *Demetrius* to him, with whom he was so taken for his person and parts, as thinking him worthy of a Kingdom, he first promised him one of his daughters, and then yielded that his Father should take the title of King. Then the conditions of the league being written down, and sworn to, and taking with him all the Elephants that *Euthydemus* had, he marched over *Caucasus*, and renewed the confederacy with *Sophagasenus* the Indian King; then taking with him more Elephants (of which he had now 150) and leaving *Androtheneus* of *Cyzicus* to bring the

*Polyb. lib. 10.*  
excerpt. by  
Appian in *Syriacis*.

*Polybius* excerpt. lib. 11.

The fruits of it.

treasure promised him, he came to *Arachosia*, and so through *Drangiana* into *Carmania*, where he was forced to Winter, having received this fruit by this Expedition, that besides the Countries recovered, and the maritime Cities and Dynasties on this side *Taurus* added to his Dominions, he struck such an awe into his Subjects, as kept them more in order, and he was thought to be esteemed as well by the People of *Europe* as those of *Asia*, worthy to govern.

He joyneth with Philip against Ptolomy, getteth Judea, and presently loseth it again. Falling upon Attalus his Territories the Romans procure him to desist.

Yet he minis-  
treth occasi-  
on for a War  
with them.

*Antiochus* the Great and the Romans grow jealous one of another.

25. Not long after this, *Ptolomy Philopater* dying and leaving a young son behind him but four years old, *Philip* of *Macedonia* and he (as we before hinted) made a wicked League for the ousting him of his Kingdom, and dividing it amongst them, wherefore he striking again at *Calesyria* and *Phoenicia*, got *Judea* into his power, which as *Josephus* telleth us, was tossed betwixt these two Crowns as a ship with the waves. For *Scopas* the *Etolian* recovered it again out of his hands for young *Epiphanes*, and yet again not long after lost it with *Calesyria*, being overthrown by *Antiochus* (near the fountains or heads of *Jordan*) at the City *Panaus*, with whom the Jews then presently joyned, but the Inhabitants of *Gaza* standing still out for *Ptolomy*, their City was taken and razed. In the mean time whilst *Scopas* was recovering the Cities of *Syria*, *Antiochus* himself was busy in invading the Kingdom of *Attalus*, who then being employed with the Romans in the *Macedonian* War against *Philip*, had left it naked of defence both by Land and Sea, but upon his complaint to the Roman Senate they sent to *Antiochus* to tell him, that seeing *Attalus* was employed by them against *Philip* the common Enemy, he would do a thing very acceptable unto them to obtain form his Territories, adding withall, that it was convenient for all the Kings which were the friends and allies of the People of *Rome* to be at peace amongst themselves; with the authority of which message he was so moved, as he drew out his Army again from the borders. But this respect to the Romans continued not many years, he entering upon such courses as gave them offence, and proceeding therein at length to an open War.

A. M. 3803.  
Ol. 144. an. 3.  
V. C. 552.  
Ant. Mag. 22.  
Ptol. Epiph. 2.  
Antiquit. l. 12.  
c. 3.  
Livius l. 33.

A. M. 3807.  
Ol. 145. an. 3.  
V. C. 556.  
Ant. M. 26.  
Ptol. Epiphanis 6.

*Idem ibid.*

26. For having reduced all *Calesyria* into his power, and wintered at *Antioch*, the next Spring sending before his two sons *Ardys* and *Mithridates* with the Army, and command to stay for him at *Sardis*, he himself followed with the Fleet to attempt the several maritime Towns of *Cilicia* and *Caria*, which were under *Ptolomy*, and also to help *Philip* both at Sea and Land, who now was busy in the War with the Romans. Divers places by fair and foul means together he took in; yet *Coraceum* stood out, and whilst he lay before it came Ambassadors from the *Rhodians* to denounce War against him, in case he came within *Nepheles* the Promontory of *Cilicia*, not out of any hatred to him, as they said, but lest joyning with *Philip* he should hinder the Romans now active for the liberty of *Greece*. Though he heard this with much disdain, yet thought he it wisdom to give them good words for the present, and please them in this particular, but they, after all danger was over from *Philip* (who this Summer was beaten at *Cynosephale*) not tying themselves with him to the former condition, sent aid to the Cities their associates, and preserved several in their liberty. He took at length *Coraceum*, and after it several others, and amongst the rest *Ephesus*, where wintering, he endeavoured to reduce also the Cities of *Asia*, under the obedience they paid to his Ancestors, and thinking it not difficult to be done by any of them, except two, viz. *Smyrna* in *Eolis*, and *Lampsacus* upon the *Hellespont*, he sent Forces to besiege them both.

27. Now the Romans, with all others, doubted not but his Army was for *Europe*, after his affairs had succeeded in *Asia*, and they had the more cause to be jealous of him, for that *Hannibal* their old and sworn Enemy had now been with him; therefore in the setting of the Greek Cities at liberty (after the overthrow of *Philip* King of *Macedonia*) the Senate had left it to the Commissioners appointed for that work, to deal as they should think fit with *Chalcis*, *Demetrius*, and *Corinth*, the keys of the Country, and whether out of a desire of the glory of setting all the Greeks at liberty, or

Livius l. 33.

to awe and affright him, they decreed, that all such Cities, as well in *Asia* as *Europe*, should be freed. The ten Commissioners sitting now in *Greece* about these affairs; they of *Smyrna* and *Lampsacus* (whom he had besieged) sent to them for relief, and *Antiochus* himself thinking fit not to anticipate his opportunities, sent thither also his Ambassadors, to whom the Commissioners lay'd open the pleasure of the Senate, and in case he contain not himself and Forces in *Asia*, threaten him with War: and withall promise that some of their number should come to him. Yet he in the beginning of Spring comes over into *Europe*, got a great part of the *Chersonesus* into his power, and then marching to *Lyfsmachia*, there found the Commissioners, who pressing him to the things formerly mentioned, he demanded by what right the *Romans* questioned with him about *Asia*, seeing he medled with nothing done in *Italy*; and added, that the *Greek* Cities should obtain their liberty, not by their commands, but his bounty. Now it was moved that those of *Smyrna* and *Lampsacus* might be heard; which being obtained, and the Delegates using their liberty of speech, he out of indignation, that he should be forced to plead with them before those Judges, interrupted them, saying, the *Rhodians* (and not the *Romans*) should have the hearing of the cause; and so the Treaty ended without any conclusion or agreement at all.

*Livius & Appian ut supra.*

Upon a false rumour of *Ptolomee's* death he resolved to invade *Egypt*.

*Hannibal's* advice to invade *Italy*.

28. A rumour was spread abroad, during this Treaty, that *Ptolomee* the King of *Egypt* was dead, which much affected both parties, yet strove they to hide it from each other: *Lucius Cornelius* one of the ten, who was also ordered to endeavour the reconciliation of the two Kings, demanded a little time to go into *Egypt*; and *Antiochus* being restless, out of an itching desire to get that Country into his hands, sailed with his Fleet back to *Ephesus*: whence sending again his Ambassadors to treat with *T. Flamininus* chief of the Commissioners (on purpose to hold them a little in hand till he could bring about his design) came to *Patara*, where he heard that *Ptolomee* was alive. Now he changed his purpose of invading *Egypt*; but withall resolved for *Cyprus*, to attempt that Island; but such a tempest fell upon him, that he almost lost his whole Fleet. Not long after, *Hannibal* being driven from home (by the malice of such as incensed the *Romans* against him, whilst he only endeavoured the Publick good) returned to *Antiochus*, who though before he did but fluctuate in his resolutions for the War, yet was now confirmed by him to in his purpose, that henceforth he thought not so much of it, as of the reward of the Victory. *Hannibal* denied that the *Romans* could be overcome any where but in *Italy*, and desired but 100 Gallies, 16000 Foot, and 1000 Horse, with which he would first go to *Carthage*, hoping to draw his Countrymen to revolt, and though that should not succeed, yet would he seize upon some part of *Italy*. The King closing with his propositions at this time, he went not himself, but sent a certain *Tyrian* to *Carthage*, who under pretence of trading should break the ice; but he being suspected by *Hannibal's* adversaries, was glad to shift for himself, and notice thereof was presently given to the *Romans*. In the mean time *Antiochus* sent three Ambassadors to *Rome*, who under colour of procuring a right understanding, should feel how the Senate stood affected. They expecting the matter, that their Master should be forced to quit the Cities of *Asia*, and forsake his ancient right in *Thrace*, were referred to the Commissioners in *Greece* for answer; to whom repairing, *Flamininus* and his Colleague, urged that the King should either leave *Europe*, or the *Romans* have power to protect their friends in *Asia*; and make as many more there as they could. The Ambassadors answer, they neither can, nor will conclude any thing to the prejudice of their Master's crown, and so the Peace was not nearer than before.

*Livius lib. 35. Appian ibid.*

29. *Antiochus* his resolution being set therefore for the Warre, that he might prevent any thing that would divert or call him back, he resolved to make alliances with his neighbours. To *Ptolomee* he married his Daughter *Cleopatra* (giving with her in portion all *Calesyria*, which before he had taken

*Antiochus* in- taken from him;) to *Ariarathes* King of *Cappadocia* another named *Antiochus*; and a third he offered to *Emmenes* of *Pergamus*, but he being acquainted with his design to make War upon the *Romans*, and by this affinity to oblige him to his party, conceiving it also his interest rather to stick to them whom he had some ground to think would prove victorious; he waved his offer. In Spring he set upon the *Pisida*, a people inhabiting about *Selgia*, being desirous first to bring all *Asia* to his beck, & at the same time came Ambassadors from *Rome* to discover his designs and preparations, and either to take off the edge of *Hannibal's* hatred, or at least by their entercourse with him to render him suspected to the King. Visiting *Emmenes* first, as they had it in charge, they were egged on by him to the war. *Sulpicius* one of them falling sick, was forced to stay at *Pergamus*, but *Vilius* hearing how *Antiochus* was employed, went to *Ephesus* where *Hannibal* then lay, & according to his instructions often met and discoursed with him. Thence he travelled to *Apamea*, where the King met him; but news coming that *Antiochus* his son (whom he had lately sent into *Syria*) was dead, it broke off the Treaty; so that *Vilius* loath to be unreasonable returned to *Pergamus*, and the King breaking off the War, to *Ephesus*, where holding secret consultation with one *Minio*, he gave way that the Ambassadors should be called thither. When they had there arrived, they were referred to *Minio*, and both sides arguing for themselves as formerly, came to the same conclusion, and the *Romans* having scarcely obtained that they came for, returned home.

A. M. 3813. Ol. 147. ann. 1. V. C. 562. *Antioch. Mag. 32. Ptol. Epiphan. 12.*

30. The Ambassadors being departed, *Antiochus* then fell into another serious debate about the War, to which *Hannibal* being now suspected was not called; till acquainting him how, when a Child, his father had made him swear at the Altar never to be a friend to the people of *Rome*, all jealousies were removed. About the same time came *Theas*, and others from the *Atolians* (who being fallen out with the *Romans* about plunder, after the overthrow of *Philip* at *Cynosephale*, had ever since greatly grudged, and now stirred up the several Princes against them) offering him the Command of their Forces, and exhorting him to passe over into *Greece*, where things were ripe enough for the War, and not expect the coming down of his Army from the Inland Countreys. They having gotten *Demetrius* (a Town of prime note) into their hands by a wile, in confidence of an opportunity thence arising, he came over with an Army of 10000 foot, 500 horse, and six Elephants, after which going to the general meeting, he was by a publick Decree received as General, and then sending to summon *Chalcis*, had the Gates opened to him, and so easily became Master of all *Euboea*. In the midst of Winter holding another Council, he thought fit the *Thessalonians* should be, by all means, drawn in to joyn with them; but *Hannibal* pressed above all things that *Philip* and the *Macedonians* might be dealt with; for then as he said, the *Thessalonians*, and other *Gracians* (seeing themselves invaded by the *Romans*) would easily return to their accustomed duty: he advised further, that the Forces with all speed should be sent for out of *Asia*; and this onely was observed. *Antiochus* returning to *Chalcis*, fell in Love with an obscure, Gidle, daughter to *Cleopolemus* his Host, with whom prevailing at length to marry her, he spent all the remaining of the Winter in feasting and jollity, his Army for Company falling into idleness and all excess.

*Livius & Appian ut supra.*

*Livius lib. 36.*

A. M. 3814. Ol. 147. ann. 2. V. C. 563. *Antioch. Mag. 33. Ptol. Epiphan. 13.*

The *Atolians* stir him up to the War, and he passeth over into *Greece*.

Marrieth an obscure Gidle at *Chalcis*.

The preparations of the *Romans* resolved on.

31. Hitherto the *Romans* had rather severally, every man by himself, designed him an Enemy, than made any preparations against him. *Italy* was Decreed this year to both the *Consuls*; onely one of them, if need should require, was to be in readinesse to march to any other place, and *Atilius Serranus* one of the *Prators*, was ordered with his Fleet to go into *Greece*, and attend the affairs of the Confederates; and with him four Commissioners, men picked out, who by their authority might persuade much. Moreover *Marcus Baebius* was commanded to draw down the Legions towards *Tarentum* and *Brundisium*, that thence, if need should be, they might passe over into *Macedonia*. But upon *Antiochus* his crossing the *Hellepont*, *Emmenes* King of *Pergamus*



Glabbio the  
Consul sent  
over.

mus sent his brother *Attalus* to acquaint the Senate therewith, and that the *Ætolians* were preparing to joyn with him; whereupon *Babius* was then ordered, with all his Forces, to passe over into *Epirus*, and hover about *Apollonia*. The next year came over *M. Acilius Glabbio* the Consul, with 10000 foot, 2000 horse, and fifteen Elephants; who taking in divers places held by *Antiochus* his Garrisons, marched towards the Bay of *Malea*, took *Thaumachia*, and wasted the Territories of *Hypata*. *Antiochus* something herewith awakened, sent to the *Ætolians* to have all their Forces in readinesse, and then came down with lesse then 10000 foot, and 500 horse; but fewer of the *Ætolians* came together than usual, and his own Army, expected out of *Asia*, loitered, so that wanting it, and forsaken of his Confederates, he fortified himself in the Straights of *Theomophyla*, and sent the *Ætolians* (whereof there were but 4000) to keep *Heraclea* and *Hypata*. Upon the approach of the Consul, bechinking himself of the Mountains, which he knew had been formerly passed by some of *Xerxes* his Army, and fearing the *Romans* should come over upon his back, he procured some *Ætolians* to secure the passages. But *Glabbio* hearing of it, sent *M. Porcius Cato* (then a Colonel in the Army) and *L. Valerius Flaccus* to beat them off, which being done by the former, he got over, and approaching the Enemies Camp, they at the first fight supposed them to be friends; but then again understanding their error, cast away their Arms and fled. But being closely pursued 500 of them onely escaped, though but fifty of the *Romans* were missing.

Overthroweth  
*Antiochus* at  
the Straights  
of *Theomophyla*.

*Antiochus* his  
acts in *Asia*.

He is defeated  
at Sea.

32. *Antiochus* flying to *Chalcis*, passed thence with his new married wife unto *Ephesus*, after whose departure the Gates of *Chalcis* were presently opened to the Consul, who having taken in *Phocis* and *Boeotia* in his passage thither, all *Eubœa* presently returned to obedience. Then fell he upon the *Ætolians*, whom (though not long before they had sent to the King for aid, yet) now he forced to yield, and after he had used their Ambassadors something roughly, and threatened to chastise them to purpose; through the intercession of *T. Flamininus*, gave them liberty to send their Ambassadors to *Rome*. *Antiochus* now lay at *Ephesus* altogether secure of the *Romans*; but *Hannibal* told him, he rather wondred they were not there already, than doubted at all of their coming, and procured the Forces to be sent for out of the upper Provinces; and with those ships which were ready the King sayled into the *Chersonesus* of *Thrace*, fortifying it, and placed stronger Garrisons in *Sestos* and *Abydus*, where the *Romans* were to passe over the *Hellepont* into *Asia*. At this time *Livius Salinator* being sent from *Rome* to succeed *Acilius* in the Government of the Fleet, came with it to *Delus*, which *Antiochus* hearing, hasted from *Thrace* to fight him before the *Rhodes* and *Eumenes* should joyn with him; but they coming in in good time, his Fleet was worsted, and chased as far as *Ephesus*.

33. After this defeat he set himself with all his might to repair his Navy, and left his son *Selenus* in *Æolis* to look to the Maritime Coasts. *Livius* the Roman Admiral coming into the *Hellepont*, took *Sestos*, and had done the same by *Abydus*, had not *Polyxenidas* a Fugitive of *Rhodes*, destroyed by Treachery all the Fleet belonging to that Island; whereupon he raised his siege and departed. *Selenus* fell upon the Territories of *Pergamus*, and then besieged the Citie it self (*Attalus* being unable to grapple with him in the field) with whom also at length *Antiochus* himself joyned, till hearing that the Roman and *Rhodian* Fleets were coming to relieve the place; and, worse than this, that *Lucius Scipio* the Consul (together with his brother the *African*) was already in his march as far as *Macedonia*, and preparing now to passe the *Hellepont* against him, he sent to *Amyntus Rhegillus* who had succeeded *Livius* in the Fleet, to treat of a peace. He calling *Eumenes* from *Pergamus*, and the Officers of the *Rhodians* to consult, these were content to Treat, but *Eumenes* being averse to it, and urging that nothing could be concluded of, before the coming of the Consul, an answer to that effect was returned to the King, who leaving his son still before *Pergamus*, harraised the Territories of the Roman Confederates, and taking divers places,

*Hannibal* worsted at Sea.

ces, returned to *Sardis*. *Selenus* was presently beaten off, and forced to raise his siege, by 1000 foot, and 100 horse, sent to relieve the place by the *Acbaens*, and *Hannibal* returning with ships from *Syria*, was met by the *Rhodians*, who put him to flight, and caused him to be blocked up in *Pamphilia*.

And *Polyxenidas* defeated.

*Antiochus* his  
imprudence.

He sendeth to  
the Consul  
about a peace.

Rejecting the  
terms,

He prepareth  
for a battel.

34. *Antiochus* from *Sardis* sent to *Prusias* King of *Bithinia*, to joyn in Confederacy with him against the *Romans*; but he (though he formerly hung in suspense, yet) of late was fully drawn to their party by the Letters of the *Scipio's*, and an Ambassage sent from *Rome* for the same purpose. Failing therefore in this enterprize, he went to *Ephesus* to his Navy, where (concluding that no other way could he hinder the Consul's passing the *Hellepont* than by being strongest at Sea) he resolved to try another battel, and so set upon the Maritime Town near to *Ephesus*, that the *Romans* coming in to succour their friends, *Polyxenidas* his Admiral might have an opportunity to work some notable feat. But he engaging with 90 Gallies against *Eumenes* and the *Rhodians*, who made up a Fleet together of about 83. being overmarched both in the valour of his men, and the nimbleness of his Vessels, he lost 42 of his Navy (13 of which, together with the men, were taken) having broken but two of the *Romans*, and by meer chance carried a *Rhodian* away with him to *Ephesus*. The King now terrified at the message of this third overthrow, madly drew out his Garrison from *Lyfimachia* (which might have given a stop to the passage of the Consul) lest it should be cut off; and raising his siege from before *Colophon*, departed to *Sardis*, whence he sent into *Cappadocia*, to *Ariarathes* his son-in-law, for aid, and all over else where he could bechink himself, he raised forces, neglecting in the mean time his true opportunities. For, the *Scipio's* in the mean while came to *Lyfimachia*, where they were received with such plenty of all things, as if Provision had been made for the Roman Army, and thence marched through the *Chersonesus* of *Thrace* to the *Hellepont*, where all things being in readinesse through the care of *Eumenes*, they passed over without any disturbance into *Asia*.

35. *Antiochus* being so besotted as to ly still, and suffer the Consul quietly to come over, was now exceedingly discouraged, and sent out of hand to him, and his brother, to treat of peace; with order also to deal in private with the *African* about it, whose authority he knew would sway his brother to either side indifferently. The Ambassador being arrived at the Roman Camp, deferred the delivering of his message till the *African's* coming, who was yet behind; but after his arrival, and audience given, had these conditions set him: To pay all the expences of the War, of which *Antiochus* had been the cause, and not onely quit the Cities in *Æolis* and *Ionis*; but all *Asia* on this side the Mountain *Taurus*. Being no whit satisfied with the proposals, he made no further overtures to the Consul; but, according to his instructions, offered to his brother (in case he would procure a peace on the terms proposed by his Master) the restitution of his son who had been taken prisoner, as much money as he would ask, and more than that, to be partaker of what the Kingdom it self would amount to. The *African* answered, that the discharging of his son would exceedingly oblige him, and as for the rest, had he kept *Lyfimachia* in his hands, fortified the passage into the *Chersonesus* of *Thrace*; or at least had he opposed them at the *Hellepont*, and then offered these conditions, much might have been done for him. As things now stood, he advised to consider into what estate he had brought himself, by all means to decline the War, and refuse no conditions offered to him. But he thought no harsher terms could be imposed upon one already Conquered, and therefore casting off all thoughts of peace, made what Provision he could possible for a battel.

36. The Consul being desirous to do something before Winter (which now drew on) resolved, if possible, to fight him, though, his brother the *African* falling sick, had departed to *Elea*, to whom *Antiochus* now to comfort him,

A. M. 3815.  
OL. 147. ann. 3.  
V. C. 564.  
Ant. Mag. 34.  
Ptol. Epiphan.  
14.

*Polybius* Legat.  
23.

C c c c

him, restored his son without any ransom; which hapning as a Cordial to him in that condition, he advised him in way of requital (being able to do no more at present) that he should not ingage in fight with his brother, before his return to the Camp. Being much moved with his authority, he declined an ingagement to his utmost endeavour, but the Consul still dogging him from place to place, and being ready to storm his Camp, for fear of utterly discouraging his men, he was forced to draw them out. (a) Some say he had 70000 Foot, and about 12000 Horse (though others (b) mention but 70000 in all) with 54 Elephants. The Consul brought into the field but 30000, whereof two, being *Macedonians*, were left to keep the baggage; and sixteen *African* beasts placed in the rear for a reserve, left (being worked by the *Indians*) they should break their ranks. The battel was fought near *Magnesia* a Town situate at the Foot of the Hill *Sipylos*. It hapned then that such a mist fell as blinded so the Kings Army, that both the wings thereof could not be seen to one standing still in the same place; and their weapons were also spoiled with the wet. His chariots armed with fishes which he had placed in the front, proved his ruine; for the Horses being gored with arrows (according to the direction of *Eumenes*) brake down all behind them, and so disordered the ranks, that the Auxiliaries fled; which occasion the *Romans* taking, pressed hard upwards, and discomfited the whole left wing. In the right he had better fortune; for he put both Horse and Foot to flight, and drove them to their Camp; but *M. Aemilius Lepidus* who was left there for the security of it, met them, and forced them to face about and to charge the pursuing Enemy, so that he and *Attalus* (the brother of *Eumenes*, who came in in good time with 200 Horse) renewed the battel with such earnestnesse, that now the King (who ere while gave the charge) betook himself to his heels. The *Roman* Cavalrie, in the pursute, did great execution, and the rather, because of the multitude of Chariots, and Camels, which blocked up the way; inso much as 54000 were slain, and 1400 taken. Of the *Romans* fell but three hundred forty nine.

Wherein he is overthrown

37. *Antiochus*, with a few about him, fled to *Sardis*, and thence to *Apamea*, making *Zeno* Governour of the former, and *Timon* of *Lydia*; but they were despised by the Soldiers and Townsmen that held the Castle, who gave up the places to the Consul; which was followed as an example by divers Cities of *Asia*. The Consul being once arrived at *Sardis* (with his brother now upon his recovery) the King presently sent and desired safe conduct for some Commissioners to treat of Peace. This being granted, *Zeuxis* who had formerly governed *Lydia*, and *Antipater* the Kings brothers son, shortly after arrived; desiring their Master might know upon what terms to purchase the friendship of the People of *Rome*. *Publius Scipio* the *African*, in the name of the rest, answered; that the *Romans* used not to insult over their conquered Enemies, and therefore nothing should be required of him more than formerly; save onely to pay 15000 *Talents* of *Eubæa* to defray the charges of the War, by certain portions; 4000 to *Eumenes* (together with such Corn as was due to him, by virtue of an agreement made with his Father) to give up *Hannibal*, *Thon* the *Ætolian*, and other incendiaries, and lastly, to deliver for the performance of these conditions twenty Hostages. These proposals being accepted of, Ambassadors were out of hand dispatched to *Rome*, to pray the confirmation of the Peace, which accordingly was ratified both by Senate and People; and for that *Eumenes* and the Ambassadors of *Rhodes*, differed about some Cities in *Asia*, it was ordered by the *Fathers*, that the People inhabiting on this side *Taurus*, which before obeyed *Antiochus*, should now be subject to *Eumenes*, except *Caria* and *Lydia*, as far as *Maander*; and these should be delivered up to the *Rhodians*. As for the *Greek* Cities, they which were formerly tributaries to *Attalus*, should so remain under *Eumenes* his Successor; but such as had been under the jurisdiction of *Antiochus*, should be left to their own Laws: and ten Commissioners were sent to compose all differences risen betwixt the several Cities and States.

38. *Antiochus*

38. *Antiochus*, unwilling to give up *Hannibal*, gave him notice of what was required, that he might shift for himself. The Province of *Asia* being taken from him, he said the Conquerours dealt bountifully with him therein; for now seeing his Kingdom was contained within moderate bounds, he was onely discharged from too great a burthen of Government. Two or three years after, he got another Army together, and having declared his son *Seleucus* his Successor, made a progresse into the upper Provinces; where (either for that he really wanted money to pay the Tribute imposed on him, or took that occasion to pretend poverty) hearing the Temple of *Jupiter Belus* in *Elymais* to be exceeding rich, he went with his Forces by night and spoiled it of a vaste treasure, making a show as if War had been made upon him by the Inhabitants thereabouts, who getting knowledge of it, came upon him, and without the help of any other, destroyed him and his whole Army. This is the end which, by the consent of Historians, hapned to him; though one there be that telleth us, how after he was overcome and banished beyond the Mountain *Taurus*, he was slain by his companions, whom he had beaten in a drunken fit. He died when he had reigned 36 years, A. M. 3818. in the second of the 148 Olympiad, 185 before the Era of Christ: *M. Aemilius Lepidus*, and *C. Flaminius* being Consuls.

He is slain in Elymais.

His son Seleucus surnamed Philopater succeedeth him.

The treachery of Simon a Benjamite against his Religion and Country.

Seleucus is slain.

39. *Seleucus* his son succeeded him (whom he formerly declared his Successor as was said) in the 35 year of *Philip* King of *Macedonia*. This *Seleucus* surnamed *Philopater*, was no stirring man, and might have an excuse for it, being so weakened by that blow his Father received from the *Romans*. Once he got together a considerable force of men, and prepared to passe over *Taurus* to the aid of *Pharnaces* King of *Pontus* (who now waged War with *Ariarathes* of *Cappadocia*, and *Eumenes* of *Pergamus*) but bethinking himself that it was not lawful to do it, by virtue of the League which the People of *Rome* had made with his Father, he gave over his enterprize. He revered much at first the Temple of *Hierusalem*, allowing out of his own revenues the charges of the publick Sacrifices; but afterwards his bounty was almost turned into rapacity by the means of *Simon* a *Benjamite*. This man being Captain of the Temple, and in contention with *Onias* the High Priest, when he could not have the better of him, told *Apollonius* Governour of *Cæsaria* and *Phœnicia*, that in the treasury there were great sums of money, which the Priests having no need of, it might well enough be taken out into the Kings Coffers. *Apollonius* acquainting the King with this, he sent *Heliodorus* his Treasurer to seize upon the money, so whom *Onias* declared that it belonged to widows and orphans, that the sum of it amounted but to 400 talents of Silver, and 200 of Gold, and that such was the holinesse of the place, that it must not be violated. *Heliodorus* not being perswaded by this, entered the Temple, and was smitten by an Angel dead for the present, but being restored by the prayers of *Onias*, returned to the King, declaring the holinesse of the place, and power of God. *Simon* after this calumniated *Onias*, as if he, who had well deserved of his Nation, had been the cause of this evil, and being backed by *Apollonius*, in his fury proceeded to slaughters, so that *Onias* was forc'd to go to *Seleucus*, and, as some have it, got him banished, though it seems not incredible that the King was dead ere he came to him, being slain by the treachery of *Heliodorus* after he had reigned twelve years.

40. He left a son behind him named *Demetrius*, whom he sent, being but young, to *Rome*, an Hostage in the room of *Antiochus* his younger brother; for that he was tied by the agreement made with his Father, to chinge the Hostages at the pleasure of the *Romans*. But when he died *Antiochus* was in his way home come as far as *Athens*. *Eumenes* therefore and *Attalus*, that they might bind him to them, being now a little offended at, and jealous of the *Romans*, drove out *Heliodorus*, who affected the Kingdom, and placed him in possession of it. He was called by the *Syrians* *Epiphanes* or *Illustrious*, because strangers usurping the Kingdom, he appeared the vindicator of the Dominion of his Ancestors, though others accounted him rather

\* *Antiochus* V. etor de viris illustribus c. 4.

A. M. 3818. Ol. 148. ann. 2. V. C. 567. *Seleucidarum* 126. *Ptol. Epiphanis* 17. *Appian* ibid. *Excerpt. Diodor.* per *Valefium*. 2 *Maccab.* 3.

*Appian* in *Syriacis*. *Excerpt. Diodor.* *Siculi* per *Valefium*.

Cccc 2 *Epimanes*

Antiochus his brother succeeded him, surnamed Epiphanes.

*Epimanes* or *Mad*, because of his fanatick practices, and by the Angel he was termed a *vile person*. Being possessed of the Kingdom, he would slip privately out, with two other in his company, and wander about the City, keep company and drink with the meanest persons, coming on a sodain upon them with his cup and musick. Laying off his robe he put on a gown, and according to the custome of the *Roman Candidates* (who stood for Offices) took the People be the hand, desiring their voices for the *Edileship* or *Triumphship* of the People. Having then obtained the Magistracy by the Suffrages of the People after the *Roman* manner, he sat and gave Judgment out of an ivory chair with such diligence, as the wisest wondered what he meant, some attributing it to simplicity, some to imprudence, and others to madness it self.

A. M. 3829.  
Ol. 151. an. 1.  
V. C. 578.  
Ptolom. Philometoris 5.

Hieronym. in Dan. cap. 11.  
Appian ibid.

2 Maccab. 4.

2 Maccab. 5.

*Jason* the Jew having bought the High-Priesthood out of his brother's hands, is served in the same manner by *Menelaus*.

Antiochus seized on Egypt

Again.

*Jason* rageth at Jerusalem against his Countrymen.

Antiochus his cruelty and prophaneness against Jews and Temple.

41. In *Syria* he was not acknowledged at first by those who favoured *Ptolomy*; but afterwards obtained it by a counterfeit clemency, and then having entered into League with *Eumenes*, settled himself strongly enough. In the beginning of his reign *Jason* the brother of *Onias* the third, the High-priest of the *Jews*, purchased the Priesthood of him for 360 Talents of Silver, and another rent of 80 Talents; and not satisfying himself with wronging his brother, promised 150 more for a licence to set up in *Jerusalem* a place of exercise for the training up of youth after the fashion of the *Hearthen*, where by an inter was made, as unto idolatrie, and prophaneness, so unto that bloodshed and cruelty which ensued from the wickedness of this Prince, his instruments and successors. For three years onely kept he this Office, being then served in his own kind. For, sending *Menelaus* the brother of that *Simon* whom we before mentioned, to the King, to carry the money promised, and solicit his affaires, he circumvented him after the same manner he had done his brother, promising for the Priesthood, over and above what he paid, 300 Talents; so that he had his desire, and *Jason* was forced to flee into the Country of the *Ammonites*. *Antiochus* being seized of *Celestria*, *Ptolomy Philopater*, who pretended it belonged to him, being passed over to his father as his mothers portion, sought to recover it out of his hands, whereupon he marched down to *Egypt*, which, having overthrown his Enemies in batrel betwixt *Pelusium* and the mountain *Cafus*, he easily got into his power, pretending friendship to the young King for all this, and a provident care for his affaires. *Menelaus* taking occasion at his absence, took divers Golden Vessels out of the Temple at *Jerusalem*, some of which he gave away, and others he sold to *Tyre*, and other places, for which being accused of Sacrilege by *Onias* the lawful High-priest, he procured him to be murdered. Going on in such mischiefs he was accused to the King; but bringing *Ptolomy* the son of *Dorymenes*, got off, and procured the death of his accusers. At this time *Antiochus* went down the second time with a great power into *Egypt*, which he recovered again (the King thereof flying before him) and getting the fortified Towns into his hands, there staid, till the sons of the *Jews* procured his return to their destruction.

42. A false rumour being spread abroad of his death, *Jason* having got 1000 men at his heels, set upon *Jerusalem*, and getting the City into his hands, forced *Menelaus* into the Castle, and then made slaughters, as if he had not been amongst his Countrymen and kindred, but foreigners and Enemies, yet obtained he not the Priesthood, but was forced to betake himself back into the Country of the *Ammonites*, where being accused to *Aretas* King of the *Arabians*, he fled from place to place like a Vagabond, hated of all men as a forsaker of the Laws, and as the publick Enemy of his Country, and died at length at *Lacedaemon*. *Antiochus* hearing in *Egypt* that they at *Hierusalem* rejoiced at the report of his death, and suspecting because of these stirs of *Jason* that *Judea* was about to rebel, in a great rage departed thence, and came and took the City by force, and giving no quarter for three dayes space, put 80000 to the Sword, and afterwards sold as many. Yet not contenting himself with this, he prophanely entered the Temple, *Menelaus* that Traitor to his Country being his guide, and rifling it of the holy Vessels, killed

killed swine upon the Altar, and with the broth of the flesh of them sprinkled the place; then taking away with him 1800 Talents, he got him back to *Antioch*, leaving behind him to afflict still the People at *Jerusalem* *Philip* a *Phrygian*, and *Andronicus* in *Samarita*; and besides them *Menelaus* more grievous to, and despicable against, his fellow Citizens, than the other. Two years also after this, he sent *Apollonius* a cruel man with an Army of 22000, commanding him to kill all that were arrived at ripeness of age, and sell the women and children for slaves. He coming to *Jerusalem*, kept himself still until the *Sabbath*, and then taking the opportunity of the solemnity of the day, set upon those employed therein, then running through the City slew a great multitude, plundering it and setting it on fire, pulled down the houses and walls round about, and led away many women and children into captivity, whilst *Antiochus* his Master was busie again in his attempts upon *Egypt*.

He getteth all Egypt into his hands except Alexandria.

Retreateth.

43. For *Ptolomy* being stirred up by *Eulains* the Eunuch to attempt again the recovery of *Calestria*, to prevent that, he went down into *Egypt*, where putting him again to flight, he might have destroyed all his men, but riding to and fro himself to forbid it, he thereby procured such love, as he presently got into his hands *Pelusium*, and not long after all *Egypt*, except *Alexandria*. *Ptolomy* after this sent his Ambassadors to him, with those of the *Achaans*, *Athenians*, and others, to excuse the matter, and lay all the blame upon the Eunuch; but getting no good thereby, after he had spent some time carelessly without any further provision for his affaires, he departed to his younger brother to *Alexandria*, whom the Citizens there had made King after his overthrow. The *Alexandrians* at first received him, and made him partaker with his brother, but afterwards for some distaste banished him again, at which *Antiochus* took an opportunity, as thinking it best to accomplish his designs, by pretending to protect and reduce him into his Kingdom; wherefore he engaged at *Pelusium* with *Ptolomy* the younger in a naval fight, and getting the better, on a sodain laid a bridge over the Nile and besieged *Alexandria*. *Ptolomy* and *Cleopatra* his sister being in this danger, sent Ambassadors to *Rome* to crave aid; but he attempting once the walls, and experiencing the strength of the places, having sent his Ambassadors also to *Rome* after the other, raised his siege. About this time came the Ambassadors of the *Rhodians* to him to intercede, whom he put off, saying, that his intent was onely to re-establish the elder *Ptolomy*, which if the *Alexandrians* would admit of, all things with his consent might be composed. Presently after this, leaving at *Memphis* *Ptolomy* the elder, for whose sake he pretended to wage this War, and giving up the rest of *Egypt* to him, he only left a strong Garrison at *Pelusium*, and so departed into *Syria*, concluding with himself, that keeping this in his power, the key of the Country, he might safely suffer the two brothers to try out the quarrel; for the Conquerour being wearied beforehand, would easily be brought under by him.

44. The Ambassadors of *Ptolomy* obtained their desire, the *Romans* being jealous of the increasing power of *Antiochus*. For, *C. Popilius Lenax*, with two others, were sent with order first to go to *Antiochus*, after that to *Ptolomy*, and to denounce unto them, that except they gave over the War, him that was the hinderer of the Peace they would not account as their friend or allie. Whilst they were on their way, *Ptolomy* the elder bethinking himself what little cause he had to trust *Antiochus*, sent to his brother, and through the mediation of *Cleopatra* was reconciled to him, and reigned with him, the *Alexandrians* being willing to receive him, because their City was much straightened for provisions, by reason of the Warre. *Antiochus* hearing this, contrary to his former pretences, was grievously fretted, and then more eagerly than ever preparing for the War against them both, sent a Fleet against *Cyprus*, where *Ptolomy's* Forces were worsted, and in the beginning of Spring marched down for *Egypt*. In *Calestria* the Ambassadors of *Philometer* met him, and gave him thanks in their Master's name, for that by his means he had obtained the Kingdom, desiring he would continue

Joseph. Antiq. lib. 13.

Excerpt. Diodor. vi per Val.

Justin lib. 24.  
Polybius Legat. 84.  
Livius l. 44.  
C. 45.

A. M. 3835.  
Ol. 152. an. 3.  
V. C. 584.  
Antioch. Epiphan. 6.  
Ptolom. Philomet. 10.

Idem ibid. Polyb. Legat. 89.

He returneth  
into Egypt.

But is taken  
off by the Ro-  
mans from  
further at-  
tempts.

He persecuteth  
the Jews  
for their re-  
ligion.

Mattathias  
maketh oppo-  
sition.

tinue his friend, and protect what he had helped him to, and rather say what he would have done, than by force to attempt it as an Enemy; but he replied, he would neither withdraw his Fleet nor Army, except he had all *Cyprus*, *Pelusium*, and all the ground lying upon that Mouth of the Nile given up unto him, and he set a day whereon at furthest he would have an answer to these conditions. *Popilius* and his Companions hearing of his design (*Persus* of *Macedonia* being now overthrown) made haste to get to him before he reached *Alexandria*, and staying some time at *Rhodes*, they came to him, when he was but four miles off from the City, upon the sight of whom he reached out his hand to *Popilius*; but he being a severe man, reached him the Tables, wherein was written the Decree of the Senate, which commanded him to abstain from War, bidding him first to read them. Having perused them, he said he would consider with his friends what was to be done, and then give an answer, but *Popilius* after a certain insolent fashion, made a Circle round about him with his rod, and commanded him to answer before he went out of it; at which the King being amazed, after a little pause, said he would do whatsoever the people of *Rome* commanded; and so within a short time prefixed, grievously unwilling, and sorrowing, but judging it fit for the present to yield to the time, he drew out his Forces from *Egypt* and *Cyprus*.

45. After this he published an Edict, commanding all throughout his Dominions to observe one and the same religion, and relinquishing their own and former Rites, to conform themselves to the religion of the *Greeks* under pain of death, sending divers Overseers who should compel each people to the observation of his Order. Into *Judea* he sent an old man of *Athens*, with order to defile the Temple, and name it the Temple of *Jupiter Olympius*, as that at *Gerizim* the Temple of *Jupiter Hospitalis*; he commanded the sacrifices to be left off, the Sabbath he prohibited, he commanded them to defile the Sanctuary, build up Altars, Groves, and Chapels to Idols, to sacrifice Swine, and other unclean beasts, not to Circumcise their sons, but to forget the Law: Moreover, an order was sent unto the Neighbouring Cities, that they should force the *Jews* to partake of their sacrifices, and kill those which would not come over to their Rites, so that many by fear obeyed, the Temple was polluted by the dalliances of the *Gentiles*, the abomination of desolation, viz. the abominable idol of *Jupiter Olympius* was set up therein, the Scriptures burnt, and a Decree published, that with whomsoever they should be found, or whosoever should approve them, should be put to death. Many yet were they that stood out, contemned the Kings Edict, and defiled not themselves, so that being enraged he caused divers to be brought before him to force them by Torments, but they stood out courageously, and enduring the pains sealed the truth with their blood; amongst whom are very notable the Mother and her seven Sons, from the eldest of them called *Maccabaeus*. The rage of this persecution coming to *Modin*, a Town situate near to *Diospolis* found some opposition; for there *Mattathias* a Priest eminent in degree, especially for his five sons, not onely refused to sacrifice, but killed a *Jew* at the Altar that was so doing, and after that the Kings Officer who was sent to compel the people. Then exhorting all that were zealous for their Law to follow him, he fled with his sons into the Mountain.

46. Many went out after him, and lived with their Wives, Children, and Cattel, in Dens and Caves, which coming to the knowledge of *Philip* the Governour of *Jerusalem*, the Garrison Soldiers were presently drawn out to pursue them, so that falling on them on the Sabbath, and they not at all resisting for the observance thereof, they cast in fire, and burnt them to the number of 1000 persons. *Mattathias*, and they that were with him hearing this, resolved for the time to come to repulse the Enemy on the Sabbath, and then the *Asidaens*, a sort of religious men joyning with him, with such as daily fled out of the Countrey, he made up a little Army, and therewith prosecuted the wicked ones, and drove them to fly to the Nations about, pul-

*Livius* ibid.  
*Polyb. Legat.*  
9.  
*Valerius Maxi-*  
*mus lib. 6. cap. 4.*  
*Appian ut*  
*prius.*

1 Maccab. 1.  
& 2 Maccab. 6.

1 Maccab. 2.

led down the Alcars, and Circumcised such Children as they found in the Coasts of *Israel*; then after he had been Captain of this wandering Company the space of a year, he died, leaving his son *Simon* for a Counsellour, and *Judas* firnamed *Maccabaeus* for a Captain to them. This *Mattathias* was the son of *John*, and Grand-son to *Simeon*, firnamed *Asmonaeus*. \* *Jacobus Cap.* \* *Ad A. M.* *833.* *pellus* thinketh that this *Simeon* was *Simon* the second, son of *Onias* the second, and Grand-son to *Simon* the first, firnamed *Just*. But *Schinterus* thinketh this *Simeon* to have been the son of *Hasmonaeus*. From the words of *Josephus* it should seem that *Mattathias* was the Great-grand-son of *Asmonaeus*, so called, or *Hasmon*, from whom his posterity were named *Hasmonaeus*. \* *David* useth the word *Hasmanim* to expresse Ambassadors, Princes, or Great-men. It is also observed that the *Jews* in *Italy* call the Cardinals *Hasmanim* or *Hasmonaeans*. \* *Psal. 68. 32.*

And Judas his  
son after him.

Which inra-  
ging *Antio-*  
*chus*.

Who intend-  
ing to go a-  
gainst him,  
yet changeth  
his mind and  
giveth order  
to *Lysias* to  
destroy the  
*Jews*.

He sendeth se-  
veral Captains  
into *Judea*.

47. *Judas* being assisted by his brethren, and his fathers followers, fell upon the Enemy, burnt divers of their Towns, and seized upon the Commodious places, coming usually upon them in the night, so as he forced many of them to quit the Land; *Apollonius* the Governour of *Samaria* coming against him, he overthrew, and slew him, and getting his sword ever after used it in the Wars, and after him he overthrew also *Sevon*, who governed *Cale-Syria*. *Antiochus* in this mean while lying about *Antioch*, made there Magnificent Games and Shows, employing the money he had got in *Egypt*, and out of the Temples he had rifled, to that end and purpose, and entreating his Guests in a vile and servile kind of observance. This being ended, an Ambassador from *Rome* arrived at his Court, sent on purpose to spy out his designs. Whom he received with such courtesie, as over doing in that point, he easily concealed the grudge he had conceived for his stop at *Alexandria*, and the bent of his mind which was sufficiently alienated from the *Romans*. But hearing of the successe of *Maccabaeus*, and the losse of his Forces, he was exceedingly enraged, mustered all his Army, to which he gave a years pay, and commanded they should be ready at all occasions.

48. He purposed to march against *Maccabaeus*, but seeing his Treasury exhausted by the pay of the Army (for that the *Jews* now being revolted, he thereby lost his 300 Talents of annual Tribute, and much also which he was wont to receive from other places, which being unwilling to quit their own religions as well the other, were in combustions) and fearing he should not have to satisfy for his gifts, wherein he took a pride to exceed all his ancestors, he resolved to make a progresse into *Persia*, and the upper Countreys, to gather the Tributes thereof, and fill his Coffers. But before his departure, making *Lysias* his Kinsman Governour of the Regions betwixt *Euphrates* and *Egypt*, to whose care he also committed his young son, he gave to him half his forces, and this in charge, to blot out the Nation of the *Jews* utterly, and to give their Countrey to strangers to inhabit. *Philip* the Governour of *Jerusalem* seeing to what an height *Maccabaeus* was grown, wrote to *Pholomy* the son of *Dorymenes* the Governour of *Cale-Syria* and *Cilicia*, who presently dispatched *Nicanor* one of his chiefest friends, and the son of *Parvocus* with 20000 men, joyning *Gorgias* to him, a man of great experience; and not long after he himself was sent by *Lysias* with more aid, so that all three together made an Army of 40000 foot and 7000 horse. *Antiochus* at this time was behind hand in his Tribute to the *Romans* 2000 Talents, therefore *Nicanor* resolved to raise this money out of *Jewish* slaves, and sent about for Chapmen for them, promising 90 persons for a Talent; so that 1000 Merchants came together with ready money into his Camp; more forces also from *Syria* and the Countrey of the *Philistines* came in to him.

49. *Judas* having kept a fast at *Morpah* (because the Heathen now held *Jerusalem*, and the Temple was defiled) for his good successe against so great an Army, having himself but 6. or 7000 men, gave all the fearfull, those that had built houses, married Wives, or planted Vineyards leave to depart, according to the Law of *Moses*; then marched down to *Emman*, where the Enemy

*Polyb. Legat.*  
101. & 109.

1 Maccab. 3.

2 Maccab. 8.

1 Maccab. 4.

Enemy was incamped. That night *Gorgias* thinking to oppress the *Jews*, at unawares, came to their Tents with a party of 5000 foot and 1000 horse; but *Judas* having notice thereof, turned it to his own advantage, resolving to go and fall upon *Nicanor* in the absence of the other, whom he knew to be the more experienced Captain. *Gorgias* finding the Camp empty, thought the owners had fled for fear of him into the Mountains, and sought for them there, but they being got to *Nicanor* engaged with him in the morning, and routed his whole Army, laying above 9000 dead upon the place; so that he and his men perceiving presently what was done by the smoke of their Camp now set on fire, fled again, and the *Jews* coming to plunder the field found great Treasure, of which part being set aside for the infirm, Widows, and Orphans, the rest the Soldiers divided amongst them. After this, *Judas* overthrew *Timotheus* and *Bachides*, both of the Kings party, killing above 20000 men, so that then they recovered many strong holds; at which *Lyfias* was exceedingly troubled, things falling out so contrary to his expectations, & the next year invaded *Judea* with an army of 60000 choice foot, and 5000 horse, but being met by *Judas* with 10000 men, he was received with such resolution that with the losse of 5000 he was glad to retreat to *Antioch*, intending greater preparations for his next expedition. *Judas* returning to *Jerusalem* cleansed the Temple, & offered sacrifice upon a new Altar, after the Heathen had held it just three years; then kept they a feast for eight days, and ordered it to be observed to posterity, which in the Gospel is called the Feast of the Dedication.

But they are defeated.

And *Lyfias* himself.

*Antiochus* in the mean time prospecteth in the upper Countreys.

And in his return hearing of the miscarriage of *Lyfias*, and the rest breathes revenge, but is presently struck with a foul disease.

And dieth.

50. *Antiochus* in the mean while waged War against *Artaxias* King of *Armenia*, and that with such successe, as cutting off many of his men, he took him prisoner. Afterwards hearing that the Citie *Elymais* in *Persia* was exceeding rich, and therein a Temple (of *Venus*, or *Diana*, both being asserted) wherein were laid up very rich Arms left by *Alexander* the Great, he being greedy of this prey, attempted to rife them both, but the Inhabitants taking Arms, repelled, and caused him shamefully to retreat. Being come to *Ecbaran*, he there heard of the overthrow of *Nicanor* and *Timotheus*, and then journeying towards *Babylon*, in the Borders of *Persia*, of the defeat given to that great Army of *Lyfias*, and the throwing down the Idol of *Jupiter Olympius*, and the consecration of the Sanctuary, whereupon he fell into a great rage, resolved to revenge himself upon the *Jews* for his shamefull retreat, and commanded his Chariot driver to make speed, saying, he would make *Jerusalem* the common burying place of them when he should come thither. Scarce had he made an end of threatening, when he was suddenly struck with exceeding torment in his bowels, which yet reduced him not to any good constitution of mind, he still breathing fury and revenge against the *Jews*, and crying out to make haste, but the Chariot being driven very fast, he was shaken out of it, and by the fall so sore bruised, that he was constrained to betake himself to his Litter, and then Worms crawled out of his body, the flesh whereof rotted, and fell from him yet alive. None could endure to carry him for the stench thereof, which also offended his Army, wherefore being forced to stay his journey for *Oxyton*, he stayed at *Taba*, a Town in *Persia*. Before his death he confessed this to have fallen upon him for the injuries offered to the *Jews*, acknowledged the Sovereignty of God, and his own pride, vowed if God would restore him, to grant immunities to his people, to adorn his Temple, to turn Jew himself, and to travel through the habitable world to declare his strength and power. And when he perceived his end to draw near, he wrote most kind Letters to the *Jews*, desiring them to stand faithful near him, and his son after him, then constituting *Philip*, who had been brought up with him, the Protector and Guardian of his son, till he should come to age, he died, after he had reigned 12 years, A. M. 3841. after the beginning of *Selenus*, the 149. the first of the 154 *Olympiad*.

51. *Antiochus* his son, a Child of nine years old succeeded him, named *Eupator*, by the *Syrians* for his fathers virtue. Him *Lyfias* goverved, who had brought him up; so that *Philip* his designed Guardian by his father fled into *Egypt*, and *Ptolomy* the son of *Dorymenes*, for that being convinced how the

*Appian*, in *Syriacis*.

2 Maccab. 9.

A. M. 3841.  
Ol. 154. ann. 1.  
*Selenus*  
149.  
*Ptol. Philom.*  
17.

*Appian*, in *Syriacis*.

*Antiochus* Eupator,  
2 Maccab. 10.  
*Jews*

*Demetrius* the sonne of *Seleucus Philopator* and the right heir, desireth of the *Rome* to restore him; but they out of policy refuse it.

*Gorgias* fomenteth a War with the *Jews*.

*Judas* is victorious.

*Lyfias* again defeated.

*Jews* were wronged, he went about to compose the difference with them, was forced to drink poyson. *Demetrius* the son of *Seleucus Philopator*, whom we before said to have been sent Hostage to *Rome*, hearing there of his Uncles death, desired of the Senate that he might be restored to his Fathers Kingdom, so long unjustly detained from him, affirming he esteemed of *Rome* as his own Country, in which he had been brought up; of the sons of Senators as his brethren, and themselves as so many Fathers; but they judging it more for their interest that the Kingdom of *Syria* should be under a child than one of mans estate (such as he was, being now 23 years old) resolved it should be secured to *Antiochus*, and presently ordered three Commissioners to be sent thither to settle the affaires thereof, according to instructions received from themselves, which might now be done easily enough, the King himself being so young, and his Courtiers thinking they were well enough dealt withall, so *Demetrius* was not restored; but especially they gave them in charge to burn all the ships they should find there, not allowed to *Antiochus* by the League, and hough the legs of all the Elephants, and diminish the Kings strength as much as possible. These things being executed, provoked one *Leptines* so far as he slew *Cn. Octavius* the chief Commissioner (and who first brought the Consulship into his family, out of which *Augustus Caesar* issued) whom *Lyfias*, though he was suspected to incense the People against the *Romans*, honourably buried, and dispatched quickly Ambassadors to *Rome* in the King's name to disclaim any consciousnesse to the fact.

*Polyb. Legat.*  
107.

52. *Gorgias* being Governour of the parts about *Judea*, fomented a continual War with the *Jews*, and with him joyned the *Idumeans*, who received all runnagates, and gave them entertainment. Against those therefore, *Judas Maccabaeus* marched, took divers places, and put 20000 to the Sword, after which turning upon the *Ammonites*, he overthrew them in divers engagements, and taking *Jazer* with the Territories thereto belonging, returned again into *Judea*. *Timotheus* the General of the *Ammonites* hereat enraged, and gathering many men out of *Asia*, came as if he would devour *Judea*, but *Judas* with his having humbled themselves, and called upon the name of God, gave him battel, in which 20500 Foot, and 600 of his Horse being slain, he fled to *Gazara*, a strong Garrison kept by his brother, but that being taken, he was pulled out of a cave where he had hid himself, and slain, together with the other. After this the Nations about *Galaad* and *Galile* afflicting for the *Jews*, *Maccabaeus* divided his Army into three parts, one of which (*viz.* 3000 men), he delivered to his brother *Simon* to relieve them of *Galile*, the second to *Joseph* the son of *Zechariab*, to defend *Judea*, giving it in charge not to fight with any Enemy till his return, with the other he marched himself to the succour of them in *Galaad*. *Simon* fought many battels with the Enemy, and killed many of them, brought his Countrymen into *Judea* with great gladnesse, and *Judas* had the like successe, taking many Towns, and putting many thousands to the Sword; but those that were left at home desiring also upon the report hereof to achieve some military glory, marched to *Jamnia*, whence *Gorgias* issuing out, put them to flight, and following the chase as far as the borders of *Judea*, killed about 2000 of them.

2 Maccab. 10.

1 Maccab. 5.

53. *Lyfias* the King's Protector and chief Minister of State, was displeased at the report of *Judas*'s successe, and taking 80000 Foot withall the Horse along with him, resolved to make *Jerusalem* an habitation for the *Greeks*, the Temple to pay tribute, and the Priesthood thereof to set to sale every year. He came and besieged *Bethsura* night to *Jerusalem*; but *Maccabaeus* then meeting with him killed 11000 of his Foot, with 1600 Horse-men, and forced him with the rest (many of them wounded and disarmed) to shift for themselves. Considering this defeat, and that God fought for the *Jews*, he sent them to treat of Peace, and according to his promise brought the King to yield to such reasonable conditions as were offered by *Maccabaeus*; but it was quickly broken by *Timotheus*, and other Captains, that governed the places adjoining to *Judea*, at which time they of *Jeppe* also drawing

2 Maccab. 11.  
6. 12.

Dddd

200 *Jews*



And the Scythian Nomades,

200 Jews craftily on shipboard, drowned them in the sea. Judas hearing this, went and burned all the Vessels in the Haven at Joppe, and understanding that the inhabitants of Jamnia had also intended such a thing against his Country-men; he did as much for them; then marching against Timotheus, the Arabian Nomades set upon him, being 5000 Foot, and 500 Horse, but were so entertained, as yielding themselves, with a promise of giving up their Cartel, and being at his beck for the time to come, they obtained Peace. After this he stormed the City Caspis (wherein was such a slaughter made of the Inhabitants, that a Lake thereto adjoining seemed to be full of blood) and then proceeding 750 furlongs came to the Jews called Tubieni inhabiting the Land of Tob (concerning which mention is made in the Book of Judges) whence Timotheus was departed, but had left a strong Garrison, which being taken by Dosithus and Sosipater two of Judas his Officers, they put to the sword above 10000 men.

Chap. II.

1 Maccab. 5. &  
2 Maccab. 12.

As also Timotheus

54. Timotheus gathered together from the Nations round about him and the Arabians 120000 Foot, and 2500 Horse, wherewith, putting up the women and children into a strong Fort called Carnion, he came and pitched his Tents against Raphon beyond the brook; but his great multitude was so surprized with fear upon the approaching of Judas, that every man shifted for himself, and what by their running upon one another's swords, and the pursue which Maccabians followed on with much earnestness, 30000 of them were slain, and he himself fell into the hands of Dosithus and Sosipater, from whom he obtained his liberty, upon promise of dismissing such of their Countrymen as he had taken. Judas then proceeding took Carnion, wherein 25000 trymen as he had taken. Judas then proceeding took Carnion, wherein 25000 were put to the sword, after which he gathered all the Jews out of Galaad to bring them into Judaea, and for that the City Ephron, through which they must needs passe, denied them entrance, they took it by force, and demolishing the Inhabitants, went through and came up to Jerusalem to the Feast of Pentecost. The Feast being ended, he taking 3000 Foot, and 400 Horse along with him, went and fought with Gorgias, whom one Dosithus of Bacenor his Company had once taken, but holding him by the cloak, a certain Thracian came and cut off his shoulder, so that the prisoner escaped. After the Victory the Jews coming to strip and bury such of their own party as had fallen that day, found under their coats certain things dedicated to the idols of Jamnia, so that it appearing that this being forbidden them by the Law was the cause of their death, they betook themselves by Prayer to God, intreating that it might not be charged upon them all. After this Judas subdued the Edomites, and the Philistines, their idols he burnt, and overthrew their altars, and then returning into Judaea, for that he found the King's Garrison Soldiers which yet kept the Castle to straiten and infect the Israelites about the Sanctuary, with all the People, he besieged them close, but some of them with certain Jewish fugitives getting out, went straight to Antiochus, and perswaded him with all expedition to come and give a check to the growing power of the Jews.

1 Maccab. 6.

The Edomites and Philistines subdued.

Antiochus besiegeth Bethsura,

Which being taken, he besiegeth Jerusalem,

55. Antiochus gathering together all his friends and Captains, and a great Army (concerning the number of which the two Books of Maccabees differ) in a great rage marched thither, intending to deal worse with them than his father had done before him, and to him Menelaus joyned himself, hoping by his means to regain the Priesthood. Passing through Idumaea he came and sat down before Bethsura, where Judas by night with a choice party fell upon his Camp, and piercing as far as his own Tent slew 4000 men, and the prime Elephant, with those upon him, and giving an Alarm to the whole Army at break of the day, safely retreated, whereupon the King marched towards him the next day, and coming to an engagement lost 600 men more; but the Jews seeing themselves overpowered, retreated. Then returned he to the siege, which Judas sore molested, cutting off many of his men, and relieving the besieged with provisions, who being not provided within themselves, because this was the Sabbath year, yielded up the Town upon composition. Antiochus having herein placed a Garrison marched up to Jerusalem, and made

Ibid. &  
2 Maccab. 12.

But is called away by the motions of Philip.

A Temple built to God at Heliopolis by the procurement of Onias

Demetrius the right heir escapeth from Rome.

made all provision possible for gaining it, all manner of engines being raised for the casting of fire and stones; which the besieged resisted as well as they might by others of their own, but as for provisions, were in no better condition than they of Bethsura had been, which gave opportunity enough to the King; but before he could perfect his work, came news that Philip, whom his Father had ordained to be his guardian, being returned out of Egypt, was coming with the Forces which Epiphanes had left in Persia and Media to recover his right usurped by Lysias. Hereupon both he and his Captains were presently perswaded by Lysias (because their provisions began to fail, the place was strong, and the affairs of the Kingdom required it) to make Peace with the besieged upon such terms as they required.

56. Going to the Temple he offered sacrifice, and shewed civility and respect towards the place, but a little after considering the strength thereof, caused the wall round about to be demolished, contrary to his oath. Then returning to Ptolemais, the Inhabitants being great Enemies to the Jews, stickled hard to break the League, but Lysias by his defence quiered their minds, and confirmed the Peace. The King halting thence towards Antioch, Lysias accused Menelaus the High-priest to him, as an incendiary, and he that had been the cause of the War, so that being thrown into a Tower full of ashes, he there miserably ended his life, and in his room was substituted one Alcimus of Aron's line, but not of the family of the Priests, through Lysias his direction, which Onias the son of the last Onias the Priest understanding, went into Egypt, where insinuating himself into Ptolemy Philometor and Cleopatra, he obtained a Temple like that at Jerusalem to be built in the Province of Heliopolis, and himself to be made Priest thereof. Antiochus coming to Alexandria, found Philip Master thereof, but setting upon it he took it by force, and taking him therein put him to death, and so quickly quiered these stirs, being reserved with his Guardian, though but a little time, for others more dangerous. His Ambassadors now, which Lysias had sent about the death of Othavus, had been at Rome, where labouring to clear him of the fact, they were sent back without answer, whereat Demetrius the son of Seleucus being much startled, began to cast again in his head how to obtain his freedom, and the Kingdom, according to his title, which was so clear and evident.

57. Consulting with Polybius the Achaean and Historian, whether he should not once more move the Senate in the business, he advised him not to dash himself twice against the same Rock, but attempt something of himself worthy of a Kingdom, hinting thereby what he would have him to do. But he being ruled by one Apollonius his intimate friend, but a young unexperienced man, requested the Fathers again, that at least he might not be constrained to stay there as an Hostage, seeing they had secured the Kingdom of his Cousin Antiochus. They yet remained of the same opinion, and resolved as formerly; so that then he consulted how to escape, first with Diodorus a cunning man, who was come from Syria, and had belonged to him, and then with Polybius, who procured Menethyllus the Egyptian Ambassador to hire a Carthaginian ship just then sailing for Tyre; so that Diodorus being sent before to feel the People's mind, and seek for advantages, he taking a few friends along with him supped at a friend's house; whether, for fear he should stay too long, Polybius sent him a secret hint, not to let slip this opportunity; whereupon making as though he was sick, he arose from the table, and came that night to Ostia upon the mouth of Tyber. Menethyllus going before told the Master of the ship, that he had received orders from his Prince to reside still at Rome; but that he would send some young men of approved fidelity to him, to acquaint him with the affairs of his negotiation: So Demetrius and his followers going on shipboard, away they failed by break of day. At Rome nothing was known of his escape till the fourth day. On the fifth the Senate met about it; yet did not make any provision for the pursuing of him, thinking it to be too late; but a few dayes after, they sent three Commissioners into Greece, who viewing the affairs there,

A. M. 3842.  
Ol. 154. an. 2.  
Seleucidarum  
150.  
Antiochi  
Eupatoris 2.  
Ptolom. Philomet. 18.  
V. C. 591.  
Joseph. Antiq. lib. 12.  
cap. 15.

Polybius Legat.  
114.  
1 Maccab. 7. &  
2 Maccab. 14.

A. M. 3843.  
Ol. 154. an. 3.  
V. C. 592.  
Seleucidarum  
151.  
Ptolom. Philomet. 19.

Dddd 2

there,



and then *Judas* hearing of the power of the *Romans*, and their compassion of the distressed, and how much *Demetrius* stood in awe of them, sent *Eupolemus* the son of *John*, and *Jason* the son of *Eleazer* on an Ambassage to the Senate, that entering into society with them, the People might be freed from the yoke of *Demetrius* and the *Greeks*. But *Demetrius* hearing of the mischance of *Nicanor* and his Forces, sent *Bachides* and *Alcimus* again into *Judea* with the greater part of his forces, who coming to *Jerusalem* to seek for *Judas*, marched thence with 20000 Foot, and 2000 Horse against him, who had but 3000 men in all. With these few he setting upon *Bachides*, all of them forsook him but 800, with which yet he so charged him, as fighting from morning till night, he put to flight the right wing in which he stood, but they of the left perceiving this, followed him behind as he gave the charge, and compassing him in, slew him, all his men then shifting for themselves. This hapned A. M. 3844. of the *Greeks* or *Seleucida* the 152. in the second of *Demetrius Soter*, and after he led the People, from his Fathers death, six years.

*Bachides* and *Alcimus* sent into *Judea* against *Judas*.

*Maccabæus* is slain.

*Jonathan* his brother chosen Captain in his room.

62. A great famine then raging, almost all the Country submitted to *Bachides*, that they might the more commodiously get bread, and he made such wicked persons Governours, as bringing to him the friends of *Judas*, he mocked them, and revenged himself upon them. But such of them as remained, and could do it, assembled themselves together, and chose *Jonathan* (Surnamed *Apphu*) their Captain in the room of *Judas* his brother, which *Bachides* hearing sought to kill him, but he understanding thereof, fled into the Desert *Thecoa*, having sent his brother *John* (Surnamed *Gaddis*) with a party to the *Nabathean Arabs*, to desire they might leave their baggage amongst them. He going down with it, was met in the way by the children of *Iambri* from *Medaba*, who killing him and those with him, seized upon the prey; but no great joy had they of their booty; for *Jonathan* and his brother *Simon* hearing that they were about to make a great marriage, and bring the bride from *Medaba* with great pomp, being the Daughter of one of the noblest Princes of *Canaan*, they went, and hiding themselves under the covert of the Mountain, when the Bridgroom and his friends came forth with Timbrels and instruments of Musick, rose up out of the ambush, slew many of them, and took the spoil; so having revenged the death of their brother, they returned again unto *Jordan*. When *Bachides* heard this, he marched down, and came thither with a great Army upon the Sabbath Day, and *Jonathan* being better behind and before with the Enemy, and on each side with the River and Marshes, encouraged yet his men to fight, and lifting up his hand struck at *Bachides*. But he declined the blow; then seeing himself too weak for the Enemy he leaped into the River after he had slain 1000 of them, and swam over with his men to the further side. *Bachides* would not adventure to follow, but returning to *Jerusalem*, built up the strong Forts throughout the Land, and placed therein strong Garrisons, that thence making excursions, he might endamage the *Jews*. He fortified the Cities *Bethsura* and *Gazara*, with the Castle at *Jerusalem*, where he placed Soldiers with provisions, and taking the sons of the chief of the Country for Hostages, he secured them in the later.

1 Maccab. 9.

A. M. 3845.  
Ol. 155. an. 1.  
V. C. 594.  
Seleucid. 153.  
Demetr. Sot.  
3. Ptolom.  
Philomet. 21.

1 Maccab. 8.

1 Maccab. 9.

*Demetrius* is forbidden by the *Romans* to hurt the *Jews*.

*Alcimus* his ill end.

63. The Ambassadors sent by *Maccabæus* to the *Romans* were well received, and entered into a League and society with the *Romans*, which being writen in Tables of brasse, contained an ingagement mutually to succour and relieve each other. The Senate also wrote to *Demetrius*, charging him no more to hurt or indamage the *Jews*, being their confederates, under pain of being prosecuted with War both at Land and Sea. Not long after *Alcimus* the High-priest commanded the wall in the Temple, which severed the Court of the People from that of the *Gentiles*, to be pulled down, which had been built by *Zorobabel*, and the Prophets, whose monuments he began to pull down and destroy; but at the same time he was so smitten that he could not open his mouth, being taken with a Palfie, so as he could not speak nor give order concerning his house, and died with great torment. When *Bachides*

*chides* saw that he was dead, he returned unto the King. Two years then did the Land continue quiet, but at the end thereof, certain wicked persons sent for *Bachides* to return, telling him he might easily apprehend *Jonathan* and all his Company in one night, at which message he arose with great haste, and sent letters privily to his adherents to take them, but they having notice of it, took fifty of these men, which had been the greatest sticklers, and slew them. Then *Jonathan* departing into the Wilderness, built up the walls of *Bethbasi*, and fortified it, which *Bachides* having notice of went down thither, and closely besieged it; but such was his entertainment from the besieged (who getting out killed his men, and burnt his engines,) that having lain before the place a long time to no purpose, and seeing his journey to be frustrate, he eased his stomach against those that had been the cause of his Expedition, and putting to death many of them, resolved to retreat into his own Country. *Jonathan* having notice of this, sent to him to treat of Peace, and exchange the prisoners, which he gladly accepted of, and made an oath never more to disturb him. Returning then home he never brake it; so that the Warre being removed, *Jonathan* dwelt at *Magbus* (or *Michmas*) in the Tribe of *Benjamin*, began to govern the People, and destroy the ungodly out of *Israel*.

*Bachides* sweareth never more to molest the *Jews*.

*Orophernes* one of suppositious brood getteth *Cappadocia* by the help of *Demetrius*.

*Antiphanes* the true heir restored by *Attalus*.

64. *Ariarathes* (the fifth of that name) King of *Cappadocia*, married (as we said before) *Antiochia* the daughter of *Antiochus* the Great. She having no children by him at the first, introduced two suppositious boyes, *Ariarathes* and *Orophernes*, he knowing nothing hereof; but a little after growing fruitful, she brought forth two daughters, and a son called *Mithridates*, and then acquainting her husband with what she had formerly done, procured the two Counterfeits to be sent, the one to *Rome*, and the other into *Ionia*, lest they should disturb the true one in his succession, who, being named *Ariarathes*, and brought up in the fashions and customs of the *Greeks*, obtained the Kingdom after his Fathers death. *Orophernes* afterwards resolving to venture for it, came to *Demetrius*, complaining he was injuriously deprived of the Kingdom by his younger brother, and craved his assistance for the recovery of it. He being offended at *Ariarathes* for the refusing the marriage of his sister the widow of *Perseus*, bargained with *Orophernes* for 1000 Talents, and expelled *Ariarathes* from *Cappadocia*, though he was helped by *Eumenes* King of *Pergamus*. *Orophernes* having thus invaded the Kingdom, behaved himself not like one who intended to secure it to himself in the love of his People, but raging against them with pillages and slaughters, and corrupting himself with the luxurie of *Ionia* (where he had been brought up) pulled upon him the hatred of all his Subjects, which he perceiving, made onely as an occasion further to prosecute his wicked and unreasonable designs. *Ariarathes* went straight to *Rome* to crave aid; and the Ambassadors both of *Demetrius* and the other, followed to excuse what was done, and re-criminate him, which those of *Orophernes* performed so dexterously, that no body being present that could confute their lies, they seemed to gain credit, and *Ariarathes* because he had been the confederate of the *Romans*, was ordered to reign together with his brother. This was all he got at *Rome*; but shortly after *Attalus* the brother and successor of *Eumenes* expelled *Orophernes* and *Demetrius* quite out of *Cappadocia*, and restored him to the entire possession of his Kingdom.

Excerpt. Dio-  
vi Siculi &  
Polyb.

Excerpt. Polybii  
per Valesium.

65. Not long after, *Demetrius* casting in his head how to enlarge his Dominions, offered *Archæus*, the Governour of *Cyprus* for *Ptolemy Philometor*, 500 Talents to betray the Island into his hands; which the man consented to, but being discovered and sentenced, prevented the execution by hanging himself. Being thus frustrated in this design, he thenceforth giving himself up to idleness, having built a Castle fortified with 4 Towers not far from *Antioch*, wherein he passed away the time without any attendance of state affaires, out of the sight of his Subjects. Hereby he contracted such hatred, that the *Antiochians* revolted from him, and made choice of *Orophernes*, then living in exile at his Court, who so badly requiried him for his former

One Balas  
suborned by  
several Prin-  
ces for the son  
of Epiphanes,

merkindness, as to conspire with them to rob him of his Kingdom and life. He getting knowledge of this, spared his life, left he should free *Ariarathes* from the fear of a competitor, and caused him to be kept securely at *Seleucia*; but the *Antiochians* not at all terrified from their attempt, went on in their rebellion, to which *Aitalus* of *Asia*, *Ariarathes* of *Cappadocia*, and *Ptolomy* lending their helping hand, they suborned a young man of the basest condition (by one (a) called *Prompalus*, by others (b) *Balas*, and (c) *Balles*) giving him the name of *Alexander*, and reporting him to be son of *Antiochus Epiphanes*, to recover as it were his Fathers Kingdom by force. This youth, together with *Laodice* *Antiochus* his daughter, did (d) *Heraclides* (whom *Demetrius* cast out, as we said, of the Office of Treasurer at *Babylon*) carry to *Rome*, where he brought him into the Senate, and caused him to desire that he might be helped in the recovery of the Kingdom, at least that he might not be hindered in his endeavour that way; then he seconding him inveighed against *Demetrius*, and heaped up the praises and merits of *Antiochus* so far, as though to all sober minded men his impudence was distasteful as well as his person, yet he so bewitched the generality of the Fathers, that a Decree was made, whereby power was given to them to return, and aid ordered them for the recovery of the Kingdom (being the children of their late friend and ally) as they had required.

(a) Justin. lib. 35.  
(b) Strabo lib. 16.  
(c) Josephus lib. 13. c. 8.  
(d) Polybius Legat. 140.

66. *Heraclides* having obtained this act of the Senate, presently hired Souldiers, and getting many eminent men to joyn with him, went to *Ephesus*, where he made all possible preparation for the War. Not long after *Alexander* got *Ptolemais* a City of *Phoenicia*, being betrayed to him by the Garrison Soldiers, which *Demetrius* hearing, gathered together his Forces to go and fight with him, but considering the uncertainty of the chance of War, sent away his two sons *Demetrius* and *Antiochus* unto *Cnidus* to be out of the danger, and be referred to revenge his death or deprivation if need should require. He sent also to *Jonathan* the Captain of the Jews, to renew Peace with him, giving him power to raise forces against *Alexander*, and commanding the Hostages kept in the Castle at *Jerusalem* to be restored to him, which he using as a good opportunity, began to build *Jerusalem* anew, and repair the walls, but *Alexander* having notice of *Demetrius* his message, and the promises made by him, sent to him in like manner, and amongst many privileges and immunities granted to the Nation, appointed him to be the High-priest, sending him Purple and a Crown of Gold. So, in the twentieth month of the 160 year of the *Seleucida*, *Jonathan* put on the holy robe, in the ninth after the death of his brother *Judas* (the Priesthood having been vacant seven years from the death of *Alcimus*) being the first of the *Hasmoneans* that arrived at this dignity, and of the priestly family, but not of the *Pontifical*, to which *Onias* (who now was in *Egypt*) was next heir. *Demetrius* hearing of the agreement his Enemy had made with the Jews, was sore troubled thereat, and laboured again by incredible promises to allure them to his own party; but they having had experience formerly how his affections stood towards them, refused to entertain his overtures. *Balas* gathering his forces together, not onely those that revolted to him in *Syria*, but his Auxiliaries also sent from *Jonathan*, *Ariarathes*, *Aitalus*, and especially from *Ptolomy Philometor*, gave battel to *Demetrius*, whose left wing put those to flight which fought against it, but the right having the contrary fortune was forced to run, which yet he would not do, though in it, but fighting manfully, light with his Horse into a bog, where he fought stoutly on his feet, till at last he was slain with many wounds, after he had reigned twelve years. A. M. 3854, the second of the 157 Olympiad, of the *Seleucida* the 161.

1 Maccab. 10.

Justin ut prius.  
Appian in Syriacis.

A. M. 3854.  
Ol. 156. M. 4.  
V. C. 601.  
Seleucid. 160.  
Demet. Sor. 10.  
Ptol. Philom. 28.

Contendeth  
for the King-  
dom of Syria

And *Demetrius*  
being slain  
in battel

67. *Alexander Balas* obtained the Kingdom, and shortly after his possession of it, remembering how much he was beholding to *Ptolomy Philometor* for it, sent to him for his Daughter to wife; which he willingly assenting to, brought her to *Ptolemais*, and married her to him with royal magnificence. Thither came down *Jonathan* from *Jerusalem*, bringing presents for both the

1 Maccab. 10.

*Alexander Balas* getteth the Kingdom and marrieth *Ptolomy's* daughter.

*Demetrius* the son of *Demetrius Soter* maketh for the Kingdom.

*Ptolomy* assisteth him in recovering his Fathers Kingdom.

*Alexander* slain,

And *Ptolomy* dieth of his wounds.

Kings, but was followed by divers naughty persons to accuse him; Yet *Alexander* was so far from listening to any tales, that he caused him to be clothed in purple, to sit near him, and by proclamation commanded all his accusers to forbear, at which they being discouraged, went their ways. After this *Alexander* giving up himself to idleness, & luxurie, and minding nothing else, the affaires of the State were wholly managed by one *Ammonius*, who made slaughter of all his friends, and amongst the rest slew *Laodice* the Daughter of *Epiphanes*. Which being heard by *Demetrius* the eldest Son of *Demetrius Soter*, he hired Soldiers in *Crete*, and came into *Cilicia*, at which the other being affrighted, hasted to *Antioch* to secure his estate before his coming, where he made *Hierax*, and *Diodotus* (or *Tryphon*) governours. With *Demetrius* joyned *Apollonius* the Governour of *Calesyria*, who being ordered to fight against the Jews, who still stood true to *Alexander*, with great pride provoked *Jonathan* to fight with him, and he accordingly marched from *Jerusalem* against him with 10000 men. In his way he took *Joppe*, which *Apollonius* understanding marched to *Ashdod*, and left an Ambush in the way to intrap him, but he getting clear of the Ambush, put all his forces to flight, whereof many men fled into the Temple of the idol *Dagon*, which he set on fire, and what by this means and by the sword perished about 8000 men. This coming to the ears of *Alexander*, he honoured *Jonathan* more than ever: he sent him a burton of Gold, wont to be given to the Kings kinsmen, and gave him *Accaron* a City of the *Philistines* with it's Territories as an inheritance.

Joseph. lib. 13. cap. 8. & Livius lib. 50. & Justin. l. 35.

A. M. 3857.  
Ol. 158. an. 1.  
V. C. 606.  
Seleucid. 165.  
Ptolom. Philomet. 33.

1 Maccab. 11.

Joseph. & Justin ut supra.

68. *Ptolomy Philometor* with great forces both by Land and Sea, came out of *Egypt*, under pretence of aiding his son in Law, but indeed with an intention to seize upon *Syria*, and accordingly all the Cities being commanded to receive him honourably, he placed therein Garrisons of his own. He got into his hands all the maritime Cities as far as *Seleucia* upon *Orontes*, and then being clear out of conceit with *Alexander* (for that he demanding *Ammonius* who had plotted his destruction, he would not deliver him up) he sent and made an agreement with *Demetrius*, promising him to take away his daughter from *Balas* and give her to him, together with the recovery of his fathers Kingdom. The *Antiochians* slew *Ammonius*, and let *Ptolomy* into their City, who there put two Diadems upon his head; but presently brought them to receive *Demetrius*, promising them that this should make amends for the injury formerly offered his Father, and then the Soldiers revolted also. *Alexander* being now in *Cilicia* consulted with the Oracle of *Apollo Sardonius*, from which he had answer, that he should look to himself in that place which had brought forth a double formed spectacle, which seemed to point out the City *Abas* in *Arabia*, where a certain woman named *Heraus*, being married to one *Samias* turned to a man; and where he was slain not long after. For invading *Syria* with fire and sword, *Ptolomy* with *Demetrius* his new son in Law met and overthrew him at the River *Oenopara*, and then he flying to *Abas*, his head was cut off by *Zabd* the Prince of the place, and sent to *Ptolomy*, who though he received it with much joy, yet having in the fight received a great hurt in the head, upon the searching of the wound he died also the third day after. Such end had the strange fortune of this counterfeit *Alexander*, after he had reigned about five years.

Diod. Sicul. apud Photium.  
A. M. 3858.  
Seleucidarum 166.

69. *Demetrius* then according to his right obtained his Father's Kingdom, and for that he had subdued this counterfeitor of his family had (the next after *Seleucus* the founder of the race) the Syname of *Nicanor* or *Nicator*. About this time *Jonathan* besieged the Castle at *Jerusalem*, and did all he could with his Engines to reduce it; but this being by some illwillers made known to *Demetrius*, he wrote to him, in anger, to raise the siege, and appear before him at *Ptolemais*, which he obeyed so far as to go to him; and partly by his presents and otherways so appeased him, as rejecting his accusers, he confirmed to him the Priesthood, and upon promise of 300 Talents granted him immunity from tribute, with the Principality of three other places. After this, seeing his Realm to be quiet on every side, *Demetrius*

Appian in Syriacis.  
1 Maccab. 11. except. Diod. Sicul.

E e e e disc

disbanded all his old Soldiers, retaining onely some *Cretians* and other *Islanders*, which so intraged them, being wont by the former Kings to be kept in pay, as an encouragement to them for future service, that they thenceforth became his Enemies, and shewed it upon occasion which he also himself presented them, being wholly ruled by one *Lasthenes*, who had helped him in the recovery of the Kingdom. By this man's advice, thinking himself secure enough of his estate, he cruelly raged against such as had been against him, and plunged himself into bad courses; which (together with the alienation of the minds of the Soldiers) one *Diodorus* an *Apamean*, and one of *Alexander Balas* his Captains, considering, went to *Elmalchueles* the *Arabian*, with whom *Antiochus* the young son of that *Alexander* by *Cleopatra* was brought up, and acquainting him how things stood, at length obtained to have the boy delivered to him, to be restored to his Father's Kingdom. *Demetrius* seeing his soldiers alienated from him, desired of *Jonathan* a supply, with great promises of respect and succour. He sent him 3000 men, which stood him in good stead, for he going about to disarm the *Antiochians*, they flatly refused it, and rising, came many thousands to the Court to make an end of him, but these *Jews* so repelled them, as slaying a great number they set the City on fire, whereupon the inhabitants were glad to submit.

70. *Diodorus*, or *Tryphon*, took *Antiochus* the young son of *Balas*, brought him out of *Arabia* into *Syria*, and there crowned him, giving him the surname of *Theus*. Hereupon all the disbanded Soldiers came over to him, so that *Tryphon* made open War against *Demetrius*, and overthrowing him in battle forced him to flee to *Seleucia*. Then sent *Antiochus* to *Jonathan* messengers with presents, and great promises, to draw him to his party, which he easily did, because *Demetrius* had falsified his word, and proved very ingrateful towards him; who now therefore gathering his men together, reduced the Country beyond *Jordan* as far as *Damascus*, and overthrew a party which there met him, killing to the number of 3000 men, after which he sent an Ambassage to the *Romans*, to renew the alliance made with them by *Judas*. *Tryphon* having brought his design thus far on, as to break the power of *Demetrius*, and having to that end desired the friendship of *Jonathan*, yet now desired his ruine above all things, as standing in his way for the accomplishment of his intended treason. He resolved to seize upon the Kingdom himself; but fearing *Jonathan* might stand fast to the interest of his young King, and oppose him, came down to *Bethsan* to see if he could apprehend him. Thither came *Jonathan* down with 40000 men to meet him, who entertained him with exceeding great respect, and advised him to dismiss all his Army, and with a few go along with him to *Prolemais*, which he promised to put into his hands. He consenting to this, sent all his men back but 1000, which taking along with him, upon their entrance into the Town they were all cut off, he himself being kept prisoner. Then *Tryphon* invaded *Judea* with a great Army, which to oppose, *Simon* the brother of *Jonathan* was chosen General in his stead by the People; so that he seeing the *Jews* prepared for resistance, feigned as if *Jonathan* was onely detained for 100 Talents of Silver which he was in arrear, which if they were sent, together with his two sons for Hostages, he promised he should be released. *Simon*, though he distrusted him, yet lest it should be said that he neglected any thing for his brothers safety, sent his nephews with the money, which having received, he nevertheless slew *Jonathan*, and then returned into *Syria*.

71. He presently after made away young *Antiochus*, for giving out he was troubled with the Stone, under pretence of cutting him for it, he caused the Physicians to kill him. Then after he had gotten the Kingdom, he laboured to confirm himself therein by the approbation of his most powerful Neighbours, sending to *Rome* an Ambassador not empty-handed, but the Senate taking the present (a Golden image of Victory of great value) instead of his name, engraved that of his young King whom he had murdered. For all this he proceeded with great resolution, coyned money with his own effigies and name, having taken that of *Tryphon* upon him. *Simon* being dis-

A. M. 3860.  
Ol. 158. an. 4.  
V. C. 609.  
Seleucid. 168.  
Ptol. Physicon. 2.  
1 Maccab. 11.  
Joseph. l. 12. c. 9.

Apian ut supra.

1 Maccab. 12. c. 13.

1 Maccab. 13.  
Strabo lib. 16.  
Livius lib. 55.

disobliged, and accounting his acts to be but as Robberies, sent a Crown of Gold to make his peace again with *Demetrius*, who considering the respect the *Romans* had shewed his Nation, promised to bury all things in Oblivion, and confirmed the immunities formerly granted; so that the yoke of the *Gentiles* now being removed, the people began to dare their instruments according to the years of their High-Priests. The year after he had the Castle of *Jerusalem* surrendered to him, the Defendants being almost all consumed with famine, which he cleansing and fortifying anew, together with the Hill of the Temple, dwelt then in *Jerusalem*, and after he had been High-Priest about three years, by a publick instrument of the Priests, Nobles, and the people (after a recapitulation of his merits and services to his Nation, amongst which an Ambassage lately sent to *Rome*, and there well received, was a great inducement) he was made their Prince and High-Priest perpetually, till God should raise up the true Prophet, and all Ornaments and Privileges of Majesty were given to him. This being made in brass, was fastened to the Wall that compassed the sanctuary, in an open place, and a Copy thereof was laid up in the Treasury, that *Simon* and his sons might have it.

The Jews chose Simon for their Prince.

72. But the Cities all over revolting from *Demetrius*, who, we said, was driven to *Seleucia*, that he might shake off suspicion of laziness, he resolved to make War upon the *Parthians*, who had extended his Empire from the River *Indus* as far as *Euphrates*, and done no less things than *Asaces* himself. The *Macedonians* and *Greeks* not well bearing the pride of their new Masters, the *Parthians*, sent to him often, with promise to revolt to him if he would but come up. He being tickled at this Message, made haste thither, not fearing but if he once were Master of these Provinces, with ease to drive *Tryphon* out of *Syria*; and being received with great alacrity, and strengthened with the Auxiliaries of the *Persians*, *Bactrians*, and *Elymeans*, he overthrew the *Parthians* in several battels; but at length being circumvented by the cunning of one of their Princes (sent, under colour of treating of peace, to entrap him) having lost his Army, he fell into their hands, and then being carried for a laughing stock up and down the revolted Countreys, was cast into prison. *Asaces* having so soon recovered all, raged not against the Revolters, but carried it towards his people with humility and respect, and not long after sending *Demetrius* into *Hyrcania*, there maintained him with royal equipage, and not onely so, but gave him his daughter in marriage, with promise also to restore him to his Kingdom. But whilest *Demetrius* lived thus in exile, *Tryphon*'s Soldiers being weary of his conditions revolted to *Cleopatra* his wife, which then lived in *Seleucia* with her Children, and now taking it in great disdain that he had married *Rhodoguna* the *Parthian*'s daughter, sent to his brother *Antiochus* (the second son of *Demetrius Soter*, whose surname he also obtained from the *Jews*) offering him marriage, and the Kingdom. He willingly accepting of the offer, took the name of King upon him, sent into *Judea* to *Simon*, offering him great privileges to joyn with him in Alliance, and returning into *Syria* presently married *Cleopatra*.

His brother Antiochus married for the Kingdom,

And disposed of Tryphon.

73. All the Army except a few revolted to *Antiochus* surnamed *Sidetes*, or *Hunter*, so that *Tryphon* seeing himself thus forsaken fled to *Dora*, a Maritime Town of *Phœnicia*, whither he was straight pursued & blocked up both by Sea and Land; yet got he out on shipboard, and betook himself to *Orthofias*, another Sea-Town of the same Tract, & afterwards to *Apamea* to his own Countrey-men, where some way or other (for 'tis uncertain how) he was slain. Whilest *Antiochus* lay before *Dora*, *Simon* by virtue of their Alliance sent him out of *Judea* a party of 2000 choice men, with silver and gold, and much furniture for the War; yet he would not receive them, but brake the League, and sending *Athenobius* to him, complained of his holding *Joppe*, *Gazara*, and the Castle at *Jerusalem*, his destroying the borders, and having the Government of divers places of his Kingdom, requiring him either to deliver up the Cities with the Tributes of such places as were without the borders of *Judea*,

E e e 2

or

A. M. 3863.  
Ol. 159. ann. 3.  
V. C. 612.  
Seleucid. 171.  
Ptol. Physicon. 9.  
Simonis 2.

1 Maccab. 14.

Iustin lib. 36.  
Joseph. ut supra.  
1 Maccab. 14. c. 15.  
Excerpt. Dipodori Siculi.

Joseph. lib. 13. cap. 12.

1 Maccab. 15.

A. M. 3867.  
Ol. 160. ann. 3.  
V. C. 616.  
Seleucid. 175.  
Ptol. Physicon. 9.  
Simonis 6.

The Son of Balas set up against Demetrius by Diodorus or Tryphon.

Tryphon intending to set up for himself,

Circumvented and killeth Jonathan.

Then killeth Antiochus his new made King. Seeketh friends in vain.



or else to pay 500 Talents for the Cities, and the harm he had done, and for the Tributes of the places other 500, upon pain of being prosecuted with War. To these things *Simon* answered, that he held no Towns belonging to any other, but had recovered his own by right of War; but as for *Joppe* and *Gazara* which had done great harm to his people, he offered to pay him 100 Talents, at which the King was so displeased, that following at that time *Tryphon* to *Orchofias*, he left *Cendebeus* to oversee the Sea-Coasts, with order to build up *Cadron*, whence he might make War upon the *Jews*. He coming to *Iamnia* made inroads upon *Judea*, and built up that Town according to order, which *John* the son of *Simon* then lying at *Gazara* understanding, gave notice thereof to his father, who now being decrepit, committed the War to him and his brother *Judas*. He taking with him 20000 foot, and a party of horse, marched straight down against *Cendebeus*, and then placing his horse in the midst of the foot, that it might protect, and be protected against the Cavalry of the Enemy, which was exceeding strong, he overthrew him, and putting the whole Army to the rout, some betook themselves into the Fort newly built, and others flying away, he pursued them as far as the Towers of *Azotus*, which having set on fire, and slain 2000 men, he retreated safe into *Judea*.

*Cendebeus* sent by *Antiochus* against the *Jews*, is defeated by *John* the son of *Simon*.

*Simon* and his two sons murdered by his son-in-law.

*Antiochus* besiegeth *Jerusalem*.

74. This success of *John* sufficiently moved *Antiochus* to punish *Simon*, but it was done to his hand by one who of all others might least have done it. There was one *Polomy* the son of *Abubus*, son-in-law to *Simon*, and by him set over the Province of *Fericho*. He entertaining his father-in-law as he went his Circuit about the Countrey, to take care for the Government thereof, slew him treacherously after a feast, together with his two sons *Mattathias* and *Judas*, when he had governed the people 8 years. His design was, being rich, to obtain the Principality of that Countrey where he lived, and therefore he presently certified *Antiochus* of his feat, desiring an Army of him, wherewith he might subdue the Cities of *Judea*. He also sent certain cut-throats to murder *John*, *Simon*'s son, wrote to the Colonels of the Army to draw them over to him, and sent others to seize upon *Jerusalem* and the Temple; But *John* having timely notice of his treachery, prevented his death by that of the Messengers, and was made High-Priest in the room of his father: and here the Author of the first books of *Maccabees* concludes his work, having therein delivered the history of 40 years. *Antiochus* taking the opportunity of *Simon*'s death, came into *Judea*, which wasting round about, he drove up *John* (surnamed *Hyrcauus*) into *Jerusalem*, to which he laid close siege, his Army being divided into seven parts. The besieged, being exceedingly helped from the strength of the Walls, stood out manfully, so that he raised an hundred Turrets, from which he endeavoured to scale the Walls, and compassed in the Town with a double Trench, that none might escape, but they still defending themselves, sometimes sallied out, and did him harm. *Hyrcauus* seeing a great and uselesse multitude in the Citie, which consumed the victuals, put out the more infirm out of the Walls, whence being hindered from going any further by the siege, they wandred about the Walls almost famished, till at the feast of *Tabernacles*, out of pity, they were again admitted.

*Josephus Antiq. lib. 13. cap. 16.*

75. At this feast of *Tabernacles*, *Hyrcauus* sent out to *Antiochus* to desire a Truce for seven dayes, because of the celebration thereof. He not onely granted this, but sent in also Bulls with gilded horns, golden, and silver Cups, with all sorts of spices, and beasts for sacrifice, and made a feast to the Army, by which the other taking notice of his great humanity (whence he was surnamed *Pius*, as also, uncertain for what other reason, *Sidetes*) with all, considering that the *Sabbatical* year being now at an end, and the people being hindered from sowing, a famine was likely to insue, he sent out to him, desiring that the *Jews* might be suffered to live according to their own Laws. Many about the King advised him utterly to destroy the Citie, to blot out the very name of the *Jews* from under heaven, at least to dissolve their Laws, and change their course of life, so diverse from, and disagreeable to other

Na-

But departeth upon good terms for the besieged.

Nations; but he being moved by a principle of magnanimity and bounty, rejected this counsel, and approving of the piety of the *Jews*, commanded them to deliver up their Arms, pull down their Walls, pay Tribute for *Joppe* and other Towns without *Judea*, and receive a Garrison, upon which conditions he offered them peace. They yielded to all but the last, because they would not converse with the Gentiles, yet in Lieu of it chose to give Hostages (amongst others *Hyrcauus* his own brother) and pay 500 Talents, whereof 300 at present, whereupon the siege was removed, and they were freed from any further incumbrance. *Hyrcauus* opening the sepulcher of *David*, who had been the richest of Kings, took out thence 3000 Talents, wherewith filling his Coffers, he first lifted strangers in his Militia, and entertained *Antiochus* and his Army in *Jerusalem* very plentifully.

*A. M. 3870. Ol. 161. ann. 2. V. C. 619. Seleucid. 178. Ptol. Physic. 12. Job. Hyrcan. 1.*

76. *Antiochus Sidetes* in the eighth year of his reign, three years after his departure from *Jerusalem*, undertook an expedition against *Phraates* the *Parthian*, to fetch back his brother *Demetrius* still kept there in free custody, who had twice attempted an escape, but being retaken still, was sent back to his wife and children, not so much out of any pity or respect of alliance, as because that King having an itching desire of getting *Syria* also into his power, preserved him to use against his brother, as time and opportunity should serve. *Antiochus* with a great (but extraordinarily effeminate) Army marched into *Media*, where many Eastern Princes met him, with all their hearts giving up themselves and Countreys to him, and cursing of the pride of the *Parthians*, whereby he got such strength, as overthrowing the Enemy in three several battels, he reduced him within the bounds of his own Countrey. But what he thus suddenly got, he almost as quickly lost again; for upon the approach of Winter, quartering his Soldiers abroad in the Countrey, the people were so oppressed, what by the exaction of provisions, and their insolence, that they again revolted to the *Parthian*, and upon agreement, at one and the same time, set upon them as they were severally disposed of in their quarters. *Antiochus* hearing this, with that party which lay with him came in to relieve the next to him, and there met with *Phraates* himself, against whom he fought most courageously, till being forsaken of his men he was slain, or else killed himself. *Phraates* had a little before this, to divert him from *Parthia*, sent back his brother *Demetrius* with a Guard of *Parthians* to seize upon *Syria*; but now repenting him of that, sent some to pursue him, and bring him back; but he fearing such a thing, had by his speed prevented it. *Phraates* finding a daughter of his, which her Uncle *Antiochus* had taken along with him in his expedition, fell so in Love with her, as he married her out of hand.

*Iustin. lib. 38. Appian in Syria. lib. 59.*

*Antiochus Sidetes* is slain by the *Parthians*.

*A. M. 3877. Ol. 163. ann. 1. V. C. 626. Seleucid. 185. Ptol. Physic. 19. Hyrcan. 8.*

77. *Demetrius* then recovered all the Kingdom of *Syria*, though not long likely to hold it, by reason of that malice he contracted both from Soldiers and People. *Hyrcauus* the High Priest and chief Magistrate of the *Jews* taking this occasion, leads down an Army to the Cities of *Syria*, supposing indeed as it was, that he should find them unmanned, took *Medeba* in the sixth moneth, then *Samaga* and *Sicima* the Metropolis of the *Samaritans*, and so to no King after *Antiochus Sidetes* were the *Jews* subject, but shook off the yoke of the *Syrian* Kingdom. The *Parthian* King intended to make war upon him, but was hindered by the *Scythians*, whom having sent for to aid him against *Antiochus*, because they came something too late, he denied them their pay, for which they harassed his borders, and he opposing them with the *Greeks*, whom he had taken before in the War, and cruelly used, was betrayed by them, and so slain with the rest of his Army. *Demetrius* being absent in *Egypt*, the *Antiochians* first, then other Cities revolted, not enduring his pride as they pretended, which he had increased by his durance in *Parthia*, so that he was forced to return; but they sent to *Polomy Physcon*, desiring him to send them some one of the posterity of *Seleucus* to reign over them. He sent them a young man, an *Egyptian*, the son of one *Protarchus* a Merchant. A fable was invented of his being adopted by *Antiochus Balas*, wherupon his name being *Zabinas* (or *Zabinas*) he was fir-

*Iustin. ibid.*

*Josephus Antiq. lib. 13. cap. 17.*

*Iustin. lib. 42.*

*Idem lib. 39. Josephus ut prius.*

Demetrius having recovered the Kingdom, is outed of it by his rebellious Subjects, and Zabinus a counterfeit, and is slain at Tyre.

Demetrius having recovered the Kingdom, is outed of it by his rebellious Subjects, and Zabinus a counterfeit, and is slain at Tyre.

Demetrius, readily received him. Being come into Syria, it happened that the reliques of Antiochus Sidetes were sent at the same time into Syria, which being received very solemnly by all the Cities, he also counterfeited a true mourner, and got himself thereby much favour from his new Subjects, not discovering his tears to be feigned. Not long after he fought with Demetrius near to Damascus, and overthrew him, who then fled to Cleopatra his wife to Ptolomais; but being excluded by her and his sons, with a few servants he went to Tyre, hoping to save himself there by the religion of the Temple, and was slain by the procurement of his wife, or Zabinus, after his return from Parthia, in the 189 year of the Seleucida, A. M. 3881, the first of the 164. Olympiad.

78. Alexander Zabinus then a counterfeit succeeded Demetrius, by the favour of the People, though he left two sons by Cleopatra, Seleucus and Antiochus surnamed Grypus from his hooked nose. The former of these taking a Diadem upon him, at the years end his mother slew him with a dart by her own hands, because he did it without permission, fearing perhaps he might revenge his Fathers death, or being carried out with that height of spirit wherewith the ordered (and ruined) all things. Alexander entered into a League and alliance with Hyrcanus of Judaea. Three of his greatest Captains revolted from him, and seized upon Laodicea, but he reduced and yet pardoned them, being of a mild and pleasing deportment, whereby he got the affections of all men. But him he alienated from him whom it most concerned him still to oblige, viz. Ptolomy, who of late had set him up. He despised Ptolomy now, growing insolent, as being able to stand on his own legs, which the other taking in great disdain, that a creature whom he had raised out of the dust should so require him, laboured faster to pull him down than ever he had done for his advancement. He reconciled himself to his sister Cleopatra, and for that Antiochus whom she had by Demetrius was yet alive (unto whom having bestowed the title of King she ruled all her self) he sent him great aid, and his daughter Tryphana for a wife, which the People seeing, began to revolt apace from Alexander. At length they engaged in a battel, in which Alexander was overthrown, who then fled to Antioch, where wanting money to pay his Soldiers, he took out of the Temple of Jupiter an image of Victory of massie Gold, jessing it out, that Jupiter had lent him Victory. But a little after attempting to remove secretly and take away Jupiter's image it self of an infinite weight, he was discovered, and forced to run away by the multitude, after which being oppressed with a grievous Tempest, and forsaken by his followers, he was taken by thieves, and by them brought to Antiochus Grypus, was killed (though some give other accounts of his death) after he had reigned four years.

79. His mother was sore grieved at his Victory, thinking her dignity was lessend by it, having an ambitious desire of reigning her self, with which she was so far driven, as to offer him a cup of poyson, as he once came in from exercise, which he having knowledge of beforehand, refused as it were in civility, desired her to do it her self, and then urging her to it, at length producing witness of her wicked intent, told her there was no way to clear her self but by drinking that which she had prepared for her son; so that being forced to do it, her wickedness fell upon her own head. Being thus rid of his unnatural mother, he reigned securely eight years, but then Antiochus his half brother, the son of Antiochus Sidetes (begot on his mother, and from Cyzicus the place where we was brought up under Craterus the Eunuch, called Cyzicenus) began to be his emulator for the Kingdom, whom he then going about to poyson, provoked him to a more speedy attempt of what he had but before designed. At this time it hapned that Cleopatra the sister and wife of Ptolomy Lathurus, being divorced from him by the means of that notable woman her mother, came into Syria, and married with this Cyzicenus, and for that she would not seem utterly to come without a dowry, brought over to him the Army of Cyprus, whereby thinking himself sufficient-

Appian ut supra & Josephus.

Excerpt. Dio. vi Siculi.

Justin lib. 42.

Idem ibid. & Appian ut supra.

And expelled out of Syria.

The two brothers reign together.

Great stir amongst their sons.

ly strengthened against his brother, he joyned battel with him, but was forced to retire unto Antioch. Cleopatra continuing here was besieged by Grypus and taken; and then Tryphana his wife and her sister required her to be delivered into her hands, that she might put her to death as her enemy and emulator, and though he refused it utterly, as being against the custom of Warriors to rage against the weaker Sex, especially when allied in blood so near as she was, and protected by the religion of the Temple to which she fled; yet the being more hereat enflamed, as judging his answer to proceed from love rather than pity, sent some Soldiers in, who murdered her embracing the image of the Goddesse. This was not left long unrevenge, for Cyzicenus renewing the War, and giving battel again to his brother, now by the turning of the chance of War overthrew him, and taking Tryphana, with her blood appeased the ghost of his wife, and expelling Grypus out of Syria seized on the Kingdom.

80. Antiochus Grypus fled to Aspendium, whence he got the surname of Aspendius; but the next year returning, ordered the matter so with his brother, that the Kingdom being divided, he made him be contented with Celsa Syria. Both of them after this gave up themselves to nothing but idleness and luxurie, only preying upon each other as their opportunities served them, which difference of theirs mightily conduced to the settlement of the affairs of the Jews. Cyzicenus getting of Ptolomy Lathurus 6000 men, went to relieve Samaria, which Hyrcanus besieged, by waisting his territories, but to no purpose. Afterwards it hapned that Lathurus being expelled Egypt by his mother, and she fearing that by the help of Cyzicenus he might recover his Kingdom, she sent great supplies to Grypus, with Selenus for a wife (whom she had taken from her son before his expulsion) to provoke him thereby against his brother, whence succeeded those civil Wars betwixt them, concerning which we have onely the title left unto us in the Epitome of the 68 Book of Livie, who related the story. Grypus died first, being slain by the treachery of one Haracleon, after he had lived 45 years, and reigned 26, wherof 15 were in conjunction with his brother. He left five sons, wherof Seleucus his eldest and successor made War upon his uncle Cyzicenus for the Kingdom, and overthrew him in battel, after which the Horse of Cyzicenus ran away with him into his Camp, wherein, when he was about to be taken, he killed himself, after he had reigned eighteen years. Seleucus after this, obtained Antioch, and the Kingdom, but against him arose Antiochus surnamed Eusebes, or Pius, the son of Cyzicenus, who having avoided his snares by the help of a certain Courtizan that extremely loved him, went to Aradus, where taking a Diadem, he gathered forces, and in one battel clearly overthrew him. Seleucus then fled into Cilicia, where being received by the Mopsuestians (as they are called) when he began to exact money of them, had fire set to the house wherein he lay, and was burned quick with those about him.

81. Two twin brothers of Seleucus, Antiochus and Philip, carried down forces to Mopsuestia, which having taken, in revenge for their brothers death, levelled it with the ground; but Antiochus Pius coming presently upon them overthrew them in fight. Antiochus taking the River Orontes in his flight was drowned. Philip escaping carried the title of King, and gathering again considerable forces, strugled hard with Antiochus for the whole Realm, till such time as Ptolomy Lathurus calling from Cnidus his fourth brother Demetrius, made himself King at Damascus, so that they joyning their forces together, they both opposed Antiochus, who though he manfully resisted, yet was put to the worst, and glad at last to flee into Parthia; whence yet returning after two years he re-obtained Syria. Philip being thus deprived of that Kingdom, fell into contest with his other two brothers, Demetrius Eucerus and Antiochus surnamed Dionysus for the Kingdom of Damascus, and being driven into Beraa, was there besieged by Demetrius. Straton the Governour of Beraa being Philip's friend calls in Zius the Arabian Captain, and Mithridates Sinax, who coming with a great power overthrew Demetrius,

Excerpt. Diodori Siculi. Josephus lib. 13. cap. 17. & 18.

Justin ut prius.

Joseph. ut supra cap. 21.

Porphy. apud Eusebium.

Idem ibid.

Josephus ibid.

Appian in Syriacis.

Joseph. Antiq. lib. 13. cap. 22. & 23.

Antiochus Grypus son to Demetrius deceiveth and killeth Alexander Balas the usurping counterfeit.

Is emulated by Antiochus Cyzicenus his half brother and cousin german.

*Demetrius*, raised his siege, and taking him prisoner sent him into *Parthia*, where he was honourably treated till his death, and *Philip* marching to *Antioch* again, as it's said, obtained the Kingdom of *Syria*, or (as is most probable) part of it. *Antiochus Dionysus* the younger brother getting *Damascus* into his hands, made War against the *Arabians*, and was slain in a battle with their King *Aretas*, who then was chosen King by the inhabitants of *Damascus*, and thereby obtained the Kingdom of *Celestria*. The histories which only give us hints of these things are so confounded; as no certain thing concerning the ends of *Antiochus Pius* or *Philip* can be assigned; yet this we find, that the *Syrians* taking occasion at these dissensions and Wars of the *Seleucide* amongst themselves, began to think of foreign aides; and cast their minds upon foreign Kings. At length they all agreed to make choice of *Tigranes* King of *Armenia*, who being called in, held *Syria* for the space of 18 years, and by his dealing with them, made them know they had no reason to rebel against their natural and rightful Princes.

Justin lib. 40.

Tigranes getteth Syria.

82. *Antiochus Pius* being outed thus by *Tigranes* of all *Syria*, from *Euphrates* to the Sea, and also of part of *Cilicia*, lay hid in another corner of it, which neither the *Armenian* nor *Roman* as yet touched; and his wife *Selene* with her two sons reigned (as it's termed) in *Phœnicia*, with some part of the lower *Syria*, till being besieged in *Selucia* a City of *Mesopotamia*, or *Ptolomais*, she was therein taken by *Tigranes* and killed; for that she endeavoured to recover *Syria*, as justly she might, out of his hands. For fourteen years *Tigranes* governed the Country by one *Magadates*, till such time as siding with his Father in Law *Mithridates* the Great of *Pontus*, against the *Romans*, and overthrown by them, he was forced to recall him with his Army. *Antiochus* the son of *Antiochus Pius*, surnamed *Asiaticus*, taking this opportunity, insinuated himself into the Principality, the *Syrians* being not unwilling, out of respect to the dignity of his family; and *Lucullus* the *Roman* General (whose work it was to drive *Tigranes* out of his new acquired possessions) envying him not the inheritance of his Ancestors. Four years he kept it, till such time as *Pompey* the Great having finished the War against *Tigranes*, reduced it into the form of a *Roman* Province, though he challenged it as his inheritance; But it being easie to deal with him as he listed, who was utterly unarmed, he put it off, by affirming it to be unreasonable, that after the *Romans* had been at all the cost and pains to conquer *Tigranes*, the reward should fall unto another, and with saying that he would not leave it to him, left he being unable to protect it, it should be rendered obnoxious to the depredations of the *Jews* and *Arabians*. Thus *Antiochus* having never ill deserved of the *Romans*, was commanded to content himself within *Comagena*, whence his posterity never stirred, and the Kingdom of *Syria* fell. A. M. 3942, the second of the 179 Olympiad, sixty one years before the Era of Christ, in the 250 of the *Seleucide*, the 270 after the battle at *Issus*, after which it fell under the power of *Alexander* the Great, *M. Tullius Cicero*, and *C. Antonius Nepos* being Consuls.

Appian in Syria &amp; Mithridaticis. Justin lib. 40. Joseph. lib. 13. cap. ult.

Appian in Syria.

Appian in Mithridaticis &amp; Justin ibid.

A. M. 3942. Ol. 179. an. 2. V. C. 691. Seleucid. 250.

Is untimely spoiled of it by Pompey.

## CHAP.

## CHAP. VI.

## The Egyptian Kingdom.

From the death of Ptolomy the son of Lagus, to the death of Cleopatra, and the reducing of Egypt into the form of a Roman Province, containing the space of 254 years.

Ptolomy Philadelphus.

**P**tolomy the son of *Lagus* had several sons by *Eurydice* his wife, the daughter of *Antipater*, and by *Berenice*, which woman was sent down by *Antipater*, only to accompany her, with whom yet he fell so in Love, as marrying her, he passionately affected her always, and a year or two before his death made one of her sons, called afterwards *Ptolomy Philadelphus*, his Copartner in the Kingdom, and more than that, served him sometimes as one of his attendants, saying it was more excellent than a Kingdom to be the son of a King. His eldest son by *Eurydice* seeing this, thought it was no staying for him in *Egypt*, but fled to *Selencus*, by whom being honourably entertained, with some hopes of being settled in *Egypt* after his fathers death, he so badly requited him, as he treacherously slew him, as we before shewed, *Philadelphus*, after his fathers death made away two of his brothers, the one as conspiring against his life, and the other as suspected to raise a Rebellion in *Cyprus*. In power and riches he surpassed his father. Being learned himself above the common rate of Princes, he sought to promote knowledge, by rewarding the most eminent and industrious (of which flourished many in his time) and founding that his famous Library at *Alexandria*, consisting of 200000 Volumes. *Demetrius Phalereus* that noble Philosopher, and sometime Prince of *Athens*, being he that was employed in the Collection, persuaded him to send to *Elenazar* the High-Priest of the (a) *Jews* to desire their Law, and that he might be the easilier induced to send it, by the Counsel of *Aristeus* (who wrote the story) he purchased the liberty of all such *Jews* as were slaves in *Egypt*, to the number of about 100000. which cost him more then 460 Talents. He sent also extraordinary rich gifts to the Temple; and the High-Priest chusing out 72 men most eminent for birth, learning, and experience, dispatched them into *Egypt* with the Law to be translated by them into *Greek*. Being nobly entertained, and feasted by him for several dayes, they were set to their work in the Island *Pharos* right over against *Alexandria*, which in 72 dayes with admirable agreement they are said to have finished, after which the King having exceedingly admired the wisdom of the Law-giver, and commanded the book carefully to be kept, dismissed them with great Rewards to themselves, and Presents to him that sent them.

Pausan. in Atticis. Justin lib. 16.

(a) Vide circa res Judæarum Josephum contra Apionem lib. 2. Tertull. in Apolog. Josephus Antiq. lib. 12. cap. 2. &amp; Aristæus de 70 Inter.

The Translation of the Septuagint.

2. He got the surname of *Philadelphus*, not for any love shewed to his brothers (two of whom he put to death) but to his sister *Artsinoe*, whom after an incestuous (though *Egyptian*) fashion he married, having Children before by another *Artsinoe* daughter to *Lyfimachus*; by his sister he never had any, she dying before she was delivered. *Demetrius Phalereus* laboured to disswade his father from leaving him his successor, and counselled him to bestow the Kingdom on some of *Eurydice's* sons, for which he was now cast out of favour, and died by the biting of an Asp, which he put to his hand. He had a brother by his mothers side named *Magas*, whose father was one *Philip* a *Macedonian*, but of base Original. Him his mother had procured to be made Governour of *Cyrene*, the Inhabitants of which he now raised, and caused them to revolt from him, and marched with an Army towards *Egypt*; and *Ptolomy* securing all the passages, went out to encounter him. But news coming in the way that the *Marmaride*, a people of the

Pausan. in Atticis.

Lactius in vita Demetrii. Pausan. ibid.

F F F F

Lybian

Magas his brother obtaineth Cyrene.

Lybian Nomades had rebelled, *Magas* retreated in all haste back to *Cyrene*, and *Ptolomy* then intending to follow him, was hindered by the *Galls* in his Army, whom he having hired amongst others, he found to have plotted to seize upon *Egypt*; but he brought them all to the number of 4000 through the Nile to a desert Island, where with famine, and other wayes, they were made away. *Magas* after this having married *Apames* the daughter of *Antiochus Soter*, perswaded him to break the League betwixt him and his brother, and invade *Egypt*, which he prepared to do; but *Ptolomy* sent several parties abroad into *Syria*, and found him so much work at home, that he could have no time to look abroad, and *Magas* before his death having a desire to be friends with his brother, betrothed his daughter to his son. Betwixt this *Ptolomy*, and the next *Antiochus* surnamed *Theos* were continual Wars, till both being weary thereof entered into an Alliance, *Ptolomy* giving him in marriage his daughter *Berenice*, which proved but an occasion of greater trouble, and the destruction of the Bride, though he lived not to see it. For he, notwithstanding all his learning, gave himself up to luxury, and fondly dreaming he should live alwayes, and that by him alone was found out immortality, presently died, after he had reigned 38 years alone, and one (with some odd moneths) together with his father, A. M. 3758. and the 2d of the 133th Olympiad. *Justin lib. 26.*

3. *Ptolomy* his son by *Arfinoe*, the daughter of *Lysimachus*, succeeded him in the 16th year of *Antiochus Theos*, and was surnamed *Euergetes*. As soon as he came to the Kingdom, he had work enough made him in *Syria*; for there *Antiochus*, who had put away his former wife (upon the marriage of *Berenice* his sister) now overcome with Love, took her, and her Children, again into his Court, whereupon she fearing yet his fickleness, and another disgrace, to prevent it, procured him to be poisoned, and conveyed his Kingdom to *Seleucus Cabiricus* her eldest son. *Berenice* she committed to two of the Chief of *Antioch* to be made away, but the Lady, when she heard that some were sent to kill her, shut up her self in *Daphna*, where being besieged, the Cities of *Asia*, moved with the remembrance of the Dignity of her family, sent her aid, and *Ptolomy* her brother marched in all haste possible to deliver her, but ere she could be relieved she was circumvented by those that with an Oath promised her security, and slain together with her young son. Out of disdain at this unworthy act the Cities revolted to *Ptolomy*, who entering *Syria* killed *Laodice*, passed to *Babylon*, and got almost all *Asia* into his hands, at which time he visited *Jerusalem* also, where he offered many sacrifices of praise to God, and dedicated gifts suitable to so great a victory. The Kingdom of *Syria* had become a Province to that of *Egypt*, in all probability at this time, had he not been recalled by domestick troubles, which being very urgent, he left *Cilicia* to the Governance of *Antiochus* his great favourite, to *Xanthippus* another of his Captains the Provinces beyond *Euphrates*, and so plundering *Seleucus* his Kingdom of 40000 Talents of silver, he carried down also many costly Vessels and Images of Idols to the number of 2500. amongst which were those which *Cambyzes* had after his overthrow of *Amasis*, and *Psammiticus*, conveyed out of *Egypt*: And therefore the *Egyptians*, because after so many years he had restored to them their gods, honoured him with the surname of *Euergetes*. *Justin lib. 27.*

4. *Seleucus* provided a Fleet for the recovery of the places revolted, but before he could come to use it, lost it all by a Tempest, which yet proved the greatest gain; for the Cities out of commiseration of his estate, and as if he had already sufficiently smarted for his parricide, returned again to their obedience. Being exceedingly encouraged, and animated herewith (as richer by his losse) he then made War upon *Ptolomy*; but as if he had been born for a laughing stock to fortune, and not recovered the Kingdom for himself, he was overthrown again in battel, and as destitute of followers, as after the shipwrack, fled to *Antioch*, when applying a remedy worse than the disease, he sent to his brother *Antiochus* (from his ravenous disposition surnamed *Hierax*) for aid; and so *Ptolomy* fearing himself not to be able to grapple

*Athenaeus lib. 12. cap. 17.*

*Justin lib. 27.*

*Appian in Syria.*

*Hieronym. in Daniel.*

*Josephus contra Apion. lib. 2.*

*Ptolomy Euergetes his Wars with Antiochus Theos.*

His wife *Berenice's* hair given name to a Constellation.

grapple with both, made a Truce with him for ten years. Whilest he was abroad in *Asia*, his wife *Berenice*, daughter to his Uncle *Magas*, and betrothed to him, as we said before, vowed to consecrate her hair to the gods, in case he returned safe, and accordingly cutting it off, laid it up in a certain Chapel, whereupon *Conon* the Mathematician, who flourished at this time, out of flattery to them both, feigned it to be taken up into heaven, and invented that constellation which yet is known by the name of it. In his time a *Phoenix* is reported the third time after the dayes of *Sesostris*, and the next after them of *Amasis* to have flown (being a bird sacred to the Sun) accompanied with a great number of other birds, admiring her new face, to the City *Heliopolis*, as *Tacitus* tells us, who reports that the same thing hapned afterwards in the reign of *Tiberius*; *Paulus Fabius*, and *L. Vitellius* being Consuls. To this *Ptolomy* fled *Cleomenes* the King of *Sparta* after his overthrow received from *Antigonus Doson* of *Macedonia*, and the *Achaens*, who honorably receiving him, and prizing him very much for his worth, was much ashamed that he had suffered such a man to be defeated, and promised to re-establish him; but he died before he could bring it about, after he had reigned 24 years, in the 139th Olympiad, within which *Polybius* observes both *Antigonus Doson*, and *Seleucus Cerannus*, King of *Macedonia*, to have left the World, and their Kingdoms to their Successors. *Annal. lib. 6.*

*Ptolomy Philopator.*

5. His son succeeded him, being surnamed *Philopater*, ironically, if we believe *Justin*, who out of *Trogus* accuseth him of making away both father and mother. Certainly if we look at his general carriage and disposition, he was likely enough to do it, giving up himself to all luxury and effeminate-ness, thereby neglecting his affairs, whence he obtained the name of *Tryphon*. Finding his brother *Magas* by his mothers means to be very great with the Army, he made them both away by the means of *Sofibius*, who was his greatest Counsellour, and manager of his publick businesse. His laziness, and neglect, encouraged *Antiochus* the Great to make War upon him for *Caelesyria*, in which, though he got the better, yet can it not be ascribed to any thing of his, he thinking of nothing lesse than preparation for resistance, and whereas he had opportunity enough after the battel to have oust his Enemy of *Syria*, yet being overjoyed that he had recovered *Caelesyria* onely, he sent *Sofibius* to confirm the peace. In his return out of *Syria* he went to *Jerusalem*, and would needs see the inward holy places of the Temple, but was smitten so with a blind horror, that he fell, and could scarcely be recovered to himself, but departing home raged against the *Jews* at *Alexandria*. Then with great earnestness returning to his a little intermitted jollities he doted so upon *Agathoclea* his Concubine, that he killed his sister and wife *Eurydice*, and forgetting all credit and Majesty, spent the nights in filthiness, and the dayes in feasting. These things at first privately acted within the Court Walls, presently shamed nor at the publick view; the impudence of the Strumpet containing it self in no bounds, being increased by the favour of her brother *Agathocles*, one of as filthy a life as her self, and the Conjunction of her mother *Euanthe*, who spent high, and presumed much on the score of her Children's great grace with the King. Henceforth these women not contenting themselves with the King, possessed the Kingdom also, and shamed not to appear in publick in great equipage to be revered. As for *Agathocles*, he reigned, and not *Ptolomy*, by the direction and advice of his two Assistants, Mother and Sister, disposing of Offices and Commands in the Army at his pleasure. *Lib. 29. & 30.*

6. Yet, had *Ptolomy* the strange fortune to overcome all difficulties he met with. *Cleomenes* the *Spartan* entertained, as we said, lovingly by his father, with promise to endeavour his restitution, now finding things to make for it at home, by the death of *Antigonus*, and the Conjunction of the *Etolians* with them of *Sparta* against the *Achaens*, earnestly desired to be dispatched away; but he minding nothing but his pleasures, and buried in fortifinesse, regarded him not at all. *Sofibius* indeed considered of the thing, *Polybius lib. 5.*

*Polybius lib. 5. & Plutarch. in Cleomen.*

Stirs about  
Cleomenes King  
of Sparta.

thing, & called his friends to advise about it; but upon mature deliberation concluded it not wisdom to dismiss him provided of men and arms, lest finding all clear abroad, his Enemies being now dead, or quiet, he, who knew sufficiently the state and condition of *Egypt* under such a Prince, might attempt something rather beneficial for himself, than safe for it. Hereupon it resolved he shall be retained still, and after some time an occasion was found to confine him. For one *Nicagoras* a *Messenian*, who ought him an injury, coming to Town, he not at all considering to whom he spake, jeered the King to him for his filthy manner of life; which he being glad of, as having an opportunity against him, acquainted *Sofibius* with his words, and they two plot together that *Nicagoras* at his departure should leave a Letter directed to the other, wherein he should accuse *Cleomenes* of an intention to make stirs in *Egypt*, except he were sent away according to the promise of *Euergetes*. This being laid to his charge by *Sofibius*, and soundly aggravated to the King, he was secured in free custody, having a large house, but kept with a Guard, assigned to him; whereupon growing desperate, one day when *Ptolemy* was gone out of Town, he made his Keepers drunk, and with his followers brake out into the streets, and called the people to liberty. But none stirring, being all astonished at the greatness of the Enterprize, they made for the Castle, which finding to be strongly defended, he and all with him, after a *Laconian* fashion, as *Polybius* termeth it, killed themselves. This was the end of this famous man, who being indued with a singular dexterity and promptness of wit, had a genius suitable to great and weighty matters, and was fitted by gifts of nature as well as experiences, for the Offices either of a great Commander, or a Prince.

7. Though *Cleomenes* his sodain and unexpected attempt made no such impression upon the City, as that any insurrections ensued thereupon; (and indeed the luxurie of the Court had infected it and the whole Land with the same distemper) yet the minds of the People being something scowred by the Wars with *Antiochus* from this rust, and elevated upon their success against him, after the battel at *Raphia*, and the recovery of *Calesyria*, they began to slight their lawful King, and then arose to such an height, as they clearly revolted, intending to set up against him a Captain of their own making, which shortly after they did, and waged War with him; though in what manner, or with what end, we know not, further than thus, that, as it seemeth, he had the better of it, for he retained his dignity and power. About this time 60000 *Jews* are said to have been slain in *Egypt*, who seeing they amounted to such a number, we may have ground enough to think that they took part with the People, and that his cruelty towards them ensued as a revenge hereupon, though others there be that judge the contrary, and deliver it as a thing not to be doubted of. This is certain, that about this time he grievously persecuted those of that Nation which lived at *Alexandria*, abusing them first with libels, and seeking to withdraw them from their Religion. Those that refused to turn, were either put to death, or being deprived of all dignity and liberty, were branded with the image of an Ivy leaf as the badge of *Bacchus*; and because they were suspected to withdraw others from their obedience to the King, all the *Jews* throughout the Land were in forty dayes space gathered together, to be destroyed by 500 Elephants, to which was given wine mingled with much frankincense to inrage them. But in the morning when *Ptolemy* should have come out to the fight, a sluggish fit is said to have detained him until dinner, and on the next day such a forgetfulness to have seized on him, as he thought them mad which mentioned the thing to him; and then on the third, when the beasts were ready to be let loose, two terrible Angels appeared, which struck King and People with extraordinary horror, and drove the Elephants upon those who came to be spectators of the cruelty. Hereupon ensued such a change of the Kings mind, as he dismissed the *Jews*, after he had feasted them seven dayes, and giving them leave to kill the Apostates, acknowledged God to be their protector. At length he died (leaving a child of five years old, and begotten of his sister, behind him)

The Jews persecuted.

Ptolemy dieth.

*Polyb. ut prius.*

*Eusebius in  
Chronico.  
3. Maccab.  
Jussenius Annal.  
Ver. Test. pag.  
510.*

*A. M. 3789.  
Ol. 141. an. 1.  
V. C. 538.  
Ant. Mag. 8.  
Ptol. Philop. 7.*

him) after he had reigned about eighteen years, A. M. 3801, in the first of the 144 *Olympiad*.

8. His son a child of five years succeeded him, being declared King by him before his death, in the 20 year of *Antiochus* the Great, King of *Syria*, and was surnamed afterwards *Epiphanes*. The death of *Philopator* was for a long time kept close, by *Agathocles* and his party, till his mother and sister had rised the Court, and he had found out such a way as he thought most effectual for the establishment of himself in that power he already enjoyed.

Then brought he out the King to the *Macedonians*, and with great expressions of sorrow for the death of his Father, tells them the child was by him delivered into the arms of *Agathocles* his sister, inveighs bitterly against one *Tlepolemus* (who being a true Patriot was an eye-sore to him) as if he intended to seize upon the Kingdom, labouring to impose upon the belief of the Soldiers, and secure himself by their strength; but no man gave any credit to whatever he said, so intirely was he hated by all. The remembrance of the former outrages committed by him and his, being more freshly renewed by some other attempts of cruelty whilst things still hung in this condition, so enraged the multitude, that from all the quarters of the City flocking to the Court, they would not be satisfied, till having the young King first delivered to them, they broke open the doors, and getting him, his sister, mother, and other of his creatures into their hands, they put them to death, mangling their bodies afterwards; it being natural to that People to be cruel if once in choler. After this, such as had an hand in the murder of *Enridice* the Queen were knocked in the head by her women. The infamy of the Nation being thus in some measure expiated by the slaughter of these miscreants, *Aristomenes* an *Acaranian* was made Protector of the King, his Realms and Dominions, who though for his own interest he beforetime temporized with *Agathocles*, yet now managed the affaires of his Prince with much honesty and wisdom. And indeed such there was need he should be at this time, when the King, being obnoxious by reason of his years to injury and wrong, was struck at by two the greatest Princes then living, viz. *Antiochus* King of *Syria*, and *Philip* King of *Macedonia*, who pretending fair things to his Father, and nothing towards him but kindnesse, now sought to devour him, and make a prey of his Kingdom; *Philip* by laying hold upon *Egypt* and *Caria*; and *Antiochus* on *Calesyria* and *Phoenicia*. The onely remedy was to send to *Rome* to complain, and desire aid; and an Ambassage was quickly dispatched away for that purpose.

*Antiochus and  
Philip gave af-  
ter Egypt.*

*Antiochus his  
Conquests.*

9. The Ambassage was no whit displeasing to the *Romans*, who sought an occasion against *Philip*, for his entering into alliance with *Hannibal*, and were seldom backward to meddle in the affaires of other Nations, especially now fearing none of them after the overthrow of the *Carthaginians*. Ambassadors were sent then to the Kings, to require them to abstain from *Egypt*, and *M. Lepidus* thither to be Governor and Protector of the young King, whose Father, at his death, left him to the tuition of the People of *Rome*; over and above that it was now desired of his friends. But ere the Ambassadors could reach to him, *Antiochus* had got *Phoenicia*, and other Cities belonging to *Ptolemy* into his power, and then despising their errand, went on in his conquests. *Scopas* the *Etolian* a year or two after sent into *Calesyria* with a great Army, reduced many Cities thereof, with *Judea*, to *Ptolomee's* obedience, but again quickly lost all, being overthrown by *Antiochus* at the head of the River *Jordan* near to *Panea*, whence he fled to *Tyre*, where the King besieged him with 10000 men; and though *Eropus* and *Menocles*, two famous Captains were sent out of *Egypt* to relieve him, yet was he forced for want of provision to yield the Town, and march thence without his Arms. *Antiochus* then in pursuit of this Victory, besides what he did in *Calesyria*, withdrew divers places in *Cilicia* and *Caria* from *Ptolemy*, concerning whom also a rumour being spread that he was dead, he made haste to seize upon *Cyprus*. What Cities he had got in *Asia*, the *Romans* divers times by Ambassadors demanded to be put into their hands, which being refused by him, this,

*Justin lib. 30  
Polyb. lib. 15*

*A. M. 3801.  
Ol. 144. an. 1.  
V. C. 550.  
Ant. Mag. 20.*

*Idem lib. 3.*

*Justin lib. 30,  
& 31.*

*Josephus Antiq.  
lib. 12. c. 3.  
& Hieronymus  
in Daniel.*

*Appian in Sy-  
riac.*



He marrieth  
his daughter  
to Ptolomy.

with his ambition, and other things, ministred occasion of a Warre betwixt them (as is shewed before) and that turned to the commodity of Ptolomy. For he being unwilling to have any Enemies at his back, fought to enter into affinity with several Kings; and amongst the rest gave to him in marriage his daughter Cleopatra, and with her in dowry all *Calefryia* and *Judaea*; having this also in his eye, by means of her to get some footing in *Egypt*, though he was mistaken. For Ptolomy his Officers understanding his cunning well enough, behaved themselves more warily; and Cleopatra together with the man married his interest, and acted accordingly.

Scopas the  
Aetolian plot-  
eth against  
the King and  
receiveth his  
reward.

10. Scopas the *Aetolian*, Ptolomy his General in *Calefryia*, returning to *Alexandria* after this overthrow, fell into discontent, and thence to plot against the King and State. Yet though he had many Soldiers at his command, had he no heart to stir, and though having a sufficient opportunity in the minority of the King, he still delayed to execute his designs, till he was prevented. For Aristomenes having discovered what he was about, just when he was plotting with his associates, sent for him to the Council, whither being constrained to come, he was accused by the King first now sitting in Council, then by Ptolemy the Governour of *Cyprus*, and lastly by Aristomenes, who laboured to prove him guilty of what was alleged, for that he was found in consultation with his friends, and refused to come unto the King when sent for; and he confirmed the charge from the testimony of divers eminent *Gracians*, and the Ambassadors of the *Aetolians*, who were then sent about a Peace. His answers were no whit satisfactory; so that being condemned not only by all the Council, but such foreign ministers as were present, and being secured that night, was together with his complices the next day taken away by poison, being a man so extraordinarily covetous above all others, that having broke down the walls (as Polybius terms it) of the Kingdom, he had exhausted it with rapines. With him fell Dicaearchus one of his companions, who being tortured to death, thereby (as the Historian tells us) made satisfaction to all *Greece*, against which he was made Admiral of the Fleet by Philip of *Macedonia*, when he wickedly set upon the Islands *Cyclades*, and also to the gods, into whom as well as men he thought to strike a terror, for casting anchor in the Haven, he there erected two altars, one to *Impiety*, and another to *Iniquity*, on which he sacrificed to them as gods. This conspiracy being thus suppressed, such *Aetolians* as would, had leave to depart with all they had, and then the Country betook themselves to prepare for the solemnity, constantly observed when any one was saluted King, termed *Anacleteria*; for though he was as yet something too young, yet they thought that when it was known he was his own Master, and at his own disposal, his Kingdom would be more quiet, and his affairs be more promoted.

Ptolomy con-  
tracteth ami-  
ty with the  
Achaens.

11. He carried himself exceedingly well for some time, and with great commendation, but afterwards was undone by flatterers, and so far corrupted, as he poisoned Aristomenes, whom he had before constantly observed as a Father, and who had deserved well of him and the Commonwealth. After this he degenerated more and more, whence he contracted such hatred of his Subjects, as he well nigh had lost his Kingdom thereby. Towards his later end, having some high designs in his head, he sent Demetrius an Ambassador to the *Achaens*, to renew friendship and alliance with them, who gladly accepting of his offer, sent back to him Lycortas Father to Polybius the Historian, Theodoridas and Rhosieles to confirm it by oath on their part, and to receive the like assurance from him, which they obtained with a great present of money and arms. Some six years after he sent other Ambassadors to them, now having well nigh fallen out with the *Romans*, offering them ten ships of fifty oars, sufficiently manned and furnished for War, which as of concernment, amounting almost to ten Talents, they accepted of most gladly, and dispatched back to him Lycortas again with Polybius his son (though he was too young by the Laws for such an employment) with Aratus the son of famous Aratus the *Sicyonian*, to give him thanks for the former present.

Polyb. lib. 17.

A. M. 3809.  
Ol. 146. ann. 1.  
V. C. 558.  
Ant. Mag. 28.  
Ptolom. Epi-  
phan. 8.

Excerpt. Diodo-  
ri Siculi.

Polybius Legat.  
37. 40. & 17.

Is poisoned.

Ptolomy Philo-  
metor.

Prepareth for  
Salefrya.

But his uncle  
Antiochus Epi-  
phanes preven-  
teth him by  
getting all  
Egypt into his  
hands.

and fetch the ships into *Peloponnesus*; but he was dead ere they could get out of their own Country. For plotting now against Seleucus Philopator, who had succeeded Antiochus his Father in the Kingdom of *Syria*, and preparing an Army against him; when one of his Captains asked him where he would get money sufficient for such an enterprise, he answered, that his friends were richer to him, which being told abroad amongst the People, his Officers fearing he would fleece them to supply himself, took him away by poison, after he had lived 27 years, and reigned 24 thereof. A. M. 3825, and the first of the 130 Olympiads.

Hieronym. in  
Daniel.

A. M. 3825.

Idem. ibid.

Polyb. Legat.  
81, 82.

12. He left two sons and one daughter, all very young, of which the eldest son succeeded him, being surnamed Philometor, in the eighth year of Seleucus Philopator King of *Syria*. After his Anacleteria, his mother Cleopatra the daughter of Antiochus the Great being lately dead, through the perswasion of Eulains the Eunuch, and Lenax his principal Counsellours, he began to cast his thoughts upon *Calefryia*, which being given to his mother as a portion, was unjustly kept from him as he conceived, by his uncle Antiochus Epiphanes, who now had succeeded his elder brother in the Kingdom of *Syria*. Antiochus hearing of their preparations for the War at *Alexandria*, came down into *Egypt* to prevent them, and overthrew the King several times as hath been said, and got the whole Country, except that City, into his power; after which Ptolomy deliberating with Commarus and Cineas what was to be done, it was resolved, that a Council of the most expert Captains should be erected, by the advice whereof all things should be managed. The first resolve of this Council was, that such *Gracian* Ambassadors as were present, should be sent to Antiochus about an agreement, with whom Ptolomy joyned of his own two others. The first day after their arrival, they were entertained very nobly, and on the next had audience, wherein they laid all the blame upon Eulains the Eunuch, and urging the youth and kindred of the King to him, laboured to pacifie him. He after he had assented to them in these things, and spoken more to the same purpose, laboured with much earnestness to demonstrate, that *Calefryia* belonged to the Crown of *Syria*, alleging it to have belonged to Antigonus the first founder of that Kingdom, and produced the conveyances of it to Seleucus after the death of the other, from the *Macedonian* Kings. Moreover calling to their remembrance, that Antiochus his Father had lately obtained it again by right of conquest, he flatly denied that ever he passed it over as a portion with his daughter, to the late King of *Egypt*, and so having discoursed on this subject to the satisfaction of all his hearers, he then departed to *Naucratis*, where friendly treating the Inhabitants, and giving a largesse to such *Greeks* as dwelt there, he thence departed for *Alexandria*, deferring to give any answer to those that had been sent to him, till such time as Aristides and Theris were returned, saying, he would have all the publick ministers of *Greece* to be conscious to, and witnesses of, all his intentions.

Ptolomy Philo-  
metor ma de  
King.

13. But no satisfactory answer (if any) was given, or any thing done for Philometor by Antiochus, so that being thus outed of his Kingdom after 12 years reign, and giving up himself for all that to nothing but sluggishness and luxurie, the *Alexandrians* took upon them to make his younger brother King, surnaming him Emergetes; (though the badness of his manners made them afterwards change it into Cacergetes) being also called Physcon from his extraordinary fat punch. Philometor was forced at length to betake himself to the *Alexandrians* too, who receiving him, made him partaker with his brother in the Kingdom, but shortly after again expelled him; which thing Antiochus made use of, and under pretence of restoring him continued the War, and overthrowing young Ptolomy in a Sea-fight, besieged *Alexandria*; but seeing that to be to no purpose, arose and departed into *Syria*, leaving Philometor at *Memphis*, to whom he restored all *Egypt*, except *Pelufium*, which he kept as the key of the Country in his own hands, not doubting but when one of the brothers had ruined the other, to come, and with ease enough devour the Conquerour. But though his two Nephews were other-

Porphyr. in  
Grach Euseb.

Athenens lib. 12.  
cap. 17.

Polyb. Legat.  
83, & 84.

Livius l. 45.

wife

The two brothers agree, and are saved harmless from their Uncle by the Romans.

wife foolish enough, yet in this they shewed prudence, to disappoint him, for the elder seriously considering how little he ought to trust him, sent to *Cleopatra* his sister, who seconded him to her brother, both by advice and entreaty, procured a peace to be made with consent of both their friends, the Citizens of *Alexandria* giving way the more readily, because of the dearth which troubled them, by reason of the War as well when they were as liberty as besieged. This drew off the Vizard from *Antiochus*, who, whereas he ought to have rejoiced, if he really intended the restitution of *Philometor*, fretted exceedingly hereat, and nothing would serve him, but needs he must come down again into *Egypt*; and had laid siege to *Alexandria* the second time, had not the Roman Ambassadors terrified him from his purpose (as we shewed in its more proper place) and forced him to quit both *Egypt* and *Cyprus*.

14. The Roman Ambassadors took some pains by their Authority to make them two friends, not being thoroughly reconciled before, and so they continued for six years peaceably together. But then differences betwixt them arose so high, that the Senate at *Rome* wrote to their Ambassadors, sent into *Syria* after the death of *Antiochus Epiphanes*, by all means to reconcile them, of which mediation we yet hear of no fruit at all, for presently the younger expelled his elder brother. *Philometor* being thus spoiled of his Kingdom, with a very few attendants, and in a pitifull habit, came to *Rome* for help, making his Inn the house of an *Alexandrian* Painter; which when the Senate understood, they sent for him, and made as formal an excuse as possible, that they had neither sent a *Quaestor* to meet him (after the fashion of the receiving persons of his quality) nor entertained him at the publick charge, which hapned not by any neglect on their part, but by reason of his sudden and secret arrival. Then was he conducted from the Court to the publick House of entertainment, and desired, that laying off his unseemly habit, he would move for audience, and a *Quaestor* was appointed to make him presents every day. At length, according to his desire, *Canuccius* and *Quintus* were sent back with him to *Alexandria*, who restored him to the Kingdom, and made the two brothers assent to a division of it, whereby *Philometor* was to hold *Egypt* and *Cyprus*, and *Euergetes* possesse *Cyrene*, the Covenant being most solemnly confirmed. But *Euergetes* not being at all satisfied in his part, hastened to *Rome* to reverse the agreement, alleging that he gave not his consent freely at all, but out of necessity of yielding to the times; wherefore he desired of the Senate that *Cyprus* might be also adjudged to him, with the addition of which his part would yet be far inferior to his brothers. *Menethyllus* being sent after him by *Philometor*, replied, that he ought not onely *Cyrene*, but his life also to his brother, so great hatred had he contracted from their subjects, that with the wonder of all, and beyond his hopes was that Kingdom bestowed on him, and urged the agreement most religiously made and confirmed, with faith given on both sides. But *Ptolomy* denying stiffly all this, the Senate, for that it seemed to them that the parting of the Kingdom was not yet fully concluded, and especially thinking it to be for their interest that the division should be equal, assented to his request, and ordered *T. Torquatus*, and *Cn. Merula* to go with him, and put *Cyprus* into his hands. For the Romans understanding now fully the strength of *Egypt*, and considering what it might aspire to if united, wisely made use of this difference, and gratified the two brothers one after the other in their ambitious (but imprudent) desires.

15. Departing out of *Italy* into *Greece*, he there hired a strong band of men, intending to sayl with them for *Cyprus*; but the Roman Commissioners calling to mind the Decree of the Senate, which was, that they should reduce him without force, perswaded him again to dismisse them, and passe over to *Cyrene*, and they in the mean time going to *Alexandria*, would endeavour to perswade his brother to comply with the Senate, and bringing him along with them meet him in the Confines of both Kingdoms. He accordingly went to *Crete*, where hiring 9000 Soldiers, he passed over to *Libyna*, where he

A.M. 3837.  
Ol. 153. ann. 1.  
V. C. 186.  
Ant. Epiphan. 9.  
Ptol. Philom. 13.

Idem ibid.

Porphyrius ut prius.

Polybius Legat. 107.

Valerius Max. Lib. 5. cap. 1. Exemp. 1.

Polybius Legat. 113.

Polyb. Legat. 115. 16. 17.

he expected to hear from *Alexandria*; but the Romans there treating with his brother about a reconciliation, and the yielding of *Cyprus* up to him, something he assented to, and put off others, on purpose drawing out the time in length. Fourty dayes with extraordinary entertainment he detained them at *Alexandria*, during which time news came to *Euergetes* that the *Cyrenians* had revolted from him, who understanding well the mind of his brother from his present carriage, and seeing nothing suitable to royalty in *Euergetes*, acting all things after a Tyrannical manner, could not bring themselves to submit any longer to his Government. Hearing this, he sayled to *Catabathmus*, thence to make for *Cyrene*, in which place he found the Straights kept against him, but sending some about to come upon the Defendants on their backs, set upon them also himself, and so cleared the passage, but coming to *Cyrene*, and engaging with the Natives, was worsted by them. Whether he recruited himself again, and recovered his Sovereignty here or no, we have nothing from History to speak expressly; but not long after he was in a capacity to attempt *Cyprus* (being encouraged by the Senates renouncing their friendship with his brother upon his account) where he was also overthrown by his brother, and then besieged, and taken in the Citie *Lapithus*. Yet did *Philometor* spare him, what for his innate clemency and brotherly affection, and for fear of the Romans; and not onely so, but made a Covenant with him when Conquered, wherein he restored him *Cyrene*, and for *Cyprus* certain Cities with a quantity of Corn yearly, and promised him his daughter in marriage, worse than this being not accounted incest in that Countrey.

16. Not long did they accord, for *Euergetes*, some two or three years after, being encouraged by his former successe, made another journey to *Rome*, where in the Senate he made another loud complaint against his brother, accusing him of plotting against his life, for a witness of which design he shewed skars upon his body, and aggravating the thing with all his might, endeavoured to move the minds of all to compassion. Two Ambassadors were present from *Philometor* to answer to whatsoever he should accuse him of, but all mens ears were so filled, with the others accusation, that no place would be found for their defence; so that they were instantly commanded to be gone, and five Commissioners were appointed (furnished all with Gallies) to go, and bring him into possession of *Cyprus*; their Associates also, both in *Greece* and *Asia*, being written to, and leave given to as many as would to assist him in the recovery of it. What was done as to the recovery of it, through defect of History, we are ignorant, though some grounds we have to think he did not obtain the Island, and no more do we hear of him till his brothers death. In the dayes of this *Philometor*, *Onias* the son of *Onias* the third, High-Priest of the Jews, seeing the Priesthood to be alienated from his family into that of the *Hasmoneans*, living in *Egypt*, and having well deserved of the King in his Wars, that he might eternize his memory, petitioned him for leave to build a Temple in the Province of *Helipolis*, after the fashion of that at *Jerusalem*, signifying that thereby would be better provided for the quiet of his Kingdom, the Jews badly agreeing amongst themselves through the variety of their places of worship in that Countrey, and misapplying the Prophecy of *Isaiah*, concerning the spiritual Priesthood, and reign of Christ, to this his ambitious and unlawfull design. His Petition was granted, and in that Countrey built he a Temple resembling the true, and lawfull one, 180 furlongs distant from *Memphis*; onely he put therein no Candlestick, but hung up a Lamp in a Golden string, which cast a light about like to the Sun-beams.

Dissention betwixt the Jews and Samaritans.

17. In the time of this *Philometor*, the Jews and Samaritans inhabiting *Alexandria* fell out about their way of Worship, they contending earnestly that the Temple of *Jerusalem*, those that that at *Gerizim* was founded most according to the prescript of *Moses*, and so earnest was the dispute, that both parties appealed to him and his Council for a decision of the controversy, who being to judge according to evidence produced out of the Law,

Gggg was

Polyb. Legat. 132.

Josephus Antiquit. lib. 13. cap. 6.

Chap. 19.  
A. M. 3853.  
Ol. 157. ann. 1.  
V. C. 602.  
Demetrius Soteris.  
11.  
Ptol. Philom. 29.

Josephus ibid.

Protony fight-  
ing against A-  
lexander King  
of Syria, whom  
he had former-  
ly set up, re-  
ceived a  
wound and  
dieth,

Protony Physcon  
unjustly ob-  
taining the  
Kingdom his  
cruelty.

was to put to death those pleaders which could not make good their cause. For the Jews appeared *Andronicus* the son of *Messalanti*, for the Samaritans *Sabbau*, and *Theodosius*, who being heard by *Ptolomy* in a full Assembly, all were so well satisfied in the proofs brought by *Andronicus*, as the King gave sentence on his side, and condemned *Sabbau* and *Theodosius*. *Philemeter* about this time was deeply engaged in the affairs of *Syria*; for, *Demetrius Soter* having molested him much with War, together with *Aitalus* King of *Asia*, and *Ariarathes* of *Cappadocia*, all these agreed to suborn a young man of base condition, who counterfeiting himself the son of *Antiochus Epiphanes*, spoiled *Demetrius* both of his Kingdom and life. This *Alexander* (as he is called) being especially beholden to *Ptolomy* for this change of his condition, desired of him his daughter in marriage; which he readily agreed to, and brought her (named *Cleopatra*) to him to *Ptolemais*, where the nuptials were solemnized with great state. Afterwards *Alexander* giving up himself to cruelty and luxury, *Demetrius*, the son of *Demetrius Soter*, having hired Soldiers in *Crete*, attempted the recovery of his fathers Kingdom. *Ptolomy* with great forces both by Land and Sea, came then into *Syria*, under pretence of helping his son-in-law; but getting a great part of the Countrey into his hands, as far as the River *Orontes*, and the City *Seleucia*, he had other intentions, having conceived great prejudice in his mind against *Alexander*, the special occasion of which was, that whereas one *Ammonius*, a great Officer of his had conspired against his life at *Ptolemais*, he refused to give him up to him upon his demand. Wherefore, though he went to *Antioch*, and there set two Diadems on his head, the one for *Syria*, and the other for *Egypt*, yet persuaded he the *Antiochians* to receive *Demetrius* for their King, and taking away his daughter from *Alexander*, gave her to him; *Alexander* was overthrown, after which he fled into *Arabia* (as we said) and there was made away. But in the fight it hapned that his Horse being affrighted at the noise of an Elephant, threw him, which the Enemies perceiving came upon him, and gave him such a wound in his head, that for four dayes he lay senselesse, and though coming to himself, on the next, he was mightily pleased at the sight of the head of *Alexander Balas*, which was sent him; yet proved it not such a Cordial, but the third day after, as his Physicians were busie in dressing his own he died, after he had reigned 34 years, A. M. 3859. in the third of the 158 Olympiad.

18. After his death the order of succession was first changed in this Kingdom. For whereas hitherto the son had continually followed his father, and now *Cleopatra* his wife with the help of the Princes, endeavoured to have it so, in his son and hers; yet his brother *Euergetes* the second, or *Physcon*, then reigning in *Cyrene*, withstood her purpose, and forced her, for to put an end to the controversy, to marry him. Coming to *Alexandria*, he first caused the favourers of the Child to be slain, and then the boy himself in the arms of his mother on their Wedding day, and amidst the solemnities; according to which beginning he proceeded, being nothing milder towards those that had sent for him. For, giving liberty to the outlandish Soldiers to kill, and rifle, he filled all places with slaughters; many being accused, as though they had plotted against him, were made away with cruel torments, others under some pretence or other banished, and their goods confiscated. Having a son born of this his sister, he named him *Memphitis*, after the place of his birth, but whilst he was keeping his birth-day, that he might also feed his cruel humour, he put to death divers *Cyrenians*, who brought him into *Egypt*, for taxing him somewhat liberally for his too much familiarity with *Irene* his Concubine. As his cruelty, so also his lust knew no bounds; for ravishing first his wives daughter, and his own Niece, both by Father and Mother, he put away his wife and married her; whereat the Inhabitants of *Alexandria* being affrighted, for fear of death quit their habitations, so that he being left alone as a King of houses, and not of men, by Proclamation called, and gave leave to strangers to inhabit them. It hapned that at such time as they flocked thither came al-

Justin lib. 35.

1 Maccab. 10.  
& 11.

Joseph. Antiq.  
lib. 13. cap. 8.

A. M. 3859.  
Ol. 158. ann. 3.  
V. C. 608.

Livius Epit.  
lib. 52.

Justin lib. 38.  
Valerius Max.  
lib. 9. cap. 1.  
Exter. Exemp. 5.

Excerpt. Dio-  
dori Siculi.

Val. Max. ibid.

so

to *P. Scipio Africanus* the younger, *Sp. Mummius*, and *L. Metellus*, sent from *Rome* to visit the Kingdoms and States of the East, and compose their differences. *Scipio* being landed, and having his face covered, the People flocked about him, and desired him to uncover himself, which he granting, they out of the great pleasure conceived at the sight of such a person, gave a shout. *Physcon* himself coming out to meet them, was exceedingly ridiculous to them, being a man otherwise sufficiently deformed, of a low stature, and such corpulence, as his belly resembled rather that of a beast than a man. He provided magnificent entertainment, but they despising his dainties (as corrupting the manners of men) ate very sparingly, onely minded that they came about, and travelled into the Country, where viewing the several places thereof, considering the populousnesse, strength, and convenience of their situation, they concluded *Egypt* a convenient seat for the greatest Empire, if it had but Lords that knew how to make use of it, and so departed to *Cyprus*, and thence into *Syria*.

19. After some time he became so odious to the new inhabitants also for his cruelty, that they set fire to his Palace, and he was driven with his wife and son to get away to *Cyprus*, after which they restored the Kingdom to *Cleopatra* his sister, whom he had put away. Hereupon he raised an Army, and made War upon her and them, and fearing that they might fend for his eldest son from *Cyrene*, and make him King, to prevent that, he murdered him; which being known, they cast down his statues and images. He taking this to be done as well in favour of his sister *Cleopatra*, as in despite of himself, to be revenged sufficiently on her, commanded their son *Memphitis* a comely and towardly childe to be killed in his presence, and then his head, hands, and feet to be cut off, and being sent to *Alexandria* to be presented her, as she was feasting at the celebration of her own birth day. This struck not onely her but all the City into exceeding horror and amazement, and the sad spectacle was shewed to the People, to let them know what they might expect from such a King. He notwithstanding all this, yet went on in his own way; for considering how he was hated by his People, that he might reign more securely, as he thought in their weaknesse, he caused a place of public meeting full of youth to be set on fire, and destroyed all therein either with fire or sword. *Cleopatra* having put an end to mourning for her son, and seeing her self pressed with War by her brother, sent to *Demetrius Nicator* King of *Syria*, and her son in Law, for aid, offering him the Kingdom for his pains in securing it. He gladly accepting the offer, came down, and waged War with *Physcon* for some time, but his People revolting from him at home, was forced to return, so that she being then in a manner destitute, was glad to follow him into *Syria*. *Physcon* then reentering, and being seized anew of the Kingdom, the *Antiochians* knowing his prejudice against *Demetrius*, sent to him for one of the posterity of *Seleucus* to reign over them, whereupon he suborned a young man and son of a Merchant, to mend the matter giving out, that *Alexander Balas* was his Father. The counterfeite by his help oured *Demetrius* of his Kingdom; but then not being able to bear so high a condition, for which he was never bred, grew proud, and despised him. Therefore to be revenged on him, being now reconciled to his sister, he pulled him down again, by sending aid, and his daughter for a wife to *Antiochus Grypus* the son of *Demetrius*. Not long after *Physcon* died, after he had reigned (from his brothers death) 29 years. A. M. 3888, and the last of the 165 Olympiad.

He suborneth  
one against  
Demetrius Ni-  
icator.

Dieth.

He leaveth  
Egypt to his  
wives dispo-  
sal.

20. He left three sons and as many daughters behind him. One of his sons being base born, and called *Ptolomy Apion*, he left King of *Cyrene* by his will; as for *Egypt* he left that to his wife, and to either of her sons which she should chuse, judging that the State of *Egypt* would be better served than the Kingdom of *Syria*, when the mother making choice of one son, should make the other her Enemy. She thinking that her youngest named *Alexander* would be more pliable and observant of her, laboured with the People to accept of him for their King; but they not at all yielding to this,

Cicero in som-  
nio Scipionis.  
A. M. 3875.  
Ol. 162. an. 3.  
Ptol. Physf. 17.  
Joh. Hyrcani 6.

Excerpt. Diod-  
ori.

Justin ut prius.  
Livius Epit.  
lib. 59.  
Val. Max. 1.9.  
c. 2. exte.  
exempl. 5.

A. M. 3876.  
Ol. 162. an. 4.  
V. C. 625.  
Ptol. Physcon.  
18.  
Joh. Hyrcani 7.

Justin Lib. 39.  
Vide Hegelo-  
chum apud Is-  
serium, p. 118.

Porphy. apud  
Euseb.  
A. M. 3888.  
Ol. 165. an. 4.  
V. C. 637.

Idem. & Pau-  
san in Atticis.

Who first taketh to her one son and then another.

She was forced to call home the elder, *Lathurus* (or *Lathyrus*) from *Cyprus*, whither she had procured his father to banish him; but before she gave him the Kingdom she took away his beloved wife *Cleopatra*, and commanded him to marry his younger sister *Selene*. *Cleopatra* being thus divorced by her mother, rather than forsaken of her husband, married to *Antiochus Cyzicenus* in *Syria* (as we before said) and carried away with her the Army in *Cyprus* for a portion. The Queen mother, that she might be the more awful to *Lathurus* her son, in the second year of their reign made *Alexander* King of *Cyprus*, and sent him thither, and then at the end of other six, took away from him, his wife *Selene*, though she had brought him two sons; and again to compleat her malice, stirred up the People against him. For taking such of her Eunuchs as were most faithful to her, she brought them wounded into the publick, accusing him of having endeavoured to make her away, and of so using those that we re true to their trust in her defence: at which the *Alexandrians* being sore moved, came so upon him, as he narrowly escaped with his life, and then sent they for *Alexander* from *Cyprus*, and made him King.

Joseph. Antiq. lib. 13. c. 20, 21.

21. *Lathurus* made but an exchange with his brother, as it fell out, making himself Master of *Cyprus*, whither yet his mother followed him with her hate, and War the effect thereof. Here he lay not idle, for *Alexander Jannæus* at this time King of the *Jews*, besieging *Ptolemais*, the inhabitants thereof sent to him for aid, and though they repented them of the bargain made with him, and sent to stop his journey, yet he came on, and at his approach the siege was raised. Then invaded he *Judæa*, and overthrowing *Jannæus* in a great and bloody battle, harassed the Country. *Cleopatra* his mother was startled at this his power and prosperity, and resolved he was to be brought down, else her affairs were but in a tottering condition; therefore sending a good part of her treasure with her Nephews and testament to the Island *Cous*, She came herself into *Phœnicia*, besieged *Ptolemais*, and persecuted him into *Cœlesyria*. He having some hopes to get *Egypt* into his hands in her absence, marched in all haste down thither; but being disappointed, and pursued by a party sent by her, he was forced to return and winter at *Gaza*. She in the mean time took *Ptolemais*, whither *Jannæus* came to her, with whom a little after she renewed the League at *Seythopolis*, and then he prospering much in *Cœlesyria*, *Lathurus* was forced to return to *Cyprus*, and his mother seeing that, departed also into *Egypt*. During these Wars betwixt the mother and son, it hapned, that he was once taken by her General, but dismissed again, whereat she was so enraged, as she put to death her Commander. Her son *Alexander* being afraid, that at length her cruelty might extend to him also, withdrew himself from her, preferring a secure though obscure estate, before a dangerous reign. She notwithstanding went on in her way, not neglecting her affairs, and fearing her elder son might be helped by *Antiochus Cyzicenus*, sent great supplies to *Grypus* his half brother and rival, with *Selene* for a wife, taken formerly from *Lathurus*, and by messengers prevailed with *Alexander* to return. Divers years then they lived and reigned together, but at length she really plotted his destruction, and being caught in the manner, was according to her desires (though perhaps not his duty) put to death, after she had domineered over him, and expelled his brother eighteen years.

She is killed by Alexander her son.

Who being thereupon expelled Lathurus is restored.

22. *Alexander* being known to the People to have killed his mother, such a Seditious was thence moved, as glad he was to flee for his life; and thence they recalled his elder brother *Lathurus* from *Cyprus*, and restored him his Kingdom for many years after his expulsion, being now (if we may believe *Justin*) so satisfied with his present condition, as of himselfe, hee would never have made War upon his mother, nor thereby sought to recover out of his brothers hands what he had formerly enjoyed. About this time his base brother *Apion* of *Cyrene* died, and left the People of *Rome* his heir, which thereupon left the Country to its own freedom; but after ten years was it sore shaken, and almost rent in pieces by Wars and Tyranny, which fell on it being destitute of a Royal Monarch. *Lucullus* going thither composed

Justin ibid.

Livins Epitom. lib. 70.

He entertaineth Lucullus the Roman.

Alexander the second.

Auletes succeeded Alexander.

composed the differences, and settled the Commonwealth as he thought, which after other ten years came to be reduced out of necessity to a *Roman* Province. From *Cyrene* *Lucullus* returned through *Egypt*, and in his passage being set upon by *Pyrats*, lost almost all his Vessels; yet escaped he safe to *Alexandria*, the Kings Fleet being sent out to meet him, where *Lathurus* entertained him with great magnificence, lodged him in his own Court (which favour had never before been bestowed on any stranger) and presented him with gifts to the value of 80 Talents. But he onely received what was necessary, and neither visiting *Memphis*, nor seeing any of the rarities of *Egypt*, being called away by his occasions, returned through *Cyprus* unto *Sylla*, whose Lieutenant then he was in the War against *Mithridates* King of *Pontus*. After this the Inhabitants of *Thebes* revolted from him, but in the third year he reduced them again to obedience, which is not to be understood of *Thebes* in *Bœotia*, seeing he had nothing there to do, but of the City so called in his own Country. Not long after he died, 37 years (wanting some months) after the death of his Father *Phyſcon*, A. M. 3925, and the first of the 175 Olympiad.

Plutarch in Lucullo.

Pausan. in Attis.

23. It's difficult to assign certainly who succeeded him. (a) Some say *Cleopatra* his daughter, and wife to his brother *Alexander*; others, that *Alexander's* son being received into familiarity with *Sylla* the *Roman* Dictator, was by him placed in the Kingdom, then destitute of issue male. They may be reconciled, by that which is further affirmed by the former, viz. that he married *Cleopatra* then Queen. *Apian* saith, that being seized on the Kingdom, the *Alexandrians* not enduring his insolence, on the nineteenth day drew him out of the Court and killed him; but *Porphyrie* reporteth him to have slain her nineteen dayes after he had married her. Certainly though his reign be accounted no longer, and that of *Auletes* to begin here, yet cannot be rejected that which is produced to the contrary. For, *Suetonius* reporteth, that *Julius Caesar* in his younger dayes having ingratiated himself with the People, attempted by their Tribunes that *Egypt* might be assigned him as a Province, having gotten an opportunity of extraordinary command, for that the *Alexandrians* had expelled their King, on whom the Senate had bestowed the title of friend and ally. This can in no wise be meant of *Auletes*, for when he was expelled and came to *Rome*, *Caesar* was then above such a condition, having spent some years in the Wars of *Gall*. And that King of *Egypt* mentioned by *Cicero* to have died at *Tyre*, and reported to have left the People of *Rome* his heir in his Consulship, can be meant of none but of this *Alexander* the Second, who being expelled rebelliously by his Subjects, lived and died there in exile; so that we must necessarily assign him (counting from the death of *Lathurus* to the Consulship of *Cicero*) about fifteen years; during which time of his life, he is to be supposed to have reigned longer than onely so many dayes, contrary to the vulgar opinion.

(a) Porphy. in Græcis Euseb. (b) Apian de bello civ. lib. 1.

In Julio c. 11.

In Orat. 12. & 24 Agraria.

25. *Alexander* being expelled by the *Alexandrians*, they immediately set up in his room, the son of *Lathurus*, surnamed *Dionysius* and *Auletes*, because he was too much addicted to the rites of *Bacchus*, and dancing to the sound of Cymbals and Pipes. He was base born, as appeareth by the *Prologue* to the 39 book of *Trogus*, and so was also his brother the King of *Cyprus*, if that be true which *Pausanias* speaketh of his Fathers having no legitimate issue, except one daughter. After some years, they that set him up pulled him down; for his brother of *Cyprus* being most unjustly spoiled of his Kingdom by the *Romans*, through the malice of *Clodius* Tribune of the People, they pressed him sore, either to demand *Cyprus* of the *Romans*, or renounce their friendship. Being unwilling to do this, and by reason of his great exactions which hee made for paying of his debts (contracted by his purchase of the *Roman* alliance) he incurred their hatred, and whereas he could neither quier the tumults by fair means nor foul, was glad to withdraw himself out of the way, and went to *Rome*. At *Rhodes* he met with *Caro*, who was sent by *Clodius* out of the way, under colour of doing him honour,

ed. lib. 39.

Plutarch in Catone Minore.

Is compelled by his rebellious Subjects, and betakerh himself to Rome.

to reduce *Cyprus* into the form of a *Roman* Province, who advised him to return, and be reconciled to his subjects, rather than leaving his former happy condition to expose himself to danger, and the avarice of the *Roman* Officers, which *Egypt* it self could not be able to satisfy. Being by the Counsel of his grave and wise man reduced as into his wits, he was minded to follow his advice; but was presently again turned by his friends, and hasted to the Citie, where he had time and cause enough to repent of his despising the Oracle (as then he accounted it) of so great a man.

25. Being comd to *Rome*, he created the Senate much trouble, being commended to it by *Pompey*, whom some reported to have been the cause of his leaving *Egypt*, more than any injury offered him by his subjects, that so he might afford matter for new Wars. He desired he might be reduced into his Kingdom by *Cornelius Lentulus* the Consul, to whom *Cilicia* was decreed for a Province; and upon the reporting of the matter, an order was made; *Lentulus* to stop *Pompey's* mouth, procuring him to have the charge of Provisions (in that time of dearth) throughout the *Empire*. The *Alexandrians* in the mean while ignorant of his voyage into *Italie*, and thinking he had some wayes miscarried, set over the Kingdom *Berenice* his legitimate daughter, together with *Tryphana* her elder sister (called also *Cleopatra* the elder) and sent into *Syria* to *Antiochus Asiaticus* to come and reign with the women, and afterwards, he dying, to *Philip Euergetes* the son of *Antiochus Grypus* by *Tryphana*, daughter to *Lathurus* late King of *Egypt*, but he was also hindered by *Gabinus*, then late *Roman* President in *Syria*. But hearing at length how things went at *Rome*, they sent 100 of their Country-men thither, to make their defence, and recriminate their lawfull King, which he understanding, procured most of the Messengers to be made away in their journey, and the rest coming to the Citie, he either took away, or deterred, or else perswaded them to hold their peace. The Senate hearing of this was grievously moved, and the rather, because that divers publick Ministers of others their Confederates had been made away with the rest; as also for that it appeared, that there was much corruption amongst themselves. They sent therefore for *Dion* the Chief of the Embassie, but *Ptolomy* his money had such influence upon him, that he appeared not, and not long after was also dispatched out of the way. *Pompey* harboured the King all this time in his own house, being yet desirous to restore him himself as *Cicero* signifieth to *Lentulus* then the *Pro-consul* of *Cilicia*, who still waited also for the employment. At length *Sibylla's* books being consulted, were reported to forwarn the people of *Rome* never to reduce him by force, and therefore to that purpose another decree was made in the Senate. A great debate then ensued how the thing should be done, some proposing one way, and some another, till at length *Auletes* perceiving it was neither likely to be effected by *Pompey* nor *Lentulus*, despaired of his return, and getting him into *Asia*, expected at *Ephesus* in the Temple of *Diana*, a better advantage for the recovery of his right out of the hands of the imperious Rebels.

Where getting no relief he departeth to *Ephesus*.

Hireth *Gabinus* to restore him.

26. And he had not been long there, when a convenient opportunity presented it self. For *Gabinus* the President of *Syria* having grievously afflicted his Province by oppression, not thinking that sufficient, but hearing the *Parthians* to be exceeding rich, set his resolution strongly to invade them. When he had passed the River *Euphrates*, *Ptolomy* came to him with Letters from *Pompey*, and offered him 10000 Talents (besides a great sum of money to the Soldiers, part whereof they should have in hand) to restore him. Most of the Officers were against the thing, and *Gabinus* himself something stuck at it, but being stirred up to it by *Antonius* (who then Commanded the horse under him) and especially bewitched by the money, notwithstanding it was not lawfull for a President to stir out of his Province, nor undertake Wars at his pleasure, and the people at *Rome* out of respect to the Verses of *Sibylla* had forbidden *Auletes* to be restored (at least such a way) yet

A. M. 3948.  
Ol. 180. ann. 1.  
V. C. 697.  
Hyrcani 7.

Strabo lib. 17.

Plutarch in  
Pompeio.  
Dio ibid.  
Cicero Familiar.  
Epist. lib. 1.  
Epist. 1.  
Strabo & Dio  
ut prius.  
Porphyrius in  
Græcis Eusebii.

Dio lib. 39.

Joseph. de bello  
Judæico lib. 1.  
cap. 6.  
Appian in Par-  
thicus.

yet he onely made the difficulty of the thing a means to inhance the price of it, and omitting the *Parthian* War, undertook that against the *Egyptians*. *Berenice* had about this time called one *Selencus* out of *Syria*, who vaunted himself of the blood royal of that Nation, and made him partaker of the Kingdom, marrying her self unto him; but finding him to be of a sordid, and base condition, made him away after a little while. Then an husband of a royal stock being enquired out for her, *Archelaus* the son of *Archelaus* (General to *Mithridates* the great King of *Pontus*) and who had been made by *Pompey* Priest of the *Tomani*, counterfeiting himself the son of the King, procured by his friends to be received on the same terms with the other, and reigned with her six monerhs.

Dio & Strabo  
ut supra.

27. But *Gabinus* leaving *Syria* to the tuition of a Child, his son, marched for *Egypt* through *Palestine*, and coming to the sandy desert, sent *Antonius* before with the horse to secure the Straights at the entry of the Country; which he not onely bravely performed, but took also *Peusium*, thereby gaining entrance for the whole Army, which presently put to flight the *Egyptians*. *Archelaus* himself was now taken; but *Gabinus* considering that perhaps *Ptolomy* would be unwilling to give him so much money as he expected, if with so small ado he should compleat the work; being also soundly bribed by *Archelaus*, he dismissed him under pretence of an escape. A little after, the *Egyptians* (more earnest alwayes in rebellions than Wars) were utterly discomfited, *Archelaus* was slain, and all *Egypt* recovered, and restored to *Auletes*, who presently put to death his daughter, and the richest of the Nobility, as they deserved, standing then in great need of money. *Gabinus* leaving a Guard behind him for *Ptolomy's* security (which stayed at *Alexandria*, married, and begot Children, giving up themselves to the luxury of the place) went back into *Syria*, and thence to *Rome*, where his great gifts meeting with the corruption of the times, onely purchased him his life, being fined for his bribery, and disobedient carriage. As for *Auletes* we hear no more of him, since that he died 4 years after his restitution. In the year of the World 3954. and the 2d of the 182 Olympiad.

Plutarch, in  
Antonio, Dio &  
Strabo ut su-  
pra.

A. M. 3950.  
Ol. 181. ann. 2.  
V. C. 699.  
Hyrcani 9.  
Cn. Pompeio  
Mag. 2.  
M. Licinio  
Crassus 2. Coss.

Dieth.

A. M. 3954.  
Ol. 182. ann. 2.  
V. C. 703.

Cæsar Comment.  
de bello civili.  
lib. 3.  
Dio lib. 42.  
Eutropius lib. 6.

His eldest son  
and eldest  
daughter suc-  
ceeding him,  
she is driven  
away.

28. He left two sons, and as many daughters behind him, of which the eldest of either Sex he ordered should succeed him by his last Will and Testament; which he conjured the people of *Rome*, (under whose tuition he left his Children) by all the gods, and the Leagues he had made with them, should be observed; and one of the Tables of which were brought to *Rome* to be laid up in the Treasury; but this being hindred by publick business, it was left with *Pompey*, who was also appointed Guardian to the young King in this his nonage. After three years the boy, or rather *Pothinus* (not *Phorinus*, as he is corruptly called in *Cæsar's* Commentaries) the Eunuch who managed his affairs, expelled *Cleopatra* his sister, and fellow both in marriage and the Kingdom; so that she was forced to withdraw into *Syria*, there to make provision for her re-establishment by force. Not long it was ere he returned, having furnished her self; which her brother being aware of, went, and pitched his Tents near the Mountain *Casius*, at the *Pelusiæ* mouth of the Nile; where lying incamped, *Pompey* being then beaten by *Cæsar* at the battle at *Pharsalum*, fled to him for defence and safeguard, chusing rather to venture upon *Egypt* than any other place, both for its nearness and strength, and hoping upon the account of his Guardianship to be lovingly received. The King then a very boy (about 13 years old) gave no answer to his message; but those most potent about him consulting of it, were perswaded by *Theodotus* his School-master to receive him, but then, that they might curry favour with *Cæsar*, to make him away; so that being received with small civility into a little boat, he was slain ere he got to the other side, as is more largely expressed in the *Roman* story. His head was reserved as a present for *Cæsar*, who coming to *Alexandria*, though at the first he was very welcom, and got much respect for his frequenting the publick readings of *Philosophers*, yet exacting the debt owing by *Auletes*, and not abstaining from the Treasure of the Temples for the payment of his Army,

Appian de bello  
civili lib. 2.  
Cæsar, lib. 3.  
Plutarch, in  
Pompeio &  
Dio lib. 42.

A. M. 3957.  
Ol. 183. ann. 1.  
V. C. 706.  
Hyrcani 16.  
C. Julius Cæ-  
sar 2.  
P. Servilio  
Isaurico Coss.

Pompey flying  
to him for suc-  
cour is slain.



Army, he thereby incurred the great displeasure of the Towns-men, all things being made worse by *Porbinus*, who to his utmost ability incensed the perfidious multitude. *Cæsar* also accounting it to belong to himself as *Consul*, and shortly after, as *Dictator*, to compose the differences of the Confederates of the people of *Rome*, took upon him to judge the cause of the King and his sister, which bred such disturbance, as thereupon ensued a troublesome War.

*Cæsar* going about to reconcile brother and sister, a War is raised by *Romans* the Eunuchs.

29. There were secret plots laid for his life, which he being aware off, <sup>Plutarch. in Cæsar. Dio & Cæsar ut prius.</sup> was glad to spend whole nights in feasting to prevent them, and gave way to *Cleopatra* to come to him, who knowing he was no hater of women, had sent to him to complain, and desire a conference. At the sight of her he became her very slave, and turned from being her Judge to her Advocate, which thing so enraged the King, perceiving her now to be got into the Palace, that he rushed out to the people, crying he was betrayed, and pulling his Diadem from his head, cast it on the ground. A great stir arising hereupon, he was caught by *Cæsar's* Soldiers, and brought back into the house, which the multitude thereat enraged now besieged, and *Cæsar* with promise to do whatsoever they would, scarce appeared the tumult; his men being unprovided for resistance, having not expected any such occasion from those they accounted their friends. Then taking *Ptolemy* and *Cleopatra* along with him, he read over their fathers Will in public audience, which subjecting them to the tuition of the people of *Rome* (whose Supreme and absolute Magistrature he then was) in execution of the said Will he gave to them two as husband and wife the Kingdom of *Egypt*, and to their younger brother and sister that of *Cyprus*, not leaving any thing to himself, but willing rather to add something of his own; such a fear at this time had seized on him. The people hereby was quieted for a time, until *Porbinus*, fearing he might be called to account for what had already passed, kindled a new flame to divert it. He first objected, as well he might, what an unworthy thing it was that the King should be called to answer, and then added, there was reason to suspect, that whatsoever *Cæsar* might pretend, yet at length he would put all into the hands of *Cleopatra*. He sent to *Achillas* General of all the Forces then lying at *Pelusiæ*, alluring him by great promises in the Kings name, to draw down the Army privily to *Alexandria*; and he, being not backward to cloze with him, marched down with 20000 foot, and 2000 horse. *Cæsar* had not strength enough to go out and meet him, and therefore contained himself in the Citie, yet commanded his men to be in readiness, and kept the King with him; whose name he knew to be of great force amongst his people, and that thereby this undertaking might appear rather to be the enterprize of a few dissolute, and factious persons, than any thing backed by his consent, or War-rant.

The Alexandrian War.

30. *Achillas* (a) despising the number of *Cæsar's* Soldiers, after he had entered the Citie, thought presently to have broken in upon him, but he prevented this by blocking up the wayes, and fortifying his house. Then followed a sharp contention at the Haven, the *Alexandrians* endeavouring to become Masters of the Fleet, and thereby to cut off all Provisions and supplies from coming to him; but he made a shift to burn all the Gallies, from which the fire seizing upon the houses adjoining, consumed to ashes that famous (b) Library Collected by the care and diligence of the former Kings. After this exploit so happily performed, he placed a Garrison in (c) *Pharos* (an Island over against *Alexandria* (ennobled by a famous Tower of the same name) but three quarters of a mile distant from the Citie) and after a few skirmishes, sent about into *Syria*, *Cilicia*, and other places for aid. *Arctino* the Kings younger sister got out to *Achillas*, and jointly with him managed the War; yet with such contention for the Chief command, as proved onely beneficial to the Soldiers, whom both by gifts sought to oblige; for the contest at length arrived at such (d) height, that lying in wait for the life of each other, he was slain by the help of one *Ganymedes*, who having helped her in her escape, was now preferred to be their General. <sup>(a) Idem ibid. (b) Plutarch. in Cæsar. Orosius lib. 6. cap. 13. (c) Cæsar ut prius. (d) Histius de bello Alexandrino. Porbinus</sup>

*Achillas* the General is slain, and *Porbinus* put to death by *Cæsar*.

*Cæsar* defeateth the *Alexandrians* at Sea.

Again

He casteth himself into danger.

Leaveth the King go.

*Porbinus* all this while was not backward, but out of the Court sent messengers to *Achillas*, to encourage him in his work, which being discovered cost him his life, and caused the King to be more nearly looked to. *Ganymedes* at his entrance upon the *Generalship*, stopped up the channels, which brought fresh-water into that part of the City where *Cæsar* lay, and with engines conveyed salt from the Sea into the room of it, thinking thereby to discourage the Enemy, and force him out of his hold; but *Cæsar* (though his Soldiers were at first daunted at it) prevented the design by sinking of wells, which abundantly supplied their necessities, to the wonder of the *Egyptians*, who had no such invention. By this time a legion shipped by *Domitius Calvinus*, with provisions and arms from *Syria*, landed on the *African* shoar, a little above *Alexandria*; which *Cæsar* understanding, went with his Fleet unmaned to fetch them in, and the Enemy having notice of it, drew out also against him. He receiving the men aboard, hid no mind to engage, because it grew towards night; but a *Rhodian* Gally, not keeping up with the rest of the Fleet, was set upon, whereby he was constrained to go in to the rescue, and so carried himself, that day-light onely was wanting to his completing the Victory, by utterly destroying the whole Navy of the *Alexandrians*.

31. They notwithstanding this defeat, in which, and other wayes, of late, *Idem ibid.* they had lost no fewer than 110 Vessels (yet being encouraged thereto by *Ganymedes*) set themselves to the rigging of another Fleet, which being in a readiness, *Cæsar* brought his about the Island *Pharos*, and set it in order against them. Both sides being ready to engage, yet a narrow passage lying betwixt them, each expected till the other should enter first, as then having a better advantage, until the *Rhodians* desired of *Cæsar* leave to enter the Streight. This once granted and done, they were presently set upon, and then relieved, till a total engagement ensued, in which the *Egyptians* were worsted (not a ship of *Cæsar's* receiving any hurt) and in their flight took in *Pharos*, where they were received by their friends, and kept off the *Romans* for some time, but at length were forced to quit the Island with great loss. This being joyned to the main by two bridges, one of them in like manner was forsaken by the Towns-men; but the *Romans* attempting to gain the other, through the rashness of some in their company, were beaten off, and forced tumultuously to betake themselves to their ships. *Cæsar* himself in the hurry was glad to leap into the Sea, and the Enemy following, to dive under water, and take breath now and then as he could; till (having swum almost a quarter of a mile) he was taken up into a ship. He lost 400 of his Legionary Soldiers in this skirmish, as many ship-men and rowers, yet neither he nor his Army were discouraged at all, but were rather incited to redeem their loss by some other exploit, which the *Alexandrians* taking notice of, sent to him, desiring he would dismiss their King, whom now they professed they were ready to obey; and if he should command them to be friends with him, they would presently yield. He knew there was neither any trusting of him nor them; but considering that if he dismissed him, they would be nothing the stronger, and if he should become the head of their party, the War would be more honourable, he gravely admonished him to act nothing contrary to the interest of his People, or his confederacy with *Rome*, and then gave him leave to depart, though he pretended an unwillingness to leave him, and notably counterfeited sincere friendship with feigned tears.

Appian de bello civili lib. 2.

32. Though he being returned was very earnest for carrying on the War, yet they seeing themselves nothing amended by the accession of his name or presence (which the *Romans* despised) and that they profited nothing by any of their attempts, were greatly discouraged, yet understanding that great supplies of men and provisions were coming to *Cæsar*, they resolved once more to take the Sea, and cut them off. And they did much hurt to those that came by water, till he sent out his Fleet under the command of *Tiberius Nero*, and restrained them. But by Land came *Mithridates* of *Perge* *H h h h* from <sup>Histius ibid. Josephus Antiquit. l. 14. cap. 14. & 15. & de bello l. 1. cap. 7.</sup>

Aid sent to  
Caesar.

from Syria, accompanied with Antipater the Governour of Judea, and Father to Herod the Great, bringing down with him a great power of men, and pierced as far as Pelusium, which also was taken, with great pains and industry by assault. Thence marching down for Alexandria he took in the Country in his way, the Jews inhabiting those parts (though at first they made resistance, yet) being brought over by Antipater upon the producing of the letters of Hyrcanus the High-Priest. When Ptolemy heard this, and that he had nigh already reached Delta, a place not far distant from Alexandria; knowing he must needs passe the River, he sent out a party to oppose him there, which he received prudently after the Roman fashion, being intrenched in his Camp, and easily sustained its violence; till seeing them very disorderly, and with great boldness to assail his fortifications, he issued out, and killing a great number, had utterly defeated the rest, but that by their knowledge of the Country, and by the Vessels which had transported them, they secured themselves. Whereupon rallying again they once more charged him, and a fight ensued in that place called *the Camp of the Jews*, in which engagement the wing commanded by Mithridates himself, was sorely oppressed, and had been totally overthrown; but that Antipater (who led the other) came in in good time to the rescue, put to flight the Egyptians, and took their Camp; which Mithridates confessed by letters to Caesar, acknowledging Antipater to have been the author, both of his safety, and the Victory. But now by this time was Ptolemy himself coming against Mithridates, and Caesar also to fetch him off.

Being opposed  
overcometh.

32. Both went by Sea, but Caesar first got to him, and took him in with his victorious Army. Ptolemy and Caesar encamped then seven miles asunder, the former in an high and most fortified place by nature, having a narrow River with exceeding high and precipitous banks betwixt him and the Enemy, which though the Alexandrians defended, yet Caesar's men got over (the Horse by passing the Foard, and the Foot by laying over a bridge made of long trees) so that Caesar sat down, not far from the Kings Camp. The next day he stormed a Castle in a Village near adjoining, the defendants whereof flying amain to the Camp, his men had well nigh entred with them; but coming to hand-strokes, were beaten back, being severally laid at, both from the fortifications and the ships. But Caesar espying a very high place, which by reason of its natural strength was little looked to by the Alexandrians, set certain Companies to get up there; which being performed, and a great cry raised on purpose round about, the Romans brake in, in several places, and made great slaughter. Most of the defendants fled upon the irruption, and in great heaps leaped down into the trenches, wherein they first being overwhelmed, the rest with great ease got over, amongst which was the King; but coming to take boat, so many pressed in after him, that the Vessel sunk, and he thereby was drowned, after he had reigned well nigh four years. Together with him fell in this War (though most after another fashion) 20000 men, 12000 were taken with 70 long ships, and 500 of the Romans are said to have been slain. Caesar in confidence and pursute of this Victory, with the Horse marched presently to the City, where he found now not any resistance, the Citizens entreating him in a suppliant posture, whom he comforted and forgave.

Caesar storm-  
eth the  
Egyptian  
Camp.

Ptolemy is  
drowned.

Caesar taketh  
Alexandria.

34. Having thus made an end of the War, he laid not Egypt to the Roman Empire, but gave it to Cleopatra, joyning to her in marriage (to colour the business) her younger brother as yet but eleven years old; but indeed subjecting all things to her will and power, with whom he was so familiar, as, out of love to her, he staid in Egypt nine moneths, and had done it longer, or else had taken her with him to Rome, had he not been called thence by the urgent affaires of Syria; and not long after she brought him a son, whom by his permission the named *Cesarion*. At his departure he removed Arsinoe out of the Kingdom, lest any disturbance should arise upon her account, and left three Legions behind him for the security of these two Princes, who being disrespected by their own People for their respect to him, as yet were not confirmed in their seats.

35. As

A. M. 3598.

Orosius lib. 6.  
cap. 16.

Dio lib. 42.

Appian de bello civili l. 2.

Plutarch in  
Caesare.

Sueton in Ju-  
lio.

Cleopatra poi-  
soneth her  
brother.

Cometh to  
Antony in Asia  
who follow-  
eth her into  
Egypt.

Their loose  
practices.

35. As for the Government, Cleopatra reigned, and staid alone without the control of any, permitting her brother to enjoy the title with his life as yet. Not long after Caesar's departure, the eldest son of Pompey his Enemy coming to Alexandria, she is (a) reported to have been as familiar and common with him; yet upon Caesar's invitation (b) went with her brother to Rome, where they were admitted as friends and allies; for her a lodging was provided in his own house, and having built a Temple to *Venus Genetrix* (which he had vowed before the battel at *Pharsalia*) he therein placed (c) her effigies beside the Goddesse. In the fourth year, her brother growing towards a man, she (d) poisoned him, to be at her own liberty. After *Julius Caesar* was killed in the Senate house, she stood ever firm to those that prosecuted the conspirators: to (e) *Dolabella*, at his request of aid, she sent four Legions, and had a fleet ready to put out the weather served. To *Cassius*, who with menacing language demanded supplies, she plainly refused to send any; for that he had an hand in Caesar's death, his threats only inciting her to go and meet *Octavius Caesar* and *Antony*, who were then making an Expedition against him and his fellow *Brutus*, the heads of their faction. He getting knowledge of her intentions, sent a strong party with 60 ships, to hover for her about *Peloponnesus*; but such a tempest seized on her Fleet, that her design was broken, and having received great losse, and now fallen sick, she was forced to return into Egypt. Antony after the overthrow of *Brutus* and *Cassius*, being left in Asia to settle the affaires thereof, thither she repaired to him in a strange antick fashion, and he, who, when he formerly served under *Gabinus* in Egypt, had cast a wanton eye upon her, was now so smitten, (though 40 years old) that he also became enslaved to her in his affections. She ruled him and all his affaires, and procured him out of hand, to cause her sister *Arsinoe* to be made away; who being formerly led in triumph by *Julius Caesar* after the Alexandrian War, with the pity of all men, had for her brother and sisters sake been then dismissed.

36. Antony had no power but to follow her into Egypt, where they spent their time in nothing but extraordinary vanity and dalliance. After his reconciliation to Caesar, and the making up of the breach betwixt them, by his marrying of *Octavia*, Cleopatra fearing that this new wife might draw his affections from her self, pretended to be almost mad in love with him, practising upon her body in such sort, that being reduced into a Consumption, she seemed not to be able to live in his absence; whereupon he gave over his intention of invading *Parthia* for that time, and returned to Alexandria. Not long after she begged of him that part of Judea which bare *Balm*, and many other places and Countries, which he bestowed upon her, to the great distaste of the People of Rome, who took it in high disdain, as well that such vast possessions should be given her, as that now he had divers children by her, two of which, being twins, were named *Sun* and *Moon*. Shortly after, she accompanied him as far as *Euphrates*, then making an Expedition into *Armenia*, and taking Judea in her way homeward, that part thereof, which Antony had given her, together with *Arabia*, she let out to farm unto *Herod*, whom also, either out of her filthy affection to him (which she pretended) or for some other end (having formerly wished for an advantage against him, to get his Kingdom) she solicited to the breach of the chastity of them both; but he instead of giving her satisfaction, consulted with his friends how to kill her, and then being again terrified from that, to do her honour, waited on her home as far as *Pelusium*. Antony having prospered in *Armenia* returned, and entred Alexandria in triumph, leading with him *Aravasdes* the King with his wife and children, whom he earnestly laboured with to make them fall down before her, as suppliants, but to no purpose. Then spent they their time in feasting, he divided almost half of the Roman Empire betwixt her and her children; she took upon her the name of *Isis*, and he of *Osiris*, and *Father Bacchus*, having his temples crowned with Ivy, and wearing buskins; being drawn in that garb, after the fashion of *Bacchus*, in a chariot through the streets of the City.

Hhh h 2

37. These

(a) Plutarch  
in Antonio.

(b) Sueton ut  
prius.

(c) Appian  
ibid.

(d) Josephus.  
Antiquit. l. 15.  
cap. 4.

(e) Appian de  
bello civili l. 3,  
& 4.

A. M. 3963.  
Ol. 184. an. 3.

V. C. 712.  
Hyrcani 22.

M. Emilio  
Lepido 2.

L. Marcio  
Planco 1.

Plutarch ut  
prius.

Appian lib. 5.

Dio lib. 49.

A. M. 3968.  
Ol. 185. an. 4.

V. C. 717.  
Herodis 3.

M. Vespasian  
Agrippa.

L. Canidius Gal-  
lo, Cass.

Josephus An-  
tiquit. l. 15. c. 5.

Plutarch &  
Dio ut supra.

37. These foolish and loose practices brought great inconveniences upon them. For *Cæsar Octavius* and he fell presently of recriminating each other, and *Anthony* not long after had the confidence to send to *Rome*, to desire from the Senate a confirmation of his donations to her and her children; which gave such offence, that his friends were forced to flee out of the City; whereupon he sent thither again some to thrust *Octavia* (his wife, and *Cæsar's* sister) out of his house, and took upon him to make War upon both People and Senate. *Cæsar* hereat enraged, found out a way to incense the People against him, by opening his will deposited in the hands of the *Vestal Nuns*, wherein he had laboured to make *Cæsar* the lawfull son of the *Dictator*, named for Heirs his Children begotten on *Cleopatra*, and commanded that notwithstanding he might die at *Rome*, yet his body should be sent to her to *Alexandria*. These things found to be true, gained credit to others which were but reported; as that in case he should get the better, he would bestow *Rome* it self upon the *Queen*, and translate the Seat of the Empire into *Egypt*. When *Cæsar* then was ready for the War, it was decreed against her, and he was deprived of all his Offices, which alone was thought enough at this time, left once declared an Enemy to the State, the other with him should have been included in the same capacity, of whom divers, being men of great influence, might have been driven through desperation, to act more vigorously for him: Hereby it was thought he would be sufficiently intangled; resolving not to forsake her on any terms whatsoever, and vulgarly accounted to be bewitched by her. And to little Jesse could these things practized by him amount to. He called her *Queen*, *Lady*, and *Mistress*, gave her *Romans* for her Guard (who had her name engraven on their Targets.) He went abroad, celebrated Games, sat in Judgement, and sometimes rode with her, and when she pleased to be drawn in her Chariot, ran by her side amongst the Lackies. She was so confident she should be Mistress at length of the Mistress of the World, that if she would swear most religiously, it should be by that Law or Sentence, which she was about to pronounce in the *Capitol*.

War at Rome  
is decreed a-  
gainst it.

He is bewitch-  
ed as it were  
by her.

Yet suspecteth  
her.

She maketh  
him ingage at  
*Actium*,

Where he his  
defeated.

38. For all this ado, yet in the preparation for the War, *Anthony* mistrusted her, and that so far, as to have his meat tasted for fear of poyson. She taking notice of it, poysoned a Cup of drink, and giving him it, when he was about to set it to his mouth, interposed her hand, convincing him thereby how easie a matter it was for her to do that of which she was suspected to have an intention, and then sending for a Malefactor out of prison, and giving him the liquor, he died immediately. This made him bold and confident of her, and further enslaved his affections, inasmuch that that she ruled him in the management of the War. For *Canidius*, whom she had bribed to get leave for her to continue with him, changing afterwards his mind, or (at least his language) and advising him to send her back into *Egypt*, and to go into *Thrace* or *Macedonia*, and there to decide the controversy in a pitched battel, she prevailed against him not onely to stay, but made *Anthony* ingage at *Actium* in a Sea-fight, yet providing rather for flight than victory. Ere it could justly be discerned which party would carry it, she being impatient of delay, with her Golden Prow and Purple sayls, giving a sign to her *Egyptians*, betook her self to flight, which *Anthony* seeing, made haste after her as fast as possible, and being received on board, neither saw, nor was seen by her; but fate him down in a sad and thoughtfull posture, holding his head betwixt his hands; and for three or four dayes so continued, till arriving at *Tenarus* (a Promontory of *Lacunia*) the women there that were intimate with her brought them together. He passing over into *Africa*, she returned into *Egypt*, counterfeiting a triumph with her ship curiously adorned, and melodious singing, that she might be received of her Subjects, the chiefest of which presently she put to death, whom she knew formerly to have born no good will towards her, and now to be elevated upon the report of the defeat received at *Actium*. Considering their estates, and rifling religious houses, she heaped together a great

Sueton in *Octa-  
vio & Dio*  
lib. 49. 50.

Plutarch in  
*Antonia*.

Plinius *Natu-  
ral. Histor.*  
lib. 21. cap. 3.

Plutarch. ut  
prie.

*Dio* lib. 50.

A. M. 3974.  
Ol. 187. ann. 1.  
V. C. 723.  
Herod. 9.  
*Octavio Ca-  
sare* 3.  
M. Valerio  
Maxima Coll. 1

She convey-  
eth ships into  
the *Arabian*  
Bay to seek  
out her for-  
tune, but is  
diverted by  
him.

Many willing  
to die give  
their names,  
and they  
spend their  
time in jolli-  
sy.

She yet la-  
boureth to  
curry favour  
with *Cæsar*.

She betray-  
eth *Pelusium*,  
and causeth  
the Fleet and  
Horse to re-  
volt to him.

*Anthony* killeth  
himself.

Masse of Treasure, raising forces therewith with all expedition, and that she might draw into Confederacy the King of *Media*, she sent him the head of *Artaxerdes* (or *Artaheus*) the *Armenian*, his Emulator. Then, attempting a matter of greater difficulty, she conveyed ships over the *Isthmus*, or Neck of Land (which parting the *Egyptian* (or *Mediterranean*) from the *Red-Sea* divideth *Asia* from *Africa*) into the *Arabian* Bay, intending to fly servitude, and seek out some foreign seat, wherein to spend the remainder of her dayes. But *Anthony* returning to her, who as yet had heard nothing of the losse of his Land-Army, they encouraged themselves, and she changed her purpose. Her ships were burnt by the Inhabitants of *Arabia Petraea*, at the procurement of *Q. Didius* the *President* of *Syria*.

39. But *Anthony* having notice that his Army had revolted to *Cæsar*, withdrew himself in a sad and Melancholick posture from the sight of all men into the Island *Pharos*, and then again within a while, having disburthened himself of grief, returned to the Court, where they indulged their genius more than ever, those that were willing to die with them giving in their names, and passing away their time together in nothing but feasting and jollity. She gathered together divers sorts of poysons, which she tried upon Capital Offenders and Brutes, approving above all the biting of an Asps, which she observed without any convulsion to cast the party into an heavy stupefaction, with a moderate sweat upon the face, and so to kill with an easie kind of languishment. Before *Cæsar* came down into *Egypt* against them, they sent several times to him. She asked the Kingdom for her Children, and without *Anthony* his knowledge sent him a Scepter, a Crown of Gold, and a royal Throne, giving up her Kingdom to him, as it were, with those, to gain respect. He received them as a good Omen, and returned to her openly threatening language; yet underhand promised her impunity, and the entire possession of her Kingdom, if she would make away *Anthony*. And fearing lest this might be brought to undertake some desperate design, he sent one *Thyrsus* his Freed-man, and a cunning fellow to her, to make her believe he was in Love with her, hoping that then, besides the saving of the Treasure, which she had threatened to burn, she having a great ambition to be loved by all great persons, would not stick at killing *Anthony*. She desiring indeed that it might be so, & remembering how his Uncle, in time past, and since that *Anthony* had been bewitched by her, easily fooled her self into a fond belief thereof, and promised her ambition, not onely pardon, and *Egypt*, but the *Roman Empire* it self. *Anthony* seeing her kind to the Messenger above measure, suspected something, and soundly lashing him, sent him back to his Master; and then she to wipe off his jealousy most solemnly celebrated his birth-day (though suitably to her present condition she neglected her own) and fought all manner of wayes how to humour him. Yet did she betray *Pelusium* into *Cæsar's* hands, and when he drew down towards *Alexandria* secretly forbad the Towns-men to go out against him, though openly she exhorted them to resistance. And when *Anthony* had provided a Fleet, she caused it wholly to revolt, and in like manner the horse, which *Anthony* plainly seeing, after the overthrow of his foot, returned into the Citie, crying out that he was betrayed by her into their hands, against whom, for her sake he had taken Arms.

40. She being afraid of him, went to her Monument, as intending to kill her self, under pretence of being afraid of *Cæsar*, and sent a Messenger to him to tell him she was dead. He giving credit to it, desired *Eros* his servant to kill him; but he preventing it with his own death, he wounded himself in the belly; but the stroke not being such an one as could presently dispatch him, he intreated his friends to do it, who refusing, and running out of the room, a tumult ensued, and she perceiving what was done, sent for him up into her Monument. He understanding she was alive, arose, thinking he might also possibly live; but the blood issuing out in great abundance, he despaired of it, and was born by his attendants to the door of the build-

Plutarch. in  
*Antonia & Dio*  
lib. 51.

*Cæsar* earnestly desireth to lead her in Triumph, and doth all he can to deceive her.

building, whence he was drawn up with Cords in a lamentable plight, all in  
goar blood, helping himself as it were, and stretching out his hands to her, and  
her women, who hailed him up thus to the top. When he was got up she  
laid him on a bed, tore her flesh, wiped off his blood with her face, calling  
him *Lord, Husband, and General*, after which he presently expired. *Cæsar*  
now desired to get her into his power by strong hand, having an extraordi-  
nary ambition to grace his Triumph with her, and not willing to promise any  
thing, and be counted a deceiver by falsifying his word. She continued still  
in the Monument, hoping at least to purchase her Kingdom by the Treasure  
she had yet in her power, and refused to come down, talking with the Mes-  
sengers from above. But presently some got in to her, removed all things  
out of the way wherewith she might hurt her self, and then bringing her into  
the Palace, derafted nothing from her former state, thereby to delude her  
with vain hope. *Cæsar* now without any trouble entred *Alexandria* with  
*Aristo* the Philosopher on his right hand, who formerly had read the Sciences  
to him; he permitted her to bury *Antony* as she pleased, which after she  
had done, being spent with sorrow, and her breast all ulcerated with strokes,  
she thereby contracted a Fever, and glad of that pretence to abstain from all  
sustenance, and so end her days, she consulted also with *Olympus* her Phy-  
sician how to reduce her self into a Consumption. But *Cæsar* smelling it  
out, so terrified her about her Children, that she was content to de-  
part.

41. Shortly after, he coming to comfort her, she cast her self down at his feet, endeavouring with all the art she had to inveigle his affections, which though he perceived, yet fixing his eyes on the ground, he onely said, *Be of good cheer Woman, thou shalt have no harm*, she being solicitous, not for life, but love, and a Kingdom. Then gave she in an Inventory of her Goods and Treasure, at which *Seleucus* one of her Officers was so Malapert, as to accuse her of suppressing something; whereupon she flew in his face, and soundly buffeted him, *Cesar* smiling, and gently reprehending her for it. But she asked him whether it was not an hard case for her, whom he had deigned to visit, to be accused by one of her own slaves, if she had reserved any thing, not for her self, but wherewithall to present his wife and sister, that they might render him the more favourable to her. Hereat he exceedingly rejoiced, hoping she had a great desire to live, and promised her great matters, vainly supposing he therein deceived her. But she having notice by *Dolabella*, a young Gentleman amongst his followers, and one that bare her great good will, that after three days, she and her Children were to go for *Italy*, first obtained leave of him to celebrate the obsequies of *Antony*, which having performed with lamentations, and great shew of affection, she commanded a Bath to be prepared, and sitting down to meat, sumptuously Dined. After Dinner she gave a Letter to her Keeper to carry to *Cesar* (wherein she desired the might be buried by *Antony*) sealed, that he thinking the contents to be of consequence, might the more easily be removed out of the way. He being gone, with the help of her two women, she made fast the doors, most gorgeously apparelled her self, as upon some solemn day, with her royal Ornaments, and then put an Asp (which she had procured to be brought in secretly amongst Figs, Grapes, and Flowers) to her left Arm, with the biting of which, she fell presently as into a sleep, and so died. *Cesar* having read the Letter presently perceived what was done, and indeavoured with all speed to recall her to life, though in vain, grieving sore that he was frustrated of a glorious Triumph, yet pitying and admiring the person, whom he caused to be royally interred with *Antony*, according to her desire, and afterwards dealt very nobly with their Children. Adorned she was with all the endowments of nature above her Sex. Being learned her self, she was a great Lover and Promoter of knowledge; which she testified in erecting another Library, in the room of that which had been burnt, supplied with books from *Pergamus*: at the procurement of *Antony*. She lived 39 years, reigned 22. (counted from her fathers death) fourteen

Plutarch &  
Dio ut supra.

Vide Suetoniu  
Ottavio.  
Florum lib. 4.  
cap. II.  
Orosium lib. 6.  
cap. 19.  
Eutropium l. 7.

A. M. 3975.  
Ol. 187. ann. 3.  
V. C. 724.  
Herodis 10.  
Octavio Cæ-  
sare 4.  
M. Licinio  
Crasso Cons.

But she ha-  
ving notice  
of his inten-  
tions dieth  
by the biting  
of an Asp.

whereof she spent with *Antony*. And with her perished her Kingdom, now reduced into the form of a *Roman Province*, and the *Macedonian Empire* was quite extinct, 300 years after the death of *Darius*, and the Monarchy of *Alexander*, by whom it arose; 293 after *Ptolemy* the son of *Lagus* had obtained *Egypt*; in the third of the 187 *Olympiad*, the year of the World 3975, and 28 before the birth of Christ. *Octavius Caesar* the 4th time, and *M. Licinius Crassus* being *Consuls*.

*Contemporaries with the Empire of  
the Macedonians.*

## CHAP. VII.

## The *Judean* Kingdom or Principality of the *Asmonæans*.

*From the departure of Antiochus Sidetes from Jerusalem to the reign of Herod an alien, being by birth an Idumæan, containing the space of 98 years.*

I. **A**fter *Antiochus* had raised his siege and departed from *Jerusalem*, as was said before, he undertook an Expedition against the *Parthians*, where-in he was slain. *John* the son of *Simon* who then was chief both *Priest* and *Magistrate* of the *Jews* accompanied him some way with a band of *Auxiliaries*, and got the surname of *Hircanius* from the overthrow of the *Hircanians*, as it's thought, and returned with great credit into his own Country. After *Antiochus* his death, he led down an Army into *Syria*, thinking, as indeed it fell out, that the Cities were left without defence, whereof he took several, *Medaba*, *Samaga*, *Scicima*, and *Gerizim*, where the *Chaldeans* had built a Temple resembling that at *Jerusalem*. In this Expedition he also subdued *Idumea*, the Inhabitants whereof he put to their choice, whether they would be circumcised or quit their hibernations. They chose the former, and now began to be reckoned amongst the *Jews*, submitting to all their rites and ceremonies. After this he sent to *Rome*, desiring that the confederacy made with the Senate might be renewed; that *Joppa*, *Gazara*, with other Cities and places taken from the *Jews* by *Antiochus*, contrary to their Decree, might be restored, that it might not be lawful for the King of *Syria* to pass through their Country with his Armies, that whatsoever *Antiochus* had attempted against them in War contrary to their will might be made frustrate, and that the Senate would please to send their Ambassadors to procure those things, and to cause satisfaction to be given for the havoc made of the Country. The Fathers renewed the confederacy with them, according to their desire, promised to take order they should be no more wronged, and dismissed the Ambassadors with money to bear their charges, and letters commendatory to those through whose Countreys they should passe. The many changes which then presently hapned in the *Syrian* Kingdom do diverted the several Princes from meddling with the *Jews*, that they were glad of their friendship, and this proved a sufficient opportunity for *Hircanius* to establish his affairs. For they destroying one another with War, he securely enjoyed the revenues of the Country, and got together a great masse of money; so that despising them, he went and besieged *Samaria*, the Inhabitants of which he was displeased with for their injury offered to the *Marrisi*.

5 A. M. 2870.

A. M. 3877.

A. M. 3878.  
Ol. 163. an.  
V. C. 627.  
Selencid. 186  
Ptol. Physcon.  
20.  
Fbh. Hyrcani 9

*John surnamed  
Hyrcanus his  
exploits.*

Her renewal  
the League  
with Rome.

Be siegeth. S. 2-  
m. 124.

*Idem* cap. 18.

seni, though the King of Syria's Subjects, yet his friends and allies.

2. He cast a trench about it, and committed the siege to the care of his two sons *Antigonus* and *Aristobulus*, who sorely oppressed the defendants, hindering all importation of *Viſuals*, so that they were constrained to beg aid of *Antiochus Cyzicenus* then reigning in Syria. He came, but was overthrown by *Aristobulus* his Soldiers, and being pursued by the brothers as far as *Scythopolis*, hardly escaped, and the siege was renewed. The besieged reduced to their former necessities, sent once more to *Cyzicenus*, who then obtaining about 6000 men of *Ptolomy Lathyrus* (then expelled his Kingdom by his mother) made an inroad into *Hyrcanus* his Dominions, and made havoc of all things, thereby hoping to constrain him to raise the siege. But having lost many of his men intercepted by the Enemy, he himself went to *Tripolis*, and gave over the War to *Callimander* and *Epicrates*, two of his Captains. *Callimander* being more venturesome than wife was presently slain, and his fellow was corrupted to betray *Scythopolis* and other Towns to *Hyrcanus*, who then after a years lying before *Samaria* took it, razed it, and brought the water-courses through the Place, by the filth of which all appearance of a Town was taken away. After this, inviting the *Pharisees* on a time (whose Scholar he had been) to a feast, he laboured to approve his sincerity to them, and desired, if any of them knew any fault in him, to tell him plainly of it. All approved of his manners but one *Eleazarus* a seditious and bad man, who told him, that if would be accounted good, he must devote himself of the Priesthood, and be content with the Principality, for that he had heard say, that his mother was a captive in the time of *Antiochus Epiphanes*. This being utterly false, *Hyrcanus* was grievously offended, and so were the *Pharisees*; but *Jonathan a Saducee* of the contrary sect, and one in great grace with him, took thence occasion to tell him, that this affront came from all the *Pharisees* together, and that he should perceive it by the punishment they would inflict upon him, if their opinion was demanded. They being mercifully inclined, thought it sufficient he should be imprisoned and beaten for no greater an offence: at which *Hyrcanus* was sore displeased, as then thinking they had raised that scandal of him. Wherefore being more incensed by *Jonathan*, he revolted to the *Saducees*, abrogated the constitutions of the *Pharisees*, and punished their followers, whence it came to passe, that neither he nor his sons were much beloved by the People. A sedition also arose hereupon, but he quiered all, and having governed the People 31 years died, being honoured with three especial dignities, of the chief Government, High-Priesthood, and also Prophecy, as *Jonathan* tells us, who relateth, that he foretold his two eldest sons should neither of them long enjoy his Principality. A. M. 3899, the last of the 160 Olympiad, about 104. years before the birth of Christ.

The original of the several Jewish Sects.

3. Mention being here made of *Pharisees*, it is requisite to speak something of this sect and others amongst the Jews, according to the nature of this work. *Josephus* first maketh mention of them in the ninth Chapter of his thirteenth Book of *Antiquities*, afterwards more diligently and largely handling them. There is no question but these sects sprang up after the return of the Jews from the *Babylonish* captivity. It's probable that the difference amongst them arose after the building of the second Temple, about their worship and offerings. Some thought they were only to live by the precept of the Law, neither above nor below it. Others believed they were not only to act according to the bare letter of the Scriptures, but also according to such senses and consequences as might be made out from it, and accordingly they offered over and above what the Law required in the service of the Temple, even what they conceived was due according to their riches or other respects. Those that stood to the letter of the Law were called *Karaim*: Those that besides the precepts of the Law did works of supererogation, and voluntary service without any compulsion, were named *Hasidim*, that is *Sanctior Holy*, and (after they grew into a body) *Hasidæans*. As long as this voluntary and supererogatory service was free and spontaneous,

\* Lib. 18. c. 2.  
& de bello lib. 2. c. 7.

Consulte *Josephum Scaligerum in Elencho Tribusculi Fulgentii Miscellan.* l. 1. c. 3.

there

there was no such schism; but when this doctrine of the *Hasidæans* came to be digested into precepts, and the precepts of supererogation into writings and Canons, many doubts, disputes, and controversies, daily arose, whence two dogmatical Sects had their original. One which only allowed of the Law itself, and Another that imbraced also the glosses and interpretations of it. From the latter, being that of the *Hasidæans*, sprung up some who called themselves *Peruschim* or *Separate*, as those, who by reason of their holiness were not only distinct and separated from the vulgar, but also from other *Hasidæans*, for that they taught that those constitutions formerly accounted free, were to be observed out of necessity. These *Peruschim* in *Syriack* *Pheruschim*, came by *Greek* writers to be called *Pharisees*. Now as out of the *Hasidæans* arose the *Pharisees*, so from amongst the *Karaim* the *Saducees*, so named from *Sadoc*. *Antigonus* the master of this *Sadoc*, and scholar to *Simeon the Just*, amongst other heads of doctrine had taught, that they ought not to be like servants, who served their Masters on this condition to receive their wages, meaning that we ought to serve God out of love, and not for our own gain or advantage. But *Sadoc*, or *Saduc*, & *Baitbus* interpreted this godly saying into a wicked fence, teaching, that there was no reward after this life; and therefore denied the future state, and framed their herefie. The third sect was that of the *Essai* or *Esseni*, who as it's probable sprang from the *Pharisees*, though when it began be uncertain. *Philo Judæus* thinketh they were so called from their holiness *ἁγιοί*, as though *ἁγίοι*, though more probable from *Hasi* the *Syriack*, whence the *Greek* *ἁσίδαι* may be derived. The *Hebrew* signifieth such as live apart from noise, which agreeth much with those *Esseni*, who like the *Pythagoreans* kept silence, and lived in deserts or Villages by themselves, far from others. They had skill in physick, and thence some would derive their name from the *Hebrew* *Asa*, which signifieth to heal. This Sect was later than that of the *Pharisees*, and some think it arose at this time when *Hyrcanus* turned *Saducee*, and persecuted the Sect of the *Pharisees*; for then might many of the *Pharisees* to shun persecution depart into the Wilderness and desert places, and afterwards be called *Essai* or *Esseni*, who were held more strict than the *Pharisees* themselves.

4. But, (to return to our matter) *John* surnamed *Hyrcanus* left five sons, whereof *Aristobulus* the eldest (surnamed *Philællen* for his love to, and familiarity with the *Greeks*) succeeded him, and first changed his Principality into a Kingdom, setting a Diadem on his head, 481 years after the return of the Jews from the captivity of *Babylon*. His second brother he loved exceedingly, so as he made him his partner in the Kingdom; but shut up the rest in prison, and with them his mother, to whom his father had left the Principality, and proceeded so far in unnatural cruelty, as to starve her to death. Not long after, he caused to be made away also his beloved brother, though against his will he did it. For he (*Antigonus* by name) returning victorious from the Wars, at the Feast of the Tabernacles, marched up with his Soldiers to the Temple, as intending to offer sacrifice for his brother then lying sick. This was presently interpreted to *Aristobulus* as an effect of a bad intention towards him, and a sufficient sign of affecting the Kingdom, and it was represented to him, as if *Antigonus* would presently come down and kill him, accounting it folly when he might reign alone, to be content with a communicated honour. He having rejected tales heretofore, did not easily give credit to them now, but to provide for his own security, and yet shun suspicion, he commanded some of his guard to stand in an obscure place where he was to come, and if he came armed, then to kill him, but if not, then not to molest him, and he sent also to him to come without any guard at all. But the Queen and the rest of the conspirators, persuaded the messenger to deliver his errand on the clean contrary way, so that *Antigonus* thinking nothing, but coming to see his brother, was there murdered. After it was done, *Aristobulus* presently repented of the deed, though knowing nothing concerning the message, which so increased his disease, as he vomited blood for anguish.

Iiii

of

*Drusum lib. de tribus sectis Judæorum, Jacobum Capellum ad A. M. 3891. & Simsonium & A. M. 3896.*

A. M. 3900.  
Ol. 168. ann. 4.  
V. C. 649.  
Ptol. Lath. 13.

*Aristobulus* the son of *Hyrcanus* changeth the Principality into a Kingdom.

His cruelty against his mother and brethren.



of mind. This being carried out by one of his attendants, chanced to be spilt in that place where *Antigonus* was slain, which being judged by them that saw it, to be done of purpose, they cried out against the thing, and made such a noise, that the King hearing it, forced the matter out of them; after which his Agony increased so highly (crying out, that his blood was required for that of his mothers and brothers which he had spilt, and chiding as it were his body for retaining the Soul required of him by their Ghosts) that in great torment of conscience he presently breathed out his last, when he had scarce reigned a whole year. He profited much his Country by his Government, and making War upon *Ituræa*, laid a great part of it to his own Dominions, and frightened the Inhabitants by threatening banishment to them, into an imbrace-ment of Circumcision, and the other Jewish Rites.

He dieth  
within a years  
time.

*Jannæus* or *Alexander* his  
brother suc-  
ceedeth him.

Besieging *Ptolemais*, the  
siege is raised  
by *Ptolomy*  
*Lathyrus*.

Who inva-  
deth *Judea*,  
and over-  
throweth *Alexander* in  
battel.

5. He being dead, his wife *Salome* (called by the Greeks *Alexandra*) *Josephus Antiq. lib. 13. cap. 20.* set his brothers at liberty, of which *Jannæus* (or *Alexander*) was made King, excelling his brothers as in age so also in modesty. His father is said to have hired him, and sent him out of his fight to be educated in *Galile* presently after his birth, because being solicitous for his two eldest sons, and desiring of God to know his Successor, his likeness was represented to him in his sleep. Being seized of the Kingdom, he put to death one of his brothers that conspired against him, but the other who was contented with a private life he much honoured. Having settled his affairs at home, he went and besieged *Ptolemais*, which with *Gaza* onely of the Sea-Towns remained unconquered, besides the Tower of *Siraton* (since called *Casarea*) and *Dora*, which *Zolus* the Tyrant had got into his hands. At this time the two brothers *Antiochus Grypus* (called by *Josephus Philometor*) and *Antiochus Cyzicenus* in *Syria*, attending nothing but the destruction of each other, the Defendants had little hope of any succour from either of them, onely *Zolus*, who gaped after the Citie himself, gave them a little relief. There remaining no help to be hoped for, but either from *Egypt*, or *Cyprus* (whither *Lathyrus* had been expelled by his mother *Cleopatra*) they sent to him, desiring he would rescue them out of the hands of *Alexander*, giving him hopes, that he should not onely have them, but the Inhabitants of *Gaza* also on his side, and that *Zolus*, the *Sidonians* and others would come and help him. He being puffed up with these promises made what haste he could, but *Demanetrius* one of their Citizens perswaded them for reasons formerly recited to refuse his help, notwithstanding which he came on, and pitching his Tents near the Citie, seeing he had no Message from them, began to be discouraged. But *Zolus* and the *Gazaans* came shortly to him, and desired his help against *Alexander*, who waited their Territories, whereupon the siege was raised before *Ptolemais*, and *Alexander* departed home, where he attempted to overturn by policy the design of *Ptolomy*. He sent privily to *Cleopatra*, exciting her against him, but openly counterfeiting himself his Friend and Ally, promised him 300 Talents of silver to take off *Zolus* the Tyrant, and lay his Territories to his Dominions. At first he willingly imbraced his friendship and took *Zolus*, but then finding he had sent underhand to his mother, renounced it again, and went and besieged *Ptolemais*, which had shut the Gates on him, where leaving part of his Army to continue the siege, he departed thence to invade *Judea*. *Alexander* also understanding his purpose, raised an Army of 30000 (some say 80000) and went to meet him.

A. M. 3905.  
Ol. 170. ann. 1.  
V. C. 654.  
*Seleucid. 213.*  
*Alexand. 5.*  
*C. Marius 6.*  
*L. Valerius Flaccus*  
*co. Cons.*

6. He took *Asychis* a Town in *Galile*, setting upon it at unawares on the Sabbath, and then attempted to do the like by *Sephoris*, a place not far distant from the other; but was received with such resolution, as he lost many of his men, and arose from thence to go to meet *Alexander*, whom having found to have reached the River *Jordan*, he pitched his Tents on this side over against him. *Alexander* suffered him quietly to passe the River, foolishly supposing, that the victory would be more easie if the Enemy had it on his back, and so could not run away. For some time the victory was doubtfull, or seemed to incline to *Alexanders* party, till his Soldiers being beaten back by a reserve of fresh men, and having none to succour them were

*Idem Ibid. & cap. 21.*

But is driven  
back by his  
own mother.

Who entereth  
into League  
with *Alexan-  
der*.

He again in-  
vades *Cale-  
syrria*.

Hath *Gaza*  
betrayed to  
him.

were put to flight, and the Enemy gave the chase as long as he could hold a sword for weariness, so that 30000 (some have affirmed 50000) were slain in this battel. *Ptolomy* ranging up and down the Country, fell at length into some Villages, which seeing full of Women and Children, he commanded his Soldiers to kill them promiscuously, and cutting off their limbs to cast them into hot Caldrons, that a report going that his Army ate mans flesh, the Enemy might thereby be discouraged. But *Cleopatra* hearing that her son thus prospered in his undertakings, thought her self concerned therein, especially he being so near her, and therefore she came against him with Forces both by Land and Sea, over which she placed *Chloeas* and *Ananias*, both Jews. Her son thinking he had her at advantage, being now out of *Egypt*, halted thither, but she had left it so provided, as he could not do any thing according to his purpose, and was beaten back to *Gaza* by a party she sent after him. She having taken *Ptolemais*, *Alexander* thither came to her, where he was received as a person distressed by her adversary, and one who onely had refuge in her self. Some advised her to seize his Country into her hands, & not to suffer so many good Jews to be at the command and pleasure of one man: but *Ananias* counting it wickedness for him to dispose of a man received into friendship, and his own Kinman besides, of his estate, and withal thinking that thereby he should lose himself with the Jews in all places, he perswaded her to the contrary, and so she entered into a League with him at *Seythopolis*, a Citie of *Calesyrria*.

7. Hereby he being freed from all danger, both from mother and son, he presently made another expedition into *Calesyrria*, took *Gadara* after he had layen ten moneths before it, and *Amathus* a strong Castle upon the River *Jordan*, where *Theodorus* the son of *Zenon* had laid up his Treasure, who falling suddenly upon the Jews, cut off 10000 of them, and plundered the carriages. Yet he was not at all terrified herewith from setting upon *Raphia* and *Anthedon* (called afterwards *Agrippias* by *Herod*) which he took, and perceiving *Ptolomy* to be gone to *Cyprus*, and his mother into *Egypt*, being angry with them of *Gaza*, for calling him in to help them against him, he set upon the Citie, and wasted their grounds. In the mean time *Apollodorus* their General brake out into his Camp by night with 12000 men, and as long as night lasted had the better of it, but as soon as it was day the Jews uniting themselves, and encouraged after they saw *Ptolomy* was not come whom they expected, charged the Towns-men so fiercely as they slew 1000 men. For all this they would not yield, expecting the coming of *Aretas* the Arabian King; but the Citie was taken ere they could see his face, by the treachery of *Lysimachus* the brother of *Apollodorus*, whom he envying for being in so great grace with the people, murdered, and then getting a party close about him delivered up the place. *Alexander* upon his entry did no harm to the Inhabitants, but not long after gave Commission to his Soldiers to kill and slay all they would, who ranging up and down with fury and sword, as many of them lost their lives as they slew, the Defendants fighting courageously, and setting their houses on fire, lest they should become a prey to them; and some killed their Wives and Children with their own hands, rather than they should be led into Captivity. It hapned that at the same time that *Alexander* was let in, the Senate was met, which consisting of 500 men, he put all to the sword, and then razing the Citie, returned to *Jerusalem* a year after he first fate down before *Gaza*.

8. He was not at all affected by his Subjects, which they clearly manifested when the feast of Tabernacles came. For then as he was about to sacrifice they threw Oranges at him, and rail'd at him, upbraiding him with Captivity (that I suppose of his Grand-mother objected before to his Father) and crying out that he was not worthy of so high an Office as the high Priest-hood. Being enraged hereat he slew about 6000 of them; made up the place about the Altar with boards to defend himself for the time to come from the violence of the multitude, and furnished himself with Guards hired out of *Pisidia* and *Cilicia*. Then overthrew he the *Arabians*, and imposed Tribute upon

A. M. 3909.  
Ol. 171. ann. 1.  
V. C. 658.  
*Seleucid. 217.*  
*Alexand. 9.*  
*Cn. Domitius*  
*Enobarbus*  
*C. Cassio Longinus*  
*Co. Cons.*

*Idem Ibid. & De bello lib. 1. cap. 3.*

He is defeated  
by the Ara-  
bians, and hath  
Wars with  
his rebellious  
and sawcy  
Subjects.

the *Moabites* and *Galadites*, and levelled *Amathus* with the ground, *Theodorus* not once daring to ingage. But making another expedition against the *Arabians*, he was drawn into an ambush by *Obada* their King, and being thrust amongst the Craggy and precipitous Rocks by a multitude of Camels, he hardly escaped himself by flight to *Jerusalem*, his whole Army being cut off. Then were his Rebellious Subjects encouraged by this his overthrow to begin fresh stirrs, which continued six years, during which time they fought often, but he had the better, and destroyed no less than fifty thousand of them. This yet was no matter of joy to him thus to lose the strength of his own Kingdom; therefore he endeavoured to make up the breach, and by fair means to be reconciled to them. But being asked by him wherewith he should appease them, they answered, if he would kill himself, for scarce could they pardon him being dead. Then sent they to *Demetrius*, surnamed *Agerus*, inducing him with great promises to come and aid them, so that joyning with him they made up an Army of 3000 horse, and 40000 foot, their King having 26200 men in his Army. Both at the first laboured to draw their Enemies men to revolt, *Demetrius* those *Greeks* that were in pay with *Alexander*, and he the *Jews* which had called him in, but this succeeding on no part, they both resolved to end the controversy with dint of sword. *Demetrius* had the better of it (all *Alexanders* Auxiliaries being slain, though they behaved themselves most gallantly) but he was no whit better, but much worse for his victory. For the *Jews* taking pity of their King after this his defeat, about 6000 went over to him, which so discouraged *Demetrius*, that he thereupon retreated into his own Countrey.

9. They thenceforth waged War with him by themselves, but still had the worst of it, and many of them were slain. At length he forced the strongest up into a Town called *Bethoma*, which reducing, he took them in it, and brought them up to *Jerusalem*, where he caused 800 of them to be nailed to Crosses, and their Wives and Children to be slain in their sight, yet living, he beholding the Spectacle from an high place, banquetting, and dallying with his women. He was highly provoked with that stubborn people, who not onely brought him often into extream danger of life and estate, but not contenting themselves with what they could do by their own power, without calling in of foreign aid, had reduced him to that necessity, that he was glad to restore those places he had subdued in the Countrey of *Moab* and *Galad* to the *Arabians*; and for animadversion upon them they nicknamed him *Thracida*. About 8000 men got away by night, and passed all the time he lived, in Exile, and so ever after the Kingdom continued free from seditions. *Antiochus Dionysus* King of *Syria* intending to make an invasion of *Arabia* through his Kingdom, he getting knowledge of it, drew a Dirch from *Caparsale* (afterwards called *Antipatrius*) as far as the Sea of *Foppe*, to hinder him, strengthening it with a Bulwark, and Forts built here and there upon it where he expected him. But he burning these up easily got over, and then invading *Arabia*, was there slain in batrel by *Arcas* the King, who was made King of *Calesyria*, and making an inroad into *Judea*, overthrew *Alexander* at *Adida*, and forcing him to subscribe to his own conditions, then departed. Afterwards *Alexander* gathering together his Forces, went and took divers Towns with all the Valley of *Antiochus* (as it was called) and the Castle *Gamala*; and returned to *Jerusalem* at the end of three years, joyfully and honorably received then by his people for his valour; and indeed at this time the Nation, what by his own, and the diligence of his Predecessors, arrived at that height for dominion and glory abroad, that they enjoyed many Cities in *Syria*, *Idumaea*, *Phoenicia*, and other Countreys; whereof a Catalogue of most *Josaphus* hath left unto us, and amongst which *Polla* a Town of *Moab* was destroyed, because the Inhabitants refused to receive the *Jewish* Rites. *Alexander* towards his latter end fell to drunkenness, whereby he contracted a Quartan Ague, which held him three years; yet recovered he his ancient temper of mind, though not of body, and following on his Wars laid siege to *Ragala* beyond *Jordan*, in the

Idem ibid. &  
Antiq. lib. 13.  
cap. 22.

A. M. 3920.  
Ol. 173. ann. 4.  
V. C. 669.  
Seleucid. 238.  
Alexand. 20.

Idem Antiquit.  
lib. 13. cap. 23.  
& De bello  
lib. 1. cap. 4.

Antiquit. lib.  
13. cap. 23.

His death.

Countrey of the *Gerasens*, where being spent with the force of the disease, he died before the Walls of that place, in the 27th year of his reign, and of his age the 39. A. M. 3927. and the third of the 173 *Olympiad*, some 76 years before the birth of *Christ*.

His advice to  
his wife to  
gain the Pha-  
risees.

10. His wife *Alexandra* seeing his end approaching, bewailed much the condition of her self and children, being destitute of succour, and about to enter upon the government of a People, likely enough to be unward towards them, which bore him so much ill will. He advised her, that she might reign securely, first to keep close his death till that place should be gained, then going victoriously to *Jerusalem* to send for the chief of the *Pharisees*, whom both he and his Father had grievously offended, and thereby incurred the hatred of the People, and to gain their favour to shew them his body, and give them power of disposing of it at their pleasure, either as to bestow burial upon it, or cast it out without Sepulture, or otherwise to abuse it at their pleasure; and withall, to promise them to do nothing without their counsel and advice. The Castle being taken, she ordered her affaires according to his direction, whereby she purchased the love of the *Pharisees*, who going out and speaking to the People, related the great things done by *Alexander*, signified to them the losse of a just King, and so stirred up the multitude to mourning and lamentation, that hereby he procured him (even as he foretold her) a more honourable burial than else he could have had, and so sumptuous a funeral as any of his Predecessors obtained. *Alexander* left two sons by this his wife, *Hircanus* and *Aristobulus*; but to her left the management of the Kingdom. The elder of their sons was not at all made for government, but dull and heavy. She being in great grace with the People, because she ever had pretended to dislike the proceedings of her husband, made *Hircanus* the High-Priest, not so much out of respect to his birthright as his laziness, keeping the title of *Queen* and Governesse, though indeed all things were ordered at the will and pleasure of the *Pharisees*, whom the People were commanded to obey, and against whom all such constitutions as were made by *Hircanus* were taken away. Yet she took care for something her self, for she kept in pay a great number of foreigners, and so increased her power, that she became formidable abroad, and such a terror to the neighbouring petty Governours, that she constrained them to give Hostages.

Which she  
followeth and  
reigneth her  
self.

This raiseth  
stirrs betwixt  
the two fac-  
tions.

11. Yet no great matters were done abroad, but stirrs sufficient hapned within the Kingdom: for the *Pharisees* knowing no moderation in the prosecution of their own ambitious and envious desires, caused her to put to death those that had counselled her husband to deal cruelly with the 800 before mentioned, and they made away divers of them; till such time as those of most power and esteem being backed by *Aristobulus* (who complained of the too great power of his mother) came to Court, and there laid before her how unworthy it was, that they should suffer so much for their faithfulness to *Alexander*, and how joyful news it would be to *Arcas* the *Arabian* and others, to hear that the Kingdom was deprived of such men, who had done good service against him. They besought her, that if their adversaries were not satisfied with what blood they had spilt already, to give them leave to depart, and provide for their own safety, or if that could not be granted, to distribute them into several places of strength, that there they might live quietly and meanly, with which condition they would be contented, seeing Fortune so frowned upon the favourers of *Alexander*. They setting these things off with all advantage possible to gain compassion, and calling on the ghost of *Alexander*, *Aristobulus* also soundly reprehended his mother, but withall added, that they were justly punished, for permitting the chief power to a woman, as if no posterity had been left by his Father. She not knowing what to do, delivered into their hands all her Castles, except three, in which she had hoarded up her choicest goods, and shortly after sent her younger son against *Polomy Menamaus*, who troubled sorely *Damascus*; but he returned without having done any thing. A report went at the same time, that *Tigranes*

A. M. 3927.  
Ol. 175. an. 3.  
V. C. 676.  
Seleucid. 235.

Idem cap. 24.  
& de bello ut  
prius.

A. M. 3934.  
Ol. 177. an. 2.  
V. C. 683.  
Seleucid. 242.  
Alexandria 8.

graves the *Armenian* had invaded *Syria* with 50000 men, and would speedily come into *Judea*, which so terrified both *Queen* and *People*, that they sent Ambassadors to him then lying before *Ptolemais*; for *Celene* or *Cleopatra* then reigned in *Syria*, and had advised the Subjects to exclude him. He kindly received the Ambassadors, because come so far to tender him respect, and gave them encouraging words. And after he had taken *Ptolemais*, word being brought him, that *Lucullus* in his pursuit of *Mithridates the Great*, King of *Pontus*, was entered *Armenia*, and wasted the Country, he being son in Law to that King, and therefore taking his part, departed home with all Expedition.

*Aristobulus* her younger son assumeth the State of King.

12. After this, *Alexandra* falling grievously sick, *Aristobulus* judged that now or never was there a fit opportunity for him to do something, and left the *Pharisees* should get all into their hands, departed by night with one man in his company, and got the Castles within a short time into his power, which she had committed to their adversaries, even to the number of 22 within little more than fifteen dayes. This being known, she and all the *People* were struck with consternation, knowing that he would take the Supreme Power, and fearing they should dearly pay for what they had done to his familiars. They thought good then to secure his wife and children in the Castle adjoining to the Temple at *Jerusalem*. He increased in followers and in power daily, taking the State of a King upon him, and got an Army from the Mountain *Libanus*, *Trachonitis*, and the petty Princes thereto adjoining. The chief of the *Jews* therefore with *Hyrcanus* came to the *Queen*, beseeching her that some course might be entered into to prevent his attempts, who now had gotten so many convenient places. She with shortnesse of mind told them they might do whatsoever they thought meet and convenient for the Commonwealth, that they had liberty and strength enough both as to Soldiers, and money also the nervs of War; but as for her self, she could look to nothing, her body being now spent; and shortly after she breathed her last, having reigned nine years, and lived 73. A woman of wisdom, courage, and industry above her sex, and who in the whole course of her government could not be drawn (for the generality) from moderation, justice, and honesty. But whereas she looked more at the present than future times, seemed to side with the Enemies of her house, and to have made the Kingdom naked of fit Rulers, after her death the effects of her mal-administration was felt by her family, which came into such misfortunes, as it miscarried and fell from that power, wherein she had laboured and taken so much pains to establish it.

She dieth.

A. M. 3936.  
Ol. 177. an. 4.  
V. C. 685.  
Seleucid. 244.

*Aristobulus* by a battel dispossesseth his brother *Hyrcanus*.

13. For *Hyrcanus* having entered upon the High-Priesthood in the third year of the 177 Olympiad, *Q. Hortensius*, and *Q. Metellus Creticus* being *Consuls*, his brother *Aristobulus* now presently made Warre upon him. A battel being fought near *Jericho*, most of *Hyrcanus* his Soldiers revolted to the other, whereby he was forced to betake himself into that Castle where *Aristobulus* his wife and children were kept, and he now made his conditions to be suffered to live quietly a private life, remitting to his brother the Kingdom and Principality, changing estates with him, he removing into *Aristobulus* his private house, and *Aristobulus* to the Court, which covenant was solemnly sworn to, and confirmed in the Temple. But not long did this agreement hold, being broken by the means of *Antipater*, who being Governour at that time of *Idumæa*, feared the power of *Aristobulus*, and therefore endeavoured his destruction, both by stirring up *Hyrcanus* and the most powerful of the *Jews* against him. The famousnesse of *Herod* son of this *Antipater*, causeth his original to be more enquired into. *Nicolaus Damascus* to flatter the said *Herod*, derived his pedigree from the chief of the *Jews*, which returned from *Babylon*; but *Josephus* denieth that, and reports him to have been an *Idumæan* born. \* Others have delivered, that this *Antipater*, or *Anipat*, was the son of one *Herod* the Priest of *Apollo's* Temple at *Ascalon*, which City being invaded by the *Idumæan* chieftes, he was taken with other spoils out of the Temple, and whereas his father was

Lib. 14. c. 2.  
\* Vide Enjeb.  
Eccl. Hist. lib. 1.  
cap. 7.

not

*Antipater* stirreth up *Hyrcanus* to recover his just right.

And procurerth him to flee to *Aretas* King of *Arabia*.

Who besiegeth *Jerusalem*.

But is beaten off by *Scannus*.

Both brothers sent to *Pompey* to complain.

not able to ansom him, was brought up after the manner of the *Idumæans*, and became very familiar with *Hyrcanus* the High-Priest. *Josephus* saith, that he was constituted Governour of *Idumæa* by *Alexander* the King, and his wife, and then minding his own interest, entered into society with the *Arabians*, *Gazæans*, and *Ascalonites*, having purchased their friendship with great gifts. He professed to the *Jews* that it was unjust, that *Aristobulus* should be suffered to enjoy his usurped power, from which he had cast down his elder brother, and had deprived him of the prerogative of his age. The same things he often inculcated into *Hyrcanus*, adding withall, that his life was in danger, except he would in good time save himself by flight, for that the friends of his brother still consulted, how they might rid him out of the way, and establish the Kingdom upon the other.

14. He being a plain and well-meaning man, gave no great credit to these slanders; but the other ceased not for all that to invent fresh accusations of *Aristobulus*, as if he laid in wait for his life, and at length hardly obtained of him to flee to *Aretas* King of the *Arabians*, because his Country was nigh to *Judea*. *Antipater* went first to that King, to get a promise from him not to betray his suppliant into the hands of his enemies, which being obtained, he returned to *Jerusalem*, and thence not long after taking *Hyrcanus* out by night, by great journeys came to *Peira*, where *Aretas* kept his Court. Being very great with the *Arabian*, he laboured to perswade him to restore *Hyrcanus*, and with his importunity and gifts at length prevailed. *Hyrcanus* also promising, if by his means he should recover the Kingdom, to restore to him that Country with the twelve Towns, which his Father *Alexander* had taken from him. *Aretas* being drawn in by these promises, undertook this Expedition with 50000 men, and overthrew *Aristobulus*, who being first forsaken of his followers, who now fled again to his brother, retired to *Jerusalem*, where the *Arabian* and *Hyrcanus* besieged him in the Temple. The Feast of the Passover hapning during the siege, the Priests who only remained with *Aristobulus*, that the Sacrifices might not be omitted, bargained with the besiegers for beasts to be sold them for that service, but when they had let down the money from the walls, were derided by them. But this wickednesse the Historian observeth to have been punished with great storms and tempests, which procured extraordinary scarcity of Corn. In this mean while *Pompey* the Great being diverted by the War with *Tygranes* in *Armenia*, sent *Scannus* his Quæstor, as *Appian* calls him, into *Syria*, who coming straight to *Damascus* (taken then by *Metellus* and *Lollius*) halted without intermission into *Judea*. To him both parties sent, to desire his friendship and help, but though each promised as much as the other (*viz.* 400 Talents) yet he closed with *Aristobulus*, being counted more free and rich, and whose request was more easie to be fulfilled, in driving away the *Nabatheans*, than that of the other, to take the place which he held, being so strong both of it self and by defence.

*Josephus* ut *Yrius* cap. 3.

*Idem* cap. 4.

A. M. 3941.  
Ol. 179. an. 1.  
V. C. 690.  
Seleucid. 249.  
*Aristob.* 6.

*Idem* cap. 5.

15. Taking the money of *Aristobulus* he easily raised the siege, denouncing to *Aretas* that he should depart, except he would be declared an Enemy of the People of *Rome*; and then returned to *Damascus*. *Aristobulus* having gotten this advantage against his Enemies, followed them with a great Army, and joyning battel overthrew them at a place called *Pappyrus*, about 7000 of them being slain, and amongst the rest *Cephalio* the brother of *Antipater*. But not long after *Pompey* came to *Damascus*, and going about *Cælesyria*, thither were sent to him Ambassadors from several parts. *Aristobulus* sent him an excellent present, being a golden Urn of the value of 500 Talents, which afterwards was dedicated by him amongst other things in the Capitol at *Rome*. Shortly after were sent some to him from both the brothers; *Antipater* from *Hyrcanus*, and one *Nicodemus* from the other, to whom he answered, that coming to *Damascus* he would hear the cause. Thither was sent also an Ambassage of the *Jews* themselves, who declared they were unwilling to live under Kings, it being the custom of their Country to yield obedience to the Priest of their God; and that though these two were of that

that race of *Priests*, yet being desirous to change the Government into another form, they thereby intended to enslave them. *Hyrcanus* accused his brother of ambition and violence, in that he had gone about to deprive him of his birth-right, and the other excused himself by the necessity of the thing, left the Principality should have been transferred into another family by his heavy dullness, which rendered him incapable of employment. To *Hyrcanus* bare witness 1000 *Jews* which *Antipater* had brought for that purpose, but to *Aristobulus* a Company of effeminate Gallants, ridiculous to all for their fantastick bravery. *Pompey* having heard them, and disapproved of *Aristobulus* his violence, dismissed them both kindly at present, promising he would come to them as soon as he had inspected the affairs of the *Nabathæans*, bidding them to be quiet in the mean time, and using *Aristobulus* civilly, left he should stop up the passages. But hereby he won nothing upon him, for not expecting his promises, he went to *Delium*, and thence betook himself into *Judæa*.

Who fideth  
with Hyrcanus.

And follow-  
eth Aristobu-  
lus into Judæa.

Besiegeth his  
party in the  
Temple, and  
takeeth it.

16. *Pompey* being offended with this carriage of *Aristobulus*, took the Army which he had provided against the *Nabathæans*, and with other supplies out of *Syria*, and the Legions which were at his command followed him. Coming into *Judæa*, and hearing he was in a Castle near *Coreus*, he sent to him to come and speak him, which he obeyed, being advised by those about him to take heed of Warring with the *Romans*. When he had disputed the case with his brother, he returned to the Castle, and so he did divers times, willing to please *Pompey*, and pretending a willingness to obey him in all things, but providing still for the War, fearing the Principality might be bestowed upon *Hyrcanus*. *Pompey* in conclusion required him to deliver up into his hands the Garrisons, and wrote to the Governours of them for that purpose; which he obeyed also, but then presently departed to *Jerusalem* there to prepare for War. He followed him, and in the way heard how *Mithridates* of *Pontus* was killed by his son *Pharnaces*. His first nights quarters he took up at *Jericho*, where the Trees grew, that being cut distilled with the precious *Balsamum*; and the next day marching towards *Jerusalem*, *Aristobulus* forethinking what he had done, came and met him, offered him money, and referred himself to his pleasure, so that omitting War he would order things in a peaceable manner. He pardoning him, sent *Gabinus* to *Jerusalem* to fetch the money; but he being shut out by *Aristobulus* his Soldiers, returned empty handed, which *Pompey* taking in great disdain, committed *Aristobulus* to custody, and went himself to the Citie. There were two factions disagreeing from each other, that of *Aristobulus* brake down the bridge, which went out of the Citie to the Temple, and therein fortified themselves, whereupon the other let in the *Romans* into the Citie and Palace. Then did *Pompey* besiege the Temple, filled up with the great royl of his Soldiers the Ditch before it, and then with Engines brought from *Tyre* battered the Wall, taking occasion at the superstition of the *Jews*, who thought it sinfull to do any thing on the Sabbath-dayes, but defend themselves. The greatest Tower being battered down, the *Romans* broke in (*Cornelius Faustus* the son of *Sylla* first entering the breach) and then made slaughter of 12000. the *Priests* even then (as they had done all the siege) not neglecting to offer sacrifices, and amongst the rest *Abisalom* the Uncle, and father-in-law of *Aristobulus* was taken, being the youngest son of *Hyrcanus*. *Pompey* with many followers entred into the Temple, and looked on those things, which it was unlawfull for any but the *Priests* to behold; yet touched nothing he saw, so great was his abstinency. The Temple was taken as *Josephus* tells us, in the third moneth, and the fast day, which was kept in memory of *Jehoiakim's* burning the Roll, in the 179 *Olympiad*, *C. Antonius* and *M. Tullius Cicero* being Consuls, A. M. 3942. about 62 years before the birth of *Christ*.

17. *Pompey* restored the Priesthood to *Hyrcanus*, with the Government of the Countrey, \* (forbidding him the wearing of the Diadem) because amongst several other services he had done him during the siege, he had also kept

Idem cap. 6. &  
de bello lib. 1.  
cap. 5.

Lib. 14. cap. 7.

A. M. 3942.

Cap. 8.

Idem ibid.

\* Lib. 20. cap. 8.

He restoreth  
the Priest-  
hood to Hyr-  
canus forbid-  
ding him the  
Diadem, and  
carrieth Ari-  
stobulus and his  
sons to Rome.

His son Ari-  
stobulus esca-  
peth, and is  
defeated by  
Gabinus, and  
he himself al-  
so getteth a  
way from  
Rome.

He is taken  
and sent back  
by Gabinus.

Alexander his  
son stirreth,  
but is defeat-  
ed.

kept the Countrey-men from taking up Arms for *Aristobulus*. Then putting to death the Authors of the Sedition, he made the *Jews* Tributaries to the people of *Rome*, the Cities they held in *Calesyria* he took away, and subjected them to a Governour of their own, and the whole Nation much elevated then with successe abroad, he contracted within its own bounds; *Aristobulus* & his brother being the cause of all these troubles, of the losing of the Countreys liberty to the *Romans*, who within a short time exacted above 10000 Talents of it. *Pompey* having left *Syria* to the Government of *Scaurus*, with two Legions halted to *Rome*, leading *Aristobulus* bound thither with him, with two sons, and as many daughters. One of his sons escaped in the journey, and returned into *Judæa*, where he got together a considerable power, and awed his Uncle *Hyrcanus* unable to resist him, and who, when now he was about to repair the Walls of *Jerusalem*, demolished by *Pompey*, was forbidden to do it by the *Romans*. But within a while *Gabinus* was sent from *Rome* to Govern *Syria*. He undertook the War against him, now having 10000 foot, and 1500 horse at his Command, but for all these he overthrew him not far from *Jerusalem*, killing and taking 6000 of them, and then besieged him in the Castle *Alexandrium* whither he had fled. Leaving here sufficient strength for carrying on the siege, he went and visited the Countrey, causing divers Cities to be re-edified, and then returning, and more powerfully enforcing the siege, *Alexander* yielded himself, and the Castles, which by his mothers advice to *Gabinus* were demolished, lest they should nourish another War. *Gabinus* then went to *Jerusalem*, and established *Hyrcanus* in the Priesthood, but cantonized the Countrey into five parts, which he ordered to be governed by an Aristocratical way. One division was to be governed by an Assembly at *Jerusalem*, another by one at *Gadara*, a third at *Amathus*, a fourth at *Jericho*, and a fifth by one sitting at *Saphora* a Town of *Samaria*. The *Jews* very gladly imbraced this Government. But *Aristobulus* not long after escaped from *Rome*, and coming into *Judæa* ministered occasion of further trouble.

Idem lib. 14.  
cap. 10. &  
de bello lib. 1.  
cap. 6.

Idem ibid. &  
lib. 14. cap. 11.

A. M. 3949.  
Ol. 181. ann. 8.  
V. C. 698.  
Hyrcani 6.

18. Coming into his own Countrey, he presently found some who out of desire of innovation sided with him, amongst the which was *Pitholaus* the Governour of *Jerusalem*, who revolted to him with 1000 men. He first seized upon *Alexandrium*, and went about to re-edifie the Walls thereof, but knowing that *Gabinus* had sent against him three of his Officers, he departed toward *Macharus*, dismissing the unarmed multitude, and making a choice of 8000 men. The *Romans* following he gave them batrel, in which he fought stoutly, till his men being overpowered, 5000 of them were slain upon the place, almost 2000 fled to an Hill not far off, and a thousand with him, breaking through the Enemy to *Macharus*. There he thought to renew the War having fortified the place, but being besieged, and holding it out two dayes, he could no longer withstand, but was taken, and together with his son *Aristobulus*, (who it seems got away with him) sent back to *Rome*, where he was more narrowly looked to, but his sons, because *Gabinus* had so agreed with their mother, in consideration of the delivering up of the Castles formerly mentioned, were sent back by the Senate. Then prepared *Gabinus* an expedition against the *Parthians*, but passing over *Euphrates*, was hired by *Ptolomy Auletes* to reduce him into his Kingdom, as we said in the foregoing Chapter. In this voyage he used *Hyrcanus*, and especially *Antipater*, who furnished him with supplies, both of men and provisions, and prevailed with the *Jews*, inhabiting about *Pelusium*, to give him passage. But during his absence *Alexander* the son of *Aristobulus* made work enough for him after his return; for having gotten together a great multitude of *Jews*, he resolved to cut off all the *Romans* which inhabited those parts. *Gabinus* sent *Antipater* before to see if he could persuade the people to be quiet, and he effected it with many; but 30000 remaining still with *Alexander*, he came out and gave batrel to the *Romans*, near the Mountain *Itabyrius*, wherein he lost 10000 men. *Gabinus* victoriously thence marched to *Jerusalem*, where settling things according to the pleasure of *Antipater*, he went against the *Nabathæans* whom he overthrew in one batrel, and dis-

K k k k

dis-

dismissed *Mithridates* and *Orsanes*, two noble *Paribians* who had fled unto him, pretending an escape. Then returning to *Rome*, he left his Province to *Crassus* his Successor.

*Crassus* his sacrilege and punishment.

19. *Crassus* intending an expedition against the *Paribians*, came through that Countrey, and spoiled the Temple not onely of those 2000 Talents which *Pompey* had spared, but of all the Gold found there besides, which amounted to the sum of 8000 Talents more, though *Eleazar* the Treasurer had given him a beam of Gold weighing 900 pounds, and he had taken an Oath therewith to be satisfied, and abstain from the money. But going against the *Paribians*, he received the reward of his Sacrilege and Perjury, being slain. *Cassius* flying into *Syria* defended it from the incursions of the Enemy, and being come to *Tyre* visited also *Judea*, where at the first onser he took *Tarichæa*, and therein 30000 Captives, which he laid away, and slew *Pitholans* the favourer of *Aristobulus* at the desire of *Antipater*, who now grew very considerable, having entred into Confederacy and Alliance with divers Princes, and especially with the *Arabian*, out of whose Countrey he had married a wife of noble extraction, by name *Cyprius*, on whom he begot four sons, *Phasaelus*, *Herod*, *Joseph*, and *Pheroras*, and a daughter named *Salome*, which sons he also sent into *Arabia*, there to be kept whilest he was engaged in the War with *Aristobulus*. When *Pompey* was driven beyond the *Ionian* Sea, and *Cæsar* had got *Rome* into his power, he set *Aristobulus* at liberty, and with two Legions sent him back into *Syria*, hoping that all that Countrey, and round about *Judea*, might be brought under by him; but he was prevented in his journey, being poisoned by those of *Pompey's* party, and lay in his own Countrey for some time unburied, being Embalmed, till by *Antony* he was sent to be buried in the Sepulchre of his Ancestors. This expedition proved fatal, not onely to himself, but his son *Alexander* also, who was beheaded by *Scipio* at *Antioch* by order from *Pompey*, being first arraigned before the judgement seat for his offences committed against the *Romans*. His brother *Antigonus* with his sisters were sent for by *Ptolomy*, the son of *Mnæus* (who held *Chalcis* under the Mountain *Libanus*) and courteously entertained. For *Philippus* his son being his Messenger, fell in Love with one of the sisters, named *Alexandra*, and married her, but his passion overcoming both reason and nature, he killed his son, and took the Lady to himself. By this time *Pompey* was slain; and then *Antipater* betook himself to *Cæsar*, as his interest led him, and by his great industry purchased his favour.

Cap. 13. & de bello ut prius cap. 7.

A. M. 3957. Ol. 183. ann. 1. V. C. 706. Hyrcani 16.

20. *Cæsar* varring with young *Ptolomy* in *Egypt*, after the death of *Pompey*, *Antipater* joyned with *Mithridates* of *Pergamus*, who went down thither with supplies; for whereas being hindred from coming to *Pelusiūm*, he was forced to stay about *Ascalon*, he perswaded the *Arabians* to help him, brought a supply of 3000 *Jews* himself, and procured divers Princes in *Syria*, as *Ptolomy* of *Libarius*, *Jamblichus*, and others, to send their men. Then at *Pelusiūm* did he special service, being the first that broke down the vvall and entred; and whereas the *Jews* inhabiting the Countrey of *Onias* hindred them from going any further, he prevailed with them not to oppose, and more than that to furnish the Army with Provisions. At the battel at *Delta* he recovered the battel almost lost by *Mithridates*, and afterwards behaved himself very gallantly for *Cæsar*, having received many wounds as the tokens of his valour. Some have delivered that *Hyrcanus* himself went down into *Egypt*, and there deserved well of *Cæsar*, but whether it was so or not he endeavoured to requite them both. For, *Antigonus* the son of *Aristobulus* coming with a great complaint to him against them (whereas rather in policy he should have complained of the putting to death his father and brother through the procurement of *Pompey* and his faction) he declined his requests upon the reply of *Antipater*, confirmed *Hyrcanus* in the Priesthood, offered to *Antipater* what Government he would desire, and made him *Procurator* of *Judea*, gave him leave to rebuild the Walls of the Citie thrown down by *Pompey*, and caused these grants to be registred in the Capitol, and seconded them with divers decrees, both of himself and the Senate

*Antipater* his great services for *Cæsar*.

Who rewarded both him and *Hyrcanus*.

De bello ut prius cap. 8. & lib. 14. Capp. 16. 17.

nate in favour of him and the *Jews*. *Antipater* then bringing *Cæsar* on his journey as far as the borders of *Syria*, returned and built up the walls, and going about the Countrey by threatnings and other policy, contained the People in obedience, otherwise ready to rebel. And whereas he saw *Hyrcanus* heavy and dull, and unfit to manage the affaires of Government, he made his son *Phasaelus* (who also commanded the Army) Captain of *Jerusalem*, and the Countrey adjacent, and committed *Galilee* to the custody of his second son *Herod*, being now extream young, as not exceeding fifteen years, as our Author telleth us, except, as is most probable, that number be mistaken for 25.

A. M. 3959. Ol. 183. an. 3. V. C. 708. Hyrcani 18.

*Herod* the son of *Antipater* his notable forwardness.

21. *Herod* even at the very first gave testimony of what spirit and height of courage he would be, finding out presently occasion for the exercise of it. For at that time there being one *Ezechias* a notable Thief, who with a great company of followers used to infest the Countrey of *Syria*, he took and slew him with many others of that rout, which thing so endeared him to the *Syrians*, that his name was sung throughout the Towns and Villages, Peace being by his means restored as it were unto the Countrey; and the People unto their possessions; and thereby became he known to *Sexius Cæsar* the President, and kinsman to the *Diakor*. *Phasaelus* his brother was hereby much stirred up to emulation, and most courteously behaved himself to those of *Jerusalem*, so that their Father was honoured by the People like a King, and yet notwithstanding preserved his fidelity intire to *Hyrcanus*. But divers of the chief of the *Jewish* Nation, understanding how he flourished both upon his own account and that of his sons, inwardly fretted thereat, and the rather, because he made use of *Hyrcanus* for his own ends, as they conceived, having contracted friendship with the great ones, and *Rome*, and perswaded him to send them money, yet getting to himself the credit and profit of the gift. But especially the forward and bold disposition of *Herod* affrighted them, whom they looked upon as a young and growing Tyrant, and therefore they grievously inveighed against *Antipater* to *Hyrcanus*, as one who carried away all the profit of the Kingdom, an empty name being onely left to himself, and laboured to bring him into suspicion, hinting, that ere long the vizard would be taken off, and he would dearly pay for the negligence of his own affaires. This they enforced by that bold act of *Herod's* killing *Ezechias*, and the rest, in contempt of the Laws, which suffer no man, how wicked soever, to be put to death, till he first be cast by the sentence of his Judges. *Hyrcanus* though slow enough to believe any thing, yet having these things often sounding in his ears, together with the lamentations of the mothers of those that were slain, grew something moved, and summoned *Herod* up to *Jerusalem*, to give an account of his actions before the Judges.

A. M. 3961. Ol. 184. an. 1. V. C. 710. Hyrcani 20. C. Jul. Cæsar 5. M. Antonio Coll.

He is summoned to Jerusalem to answer for killing *Ezechias* a thief.

He appeareth, but with a guard,

22. *Herod* having settled the affairs of *Galilee*, appeared, but with a guard, as his Father had written to him; yet with a moderate one, left taking care for his own safety, he should affright *Hyrcanus*. *Sexius Cæsar* hearing of it, threateningly wrote to *Hyrcanus* for to quit him, which he was inclinable enough unto, loving him as his own son; and when he appeared to answer, no body durst accuse him, except one *Samæus* bolder than the rest, who inveighed against him for the manner of his appearance, not suitable at all to humility or guilt. The meeting being encouraged by his words, had certainly condemned him, had not *Hyrcanus* foreseen it, and sent him out of the way on purpose, having put off the determination to the next day. *Herod* retired therefore to *Damascus*, and afterwards visiting *Sexius Cæsar*; and settling his affaires, plainly gave out, that he would no more appear thought he were cited, at which they at *Jerusalem* fretted, and fought to perswade *Hyrcanus* that all this tended to his ruine, and indeed he was convinced of it, yet could he do nothing, for that innate dulnesse which evermore accompanied him, though shortly after hearing that *Herod* having purchased of that *Cæsar* the Government of *Cæsaryria*, he feared he would imploy his power against him. And indeed so it hapned; for disdaining now that he had been commanded to come and plead his cause, he marched towards *Jerusalem* with

Idem ibid. Ant. et de bello.



an Army, and if his Father and Brother had not met him, and shewed him the uncertainty of the event of War, and that he was rather beholding to Hyrcanus for discharging him, than had reason to be angry with him, for being as it were forced by others to summon him up, he had made mischief enough: But being prevailed with by them, he thought it was sufficient for him to have made a shew of his power, and so retreated. About this time *Cecilius Bassus* in favour of *Pompey* made away *Sexius Caesar*, and got his Army to submit to him; but divers of *Caesar's* party came to revenge his kinsman's death, and a War ensued about *Apamea*, whither *Antipater*, mindful of the benefits received from *Caesar*, sent his sons with aid unto his Captains. The Warre being drawn out in length, *Marcus*, (or rather *Lucius Statius Marcus*) was sent to succeed *Sexius*, and in the mean time *Julius Caesar* was slain in the Senate house, which as it bred disturbance and trouble to the whole *Roman Empire*, so neither did *Judea* escape without it's portion thereof.

*Appian de bello civili lib. 2. Patere lib. 2. cap. 69.*

*Josephus Antiquit. l. 14. c. 18. & 19. & de bello l. 1. c. 9.*

Grievous exactions by *Cassius*.

*Antipater* poisoned by *Malichus*.

23. A civil War ensuing, the chief Captains on both sides running up and down to provide themselves for it, *Cassius* one of the conspirators came into *Syria*, where raising the siege at *Apamea*, he drew both *Murens* and *Bassus* to his own party, and then conquering the Country, levied men, and exacted grievous contributions: But especially he afflicted *Judea*, laying a tax of above 700 Talents of Silver upon it. *Antipater* committed the raising of the money to his two sons and others, whereof *Herod* first of all raised that which was imposed upon *Galilee*, and brought it, thinking it good policy to purchase the favour of the *Romans* at the cost of others. Divers Cities with their Inhabitants were sold to make up the sum, amongst which were principally, *Gophna*, *Emaus*, *Lydia*, and *Thamna*; and *Cassius* having done this, was further so enraged, that he had slain *Malichus* also one of the Collectors, had not *Hyrcanus* by the means of *Antipater*, stopped his mouth with 100 Talents of his own money. But *Antipater* was badly rewarded by *Malichus*, for after the departure of *Cassius* he laid in wait for his life, thinking, that he being removed out of the way, the greater security would happen to the affairs of *Hyrcanus*. *Antipater* getting knowledge of his intention, passed over *Jordan*, to provide himself to revenge this treachery, but he being a most crafty dissembler, dissembled the matter with oaths to his two sons, that they reconciled him to their Father, who by his intercession then saved him, when *Murens* the President of *Syria* upon the report of his attempting new matters, had resolved his death. But he preserved him to his own destruction. For his son *Herod* for his good service being made Procurator of *Syria* by *Cassius*, with promise also of the Kingdom of *Judea*, if he got the better, *Malichus* then so feared him, that he resolved to make him away, which within a short time he effected; procuring him to be poisoned by *Hyrcanus* his brother, and getting a Company of Soldiers to him, invaded the Government of the City. This was the end of *Antipater*, a right good man, a great States-man, and one who had preserved his fidelity to his Prince, and his care to his Country, before his own private or ambitious purposes.

*A. M. 3962. of 184. a. d. V. c. 751. Hyrcani 21.*

*Idem ibid.*

24. His sons having knowlege of his death, *Herod* would have revenged it out of hand, and by open force, but *Phasaelus* thought good rather to circumvent the murderer by some way of his own, left a civil Warre should ensue, and therefore seemed to be satisfied with *Malichus* his flat denial of the thing, and set himself about building of a monument for his Father. *Herod* visiting *Samaria*, and seeing it much out of order, laboured what he might to cherish it, and sat in Judgement, deciding the controversies of the People, and then presently came up to *Jerusalem* to the Feast with a Company of Soldiers at his heels. *Malichus* being exceedingly afraid of his coming, perswaded *Hyrcanus* not to permit him to enter, and he accordingly forbade him to approach so holy a solemnity with a prophane rout of strangers; but he notwithstanding this, got in by night, and so affronted *Malichus* that he betook him to his old trade of dissembling, weeping to him bitterly for the death of *Antipater* as his kind friend, yet in the mean time providing

viding himself of a guard, so that for a time it was thought fit by *Herod's* friends, not to enquire his death, but for the shunning of suspicion to treat him fairly; yet did he signify by letters his Father's death to *Cassius*, who willed him again to revenge it, and gave order to the Tribunes then lying at *Tyre* to assist him in his just endeavours. *Cassius* not long after having taken *Laodicea*, they went and carried him crowns and money, and then *Herod* thought to be even with him; but he suspecting something at *Tyre*, out of desperation cast higher matters than ever in his head. For his son being kept hostage in that City, he resolved to go in, and carry him out by stealth into *Judea*, and then, when *Cassius* should be engaged in the War against *Antony*, to solicit that Country to revolt, and get to himself the Principality, and cast out *Hyrcanus*. But the cunning of *Herod* prevented him, who being aware of his project, invited him and *Hyrcanus* to supper, and then sent to the Tribunes to come out to meet him, who remembering the commands of *Cassius*, encountering him on the shoar, slew him there. *Hyrcanus* was so astonished with fear at the fact, that he was not himself, and scarce recovering his sense, asked *Herod* who had slain *Malichus*; to whom one of the Tribunes answered, the command of *Cassius*, at which he replied, that *Cassius* had preserved both him and his Country, by cutting off him that plotted the destruction of both. Whether he spake this seriously, or approved the thing out of fear, is uncertain; but thus *Herod* revenged his Father's death upon *Malichus*.

*Antiq. ut prius, cap. 20.*

His son *Herod* revengeth his death,

Falleth sick,

His acts after his recovery.

25. *Cassius* being gone out of *Syria*, there hapned a great stir at *Jerusalem* by means of *Felix*, who being left there Commander, the Soldiers attempted violence upon *Phasaelus*, intending by his death to revenge that of *Malichus* upon his brother *Herod*. It hapned that at that time *Herod* living at *Damascus* with *Fabius* the Roman Captain, was sick, and unable to come and help his brother, but he by himself was too hard for *Felix*, and forced him into a Tower, whence he let him go with his life, and then expostulated much with *Hyrcanus*, objecting ingratitude to him for taking *Felix* his part, and suffering the brother of *Malichus* to seize upon divers Castles; for now he held many, and *Massada* amongst the rest, the strongest of all. But *Herod* after his recovery regained them all from him, suffering him to depart quietly out of *Massada* upon his desire. *Antigonus* the son of *Aristobulus* about this time bribed *Fabius*, that he suffered him to get himself an Army, and *Ptolomy Minneus* because of the former affinity betwixt them, made him his son in Law, *Marion* also, who by *Cassius* his means had subjected *Tyre*, and divers places of *Syria*, came in to his help, having seized upon three Castles in *Galilee*, but *Herod* also going against them, had them all surrendered by the *Tyrians*, whom he dismissed very graciously, out of respect to their City, and then marched against *Antigonus*, whom being scarcely entered the Coasts of *Judea* he overthrew. Returning to *Jerusalem* he was received very honourably, not onely by the People, but *Hyrcanus* also, who had of late received him into his family, contracting him to *Mariamne* the daughter of *Alexander*, the son of *Aristobulus*, and his own niece by his daughter; by which wife he was made a father of three sons and two daughters; having on a former wife (and his own Country-woman) named *Doris*, begotten *Antipater* his eldest son. But now within a while *Cassius* and *Brutus* were overthrown at *Philippi* by *Caesar* and *Antony*, of whom the former returning into *Italy*, the other came over into *Asia*, which gave occasion to new stirs in *Judea*.

*Idem ibid. & de bello lib. 1. c. 10.*

*Antiquit. l. 14. cap. 21.*

Stirs in *Judea* upon the approach of *Antony*.

26. *Antony* being come into *Bythynia*, Ambassadors were sent to him thither from all Countries, and amongst the rest came some from the chief of the *Jews*, to complain of *Phasaelus* and *Herod*, who usurped, as they said, all the power, an empty title being onely left to *Hyrcanus*. *Herod* went to defend himself, and so prevailed with his money, that his accusers were never heard. *Antony* having reached *Ephesus*, an Ambassie was dispatched to him in the name of *Hyrcanus*, and the whole Nation, desiring that all Captives which *Cassius* had carried away out of *Judea*, might be set at liberty by

*cap. 22.*

by his Letters published throughout the Province, which he readily granted out, and as he was travelling into Syria, Cleopatra met him in Cilicia, to whose allurements wholly giving up himself, at the same time came too of the most considerable of the Jews to complain again of the two brothers, whom Messala defended, and Hyrcanus himself stood by to assist. Their cause being heard at Daphne, Antony demanded of Hyrcanus whether part was fitter to Govern, who answering in commendation of Herod, he, who formerly loved the young men for their fathers sake with whom he had contracted familiarity when he served in Egypt under Gabinus, constituted them both Tetrarchs, and committed to them the Government of the Jews. To this purpose he wrote Letters, and cast fifteen of their adversaries into prison, and had put them to death, had not Herods intercession prevailed for them; and yet were they not discouraged so as to desist. For instead of 100. a thousand returned in Ambassage, and stayed for him at Tyre, but his favour being further purchased by the two brothers, he commanded the Magistrate of that place to animadvert upon them, and assist Herod in obtaining the principality. Herod going to them as they stood before the Citie on the shore, advised them to withdraw themselves, and Hyrcanus also laid before them in how great danger they were if they should go on in their purpose: But they contemning their advice were presently fallen upon out of the Town by their own Countrey-men and the Inhabitants, and part of them being slain, and some taken, the rest returned. And the people clamoring exceedingly against Herod, Antony was so far incensed, as he caused those whom he had before committed to custody to be slain.

Which end in the promotion of Herod, and his brother Phasaelus.

The Parthians procured by Antigonus the son of Aristobulus invade Judea.

27. A year or two after, Pacorus son to the King of Parthia, and Barzabarnes, one of his great Officers, seized upon Syria, at such time as Ptolemy Menneus dying, Lysanias his son succeeded him. Antigonus the son of Aristobulus bargained with the Parthians for 1000 Talents, and 500 women, to settle him in the Kingdom of Judea, and kill Herod with his friends; and though he could not perform the conditions, yet lead they down an Army to re-establish him. Pacorus came down to the Sea-Coasts, where he was excluded by the Tyrians; but they of Sidon and Ptolemais giving him entrance, he sent a party of horse under the conduct of one Pacorus the Kings Butler into Judea to make discoveries, and if it could be, to help Antigonus, with whom the Jews inhabiting Carmel joyning, he hoped by this force to seize upon a part of the Countrey called Dryma, and divers still coming in pierced to Jerusalem. The number still increasing, they attempted the Palace, but the two brothers with their friends opposing themselves, beat them back into the Temple, and then sent some Soldiers into certain houses near adjoyning to defend them, which the people taking notice of, set them on fire, and therein burnt them alive, being unable to shift for themselves; which injury Herod a little after revenged upon his adversaries, of whom he slew many upon a Sally. Daily skirmishes thence ensued, Antigonus his party staying for the feast of Pentecoste, expecting then a great multitude of people to come up from all parts, and accordingly at the day many thousands being assembled, what with Arms, and what without, they overran all, except the Palace which still Herod and his brother Phasaelus kept with a few Soldiers, with whom also issuing out into the Suburbs, having there fought most manfully, he put many thousands to flight. Shortly after, Antigonus procured Pacorus the Parthian with a few horse-men to enter Jerusalem, under pretence of composing the difference, but indeed to establish him in the power, who being kindly met by Phasaelus, and entertained, he persuaded him to go in ambassage to Barzabarnes, thereby intending to entrap him. He suspecting nothing, went contrary to the mind of his brother, who advised him rather to destroy the perfidious Barbarians, and with him went also Hyrcanus (an unheard-of employment for the Prince himself) under conduct of Pacorus.

28. As soon as they came into Galilee, they were met by the Governours of the Towns there, and Barzabarnes entertained them very civilly, and gave

cap. 23.

Idem de bello ut prins cap. 11. & Antiquit. cap. 24.

Hyrcanus and Phasaelus going to Barzabarnes are perfidiously captivated.

gave them gifts, but presently sought how he might entrap them. Phasaelus was lodged with his Train near the Sea, where hearing that Antigonus had made such a bargain with the Parthians, as is above related, began to suspect them, and then he had also intelligence, that they would be laid in wait for by night, and be privately secured; and certainly they had been taken ere now, but that there was great expectation, that the Parthians which Pacorus had left at Jerusalem, should take Herod, and thereupon the thing was deferred, lest coming to his ears, he should have notice of their Treachery, and thereby escape it. Shortly after, his fears were confirmed when he saw a Guard coming to secure him, whereupon there were not wanting some that advised him to mount, and save himself by flight, especially one Osilius, who had the secret revealed to him by Saramalla the most wealthy amongst the Syrians, who now also voluntarily offered him ships to save himself. But he refused to forsake Hyrcanus and his brother, and going to Barzabarnes, blamed him for harbouring such designs, told him, if he wanted money, he might have more from him than Antigonus, and how base a thing it was to betray Ambassadors, innocent, and who had been drawn out upon the score of his own faith. The Parthian swore there was no such matter, and that he troubled himself with vain suspicions, and presently got him out to Pacorus; but he being gone, straightway hands were laid on Hyrcanus, and Phasaelus, in vain upbraiding the Barbarians with perjury; an Eunuch also was dispatched to Jerusalem to get Herod by some means or other out of the Walls, and apprehend him. Phasaelus had sent to make known his condition to him, but the Messengers were intercepted, which he having knowledge of, had a conference with the Chief of the Parthians then at Jerusalem, who by all means laboured to get him out of the Palace. But he suspecting them, and giving no credit at all to their words, presently heard for certain of his brother's Captivity, and seeing them in doubt what to do against him, resolved to shift for himself, and taking the opportunity of the evening, departed with his relations that night, unknown to the Enemy.

Herod besieged at Jerusalem goeth forth.

He goeth through Idumea to Petra in Arabia for aid.

29. He travelled towards Idumea, whither at length he came to Massada the Castle; but as his departure was sad, so his journey was as dangerous, being pursued by the Parthians, whom following behind his Train he kept off, and was opposed also more violently by the Jews, over whom yet he got a victory, and afterwards in memorial of it built a sumptuous Palace in the same place. Once his mothers litter was overturned in the way, which she being brought into danger of death, and he fearing the Enemy might overtake them, he drew out his sword to kill himself, and had done it, but that the next to him interposing themselves hindred it, shewing him how it was not the part of a valiant man to forsake others, by setting himself at liberty, as they termed it. After he came to the Borders of Judea, his brother Joseph met him, and persuaded him to dismisle the most of his followers, because the Castle could not harbour them, which he did to the number of 9000 and above, giving them money to bear their charges, and taking the ablest Soldiers, whom he had culled out from amongst the rest, with his relations, to the number of 800. he marched on to Massada, and there placed them, where no sort of Provisions was wanting; but he himself held on for Petra in Arabia, hoping of that King, who was such a friend of his father, to obtain help for the recovery of his brothers liberty. But the Parthians after his departure from Jerusalem plundered the Citie and Palace, and wasted the Countrey, in which they destroyed Marisa a wealthy Town, and so reducing Antigonus into Judea, delivered up Hyrcanus and Phasaelus into his hands, who was grievously troubled that the women had escaped, which he intended together with the money to have given to the Parthians.

30. Then fearing that Hyrcanus by the favour of the people might again be restored to the Kingdom, he either cut or bit off his ears, making him thereby incapable of the Priesthood, which by the Law was not given, but to one of an entire body. But Phasaelus knowing he was destined to death, for

A. M. 3965. Ol. 185. ann. 1. V. C. 714. Hyrcanus 24. Ante Christum 38. Cn. Domitio Calvus 2. C. Asinio Pollio 2. Coss.

cap. 25.

*Antigonus* having received *Hyrcanus* and *Phaselus*, depriving the former of his ears, and *Phaselus* dashed out his own brains.

for that he could not otherwise kill himself for his bonds dashed out his brains against a stone. It was reported, that being grievously wounded in his head, *Antigonus* caused poyson to be put into it instead of salve; and that he fearing before his death that his brother *Herod* had escaped, underwent it cheerfully, as leaving behind him a revenger of it. And he certainly knowing nothing thereof, laboured exceedingly to prevent it, going to *Malchus* the *Arabian*, whom he knew to be obliged to his family, hoping of him to get money, either upon free gift or trust, and resolving to give 300 Talents for his brothers Ransom, whose son also a Child of seven years old he carried with him to leave as a pledge. But the *Arabian* being perswaded by his great ones to retain the money owing, with the goods which *Antipater* had deposited with him, sent some to meet him, and command him to depart from his borders, and after he was gone repented of what he had done, and sent after him, but too late. For he was now almost got into *Egypt*, hearing of his brothers death in the way, where *Cleopatra* kindly entertained him, intending to use him in her Wars; but nothing could hinder him from hastening to *Rome*, though in the Winter season, and though great stirrs were reported to be in *Italy*, whither also he came, though with great danger, for the difficulty of Navigation.

Being rejected by the *Arabians*, he went to *Rome*.

31. He came thither when not long before there had been an agreement made betwixt *Antony* and *Cesar* the *Triumvirs* (the former having married *Octavia* sister to the later) and another betwixt them two and young *Pompey*, who then held *Sicily*, which was a time convenient enough for his affairs. He made his application to *Antony*, of whose favour he had formerly tasted, recounting to him the whole story of the *Parthians* overrunning *Judea*, of his brothers death, and the misery of his family now besieged in a Castle, and how through these Tempests both at Sea and Land, he had ventured to come to him as his onely harbour and refuge; and withall was not sparing in the offering of money to him, in case he could procure him to be declared King of *Judea*. Pity wrought something with *Antony* (being backed with the memory of that friendship which had passed betwixt *Antipater* and himself) the money more, and to these being superadded an hatred of *Antigonus*, whom he accounted a turbulent man, and one that bore a mind full of hatred towards the *Romans*, he much inclined to favour him. *Cesar* also, partly for that *Antipater* had done good service for his adoptive father in *Egypt*, and because he was willing to gratifie *Antony*, was ready to do him all good Offices, being also inclined to favour him out of a particular phancy he had to the man for his courage. The Senate therefore being called, first *Messala*, and then *Atratinus* commended him to the fathers, relating his father's, and then his own merits towards the Commonwealth; and withall they accused *Antigonus*, and inveighed against him as an Enemy, for that he had not onely born himself as such heretofore, but now of late in the calling in of the *Parthians*. Herewith the Senate being offended, *Antony* then declared to them that it would much conduce to the carrying on of the *Parthian* War, which was now depending, if *Herod* should be King; so that without any more to do, he was so declared by the unanimous consent of all, and then being accompanied into the Capitol by *Cesar* and *Antony* on each hand, the Consuls going before, there sacrificed, and according to the of himself and custom, laying up the decree of the Senate, was feasted by *Antony*. Thus obtained he the Kingdom with the wonder of himself as well as others, through the especial friendship of *Antony*, having ever feared that the *Romans* would never consent he should have that honour which was not wont to be bestowed, but upon a royal race, and therefore he intended to have sued for it, not for himself but for *Alexander*, brother to *Mariamne* his wife; and this increased the wonder, that within seven dayes he should be dispatched and dismissed out of *Italy*. But thus obtained he the Sovereignty of *Judea*, A. M. 3965. in the first of the 185 Olympiad, *Domitius Calvinus* the second time, and *C. Asinius Pollio* being Consuls, some 37 years before the birth of *Christ*.

Where to the wonder both of himself and others, he declared King of *Judea*.

A. M. 3965.

Cap. 26.

32. Du-

32. During his absence, *Antigonus* laid close siege to the Castle of *Massada*, where he left his relations, abounding with all sorts of provisions; onely water was wanting; so that *Joseph* had thoughts of flying with 200 men into *Arabia*, the King whereof he had now heard to have repented of the rejecting of his brother. But this was prevented by a shower which fell by night, as if sent on purpose from Heaven for their relief, whereupon they were so heartened, as to fall upon the besiegers, whereof they cut off many. In the mean while *Venidius* the Roman General being sent into *Syria* to expel the *Parthians* thence, after their retreat, came into *Judea*, pretending to help *Joseph*, but indeed with intentions to fleece *Antigonus* of a round sum of money, which he did, pitching his tents nigh to *Jerusalem*, which being done, he drew off the greater part of his forces, and left *Silo* with a party behind him, lest the fraud should be understood, whom *Antigonus* was also to pacifie till such time as the *Parthians* could come and help him. But in the mean time *Herod* landed at *Ptolemais*, and having got together no mean company, hastened through *Galilee* against him. To *Silo* and *Venidius* *Antony* had sent expresse order by *Gellius*, to place him in the Kingdom. *Venidius* was then busie in composing differences amongst the Cities, which the incursion of the *Parthians* had made: *Silo* was in *Judea*, but corrupted by *Antigonus*. Yet *Herod*'s Forces increasing, he marched towards *Massada* to relieve his friends, which he accomplished, having first taken *Joppe* in his way, notwithstanding the lying in wait against him by *Antigonus*, after which having taken in also the Castle *Resa*, he went up to *Jerusalem*, accompanied by *Silo*'s Soldiers, and many Citizens affrighted at his power. Laying siege to the City, both he and *Antigonus* laboured to draw over the contrary parties to themselves, and though *Herod* could not at all move the Townsmen, yet it appeared that *Silo* was corrupted; for he suborned some of his Soldiers to begin a mutiny, requiring to be led into a place more plentiful of provisions, which *Antigonus* had all cut off; but *Herod* took such care for the bringing in of new, that his plot was frustrated, and taking out a party of ten Companies (half *Jews* and half *Romans*) went and took *Jericho*, forsaken of its Inhabitants, which he left to be rifled to the *Romans*. Then returning, he sent down the rest of their Army into their Winter quarters, which he appointed in *Idumaea*, *Galilee*, and *Samarina*. *Antigonus* also obtained of *Silo* to have part of his men received into *Lydda*, thereby endeavouring to curry favour with *Antony*; so that the *Romans* lay idle all this season in places abounding with all necessaries.

He besiegeth *Jerusalem*.

33. *Herod* was not idle, but sending his brother *Joseph* into *Idumaea* with 1000 Foot and 400 Horse, went down into *Galilee* to reduce some places there held by *Antigonus*; and within a short while brought all the Country into obedience, except those men that lurked in caves, and then dividing to his Soldiers 150 drachmes a man, placed them also in their Winter quarters. *Silo* a little after came to him, being cast off by *Antigonus*, who had ordered the Inhabitants to take all necessaries with them, and the into the mountains, that so the *Romans* might be starved. *Venidius* being now engaged in *Syria* against the *Parthians*, sent to *Silo* to come to him when he had with *Herod* finished the War. But *Herod* having no confidence in him, dismissed him beforehand, and went himself against the Thieves, who dwelling in caves with their families in craggy and inaccessible rocks, he was fain to invent certain cages, which being let down to the sides of the rocks full of armed men, either slew them or tumbled them down headlong out of their holes, or else burnt them within, and by this means he subdued them all. Then setting *Ptolemy* over that Country, he marched into *Samarina*, but was presently forced to return, for *Ptolemy* being set upon by those who formerly had disturbed *Galilee*, was slain, and then they betook themselves into the fens and inaccessible places, and thence making excursions, robbed all the Coasts thereabouts; but he returning punished them, pulled down their places of strength, and fined the Cities 100 Talents. In the mean while *Venidius* having slain *Pacorus*, and put the *Parthians* to flight, by *Antony*'s command

*Josephus de bello l. 1. c. 12.*

*Idem Antiq. l. 14. c. 27. A. M. 3966.*

LIII

command sent *Machabæus* to help *Herod*, with two Legions, and 1000 Horse; but he being corrupted also by *Antigonus*, would needs go to him as a spie against *Herod's* will; Yet when he went could not be received, but was laid at with darts, so that repenting he had not followed *Herod's* advice, he went and secured himself in *Emmaus*, killing all the *Jews* that came in his way, without any difference of friend or enemy, out of madnesse for what had happened unto him. *Herod* being hereat enraged, resolved to go and complain to *Antony*, but he entreated him to stay, or if he went, however to leave *Joseph* with him to carry on the War against *Antigonus*, which later he granted, yet charging his brother not to venture all, nor contend with *Machabæus*. Then hasted he to *Samosata* upon the river *Euphrates*, before which *Antony* then lay, leading Auxiliaries with him both Horse and Foot. At *Antioch* he met with many, that having a design to go thither, durst not for the *Barbarians*, who lying in the wayes, made great slaughters of travellers, but he taking the conduct of them upon him, stoutly defended them against the violence of the robbers, and with great credit for his valour safely arrived at the Camp of *Antony*.

34. *Antony* to do him honour, sent out an Army to meet him, with great praises and embraces received him at the Camp, and gave him great respect, as a King of his own setting up. Shortly after his arrival *Antiochus* yielded up the place, and then *Antony* committing the Province to *Sosius*, and commending to him the affairs of *Herod*, went away back into *Egypt*. In the mean while *Joseph* neglecting his brothers counsel, was slain in *Judea*, and great innovations followed in that place and in *Galile*; which *Herod* understanding, being sent before by *Sosius* with two Legions, lying at *Daphne* the Suburbs of *Antioch*, marched into *Galile*, where he worsted the Enemy, and took the Castle they fled into, whence hasting to *Jericho*, he there feasted the chief Inhabitantes in a room; which upon his departure to his chamber presently fell down, whereupon he was accounted to be especially owned by God, who had so wonderfully preserved him. Not long after he got five Towns into his hands, wherein he put to the sword 2000 of the Garrison Soldiers, and then went against *Pappus*, whom *Antigonus* had sent into *Samaria* in a vain ostentation, as able to wage War in both places. *Pappus* gave him battel very boldly, but he overthrew him, and in revenge of his brothers death did great execution, whereby *Antigonus* his interest was clearly broken, and he thought of quitting the City, had the weather suffered the King to improve the Victory, and make an end of the War. At night *Herod* being weary, he went to wash in a chamber, where one boy onely was with him, and therein chanced to be divers armed men of the Enemy, who though they might have easily dispatched him then naked, yet were they so affrighted, as they gladly got out and saved themselves by flight. The extremity of the weather being over, he went up to *Jerusalem* and laid siege to it in the third year after he had been declared King at *Rome*, intending to use the same manner of opposition as *Pompey* had made formerly against the Temple. But during the siege he went to *Samaria*, and there married *Mariamne* daughter to *Alexander* and niece of *Aristobolus*, formerly contracted to him. The marriage being over he returned, and *Sosius* came also through *Phœnicia* up to *Jerusalem*, so that both carried on the siege with an Army consisting of eleven Legions, and 6000 Horse. The defendants with great earnestnesse and courage made resistance, contermining, and sometimes fighting with the Enemy in the ground, though much straitned for provisions, it being the Sabatical year.

He besiegeth Jerusalem.

Which after five moneths is taken, and therein *Antigonus*, who being beheaded by *Antony*, here the Principality of the Asmonians receiveth it's period.

35. Force at length prevailed, joyned with skil, in both which the *Romans* excelled, so that after five moneths twenty of the stoutest Soldiers, and then *Sosius* his Centurion got over, and the outward part of the Temple with the lower side of the City were taken, and at length the other also, where all were full of slaughters, the *Romans* being enraged by the tediousnesse of the War, and the *Jews* out of malice and particular grudges seeking to destroy all of the contrary Faction. *Antigonus* came and fell on his knees before

A. M. 3967.

Idem de bello ut prius cap. 13.

Idem Antiq. ut prius. cap. 18.

A. M. 3968.  
Ol. 205. an. 4.  
V. C. 717.  
Herod. 3.  
Ante Christum 35.

fore *Sosius*, who received him with reviling speeches, calling him *Antigona*. *Herod* had much adoe to keep the Soldiers from entering the secret places of the Temple, and to restrain them from slaughters, demanding of *Sosius* if the *Romans* intended to make him King or a desert, and adding, that he should think the price of all that blood which was spilt to be very little, though the Dominion of all the World should come into the bargain, and at length was fain to redeem the City from further trouble by his own money, wherewith he dismissed the *Romans* sufficiently enriched. This disaster befel *Jerusalem* in the Consulship of *M. Agrippa*, and *Canidius Gallius*, and the last of the 185 Olympiad, the third moneth, in the fast, and on the same day it had been taken by *Pompey* 27 years before. *Sosius* consecrating a crown of gold to God, went away with *Antigonus* unto *Antony*. But *Herod* fearing that *Antony* carrying him to *Rome*, he should there obtain favour with the Senate, as being of the Royal race, and procure the Kingdom at their hands, if not for himself, yet for his children, who never had ill deserved of the People of *Rome*, he procured *Antony* to dispatch him out of the way, who pretending at least the unquietnesse of the *Jews* for his sake, caused him to be beheaded at *Antioch*. And so the Principality of the Asmonians ceased, after it had endured free from the yoke of *Syria* 98 years; and *Herod* a man of foreign and obscure birth was confirmed in the Sovereignty over *Judea* by the *Romans*, in the Empire of whom we shall hear further of him.

Idem ibid. & l. 15. c. 1.  
Plutarch in Ant. l. 59.

## CHAP. VIII.

### The affaires of Sicilie Contemporary with the Empire of the Macedonians.

From the death of Timoleon to the Sicilian or first Punick War, containing the space of 73 years.

1. The constitutions of *Timoleon* being Popular, and tending to the loose liberty of the Vulgar, which was destitute of lawfully successive Princes, *Sicilie* continued not in Peace many years, being of all other places, through want of lawful Monarchs, most subject to the ambition and tyranny of those, who, though private Citizens, through flattery and deceit enslaved their neighbours. Amongst the rest *Agathocles* is most eminent; none that ever in any time went before him, coming up to him, or, reaching him by far in cunning and cruelty. He was the son of one *Carcinus* a Potter, and brought up by his father in that trade of life, who being banished from *Rhegium* in *Italy* his native soil, came into *Sicilie*, and placed himself at *Therma* at that time subject to the *Carthaginians*. Before he was born, and when his mother was yet great with him, the *Delpick* Oracle foretold, that he should be the author of great calamities to the *Carthaginians*, and also to all *Sicilie*, and for that cause he was exposed by his father, but preserved by his mother, and reserved to such a time unknown to him, as he repenting of what he had done, gladly understood from her of his safety. Being then again received by his father, he was brought up in the trade of a Potter, and was but young when *Timoleon* overthrew the *Carthaginians* at the River *Cremissus*, and made all free of *Syracuse* that would come thither. He was then with his father admitted into that City, and not long after his father died, but one *Damas* a chief Citizen being extraordinarily affected towards him for his comelinesse, gave him whereon sufficiently to live, and afterwards being created the Captain of the *Agrigentines*, bestowed on him the place of a Colonel in the Army, for that he was wont formerly in musters to wear those arms which none else could bear for their bignesse. But now being advanced

The Original of Agathocles.

Diodorus Siculus lib. 19. ad Olymp. 115. ann. 4.

He is made a Colonel. to this degree, he rendered himself more popular by his bold adventures, and his making speeches often to the people, and *Damas* dying, he married his Widow, whereby he got abundance of wealth. Afterwards in hapning that *Crotone* being beleaged by the *Bruttii*, they of *Syracuse* sent relief thither, which amongst other Captains was conducted by his brother *Autander*, and he himself by decree of the people had also the Office of a Colonel. But the Chief command was committed to *Heraclides* and *Sosistratus*, the later of which out of envy defrauded him of the rewards of his valour, which he now abundantly shewed, whereat he was so enraged, as to accuse him and his Companions to the people of affecting the Tyranny, but they giving no credit to his words, *Sosistratus* after his return seized on the Principality. *Agathocles* then for some time continued in Italy, and endeavouring to get *Crotone* into his power, failed of his Enterprize, and withdrew himself to *Tarentum*.

Liveth in Italy.

Endangered at Gela.

Suspected to affect the Tyranny and banished.

Recalled, and made General.

2. He was received into pay amongst the Mercenaries, but being suspected to attempt new matters, was not long after again cashiered, after which getting together a Company of Italian Fugitives, he relieved *Rhegium*, then set upon by *Sosistratus* and *Heraclides*, and then *Sosistratus* being banished *Syracuse*, together with his Authority, returned thither, where sometimes a private person, otherwile an Officer, he valiantly behaved himself against the Tyrant's faction, in which the *Carthaginians*, and a great number of the chiefest Citizens were engaged. Having once broke into the Citie *Gela*, and there being overmatched by *Sosistratus* and the Towns-men, so that he and his party were all of them in danger to be cut off, he sent his Trumpeters round about to the Walls, commanding them to sound an Alarm, where-by it came to passe (as he intended) that the Enemy thinking the besiegers had broken in from all quarters, retired from him to repulse them, and so he safely retreated this Sconce. This businesse of *Sosistratus* being over, and *Acestorides* the *Corinthian* Created General of the *Syracusians*, *Agathocles* was suspected because of his politick head, to affect the Tyranny; yet *Acestorides* would not take him of publicly, for raising new stirs, but commanding him to depart the Citie, sent some to ly in wait, & kill him in the way; which he suspecting, sent out a young man very like himself, with his Cloths, Horse, and Armour, and in a disguised habit travelled through by-ways, so that he devolved the danger upon the head of another, and escaped. Afterwards the Exiles of *Sosistratus* his faction being received, and a peace made with the *Carthaginians*, he lived as an outlaw within the Country, but gathering together considerable forces, proved so formidable to his own Citizens, and their new Allies, that they sought to him themselves to return, and having brought him into the Temple of *Ceres*, there took an Oath of him not to be against the popular Government. Making a shew then of Patronizing *Democracie*, he so inveigled the people by his fair speeches and cunning pretences, that he was constituted General, and keeper of the Peace, till such time as the differences then on foot, through the restitution of the Exiles, should be composed; and then having obtained his wished for opportunity, the Army being at his beck, and under pretence of opposing some, who at *Erbina* had lately revolted, sufficient occasion being taken to increase his strength, he marched out as against the Rebels, and united unto him 3000 men, some whereof had formerly served him against the *Carthaginians*, and were most addicted to himself, and adverse both to the people in general, and the 600 who now had the power in their hands, after the *Aristocracie* was taken away. With these, and certain *Syracusians*, who being poor themselves envied the wealth of others, he strengthened himself, and accusing the 600 to the Soldiers as having plotted against him, procured them easily to be taken for Enemies, and causing an Alarm to be sounded, commanded the Army to march to the Citie, and there to kill the Malignants, and take the spoyl of them and all their party.

3. The Army marching presently to the Citie, every part thereof was filled with slaughters, there being no difference made betwixt friend and Enemy,

A. M. 3688.  
Ol. 116. ann. 4.  
V. C. 437.  
Ptol. Lagi 7.

Under a specious pretence he causeth a Massacre to be made of the rich *Syracusians*.

Takeeth the Office of Captain General without a Colleague.

The *Aggrigentines* provoked by the Exiles, resolve to make War upon him.

*Amilcar* the *Carthaginian* makeeth a peace.

my, but according to the riches or poverty of the persons, and many running out into the streets to know what the matter was, were slain as they asked the question: all the Gates were shut that none might escape, so that 4000 by this means in one day perished. Many leaped down the Walls, of which some perished in the fall, but others to the number of 6000 escaped, of which most fled to *Aggrigentum*, where they were courteously received, but sufficiently tormented in this respect, that their Wives and Daughters at home were abused by the Soldiers in revenge for their escape. *Agathocles* being glutted with a two dayes slaughter, gathered together the multitude of his Captives, of which he onely dismissed *Dinocrates* for his former friendship, but the rest he presently put to death or banished, and then calling the people together, grievously inveighed against the 600. and at the Aristocratical Government, and then mentioning what he had done to purchase the liberty of his Country, very formally laid down his Office, knowing certainly he should be solicited to take it up again. For his Soldiers now made rich by other mens goods, would not endure that he, or his authority, should forsake them, but cried out he must take care of them, so that with much ado, as it seemed, he took upon him the Office of Chief Captain, but without a Colleague, being unwilling, as he said, to be called to an account for others breaking the Laws, when as he acted according to them; to which the people consenting, he was Created Captain General with full Authority by their suffrages.

A. M. 3688.

4. He carried it with all sweetnesse and moderation towards all them at the first, took great care for the Revenues, making of Arms, and increasing of the Fleet, and got several of the Inland Towns into his power. Having seized upon a Cistle of the *Messenians*, he promised to restore it for 30 Talents, but after the receipt of the money, not onely refused to surrender it, but also endeavoured to take *Messene* it self, part of the Wall being fallen down, and though he failed herein of his Enterprize, yet besieged he *Myla*, and had the place surrendered to him, but the *Carthaginians* sending their Ambassadors, expostulated with him his breaking the League, and constrained him to give the Castle up again into the hands of the *Messenians*. The year after, the Exiles that lived at *Aggrigentum* exhorting their enterprisers not to suffer him thus to go on in his Conquests, and make a prey of their Towns; for that it was better now to set upon him before he had confirmed his Tyranny, than when he should be grown too strong for them, and to be forced to War with him against their Wills. This appearing to be but reason, the people decreed the War, and having entred into a strict Alliance with them of *Gela* and *Messena*, sent some of the Exiles to *Lacedamon*, thence to procure a General, suspecting the fidelity and moderation of their own Citizens, and calling to mind the worth of *Timoleon*. At that time was there in that Citie one *Aerocratus* son to *Cleomenes* the King, labouring under the envy of most of the youth, because the *Lacedamonians* having been overthrown by *Antipater*, who then Governed *Macedonia* (after the death of *Alexander* the Great) when such as returned from the defeat were acquitted by the people, he alone had opposed the decree. Being enraged hereat, they beat him, and laid in wait for his life, whereupon now desirous of some foreign command, he easily accepted of this imployment, and without consent of the *Ephori*, with a few ships sayled to *Aggrigentum*, yet did he nothing worthy either of his family or Countrey, but proving more bloody and cruel than the Tyrants themselves, incurred the displeasure of the people. Giving himself up to all luxury, and therewith spending the publick renew, he murdered *Sosistratus* the Chief of the Exiles having invited him to supper, for nothing but out of emulation, whereupon he was deprived of his command, and had been stoned, but that he withdrew himself into his own Countrey. After his departure a compofure was made by the interposition of *Amilcar* the *Carthaginian*, upon these terms, that of the Greek Cities *Heraclaea*, *Solinus*, and *Himera* should continue under the power of the *Carthaginians*; but the rest, over which the *Syracusians* had the Dominion, should be left to their own Laws.

Idem ad ann. 2.  
Olymp. 116.

Ad ann. 3.

5. The



He breaketh  
it.

5. The Island being hereby cleared of the Enemy's Forces, he securely laid divers Towns to his Dominions, and with the accession of many places to his former strength, sufficiently confirmed himself, having over and above his *Syracusians*, and Confederates, 10000 foot, and 3500 horse of Mercenaries in constant pay, and making Provision of all sorts of Ammunition, for that he foresaw, that the *Carthaginians* disapproving of the peace made by *Amilcar*, would within a short while renew the War: The year after seeing himself sufficiently furnished, he resolved then not to expect them, but begin himself; yet desiring first to clear his way, by removing whatever might hinder him from the neighbouring Cities, he first attempted *Messene* whither the Exiles of *Syracuse* had fled; and he first prevailed with them to expel these, and then to admit him into the Town, where he killed 600 of the chiefest of them, and most adverse to his power. Thence he went to *Agrigentum*, thinking to make also a prey of it; but sixty ships of the *Carthaginians* with Forces having lately come thither, he forbore to attempt any thing, and drew his forces into the Territories of the *Carthaginians*, where he took in divers Castles. In the mean while *Dinocrates* the principal man amongst the Exiles sent to *Carthage*, desiring aid before *Agathocles* should reduce all *Sicily* into his power, and having gathered his Companions together, and raised a pretty Force, sent *Nymphodorus* to the Town of the *Centoripini* held then by *Agathocles*, but being promised to have it betrayed into his hands, under condition they should be left to their own liberty. He got by the night into the Town, but the Garrison having timely knowledge of it, cut him off, and all his followers which had entered, and *Agathocles* punished the Conspirators. But *Dinocrates* being called by the Inhabitants of *Galaria*, with 3000 foot, and 2000 horse marched thither, where *Agathocles* his faction being cast out, he pitched his Tents without the Town; but he sent two of his Captains against him with 5000 men, who at length put him, and his whole Army to flight, and recovering the place, animadverted upon the Revolvers. *Agathocles* being elevated with this success, hearing the *Carthaginians* were seized on an Hill, marched thither, intending to fight them with all the power he could make, but they declining an engagement, in a Triumphant manner he returned unto *Syracuse*.

Ad ann. 1.  
Olymp. 117.

A. M. 3693.  
Ol. 117. ann. 1.  
V. C. 442.  
Seleuci 1.  
Ptol. Lagi 18.

Ad ann. 2.

The Carthagi-  
nians receive  
a great losse  
by shipwrack.

6. The year following, the *Carthaginians* shipped a great Army for *Sicily* under Conduct of *Amilcar*, a man of high Nobility; but such a Tempest seized on the Fleet, that 260 Vessels loaded with men and Provisions miscarried, which made them cover their Walls with black, as it was the custom upon some great and publick disaster. But *Amilcar* being an industrious man, gathering together the Relicks of the shipwrack, lifted more men after his arrival, and made up a compleat Army of 40000 foot, and well nigh 5000 horse. *Agathocles* perceiving himself too weak to encounter the Enemy at present, took care how to secure his Towns and Castles from revolting, and especially *Gela*, near to which the Enemy then lay. To send in a great party at once, he thought might awaken the Towns-men too much, and put them upon some attempt disadvantageous to himself, so that he got some Soldiers in at several times, till they amounted to a number too strong for the other, and then going thither, accused the Inhabitants of Treachery, and took occasion to make a Massacre of 4000 of them, the goods of whom he seized, with all the Silver and Gold of those that remained. Then pitched he his Tents against the *Carthaginians*, encamped on an Hill where the Castle of *Phalaris* the Tyrant of old time was reported to be, whence it got the name of *Ecnomos*, i.e. wicked or unlawfull. A River ran betwixt the two Camps, concerning which a rumour having been of old time spread, that a great multitude of men should perish near unto it, this hindered both the Armies from engaging, till such time as excursions being made on both sides, the *Africans* broke out of their Trenches to rescue the prey, which *Agathocles* foreseeing, had placed many men in ambush upon the River, who falling upon the *Carthaginians*, as they pursued their friends, drove them back, and

Overthrew  
Agathocles.

and with great slaughter gave the chase unto their Camps. *Agathocles* judging this a fit season for an engagement, arose with his whole Army, and fell upon them in their trenches, into which he brake, and there maintained for some time a hot dispute, till the Enemy repulsed him at that place, by help especially of Slingers, natives of the Islands *Baleares*, who being exercised after the fashion of that Country in slinging of stones, forced back the *Syracusians*, by throwing at them those of a pound weight. Yet he broke in in other places, and had almost done his work, when fresh supplies to the Enemy arrived out of *Africk*, which falling on him in his rear, turned the fate of the day clear against him, and put his men to flight, of which great execution was done by 5000 *Africans* that gave the chase, many also killing themselves by drinking over hastily, out of extremity of the heat which then raged through the influence of the Dog Star. So that he lost no fewer than 7000 men, 600 onely of the *Carthaginians* being slain.

7. *Agathocles* getting together his stragglers betook himself to *Gela*, having given out, that he determined for *Syracuse* with all speed, so that 300 *Africans* entering *Gela*, and fearing nothing, were all cut off by him. Then shut he himself up there, that the *Carthaginians* laying siege to the place, the *Syracusians* might have time enough to victual their City, and indeed *Amilcar* thought first of all to besiege it, but afterwards understanding what force was in it, changed his purpose, and took in several Towns and Castles, and behaved himself so lovingly, as many within a short time revolted to him. *Agathocles* then withdrew to *Syracuse*, which he furnished with all sorts of provisions for the enduring of a siege, intending to leave a party for defence thereof, and remove the War into *Africk*, by passing all his Army over thither. For, considering that the *Carthaginians* had almost got all *Sicilie*, and his confederates generally revolted to them (who were most potent now both at Sea and Land) he judged it (though the most venturous, yet the safest way to invade the Enemy in his own Territories, which being a sudden and most unusual thing, he should daunt him therewith, and drive his Subjects into an open revolt, and force him to call back the Army out of *Sicilie*. Communicating therefore this purpose to no man living, he left *Syracuse* to the Government of his brother *Antander*, and severing all the relations of the City one from another, that no mutiny or sedition might arise in his absence (taking part of them along with him as hostages) he raised money by seizing the estates of *Orphans* into his hands (which he promised to restore when they should come to age) by borrowing money of Merchants, robbing of Temples; but especially by calling the People together, and acquainting them, how he was most ready to endure any hardship, but it pined him for the People: therefore he advised all that feared themselves and estates to depart, which when the richest and most out of favour had done, he procured them to be cut off, and confiscated all their goods. Then manumitting all slaves that were fit for the Wars, he shipped his men in sixty Vessels, and getting out into the Main whilst the *Carthaginians* knew not his design, escaped them by the darkness of the night, and though they chased him all the way, yet arrived he in *Africk* with his Army in safety.

Ad ann. 3.

They having  
almost got all  
Sicilie into  
their hands,  
he resolveth  
to divert them  
by invading  
Africk.

Being landed  
he burneth his  
ships.

The Carthagi-  
nians at first  
daunted,

8. Once arrived he burnt his ships, as well to take away from his Soldiers all hope of escape (thereby to heighten their valour) as also having no great Army, left for the defence of the Navy, it should be divided. Then fell he upon two Cities immediately, which he took (the Soldiers being encouraged at the sight of so pleasant and rich a Country) but suffered none of his Army to lye there; but destroyed the places, lest his men should rely upon them as a refuge. The *Carthaginians* were wonderfully daunted at the first report of his landing, concluding he durst not venture over, except he had first, by destroying their Army, made all sure in *Sicilie*, but understanding the whole affairs from some messengers sent from the Fleet, they gathered courage, blamed their Sea-officers, who having the Sea in their power, had suffered the Enemy to land, and made choice of two Captains, *Hanno* and *Bomilcar*, thinking that their enmity towards each other which had been in-  
tailed

Are over-  
thrown by  
him.

tailed upon them, would prove the commodity of the Commonwealth; though indeed therein they were mistaken. These two Generals thought not fit to stay for their associates, but muster as many of their own Citizens as would make a shift, and so raising 40000 Foot, and 1000 Horse, with 2000 Chariots, they encounter the Enemy. *Agathocles* his men; many of them, wanting Arms, he made them counterfeit ones, to be so esteemed a far off, and perceiving them to be discouraged at the number of the *Carthaginian* Horse, he procured many Owls to be let go in the Camp, which birds being taken to bring alwaies good luck with them, the Soldiers were therewith so cheered, that they resolutely set upon the Enemy, and brake presently the body of Horse. The Chariots they drove for the most part back amongst the Foot, which they charged also with such resolution, that the wing where *Hanno* commanded was discomfited, and he himself slain. *Romilcar* his Colleague understanding this, having formerly wished for some good opportunity to invade the Tyranny (which the most eminent men of *Carthage* were many times forced to do, for the avoiding of those censures and punishments constantly inflicted upon them for the least miscarriage of fortune, by the heady table) thinking now an occasion to be presented to him, as it were from Heaven, he resolved to take hold of it. And for that he thought it most convenient for him, that the Enemy should not be overthrown, but an awe continued upon his Citizens, he retreated by little and little, suffering the *Sicilians* to prevail, and at length drew off his men to an hill, whence they all fled as fast as they could to *Carthage*, having lost of their number 1000 men, and killed of the *Greeks* but 200.

9. The *Carthaginians* now shut up in their City, and besieged by *Agathocles* (though they had caried with them above 20000 pair of manicles in their Chariots to bind the *Greeks*, over whom they promised themselves an easie victory) very much discouraged, and laying the blame of the misfortune upon the neglect of their superstition, sent great gifts to *Hercules* the god of the *Tyrrians*, from whom they were issued, and for that they had redeemed their own children of late (by others gotten elsewhere) from being sacrificed to *Saturn*, they presently offered up to him 200 boyes of the chiefest amongst them for Nobility, being put into the hand of the Statue, and thence falling down into the hollow of it full of fire. They sent also to *Amilcar* into *Sicilie* for aid, who receiving the news, caused it to be given out, that all the *Sicilian* Army was cut off, and earnestly thereupon urged the besieged to a surrender of *Syracuse*, shewing them (to inforce the matter) the iron-work of the ships wherein the Army had passed over, which indeed the *Carthaginians* had taken up into their Vessels after the burning of the Fleet. But the chief men amongst the besieged stayed the rest from yielding, though *Antander* the brother of *Agathocles* was so faint-hearted, as to be for the delivering up the City, and cast 8000 of the contrary faction, and the friends of the exiles, out of the Town: But within a few dayes arrived a Gally from *Agathocles*, to give them knowledge of his successe, which being pursued by the *Carthaginians*, and the People flocking to the Haven to gaze, the walls were so forsaken, that *Amilcar* taking his opportunity, got some of his men over, but an Alarm being given, they were either slain, or forced headlong down the fortifications. *Amilcar* hereat discouraged, raised his siege, and sent a supply of 5000 men over to *Carthage*.

*Amilcar* raiseth his siege from *Syracuse*.

*Agathocles* prospereth exceedingly in *Africk*.

10. *Agathocles* in this mean while took divers places in *Africk*, and fortifying his Camp before *Tunis* (wherein he also left a strong Garrison) marched further and besieged *Adrymis*, and drew into society with him *Elymas* the King of the *Africans*. The *Carthaginians* having notice of this, turned all their forces upon *Tunis*, which they besieged, having first become Masters of his Camp; but he hereupon leaving a great part of his Army still before the Town, went with the rest to an high hill, whence he might easily be seen by both the *Carthaginians* that lay before *Tunis*, and also by the Inhabitants of *Adrymis*, and there making abundance of fires, deceived them by this stratagem at both places. For the besiegers thought he was coming with a great

great Army to relieve *Tunis*, and therefore raised their siege out of hand, and departed to *Carthage*, the besieged of *Adrymis* out of a strong apprehension that new supplies were coming to the Enemy, yielded the Town. Then took hee *Thapsus* by storm, and divers other places, and having now got into his hands about 200 Towns, went higher up into *Libya*. The *Carthaginians* took another occasion at his absence to besiege *Tunis*, but he thereupon returned as before, but overcame them by a stratagem of a clean contrary Nature with the former; for he commanded that no fires now should be made, and marching very fast fell upon them at unawares, and cutting off 2000, took very many prisoners, and forced the other to betake them to their heels, whereby he exceedingly advanced his affaires, giving the *Carthaginians* such a blow (who now by reason of their supplies arrived out of *Sicilie*, were thought superior to him) that improving the Victory he went against *Elymas*, who had revolted from him, and killed him with a great number of his Subjects.

*Amilcar* besieging *Syracuse* again is taken and killed.

Whereupon his Army is divided into two factions.

*Agathocles* being puffed up by his fortune changed by a grievous mutiny of his Soldiers,

11. The year following, *Amilcar* in *Sicilie* once more besieged *Syracuse*, and presently made great haste for storming of it after his arrival, because the Soothsayers had foretold him, that that day he should dine in the City. A great number joyning themselves to him out of hope of plunder, they so stopped up the way with carriages, that they hindered one another, and such a tumult arose, that the *Syracusians* having notice of it, sallied out upon them, and putting them to flight made great slaughter of them, and taking *Amilcar* alive, delivered him to the friends of those that had been slain, who most cruelly tortured him to death, having been formerly it's probable, condemned by his ingrateful Citizens themselves, though as then, he having the Army in his power, they durst not let it be known, but casting all their votes (written as the manner was) into a vessel, they ordered it to be covered, and the thing not to be looked into, until his return, and the giving up of his command. But his Army which consisted of 120000 Foot, and 5000 Horse, being thus strangely defeated, was divided then into two factions. The Exiles and *Greeks* chose them *Democritus* for their Captain, and the *Carthaginians*, him that had held the next place to *Amilcar*. The affaires of *Sicilie* being thus in confusion, the Inhabitants of *Agrienum* thinking a fit opportunity for gaining the Principality of the whole Island to be put into their hands, made *Xenodocus* their Captain, who went and took in divers Towns, many revolting to him (all which with the former he restored to their liberty) and restrained the excursions of the *Syracusians*, who were in great distresse for want of provisions which had been cut off by the *Carthaginians*, the constant Masters at Sea. By this time *Amilcar's* head was sent over to *Agathocles*, who receiving it with joy, raised the contrary affection in the Enemy, to whose Camp he brought it, together with the message, that their forces were utterly cut off, whereupon they dispaired forthwith of better fortune, adoring the head of their nominal King.

12. *Agathocles* was much puffed up at his prosperity, though he was not far from the waining of his fortune, a prelude unto which was made by *Lyciscus* one of his Officers, who in a drunken fit exceedingly jeered him. He took it patiently, and made a jest of it, because the man was very serviceable to him in his Wars, but *Archagathus* his son taking it heinously, returned it to him in his own language with threats, which further so enraged him, that he threw in his teeth (which was generally reported) his incestuous having to do with his step-mother. The young man hereat was so transported, as he ran him thorow and slew him outright, which was followed by a mutiny of the whole Army, demanding justice against him, which flew to that height, that the Soldiers chose themselves Captains, seized on *Tunis*, and besieged *Agathocles* and his son, many of the Officers upon promise of larger pay, revolted to the *Carthaginians*, who had not been wanting to add fuel to this flame. *Agathocles* seeing the danger he was in, laid aside his Purple, and made a piteous Oration to the Soldiers, wherein he told them hee was willing to lay down his life if so they pleased, rather than end his dayes by some

M m m ignomi-

Yet he quiet-  
eth them now,  
and defeateth  
the Carthagi-  
nians.

Agathocles ob-  
taineth an-  
other victory  
against the  
Carthaginians.

Sendeeth for  
Ophellus out  
of Greece.

Whom he  
treacherously  
murdereth.

Bomilcar seek-  
eth to invade  
the Tyranny  
at Carthage,  
and miscar-  
rieth.

ignominious death, and drew out his Sword as intending to kill himself; but the Army hindered it, and compelling him to resume his Robes, were thoroughly reconciled unto him, except some 200 which went over to the Enemy. He taking this opportunity marched presently against the Carthaginians, who full little thought of a battle, but expected presently a general revolt; so that taking them thus at unawares, he easily overthrew them with great slaughter.

13. About this time the Numidians revolted from those of Carthage, who sent out an Army the next Spring to reduce them to obedience. Agathocles understanding that, left his son at Tunia, and marching after them with all expedition, at length overtakes them, then overthrows them, though with great difficulty, and losse to himself. The Numidians, whilst he was employed in the battle, having been intent upon the event of the fight, fell in, and plundered his Carriages, and getting away with the greatest part of the goods, by reason of the darkness of the night, he was glad to divide the plunder of the field equally amongst his Soldiers, in way of recompence for the damage sustained by them. Such Greeks as he took prisoners, which had assisted the Carthaginians, he put into a Castle, where they fearing to be put to death set upon the Garrison by night, but being too weak, betook themselves thence to a certain fortified place, which Agathocles hearing marched thither with his Army, and drawing them out under promise of impunity, contrary to his faith given, killed them all to the number of 1000. of which half were Syracusians. At this time there was one Ophellus, who having been an Officer under Alexander the Great, had seized upon Cyrene, and gaped still after larger Dominions. To him now sent Agathocles, inviting him to come and joyn with him against the Carthaginians, offering him all Africk for a reward, to which he pretended he was constrained to passe over, assuring him he would content himself with Sicily, or else, if he thought good, invade Italy more commodious for him than Africk by far.

The man puffed up with great expectations, sent to Athens (whence he had married a wife of the stock of famous Miltiades) to joyn with him in the expedition, which not onely divers of that Citie readily embraced, but others of Greece now much shattered by Wars within it self, which were raised by Alexander his Successors. Ophellus then began his journey (with above 10000 foot, 600 horse, 100 Chariots, besides 10000 others, extraordinary, as they called them) of two moneths long, through a desert infested with wild beasts and venomous Serpents, wherewith his Army was sore distressed, as also by want of necessaries, till at length they arrived at Agathocles his Camp. There they were received with all manner of Provisions, but as the greatest part of them were gone out to gather forrage, he set upon the rest with their Captain, who though he resisted, yet being overborn, was slain most treacherously, and Agathocles then forcing them to lay down their Arms, got into his power the whole Army, having aforehand stirred up his Soldiers against Ophellus, by feigning that he lay in wait for his life.

14. Whilst Agathocles was in hand with this treacherous design, Bomilcar having long intended, but still out of fear deferred, the invasion of the Tyranny, communicating his intention to 500 Citizens, and 1000 Mercenaries, broke out into open Rebellion against his Countrey. Having seized on the new Citie, he thence invaded the old, which caused great consternation at first, whilst every one feared they had been betrayed into the Enemies hands; but understanding the matter, they presently made head against him, who going on in his way made slaughters of all he met; but what with opposing him in the streets, and throwing down stones from the houses, they drove him back again into the new Citie through the narrow wayes, and there besieged him. At length upon promise of pardon for what had passed, an agreement was made, and his followers by reason of the danger the Citie stood in, were all dismissed without any punishment; but he, notwithstanding the faith given to him, was most ignominiously, and with great Tortures put to death.

15. The

Diodorus Siculus ut prius, Ad ann. 1. Olymp. 118.

A. M. 3697.  
Ol. 118. ann. 1.  
V. C. 446.  
Seleuci 3.  
Ptol. Lag. 16.  
P. Decio Mur. 2.  
Q. Fabio Maxi-  
mo 3. Coll.

Agathocles tak-  
eth the title  
of King.

Returning in-  
to Sicily, his  
affairs go  
down the  
wind, both  
there and in  
Africk.

15. The year after Agathocles hearing that the Captains of Alexander had taken the Titles of Kings upon them; for that he thought himself neither inferior to them in power, Territories, or for valiant acts, he called himself King in like manner: yet took he not the Diadem, being accustomed constantly to wear a Crown of Myrtles heretofore, either for the Ceremony of some Priesthood, or as others have conceived, by reason of baldness, which rendered him exceedingly uncomely about the head. Then to attempt something worthy of so great a Title, he fell upon Utica, near which taking 300 of the Inhabitants, which upon his coming had been shut out, when he could not persuade them to yield, he framed an Engine, to which he tied many of them, and drawing it along to that place where he intended to break into the Town, exposed them either to be shot to death by their friends, or else if they within out of affection to them should forbear, then could he easily enter. The Defendants yet preferring their Countreys safety before that of a few private men, when they could do no lesse, repulsed the Enemy with all possible endeavour; but for all this, Agathocles broke in at another place, and filled the Citie with slaughter, no regard being had to any condition; and after he had overcome them also in a Sea-fight, placed a Garrison there, and subdued all the Maritime Towns under his power. Though he prospered thus in Africk, yet was he sollicitous for Sicily, where the Agrigentines had made some progress in freeing the Citie; but now of late had received so great a blow from his Captains, that broke in pieces their design. Just after the fight was over he arrived, and making a progress about the Island, recovered most of the Towns, onely he was repulsed with great losse from Centorippa, and upon the same terms gained Appollonia. Henceforth his affairs began universally to decline. In Sicily, Dinocrates got so great an Army of Exiles together, that he durst not fight him, though continually dared, and dogged at the heels. In Africk his son Archagathus prospered very much at the first through the good fortune of Enmachus, who subdued many places. But the Senate at Carthage dividing their Army into three parties, whereof one was to march for the Maritime parts, another for the Inland, and the last for the upper Countreys, they thereby attained their ends, viz. to lessen their number in the Citie (which made all Provisions scarce, by sending out 30000 men) to contain their Allies in fidelity, by giving them hopes of relief, and (which was the chiefest) to force the Enemy also to divide his Army, and so draw him down from Carthage it self.

16. For Archagathus dividing his Army to oppose the Carthaginians in the several quarters, lost almost the two parts thereof, which he sent out under Conduct of two several Captains, to the number of about 10000 men; so that the Carthaginians reduced almost all places back to obedience, all the Confederates revolted except a few, and Archagathus being distressed for want of all things, and the remainder of his Army in great terror, he sent to his father into Sicily to acquaint him in what posture matters stood, and to desire speedy relief. He seeing his affairs go down the wind in that Island was sollicitous how to leave it, and 300 Vessels of the Carthaginians blocked up the mouth of the Haven, so that he could not stir out. But 18 Vessels coming in from Hercuria, he persuaded the Masters thereof being friends to put out, and then when the Carthaginians (as he expected) gave them the chase, he fell in upon their Rear, and beyond all hope got a victory over them, boarding five of their Fleet, which he took together with the Defenders. Hereat encouraged, he sent Leptines against Agrigentum, knowing Xenodocus their General then to be out of favour with a great part of the Town, and he seeing himself unable to grapple with him stirred not out, but provoked by the Citizens, so that being worried, for fear of condemnation he fled to Gela. Agathocles now feasted the people for joy, making himself common with all, and giving them wine to excess, so that their wits being out, when that once was in, they might speak their minds, and he thereby know their inclinations; for he feared that after his departure

M m m m 2

Idem ad ann. 2.

\* Alim. V. v.  
Hist. lib. 11.  
cap. 4.

A. M. 3698.  
Ol. 118. ann. 2.  
V. C. 447.  
Seleuci 6.  
Ptol. Lag. 17.

Being to return into *Africk*, he maketh a Massacre at *Syracuse*.

A strange accident which maketh great disorder in both the Camps.

*Agathocles* despairing of his affairs in *Africk*, intendeth to fly away with his youngest son.

The eldest hearing of it raiseth a mutiny, wherein *Agathocles* is bound in Fetters, but being loosed escapeth away, and both his sons are killed by his Army, which maketh its own terms

they might call in. *Dinocrates* and the Exiles, and restore again the popular Government. Having by this means got out who they were that disaffected his power, he feasted them again by themselves, with other 500 who bore the most noble minds, and compassing them in with his Mercenaries, slew them every man.

17. Then sayled he over into *Africk*, vvhvhere he found his Army in a low and desolate condition for want of necessaries. Therefore resolved he to fight, though far inferiour to the *Carthaginians*, vvho fought rather to draw out the time in length, knowing the condition of the Enemy; but he leading down his men to their Trenches, forced them to come out and give battel, in vvvhich he fighting valiantly, yet vvvas vvvorsted vvwith the losse of 3000 men. After this a sudden calamity seized upon both the Armies by reason of mistakes. For the *Carthaginians* offering the most beautifull of their Captives, as a sacrifice to their gods, it hapned that the fire thence vvvas driven to their Tents, vvvhich being covered vvwith Reed and Straw easily carched it, and as easily vvvere consumed, vvvhence it came to passe that all things vvvere in great confusion. But the vvvorst of it vvvas, that the *Africans* vvvhich had fought vvwith *Agathocles* coming now over to them, the Scouts seeing them, gave an Alarm, as if all the *Greeks* taking their advantage of the fire vvvere coming against them, so that flying in great confusion, they killed, and trode down one another, mistaking one another for Enemies, and having thus dispatched 5000 of their Company, all run away to *Carthage*, vvvhvwhere they were received vvwith great trembling by their friends, lest that vvwith them the Enemy should enter. The *Africans* vvvhich vvvere coming over, being affrighted at the burning of the Camp, retreated, vvvhich being seen also by the *Greeks*, they gave notice to *Agathocles* that the *Carthaginians* vvvere coming against him, so that he drew out his men in great fear and terrour, who meeting the *Africans*, and they taking one another for Enemies, they killed, and slew all they could during the night season, till such time as 4000 being slain, the rest retreated to the Camp. *Agathocles* after this, seeing himself too weak now to grapple vvwith the *Carthaginians*, and thereby his affairs to be desperate in *Africk*, resolved to return into *Sicily*, and considering that the Enemy having the command at Sea, would not suffer the Army to passe away quietly, he resolved vvwith his younger son *Heracles*, and a few more, to passe over secretly, and leave *Archagathus* behind him, vvvhom he was jealous of, because of the report raised of him that he had to do vvwith his Step-mother.

18. But *Archagathus* having notice of his intention (which he took in marvellous evil part) communicated it to severall of the Officers, who raising a mutiny presently in the Army, *Agathocles* was seized on, and made sure in Fetters. A little after it hapned that an Alarm was made in the Camp, as if the Enemy approached, vvvhich made all Arm themselves and run out, and amongst the rest the Keepers of *Agathocles*, vvvhom then the multitude seeing in such a condition, cried out presently that he should be loosed; vvvhich being done, he forthvvwith took Boat vvwith a few attendants, leaving both his sons behind him. The Army understanding this killed them both, and then agreed vvwith the *Carthaginians* for 300 Talents to restore the Towns yett in their hands, and that such as vvould should receive pay in their service. And such as did so had the terms performed; but those that out of hope of succour from *Agathocles* held out the places, being all forced to yield, their Captains vvvere Crucified, and the common Soldiers being bound in Fetters, vvvere forced vvwith their hard labour to repair that Countrey, vvvhich formerly they had helped to depopulate.

19. Thus the *Carthaginians* obtained peace after four years; Divine vengeance hurrying *Agathocles* to punishment, after that perfidious murder of *Ophellus*, his two sons being slain on the same day, and by the hands of his Soldiers. After his arrival in *Sicily* he went presently to *Egesta*, a Town confederate vvwith him, vvvhence wanting money he exacted much Treasure, but they grumbling, and complaining thereof, all the poorer sort he brought forth, and slew at the River *Seamander*, and then tortured the rest vvwith all

forts

His horrid cruelty towards the *Africans*.

Out of despair he offereth to lay down his power, but *Dinocrates* intending to obtain the Tyranny himself rejecteth it.

Whom he overthroweth and yet receiveth into favour.

sorts of torments to make them confesse vvwhat they had. Some he broke up on the wheel, others he shot of from Engines as stones. Some had their ancles cut off, and endured other cruel torments. He invented a kind of punishment also, something resembling *Phalaris* his Bull, being a bed of iron, vvvhvwherein one being put, was burnt or fried to death by fire put underneath. Rich vvvhomen had their ancles broken vvwith iron tongs, others their breasts cut off. Some out of terror burnt themselves in their houses, and others vvvhanged themselves, so that the whole flower of the People being absolutely destroyed, he sold the children to the *Bruttii* in *Italy*, and utterly to destroy the name of the City, called it *Dicaopolis*, and Peopled it vvwith fugitives. Hearing then that his sons vvwere slain in *Africk*, to be revenged on the Soldiers, he sent command to *Anander* his brother, to kill all their friends and kinsfolks at *Syracuse*, vvvhich he readily performing, no sex nor age was spared, but so horrid a massacre committed, that as vvwell old and decrepit men as young infants vvwere included in the slaughter. Such as vvwere thus murdered lying on the Sea shore, none durst bury them, though never so nearly related, so that the Sea vvwashing them away was coloured vvwith the blood, carying along vvwith it a note of this cruelty to other parts at a good distance. *Agathocles* continued his progresse up and down the Island, strengthening Towns, and raising money; but *Pasiphilus* his Captain despising him now for the lownesse of his fortune, fled over to *Dinocrates*, and vvwithdrew the Army also from him. This cast him into such despair, that contrary to his former boldnesse, he sent to *Dinocrates*, offering to quit the Tyranny, and restore the Government to the People, so he might have but two Castles to maintain himself on, and earnestly pressed him to admit of the conditions. But he gaping after the chief power himself, and unwilling to be reduced again to the estate of a private Citizen (being now (though but accounted Captain of the Exiles) as a King indeed, in regard of the great extent of his power and command) put him off vvwith one pretence or other still, till *Agathocles* smelling out his device, sent some to accuse him to the Army, and vvvhending to *Carthage* made Peace vvwith them on these terms; to restore all the places to them they formerly had in *Sicilie*, and for this in way of requital, to receive 500 Talents of Gold, and a great quantity of Corn.

20. Furnishing then himself vvwith a small Army, he went against *Dinocrates* and his Exiles, vvvhom seeing the little number he brought vvwith him (being but about 5000 Foot, and 800 Horse) in comparison of themselves, amounting to 25000 Foot, and 3000 Horse, gave him battel. The dispute at first was very sharp; but shortly some 2000 of the Exiles vvrevolving to the Tyrant, so encouraged his men, and discouraged those they had forsaken (vvvhom they thought to be more than indeed they vvwere) that they vvwere easily put to flight, though so far exceeding in number. All the Horse got clean away, and some of the Foot; but the greatest part settling upon an Hill, made Peace vvwith *Agathocles*, vvvhom he had sent to them, inviting them now at length to lay down their enmity, and return home; but after he had got them into his power, contrary to his faith given (vvvhich he never observed) he slew some 7000 of them. The reliques of the Army being gathered up he received, and *Dinocrates* himself, to vvvhose command he committed part of his Soldiers, and contrary to his own disposition, trusted him to the last. He betraying his companions, slew *Pasiphilus* at *Gela*, and vvgoing about in subduing the Towns and Castles (in vvvhich vvwork he spent two years) delivered them all up to *Agathocles*.

21. Not long after, *Cassander* the King of *Macedonia* besieging *Corcyra*, *Agathocles* went and raised the siege, burning all his ships in the Havens. Returning to his Army, and understanding that certain *Ligurians* and *Tyrhenians* had joyned vvwith those that slew his son *Archagathus*, he got them into his power to the number of 2000, and put them all to the sword. The *Bruttii* (a People vvvhich issuing from the *Lucanians*, vvwere grown mighty high, and at the very first fought against those from vvvhom they had their original, and forced them to a Peace, on equal terms) being offended vvwith him, he failed

*Diodorus ut supra. ad ann. 3.*

*Idem ad ann. 4.*

A. M. 3700.  
Ol. 118. ann. 4.  
V. C. 449.  
Seleucid. 8.  
Ptol. Lagi 19.

*Diodorus in Excerpt. l. 21. A. M. 3704.*

*Justin lib. 23.*

Ragest a-  
gainst the  
Italians.

failed over into *Italy* against them, and determined to besiege a Town belonging to them, but they setting upon him at unawares, forced him with the losse of 4000 men to return to *Syracuse*. Yet was he not discouraged from making another Expedition against *Crotone*, which intending to besiege, he pretended he was about to send his daughter to the King of *Epirus* with a Royal Fleet, and beguiling them herewith, laid close siege both by Sea and Land to the Town, when they full little thought it. Having undermined a great house, they being terrified thereat, opened their gates and let him in, after which he plundered the Town, and committed great slaughters. Then entered he into society with the *Japyges* and *Pacetii* notable Pyrates; whom furnishing with Vessels, he was to have part of the booty; and leaving a Garrison in *Crotone*, he returned to *Syracuse*.

*Diodorus ibid.*

Entereth into  
society with  
Demetrius Poli-  
orctes.

22. Once more having prepared an Army of 30000 Foot, and 2000 Horse, he passed over into *Italy*, where being arrived, committing the Navy to the care of *Stilpo*, he commanded him to make excursions into the Territories of the *Brutii*, but he coasting along and wasting the maritime parts, lost almost all his ships by a tempest. He himself took by storm the City of the *Hippoiates*, at the report whereof the *Brutii* were so affrighted, that they sent to him to treat, and delivered up 600 Hostages. Yet after his departure they broke their oath, and expelling his Garrison, returned again to their own freedom. *Agathocles* being returned home, sent his son of his own name to *Demetrius Poliorctes* now King of *Macedonia*, to enter into society with him, who taking the message in good part, rewarded the Ambassador with royal gifts, and sent one back with him, who under colour of ratifying the League, might espie out the condition of *Sicilie*. Having now been a long time, as he thought, at Peace with the *Carthaginians*, he made all provision possible again for shipping, intending to make another Expedition into *Africk*, and hinder the exportation of Corn from *Sicilie* and *Sardinia*.

A. M. 3716.  
Ol. 123. an. 4.  
V. C. 465.  
Seleuci 24.  
Ptolom. Lag. 35.

Whilst he  
thinketh of  
making ano-  
ther Expedi-  
tion into *Af-  
rick*,

23. But whilst he busied himself with such thoughts, he was prevented by one *Manon*, who being born at *Agesta*, had been taken captive there, and for his beauty was preferred to his service. For a time he dissembled the displeasure he conceived from the calamity of his Country, and his own ignominious and filthy condition, till he might have an opportunity to be revenged upon the Tyrant. But now it hapning, that *Agathocles* commending *Agathocles* his son to the *Syracusians* as his Successor; and sending him to succeed *Archagathus* (his nephew by *Archagathus* his son, and a man of great courage) in the command of the Army then quartering about *Atna*; *Archagathus* seeing how things were likely to go, plotted the ruine of them both, and sending to *Manon*, desired him to make the old man away with poyson, whilst he in the mean time inviting the young one to a feast, made him drunk, and then killed him. *Manon* mindful of the message, whereas the King after meat called for a tooth-pick to cleanse his teeth, dipped one in poyson and gave him it, which he using, began by little and little to wax ill, and then his teeth putrifying in a horrid manner, this was succeeded by tormenting pains. Seeing therefore himself near his end, he called the People together, and inveighing bitterly against *Archagathus*, stirred them up to revenge him on him, and restored the Democracy to the People. Afterwards his voice failing him, he was put upon the funeral fire yet breathing, by *Oxythenius*, who had been sent to him by *Demetrius*, and burnt. *Justin* from *Trogus* (who in the whole story of this Prince dissenteth from *Diodorus*) reporteth, that before his end, he sent back his wife *Theogene* an *Egyptian* by birth, with her two young children, and great wealth, into her own Country, to be out of that danger which he foresaw must needs ensue. The story of his life is almost beyond parallel; but he died after he had lived 72 years, and thereof reigned 28, as amongst other Historians cited by our Author, *Antander* his own brother left recorded; A. M. 3718, and the second of the 123 Olympiad.

He is preven-  
ted by poy-  
son.

24. The *Syracusians* having again got the power into their own hands, put to sale *Agathocles* his goods, pulled down and tare in pieces all his pictures.

*Manon* who  
poysoned him  
laboured in  
vain to get  
the Tyranny.

The mercena-  
ries massacre  
the *Messinians*,  
and the *Roman*  
Soldiers those  
of *Rhegium*.

tures. *Manon* in the mean while who had poysoned him being in the Camp with *Archagathus*, and elevated with the thought of what he had done, made away also *Archagathus* by treachery, and with good words drawing the Army to himself, resolved to make War upon the *Syracusians*, and seize on the Principality. The *Syracusians* therefore having made *Hicetas* their *Praetor*, sent him out against him, but the *Carthaginians* joyning with *Manon*, they were constrained to deliver them 400 Hostages to let fall the War with them, and receive the Exiles. Afterwards the mercenary Soldiers being denied the right of Suffrage in the election of Magistrates, a great sedition arose thereupon, and both they and the People took arms, but the better sort interposed themselves, and prevailed with both parties to agree, the Soldiers consenting to depart the Island with their goods. These Mercenaries marching away, came to *Messene*, a Sea-town standing over against *Italy*, where being kindly entertained by the Inhabitants, they so well requited them, that in the night they massacred them all, and marrying their wives, seized upon the Town, which they called in their own *Campanian* language *Mamertina*; *Mars* in that tongue being named *Mamers*. Over against this Town stood *Rhegium* upon the promontory of *Italy*, which being in danger now in the War betwixt the *Romans* and the *Tarentines*, the Inhabitants desired of the *Romans* to have a Party sent them for their defence, which being also *Campanians*, in imitation of what their Countrymen had done at *Messene*, and by their help, they also killed or expelled the Inhabitants, and seized upon their Town and territories. *Decius* their chief Commander they banished for the unequal division of the prey, who going thence to *Messene*, fell ill afterwards of his eyes, and sent to *Rhegium* for an expert Physician in this kind, who coming to him, in revenge of what he had done to his Country, applied *Cantharides* to his eyes instead of salve, and utterly blinded him. And when the *Romans* were once disintangled from the War, having grievously repented the treachery of their Soldiers, they besieged them in the Town, which taking, they brought 300 of them to *Rome*, and in the market-place first whipped and then beheaded them, after the custom of their Ancestors, to vindicate their credit with their confederates.

*Idem ibid.* &  
*Polybina lib. 1.*

*Diodorus Ex-  
cerpt. l. 22.*

25. In *Sicilie* were now many petty Tyrants: *Hicetas* at *Syracuse*, *Phinias* at *Agrigentum*, and several others at other places. These two fell out and warred with each other, inso much that by reason of their mutual excursions and depredations their ground lay untilled. *Hicetas* having still the upper hand of the other, was so elevated, that he ventured to fight with the *Carthaginians* at the River *Teris*, but it proved to the great losse of his men. Ever since the death of *Agathocles*, had the *Syracusians* laboured with all their might to reduce that whole Island into their power, and now at this time rather doubling their diligence than at all slackening their endeavours, sent over into *Italy* to *Pyrrhus* King of *Epirus* (who now was busie in War against the *Romans*, being called thither by the *Tarentines*) desiring aid of him for the expelling of the *Africans*, and to take upon him the protection of *Sicilie*. *Hicetas* having held the Dominion of *Syracuse* nine years, was then ejected by *Thymis*, who together with *Softratus* were so vexed with the *Carthaginian* War, that they again called *Pyrrhus* into *Sicilie*. The *Mamertines* entered into League with the *Carthaginians*, and resolved if possible to hinder his landing, the *Romans* were also by reason of their enmity with him easily drawn into the confederacy, so that the Straights of *Sicily* were narrowly watched. He delaying his coming till the next year, the *Carthaginians* sent back thirty of their ships upon other occasions, and besieged *Syracuse*. But then he (having been in *Italy* now two years and four moneths, without successe) passed over without control, and came directly to *Syracuse*, where the *Carthaginians* lying incamped with no lesse than 50000 men, having also 100 ships at anchor in the Haven, yet upon his approach raised their siege, not daring to try the hazard of a battel.

*Plutarch in  
Pyrrh.*

*Diodorus ibid.*

*Pyrrhus* King  
of *Epirus* cal-  
led over into  
*Sicily* by the  
*Syracusians*.

A. M. 3718.  
Ol. 123. an. 2.  
V. C. 467.  
Seleuci 26.  
Ptol. Lag. 37.  
Vide *Diodo-  
rum in Excerpt.*  
lib. 21.

A. M. 3728.  
Ol. 123. an. 4.  
V. C. 477.  
*Antioch. Soteris* 6.  
*Ptol. Phila-  
delph.* 9.

26. *Pyrrhus* coming to the City, reconciled the Inhabitants to their Governours, for which getting great favour, and receiving messages from diverse Cities



Cities, which gave up themselves into his hands, he not onely thought now of gaining *Sicily* (which he intended to give to his son; begotten on *Lanassa* *Justin lib. 23.* the daughter of *Agathocles*, as *Italy* to another) but of laying *Africk* it self also to his Dominions. Making a journey through the Island, he received the Cities to protection, and within a short space subdued all the places held by the *Carthaginians*, except *Lilybæum*, a Town built upon the Sea by their Ancestors, after that *Dionysius* had taken *Morya*. After he had been some time before it, though a great supply had arrived, yet sent they also to him, offering him money to raise his siege; and he was inclined to accept of the offer; but his friends in Council perswaded him by all means to refuse it, and utterly expel the *Africans* out of *Sicily*. Then did he with all his might attempt the taking of the place by force, but it being strongly defended, he every time came off with losse, and finally after he had continued the siege for two moneths, rose up and departed. After this he had thoughts of becoming master at Sea, and transporting his Army into *Africk*; but behaving himself too Magisterially in the preparation for this attempt he lost himself exceedingly, and then suspecting the fidelity of *Thamo* and *Sostratus*, the one he compelled by fear to revolt from him, and the later he slew as guilty of the same intention. This so provoked the Cities, that some revolted back to the *Carthaginians*, and others to the *Mamertines*, so that perceiving a great defection, and a conspiracy also hatched against him, being now solicited also by the *Samnites* and *Tarentines* for more aid, he departed again into *Italy*, being opposed so in his passage by the *Carthaginians* on the Sea, and that he lost most of his ships, and so much after he had landed by the *Mamertines* (who had before waited over 1000 men) that with much ado he got safe to *Tarentum*.

Prospereth.

But by his cruelty loseth himself and departeth.

The *Syracusan* Soldiers created two Magistrates, *Artemidorus* and *Hiero*.*Hiero* being sole Magistrate falleth upon the *Mamertines*.

27. After the departure of *Pyrrhus*, the Soldiers which quartered in the Towns near to *Syracuse*, beyond all example, created two Magistrates out of their own body, *Artemidorus* & *Hiero*, to the great indignation of the people, which took it in disdain that their privilege should be thus usurped by the Army. Yet afterwards did they confirm the honour unto *Hiero* for his great moderation and high abilities, who being the son of *Hierocles*, had strange prefaces whilst yet a Child concerning his future Dignity. He perceiving how in the absence of the *Prator*, the *Syracusians* were apt to be seditious, and attempt new matters, entred into affinity with *Leptines* (by marrying his daughter) whom he knew to be the most considerable man, and of great Authority amongst the vulgar, that he might supply his place as it were in his absence, and contain the people in obedience. After this marriage was over, taking notice of the loose Carriage of the old Mercenary Soldiers, and how they were ever inclining to mutinies, he drew them out against the *Mamertines*, who being Barbarians (as the *Greeks* always termed all besides themselves) had seized upon *Messene*, and dividing them from the rest, which he kept with himself, exposed them against the Enemy, and suffered them every man to be cut off, so that being rid of them, he thenceforth Governed without any fear or trouble. Three or four years after he set upon the *Mamertines* in good earnest, who though they bare themselves high so long as their friends and associates continued Masters of *Rhegium* (created much trouble to the *Carthaginians*, and compelled divers Towns to pay Tribute) yet now since the defeat of them, and especially after that *Hiero* had got into his power two places near unto them, they were exceedingly straitened.

28. Yet sent they out against him 8000 foot, and 1000 horse under the Conduct of one *Cios*, who calling the Soothsayers to divine what the issue should be, they answered, that he was to spend the next night in the Enemies Camp, at which being much elevated, he set his men in order, and passed over the River. *Hiero* sent 2000 choice *Messenians*, and 500 others, to get about the Hill *Thorax*, and come upon their backs, he in the mean time charging their front. Here was maintained a sharp dispute, till the 700 fresh men coming upon the backs of the *Mamertines*, did great execution upon them, so that being now compassed about, they betook them-

*Diodorus ut supra.**Plutarch ut prius.**Polybius lib. 1.**Justin ut prius.*

A. M. 3730.  
Ol. 128. ann. 2.  
V. C. 479.  
Antioch. Sot. 8.  
Ptol. Philad. 10.  
M. Curius Deolator 2.  
L. Cornelio Lentulo Coll.  
Polybius & Diodorus ut supra.

A. M. 3735.

SECT. I.

themselves to flight. *Cios* the General fighting most valiantly, received so many and great wounds that he swooned with too great expence of blood, and being taken alive, was brought into the Camp of the *Syracusians*, where all means possible were used for his recovery. But it hapning that divers horses being brought out of the field, he espied that on which his son rode amongst them; whereat taking an apprehension of the young mans death, in great trouble of mind he untied his wounds, and thereby caused his own end, as unwilling to outlive his son.

Hannibal the Carthaginian General deceitfully tampereth with them.

They lend to the Romans for aid.

29. The *Mamertines* upon the news of this defeat were minded to give up themselves, and their Citie, into the hands of *Hiero*. But it hapning that *Hannibal* the *Carthaginian* General, being at that time in the Island *Lipara*, heard of the overthrow, and came over presently to congratulate *Hiero*, as he pretended, but indeed to circumvent him with his General craft in which he was well skilled; and *Hiero* was so wrought upon as to give credit to him, and ly still. Then went he to the *Mamertines*, and finding them ready to surrender, turned them clearly from it, and drew them to his own interest, by bringing them relief into the Citie. *Hiero* returning to *Syracuse*, was for a reward of his great service saluted King by the consent of all men, which Title he held to his last, the space of 54 years. *Hannibal* cunningly placed his Garrison in the Castle, and thereby awed the whole Town, so that the *Mamertines* then suspected him as much as *Hiero*, and they hindring thus each other from gaining the place, at length made an accord to carry on the War against it in common. This Combination causing the other to bethink themselves of some foreign aid, they sent to the *Romans*, desiring them to take the patronage of them, their own Countrey-men, as being Originally *Campanians*.

*Polybius ibid.*

30. The Message found no good entertainment with the Senate, for that the fathers accounted it an absurd thing for them, who had punished the perfidiousness of those that had seized upon *Rhegium* so sharply, now to take upon them to protect those that were guilty, and patterns of the same Crime; and they could by no means be brought to consent unto it. But the people (who alone could do it) being perswaded by the *Prator* that it was high time to stop the proceedings of the *Carthaginians*, who had almost swallowed up all *Sicily*, and would use that Island as a bridge to passe over into *Italy*, and being also made to believe how profitable it would be to their particular interests to undertake the War, having suffered much by that late one with *Pyrrhus*, and the *Tarentines*, they decreed that aid should be sent them. The next year was *Appius Claudius* accordingly sent over with an Army, with which he put to the worst, both *Hiero* and *Hannibal*, and thereupon constrained the other to joyn himself to him against the *Carthaginians*. This is called the *Sicilian*, or the first *Punic* War, which for that it falls into the History of the *Romans* more especially, under whom thenceforth *Sicilia* was ever subject, it must necessarily be referred thither, as to its proper place. It began A. M. 3741. the first of the 129 Olympiad, in the 19th of the reign of *Antiochus Soter*, the second King of *Syria*, and the 21th of *Ptolemy Philadelphus*, the second also of *Egypt*, after the division of the Empire of *Alexander* the Great; 22 years after the death of *Agathocles*, in the 490th year after the building of *Rome*, *Appius Claudius Caudex*, and *M. Fulvius Flaccus*, being Consuls.

A. M. 3739.  
Ol. 128. ann. 3.  
V. C. 488.  
Antioch. Sot. 17.  
Ptol. Philad. 19.

Nnnn

CHAP.

## SECT. I.

## CHAP. IX.

# The affairs of the Romans Contemporary with the Empire of the Macedonians.

## SECT. I.

From the War of Privernum to the first Punick War, wherein the Romans first set foot out of Italy, the space of 66 years,

War decreed against the Paleopolitans.

1. IN the year after the taking of Privernum was War decreed against the Paleopolitans. Paleopolis stood not far off from the place where Neapolis (now Napoli or Naples) is seated, and, as some think, there where at this day, is seen il borgo de Chiara. The same people inhabited two Cities, being descended from Cuma, which was also a Colony of Chalcidians, now called Negropont. For the Cumani having a good fleet first passed to the Islands Menaria and Pithecusa, and afterward ventured upon the Continent. The Paleopolitans trusting to their own strength, and counting of the treachery of the Samnites, and the plague which now had seized upon Rome, committed many Hostile actions against the Romans that inhabited the Countreys about Cuma and Falernus. When L. Cornelius Lentulus, and Q. Publius Philo were both Consuls the second time, the Faciales were sent to demand restitution, who bringing from those Greeks (more valiant in tongue, saith Livy, than in deeds) a fiery and resolute answer, it was resolved that War should be made upon them.

Alexandria in Egypt, when built.

2. Whilest this War depended, the year following was Alexandria in Egypt built, as Livy writeth, whereas the foundation of this Citie was laid, while Alexander was in Africk, the year before the death of Darius, and the fifth before this, wherein C. Patinus and L. Papyrius Mugilanus were Consuls. This same year he maketh Alexander the King of Epirus to have been slain, who being Uncle by the mothers side to Alexander the Great, is thought to have undertaken an expedition into Italy, out of emulation towards his Nephew, that as the one was now Conquering the East, so the other might endeavour to subdue the West, having no lesse matter to work upon in Italy, Africk, and Sicily, than the other found in Asia and Persia. He was deceived by the Oracle of Jupiter of Dodona, which bidding him beware of Pandosia and Acheron, he knowing there was a Citie of the former name in Epirus, and a River of the later, thought himself so much the safer, as he could get farthest off from these. Being therefore sent for by the Tarentines, he came into Italy, and made War with the Brutii and Lucani, from whom he took many Towns, and 300 families, which he sent as Hostages into Epirus. He entered into a League with the Metapontini and Romans. But the Brutii and Lucani recruiting themselves by the supplies of their neighbours, re-inforced the War, and set upon him near Pandosia (a Town situate a little above Consentia, the Metropolis of the Brutii) near to which ran a River called Acheron. Taking this River with his horse, he was therein slain by a Lucanian, and his dead body being carried down the stream into the Enemies quarters was mangled into pieces. A certain woman whose husband and Children were taken prisoners by the Epirotes, got the pieces together, and in exchange for her relations sent his bones to Metapontus, whence they were conveyed into Epirus unto Cleopatra his wife, and Olympias his sister, whereof the one was sister, and the other mother to Alexander the Great.

Alexander King of Epirus slain in Italy.

2. The

Livius lib. 8.

A. M. 3678.  
Ol. 113. ann. 2.  
V. C. 173.  
Alexand. 10.

## CHAP. IX.

## Contemporary with the Empire of the Macedonians.

## SECT. I.

The Paleopolitans being overmatched so, as glad they were to yield up their City, and the Samnites lost three of their own Towns. The Tarentines yet proceeded, and drew both the Samnites and Neapolitans (the other part of this Greek Colony) afresh into the War, wherein also the Inhabitants of Vestinus, together with their allies engaged themselves. Whilst this War was but beginning, great stirrings hapned in the City. There, one L. Papyrius had given up himself to C. Publius as a slave, to work out his fathers debt. Being a young man of a beautiful body, Publius attempted filthily to abuse him, and when he would in no wise suffer this, most grievously beat and tore his body with rods. In this plight Papyrius got away, and running to the People, by declaring his condition, so affected them, that they procured the Fathers to decree, that the Consuls should propose to them in the Comitia these two Laws: the first, That no man should be detained in bonds, except for some misdemeanor, till the time of his punishment: the second, that the money and goods, not the body of the debtor should be responsible. Whereupon all prisoners for debt were forthwith set at liberty. The year following the Vestini were overthrown by Junius Bratus Scaeva the Consul, who also took from them two Towns. His Colleague L. Furius Camillus being sick in Samnium (or the Country of the Samnites) pronounced Dictator L. Papyrius Cursor, the most famous Captain by far of those times, who named Q. Fabius Rutilianus for his Master of Horse-men. Papyrius being in Camp against the Samnites, was forced to return to Rome, for the renewing of his auspicia, and at his departure commanded his Master of Horse-men nor to stir out of the trenches to fight one stroke till he came back; but Fabius understanding that a notable advantage of doing something of consequence was presented from the Enemy, fell upon the Samnites, and made great slaughter of them. The Dictator hearing of this, in a great rage returned to the Camp, and had put him to death, but that he was rescued by the Army, from which flying to the City, Papyrius followed him, and pressing fore to the Senate the necessity of discipline and authority, would not at all give way to the intreaties of the Fathers. This forced M. Fabius the father of the party to appeal to the People and their Tribunes, by which he hardly was drawn to pardon him, though his authority was saved together with the life of Fabius, through the intreaties of those who might justly have Commanded it, as was confessed by himself.

New Laws in favour of Debtors.

L. Papyrius Cursor made Dictator.

Is hindered from punishing Fabius Rutilianus his Master of the Horse-men.

The Samnites overthrown.

Desire Peace which is denied them.

3. This severity of the Dictator so alienated the hearts of the Soldiers from him, that it had well nigh cost him the loss of a batel; which constrained him to be more Popular; then afterward he overthrew the Samnites, and razed their Country. This made them desire Peace; but returning quickly again to their former enmity, in the second year after, they received another great defeat from A. Cornelius Aruina the Dictator. Herewith they were so struck, that they sent all the prisoners they had home to Rome, with such plunder as they had taken, and the dead body with the goods of him who had been the author of the revolt, and who fearing to be given up had killed himself. The Senate onely received the men, with such goods as any Citizen could challenge for his own, and denied them Peace. At this C. Pontius a leading man amongst them took occasion grievously to inveigh against the injustice of the Romans, and causing them to take arms, led them presently near to a place called Caudium, whence having apparelled ten Soldiers in the habit of Shepherds, he sent them to Calatia (where he heard the Consuls lay at present) with a charge, that when they should be asked where the Army of the Samnites was, they should answer in Apulia, besieging Luceria, which it had already well nigh taken. A rumour being already spread abroad of such a thing, now obtained greater credit, and the Romans accounted themselves by all means bound to succour Luceria, and the rather, for fear lest all Apulia should revolt. Two wayes there were which led to Luceria: One by the Sea side open and secure, another through the Strights of Caudium called Furca Caudina (at this day Caudino, and Forche Caudine, ten miles

A. M. 3681.  
Ol. 114. an. 1.  
V. C. 173.  
Alexand. 13.

Livius lib. 9.

Nniii 2 miles

## SECT. I.

They encamp the Roman Army at Fuvce Caudine.

miles distant from Benevento) a place incompass'd about with high mountains, & into which one could not enter, nor depart out of it, but through very difficult and straight passages. The *Consuls* leading their Army through this, as the nearest way, were quickly stopped up, so as they could neither proceed nor retire, because on all sides *Pontius* had blocked up the passage.

A. M. 3684.  
Ol. 114. an. 4.  
V. C. 433.  
Ptolom. Lagi 3.

4. The *Samnites* having the Roman Armies at this advantage, sent to *Herennius* the father of *Pontius* their General, and a very wise man, for his advice, what was to be done. He sent word, they should dismiss the Romans, without any injury at all, which answer not pleasing, they sent back for another, and then he counselled them to cut them off, and not leave a man alive. These two extremes being ascribed to dotage, he came to the Camp, and offered his reasons. He said, he gave the first advice as such, which if followed, would by a great courtesy have for ever oblig'd a most powerful People, and the second, as tending so far to the weakening of their power, as they could not for a long time either recruit themselves or renew the War, having lost two so considerable Armies; as for any third expedient he found none. Being asked concerning a middle way of dismissing the Romans in safety, but under the obligation of some conditions, he answered, that this course would not procure them friends, nor diminish their enemies; for such was the Roman Nation, that being disgraced or defeated, it could not rest, but would still retain the memory of what present necessity urg'd it to submit to; neither, said he, will they suffer you to rest till punished abundantly. But this wise counsel would not be heard; so that the Romans had these conditions set them: The Army was to march away only with their clothes, having first in token of slavery pass'd under the yugum: the Romans should quit wholly the Country of the *Samnites*, and thence remove their Colonies: and both Roman and *Samnite* live under the same terms of confederacy and alliance. The Armies were constrain'd to submit, and in great shame and consternation march'd away disarm'd. This disaster hap'n'd in the 433 year of the City, and the third after the death of *Alexander* the Great, when *T. Veiturius Calvinus* the first, and *Sp. Posthumius* the second time were *Consuls*.

Make it disgracefully pass'd under the yugum and march away disarm'd.

The conditions are renounced at Rome, and the *Samnites* often again defeated.

5. The City was most grievously afflicted with shame and anger at so disgraceful and unusual a thing. *Posthumius* perswaded the Senate to deliver himself and his Colleague into the hands of the *Samnites*, as being only oblig'd to the conditions, and not the State, which was unacquainted therewith. This being accordingly done, *Pontius* refused to receive them, exclaiming against the perfidiousness of the Romans. The Army then marching down again sufficiently revenged themselves, under conduct of *Papirius*. Several Towns which had revolted were recovered, and scarce could the *Samnites* obtain a Truce for two years. They brake this Truce ere the time was out, and thereby drew the War again upon them, which enduring for eleven years, they lost many thousands of men, with many Towns, which humbled them so, that upon their submission the usual confederacy was granted to them. Then were the *Aequi* chastized, who had helped them, and thereby were other Nations affrighted into subjection. In the second year after, began another War with the *Hetruscans*, wherein were fought divers bloody battels; but still the Romans had the better, who storm'd divers Towns, and wast'd the Country. Two years after, the *Samnites* rebelled again, and joyn'd with the *Hetruscans*, but with the same success as formerly, being grievously slaughtered, especially under the conduct of *Q. Fabius Maximus*, and *Dicius Mus*; the latter of whom, seeing his wing give ground, in a great and bloody battel fought with the *Samnites* and *Galls* (for those now had joyn'd with them) solemnly devoted himself and his Enemy to the *Dii Manes*, and rushing into the midst was killed, as his father had been 44 years before. Still continued the miseries of the *Samnites*, and two years after their last Army (for this time it must be understood) was cut in pieces by *L. Papirius* son to the former, who also took many Towns, and for his service obtained a most splendid Triumph. It is observ'd, that over the *Samnites* the Romans triumphed thirty times: viz. *Consuls* 26 times,

*Dicius Mus* as his father before him, devoteth himself to the *Dii Manes*.

## SECT. I.

A summary account of the War with the *Samnites*.

The Priesthood and Augurship communicated to the Commons.

The Law of Appeal renewed the third time.

War with the *Samnites*.

The third separation of the Commons.

times, *L. Papirius* the Dictator twice, *Publius Philo* once, who first of all others triumphed with Proconsular power, and once *Q. Fabius* another Proconsul. The family of the *Fabii* obtained, of these thirty, four Triumphs, and that of the *Papirii* five, as may be seen in the *Capitoline* Tables. This War having begun in the 410 year of the City, ended in the 481, and therefore continued 71 years, not fifty only, as *Florus*, according to his custom, falsely computeth; neither 81 as *Appian*, nor 49 only, as *Eutropius*; nor yet only seventy, which number *Livie* assigneth with tolerable difference. All Writers agree, that the Romans had no Enemy in Italy, who longer, or more pertinaciously, managed the grand quarrel with them, than the *Samnites*.

6. During these successes abroad, the People having got of late so many privileges, were reasonably quiet; yet their *Tribunes* having one occasion left to create trouble to the *Fathers*, somach'd much that all the *Priests* and *Augurs* should be created out of the Nobility, and labour'd to make the Commons partakers of those Offices. The Senate made no great resistance, as being now accustomed to yield, and that in things of far greater moment, as the *Consulship*, *Censorship*, *Dictatorship*, and *Triumphs*. So, whereas as yet there were but four chief *Priests* and as many *Augurs*, to them were added four, and to those five out of the body of the Commons. And this same year did *M. Valerius* the Consul prefer a Law of *Appeal* more diligently enacted. Now was it the third time preferred since the banishment of the Kings, always by the same family. The cause of renewing it, said *Livie*, I suppose was no other, than that the power of a few prevail'd above the liberty of the Commons. Which cannot be, if we consider, how for a long time the will of the multitude had got ground, and before this overturn'd the prerogative of the *Patricians*. The *Lex Porcia*, said he, seemeth alone to be enacted for the backs of the Citizens, because it inflict'd an heavy punishment upon him that should beat with rods or kill a Roman Citizen. The *Lex Valeria* having prohibited any to be killed or beaten who had appeal'd, if any did contrary, added no more than it was naughtily done, which (such was then the modesty of men) was I believe, a sufficient obligation for the Law. Now scarcely can any one threaten a Slave in that manner. *Fabius Gurgus* after this, being Consul, fought unprosperously with the *Samnites*, whereupon the Senate consult'd about removing him from the Army. *Fabius Maximus* his father deprecating this ignominy, prevented it, by promising he would go to the War as *Legatus* or Lieutenant to his son. He performed it, and so assist'd the young man, that he procur'd him Victory, and a Triumph, wherein *C. Pontius* the *Samnite* being led was put to death. After this, *L. Posthumius* a man of Consular dignity, being set over the Army, us'd the help of the Soldiers in his own field, and for that was punish'd. The *Samnites* desiring Peace, the League was renewed with them the fourth time. But presently again, as it seemeth, they rebelled; for *P. Cornelius Rufinus*, and *Manius Curius* (surnam'd *Dentatus*, because born with teeth, according to *Plinie*) overthrew them in several bloody battels, and took divers of their Towns. *Livie* in his eleventh Book (as appeareth from it's Epitome) wrote, that *Curius Dentatus* the Consul, having overthrown the *Samnites* and *Sabines*, who had rebelled, triumphed twice the same year. After this were Colonies sent to *Castrum*, *Senâ*, and *Adria*. The *Triumviri* for Capital matters were now also first made. The Consul being perished, the *Lustrum* was made, and 273000 polls of Roman Citizens were cessed.

7. Presently after happened the third separation of the Commons from the *Patricians*. The cause was the great debts which the poorer sort had contracted. As a remedy for this the *Tribunes* of the Commons, those incendiaries, propos'd new tables in way of defalcation, which the *Consuls* in favour of the creditors oppos'd. The contest came to that height, that the *Plæbians* departed into the *Janiculum*, for the reconciliation and redueement of whom, *Q. Hortensius* was made Dictator. He appeas'd them with good

*Livii Epitom. lib. 11.*

A. M. 3713.  
Ol. 122. an. 1.  
V. C. 462.  
*Selenci* 21.  
Ptol. Lagi 32.

*Eutropius lib. 2.*

*Livii Epitom. lib. 11.  
Plin. lib. 16.  
Xonaras.*

## SECT. I.

The Lex Hortensia.

good words, and persuaded them to return, by promising that for the time to come their *Publiscia* should have the force of Laws, and bind the whole politick body. This accordingly, by a Law called *Lex Hortensia*, he enacted; though it appeareth out of *Livy*, that the same in effect had been granted twice before, viz. in the 305 year of the Citie, by *L. Valerius*, and *M. Horatius* the Consuls, and again in the 416. by *Q. Publilius Philo* the Dictator, 50 years before this present, which having not been observed, might give the Commons as great distaste as the matter of debts, if we may judge from that which pacified them. \* *Florus* telleth a story, that the businesse of Marri-mony betwixt the *Patricians* and *Plébeians* caused this third separation of the Commons into the *Janiculum*, the tumult being raised by *Canuleius* the Tribune. But Students are to take notice, that none but he speak any thing of this Sedition in this place, and by the instigation of this person, for this cause of marriage. That great Contentions were raised betwixt the two orders about the taking away the Law made by the *Decemviri*, which forbade marriage betwixt them, is oftens asserted by *Livy*. But that the Commons departed into the *Janiculum* for the burthen of their debts, after great and long contentions in the 468th year of the Citie, is by several Authors affirmed, and that thence they were reduced by *Hortensius* the Dictator, who preferred a Law in the *Escluleium*, that what the Commons commanded should bind all *Quirites*: neither do Writers mention any other cause of the third Separation.

The error of Florus.

The Original of the Tarentines, and a description of their Citie, Government, and conversation.

8. *Hortensius* died in the time of his Magistracy. After this there was action with the *Volsinenses* and *Lucani*, against whom assistance was given to the *Thurini*. Then the Roman Ambassadors being killed by the *Galls Senones*, War was decreed against them, and *L. Caelius* the Prator was cut off by them with the Legions. The *Tarentines* being jealous of the growth of the Roman power, had hitherto privily favoured the *Sannites*, though openly they maintained a confederacy with the Romans. This people, being the offspring of the *Parthenia*, who were banished *Lacedamon*, for that being promiscuously begotten, they could not have any inheritance, and therefore plotted against the State as was shown before, inhabited a Citie called *Tarentum*, from *Tarus* a certain Heroe, the Metropolis once of *Calabria*, *Apulia*, and all *Lucania*. It was situate in a Peninsula on the Bay of the *Adriatick* Sea, famous for its hignesse, Walls, and Haven especially, which lay so convenient for sayling into the Roman Coasts, *Istria*, *Illyricum*, *Epirus*, *Achaia*, *Africk*, and *Sicily*, that *Florus* accounteth the situation admirable. The *Tarentines* affecting, took Democratical Government, obtained great power in those parts, having a more considerable Fleet than any of their neighbours, 30000 foot, 3000 horse, and 1000 persons fit to command them. They imbraced the Philosophy of *Pythagoras*, especially one *Archytas*, who governed the Citie a long time. In after times luxury was produced by prosperity to such excess, that if credit may be given to *Strabo*, the *Tarentines* had more publick Festivals yearly, than the year hath dayes; by reason whereof, the State of the Commonwealth under such a Government was rendred much worse. One of their bad customs was (as he judgeth it) to use the Condukt of Greiners in their Wars; for against the *Messapii* and *Lucani* they employed *Alexander* the *Molossian*, and before that *Archidamus* the son of *Agésilas*, as afterward *Cleonymus* and *Agathocles*; and afterwards *Pyrrhus* against the Romans. They contended with the *Messapii* about *Heraclea*, and employed also against them the two Kings of the *Dannii* and *Peuceitii*. Neither would they obey the foreign Captains for whom they had sent, but fell to odds with them, which procured no small inconvenience.

9. Near to the Haven, in the view of the Sea, was the Theatre of the City, which proved the cause of all its misery and calamities, saith *Florus*. They were therein beholding Games, when *L. Valerius* the *Duumvir* (as he is called in *Livy's* Epitome) or one of the Roman Admirals sayled thither as to a confederate Citie. They taking the Romans for Enemies, saith *Florus*; (who addeth what cannot be credited, that they scarce knew, who, or whence the

A.M. 3719.  
Ol. 123. ann. 3.  
V. C. 468.  
Seleuc. 27.  
Ptol. Lagi 38.

\* Lib. 1. cap. 25.

Livius Epitom.  
l. 11. 12.

Lege Strabon.  
l. 6. p. 278. &c.  
Florum lib. 1.  
c. 18.

Orosius lib. 4.  
cap. 1.  
Xenocras.

## SECT. I.

The Original of their War with the Romans.

They send for Pyrrhus King of Epirus.

the Romans were) or as others think, having both knowledge and malice sufficient, set upon the Fleet, and either sunk, or at least rifled it, and slew the Admiral. The Senate sent *L. Posthumius* to complain of the injury, who delivering his message boldly was dismissed with a very dissatisfactory answer; at his coming in, having had \* Urine thrown upon him, or one of his companions. War therefore was decreed against the *Tarentines*, and committed to the management of *L. Aemilius* the Consul, who first indeavoured by fair means to reclaim them, and when that could not do it, wasted their Territories with fire and sword, revenging their insolence with cruelty as *Orosius* writeth, for which service he triumphed the year after his Consulship, as appeareth out of an old inscription. The *Tarentines* finding themselves too weak for the encounter, sent to *Pyrrhus* King of *Epirus* for aid, whom they had formerly assisted against the *Corcyraens*. The multitude were of themselves rather inclined to peace; but a certain company of men, by Greek Authors called *Demagogi* (from their leading of the people) would not let them rest, till they had resolved upon the War; whereupon they sent Ambassadors to *Pyrrhus*, who not only in their name, but of other *Italians* also Presented him with gifts, and signified that they stood in need of a General, Eminent both for abilities and reputation; Italy it self being able to furnish them with forces out of the Countreys of the *Lucanians*, *Messapians*, and *Sannites*. The King being of a restless spirit, encouraging himself in vain hopes (whereby he grasped as it were the Empire of all the *West*) promised them to come over with an Army, and dispatched before him with 3000 men One *Cineas* a *Thessalian*, an excellent Orator and Scholar of *Demosthenes*. He afterwards took the Sea himself with twenty Elephants, 3000 horse, and 22 foot, besides 500 Archers and Slingers; but upon the Main was seized with such a Tempest, that his Fleet being severed, many Vessels were lost, he was forced to leap out into the water, and with great hazard got to Land, and onely at present two Elephants, a very few horse-men, and about 2000 foot could be recovered from the shipwrack by the *Messapians*, upon the Coasts of whom they were cast.

10. *Pyrrhus* did nothing without the consent of the *Tarentines*, till his ships, and the greater part of his Army arrived; then taking notice how they minded nothing but bathing and feasting, he shut up the publick meeting places, restrained them from walking (in which exercise they were wont to discourse idly concerning War) and forbidding drinking, and Games, called them to Arms, making Levies of the youth with some rigour and severity. *Valerius Lavinius* the Consul hasting to give him battel ere the assistance of the Confederates came, he drew out his Army to him; but before they should joyn, sent to him, offering himself an Umpire betwixt the Romans, and their adversaries, to which *Valerius* answered, that they neither cared for him as an Umpire, nor feared him as an Enemy, and taking his Spies, he caused them to be led throughout the Camp, and then bade them return, and tell him what they had seen. *Pyrrhus* pitched his Tents betwixt *Pandosia* and *Heraclea*, a Town situate betwixt *Tarentum* and *Metapontus*, built by the *Tarentines*. The Romans beyond the River *Siris* not *Liris*, a River of *Campania*, as *Florus* and *Orosius* write, who also draw *Heraclea* out of that part of *Magna Græcia*, lying upon *Siris* & *Metapontus*, into *Campania*. In the fight *Pyrrhus* had his horse killed under him, by one *Obfidius* a *Ferentane*, who was slain in the place by his followers. This made him change Armour with one near to him, who being made at for him and struck down, his Armour was taken from off him, and being carried about by the Romans in token of his death, struck such a terrour into his Soldiers that it had cost him the victory, but that he seasonably with some labour made himself known. Whilest the victory seemed yet to be doubtful, or rather to incline toward the Romans, the Elephants being brought into the battel decided the controversy. Till the passing of *Alexander* into the East, this beast had been talked of, but never seen by the Europeans nor them of Asia, except the Indians and their neighbours, as also the Southern Africans. Homer describeth the houses of rich

\* Valer. Max.  
lib. 2. cap. 5.  
Exemp. 5.

Plutarch in  
Pyrrho.

A.M. 3725.  
Ol. 125. ann. 1.  
V. C. 474.  
Selucidarum  
33.  
Antiochi Soteris 3.  
Ptol. Philadelph. 5.

Idem libid.

Eutrop.

SECT. I. rich men to have been adorned with Ivory, but as \* *Pausanias* noteth, never \* *Exemp. vide*  
 mentioneth the beast. The *Romans* themselves were amazed, not knowing in *Atticis p. 11.*  
 what they were; but the fault is laid upon their horses, which not enduring & *Justin l. 18.*  
 the smell nor bignesse of the Elephants broke their Ranks, which opportunity the King took, and sending his horse in amongst the *Romans* thus disordered, put them to the rout. He got but a bloody victory, he himself being wounded, and a great part of his men slain, though of the numbers on either side Writers do not agree.

II. Having taken prisoners 1800 of the *Romans*, he used them with great civility, and buried their dead, whom observing to be wounded all before, and to be with them countenances, he lifted up his eyes, and said: He could have been Master of all the world if he had had but such Soldiers. After this having received the Auxiliaries of the *Samnites*, *Lucani* and *Bruttii*, he marched towards *Rome* as far as *Praneste*, a Town 18 miles distant from the City, waiting all with fire and sword in his passage. Hearing that the *Romans* were busy in recruiting their Army, he considered it was most creditable for him to make peace with them, being he had no hopes to subdue them, and for that purpose sent *Cineas* to feel their minds, a man so powerfull in the art of Rhetorick, that the King acknowledged him to have stormed more Cities by his tongue, than he had ever done by force of Arms. *Cineas* presented the principal Citizens and their Wives with gifts from *Pyrrhus*; but they refused them. When he had something wrought upon the Senate to make a peace, and admit *Pyrrhus* into the City, *Appius Claudius* now blind came in, and by an Oration, recorded by *Plutarch*, procured the contrary. The Ambassador at his return being asked what he thought of *Rome*, answered, that the Senate seemed to him as a Council of so many Kings. After *Cineas* his return the *Romans* sent to *Pyrrhus* about redeeming of prisoners, amongst others *C. Fabricius*, a man of great note for virtue and poverty. The King being informed by *Cineas* concerning his disposition, offered him Gold, which when he refused with great resolution, to try his gravity, the next day as they were talking together, he commanded the greatest Elephant he had to be set behind the hanging, and then on a sudden the Tapestry being removed, the beast held his proboscis over *Fabricius* his head, and roared exceedingly. But he not at all terrified, though he had never before seen this kind of Creature, smiled, and told the King, that neither his Gold the day before, nor his Elephant now did at all move him. *Pyrrhus* amazed at his greatness of mind, released to him the prisoners, on this condition, that if the Senate accepted not of peace they should return to him, which accordingly they did, having saluted their friends, and solemnized the *Saturnalia*, being commanded to do it by the *Fathers* upon pain of death.

Marcheth towards *Rome*.

Sendeth about a peace which *Appius Claudius* hindereth.

*Fabricius* goeth to him about redeeming of prisoners.

Several engagements of the *Romans* with him.

12. *P. Sulpicius Saverrio* and *P. Decius Mus*, being *Consuls* for the following year, were sent against *Pyrrhus*. The *Romans* by this time had learnt not to fear Elephants with such astonishment as formerly; so that these beasts now were overcome and killed, *Pyrrhus* himself was wounded, 20000 of his men slain, and 5000 of the *Romans*, according to *Eutropius*, but from *Livies* Epitome, it should appear that the issue of this battle was doubtful, and *Cicero* writeth that *Decius* was slain. *Florus* relateth, that first in *Apulia*, and then at *Asculum* the *Romans* had better success, *Curius* and *Fabricius* being *Consuls*; for now the terror of the Elephants was worn off, and *C. Minutius* by cutting off the proboscis from one, shewed that the beasts could die. Darts were thrown so thick upon them, and fire upon the Towers on their backs, that the Army was sorely distressed, in which condition it remained till night relieved it, and the King being the last that fled, having received a wound in his shoulder, was carried out by his Guard in his Armour. But as *Florus* is to be read with great caution in every place, so especially in this; for *Curius* and *Fabricius* were never *Consuls* together, as the Tables show. This therefore is to be referred to the ensuing year wherein *C. Fabricius Luscinus*, and *Q. Aemilius Papus* (both of them the second time) were *Consuls*. *Plutarch* writeth that two dayes together *Pyrrhus* and the

*Entrop. ut prius & Plutarch.*

A. M. 3716. V. C. 475.

Lib. 13.

Tuscul.

*Consuls* fought at *Asculum*; whereof, on the former, his Elephants could do him no service, but on the later, chusing a more even ground, by the means of the Elephants especially, he drove the *Romans* back into their Camp, having slain of them 6000, and lost 3505 of his own men, as *Hieronymus* relateth out of the King's Records. But he addeth, that *Dionysius* neither wrote any thing of two battles fought at *Asculum*, neither, for certain, of *Pyrrhus* his Victory: one fight he mentioned fought till Sun-set, at the conclusion whereof *Pyrrhus* was wounded in the Arm, which wound, with the *Samnites* rifling his baggage, put an end to it; either party having lost above 15000 men. That this battle (or those battles) fell out in the year aforesaid is clear from that which moved *Pyrrhus* this way to attempt the ending of the controversy. For the *Consuls*, *Fabricius* and *Emilius*, receiving a letter from the King's \* Physician, wherein he offered to poison him, upon condition to be well required, they wrote back to *Pyrrhus* to acquaint him with the treason, and in theirs included the Physicians letter. To requite the *Romans* for this courtesie, he sent back their prisoners gratis, and dispatched away *Cineas* again to treat of Peace. The *Romans* would neither receive their Captives in way of free gift, nor reward; but sent him so many of the *Samnites* and *Tarentines*: as for Peace, they refused to admit of any, except he would return with his forces into *Epirus*. He perceiving (saith *Plutarch*) that he must try with them another battle, marched unto *Asculum*. Moreover the *Triumphal* tables show, that in the Consulship of *Fabricius* and *Emilius*, the *Romans* fought with the *Lucani*, *Bruttii*, *Tarentines*, and *Samnites*, at *Asculum*, which as \* *Strabo* writeth, was a Town of the *Piceni* in the midland Country, most fortified by nature, being encompassed, besides a wall, with mountains, over which no Army could passe.

*Pyrrhus* getting nothing by his very success.

Is sent for into *Sicily* and passeth over thither.

13. *Pyrrhus* after this action at *Asculum*, is reported to have answered one who congratulated with him about his success, in this manner: If we overcome the *Romans* another time we are utterly lost. For he had by this time lost a great part of the Soldiers he had brought over, and almost all his friends and Captains: he had no more to send for: he perceived his *Italian* Allies to loiter, and the *Romans* to have a constant supply, whereby they presently recruited their Army, and filled up their Legions, and he saw clearly that their courage was nothing daunted by the loss of one battle, but rather their strength and resolution to be the more increased. Being pressed with these difficulties, he had presently a recourse to vain hopes, occasioned by such affairs as cast him necessarily into an anxious deliberation. For at the same time, the *Agriemines*, *Syracusians*, and *Leontines*, out of *Sicily*, gave up themselves to him, desiring his help in casting out the *Carthaginians*, and clearing the Island of *Tyrants*: and out of *Greece* came intelligence, that *Ptolomeus Ceraunus* was slain in battle by the *Galli*, and therefore it was most convenient for him to come into *Macedonia*, now without a King. Blaming Fortune much that had conjoynd two such great opportunities, whereof the one must necessarily be omitted, after a long debate he resolved to apply himself to the matters of *Sicily*, as more considerable than the other of *Greece*, because of *Africk*. Having sent over *Cineas* beforehand to deal with the Cities about the state of affairs, he put a Garrison upon the *Tarentines*, who took it in ill part, requiring him either to prosecute the War against the *Romans*, for which he had been called, or clearly quitting the Country of *Tarentum*, to leave the City in that condition wherein he found it: But returning them no pleasant answer, he bade them stay his time, and so departed, after he had carried on the War in *Italy* two years and four monthes. For the following year, *P. Cornelius Rufinus*, and *C. Julius Brutus*, both the second time, were *Consuls*. *Rufinus* was a man very expert in War, but extraordinarily covetous and scraping, insomuch that upon this account he was much hated by *Fabricius*, formerly mentioned. Yet, when this year he stood for the Consulship, for that it was a very dangerous time, and his competitors were persons of no value, *Fabricius* laboured earnestly to have him elected, and when every one wondered at it; either to his friends, or, as

\* De hac historia aliter apud alios relatam Consule *Livii* Epit. l. 13. Val. Max. l. 6. c. 5. Exem. 1. Tullii Offic. l. 3. Gellium l. 3. c. 8.

\* Lib. 5. p. 241. B.

Gellius l. 4. c. 8. A. M. 3728. V. C. 477.

O o o o

\* Cicero



## SECT. I.

\* Cicero writeth, to Rufinus himself, giving him thanks, hee answered: *L. a. de Oratore. Malui complari quam venire, I desired rather to be pilled shau sold.*

Returneth  
with difficul-  
ty.

14. Pyrrhus having found things in Sicily according to his mind, proceeded in his enterprize with as much satisfaction, till growing tyrannical, he incurred the hatred of those that employed him, part of whom revolted to the Carthaginians, and others betook themselves to the aid of the Mamertines. Perceiving at length that he was involved in the deep hatred of all, and nothing throughout the Island but revolts, new councils and a strong conspiracy against him, he received letters from the Samnites and Tarentines, who being shut up in their Towns, which they hardly maintained, desired his assistance. He was glad of so specious a pretence, that he might not seem to be driven by desperation out of Sicily, which indeed as a perishing Vessel in so great a Tempest he was not able to govern, and so returned into Italy, after he had been absent near as long as formerly he had there continued. The Barbarians set upon him in his passage, and the Carthaginians so distressed him the Straights, that he lost many of his ships. The Mamertines having landed, to the number of 10000 men before him, would not adventure to fight with him, but distressed his Army much in narrow and difficult places, killing two Elephants and many Men in the rear. He himself fighting in the front with a valiant and skilful Enemy, received a hurt in his head, whereupon he withdrew himself a little. This so animated the Mamertines, that one of them, great in bulck, and glittering with armour, came out far before the rest, and in a threatening manner bade Pyrrhus come forth if he were alive. Pyrrhus enraged with his guard, bloody as he was, and with a terrible countenance rushed through the midst, and coming up to the Barbarian, struck him with such fury upon the head, that the stroke through the sword's metal and the strength of the arm, pierced to the lower part of the body, so that in a moment it was chined down in the middle, and the two parts fell down on either side. The Barbarians astonished hereat, left off their attempts, and so without further interruption he marched with 20000 Foot, and 3000 Horse to Tarentum, where increasing his forces by new levies, he proceeded into Samnium against the Romans, who there lay incamped.

A. M. 3730.  
Ol. 126. an. 2.  
V. C. 479.  
Seleucid. 38.  
Antioch. Sor. 3.  
Ptol. Philad.  
10.

He is defeated  
by Curius  
Dentatus the  
Consul.

15. Few of the Samnites joyned now with him, because being so often overthrown by the Romans, their courage was wholly broken, and for that they were displeased with him for his going into Sicily. He divided his forces into two parts, whereof one he sent against L. Cornelius Lentulus into Lucania to hinder him from joyning with his Colleague M. Curius Dentatus the other Consul, against whom he marched, then lying in a fortified place near Beneventum. Hasting to set upon him ere the other could come to his relief, with the most valiant of his men, and fiercest of his Elephants picked out, he marched by night towards his Camp, but passing through Woods his lights failed him, and going out of his way he lost his time so much, that at break of day the Romans discovered him upon the hills. Curius then in haste, as he could, drew out his forces, and falling upon the vanguard of Pyrrhus put it to flight, killing many men, and taking some Elephants. Animated by this successe, he descended into the Plain, and there joyned battel with the whole Army. In one wing he beat back the Enemy, in the other by the violence of the beasts was born back to his Camp, whence calling forth those who kept the guard, they from high places plied the Elephants with darts, that they forced them back upon their own friends, whom bearing down, and breaking their ranks, they thereby procured Victory to the Romans. Florus and Orofius, contrary to what Plutarch reporteth of Beneventum (concerning which place Learned men do much doubt) make the battel to have been fought in Lucania in the Arusian Plains. Florus writeth, that the cause of the Victory was a young Elephants being wounded in the head, which turning back and roaring for the pain, the Dam hearing him, ran as to his relief, and so both of them disordered the battel, she overturning as Enemies all the mer. Orofius saith, that the beasts were thus disordered by bundles of hemp besmeared with pitch, which having hooks in them and set on fire, the

## SECT. I.

the Romans cast upon their backs, and the towers set thereon. Frontinus maketh the battel fought about Faernum, in the Arusian Plains. Eutropius is silent concerning the place; but writeth, that Curius Dentatus beat Pyrrhus back to Tarentum, slew 23000 of his men, and led, the first of all others, Elephants (four in number) in triumph to Rome; which beasts the Romans called Luca boves, because they were first brought out of Lucania, where Pyrrhus was overthrown: This maketh much against that place which Plutarch assigneth for the battel, the original of whose error seemeth a mistaking of Beneventum for Fauentum, or Statuentum, a City of Lucania.

And with-  
draweth him-  
self into his  
own Kingdom.

16. This Victory, saith Plutarch, made way for the establishment of the Roman Empire: for the Romans got such courage and reputation by this successe, that being counted invincible, they presently obtained all Italy, and not long after, Sicily also. As for Pyrrhus, he having spent six years, and fallen from his hopes both in Italy and Sicily, returned into Epirus, yet with a mind nothing daunted. He was thought the ablest Captain of all the Kings of that time, both for military skill, and personal valour; but what he had already obtained, he lost still by striving to grasp more. Therefore Antigonus compared him to a Gamester, who having lucky hits, knew not how to use them. (a) Having sent to the Kings of Asia, and Antigonus especially, for men and money, after he had received bare letters, he called the Epirois and Tarentines together, and told them, that presently assistance would come, which report being carried unto the Roman Camp, the Consuls durst not stir, and so taking this advantage, the night following, he passed over unmolested into Epirus. (b) Curius the Consul having taken his Camp, touched nothing of the plunder; and whereas the Senate gave seven Akers of ground apiece to the People, and 500 to him, he would not exceed the common proportion. This year, C. Fabricius Luscinus and Q. Aemilius Papus, much commended for their poverty, being Censors, (d) removed P. Cornelius Rufinus, who had been twice Consul and once Dictator, from the Senate, because they had found in his house of plate for the service of his table ten pounds; this being against a Law, as (e) Plutarch hinteth. At this Lustum were ceased 271234 polls of Roman Citizens, as appeareth from the Epitome of the 14 Book of Livy's History.

Ptolomy Phi-  
ladelphus by an  
Embassie mak-  
eth a confederacy  
with the Romans.

The Cattle  
and Town of  
Tarentum ta-  
ken most  
of Italy being  
now subdued.

17. The Roman name had begun to be famous before, but was terrible after the overthrow of Pyrrhus. In the second year after his flight, (a) Ptolomy Philadelphus sent Ambassadors to congratulate with the Romans about their successe, and to enter into confederacy with them. They sent, to do him honour, Ambassadors also to Alexandria, where he received them most courteously, and sent them back loaded with gifts. At their return they brought the gifts, though given to themselves in particular, into the Treasury; but the Senate commanded them to be restored. In the third year after the departure of Pyrrhus, the (b) Tarentines, being neither able to drive out the Garrison he had there left under Milo, nor procure Peace of the Romans, desired aid of the Carthaginians, wherewith giving the Romans battel, they were overthrown. Milo sensible how badly he was able to resist, by leave from the Consul Papirius, departed with his men, and left the Castle, which the Romans having got into their hands, easily mastered the City, the walls whereof they demolished. Peace and liberty was granted to the Citizens, and the two Consuls L. Papirius Cursor, and Sp. Cornelius Maximus (both Consuls the second time) triumphed, having finished both the Tarentine War and that of the Samnites in the 481 (or 482) year of the City, as the Capitoline tables do shew. The greatest part of Italy was now conquered, an accession being made not onely of the Tarentines and Samnites, but the Lucanians also, and a little before of the Etruscans. After this, the (c) Campanian Legion, which without command had seized upon Rhegium was besieged, and upon surrender was put to death. The inhabitants of Apollonia in Illyricum sending Ambassadors to Rome, the two Consuls Q. Fabius and Cn. Apronius beat them; and for that were delivered up to the Apollonians.

O o o o 2

The

(a) Pausan. in  
Atticis.  
(b) Val. Max.  
l. 4. c. 3. ex. 5.  
(c) Idem. l. 4.  
c. 4. ex. 3.  
(d) Livii Epit.  
l. 14.  
Val. Max. l. 2.  
c. 9. ex. 4.  
Agellius l. 17.  
c. 21.  
(e) In Sylb.

(a) Livii Ep.  
l. 14.  
Eutrop. l. 2.  
Val. Max. l. 4.  
c. 3. ex. 9.

(b) Orofius  
l. 4. c. 3.  
Xonazar.  
A. M. 3733.  
Ol. 127. an. 1.  
V. C. 482.  
Seleucid. 41.  
Antioch. Sor. 11.  
Ptol. Philad.  
13.

(c) Livii Epit.  
lib. 15.  
Val. Max. l. 6.  
c. 6. ex. 5.

SECT. 2. The *Picentes* were overcome and had peace given them. Colonies were sent forth to *Ariminum* in the Country of the *Piceni*, and to *Beneventum* (till now called *Maleventum*) in that of the *Samnites*. About the same time was silver Coin first stamped at *Rome*, brass being used altogether till now, the State having got much silver in a Cattle of the *Samnites*, as *Xenophon* writeth. This hapned five years before the first *Punick War*, as (d) *Pliny* (d) *Lib. 33. 4. 3.* computeth, *C. Fabius Pictor*, and *Q. Ogulnius Gallus* being Consuls, in the fourteenth year of *Antiochus Soter*, and the sixteenth of *Ptolemy Philadelphus*, A. M. 3736, 267 before the birth of Christ.

Silver money  
first stamped.

## SECT. II.

*From the First Punick War, to that with Antiochus the Great, in which the Romans first invaded Asia, the Space of 37 years.*

1. The *Umbri* and *Sallentini* being newly subdued, and the number of *Quassors* being increased to eight, the *Romans* took occasion to transfer their Armies over the Sea into *Sicily*, and begun that, which from the Island (that gave both occasion to, and was the fear of, it) is by *Greek Writers* called the *Sicilian War*. There had the *Mamertines* most perfidiously seized on *Messana*, as is already related, and thereupon were become Enemies to *Hieron King of Syracuse*, who besieged them justly as thieves and murderers, and had taken the City, but that *Annibal the Carthaginian* cunningly diverted him, with an intention to get it into his own hands, as it came to passe; for pretending fair things to the *Mamertines*, as before to *Hiero*, and sending them in provisions, he possessed himself of the Cattle. They being thus cheated by him, and now straitened by both, who had joyned together against them, betook themselves to the *Romans* for relief. The *Senate* begun to be very sensible of the power of the *Carthaginians*, who had now almost the whole Island in their hands, and was jealous of their approach so near to *Italy*; so that a just quarrel with them seemed very acceptable. But so bad was the cause of the *Mamertines*, as they could not in conscience undertake the patronage of it, and gave them a denial. From the Senate the thing was brought to the People, which besides it's ancient use to debate matters concerning War, had by the *Hortensian Law* obtained power by it's *Plebiscita* to bind the whole State. The *Prators* shewed what great profit would redound to the Commonwealth in general, and particularly to private Citizens (who having suffered much by the late *Italian Wars*, were desirous by a new one to recruit their fortunes) and therefore by a *Plebiscitum* they decreed aid to be sent to the *Mamertines*, in the 489 year of the City, *Q. Fabius Maximus Gurgus* the third time, and *L. Mamilius Vitulus* being Consuls.

*Hiero King of Syracuse* being worsted maketh his peace with the *Romans*.

2. In the year following, and the Consulship of *Appius Claudius Caudex*, and *M. Fulvius Flaccus*, *Appius* was sent over with an Army to *Messana*, to execute the commands of the People. He first defeated *Hiero*, then the *Carthaginians*, and so raised the siege. The succeeding Consuls *Manius Orestilius* and *M. Valerius Maximus*, were ordered both, and with all the Legions, to passe into *Sicily*, wherewith *Hiero* was affrighted into obedience, perceiving that the *Romans* were most likely to remain Victors, and made his Peace upon these terms, To restore all their prisoners without ransom, and pay 100 Talents of Silver. The *Romans* embraced his friendship the more readily, for that the *Carthaginians* being masters at Sea, they could not well send over provisions, which they hoped might be supplied by him in good measure. They also by this alliance thought themselves eased of the burthen of War, and therefore the next year they sent over but two Legions. *Valerius* the Consul from *Messana* had the surname of *Messala*, who also having taken

A. M. 3740.  
Ol. 128. an. 4.  
V. C. 490.  
Seleucid. 49.  
Antioch. Sot. 19.  
Ptolom. Philad. 21.

A Dial  
brought out  
of Sicily to  
Rome.

And Barbers.

*Agigentum* taken.

The *Romans*  
now first ap-  
ply them-  
selves to sea  
matters.

*Hannibal* cruci-  
fied by his  
Soldiers.

*Catana*, carried thence a new Sundial to *Rome*, *Papirius Cursor* having thirty years before set up the first that ever was in that City. This though not perfect, the People used 99 years, till *M. Philippus* their Censor set up a perfect one by it, and about the same time *Scipio Nasica* being Censor, first divided the equal division of the day into hours, by water dropping out of one vessel into another. This *Pliny* relateth out of *Varro*, who also reported, that out of *Sicily* the first Barbers were brought to *Rome* by *P. Licinius Mena*, about the 454 year of the City, before which time the *Romans* never cut their hair. The first that was shaven every day was *Scipio Africanus*, whom *Augustus* imitated therein, none more using the Razor than he.

3. the next year was *Agigentum* taken after a long siege; *Hannibal* who came to raise it being overthrown by *L. Posthumus* and *Q. Mamilius* the Consuls. The news whereof filled *Rome* with excessive joy, and the Citizens now elevated in mind, would not acquiesce in former Councils. It seemed not sufficient to them, that they had saved the *Mamertines*, nor enriched themselves with great booty; but conceiving good hope that they might be able to cast the *Carthaginians* out of *Sicily*, and much thereby promote their affairs, they thither directed their thoughts and consultations. On Land indeed they seemed sufficiently to prosper, for *L. Valerius* and *T. Ostacilius* the succeeding Consuls, managed the War very well; but the *Carthaginians* without controversy being Masters at Sea, thereby procured the Maritime Towns to revolt to them, so that the War was poised betwixt the two interests, now inclining to one side, and then presently to the other. Moreover *Italy* was often molested by the *Carthaginian Fleet*; but *Africk* out of all danger. Wherefore they concluded, there was necessity of betaking themselves also to Sea matters. Having never as much as thought of the Sea before, they now set upon building of 100 Quinqueremes and 20 Tirimemes, a thing most difficult, because the Carpenters were utterly to seek how to make the former sort of Gallies, their use being utterly unknown to the *Italians*. But before they had made trial, when they first transported their forces to *Messana*, they ventured to fight with the *Carthaginians*, who had received the Dominion of the Sea, without any competition from their Ancestors; which boldness and confidence *Polybius* esteemeth no lesse than miraculous. First of all *Cn. Cornelius* the Consul and Admiral, going with seven Vessels to reduce a Town of the *Liparaeans*, was taken in the Haven by one sent from *Hannibal*. But *Dulius* his Colleague presently after gave the *Carthaginians* a great overthrow, the Soldiers having provided iron hooks, by the help of which they could board them and fight as on Land. The *Romans* hereby extraordinarily animated, relieved the *Agentans*, and took *Macella* a certain Town by storm. But *Amilcar* Captain of the *Carthaginian Land-forces* then lying at *Panormus*, understanding that in the *Roman Camp* there was a mutiny, for that the Auxiliaries and Legions contended who should have the first place in battel; and that the former had separated themselves, he suddenly fell upon them in their removal, and killed almost 4000 men. *Hannibal* after this losse at Sea departed to *Carthage*, where recruiting his Naval forces he went into *Sardinia*, and being blocked up in a port by the *Romans*, lost many ships, and for that was crucified by the Soldiers, who overthrew the defeat. The punishment which he feared for the former overthrow he craftily evaded; for, before the thing was heard at *Carthage*, he sent one of his friends thither, who coming to the Court, told the Senate that the *Roman Admiral* was come with a great Fleet, and therefore he was come to ask their advice whether he should fight him. All the Senate answered, there was no doubt but he ought, to which the messenger replied, he hath fought and is overthrown. By this means he hindered them from condemning this fact, which before they had judged that it ought to be done.

4. Now had the *Romans* passed both into *Sardinia* and *Corsica*; Divine Providence as *Cassaubon* noteth upon *Polybius*, so ordering it, that present success should dispose their minds for such future undertakings, as made way for

SECT. 2.

A. M. 3743.  
Ol. 129. an. 3.  
V. C. 493.  
Antioch. Thei. 1.  
Ptol. Philad. 23.

A. M. 3745.  
Val. Max. lib. 6. 3. ext. 7.

SECT. 2. for their decreed Empire. (a) *Hanno*, the year following, being in *Sardinia* was slain, and his Army cut off by *L. Cornelius Scipio* the Consul. The next, many Towns were lost and taken in *Sicily* on both sides. But (b) *Calpurnius Flamma* a Roman Tribune (or Leader of a Legion) gave a great demonstration of his valour. For *A. Atilius Calatinus* the Consul, having rashly brought the Army into such straits, out of which there was no possibility to extricate himself, he with 300 men took an hill near adjoining, and drew thereby the *Carthaginians* to himself, till the Army could pass through without opposition. All the 300 were slain, yet he sorely wounded and covered with dead bodies survived, being by *Roman* Writes compared, for this act, to *Leonidas* the *Spartan*. This story is twice told by *Julius Frontinus*, who acquainteth us with the uncertainty of the man's name, some calling him *Laberius*, others *Q. Cadius*, but most *Calpurnius Flamma*. The following year, *C. Atilius Regulus* the Consul subdued the Islands *Lipara* and *Melita*, whereof the later is ennobled by the ship-wrack of *St. Paul*, lying betwixt *Sicily* and *Africk*. *Polybius* writeth, that first *Regulus* was worsted at Sea, and then he defeated the *Carthaginians*. Now the *Romans* resolved to change the seat of the War into *Africk*, and the next year sent a Fleet under command of the Consuls *M. Atilius Regulus* (who was substituted in the place of *Cadius*) and *L. Manlius*, containing 330 long and covered ships. The *Carthaginians* sensible enough how concerned they were to keep the War from their own shores, opposed them with 350 Vessels, and a threefold battle was fought on the same day, in which the *Romans* remained Victors, having taken 64 ships with the defendants, and sunk 30, and of their own lost 24, but not with the men; for the *Carthaginians* fearing their Corvi or iron hooks, were afraid to come near them. Repairing then the ships they had taken, they passed over into *Africk*, and had surrendered to them *Clupea* a City seated upon the Promontory *Hermana*. This done, they sent to the Senate for further orders, employing themselves, till the return of the messengers, in wasting the Country, which they did without interruption. At length they received the resolution of the Senate, which was, that one of them should continue in *Africk* with a convenient Army, and the other return to *Rome* with the remaining forces.

5. (a) *M. Atilius Regulus* remained in *Africk* with 40 ships, 15000 Foot, and 500 Horse. Pitching his Camp upon the River *Bragada*, or *Bagrada*, he was forced to make (b) War with a Serpent of a miraculous bignesse, which with the great trouble of his whole Army, and use of Engines for battery, at length he slew, and sent it's skin, 120 foot long, to *Rome*. The history hereof was curiously and elegantly related by *Livie*, as (c) *Valerius* telleth us. After this, (d) the Consul gave the *Carthaginians* a defeat, fighting in such a place where their Horse and Elephants could do them no service, and then took *Tunetum* or *Tunis*. But not long after he was overthrown himself, taken prisoner, and almost his whole Army lost; this Victory being got for the *Carthaginians* by *Xanthippus*, the *Lacedemonian*, whom afterwards sending honourably home as they pretended, they commanded those that carried him to drown him and his in the Sea, lest so great a Victory should be ascribed to the *Lacedemonians*, as *Appian* writeth. Of 30000 but a few escaped into the City *Aspis* (called also *Clupea*) where they were besieged, till their Enemies perceiving they profited nothing, rose up and made provision for resisting the succours which the Senate sent the following year, under command of *M. Emilius Paulus* and *Ser. Fabius Nobilior*, the Consuls. They taking the Sea with 350 ships were opposed by the *Carthaginians*, whom they defeated, and took 114 of their Vessels with the men in them, as *Polybius* writeth, or took 20 and sank 104, as *Eutropius* and *Orosius*, the later whereof addeth, that of the *Carthaginians* were slain 35000, and that the *Romans* lost nine Gallies and 1100 men. The Consuls then went to *Clupea*, but, taking in the reliques of the Army, presently set sail again for *Sicily*. The Pilots told them they must take heed of the outward part of that Island, which was full of shelves and very dangerous, especially at that time betwixt

(a) *Orosius* l. 4. c. 7.  
(b) *Front.* Stratag. l. 1. c. 5.  
Exemp. 15. & l. 4. c. 5. Exemp. 10.  
Gellius l. 3. c. 7. alii.

(a) *Polybius* lib. 1.  
(b) *Gellius* l. 6. c. 3.  
Liv. Epit. l. 18.  
(c) *Lib. v. c. 48.*  
Exemp. ult.  
*Polybius* ut supra.

A. M. 3749.  
Ol. 131. an. 1.  
V. C. 498.  
Ant. Theat. 7.  
Ptol. Philad. 29.  
M. Atilio Regulo 2.  
L. Manlio Fulvico 2.  
Cass.

The Consuls in their return from *Sicily* perish by a lamentable shipwreck. *Agrigentum* destroyed.

Another shipwreck of the Consuls.

*Metellus* the Consul defeateth the *Carthaginians*.

Which moveth them to send about a Peace.

betwixt the rising of *Orion* and the *Dog*. But they gave no heed to the Seamen, out of a desire, by shewing of their fresh Victory and Plunder, to procure certain Towns upon the Coasts to yield. They had safely passed the middle of the sea, and drew near to the Coasts of *Camarina*, when such a tempest and so great calamities fell upon them, as cannot be expressed, saith *Polybius*, for the greatness thereof. For, of 464 ships, 80 scarcely were saved, and the rest were swallowed up, or cast upon rocks, so that the shoar was filled with dead bodies, and broken pieces of ships. Both the Consuls perished. Those few that escaped *Hiero* kindly received, and furnishing them with clothes and other necessities, conveyed them safe to *Messana*. *Karibalo* the *Carthaginian* taking advantage of this disaster, besieged, conquered, and burnt *Agrigentum*, the walls whereof he also demolished.

6. The *Romans* nothing at all discouraged by the greatest losse that ever a tempest procured, gave order for the making of 220 Gallies, which was profecuted with such alacrity, that in three months time they were both made and launched. *Asdrubal* the *Carthaginian* with all the old Army, new levies, and 140 Elephants, came into *Sicily*, and of old and new Vessels made up a Fleet of 200 sail. The Consuls *A. Atilius* and *Cn. Cornelius* being commanded to passe into *Sicily*, therein, this year, took several Towns, and returned. Their successors *C. Servilius Capio* and *C. Sempronius Blaesus*, in the beginning of the next Spring with all the Fleet passed into *Sicily*, and thence into *Africk*, where coasting about they landed in many places, but did nothing memorable. At length they came to the Island of the *Lotophagi* called *Mennix*, not far distant from the lesser *Syria*. Here they fell upon some quicks in the low water, and were in great danger, being utterly ignorant of the Coasts, but the tide returning, when they had lightened the ships, cleared them off the shelves, and they returned in a kind of flight to *Panormus* in *Sicily*. Then passing hence towards *Rome* through the Straights very unadvisedly, such a tempest fell upon them, as above 150 ships were lost. Though the Senate and People were marvellously pricked forward to all attempts by desire of glory, yet so many and great were their losses at Sea, that they were constrained to omit naval preparations, and place all their hope in the land forces. They sent *L. Caelius Metellus* and *Cn. Furius Pacilus* the Consuls into *Sicily* with the Legions, and 60 ships onely, for the conveying of necessities to the Army. And not onely did they plainly yield the Dominion of the Sea to the *Carthaginians*, but feared them also on Land, because of their Elephants, which had often times done them great damage. *Asdrubal* the *Punic* General understanding their fears, and how one of the Consuls was returned back into *Italy* with half of the Army, in great confidence wasted the grounds about *Panormus*, and the more carelessly, because *Metellus* kept himself within the walls. But the Consul taking an opportunity, so placed his men in respect of the Elephants, that when the *Carthaginians* came against the Town, he overthrew them, slew 20000, and took 26 Elephants, according to *Eutropius*. But *Orosius* writeth, that 26 were slain, and 104 taken: and *Livie* related, as appeareth by the Epitome of his nineteenth Book, that 120 Elephants were led in triumph, with thirteen Captains of the Enemy. *Diodorus Siculus* maketh the occasion of the overthrow to have been given by the Celts, in *Asdrubal's* Army, who meeting with wine brought thither by Merchants, so ingurgitated themselves therein, that being not themselves, they broke the ranks and turned all into disorder, which opportunity *Metellus* instantly improved.

7 This defeat caused the *Carthaginians* to desire Peace, and offered to send to the Senate about it. Amongst the Messengers was *Atilius Regulus* whom they had overthrown, and taken prisoner, five years before, and now bound with an oath to return to *Carthage*, in case neither Peace nor exchange of prisoners could be procured. He when he came to *Rome*, according to what he thought of the interest of the Commonwealth, dissuaded the Senate from Peace; and yet to keep his oath returned to *Carthage*, where he was cruelly

SECT. 2.  
Idem ibid.  
*Eutrop.* l. 2.  
*Diad. Sicul.* l. 23.  
*Eclog.* 12.  
A. M. 3750.

## SECT. 2.

Regulus one of the Messengers dissuaded it, and for that at his return is tormented to death.

Defeated again at the Islands Agates, they desert.

And obtain Peace.

A lamentable mutiny of the Carthaginian Mercenaries.

Hanno sent to make up the breach in largeth it.

cruelly tormented to death; and as *Cicero* writeth, by hunger and watching, having his eye-lids cut off. The year following, because the Land-forces were very fearful of the *Carthaginian* Elephants, and very uncheerfully went about their work, the *Romans* provided another Fleet, and besieged *Lilybaeum*, a Town standing upon the southern Promontory of *Sicily*, over-against *Africk*, but without success; within a while the Navy was brought to nothing, and *Amilcar Barca* being sent from *Carthage* troubled *Italy* with his inroads and depredations. For seven years then did they abstain from the Sea; but being sorely disturbed by *Amilcar*, they resolved once more to try their fortune that way, and a Fleet was provided, and furnished out of their private purses, the Treasury being now exhausted. With this they gave such a blow to the *Carthaginians* near the Islands *Agates*, under conduct of *C. Lutatius Catulus* the Consul, as made them give commission to *Amilcar* to conclude a Peace, if he found it requisite. Though he was, as to his own disposition, much averse to it, yet seeing it necessary for his Country's welfare, he made an agreement with *Lutatius* upon these terms, if the *Romans* would approve them; viz. *That the Carthaginians should wholly quit Sicily; make no War upon the Syracusians or their allies; release without ransom all prisoners; and pay within the space of twenty years 2200 Talents of Silver.* This pleased not the People, and therefore ten men were sent into *Sicily*, with full authority to conclude the Peace, who shortened the time of payment, added 1000 talents to the former sum, and further cautioned that the *Carthaginians should not only quit Sicily, but all the Islands also betwixt it and Italy.* Thus ended the first *Punic War*, after it had continued 24 years, and *Lilybaeum* had been besieged ten; in the 513 year of the City, the fourth of the 134 *Olympiad*, the sixth of *Seleucus Callinicus*, and the sixth of *Ptolemy Euergetes*, A. M. 3764, 239 before the birth of Christ, A. *Manlius Torquatus* the second time, and *Q. Lutatius Cerco* being Consuls.

8. The *Carthaginians* submitted to the terms of this Peace, that they might recruit themselves by a cessation; but the Peace procured them greater danger than the War could well have done. For, *Amilcar Barca*, after the ratification, drew down the forces to *Lilybaeum*, and giving them up into the hands of *Gesco* to be transported, laid down his Office. *Gesco* wisely considering what danger there was of such a multitude of Mercenaries it's falling into sedition (especially because they wanted their pay, which the publick Treasury already exhausted could not afford them) conveyed them into *Africk* by small companies together. But his Superiours, either through inadvertency, or for want of money, dismissed them not as they arrived; but stayed them till all should come together, with intention to prevail for an abatement of their wages. The City growing full, many outrages were committed by the Soldiers, which caused the Townsmen to procure their Captains to lead them out to *Sicca* a Town not far off, and when they left their baggage behind them, as intending shortly to return to *Carthage*, they fearing their unwillingness to depart, or their speedy return, because of their wives and children, in the carriages, forced them to take all away. When they were come to *Sicca*, they fell into greater licentiousness through want of employment, and demanded larger pay than formerly they had pretended to, expecting also great rewards promised them by their Captains in dangerous adventures. As soon as they were all come thither, *Hanno* the *Carthaginian* Prator was sent to them, who was so far from curing, that he heightened the distemper.

9. He not onely brought none of those things with him which they expected, but complaining of the emptiness of the Treasury, talked of abating something of their constant wages. This put the multitude into a rage, into which having once fallen, it was hard to be appeased, as upon other accounts, so through the diversity of their speech, things being either misrepresented by unskilful interpreters, or misunderstood by them who were willing enough to be mistaken. Breathing nothing but fury and violence, they took Arms, and in despite of *Hanno* and the other Officers marched toward *Carthage*, and

\* De Finib. l. 3.  
Sed consule 24.  
Gellium 16. c. 4.

Polybius l. 3.

Diodorus l. 24.  
A. M. 3764.  
Ol. 134 an. 4.  
V. C. 513.  
Seleuci Callin.  
6.  
Ptol. Euerget. 6.

Lege Polybium l. 1.

## SECT. 2.

They march towards Carthage.

Spendius and Mathos hinder the agreement, and provoke the multitude.

Whence arise the Libyan, or African War.

Amilcar Barca as defeatech the Mercenaries.

Who are further provoked by their Captains.

and encamped at *Tunis*, fifteen miles from the *Cirie*, to the number of 20000. The *Carthaginians* affrighted at the multitude resolved to satisfy them; but then the Mercenaries perceiving how they were feared, every day invented what to add to their demands, requiring besides their pay the price of their horses lost in the War; and, after this was granted, Provision for several years, which they said was behind. Their late Masters not daring to deny them anything, prevailed that some one who had commanded them in *Sicily* should be chosen as Moderator, and the whole matter left to him.

10. The Soldiers made choice of *Gesco*, as one who had best deserved of them. And he laboured to pacify them all he might, and was about to pay them their Arrears. But there being in the Army one *Spendius*, a *Campanian* of *Italy* by birth, but by condition a *Roman* slave; who having ran away from his Master, wanted neither strength nor courage; and one *Mathos* an *African*; the former fearing to be tortured to death if his Master caught him, as the *Roman* manner was, and the later though free, fearing to be called to account for his too great forwardness in the late stir, sought how to drive all things into extremity, that they might procure a War, inveighing grievously against *Gesco* and the *Carthaginians*, as having a design as soon as the rest were dispersed and gone home, to spend their rage against the *Africans*. The multitude herewith were strangely incensed, so that who ever attempted to speak before they could be heard what they would say, were all stoned to death except these two. *Gesco* yet would not cease to do his duty, but went from one Nation to another, labouring to pacify them; but when the *Africans* demanded allowance for their Provisions, he bade them ask it of *Mathos* their Captain. This so transported them, that they plundered the goods of the *Carthaginians*, with all the money he had brought for the discharging of the Army, and binding him and his followers in a contumelious manner cast them into prison.

11. By the advice of *Mathos* they rebelled against the *Carthaginians*, and so began the War called *Libycum* and *Africanum*, as also *Σενυδον*. Their numbers being increased to 70000. *Mathos* and *Spendius* now created Generals, divided their forces, and besieged *Uica* and *Hippacra*. *Hanno* was sent from *Carthage* to the relief of the *Uicans*, and at the first onset drove away the besiegers; but entering the Town, and loitering there, they set upon his Camp without, and killing many, took all his Engines, and other things prepared for the War. His Superiours troubled hereat, created Captain *Amilcar Barca*, and sent him into the field with 70 Elephants, and 10000 men. There he was encompassed by the *Africans* on his Front, the *Numidians* on his Rear, and *Spendius* on his Flank, where *Naravasus* a *Numidian* with 2000 of his followers revolted to him. Encouraged by this addition he engaged with his Enemies, causing his men so to face about as the Front became the Rear, whereby seeming to be in confusion, the Mercenaries thought they ran, and breaking their Ranks to pursue them he took this opportunity, and setting on them out of order obtained the victory, having slain 10000, and taken 4000 prisoners.

12. He gave Arms to all such prisoners as would serve under him, and having exhorted the rest to fight no more against the *Carthaginians*, dismissed them freely. *Spendius* and *Mathos*, together with *Antaricus* Captain of the *Galls*, hearing this, doubted how far his clemency, especially the offer of indemnity, might prevail with the *Africans* and others, and consulted how to obviate this his design by setting the multitude at irreconcilable enmity with the *Carthaginians*. To this purpose they feigned Letters to be sent out of *Sardinia* from their friends, giving them to understand, that certain amongst them held intelligence with the Enemy, and advising them to keep close *Gesco*, and the other with him. *Spendius* taking hereat occasion, earnestly advised them not to trust to the pretended clemency of *Amilcar*, and by no means to permit *Gesco* to escape; for thereby they should incur the contempt of their Enemies, and by strengthening them through the assistance of so great a Captain, nor a little damnify their own affairs. Whilest he yet spake

P p p another

SECT. 2. another Carrier brought Letters as from *Tunis* of the same Contents with the former; and then *Antaricus* openly protested, that whosoever had any regard to the kindnesse of the *Carthaginians* could not be faithfull, and therefore such were to be heard as perswaded the most bitter things against *Carthage*; all others being Traitors and Enemies. Then did he perswade them to Torture *Gesco* to death, with such as were now with him; and all that hereafter should be taken. There were many which spoke against this cruelty, especially as *Gesco* was concerned in it; but for some time they were not understood, (speaking in their own languages, and when what they aimed at was fully known, some one cried out *strike them*, which so provoked the multitude, that they forthwith stoned them. After this, bringing forth *Gesco*, and the other *Carthaginians* to the number of 700, they cruelly tormented them to death; and made a decree, that whomsoever of them for the time to come they should take, he should be used in the same manner, and if any of their Allies were taken, his hands being cut off, he should be sent back to *Carthage*. This they very carefully afterwards observed, having also refused to deliver the dead bodies to the Messengers that came for them, and threatened, if any more came, to deal with them as they had used *Gesco*.

*Amilcar* United the *Carthaginian* forces.

*Mathos* and *Spendius* elevated by their success be- siege *Carthage*.

*Amilcar* forced them to break up.

13. *Amilcar* seeing into what straights he was cast by this boldnesse of the Mercenaries, sent for *Hanno*, judging that an end might sooner be put to the War if the forces of the State were all United. Such of the Enemies as he took in the heat of the fight he killed, as he might by the Law of War, or taking them alive, cast them to wild beasts. When he thought that he had brought matters into a fair way of recovery, they presently relapsed into a far worse condition than ever. For, the ships that brought Provisions miscarried by force of Tempest; *Sardinia* at the same time revolted from them, which was wont to supply them with large Provisions; and *Hippacrita* and *Utica* which hitherto had remained faithfull, now revolted without any manifest cause. *Mathos* and *Spendius* herewith elevated, resolved to lay siege to *Carthage* it self, and shortly after performed it. The *Carthaginians* in this their distresse becooke themselves to their neighbours, whereof the *Romans*, and *Hiero* King of *Syracuse* in *Sicily*, being sensible of the sawcinesse of their Enemies, were ready to do them all good Offices. Herewith better enabled, they held out, and *Amilcar* lying abroad, so cut off all Provisions from the Mercenaries, that being no other than besieged themselves, they were forced at length to rise up and depart, resolving to observe *Amilcar's* motions, and ly in wait for him on the sides of the Mountains; for they would not venture to take the plain, being afraid of his Elephants, and the horse of *Naravascus*; and otherwise they were much inferiour to the *Carthaginians*, who far surpassed them in Military skill, though but equal to them in valour.

14. But *Amilcar* singling them out by parties, killed many of them, and when they engaged with their whole force cut them off by stratagems: sometimes by day, otherwhites by night he would fall upon them on a sudden with great terrour; and such of them as he took he cast them to the beasts. At length he compassed them about in such a place, as, though they were afraid to fight, they could not escape, and being shut up within a Ditch and Rampire, they were forced to devour one another. Though they now could expect no mercy, yet they sent to desire a Parley, and having obtained leave, *Antarolus*, *Zarxas*, *Spendius*, and other Captains were ordered to manage it. It was agreed that the *Carthaginians* should pick out ten men whom they pleased, and the other be dismissed in their Coats. The Covenants being finished, *Amilcar* declared that he made choice of those who were present, and so got the most eminent Leaders into his power. The *Africans* understanding that their Officers were seized, took Arms in great haste, but *Amilcar* with his Elephants and his Army compassing them in on every side, put them to the sword. For the improvement of this success, he and *Annibal* went and besieged *Mathos* in *Tunis*, before the Walls whereof he nailed *Spendius* to a

Crosse

Utterly de- feated them, and the War endeth, after three years and almost four moneths.

The *Romans* wrest *Sardinia* from the *Carthaginians* with more Tribute.

Comedies and Tragedies first Rome, made by *Livius Andronicus*.

Crosse with the rest of the Captives. *Annibal* pitching his Camp on that side of the Town towards *Carthage*, carelessly demeaned himself; which *Mathos* considering, made a Sally, and killing many, took much plunder, and amongst other prisoners *Annibal* himself, whom bringing to *Spendius* his Cross, after he had taken down his Colleague's body, he nailed him to it; and killed 30 more of the most noble *Carthaginians*.

15. It was long ere *Amilcar* knew of this disaster, and when he did, for the distance of place, and difficulty of passage, he could give no relief. Marching therefore from *Tunis*, he fare down by the mouth of the River *Macaris*, and his Superiours at *Carthage* making new Levies joyned *Hanno* in Commission with him. These two, after several passages, at length agreed to fight one set battel with the Enemy, who consenting, a bloody contest ensued, wherein at length the *Carthaginians* had the better. A great part of the *Africans* were slain, and the rest fled to a neighbouring Citie, where not long after they yielded themselves, and *Mathos* was taken alive. The Subjects of *Carthage* now turned to obedience all, except they of *Hippacrita* and *Utica*, who being past hope of mercy from their enraged Lords, seemed resolved to stand out; but *Hanno* and *Amilcar* bringing their forces, constrained them to submit to such conditions as the *Carthaginians* would lay upon them. *Mathos*, and those that were with him being carried to the Citie, was used with all sorts of contumely and torment, and so this *Libyan* War ended, having lasted three years, and almost four moneths, being, saith *Polybius*, the most cruel and wicked that ever we heard of. But it gave the *Carthaginians* occasion to repent of two great errors, viz. Trusting so great a multitude of Mercenaries together when they were idle; and the cruel, and tyrannical usage of their Subjects.

16. The *Romans*, (that we may return to them the History of whom is our proper subject) though they observed the League during these troubles, and at length, as was said, gave the *Carthaginians* also reason to like well of their friendship, yet thought they had some cause to be angry with them. For such of their Subjects as sayled from *Italy* into *Africa*, they seized on, lest they should carry Provisions to their Enemies, and had at *Carthage* almost 500 of such kind of men in prison. Yet when Ambassadors were sent to complain hereof, they kindly dismissed all those in custody, which so affected the *Romans*, that they also sent them all their prisoners, gave them all they asked, and permitted their Merchants to carry them necessaries, forbidding them to Traffick with their Enemies: they also refused to hearken to such of the *Carthaginian* Mercenaries as having betrayed their trust invited them into *Sardinia*. But though *Polybius* telleth us that this they did; yet it appeareth from him also that this modesty continued but for a time. For, allured, as it seemeth, by this invitation, they sayled thither, which much offended the *Carthaginians*, who thought that the place by far more right belonged to them; so that they prepared to send forces into the Island. The *Romans* took occasion hereat to decree War against them, complaining that these forces were not designed so much against the *Sardinians* as themselves, which forced the other, who found themselves in no good case to manage the War with them, to give way to the time, and quit not onely *Sardinia*, but pay further to the *Romans* 1200 Talents. This, though submitted to at present, bred such grudges and malice, as at length brake out into another War, a more dangerous and bloody than the former, as will appear.

17. In the (a) year after the ending of the first *Punic* War, the 514 of the Citie, *C. Claudius Cense*, and *M. Sempronius Tuditanus* being Consuls, the year preceding the birth of *Ennius*, the first Comedies and Tragedies were made by *Livius Andronicus* the Poet. This man being a *Gracian* born, was rightly called *Andronicus*, and firnamed *Livius* from his Master *Livius Salinator*, whose Children he taught, and for his learning was manumitted by him. (b) *Gellius* saith, that he now first at Rome taught plays about 160 years after the death of *Sophocles* and *Enripides*, and 52 after that of *Alexander*.

(a) *Cicero* Tuscul. lib. 1. & in Brito. *Cassiodorus* in Chronico.

(b) *Lib. 17. cap. 21.*

Pppp 2

But



SECT. 2. But whereas he is said by *Gellius* first to have made or taught plays as *Rome*, it is to be understood of these two sorts of Poetry now mentioned, (c) *Valerius Maximus* telling us, that he drew the minds of the Spectators to those shews from the use of *Satires*, which by little and little succeeded that most ancient and plain *Roman* sport of the *Histriones* brought out of *Etruria*, (as we shewed before) for the stopping of the Pestilence, through the command of the Oracle. These *Ludi Scenici* were first managed with rude gestures, and incomposed Songs, called *Versus Fescennini* from *Fescennium* a City of *Hetruria*. From these jocular speeches, which at random were wont to be uttered at the *Roman* solemnities, came the *Satire*, as later in time so more elaborate, and as for metre a perfect Poeme containing ridiculous things digested into Verse, which they were wont to utter amongst themselves, after the ancient custom. It differed as much from that of the *Greeks*, as from the rest differeth *Dramatick* Poetry, whereof the *Romans* at this time knew not so much as the name. A *Satire* being afterwards variously handled by the *Romans*, at length was reduced to two sorts, which *Fabius* onely acknowledged. The former was found out by *Lucilius*, and the later ennobled by *Varro*. *Horace* mentioneth two kinds of most ancient Poetry; one whereof they used in the praise of their gods, as when they appeared *Tellus* with a sow-pig, and *Sylvanus* with milk: the other, when in jest and sport they jeered one another, being the same with the *Fescennine* Verses, whence came the *Satires*, to which *Livius Andronicus* added the plays of *Comedies* and *Tragedies*, as was observed.

18. Four years after, were celebrated at *Rome* the third time the *Sacular Games*, concerning which it is convenient to speak in this place, that beginners may know the differences of *Roman* exercises. These were called *Ludi Magni*, as others were, (in opposition to the *Scenici*, and games made by private men) and *Ludi Terentini* (not *Tarentini*, whereof Students are to beware) from *Terentius* a place in the *Campus Martius* where they were celebrated. But there were other games called also *Terentini Ludi* (which some not considering have run into confusion) and that more properly than these *Sacular* ones were, and therefore the rise of them all is to be related. There was one *Valesius* a man of prime note, amongst the *Sabines*, who living near *Ereus*, and not far from *Tiber*, in a great Plague, had two sons and a daughter which fell dangerously sick. Amongst his prayers for them, he heard a voice that they should recover, if carrying them to *Terentius*, he would fetch them some warm water of *Tiber* from the altar of *Pluto* and *Proserpina*. He thought the City *Tarentum* was meant, and doubted how he should come by any *Tiberine* water in that remote part of *Italy*; but resolving to be obedient, he sailed down the River towards *Ostia*, and late at night arrived at the *Campus Martius*, where he understood there was a place called *Terentius*. Landing here, he gave his children some warm water, wherewith refreshed they fully recovered, and told their father, how in a dream they had seen a certain god, who commanded, that at the altar of *Pluto* and *Proserpina* black coloured sacrifices (*furva hostia*) should be offered, as also that *Leſtiferne* (beds made for the cause of sacrifice, as whereon to lye down after the *Roman* fashion at a solemn feast) and night games should be made. *Valesius* seeing no altar in the place, thought of making one, when, as his slaves were digging for that purpose, they found one in the earth dedicated to *Pluto* and *Proserpina*. Here then he sacrificed, and three nights together, because of the number of his children, made *Leſtiferne* and *Games*, being afterwards from this thing named *Manius Valesius Terentinus*. *Zozimus* writeth, that the *Romans* 100 years before being to fight with the *Albans*, were admonished to build this altar in the earth, and that having sacrificed they covered it. But this passage concerning *Valesius* happened about the twelfth year of *Servius Tullius*, wherein he founded the *Lustrum*; in the 188 of the City, and the same wherein the *Panathenæa* were instituted (or rather reduced to the course of five years, being formerly instituted by *Theseus*) at *Athens*, this being the third year of the 53 *Olympiad*.

19. This

The Terentine and Sacular Games confounded.

Which much perplexed Censorinus.

The difficulty resolved by Jacobus Cappel-  
linus.

Quindecim  
Diana preces  
vivorum civet.  
Horat. in carm.  
Seculari.

Observations  
concerning  
the Centenar-  
ies.

19. This was the Original of *Terentine Games*, which some have confounded with the *Sacular*. For, the next that were celebrated were made by *Valerius Poplicola* in the year following the banishment of *Tarquinius*, which *Zozimus* calleth Games of *Pluto* and *Proserpina*, and \* *Censorinus*, from *Antias* the Historian, giveth them the name of *Sacular*. This confusion cast *Censorinus* into such a perplexity about the *Sacular Games*, that he thus expreſseth the uncertainty of the *Roman* intervals of times and ages. \* Some think the Roman ages to be distinguished by the *Sacular Games*; which, if it be so, the manner of the Roman age is uncertain. For, concerning the intervals of times, wherein these Games ought to be celebrated, we are not onely ignorant how great they were formerly, but what they ought to be for the time to come. For, *Antias* and other *Historians*, with *Varro* and *Livy*, have written, that they ought to be made every hundredth year. But on the contrary, both the *Commentaries* of the *Quindecimviri* (or 15 men) and the edicts of *Augustus* testifie, that they ought to be reiterated every hundred and tenth, as \* *Horatius Flaccus* also saith. Further, if we search the annals of ancient times, we shall yet be in greater uncertainty by far. For, *Valerius Antias* saith, that the first *Sacular Games* were made, after the banishment of the Kings, 245 years after the building of *Rome* by *Valerius Publicola*: But the *commentaries* of the 15 *Menſes*, that 298 years *M. Valerius* and *Sp. Virginius* being *Consuls*. The second Games *Antias* will have made in the 305 year of the City, but its written in the *Commentaries* of the 15 *Men*, in the 408, *M. Valerius Corvinus* the second time, and *C. Pætillus* being *Consul*: and so he proceedeth. 20. \* *Jacobus Cappel-  
linus* dissolveth the difficulty in this manner. The cause of this perplexity which troubleth *Censorinus* is this. All *Sacular Games* are *Terentine*, but all *Terentine Games* are not *Sacular*. For some were made upon some occasion, as those which *Valerius Publicola* made this 245 year of the City, and *Valesius* about the year 188. These were *Terentine Games* but not *Sacular*. Now, the *Sacular* are of two sorts. The greater, which perhaps thou mayst not call amisse \* *Quindecimvirates*, were celebrated at the distance of 110 years. Of this kind the first were made by the command of the *Quindecimviri*, in the 298 year of the City, 110 years, as it seemeth, after the first *Terentine Games* made by *Valesius*. So, the *Valesian* shall fall in the 188 of the City. The first of the *Quindecimviri* were made in the 298 year of the City, the Second in the 408, the Third in the 518, and the Fourth in the 628. The lesser *Saculum*, or Age, consisted but of 100 years, instituted as it seemeth, by *L. Valerius*, after the banishment of the *Decemviri*, that year being according to some the 300 of the City. So the First Centenarie Games agree with the 305 *Varronian* year of the City, the Second with the 405, the Third with the 505, the Fourth with the 605.

21. Though the Second of the *Centenaries* should have been celebrated in the 405 year, yet (whether it happened through the *Gallick* War or otherwise) they were not till that following, wherein *M. Popilius Lanus* the fourth time, and *L. Cornelius Scipio* were *Consuls*, as *Zozimus* writeth. These *Censorinus* hath omitted and four more, if credit be given to the inscription of a certain stone mentioned by *George Herwart*, from which it should appear, that before this year were celebrated three *Sacular Games*, viz. in the 100, 200, and 300 years, according to the account of *Pictor*, and the 105, 205, and 305, according to that of *Varro*. Two *Solemnities* also at the distance of 110 years, as in the 188 and 298, after the account of *Varro*, to which may be added those made by *Poplicola* extraordinarily in the 245 year. So that the Games celebrated this year (viz. in the 406) may rightly be called the seventh Games. The *Quindecimvirs* (or those of 100 years) continued till *Constantine's* time, who forbade them to be celebrated in the 1067 year of the City. His son *Constantinus* also prohibited the *Centenaries*, which in his time fell in the 1100 year of the City. Fifty seven years after, the Heathen got leave of *Honorius* to celebrate the

Terentine

SECT. 2.

\* Quem vide  
cap. 17. lib. de  
die Natali.

\* Certus unde  
nos decies per  
annos Orbis ut  
cantus, referatq;  
ludos Ter die  
clara totiensq;  
grata Noſſe  
ſrequentes.

\* Hiſt Sacra  
& Exotica ad  
A. M. 3491.

\* Vide Tacitum  
Annal. lib. 11.

(c) Lib. 2. c. 4.

Leges Livium  
l. 7. & Casaub.  
de Satira Re-  
mana.

A. M. 3769.  
Ol. 136. an. 1.  
V. C. 518.  
Seleucid. 77.  
Seleuci Calli-  
nici 11.  
Ptol. Everget.  
11.

Vide Valerium  
Maxim. l. 2. c. 4.

Trina Terentio  
celebrata a trimo-  
ſialudo, Aufon.

## SECT. 2.

*Terentine Games* again in his sixth Consulship (for which *Claudian* thanks him) 200 years after they had been kept by *Severus*. But to return, these Third *Secular Games* which gave occasion to this discourse, and were celebrated in the 518 year of the City, and the fifth after the first *Punic War*, *P. Cornelius Lentulus* and *C. Lucinius Varus* being Consuls, were those of the *Quindécimviri*, or of the interval of 110 years; that we may note thus much for the information of Students.

The Temple of *Janus* shut the second time.  
The first divorce.

*C. Nævius* the Poet.

The *Illyrians* infect the *Italians* at sea.

Whence a War ensueth.

Peace is granted to *Tenta* the Queen.

22. In the sixth year after the first *Punic War* (a) the Temple of *Janus* was shut at *Rome* now the second time, all things being in quiet, and the *Romans* having no Wars any where after the reduction of *Sardinia* by *T. Manius Torquatus* the Consul. In the following year, being the 520 of the City, the first (b) divorce was made by *Sp. Carvilius Ruga*, who, though he did it under a specious pretence of his wives barrenness, was ever ill-willed for it by the People. This same year was *M. Porcius* (c) born in the precincts of *Tusculum*, who had the name of (d) *Cato* for his wisdom; *Catus* in the *Roman* language (whence the diminutive *Catulus*) signifying sagacious, acute, or ingenious. And this year did *Cn. Nævius* the Poet (e) publish plays to the People, who wrote also the first *Punic War*, (wherein he served) in the most ancient kind of Verse called *Saturnii Versus*, which were succeeded by the *Fescennini*, some being with metre, and some without. He died in the 30 year after this, and left a proud (f) Epitaph of his own making, which he commanded should be engraven on his Tomb, and *Gellius* hath recorded together with those of *Plautus* and *Pacuvius*.

23. Five years the Temple of *Janus* continued shut, and in the sixth was opened by a War with the *Illyrians*. For, *Tenta* Queen of that Nation, the widow of *Agron* (who for joy that he had prospered in his enterprises against the *Aetolians*, drank so hard, that he fell into a Pleurisy, and thereof died) elevated by her prosperity in Peace, gave out commissions to her Subjects to rob all at Sea whomsoever they met with. The *Illyrians* then having taken *Phanice* a strong City of *Epirus*, struck a great terror into all the maritime parts of *Greece*, and setting upon the *Italian* Merchants, some they robbed, others they killed, and not a few they carried away prisoners. The *Romans* having hitherto neglected all complaints against them, when now many came together, sent unto *Illyricum* *Caius* and *Lucius Coruncani*, to inform themselves concerning these matters. *Tenta* answered, she would take care that no publick injury should be offered to the *Romans*, but it was not the custom to hinder any from making what private commodity they could out of the Sea. But saith *Lucius*, the *Romans* have a good custom publicly to prosecute private injuries, and to relieve the injured: therefore we will shortly endeavour, God willing, to constrain thee to amend these customs. The Queen took this liberty of speech so haughtily, that her womanish impotency and anger prevailed against the Law of Nations, to have some sent after the Ambassadors, who killed *Lucius*. For this, War was decreed against her, and both the Consuls of the 525 year of the City, *Cn. Fulvius Centumalus*, and *L. Posthumius Albinus* Consul the second time, were sent into *Illyricum*; *Fulvius* with the Navy, and his Colleague with the Land Army.

24. *Fulvius* received *Corcyra*, given up into his hands by *Demetrius Phalaris*; then took he *Apollonia*, and the Armies joining, the Consuls freed *Dyrrhachium* besieged by the *Illyrians*. Then most of the *Illyrick* Cities were either taken or delivered up, whereupon the Queen retired with a few followers to *Rhizon* a strong Town, situate upon a River of the same name, and the Spring following sent to *Rome* to desire Peace. It was granted to her on these terms: To pay a yearly tribute; to quit all *Illyricum*, except a very few places: and Not to sail beyond the River *Onissus* with more than two Barks, and these unarmed. For nine years the *Illyrians* continued in obedience, till the 535 year of the City, wherein rebelling, they were again reduced by *Emilius Paulus* and *M. Livius* the Consuls. For, *Demetrius Phalaris* then their King, forgetting the great favours received from the People

(a) Livius 1.  
Eutropius l. 3.  
Plutarch in *Numa*.

(b) Val. Max. l. 2. c. 1. exomp. 4.  
Agellius l. 17. c. 21.

(c) Cicero de *Sententiis*.

(d) Plutarch in *Catone*.

(e) Agellius in *supra*.

(f) Idem l. 1. c. 24.

Polybius l. 2.

A. M. 3796.

Ol. 137. an. 4.

V. C. 525.

Sel. Calpurnii

18.

Ptol. Eutrop. 18.

Idem & Justin.

## SECT. 2.

People of *Rome*, wasted the Towns of *Illyricum* subject to the *Romans*, and passed the bounds set by the League. *Emilius* within seven dayes took *Dimalium*, and followed him to *Pharus*, a Town of the Island *Phurio*, which he also took. *Demetrius* being fled to *Philip* King of *Macedonia*, he seized on the rest of *Illyricum*, which he ordered to pay a stipend to *Rinpus*, the son of *Agron*. But thus was begun, and finished the War with *Tenta*, which *Florus* (according to his custom, breaking the order and series of time) falsely placeth after the *Gallienum Cisalpinum*, or that with the *Galls* inhabiting within the *Alps*.

The Seditious attempts of *Flaminius* the Tribune.

25. For, the same year wherein the Peace was made with *Tenta*, the promulgating of the *Agrarian Law* by *C. Flaminius*, Tribune of the people, brought this great, and dangerous War upon the Commonwealth. There being a good quantity of ground Conquered within the Countrey of these *Galls*, he preferred a Law for the dividing of it to the people, man by man. *Q. Fabius Maximus* being now Consul the second time stiffly opposed it, *Sp. Carbilus* his Colleague not stirring as (a) *Cicero* telleth us; the Senate also laboured to cross it, but when in the *Rostra* *Flaminius* read the Law, his father laying hands on him he obeyed; and went down, though he neither valued the Consul nor Senate, nor yet was affrighted with the levying of an Army. Nay, the people about him was so overawed by paternal right, that as *Valerius Maximus* writeth, though the Assembly was thus disappointed, not the least muttering was heard. Whether the Law for division fully passed or not (by reason of the interruption by old *Flaminius*) yet this thing gave occasion to a new and great War, as *Polybius* writeth, who mistaketh the time by four years; for as much as these stir about the *Agrarian* fell not out in the 522. but the 526 of the City, wherewithall the second Consulship of *Fabius Maximus*, and that of *Sp. Carvilius Maximus* is joyned. Indeed the first of *Fabius* fell in with the 521 year of the City, two years before *Tenta* killed the Ambassador, and two more at least before the finishing of the *Illyrian War*, whence may be conjectured, that as the mistake of *Polybius* might arise from want of distinction, betwixt the first and second Consulships of *Fabius*; so the error of *Florus* (or him, who ever wrote that *System*) in placing the *Gallick War* before the *Illyrian*, might proceed from an (inconsiderate) trust to the Authority of that excellent Author.

Occasioneth the War, called bellum Gallienum Cisalpinum.

26. The report concerning this Law awakened the *Galls*, especially the *Belli*, who were nearest neighbours. Concluding now that the *Romans* sought not so much for glory and dominion, as out of a covetous design of enriching themselves, they sent to the *Insabres* for aid, exhorting them to remember what their Ancestors once did at *Rome*, and to tread in their steps. These joining together sent over the *Alps* for other *Galls*, living near *Rhodanus*, and called *Gessata*, from their wages, saith *Polybius*, or as others write, from *Gessa* a kind of weapon they used. Their Kings, *Congolisanus* and *Anercestus* being allured by great promises, with a vast force passed over the *Alps*, and joyning with the *Insabres* and *Belli*, to the number of 50000 foot, and 20000 horse brake into *Eururia*. When first the *Romans* heard of their passing the *Alps*, they commanded *Emilius* the Consul to go to *Ariminum*, to give them trouble in case they came that way. They ordered one of the *Prætors* into *Eururia*; for, *C. Atillius* the other of the Consuls was already sent into *Sardinia*. The whole City was sad and grievously afflicted, fearing the *Galls* as fatal to it. All the Registers of the Military age were inquired in, too few what forces they, and what their Associates, were able to set forth. The *Italians* prepared to fight, not as for the *Roman* Empire, but their own safety; so that an Army was in a readinesse, consisting of 700000 foot, and 70000 horse, according to *Polybius*. But *Fabius Pictor* wrote, as *Ennius* relateth, that 800000 men were prepared for this War, wherein he himself was employed.

Preparations on the Roman side for this War.

27. The Tables of the Military age, as they were brought to the Senate, contained of the *Latinus* 80000 foot, and 5000 horse; of the *Samnites* 70000 foot, and 7000 horse; of the *Iapyges* and *Messapians* 50000 foot, and 16000 horse;

A. M. 3777.  
V. C. 526.

(a) De Senect.

Lib. 3. cap. 4.  
Exomp. 5.

## SECT. 2.

horse; of the *Lucanians* 30000 foot, and 3000 horse; of the *Marsi*, *Marcantini*, *Ferentini* & *Vestini* 20000 foot, and 4000 horse. And of the *Roman* people gave their names, together with those of *Campania*, 250000 foot, and 230000 horse. The total sum 558000. There went out with the Consuls four Legions, whereof each contained 5200 foot, and 300 horse, together with 30000 foot, and 3000 horse of the Associates: in all 50800 foot, and 3200 horse. There were in readiness for necessary occasions, of the *Etruscans* and *Sabines* 50000 foot, and 4000 horse, which the *Praetor* led into *Etruria* to oppose the Enemy on the Borders. Of the *Veneti* and *Cenomani* were assembled 20000. and as many of the *Umbri* and *Sarsinates* inhabiting the *Apennine* Mountains, who were placed on the Borders of *Gall*, by invading the Territories of the *Boni* to draw them back, and divide them from the rest. These were the forces placed on the Borders. At *Rome* were in a readiness for the uncertain chances of War, as a supply 30000 foot, and 1500 horse of Citizens, besides of the Associates 30000 foot, and 2000 horse. In *Sicily*, and about *Tarentum* were placed two Legions, whereof each contained 4200 foot, and 200 horse. The sum of all these amounts to 210300 men. So, saith *Polybius*, the sum of the forces which guarded the City, were 150000 foot, and about 6000 horse, but the whole number of the multitude fit for War was 700000 foot, 70000 horse, which yet *Hannibal* durst oppose, and invade *Italy* with scarce 20000. But this will appear further in what shall be hereafter said.

28. The *Galls* descending into *Etruria* wasted all with fire and sword, till they came to *Clusium*, a place three dayes journey distant from *Rome*. There were they beset, the *Praetor* on their back, and the two Consuls before blocking up all the passages, so that they were forced to fight two contrary wayes in two fronts, and that very disadvantageously, both by reason of their nakedness, and the unfitness of their Arms. But the vanity of the *Gasata* was most hurtfull to them, who casting off their Cloths would needs fight naked and charge first; for, being easily discomfited, they discouraged their fellows. Forty thousand were slain, and ten thousand taken, amongst whom was *Concolianus*; the other King *Anercestus* having killed himself. This battel was fought in the 529 year of the City, *L. Aemilius Dapud*, and *C. Atilius Regulus* (who was therein slain) being Consuls. Afterwards inroads being made into the Territories of the *Galls*, they were several times overthrown, and so harassed, that they sent Ambassadors to *Rome* to beg peace on any terms. The people being inclining enough to it, *M. Claudius Marcellus*, and *Cn. Cornelius Scipio* the Consuls of the 532 year stopped the thing.

29. The former especially, having a disposition suitable to his name (*Marcus* and *Mamercus* being thought to be derived of *Mars*, and therefore also the diminutives *Marculus* and *Marcellus*) inflamed the multitude to the War; whereupon the *Galls* now desperate resolved to make the last tryal, and using all indeavours, sent, and hired 20000 of the *Gasata*. The Consuls invading the Countrey of the *Insabres* besieged *Acerra*, which to relieve the *Galls* laid siege to *Clasidium*, a Town associate with the *Romans*. Here was fought a bloody battel, wherein the *Galls* were overthrown, *Marcellus* with his own hand killed *Viridomarus* King of the *Gasata*, and dedicated the third \* *Opima Spolia* to *Jupiter Feretrius*, though *Numa* had commanded they should be consecrated to *Quirinus*. Those that escaped fled to *Mediolanum* (now *Milane*) the chief seat of the *Insabres*, which being shortly taken, the War was thereby ended after six years, and *Marcellus* returned in Triumph. The title of the Triumph in the *Capitoline* stories mentioned with the *Galls* *Insabres*, *Germans* also to have been subdued, which *Germans* seem no other then the *Gasata*, thus called by some mistake. As for the name of *Casata*, though *Polybius* thinketh it derived from their wages, and others from a kind of venom; yet another rendreth a more probable derivation, which the condition of these people being Mercenaries prompteth to. The *Teutonick* language (a dialect whereof *Joseph Scaliger* and others prove the ancient *Gallick* to have been) calleth him *Gaeß*, whom the *English Saxon* (a branch

A. M. 3780.  
Ol. 138. ann. 4.  
V. C. 529.  
Sel. Cerauni 2.  
Ptol. Eueg. 22.

vide Polybius lib. 2.  
Plutarch. in Marcell. Florum l. 2. c. 4.  
Eutrop. lib. 3. cap. 13.  
Livii Epitom. lib. 20.

\* Simpson in Chronic. Cathol. ad A. M. 3780.

The *Galls* overthrown beg peace.

Which the Consuls hinder.

Marcellus endeth the War.  
\* Aspicit insignis solus Marcellus optimis Ingressitur, ut torque viros superciliis ostendit.  
Hic rem Romanam magno tumore tumulus Sisset eques Italici pavor Gallumq; rebellum Tollitque amara viri subleat caute Quirino. Virgil. Aen. 6.

## SECT. 2.

(a branch also of the *Teutonick*.) namech *Gaeß* at this time, betokening a stranger. The word *Gasata* might well therefore be thence derived, being changed something by those that were ignorant of the Language, from that whereby the *Galls* signified strangers, such as these Mercenaries were.

The Acts of Amilcar Barcas after the ending of the first Punic War. Of Asdrubal his son-in-law.

Annibal the son of Amilcar Barcas created General by the Carthaginians.

30. The third year after the ending of the *Gallick*, began the second *Punic*, or *Carthaginian* War. *Amilcar* the *Carthaginian* Captain had a great itching desire to renew the quarrel with the *Romans*, as soon as the State could recover its strength, and had done it betimes, but that the War with the Mercenaries hapned, which much distressing the Commonwealth, he passed over into *Spain*, where having to do with such an Enemy as he could grow upon, he there enlarged far and wide the *Carthaginian* Dominion, and died in great honour, though he was drowned in a River, being put also to flight by *Orissor* King of the *Iberi*, who pretending to come to his assistance in the siege of *Helice* unexpectedly fell upon him. As he had governed the Army in *Spain* nine years, so his son-in-law *Asdrubal* succeeding him, commanded it almost as many, with a mind as averie from the *Romans* as he; but he dissembled his hatred and designs, that he might gain all *Spain* to the *Carthaginian* interest. After 8 years he was slain by a *Gall* (saith *Polybius*) or a slave to a certain *Spaniard* (saith *Justin*) who killed him in revenge for his Masters death. He also much bettered the affairs of *Carthage*, not so much by Arms, as his winning carriage upon the petty Princes. After his death *Annibal* the son of *Amilcar Barcas* was chosen Captain by the Army, and presently confirmed at *Carthage* by the people, whom his father taking along with him into *Spain*, being then nine years old, compelled to swear at the Altar, his hand touching the sacrifice, that as soon as he could he would be an Enemy to the people of *Rome*.

31. *Annibal* presently after his Creation fell upon the *Olcades* whom he subdued, and besides them, within a years space, the *Vaccæi* and *Carpentani*, and nothing remained beyond the River *Iberus* that was considerable, and unsubdued, besides the *Saguntines*. They being confederate with *Rome* gave them there intelligence how things went, who sent some into *Spain* to see how matters stood, and what was intended by the *Carthaginians*. These Commissioners having audience of *Hannibal*, religiously admonished him not to meddle with the *Saguntines*, and (according to the League made with *Asdrubal*) not to pass over the River *Iberus*. His answers did not conceal his inward hatred, which caused the *Romans* to expect no better than a War; but they hoped to have *Saguntus* the seat thereof, and endeavoured to clear themselves of *Illyricum* ere it hapned. *Annibal* was not ignorant of what they designed, and therefore resolved by taking that Town to cut off all hope of vvarring in *Spain*. He doubted not by that example to terrifie others, so as to reduce to obedience those that yet stood out, and confirm therein such as he had already brought under; and this especially he aimed at, by reducing this place, to leave no Enemy at his back, by the plunder of which also he intended to gratifie his Soldiers. With all his force then he set upon it, and provoking his men by his own example to all manner of diligence, took it in the eighth moneth. The Inhabitants retained their fidelity unto the *Romans* to the last, and when almost spent with hunger, Fire, Sword, and Engines, they that remained, in a fire made in the Forum consumed themselves with all their riches, as *Florus* writeth, though *Polybius* speaketh of much money found in the Town, besides rich stuff, which *Hannibal* sent to *Carthage*.

He taketh Saguntus a Town in Spain, confederate with Rome.

Satisfaction is demanded by the Romans.

32. When first the *Romans* heard that *Saguntus* was taken, they sent Ambassadors to *Carthage* to require that *Hannibal* should be delivered up as the breaker of the League, or else to denounce War. Upon their arrival the *Carthaginians* deputed *Hanno* to treat with them, who sleighted the matter of the League made with *Asdrubal*, pretending there was none; and if there was, it was made by his meer pleasure without consent of the Senate. Besides, therein, he said, was no mention made of the River *Iberus*; that a

Q999

regard

Diod. Sicul. lib. 23. Eclog.

Polyb. lib. 3. Livius l. 21. Corn. Nepos in Hamilcar. Val. Max. l. 9. c. 3. Eutrop. Exemp. 3.

## SECT. 2.

regard was to be had of the Allies of both the States he confessed, but this nothing concerned the *Saguntines*, who at the time of the ratification were not confederates with *Rome*. The Ambassadors perceiving the *Carthaginians* backward to what they propounded, said no more; but the Senior of them holding out the lap of his Gown to the Senate. *Here, saith he, we bring you both War and Peace; whether you will have I shall bring forth.* The *Carthaginian* King bade them bring forth which they pleased; then the *Roman*, saying, *he would take out War*, many of the Senators answered, that *they accepted of it.* This fell out in the Consulship of *M. Livius*, afterward called *Salinator* (from his bringing up the Impost upon Salt) and *L. Aemilius Paulus*. In their time foreign Ceremonies begun to be brought into *Rome*, which displeasing the more sober sort of men, the Senate thought fit that the Chapels of *Isis* and *Serapis* should be pulled down. When no Artificers would venture to touch them, *Aemilius* the Consul put off his *prætexta*, or long Rob edged with purple silk, and taking an Hatchet struck it into the door.

And none being given, War is denounced and accepted of.

The second Punick or Carthaginian War beginneth.

*Hannibal* having conquered all *Spain* as far as the *Pyrenean* hills,

Passeth over the Alps into Italy.

Defeateth *Scipio* the Consul.

33. In the year following, being the 536 of the City, the sixth of *Antiochus* the Great, and the fifth of *Ptolemy Philopator*, in the Consulship of *Pub. Cornelius Scipio*, and *Tib. Sempronius Longus*, three and twenty years after the ending of the first *Punick* War, the Second began, which we have described by *Polybius*, and after him by *T. Livius*, who hath transcribed the 21 Book of his History almost word for word. *Hannibal* now 26 years of age, in the Spring moved from his winter quarters with 90000 Foot, and 12000 Horse, and passing over the River *Iberus*, subdued all the Towns as far as the *Pyrenean* hills. Then leaving *Hanno* with a sufficient force to keep the Country, and sending as many of the *Spanish* Soldiers home, he marched with the rest, in number 50000 Foot, and nigh 9000 Horse, over the *Pyrenean* hills; and so through *Gall* unto the *Alpes*. Having marched 100 miles in ten days from the River *Rhodanus*, he came to the foot of these mountains, which when he ascended, he encountered with great difficulties, being opposed by the *Allobroges* (inhabiting the Country now called *Savoy*) who possessed themselves of the places through which he must necessarily pass. On the ninth day he came to the top, whence his Soldiers had a prospect of *Italy*. Proceeding after a little rest, he lost as many men here in the depth of the Snow, as formerly by the incursions of Enemies, and at length came to a place which would afford no passage for Horse, or Elephants. The place of it self was precipitous, but lately by a falling of earth it was become so, to the depth of 1000 foot. He laboured then to bring his men through other ways never before trodden, but at length the Snow making them impassible, he was forced to betake himself to the levelling of the Rock. They made a great fire, wherewith the Rock being heated, they purified it with Vinegar, then did they cleave it, and so diminished the descent by moderate turnings, that not onely the beasts of burthen, but the Elephants also might safely pass. Four dayes were spent about the Rock: and by this time almost all the beasts were wasted; for on the top was little grasse, and that covered with Snow. Coming lower, certain valleys afforded pasture, where the cattel were refreshed, and rest was given to the weary Soldiers. Thence descended *Hannibal* into the Plain, in the fifth moneth after he had parted from new *Carthage* (built by *Asdrubal*, and now called *Carsagena*) in *Spain*, having passed over the *Alpes* in fourteen dayes. In the passage he lost a great part of his Army, bringing into the Country of the *Insabres*, but 10200 *African* Foot, 8000 of the *Spanish*, and 6000 Horse.

34. *Scipio* the Consul having *Spain* for his Province, was by Sea going thither, when he understood that *Hannibal* was near the River *Rhodanus*. There he intended to have given him a stop; but missing of him, he returned on shipboard and hastened to *Italy*, there to meet him, before his men had yet refreshed themselves. They met and joyned battel, wherein the Consul had the worst, being wounded, and preserved alive by the valour of his young son afterwards named *Africanus*. The *Roman* Senate, when first they received

\* Val. Max. l. 6. c. 3. exemp. 3.

A. M. 3787. Ol. 140. an. 3. V. C. 536. Antiochi Mag. 6. Ptol. Philop. 5. Polyb. l. 3. Livius l. 21.

## SECT. 2.

ceived intelligence that *Hannibal* had passed the *Alpes*, sent for the other Consul *Sempronius* out of *Sicily* to the aid of his Colleague. According to order he brought over his Army, and united it with *Scipio's* at the River *Trebia*. Having had the better in some skirmishes with certain parties of *Hannibal*, he desired to make trial of a battel, that his Colleague being sick, he might have all the glory of Victory, and though *Scipio* alleged, that by delaying to fight the *Galls* might be farther drawn in, and their own Soldiers better exercised, yet left the battel should be deferred till the coming of the next Consuls, he resolved to fight alone. *Hannibal* feared nothing more, than that they should refuse to fight, because as yet the *Galls* continued his, and he knew the best of the *Roman* Captains to be unable to act, and his own Army fresh and chearful. In the battel, which shortly followed, the *Romans* were overthrown, being drawn out by a party that *Hannibal* sent to provoke them, ere they had armed their bodies against the extremity of the mid-winter season, either by meat or other provision; so that ingaging with cold and hunger, and befer with their enemies (whereof as in the former battel, the *Numidians*, to their great terror fell upon their rear) they were defeated, though with great slaughter of the Enemy, through whose ranks 10000 broke and escaped to *Placentia*, the rest being either slain, taken, or drowned in the River. The *Carthaginians* having pursued them to the River *Trebia*, returned to their Camp so stupified with cold, that they were scarce sensible of the Victory. For, rain mixed with snow, and intollerable cold, killed many men, and almost all the beasts and Elephants.

And *Sempronius* his Colleague.

35. At this time things went better with the *Romans* in *Spain* and *Sicily*. In the former *Cnaeus Scipio* (being sent thither by his brother the Consul upon his return into *Italy*) overthrew *Hanno* the *Carthaginian*, and took in a good part of the Country, wherein was also new *Carthage*. For the following year *C. Flaminius* (who being Tribune had preferred the *Agrarian* Law) was the second time made Consul, together with *Cn. Servilius Geminus*. He had a good gift in speaking, but no skill in War, being yet heady and impatient of advice. *Hannibal* having all this while made the Country of the *Galls* the seat of War, resolved to change it, and after some consultation about his way into *Etruria*, resolved upon that of the Fens, as short and unexpected to the Enemy, though more troublesome to pass. Being forced to march three or four whole dayes through water, this sorely distressed all his men, except the *Galls*, many of the beasts were left in the mud, and the hoofs of the Horses came off. He himself riding on an Elephant that was onely left, escaped with his life, but was sorely pained in his eyes, one whereof he lost utterly. Being arrived at dry ground, he hoped by some means or other to intrap the Consul, understanding what his disposition was: He passed by his Camp and went further into the Country, which enraged *Flaminius*, who thought himself slighted by the Enemy. When amongst the *Romans* some told him that he must not rashly pursue, but use great caution, especially by reason of the Horse; but above all things stay for his Colleague, and not hazard a battel without the conjunction of both Armies, he was so far from following their advice, that he could not bear their words. Rising with all his forces he had neither respect to time nor place, onely seeking to fight, as if nothing had been more certain than the Victory, with hope whereof he so elevated the vulgar, that a rabble followed the Camp greater in number than the Army itself, and furnished with chains, bonds, and other things, wherewith to keep fast those prisoners and booty, whereof they doubted not to become Masters.

36. *Hannibal* marching through *Etruria*, wasted it with fire and sword, the more to irritate his Enemy, and at length came to the Lake called *Thrasymenus* and *Thrasymene*, near to which are certain mountains, and betwixt them and it a narrow way leading to a valley, beset with them, and a ridge of hills. These hills he made choice of, wherein to place his men, bestowing them round about, so that *Flaminius* following him into the valley, was fallen upon round about, and slain with many of his men ere (almost) they knew

And *Flaminius* at the Lake *Thrasymene*.

Leg. præter Polyb. & Liv. Plutarch in vita Fabii. Corn. Nepot. Annib. Appian in Annibalicis. Florum l. 2. c. 6.

Qq q 2

who

SECT. 2.

who hurt them, by reason of a mist which then was risen from the Lake. Within the valley fell 15000, and near upon 6000 escaped to a Village, where they were forced to yield themselves. *Annibal* gathering all his prisoners together, to the number of 15000, kept in custody the *Romans*, but dismissed the *Latins* without ransom. The body of the Consul, *Valerius Maximus*, was fought for by *Annibal* to be buried; even his body, who, as much as in him lay, had buried the *Roman Empire*. *Cn. Servilius* the other Consul who kept *Ariminum* (a Country of *Italy* now called *Rimini*, lying upon the *River Rubicon*) hearing of *Annibal's* coming into *Etruria*, purposed to go and joyn with his Colleague, but finding that difficult, chose out 4000 men whom he sent to his aid, under conduct of *C. Centenius* (by some called *Centronius*) whom he commanded, if possible, to reach him before the fight. *Hannibal* hearing of this supplie, after the battel, sent out *Maharbal* with a party, which cutting off one half, forced the other to an hill, where they also yielded themselves.

Val. Max. l. i.  
c. 6. exemp. 6.  
Entrop. Orosium.

37. The *Romans* struck with consternation at these losses, upon mature deliberation resolved there was need of a General with absolute authority. But the Consul (who alone had power, and that in the *Roman* Dominions, to name a Dictator) being absent, and incompassed with the *Carthaginian* Forces, so that no message could conveniently be sent to him, and the People having no power to create a Dictator, they created as a Prodictator, or Vice Dictator, *Q. Fabius Maximus Verrucosus*, whose Master of the Horse-men was *M. Minutius Rufus*. *Fabius* matched *Annibal* in policy, breaking his success by delaying to fight, which others had increased by their temerity, so that he obtained the name of \* Cunctator. *Hannibal* was hereof very sensible, being by him put to his shifts, wanting provisions exceedingly, and lying in an Enemies Country. But the Master of Horse-men being something hot and rash, in *Fabius* his absence, got the better in certain skirmishes, and hereby procured so much favour from the multitude, which now accounted the worthy Dictator lazie and fearful, that beyond all example his power was made equal to that of his. *Minutius* puffed up herewith, sought to improve his authority by further rashness, so as to ingage with the Enemy, in which action he and his party had been overthrown, but that *Fabius* in good time came in and saved him. This so convinced him of his former folly, that he confessed his fault to the Dictator, whom he called his Father, and renouncing his new power again, subjected his office to the Dictatorship.

\* unus homo  
nobis cunctando  
restituit rem.  
Livius.

38. *Fabius*, when his six moneths were out, laid down his Office, and was badly requited, the Tribunes and others calumniating him with the Nobility, as wilfully lengthening the War, which procured *Terentius Varro* a rash, hot, and inconsiderable man, for the next year to be created Consul. He, though joyned with a prudent person *L. Aemilius Paulus*, so far prevailed, as to joyn battel with *Annibal* at the place of *Canna* an ignoble Village of *Apulia*, which the year before had been destroyed, and onely the Castle remained, on which *Annibal* had lately seized. The *Romans* brought into the field 80000 Foot, and about 6000 Horse; the *Carthaginians* not much above 40000 Foot, and 10000 Horse. *Florus* writeth, that for the destruction of the unhappy Army, both General, Earth, Heaven, the day, and the whole nature of things conspired. For *Annibal* not content with the fending of those who counterfeiting a revolt, fell upon the backs of the *Romans*, observing the nature of the place, so chose out his ground, that besides his Army they must needs fight with wind, dust, and Sun. But from others it appeareth, that the *Romans* fighting with their faces toward the South, and the *Carthaginians* toward the North, the Sun-beams offended neither. However, the abilities of the *Punic* General were seen so far in this, as in other battels, that he overmatched them in skill, who exceeded him in numbers, making such slaughter of them, that at length wearied, he commanded his Soldiers to forbear, as *Florus* telleth us. Of the *Romans* were slain 50000 men say *Plutarch* and *Appian*; 70000 say *Polybius*, and *Livy* hath 40000 Foot, and 3600 Horse. Amongst these was *Aemilius* the Consul (who

unwilling

Who yet giveth the Romans a most grievous overthrow at Canne.

unwilling to survive the defeat refused to flee) 2 *Quaestors*, 21 *Tribunes*, 80 of *Senatorial* degree, divers of *Consular* dignity, and so many *Equites* or Knights; that, as *Pliny* writeth, *Hannibal* sent three bushels of gold rings to *Rome*, which were the Ensignes of that order, though *Pliny* from this number endeavourth to prove that the use of them at this time was promiscuous, else a vast number must there have been of them: but *Livy* writeth, that more likely report held there were but one bushel. *Hannibal* lost 5700 of his men. *Varro* the Consul fled to *Venusia* with 70 Horse, whither also escaped 4000 Foot and Horse, which leading to *Cannusium*, where were already 10000 men, he made up a shew of a *Consular Army*, which by the help of walls, though not of arms, seemed able to defend it self.

And enervateth his Army both together; but this great Soldier knew (as *Maharbal* Captain of his Horse truly told him) how to get, but not how to use and improve a Victory.

For, he loitered all this Summer, and having *Capua* a wealthy and luxurious

Citie given up into his hands by the Towns-men, there he took up his Winter quarters, and *Capua* became a *Canna* to his Soldiers. For, hereby he utterly spoiled an excellent Army, which now was so enervated by the pleasures and effeminatenesse of the place, as ever after it became impatient of labour, and its ancient Military Discipline, so that before this it was harder for the *Romans* not to be overcome by *Hannibal*, than afterwards to overcome him. His fortune presently began to change. He was worsted at *Nola* by *Marcellus* the *Praetor*, and repulsed at *Castinum*, a very small Castle, for a good space. At this time, though there was a Dictator in the Camp (*M. Junius Pera*, whose Master of the Horse-men was *Tib. Sempronius*) yet the Senate being exhausted by the War, *M. Fabius Buleo* was named Dictator by *Terentius* the Consul, for filling it up, without a Master of Horse-men. He coming into the *Rosstra*, said, he did not approve that there should be two Dictators at one time (which never before had been known) nor that he was created without a Master of Horse-men; neither that the power of Censorship should twice be permitted to one man; nor that power for six moneths should be given to any Dictator, except for the War. What extrem necessity had procured, he said he would moderate. For he would not remove any Senator which *C. Flaminius*, and *L. Aemilius* the late Censors had chosen, onely transcribe, and cause them to be read over, lest the credit, and esteem of Senators should be in the power of one man; and so he would supply the places of the dead, that this man before that, and not one order should seem preferred above another. The old Senate then being called over, he chose into vacant places, first such as since the last Censorship had born *Curule* Offices, as each one had been first created; then such as had been *Adiles*, Tribunes of the Commons, or *Quaestors*; and lastly, such had any spoils hung up at home, which they themselves had taken from the Enemy, or had received a *Civic* Crown. So 177 being thus chosen with universal approbation, he presently laid down his Office.

Two Dictators at the same time.

The Senate filled.

The Romans quickly recovered their courage.

*Annibal* and his party goeth down the wind in *Italy*, and *Spain*.

39. Had *Hannibal* taken his opportunity and marched to *Rome*, in all probability he might have made an end of the War, and of the *Roman Empire* both together; but this great Soldier knew (as *Maharbal* Captain of his Horse truly told him) how to get, but not how to use and improve a Victory. For, he loitered all this Summer, and having *Capua* a wealthy and luxurious Citie given up into his hands by the Towns-men, there he took up his Winter quarters, and *Capua* became a *Canna* to his Soldiers. For, hereby he utterly spoiled an excellent Army, which now was so enervated by the pleasures and effeminatenesse of the place, as ever after it became impatient of labour, and its ancient Military Discipline, so that before this it was harder for the *Romans* not to be overcome by *Hannibal*, than afterwards to overcome him. His fortune presently began to change. He was worsted at *Nola* by *Marcellus* the *Praetor*, and repulsed at *Castinum*, a very small Castle, for a good space. At this time, though there was a Dictator in the Camp (*M. Junius Pera*, whose Master of the Horse-men was *Tib. Sempronius*) yet the Senate being exhausted by the War, *M. Fabius Buleo* was named Dictator by *Terentius* the Consul, for filling it up, without a Master of Horse-men. He coming into the *Rosstra*, said, he did not approve that there should be two Dictators at one time (which never before had been known) nor that he was created without a Master of Horse-men; neither that the power of Censorship should twice be permitted to one man; nor that power for six moneths should be given to any Dictator, except for the War. What extrem necessity had procured, he said he would moderate. For he would not remove any Senator which *C. Flaminius*, and *L. Aemilius* the late Censors had chosen, onely transcribe, and cause them to be read over, lest the credit, and esteem of Senators should be in the power of one man; and so he would supply the places of the dead, that this man before that, and not one order should seem preferred above another. The old Senate then being called over, he chose into vacant places, first such as since the last Censorship had born *Curule* Offices, as each one had been first created; then such as had been *Adiles*, Tribunes of the Commons, or *Quaestors*; and lastly, such had any spoils hung up at home, which they themselves had taken from the Enemy, or had received a *Civic* Crown. So 177 being thus chosen with universal approbation, he presently laid down his Office.

40. The *Romans*, though the defeat at *Canna* threatened them with no less than ruin, quickly recovered their courage. When *Varro* (being sent for to name a Dictator) was near the Citie, all Ranks went forth to meet him, and though he was the cause of the overthrow, gave him thanks that he had not despaired concerning the Commonwealth. *Philip* King of *Macedonia* having expected the fortune of both parties, after the battel of *Canna* joyned in affinity with *Hannibal*; and this being discovered through the intercepting of his Ambassadors, for to prevent his coming into *Italy*, the *Romans* took order for the invasion of his own Territories. At this time *Hannibal* was beaten at *Cuma*, and constrained to raise his siege; and from *Nola* the second time by the same hand; *Hanno* having the same fortune at *Grumentum*. In *Spain* the *Scipios* so managed the War that they got ground, being continually Superiors. *Asdrubal* was ordered by the Senate at *Carthage* to passe into *Italy*; but upon his departure they defeated him in battel, and

SECT. 2.

A. M. 3789.  
Ol. 141. ann. 1.  
V. C. 538.  
Ant. Mag. 8.  
Ptol. Philop. 7.  
Bell. Punic. 3.

Livius lib. 23.

Whereupon *Fabius Maximus* is made Vice Dictator, who by delaying breaketh *Annibal's* success.



## SECT. 2.

and by this success not only overthrew the design of joining with *Hannibal*, but drew most of the *Spaniards* to their party, still improving the victory.

And in *Sardinia*.

In *Sicily* *Marcellus* besieged *Syracuse*.

41. In *Sicilie* and *Sardinia*, though several attempts were made by the *Carthaginians*, and some revolts happened, yet things proceeded in a good condition. In one battle in *Sardinia* 12000 were slain, and many taken prisoners, amongst whom were *Asdrubal*, *Hanno*, and *Mago*, all noble *Carthaginians*. A year or two after the death of *Hieron* King of *Syracuse* (who having been a fast friend to the *Romans* died at 90 years of age or more) altered much the face of affairs. For *Hieronimus* his Grandson succeeding him, was for his wicked disposition quickly made away, and then the *Citie* breaking into diverse factions; that which was most contrary to the *Roman* interest prevailed, by the means of two inconsiderable men made *Prætors*. *Marcellus* the Consul besieged *Syracuse* both by Sea and Land, but was hindered from storming it by the skill and invention of that excellent Mathematician *Archimedes*. He framed such Engines, as therewith to cast huge stones upon the *Romans*, and great beams upon their ships. He would set the ships upon one end, overturn them, and hoizing them up into the air, after all the men, and other things were fallen out of them, let them fall upon the Walls, or return down into the Sea. Such was the exactness of his skill, both near at hand, and afar off, that neither by Sea nor by Land could they attempt a storm, their Engines of battery being also dismounted by the force of his.

*Livius lib. 24.*

*Leges Plutarch in Marcella. Livium lib. 25. Val. Max. lib. 8. cap. 7. Extrema Exempl. 7. Cicero, Tufcul. lib. 1. & 5. & De Finibus 1.5.*

*Archimedes* forced him to depart.

42. *Marcellus* hereupon departed from the siege, jeering his own Engineers, and calling *Archimedes* by the name of *Briareus*. He destroyed *Megara*, one of the most ancient Cities of the Island, and falling upon the Army of *Hippocrates*, as it was incamping it self, killed above 8000 men. After this he made incurfions, and drew several Towns from the *Carthaginians*. He took *Damippus* the *Spartan* as he sailed from *Syracuse*, about the redemption of whom coming often near the Walls of that *Citie*, he observed a Tower negligently kept, & convenient for receiving of men, because the Wall there might be easily mounted. Taking the opportunity of *Diana's* feast, wherein the *Syracusians* gave up themselves to Wine and sports, he seized on this Tower, and through it bestowing his men about the Walls, easily became Master of the *Citie*, after three years spent in the siege. He wept when he beheld the goodliness of it, which notwithstanding his Commands for moderation (in which he was eminent) he knew would suffer much. But more than the rest, the death of *Archimedes* troubled him, whom he most laboured to preserve. Some wrote that this famous Artist busted in his Geometrical speculations minded not what was doing in the *Citie*; but a Soldier coming to him, and bidding him follow him to *Marcellus*, he would not go till he had finished his problem, and demonstrated it, whereupon the Soldier killed him. Others reported that a Soldier rushing in upon him, he desired respite from death till he had finished his contemplation; but the Soldier not at all regarding him slew him presently. A third report went, that as he was carrying his Mathematical instruments to *Marcellus*, certain Soldiers came upon him, who supposing it to be Gold he carried in the Vessel, instantly slew him. One of these ways perished *Archimedes*, who excelling all men in this noble skill, deserved as much of blame as he had of knowledge, in that esteeming sordid and base the making of Engines, and what served necessary uses, he only seriously studied the science abstracted from Mechanick works, and through this kind of greatness of mind, refused to write any thing concerning those works, which procured him his deserved fame and estimation.

*A. M. 3793. Ol. 142. ann. 1. V. C. 542. Ant. M. 12. Ptol. Philop. 11. Belli Punici 7.*

The *Scipios* having conquered almost all *Spain*, are destroyed by dividing their forces, and their death is revenged by *Marcius*.

43. At this time the *Scipios* in *Spain* having well nigh done their work, and intending suddenly to make an end of the War, unfortunately divided their forces, and through the treachery of the *Celtiberians* were both cut off with almost their whole Armies. The *Roman* interest hereby had been destroyed in that Countrey, had not the remainders of the forces been kept together,

## SECT. 2.

The *Romans* besiege *Capua*.

*Hannibal* having got *Tarentum* besiegeth the *Citie* in *Yain*, and

*Marcheth* for *Rome*.

Is hindered from fighting by *Tempests*, and departeth towards *Rhegium*.

*Capua* yielded.

*Nero* deluded by *Asdrubal*.

gether, and preserved by *L. Marcius* a *Tribune*, who revenged the death of the two Generals and his other Countrey-men, by falling on the *Carthaginians*, divided into two several Camps, Secure, and without any watch, and suffering none to escape from one to give notice to the other, slew 37000. and took 1830 with great plunder. In *Italy*, *Hannibal* had *Tarentum* betrayed to him by the Inhabitants, the *Citie* still holding out; and the *Romans* laid siege to *Capua*. Hither was *Annibal* called for aid; but he made no great haste, out of desire he had to take the *Citie* of *Tarentum*. Berthanking himself how great scandal he should give to all his confederates, in case he did not relieve that *Citie*, he marched thither, and set upon the *Roman* Camp, which was so well defended, that he was repelled, though assisted by the Inhabitants, and his own Garrison he there had left. Perceiving then that the Enemy would not be drawn out of his Trenches, and that he could not break through his Camp, left the new Consuls should intercept his Provisions, he resolved to be gone. Considering much whether he should go, he resolved for *Rome* it self, the head of the War, designing at least by this Enterprize to raise the siege of *Capua*.

*Livius lib. 26.*

44. His coming being heard of at *Rome*, they were there variously inclined as to resistance. Some thought that all the Armies in *Italy* were to be sent for; but *Fabius Maximus* would by no means hear of leaving *Capua*: Therefore a middle way was taken, to send for one of the Captains from the siege to the defence of the *Citie*. *Q. Fulvius* then the *Proconsul* chusing out 15000 foot, and 1000 horse out of the three Armies, marched for *Rome*, which he entered at the Gate *Capena* (when *Hannibal* now lay incamped eight miles off) the Senate, left his power should be diminished, having decreed, that if he came into the *Citie* he should have equal authority with the Consuls. *Annibal* removing to the River *Aniene*, three miles from the *Citie*, with two thousand horse thence went to take a view of it. *Flaccus* stomaching he should take this liberty and do it with ease, sent out a party of horse, which falling on made him retreat. The day after, and that following, *Hannibal* on one side, and *Flaccus* with the Consuls on the other, drew out their forces for a battle, when on both dayes fell such storms of hail and rain, as the Armies could not joyn, but when they had retreated into their Camps, a wonderful serenity appeared. This struck the *Carthaginians* with a religious awe, and caused *Hannibal* to say, that sometimes a Will, and otherwiles fortune were wanting to him for the taking of the *Citie*. Removing back then his Camp to the River *Turia*, thence he proceeded to the Lake of *Feronia*, which Goddess had then a rich Temple there. This he robbed, and so marched through the Countreys of the *Lucani* and *Bruttii* towards *Rhegium* and the Straights, where he well nigh had destroyed the Inhabitants unawares by the suddenness of his coming. *Flaccus* returned to the siege of *Capua*, whither that *Hannibal* returned not was much admired. The *Campanians* therefore despairing of any assistance from him, *Capua* was yielded up. The heads of the Rebellion (53 in number) were put death (28 having before poisoned themselves) at the command of *Fulvius*, contrary to the Will of his Colleague *Appius Claudius*, who would have had the matter determined by the Senate at *Rome*. The common sort was sold, and the *Citie*, because situate in so good a soyl, reserved for a receptacle of all sorts of Plow-men, Labourers, and Artificers, without any shew of government of its own, after it had stood about 260 years. These things hapned in the eighth year of the War, being the 543 of the *Citie*, the 11th of *Antiochus* the Great, and the 12 of *Ptolomy Philopator*, *P. Sulpicius Galba*, and *Cn. Fulvius Centumalus* being Consuls.

*A. M. 3794. V. C. 543.*

*Paterculus lib. 1.*

45. This year was sent into *Spain* *Claudius Nero*, who having got *Asdrubal* the *Carthaginian* into a straight so as he might have cut off him and his Army, *Asdrubal* promised he would draw all his Soldiers out of the Countrey, but drew out the time in length by the interposition of his *Punic* faith, till by little and he withdrew all his men out of the danger. The Senate and People hearing this, took it ill that *Nero* would thus suffer himself

*Livius lib. 27.*

## SECT. 2.

self to be abused, yet know they not whom to send to succeed him, and when the *Comitia* were held for the creation of a *Proconsul*, none appeared to stand for the Office. A great sadness hereupon seized on the multitude, When *Publius Scipio* son to *Publius Cornelius Scipio* slain in Spain (whom as we said he defended in battle) a young man but of 24 years of age, stood up in a place where he might be seen, and professed himself candidate, having the year before been made *Edilis*, though under age, by the great favour and confidence of the People. With great joy he was created by the suffrages of all, but when they considered what they had done, and especially thought of his age, they were again much perplexed, which he apprehending, called them together, and with such spirit and resolution promised them good success, that they departed well satisfied, judging many things to be in him which surpassed humane admiration; for having good parts, he could set them off to purpose. Passing into Spain then this year, the summer following he took new Carthage by storm, a place of great consequence both for riches and situation, by the fame of which exploit, together with his loving demeanour towards the natives, he well improved the Victory.

*Publius Scipio* taketh upon him the government of Spain and exceedingly prospereth.

*Lælius* recovereth all Sicily.

*Marcellus* slain.

*Asdrubal* ordered to march out of Spain into Italy.

Is cut off with his whole Army by *Livius* and *Nero* the Consuls.

*Scipio* having sent into *Africa*, urging it to the Senate as necessary for finishing the War, subdued Spain and undertaking so to manage his affairs, as to force the *Carthaginians* to recall *Hannibal* for the defence of his own Country. *Fabius Maximus* most earnestly, and with some heat opposed this, and a considerable difference hereupon

46. *Hannibal* at this time indulging his cruel disposition in wasting such Countries as he could not keep, lost his credit; and the *Romans* in Italy gained thereby. This year *M. Valerius Lavinius*, who had done good service against *Philip* of Macedonia, was the second time, in his absence, created Consul, together with *Marcellus* the fourth time. *Lavinus* went into Sicily, where taking the City *Agrigentum*, he thereby brought the whole Island under the Roman jurisdiction. The year following being the tenth of the War, *Tarentum* was betrayed into the hands of *Fabius Maximus*, now Consul the fifth time, with *Q. Fulvius Flaccus*, who the fourth time bore this Office. *Marcellus* for this year sometimes winning and sometimes losing with *Annibal*, for that following being created Consul (though he scarcely seemeth rightly created according to the Roman superstition) though other whiles wary enough, was cut off in an ambush, whilst with his Colleague *T. Quintius Crispinus*, accompanied onely with 220 Horse, he went to view a place where he had a great desire to fight *Hannibal*. *Crispinus* also received a wound whereof he died, after he had named a Dictator for creation of the next Consuls.

A. M. 3797.  
Ol. 143. an. 1.  
V. C. 546.  
Ant. M. 16.  
Ptol. Philop. 15.  
Bell. 11.

47. The year following, *Asdrubal* was ordered to go out of Spain into Italy, to the assistance of his brother *Annibal*. This caused great carefulness in Rome, by reason they knew not well whom to oppose against him. At length *M. Claudius Nero* and *M. Livius Salinator* (who lately had returned to the City, after that being publicly disgraced he had absented himself for several years) were created Consuls, having been at great odds, and now reconciled through the interposition of the Senate. *Livius* was ordered to meet *Asdrubal*, and *Nero* appointed to attend the motions of *Annibal*. But the later having some success against his Enemy, picked out of the flower of his Army 6000 Foot, and 1000 Horse, and with great secrecy, and as much speed, marched towards his Colleague, that he might reach him ere he joyned with *Asdrubal*. Being joyned, they incompassed him, who was by a deceitful guide led into a dangerous place, and cut him with his whole Army in pieces: then marched *Nero* back to his own Army, and ere *Hannibal* knew of his departure, cast his brothers head into his Camp, whereby to his grief he knew of the defeat. The year following did *P. Scipio* after many Victories obtained, finish the War in Spain; all the *Carthaginian* Captains being either taken or driven away. This hapned five years after his undertaking the charge, and thirteen after the beginning of the War.

*Livius* lib. 29.

48. *Scipio* coming to Rome, and being made Consul, greatly desired to be recalled *Hannibal* for the defence of his own Country. *Fabius Maximus* most earnestly, and with some heat opposed this, and a considerable difference hereupon

## SECT. 2.

hereupon arose; but at length *Sicily* was granted him for his Province, and leave given him to passe over into *Africa*, if he saw it convenient for the Commonwealth. All this year he spent in the Island; in providing necessities for his Expedition, and the next, with a brave Fleet landed in *Africa*, where *Masaniassa* King of *Numidia* (who in Spain had joyned with him) came in to his aid. Within a while he killed *Hanno* with 3000 men; and besieged *Utica*; but *Syphax* King of *Numidia*, the enemy and competitor of *Masaniassa* (who formerly had entred into league with *Scipio*, but again upon a marriage with *Annibal's* niece revolted) coming with the *Carthaginians* to raise the siege, he having attempted in vain to storm the Town, rose up and departed to his winter quarters.

The year following passing into *Africa*.

Where he so distressed the *Carthaginians*.

That they recalled *Hannibal*.

Whom he also overthroweth.

49. In Winter he was not idle, but again besieged *Utica*, and entred into a Treaty with *Syphax* and *Asdrubal* about a Peace, in the mean time sending his ablest Soldiers in the habit of slaves with his Commissioners, to view the Enemy's Camps. This being sufficiently done, he brake off the Treaty, and set fire upon the Camps, which the other not suspecting, but thinking it came by accident, were cut in pieces when they were buied in quenching the fire, to the number of 4000 men, and 6000 were taken Prisoners. Not long after he gave them another great overthrow, which so affected the *Carthaginians* with fear, that they called home *Hannibal*. Presently after they sent a Fleet to relieve *Utica*, which worsted the Roman Navy; and they might have done more than this had not fear made them loiter. But shortly after this, *Scipio* again routed *Syphax*, who had got together an unexperienced company of Strangers, and taking him prisoner, gave his Kingdom to *Masaniassa*. In Italy about this time *Mago* was overthrown, and wounded in an engagement with *Quintilius Varus* the *Prætor*, and *M. Cornelius* the *Proconsul*: he also was recalled as well as his brother *Annibal*, and died on the Sea of his wounds. The *Carthaginians* sent an Ambassage to Rome, with a design to obtain a cessation till *Hannibal* could arrive out of Italy. But their aim being sufficiently understood, the message was slighted; and to witness their perfidiousness, they brake the Law of Nations, by offering to violate Messengers sent from *Scipio*.

50. *Annibal* being recalled by his superiours, with very much reluctance quitted Italy, after he had therein spent sixteen years. He complained much of the Senate and of himself. Of the Senate, because fighting so long a time in an Enemy's Country, they had so little supplied him with money and other things necessary for War. Of himself, for that having so often overthrown and put to flight the Roman Legions, he had still delayed and given them time to breath. It's reported also, that ere he took ship, he built an arch near the Temple of *Juno Lacinia*, wherein, in *Punic* and *Greek* letters, he wrote the sum of his great achievements. Taking the Sea, he landed in a few dayes at *Leptis*, whence he marched to *Adrumetum*, and thence to *Zama*. Considering now the weak estate of his Country, he desired a meeting with *Scipio* to treat of Peace, which being granted, the two greatest Captains in the World came to an interview betwixt their Armies, but receiving mutually no satisfaction, they returned to decide the controversy by the sword. *Hannibal* in the battle behaved himself most gallantly, and like so expert a Warriour amongst his Soldiers, consisting of so many Nations and Languages. But providence ordained the Victory to *Scipio*, who slew 20000, and took as many prisoners, yet not without great losse of his own men, whereof 2000 fell. After this, *Annibal* persuaded his Country-men to aske Peace, and Ambassadors were dispatched away accordingly.

51. *Scipio* was not averse to a closure, as loth to part with the glory of concluding the War, which the year before was in danger of being taken from him by *Tib. Claudius Nero* the Consul, and now by *C. Cornelius Lentulus*, who both had procured *Africa* for their Province, and to be joyned in equal authority with him. The power of concluding the Peace was by the People decreed to *Scipio*, with ten others, which was at length agreed to on these termes. That the *Carthaginians* being free, should enjoy all their territories.

R r r r

in

A. M. 3800.  
Ol. 143. an. 4.  
V. C. 549.  
*Selencidarum* 108.  
Ant. Mag. 19.  
Ptol. Philop. 18.  
Bell. Punic. 14.

*Idem* lib. 30.  
*Polyb.* l. 14. c. 15

A. M. 3802.  
V. C. 551.

## SECT. 2.

Whereupon  
Peace is de-  
sired and ob-  
tained.

in Africk; but the Romans hold Spain with all the Islands of the Mediter-  
ranean any time in question between the two States. That all rebels and fu-  
gitives should be given up to the Romans. That the Carthaginians should de-  
liver up all their beaked ships, except ten Triremes, with all their tamed Ele-  
phants, and tame no more. It was made unlawful for them to make War in  
Africk or elsewhere, without licence from the People of Rome. They were to  
restore all to Masinissa, and enter into confederacy with him. To give money  
and corn to the Roman Auxiliaries, till the Ambassadors should be returned.  
To pay 10000 talents of Silver in the space of fifty years, and give 100 Ho-  
stages for performance of these things. Thus ended the second Punick War,  
in the eighteenth year, and Scipio obtained the honourable surname of *Afri-  
canus*, being the first General (if *Livy* observeth rightly) who was ennobled  
by the name of a Country he had overcome.

A. M. 3804.  
Ol. 144. an. 4.  
V. C. 553.  
Ant. Mag. 23.  
Ptol. Epiph. 3.  
Belli Punici 18.

The Macedo-  
nian War.

Galba the  
Consul pro-  
pereth against  
Philip.

52. The Romans had little or no rest after this War; for immediately be-  
gun, or rather went on the Macedonian, or that with *Philip*, the occasion  
being given, as was said, ten years before, upon his entrance into conse-  
deracy with *Annibal*. The *Ætoliens* being also invaded by him, aid was  
sent them, by which he was worsted, and after seven years a Peace was made.  
But now the Romans having nothing to do, and being not without provocation,  
as well by his breaking of his faith with the *Ætoliens* and others of their  
friends in those parts, as by his supply of men and money not long before sent  
to *Hannibal*, and at the earnest request of the *Athenians* (the territories of  
whom he had wasted) they decreed War anew against him, being also com-  
plained of by *Attalus* King of *Pergamus*, and the *Rhodiens*, for molesting  
the Cities in *Asia*. *Ser. Sulpitius Galba* the Consul obtaining Macedonia  
for his Province, by himself and his Lieutenant, put him to the worst divers  
times, and had almost taken him. Together with *Attalus* and the *Rhodiens*  
he caused him to raise his siege from *Athens*, whereupon the *Ætoliens* be-  
fore backward enough, by reason of their Magistrate, and the *Athamanians*  
now incouraged invaded his Dominions, but being idle and carelesse were  
easily repelled by him. This year, did *M. Furius* the *Prætor* get a great  
Victory over the *Galls*, which besieged *Cremona* in *Italy*, killing 30000,  
and with them *Amilcar* the *Carthaginian* Captain. For this, after much  
dispute in the Senate, he triumphed, though against the custom, and without  
president, for any one to receive this honour, that had obtained Victory with  
the Army of another, as he had done with the Soldiers of *C. Aurelius Cotta*  
the Consul in his absence, who took it most hainously. The year following,  
*C. Bibulus* the *Prætor* entering unadvisedly into the territories of the *Galls In-  
subres*, was encompassed and lost above 6600 men.

*Livius lib. 31.*

A. M. 3805.  
Ol. 145. an. 1.  
V. C. 554.  
Seleucidarum  
113.  
Ant. M. 24.  
Ptol. Epiph. 4.

And so doth  
Flaminius.

One good  
thing done by  
the Tribunes  
of the People  
*Eugenius*.  
*Philip* over-  
thrown by  
Flaminius at  
*Cynoscephale*,  
desireth, and  
obtaineth  
peace.

53. Nothing considerable was this year done in Macedonia by *P. Villius*  
*Tappulus* the Consul; but his successor *T. Quintius* \* *Flaminius* (not *Fla-  
minius* as *Plutarch* now hath him; for the *Flamini* *Patrians* must not  
be confounded with the *Flamini* who were *Plebeians*) using great expedi-  
tion beat *Philip* out of the Straights, wherein securely he had incamped, and  
by Sea his brother *Lucius* (with *Attalus*) took several towns of his confede-  
rates, and besieged *Corinth*, though in vain. The time coming for the ele-  
ction of new Consuls, and it being usual for them to take the Provinces from  
their predecessors, the *Tribunes* rightly objected, that this course hindered the  
progress of the Wars, and procured *Quintius* his Government to be con-  
tinued to him, who being about taking of the Castle of *Opus*, Messengers  
came from *Philip* about a Treaty. Several times they met (which before  
they had also done at the Straights) and the Ambassadors of *Attalus*, the *Rho-  
diens*, and *Achaens* were present; but the effect was nothing, and *Philip*  
gave up *Argos* into the hands of *Nabis* Tyrant of *Lacedæmon*, who used the  
Inhabitants with great cruelty and incredible exaction. But *Quintius* fol-  
lowing *Philip* into *Thessaly*, gave him such a blow at *Cynoscephale*, as forced  
him to ask Peace, which was granted upon terms moderate enough. All the  
Cities of *Greece* which he had got in his hands, were hereby, beyond all expe-  
ctation, and to the wonder of themselves and others, set at liberty, and left to  
their

\* *Apud Livium*  
l. 32.

A. M. 3809.  
Ol. 146. an. 1.  
V. C. 558.  
Ant. M. 28.  
Ptol. Epiph. 8.

## SECT. 2.

their own Laws. The year preceding this conclusion, did the *Galls* receive  
a great overthrow from *Cornelius* the Consul. But in Spain, *C. Sempronius*  
*Tuditanus* was totally defeated. The same year wherein the Macedonian  
War ended, the slaves in *Tuscany* made a dangerous Rebellion, but were cha-  
tized, and quieted, by *Attilius* the *Prætor*. And about the same time was an-  
other victory obtained over the *Galls*.

54. The year after the ratification of the peace, some bickering there was  
in the City about the women. For, twenty years before, there had been a  
Law preferred by *Oppius*, Tribune of the People, presently after the defeat  
at *Canna*, forbidding women the wearing of Gold or Purple, and the use of  
any other kind of Pomp. This now did two of the present Tribunes labour  
to abrogate, the face of things being changed, and the occasion removed.  
*M. Porcius Cato* the Consul stood stiffly for preserving the Law, inveighing  
much against the Females; but partly through the apposite reply of *L. Valerius*  
the Tribune unto the Consul, out of his own book, called *Origenes*, and espe-  
cially through the importunity of the women themselves (who with liberty of  
behaviour sufficient filled the streets, and came to the Assembly, and con-  
strained two of the Tribunes to let fall their interposition) it was abrogated.  
*Cato* then betook himself into Spain his Province, where using severity  
towards himself as well as his Soldiers, he restored the Roman interest by  
good Discipline. Having led his Army upon the back of the *Spaniards*, and  
thereby necessitated them to fight, he overthrew them in a great battel,  
and took their Camp; after which, notwithstanding the sicklenesse of the  
Natives, he reduced the Province to obedience. The same Summer did  
*L. Valerius Flaccus* his Colleague give another overthrow to the *Galls* in *It-  
aly*.

The Oppian  
Law against  
the women  
repealed.

Moxions in  
Greece.

55. In *Greece*, *Nabis* the Tyrant of *Sparta*, still held it, and *Argos*, in fla-  
very; wherefore the freedom of them still was wanting to the universal li-  
berty of *Greece*, resolved to be vindicated from the oppression of the Ma-  
cedonian party. *Quintus*, upon *Nabis* his refusal to quit *Argos*, besieged  
them both, and took in *Gythium* a Port Town, which drove *Nabis* to ask  
peace. *Quintus* was not against it, urging to the *Græcian* Allies the length,  
which was likely to be of the siege of *Sparta*, the unseasonableness of the  
Winter season, and the War that threatned from *Antiochus* King of *Asia*;  
but indeed, fearing lest one of the new Consuls taking Macedonia for his  
Province, might rob him of the glory of fending the whole controversy in  
these parts. Yet the *Greeks* being earnest for suppressing the Tyrant, he  
seemed to yield to it, and afterwards put them off by demanding such sup-  
plies as they could not furnish him with. Notwithstanding this, the peace  
could not be made; for, *Nabis* accepted not of the terms, especially of  
parting with his ships. Hereupon *Sparta* was set upon round about, and had  
been taken, but that *Pythagoras* son-in-law to the Tyrant set the out-houses  
on fire, which drove away the Inhabitants. Though the onset succeeded not,  
yet the danger put *Nabis* into such a fright, that he now accepted of the for-  
mer conditions, and had peace granted him; the *Argives* having ere this  
taken heart at the absence of *Pythagoras* their Governour, and freed them-  
selves. The following year *T. Sempronius* the Consul killed many of the  
*Galls* who had set upon his Camp, but with great losse of his own men. Se-  
veral times had the Romans now the better against these people, and the *Ligu-  
rians*. Then came they flatly to fall out with *Antiochus* the Great, King of  
*Syria*, and began a War with him five years after the ending of the Macedo-  
nian, in the 563 year of the City, the second of the 147 Olympiad, the 23th  
of *Antiochus*, and the 13th of *Ptolomy Epiphanes*, A. M. 3814. *P. Corn. Scipio*  
*Nasica*, and *Manius Acilius Glabrio* being Consuls.

The Romans  
fight prospe-  
rously against  
the Galls.

## SECT. 3.

## SECT. III.

*From the war with Antiochus, and the invasion of Asia, to the destruction of Carthage, after which the Romans degenerated through security, the space of 45 years.*

The occasions of the War with Antiochus, 1. **A**ntiochus had invaded the Territories of *Assalus*; but being then the friend of the *Romans*, gave over his Enterprize at their desire. After this, having an hungry desire after *Egypt*; upon application of the *Egyptians* to *Rome*, he was commanded to desist, which breeding in him discontent, it was heightened by reason of his setting upon several Cities in *Greece*. He said that they once had belonged (though not of a long time) to his Predecessors; but the *Romans* being ambitious to set all *Greece* at liberty, plainly told him that these Towns must not be excepted. When he was thus enough incensed, and by *Hannibal* (who had fled to him) spurred on, the *Ætolians* importuned him to join with them against their late friends and benefactors. This they did, being an inconstant people, and very covetous, having taken offence at the small quantity of booty, as they accounted it, allotted to them in the War against *Philip*, by *T. Quintius*.

Things introduced to it.

2. The *Ætolians* first of all attempted to get into their hands *Lacedæmon*, and other Towns, before held as cautionary by *Quintius*; but missed of their design, though they brake into the former, and killed *Nabis* the Tyrant; for, they were afterwards cut in pieces by the Inhabitants themselves. *Antiochus* having through the cunning insinuations of *Theus* the *Ætolian*, changed his purpose of sending *Annibal* into *Africa*, and thence into *Italy*, landed in *Greece*, with an intention to make it the Seat of War. He brought an inconsiderable Army with him; but seemed to have made a good beginning, having got *Chalcis* into his hands, and by that means easily brought under the whole Island of *Eubœa*. After this, he sent, and buried the dead bodies of the *Macedonians* slain at *Cynoscephale*, thinking thereby to oblige *Philip*, who taking it as tending to his reproach, because he had not done it before, it proved but an effectual means to make him his Enemy, the *Thessalians* being no better affected, because he had taken some of their Towns. Then revivring at *Chalcis*, he fell in Love with, and married an obscure maid; his Army which before was indifferently good, falling with him into all idleness and excess.

M. Acilius the Consul defeated Antiochus at Thermopylae.

3. *M. Acilius* the Consul, to whom *Greece* fell by lot, easily recovered the places of *Thessaly*; and afterwards beat *Antiochus* out of the Straights of *A. M. 3814. Thermopylae*, whither, being deserted by his confederates, he had retired, as is *Ol. 147. ann. 2. shewn* in the History of his Kingdom. Then the Consul received the *Boeotians*, *V. C. 563. Seleucidarum* chiding them onely for their ingratitude, and the Gates of *Chalcis* being set open to him, he presently recovered *Eubœa*. This done, he went against the *Ætolians*, from whom after he had taken one or two Towns they offered to *Ant. Mag. 33. Ptol. Epiphan.* submit, but being offended with the hard conditions he propounded, and for 13. that large things were promised by *Antiochus*, they flew back. Hereupon he besieged *Nampactus* (now *Lepanto*) and had utterly ruined them, but for the intercession of *T. Quintius*. For he having then received the Island of *Zacynthus* from the *Athenians*, came to the Camp, and though they had ill deserved at his hands by detracting from his worth, yet thinking it dishonourable for him, being the deliverer of *Greece*, that any one people should perish, he proposed to the Consul to be considered, whether to counterpoise the power of *Philip*, who now had got by his leave *Athamania*, *Perrhebia*, *Aperantia*, and *Dolonia* into his hands, it would not be good policy to preserve the *Ætolians*. For this respect, and at their humble sure he gave them Truce, that they might send to the Senate at *Rome*, and broke up his siege. Whilest *Acilius* did these things in *Greece*, his Collegue *Scipio Nasica* got a notable

## SECT. 2.

able victory over the *Bast* in *Italy*, which utterly broke their power in pieces.

L. Cornelius Scipio the Consul obtained Greece for his Province with leave to passe into Asia.

4. *Lucius Cornelius Scipio*, and *C. Laelius Nepos*, being Consuls for the following year, came, according to the custom, to divide the Provinces by lot. Both were extremely desirous to have *Greece*, and *Laelius* being a man in great favour, offered that the thing might be left to the discretion of the Senate. *Scipio* at first knew not what to do, but his brother *Africanus* persuaded him by all means to assent to it. The thing was new, and the Senate expected many words on both sides, when *Africanus* standing up, told the *Fathers*, that if they would decree *Greece* to his brother, he would go his *Legatus* or Lieutenant, whereupon there was no need any more should be said; for it was presently voted with universal consent, and power given to the Consul to passe into *Asia*, if he saw it convenient. Coming into *Greece* he found *Acilius* fallen upon the *Ætolians* again, because the Senate had given them no positive answer, either as to peace or War; onely two things were proposed: To cast themselves wholly upon the Senate, or pay down 1000 Talents, and have the same friends and enemies with the *Romans*. When they desired an exposition of the former, no answer would be given, but a command to their Ambassadors to depart: The Consul prosecuted what his Predecessor had begun, and with much ado, through the intercession of the *Athenians* by *Africanus*, another Truce was granted that they might have time once more to send to *Rome*. There their Ambassadors instead of confessing their faults, and asking pardon, boasted what friends and assistants they had been to the *Roman* State, which gave such offence, that they were commanded out of the *Citie*, as before.

Antiochus affrighted at his bad success at Sea made offers.

Which are rejected.

He is overthrown, and hath peace granted upon former demands.

5. *Antiochus* having with his son *Selenus* besieged *Pergamus* the Chief *Citie* of *Enmenes*, the friend of the *Romans*, was forced to raise his siege. He sent to *Emilius* the *Roman* Admiral now on those Coasts about peace, who disowned any power of concluding it without the Consul. Then did the *Rhodians* at Sea defeat his Admiral, which was *Hannibal*, a man out of his proper Element, and afterward in a battel fought with *Emilius*, *Eumenes*, and the *Rhodians*, he fully lost the command of the Sea. Affrighted hereat, he foolishly left *Lyfsmachia*, which this year might have kept the Consul in action, and adding one folly to another suffered *Scipio* to passe the *Hellaspont* without interruption. Now he offered to quit all places in *Europe*, and such in *Asia* as were the friends of *Rome*; to discharge half of the costs sustained by the *Romans* in the War, and rather than not be quiet, he was content to part with a portion of his own Kingdom. These seemed but small things to the Consul, who thought it just that he, who had been the cause of the War, should bear all the charges of it, and not onely quit *Ionia* and *Æolis*, but leave all the *Greek* Cities to their liberty, which could not be, except he parted with all *Asia* on this side the Mountain *Taurus*. The Ambassador had in charge to procure the favour of *Africanus*, to whom was offered the restitution of his son taken prisoner, and all that could be expected on this side the title of King, if he would live with him. But all private Offices of kindness onely would *Africanus* promise, desiring him by all means to procure peace, and, when he had received his son, not to fight till he should (being now sick) return to the Camp. This caused *Antiochus* to delay fighting, but the Consul followed, and provoked him to give battel, wherein his own Chariots Armed with Scithes, being driven back upon his own men, procured his overthrow. After this, peace was granted on the same terms as it had been offered to him before the battel. And thus this War ended in a short time, and lesse trouble than was expected, the second Consul putting a period to it, who in imitation of his brother took on him the surname of *Asiaticus*.

6. The year following, wherein *M. Fulvius Nobilior*, and *Cn. Manlius* were Consuls, the former going into *Greece* fell upon the *Ætolians*, who now had taken from *Philip* *Dolopia*, and *Amphilochia* with *Athamania*; and besieging *Ambracia*, drove them once more to sue for peace. They were

## SECT. 3.

referred by the Consul to *Rome*, where the Ambassadors of *Philip* made great complaints against them upon the former account. But the *Rhodians* and *Athenians* interceding once more for them, their fute was granted, on condition to pay 500 Eubœan Talents at several payments, to restore all prisoners, and have the same Friends and Enemies with the People of *Rome*.

Peace granted to the Ætolians.

Manlius subdueth the Galatians.

Luxury first brought to Rome by his Army.

Scipio Africanus called to account by the Tribunes.

His great spirit.

He departeth to Linternum and is not condemned through the procurement of Gracchus.

7. *Cn. Manlius* the other Consul was now in *Asia*, where of that part taken from *Antiochus*, much he conferred upon *Eumenes*, and the *Rhodians*, according to the resolt of the Senate. This done, he undertook an Expedition against the *Gallogracians*, or *Galatians*, a People which having followed *Brennus* into *Greece*, after his death, had 90 years before passed into *Asia*, *Justin. lib. 3.* where they were so terrible, as none denied them tribute before *Attalus* King of *Pergamus*. They inhabited vast and high mountains, and in that respect were with difficulty to be come at; but the Consul by throwing darts, especially at their huge bodies, made great slaughter and subdued them. Returning home through *Thrace*, he had well nigh lost his booty by the inhabitants that lay in wait for it in the woody passages, and hardly got leave to triumph, because he had undertaken the War on his own head. It is observed, that luxury and idleness were first brought to *Rome* by his Army, out of *Asia*, through the provocations to effeminate ness there found, and his loose and neglected Government.

8. In the third year after the ending of the War with *Antiochus*, and the same wherein he died, envy procured the fall of those by whom the Victory was obtained. For, *Scipio Africanus* was accused of having defrauded the Treasury of the booty taken in the War, and had a day set him by the Tribunes to answer it before the People. It is not certain who was his accuser, some mentioning *M. Nevius*, and others the two *Paullus* Tribunes, set on, as some delivered, by *M. Porcius Cato* the Enemy of *Scipio*. The day of hearing being come, and the Tribunes having taken their places in the *Rostra*, the party entered the Assembly with a great train of Friends and Clients. Silence being made, he put on his triumphal crown, and told the People, how as that day he had overthrown *Hannibal* and the *Carthaginians*; wherefore thinking it convenient for that time not to meddle with any brawling business, he would go and salute the gods in the Capitol, and give them thanks, that as well that day, as at other times, they had given him both will and power to do eminent service for his Country. Then he wished that such of them there present as thought it convenient, would accompany him, and pray that they might have such principal Officers (*Principes*) as he had been.

9. Going up to the Capitol, the whole Assembly followed him, as also to all the temples in the City, inasmuch that the very *Viaors* and *Clerks* left the Tribunes alone, who also followed, and from accusers turned admirers, (as appeareth from *Valerius Maximus*) out of very shame. The Tribunes accused him also grievously in the Senate, and desired he might be brought to his answer. He rising up, produced the Books of accounts, wherein was punctually set down all the particulars, but he tore it in pieces before them all, disdaining to give account for so small a matter in comparison of those vast sums he himself had brought into the Treasury. The next day of appearance he absented himself, and his brother pretending his indisposition, he was excused, and another day appointed, before which he withdrew himself to *Linternum* (or *Linternum*) a Sea Town of *Campania*. For he clearly perceived under what envy he laboured, it being also objected against him, that he had spent in idleness all that Summer he lay in *Sicily*, and his power with *Antiochus*, who having discharged his son without ransom, honoured him above all others, which he willingly took upon him, as one, who alone sat at the helm, and could steer matters concerning *Rome* according to his pleasure. In his absence the Tribunes were very fierce against him, yet through the interposition of *Tiberius Gracchus* (formerly accounted his Enemy) he was not condemned.

10. *Lucius*

## SECT. 3.

Africanus his brother is fined.

The abominable practices at the Bacchanalia discovered.

Africanus died.

And Philopomen General of the Achæans.

And Hannibal, all three in one year.

Several Nations subdued.

10. *Lucius Scipio Africanus* his brother was also called to an account, and escaped not condemnation, the money supposed to be retained to his own use, being charged upon his estate; and he was kept from imprisonment merely by the power of *Gracchus*. The following year was discovered the abominable practice of certain women at the feasts of *Bacchus*, which being kept in the night, all manner of filchiness and continual murders were committed. At first these festivals were observed but three days in a year; but now five in every month, and men were admitted, whereas they were begun by women. All who being present and drawn in, would not consent to such abominations, were sacrificed as beasts, a vast number being bewitched with this folly. The matter being revealed to *Sp. Posthumus Albinus* the Consul, he acquainted the Senate with it, by which, order was taken for apprehending the persons, imprisoning some, and putting others to death, as well in other parts of *Italy*, as in the City; the contagion having infected many other places, but especially *Capua*. It was brought to *Rome* out of *Hæturia*.

11. In the second or third year after this discovery, and the fourth of his exile, died *P. Cornelius Scipio Africanus*, whether at *Linternum*, or *Rome*, is unknown, the place of his burial being also uncertain. That he died this year, *Livy* gathereth, because having been Prince or chief of the Senate at the former Lustrum, this year he was left out, (which none used to be as long as he lived) by *L. Valerius Flaccus*, and *M. Porcius Cato* the Censors, the former whereof was chosen into the place. *Valerius Maximus* telleth us, that he commanded this to be engraven on his Tomb, *Ingrata Patria ne ossa quidem mea habes*, which sheweth that he was not buried at *Rome*. He had that hap which usually accompanieth the best men, to find their Country ingrateful, being of excellent parts, and of a kingly spirit, which he ascribed to himself in *Spain*, when the natives saluted him by, and would have had him take upon him, the title it self. And upon this account he might be hated by *Cato*, who though a virtuous man, was morose and sower. *Livy* joyneth with his (in the same year) the death of *Philopomen*, and of *Hannibal*; so that the three great Captains of the World at that time, left it desolate as it were by agreement. *Philopomen* Captain of the Achæans was through the fall off his Horse, taken in an engagement with the *Messenians*, and compelled to drink poyson, having done great service for his Country. *Hannibal* having notice that the Romans would demand him from *Antiochus*, fled into *Crete* to the *Gortynians*. Having great treasure with him, and knowing himself to be in much danger, because of the Avarice of the *Cretans*, he filled many barrels with Lead, which covering on the top with Gold, he deposited in the Temple of *Diana*, trusting the *Gortynians* with his wealth. Then put he his money into brazen Statues, which he was wont to carry about with him, and cast them before the gate. They then watching the Temple diligently from none so much as him, he got away secretly, and went to *Prusias* King of *Bithynia*, who used him in the Warre against *Eumenes*. But *T. Quinctius* being sent to *Prusias*, whether by the Senate on purpose, or upon other occasions, demanded him as the grand enemy of *Rome*, to be delivered into his hands. He had provided in his house several places for issuing out upon such an occasion; but being better, and no way left to escape, he took poyson, which it's said he caried about him in his ring. So this renowned Captain ended his life in his 70 year; for which thing *Quinctius* was by many hardly thought of, and got the esteem of an importune and cruel man, as *Plutarch* writeth.

12. After these things, the *Ligurians* were often defeated by the Consuls and other Commanders; many a thousand of them being slain, as also of the *Celtiberians* and other Nations in *Spain* who were continually rebelling. The  *Istrians* beat the Romans out of their camp, and put them to the rout; *Manlius* the Consul in vain opposing it; but shortly after they were discomfited by the said *Manlius*, and afterward fully subdued by *Claudius* the Consul, who quelled also the *Ligurians*, as his Colleague *Tib. Sempronius Gracchus*

*Livius lib. 39. Val. Max. l. 6. cap. 3. cæm. 7. Augustin de Civitate Dei l. 18. c. 13.*

*A. M. 3819. V. C. 568.*

*A. M. 3822. Ol. 159. ann. 2. V. C. 571. Seleuci Philop. 5. Ptol. Epiph. 21.*

*Livy l. 40. 41. Livius lib. 39. Val. Max. l. 6. cap. 3. cæm. 7. Augustin de Civitate Dei l. 18. c. 13.*



SECT. 3. *chus* did the rebellion of *Sardinia*, with the losse of 1500 of the revolt-ers. About this time *Corfica* also was subdued. The year following, *Cornelius* one of the Consuls died at the bath at *Cuma*, into whose place *C. Valerius* *Lavinus* was elected. *Peilius* *Spurinus* the other Consul fighting against the *Ligurians*, laboured to take a certain Mountain called *Letus*, concerning which in his speech to his Soldiers he saying, that that day he would take *Letus* (*Hodie ego Letum unigue capiam*) by rash fighting confirmed what he had said in another fence (*viz.* wherein *Letum* signifieth death) than he meant it. These actions abroad were shortly after followed by the second *Macedonian* War, or that with *Perseus*, in the 583 year of the City, 24 after the Peace made with his Father, and seventeen after the conclusion with *Antiochus*.

The War  
with *Perseus*.

13. *Perseus* in a manner succeeded to this War as well as the Kingdom, his Father having intended and made great preparations for it. Puffed up by these preparations, he sought to draw away the Allies of the *Romans* from their friendship, and abused several of their friends. Their Ambassadors he slighted, refusing to give them audience, which made the Senate resolve upon the War; but it was to be committed to one of the following Consuls; only for the present, *Cn. Sicius* the *Prætor* of the City was commanded to raise men, and transport them into *Epirus*, there to seize on the Seaports, that the Consul might more freely land his Army. Some were sent also into *Greece* to confirm the States in their friendship and alliance, who also demanding audience of *Perseus*, after long waiting, he renounced the league made with the *Romans*, as entered into at the beginning of his reign merely for security. Hereupon the Ambassadors renounced also the confederacy made with him, and after that the Consuls *P. Licinius* *Crassus* and *C. Cassius* *Longinus* had assumed their Office, the Warre was propounded to, and decreed by, the People.

Peace is denied  
him by the  
Senate.

14. *Quintus* *Martius* and others being sent into *Greece* to establish the confederates in their fidelity, *Perseus* began to bethink himself, and was affrighted, hearing of the motions of the Enemy. He applied himself to *Martius* about a Treaty for Peace, trusting to that friendship which had passed betwixt their two families. The Ambassadors were glad of this address, and to divert him granted him Truce, that he might send to *Rome*, for he had all things in a readinesse, and might have begun the War, as with great advantage to himself, so too speedily to the *Romans*, who as yet had neither Army nor Leader arrived. Peace was denied him by the Senate, and *A. Aulius* was sent to seize upon *Larissa* the chief City of *Thessaly*. Whereupon he drew together his Forces, having got a greater Army than any of his predecessors were Masters of since *Alexander* the Great. He took in some Towns upon his borders, and *Licinius* the Consul led so raw and unexperienced an Army into *Macedonia*, and through such difficult and almost unpassable places, as had *Perseus* taken his opportunity, he might easily have destroyed it, as also if he had not too soon retreated in a battel fought shortly after. After this he sent to *Licinius*, offering to embrace the conditions submitted to by his Father, in paying the tribute, and leaving the Cities to their liberty; which yet would not be granted. Then were *Thebes* and *Alarius* taken in by *Lucerius* the *Prætor*; and the Consul having had the better in another skirmish, received some Towns, and took up his winter quarters; whilst *Appius* *Claudius* in *Illyricum* lost many men.

Thebes and  
Alarius taken.

*Perseus* beset  
with fear  
neglecteth  
his opportu-  
nities.

15. The year following *C. Hostilius* the Consul did nothing of moment; yet this he did in reference to the Army; he reduced the Soldiers to that ancient discipline which his predecessor had let fall. *Q. Marcus* *Philippus* succeeding him, at his first entrance into his Province might easily have been defeated, had he met with a prudent enemy, the wayes being so difficult and dangerous, that the Soldiers could scarcely for weariness hold their weapons. And after he had got into the plains he might easily have been shut up on every side, and famished, but that *Perseus* beset with fear ran away to *Pydna*, and left the Straights open to him. Yet *Martius* did nothing of consequence,

leaving

A. M. 3834.  
Ol. 152. an. 2.  
V. C. 583.  
Seleucid. 140.  
Ant. Epiph. 6.  
Prot. Philom. 10.

SECT. 3.

Livius l. 45.  
Plutarch in  
Æmilio.

Is overthrown  
by *Æmilius*  
the Consul,  
and yieldeth  
himself.

leaving all to be performed by his Successor *L. Æmilius* *Paulus*, who had been Consul 17 years before. He caused the Eclipse of the Moon to be foretold to his Soldiers, lest they should be discouraged by it, which brought great terror to the Enemy, that knew nothing of the natural cause. He kept them from fighting when they were weary, though the Officers much desired to engage. But the Armies lying incamped on each side of the River *Enipeus*, it hapned that a beast passing over from the *Roman* side, was seized on, and being rescued by degrees drew both the Armies into an engagement; wherein *Perseus* lost the day, and with it his Kingdom. Flying into the Isle of *Crete*, when all forsook him, he delivered up himself into the hands of *Cn. Octavius*. *Æmilius* severely chastized the *Epirots*, who had joyned with *Perseus*, plundering and demolishing about 70 of their Towns, whereby so much booty was got, as each foot-man had 200 *Denarii*, and every horse-man as much more. But the Soldiers having got little or no plunder in *Macedonia*, nor any of the King's Treasure, denied their General a Triumph, which yet he obtained, and that very splendid. Of his four sons, the two eldest he granted to be adopted to *Fabius* *Maximus*, and *Publius* *Scipio* the son of *Africanus*, and of his two youngest, the one died five dayes before his Triumph, and the other three dayes after, which losse he sustained with great courage. Before his Triumphal Chariot was led *Perseus* with his two sons, and this same year Triumphed *Cn. Octavius* the *Prætor* at Sea, besides *L. A. nicias*, before whose Chariot was led *Genius* King of the *Illyrians*, whom being the Confederates of *Perseus* he had subdued, and forced to yield himself. This hapned to *Macedonia* and *Illyricum*, in the 586 year of the Citie, the said *Æmilius*, and *L. Licinius* *Crassus* being Consuls.

*Eumenes* and  
the *Rhodians*  
having stood  
Neuters, are  
accordingly  
respected by  
the Senate.

Things go ill  
in Spain.

*Andiscus* a  
counterfeit son  
of *Perseus*

Is taken.

16. In the late War, *Eumenes* King of *Pergamus*, and the *Rhodians*, being wrought upon by *Perseus*, stood Neuters, whereupon *Eumenes* coming towards *Rome*, the Senate being unwilling either to declare him friend or foe, made a decree in General, that no King should come into the Citie: the *Rhodians*, with much ado, and after much seeking, were hardly received as friends and confederates. The same year that *Perseus* was overthrown, *Antiochus* *Epiphanes* besieging *Psolomy* in *Alexandria*, upon the desire of the besieged, *C. Popilius* *Lænas* an aulter man, with *C. Decimus*, were sent from the Senate to command him to desist, which he obeyed. After this the *Romans* fought in *Liguria* and *Corfica* with various fortune, the *Dalmatians* who had wasted the Borders of *Illyricum* and had overcome, and were overcome by *C. Marcus*, were subdued by *Scipio* *Nasica*. But in *Spain* things went badly, and such losses were received, that the Citie was abashed, none being found who would either go Lieutenant to the Consul, or take place of a Tribune upon him, till *Scipio* *Æmilianus* (the son of *Paulus* *Æmilius*), but adopted by *Scipio* the son of the *African*) standing up offered himself, and by his example drew on others. He went Lieutenant to *Lucullus* the Consul, and behaving himself most gallantly in the War, killed an Enemy in a Duel which had challenged out any one in the Army, and first mounted the Walls of *Interetia*.

Velleius Pater-  
culus l. 1. c. 10.

17. *Lucullus* subdued several Nations in *Spain*, though *Sulpicius* *Galba* unfortunately fought against the *Lusitanians*. About the same time one *Andiscus*, an obscure man in *Macedonia*, but something resembling *Philip*, counterfeited himself the base son of *Perseus*. He was once sent to *Rome* by *Demetrius* the King of *Syria*, but making thence an escape returned, and renewed his claim to *Macedonia*, which partly by fair means, and partly by constraint, he got into his hands. *Juventius* the *Prætor* was first sent against him; but he having strengthened himself with the *Thracians*, cut him off and all his Army, and invaded *Thessaly*, whence he was ejected by the help of the *Acheans*. After this, *Q. Metellus* the *Prætor* sufficiently revenged the Commonwealth upon him, for he overthrew him in a great battel, whence he fled to *Byzantium*, a petty King of *Thrace*, who delivering him up, he led him in Triumph. *Metellus* (accounted most fortunate) reduced *Macedonia* in this third *Macedonian* War into the form of Province, which shortly

Florus lib. 2.  
c. 12.  
Velleius lib. 1.  
cap. 11.  
Orosius lib. 4.  
cap. 22.

A. M. 3857.  
Ol. 158. an. 1.  
V. C. 606.  
Prot. Philom. 33.

Is left

after

## SECT. 3.

after also hapned to *Africk*. For, even now was prosecuting with all earnestnesse the third and last *Punick* or *Carthaginian* War, and the ruin of the Citie *Carthage* it self.

The pretences  
for the third  
Punick War.

18. Their opinion is not faulty, who professe not to be able to find any Meritorious cause of this War in the *Carthaginians*, & theirs, who affirm that *Carthage* was more hated for its competition of Empire, than for any fault it had committed in those times. But there wanted not pretences. For, divers times had *Masanissa* King of *Numidia*, and the *Carthaginians*, quarrelled about grounds upon the Borders, and often had the *Romans* sent to take up the quarrel, but especially of late not with indifferency had they judged, for that the fault lay in *Masanissa*, who being a great friend of theirs, presumed too much upon their affection to himself, and the jealousie wherewith he knew them prejudiced against the other. The Ambassadors also that were sent to *Carthage*, finding the Citie full, and flourishing, from that peace they had now enjoyed about fifty years, and provided also for War as well as peace, spake much of the danger which threatened *Rome* from it; especially *Caro*, who never came into the *Senate*, but after that he had spoken his mind to any business, added, *This I think, and that Carthage is to be destroyed*. He was earnestly contradicted by *Scipio Nasica*, who feared, that this rival for Empire once being removed, security would breed the destruction of the Commonwealth, as it too truly proved, this security being strengthened by luxury and avarice, which the *Africk* Triumphs had brought in. But *Caro's* reasons drawn from present danger, so, in the apprehension of the *Senate*, over-ruled *Scipio's* forecast, that they resolved upon a War, and kept the resolution close till they could catch at a convenient opportunity and pretence.

19. There being at this time three factions in *Carthage*, one affected towards the *Romans*, another standing for the true interest of the State it self, and the third for *Masanissa*, this later was expelled by the second, and a Law made that they should never be again received. Those men flying to *Masanissa*, he sent *Gulussa* his son to intercede for them, who being laid in wait for by *Amilcar Sannus*, although he escaped, yet thereupon the King besieged *Horofope*, a Town he much desired; which act was expressly against the articles of the League. *Asdrubal* went with a great Army to raise the siege, and a bloody battel was fought, wherein the *Carthaginians* were overthrown; but more died of the Plague, being incompassed near a Lake, which by its noisome vapours corrupted the air. Hereby the remnant were forced to yield, and consent to a great Tribute, with the receiving back of their Exiles, and yet were they almost all slain by a party of horse sent against them, out of revenge by *Gulussa*. The *Carthaginians* therefore had now had an Army in the field, and that against a confederate of *Rome*, which was against the tenour of the last League. This advantage the *Romans* took, and ordered the Consuls to undertake the War, though the other condemned those that had broken the League, and most humbly offered any reasonable satisfaction. *M. Manilius Nepos*, and *L. Marcins Censorinus* being now on their journey, it was answered, that they should enjoy all as formerly, if within 30 days they would send 300 hostages, (all sons of Senators, or the principal Citizens) to *Lilybaeum*, and do what the Consuls should further command them. The *Carthaginians* desirous to give satisfaction within the time limited sent the Children, and when now the Consuls were landed at *Utica* (which being a Sea-Town convenient for their purpose had been seized on beforehand) thither they sent their Commissioners to wait on them, and know their pleasure. *Censorinus* the Senior Consul commending their diligence, demanded all their Arms, which without any deceit were delivered up. Now with tears imploring mercy they desired to know their last doom, and were commanded to leave their Citie (which the Consuls had order to level with the ground) and build another any where in their own Territories, so it were but ten miles from the Sea. This they received with great horreur and rage, and all resolved rather to die than forsake, or give way to the ruin of, their ancient seat and habitation.

20. The

## SECT. 3.

20. The Consuls delayed to begin the War, as not doubting in the least but to take the Citie thus disarmed and naked at their pleasure. But they found it not so; for the Inhabitants acted by indignation and fury, though at first scarce themselves, ferled their minds to resistance, men and women working night and day in making of Arms. Where iron and brasse were wanting, they made use of Gold and Silver; and the women gave the hair of their heads to supply the defect of Tow, or Flax. They made also *Asdrubal* (whom before for fear of the *Romans* they had condemned) their General in the field, where he had already a good Army. When the Consuls came against the Citie, they found such resistance that they were discouraged; and the resolution of the besieged increased hereby. They engaged several times to their disadvantage, and might have suffered much, had not the Army been secured and brought off, through the great wisdom and courage of *Scipio Emilianus*, who drew off also *Pharneas*, the Master of the *Carthaginian* horse-men, to his own party; which things procured him an exceeding great name. This year died *Masanissa* 90 years old, leaving a son but of four years behind him; and trusting his Kingdom with *Scipio*, to be at his discretion disposed of to his Children. This same year also died *Caro*, being about 85 years of age, and lived not to see the too much desired ruin of *Carthage*.

And the War  
beginneth.

*Masanissa* and  
*Cato* die.

*Scipio Emilianus*  
made Consul,  
though  
under the  
Consular age.

Take the  
*Carthage*.

Which is  
razed.

21. The year following, *Calpurnius Piso* the Consul, and *Mancinus* the Admiral did no great matters, besieging *Clupea*, and *Hippo* (a Town situate betwixt *Carthage* and *Utica*) to no purpose. Within *Carthage*, *Asdrubal* Grand-son to *Masanissa* by his daughter, being joyned in commission with the other *Asdrubal* without, was accused by him as intending to betray the Citie to his Uncle *Gulussa*, and having nothing to say for himself, or being too slow in it, was knocked on the head by a form in the Council-house. Now at *Rome* were all mens eyes upon *Scipio Emilianus*, looking on him as destined to end the War; and whereas he sought but the *Adileship*, and it was against the Law for him to be chosen Consul so young (being but 36. whereas the Law required 43) it was dispensed with for this time, and then was he made Consul, who so ordered the matter, though not wholly during his Consulship, as he demonstrated the people not to have conceived vain hopes concerning him.

22. For restoring Discipline which had gone much to wreck through the neglect of *Piso*, he soon after took that part of *Carthage*, called *Megara*, and drove the Inhabitants into the Citadel or *Byrsa*. Then securing the *Isthmus* leading to the Citie, he cut off all Provisions from out of the Countrey, and blocked up the Haven; but the Citizens with incredible industry cut out another passage into the Sea, whereby at certain times they could receive necessities from the Army without. *Scipio* therefore in the beginning of Winter set upon their forces lying abroad, whereof he slew 70000. and took 10000. so that now no relief could be obtained from without. In the beginning of Spring, he first took the Wall leading to the Haven *Citro*, and then the *Forum*, where was a most lamentable spectacle, some being killed by the sword, and other wayes, others half killed by the fall of houses, or by fire, or half buried in the earth; or having one Limb torn from another. Six dayes the siege of the Citadel continued. On the seventh it was desired by some that all who would come forth should have their lives, which being granted to all but revolvers, some 50000 yielded, and afterward *Asdrubal* himself, who was reviled for it by the revolvers (who set fire to the Temple, and therewith burnt themselves) as also by his wife, which threw her self with her two Children into the flames.

23. Then was the Citie destroyed, being 22 miles in compasse, and so big, that the burning of it continued 17 dayes. The Senate at *Rome* receiving the news joyfully, sent ten of their own Rank whom they joyned with *Scipio* for disposing of the Countrey. They ordered none of *Carthage* to be left, and that it should never be rebuilt, laying heavy curses on those that should do it. All the Cities which assisted it in the War were to be razed, and the

Stiff 2

grounds

A. M. 389.  
Ol. 158. ann. 3.  
P. C. 608.  
Ptol. Phylonis

The Carthagi-  
nians being  
commanded  
to leave their  
Citie, refuse  
to obey.

## SECT. 4.

grounds given to the friends of the People of *Rome*: the rest of the Towns were to be tributaries, and governed yearly by a *Prator*. All the Captives were sold, except some of the chief. And such was the destruction of this renowned City, so famous once for command and Empire, and rival to *Rome* it self, after it had stood about 700 years, in the fourth after the beginning of the War, the 608 of *Rome*, the third of the 58 *Olympiads*, and the fifth of *Ptolemy Physcon*. A. M. 3859, *Cn. Cornelius Lentulus* and *L. Mummius Nepos* being Consuls.

## SECT. IV.

*From the destruction of Carthage to the War with Mithridates King of Pontus, which afforded the occasion to the first Civil War, the space of 58 years.*

1. **T**His year was fatal, not onely to the greatest City of *Africa*, but of *Greece* also; *Corinth* that famous Mart-town being levelled with the ground. The occasion was given by the *Achaens* themselves, who violated the *Roman* Ambassadors (though whether by word or deed is uncertain) who were sent to dissolve their Communality, and leave the Cities to their own peculiar Laws, which because of this union and fellowship had been too formidable. They had also in conjunction with the *Boeotians* and those of *Chalcis*, made War against the *Lacedaemonians* the friends and allies of *Rome*, because they would not be subject to them. Upon these grounds the Senate decreed the War, which *Metellus* as yet in *Macedonia* first undertook; who drawing down his Army through *Thessaly* into *Boeotia*, there overthrew *Critolauus*, then took *Thebes*, with *Megara*, and coming to the *Isthmus* was there treating of Peace, when *L. Mummius* the Consul came into this his Province. He overthrew *Diaus* the *Achaean* General, after which he entered *Corinth* and razed it, because there the Ambassadors had been abused. The men were slain, and the women and children sold, with all such slaves as the *Achaens* had manumitted for the Wars. As *Scipio*, who destroyed *Carthage* (as his Grand-father before him for conquering it) had the surname of *Africanus*, and *Metellus* for his reducing *Macedonia*, that of *Macedonicus*; so this year *Mummius* for this success obtained the Sirname of *Achaicus*, and according to the custom, having others joyned with him, reduced those parts and all *Greece* with *Epirus* into the form of a Province, called afterwards *Achaia*, not *Greece*, because the *Greeks* were subdued when the *Achaens* had the chief command, as *Pausanias* writeth.

2. Now was it 74 years since the *Romans*, in the second year of the second *Punic* War, entered *Spain* in an hostile manner, and since that time, especially since the departure of *Scipio Africanus* the elder, many had the risings and fruglings of that People been, of all others most impatient of the yolk. Now was *Virginius* up in arms, who of a shepherd became a robber, and of a robber a General over such-like as himself, and made the *Romans* work sufficient for the space of 14 years, in which time he defeated many Armies. *Q. Fabius Maximus Semilianus* (or rather *Emilianus*, being brother to *Scipio Emilius*, and adopted by *Fabius Maximus*) after some success was yet by him brought to such straights, as glad he was to ask Peace upon equal terms, which *Cepio* the Consul of the following year refusing to stand to, received orders from the Senate accordingly to prosecute the War. *Cepio* attempted at unawares to destroy him; but he escaped, and sending Ambassadors to treat of Peace, *Cepio* so wrought on them, that returning they murdered him, to their own shame, and the Consul's small credit, in his bed.

3. But, a more dangerous War than this threatned from *Numantia* a town of no great bignesse, yet peopled with most valiant, though but few, Inhabitants.

Before

The Achaean war, and the destruction of Corinth.

Mummius thence surnamed Achaicus.

Virginius up in Spain,

Is destroyed by Cepio.

Legge Velleium Patercul. l. 1. c. 12. Florum l. 2. c. 16. Livii Epitom. lib. 6. c. 51, 52. Pausan. in Achaicis, & de ere Corinthio Plinium l. 34.

A. M. 3859. Ol. 158. an. 3. V. C. 608. Seleucid. 167. Ptol. Physcon. 1.

Vide Appianum in Ibericis. Florum l. 2. c. 18.

## SECT. 4.

Orosium l. 5. c. 7. Patercul. l. 2. c. 4.

Bad success in Spain

Causeth Scipio Emilianus to be created Consul the second time.

He besiegeth Numantia and taketh it.

A servile war in Sicily.

Tiberius Gracchus raiseth a sedition about the Agrarian.

Before *Virginius* his death they had foiled *Q. Pompeius* the Consul several times, and forced him to condescend to a dishonourable Peace, which though he denied, was sufficiently proved, and by favour onely he escaped that punishment which fell on *Mancinus*, who being constrained to accept of the same terms, was delivered up to the Enemy; but (as the *Samnites* formerly did by another after the defeat at *Caudinum*) they refused to receive him. After this *Brutus* defeated many thousands of the *Lusitanians*, and overthrew the *Gallacians*; but *Lepidus* the *Proconsul* set upon the *Vaccæ* an harmless People of the hithermost *Spain*, or *Hispania Terraconensis* (for in the 559 year of the City, *Spain* was divided into *Citerior* or *Terraconensis*, and *Uterior* or *Betulia*, and *Lusitania*, two *Prators* being yearly sent thither, the number of which Officers was therefore upon this occasion increased to six) by whom he was utterly defeated. These things so affrighted the *Roman* Soldier, that he almost quaked at the sight of a *Spaniard*, and at *Rome* men were seized with great fear and shame. Therefore *Scipio Emilianus Africanus* must be created Consul the second time, as the onely refuge and hope of his Country.

4. At the first he restored discipline, the want of which had spoiled all, but then coming to engage, found the courage of the Enemy such, that he resolved to fight no more, but lay close siege to *Numantia*, and govern himself according to the comportment of affairs. At length the besieged greatly straightened offered to yield upon reasonable conditions, or fight if they might have battel given them, which being denied, having drunk strong drink on purpose, they assailed the besiegers so fiercely, that the *Romans* had run, but that *Scipio* was the General. At last they fired the City over their own heads, and scarcely one of them remained to be led in triumph. This famous City was seated in the hithermost *Spain*, in the head of *Gallacia*, and the confines of the *Celtiberians*. It had with 4000 men, for the space of fourteen years, saith *Florus*, or twenty according to *Strabo*, born the brunt of 40000 *Romans*, and many times put them to shameful flight with great slaughter. *Scipio* destroyed it, after he had for a year and three months continued the siege, fourteen years after he had so dealt with *Carthage*, in the 621 of the City, A. M. 3871, *P. Mutius Scævola* and *L. Calpurnius Piso Fruges* (both learned men) being Consuls. At this time a servile War was raised in *Sicily* by one *Ennus* a *Syrian* of *Apamea*, the slave of *Antigenes* of *Enna*. It was followed by *Calpurnius Piso* the Consul, and finished by *P. Rupilius Nepos* his Successor. Twenty thousand slaves were by him slain in battel: *Ennus* being cast in prison died (it's said, of the lowlie disease) at *Morgantia*.

5. Ever since the beginning of the *Tarentine* War to this time, for the space of almost 150 years was there much modesty, abstinence, selfdenial, valour and virtue amongst the *Romans* in general, of which yet especially the *Fabii*, *Fabritii*, *Marcelli*, *Curii*, *Metelli*, the *Scipio's* and *Emilii* have left examples admirable to be commended to all posterity, such were their cautious and politick yet just and noble carriage both at home and abroad. But now the *Asian* Expeditions and Triumphs having brought in excess and riot, and the ruine of *Carthage* having taken away fear, idleness with security by degrees stole in upon them, and the infirmity of the Government (after that fear, which hitherto had preserved it safe, was removed) again effectually shewed it self. For though after this time many a People was subdued and brought under, and much glory gotten abroad, yet was it stained by emulations, jealousies, and contentions at home, and even by shedding the blood of one another in an open though civil feud, which first came to passe while the former things were performed in *Spain* by *Scipio*.

6. *Tiberius Sempronius Gracchus* son to one of the same name (who had been twice Consul and once Censor) by *Cornelia* an excellent woman, daughter of *Africanus* the elder, being *Quæstor* to *Mancinus* the Consul in *Spain*, had an hand in the dishonourable Peace made by him, for which being reflected on by the Senate, or or at least thinking himself so to be, acted now

Orosius l. 5. c. 8, 9. Florus l. 3. c. 14.

Except. Died. Siculi. lib. 34. Orosius l. 5. c. 9

## SECT. 4.

now by shame and fear, in distast of the Nobility, as it's said, he cast in his head how to become gracious and popular with the commons. Procuring himself to be chosen *Tribune*, he preferred a Law; forbidding any man to possesse above 500 acres of the publick grounds, and ordering the overplus to be divided to the poor. For, such grounds as the People of *Rome* took from their Enemies, they were wont, if tilled, to divide to their own Citizens; if not arable, they then let them out to farm by the *Censors* to *Italians*, or the ordinary fort of *Romans*, on condition, that if they plowed them, they should pay the tenth part of the Corn, and the fifth of other fruits: and if they bred up Cattel, they were charged with a certain rent. But it came to passe, that by incredible impudence and licentiousness of the rich, the Husband-men were oured of their ancient possessions, which by purchasing and other ways they got wholly into their hands, so that the Publick was defrauded of it's revenue, and the poor of their livelihoods. For restraining the avarice of the rich, the *Lex Licinia* and *Sempronia* were enacted. *Gracchus* increased the former by adding that, lest the Law should be wrested, half should be given to the children, and the rest divided to such poor as had nothing. And if any went about to enlarge their portion by purchase, *Triumviri* or three men should be yearly appointed to judge what ground was publick, and what private.

John. Stadius  
Com. in Flor.  
l. 3. c. 14.

Proposing  
another Law  
for dividing of  
money,

7. This nettled the Nobility exceedingly, who by virtue of this Law were to part with their inheritances; and one of his Collegues, *Ottavius* by name, opposed it, for which he so handled him, as glad he was to quit his place, in-to which *Gracchus* chose *Q. Mummus* one of his own faction. This severity being without president, much alienated even the minds of the multitude from *Gracchus*, who also perceiving there was not ground enough to quiet them all (the expectation of whom he had now raised) he offered a Law for distributing the money which *Attalus* King of *Pergamus* had left, together with his Kingdom, to the People of *Rome*. The Senate being assembled to consult what was to be done, and all being of opinion that *P. Mutius Scævola* the Consul should defend the Commonwealth by arms, he refused to do any thing by force. Hereupon *Scipio Nasica* taking up his gown under his left arm, held up his right hand, and bade every one that loved the State to follow him. Up he went into the Capitol, being accompanied with most of the Senate, many *Equites*, and some Commons, where *Gracchus* was speaking to the People, and endeavoring to be chosen *Tribune* for the following year. They fell upon him and his hearers, whereof they killed 300, and amongst them himself with a piece of a seat as he ran down from the Capitol. Thus he fell by the means of his own kinsman, being a most excellently accomplished man, though too violent in a matter honest enough. And this was the first blood which in a seditious way the *Romans* first drew from one another, observed by *Cicero* to have been at the same time that the other *Scipio* destroyed *Numantia*.

Livii Epitom. l.  
58.  
Velleius l. 2. c. 3.

A. M. 3872.  
Ol. 161. an. 4.  
V. C. 621.  
Ptol. Phys. l. 4.

Offic. l. 1.

He and his  
complices are  
killed by the  
means of *Scipio Nasica* his  
kinsman,  
which was the  
first blood  
drawn by the  
*Romans* from  
one another.

8. At this time were there some risings at *Athens*, and in *Delos*, being as sparks of that fire formerly kindled by *Ennus* in *Sicily*, which with some trouble were extinguished; neither was *Italy* altogether free from them. But a more noble War insued about the Kingdom of *Asia*. For, *Attalus* King of *Pergamus* or *Asia* (for so he is called, because of a good part of *Asia* given to *Eumenes* his father) by his last will left the People of *Rome* his heir: But after his death *Arifonius* his base brother seized on the Kingdom as his inheritance. First was *Lucius Crassus* the Consul sent against him, but was overthrown, and being taken struck one of the Soldiers on the eye, on purpose to provoke him to kill him, which he did. He having thus miscaried (though he was assisted in his enterprise by several Kings,) his Successor *M. Perpenna*, hasting into *Asia* set upon *Arifonius* at unawares, when he was not yet recovered of the security contracted by his Victory, and overthrowing him in batrel besieged him in *Stratonice*, where he forced him by famine to yield, and shortly after the Consul died at *Pergamus*. The remainder of the War was finished by *M. Aquilius* the next year's Consul,

Livii Epitom.  
l. 59.

Orosius l. 5. c. 8,  
& 9.

Velleius Patern.  
c. 1.2. c. 4.  
Florus l. 2. c. 1.

Arifonius  
contesting  
with the *Romans* for the  
Kingdom of  
*Pergamus*,

Is taken

## SECT. 4.

And strang-  
led.

The civil dif-  
fentions re-  
newed.

Caius Gracchus,  
the brother of  
Tiberius, patro-  
nizeth his  
Law.

Scipio Africanus  
the younger  
dieth sudden-  
ly.

Caius getting  
the *Tribuneship*  
preserveth  
Laws distast-  
full to the Se-  
nate.

The Order  
and Rank of  
*Equites*, or  
Knights, how  
and when it  
came up.

who poisoned Fountains for taking in some Cities, and having together with those joyned with him (according to the custom) settled the Province with sufficient oppression of the people, he led *Arifonius* in Triumph, though taken by another man's labour; who by order of the Senate was strangled in prison, in the 625 year of the Citie, the said *M. Aquilius Nepos*, and *C. Sempronius Tuditanus* being Consuls.

9. The civil diffentions died not with *Gracchus* (who perished four years before) his Law for division of the grounds being still in force, and the people being sensible of the equity thereof, as they accounted it; for that the rich had got all into their hands, and those that underwent all the toyl in Conquering the Land, were ready to starve, being also exhausted by the Wars, and almost none but slaves left in *Italy* for ordering of the grounds. *Gracchus* had a younger brother called *Caius*, whom together with *Fulvius Flaccus*, and *Papirius Carbo*, he had made *Triumvirs* for division of the grounds. He with his Collegues undertook the patronage of the Law, and the brother of prosecuting his Enterprize with all earnestness, such trouble arose about the division, in accounting and removing, that the *Italians* finding themselves aggrieved betook themselves to *Scipio Africanus*. He refused not to undertake their patronage, yet in the Senate spake nothing against the Law; onely thought fit that the executive power thereof should be taken from the *Triumvirs*, and given to some others. The Senate most willingly did this, and conferred it on *Sempronius Tuditanus* the Consul, who finding the work troublesome, went his way under pretence of the War in *Illyricum*. There being now none to flie to in this case, the people conceived great indignation against *Scipio*, as ingratefull, and favouring the *Italians* more than themselves; from which his Enemies took occasion to raise further jealousies. Indeed hearing of *Gracchus* his death at *Numantia* by repeating a verse in *Homer* he liked well of what was done to him, and being at his return asked concerning his death, he approved of it before all the people, which being offended at him for it, he rebuked the multitude with contumelious language. But at night going to his Chamber, he meditated of something he intended to speak to the people the day following, and in the morning was found dead in his bed, it's uncertain by what means. *Cornelia* the Mother of the *Gracchi* was suspected to have joyned with her daughter his wife (who being not over-handsome, neither loved him much nor was over much loved) in practicing something upon him. No inquisition was made after his death, and he was buried privately, though so great a man, and one that had been the pillar of the Commonwealth.

10. The Possessors of the grounds still made delays in the division, and some thought that they to whom they were to be divided should in way of recompense be made free of the Citie, which however pleasing to others, was highly displeasing to the Senate. While men muttered much of these things, *C. Gracchus* procured the *Tribuneship*, and then bearing a grudge to the Senate effectually shewed it. He preferred a Law for dividing of the publick Corn to every man monethly, and getting his Office continued to him for another year, that he might gratifie the *Equites*, brought down the Office of judging corrupt Officers from the Senators unto them. *Romulus*, as we said, instituted three Centuries of *Equites* or *Horsmen*, whereof one from himself was named *Romulus*, another from *Titus Tatius*, *Tatienis*; and the third from *Lucanus* (or *Lucius*) *Luceris*. Under *Romulus*, and the Kings, they were also called *Celeres*, *Flexumines* and *Trossuli*. Afterwards, *Tarquinius Priscus* added 300 more, and so there continued to be 600 *Equites*. But though they were in the Commonwealth from the beginning, yet had they no peculiar order, authority, or rank, till this Law of *Gracchus*, by which it was enacted, that these judgements should be peculiar to them. Their reputation thence forward increased with various success about the Publicans till *Cicero's* time, who boasting himself of this order, procured it such honour, that from his *Consulship* it came to be as a peculiar order in the State (before being included in the *Plébeian*, though it had a distinction by way of

Vide Appian.  
de bello civili.  
lib. 2.  
Velleius lib. 2.  
cap. 6.  
Plutarch in  
Gracchis.  
Val. Maxim.  
lib. 6. cap. 2.  
Exemp. 3.  
Livii Epitom.  
lib. 59. 60.  
Orosius lib. 5.  
cap. 10.  
Florus lib. 3.  
cap. 15.

\* Ος ἀπὸ δαίτη  
ἔδωκε δ' ἵλε  
τοιαῦτα γὰρ  
ἔσκε.  
Odys. i.

SECT. 4. of service) being added to the *Senatorial* and *Plebeian*; out of which respect it was written after them both. Thus in several times were these several Ranks and distinctions; the first distinction was betwixt *Patricians* and *Plebeians*; then *Plebeians* wresting from the other a Communion in the greatest Offices and places, though *Patricians* might still be distinguished in reference to Families, yet all Dignities being common to the rest with them, such *Plebeians* as could rise to be *Senators*, constituted with the other the *Senatorial* rank (which included the *Patrician*, though the *Patrician* not it) thenceforth distinct from the *Plebeian* which still contained the *Equites*. Then, as was said, the *Equites* by the means of *Gracchus* and *Cicero* brake out from amongst the *Plebeians* into a rank of their own.

11. By this Law (saith *Florus*) *Gracchus* so divided the people of *Rome*, that he made it double headed (*bicipitem*, which expression *Varro* also used, as appeareth from *Nonius*) and the *Equites* having the lives, and fortunes of *Senators* and *Nobles* in their hands, by seizing on the Revenue, with authority pill'd the Commonwealth. He took the best time that could be devised for the making of the Law, because the *Senators* having had hitherto the power of judging, were become odious of late, in that for money they had acquired *Aurelius Cotta*, *Salinator*, and *M. Aquilius*, persons Capitally guilty of corruption. Its said, he boasted, that by this Law he had cut the sinews of the *Senatorial* rank. And so he did; for by the authority of judicature they pass'd sentence upon *Roman Citizens*, *Italians* and *Senators*, noting them with ignominy, banishing, or putting them to death at pleasure; till such time as their power was abated, as will be seen. For in the *Comitia*, or *Assemblies*, they conspired with the *Tribunes*, and obtaining thereby what they pleas'd, had all things in their power, and flourish'd with riches, whereas nothing remained to *Senators*, but a vain shew of Dignity. The *Senators* prevail'd with *Servilius Capi* when Consul, to make themselves partakers of the power of judging, by a Law which he got prefer'd; yet still had the *Equites* the better, for 300 *Senators* onely were added to them, who were in number 600. By the Laws of *Livius Drusus*, *Sylla* and *Cotta* their power was abated, *Drusus* making it but equal in judgement with that of *Senators*. *Sylla* transfer'd it wholly to the *Senators*, and *Aurelius Cotta* communicated the power of judging to three sorts; viz. *Senators*, *Equites*, and the *Tribuni Atrarii*. But the *Equites* alone were wont to farm the customes of the *Censors* for five years, and thence from their farming the *Publick Revenue* had the name of *Publicans*. These were the principal of the *Equestrian* order, the Ornament of the *Citie*, and the strength of the State, who made so many Companies as there were Provinces subject to the payment of Toll, Tribute, Custom, or Impost.

12. But, *C. Gracchus*, further than this, to gratifie the *Commons*, repaired the high-ways throughout *Italy*, sent forth Colonies, bade the *Italians* sue for their freedom, and gave power of suffrages to other Friends and Allies, contrary to the custom; whom the Senate forb'd to come near the *Citie*, at such time as they knew his Laws would be offer'd, and to please the people, they gave way to the sending out of twelve Colonies. *Gracchus* thus frustrat'd, departed into *Africk* with *Flaccus* his Collegue, intending to plant a Colony where *Carthage* stood; but was disappointed therein also. Wolves, it's said, removing the bounds of the intended *Citie* by night, as they were laid by day, whereupon the Sooth-sayers pronounced the design unlawfull. Having been twice *Tribune*, he stood for it the third time, and had many voices; but his Collegues offend'd by his vehement carriage, got *Minucius Rufus* chosen into his place, who rescind'd many of his Laws. *Gracchus* intrag'd hereat, when the Assembly was met, went up to the Capitol, accompanied with *Flaccus* and his friends privily Armed. There *Asilius* the Crier of *Optimus* the Consul taking him by the hand, and desiring him to spare his own Countrey, was slain. He then went about to excuse the fact to the people, but could not be heard, and so together with *Flaccus*, and his other Confederates got them home, the Consul keeping strict watch all night in the *Citie*.

Is destroyed with his party.

The distempers of the State something allay'd thereby.

An horrid Pestilence in *Africk*.

The Allobroch War.

Affairs of *Thrace* very obscure.

*Citie*. After this they were cited by the Senate to come and give an account of their actions, but they betook themselves to the *Aventine Mount*, where fortifying themselves, they offer'd in vain liberty to all slaves that would come in to them. But the Consul sending a party against them, *Gracchus* fled into a grove beyond *Tiber*, and procur'd his slave to kill him, who instantly after he had cut off his head, run himself through with the bloody sword. *Flaccus* flying to a friends house was betray'd and slain: and of their party, through the severe inquisition of the Consul, were put to death 3000 persons, 11 years after the death of the elder *Gracchus*. In the Consulship of this *Optimus* was there such a temper of the air called *Cottura*, that wine being congeal'd through the heat of the Sun into a consistency of honey, kept good for near 200 years, and from him had the name of *Vinum Optimianum*, being still preserv'd in *Plinius* (a) his time, though (b) *Paterculus* denieth there was any in his, which was long before.

13. The death of *Gracchus* (whose head was not *Sacrofanct*, as *Florus* imagineth, being out of the Office of *Tribune*) for the present allay'd the distempers of the Commonwealth. For, presently after was a Law made, that any one might sell his Land, which the Elder *Gracchus* had forbidden, where-de the poor, partly by purchase, & partly by constraint, were again dispossest. Afterward the Law for division was fully abrogated by *Sp. Boreus*, and the grounds left to their ancient Owners, with this condition, that a Tribute out of them should be pay'd to the people, and this divided man by man. But not long after another *Tribune* abrogated the Tribute it self, and so nothing was left remaining to the poor.

14. During these Domestick troubles the *Sardinians* rebelled, and were reduced by *L. Aurelius*, and the *Fregellans* were punished with the losse of their *Citie* by *L. Optimus* the *Prator*. Upon *Africk* fell such a Pestilence, as for its Original, and effects, was strange and wonderfull. It arose from an infinite number of Locusts, which having overspread the ground, and destroyed not onely Corn and other fruits, but even Trees and dry things themselves, at length by a wind were driven into the *Mediterranean Sea*, and there putrifying corrupted the air. Hence ensued a most fearfull plague, both of men, Cattel, and Fowls. In *Numidia*, where *Micipsa* was now King, 800000 died; upon the Sea-Coasts about *Carthage* and *Utica* 200000; and in *Utica* it self 30000 Soldiers there lying in Garrison, 1500 being reported to have been carried out in one day through one Gate alone. Two years after, *Q. Metellus* the Consul subdu'd the Islands *Baleares*, and restrain'd piracy there maintained, and at the same time was carried on the War, called *Belum Allobrogicum*; which hence arose. The *Salies* in *Gall* beyond the *Alps* invaded the *Massilians*, the friends of the people of *Rome*, and for this were chastiz'd by *Fulvius*, and subdued by *C. Sextius Calvinus*. *Tentomalus* their King flying out of the battel, was received, and protect'd by the *Allobroges*, who also invaded the *Adni* friends of *Rome*, and drew into Confederacy the *Arverni*. First, *Cn. Domitius Enobarbus* overthrew them, and (by the use of Elephants especially) slew 20000. and took 3000 prisoners. After him *Q. Fabius Maximus* (Grandson of *Paulus Emilius*, by his son adopt'd into the *Fabian* family) defeated them, with the *Arverni* and *Ruteni*, in a bloody battel, wherein 120000 are reported to have been slain, and taking *Bituitus* (or *Beutitus*) King of the *Arverni* prisoner, obtained the surname of *Allobrogicus*. These *Allobroges* inhabited about the Countreys now called *Dauphine* and *Savoy*: the *Ruteni* nearer to the Sea; the *Arverni* more toward the North; the *Adni* in *Burgundy*, and the *Salies* or *Salies* in *Piemont*. Now was *Gallia Narbonensis* reduced into a Province.

15. But the *Scordisci*, a people of *Gallish* Original, inhabiting *Thrace*, defeated the *Roman Army* under *Caio* the Consul, yet were afterwards driven back into their own Countrey by *Didius* the *Prator*, and the Consul *Drusus*; and after this gave occasion of a glorious Triumph to *Minutius*, of which honour *Metellus* also had partaken. These transactions of *Thrace* are of all others

SECT. 4.

A. M. 3884.  
Ol. 164. ann. 4.  
P. C. 631.  
Ptol. Physic. 26.

(a) Plin. l. 14.  
c. 4. & 14.  
(b) Lib. 2. c. 7.

Leg. Appianum  
de bello civili  
lib. 1.

Livii Epitom.  
lib. 60.  
Orosius lib. 5.  
cap. 11.

Livii Epitom.  
lib. 60. 61.  
Florus lib. 3.  
cap. 2.

Caesar de bello  
Gallico lib. 1.

Livii Epitom.  
lib. 53. & 55.  
Florus lib. 3.  
cap. 4.  
Velleius lib. 2.  
cap. 8.



SECT. 4. others most unknown; either because they are confounded with those of *Illyricum*, *Pannonia*, *Myfia*, or *Macedonia*; or because what has been written of that subject in particular, hath miscaried. Now we arrive at two Wars both together, and carrying noyle sufficient with them through the variety of events, and fulness of history: viz. that with *Jugurtha*, and the other with the *Cimbri* and *Tenones*. Now to know the Original of the former, it's necessary to fetch things a little higher.

The original of the War with *Jugurtha*.

16. *Masaniſſa* King of *Numidia*, that old and constant friend of the Romans, left three sons: *Gulussa*, *Maſtanabal*, and *Micipſa*, of whom the laſt (his brothers being dead) obtained the Kingdom alone. He had two ſons, *Hiempſal* and *Adherbal*, with whom he brought up *Jugurtha* his brother *Maſtanabal*'s ſon in the ſame condition, and receiving letters from *Scipio* out of *Spain*, who gave him large commendations (and under whom he ſerved with his Uncle's Auxiliary forces) he adopted him. When *Micipſa* was dead, *Jugurtha* murdered *Hiempſal*, and attempted to do as much for *Adherbal*, who fled to the Romans for ſuccour. By this time avarice and injuſtice had ſo much poſſeſſed the City, that *Jugurtha* ſenſible of it, ſent Ambaſſadors to *Rome* with full hands, who ſo wrought upon the Senate, that might overcame right, and it was decreed, that ten Commiſſioners ſhould be ſent to divide the Kingdom betwixt them. The Commiſſioners thinking they might lawfully imitate thoſe that ſent them, were bribed to beſtow the richeſt and beſt Peopled part upon *Jugurtha*, who therewith not ſatisfied, after their departure, fell ſuddenly upon *Adherbal*, beſieged him in *Cirta*, and at length getting him into his hands made him away. For this, War was at length decreed againſt him by the Senate, and committed to the management of *L. Calpurnius Beſtia* the Conſul, in the 643 year of the City, A. M. 3894. the ſecond of the 167 *Olympia*, the ſeventh of *Ptolomy Lathurus*, the V. C. 643. 25 of *Job. Hyrcanus*, *P. Cornelius Scipio Naſica*, and the ſaid *Calpurnius* being Conſuls.

Fighting with ſilver weapons he conquereth all oppoſition,

17. *Calpurnius* invaded *Numidia* with great fierceneſſe, and took in ſome Towns, but was preſently ſtopped in his career, being allured with the golden balls of *Jugurtha*; ſo that a Treaty of Peace was ſet on foot. The Senate was moved hereat, and at the power of *M. Scaurus*, who accompanying the Conſul as his friend and counſellor, was guilty of the ſame crime. The People was perſwaded to ſend *L. Caſſius Longinus* the Praetor to fetch *Jugurtha* to *Rome* upon the publick faith, to diſcover his complices, whereof he had by gold procured many in the Senate it ſelf. *Caſſius* perſwaded him to caſt himſelf upon the Peoples mercy, and he came to the City in a mourning habit. But coming into the Aſſembly to do as he was commanded, *Bellus* the Tribune bade him hold his Peace, being alſo bribed to put off the buſineſſe, and delude the People. At this time there was one *Maſſina* the ſon of *Gulussa* his couſin german at *Rome*, who when he had murdered *Adherbal* eſcaped out of *Africa*. Him *Albinus* the Conſul, (who gladly would have had to do with *Numidia*) perſwaded to beg the Kingdom of the Senate: but *Jugurtha* having ſome notice hereof, procured him to be killed, and conveyed away the murderer into *Numidia*. Hereupon within a few dayes he was commanded to be gone, and being out of the City, he looked back upon it, and uttered theſe words: *O City that wouldſt be ſold if there was but a chapman for thee*. This he ſaid, as having himſelf experience of the corruption of it's Inhabitants; ſo horribly were they now degenerated from the fidelity and abſtinenſe of the preceding age.

18. *Albinus* followed him with an Army, and at firſt ſeemed to be very ambitious of finiſhing the War, before the creation of new Conſuls. But upon ſome account he prolonged it, and his brother, by virtue of ſome compact, withdrew from *Sutribul*, where the treaſure of the Kingdom lay, when he was about to beſiege it. The Centurions alſo were ſo corrupted, as *Jugurtha* was ſuffered to break into the Camp, whence bearing out the Army, he either forced, or by former agreement, brought *Albinus* to ſubmit unto moſt diſhonourable terms. In this condition *Metellus* the following

Leg. Salluſt. de bello Jugurthino. Ovaſium l. 5. c. 15. Florum l. 3. c. 1. Livii Epitom. lib. 62, 64, 65, 66.

A. M. 3894. V. C. 643.

But is humbled by *Metellus*.

*Marius* by undermining *Metellus* getteth the Conſulſhip.

Several of the *Metelli* obtained ſurnames from Countries conquered.

*Marius* overthroweth *Jugurtha* and *Bocchus*.

Taketh *Jugurtha* who is led in triumph and put to death.

Conſul found affairs and the Army ſpoiled for want of diſcipline. But bringing the Soldiers into good order, within the ſpace of two years he overthroweth *Jugurtha* ſeveral times, outed him of ſeveral Towns, and chafed him further than his own borders, which conſtrained him to ſubmit and beg Peace; but the conditions thereof he brake, and the former hoſtility returned. Now was there one *C. Marius*, Legatus or Lieutenant to *Metellus*, who by his good demeanour won much upon the Soldiers, for being deſirous of the Conſulſhip, he took all wayes to purchaſe their favour. He ſlummiated *Metellus* privily to the Merchants at *Utica*, avowing that he was able with half of the Army, and that within a few dayes, to take *Jugurtha*. By theſe ſpeeches he procured many complaints to be written to *Rome* againſt *Metellus*, and getting leave to go thither, obtained his deſire, being created Conſul, and had the management of the War committed to him, which now was even ended. Notwithſtanding, the People was ſo grateful to *Metellus*, that at his return, being certified what he had done, they both granted him a Triumph, and beſtowed on him the ſurname of *Numidicus*.

19. This was the fourth *Metellus*, who from the Nation ſubdued obtained a ſurname. The firſt was *Q. Cæcilius Metellus* ſurnamed *Macedonicus*, of whom we have formerly ſpoken. Much is ſaid of this man's felicity, whereof this is chief, that when he died, he had, of four ſons, ſeen three Conſuls, and the fourth Praetor. Of theſe, the firſt was *Q. Metellus* ſurnamed *Balearicus* from his ſubduing the *Baleares*, who was Conſul in the 631 year of the City: the ſecond *L. Metellus*, who was Conſul in the 635 year: the third *M. Metellus*, Conſul in the 639 year, the ſame wherein his father died: and the fourth *C. Metellus* of Praetorian rank. But the third of this name who obtained a ſurname was *L. Cæcilius Metellus*, ſurnamed firſt *Diadematus*, becauſe having an ulcer in his forehead, he kept it bound a long time, and afterwards *Dalmaticus*, from the *Dalmatians* whom he ſubdued to get him a Triumph; this People having nothing offended. He was ſon to *L. Cæcilius Metellus Calvus*, who was Conſul in the 612 year. Laſtly, the fourth thus ſurnamed was this *Q. Cæcilius Metellus Numidicus*, who was Conſul together with *M. Junius Silanus* in the 645 year of the City.

20. *Marius* after ſome time took the City *Capsa* a place very rich and ſtrong, and after this another called *Mulucha*. *Jugurtha* finding himſelf too weak, drew in to his aſſiſtance *Bocchus* King of *Mauritiana* his Father in Law, by the help of whoſe Horſe he very much wearied the Roman Army. Coming to raiſe the ſiege at *Cirta*, before which *Marius* was ſat down, what by the number of the Horſe reported to be 60000, and what by hear and duſt, the Romans were ſorely diſtreſſed, and the fight continued dangerous and terrible to them for three dayes. Then a Tempeſt of rain fell, which ſpoiled their Enemies weapons, and relieved *Marius* his men almoſt killed with thirſt; and the courſe of fortune changing, the two Kings were defeated and fled. In another battel *Marius*, as it's ſaid, killed 90000, after which *Bocchus* began to repent of his enterprize, and ſent to *Rome* to enter into a League, which he could not procure, but obtained pardon of his fault. Nor long after, *Marius* took *Jugurtha* in an ambuſh, whither he had drawn him by ſpecious pretences, and delivered him up to *Sylla* his Quaſtor, who had brought over ſome forces gathered in *Italy*. *Sylla* having little or no ſkill in matters of War before, under him got that ſkill, which afterwards he uſed againſt his General. *Jugurtha* being led in triumph by *Marius* with his two ſons, was after, by order of the Senate put to death, and ſo the War ended, after about ſeven years continuance. *Numidia* was not now made a Province, as ſome have thought: for we find other four Kings on which it was beſtowed, viz. *Hiempſal*, *Hiarbas*, and *Juba*, concerning whom we may have occaſion to ſpeak hereafter. Now is to be deſcribed the War with the *Cimbri*.

21. The *Cimbri* inhabited the *Cherſoneſus* from them named *Cimbrica*, (now *Holfatia*) and were a vagabond People. With a ſort of Germans called *Tenones* (from *Tenno* or *Tuiſſo* the Patriarch, or reputed god of that Nation)

SECT. 4.

\* Conſule Val. Max. l. 7. c. 1. c. 11. Ciceron. de Finibus lib. 4.

## SECT. 4.

The occasion  
of the War  
with the Cim-  
bri by the  
Greeks called  
Κιμνίγιοι.

Nation) they brake into *Illyricum* in the 641 year of the City, and there put to flight *Cn. Carbo* the Consul, to whom that Province had fallen by lot. Some three years after, they made an irruption into *Gall* and *Spain*, but being repelled, sent to *Silanus* the Consul, desiring some ground wherein to plant and settle themselves. This being denied by the Senate, they betook themselves from intreaties to force, and setting upon the Consul put him to flight, entraining *M. Scaurus* sent against them into *Gall* in the same manner. *Scaurus* was succeeded by the Consul *L. Cassius Longinus*, who pursuing the *Tigurins* (now *Swissers*) to the Ocean, was circumvented by them, and slain, with *L. Piso*, a man of Consular dignity, his Lieutenant. After him *Capio* the Consul made War upon the *Tectosages* or *Tolosans*, whose chief City *Tolose* (now in *Gascoigne*) he took, and therein a great treasure, which some said was taken out of the Temple at *Delphos* by the *Galls*. His command was continued to him for the following year, as *Proconsul*, in conjunction with *Manilius* (or *Maullius*) his Successor. These two could not agree, but divided the Army, and parted the Province betwixt them. At length they were overthrown in a bloody battel by the *Cimbri*, to whom the *Tenons*, *Tigurins*, and *Ambrones*, another People of *Gall* joyned themselves: 80000 men were slain, and 40000 lackies and drudges, as also both the Camps taken. *Capio* for this was cast into prison, where he died, these great defeats being charged upon his sacrilege, of which those *Galls* that were guilty, were still followed and consumed by one plague after another. After this, the *Cimbri* made another Expedition into *Spain*; but being thence repelled by the *Celuberians*, returned into *Gall*, whence, with the *Tenons* and *Ambrones*, they resolved to passe over the *Alpes* into *Italy*.

Which Marius  
dispatcheth.

22. *C. Marius* having vanquished *Jugurtha*, was in his absence made Consul the second time, to manage the War against the *Cimbri*. Whilst they continued in *Spain* he waged War against their friends the *Tolosans*, whose King *Copilus* was taken by *Sylla* his Lieutenant. Being created Consul again the following year, he neglected to fight till their fury was abated. In his fourth Consulship they were ready in three bands to passe over the *Alpes*, which he considering, attended their motions. His Army was almost oppressed with thirst, the *Tenons* and *Ambrones* lying betwixt it and the water, which made him desirous to ingage with them, and coming to fight, in two dayes he utterly destroyed them, taking prisoner *Thentobocchus* their King. The *Cimbri* escaped him and got over into *Italy*, though it was Winter, and the *Alpes* were covered with snow, being in vain opposed by *Caulus*, both at the *Alpes* and the River *Athesis* near *Verona*. To *Caulus* did *Marius* joyn himself now the fifth time Consul, for carrying on the War, and being challenged to give battel slew 140000, and took 60000. Their wives resisted, fighting from the Chariots, and when they saw all desperate, killed first their children and then themselves. The third band of the *Tigurines* came to nothing; and so an end was put to this War, on the third of the month *Sexilis*, as *Plutarch* writeth, after it had continued twelve years, in the 653 year of the City. *C. Marius* the fifth time, and *M. Aquilius Nepos* being Consuls, the former whereof was counted the preserver of his Country, and contented himself with one Triumph. And his Colleague put an end to the second *Perule* War in *Sicily*, which now had lasted almost four years.

The sedition  
of Saturninus.

23. These dangers abroad did not suppress domestic troubles. There was one *L. Apuleius Saturninus*, who having been *Quaesor* at *Ostia* during a dearth, was put out of his place by the Senate, for which he conceived great displeasure against it, and to shew it, procured the *Tribuneship*. By his help especially *Marius* obtained the fourth Consulship. But after his year was out, *Metellus Numidicus* being *Comsor* would have removed him from the Senate, but he was hindered by his Colleague; and to revenge this he stood to be *Tribune* the second time. Now was *Marius* Consul the fifth time, and there being nine of the ten *Tribunes* chosen, and *A. Nonius* standing in competition with him, by the assistance of *Marius* he murdered him, and got the place.

Legs Florum  
l. 3. c. 3.  
Livii Epitom.  
lib. 63. 65, 67,  
& 68.  
Orosium l. 5.  
Patric. l. 2.  
c. 42.

A. M. 3904.  
Ol. 169. an. 4.  
V. C. 653.

In Mario.

Vide Appian, de  
bello civili. l. 1.  
Flor. l. 3. c. 16.  
Livii Epitom.  
l. 63.  
Orosium l. 5.  
c. 17.  
Vellejium Pa-  
terculum l. 2.  
c. 15.

## SECT. 4.

He is slain  
with his com-  
plices.

Drusus the  
Tribune la-  
bouring to re-  
concile the  
Fathers, and  
Equites, inlar-  
geth the  
breach,

And is stab-  
bed.

place. Now being again in power, he preferred a Law for dividing of such Lands as *Marius* had recovered in *Gall*, and compelled the Senate to assent to it, which *Metellus* refusing to do, he set him a day to answer it before the people; but for fear of him and *Marius*, *Metellus* fled to *Smyrna*. *Saturninus* being *Tribune* the third time, and finding *C. Memmius* to stand for the *Consulship*; he also made him away to prefer *Glancius* the *Praetor*, a man most addicted to his own party. At these things the Senate being startled took up resolution, and *Marius* now the sixth time Consul, seeing him in a falling condition, withdrew himself from his friendship. The Consuls were, as in dangerous times, impowered by the Senate to see that the Commonwealth received no damage. *Marius* therefore with his Colleague *L. Valerius Flaccus*, set upon *Saturninus* in the public meeting place, and drove him and his followers into the *Capitol*, where for want of water (*Marius* having cut the pipes) they were forced to yield. This they did upon his faith given for their safety; for *Saturninus* and *Glancius* much relied upon him, not sticking to give out that they were but the actors of his designs. Notwithstanding, they were killed in the Court-house by the *Equites*, which brake in amongst them; and *Metellus*, through the labour of his son especially, was recalled, with the general applaus of the people.

A. M. 3905.  
V. C. 654.

24. For the space of about 8 years after, there was not any open Sedition; yet great dissatisfaction amongst those of the *Senatorial* order. For, it lay under great grievances by reason of the power of Judicature, which was by *Gracchus* his Law brought down to the *Equites*, by whom they were cruelly, and despitefully used, their lives, liberties, and estates being wholly in their power. The Commonwealth was even bought and sold, the *Publicans*, who farmed the customs, and publick revenues, being as *Equites*, both Judges and parties. It hapned that thirty years after *Gracchus* his Law, *M. Livius Drusus* the *Tribune* cast in his mind how to restore the *Fathers* to their ancient power, and yet not offend the *Equites*. He preferred therefore a Law, that because the *Senators* were reduced to a small number, as many *Equites* should be added to them, and the power of Judicature committed to this body. But herewith neither party was satisfied. Not the *Senators*, because they disdained that the other should be equal to them, and neither the *Equites*, for that they feared the power would at length be wholly removed from them. *Capio* also one of *Drusus* his Colleagues (nor that *Capio*, as some mistake, who having been formerly Consul had proposed such a Law, which took not, he himself being condemned, and dying in prison as was said) opposed him, and coming into the Senate, there accused some of the chief of unlawfull seeking for Offices. *Drusus* to withstand his indeavours, by the favour of the people proposed again the *Agrarian* Law, and that the *Allies* and *Confederates* of *Italy*, now Possessors of the Lands, might not be aggrieved, he gave them hopes to make them free of the *Citie*. Great course there was, and as great contention. *Q. Marcus Philippus* the Consul opposed the Law for division of Lands, and for that was cowardly buffeted by a Traveller. *Drusus* in this particular disappointed, still bent his mind how to make good what he had offered to the *Italians*; but going home accompanied with a great multitude, he was stabbed in the Court of his own house, its unknown by whom, the knife being left in his body, and died within a few hours. He was a man excellently accomplished, both with understanding and morals, whose good intentions had not the fortune to be rightly understood by the great ones, but to dissatisfie all parties. And still more unfortunate he was in that great and dangerous War, which by his means (though not intended) was kindled, and which being foreseen or feared, might perhaps have no small influence into his death.

A. M. 3914.  
Ol. 172. an. 2.  
V. C. 663.

25. This War is called by divers names. Sometimes *Bellum Sociale*, because of the *Associates* of the People of *Rome*, who managed it; sometimes *Bellum Mariscum*, from the *Marf* who began it, and otherwhiles *Bellum Italicum*, from *Italy* the seat of it, *Corfinium* a *Citie* of the *Peligni*, being before

Leges Appian,  
de bello civili  
lib. 1.  
Livii Epitom.  
lib. 71.  
Paterculum l. 2.  
cap. 13, 14.

## SECT. 4.

The occasion  
of the social  
War.

before all others chosen for the place of the conspiracy. The occasion of it was the disdain conceived by the *Italians*, because they were not admitted to the freedom of the *Citie*, which had been partly promised them 36 years before by *Flaccus* the Consul, who being earnest for it, was diverted into *Gall* by the Senate, and afterwards joyned himself in the Tribuneship with the younger *Gracchus*, to no purpose endeavouring with him the passing of it; with whom also as is formerly shewn he lost his life. Now again, their expectation was heightened by *Drusus*; but then was he murdered, and all the great ones banished who stood for them, by a Law which the *Equites* by force of Arms obtained, who hoped that having the power of Judicature in themselves, the profit would be great which would arise in ridding away their Enemies. They also thought they had reason enough to expect this privilege from that *Citie*, which was maintained both in its subsistence and Empire by their valour, they ever sending out forces double in number to those of the *Romans*. Upon these grounds they resolved to procure by force what could not be by fair means obtained, sending Messengers to and fro, and for the performance of what was agreed on, receiving Hostages from one another.

26. This being known late enough at *Rome*, so busied with its private seditious contests, Spies were sent out into the several quarters. One of them seeing a young man of *Asculum* carried into another *Citie* as an Hostage, therewith acquainted *Servilius* the Proconsul, who going to *Asculum* and chiding the Citizens, was set upon and slain, together with all the *Romans*. After this, the Conspiracy being quite discovered, all broke out into open Rebellion: the *Marfi*, *Peligni*, *Vestini*, *Marrucini*, *Ferentani*, *Hirpini*, *Picentes*, *Pompeiani*, *Venusini*, *Apulians*, *Lucanians*, and the old Enemies of the *Romans*, the *Samnites*. They thought good first to send to *Rome* to complain; but the Messengers could not be admitted without repentance for what was already done. Hereupon the War was committed to both the Consuls, *L. Julius Caesar*, and *P. Rutilius Lupus*, to whom were added *Cn. Pompeius Strabo* (father to Pompey the Great) *C. Marius*, who had been six times Consul, *L. Sylla*, *Licinius Crassus*, *C. Perpenna*, *Q. Capius*, *Q. Metellus Pius* (son to the Numidian) *M. Marcellus*, *Val. Messala*, and *T. Didius*, who were all sent with Proconsular power. The forces on either side amounted to 100000 fighting men. *Rutilius* the Consul quickly lost his life, falling into an ambush laid for him by the *Marfi*, and many other blows did the *Romans* receive; so that they were forced to lift such as once had been slaves. The bodies of the Consul, and those of several others being carried into the *Citie*, the sight of them so discouraged the people, that the Senate made a decree, that thenceforth the slain should be buried where they died, which as a prudent example was followed by the Enemy.

27. None succeeded *Rutilius* all the year, for that *Caesar* could not come to a new Election, but his Army was committed to *Marius* his Lieutenant, and *Q. Capius*. *Capius* was killed not long after, being intrapped by *Popedius* one of the *Italian* Generals. *Marius* now alone commanding the forces, did good service, as did also *Sylla*. For the following year, *Cn. Pompeius Strabo*, and *L. Porcius Cato* were made Consuls. Now the Senate thought fit to make such *Italians* free of the *Citie* as had not revolted, which thing established those, who something wavered in their minds, and took off the courage of the other already engaged: Yet they chose them not into any of the 35 Tribes, but placed them by themselves behind all; so that as in voting they could not hinder the rest, so seldom were they called to vote at all, which afterwards considered, though not at present, wrought some disturbance. *Cato* the Consul did very good service, but thereof boasted so much, that he compared himself to *Marius*, for which, as he was fighting against the *Marfi*, he was killed in a croud by *Marius* his son. Pompey overthrew the *Picentes* and *Asculani*. Having long besieged *Asculum*, he defeated the Enemy which sallied forth, killed 18000 of the *Marfi*, took 3000. and being got into *Asculum*, caused all the Officers and principal men

Strabo lib. 5.  
Velleius lib. 2.  
cap. 15, 16, 17.  
Cicero pro Archia.  
Appian ut supra.

Preparations  
for it.

The Romans  
receive many  
blows.

## SECT. 5.

Sylla endeth  
the War.

After which  
freedom of the  
Citie is given  
to the Con-  
quered Ita-  
lians, having  
been before  
this denied to  
them.

men to be bearen with Rods, and then beheaded. *Sylla* his Successor in the Consulship overthrew the *Samnites*, and formed two of their Camps, by which successe elevated, he went, stood for, and carried that greatest Office. This War was ended by him after it had endured above two years, in the 666 year of the *Citie*, he the said *L. Cornelius Sylla*, and *Q. Pompeius Rufus* being Consuls.

28. What the *Italians* could not get with armed hand, was given them Conquered; at first to all, except the *Lucanians* and *Samnites*, and shortly after to them also, but ranked by themselves in the same manner as the former. Not long after this, which was a kind of Civil War, there were stirrs in the *Citie* about Usury, which being rigorously exacted by the Creditors, *Asellio* the *Prator*, who withstood it, was murdered by them. Yet hitherto these Seditions in the *Citie* were managed but by private persons, or in a private manner, but now came it to that passe, that the heads of the factions got whole Armies to themselves, and carried on their interests in open War one against another, their own Countrey being as the prize and reward of the victory, such were the manners and behaviour of those who through the infirmity of the Government were not able to bear that greatness of fortune, which from the temperance and moderation of their fathers had descended upon them. But an occasion to the first Civil War was ministred by that with *Mithridates*, which began ere the Social or Italian ended.

## SECT. V.

From the War with Mithridates, and first Civil War, to the combination of Pompey, Crassus, and Caesar, termed by Varro Tricpitina, which proved the ruin of the Popular Government, for the space for 28 years.

Mithridates  
King of Pon-  
tus.

His vast de-  
signs and  
great at-  
tempts.

The Senate  
interposeth.

1. *Mithridates* was King of *Pontus* (a Countrey of *Asia*, so called because it lieth upon the *Euxine* Sea) thought by some to have been descended from one of the seven *Persians*, who conspired against the *Magi* that had usurped after the death of *Cambyfes*. He was surnamed *Eupator* and *Dionysus*, being a man of a vast mind and ambitious spirit. Succeeding his father, who was a friend of the people of *Rome*, at thirteen years of age, within two years he made away his mother, who was left partner with him in the Kingdom, and after her his brother also, and in his youth he subdued the Kings about *Phasis* beyond *Caucasus*. Thirty years after his coming to the Kingdom, he thought of no less than the Empire of *Asia*, the *Romans*, as he fancied, being now sufficiently employed in the *Cimbrian* and *Italian* Wars. He began with *Paphlagonia*, parting it betwixt himself and *Nicomedes* King of *Bithynia*, and being checked for this by the *Romans*, and commanded to desist, he pretended it was his fathers inheritance, and to amend the matter he seized on *Galatia* too. Then casting his eye upon *Cappadocia*, he caused to be murdered *Ariarathes* King thereof, and his sisters husband, and when she married to *Nicomedes* he drove out his forces, and pretended to seize upon it for the use of her son, whom then he murdered also, and bestowed it on one of his own sons. The *Cappadocians* refused to obey him, and called out of *Asia* *Ariarathes* one of their former King's sons; but him did *Mithridates* drive away, and he shortly after died. *Nicomedes* afterwards procured one to counterfeit himself the brother of *Ariarathes*, and beg the Kingdom of the people of *Rome*; and he sent his wife thither to aver that she had three sons by *Ariarathes*. *Mithridates* hereupon sent one to the Senate to affirm, that he whom he had placed in *Cappadocia* was also the son of *Ariarathes*.

2. The Senate knowing well the aim of both, took from *Mithridates* *Cappa-*

Justin lib. 37.  
Strabo lib. 10.

Memnon apud  
Photium.

Strabo lib. 12.  
Justin lib. 38.

## SECT. 5.

*Cappadocia*; and *Paphlagonia* from *Nicomedes*, who had got it into his hands, and left these two Kingdoms to their own liberty. But the *Cappadocians* protested that they could not live without a King, and being therefore allowed to chuse one from amongst themselves, made choice of one *Ariobarzanes*. *Mithridates* sorely repining to be thus overruled, procured *Tigranes* the King of *Armenia* and his son in Law to be an Enemy to the *Romans*, and persuaded him to expel *Ariobarzanes*, whilst he did as much by young *Nicomedes*, who now had succeeded his dead Father. Both of these Princes fled to *Rome* for relief, which was decreed them, and Commissioners were appointed to re-establish them, whereof *Manius Aquilius* was chief. This being performed, they persuaded both the Kings to invade *Mithridates*. *Nicomedes* did it, though unwillingly, whilst *Mithridates* opposed him not, that he might have an advantage against him; only he sent *Pelopidas* to the Commissioners to complain of him. They considering that *Mithridates* was a powerful Prince, returned this answer, that they did neither like that he should molest *Nicomedes*, nor *Nicomedes* him; for the former was not convenient for the *Roman* Commonwealth. He nothing moved with this answer, re-invaded *Cappadocia*, sending *Pelopidas* back with a bold expostulation. They hereupon raised a considerable Army against him on their own heads, without any decree of Senate or People. *Nicomedes* engaging first of all with him was put to flight, though *Mithridates* his main body never engaged, and next after him *Manius* was discomfited. Then seized *Mithridates* upon *Bithynia*, *Phrygia*, *Misia*, *Lycia*, *Pamphylia*, and other Provinces, as far as *Ionia*. He took also *Q. Oppius* and *Aquilius*, the later whereof he killed by melted gold poured into his mouth, being ever wont to upbraid the *Romans* with avarice and corruption.

And restored the Kings he had cast out.

But he again recoverth many Countries.

*Sylla* hath the charge of the War decreed against him.

3. The *Romans* hereupon decreed a War against him, though they were now employed in the *Italian*; and *L. Cornelius Sylla* and *Q. Pompeius Rufus* being Consuls, it fell by lot unto the former. But whilst he was yet employed in finishing the *Italian* War about *Nola*, *C. Marius*, who had been six times Consul, either moved by a desire of profit or of glory, persuaded *P. Sulpicius* Tribune of the People to prefer a law for transferring the command against *Mithridates* to himself. He drew the People of *Italy* to his party, by promising them that had been of late made free of the City, equal privilege with the rest, which were distributed into 35 tribes; so that the thing was carried on by strong hand, and *Pompey's* son, the son in law of *Sylla*, was killed in the heat of contention. *Sylla* hearing of this, hastened to the City, easily persuading his Army to any thing, for that his Soldiers were unwilling that any other should go that Expedition, from which they promised themselves so great matters. To him his Colleague *Pompey* joyned, and though *Marius* and the Tribune made all opposition possible, with some difficulty they entered the City, and *Marius* with his complices betook themselves to their heels. *Sylla* suffered no harm to be done to the Citizens, but reversed what *Sulpicius* had done, regulated the Senate, and procured *Marius*, with *Sulpicius*, and ten others, to be declared Enemies to their Country, whom it might be lawful for any to kill, and unlawful to harbour; their goods also being set to sale.

4. *Sulpicius* was found and put to death. *Marius* hid himself in the tents of *Minurnum*, and being discovered, a Gall was sent to kill him, but could not do it, he was so dashed at his presence; so that being conveyed out of that place, he escaped into *Africa*. To him *Cethegus* and others, who had fled into *Numidia*, joyned themselves, expecting an opportunity to invade their own Country. *Pompey* the Consul, to secure *Italy*, was appointed to receive the Army of *Cn. Pompey*, who had done such good service in the *Marian* War; but the Soldiers unwilling to leave their old General, who also took it heavily, made away the Consul. For the year following *L. Cornelius Cinna* and *C. Octavius* were Consuls, whereof *Cinna* as some think corrupted, was altogether for the new Denisons, and recalled *Marius* with the rest of the Exiles; but he was driven away by his Colleague, and *L. Mernula* was put

A. M. 397.  
Ol. 173. an. 1.  
V. C. 666.  
Seleucid. 225.

Consule Appianum de bello civili lib. 1.  
Patercul. l. 2.  
cap. 17. &c.  
Plutarch in Mario & Sylla.  
Livii Epitom. l. 77.

## SECT. 5.

Recalled by Cinna.

Getteth into Rome and there cruelly rageth with Cinna his Colleague.

Dieth.

*Mithridates* causeth 80000 *Italians* and *Romans* or more in one day to be killed.

in his place. He then going about to the *Italian* Cities, by giving them fresh hopes of equal privilege, and pretending that he suffered these things for their sakes, got much money. *Marius* also coming over to him, they raised a considerable Army, wherewith *Cinna* sat down before the City. *Marius* took *Hestia* by force, and *Cinna* being not able to do any thing at *Rome*, stormed *Ariminum*. The Consuls, for that they could not recall *Sylla*, sent for *Mellus* then lying in *Samnium*, but he differing with them about some conditions, had them granted by *Marius*, to whom then he joyned himself. In the mean while the City itself was near being betrayed to *Marius* by *Appius Claudius* a Tribune of the Army, who being intrusted with the *Janiculum*, thus required him for former kindnesse.

5. Though he and *Cinna* brake in, they were repelled by *Octavius*, and *C. Pompey* the Proconsul, who shortly after was killed with a Thunder-bolt. *Marius* after this took in several Towns about *Rome* where provisions lay, and *Cinna* by promise of liberty, drew many slaves out of the City, which the Senate understanding, left the People should make disturbance within, sent to him about an agreement. He refused to admit of any addresse made to him as a private man, so that they were forced to treat with him as Consul, and desired he would swear to abstain from blood. This he flatly refused to do; but promised, that wittingly and willingly he would not be the cause of any mans death; so he was received, and the Law abrogated for banishing *Marius* and his associates. Upon their entrance began plundering and slaughters in all places. *Octavius*, though having the oath both of *Cinna* and *Marius*, refusing to flye from his charge, was killed, and his head set upon the *Rostra*, to which was afterwards added that of *Antonius* (Grand-father to the *Triumvir*) an excellent Orator, who for a good space defended himself by his eloquence from the Soldiers, and several others. None were spared, either for dignity, worth, or age. The dead bodies, being mangled and abused otherwise, were left to be torn in pieces by dogs and fowls, none daring to bury them. All *Sylla's* friends were killed, his house defaced, and his goods put to sale, he being judged and declared an Enemy. *Mernula*, though he never sought the Consulship, but had it put upon him, and *Cinna*, having their dayes set them to answer, destroyed themselves.

6. *Cinna* and *Marius* having thus satisfied their bloody minds, made themselves Consuls for the following year: But *Marius* died ere the moneths end, having born this Office now seven times; a man more profitable to his Country in the time of War than of Peace. To him succeeded *Valerius Flaccus*, whom *Cinna* sent into *Asia*, to supply the room of *Sylla* there. But he by this time had done the work, and was coming home to revenge the former injuries, having subdued *Mithridates* in lesse than three years, killed 100000 of his men, recovered *Greece*, *Macedonia*, *Ionia*, *Asia*, and other Countries, which he had got into his hands, taken his Navy from him, and forced him to be content with his own inheritance. These things are to be declared in order.

7. After *Mithridates* had taken *Aquilius* with the rest, and seized upon *Asia* and other Countries (whilst *Sylla* was at *Rome*, seeing things there against *Marius* and his faction, as is before shewed) he sent his letters abroad into all the Cities of *Asia*, willing them at one day prefixed, to kill all *Italians* and *Romans*, with their wives and children, and cast them out unburied; then to seize on their estates, taking one part to themselves, and reserving the other for his use. This was accordingly done, and 80000 according to some; according to others 150000 perished in one day. Then went he into the Island *Cous*, where getting great treasure into his hands, there laid up by one of the *Cleopatraes*, he departed to *Rhodes*, and all manner of waies attempted to take the City, though without success; such was the constancy and fidelity of the *Rhodians* towards the *Romans*, amongst other confederates which universally revolted. Then sent he *Archelaus* his General into *Greece*, leaving *Pelopidas* in *Lycia* to carry on the War there, he himself providing Forces, and punishing such as he found inclinable towards the *Romans*.

U u u

8. Arche.

A. M. 397.  
Valer. Max. l. 9.  
c. 2. Ext. examp.  
Plutarch in Sylla.

## SECT. 5.

Sylla arriving in Greece,

Takes Athens and the Piræus and overthrows Archelaus the Kings General once,

And again

Forceth Mithridates to beg Peace.

8. Archelaus first recovered Delos, which from the Athenians had revolted to the Romans, then joyned he to himself the Achæians, Lacedæmonians, and Bæotians. After this he was fought by Britius, who had put to flight Meiraphanes sent also into Greece from the King; but having fresh supplies, Britius withdrew himself to the Piræus, or Haven of Athens, which shortly after Archelaus took in with his Fleet. Now Sylla arrived in Greece with five Legions and some Companies of Horse, and having furnished himself with money and provisions in Ætolia and Ithessaly, marched into Attica against Archelaus, almost whole Bæotia, with Thebes the chief City, revolting to him in his passage. He besieged Archelaus in the Piræus a very strong place, as fenced with a wall almost 40 cubits high, consisting of square stones, and built by Pericles during the first motions of the Peloponnesian War. Having also besieged Athens itself, he spent the whole Summer in the siege, and at length took it, the Inhabitants being unable to make any more resistance through famine, which so far prevailed, as they made meat of sodden leather, and fed upon the bodies of dead men. The Piræus was also shortly after taken, and the walls thereof demolished, with the Arsenal, and all the rarities therein were destroyed. Then Sylla followed Archelaus through Bæotia, and fought with him near Cheronea, in a place so straight, that no way being open for flight, he slew so many, that of 120000 not many more than 10000 remained, this being an Army sent over by the King out of his new Provinces.

9. Mithridates put divers Princes of his newly conquered Provinces to death, for fear they should kill or betray him, by which cruelty he lost all Gallogracia. Ephesus also, and other towns revolted from him, whereof such as he recovered he used cruelly, and afterwards fearing a general defection, to purchase favour he set the Greek Cities at liberty. Some that conspired his death were discovered, and upon suspicion were 1600 men made away. Then sent he another supply to Archelaus of 80000 men, which with the other 10000 remaining of the former Army, were routed by Sylla near Orchomenus, and about 15000 being slain, the rest betaking themselves to their Camp were also killed or taken, a vast slaughter having been made. Archelaus having lost his son Diogenes hid himself in a fen, and thence fled to Chalcis once more. After this Sylla chastized the Bæotians for their fickleness (for they would stand to neither party long) and took up his Winter quarters in Thessaly, providing himself of shipping, because he heard nothing of Lucullus, whom he had sent into Egypt to procure a Navy. Now at this time was Flaccus, who had succeeded Marius, sent into Asia by Cinna to succeed Sylla. Him Fimbria his Quæstor killed in a quarrel about lodging, being hated by his Soldiers, and he headed his Army, with which he several times fought, and that prosperously, against Mithridates his son, and drove the King himself into Pergamus, and thence to Pitane, where he took ship and fled to Mitylene, and might have been taken if Lucullus would. Then did Fimbria haraze Cappadocia, and burnt Ilium the daughter of Troy, for that the Inhabitants had given up themselves to Sylla, and not to him; so that though a Roman and so akin to them, he is said to have used them worse than did Agamemnon himself. This hapned to Ilium in the later end of the 173 Olympiad, about 1050 years after the first taking it by the Greeks.

10. Mithridates receiving intelligence of the blow he had received at Orchomenus, wrote to Archelaus, to procure his peace on as good terms as he could. To a Peace Sylla was not now averse, being in great want of money, and receiving no recruits from the City, where he was declared an Enemy, and desiring above all things to carry back a good Army into Italy to revenge himself. He offered Peace therefore on these conditions: That he should deliver up all his Navy, all fugitives and Captives, restore the Inhabitants of Chios, and others whom he had carried into Pontus, remove his garrisons from all places whither he had brought them since the breach of the Peace, pay all the charges of the War, and be content with his Father's Kingdom. All these conditions were agreed to save parting with Paphlagonia, but the Ambassadors saying they could have had better terms of Fimbria, drove

Vide Appian, in Mithridaticis, &amp; Plutarch in Sylla.

Appian ut supra, Orofius lib. 6. cap. 2. Florus l. 3. c. 5.

A. M. 3921. Ol. 174. an. 1. V. C. 670. Seleucid. 229. L. Cor. Cinna 4. Cn. Papirius Carbone 2. Coll.

## SECT. 5.

Fimbria's Army revolteth to him.

He marcheth for Italy against his Enemies there.

Landeth at Brundisium.

Defeateth Norbanus.

drove Sylla into a great displeasure, with a comparison so odious to him. Shortly after Mithridates himself met him, and found him so resolute, as he gladly accepted all the terms. So ended the first War with Mithridates, being concluded by Sylla three years after his coming into Greece.

11. Sylla required of Fimbria the Army to be delivered up to him, as held by no authority; but was answered, as having as little himself. Yet the Army denied to fight against that of Sylla, and forsook Fimbria, who thereupon sent a Slave to murder Sylla, which was discovered. He begged pardon, and it was granted him, so he would take ship and depart out of Asia; but he said, he had a better way, and going to Pergamus there destroyed himself. Sylla gave him to be buried, saying, he would not imitate the barbarism of Marius and Cinna towards his friends at Rome, whom they deprived both of life and burial; yet he kept in this mind but a while after his arrival there, whither he now hastened, having fined Asia grievously for its revolt, and settled affairs according to present occasions. He took Athens in his way, whence he carried with him the Library of Apollon the Teian (in which were most of the Books of Aristotle and Theophrastus, then not vulgarly known) bought by him of the posterity of Næmus, to whom Theophrastus had given it. He wrote to the Senate, to which he recounted all the great services he had done, and then how he had been rewarded by the party of Marius, telling them plainly, he would come and revenge both himself and the Publick, by punishing the authors of the injuries, nor meddling with any other, either old or new Citizens. The Senate hereat affrighted sent to treat with him, offering their endeavour for his satisfaction, if he would presently make known his mind. Cinna they ordered to stop his leavies; but he only returned them a plausible answer, and proceeded, designing himself and his Colleague Carbo Consuls again for the following year, that there might be no need of going to Rome to a new creation. He passed over some of his forces into Dalmatia, there to fight Sylla; but the hindermost were driven back by a tempest, and they refused absolutely to fight against their Country-men; so that those, who as yet had not passed the Sea, refused to go aboard. Hereupon he going to speak with them, an Officer who made way before him struck one of them, who struck him again, for which offence he commanding him to be laid hold on, a tumult arose, where-in he himself was ran through, and so perished in his fourth Consulship, and the 670 year of the City, a man worthier to have died by command of the Conqueror than the fury of the Soldiers. Carbo then continued Consul alone all the remaining part of the year.

12. Cinna and Carbo had by a Law abrogated Sylla's command, and procured War to be decreed against him, before the Senate was affrighted into the offer of a mediation. He answered, that he would never be reconciled to such wicked persons, as they desired he should; but if the People of Rome would give them indemnity he should not oppose it; yet he thought those that would come to him might be more safe, seeing he had at his devotion such an Army. Hereby declaring sufficiently what his intentions were, he also demanded restitution of his estate, his ancient dignity and honours; but the messengers coming to Brundisium, and there hearing of Cinna's death, and the disturbance of the Commonwealth, returned back to him. Then crossed he the Sea to Brundisium with a Fleet of 1600 ships, and 60000 men. Being landed, Metellus Pius, who had absented himself from Rome for fear of Marius and Cinna, came to him, as also Pompey, afterwards surnamed the Great, who though his father was no friend to Sylla, yet coming now to him with some forces, became afterwards his greatest favourite. Besides these came Cethegus, who having joyned with Cinna now begged pardon. C. Norbanus and L. Scipio the Consuls, with Carbo, made all preparation for resistance. The first trial at arms was at Canusium, where Norbanus lost 6000 men, and fled to Capua. Scipio through the treachery of his Army, came with his son into the power of Sylla, who dismissed them both. After this Sylla sent to Norbanus to treat of Peace; but (perhaps) being not thought serious, had no answer returned back.

Uuuu 2

13. He

Appian, Plutarch in Sylla.



## SECT. 5.

13. He then passed on in *Italy*, making havock of all things, as *Carbo* did, who getting into *Rome*, procured *Metellus* and the rest that joyned with *Sylla* to be declared Enemies to the State. Both parties sent up and down the *Italian* Cities, labouring both by fair means and fowl to procure forces; and so all this Summer was spent, wherein the Capitol was burnt none knoweth how. For the following year *Papirius Carbo* the third time, and *Marius*, son (but adoptive as most probable) to the old one, were Consuls; the later being but 27 years old. In the Spring was *Carinas* the Lieutenant of *Carbo* overthrown by *Metellus*, and *Marius* himself by *Sylla*, and beaten into *Prænestæ*, where being close besieged, and despairing of his own safety, he wrote to *Brutus*, then *Prætor* at *Rome*, that he should under some pretext call together the Senate, and kill those his Enemies: *P. Anisthius*, another *Carbo*, *L. Domitius*, and *Mucius Sævola* the High-Priest, which was with cruelty enough performed. *Metellus* by his time having overthrown another Army of *Carbo's*, *Pompey* defeated *Marcus* another of that party, *Sulla* marched to *Rome*, which he easily entered, many of the opposite faction being fled. Their goods he set to sale, and willing the people to be of good cheer, for that he was necessitated thus to act, he left a sufficient Garrison, and departed to *Clusium*, where he and his Officers several times overthrew *Carbo's* Armies. *Carbo* sent to *Prænestæ* to relieve *Marius* his Colleague eight Legions, which *Pompey* meeting in a straight place slew many of them, and most of those that escaped departed to their own homes. After this, *Carbo* and *Norbanus* in a fight with *Metellus* had 10000 of their men slain, and 6000 yielded, whereupon many fell off to *Sylla's* party, as also all *Gall* within the *Alps*. *Norbanus* fled to *Rhodes*, where fearing to be given up he killed himself; *Carbo* into *Africk*, though he had 30000 men at *Clusium* and other forces, which were then broken in pieces by *Pompey*. *Carinas*, with other Commanders attempted to break through, by the help of the *Samnites*, and relieve *Marius*; but this being with no effect, they made then for *Rome* it self.

Entereth Rome.

Getteth all Italy into his power.

Publisheth Tables of proscription.

14. A bloody batrel was fought at the Gates, where many thousands were slain on both sides. Yet *Sulla* had the better. *Carinas* and *Marcus* were taken, and their heads sent to *Prænestæ* to be shewed to the Inhabitants, at which sight understanding how things had passed, they yielded up the Town to *Lucullus*, and *Marius* killed himself, whose head was set up in the pleading place at *Rome*. All his faction in *Prænestæ* were put to death, and all the Natives with the *Samnites*; the *Romans* onely with the Women and Children were spared, who lost all they had, the Town (the richest at that time of all others) being plundered. *Norba* a little after was taken, and burnt to the ground by a fire which the Inhabitants kindled over their own heads, some one way, and some another destroying themselves. So came *Italy* into the power of *Sylla*, who in the improvement of his victory shewed what fury and revenge backed with power are able to do.

15. Having sent *Pompey* into *Africk* against *Carbo*, and given him a charge thence to passe into *Sicily* against others of that party, he called the people together, and told them that he would put them into a better condition if they would obey his commands, but he was resolved to prosecute his Enemies with all sorts of calamities. So he did in a larger measure than any before him. He put to death 8000 together in the *Villa publica*, a large house in the *Campus Martius* made for the reception of the Ambassadors of Enemies; and liberty was given to his Soldiers to kill all they met, till *Furcivius* putting him in mind that he ought to leave some to reign over; he then first of any man published Tables of proscription, wherein were proscribed first of all 80 Senators, and 1600 Equites, to which he afterwards added more, promising two Talents to those that should discover them, and threatened such as by whom they were harboured or concealed. Of those outlawed persons some were slain in their houses, others killed in the streets, and others prostrate at his feet; those that fled their goods were seized on. *Marius* a man of Consular dignity, and brother to *Sylla's*

A. M. 3923.  
Olymp. 174.  
ann. 3.  
V. C. 672.Legge Apian de bello civili l. 1.  
Plutarch. in Sylla.  
Patercul. l. 2.  
Valerius Max. lib. 9. c. 2.  
Exemp. 1.  
Florum lib. 3. c. 21.  
Orosium lib. 5. cap. 20. 21.  
Livii Epitom. l. 29.

## SECT. 5.

And rageth cruelly both against Persons and Cities.

He maketh himself Dictator in perpetuum.

His actions while such.

He layeth down his power.

And dieth.

A difference betwixt the Consuls about his burial, and confirmation of his acts.

*Sylla's* great Enemy, had at the Sepulcher of *Catulus* his eyes first pulled out of his head, and then his hands and legs cut off at several times, that he might die by degrees. But not onely against private persons, but Cities also did he rage, whereof some, after the Inhabitants were sold, he caused to be demolished. Many were turned out of their possessions which were given to his Creatures. *Pompey* drove *Carbo* into *Sicily*, and thence into *Corcira*, where being taken and brought to him, after he had inveighed against him in an assembly, he caused his head to be cut off, and sent it to *Sylla*.

16. Both the Consuls being now destroyed, *Sylla* withdrew himself out of the Citie, and willed the Senate to create an *Inter-rex*, which they willingly did, hoping they should have a new election of Consuls, and named *Valerius Flaccus*. He then wrote to him to ask the people, that seeing the necessity of affairs required so great an Officer, a Dictator might be created, and that not for any limited time, but till all evils should be redressed; and now he spared not to mention himself. This the people was forced to yield to, as being in his power, and so this Office which for the space of 120 years (ever since the years after *Hannibals* quitting of *Italy*) had been intermitted, was conferred on him without any limitation of time. A gilded Statue on horse-back was erected to his memory near the *Rostra*, with this inscription, *To L. Cornelius Sylla the happy General*: for he would be called *Felix*, and sometime *Aphroditus* or *beautifull*. This hapned in the third year of the 174 Olympiad, the 672 year of the Citie, 80 before the birth of *Christ*.

17. That a shew of the Commonwealth might remain, he permitted Consuls to be made, which were *M. Tullius Decula*, and *Cn. Cornelius Dolabella*; yet did he plainly reign alone, having 24 Axes carried before, as the Kings in old time, with a great Guard continually at his heels, abrogating old Laws, and enacting new at his pleasure. He regulated the Consuls, ordering that none should be capable of it without passing first through other Offices. He overthrew the Tribunes, by making those that bore it incapable of any other trust. To the Senate he added 300 out of the Equites, to the people 10000 out of the slaves of the proscribed, making them free, and calling them after himself *Cornelii*; and to 23 Legions he assigned much Land in *Italy* to oblige them to him. For the following year he gave way to have Consuls also, but joyned himself with *Q. Cæcilius Metellus*, which course the Emperours afterwards imitated. The year after, when the people to please him designed him Consul again, he waved it, and created *Servilius Isauricus* and *Appius Claudius Pulcher*; and then, to the astonishment of all men, laid down his Dictatorship, and though he had done such and so many horrid things, yet offered to give an account of his actions.

18. None accused him except one young man, whose reviling language made him say, that this for the time to come would keep any one from laying down such Supream power; which *Cæsar* indeed seemeth to have been awar of. Not long after he went into the Countrey, where minding nothing but his pleasure, he not long after died at *Puteoli* of the Lowfie disease, his body being putrified, and all turned into Lice, as *Plutarch* writeth. And this was the end of *L. Cornelius Sylla*, a man born of the noble family of the *Cornelii* (which of late had been Eclypsed through the laziness of his Ancestors) being the sixth in descent from *Cornelius Rufinus*, one of the most eminent Captains in the War with *Pyrrhus*. As his life was pernicious to his Countrey; so his death also brought trouble to it, the two Consuls and their factions falling out about the honour which was to be given to him at his funeral. *Catulus* prevailed against *Lepidus*, and he was carried in great State through the Citie, and first of any of his family was burned, being fearful, as *Cicero* thought, lest he himself should be dealt with as he had used *Marius*, whose bones he had caused to be digged up and thrown away. After the funeral, the Consuls fell into a greater dissention. *Lepidus* would restore the grounds

A. M. 3924.  
Ol. 175. ann. 1.  
V. C. 674.  
Seleucid. 233.A. M. 3925.  
V. C. 675.A. M. 3927.  
V. C. 676.

## SECT. 5.

grounds given away by *Sylla*, and abolish his Laws. The Senate was fearfull of another War, and caused them both to swear that they would not decide the controversy by the sword; but *Lepidus* was resolved not to return out of his Province, till the new Creation was over, and when he should be out of his Office begin a War, as then discharged from his Oath. Hereupon the Senate sent for him, and when he came he would have brought his forces into the City, but being opposed by *Catulus* and *Pompey*, a fight ensued, wherein he had the worst, and then fled into *Sardinia*, where he died the same year with *Sylla*.

*Sertorius* richest in Spain.

19. The Civil dissensions died not with him: for, though *Pompey* had suppressed *Carbo* in *Sicily*, *M. Brutus* in *Gall*, *Cn. Domitius* and *Hierba* King of *Numidia* in *Africa*, who were preparing for War, (and for this triumphed, being neither Consul nor *Prator*, and scarcely 26 years of age;) yet a more dangerous War was now depending, raised in Spain by *Q. Sertorius*. This man being one of *Cinna's* faction, joyned with *Carbo* against *Sylla*, and having taken *Suessa*, thence passed into Spain, which fell to him by lot as *Prator*. Thence he drove out such as were for *Sylla*, and joyning the *Celtiberians* to himself, stiffly resisted *Mecellus* who was sent against him, whereby obtaining a great name, he chose 300 of his friends, whom he called a Senate, in opposition, and despite to that at *Rome*. And now being made stronger by part of *Lepidus* his Army, which *Perpenna* had led thither, he designed no less than the invasion of *Italy*. The Senate afraid of this, sent *Pompey* against him, a young man, but of great esteem, who passing the Alps in imitation of *Annibal*, but another way, at first received some loss, & in the Spring following had no success, (though *Perpenna* and *Herculeus* were several times beaten by *Mecellus*) but was reduced into great straits, and wrote to *Rome* for a supply. *Lucullus* Consul for the following year procured it to be sent him, lest the War that was renewed with *Mithridates* should be committed to him if he came back into *Italy*, which he affirmed else he would. Being now supplied with men and money, he, and his assistants, fell upon the places subject to *Sertorius*; yet did they this year no great matters. But many of *Sertorius* his Army came over to them, being aggrieved that he made the *Celtiberians* his Guard, as distrusting themselves, and upon suspicion of the alienation of their minds, being cruelly used by him.

Is murdered by *Perpenna*.

20. The year following *Pompey* and *Mecellus* being more bold, made excursions into several places, and with more success; yet no considerable battle was there fought. Indeed it needed not. For, *Sertorius* now grown lazie, spent his time with women, and falling into an humour of cruelty had put many to death, whereby he wrought his destruction from his own party. *Perpenna* fearing it might fall to his lot to be made away amongst the rest, resolved to prevent it, and so inviting him to a feast, murdered him after he had besotted him and his attendants with Wine. This was the end of this great Captain, who for some ten years had stoutly resisted such as had been sent against him, being rather Superiour to them all, and admired by the *Spaniards* as another *Hannibal*. *Perpenna* with much ado was owned as his Successor, and not long after was overthrown, and taken in battle by *Pompey*. He offered, if his life might be spared, to disclose certain things of consequence in private unto *Pompey*; but he to his great commendation, commanded him to be killed, lest accusing any man he should bring the State into further trouble. So ended this War in the 681 year of the City. *M. Terentius Varro* that vast Scholar (being the most learned of any, either Greeks or Romans) and *Caius Cassius Varus* being Consuls. *Appian Claudius* in *Thrace*, and after him *Scribonius Curio* fought prosperously against the *Scordisci* and *Dardanians* at this time: so did *Servilius* against the Pirates of *Cilicia* expelling them the Seas, and taking several of their Towns; as also *Cosconius* against the *Dalmatians*. But these were inconsiderable matters in comparison of that War which now was renewed with *Mithridates*.

The War with *Mithridates* renewed.

21. *Sylla*, upon this departure for *Italy*, had left *Murena* behind him in *Asia*, to settle such things as were not yet composed, with the two Legions that

*Livii Epitom. lib. 89.*

*Appian, de bello civili lib. 1. Plutarch, in Pompeio & Sertorio, Florus lib. 3, cap. 22. Livii Epitom. lib. 90, Alii.*

A. M. 3932. Ol. 176. ann. 4. P. C. 681.

*Vir doctissimus undecimque Varro. Livii Epitom. l. 90. 91. Orosius lib. 5. cap. 23.*

## SECT. 5.

Consule *Appianum* in *Mithridaticis*.

Upon what occasion.

The King overthrewth *Murena*.

And the second Warre endeth.

The Warre again breaketh out and why.

*Mithridates* recovereth *Bithynia*.

*Lucullus* besiegeth him besieging *Cyzicus*.

that belonged to *Fimbria*. *Murena* being ambitious of a Triumph, had caught at all occasions to renew the War, and had one presented to him after this manner. *Mithridates* waging War with them of *Colchos* and *Bosphorus*, who had revolted from him; the former desired and obtained his son for their King. This proved the destruction of the young man, for his father thinking it to have been procured by his seeking, put him to death, having sent for and bound him with iron chains, though he had done him especial service against *Fimbria*. Against the *Bosphorians* he made then great preparations, inasmuch that every one thought he designed another Warre against the Romans. *Archelaus* was now at this time out of favour, for that he was thought to have granted too much unto *Sylla* in the Treaty of Peace, and therefore fled to *Murena*, and stirred him up to invade *Mithridates*, who neither had restored the intire possession of *Cappadocia* to *Ariobarzanes*. *Murena* did so, slaying the mention of Peace, which was objected to him. *Mithridates* sent to *Rome*, to complain to *Sylla*, and expecting the return of his Ambassadors, stirred not, though the other passing over the River *Halys* fired 300 of his Villages. Afterwards came *Callidus* from *Rome*, who though he shewed no Decree of the Senate, yet said, it was the pleasure of the Fathers, that all acts of hostility should be forborn, and afterwards he talked with *Murena* alone. Yet did not *Murena* forbear, so that the King judging that War indeed was intended, resolved to look to himself, and passing over the River overthrew *Murena* in battle, who fled into *Phrygia*. This Victory brought many over to the King's party, and hereupon he drove all *Murena's* Garrisons out of *Cappadocia*. *Sylla* now Dictator, was not well pleased he should be thus disturbed, and therefore sent *A. Gabinus* to command *Murena* in good earnest to forbear, and reconcile the King to *Ariobarzanes*. *Mithridates* gave him his son of four years of age for an Hostage, and received part of *Cappadocia*. So things were settled again, and the second War, as *Appian* saith, ended in the third year. But some seven years after another was begun.

22. Presently after the last conclusion, he sent to *Rome* to have the conditions of the League recorded, but the thing was neglected. *Ariobarzanes* sent also to complain, that he kept the greater part of *Cappadocia* from him, whereupon *Sylla* commanded him to quit it, which accordingly he did. Afterward he sent again to desire that the League might be recorded; but *Sylla* being now dead, the matter was not as much as reported to the Senate. Hereupon he underhand procured *Tigranes* King of *Armenia* his son in Law to invade *Cappadocia*, whence he led away 300000 persons, and there built a City, to be the Metropolis of the Kingdom, which from himself he named *Tigranocerta*, i. e. the City of *Tigranes*. *L. Magius*, and *L. Fannius*, who had fled to him from *Fimbria's* Army, persuaded him to send into Spain, and joyn in League with *Sertorius*, which he did, and had granted to him *Bithynia* and *Cappadocia*, receiving from him as a Captain *M. Varius* (or *Marius*) one of his Officers. Being now without hope of pardon, he made all preparations possible, and got together an Army out of divers Countries, consisting of 140000 Foot, and 16000 Horse, wherewith the following Spring he invaded *Bithynia*, which Country, *Nicomedes* being dead without issue, had a little before given by testament to the People of *Rome*, which thing enraged him. *Cotta* the Governour, a man of little courage, fled to *Chalcedon*, and he got it all into his hands.

23. In the 680 year of the City, *L. Licinius Lucullus* and *M. Aurelius Cotta* being Consuls, the former of them was sent against *Mithridates* with one Legion out of the City, to which were joyned those two that belonged to *Fimbria*, and two more, so that in all he had an Army of 30000 Foot, and 16000 Horse. He found the King before *Cyzicus* a City of *Propontis*, and presently besieged the besieger. He drove him to such straits by the help of *L. Manius* (who now again revolted) that though having a great desire to the place, he laboured much to take it, yet through extreme famine he was forced first to send away the Horse, and sick Footmen, into *Bithynia*, whereof

*Appian ut supra. Plut. in Lucullo.*

## SECT. 5.

And forcing him to flye, perſueth him into his Kingdom,

And into Armenia.

whereof 15000 were intercepted, and then to flye himself with the rest that could escape the great slaughter made of them in their flight. During this double siege, *Eumachus* one of *Mithridates* his Captains made incursions into *Phrygia*, subdued the *Piside*, and *Isauri*, and endeavoured to do the same by *Cilicia*, till he was repelled by *Deiotarus* one of the *Tetrarchs* of *Gallagracia*. But *Lucullus* improved his successes on land by several Victories at sea, wherein he took divers of *Mithridates* his Commanders, and hasted into *Bithynia* to overtake him. He, flying with all speed for fear of this, suffered most grievous shipwrack, and had been cast away, but that he was received into a Pirate's Vessel, to which he was glad to commit himself in so great danger, and at length, after many difficulties, got into his own Kingdom, whither now *Lucullus* pursued him, having in his way taken in *Bithynia* and *Paphlagonia*. He made all possible preparations for resistance, sending for aid to *Tigranes* his son in Law, and to his own son reigning in *Bosphorus*; and hee sent *Diocles* with great gifts to the *Scythians*; but he ran away to *Lucullus*. In the space of a year hee got together 40000 Foot, and 4000 Horse, with which force he once or twice repelled the *Romans*, and struck some terror into them. But *Lucullus* sending out some Horse for provisions, he also sent a party to interrupt them, which fighting in a disadvantageous place was worsted. Being now destitute of Horse, he thought of removing from *Cabira*, where he had wintered; and communicated his intention to his friends. They not expecting the sign began to pack up, and send their baggage out of the Camp before day, which the Army taking notice of, thought much they should flye without any warning given, and in great fear and disorder breaking out of the trenches ran away. The King went about to hinder them, but none taking notice of him, he was born down in the crowd, and being got on horseback betook himself also to flight, and might have been taken, but that the *Romans* were too busie in plundering the Camp, though warned by their General to forbear.

24. *Mithridates* first fled to *Comana*, and thence into *Armenia* to *Tigranes*, who admitted him not to his presence, but caused him to be entertained like a King, though in fenny and unwholesome places. All *Pontus*, except a few places, yielded to *Lucullus*, to whom also *Machares* King of *Bosphorus* sent a crown of gold, and purchased the title of his friend and ally. After this *Lucullus* pursued *Mithridates* into *Armenia*, intending to fall on *Tigranes* King thereof, if he gave him occasion by defending his Enemy. *Tigranes* at this time was a very potent Prince, having conquered several Nations: He wrested *Asia* from the *Parthians*, transported many thousands of *Greeks* out of *Cilicia* and *Cappadocia*, into a City built by him near *Euphrates*, and called *Tigranocerta*; he obtained *Syria* and *Palestine*, displacing the Kings thereof, as was acknowledged by *Lucullus*. This made him intollerably proud, so that when he rode, he would have four of those Kings he had subdued to run beside him like Lackies, and stand before him with their hands folded in token of subjection, when he sat on his throne. *Lucullus* sent to him *Appius Claudius* his wife's brother, to demand *Mithridates*; but he was then busied in *Phenicia*, in reducing some places, which the Messenger made an opportunity in his absence, secretly to withdraw from him many, whom his intollerable pride had rendered impatient. At his return he gave a negative answer, and therefore *Lucullus* with two Legions and scarcely 3000 Horse, passed over *Euphrates*, being not acknowledged a General, because he had not given him the title of King of Kings.

25. *Tigranes* had no good intelligence of his coming, for he hanged him that first brought the news, as a disturber of the Peace; but when he perceived it was so indeed, he sent *Mithrobarzanes* with 2000 Horse to interrupt his passage, left *Mancus* to guard *Tigranocerta*, and went himself up and down levying forces. Whilst he was bringing 250000 Foot, and 50000 Horse, the former was beaten back, and the later could not defend the City. *Mithridates* advised him not to hazard all in a battel, but rather starve the *Romans*, as they had done him at *Cyzicus*, but he slighted the motion, and

A. M. 393.  
V. C. 681.

Where he overthrew in battel Tigranes the King, who protected him

jeered at the smallness of their number, saying, that if they were Ambassadors they were very many, and if Soldiers, very few. But *Lucullus* pitching upon an hill, sent his Horse to provoke and draw out the Enemy; that he might break his ranks, and then setting upon the carriage beasts, caused them to drive the Foot amongst the Horse, whereby a great confusion was made, and great execution continued all the day. *Tigranocerta* was taken by the means of certain *Greeks*, who being out of jealousy disarmed by *Mancus*, took clubs, and setting upon him and his men, got the better, and received the *Romans* within the walls. After this, another great Army was raised, and committed to the conduct of *Mithridates*. They then endeavoured to compass *Lucullus*, but were crossed in their expectation, and both parties continued without any great murther performed, till want of victuals forced them to depart. Then went *Tigranes* further into his Kingdom, and *Mithridates* marched away into his own, being pursued by *Lucullus*.

26. *Mithridates* overthrew *Fabius*, who had been left in *Pontus* by *Lucullus*, and after him *Triarius*, who being sent with a new supply, out of a desire of glory ventured to fight ere the General came. He lost in one engagement 24 Tribunes, and 150 Centurions (which numbers were seldom heard of in an overthrow of the *Roman* Armies) and 7000 in all were slain near the Mountain *Scotias*, about three miles distant from *Zela* a City of *Pontus*. *Lucullus* having heard of the Kings intention to set upon *Triarius*, procured the Soldiers of *Fimbria* to march, who through the procurement of *P. Clodius* mutined against him, as formerly against *Flaccus* by the means of *Fimbria*. But *Mithridates* taking away all the necessities he could carry, and destroying the rest, departed into *Armenia* the less. *Lucullus* would gladly have followed him, and might have put an end to the War, but that now by the procurement of *A. Gabinus* the Tribune, *Manius Acilius Glabrio* that years Consul, was appointed his successor, and an order made for disbanding of *Fimbria*'s Soldiers. This being known, *Lucullus* was slighted by his Army so much, that hardly could his men be drawn to stay, though they marched no further against *Mithridates*; so that the King began to recruit himself, and *Tigranes* wasted *Cappadocia*. Shortly after, *Glabrio* arrived in his Province, and sent about to give notice, that the Senate was displeased with *Lucullus* for prolonging the War, disbanded his Army, and would confiscate the estates of such as should disobey it's order. Hereupon all the Army forsook him, except some few poor men, who had no cause to regard the threatnings; and *Lucullus* being outed of his command, *Mithridates* recovered almost his whole Kingdom, and did much hurt to *Cappadocia*; *Glabrio* not as much as coming to the Army, but loitering in *Bithynia*. This happened in the eighth year after *Lucullus* had undertaken the War; the 687 of the City, *C. Calpurnius Piso* and the said *M. Acilius Glabrio* being Consuls. The year following the War was committed to *Cneius Pompey* (afterward surnamed the Great) by the means of *C. Manilius* the Tribune, who having offended the Senate by a Law, which gave the same right of suffrages to *Libertis* or *Freemen* (once slaves) as to their Patrons, or such as manumitted them, procured this Law also to passe to curry favour with him, who now had a very great name and power, having scarcely finished the *Piratic* Warre, which for his famous and speedy Expedition, must be described, after we have first spoken something of the War with *Spartacus*, that was managed whilst *Lucullus* was busie in *Pontus*.

The war with Spartacus.

27. *Spartacus* a *Thracian* born, was a *Fencer* in the house of *Lentulus* at *Capua*, where perswading about 70 of his condition, rather to fight for their own liberty than the pleasure of spectators, they broke the house and fled to *Vesuvius* the hill in *Campania*, where receiving to them all fugitives, they fell down upon the parts adjacent, and robbed them. By making equal division of the booty, he got together a great power of men, over whom he set as Captains two *Fencers* that were *Galls* by birth, called *Oenomaus* and *Crixus*. *Clodius* the *Prator*, who was sent against them from the City, they routed and put to flight, as also *P. Varinus*, whose *Lictors* and Horse they

X x x x

took

## SECT. 5.

A. M. 393.  
Ol. 177. an. 4.  
V. C. 685.  
Q. Hortensio Nepos  
Facilio M. C. C.

Dion Cassius.  
Histius de bello Alexandrino.

Dio. l. 35.

Plutarch in Lucullo.

Dio. lib. 36.  
Livii Epitom.  
l. 100.  
Plutarch in Pompeio.

Consule Appian de bello civili l. 1.  
Plut. in Crasso. Florum l. 3. c. 20.  
Eutrop. lib. 6. Orosum lib. 5. c. 24.

## SECT. 5.

took. *Spartacus* now having got together 70000 men, and making great preparations, began to be formidable to the Romans, who therefore sent against him *L. Gallius Poplicola*, and *Cn. Cornelius Lentulus* the Consuls with two Legions. *Crius* was at the Hill *Garganus* defeated and slain. *Spartacus* making for *Gall*, was before and behind by the Consuls; but one after the other he overthrew, and putting them both to flight, killed 300 prisoners to appease the Ghost of *Crius*. Marching then towards the Alps he was opposed by *Cassius* the *Prætor*, whom he also overthrew, and who hardly escaped from the engagement.

28. *Spartacus* puffed up by such success, now consulted of no less than setting upon *Rome* itself. At the *Comitia* for *Prætors*, when the Candidate appeared, *M. Licinius Crassus*, a person of great Nobility, and exceeding rich, undertook the Office, and was sent against *Spartacus* with six Legions. He ordered *Mummius* his Lieutenant with two Legions to attend the Enemies motions, but not to fight, which doing, he was worsted, and many being taken, many also cast away their Arms and fled. *Crassus* to terrify others, used great severity against such as forsook their Colours, decimating 500 who had first begun to fly; which ancient kind of Discipline being of a long time disused, he hereby revived. *Spartacus* having by this time passed to the Sea, thought of going over into *Sicily*; but failing of his design upon some *Cicilian* Rovers, he fate down in the Peninsula of *Rhegium*, where *Crassus* as it were besieged him, having drawn a line through the *Isthmus* from Sea to Sea, to cut off all Provisions. *Spartacus* in a tempestuous night made a shift to fill up the Ditch, and get over the third part of his Army, then engaging with *Crassus* lost 12000 men. After this defeat he went toward the *Paenine* Mountains, and the Lieutenant and *Quæstor* of *Crassus* pursuing him, he faced about, and put them to flight, whereby his men being encouraged, refused not to give the Romans battle. *Crassus* now desired also to fight, because *Pompey*, who was lately returned out of *Spain* was reported as coming to end this War. Pitching then one against another, *Spartacus* engaged with all his forces, and made at *Crassus* through the midst of Weapons and Wounds, whom yet he missed, but killed two of his Centurions. At length such as stood near him running away, whilst he stood his ground manfully he was slain, and the rest were disordered and put to flight. Some that escaped from the battle, and made head again, *Pompey* suppressed, three years before he undertook the War against the Pirates.

29. The Pirates who had been a little repressed by *Servilius Isauricus* (as we said before) were now grown so numerous and powerfull, that there was no passing of the Seas, nor any dwelling upon the Coasts; for they not onely took and robbed ships on the Sea, but also whole Provinces on the Land; the chief place of their Rendezvous being *Cilicia* the Rough. *Mithridates* first set them on work, which finding profitable they ceased not when he left off, but continued their Robberies; many thousands of several Nations, as *Syrians*, *Cypriots*, *Pamphylians*, the Natives of *Pontus*, and almost all others of that part of the World joying together. For, seeing that the War continued, they thought it more wisdom to damnify others, than lose their own Estates. Because they made choice of *Cilicia*, as most commodious in the Mountainy and Craggy places thereof to secure themselves, they all went under the name of *Cilicians*. They had defeated several Roman *Prætors*. *Murena* did little good against them, and *Servilius* but a little repressed their violence; for so impudent were they now grown, that besides their incursions into *Sicily* and other places, which made the Inhabitants of the Coasts forsake their habitations, they landed in *Italy* near *Brundisium*, whence they took away several women of quality; and more than that, two Armies with their Ensigns.

30. The People of *Rome* being very sensible of these disgracefull losses, a Law was preferred by *A. Gabinus* the Tribune, (tis uncertain whether at the motion of *Pompey*, or from his own desire to ingratiate himself with him; for being none of the best men, he little valued the good of the Commonwealth)

He is defeated and slain by *Crassus*.

The insolence of Pirates.

Provoketh the people of *Rome*.

*Appian* in *Mithridaticis*.

*Dio* lib. 36. *Plutarch*, in *Pompeio*.

## SECT. 5.

Which sendeth *Pompey* against them.

His Method.

With wonderfull expedition in three months he finisheth the War.

The Law *Manilia*. Whereby the War against *Mithridates* with vast power is committed to *Pompey*.

monwealth) that some one from amongst those of Consular Dignity should be Created General with full power for three years against the Pirates, to whom also should be granted large forces, and many Lieutenants for carrying on the War. This Law little pleased the Fathers, who now began to be jealous of *Pompey's* power; but to him was the business committed, having equal authority with *Proconsuls* any where within fifty miles distance from the Sea, and full power over all persons within that compass, whether Kings or others, that they might assist him in the work. The Senate permitted him to chuse out of their body fifteen Lieutenants, to whom he might commit several Provinces; to take up as much money out of the Treasury and from the Publicans as he pleased; to raise what force he would, and take 200 ships. But he obtained greater things of the people, and doubled his preparations, getting 500 ships, 120000 foot, and some 5000 horse. He had also out of the Senate about 25 *Vicegerents*, two *Quæstors*, and took up 6000 *Attick* Talents; so difficult a thing it seem'd to destroy so many Fleets as the Pirates had, in such a Sea, where there was so many places of retreat and refuge.

31. He distributed to his Lieutenants the *Mediterranean* Sea, including all the Bays; Havens, Promontories, Straights, Peninsulæ, and windings whatsoever, furnishing them with convenient shipping, forces, and authority; so that the Pirates being rouzed out of their lurking holes by some, might be received by the next, and chased by others, and none might need to sayl too far. He himself like a King of so many Kings sayled up and down, and visiting, giving directions, and overseeing, took care that not one Pirate escaped. By this course prosecuted with singular industry, in 40 dayes he scoured all the Seas about *Africk*, *Sardinia*, *Corfica*, and *Sicily*; and the Pirates that escaped flocked into *Cilicia*, as the common receptacle. He coming to *Rome* about some necessary occasions, quickly after followed them with 60 Gallies; but though they prepared to give him battle at Sea, yet when they saw his Fleet at hand, submitted to mercy. Then in the space of 40 dayes he reduced *Cilicia* unto Roman obedience; for though he had provided Engines of all sorts to batter their Walls, it needed not, the greatness of his name, and preparation for the War had so terrified them, that one after another they all yielded themselves with the furniture for their trade. Such as remained of them being above 20000 he was unwilling to kill, and to let them return to their old habitations was not safe: therefore he removed them into another place at a good distance from the Sea, where he gave them houses and Land; and furnished their seats with new Inhabitants. Thus having taken well nigh 400 ships, killed 10000 men, and taken 120 Ports, he finished this War in three moneths, using the Conquered with more clemency than did *Q. Metellus* in *Crete*, which being the other nest of these Pirates, and glorying that it never underwent the yoke of any, he subdued, and obtained with a Triumph the surname of *Creticus*. Having succeeded *Antonius* (who died in the action, and had as large authority there as *Pompey*) he used the Pirates very roughly, and so much the more, because hearing of *Pompey's* mercy, they had by a Message given up themselves into his hands.

32. Whilst he was putting an end to this *Piratic* War, did *Manilius* prefer a Law as we said before, that all the Armies the Romans had any where, with the Government of all Asia, and the War against *Mithridates* and *Tigranes*, might be committed to him. The Nobility conceived great indignation against this Law, as which did manifest injury to *Lucillus*, *Glabrio*, and *Marcus*; but especially out of an high jealousy of *Pompey's* greatness, to whom now even all the Roman Empire was subject, having these Provinces laid to his former, with the same power of Peace and War, and making what friends and enemies he pleased, and chiefly for that he had Jurisdiction over all Armies whatsoever, which things had never before been conferred upon any single person. But the Commons with great alacrity embraced the Law; *Cicero* the *Prætor* pressing it exceedingly, who having formerly set himself to defend the Nobility, now had broken himself

X x x 2

to

*Florus* lib. 3. cap. 6.

*Appian* ut supra. *Plutarch*, *Dio*, *Cicero* pro lege *Manilia*.

A. M. 5938. *Ol.* 178. ann. 2. *V. C.* 687.

*Dio* lib. 36.

SECT. 5. to the vulgar sort. And C. Julius Caesar (who of late had been *Quaestor*) is said to have favoured it, that he might have the people more inclined afterwards to favour extraordinary commands to himself.

33. It being now the 688 year of the City, the 64th before the birth of Christ, the fourth of *Arsobolus* King of *Judea*, M. *Emilius Lepidus*, and L. *Volcanus Tullus* being Consuls, Pompey undertook the expedition. He first sent to *Mithridates*, offering him good terms; but he slighted them, because he hoped to have *Phraates* the *Parthian* on his side; yet when he heard that he had first made a League with him, on the same conditions as were offered to *Sylla* and *Lucullus*, he himself then sent and asked peace. Pompey commanded him to lay down Arms, and deliver up all Fugitives; who fearing they should be given up, and the other Soldiers mutining for being about to be deprived of their help, a great trouble ensued, which he evaded, by saying that he only sent to make an espial, and by swearing, that he never would be reconciled to the *Romans*, because of their insatiable avarice. Then marched Pompey into *Galatia*, where meeting with *Lucullus*, much ado there was betwixt them. *Lucullus* said the War was finished, and that the Commissioners sent from *Rome* were to decide the business, and when Pompey would not hear of this, he reviled him with an immoderate thirst after power; Pompey again objecting covetousness to him, so that the accusations could on neither side be denied. *Lucullus* gave out commands as yet in power, but Pompey by his Edicts forbade them, nulled all his Acts, and at length drew away most of his men. But at his return he was received with great honour by the Senate, carrying with him amongst his booty gotten in *Pontus*, many \* books, wherewith he furnished his Library, which ever stood open to *Greeks* especially. He also first brought \* the Cherry-Tree out of *Pontus* (from a City of which Region it was called *Cerasus*) into *Italy*.

A. M. 3939.  
V. C. 688.

idem ibid.  
Plutarch. in  
Pompeio &  
Lucul.

\* *Isidorus Orig.*  
l. 6. c. 3.  
\* *Plin. l. 15.*  
cap. 25.

*Dio. Appian.*  
& *Plutarch.*  
ut suprà.

34. *Mithridates* had now got together a considerable Army; but coming to engage with Pompey was inferior to him in all skirmishes. Pompey considering how the King had wasted all the Countrey on purpose to straighten him for Provisions, went into *Armenia* the less, subject to *Mithridates*, who fearing he might get that Countrey into his hands, followed him thither. First here *Mithridates* had hopes to starve him; but was disappointed with considerable loss, and was himself encompassed with a Trench 150 furlongs about. Hearing that *Marcus* was joyned to Pompey, who had Provisions at will, he fled away, having first killed all such as were sick, and uselesse, about him. But Pompey pursued, and prevented him from passing over *Euphrates*; then forced him to fight in the night, being surprized, and at unawares. The Moon being low, and on the backs of the *Romans*, so lengthened their shadows, that his Soldiers thinking them nearer than they were, shot most of their Arrows without doing any execution. He lost many thousands; but he himself brake out with 800 horse, whereof but 300 stayed with him. Then wandering through the Woods with his horse in his hand, he light of some Mercenaries, and about 3000 foot, by which he was conveyed into a Castell where he had laid up much Treasure. Hence he sent to *Tigranes*, who refused to receive him, laying to his charge, that by his means *Tigranes* his son (by the daughter of *Mithridates*) had rebelled against him, and offering 100 Talents for his head. He fled therefore to *Cholcos*, which formerly he had subdued.

He defeateth  
*Mithridates*.

Who fleeth to  
*Cholcos*.

And thence  
into *Scythia*.

35. Pompey followed him to *Cholcos*, thinking he would not have stirred thence; but he passed into *Scythia*, where partly by force, and partly by persuasion, he made the Princes thereof of his party, bestowing his daughters in marriage upon them. For he had now vast designs in his head, though outed of his Kingdom, even no less than of passing through *Thrace*, *Macedonia*, and *Pannonia*, and so over the *Alps* into *Italy*. Pompey departing from *Cholcos*, and escaping the ambushes laid for him by the *Albanians* and *Iberians*, marched into *Armenia* against *Tigranes*, who was resolved, now not to fight, for that having had three sons by *Mithridates* his daughter, two of them upon provocation he had already killed, and he that remained rebelling also, was

now

*Tigranes* sub-  
mitteth to  
Pompey.

The condi-  
tions set him.

His rebellious  
son put to  
death.

now after an overthrow received from his Father, fled to Pompey. This son prevailed that his Ambassadors were not heard, who came to ask Peace. But Pompey marching against the City *Ariaxa*, *Tigranes* yielded it up to him, and afterwards, without sending any beforehand, came into his Camp, and giving up himself with all he had into his hands, made him umpire betwixt him and his son, who would not so much as rise up to him, or give him any respect, though Pompey used him very civilly. Pompey left him his inheritance of *Armenia*, with a great part also of *Mesopotamia* (allowing the son to reign in *Gordena* and *Sophena*, and expect the rest after his father's death) but deprived him of all the Provinces he had subdued, and fined him 6000 Talents of Silver for the charge he had put the People of *Rome* to in the War. So, he not only quitted part of *Cappadocia* and *Cilicia*, but also all *Syria* and *Phœnicia* from *Euphrates* to the Sea, which he had got into his hands, with part of *Cilicia*, after he had ejected *Antiochus Pius*, as is said before in the reign of this unfortunate King. *Tigranes* the son was very refractory, unwilling his father should have the treasure adjudged to him by Pompey, that he might be able to pay his fine. Being minded to make away his father, and for that cast into prison; where therein also he solicited the *Parthians* against the *Romans*, he was reserved for a Triumph, and after that killed in prison. The old King payed more than his fine, and gave something to every Officer and Soldier, after which he was accounted a Friend and Allie of the People of *Rome*.

36. Pompey restored *Cappadocia* to *Ariobarzanes*, gave him also *Sophene* and *Gordene*, with *Cabala* a City of *Cilicia*, and others. After this with some ado he forced the *Albanians* and *Iberians* to beg Peace, and then passing over the mountain *Taurus*, made War upon *Antiochus Comagenus*, and also *Darius* the *Median*, either for that he had helped *Antiochus*, or made War against *Tigranes*, or *Aretas* King of the *Nabathæan Arabs*. Then *Phraates* the *Parthian* affrighted at his great achievements begged Peace, which he granted not, but sent *Afranius* into *Gordene*, to drive out his forces, and restore it to *Tigranes*, who about it had warred with the *Persian*, *Phraates* hereupon invaded *Armenia*, and *Tigranes* sent to Pompey for aid; who being unwilling to begin a War with *Phraates* without an order from *Rome*, sent three Commissioners to agree them. *Antiochus* son of *Antiochus Pius*, to whom *Lucullus* granted *Syria* his inheritance, thought first of betaking himself to the *Parthian*; yet upon second thoughts, resolved to cast himself upon the good nature of Pompey. But he having obtained it without a stroke, put him beside it, commanding him to content himself with *Comagena*, though he had never ill deserved of the People of *Rome*: for knowing he was not able to right himself, he excused the matter, saying, it was not fit that *Syria*, whence *Tigranes* had banished the posterity of *Seleucus*, should now rather fall to it being conquered, than to the *Romans*, who were Conquerors. He refused flatly to give *Antiochus* what before he could not keep (for he had layn in a corner of *Cilicia* fourteen years, all the time that *Tigranes* enjoyed it) lest he should again render it liable to the incursions of the *Jews* and *Arabians*. Therefore having overcome the *Ituraans* and *Arabians*, he reduced *Syria* into the form of a Province.

Pompey re-  
duceth *Syria*  
into a Roman  
Province.

37. *Mithridates*, in the mean time had sent to Pompey to ask Peace, offering to pay tribute; but being willing to come to him, he flatly refused, and made great preparations to renew the War. After this *Castor* his Governor of *Phanagoria* a Port Town of *Pontus* revolted, and calling the People to their liberty, took the Castle held by *Mithridates* his sons, whereof four he sent to *Roman* Garrisons. Hereupon several places fell off, which made him put many persons to death, amongst whom were divers of his own friends, and one of his sons. Seeing also that many revolted, and his new Army had no heart to the service, he sent to the Princes of *Scythia* to hasten their supplies, sending his daughters to them with a convoy of 500 Horse; but these men killing the Eunuchs who had molested them about the King, carried away the women unto Pompey. Yet such a courage still he had, as to think of pass-

SECT. 5.  
Pat. rec. l. 2.  
c. 37.

*Liv. Epitom.*  
l. 101.

A. M. 3940.  
V. C. 689.

*Appian ut supra.*  
*Dio l. 37.*  
*Plutarch ut prius.*

*Appian.*  
*Justin l. 40.*  
A. M. 3941.  
Ol. 179. 22. 2.  
V. C. 691.  
*Seleucid. 250.*

*Appian.*



## SECT. 5.

Mithridates  
designing in  
his mind great  
things,

ling through *Syria* and *Asia*, and joining with the *Galls* of *Europe* to invade *Italy*, hoping there to find many enemies of the *Romans*; though *Pompey* coming out of *Syria* had through ambition done what he condemned in *Lucullus*, having reduced his Kingdom into the form of a Province, whilst he was yet alive, and provided for new opposition. But his Army was startled at the news of his intentions, hating the tediousness of the journey, and having small hope to conquer those in *Italy*, whom at their own doors they could not withstand. Yet such was his authority, as for a while they were quiet, till his own son whom he had most loved, and destined his successor, became the procurer of their defection and his death.

His son Pharnaces  
draweth  
the Army  
from him.

38. This was *Pharnaces*, who either out of apprehension that this attempt upon *Italy* would cut off all pardon from his family, or upon other grounds, conspired against him. The plot was discovered, and though his Complices were tortured and put to death, yet was he pardoned, and berook himself to the fugitive *Romans*, shewing them their danger in case *Italy* were invaded, and then to the Army, which with small trouble he drew to his party. *Mithridates* coming to speak to them, his own guard forsook him, his horse as he fled was killed under him, and *Pharnaces* saluted King, having a piece of parchment put about his head in form of a diadem. *Mithridates* seeing this from a high room, sent divers to ask leave to depart, who not returning, he himself often desired it of his son, but in vain, who bidding him dye, he cried out, and prayed, that he might hear one day the same words from his own children. Then came he down to his wives, daughters, and concubines, to whom when he had given poison, fearing he should be delivered up to the *Romans*, he took some himself; but having used much his body to antidotes (such as yet are named from him) it would not work, though he walked much for that purpose, whereupon he wounded himself, but this not dispatching him soon enough, he called one *Bicaeus* (or *Bithocus*) a *Gall*, who, the wall being broken, had got in, by whose hand partly, and partly by his own, he dispatched himself. A man, as one faith, neither, without good heed, to be omitted nor spoken of; in War most eager and fierce, and alwaies of notable valour. Sometimes in fortune, all times in courage of highest rank; in direction a good Captain, in execution a good Soldier, in hatred to the *Romans* another *Hannibal*; finally, the greatest King after *Alexander* in the judgment of *Cicero*. This end came he to, after the War had first commenced just 20 years; for it began when *Cn. Pompeius Strabo*, and *L. Porcius Cato*, and ended now when *M. Tullius Cicero* the Orator, and *C. Antonius Nepos* were Consuls, in the 691 year of the City, the second of the 179 Olympiad, and the first of the reign of *Hyrcanus*, 61 years before the birth of *Christ*. A. M. 3942.

Orosius l. 6. c. 5.  
Dio lib. 37.  
Florus l. 3. c. 5.  
alii.

A. M. 3942.  
Patercul. l. 2.  
c. 18.

Pompey invadeth  
Judaea,  
where he settleth  
matters  
betwixt Hyrcanus  
and Aristobolus the two  
brothers.

39. *Pompey*, when the first tidings of his death came to him, was near *Jericho*, marching towards *Jerusalem* against *Aristobolus* King of *Judea*, who had displeased his elder brother *Hyrcanus* and usurped the Kingdom. *Hyrcanus* complained of his brother to *Pompey* at *Damascus*, who came thither to answer for himself. *Pompey* used them both kindly, telling them, that as soon as he had dispatched some affairs he would come into their Country, which after he had settled *Syria*, subdued the *Arabians* with the *Ituraeans*, and reduced *Pontus* into a Province, (all in a short time) he now performed, being much incensed by *Hyrcanus* against the other. He sent to *Aristobolus* to come to him, and deliver up all his holds, which he did with much regret, and afterwards withdrew himself to *Hiernusalem*, to prepare for War. *Pompey* suspecting some such matter, delayed not to follow him, who then came out to meet him; but though the City was entered without opposition, his Soldiers fortified the Temple and stood out, which made him be delivered into custody. The Temple being very strong by it's situation, was after much labour taken in the third month, *Faustus* the son of *Sylla* having first mounted the walls. Twelve thousand *Jews* were slain, of the *Romans* very few. *Pompey* entered the Holy of Holies, but medled with nothing, restored *Hyrcanus* to the Priesthood and Government (yet with command

Joseph. Antiq.  
l. 15. c. 9. §. 1.  
14. c. 5. §. 6.  
§. de bello l. 10.  
c. 5.  
Livius lib. 103.  
Plutarch in  
Pompio.  
Tacitus Hist.  
l. 5. c. 9.  
Florus l. 3. c. 5.  
Dio l. 37. p. 36.  
c.

## SECT. 5.

not to wear a diadem) and took *Aristobolus* along with him, making *Judea* tributary to *Rome*, as is more largely related in it's proper place. After this, leaving *Syria* with two Legions to *Scaurus* his Quæstor, he fully subdued *Cilicia*, and thence returning into *Pontus*, settled things there, bestowing the Kingdom of *Bosphorus* upon *Pharnaces*. At his return he wintered at *Ephesus*, whence having subdued many Princes, and joyned others as Allies to the State of *Rome*, having taken 1000 Castles, 900 Cities, and restored 39; having planted Colonies in eight Cities and Countries, and ordered the policy of such as through the continent of *Asia* belonged to the *Romans*; and having magnificently rewarded his Soldiers, he returned into *Italy*, and at *Rome* triumphed two dayes together very gloriously, leading amongst other captives *Aristobolus* King of *Judea*, after he had spent five years in his Eastern Expedition.

A. M. 3444.  
V. C. 693.

The conspira-  
cy of Cataline

40. The same year wherein *Mithridates* died, and the Temple of *Jerusalem* was taken, happened a most dangerous conspiracy at *Rome*, by the means of *L. Sergius Catilina*, a *Patrician* by degree, but one of a debauch and infamous life. Some years before he had been accused of incest with *Fabius a Vestal Nun*; but by the means of *Catulus* was acquitted; suspected also to have murdered his son for the love of *Aurilia*, who would not marry one that had children. Having contracted by this looseness of life a vast debt, he grew desperate, and sought for power and command, that he might if possible obtain the sovereignty over all; but being also suspected hereof, he twice received a repulse in standing for the Consulship. The later time it was carried from him by *Cicero*, whom he would have killed in the *Comitia*, and sailed at as a foreigner and upstart, because he was born but of an Equestrian family at *Arpinum* a Town in *Puglia*, a Province (now) of the Kingdom of *Naples*. Hereby driven into extremum disdain and rage, he fell into that course wherein formerly he had been engaged with *Pist* for the destruction of his Country, to whom also *L. Aurelius Cotta* and *L. Manlius Torquatus* (being denied the Consulship which they had sought by indirect means two years before) joyned themselves, and anew plotted the destruction of the Consuls and Senate, the burning of the City, and overthrowing of the Commonwealth, with *Lentulus*, *C. Cethegus*, and others. This *Lentulus* had been Consul seven years before, and now was *Prætor* (as also *Cethegus*) being driven on by a vain confidence he had in the Books of *Sibylla*, which he would often say did portend that the sovereign power, should be in the hands of three *Cornelii*, viz. *Sylla*, *Cinna*, and himself.

Lege Sallust. de  
Conjurazione  
Cataline.  
Orosius l. 6.  
c. 3. §. 6.  
Appian de bello  
civilis lib. 2.  
Dionem l. 37.  
p. 42. E.

Velleium Pater-  
cul. l. 2. c. 34,  
35.  
Livii Epitom.  
lib. 103.

Discovered by  
the means of  
Fulvia.

41. The plot was discovered through *Fulvia* a Courtisan, to whom *Q. Curius* one of the Conspirators (a man that for his debaucheries had by the Censors been removed out of the Senate) blabbed it out, while he boasted to her, that shortly he should be a very considerable man. She gave intelligence to *Cicero*, who out of them two got the whole matter, how, and where they had met, and what designs they had in hand; particularly for his own destruction to be brought about by *L. Valsguntius* a Senator, and *C. Cornelius* of Equestrian rank, under pretence of a kind visit. He appointed guards to the several parts of the City, and on the eighth of *November* (as the year then went) called the Senate together, whither came *Cataline* amongst the rest; but none of the Senators would come near him, so as that part of the bench whereon he sat, was wholly void. *Cicero*, whether fearing him, or angry to see him there, made his first Oration against him, wherein he commanded him to depart the City. He went away late in the night with 300 armed men, and Licitors carrying Axes and Rods before him as a Magistrate, into *Etruria*, gathering Soldiers all along, intending to return and make prey of the City, which upon his departure he had given order to burn, as also to kill *Cicero*, which *Lentulus* and *Cethegus* took upon them to do, as soon as he should come to *Fasula*. In the mean time the Ambassadors of the *Allobroges*, who were come to Town to accuse their Magistrates, were also drawn in, to stir up the *Galls* against the Commonwealth; but declaring it to *Fabius Sanga* their Patron (it was the customs for each Nation

Cicero maketh  
his first Oration  
against  
him.

SECT. 5. or State to have one in the Citie) it came to *Tullie's* ear, and so was prevented.

His second. 42. The day after *Cataline's* departure, the Consul made his second Oration, wherein he Congratulates the People, and Commonwealth, concerning his absence. The Senate judged *Cataline* an Enemy, and *Marius*, with whom in *Etruria* he had joyned; they deprived *Lentulus* of his Office, by whom the Ambassadors had been drawn in, who confessed they had often heard from him what he idely conjectured out of *Sibylla's* books. *Cicero's* third Oration declareth what was done in the Senate. The times being very dangerous, he propounded to the *Fathers* to consider what course was to be taken with *Lentulus*, *Cethegus*, *Stalins*, and *Cassius*, all whom he having secured, this bred a great disturbance; for the Slaves and Dependents of the two former got together a great company of Artificers, and in-deavoured to break in upon the back-side of the *Prator's* house, and rescue their Lords. This being known, the Consul hastened out of the Senate-house, and appointed a watch to be set, then returning, asked the opinions of the Senators. *Silanus* designed Consul for the ensuing year, being first asked his opinion, according to the custom, was for putting them to death, and so were divers others, till *Nero* dissuaded it, judging it better to secure them till *Cataline* were suppressed, and the thing better sifted out. Of this opinion was *C. Julius Caesar*, something suspected to be privy to the design. He would have them dispersed in several Towns in *Italy* by the Consul's appointment, afterwards to be tried, and not put to death altogether unheard. This seemed very plausible, till *Cato* (great Grand-son to *M. Porcius Cato* the *Censor*) very earnestly pressed the contrary, falling foul upon *Caesar* as a suspicious person. Then the Consul made his fourth Oration, wherein he so disputeth of the two contrary opinions, as he evidently inclineth to severity, as fearing what the guilty party might do the night following out of necessity and desperation. Hereby the Senate was induced to put them to death as surprized in the fact, which *Cicero* saw done accordingly ere the house arose. After this *Cataline* was overtaken by *C. Antonius*, the other Consul, near the *Alps*, as he was going into *Gall* to perfect his Levies, and there fighting most valiantly was slain. His men also fought it out to the last, scarcely one of them being taken. So was quashed this most dangerous conspiracy, by the vigilancy especially of *Cicero* the Consul, who wrote an History thereof which is lost. Publick thanks for his great care and pains were given to him, and, at the instance of *Cato*, with divers acclamations of the People, he was first of all others stiled *Father of his Country*.

C. Julius Caesar  
beginneth to  
be eminent.

His birth.

The founda-  
tion of his  
Military skill.

43. Now began *C. Julius Caesar* to be very eminent, two years after these stirrs being sent as *Prator* into the further *Spain*. He was born in the 654 year of the Citie, *C. Marius* the sixth time, and *L. Valerius Flaccus* being Consuls, the same that the Sedition about *Saturninus* happened, on the 12th day of the moneth *Quintilis*, afterward from him named *July* by *Antonius* his Law. His father was *C. Julius Caesar*, who never arose higher than the *Pratorship*, and died suddenly at *Pisa*, as his shoes were drawing on in the morning: his mother was *Aurelia*, the daughter of *C. Cato*; and *Julia* the wife of *Marius* was his Aunt. In his youth having married *Cinna's* daughter (by which he had *Julia*) refusing to put her away, he was in great danger, being with much ado spared by *Sylla*, who as it were foretelling what trouble he would bring to the State, said, that in *Caesar* were many *Marii*. The foundation of his Military skill he laid in *Asia*, under *M. Thermus* the *Prator*, by whom being sent into *Bithynia* to fetch away the Navy, he stayed with *Nicomedes* the King, to whom it was suspected that he prostituted himself. Afterwards in the taking of *Mitylene* he had deserved well, and served under *Servilius Isauricus* in *Cilicia*; but not long. For, hearing of *Sylla's* death, and hoping to make his fortune out of the dissensions raised by *Lepidus*, home he came; but not finding a convenient opportunity, and having to no purpose accused *Dolabella*, to shun the Envy thereby contrai-

ted

Made *Quæ-  
stor*.

Joyneth with  
factious per-  
sons.

Made *Ædilis*.

Getteth by  
bribe-y the  
High Priest-  
hood.

Joyneth again  
with sedicious  
men.

Goeth *Prætor*  
into *Spain*.

ted, he went to *Rhodes* to hear *Apollonius*, whence sayling in Winter, he fell into the hands of the Pirates, and was forced to purchase his freedom with fifty Talents; to revenge which, he procured some ships, & took some of them, whom he nailed to Crosses, though without leave from the *Prator*, who would have sold them. After this he gave a Hop to *Mithridates* his Lieutenant, and saved divers Cities in *Asia*. He assisted *Pompey* the Consul, and others, in restoring the *Tribuneship* which *Sylla* had broken. Shortly after he was made *Quæstor*, and sent into further *Spain*, where going about to administer Justice, he came to *Gades*; and saw *Alexander's* image in the Temple of *Hercules*. It troubled him exceedingly, to consider that he himself had done no memorable thing at that age wherein *Alexander* had Conquered the World, and thereupon he earnestly desired to be recalled, that being in the Citie, he might catch at some opportunity for his own advancement.

44. Having got leave to return ere his time was out, he joyned presently with the *Latine* Colonies in demanding the freedom of the Citie, and had incited them to so ne desperate design, but that the Senate for fear of the worst, retained the Legions some time, which were raised for *Cilicia*. He was suspected to have been of the party of *M. Crassus*, of *P. Sulla* also, and *Antonius* (who having been designed Consuls, were found to have indirectly fought for the Office, and so according to Law forfeited their places to the discoverers) in the beginning of the year to set upon the Senate, and kill whom they pleased. *Crassus* being made *Dictator*, he was to have been Master of the horse-men under him, and all things being ordered according to their pleasure, the Consulship was to have been restored to the other two. Some have affirmed (whom *Suetonius* citeth) that he also conspired with *Cn. Piso*, that the one in the Citie, and the other abroad, should rise, which was prevented by *Piso's* death. Being after this *Ædilis*, he so managed the businesse of publick buildings, and shews, that all was ascribed to him, and nothing to his Colleague; by which means, and others, he procured the favour of the People, and essayed by the Tribunes to get *Egypt* assigned to him, which, now having expelled the King, he thought would afford him an opportunity of an extraordinary command. But he was crossed by the great ones, whom that he might vex, he restored the Trophies erected by *Marius* over the *Cimbri*, which *Sulla* had caused to be pulled down, and suborned those who accused *Rabirius*. By his means especially the Senate had suppressed *Saturninus* the seditious Tribune, and now being brought before *Caesar* as his Judge, he was so severe against him, that nothing so much helped the man in his appeal from him to the People.

45. After his repulse as to *Egypt* he stood for the High-Priesthood, and by large sums (such corruption were those times arrived at) bought so many voices as he carried it from two most powerfull men and his Seniors, having more suffrages out of their two Tribes, than they had out of all the rest besides. Then being *Prator*, he stood for the complices of *Cataline* so earnestly, as he drew to his party the brother of *Cicero* the Consul, and diverse others. After this he assisted *Cacilius Metellus* the Tribune in preferring turbulent Laws, till both of them by a decree of the Senate were displaced, and yet then would he sit, and execute his Office still, till forced to withdraw; then, out of policy he restrained the multitude which flocked to him, and offered to restore him by strong hand, of which the Senate taking notice, gave him thanks with great commendations, and re-invested him in his Office. After this, he fell into another danger, being accused by *Vettius* and *Curius*, as a partner of *Cataline*; yet, appealing to *Cicero* that he had discovered some things to him, he came off, and revenged himself upon his accusers. Then obtained he by law, as we said, the Government of *Spain*, and having contracted a vast debt, put off his Creditors for that time, by the interposition of sureties. Coming into his Province he spent not his time in administering Justice, but pierced farther into the Countrey, and subdued certain people before this untouched, seeking matter for a Triumph, which then to obtain he hastened to

Y y y y

Rome.

A. M. 3944.  
V. C. 693.

## SECT. 5.

*Rome.* But it being now the time for the *Consular Comitia*, he had an extraordinary desire to that Office, and begged of the Senate; that he might stand for it by proxy, for that he could not himself be present, it being against the custom for any that was to Triumph to enter the City ere that day came; for which as yet he was not provided. This, though against the Laws, was not without president, but could not now be granted. Therefore he resolved rather to lose his Triumph than misse of the *Consulship*, and coming to Town, stood for it himself.

46. Great contests hapned about this Office, and he had not carried it, but Obtaineth the that *Pompey* at this time stood in need of it. For, the great ones envying his Consulship by fame, refused to confirm those conditions which he had granted to the Kings, Governours, and Cities of *Asia*: *Lucullus* his Predecessor in the War with *Mithridates*, who since his return had given up himself wholly to idleness and luxury (for he first brought into *Rome* the extravagancy of buildings and feasting) they stirred up, by his authority to promote their opposition, and he presently fell upon him, together with *Metellus Creticus*, who bore him malice also ever since the *Piratic War*. *Lucullus* bade him report his matters singly, and not as a Sovereign Lord expect they should all be confirmed without any consideration: and whereas he had rescinded several of his acts, he desired of the Senate that this might be considered of, whether justly done or otherwise. *Cato*, *Metellus Celer*, the Consul, and *Crassus*, defended *Lucullus*, who boasted that the victory over *Mithridates* was his own; and he obtained that his decrees which *Pompey* had repealed might be in force, and those that *Pompey* made in reference to the Conquered Kings should be null: and he hindered, by the help of *Cato*, a Law which he would have preferred about dividing grounds to his Soldiers. *Pompey* being thus used in the Senate, betook himself to the *Tribunes*, one whereof (*L. Flavius*) that the Law for the grounds might more easily passe, would have given the suffrage to all Citizens, but *Metellus* the Consul so earnestly opposed it, that though the *Tribune* cast him in prison, yet would he not depart from his former sence, which pertinaciousness of him and others, when *Pompey* saw, he desisted, repenting too late that he had disbanded his Armies, and exposed himself thus to the malice of his Enemies.

*Pompey and Crassus made friends, and they three make the conspiracy, called the Triumvirate.*

47. At this time came *C. Julius Caesar* to *Rome* to stand for the Consulship. *Pompey* joyned with him, upon condition that he procuring the Consulship for him, he would confirm his acts. And whereas *Pompey* and *M. Crassus* had formerly been at odds ever since their joyned Consulship which they executed with great discord; *Caesar* now made them friends, and not onely so, but they all three conspired together, that nothing should be done in the Commonwealth which displeased any one of them; which conspiracy, say Writers, was pernicious to the City, the World, and at length to themselves. This conspiracy of these three principal persons, *Varro* (who wrote 450 books) described in one book, & called it *Tenidexvov*, *Triumvirate*, or *Three headed*. *Diodorus Siculus* fetcheth the Original of *Casarean* matters from this year, wherein he travelled into *Egypt*, when young *Ptolemy Dionysus* was King. With this conspiracy also *Asinius Pollio* begun his History of the Civil War. For the falling out of *Caesar* and *Pompey*, did not, as most have thought, procure the Civil Wars; but rather their Conjunction, which was designed to break in pieces the power of the Nobility, as *Plutarch* observeth in the life of *Caesar*. This was the 694th year of the City, the first of the 180th Olympiad, *Herodes* being Archon at *Athens*, the 58th year before the birth of *Christ*, A. M. 3945. *Q. Caelius Metellus*, and *L. Afranius* being Consuls.

A. M. 3946.  
Ol. 180. ann. 2.  
V. C. 695.  
Hircani 5.

## CHAP.

## CHAP. IX.

## Contemporary with the Empire of the Macedonians.

## SECT. 6.

## SECT. VI.

From the beginning of the *Triumvirate* or first *Triumvirate*, to the absoluteness of *Julius Caesar*, containing the space of sixteen years.

*C. S. A. R.* by the help of *Pompey* obtained the Consulship; but not without the assistance of money also. There were two other Competitors, *L. Lucius* and *M. Bibulus*, whereof he was, much for the former, having agreed with him, that because he was lesse in favour, but very rich, he should give money for them both through the *Centuries*. But the Grandees understanding this, and fearing if he had him for his Colleague he might do what he listed, they caused *Bibulus* to offer more, they themselves contributing to the expence, which corruption *Cato* denied not to be for the good of the Commonwealth, now brought by the means of such evil members into absolute danger and necessity. *Caesar* confirmed *Pompey's* acts according to agreement, neither *Lucullus* nor any other opposing it, and *Pompey* procured, that what honour *Lucullus* had promised to certain men of *Pontus*, should not be confirmed by the Senate, filling the City with Soldiers, and by force casting him and *Cato* out of the Forum. In this his first Consulship he sold alliances with *Rome*, and also Kingdoms; and, to procure the favour of the Commons, preferred a Law for dividing certain grounds in *Campania* (which had been preserved to defray publick charges) to such Citizens as had three children or more. This he caused to passe by force, and compelled all *Plebeians* to swear to observe the Law, and the Senators also, though *Cato* urged them to refuse; for they did it to save their lives, he having caused the People to decree, that it should be capital for any to deny it. He had recourse to the People in all cases, making little use of the Senate, which he seldom called together. *Bibulus* his Colleague having opposed his actions for some time to no purpose, kept himself at home, and stirred not for the remaining part of the year. *Caesar* then governed alone, and was much courted by the *Equites* or *Knights*, who having farmed the custome, desired an abatement of the rent. The Senate refused to remit anything, but he did their business for them, procuring the People to abate a third part. By this and other wayes of shews and largesses, he so inveigled the multitude, that he got *Gall* to be decreed to him for five years, with four Legions, and for the remaining part of the year, spent it in seeking how to establish himself for the time to come.

By inveigling the People he procur-eth *Gall* for five years.

He marieth his daughter *Julia* to *Pompey*, and otherwise provideth for his own interest.

*Clodius* the Tribune

2. Knowing how considerable a man *Pompey* was, to bind him faster to him, he gave him in marriage his daughter *Julia*. He procured two of his own creatures, *A. Gabinus* and *L. Calpurnius Piso* (whose daughter he had married after *Cornelia's* death) to be designed Consuls for the following year, as also *Vatinus* and *Clodius* Tribunes, though the later had abused his wife (for he was a person exceedingly loose that way) having in womens clothes crept into the meetings proper onely to that Sex, for which he was accused as a breaker of the sacred customes by *Cicero*. He appeared not against him though he put away his wife, nay he helped him to his place, as it's thought, out of opposition to the Orator (who was wont to declame against the combination of the three great ones, as pernicious to the Commonwealth) and in way of requital for the help hee had afforded him in the procurement of *Gall*, whither, when the time of his Consulship was expired, he departed. This year was *Titus Livius* the Historiographer born at *Padua*.

3. *Clodius* out of malice to *Cicero* seeking for the *Tribuneship*, whereas he was a *Patrician*, thereby incapable of the place, he procured himself to be adopted by a *Plebeian*, and so with the losse of his former dignity obtained it. Then did he prefer a Law, that *whoever had put to death any Roman Citizen unheard, water and fire should be forbidden him*, which amounted

*Ensch.*

## SECT. 6.

to as much as banishment; and set *Cicero* his day of appearance, for putting to death *Cethegus*, *Lentulus* and others of *Catalines* conspiracy unheard. *Pompey* at first stood stiffly for the accused, saying, he would rather dye himself than *Tully* should be hurt; but *Cesar* took him off, because *Cicero* having desired to go his Lieutenant into *Gall*, upon *Clodius* his seeming willing to be reconciled, had changed his resolution, and hereby displeased him. This is certain, that he was wont to defend others to earnestly, was very timorous in his own cause (which hapned also to *Demosthenes*) and chose rather to depart the City, and late at night, than undergo his trial, after which *Pompey* had forsaken him, and the Consuls would give him little hopes. After his departure *Clodius* banished him by decree of the People 400 miles from *Italy*, banished his Villages and his house, on the plot whereof he built a Temple to *Liberty*, and set his goods to sale. He went to *Thessalonica* a City of *Macedonia*, being by letters of the Senate commended to such Kings, or Governours, as into the Dominions of whom he might have occasion to come.

Banisheth *Cicero*.

Sends *Cato* to spoil the King of *Cyprus* most unjustly of his estate.

*Cicero* recalled.

4. *Clodius* having thus rid himself of *Cicero*, for that *Cato's* presence was very troublesome to him, sent him also out of the way, under colour of doing him honour. He preferred a Law against *Ptolemy* King of *Cyprus* (brother to *Antony* of *Egypt*) for the spoiling him of all his estate, and reducing that Island into the form of a Province, though this man had nothing ill deserved. He was indeed very vicious, if that could have given them any right to what he had; but the truth was, *Clodius* had been taken by the *Prætors*, and sending to him for money to redeem him, he would part but with two talents, and therefore he took this occasion to be revenged on him and *Cato* both together. The King hearing of *Cato's* coming, killed himself, and some said that he cast his treasures into the Sea. *Cato* sold his goods, and brought a great sum of money into the treasury. But, by this time *Pompey* repented that he had forsaken *Cicero*; for, *Clodius* wanting other matter now to work on, vexed all the great ones, and repealed some things which he had done, so that now he set himself to have him recalled. *Clodius* withstood it, but thereupon the Senate passed a Decree, that nothing should be heard before his restitution was propounded. *Lentulus* the Consul propounded it on the Calends of *January*; but the matter being hindered, several ways, was brought down to the People on the eighth before the Calends of *February*, where was great endeavour used by *T. Annius Milo* and *P. Sextius* two other Tribunes for his restitution. *Clodius* their Colleague taking some Fencers belonging to his brother *Appius*, fell upon the multitude and killed many: The Tribunes were wounded, and *Q. Cicero* brother of the banished (newly returned from *Asia*, which he had governed three years) lay for dead amongst the slain. Now the People began seriously to bethink themselves. *Milo* ventured to draw *Clodius* by force to judgement, and *Pompey* possessing himself of the Forum, put the People to their suffrages, who with universal consent voted his restitution. The Senate decreed honour to such Cities as had entertained him, and that his house and Villages should be re-edified at the publick charge. So *Cicero* who had been banished the year before about the Calends of *April*, returned this year in the month *Septilis*, or, the day before the Nones of *September*, and therefore was absent about sixteen months. As *Plutarch* more rightly computeth than *Simpson*, who strangely forgetting himself, blaming him, for saying he returned in the thirteenth month, contendeth that from the first of *April* to the month *Septilis* or *August* of the following year, intervene but fourteen months. Now *P. Cornelius Lentulus* and *Q. Cæcilius Metellus* were Consuls.

5. *Cesar* having obtained of the People *Gall* within the *Alpes*, and *Hydruntum*, with three Legions, the Senate added, that beyond the *Alpes* (which in part we now call *France*) with another Legion. His first work was to repel the *Helvetians* (now called *Swissers*) who having burnt their houses and resolved to seek our more convenient habitations, intended to passe over the *Rhane*, and so through his Province. He having intelligence thereof, ha-

A. M. 3947.  
V. C. 686.

Leg. Plutar-  
chum in *Cato-  
ne* *Antony*.

A. M. 3948.

Vide *Cæsaris*  
comment. de  
bello *Gallico* l. 1.  
*Plutarch* in *Cæ-  
sare*.  
*Dionem* l. 38.  
p. 78. E.

## SECT. 6.

*Cæsar's* acts  
in *Gall* the  
first year.

*Cæsar* M. A.  
in *Gall* l. 1.  
p. 123. C.

sted to *Genova*, and pulled down the bridge there. They then sent to him to desire that they might passe through his Province without offence, to consider whereof he took time till the Ides of *April*, and in the mean time raised a well twenty miles in length, from the Lake *Lemanus* to the Hill *Jura* (which divideth *Burgundy* from *Switzerland*) and thereby hindered their passage. They then bent their course to *Abraris* (a River in *France* now called *Saone*) where in their passage he overthrew and dispersed them. They sent him another message to no purpose, and repelled 4000 of his Horse which too greedily chased them; but he continually followed, and hindring them from wasting the Country, at length quite routed and put them to flight; of 348000, 130000 only remaining, who also shortly after were forced for want of provisions to yield, and giving hostages, and delivering up their arms, to return from whence they came; and rebuild their Towns and Villages. After this was done, the *Galls* complained to him of *Arminius* King of the *Germans*, who had seized on a third part of the Country belonging to the *Sequani* (now *Burgundians*) and intended to take the rest also. He first sent to him, but this being in vain, he led his Army against him, and they came to an encounter, which succeeding not, he overthrew him also, and he fled into *Germany* in a little boat, two of his wives and as many daughters being taken. These things *Cæsar* accomplished in the first Summer, in the Consulship of his two creatures, *Piso* and *Gabinus*.

The acts of  
his second  
year.

The third.

Great confluence  
to him  
at *Luca*.

6. The following year all the *Belge* (now inhabitants of the Low-countries for the most part) except those about *Rheims*, conspired together against the *Romans*, and besieged *Bibrax* (now *Beaune*) and another fort kept by *Q. Titinius*. *Cæsar* hereupon marched to the River *Axona* (now *Le Disme*) and there overthrew them, after which divers yielded themselves; but the *Neuvii* (a People about *Townway* in *Flanders*) a warlike and severe Nation, stood out, with whom joyned the *Atrebares* and *Veromandui* (now inhabitants of *Artois*, and of part of *Picardie*) but these he utterly overthrew, scarcely any escaping out of the field. This was done that year wherein *Cicero* was recalled. In the third year, purposing for *Italy* himself, he sent *Servius Galba* with the twelfth Legion and part of the Horse against the *Arminii*, *Veragres*, and *Sadaceni*, Nations inhabiting from the River *Rhene* as high as the *Alpes*, because he would have the passage thereabout cleared for traffick. *Galba* defeated a great multitude of them, which set upon him in his Camp. *Cæsar* not long after returning, found the *Veneti* and other Nations of *Gallia Calpica* in rebellion, who gave him trouble enough, but at length he overthrew the *Veneti* at Sea, *Crassus* subdued the *Sontines*, and the greatest part of *Aquitaine*, and *Sabinus* the *Æelli* and maritime Cities. Then fell he upon the *Adriani* (a People near *Calais* in *Picardy*) and the *Menapii* also, these two Nations still being in Arms. But, Winter growing on, foul weather secured them in the marshes, and caused him to remove his men to their winter-quarters.

7. Now by this time he had got great store of wealth, wherewith he not onely paid his debts, but made him great store of friends by gifts and contributions. Herewith he corrupted the *Ediles*, *Prætors*, *Consuls* and their wives. Passing over the *Alpes* this Winter into *Luca*, where he took up his head-quarters, so great concourse was made to him, that there were present 200 Senators, amongst whom were *Crassus* and *Pompey*, and so many *Pro-consuls* and *Prætors*, that 120 bundles of rods have been seen together at his gates. He fearing he might be recalled, procured *Pompey* and *Crassus* to obtain the Consulship for the following year, and continue him his employment in *Gall* for other five years. *Cæsar* persuaded *L. Domitius* to stand for the Consulship, telling him he should contend not for Magistracy but for liberty against the Tyrants. But *Pompey* fearing *Cæsar's* vehemency, left, having the whole Senate in his power, he should persuade the People to what was best, sent some armed men upon *Domitius* as he went down to the Forum, who killed the slave that carried the light before them, dispersed them all, *Cato* being the last that fled, who received a wound on his arm whilst he fought

*Flavian* l. 3. c. 10.  
*Livii* epitom.  
l. 103.  
*Grægorium* l. 6. c. 7.

*Cæsar* Comment.  
l. 2.

Lib. 3.  
*Dio* lib. 39.

*Sueton* in *Julio*.  
*Appian* belli  
civilis lib. 2.  
*Plutarch* in  
*Pompeio*, & in  
*Crasso*.  
*Dio* lib. 39.  
p. 108.  
*Patercul* l. 2.  
c. 46.

## SECT. 5.

Pompey and Crassus according to agreement obtained the Consulships by force, and continued to Caesar his Command for other five years.

fought for *Domitius*. Pompey and Crassus having thus by force obtained the Consulship, bore themselves nothing more moderately afterwards. The people being about to give *Caro* the *Prætorship*, Pompey pretended a strange fight from Heaven, and dismissed the Assembly: then corrupting the Tribes with money, he procured *Antias* and *Naiinus* to be chosen *Prætors*. Then by the help of *Trebonius* the Tribune they procured Laws, which continued to *Caesar* (as they had agreed) his Government in *Gall* for other five years, assigned *Syria* to *Crassus* with the *Parthian War*; and to Pompey all *Africa*, and the *Spains* with four Legions, whereof two he lent to *Caesar* for the *Gallick Wars*. Pompey being permitted to Govern his Provinces by Deputies stayed at *Rome*, where he spent his time in shews and pastimes. Crassus much rejoiced in his part, scarcely being able to contain himself abroad and at home, contrary to his wonted gravity, breaking forth into Childish expressions of joy. For, he sleighted the thoughts of *Syria* and *Parthia*, as one who would so order his affairs, that the exploits of *Lucullus* against *Tigranos*, and of Pompey in the War with *Mithridates*, should seem but toys, extending his hopes as far as *Bactria*, the *Indians*, and the utmost *Ocean*.

8. The Tribunes hindered all they could, the Consuls from raising men, and laboured to repeal the Laws made for their expeditions. Pompey was herewith well enough contented, having sent his Lieutenants into his Provinces, and being unwilling to leave the City, as he pretended, because of the charge of Provisions committed to him, which *Cicero*, in way of recompence for his labour in his restitution, had procured him from the Senate, that so he might have authority all over the *Roman Empire*. But Crassus betook himself to force, which when the Tribunes saw themselves unable to withstand, they desisted, but loaded him with curses, and when he made the accustomed prayers in the Capitol for prosperous success, they spoke of unlook auspicious and prodigies which had hapned. *Atticus* the Tribune laboured to hinder him from going, many exclaiming against it as an unworthy thing that he should fall with War upon those, who had nothing ill deserved of the *Romans*, but were at peace with them. This made him fly to Pompey to conduct him forth, at the sight of whom those who came to stop him gave way. But *Atticus* meeting him, earnestly exhorted him to desist, and when that would not do, sent a *Viator* to lay hold of him; but the rest of the Tribunes not permitting this, and the *Viator* not quite dismissing him, *Atticus* got before to the Gate where he had some fire ready, and as Crassus came by, throwing his Odours upon the Coals, devoted him with horrible and bitter curses, invoking certain terrible and unheard of gods. These secret, and ancient execrations the *Romans*, thought to be of that force as no man ever escaped destruction to whom they were denounced, and also proved unfortunate to the denouncer, and therefore they were seldom used, and Crassus was blamed on the behalf of the City. \* *Florus* calleth this Tribune *Metellus*, and others write that the Tribunes generally thus devoted him, but it appeareth, \* from *Cicero*, that *P. Atticus* was principal in this action.

Rifteth the Temple of Jerusalem.

9. Crassus in his march rifted the Temple of *Jerusalem*, and took away the Treasures which Pompey touched not. He spent many dayes in weighing the Treasure of the Idol, called *Atargatis* by the *Syrians*, and by the Greeks *Devceto*, the Goddess of *Hierapolis*, otherwise called *Edeffa*, and *Bambyce*, and *Magog* by the *Syrians*. In his whole passage he shewed more covetousnesse than valour, lifting men, and then for money discharging them again. He neglected his opportunities of falling on the *Parthians* unprovided, and the friendship of the *Armenian King*, who offered him to invade *Parthia* through his Kingdom, as also of refreshing his Army in some City, (as *Crassus* advised him) till he had certain news of the *Parthians*, or else passing down the River to *Seleucia*, where he might have Provisions by water, and could not be compassed in by the *Parthians*. This later Counsel he rejected by the cunning insinuations of *Abgarus* the *Ostroënian* (otherwise called *Angarus*, *Mazares*, *Mazarus*, *Marachus*, *Maorus*, *Ariamnes*, and

A. M. 3950.  
Ol. 181. ann. 2.  
V. C. 699.  
Hircani 9.

Plutarch. &  
Dio ut prius.

\* Lib. 3. cap. 11.  
\* Lib. 1. de  
Divinat.

Leg. Plutarch.  
in Crasso.  
Dionem lib. 40.  
Florum l. 3. c. 11.  
Orosium lib. 6.  
cap. 13.  
Velleium lib. 2.  
cap. 40.  
Strab. lib. 16.

## SECT. 6.

\* In Tacitus (Annal. 4. 12.) Is written *Abgarus*, but *Lipsius* noteth upon it that in the Vatican Copy 'tis ever *Abgarus*, and was common to all the *Arabian Kings*, as *Ptolemy* to those of *Egypt*, in *Aprian* 'tis *Abgar*.

A. M. 3952.  
V. C. 701.

\* *Abgarus* by several) the *Regulus*, or *Petty Prince* of the *Arabians*, who having formerly been a friend and Ally of the *Romans*, had now applied his mind to the *Parthian*, and feeding Crassus with money, to conceal his Treachery, gave him notice of whatsoever was done. His perswaded him to leave off thoughts of *Seleucia* and *Ctesiphon*, and go straight against *Surenus* and *Sillax*, the Kings Captains. This he did, and thereby first losing his son, a choice young man, he himself was by *Surenus* circuventured under pretence of a Treaty, and either slain by his Enemies, or killed by some of his own men, to prevent his falling into their hands. This hapned at *Sinnaca*, a City of *Mesopotamia*, on the sixth of the Month of *June*; as *Ovid* informeth us; 20000 men were slain, and 10000 taken, according to *Plutarch* (not to name other accounts) so that the East being almost destitute of forces, many Provinces thereof revolted; but by the care, industry, and valour of *C. Crassus* the Quæstor of Crassus (the same who afterwards with *Brutus*, killed *Julius Caesar*) *Syria* was appeased. This King of *Parthia* against whom Crassus misadvised (called *Orodes*, *Herodes*, and *Hyrôdes*) was something skilled in the *Greek* tongue, and other learning. *Artabazus*, or *Artavasdes* the *Armenian* (that first offered kindness to Crassus) had reconciled himself to the *Parthian*, who was now with him. He being also learned, (for he wrote Tragedies, Orations, and Histories) some of *Euripides* his *Baccha* was repeated, and the head of Crassus was brought in as it were by chance, and thrown at their feet. But *Surenus* was afterwards punished for his treachery, being killed by his Master who envied him his glory. And *Orodes* himself having lost his son *Pacorus* in a battle against the *Romans*, and fallen into that kind of Dropsie, called *Anasarca*, *Phraates* (or *Phraortes*) his other son gave him *Aconitum*, or *Wolfsbane*, which working so upon him, as with it self it brought out the humour, and gave him ease, he made short work of it, and strangled him.

Whereby ene  
head of the  
Triumphtina is  
cut off.

Gabinus ban-  
nished.

Caesar defeat-  
eth the Ger-  
mans.

Britain.

The name,  
whence de-  
rived

10. Thus perished Crassus (a) (who was so rich that he would have none to accounted, but he that could by his own Revenues maintain an Army) and one of the heads of the *Triumphtina* was hereby cut off. This laid the foundation of the Civil War betwixt the other two, for he, whilst he lived, balancing them, when he was gone, Caesar must bring under Pompey before he could be Chief. Whilst Crassus warred against the *Parthians*, *Gabinus*, who had been Consul when *Cicero* was banished, reduced (b) into his Kingdom *Ptolemy Auletes*, whom his subjects had expelled. Then was he *Proconsul* of *Syria*; but at his return being accused, especially for making War upon *Egypt* (which was supposed to be forbidden by the *Verbes* of *Sibylla*) and ready to be torn in pieces by the people, he was yet acquitted by corrupted Judges (or *Latins* the Tribune) of treason, but banished, as upon other accounts, so chiefly for that he had served out of his Province 100000 *Drachmas*, or *Denarii*, and was afterwards recalled by Caesar. In the mean time several Nations of *Germany*, driven out by the *Suevi* (not *Suedes* (in *Latine Sueci*) but *Grisus* now for the most part) came into *Gall* to seek new fears, and there oured the *Menapii* of their dwellings. Caesar defeated them, killing many thousands, and pursued them over the *Rhine*, on which he laid a wooden bridge, into the Countrey of the *Sigambri* (now *Guelderland*) and freed the *Ubii* (now Inhabitants of *Callen*) from the Dominion of the *Suevi*, to whom they had been Tributaries. Then returned he to the *Morini*, or into *Picardy*, and thence came over into *Britain*.

11. *Britain*, or *Britany*, which also is *Albion*, being in *Greek* *ΒΡΕΤΑΝΙΑ*, *ΒΡΕΤΑΝΙΚΗ*, *ΒΡΕΤΑΝΙΣ*, *ΑΛΒΙΟΝ*, and *ΑΛΟΤΩΝ*, was by the *Romans* called *Britania* and *Remania*. It is most probable, saith *Camden*, the Inhabitants were called *Britanni* from their painted bodies, for whatsoever is thus painted a red coloured, in their ancient Countrey speech they call *Brith*, having been of old much given to paint themselves, as many Writers do testifie. Now the ancient *Greeks* who sayled by the Coasts, understanding that the Nation was called *Brith*, might

Consul, Cam-  
denum in Bri-  
tania.

unto



## SECT. 6.

unto it add *Tania* (which word in Greek, as the *Glossaries* shew, becometh a Region) and thereof made the compound name: *Britania*; that is *Brioni-Land*; which is corrupted into *Britavia*, but by *Lucretius* and *Cæsar* the two first *Romans* that make mention thereof is truly called *Britania*. In confirmation of this opinion *Cambden* observeth, that in the names of well-nigh all the ancient *Britains*, there appeareth some signification of a colour; which no doubt (he saith) arose from this kind of painting. The Red colour is of the *Britains* called *Coch* and *Goch*, which in his judgement lieth Couched, in these names, *Cogidunnus*, *Argentocoxus*, and *Segomax*. The Black colour called *Du*, sheweth itself in *Mandubratius*, *Carimandus*, *Togodumnus*, *Bandunica*, *Cogidunnus*. The White colour called *Gwin*, in *Kenutius* and *Immannentius*. The Waterish called *Gwellwe* in *Velloctatus*, *Carviljus* and *Sagella*. The Blew, which they call *Glass* in *Cuniglasus*, and he proceedeth further. But this Learned man coming to speak of the time wherein *Britannia* came to be known abroad, denieth that the *Britains* were with *Hercules* at the rape of *Hésione*, that *Ulysses* was ever in *Britain*, that the *Britains* bestowed any Presents upon *Cato*, that King *Alexander* the Great, or *Hannibal*, was ever in the Island; he doubteth whether ever the ship of *Hiero* mentioned by *Athenaus* came hither; yet thinketh that the *Britains* were mingled with the *Cimbri* and *Galls*, in their expeditions into *Italy* and *Greece*.

*Cambden's* arguments that *Britain* was but known lately.

12. But as the *Romans*, *Galls*, and *Spaniards* were unknown to *Herodotus*, and the ancient *Greek* Geographers, so of this mind he ever was, that it was late ere the *Greeks* and *Romans* heard of the *Britains* name. For he judgeth that little book of the World, which goeth abroad under the name of *Aristotle*, and maketh mention of the *Britans*, of *Albion* and *Hierne*, to be of later dayes by far than that Philosopher, as the best learned men (saith he) have judged. He accounteth *Polybius* the antientest *Greek* vvriter that mentioneth the *British Isles*; who yet knew nothing of them: then doth he, in reference to other Nations, count it but a fable that *Himilco* the *Carthaginian*, being commanded by his Superiours to discover the Western Sea-Coasts of *Europe*, entered into this Isle many years before that time. And the first *Latin* Author to his knowledge that made mention of *Britain* was *Lucretius*, in his Verses concerning the difference of aire. Now that *Lucretius* lived but a little before *Cæsar* no man denieth: at what time we are taught out of *Cæsar* himself, that *Drumacius* King of the *Soissons*, and the most mighty Prince of all *Gall*, Governed *Britain*, which, as also appeareth from *Cæsar*, is onely to be understood of the Maritime Coasts. Howbeit, *Diodorus Siculus* writeth that *Britain* had experience of no foreigners rule; for neither *Dionysus* (or *Bacchus*) nor *Hercules*, nor any other worthy, or *Demigod* have we heard (saith he) to have attempted War upon that people. Now *Cæsar*, who for his noble acts is called *Divus*, was the first that subdued the *Britans*, and forced them to pay a certain Tribute. From his time (saith *Cambden*) and no further off must the Writer of our History fetch the beginning of his work, if he thoroughly weigh with judgement what the Learned *Varro* hath in time past written (viz. of the three distinctions of times which we have formerly mentioned, uncertain before the Flood, Fabulous before the *Olympiads*, and Historical since the beginning of them) and my self already heretofore signified. This most learned man mentions this division of *Varro*, because that the *British History* of *Geffrey of Monmouth* taketh its beginning 333 years before the first *Olympiad*. This History we must absolutely disclaim as utterly Fabulous in reference to King *Brutus*, and other fictions depending on his story. But whether or no *Britain* was not known abroad till so late time as our *Antiquary* judgeth, must be examined for the honour of our Countrey, saving ever that respect which is due (and that justly) unto his name, and will not be at all diminished, seeing the contest is betwixt him also, and *Bocharius* himself.

13. The controversie is decided clearly against *Cambden* if two things

can

## SECT. 6.

The contrary asserted.

can but be made out. 1. That the *Cassiterides* or *Istanus ætinnæ* were known very antiently, and 2. That the *Cassiterides* are no other than the *British Isles*. The first is proved from the testimony of many, that the *Phœnicians* were wont to trade to the *Cassiterides*, and thence to fetch plenty of Tinne. *Serabo* affirmeth it, and that they first traded thither alone from *Gades*, hiding from others this course of traffick, insomuch that a certain *Phœnician* Sailor being chased by a *Roman* Vessel, chose rather to run his ship aground and suffer shipwrack, to cause his pursuers to miscary, than to reveal the matter, for which fidelity, having escaped himself, he had his losse made up out of the publick Treasury at his return to *Carthage*. *Pliny* also writeth, (b) in the Chapter of the first inventors, that *Midacritus* first carried Lead from the *Island* *Cassiteris*. For *Midacritus* is to be read *Melcarthus* or *Melcarthus* the *Phœnician Hercules*, according to *Sanchoniathon*, whom the *Phœnicians* make Author of the Western voyages. (c) *Herodotus* acknowledgeth he knew not where the *Cassiterides* were; but that there were some then he acknowledgeth also, whence Tinne came to them the *Greeks*, and from him it appeareth, that they were situate in the utmost limits of *Europe*. The *Phœnicians* being unwilling that any should know them but themselves, the *Greeks* bought Tin and Lead, either of them, or the *Venes* or *Narbonenses*, to whom it was wont to be carried by Land in a journey of thirty dayes, as *Diodorus* telleth us. (d) *Dionysius Periegetes* mentioneth them under the name of *Hesperides*, and so doth *Izetzus*. *Festus Anienus* speaketh of them under the name of *Cestrymnides*, expressly of the sailing of the *Phœnicians* to them, and that *Hamilco*, who was sent from the Senate of *Carthage* to discover the West, came thither, as he himself recorded, whom *Festus* professeth to follow in the description of the West, having made his collections out of the depth of the *Punick Annals*. These things considered, prove sufficiently, that the *Cassiterides* were known in very antient times.

His arguments refuted.

14. For the second, that the *British Isles* are those *Cassiterides* or *Stannaries*, there needs no proof, *Cambden* himself confessing, nay proving by many arguments, that the *Islands* of *Silly* lying off from the Promontory of *Cornwal* eight leagues, and in number 145, are the very same that from the plenty of Tin were called *Cassiterides*, from their site *Hesperides*, and *Cestrymnides* from *Cestrymnis* the Promontory of the *Ariabris*, now *Gallia* in *Spain*, over against which they lye. Now for the consequence of the thing, can any imagine that these Islands should be so long known, and not *Britain* itself to which they lye so close, and from which they are deservedly called *British Isles*? And what reason is there to think (as *Cambden* doth) that such dream as believe that *Hamilco* came hither? It's a wonder he should say, that there's nothing for it but a Verse or two of *Festus Anienus*; when *Festus* saith, that he read the story of the whole Navigation, described by *Hamilco* himself in the *Punick Annals*. *Cambden* himself contendeth, that from the *Cassiterides* was Lead first of all carried into *Greece*; whence it followeth, that they were known before the time of *Homer*, who maketh mention of that metal. As for what he urgeth concerning *Polybius*, that he was utterly ignorant of these parts, if it were granted that he was, yet the *Phœnicians*, who in the *Heroick* times sent out Colonies into the Ocean beyond *Gades*, knew these Coasts sufficiently. But *Cambden* mistook the Historian, as may appear from all that passage read together, which onely importeth, that as it was not known whether *Afia* and *Africk* on the South side were terminated by the Sea, so neither whether the Sea flowed about the Northern parts of *Europe* that lye above *Narbon*, which truly at this day we know not certainly, though in so much light. That this interpretation is to be made, and that *Polybius* did not mean, that in his age whatever lay above *Narbon* was unknown, and that they dreamed who spoke or wrote any thing of it, hence appeareth. For he himself accurately described the Fountains of *Rhodanus*, with *Corbilon* upon *Ligeris*, and many other places of *Gall* above *Narbon*. And in his third book he promiseth he would write of what lay beyond the Sea, and what was there remarkable, nay (which is especially to

2 z z z

be

## SECT. 6.

be noted) of the British Isles and making of Tin. That he performed his promise in the Books that are lost, appeareth from \* Strabo, who telleth us, that Polybius describing the regions of Europe, said, he would let passe the ancients, and inquire into such as reprehended them, as Dicæarchus, and Eratosthenes, who last of all had handled Geography, and Pytheas who had imposed upon many. For, he (Pytheas) said he had not viewed all the soil of Britain; but the Island was above 40000 (Radia or furlongs I suppose) in compasse.

15. From this place it appeareth, that several whom Polybius calleth Τῆς ἀρχαίας or ancients wrote of these parts, before either Dicæarchus or Eratosthenes, Pytheas, or himself. Now Eratosthenes, who, as he saith, was the last that handled Geography, Suidas writeth to have been born in the 126 Olympiad, which was celebrated in the 37 year of the Seleucide, the seventh of Antiochus Soter, the ninth of Ptolomy Philadelphus, and the 478 year of the City, when Q. Fabius Gurgæ and C. Gentius Clepsina were Consuls, Pyrrhus then warring in Sicily, 274 years before the birth of Christ. But Dicæarchus boistereth in Athenæus, that he had Aristotle for his Master; and then Pytheas who was cited by both, must needs have preceded them. Yet these Writers were but of late in comparison of Orpheus the most ancient Poet, one of the Argonautæ, by whom Cambden himself affirmeth Britain to have been described. Although in truth Orpheus was not Author of those Poems fathered on him, but Onomacritus an Athenian Poet, who lived under the Pisistratide, as both (a) Clemens Alexandrinus and (b) Tassent inform us; yet two advantages we have hereby. For first, Cambden is inconsistent, denying that Britain was known to the ancient Greeks; and secondly, this Island must have been known then long before the former Geographers; for the Pisistratide were banished Athens in the third year of the 67 Olympiad, the twelfth of Darius Hystaspis, the 244 of the City (at the same time that Tarquinus was banished) 508 years before the birth of Christ, though they write that he flourished in the 50 Olympiad, in the first year whereof Pisistratus indeed got the Sovereignty over that City. These things sufficiently prove, that Britain was known of old to several Nations, though we mentioned not what Bocharius probably conjectureth concerning the Etymology of the name. The Phœnicians trading hither for Lead or Tin, might justly call it Barar-Anac, that is, The Land of Lead or Tin, as the Greeks Cassiteris; and this might easily be changed into Britanica. Anac signifieth both Lead and Tin, no places in the World are so fruitful of either as the British Isles. And it may seem no wonder that the Word should be so altered, seeing that from Phœnice are derived Panicus, Punicus, Pannicus, and Panus. He also giveth other marks of the Phœnicians their passage in those Islands, in the 39 Chapter of the first Book of that excellent Work entituled Canaan, concerning the Colonies and Language of that People, to which wee refer the studious in Antiquity, having thus farre in some sort seemed to vindicate the honour of our Country, yet with submission to the impartially Learned Reader. Now to return to the course of our History.

16. The occasion of this Expedition was given by the Britains. They had sent a continual supply to the Galls, almost in all their Wars against the Romans, and therefore he resolved to use this advantage, and passe over this Summer, though it was well spent, judging it would be worth his labour, though he but viewed the country, and took notice of the Hayens and Natives, of any whereof the Galls could give him but very small intelligence. He sent Volusenus beforehand to make what discovery he could, after whose return, having received the Morini into friendship, that he might have no Enemies at his back, about two of the clock at night he put forth to Sea, and at ten in the morning got to the Coasts of Britain, where he might see all the shoar full of men to oppose him, for they had received intelligence of his coming. He perceived there was no good landing place where he was, and therefore staying for the Fleet till three of the clock, he sailed eight miles further.

Here,

## SECT. 6.

Here, though on an even shoar, was he so opposed, that his Soldiers fought not with their wonted alacrity, because their ships being great and deep, could not come near the Land, untill he got more shallow Vessels, and the Ensign-bearer of the tenth Legion leaping out, drew others moved with shame after him. No order was kept in the fight, but every one as he leaped forth into the water, joynd himself to the next Ensign. Caesar sending out continually fresh supplies of men, at length landed all his Army, and the Britains fled.

17. His horse being not come over, he could not pursue them, but they presently sent to treat, promising to give Hostages, and do further what he should enjoyn them. He accepted of their offer, and some Hostages they delivered, promising to give up the rest with convenience. But it hapned that the horse being come within kenning, was driven by the tide (the Moon now being at full) to the Westward, and forced back to the Continent; the ships which brought over the Legions, lying at Anchor, by tempest were miserably shattered, and no Provisions had Caesar brought over, as not intending to Winter here. The Britains, having knowledge of these things, agreed amongst themselves to break their promise, concluding, that if they could but intercept or destroy his Army, besides getting much plunder, they should not be invaded for the time to come. They then set upon the seventh Legion as it was reaping Corn, but Caesar being informed by the Watch of a greater dust than ordinary that way, suspected what the matter was, and going to the rescue killed many, and burnt their houses for a good compasse. Hereupon they sent to him again for peace. He required a double number of Hostages, whom he commanded them to send over into the Continent; for the Equinoctial being near, he would not in Winter trust himself, and the Army, in such weak Vessels. Going on board about midnight he came safe to Land; but 41 Vessels being driven, the men were forced to Land at another place, whereof 300 were presently besieged by the Morini, (who before had been reconciled to Caesar) out of hope of some booty. They were presently rescued, and T. Labienus was sent to chastise the Rebels, who being reduced to obedience, he, and L. Cotta harrazed the Countrey of the Menapii, who hid themselves in the thick Woods. Then was the Army led into its Winter quarters, in Belgia. The first expedition of Caesar into Britain fell out in the second year of the 181 Olympiad, the 699th of the Citie, 53 years before the birth of Christ, A. M. 3950. Cn. Pompeius the Great, and M. Licinius Crassus (both of them the second time) being Consuls.

18. Caesar going into Italy according to his custom, ordered a great Navy to be provided. Having dispatch'd his businesse within the Alps, he went into Illyricum against the Pmista, who had invaded his Province. After this having settled things amongst the Treviri (or them of Triers) who neither came to Councils, nor were otherwise obedient, he took ship at the Haven Iccius (now Calis) with five Legions, and 2000 horse, at Sun-set, and being for some time carried down by the Tide towards the right hand, arrived again in Britain the next day by noon. The Natives seeing a great number of ships (for in all there were 800 Vessels) for that they had falsified their word (all but two sorts of people, who sent their Hostages over into Belgia) for fear withdrew themselves into the Woods. Caesar pursuing them took one of their Fortresses, which they made onely with great Trees laid together, and when he was busied in skirmishing, word came that his Navy was shattered by another Tempest, whereupon he retreated, and took care for the repairing of such ships as were fit to be mended (four being utterly lost) in which work ten dayes were spent with the great labour of the Soldiers. Drawing then up such as were repaired, and fortifying the Camp, he returned. In the mean time the Britains had made Cassivellaun (whose Dominions lay North the River of Thames, and with whom before Caesar's coming they had waged War) their General against the Romans. At first the Britains fighting from their Waggons put their Enemies to it, and killed Q. Laberius Durus a

Z z z z z 2

Tri-

His successe.

His retreat.

He returneth.

Cassivellaun  
General of  
the Britains.

(a) Stromas. l. i.  
(b) Ovar. con-  
tra Græcos pag.  
173. Edit.  
una cum Athe-  
nægora &  
Theophyla.

Caesar Comment.  
lib. 4.

A. M. 3950.  
V. C. 899. Ant.  
Christum 53.  
Cn. Pompeio  
M. L.  
M. Licinio  
Crasso 2. Cons.

Idem lib. 5.

A. M. 3951.  
V. C. 700.

Caesar passeth  
over into Bri-  
tain.

SECT. 6. Tribune; but the day following, the *Romans* recovered their credit, putting the other to flight who had fallen upon them as they were gathering forage, so as they durst not after this time meddle any more with them when in any considerable body.

Cæsar passeth  
over the  
Thames.

19. Then did Cæsar passe the *Thames* (the Soldiers wading over with their heads onely above water) though the *Britains* had fastned sharp stakes under the bank, and there made all opposition they could, which was considerable. Passing on in *Cassivellaun's* Countrey he wasted it, *Cassivellaun* (or *Cassibellin*) having dismissed all his Army except 4000 Waggones, wherewith he much endamaged the *Romans* by making sallies upon advantage out of the Woods. But the *Trinobantes* (inhabiting those parts long after by the *Saxons* called *Essex* and *Middlesex*) having had their King *Imannentius* killed by *Cassivellaun*, for that *Mandubratius* his son had escaped to Cæsar, yielded themselves, and desired that the young man being restored first to his Father's Kingdom might be protected against *Cassivellaun*. This Cæsar granted, receiving 40 Hostages and Corn for his Army; and these having protection given them, others near adjoining yielded themselves. Then did Cæsar take *Cassivellaun's* Town not far distant, being onely a fortified place in the Woods. He sent into *Kent*, where four petty Kings, *Cingetorix*, *Carmilius*, *Taximagulus*, and *Segonax* reigned, ordering them if possible to seize on Cæsar's ships; but Cæsar having left to guard the Camp ten Companies of foot and 300 horse, these repulsed them with great losse, killing many of their men, and amongst the rest *Lugiorix*, a Captain of great account. *Cassibellann* hearing this, and knowing the defection of the *Trinobantes* and the rest, sent, and begged peace of Cæsar, who being resolved, for fear of insurrections in *Gall*, there to winter, for that Summer was now almost spent, commanded him to deliver in Hostages, ordered what Tribune *Britain* should pay yearly to the People of *Rome*, commanded him not to offend *Mandubratius* nor the *Trinobantes*, and then drew down his Army to the Sea, which he wasted over at twice, for that he had many Prisoners, and many ships had perished by Tempest. The season being very good they came all safe to land, and he quartered them about in several places, because Provisions were very scarce in *Gall*. This second expedition of Cæsar into *Britain* happened the next year after the former; *L. Domitius Ænobarbus*, and *Appius Claudius Pulcher* being Consuls.

The Galls re-  
volt.

20. This Winter did most of the *Galls* revolt. First, the *Eburones* (now inhabiting the Bishoprick of *Liege*) by the instigation of *Ambiorix* their Prince, who by treachery circumvented two of Cæsar's Officers, *Q. Titurius Sabinus*, and *L. Arunculeius Costa*, with a whole Legion. He also besieged *Q. Cicero*, who commanded the Legion that quartered amongst the *Nervii*, who had their fears about *Tournay* in *Flanders*. But Cæsar came in to the rescue, and overthrew the *Galls*. *Labienus* lying with another Legion about *Rheims*, the *Treviri* and *Indutiomarus* came to his Camp, intending to destroy him; but he took his opportunity, and powred out his men upon them, willing his Soldiers to be sure that they killed *Indutiomarus*, which being done, things again were a little settled. Whilest Cæsar was thus employed abroad, in the Citie, this year died his daughter *Julia*, Pompey's Wife, in Childhood, and the Infant (whether Son or Daughter, 'tis as uncertain, so immaterial) with her. Hereby was the bond of friendship betwixt them two broken, and their mutual envy, which thereby onely was restrained, now wanted but an occasion to vent it self. But Cæsar foreseeing great stirs in *Gall*, increased his forces, subdued the *Nervii*, brought under the *Senones* and *Carnutes* (now changed into *Chartres*) the *Menapii* also; whilest *Labienus* reduced such as inhabited about *Triers*. Then did he again crosse the *Rhine*, because of the Conjunction of the *Germans* with the *Galls*, and attempting something upon the *Suevi* to no purpose, turned against the *Eburones*. Whilest he harraized their Territories, the *Stigambri* set upon the Camp of *Cicero* then absent, which they could not storm, though they caused great consternation amongst his men, and killed many. After this he wasted again

Julia dieth.

Cæsar reduceth  
Revolters.

the grounds of the Enemy, then called a Council in *Gall* for the punishment of Revolters, and Providing the Army of necessaries drew it into its Winter quarters.

Stirs in the  
Citie.

21. The following year produced great stirs in the Citie, and those no lesse in *Gall*. For now were the times so altered, as that *Rome* could not be found in *Rome*. Nothing was managed by ancient equity and moderation, all Offices were purchased by Money, or else by Stones, Clubs, or Swords, and the inconveniences of popular Government now grew ripe, the name of a free State, or Commonwealth, covering the greatest injustice, disorder, and oppression of the peoples liberty. The Consuls being debarred by the power of the *Tricipitina* from leading out Armies, or Waging Wars according to the ancient right and custom, made up their markets out of the publick Revenue, or their Offices by indirect practices, and therefore none of honour would seek after the Consulship. Pompey connived at this, hoping that a necessity of affairs would draw upon him the Dictatorship, as some of his Creatures, though not in his name, did not stick to hint. This year especially was there such an horrid contention amongst the Candidates (all or most men of large consciences) as for a long time no Consul could be elected; and this heightened the matter, that *T. Annius Milo*, one of them, being at great enmity with *Clodius*, killed him as they met in the way not far from the Citie. This fact the people ill resented, and naughty, and dissolute persons, under pretence of searching for *Milo's* friends, committed many outrages in *Rome*. This turned indeed all men's eyes upon Pompey, as the fittest person to redresse those evils, and whilest they thought of making him Dictator, *Cato* drew the Senate to this resolution, that he should be made Consul alone, that he might be called to an account for his male-administration if need were, and so he was made *sole Consul*, without any President at all.

Milo killeth  
Clodius.

Pompey made  
Consul alone.

His A&S.

22. First, he sat in judgement alone, and examined *Milo's* case; he also made inquisition after such as had by indirect means procured Offices. *Milo* was defended by *Cicero*, or rather should have been; for the Orator was so terrified with Pompey's Soldiers, and *Clodius* his friends, that he could not proceed, and is therefore said to have written that Oration afterwards, which is now extant. *Milo* then was banished, with several others for other Crimes. Pompey having hitherto as it were executed the Office of Dictator, took to him a Colleague, *Q. Scipio Metellus*, whose daughter *Cornelia* he had married. These things being heard in the further *Gall*, and a rumour spread that Cæsar who now was in *Italy*, would be there retained by the motions in the Citie, many of the Natives conspired for the recovery of their liberty, and chose *Vercingetorix* for their Captain.

The Galls  
hearing of  
these stirs re-  
bel.

23. Cæsar, though in the midst of Winter, and forced to make his way through depths of Snow, returned, and came upon the *Arverni* at unawares. He took several of their Towns, but besieging one that was situated upon an high Hill, he fought with disadvantage, and was driven off with the losse of 46 Centurions. From this siege he was called by the revolt of the *Hedui*, and an insurrection of the *Bellovaci*, and *Labienus*, who had prosperously managed his affairs about *Paris*, joyned with him. Now, most of the *Galls* being revolted, he first overthrew *Vercingetorix*, then pursued, and besieged him in *Alesia*, a Town of the *Mandubii*, which, when the *Galls* were not able to relieve, *Vercingetorix*, according to his own offer, was delivered up, with *Alesia*, and all their Arms. Then reduced he the *Hedui*, the *Arverni* also yielded, with divers others, which being done, he sent the Army away into its Winter quarters. In winter the *Galls* hatched a new conspiracy. Cæsar therefore departing from *Bibracte*, wasted the Territories of the *Bituriges* (about *Bourdeaux*) and of the *Carnutes*; subdued also the *Bellovaci* with others. *C. Fabius* also reduced some in the mean time, and *Caninius* having routed several parties, with him Cæsar joyned, and besieged *Axellodunnum*, a Town of the *Cadurci*, very strongly fortified by its situation. He obtained this Town without striking one stroke, by cutting the veins of

A new conspi-  
racy.

Cæsar reduceth  
them.

SECT. 6.

Leges Appian, de  
bello civili, l. 2.

A. M. 3953.  
Ol. 182. ann. 1;  
V. C. 702.  
Ante Christ. 50.

Idem ibid.  
Plutarch in  
Pompeio.

Livii Epitom.  
lib. 107.

Cæsar comment.  
lib. 7.

Hirtius lib. 8.

Found-

SECT. 6. Fountain which served them with water. After this the Cities of *Aquitaine* yielded, and going to *Narbon* he disposed of his Army into their Winter quarters. These things hapned in the eighth year after his coming into *Gall*, *Ser. Sulpitius Rufus*, and *M. Claudius Marcellus* being Consuls, wherein also were begun those contentions betwixt him and his adversaries at *Rome*, that shortly after brake into Civil wars, which proved deadly in the end to the heads of both the factions, and fatal to that form of Government which (though labouring under mortal distempers) was yet on foot.

The grounds  
and occasions  
of the Civil  
Wars betwixt  
Pompey and  
Caesar.

24. *Caesar's* carriage, especially in his *Consulship*, had rendred him very distastefull to the Senate. *Pompey* on the other side, by his fair demeanour had of late gained much upon it, which *Caesar* being aware of, desired leave to stand for a second *Consulship* in his absence. This was granted him; but he fearing the malice of his adversaries in case he were reduced to a private condition, further importuned the *Fathers* that he might have his Government of *Gall* prorogued, casting about all manner of wayes to keep his Army till he should be Consul. This was hindred by *Marcellus* the Consul, who had succeeded *Pompey*; whereupon *Caesar* laying his hand upon his Sword, said, that *that* should obtain it for him. This *Marcellus* was very bitter against him, pressing hard that a Successor should be sent to him; but this was crossed by *Pompey*, either out of good nature, or policy. Such were designed Consuls for the ensuing year, as were most opposite to *Caesar*, viz. *L. Aemilius Paulus*, and *C. Claudius Marcellus* Nephew to the former Consul by his brother: *Curio* also, an inveterate Enemy of *Caesar*, was made *Tribune*. Yet all these, except *Claudius*, were drawn aside by money; *Paulus* by 1500 Talents, and *Curio*, who was much indebted, by 100000 *Sesterces*. *Marcellus* then urging that a Successor was to be sent to *Caesar*, *Curio* flisly withstood it, alleging that then ought *Pompey* also to dismiss his Army; for that his power was equally dangerous to the publick liberty. *Pompey* outwardly seemed willing, and said he would disband his men; but *Curio* fell foul upon him, telling him, that promise without performance was nothing; and, that he might seem to stand for the good of the Commonwealth, and not carry favour with *Caesar*, he desired, that if they both refused to disband, they should, the one as well as the other, be declared Enemies to the State.

25. *Pompey* exceedingly nettled hereat threatned him; but he ceased not to urge the thing. The Senate could have wished them both reduced, but feared to disband *Pompey's* Army, looking upon *Caesar* as the more dangerous person. *Pompey* sent now to him for the Legion he had lent him, both of them being ordered into *Syria* to defend the *Eastern* parts now in danger by the overthrow of *Craffus*: he sent him this Legion, and another of his own; but there being no need of them in *Syria*, they wintred at *Capua*. Those that brought them into *Italy* did ill Offices for *Caesar*, and gave out, as if his Army at his return would all revolt, which though very false was believed by *Pompey*, who thereupon neglected to provide for so dangerous a War as followed. The next year *C. Claudius Marcellus* and *L. Corn. Lentulus* were Consuls, and it was propounded to the Senate, whether both *Pompey* and *Caesar* should lay down all power. Though once it was carried that *Caesar* onely should, when the Consul propounded it severally, yet \* *Curio* again putting it to the question, it was carried against both by 348 voices. Hereat the Consuls enraged, left the Citie, and gave *Pompey* power as from themselves to fight for his Countrey against *Caesar*, which he seemed not altogether to approve. Now *Curio* perceiving himself in danger, and that he could do no more service for *Caesar*, fled unto him.

*Curio* labour-  
eth hard for  
*Caesar*.

26. *Curio* being called to a Consultation, would have had him presently to invade *Italy*; but he chose rather first to make an overture of Peace, as 'tis said, writing to his friends to procure, though it were but two Legions with *Gall* within the *Alps* and *Illyricum*, untill he should be Consul, which though

Appian, de bello  
civilis lib. 2.  
Velleius Pa-  
ter. l. 2. c. 48.

\* Consule Ap-  
pianum de bello  
civilis lib. 2.  
pag. 446.

*L. Domitius*  
sent by the  
Senate to suc-  
ceed *Caesar*.

*Caesar* invad-  
eth *Italy*.

Followeth  
*Pompey* to  
*Brundisium*.

Returneth to  
*Rome*.

Riseth the  
Treasury.

though it seemed something reasonable to *Pompey*, the Consuls would not admit of it. Then wrote he to the Senate a menacing and bitter letter, as it's styled by \* *Cicero*, (who now was returned from *Cilicia* his Province, which he governed a year, and for his good service in the field was saluted *Imperator*, and had a triumph decreed him by the Senate, which these disturbances quite put off, he saying, that so an agreement were made, he had rather follow the chariot of *Caesar*) wherein after an honourable mention made of his own exploits, he signified, that he was willing to resign his power, in case *Pompey* did the like; otherwise he should retain his Forces, and presently come to revenge those injuries which had as well been offered to himself as his Country. At the reading of these last words all cried out, that War was denounced, and they sent *L. Domitius* to succeed him in his Government, with four newly raised Legions. For that *Antonius* and *Cassius* the *Tribunes* were of *Curio's* judgement, the Consuls bade them depart out of the Senate, lest their persons *Sacrosanct* (as the term was) by their Office, should be violated; who in a great rage departing that night, fled towards *Caesar*. So now began this famous Civil War, in the fourth year of the 182 *Olympiad*, the 705 of the City, 47 before the birth of Christ, A. M. 3956, the aforesaid *C. Claudius Marcellus*, and *L. Corn. Lentulus* being Consuls.

27. The Senate did not think that *Caesar* would return presently out of *Gall*, as being unprepared for such an undertaking; and therefore were more slow in their Levies; but he ever judging expedition to be the greatest help in his undertakings, resolved with five Legions to begin the work, and take in the commodious places in *Italy*, and so did he with admirable speed *Ariminum* and others. This unexpected thing terrified the Senate, and the People, which called to mind the sad effects of the Civil Wars betwixt *Sylla* and *Marius*; *Cicero* would have had them sent to *Caesar*, but the Consuls withstood it. Then departed *Pompey* to the Army at *Capua*, whom the Consuls presently followed. The Senators being at their wits end, spent all that night in their house, and at length followed *Pompey* to *Brundisium*. *Caesar* at *Corfinium* met *Domitius* who was sent to succeed him, whom he dismissed, after he had received his Soldiers, that now revolted to him. Then followed he *Pompey* to *Brundisium*, who had sent over the Consuls with part of the Legions into *Epirus*, which he intended to make the fear of the Warre, staying in the Town till the return of the ships, to transport the rest of the Army. *Caesar* attempted to storm the place, but he withstood him, till such time as he had shipped his men, and so passed over to *Dirrachium*.

28. *Caesar* knew not well now what to do. For hearing such concurrence to be made to *Pompey* (who drew to his party all the forces of the *East*) and knowing his old Army to be in *Spain* his Province, he feared to follow him over, lest he should expose *Italy* to it, and have an enemy at his back. He therefore returned to *Rome*, having in the space of 60 dayes got all *Italy* into his hands without blood, and breaking open the Treasury took out the money which had lain there ever since the taking of the City by the *Galls*, being reserved for such another case of extremity. For the *Aerarium* or Treasury in the Temple of *Saturn* was three-fold: One wherein the tributes or customs gathered from Citizens and associates was kept, as also booty got by Generals; which was reserved for the ordinary expenses of Warre. Another more private, wherein the *Vicesima*, or twentieth parts gathered from them that were munizmed, were laid up for extraordinary causes. And there was a third yet more private and sacred, wherein money was treasured up for any extremity that might happen from the *Galls*, and upon no other occasion might it be touched, bitter curses being laid upon him or them that should do or suffer it. But *Caesar* did it (though *L. Metellus* the *Tribune* did all he could to hinder it) pretending that the People was discharged of the curse, for that nothing more was to be feared from the *Galls*, whom he had thoroughly subdued.

29. Then went he into *Spain*, where in a short time he brought all under, though

SECT. 6.  
\* Epistol. ad fa-  
miliar. l. 16.  
Epist. 11.

Dio l. 40. in-  
tit.

Legge Appian. ubi  
supra.  
Caesar de bello  
Civil. l. 1.  
Dio l. 40.

A. M. 3956.  
Ol. 182. ann. 4.  
V. C. 705.  
Hyrcani 15.

Appian ut prius  
Caesaris de bello  
civilis l. 2.  
Plutarch in  
Caesare &  
Pompeio.  
Sueton in Julio.

A. M. 3957.  
V. C. 706.

## SECT. 6.

Goeth into Spain.

Dictator for eleven dayes, and then Consul.

Passeth over into Epirus.

Cometh to the plains of Pharsalum.

Where he overthroweth Pompey.

though Pompey had there a strong Army under three Captains, *Petereius*, *Afranius*, and *Varro*, whom yielding, he permitted to depart with all their Forces. At this time he lost two legions in *Africa* under *Curio*; and *Antonius* was overthrown in *Illyricum* by *Dolabella* one of Pompey's Officers. But now *M. Lepidus* the Praetor of the City pronounced him Dictator, and therefore he returned to *Rome*, where the People being struck with fear, he took upon him the Office, and held the *Comitia*. But finding it to be odious, he laid it down again after eleven dayes, and procured himself to be chosen Consul, with *Servilius Iulianus*. Then about the middle of Winter did he order all his forces to meet him at *Brundisium*, expecting in the City the beginning of January for his entering into the Consulship. When he came to *Brundisium*, though his forces were not all come together, desiring to set upon Pompey at unawares, he passed over with all he had, viz. five Legions, and 600 Horse, although in the depth of Winter, and without provisions; Pompey now having eleven Italian Legions, and 7000 Horse, besides other supplies out of *Greece* and *Asia*. But, those five Legions and two that followed being landed, he took *Oricum* and *Appollonia* without fighting one stroke, and then marched straight to *Dyrrhachium*, the magazin and granary of Pompey. Both of them fate down by the River *Apia*, Caesar expecting his other forces, which at length Antony brought over, though the Seas were watched by the other Party, and Pompey exercising his men who were raw and unexperienced. Pompey hearing of Antony's coming, departed with his whole Army to the River *Asparagus*. Caesar followed him, and would have fought; but he not stirring out of his trenches, he marched back to *Dyrrhachium*, which having on one side and Pompey on the other, he was grievously straitened for provisions, and above all things desired to fight. In several skirmishes he had the better; but in another considerable engagement was shrewdly beaten, and chased to his Camp, which might have been taken, and a period put to the Warre, as he himself confessed, had the Enemy known how to improve the Victory; Pompey neglecting the advantage, either through the advice of *Labienus*, or his own inadvertency, for that providence had otherwise determined. Though some now advised Caesar to make use of the shame and anger of his Army, which desired again to be led out to battle, to redeem it's credit, yet he thought it most convenient to depart thence, and so went into *Thessaly*, whither Pompey followed him, and pitched his Camp on the fatal plains of *Pharsalum*, not of *Philippi*, as *Florus* falsely relateth, and with him *Manilius* and *Virgil*.

Caesar de bello civili l. 2. Appian.

Vide Plutarch in Caesar, & Pompeio, & Appian ut supra.

30. Betwixt that Town and the River *Enipeus*, was fought that great and famous battel betwixt these two great Captains, who both of them are said to have wept in the heads of their Armies, considering that so many of the same Country and Nation should be slain, brother fighting against brother, to satisfy the ambition of two men. The Armies stood for some time gazing on each other, both being unwilling to begin, till Pompey's Auxiliaries, whom he had commanded to stand aloof off, till such time as the Enemy should be broken, and then give the chase (as unwilling to have them engage in the battle) being wearied with expectation, began to break their ranks. Fearing they might cause his main body to do so too, though he was unwilling at this time to fight, and managed not his command with wonted alacrity, he caused a charge to be sounded, his word being *Unconquered Hercules*, and Caesar's *Victorious Venus*. The battel was fought with great courage and admirable silence on both sides; but Pompey's Army, though greater by far, being less experienced, was at length broken and put to flight, at the beginning of which fight all his Auxiliaries, though great multitudes, ran away as fast as might be, whom Caesar only suffered in the pursuit to be slain, commanding that all Italians should be spared. Pompey betook himself to his tent, and sat silent, thinking of *Ajax*, who was thus served in the siege of *Troy*, till Caesar bringing his Legions to storm his Camp, he took Horse, and with four in his company rode as far as *Larissa*, ere he stopped. On Caesar's part were said to be slain 30 Centurions, and 200 common soldiers; but as others affirmed, 1200.

On

## SECT. 6.

On Pompey's fell ten Senators (amongst whom that *Domitius* who had been sent to succed *Caesar*) with about 40 Equites or Knights, and of the common sort, they that say most, 25000; but *Afinius Pollio* who was in the Fight, and one of Caesar's Captains, in his Commentaries wrote but of 6000.

Pompey flying into Egypt

Is treacherously slain.

Caesar thereupon honoured at Rome.

The Alexandrian War.

31. Pompey thought first of flying to the *Parthian*, then to *Juba* into *Nubidia*; but being dissuaded by those about him, he resolved upon *Egypt*, as a Country at hand, powerful, and the King whereof was engaged to him in way of friendship as his Guardian. Thither when he came and sent to be received, the King being a boy, *Achillas*, *Pothinus* the Eunuch, and *Theodotus* his Schoolmaster consulting about the matter, one would have him received, and another nor, but the last, to shew his eloquence, declared both their ways to be bad, and that he was to be received, and then slain, subjoining, *Mortuum non mordere*, that the dead bites not, which saying long after *Patrick Grey* traiterously suggested to *Queen Elizabeth*, persuading her to put to death the *Traitor of Scott*, though he was sent from King *James* this *Queen's* son to work her deliverance. This was resolved, either out of fear, as they pretended, that he should get *Egypt* into his power, or because they contemned to great a person now unfortunate, or rather to curry favour with *Caesar*. Pompey then being received into a little boat, as though he came to the King, who stood on the other side of one of the mouths of *Nile* with his Army, was treacherously slain, when he could neither fly nor defend himself. He covered his face with his gown, and neither speaking nor doing any thing unbecoming him, with a groan patiently received the strokes. So fell this great man, being in War a most able Captain, and in Peace (except when he stood in fear of a concurrent equal) full of modesty, in the 58 year of his age, and the very day preceding his birth-day, and the third year of these unhappy differences. His head was cut off, and reserved as a present for *Caesar*; his body was cast upon the shoar for every one to gaze at, and afterwards being washed with Sea-water by *Philip* his *Liberus* or *Freed-man*, (who stood by it till all had looked their full) he wrapped it in his own coat, and burnt it with the rotten pieces of a Fisher's boat which he there found.

32. Caesar having staid two dayes at *Pharsalum*, on the third pursued Pompey, left he should renew the War, and so came to *Alexandria*, where his head and ring were presented to him. He took the ring, but was grievously offended at the sight of the head, and weeping (which *Lucan* accounteth but feigned) commanded it to be buried. The news of Caesar's successe was not believed at *Rome* till he sent Pompey's ring thither. Then was power given him by them there, to determine of his Enemies as he pleased, and to make War where he would without asking leave of the People. They voted him Consul for five years, and Dictator, not for half an one (as was the custom) but a whole year, with the power of a Tribune for his life, which thing was never granted to any before him. He accepted these honours, and entered upon his second Dictatorship. But ere his departure out of *Egypt* he was put to much trouble and danger. For, there being at that time a difference betwixt young *Ptolemy* and his sister about the Government, he stood much her friend, which favour she is said to have purchased with the losse of her chastity. His endeavours for her *Pothinus* the Eunuch, who now feared to be punished for the sedition he had raised about Pompey, interpreted as sinisterly meant towards the King, and thereby raised a dangerous War, which yet though in Winter, was prosperously ended by Caesar, and the young King flying from his Camp was drowned, too many of his followers pressing into and sinking the boat. Caesar then gave the Kingdom to *Cleopatra*, and to colour the matter, caused her to take as a husband her younger brother, but eleven years of age. But she brought the Dictator himself a son not long after, who by his permission the named *Cesarion*; and had kept him longer with her than nine moneths, or else had followed him to *Rome*, but that he was necessarily drawn another way by the means of *Pharnaces*, who now had invaded

Plutarch in Pompeio. Appian ubi supra. Livii Epitom. l. 112. Paterculus l. 2. c. 53.

Dio lib. 42.

Caesar de bello civili l. 3. Dio l. 42. Histius de bello Alexandrino. Sueton. in Julio.



SECT. 6. vaded *Pompey* his father's Kingdom. Yet this woman after his departure is said to have been as familiar with his Enemy *Cn. Pompey* the eldest son of *Pompey* the Great.

*Plutarch. in Antonia.*

*Josephi Antiq. lib. 14. cap. 15.*

*Mitridates.*

*A. M. 3958. V. C. 707.*

*Plutarch. in Cesare. Appian belli civil. lib. 2.*

*Plutarch. in Cesare. Dio lib. 42. Appian ut supra. A. M. 3959. V. C. 708.*

*Leges Plutarch. in Catone minore.*

*A. M. 3960. Ol. 183. an. 4. V. C. 709. Mitridates 20.*

*(a) Sueton. in Julio. Plutarch. in Cesare. Dio lib. 43. p. 226. E. Caesaris de die natali c. 20. Macrobii Saturnal. l. 1. c. 14. Plin. l. 12. c. 23.*

*Cesar over-throweth Pharnaces.*

*Returneth to Rome.*

*Suppresseth Pompey's friends in Africk.*

*Pompey's sons in Spain.*

*The Julian year.*

33. *Cesar* then went against *Pharnaces*, and taking *Syria* in his way, visited the Cities. He restored *Hyrcaus* to the Priesthood in *Judea*, though *Antigonus* the son of *Aristobolus* (who being let out of Prison by him, and sent home, had been poisoned by *Pompey's* party) sued to him for the Government. He made also *Antipater* (whom *Hyrcaus* had sent to joyn with *Mithridates* of *Pergamus* with 3000 horse, and who did good service in the *Alexandrian* War) Governour of *Judea*. He promoted his own Kinsman *Sexius* *Cesar* from a *Quaestorship* to the Government of *Syria*, which *Scipio* father-in-law to *Pompey* had enjoyed the year before. From *Syria* he sailed into *Cilicia*, and thence marched with all speed against *Pharnaces*, who out of fear sent several times to him about a Peace, but he returned him onely good words, that he might surprize him. At length he gave him conditions, which he neglected to perform, hoping *Cesar* would be called away, and therefore he fell on, and overthrew him at the Hill *Scotus* (where formerly *Mithridates* defeated *Triarims*) within five dayes after his arrival, and four hours after he had got a sight of his Army, so that writing to a friend at *Rome*, to note the celerity of this Enterprize he expressed it in three words, *Veni, Vidi, Vici*. Then receiving such places as *Pharnaces* had seized on, and settling things in *Asia*, as he passed, exacting much money of the people, he was called home into *Italy* by stirrs which hapned in the Citie.

34. He quiered the Seditions, and the mutiny of his own Soldiers, who flew high in their demands for a dismission, and a payment of what he had promised them. Then being declared Consul for the following year, for that the year of his Dictatorship was out, he passed over into *Africk*, where *Scipio*, *Cato*, *Labiennus*, *Petereius*, and others of *Pompey's* Captains were with *Juba*. He got the better in several batells. *Juba* caused his slave to kill him, and his young Son *Cesar* led in Triumph, who being brought up in *Italy* proved an excellent Historian. *Cato* at *Utica* stabbed himself, having read over *Plato* his *Phaedo* of the Souls immortality. The wound not being deep enough he died not presently, but struggling betwixt life and death, cast himself off from his bed, and threw down a Geometrical Table, which making a noise, his son and servants rushed in, and finding him in that condition, his Freed-man, who was a Physician, began to put in the bowels which were untouched, and sow up his belly. But he coming to himself pushed him from him, and tearing out his bowels, enlarged the wound and died, being a man of wonderfull Justice, Severity, and Magnanimity. *Cesar* hearing of his death let fall some expressions, which signified a great desire to have got him into his hands, and hinted (as was thought) an intention of dealing mildly with him. *Petereius* and *Scipio* also perished in *Africk*. After these things returning to *Rome* he Triumphed four times, over *Gall*, *Pompey*, *Alexandria*, and *Africk*, it being unlawfull to do it over any Roman; although he carried in Tables, a representation of what he had done in the Civil Wars. Then went he once more into *Spain* against *Pompey's* sons, to whom several had fled out of *Africk*, where coming to fight near *Munda*, his Army was struck with such fear, as it was never nearer running. It had fled, but that he snatching a Target out of a Soldier's hand, went, and engaged the Enemy himself, & had 200 Darts thrown at him, whereat his Officers being ashamed, came on, and he got the day, 30000 of his Enemies being slain, with two of their Captains, *Labiennus* and *Varus*. *Cn. Pompey* also, though he fled, was taken, and his head sent to *Cesar*.

35. This year being that of his third Consulship (which he exercised with *M. Aemilius Lepidus*) being *Pontifex Maximus*, or High-Priest, he amended (a) the Roman year, which reformed by him, is yet after him called *Julian*. Herein he used the skill of *Sesigenes* an excellent *Mathematician* of *Alexandria* (where he learned this account, though the *Alexandrian* Months consisted of 30 dayes apiece, and five dayes were added at the end

of every year) in Astronomical Calculations, and of *Flavins* the Scribe in rectifying the Calendar. Whereas now in the Moneth of *February* were intercalated 23 dayes, he intercalated betwixt *November* and *December* two other Moneths containing 67 dayes: so that this present year had fifteen Moneths and 445 dayes. But this work seemeth to have been done, before his last expedition into *Spain*. After his return he (b) laid down the Consulship, and bringing in a new mode of creating honorary Consuls for three moneths, made *Q. Fabius Maximus*, and *C. Trebonius*, whereof the former dying in the last day of the year, *Caninius Rebilus* obtained to succeed him for the few hours that remained, whereupon *Tully* (c) calls him the most vigilant Consul, for that he never slept during his Office. Now were vast honours decreed him by the Senate, (d) as that he should be Dictator in perpetuum, and have the stile of Imperator, not in that sense as Generals were wont to have it given by their Soldiers after some worthy exploit, but whereby the greatest Authority in the Commonwealth was signified. For the Militia was to be wholly and solely at his disposal, as also raising of money: and all sorts of Magistrates, even *Plebeian*, were to be subject to him, and swear to contradict none of his decrees.

*Vast honours decreed to Cesar.*

*King Diotarus defended by Cicero.*

## SECT. VII.

From the absolutenesse of Julius Cesar, to the end of the second Triumvirate, and the absolutenesse of Octavius Cesar, or Cesar Octavianus, the space of 15 years.

1. *CÆSAR* being now Consul the fifth time, with *M. Antonius* (whom he much favoured, and promoted, for that in his Tribuneship he so much stood for him) to shun (a) envy in the Citie, thought upon making War upon the *Geta* and *Dace*, which had made inroads into *Pompey* and *Thrace*. About this time young *Cæsar*, the son of *Cæsar* (by (b) *Serabo* called *Saocondarius*) by the daughter of *Deiotarus* the King or Tetrarch of *Gallia* (to whom *Pompey* gave *Armenia* the Lesse, which gift the Senate having confirmed was taken away by *Cæsar*, because he took part with *Pompey*) came to *Rome* to accuse his Grand-father. He was sent by his father and mother, together with *Phidippus* a Physician & *Deiotarus* his slave, who was corrupted by their promises to feign an accusation against his Lord, that he would have killed *Cæsar* when he entertained him in his Tetrarchy. *Deiotarus*, father, and son, vvhó reigned together, had at that time four Ambassadors in the Citie, vvhó offered their own bodies to *Cæsar* for the safety of their Masters. But *Cicero* being mindfull of the friendship and familiarity he had had vvvith the old man, made an Oration for him in *Cæsar's* house, vvherein he premiseth, that it vvas so unusual a thing for a King (a real King; for as for the Kings of *Lacedæmon*, vvhó vvere called to account by the impudent *Ephori*, they vvere indeed no Kings, having nothing but the title, and therefore this can make nothing against this truth) to be questioned for his life, that before that time it vvas never heard of. *Deiotarus* being acquitted by *Cæsar*, put to death his daughter, as she had deserved, together with her husband *Cæsar Saocondarius* that noble Chronographer, concerning whom *Gerard John Vossius* is to be consulted, in his Treatise of *Greek* Historians.

2. *Cæsar* in his last Consulship, to (a) gratifie *Hyrcaus* the High-Priest and *Ethnarcha* of the *Jews*, as also the Nation, granted to him to enjoy, and Govern the Citie of *Jersusalem* as he pleased, which he might also fortifie with Walls. To the *Jews* he granted also a freedom from the charge of Portage and Toll, with an abatement of the publick Revenue in the second year of letting it out to farm. In this second *Julian* year his Collegue

A 222 2

M. An-

SECT. 7.

(b) Dio ut supra p. 236. c. (c) Famil. Epist. l. 7. Epist. 30. Caninius consul scito neminem grandisse, nihil tamen to consul mali factum est fuit enim mirifica vigilantia, qui suo toto consulatu summum non viderit. (d) Dio ut supra. Livius lib. 116. Appian belli civil. lib. 2.

(a) Sueton in Julio. Appian belli civil. lib. 2. (b) Lib. 12. pag. 568. Suidas in voce Kæwep. Vide Gerard. Vossium de Historicis Græcis lib. 1. cap. ult.

(a) Joseph. Antiquit. lib. 14. cap. 17.

## SECT. 7.

The month  
Quintilis cal-  
led July.

(b) *M. Antonius* procured by a Law that the Month *Quintilis* should in honour of his name be after it called *July*. He now restored (c) *Carthage* and *Corinib* (which two Cities had both in one year been destroyed) by *Roman* Colonies sent thither. Now (d) the people had a great desire to be revenged on the *Parthian*, for the loss of *Crassus* and his Army, and to him unanimously the War was decreed, and lest any stir should be in his absence, he was permitted to name all Officers that should be in the City for three years. 'Tis thought he would gladly have had the title of King, though, the people being against it, he declined it. For, as he came into the City from the Hill *Albanus* where he had sacrificed, some saluted him by the name of King, which the people took ill, whereupon he said, he was not King but *Cesar*; and all holding their peace, he passed on sad and grieving. And when one of the multitude put upon a statue a Laurel Crown, tied with a white Ribband (which was a royal Ensign) the Tribunes commanded it to be taken away, and the man carried to Prison: but *Cesar* being vexed, either for that the motion of the Kingdom succeeded not, or, as he pretended, that the glory of refusing it was taken from him, grievously rated the Tribunes, and put them out of their Office. At the solemnity of the *Lupercalia* (which were celebrated on the fifteenth of February) as *Cesar* sat in the *Rostra*, Crowned, in a purple Gown, and in a gilded Chair, *Antony* his Colleague running naked, as the custom was, amongst the *Luperci*, came to him as a suppliant, and in the name of the People of Rome offered him a Diadem, which being twice set upon his head, *Cesar* took off, and laid in the Chair. He answered, that *Jupiter* alone was King of the Romans, and sending the Diadem into the Capitol unto *Jupiter*, commanded it to be registred, how in the name of the people the Kingdom had been offered him, and he would not take it. This gave suspicion that the thing was done by agreement, and that he desired the title of King; but would be as it were compelled to accept of it.

*Cesar* seeming  
to affect the  
title of King,

2. A rumour was also at this time spread abroad, that the *Quindecimviri* had found in *Sibyll's* books, that the *Parthians* could only be overcome by the Romans under conduct of a King; and that at the next sitting of the Senate, *L. Cotta*, one of the *Quindecimviri*, would move that *Cesar* might have the title. Some gave out, that he was indeed to be called Dictator, or Imperator, of the Romans, but plainly King of the other Nations subject to their Empire. These things drew envy upon him, and the indignation of the great ones, even of such as he had (as to their particular) well deserved of. And that saying undid him, *Sylla nescivit literas, non prius dictare*, utterly thereby cutting off all hope that he would give over the Dictatorship. Being sensible of the envy he had contracted, he desired to haste out of the City, but four dayes before the time appointed, he was slain in the Senate-house by a conspiracy of above 60 Senators and Equites. Though his death was portended several wayes, yet he neglected it. 'Tis said, that as he went down to the house that very morning, that the names of the Conspirators were put into his hands, but he folded them up amongst other papers and never read them. The chief of them were *M. Brutus*, *C. Trebonius*, *C. Cassius*, and of his own party *Decimus Brutus*. Coming into the Senate-house, which then was *Pompey's* Court, thinking of the *Parthian* expedition, as he sat in his Curule Chair, they fell upon him, and killed him with 23 wounds. So he who had fought fifty battels, and killed 1192000 men, in that Senate, which he himself for the most part had chosen, in the Court of *Pompey's* Statue, so many of his Centurions looking on, fell by the hands of most Noble Citizens, many of whom he had to his utmost gratified, and so lay he, that not so much as a friend nor slave came near his body.

Is slain in the  
Senate-house.

4. So great a man he was that *Plutarch* \* being judge, there was none of the greatest, and most admired Captains, to whom the *Gullick* War alone did not demonstrate him equal in commendations, both as a General, and as a Soldier. For, whether we consider the *Pabis*, *Scipios*, *Metelli*, his Contemporaries, or those that went before him, as *Sylla*, *Marius*, and both

(b) *Appian* bell.  
civil lib. 2.  
Dio lib. 44.  
Censorin. de die  
Natali cap. 9.  
(c) *Dio* lib. 43.  
*Strabo* lib. 8.  
p. 17.  
(d) *Dio* lib. 43.  
*Appian* belli  
civil. lib. 2.  
*Plutarch*. in  
*Cesar*.  
*Sueton*. in *Julio*.  
*Livii* Epitom.  
lib. 116.

A. M. 3961.  
V. C. 710.

\* *Plinius* lib. 7.  
cap. 15.

*Cicero* lib. 2.  
de *Divinat*.

\* *In Cesar*.

## SECT. 7.

the *Luculli*, and even him whose glory for all warlike abilities reacheth to the skies, *Pompey* himself, the actions of *Cesar* excel all their exploits. For, sometimes he obtained greater glory, for the inconvenience of the places wherein he made War; sometimes for the greatness of the Countries which he subdued, sometimes for the multitude and strength of his Enemies overthrowing; sometimes for the perfidiousness and barbarism of the Nations subdued, sometimes for clemency shewed to the conquered, or otherwhiles for his liberality towards his fellow-soldiers; but always in respect of the number of battels, and of those that were slain. For having carried on the War in *Gall* not fully ten years, he took above 800 Cities, subdued 300 several sorts of People, and having engaged at several times with three millions of men, killed the third part, and took the other alive. So great was the affection of his Soldiers to him, and their care to please him, that whereas otherwise they were nothing better than others, yet being invincible for his credit, they would not refuse any danger. This disposition in them he first bred and then maintained by conferring honours and rewards upon them, wherein he spared nothing; then by undertaking all dangers with them, and refusing no labour. His boldness indeed and courage, considering that it proceeded from incredible desire of glory, they admired not so much; but his labour and toil which he endured above his strength did astonish them. For, he was of a thin habit of body, pale and tender, had a sickly head, and was subject to the falling sicknesse or *Epilepsie*, which first took him at *Corduba*. But he took not an occasion of laziness from his want of health, but by Expeditions, most difficult journeys, slenderesse of diet, and by continuing abroad in the open air, sought to drive away his disease, and keep his body healthful. Most commonly he slept as he was carried in his chariot or litter, so that his sleep was not idle. On the day time he was carried about the Forts, Cities and Camps, with a boy sitting by him, who wrote down what he dictated, and a Soldier with a sword standing at his back. He made so great journeys, that in his first Expedition from Rome, in eight incampings he came to the River *Rhodanus*. From his childhood he had learnt and practised riding, so that putting his hands behind him upon his back, he would sit an horse in his full speed, which was very much for one that had his disease. Moreover in that Expedition he exercised himself so, that riding, he would dictate several letters to two Secretaries or more. He was a man ambitious of power, and unsatisfied with any thing on this side Sovereignty, but Victory pleased him, not revenge nor cruelty, in which respect *Cicero*, to note his ambition, and yet acknowledge his goodness of nature, compared him to *Pisistratus*.

His character.

5. The conspirators conscious of the greatness of the fact, fearing the worst, secured themselves in the Capitol, it being in the Senate strongly debated how it should look upon the thing, and consequently upon them. But for *Antonius* the Consul (who also resolved when he should be able, to punish it, though now he betrayed no such intention) the fact had been approved of, as done upon an Usurper and a Tyrant, though they had not long before taken a solemn oath for his preservation, and decreed such vast honours to him. *Antonius* by putting them in mind, that if he were judged deservedly slain, all his acts were to be nulled, and consequently the assignment of several Offices, which he had of late made to several of them, effected that no more was done than to decree an Amnestie or oblivion for all that was past, for which *Cicero* much laboured. The offices were confirmed with this reason entered, because it was requisite for the good of the Commonwealth, and the day following the Senate meeting again, decreed Provinces to the murderers, viz. to *M. Brutus* *Creta*, *Africk* to *Cassius*, to *Trebonius* *Asia*, to *Cimber* *Bithynia*, and *Gall* about *Padus* to *Decimus Brutus*. After this, *Cesar's* testament was opened, wherein he made heirs three Nephews of his Sisters, *C. Octavius* of three parts in four of his estate (not of half onely, as it's found in *Livy's* Epitome) and *L. Pinarus* and *Q. Pedius* of the other fourth part. *C. Octavius* he adopted into his name and family, and most of

An Amnestie  
voted by the  
Senate.

*Cesar's* Testa-  
ment.

Vide *Appian*. ut  
supra.  
*Patercul*. l. 2.  
c. 58.  
*Dionem* l. 44.

*Sueton* in *Julio*.  
lib. 1. c. 4.

## SECT. 7.

those that killed him he named amongst the *Guardians of his son*, if one should be born to him. As second heirs, if the former should not possess the inheritance, he named *Decimus Brutus* and *M. Antonius*. He also in his will gave no small matter to the *Romans*, to be divided man by man, as *Plutarch* writeth. This moved the People out of measure to indignation against the Conspirators; *Antonius* the Consul vehemently stirring up the multitude in his funeral Oration. They were driven to that rage, that after the burning of the Corps they were hardly dissuaded from firing their houses, and they tore in pieces one *Cinna* whom they mistook for another of that name that was one of them.

*Octavia* his heir.

6. Now the series of affaires bringeth us to *Caesar Octavianus* the adopted son of *Julius*. He was grand-son to his sister *Julia*, which woman was wife to *M. Atilius Balbus*, and by him had a daughter that was married to *C. Octavius*. He was born in the Consulship of *Cicero*, and lost his father (who governing *Macedonia*, died suddenly before he could stand for the Consulship) when but four years old. He accompanied this his great Uncle in the last *Spanish War*, who ever kept him close to him in their travail, and was now sent by him to *Apollonia* to study, intending to take him along with him in the *Parthian War*. There he heard of his death, and the inheritance left to him. His Mother and Father-in-Law *Marcus Philippus*, were unwilling he should take the name of *Caesar*, as subject to much envy; but after some pause he resolved to the contrary, and assuming the name of *Caesar Octavianus*, made use of the good affections of his Uncle's friends in *Greece*, who accompanying him to the City, he was met by a vast number of others from *Rome*. Here, after he had accepted of the adoption, and confirmed it by the authority of the *Praetor* as the custom was, he went to *Antony*, whom he expected to have his friend and assistant in prosecuting his Uncle's Enemies. But after some waiting, he entertained him with great contempt, and though he had got a great quantity of *Caesar's* money, yet he denied to let him have any, fearing he should grow into too much esteem. *Caesar* hereupon sold his own inheritance to pay the legacy given to the People, which procured him much love, his Uncle's (or Father's, as now he must be called) old Soldiers flocked to him, whom he accepted of out of fear of *Antony*, who now became every day more odious, both to him, to People and Senate.

Purchaseth the Love of the People.

*Antony* praizeth for his own advancement.

7. The Senate suspected *Antony* as intending to set up himself, and he intended nothing more, for which cause he resolved to have some Province assigned him, wherein he might get power. To curry favour then he propounded to be considered *Sexius Pompey*, who yet remained of the sons of *Pompey* the Great (that beloved man) that in requital for his fathers estate confiscated, he might have an allowance out of the publick, and command of the Seas, with that Navy he formerly had. This being received with great applause was enacted; and so *Pompey* was called back into *Sicily*, where he afterwards waged a great War against *Caesar*. *Antony* perswaded *Dolabella* his Colleague (a young man whom *Caesar* having ordained to be Consul after his departure out of the City, when he was dead, took the Office, and inveighing against his benefactor, would have had the day of his death filled the birthday of the City) though he loved him not, to ask *Syria*, not of the Senate, but the People, hoping that after him he should not be denied such a request. The difference increasing betwixt him and *Caesar*, he desired to have the six Legions which lay in *Macedonia*, and obtained them, deceiving the Senate by a false rumour, that the *Getae* hearing of *Caesar's* death, had invaded that Province. He baited them, by preferring a Law against any one's being *Dictator*. It was his design to bring these Legions over into *Italy* to awe and command all, and that he might effect this, he preferred by force a Law for changing of Provinces, and thereby procured to his brother *C. Antonius Macedonia*, which formerly had been assigned to *M. Brutus*, and to himself the nearer *Gall* (or *Gallia Cisalpina*) which before was given to *Decimus Brutus*.

8. The Senate would in no wise grant this, whereupon he betook himself

*Appian de bello civili l. 3. Sueton in Augusto. Dio l. 45.*

*Appian, Livii Epitom. lib. 117. Dio l. 45.*

## SECT. 7.

to the People. When he had brought over his Legions, part of them revolted to *Caesar*, who now out of fear went up and down *Italy*, gathering Soldiers out of the Colonies his father had planted. With a considerable Army at length *Antony* marched into *Gall*, whence he commanded *Brutus* to be gone, who gave way to him then, but departed to *Mutina*, resolving there to stay and endure a siege, for that he had some considerable strength, and expected assistance. Here *Antony* straightly besieged him, which the Senate hearing of, by *Cicero's* working especially (who now began to speak and write his fourteen Orations, in imitation of those of *Demosthenes*, called *Philippicks*) declared him an Enemy to the State, which proved a means for the bringing in and preferring of *Caesar Octavianus*. For though the Senate cared not at all for him, as being generally of *Pompey's* faction, yet they resolved to make use of him for his Armies sake, and therefore erected him a statue, made him a Senator, though but nineteen years old, decreed, that he should be considered towards preferment as ten years older, and gave him equal power with *Hirtius* and *Pansa* the Consuls, whom now they sent to relieve *Brutus*. They took *Bononia*; but *Antony* being bold, for that he had got the better in some skirmishes, went and met *Pansa*, whom he overthrew, but returning carelessly into his Camp, was worsted by *Hirtius*. A little after, a great battle was fought near *Mutina*, wherein *Antony* was quite defeated, and fled to *Lepidus* then *Proconsul* in the further *Gall*. Both the Consuls died of wounds; *Hirtius* in *Antony's* Camp, and *Pansa* at *Bononia*. *Brutus* being at this time spared by *Caesar*, thought of departing with his ten Legions to *M. Brutus* and *Cassius*, now in *Greece*, but his Soldiers moved by the difficulty of the journey revolted, the six new raised Legions to *Caesar*, and the four of old Soldiers to *Antony*. He then purposing with a small attendance to passe through *Gall*, was taken at *Aquileia*, and betrayed by *Capenus Sequanus* Governour of the Countrey, who sent his head to *Antony*. Before this, *Trebonius* another of his Complices in *Caesar's* death, excluding *Dolabella* (whom the Senate had judged an Enemy) from *Pergamus* and *Smirna*, was taken by him in the later place, and after grievous torments, had his head cut off, which the Soldiers kicking about as a foot-ball, did so abuse, as no face was to be seen on it. Not long after the death of *Decimus Brutus*, *Minutius Bassilius* another of the Conspirators was slain by his slaves, whom he had gelded in a great rage.

The hatred of him procureth young *Caesar's* preferment.

Yet having no need of *Caesar*, the Senate again slighted him.

Which procureth the *Triumvirate*.

9. Now the Senate having no need of young *Caesar*, slighted him exceedingly, decreeing the honour due to him unto *Brutus*, whom he had relieved, giving him very bitter taunts, and denying him a Triumph. Being sensible hereof, and how most of them were of *Pompey's* faction, he began to tamper with *Antony* by Letters, as also with *Lepidus*, for a conjunction, and sent 400 Soldiers into the City, in the name of the Army, to demand the Consulship for him. Hereat the Senat straining hard, one *Cornelius* a Centurion laying his hand on his Sword, said, *This shall do it, if you will not*. Then called he *Antony* and *Lepidus* into *Italy*, wherewith the Senate much startled, and too late blaming their own rigidity, decreed him Consul, and whomsoever he would take to himself. So he invaded the Consulship, a month and five dayes before he was twenty years old, and took *Q. Pedius* for his Colleague. Then by a Law was fire and water forbidden to all that had an hand in the death of *Caesar*, and their goods were sold. The Senate was now so changed, either through good advice or fear, that in stead of slighting they advanced him above all example. They resolved that after his Consulship he should take place of all Consuls, and though formerly they were displeased with his levying forces being a private man; now they desired him to add to his Army, and decreed to him the Legions of *Decimus Brutus*. The City was committed to his care, and power given him to act what he pleased, though without the precept of the Laws, which he retained fifty six years till his death. Not long after came *Emilius Lepidus* and *M. Antonius* into *Italy*, whom he met about *Bononia*, and

*Appian ut supra. Dio l. 46. Plutarch in Antonio. Cicero Philipp. 5. Sueton in Octavio.*

A. M. 3962. V. C. 712.

*Appian, Livius lib. 120. Cicero, Philip. 11.*

*Appian ut supra. Livius l. 119. Sueton. in Augusto. Patercul. l. 2. c. 62. Livii Epitom. lib. 120.*

*Vide Dionem lib. 48.*

*Livii Epit. l. 120. Appian bell. civil. l. 4.*

## SECT. 7.

The Terms of the Combination.

\* Concurrite omnes Augures, Auspices, Portentum instatutum constatum est recens, Nam mulos qui ferebant Consul factus est.

These Verses were scattered up and down the Citie.

after a three dayes conference entred into confederacy with them, which is famous by the name of the *Triumvirate*.

10. The terms of this Combination were, That *Cæsar* for the remainder of the year should leave the *Consulship* to *Ventidius*, who formerly in the Social War when a Boy was led in Triumph, and after that rubbed the heels of Mules for his living. That a new authority of three men should be erected to take away civil dissensions; which they three should execute for five years with *Consular power* (for, the *Dictatorship* was waved, because of a Law lately preferred against it by *Antony*) with authority to dispose of all Offices for that Term. That *Antony* should have as a Province all Gall, except that of *Narbon*, which *Lepidus* was to have with Spain; and to *Cæsar* was *Africk*, with *Sardinia* and *Sicily* assigned; other places beyond the Seas being left to another time. They agreed further, that their Enemies should be destroyed, wherein [the case of *Cicero* moved the greatest controversy. For *Antony* would not meddle except he in the first place should be slain, *Lepidus* was content, but *Cæsar* stood much against it, yet on the third day he assented an exchange being made; for he yielding up *Cicero*, *Lepidus* permitted his brother *Paulus*, and *Antony* *L. Cæsar* his Uncle by the Mother's side to be proscribed. Lastly, it was agreed that *Lepidus* should be *Consul* the following year, instead of *Decimus Brutus*, designed formerly by *Julius Cæsar*. He guarding *Rome* and *Italy*, the other two were to make War upon *Brutus* and *Cassius*, who now (though at first without any decree of the Senate) had seized on *Macedonia* and *Syria*. *Cassius* in *Laodicea* besieged *Dolabella*, who being judged an Enemy by the Senate for the death of *Trebonius*, when the Citie was taken caused his Page to cut off his head, and so ended his life, being a man of no great solidity. He was son-in-law to *Cicero*: but after the divorcing of *Tullia* they fell into great enmity, whereupon the Orator proved a back friend to him in the Senate, reigning amongst the Fathers and the People with his Eloquence.

Idem ibid. Dio lib. 46.

Gellius lib. 9. cap. 4.

The effects of it.

11. The first effect of the *Triumvirate* was a *Proscription* of some 300 persons of *Equestrian* and *Senatorial* ranks. Though the pretence was to revenge *Cæsar's* death, yet many were murdered for their rich Estates, others out of malice, and some for their convenient Houses and Gardens. Amongst those of greatest note was *Varro*, who now living to see and feel a second *Tricipitina*, yet escaped with his life. *Cicero* the man most aimed at by *Antony* for opposing him so vehemently in the Senate, upon the *Triumvirs* their coming went to Sea; but the winds being contrary, and because he could not endure the shaking of the ship, he returned, saying, *he would die in his Countrey often preserved by him*. Being weary both of his flight and life, he came to a Village a little more than a mile distant from the Sea. Here his servants terrified by several prodigies, partly by perswasion, and partly by force put him again in his litter, and were carrying him back to the Sea, when hearing of those that came to seek for him, he caused the Litter to be set down, and quietly stretched out his neck to *Popilius Lænas*, whom formerly by his Oratory he had saved from condemnation. He ill favouredly enough cut off his head and hands, which he presented to *Antony*, and for so doing received a great reward. After the head had been sufficiently gazed on by him and his wife *Fulvia* (who sat on her knees, pulled out the Tongue, and pricking it with Needles, otherwise shamefully shewed her spite) it was to the grief of all men set up in the pleading place, or *Rostra*. To such an end came this most famous man, the father of *Roman* eloquence. He was born at *Arpinum*, on the third of the *Nones* of *January*, in the 648 year of the Citie; *C. Asilius Serranus*, and *Q. Servilius Capio* being *Consuls*, the same wherein *Pompey* the Great was born, on the *Calends* of *October*. His father was of *Equestrian* rank, and issued, as some said, from *Tullius Antius*, a Noble King of the *Volsca*. He first deserved the Triumph of the Gown, and the Laurel of the Tongue. And as *Cæsar* the *Dictator* wrote of him, he obtained a Laurel greater than all Triumphs (though he had one decreed to him for his good service in the field) by how much the more 'tis a greater,

Appian.

Plutarch. in Cicero.

Paterculus l. 2. cap. 66. Plinius lib. 7. cap. 30.

## SECT. 7.

greater and more excellent thing to enlarge the bounds of *Roman* wit, than of Empire. He died on the seventh of *December*, when he had lived 63 years eleven months and five dayes. His brother *Quintus* and his sons were slain, but his own escaped; for that he had sent him beforehand unto *Athens*.

And many others.

12. All places in the Citie were full of slaughters. The ordinary rate of one head brought to the *Triumvirs*, if by a free-man, was 100000 *Sesterces*; if by a slave, half so much, with the liberty of the Citie. This corrupted many, so as forgetting both duty and natural affection, they betrayed those for whose preservation they ought to have laboured. Yet now many rare; and admirable examples, of the love of wives to their husbands, and of slaves to their Masters, appeared; fewest of Children towards their Parents. Yet *Oppian* his Aet seemeth to stand for many, who *Aeneas* like carried out his old and decrepit father, and conveyed him to the Sea, sometimes leading, and sometimes carrying him on his back, till they both escaped into *Sicily*, whence afterwards returning, the people out of a sense of his piety made him *Edilis*, and for that he wanted money to set out the usual Games, the Artificers willingly wrought for him without wages, and the Spectators by a contribution made him rich. Of such proscribed persons as escaped, some fled to *Brutus* and *Cassius*, who received them kindly; but most unto *Sexsus Pompey* now in *Sicily*, who sent out Vessels to hover upon the Coasts for them, and furnished them when came over with necessities. But the *Triumvirs* wanting great sums for carrying on the War against *Cassius* and *Brutus*, by reason that few would buy Confiscated Estates, condemned also, though not the persons, yet the goods of many rich women, as well as men.

The *Triumvirs* condemn the estates of women to get money.

And *Cassius* and *Brutus* take extravagant courses for Treasure.

13. *Cassius*, after he had got *Syria* into his power, thought of making an expedition into *Egypt* against *Cleopatra* (who now was going with a great power to the aid of *Cæsar* and his followers) but was recalled by *Brutus*; for that *Antony* and *Cæsar* (who having attempted something against *Ptolemy* in *Sicily*, put it now off till another time) were coming against them with fourty Legions, whereof eight had already passed the *Ionian* Sea. Therefore leaving *Syria* to his brother's son with one Legion, he sent some into *Cappadocia*; who killed *Ariobarzanes* as one that had conspired against him, and brought him a masse of money. Exacting money with much rigour he came into *Asia*, and meeting *Brutus* at *Smyrna*, they consulted about the Warre. *Brutus* moved that they should passe over into *Macedonia*, and there encounter their Enemies; but *Cassius* prevailed that the *Rhodians* and *Lycians* should first be reduced, who refused to Contribute any thing, and were powerfull at Sea. It seeming good not to leave any Enemy at their back, this was performed, and vast sums of money by that, and other means raised. The *Xanthians* standing out, as they had done in former times against *Cyrus* and *Alexander*, were scarce any of them left alive; and the *Rhodians* had little besides their lives left unto them.

Orosius lib. 6. cap. 18.

The two parties meet at *Philippi*.

14. After this, both the Armies met at *Philippi*; that Citie of *Macedonia*, to which, being built by *Philip* to restrain the *Thracians*, as we have formerly shewn, *St. Paul* wrote his Epistle. Here appeared on either side 19 Legions. *Antony* and *Cæsar* brought into the field 13000 horse; but *Brutus* and *Cassius* 20000. who coming thither first, incamped on an high and convenient ground near the Sea, whence they could have Provisions in abundance. The other party was exceedingly straightened for necessities, having onely *Macedonia* and *Thessaly* open to it, for that *Pompey* cut off all intercourse from *Africk*, as *Mureus* and *Enobarbus* from *Italy*, by their Navies. This made *Antony* desirous to fight above measure, which the Enemy knowing well enough, refused to ingage, till *Antony* making a way through a Fen to intercept his Provisions, and a work being raised by *Cassius* against him, this procured a fight, wherein *Cassius* had the worst on his part, and his Camp was taken by *Antony*. On the other side *Cæsar's* Wing was worsted, and his Camp also taken by *Brutus*. *Cassius* departing to an Hill not far off, expected the event of the fight on his partner's side, and because for the dust he could not discern what horse it was that made towards him, sent *Timoneus* to discover.

B b b b b

cover.

Cicero slain.

**SECT. 7.** cover. He being received with joy by those that were bringing tidings of victory, stayed so long, till *Cassius*, fearing the worst, and that the Messenger was intercepted, killed himself, or caused his *Liberinus*, or *Freedman*, to cut off his himself out of head. Scarcely was it fallen, when *Titinius* coming, followed him by his own hands, whom as he said, he had killed by loitering.

15. *Brutus* presently caused his Collegues body to be buried out of sight, lest the Army should be dejected; and then had no mind to fight, desiring rather to starve the Enemy, who now was in desperate condition by want of necessities, till fearing a defection, for that some had revolted already, or till being forced by the earnestness of his Soldiers he led them out to battle. Both parties, though Country-men, were so greedy of engaging, that they neglected to use any missive weapons, and betook themselves to their Swords, fighting with great animosity, till at length *Brutus* his side was born down, and put to the rout. He escaped to an Hill, where remaining all night, when in the morning he saw no way of escaping (*Antony* having made him sure, lest he should renew the War) he set his sword point to his left pap, where the motion of the heart is felt, and forcing it into his breast, expired. This was the end of these two men, by the same weapons as some write wherewith they killed *Cesar*, who had given them their lives, and received them into favour after the battle of *Pharsalam*. While they sought liberty by his death, by that very means they lost that which they accounted such, being indeed no other than a liberty for the common sort to run into extravagancies, and for particular men to abuse their credulity, and by flattery to procure power, which they then would improve (even *Pompey* himself, as well as *Sylla*, *Cinna*, *Marius* and *Cesar*) further than their Commissions extended. With them perished the hopes of that called a Commonwealth, which thenceforth never was more seen. As for the succeeding bickerings which the *Triumviri* had with young *Pompey*, they were but inconsiderable in comparison of this War with *Cassius* and *Brutus*, who having under their power all the Roman Empire from *Macedonia* to the River *Euphrates*, with above 20 Legions, 20000 horse, 200 long ships, and infinite sums of money, so long as they remained, the Commonwealth seemed (though not at *Rome*) as yet to be surviving.

16. *Cesar* being indisposed (for he had not his health this expedition, and therefore was not in the first fight) returned into *Italy*. *Antony* went into *Asia* to gather up money for the payment of largesses promised to the Soldiers. Here he squeezed out of the poor Inhabitants that little which was left them by *Cassius* and *Brutus*, the followers of whom he also restored as he met with them, except such as had an hand in *Cesar*'s death. In *Cilicia* he met with *Cleopatra* Queen of *Egypt*, on whom he presently doted, having formerly had much affection for her when yet a Girl, at such time as he accompanied *Gabinus* into that Kingdom. Thither he now followed her, having first sent a party of horse to plunder *Palmyra*, a Town situate near *Euphrates*, and laid most heavy Tributes and Impositions upon the Provinces. After *Cesar* had recovered, according to their agreement at parting he set himself to divide Lands to the Army in *Italy*, which hereby was put into a great combustion, the number of Soldiers being so great, that multitudes of Inhabitants were turned out, and many Towns emptied to give place to those new comers, who committed many outrages, and had not purchased those Lands by any service to the State (as was complained) but by serving to inthrall it to the Dominion of three men. *Fulvia* the wife of *Antony*, and *Lucius* his brother now Consul, envied *Cesar* this popularity with the Soldiers, and contended earnestly that they ought to settle the Soldiers of *Antony*, which was granted. But herewith not contented, they resolved to prosecute him with War. She, for that she desired her husband might be recalled thereby from *Cleopatra*, concerning whom she had too much cause to be jealous of him; and he out of desire to innovate, pretending an endeavour to suppress the *Triumvirate*, and to reduce the ancient form of Government, and raising much to the strength of his brother.

17. Much

The Persian War betwixt *Cesar*, and the brother and wife of *Antony*.

17. Much ado was made to reconcile them, but to no purpose. The ancient Possessors of the grounds flocked to *Lucius*, and the new ones to *Cesar*, to whom *Salvidienus* coming out of *Gall* with great strength, *Lucius* went to oppose him, but was diverted by *Agrippa*, and reduced to such straits betwixt them two, (though *Ventidius* and *Asinius*, two of *Antony*'s Captains were not far off) that glad he was to betake himself for security to *Perusia* a strong Town, where he was closely besieged by *Cesar* and his party. He stood out very courageously, till forced by famine to yield to mercy; then coming out first, and casting himself into *Cesar*'s hands, he interceded for his Soldiers, and desired all the blame might be upon himself: he was received honourably, and his Soldiers were pardoned at the desire of their Enemies. The Town was to be plundered, but by a mad-man, who set his own house on fire and therein perished, it was burnt down to the ground. About this time was the first Eclogue of *Virgil* written (who now was some 28 years old) during the division of those Lands, as clearly appeareth from it: the above mentioned *L. Antonius* and *P. Servilius Isauricus* being Consuls, in the 713th year of the Cite, and the third of the *Triumvirate*.

*Cesar* provideth for the worst.

*Antony*'s carriage in the East.

The *Triumvirs* fall out.

Are reconciled and a new agreement is made.

18. After the *Perusian* War (for so 'tis called) *Cesar* suspecting *Antony*'s affection towards him; to strengthen himself seized on *Spain* and *Gall*, though his Provinces, taking occasion at the death of his Lieutenant, wherby being 40 Legions strong, he was able to grapple with him if need should require. But having no shipping he was at a loss as to Sea matters, and therefore married *Scribonia* the sister of *Libo*, father-in-law to *Sexus Pompey*, from whom he hoped by this alliance if need were to obtain peace. *Antony* this Spring moved from *Alexandria*, where he had lived all Winter very loosely with *Cleopatra*, as against the *Parthians*, who now under conduct of *Labienus* had over-run *Syria* as far as *Tyre*. Though this Town was set upon by them, and he pretended he would relieve it, yet he did not, alleging a necessity of going to the War against *Pompey*, who now hindered all Provisions from coming to the Cite, and thereby caused a great dearth: & he again excused himself why he came no sooner to that against *Pompey*, because he was retained by the *Parthian* War. Saying then into *Asia*, he had news of the event of the *Perusian* War, and blamed much his wife and brother; whence passing into *Greece* he met with her, and his mother *Julia*, whom *Pompey* having taken now sent safe to him. Thence he sailed over the *Ionian* Sea, where *Evobarbus* delivered up all his Fleet and forces to him; and so they came to *Brundisium*, where they were kept out by a Garrison placed there by *Cesar*.

19. This made such a breach betwixt them, that *Antony* blocked up the Town, and procured *Pompey* from *Sicily* to invade *Italy*. *Cesar* came to *Brundisium*, where the old Soldiers being unwilling to fight against *Antony*, the Army laboured to reconcile the *Triumvirs*, which *Cocceius* friend to both at length effected with much labour; *Pollio* on *Antony*'s side, and *Mecenas* on *Cesar*'s, as Delegates making up the breach. All offences were mutually to be forgiven, and for that *Marcellus* husband to *Octavia* *Cesar*'s sister was now dead, and also *Fulvia* *Antony*'s wife for grief that he neglected her, *Antony* married *Octavia*. Then was the Roman Empire divided betwixt them, the bounds of their Dominions being *Cadropolis* a Town of *Illyricum*, all from it Westward being to obey *Cesar*, and all Eastward *Antony*. *Africk* was left to *Lepidus*, who now was even no body, and having offended *Cesar* had been confined by him to that Province. The War against the *Parthians* was judged to *Antony*, and that against *Pompey* (who must needs now be suppressed) unto *Cesar*. *Antony* sent *Ventidius* into *Asia* to restrain the *Parthians*, who now had made an incursion as far as *Ionia*. But out of *Sardinia* did *Menodorus* *Pompey*'s Admiral the second time eject *Helius* *Cesar*'s Captain, whereupon *Cesar* refused to hearken to *Antony*, when he moved him to be reconciled unto *Pompey*. Both the *Triumvirs* (or rather now the *Duumvirs*) being come to the Cite, were received with most lamentable complaints of poor people, ready to starve for want of Provisions, which *Pompey*

B b b b b 2

pey

**SECT. 7.**  
*Appian.*

A M 3965.  
P. C. 714.

Vide *Seruium*  
in locum.

*Appian.*

*Dio lib. 48.*

*Appian.*



SECT. 7. *Pompey* hindred from coming, from the East by *Sicily*, from the West by *Sardinia* and *Corfica*, which he had in his power, and from *Africk* by his Navy also, which then was most powerful at Sea. *Cæsar* could not be drawn to make Peace with him, notwithstanding the loud cries and prayers of the multitude, which obstinacy drew him, and *Antony* (rescuing him) into such danger, as both of them were near stoning. At length being forced to it, and *Pompey* being perswaded, they met, but *Pompey* expecting to be admitted into the power and place of *Lepidus*, the Treaty came to nothing. Yet the pressure of the famine brought them together again, and amongst other things it was concluded, that *Pompey* retaining all the Islands he had already, and *Peloponnesus* over and above, as long as they should hold their power; and having liberty to be Consul, and to discharge the Office by any of his friends, he was to leave the Sea open, and pay to the People what corn was due out of *Sicily*. The proscribed persons, except such as were guilty of *Cæsar's* death, had now all liberty to return. The day following, Consuls were designed for four years. First *Antonius* and *Libo*, than *Cæsar* and *Pompey*, next *Enobarbus* and *Sosius*, and lastly, *Cæsar* and *Antony*, who then (it might be hoped) might restore the Government to the People. Then did *Antony* and *Cæsar* return, and were most joyfully received. And this year being the 714 of the City, did they procure *Herod* the Great to be declared King of *Judæa*, in the first year of the 184 Olympiad, *Cn. Domitius Calvinus* the second time, and *C. Afinius Pollio* being Consuls.

A great famine caused by *Sextus Pompey*.

*Procureth an agreement with him.*

*Ventidius* profreth against the *Parthians*.

20. *Antony* departed towards the East again for the *Parthian* Warre, which hitherto *Ventidius* his Lieutenant had managed with good successe, having got several victories, wherein *Labienus*, who brought them into *Syria*, and *Pharnapates*, (or *Phraates*, or *Barzapharnes*, being called by several names) the greatest of their Captains, with *Pacorus* son to *Orodes* the King, were slain. After this he repelled them in *Media* and *Mesopotamia*, and besieged *Antiochus Comagenus* in *Samosata*, whom he suffered, upon promise of 1000 talents, to send Ambassadors unto *Antony*, who now drew near, and for that the siege was likely long to continue, by reason of the desperat resolution of the defendants, granted him Peace for 300 talents, accepted but of two Hostages, and those inconsiderable ones; and he gave him leave to put to death *Alexander*, who had formerly revolted to the *Roman*. This by (a) some he was thought to do for fear of the Army, which was angry at his ill usage of *Ventidius*; though others say, he honoured him according to his deserts, who though a man of an obscure extract, now first of all others triumphed over the *Parthians*. *Antony* having settled the affairs of *Syria*, departed to *Athens*, where he spent the winter with *Octavia*. But the (c) peace with *Pompey* continued but a short time. The cause of the breach (what ever secretly was aimed at) was pretended to be, for that *Antony* being to quit *Peloponnesus*, would do it but upon this condition, that *Pompey* should give him satisfaction for such moneys as was due to him from the Inhabitants. But *Pompey* liked not of any such condition, and therefore rigged a new Fleet, and provided himself of forces, perhaps giving credit to *Meirodorus*, who would tell him, that the present state of affairs was no true Peace, but rather a cessation of arms. He then renewed his Piracy, which renewed the former grievances, and made the People cry out, that the matter was onely altered from three Tyrants to four. But *Meirodorus* revolted to *Cæsar*, bringing in with him *Corfica*, *Sardinia*, and three Legions, and then *Antony* was called to *Brundisium* to consult about the War. Thither he came at the day appointed, but *Cæsar* keeping not his word he staid not for him, either not liking the breach of the Peace, or for that he envied *Cæsar* all that power he saw him have; for still they suspected and grudged each other. But *Cæsar* being provided, set out to Sea, as to invade *Sicily*, and was beaten back by *Pompey*, though he took him at unawares, who heard nothing of the revolt of *Meirodorus*, till also of *Cæsars* coming. Afterward his ships lying at Anchor, were extreemly battered, and most of the men were cast away.

The Peace with *Pompey* broken.

*Joseph. Antiq. lib. 14. c. 26.*

*Dio lib. 49. Appian in Parthica.*

*Florus l. 4. c. 9.*

(a) *Dio ut prius.*  
(b) *Plutarch in Antonio.*  
(c) *Appian de bello Civil. l. 4.*

A. M. 3967.  
V. C. 716.  
*Herodis 2.*

21. *Cæsar* fortified the Coasts of *Italy*, for fear lest *Pompey* should make an invasion, which he, not knowing how to improve a Victory, was never wont to attempt. Then wanting all manner of provisions for the Warre, he sent *Maccenas* to *Antony*, who refusing not to joyn with him, this cheered him, together with a Victory got by *Agrippa* in *Aquidaine*; many Cities, and private persons also promising aid. *Antony* came to *Tarentum* with 300 ships, but whether there was something else betwixt them, or for that he was now furnished, he slighted his help, *Cæsar* excused himself that he met him not, which the other took in ill part, yet sent for him again. For having laid out much upon the Fleet, he intended to exchange it for some *Italian* Legions, to be used in the *Parthian* Warre, it being difficult for him to raise men in *Italy*, which was subject to *Cæsar*, though by their last agreement both were left free there to make their Levies. *Octavia* coming over to her brother, agreed them, who then made the exchange, and because the time of the *Triumvirate* set by the Senate was almost out, prorogued their power for five years longer, without any consideration had of the suffrages of the People. So *Antony* departed into *Syria*, *Cæsar* deferring his Expedition into *Sicily* until the following year.

*Antony and Cæsar make a new agreement and prorogue their power.*

22. He determined to invade *Sicily* from three several quarters: *Lepidus*, *Idem.* who now joyned with him, was to invade it from *Africk*, *Taurus* from *Tarentum*, and he himself from *Puteoli*. *Pompey* resolved to oppose him so many several wayes, but at this time it needed not; for *Cæsar's* Navy was the second time wracked by a Tempest, which so puffed up *Pompey*, that he stiled himself *Nepesune's* son. But *Cæsar* gave not over the enterprize; for the same Summer having recruited his forces, and mended his ships, he put forth to sea, and then, though on *Lepidus* his part were lost two Legions, overthrew *Pompey's* Fleet, but was again worsted, and yet landed 21 Legions, and 2000 Horse, besides 5000 lightly armed. No great or memorable barrel was there on Land; but *Pompey* sent to his Enemy, to know if he would fight by Sea, fearing his Land-Forces. He accepted of his offer, and then finally defeated him, having sunk 28 of his Vessels. The rest were either raken or broken, seventeen onely escaped, and at the sight of this overthrow his Land-forces yielded to *Cæsar*, so that with his seventeen Vessels he fled to *Antony*, from whom he expected protection, having restored formerly his mother safe to him, when in such a condition. *Messana* still stood out, but the Garrison at length yielded to *Lepidus*, who granted to the Soldiers, to draw them to his party, the plunder of the Town equal with his own. Having now by the addition of those Forces 22 Legions, and a strong body of Horse under his command, he pleased himself with thoughts of getting all *Sicily* into his hands, to which he pretended a right, as first invaded by him; and he sought to hinder *Cæsar* all he could from the possession of it.

A. M. 3969.  
V. C. 718.

23. *Cæsar* expostulated with him for his ingratitude; but to no purpose. Then found he means to draw away all his Army from him, which now was something averse to Civil Warrs, and satisfied of the greater worth of *Cæsar*, being moreover incensed against their General, for making *Pompey's* Soldiers partakers with them in the plunder of *Messana*. Yet though his Soldiers would have killed him did he save them alive, but outed him of all power, and banished him; so that thus fell one head of this *Tricipitina*. *Pompey* not being persued by *Cæsar*, craved protection from *Antony*; yet sent to the *Parthian*, in case he should not be received by him. Then thought he of seizing upon *Syria*, and the parts adjacent, upon a rumour of *Antony's* being overthrown; whereupon he was pursued by his party, and at last taken and killed at *Midaius* a Town of *Phrygia*, as *Dio* writeth, but as *Florus* and *Appian* at *Miletus*, in the fourth year of his age, fourteen years after the death of his Father. *Cæsar* at his return restrained robberies in the City, setting watches therein, and administered things in the ancient way by annual Magistrates. He burnt all letters written in time of War, promising he would restore the Commonwealth as soon as *Antony* should return, who, he knew, would also lay down the Magistracy, all Civil Warrs being ended. He was there-

One head of the *Tricipitina* broken off.

*Pompey* killed.

*Appian ut supra. Plutarch in Antonio. Dio. l. 49.*

## SECT. 7.

therefore received with luckie acclamations, and had a *Perpetual Tribuneship* bestowed on him, as invired by this honour to lay down his other power. Concerning this he wrote privately to *Antony*, who, whilst *Cesar* was thus imployed about *Pompey*, had called *Cleopatra* into *Syria*, and there given her *Phoenicia*, *Calesyria*, *Cyprus*, a great part of *Cilicia*, with part of *Arabia Nabathæa*, and so much of *Judea* as brought *Balsamum*. Then sending her home, he marched into *Armenia*, where yet he could do nothing (for desire of her) like himself; but ever thought of returning to her, which shortly after he did; but was much troubled in his passage by the *Parthians*, to whom his Army had revolted, but that they killed such as first passed over to them.

Antony doat-  
eth on Cleopa-  
tra.

His extrava-  
gancies in  
Egypt.

24. The year following, and that wherein *Pompey* was slain, he was solicited by the King of *Media* in conjunction with him to make Warre upon the *Parthian*; but was hindred by firs which hapned betwixt *Cleopatra* and *Octavia* his wife, who now returning to him out of *Italy*, met with letters at *Athens* to stop her there, he pretending necessary avocations by Warre. *Cesar* then would have had her come to his house, but she would go to her husbands, where she educated both his children and her own, as became her. Then did *Antony* return into *Armenia*, where he caught the King by a wile, and brought him in triumph into *Egypt*. Now would he be called *Father Bacchus*, as *Cleopatra* *Isis*, who now was stiled by him *Queen of Egypt*, *Cyprus*, *Africa*, and *Calesyria*, *Casario* whom she had by *Julius Cesar* being her partner in these Principalities. But his own sons by her, *Alexander* and *Ptolemy*, he named *Kings of Kings*; betwixt whom he did not onely part what Provinces he himself had, but also *Armenia*, *Parthia*, and *Media*, and to *Cleopatra* their daughter assigned *Cyrene*. These things, together with the disgrace of his sister provoked *Cesar*, who made report of them to the Senate and People. Hereby he incensed men's minds against *Antony*, who shortly after went into *Media*, and entered into league with the King thereof. *Cesar* at the same time fought against several People of *Illyrium*, and the next year both provided for the Civil War betwixt themselves.

Plutarch.  
Dio.

Cesar and he  
fall out.

25. *Antony* in way of recrimination to *Cesar*, objected his putting *Leptinus* besides the *Triumvirate*, and taking his Soldiers as those of *Pompey* to himself, which ought to have been equally free for both; and he challenged his part of the Soldiers raised in *Italy*. For, *Cesar* besides what we formerly mentioned, accused him of taking *Egypt* as his Province, killing *Pompey*, abusing *Ariavades* the *Armenian* King, to the great infamy of the *Roman* State; but above all upbraided him with *Cleopatra*, and what he had assigned to their children, as also for that he owned *Casario* as begotten by *Cesar*, though to the Senate he had acknowledged him for his own son. *Antony*, bewitched by *Cleopatra* so far as not to be able to rule himself, wrote to the Senate to have those things confirmed, which he had settled upon her and her children. The two Consuls *Cn. Domitius* and *C. Sosius* being much for him, were forced to leave the City, and get over to him, who now also having raised great forces, sent to *Rome*, to drive *Octavia* out of his house. And if taking his opportunity he had this Summer invaded *Italy*, he might in all probability have put an end to the quarrel. For, *Cesar* was not yet provided, wanting money exceedingly, which he now exacted throughout *Italy*. But this delay herein helped him, that men's minds were more and more bent against *Antony*, especially after *Cesar* had published his Testament, wherein he disposed as formerly, to his and *Cleopatra's* children, and ordained, that though he should dye at *Rome*, his body should be sent to her at *Alexandria*: it was also reported, that he meant, if his matters prospered, to give her *Rome*, and transfer the seat of the Empire into *Egypt*. Hereupon the Warre was decreed against her, and he was devested of his *Triumvirate*, but not declared an Enemy, for fear of those with him. For then must they necessarily have been included in the same capacity, and so driven upon desperate Councils: to them therefore rewards were promised, if they would forsake him; and hereby was he thought rendred more inexcusable, in that being

Dio l. 50.  
Florus l. 4. c. 11.

A. M. 3973.  
Ol. 187. an. 1.  
V. l. 722.  
Herodis 8.

Vide Dionem  
ubi supra.

## SECT. 7.

being unburied he should make War for an *Egyptian* woman against his Country. Then did the one draw all the East, and the other the West to his party. *Cesar* had ready 250 ships of War, 80000 foot, and 12000 horse. *Antony* had 500 such like ships, very big and stately, with 100000 foot, and also 12000 horse. The King of the *Nedes* also sent him aid, which being not sent back, and *Antony* also recalling his forces he had left with him for the protection of that Country; the *Parthian* became Master of that Kingdom, and *Armenia* also was lost.

Antony wor-  
sted.

Overthrown  
at Actium in a  
Sea-fight.

His Land forces  
yield to  
Cesar.

26. The following year *Agrippa* being sent before by *Cesar*, took divers ships coming to *Antony* with Provisions, and molested him exceedingly upon the Sea, wherewith *Cesar* encouraged passed from *Brundisium* into *Epirus*, to a Promontory whereof that lieth near the Bay of *Ambracia* sending his forces, he took in *Corcyra* also did *Agrippa* the Island *Leucas* near to *Actium*, with *Parra* and *Corinth*; *Titius* also and *Taurus* routed *Antony's* horse. Then several persons of note fell off from *Antony*. *Sosius* was beaten, and lost his life at Sea, and *Antony* himself was also worsted by a guard of *Cesar's*. Being much troubled hereat, *Canidius* would have persuaded him to send away *Cleopatra*, and decide the quarrel either in *Thrace* or *Macedonia*, for that he was stronger in Land forces. But though his navy had been twice worsted, and he had lost many ships, yet the obtained of him to fight at Sea, providing withall all things as for a fight. For four dayes the Sea was so rough with winds that it hindred them from fighting; but on the fifth they joyned, and then *Cesar's* ships being light could easily tack about and invade *Antony's*, which were unwieldy, and of little use. *Cleopatra* wearied with long expectation, ere it could certainly be known how things would go, with her gilded deck, Purple sails, and sixty light *Egyptian* Gallies fled away, which *Antony* seeing, presently followed, forsaking his men, and running away, who ought to have animadverted upon such as did so. His Soldiers fought most valiantly, notwithstanding the baseness of their General (who getting into *Cleopatra's* Gally, went, and sat by himself in a deep silence, holding his head with both his hands) till at the tenth hour they were partly persuaded, and partly constrained to submit, it being confessed that in this fight they behaved themselves like to, and executed the Office of, the best General, and their General played the part of a run-away Soldier. From this victory of *Cesar* at *Actium* a Promontory of *Epirus*, Several \* Authors date his Monarchy, which lasted from the second of *September* whereon the battle was fought, to the 19th of *August*, on which he died, 44 years wanting 13 dayes. Now was hee himself the third time, and *M. Valerius Messala* Consuls, in the 723th year of the Citie, the second of the 187 *Olympiad*, and the seventh of *Herod* King of *Judea*, as *Josephus* gathereth, the 29th before the Era of *Christ*, A. M. 3974.

Idem.  
Plutarch in  
Antonia.

A. M. 3974.  
V. C. 723.  
Herodis 9.  
Ante Christ. 29.

Patercul. l. 5.  
c. 85.

\*Dio.  
Suetonius.  
Aurelius Vi-  
ctor.

Entropius.

Plutarch, in  
Antonia.

Patercul. lib. 2.  
cap. 87.  
Dio lib. 51.

27. His Land forces could scarcely believe his flight, having such an Army left to him intire, and for seven dayes were so constant to him, that though the thing was clearly known, they rejected *Cesar's* messages; but being now over-taken by him, and forsaken of their Leader *Canidius*, who had posted away after *Antony*, they yielded, and were taken into *Cesar's* Army. Then did *Cesar* go to *Athens*, where he put to death *Cassius Parmensis*, one of those that slew his Uncle, and settling the affairs both of *Greece* and *Asia*, determined to winter in *Samus*; but was called into *Italy* by *Agrippa* to quiet his Soldiers who now mutinied. He sailed then to *Brundisium*, but the Senate meeting him there, he went no further, and having dispatched his business within thirty dayes returned into *Asia*. *Antony* for some time lived disconsolately by himself. *Cleopatra* conveyed ships over into the Red-Sea, intending there to seek her fortune, she had thought also of flying into *Spain*. They both sent to *Cesar*, she that her Children might have *Egypt* granted them, and he that he might be permitted to live privately at *Athens*. She sent him a Golden Crown and Scepter, with a royal seat, privily to curry favour, and he, though openly he threatned her, secretly promised her safety.

and

SECT. 7. and her Kingdom, if she would kill *Antony*, who was also advised by \* *Herod* \* *Joseph* *Antiq. l. 15. c. 10.*

28. They sent again to him the first and second time, and he gave up to him *Turullius* a Senator, and one of the murderers of *Julius Caesar*. He putting the man to death returned no answer, neither the second time, when he sent *Antyllus* his son to him with much Gold, which he received. But with her he still dealt, sending *Thyrus* his Freed-man to her to make her believe that he was in love with her, hoping she might kill *Antony*, and preserve her Treasures, which she threatened to burn if she came into any danger. Now going down into *Egypt* he sent *Cornelius Gallus* before him, who seized on *Parosinium* the Chief Citie on that part near *Africk*; and *Pelusium* the other strongest Town towards *Syria* did *Cleopatra* betray to him, secretly forbidding the *Alexandrians* to go out against him. *Antony*, once fought prosperously against his horse, and the second time was beaten; then he sent him a challenge, which *Caesar* refused, saying, that if *Antony* so pleased there were 1000 wayes lying open for his destruction. Wherefore bethinking himself that he could not die with more credit than in battel, he resolved to oppose *Caesar* both by Sea and Land; but *Cleopatra* procured, that both his Navy, and horse revolted. Hereupon he returned into the Citie, crying out, that *he was betrayed by her for whose sake he had taken up Arms*. She being afraid of him departed to her Monument, and sent some to tell him she was dead, pretending fear of *Caesar*. Upon which message, he resolving to follow her, wounded himself in the belly. The wound not quickly dispatching him, she sent for him up into her Monument, whither he was pulled up by her self, and two women, being willing to live

*Antony* killeth himself.

now that she was alive, and hoping he might possibly recover. But he shortly after died, willing her as well as she could to provide for her self, and not grieve for him, but rather rejoyce, in that he had been the most famous of men, as also most powerfull, and now being a *Roman* was not through laziness overcome by a *Roman*. Such was the end of this man, who through desire of Fame became the Author of sad Tragedies to his Countrey, who in the use of his power greatly abused it, and was not onely overcome by a *Roman*, but also by a *Woman*, and then so behaved himself, that he could not be excused from laziness, effeminateness, and luxury, all which things checked that goodness of disposition supposed once to be in him, and left *Cleopatra* little cause to rejoyce for any real glory that might accrue unto him.

20. *Caesar* endeavoured to get *Cleopatra* into his hands, that he might lead her in Triumph. He easily obtained *Alexandria*, the Inhabitants whereof he pardoned, but put to death *Antyllus* the son of *Antony*, and some others. He viewed the body of *Alexander* the Great, and out of honour to his memory set on it a Golden Crown, and strewed it with flowers; but touching it he broke off a little piece of the Nose, and refused to see the bodies of the *Ptolomies*, though the *Alexandrians* much desired it, saying, *he had a mind to see the King, and not dead men*. *Cleopatra* dealt with her Physician to dispatch her, but being terrified by *Caesar* upon the account of her Children, she gave it over, and did all she could, but in vain, to work upon his affections when he came to see her. Then did she give him an Inventory of her goods, and he promised her fair things, thinking thereby that he deceived her, though he himself was deceived. For she understanding that she was reserved for a Triumph, prevented it by a voluntary death, as is in the History of her Kingdom related. *Caesar* made *Egypt* a Tributary Province, and would have conferred the Government thereof upon *Arins* the Philosopher, who formerly had taught him, but he refusing the imployment, he gave it to *Cornelius Gallus*, a man of obscure birth. *Cesaris* the son of *Cleopatra* by *Julius Caesar*, had by his mother been sent towards *India* with a great sum of money, but at *Rhodes* his Governour perfwaded him to return, as now being to expect the Kingdom. *Caesar* consulting what to do

with

\* Οὐκ ἀγαθὸν πολλοὺς αἰσχεῖν. To have many *Cæars* is not good; and so he was sent after his mother. Whilest these things were doing at *Alexandria*, was *M. Tullius Cicero*, son of the Orator, Consul at *Rome* (taken in by *Caesar* to blot out the ignominy of betraying his father) in the room of *Licinius Crassus*, where he published *Caesar* his Colleague's Letters concerning the overthrow of *Antony*, and put them up over the pleading place, where his father's head had formerly been set. But this overthrow and death of *Cleopatra* hapned in the 14th year after the death of *Julius Caesar*, the third of the 187 *Olympiad*, the 724 of the Citie, 28 before the birth of *Christ*, A. M. 3975. 294 after the death of *Alexander* the Great, under whom as the *Macedonian Empire* began, so now in *Cleopatra* (and not till now) it was quite extinct; and here the Contemporaries with it receive their period.

A. M. 3975.  
Ol. 187. ann. 3.  
V. C. 724.  
Herod. 10.  
Ante Christum  
28.

C e c c c

A N

So doth *Cleopatra* her self, and *Egypt* is made a Province.

*Dio ut supra.*  
*Sueton. in*  
*Octavio.*  
*Plutarch. in*  
*Antono.*  
*Orosius lib. 6.*  
*cap. 19.*  
*Plutarch. lib. 2.*  
*cap. 87.*  
*Florus lib. 4.*  
*cap. 11.*  
*Livii Epit.*  
*lib. 133.*  
*Julian ad The-*  
*mistiūm.*



A N  
INSTITUTION  
OF  
General History.


*The First Part.*

BOOK IV.  
*The Roman Empire.*

CHAP. I.

*From the absoluteness of Octavius, to the death of Tiberius,  
containing the space of 66 years.*

The Grandeur of the  
Roman Empire.

- I.  HE *Roman Empire* had now swallowed up the *Macedonian*, with such Kingdoms and States as were at all considerable, and Contemporary with it (whereof though some might retain a shew of liberty, yet were they but in a condition of vassalage) except the *Parthian* Kingdom, which as yet acknowledged no subjection, and when it did, being forced thereto for the most part by intestine divisions, not long continued in that acknowledgement.
2. This *Empire* now laboured under it's own weight, and, like to some unwieldy thing, staggered, by reason of the turgency of it's inward burthen, without any extraneous violence: it was grown up to an arthetick habit, and had already sufficiently manifested the danger of this constitution. For, being all head and no body, it wanted those limbs, which by direction from a superiour sense, could secure it's progress; or indeed being all body, and

C c c c c 2 no

It laboureth  
under it's own  
weight.

no head, it was void of that influence which effecteth an orderly motion, and is necessary for the subsistence of life it self. The proper fruits of *Popular Government* were now grown fully ripe. Every one would command, and none would be ruled, yet every man challenging a part in the Supreme power, none enjoyed it much, and therefore but few were really solicitous for the upholding of it as *Popular*, any further than some private interests led them. The heady multitude indeed was violently carried on in it's desires after the chief command; but some desired it rather that others might not enjoy it, holding this Principle, to oppose all rising, though excellent persons whatsoever. Others tickled with an humour of ruling, and in intellectuals above their fellows, set themselves to please the rabble by maligning other men, crying up liberty and equality, extolling the justice of the *Agrian*, and vaunting of great matters intended to be done by themselves, when in a capacity. Sometimes their boldness and cunning procured their rise, most commonly some capitulations, and otherwhiles money distributed to the rabble, when the step was great. For after that the *Roman* passed the Seas, more luxury, avarice, and corruption, than of Victory was brought home. When they came abroad, notwithstanding the repure of their abstinence, they found the same temptations as other men, and made themselves Masters of the manners, as well as the possessions of the conquered. All things were now bought and sold, from the meanest Office to the Consulship, and the lowest privilege to the right of Suffrages.

3. The daily sight of these things corrupted such, as else might have proved just. It seemed a prudent Principle, rather to command than to be commanded; rather to buy than to be sold, and to get something, rather than suffer all things to be lost. The body of the People was now grown large, the *Italians* being received to the freedom of the City, and liberty of Suffrages. Hence ambitious men had advantage enough to make parties, and to carry things in the *Comitia* or Assemblies, having once by indirect practices ingratiated themselves. Having obtained commands afar off, they had opportunity to increase their power, through the distance of place, the credit of their conquests, and the affections of their Armies. Power once obtained, is difficultly laid down, both by reason that man's nature is averse to diminution, and for that something may be committed in height of passion, or through convenience, or otherwise, whereof it might not be safe to give an account, as neither to lye open and naked to the malice of revengeful Enemies. The Empire being now vast, several men at the same time might be found in these capacities, so that jealousies and emulations must thence be heightened, and one strive to reduce the other into order. Further, the largeness of Empire afforded multiplicity of places, alwayes of several, and sometimes of contrary interests or humours, which would espouse quarrels accordingly, whence never would be wanting sufficient and convenient matter for publick combustions.

4. Such was the present State of *Roman* affairs, and such had been their constitution before the present juncture, which loudly, in the understanding of all prudent men, called for the help of some single Person duly qualified, whose Monarchy could onely put an end to the civil dissensions, by removing the loose liberty of the multitude, which gave occasion to those distempers, by preventing ambitious indeavours of private persons after Sovereignty, which fomented them, and by checking all exorbitant power of particular men, which effectually procured them. *Cesar* on the one side considering these things, as also being sensible of the power he already enjoyed, and of the danger he might incur by removing himself to a private life; and on the other, weighing the envy and odium he should contract by the establishment of himself, after he had conquered *Antony* and *Cleopatra*, and (having entered his fourth Consulship in the Isle *Sammus*) returned to *Rome*, he asked the advice of his two most inward Counsellors and besome friends, *Agrippa* and *Mæcenat*. *Vipsanius Agrippa*, a man of mean Parentage (which *Vipsanius* manifesting, he changed into *Marcus*) and no great endowments, except

And under  
such distem-  
pers

As Monarchy  
could onely  
cure.

*Agrippa* his  
advice to *Cæ-*  
*sar* for De-  
mocracy.

*Mæcenat* his  
plea for Mo-  
narchy.

The insuffer-  
able inconven-  
iences of  
Popular Go-  
vernment.

in what concerned War, though of a well-meaning mind, and a great lover of *Cæsar*, answered him first, and earnestly advised him to lay down his power, and remit the Government into the hands of the Multitude. His arguments for the most part respected the danger of *Cæsar*'s person, being drawn from the avernesse of the *Romans* to Monarchy, and enforced by examples of others, who had attempted to establish themselves. Against Monarchy it self he could produce little of moment. He would prove that *Popular Government* was better for the *Greeks*, who, he said, did nothing that was notable, till they put themselves into that way. He said, there were others also, the condition of whom pleaded for this Government, yet named none. But he especially instanced in the *Romans* themselves, who being averse to Monarchy, had done all these great things under that form of rule and domination which was opposite to it.

5. But *Mæcenat*, a man, though but of *Equestrian* rank, yet of (a) high descent, and (b) extraordinary abilities, desired *Cæsar*, that if he loved his Country, he would alter, correct and reduce it into a better form of Government. He said, he would not have him deceived with a specious shew of names and words; but considering what should follow, to restrain the fury of the multitude, and take to himself, assisted by excellent persons, the Government; that the most prudent might consult, the best Captains have the command of Armies, and the most robust and poor serve in them. Hereby every one minding his own business, and one affording help to another, none would find any defect, and the true power of the People with liberty and safety would be preserved. For, the power of the multitude, he said, being indeed the slavery of every worthy man, was most grievous, and brought common destruction unto all: but this, wherein modesty should ever be preferred, and mens desires considered, would make all alike to be happy. He would have him therefore assisted and advised by worthy persons, to order all things needful, to make War, create Magistrates, reward, punish, and make Laws; all others being obedient; so that Wars might be made with secrecy, and upon occasion, such as were preferred might be chosen, not by lot, or through the prevalence of their ambition, but for their worth. Thus good men might be honoured, and bad punished without disturbance; and so at length things would be rightly carried, when nothing should be referred to the Vulgar, nor openly be consulted of, nor be committed to intruders, nor come into danger through their ambition. In sum, all would enjoy their own, no dangerous Wars nor wicked Seditions being made.

6. But these evils he proved to be common in a *Popular Government*, wherein the great ones aspiring to the top, and with money or otherwise purchasing the help of the ordinary sort, disturbed all things. He said, they had now had large experience of these things; and that by no other means could they be ended, than by that whereof he spake; whereof this was an evident sign, that for a long time they had been vexed with Wars and Seditions, by reason of the multitude of men, and greatness of affairs; for that men were so various in Nature and Nation, and induced with such diversity of affections and desires: and because things hereby were brought to that pass, that with difficulty could they be managed. Now that he spake true, he said, the deeds themselves bore mention; for, as long as the multitude of the *Roman* People was not great, nor much more considerable than their neighbours, the State was in a good condition, and almost all Italy was subdued by them. But after that passing out of Italy, they went abroad into all Countries and Islands, and filled all Seas and Lands with their name and power, no good got they by it: but first of all, at home and within the walls, riots being made, they shook the Commonwealth, and afterwards propagated the same mischief into their Enemies. Therefore their City, like to some great ship of burthen, filled with a various multitude, and destitute of a Pilot, having been for many ages beaten and tossed with grievous waves, now staid, and having no stay, was tossed here and there. He desired him therefore, that he would not still neglect her thus conflicting with tempests

Vid Dionis.  
l. 52. ad in-  
stitutum p. 463. &c.

(a) *Mæcenat* atavis edito-  
ribus. Horat.  
i.e. Cui *Mæno-*  
*dorus* pater  
*Menippus* avus,  
Rex *Etrusco-*  
*rum* fuit  
avus.

(b) Ingeniosus  
vir ille (*Mæ-*  
*cenat*) fuit.  
Magnum exam-  
plum *Romana*  
eloquentia da-  
turus, nisi illum  
enervasset sali-  
citas imo ca-  
pitulatio. Seneca  
Epistol. 19.



Tempests (for he saw how much water she had already taken in) nor suffer the flay to be quite broken off (for she was now battered, and could not long subsist) but seeing that the gods had presented him as an Overseer and Governour to his Country, not to cast her off; but as by his means she had a little recovered her spirits, so, for the ages to come, she might remain in safety by the same means. Having used these arguments drawn from the *Thing*, he took others from the *Man*, and shewed him his imminent danger, in case he laid down his power, in the several cases of *Pompey*, *Marius* and *Sylla*. *Pompey*, he said, having devested himself of his power, was condemned, and being laid at by his Enemies perished, because he could not recover it. He told him, that his father (meaning *Julius Caesar*) going about the same miscarried. The same had happened to *Marius* and *Sylla*, but that they were prevented by death; though some said also that *Sylla* killed himself to prevent his Enemies: 'tis certain, that many of his Laws began to be repealed whilest he yet lived. In conclusion, he told him, he must expect many such as *Lepidus*, *Sertorius*, *Brutus*, and *Cassius*. This is the sum of *Mace-* *nas* his speech in behalf of Monarchy, whereof the beginning is lost, as also the conclusion of that of *Agrippa*.

Democratical Government impracticable in one or more Nations, considerable for wealth, and of various interests.

7. These things sufficiently evidence, that it was impossible in an humane way for the Empire to subsist in a Commonwealth so called; and not onely that, but any one considerable Nation, or more (not to speak of one, or a few Cities, or places at present) which must necessarily consist of *multitudes of people, diversly qualified, variously inclined, and very unequally possessed of wealth and honours*. Such having the Supreme power in their own hands must needs foment several humours. The rich, and honourable, must either not meddle, and so out of discontent watch for an advantage to alter things, or if they do, they will not be content with equal employments. When any extraordinary power is obtained, such inforcements as were formerly mentioned will happen, which being driven on by that ambition which is but natural to all mankind, will drive either fear, or desire, into Monarchy. A civil war especially produceth this, and more especially when the quarrel is betwixt single persons; and yet more especially is it inforced by a religious pretence, under which Vizard the greatest deceit hath triumphed, accompanied, or ushered in by a sacrilegious asserting of approving providence, whereby *inviolable Majesty, Obedience, Propriety, and all things excellent have been contaminated, overturned, and trampled on, and yet a structure erected at length out of the materials of those very things, which formerly were onely by the intruders accounted bad, because they stood upon another ground*. But not onely in a Democratical way is it impossible for one, or more considerable Nations to be governed, but in an Aristocratical also. For if the wealth and propriety of a Nation be diffused, and not limited in the possessions of a few of the chiefest persons, such would find a continual repugnancy in their subjects, others thinking themselves as capable of power as they. Hence quarrels and implacable enmities must arise, and he who shall be best able will at length command the rest, though he ought to have been their fellow subject, and demonstrate a necessity of Monarchical Government.

An answer to Agrippa's argument drawn from the Greeks.

8. The affairs of the *Gracians* urged by *Agrippa* to make against Monarchy do much plead for it, and evince the necessity of it. For after that the multitude in the several Cities had rebelliously withdrawn themselves from that obedience, which both the Law of God, and just title of succession challenged as due to their *Kings* (who as *Thucydides* acknowledgeth governed them with Justice and Moderation) how miserably were they inflamed by their fellow Citizens (called by them *Tyranni* or *Tyrants*) and forced to submit to Usurpers, who punished them for their disobedience towards their rightful Sovereigns. Never were there such Tumults, Seditions, Civil Wars, Massacres, and Desolations, as in, and amongst those Cities which called themselves Commonwealths. Such were the extravagancies of the multitude, that the best men were rejected, and bold, and sawcy fellows domineered; who being corrupted with money, bought, and sold all that was of con-

consequence, and by their cunning speeches turned, and led the rabble which way soever they pleased. As for what *Agrippa* urged, that they onely did things of moment after that the power came into the peoples hands; those things of moment were amongst themselves, and such as made them miserable, they tearing one another in pieces in the Peloponnesian, and other Wars, breaking nothing but rage, malice, and revenge against one another. Nothing of consequence did, or could they do against the Barbarians, as they accounted all besides themselves, till reduced under the Monarchy of *Alexander* they became instruments in his hands. Common danger engaged them against *Xerxes*, whose multitudes destroyed themselves; but had it not been for the meer wisdom of *Themistocles*, want of Order, of Government, and discretion, had ruined them all in departing into Peloponnesus, and foolishly applying themselves to the fortifying of the *Isthmus*. Though they several times assisted the *Ionians* in their rebellion, yet still at length were their endeavours defeated. *Cimon* indeed got several victories, and did notable exploits in a piratical way, but what effects produced they? The most that was effected at land was by *Agésilas*, but he having not done much was recalled, for that many Cities having been allured with *Persian Gold* (which never failed to corrupt the Councils, overthrow the projects, and disturb the affairs of these petty States, by taking off the great Leaders of the rabble) had conspired against *Sparta*. But what great matters they could do against Monarchy appeared; in that first, *Philip*, then *Alexander* his son, and their Successors, easily subdued, and kept them under. As for their Colonies, each one usually followed the fortune of its *Metropolis*; little but tumults, banishments, and Massacres do we hear of, or of private mens getting the power over them, for that wanting rightfull, and successive Princes, they lay open to the cheats of their fellow Citizens. The particular cases of *Corcyra*, *Samos*, *Syracuse*, and others demonstrate this, and therewith the danger, and infirmity of Antimonarchical Government.

The constitutions of their several States were dangerous.

9. But in particular, such were the several constitutions of these Cities, that *Aristotle* himself liked none of them, as appeareth in his books of Politics. The *Cretian* Commonwealth had its extravagancies, and if a Government may be judged from the carriage, and disposition of the people, in the opinion of *Epimenides* one of their own Poets, it was most naught. *Lycargus* by taking away the just, and Hereditary power of the Kings of *Sparta*, and contrary both to nature and loyalty dissolving the Government of his Forefathers made but way for many inconveniences in the too great power of the Senate, and otherwise; but especially for the tyranny of the *Ephori*, five fellows chosen yearly out of the rabble, who domineered with unparalleled insolence over all. *Solon's* constitution, after so many changes and alterations wherein no rest could be procured from the time they forsook Kingly Government, gave no such settlement, but that *Pisistratus* presently after cheating the rabble over and over, very easily made himself Master of *Athens*. Their *Ostracism* frightened all able persons from meddling with the Commonwealth, as also did the *Petalism* of *Syracuses*, whereupon their affairs went down the wind, till they were forced to recall the banished, and change still from one constitution to another, never being at quier, for that the multitude tyrannized in their assemblies. As for the learning of the *Greeks*, whereof they so much boasted, they had it either from the *Egyptians* or *Caldeans* who were subject to, and from the beginning flourished under, Monarchy: and *Pisistratus* who was a Monarch (though of his own making) made the first Collection of books, and thereby brought learning into *Athens* and *Greece*. Finally, the *Greeks* in their Wars were forced to make use of single persons; and at home in their greatest necessities did they fly to them, as *Dionysius* of *Halicarnassus* mentioneth the *Harmostes* of *Lacedaemon*, the *Archons* of the *Thessalians*, and the *Eximenes* of the *Mityleneans*, whom he compareth with the Dictator of the *Romans*.

10. For the *Romans*, 'tis a meer mistake of *Agrippa*. Their affairs never more

An answer to  
Agrippa's Ar-  
gument taken  
from the Ro-  
mans.

more prospered than under Monarchy, if we consider the small beginnings of the City. *Romulus* did exceeding much for his time, and so did his successors in their several ways, with so small a power as such a Colony could produce, inasmuch as revengeful and furious *Brutus* acknowledged, that *no better way of Government could be found out than what they had chalked out to them*. The faults in it seem to have been his something too much indulging at his first constitutions a popular humour which might bring him to his end afterwards. Then *Servius* to curry favour with the rabble, that they might maintain him in his illegally procured power, diminished the Regal authority, and that of the Senate, which gave the multitude such a scope, as after could they not be reduced into any order. After him *Tarquinius* the heir of *Priscus* might go about to recover this power (for, a little charity may be allowed us, for one who lived in so dark and remote times, and whose actions were only recorded by his Enemies, seeing we have formerly related his story as we find it) and thereby might incur that prejudice which, together with the fault of his son, and the implacable malice of *Brutus*, procured his banishment. This may be added as an ill accident, that *Romulus* dying childless, the Kingdom came to be elective, which thing must at length bring great inconveniences; so that experience now hath taught such Kingdoms to continue the Government to particular Families. But *Brutus* his giving to his *Consuls* full regal power (though they were two, and Annual) and putting the sword fully into their hands, together with his acknowledgement of the good government of all the former Kings, do more than make us suspect his spleen to have acted him most in the change of the power, especially the consequences considered. For, the power of the *Consuls* being shortly after diminished, or rather enervated by *Valerius* (who by flattering of the multitude got the name of *Poplicola*) the common sort got head, and confounded all things, nothing but changes, and re-changes hapening, till at length they quite outed the *Patricians* of their power, giving them leisure to repent their joining with *Brutus*, and brought things to that ruine and disorder formerly mentioned, as compelled them to turn about, and by their *Lex Regia* (hereafter to be spoken of) to devolve all their power upon a single Person.

The disorders  
and tumults  
arising from  
their Antimo-  
narchical Go-  
vernment.

11. Such and so many were these seditions and tumults, that thrice the common sort departed from the *Patricians* out of the City. And no sooner was the War against their King ended, but the stir begun; and these very stirrs have we proved from *Dionysius*, to have procured immediately the setting up of another King in effect, for half a year's continuance, viz. the *Dictator*, to which Officer they were forced to fly in all difficulties. Now it sufficiently appeared, that the want of a King hindered the promotion of their affairs, for, ever when any work was to be done abroad, nay when the Enemy was even at the gates, would the multitude mutiny, and with so much ado at length could be drawn out, that business was retarded, and thereby their affairs not a little impaired, the *Monarch* being wanting, who should have kept both orders in subjection and awe. The weight of Usury and oppression was the first pretended cause of these stirrs; but from it the multitude passed on from one thing to another, never resting till it had got all Offices of dignity, power, and profit, into its own hands, as hath been at large made out. To effect this, they would one while have *Consuls*, and another while *Tribunes Military*, having formerly made *Decemviri* for the making of new Laws; so that within the space of 134 years, they had 37 changes in the Government, whereof (to make it clear) fifteen were from *Consuls* to *Tribunes Military*, and from *Tribunes* to *Consuls*, the two grand ones from *Kings* to *Consul*, and from *Consuls* to *Decemviri*, and twenty *Dictatorships*, besides *Interregnums* many an one, whereby for five dayes the chief power was in the hands of their *Interreges*. Thus was the Government tossed to and fro by the multitude; and little was done abroad, by reason of these confusions, nay the City was taken by the *Galls*, and razed, all but the *Capitol*, through the cowardice of their *Tribunes*, who also being in number three or more, by

37 Changes  
of Govern-  
ment in 134  
years.

Great con-  
quests were  
made by  
single persons.

their several opinions confounded their Armies, and shewed the truth of, that speech of *Agamemnon* in *Homere*. And this is worthy observation, that when the contention arose about the *Consulship*, which the Commons would have equally with the *Patricians*, so incredible were those confusions, that for five years the *Tribuni Plebis* (those great incendiaries) suffered no supreme Magistrates at all to be created.

12. All the great conquests afterwards were made by single persons, who abroad had alone the command of Armies. And so far was this present kind of Government from being instrumental to them, that it manifestly hindered and obstructed all good proceedings. For, when a *Consul's* year was out, then must he be recalled, and a successor sent him, though he was in never so fair a way for the conquering of any Nation, which at length began to be understood, and then was their command continued to them, under the name of *Proconsuls*, after which time it was, that the great matters were performed; before this the Generals being glad to shuffle up a Peace, lest they should be defrauded of the credit of ending the Wars by their successors. The main cause of the growth of their Empire (under the all-disposing Providence of God) was the valour and virtue of their Captains and Senators, at that time when *Pyrrhus* set upon them; the courage also of the Soldiers was extraordinary, so that (as *Pyrrhus* spoke of himself) a *King*, whose command and conduct would have been constant and uncontrolled, might have done greater wonders with such men. But as for the Government, so far was it from contributing to justice or virtue, that, even in these times, which their Writers so celebrate for these things, the multitude having by the *Hortensian Law* wrested this power from the Senate, to oblige all whatsoever by their *Plebisita*, decreed aid to be sent to the *Mamertines*, though against all equity and conscience, the Senate having utterly refused to assist those thieves, murderers, intruders. But the multitude was told of great profit which would accrue to all men in particular, and therefore profit must bear down right, and forces must be sent into *Sicily* to get footing there, to enrich these virtuous and temperate men: and hence is to be fetched the rise of the *Carthaginian Wars* (which with what injustice they were managed on the *Roman* part, hath been seen) and indeed this was the original of all their conquests. The main things performed were done by such, as rather awed the people, than were awed by it, though to obtain their commands, they corrupted the multitude with money. *Marius*, *Sylla*, *Pompey*, and *Cesar*, after they had successively ingrossed the power, made the greatest conquests. After the overthrow of *Carthage* especially, scarcely any great command was obtained, but by some great promises under-hand, some new attempts of innovation, or money distributed to the Tribes. So weak, imperfect, and vicious was the Government.

Hence appear-  
eth the ex-  
cellency and  
necessity of  
Monarchy.

13. These things evidence the excellency of *Monarchical Government* above the rest; a necessity of it in any considerable Nation or Nations, and in Cities which extend the freedom of Suffrages to their Subjects or Associates, and are considerable, for number, power, and interest. Single Cities have for some time subsisted otherwise; but if we view those that have been mentioned in this Work, some of them we shall find to have been kept in that way by such strange discipline, and principles of equality and levelling, as are even repugnant to Nature, and destroy that lawful use of such things as were ordained for man's comfort and delight. Such was the constitution of that of *Sparta*, which yet secured it not from the tyranny of the *Ephori*, and when but the use of Gold, Silver, and other things, very lawful in themselves, came up, the *Lacedaemonians* were sensible of their slavery to such harsh constitutions, and the Government tottered. Again, in others that were left more to their liberty, we see how impossible it was for the People to use it, but for their own destruction; so that for any one place to subsist without such miseries and disasters, is near to a miracle. *Monarchy*, though it may have its defects (as all things managed by meer men) yet in it self includes more order, certainty, and security, its force being commonly turned outward. It's

D d d d d  
thir

Οικ. α' γ' α' β' γ'  
στα υ' κ' α' γ' α' β' γ'  
c.c.

The antiquity,

And authority of it.

Mecenas his advice to Caesar for the ordering of his affairs.

Magistrates of Senatorial dignity.

that which is most agreeable with primitive prudence, when men were not arrived at that ambition and wickedness, which later times have produced. All Nations at first had their Kings from the very first foundation, as is clear in the case of the *Greeks*, and others; so that they voluntarily submitted to them, at the first leading out of Colonies from the *East*, being their Captains; and thence we may see that the Government is natural, flowing from paternal rule, and proceeding from that superiority which Masters of Families, and Heads of Kindreds might well challenge over others. It's most suitable to the Government of the Universe, which is in God alone; who therefore acknowledgeth King; for his *Viceroyents*, and calleth them *gods*, promising they should be nursing Fathers to his Church; and taking no notice herein of other Governments. Hence our Kings owe account to him alone, are *Sacrosanct* (which term the *Romans* gave to their very *Tribunes* who were inviolable, it being death to injure them in the least, and therefore we may well apply it to Kings) and that perpetually; and are intrusted by him with a Prerogative, which is necessary for the good of their Subjects. For all power flowing from them, it's contradictory for authority to challenge it self, as unnatural and violent, for a derived stream, to oppose the current of the Fountain.

14. But (to return from this requisite digression, whereby an answer is given to *Agrippa's* arguments, and Students are directed to make the right and natural use of History) after that *Mecenas* had pressed *Caesar* with these urgent reasons, to take the Government upon him, he gave him directions for the management of his affairs. First he advised him to regulate the Senate, placing and displacing according to the worth of persons; and to have a special regard to Nobility and Gentry, to gratify them with employments. To admit none into the *Equestrian* rank before eighteen years of age, and none into the Senate till 25, before which time the *Romans* were never accounted of full age. When these had born the Offices of *Quaestor*, *Edilis*, and *Tribunus plebis*, then being thirty years old, he would have them made *Prators*, all which at first were to be *Romans* alone, lest he should seem suddenly to change the customs of his Country. All these Magistrates he would have of *Caesar's* making, and not this power to be left in any case to the Senate, or People. He counselled him by all means to diminish their ancient power, which else might procure trouble and alteration; but leave them their whole honour and dignity. The way to this was to make them execute their Offices in the City, and not suffer them then, nor presently after, to have any Military command, but for some time to live privately. He would have these Magistrates, to celebrate games, and exercise judicial power in all cases, except that of murder; for some Judges were to be chosen from amongst the rest of the Senators, but the chief power to remain in these. Then he said, a certain Governour or *Mayor* of the City was to be made out of the most principal men, who had born these Offices, to joyn with the rest in governing the City, to receive appeals, and judge capital causes, except some afterwards to be spoken of, both in the City, and 81 miles round about. Another of the same rank was to be chosen, who should make inspection into the stock, estates and manners of Senators, and *Knights* or *Equites*, both those of under age and others, and as well of women as the other Sex, to correct such things, as being not worthy of punishment, yet being neglected might occasion great inconveniences; and refer the greater matters to *Caesar* himself, who was to bear the name of *Censor*, and the other being a *Patrician*, and the next in dignity to the *Mayor*, but that of *Subcensor*. These two Officers might be, for life, except they committed some fault, or by old age or sickness were rendered unserviceable; for no damage could thence arise, the one having no Soldiers, and the other but a few, and who should execute his Office before *Caesar's* eyes, for the most part. The other Magistrates, would fear to do any unjust thing, being presently to be reduced into a private condition, and others to succeed them in their power. He added, that the Provinces were onely to be committed

Consule Dionem l. 12. p. 476. D.

mitted to men of *Pratorian* rank; the rest being *Proprators* in order once and again, should arrive at the *Consulship*, (if they well exercised their former Offices) and then be preferred to greater commands.

15. He further advised him to divide *Italy*, for 94 miles round about the City, and all the rest of conquered Countries after such a manner, according to People, Nations, and Cities, as if they were to be governed by single men with absolute power. In each of these Soldiers were to be placed, over whom was to be set one person of *Consular* dignity, and two more of *Pratorian* rank, from those there lying appeal to the other, in all cases, except when Officers of the Army were to be animadverted on, who were to be punished by none but *Caesar* himself, lest they should thereby be brought by fearing some one more, to attempt something against the Prince. All those who had any command out of the City, were to have their salaries set as was suitable to the employment, for that they could not live of their own, and it was not convenient they should spend what they list, as they did at present. They were not to hold their employments under the term of three years, nor longer than five, for in so short a space they could but learn the interests of places, and how to behave themselves, and longer commands made men but proud, and provoked them to attempt new matters. And one great command he said, was not to be given them presently after another, for this would amount to as much, as if they had one continued to them; but after they had been reduced to a private condition, and therein lived at home. Thus much for Senators.

Of Equestrian rank.

16. From amongst the *Equites*, he would have him chuse out two of the most excellent, and make them Captains of his Guard. For to commit that trust to one would not be safe, and to more than two, would not want trouble. Being two in number, if one should be treacherous, the other would preserve him. They were to be such as had been trained up in the Wars, and much exercised in Offices, and to have the command not onely of his Guard, but of all Soldiers in *Italy*, so as to punish and reward them, except Centurions, and such as belonged to *Senatorial* Magistrates. These Captains of the Guard ought to have their *Deputies*, and hold their places for their lives, as also the *Mayor* of the City, and the *Subcensor*. Besides, out of the next rank of *Equites*, one should be chosen for Captain of the Watch, and another to take care for provision of Corn, but these for a limited time. The care of the Treasury, Exchequer, and other matters, as well at *Rome* as throughout *Italy*, was to be committed to those of *Equestrian* rank, who were to have salaries suitable to their condition, being poorer than *Senators*. He told him the reason why he would have these Offices committed to them, was, for that it was inconvenient to have both the sword and money in the same hands, and better that publick business should be managed by many, both that more might reap benefit from it, and learn experience; and hereby his Subjects would love him more, and he would have a sufficient number fit for employment. One *Eques* would be sufficient at *Rome* for gathering money, and one in each Province, who might have assistants out of the *Equites*, and *Caesar's* *Liberti* or *Freed-men*. For he told him it was convenient to joyn those with them, that his servants might get something, and he receive certain intelligence how matters should go. Now if any *Eques* (or *Knight*, if we may so call him) should grow so famous by business, as to be thought worthy to be received into the *Senatorial* rank, his age ought not to be any obstacle: and sometimes some Officers of the Army were to be received into the Senate, provided they had never been ordinary Soldiers, but from the beginning *Centurions* at the least.

Education of the children of Senators and Equites.

17. He further advised him to educate all of *Senatorial* and *Equestrian* rank, whilst they were boyes, at School in humanity, and when grown up, in fencing and riding, by Masters hired publicly in both places. Forasmuch as it is the part of an excellent Prince, not onely that he do well himself, but to take care that all else do so. This would be effected, not by permit-

D d d d 2

ting

ting them to do ill, and then correcting them, but teaching them beforehand such things. And he added, that he needed not to fear, that such as were so excellently educated, would attempt innovation; forasmuch as such as were not cultivated by any discipline, but dissolute in breeding and carriage, were hereof to be suspected, who easily would commit the most wicked and abominable things, both against themselves and others.

18. Forasmuch as by reason of the largeness of the Empire, and nearness of Enemies, it was necessary to have a standing Army, he would have levies made out of the porest and lustiest young men, who being continually exercised and trained up in Military discipline, all others were to be forbidden the use of Arms. Then for money, which he shewed to be necessary for carrying on of affairs, in all Governments, as well as under Monarchy, he advised him to make money of all publick things gotten in War, and let it out upon moderate interest: to look well to the Mines, and impose Tribute upon all Subjects, it being reasonable that all should contribute to the expense of that, which tended to the protection and good of all. But there was no danger he said, but men would be willing to pay, seeing most of them should receive it back with advantage; either, by bearing Offices of Magistracy or Government, or serving in the War, especially when they understood that *Caesar* himself lived soberly and frugally, not improving the publick expence to any private excess.

19. For the rest, he would have him adorn *Rome* with all magnificence, and set it out with all sorts of solemnities, to make it in great reverence and esteem abroad. No Nation was to have any power in its own hands, nor meet in any publick Assemblies of debate, for that would procure disturbance, for which reason neither was the *Roman* People, he said, to be permitted either to come together for passing of Judgement, to the *Comitia*, or any other Council, for the enacting of any thing. No City or People was to be suffered to use any excess in buildings or in games: none to use any peculiar coin, weight, or measure. None were to send any peculiar message to him, except the matter required his inspection, but have recourse to the Government of the place, who was therewith to acquaint *Caesar*. Ambassadors either from Enemies or confederate Kings or States, were to have audience from the Senate, that the power seeming to be in the Senate, they might see how many Enemies they should have if the case so required, and matters being dispatched by consent of the *Fathers*, the Majesty of the Empire would be the more established. All of *Senatorial* rank he would have impeached before, and judged by the Senate, that *Caesar* might escape the envy of condemnation, and others by so formal proceedings, might be kept in awe. As for any scandalous words against himself, he told him he should neither hear any accusation, nor punish them. For it was not good, he said, that he should believe, that any one would injure him, who hurt nobody, but did good to all; for, saith he, bad Princes onely do this, whom their guilty consciences make credulous. Neither is it fitting to take those things ill, which if true ought not to have been done, and if false should be neglected and dissembled: for that many by punishing them, minister greater occasion of worse discourse. His sense therefore of scandalous words was this: that he ought to be higher than all injury, and neither himself to fancy, nor make other believe, that any one durst be so fawcy, but that the same opinion of veneration was had of him, as of the eternal gods. If any plotted his destruction, he would neither have him himself to judge, nor sentence him, but refer him to the Senate, and if he were convicted, to punish him as lightly as might be, that his crime might gain belief. But he here excepted such, as having command of Armies, made open insurrections, who were not to be formally arraigned, but punished as Enemies.

20. These things, and most of the rest which concerned the Commonwealth, he would have him propound to the *Senatus*, wherein all the members

bers should have equal power of voting, except any of them were accused. If the party indeed were not as yet a *Senator*, or but of the rank of a *Quaestor*, all might have voices; but it was against reason that he, who never had been a *Tribune of the People*, or *Edile*, should passe sentence upon him that had born these Offices; or that those should do it upon one of *Prætorian* rank, or such an one upon a *Consular* person: but it was fitting enough that those of *Consular* Dignity might judge all the several sorts, and the rest their equals or inferiours. *Caesar* himself was to be Judge in all Appeals made from the greater sorts of Magistrates, his Procurators, the Governour of the City, Subcensor, Chief Justices, Overseers of Provisions or Providers, and Masters of the vatches: for none ought to have so absolute a power, but that appeal ought to lie from him. Of these he ought to take Cognizance, as also of the causes of *Equites*, *Centurions*, or *prime Officers*, when the controversie is about life or reputation. For these Cases ought to be referred to him alone, and for the fore mentioned causes none other ought to Judge them. Yet to the hearing of them he might nominate some of the principal men of *Senatorial* or *Equestrian* rank, or of *Consular*, or *Prætorian* Dignity, that he and they having had hereby experience of one of another, he might employ them in other matters abroad. In the Cases of greatest consequence he would not have him ask their opinions openly, lest favouring their friends they might not speak freely their minds; but their opinions were to be written down, and then presently blotted out, which secrecy would procure them to use all freedom. He advised him in his affairs of Causes, Letters, business of Cities, and Petitions of private men, and in other things of Government, to use the assistance of the *Equites*. To refuse to hear no mans advice, and to look at the Will, and not at the success, both of Councillors and Soldiers; as, neither, to envy the glory of military men. For, many fearing the envy of Princes and States, have rather chosen to lose than gain in the Wars, to provide for their own safety. Wherefore he would not have him (whom especially the event, either as to profit or disprofit would concern) in word others, and indeed, to envy himself.

21. He desired him speak and do such things, as he would have his Officers to think and practice, for this would more easily teach them their duty, men being led more by example than precept, and the actions of Princes being especially pried into, and more imitated than their threatnings feared. The lives of others he should look into, but not greatly enquire: what Crimes by others were detected he ought to punish, but dissemble such as had no accuser, and know how to correct mildly, which in some cases doth more good than rigorous proceedings. Then as for rewards, he told him, he was to requite deserving persons rather above than below their merits; for this was the way to win upon them, and to make them virtuous. He then advised him not to admit of any extraordinary honours from Senate or others, for this would be needlesse, chargeable, and dangerous. He bade him by virtue seek for immortality, not by Temples built unto his name. The gods he told him he was ever, and all over to worship, according to the custom of his Countrey, and compel others so to do: and to punish Authors of strange religions, not onely for reverence to his gods, but also because such things draw men to the use of foreign customs, whence conspiracies, and bandyings arise, which are no whit agreeable with the Government of a single person. Neither was he to suffer any *Magicians*, and to have a care of *Philosophers* also, who by their foretellings often raised Seditions. He was to be studious of peace, content with present enjoyments, and yet to be ready for War upon all occasions. Though he must use Intelligencers and Spies; yet he ought not to be too credulous, and not indulge his servants, or Dependents too much, for all their failings would be imputed to him. He was to right inferiour and private men, encourage arts, and profitable occupations, as to punish idle, and vicious persons; not to suffer contentious, or animosities to grow, nor peculiar names to be assumed,

The Militia  
and money.

Rome to be  
adorned.

The Provinces  
curbed.

How scandalous words to be thought of.

How Traitors to be punished.

The Senate to be made use of.

what Cases  
ought  
to be referred  
to him.

Military men  
not to be  
envied.

Rules for  
*Caesar's* General  
carriage.

Deserving  
persons rather  
to be rewarded  
above  
than below  
their merits.

med, nor any other thing whence discord might arise. He was to keep an equality in his granting requests as much as could be; and therefore not to suffer any to ask him what he should nor grant; but to endeavour that none should petition for any thing forbidden. In sum, he advised him never to abuse his power, and not to think this a diminution of it, if he did not do all that he might: but by how much the more he could do what he would, by so much to take care to will all things that became him. He bade him always consider whether he did well or ill: whether by such an action he procured love or ill will, that he might do and forbear accordingly. He told him, that though he heard no body blame him, yet ought he not to conclude, that therefore he did well; nor to expect that any should be so mad as openly to upbraid him. This no man would do, though most extremely injured. Nay, many, saith he, are constrained openly to commend those by whom they have been wronged, lest they should be thought to blame them. But 'tis the duty of a Prince not to grieve at the affections of others from their words; but from those things which 'tis most probable that they think of.

22. 'These, and other like things he would have him do; for many things he said he passed over, because all could not be spoken at the same time. One thing he would say, which was the sum of all, either said or to be said. *If he would do all those things, which if he were a subject he would have his Prince do to him, he should in nothing offend, prosper in all things, and lead both a safe, and most happy life.* For how could not all but look upon him, and love him as a father, and preserver, when they should see him modest, of unblameable life, and excellent both in Peace and War; when he should neither disgrace nor injure any one, but carry himself humbly: not exact money from others, whilst he himself flowed with wealth; nor assisting others whilst he was luxurious; nor punishing others whilst he himself was loose and licentious; but in all things as it were sharing with them? Therefore relying on that defence which would be great in thy self if thou hurtest no man; believe me, saith he, thou wilt have no body, neither hate thee, or devise any thing against thee, which being so, thou must needs lead a pleasant life. For, what can be more sweet, what more happy, than for one with virtue to enjoy all humane good things, and to be able to confer them upon others? In conclusion, those, and other things heretofore spoken being considered, he bade him yield to him, and not condemn Fortune, which had preferred him, picked out from amongst all others, to be chief. Now, if taking in reality to himself alone the Sovereign power, he feared the name of a Kingdom as odious he might omit that, and order his matters under the other of *Caesar*: if he desired other titles they would give him that of *Imperator*, heretofore given to his father: they would adorn him also with some other venerable note of honour, so that he might enjoy all the Privileges of a Kingdom without the envied name thereof.

23. *Maccenas* concluded with these words, whose advice *Caesar* followed, though he greatly commended them both, for wisdom, copiousness, and freedom of speech: yet he did not presently set upon all those things which he offered, lest if on a sudden he should attempt to change the constitution of the State, he might fail in his endeavours: therefore some things he changed out of hand, other afterwards: and some things he left to be perfected by his Successors, which he thought might be better settled through the advantage of time and opportunity. He used also the industry of *Agrippa* in the prosecution of these designs no less than if he had advised him to this course. In this same year, and his fifth Consulship, he took the name of *Imperator*; nor in that sense wherein antiently it was wont to be given for victories obtained (for so he had it given him often both before this and after) but in respect of chief Command, or Authority, as it had been decreed to his father *Julius*, and his sons, and posterity. Then was he made *Censor* with *Agrippa*, and amongst other things belonging to that Office, purged the Senate, into which

The sum of  
all *Maccenas*'s  
his advice.

*Caesar* follow-  
eth the ad-  
vice of *Maccenas*.

Take the  
title of *Impe-  
rator*, and or-  
dereth several  
matters.

which many *Equites* and unworthy *Plœbeians* had crept during the Civil Wars; and increased it to the number of a thousand. Two persons, viz. *C. Cilius* and *C. Furnius* he put into the rank of *Consulares*, because being designed *Consuls* they had been prevented by others. He also ranked certain families amongst the *Patricians*, because most of those had perished in the Wars. He commanded that no *Sensitor* without his leave should passe beyond *Italy*, which is at this day observed, saith *Dio*, it being unlawfull for any of that rank to travel, except into *Sicily*, or *Gallia Narbonensis*, whither any that have Estates in those Provinces may go without leave, because those Countreys are in quiet, and destitute of Arms. *Caesar* also considering that many Senators and others trusted him not, lest they should attempt new matters, he gave out that he had burned all the Letters found in *Anrony* his Coffers: and indeed some of them were lost, but most of them he very carefully kept, and afterwards made use of them as he had occasion. He sent for *Anrochus Commagenus*, who had treacherously killed his brother, sent on an Embassy to *Rome*, and put him to death, being condemned by the Senate.

24. *Caesar* in his sixth Consulship, together with *M. Agrippa* his Collegue made a *Lustrum* 41 years after the last Celebration of one (by *Cn. Lentulus* and *L. Gellius*) and herein were cessed 4063000 Polls of *Roman* Citizens. He celebrated Games also, which had been decreed in memory of his victory at *Actium*, and it was ordered they should be renewed every fifth year, four Colleges of Priests taking care of them, viz. the *Pontifices*, *Augurs*, *Sepulchral*, and *Quintilemiviri* by courses. He caused other sorts of Games and Exercises to be made at his own cost, borrowing money; ordered that two persons of *Praetorian* rank should yearly oversee the Treasury, gave to the people four times as much Corn as they were wont to have, to some Senators he gave money, some of this rank being so poor, that they could not bear Offices belonging to them. All engagements and debts to the Exchequer he made void that stood good before the battel at *Actium*, except what concerned buildings. He suffered no sacrifice to be offered to *Egyptian* gods within the *Pomærium*, took also care for repairing of Temples. And because many unjust things had been ordained during the late Seditions and Civil Wars, especially in the *Triumvirate*, he made them all void by one Edict, and caused them to cease from his sixth Consulship. Being in the eyes and mouths of all for these things, he considered how he might increase his reputation, and confirm his single power by the consent, and without the constraint of the people. Being then *Consul* the seventh time, when he had prepared every Senator before-hand, whom he knew to be well affected towards him, he came to the Senate-house, and there read a set speech which he had written down sily for this purpose.

25. 'Herein he first exceedingly magnified with much affected art, the things he was about to do, and then signified, that though he had such opportunity to establish himself as no man ever had more, yet did he now devert himself of all power, & restore all unto them, *Arms, Laws, and Provinces: and not only such things as he had been entrusted with, but he gave them besides what he himself had further acquired.* This then his gift he much illustrated by his self denial, shewn as well formerly as at present, being very sorry that ever there had been occasion for the Commonwealth to use him. He spake of the justice and prudence of this resignation, and boasted of the glory of it, which he avowed to exceed the Conquests of *Gall*, *Myfia*, *Egypt*, or *Pannonia*, the victories over *Pharnces*, *Juba*, or *Phraates*, the expedition into *Britain*, or the passage of the *Rhine*, and all the difficulties of the Civil Wars. He demanded if any could be found that excelled him in greatness of mind, who had so many Cities, Nations, and Soldiers at his back, and whom none durst oppose? *Horatius*, *Mucius*, *Curcius*, *Regulus*, and the *Decii*, who ventured their lives for glory were not comparable to him, for as much as by this resignation he exceeded both them, and all others in glory. And shewed hence that the gallantry of spirit found in the ancient *Romans* was not extinct. Having discoursed much in this vein, he concluded with his advice to 'the

Make a Lu-  
strum.

Prerending in  
a set speech to  
the Senate, &  
desire to lay  
down his  
power.



the Senate how to manage publick affairs, telling them, that if they followed it they would be happy and thankful to him, who rescuing them from seditions, had brought them into that estate: but if they did not punctually observe it, they would make him repent of what he had done, and cast themselves again into manifold Wars, and great dangers.

26. *Caesar* having read his writing, the minds of the *Senators* were marvellously affected. Some there were who knew his design, and therefore agreed with him; the rest either suspected his intent, or believed him. Of these some admired his craft in concealing his purposes; others were troubled at his design: some at his cunning; and others at his refusal of the Government. For there were some who hated the *Popular* form as turbulent, and approving of the change, were well pleased with *Caesar's* administration. Yet the product of these several affections was the same; for neither they that believed he spake as he thought, could rejoice; those that wished he were reduced to a private condition, being yet fearful how things would go; and they that desired he might keep his power, being sorry for the losse of their hopes. Neither could they that believed him not reprehend him, because to some will, and to others courage was wanting. No man yet, whether he believed him, or believed him nor, durst commend his speech, for that some liked it not, and others feared to do it. Wherefore having often interrupted him whilst speaking, when he had done, they all besought him with many words, that he would alone undertake the Government, and by many arguments compelled him at length to accept of the Sovereignty. Then that his person might be preserved, they presently decreed the pay of his Guard to be double to that of other Soldiers.

Thereby confirmeth it.

27. *Caesar* by this artifice pretending that he would lay down his power, effected that it was confirmed to him, by Senate and People. Yet that he might seem to be Popular, he said, he would not govern all the Provinces, nor obtain perpetual power over such as he should take care of; therefore the weaker, because they were more quiet, he left to others: the most-powerful which had appearance of most danger (having an Enemy near at hand, or likely to be turbulent) he kept himself, under pretence that the Fathers might enjoy their power safely, and he himself undergo labour and dangers; but by this device he rendered the Senate really helpless, and weak, and engrossed to himself the Militia. To the Senate and People was left *Africk*, *Numidia*, *Asia*, *Greece*, with *Epirus*, *Dalmatia*, *Macedonia*, *Sicily*, *Crete*, *Libya* called *Cyrenaica*, *Bithynia*, with the neighbouring *Pontus*, *Sardinia*, and that part of *Spain* called *Hispania Batia*. *Caesar* kept the rest of *Spain*, all *Gall* and *Germany*, as also *Calesyria*, *Phanicia*, *Cyprus*, and *Egypt*. Over these Provinces he assumed the Government but for ten years, within which time he undertook to reduce them into order, adding with a certain juvenile kind of boasting, that as soon as ever he could quiet them, he would quit his power. Then did he set over the Provinces of both sorts, men of *Patrian* dignity, but over *Egypt* one of *Equestrian* rank onely, for the causes above rehearsed. To *Senators* he allotted by themselves *Africk* and *Asia*, and the rest of the Provinces to *Pratorians*. He forbade either to take this employment within five years after they had born Offices in the City. They held their Governments but for a year. And as soon as successors were sent them, they were presently to depart the Provinces, and not loiter in their return, but come to *Rome* within three months. The distribution of the Provinces was made on the *Ides of January*, as may be gathered from *Ovid*, who thought also that *Caesar Octavianus* had the Surname of *Augustus* given him the same day, which indeed was the fourth day after, as appeareth from *Censorinus*.

28. For the Provinces being divided, and all things settled, it was debated in the Senate, whether he ought not to be called *Romulus*, because he had founded the Empire; but the other more venerable name of *Augustus*, propounded by *Munacius Plancus*, at length seemed best; for, sacred places and Temples consecrated by *Augurs* the Romans termed *Augusta*. *Caesar*

Sirnamed Augustus.

*far* though he much desired that of *Romulus* (saith *Dio*) yet perceiving he should be suspected of affecting the Kingdom, omitted it, and was sirnamed *Augustus*, as greater than the nature of man could make him. For those things are called *Augustus*, which are most worthy of honour, and most feared; wherefore the *Greeks* expresse it by *Σέας*, as if thou shouldst say Venerable. Thus *Caesar* alone got the whole power into his hands, having both money (for though he had his own separate from the Treasury, yet did he use this at his pleasure) and the Militia in his own hands. When his ten years were out other five, and when they were expired five more, and these ended, ten more, and ten more after them were added; so that he had his authority still continued for his life; for which cause his Successors, though they had the power settled on them for life, yet at the end of every ten years, solemnized as it were the renewing of it. As soon as *Caesar* had but made his Oration about resigning his command, and distributing the Provinces, many honours were conferred on him, as that *Laurel* should be planted before his gates in the *Palatium*, and upon those trees *Oaken* garlands hung, as for him who was a perpetual Conquerour of Enemies, and preserver of Citizens. The house of the *Emperour* also was wont afterwards to be called the *Palatium* or *Palace*; not for that it was ever so decreed; but because *Caesar* lived in the *Palatium* or *Palatine hill*, and there was his *Pratorium*; his house also received some dignity from the Mount it self, because *Romulus* there lived: therefore though the *Emperour*, saith the *Historian*, live elsewhere, yet is his house called the *Palatium* or *Palace*. But after he had done those things which he promised, then was he called *Augustus* by the Senate and People. From this day forward began the sovereign power and authority to be in the hands of one man, which the *Greeks* called Monarchy. Yet the *Romans* derived the *Epoche* of their *Augusti* from the *Kalends* of *January* of this year, as *Censorinus* writeth, who compareth with the 265 year of this *Æra*, the 283 of the *Julian* ordination. This seventh Consulship of *Augustus Caesar*, and the beginning of his Monarchy, fell out in the 727 year of the City, the second of the 188 *Olympiad*, the thirteenth of *Herod* the Great, 25 before the birth of *Christ*, A. M. 3978, he himself, as it's said, the seventh, and *M. Vipsianus Agrippa* the third time being *Consuls*.

29. On this manner all the power of the People and Senate was transferred upon *Augustus*, saith *Dio*. For this notable translation and change in the Government there was a Law made, which is famous by the name of *Lex Regia*, after which it's convenient to make a little enquiry, for the better information of Students in this great affair. A Law may be so (and is so) called, either for that a King made, or preserved it, or because it was made and enacted concerning a King or Kingly power. In the first sense, such Laws as were made by *Romulus* and his successors the ancient Kings of *Rome*, are by Lawyers called *Leges Regie*, whereof *Dionysius Halicarnassensis* hath recorded many, and of which several have been already mentioned in their due places; and in the (a) *Code* is yet extant a Law called *Lex Regia*, concerning the burial of a woman with child, so called, because enacted by some ancient King. But in the later acceptation is to be understood this Law, whereby *Regal* (and that absolute) power was conferred upon *Augustus* by the Roman People. The Law it self is not now extant in terms, nor exemplified in any Author still remaining, yet it is mentioned by *Justinian* in his (b) *Institutions* of Law, who there writeth (speaking of several sorts of Law) that what pleaseth the Prince, hath the vigour of a Law; forasmuch as by the *Lex Regia*, which was made concerning his power, the People granted to him all it's command and authority. In the (c) *Pandects* he also mentioneth it, well-nigh in these very words; in a third (d) place also expressing it to the same purpose, that by an ancient Law called *Lex Regia*, all the right and all the power of the Roman People was translated into the Emperours authority: therefore it is otherwise called *Lex Imperii*, and *Augustum privilegium*. As for *Comitatus* upon both *Institutions* and *Pandects*, with other parts of the

All power of Senate and People transferred upon him.

By a Law called *Lex Regia*.

Lib. 55. p. 517. A. M. 3978. Ol. 188. an. 2. V. C. 727. Herodotus 13.

(a) Tit. de monacho inferendo l. 2.

(b) Lib. 1. Tit. 2. de Jure Nat. &c.

(c) L. 1. Tit. de Constit. Principum.

(d) L. 1. sect. cum itaque C. tit. de Vet. Jur. Enucleando.

Eeeee

Civil



jus, admit persons into the Equestrian or Senatorian rank, and remove thence according to their pleasure. And in as much as they are inaugurated in all Priesthoods, admit Priests into the Colleges, and ever one of them (if there be two or three Emperours at one time) is Chief Priest, it is that they may have all religious things and sacred in their own hands. As for the Tribunitial power, which every eminent Emperour was wont to have, it inableth them to interpose against any thing that may be done contrary to their pleasure, and they are thereby Sacrosanct, or Inviolable, so that if any one injure them by the least, not onely deed, but word, they may put him to death without proceſſe as Piacularly Criminal. The Emperours count it unlawfull to be Tribunes, because they are Patricians, but they receive Tribunitial power as large as ever any enjoyed; and as renewing it yearly with the annual Tribunes, the years of their reign or power, are counted accordingly. These things, as they were established in the Popular Government, do the Emperours, together with the name, take unto them, that they may appear to have nothing but what was freely conferred on them.

34. But they have another privilege (so Dio proceedeth) which never was universally granted to any Roman. For the Emperours are loosed from the Laws; by which thing alone liberty is given them to do those which we have related, and all other things. After this manner, with these names which were used in the Popular State, they receive all the power of the whole Commonwealth, and the Kings also, shunning onely the name. For, the titles of Cæsar and Augustus add nothing of peculiar power unto them: but the one signifies the succession, and the other the splendour of their Dignity. As for the name of Fathers, though it giveth them such right over their subjects, as Parents have over Children; yet at first it was given onely for honour, and to admonish them to hold their Subjects as dear as Children, and these titles as Parents. These are the titles which the Emperours according to the Laws and Customs use even in our dayes and in our age, all these are at the same time given to them, except that of Censor; but in times past they were severally according to the Laws decreed to them. The name also of Censor, some of them according to the ancient custom have received, and Domitian bore it all his life, but now it is not so. For, the Emperours of our time having the thing in self, are neither chosen to the Censorship, nor bear the name of the Office, except during the Censur. But \* thus the Commonwealth was changed into a better form and order; for it was utterly impossible it should subsist under the power of the people. Thus far Dio, excellently, according to his custom of relating the principal matters of State. It clearly appeareth from him, how absolute the power of the Emperours was, and how without any co-ordinate power of People or Senate in any respect. The main of their Authority lay in the title of Imperator; assisted by the Tribunitial power, which two, (nay the former of them) make good our exposition of the *Lex Regia*, without the other titles which they might take upon them for popularity, and to prevent the pretences of others, though their Authority was large, and strong enough without them. Our Author concludeth this discourse with an Attestation to that truth we formerly asserted against Agrippa.

35. The same night that Cæsar received the surname of Augustus, a considerable sign (as it was accounted) of his confirmation hapned. For Tiber to overflowed; that all the lower parts of Rome were Navigable, which the Fortune tellers interpreted to signifie his great advancement, and that he should have the whole Citie in his power. Now many sought to flatter him, but the endeavours of Sextus Pacuvius (or Apudius) exceeded all, who being Tribune of the People, after the custom of the Spaniards, consecrated himself to him, and caused others to do so. Having now obtained the Government by consent of the people, he set himself more effectually to look after it, and made several Laws. Yet did he not all on his own head, but propounded many things to be debated in publick, that if any were displeased he might amend them: he desired all, freely, and openly, to deliver their opinions, and being moved by their reasons changed something: but he especially de-

\* Η μὲν οὖν πολιτεία αὐτῷ παρὲς τοὺς νόμους ἐβλάπτετο, καὶ τὸ κράτος οὐκ ἔμελλεν ὑπομένειν, ἀλλὰ μετακινεῖσθαι καὶ μεταβάλλεσθαι. καὶ γὰρ οὐκ ἔστιν ἀδύνατον τῇ δημοκρατίᾳ οὕτως ἀποδοῦναι τὴν ἐξουσίαν ὅπως αὐτὴν οὐκ ἔστιν.

Dio lib. 53. pag. 510.

The general course of Augustus his administration.

desired to be advised by the Consuls, or his Colleague, if he himself bore that Office. Of the other Magistrates he made choice of one out of each sort, and out of the Senate fifteen chosen by lot, who were for six moneths to be his Counsellors; that hereby he might seem to communicate his designs to the rest. Some things he brought down to the whole Senate; but he thought it fitter to consult with a few persons at leisure about the greatest affairs. He called also these men sometimes to decide causes: although the Senate still heard certain matters, and gave answer to the Ambassadors of Kings and States as formerly. Although the Comitia, or Assemblies of the People were sometimes held, yet nothing was done but according to the pleasure of Augustus. He partly named Magistrates, and left others to be created by the People; onely taking care that no unworthy persons by indirect practices advanced themselves. This was the general course of Augustus his administration, saith Dio.

He reduceth the Spaniards, and shutteth the Temple of Janus the second time.

36. The year following Augustus made an expedition into Spain, which never had been well quiered since the Romans first set footing there; but now the Cantabrians and Asturians were not onely ready to defend their own liberty, but endeavoured also to lay the yoke upon their neighbours. Yet he reduced, and brought all under, and being then at Tarragon, came Ambassadors from India to beg his friendship. Returning home, he shut the Temple of Janus the second time, having formerly so done after his Triumph over Antony, and his return out of Egypt, which shutting was the third from the foundation of the Citie. But after his return out of Spain it continued not long shut. For Aelius Gallus made War against the Arabians, and piercing far into their Countrey, had subdued all Arabia Felix, but that he was betrayed. At the same time also Candace, Queen of Ethiopia, sent her Captains to invade Egypt, but they were repulsed by Petronius Governor of that Countrey (for Cornelius Gallus having bespattered Augustus, and for that being condemned by the Senate had killed himself) who also pursued them, and taking divers Towns, forced the Queen to beg peace, and returned enriched to Alexandria. Augustus some time after went into Greece, and thence into Syria, whither the Parthian now affrighted, sent the Ensigns taken at the overthrow of Crassus, and flight of Antony; and now again did the two Kings of India, Pandion, and Porus, send Ambassadors with presents. As he returned home, Virgil the Poet met him at Athens, who now out of a desire to finish his *Aeneidos* had resolved to withdraw himself out of the way into Greece and Asia; but meeting here with Augustus, in whose especial favour he flourished, he was drawn back with him, and viewing *Alegara* in a very hot season contracted a distemper, which was so much increased with sayling, that growing still worse, he died at Brundisium within a few dayes after his landing, in the 52th year of his age, on the 12th of September, and the 735th year of the Citie, C. Sextius and Q. Lucretius being Consuls.

Virgil dieth.

Augustus his wives and issue.

37. Augustus his first wife was Scribonia, which had been married to two persons of Consular Dignity, and by one was a Mother. Of her he begat his daughter Julia, but within a short time divorced her, as he pretended, because of the perversity of her disposition. Then did Nero, who had followed L. Antonius to Parthia, but afterwards was reconciled, freely yield unto him Livia Drusilla, though he had had one son already by her, named Tiberius, and she was big with another, which being born three moneths after she had married Cæsar, was called Drusus. By Livia, Augustus had no Children but abortive. His daughter Julia he married to Marcellus, his sister Octavia's son, and after his death to Agrippa, making him put away his wife, the daughter of Octavia; for in a consultation Maecenas took the liberty to tell him, that he must either marry his daughter to Agrippa, or take away his life, there was no third way, he had made him so great. By Agrippa she had three sons, Caius, Lucius, and Agrippa Posthumus, and two daughters, Agrippina and Julia. The three sons were adopted by their Grandfather, but the two former died before, and the later was killed by Tiberius after the

Orosius lib. 6. cap. 2. Florus lib. 4. c. ult. Sueton. in Ollavio.

Strabo lib. 2.

Lib. 17.

Dio l. 17.

Vide vitam Virgilii. A. M. 3990. V. C. 735.

Suetonius Ollavio cap. 62. 63. 64.

the death of *Augustus*. *Tiberius* and *Drusus* subdued the *Rhatians* and *Vindobonians*, People of *Germany*, and afterwards the *Pannonians* and *Frisians* apart. *Agrippa* was made partaker of the *Tribunitial* power by *Augustus*, amongst other honours, and ruled *Syria* by himself and Agents ten years. Being sent into *Pannonia* (of which *Hungaria* is part) he filled the Natives by the rumour of his coming, and returning into *Campania*, died shortly after. Then was *Tiberius* compelled to marry *Julia*, although he had already to wife *Agrippina* the daughter of *Agrippa*. Within two or three years after, *Drusus* having pierced very far into *Germany*, and entered his Consulship together with *L. Quintus Crispinus*, died also, leaving two sons, viz. *Germanicus* and *Claudius*, in the 746 year of the City.

Sueton. in Claudio.

He amendeth the Calendar.

The month of August called after him.

The death of Agrippa.

Of Macenas.

38. The same year that *Drusus* died (by a fall from his Horse; as *Livy* wrote, who intended his History just so far) *Augustus* being High-Priest (which Office he took not upon him till the death of *Lepidus*) amended the Calendar, corrected formerly by his adoptive Father. For in those 36 years there had been made an intercalation of twelve dayes, whereas there ought to have been but of nine, therefore he commanded that the twelve years following should passe without any intercalation at all, that so the three dayes might be swallowed up. Now he named *August* after himself the month *Sexilis*, because in it he entered his first Consulship, and had the first ensigns of Victory and Power, rather than *September* wherein he was born. Not long after did *Tiberius*, rather by craft than force of Arms, again subdue the *Germans*, who maintained a most difficult Warre. After his Triumph he withdrew himself into the Island *Rhodes*, either because of *Caius Lucius*, or by reason of the intolerable dishonesty of his wife *Julia*; for she was so abominably wanton, that her father at length banished her into the Island *Pandataria*, and very imprudently in his anger, revealed her naughty carriage in way of complaint to the Senate, of which indiscretion being afterward sensible, he would often say, that if either *Agrippa* or *Macenas* had lived, no such thing had hapened to him.

Sueton in Othavia.

Plinius l. 18.

c. 25.

Orosius lib. 6.

cap. 21.

Dio l. 55. p. 552.

A. M. 3996.

V. C. 745.

Sueton in Tiberio.

Seneca de beneficiis. l. 32.

Tacitus Annal. lib. 1.

39. *Agrippa*, as we said, having quieted *Pannonia*, died after his return into *Campania*, in the 743 year of the City, three years before *Drusus*. *Pliny* telleth, that they were first called *Agrippa*, which were born with the feet forward, as if a man should say, *born hardly*, or *with much ado*. And in this manner, (saith he) as they say, *M. Agrippa* came forth of his mother's womb, the onely man almost known to have brought any good fortune with him, and prospered in the World, of all that were in that sort born. Yet he was much pained with the Gout, and passed all his youth, and many a day after in bloody Wars, and in danger of a thousand deaths. Unfortunate he was in his children, and especially in his two daughters the *Agrippinae*, who brought forth two children pernicious to the whole Earth, namely *C. Caligula* and *Domitius Nero* Emperours. He died in the 51 year of his age, tormented and vexed with the adulteries of his wife, and oppressed with the intolerable servitude in which he lived under her father. Four years after him, and the year after *Drusus*, died *Macenas*, the other favourite of *Augustus*, and the great Patron of Learned men. He was in as great grace with *Caesar* as *Agrippa*, though lesse honoured: for he contented himself with the *Equestrian* rank; neither could he not obtain greater things, but he would not. He had great power with *Augustus*, which he improved to the allaying of his passion, and doing good offices for others, as one example shews above the rest. On a time, as *Augustus* sat in Judgment, and was about to sentence many to death, he perceiving it, and not able to come at him for the crowd, wrote these words; *Rise up at last Executioner*, in a table, and cast them into *Caesar's* lap as some other matter, who having read them, presently departed without condemning any. Neither did this offend *Augustus*, but he was glad that he had one who would be so free with him, and curb that anger, which either his inclination or the urgency of business moved him to: (a) *Cilnius* was the ancient name of his Family, and *Arretium* in the *Tyrrhenian* Coast the place of it. (b) *Pliny* telleth strange passages

A. M. 3993.

V. C. 743.

Lib. 7. c. 8.

A. M. 3997.

V. C. 746.

Velleius l. 2.

c. 88.

Dio l. 55.

p. 552.

\* Macenas eques Hetrusco

de Sanguine regum

Intra fortunam qui cupis esse tuam.

Propertius l. 3.

(a) Cilnius Arretius Tyrrhenus

ortus in oris

clarum nomen erat.

Silvius Italicus.

(b) L. 7. c. 52.

passages

passages of him, as that he never was without an Ague, and for three years before his death, never slept a quarter of an hour together. In the same year (which was that wherein *Augustus* mended the Calendar, and called the month *Sexilis* after himself) *Horace* the Poet also died, in the 57 year of his age. His familiarity with *Caesar* and *Macenas* is sufficiently known. His life is written by *Suetonius*.

The birth of our Lord Jesus Christ.

40. *Augustus* having again quieted all Nations, and shut the Temple of *Janus* the third time; having ordained a general taxation throughout the Empire, that he might know the State and worth thereof; having also refused the name of *Dominus* or Lord with great earnestness, which he forbade even his Children and Nephews by an edict to use towards him, the Lord and Heir of all things came into the World, in the fulness of time, revealed by the Angel *Gabriel* to the Prophet *Daniel*, for the fulfilling of the promises made concerning the seed of the woman, which should break the serpents head. Great difference there is in assigning the year of the World wherein our Saviour was born, by reason of the difficulty of computation arising from the several versions of the Scriptures, the intricate and uncertain successions of the Judges, the variety of the forms of years, and the several reckonings as to parcels of such as are related in Scripture. A great help for the regulation of these things is afforded from prophane Histories. But it beginneth but with *Cyrus*, whose History, as to the restoration of the Jews, presenteth us with the first certain note of conjunction (he being so named both by holy and prophane Writers, but not *Nebuchadnezzar*) and yet the duration of his reign is also uncertain. Yet as from all these opinions weighed together, a good account may be given in another place, more proper for the length of it, as to the year of the World, so the Evangelist reaching us, that in the sixteenth year of *Tiberius*, *Christ* was about thirty years old, it must needs follow, that *Augustus* reigned fifteen years after his birth; so that if we count (as some do) the reign of *Augustus* from the death of *Julius Caesar*, it lasted 57 years, and then must *Christ* be born in the 42 of it. But if we follow them (as the order of this Work doth) who with more reason fetch the beginning of his Empire from the death of *Antony*, and the conquest of *Egypt*, then *Christ's* birth fell into the 28 year thereof; and according to the computation which we most approve into the 4003 year of the World, the 752 of the City; and the third year of the 194 Olympiad, wherein *Caesar Augustus* himself the thirteenth time, and *M. Plautius Silvanus* were Consuls. Although *Cyrenius* (who was Consul ten years before, and is called elsewhere *P. Sulpicius Quirinus*) might not formally be President of *Syria* (which Office as others say, was now obtained by *Quintilius Varus*, who succeeded *Saturninus*, who as yet was not departed out of the Province) yet being set over this taxation by *Augustus* in that place, this title might well be given him, though he then governed *Cilicia*, as *Herod* is by *Jesephus* said to be constituted Procurator of all *Syria*; though it had its Officers, who were to act by his assistance and direction. *Herod* had now reigned 37 years and odd moneths, and being deluded by the Wife Men (whom he willingly suffered to search out *Christ*, that he might destroy him) killed all the children in and about *Bethlehem* of two years and under; which cruelty was but agreeable with his disposition and constant practice. Here, that we may describe his affairs, we must make a little digression, and take them where we formerly left them.

A digression to the affairs of Herod.

41. After he had obtained the possession of his Kingdom, he put to death 45 of *Antigonus* his friends, having procured him to be beheaded, as we formerly shewed. Then did he prefer to the High-Priesthood one *Ananias* an obscure man, neglecting *Aristobulus* the son of *Aristobulus* the King, and brother to his own wife *Mariamne*; and *Antony* desiring to see this youth, for the sake of his beauty, he fearing the Roman might advance him, to stay him at home, gave him the Priesthood, and excused his neglect to send him, by the inclination of the Jews to rebellion. Perceiving him then to be in extraordinary favour with the Jews, and that his mother *Alexandra* (which he kept

A. M. 4003.

Ol. 194. an. 3.

V. C. 752.

Caesare Augusto

13.

M. Plautio Sil-

vano Coss.

Jesephus Antiq.

l. 17. c. 7.

De bello Ju-

daic. l. 1. c. 15.

Marth. 2. 16.

Jesephus Antiq.

l. 15. c. 1, &c.

He maketh  
away *Arifobu-  
lus*.

Is reconciled  
to *Cæfar*, ha-  
ving sided  
with *Antony*.

Killeth his  
wife *Mariamne*.

Groweth cru-  
el.

Repaireth the  
Temple at  
Jerusalem.

kept very close because of her restless spirit) plotted the escape of her self and son into *Egypt*, a year after, as he was swimming, he caused him to be drowned, and though *Cleopatra* accused him hereof to *Antony*, yet by presents he made his Peace. In the Civil Wars he sided with *Antony*; who having forces sufficient, desired him to chastize the *Arabians*, that denied the Tribute imposed on them. This he did, and though at first his attempts miscarried, yet in another battel he quite overthrew and brought them under. After the overthrow of *Antony*, he had little hope that his own matters would go well. He murdered *Hircanus*, who only survived of all the males of the Royal Family, and whom he had recalled from *Babylon*, whither he was carried by the *Parthians*. He took the advantage of the old man's intent to fly into *Arabia*, through the importunity of his daughter *Alexandra*, who promised him great things, if *Herod* should miscarry under the power of *Augustus*. Then providing as well as he could for the worst, in case it should happen, he went to *Rhodes* to visit *Cæsar*, from whom he concealed not the love he bore to *Antony*, but with notable courage declaring it; which signified that he was ready to serve him as faithfully, which so wrought upon the magnificent Prince, that he liked him extremely, and confirmed him in his estate. After *Cæsar's* return out of *Egypt* into *Syria*, he entertained him, and as he thereby procured the reputation of a noble and heroic spirit, so also an addition to his Kingdom. Yet was he unfortunate at home, having commanded several times, that if any thing happened in his absence, they should make away his beloved wife *Mariamne*. She hearing of it used him frowardly; whereat being enraged, he was thoroughly persuaded to put her to death by his sister *Salome*, which envious woman feigned certain accusations against her. But after the deed was done, having extraordinarily loved her, he fell even mad, and thereby into a great sickness, so that casting off all Government, he departed to *Samaria*, then called *Sebaste*, in honour of *Augustus*.

42. *Alexandra* in the mean time endeavoured to get the strong places of *Jerusalem* into her hands, wherewith he being acquainted, ordered her to be put to death, and then returning to the City, grew exceeding cruel and distasteful. The prejudice was increased by his making Games in honour of *Cæsar*, and hanging his Theatre with Trophies, which the People sorely distasteful, as being by their Religion principled against Pictures. Ten men conspired against him, but were discovered and put to death. Not long after he redeemed his credit by liberality in a great dearth, and married the daughter of *Simon*, whom he preferred to the Priesthood, having displaced *Jeshu* the son of *Phabes*. Then did he employ his time and treasure in Temples and royal buildings, as that of *Cæsarea* amongst the rest, formerly called the *Tower of Straton*; and he built a Temple to the honour of *Augustus*, who had again enlarged his Dominions, and bestowed a *Tetrarchy* at his desire upon his brother *Pheroras*. To the People, which was ready to mutiny, because of his idolatry, he released the third part of their Tributes to please them, forbade all their meetings, punished severely such as were obstinate, and bound the rest to him by an oath. After this, taking down the old Temple of *Jerusalem*, he built another much more stately and magnificent (being a Work of most admirable beauty) in the space of nine years and six months, during which time, it's said, that it only rained on nights, lest the Work should be hindered. In the dedication he sacrificed 300 Oxen, and the rest of the People according to their abilities. He made a Law, that thieves which broke walls should be sold for slaves, out of the Kingdom. Which the People ill resented, as against their Religion, which not only provided otherwise concerning thieves, but would be broken also by these men, who must necessarily serve Idolaters. Now he himself Yetched from *Rome* *Alexander* and *Arifobulus* his sons by *Mariamne*, whom having sent thither to be bred, *Augustus* had kindly entertained. These youths were feared by *Salome* and *Pheroras*, as intending to revenge their mothers death, and therefore they resolved they must not live, especially she that was encouraged by the

*Idem ibid.*  
c. 9. &c.

*Cap. 11. &c.*

*Josephus Antiq.*  
l. 16. c. 1. &c.

successes she had had, against their mother. And they presented her with an opportunity of accusing them, seeming indeed not to be well affected toward their father, desiring the Kingdom, and exclaiming greatly against the authors of their mother's death. *Herod* troubled hereat, called to Court *Antipater* his son, begotten when he was a private man, that opposing him against them he might make them more careful of their behaviour. But thereby were they more incensed, and *Antipater* making use of his time got more and more into his father's affections, who commended him in especial manner to *Cæsar* (though he had not a thought at first of making him his Heir) and sent him to *Rome* to procure the *Emperour's* favour.

43. *Antipater* improving his father's displeasure against his brothers, effected that he carried them to *Augustus* then at *Aquileia*, and grievously accused them of an intention to poison him. Yet the young men by their tears, and *Alexander's* refutation of the calumny, so moved *Cæsar*, that he reconciled them; and for that *Herod* had given him 300 Talents, and been very liberal, as his custom was to be in all places, unto the people of *Rome*, he bestowed on him half of the profits of the Mines in *Cyprus*, and gave him liberty to leave which of his sons he pleased his Successor, or if he would, to distribute his Kingdom amongst them all, which *Herod* presently would have done, but *Cæsar* would not permit it. In his absence the Inhabitants of *Trachonitis* a considerable part of his Kingdom rebelled, and were reduced by his Captains. After his return he made a speech to the people, and named to succeed him first *Antipater*, and then his sons by *Mariamne*, which naming a Successor beforehand, when the inheritance is uncertain, hath ever wrought great inconvenience to both parties. After he had opened *David's* Sepulchre to search for Treasure, (as *John Hircanus* had done before him) where he found none except very costly Attire, and Ornaments of Gold, 'tis observed that his family fell into a very sad condition, nothing being heard but complaints & accusations one against another. The greatest part of *Antipater's* malice fell upon *Alexander*, and the Court hereby was filled with tortures and slaughters. *Herod* suspecting all, and trusting none, put many to death, and those of his most intimate friends, and committed *Alexander*, to prison, being captivated by so great a fear of an untimely death, that he was almost ready to run mad. These things were diverted by the rebellion of the Inhabitants of *Trachonitis* (which Countrey *Cæsar*, having taken it from *Zenodorus*, gave unto him) who again revolting, were protected by *Syllaus* an *Arabian*, that being to marry his sister *Salome* was rejected, because he would not turn Jew. *Saturninus* and *Voluminus* Presidents of *Syria*, resolved he might by force of Arms chastize these Rebels, whereupon he entered *Arabia*, and having formerly destroyed their families, which they left in their Corn Countrey, took a Castel they held there. *Syllaus* now being at *Rome* accused *Herod* unto *Cæsar*, as having wasted all *Arabia*, and he so far believed it, that he twice denied his Ambassadors audience. The Rebels and *Arabians* hereupon did him much injury, which he was glad to put up for the present, but sent *Nicholaus Damascus* to plead his cause.

44. He first joyned with the Ambassadors of *Arenas* King of *Arabia*, accusing *Syllaus*, thence came to lay open his forgeries against *Herod*, to whom *Augustus* was thoroughly reconciled, and had given him *Arabia* too, but that he received from him other Letters, containing another complaint against his sons. For whilst he was thus out with *Cæsar*, the former stirs were renewed in his house by means of *Eurycles* a *Lacedæmonian*, who winding himself into *Alexander's* acquaintance, betrayed him first to *Antipater*, and then to *Herod* himself. He denied all accusations, except that he intended with his wife to fly to *Archelaus* King of *Cappadocia* her father; but *Cæsar* being consulted, as we said, willed *Herod* to call a Council at *Berytum* with the *Roman* Presidents, *Archelaus* of *Cappadocia*, and the rest of his friends and Nobility thereabouts, and do as he should be advised. He called all but *Archelaus*, and in an Assembly of 150 men declaimed most furiously against his sons, not producing any proof at all, further than that they intended to

fly,



Puttegh his  
ons to death.

fly, and not suffering them to be present to answer for themselves; He onely required the suffrages of the Assembly to countenance his private resolution, which the major part giving (though *Sagurninus* and his sons gave an indifferent sentence) he acted by fury, and unnatural madnesse, caused them to be strangled at *Sebaste*. *Antipater*, after the death of his brothers, quickly plotted the destruction of his father, and for that he was hated by all men, procured some esteem by his gifts, and drew *Pheroras* into the conspiracy, to the issue of whom the *Pharises* promised the Kingdom. For refusing to take the Oath of Allegiance, they were fined by *Herod*, to whose Kingdom they prophesied destruction, and happiness to the family of *Pheroras*, because his wife payed their fine. *Herod* getting out these things by the means of *Salome*, put the principal of the *Pharises* to death, with others, and urged his brother *Pheroras* to put away his wife, which he refusing to do, he banished him his Kingdom. *Pheroras* then departing into his *Tenarchy*, died shortly after, being visited by *Herod*, who buried him honourably at *Jerusalem*. *Antipater* standing in fear of his father, wrought by his Creatures at *Rome* to be sent for by *Cesar*. But this availed nothing; for in his absence all came out, which confirmed *Salome's* words (to which the King in this matter had given but little credit, knowing her to be too free in accusations) and brought vengeance upon him, notwithstanding all his craft, for the murder of his brethren.

Cap. 6. &c.

A grievous  
Conspiracy  
against him.

45. *Pheroras* his wife being accused of poisoning her husband, her maids were tortured, and in their pain gave some suspicion of the conspiracy, which was more cleared by one *Antipater* that had the ordering of *Antipater's* affairs, who confessed that his Master had compounded a poison, and delivered it to *Pheroras* to be given to the King in his absence, and that it was kept by *Pheroras* his wife: She confirmed the same, declaring that the poison was bought in *Egypt* by *Antipater's* procurement, that it was committed to her charge, and how, that when her husband was sick, and *Herod* came out of kindness to visit him, being overcome with his love he forbade her to give it him. Amongst the accessaries was *Herod's* own wife, the daughter of the High-Priest; she was put away, her father deposed, and *Matthias* the son of *Theophilus* preferred to his place; *Herod* also her son was put out of the Kings Testament, wherein he had bequeathed the Kingdom to him after his death. In the mean time *Bathillus* the Freedman of *Antipater* returning from *Rome* was tortured, and confessed that he had brought with him a poison to deliver to *Pheroras*, wherewith the King might be certainly and speedily dispatched in case the other should fail. *Antipater* returned ignorant of these passages, for that almost every one was his Enemy, and before his father and *Quintilius Varus*, though he sought to cover his wickednesse, all things were made plain against him, whereupon he was committed to close prison. Shortly after *Herod* himself sickned, and became exceeding ready and wrathfull, as well for these things as for that he thought the people was glad of his misfortunes, having at the instigation of the Doctors of their Law cut down an Eagle of Gold of great value that stood over the Portal of the Temple. But his sickness more and more increased.

He sickneth.

His strange  
Disease.

46. His disease was strange and fearfull. For he burned with an inward heat, which pierced and tormented him in his bowels. He was also vexed with a ravenous and insatiable appetite, and an Ulcer in his Entrails, with a strange and furious Colick. His feet were swollen with moisture, and a shivering kind of Slegm, his stomack being no lesse afflicted. His body rotted, and was full of crawling Worms, which afforded an intolerable stench; besides, he was held with a filthy and troublesome Priapism, a strong Convulsion of his Nerves, and shortnesse of breath, being generally judged thus to be punished for his infinite impieties and sins committed against the Majesty of God; & doubtesse his intencion to kill *Christ*, with the innocent blood of the Infants cried loud. He used all means for recovery, and went over *Jordan* to the hot Baths of *Callirhoe*. Thence returning to *Jericho*, a melancholick

Cap. 8. & 9.

He killeth his  
son Antipater,  
who had procured  
the death of his  
brothers, and  
plotted against  
his father's life.

And dieth.

Archelaus his  
son being left  
his Successor  
in Judea,

Augustus giveth him half  
of the Kingdom,  
and the other half  
to his two  
brothers.

Seditions in  
Juden.

One counter-  
feits Alexander  
the son of He-  
rodi by *Ala-*  
*rimus*.

cholick humour seized on him; which rendred him unfociable, and displeased with all men. Perceiving now that he should die, and supposing that the *Jews* would much rejoyce in his death, he shut up many of the chiefest of them in the *Hippodrome*, and gave in charge to his sister *Salome*, and her husband *Alexas*, that as soon as he was dead they should cause them all to be killed, that a lamentation might accompany his funeral. Before his death he received Letters from *Cesar*, who gave him leave to deal with his son as he saw occasion. *Antipater* yet believing that he was dead, plotted how to escape and seize on the Kingdom, but his Jaylor with whom he dealt revealed it to *Herod*, who commanded one of his Guard instantly to kill him; and to such an end came he for the murder of his brethren, and the sad Tragedies he had raised in his father's house. *Herod* having attempted to kill himself, died some five dayes after his son, in the 72 year of his age, 27 after his getting possession of the Kingdom, and 29 after he had been declared King by the *Romans*; 'tis uncertain how long after the birth of *Christ*, but as is supposed not above two years, in the first of the 195 Olympiad, the 754 of the Citie, *Cains Cesar*, and *L. Emilius Paulus* being Consuls. *Salome* and *Alexas* before his death was thoroughly known, to their great honour discharged those that were locked up in the *Hippodrome*.

A. D. 1.  
Ol. 195. ann. 1.  
V. C. 754.

Cap. 10, 11, &  
13.

47. *Herod* not long before his end renewed his Testament, wherein he ordained his son *Antipas* *Tetrarch* of *Galile* and *Perea*, having before this appointed him his Successor in the Kingdom, for that he was incensed against *Archelaus* and *Philip*, by the means of *Antipater*. Now he made *Archelaus* King, gave the Province *Gaulonitis*, *Trachonitis*, *Batanea*, and *Peneade* to *Philip*, left *Salome* very well, and gave great Legacies to *Cesar* and *Livia* his wife. *Archelaus* at first was much cried up by the people; but afterwards the multitude calling to mind the death of *Matthias*, and his Confederates whom *Herod* had slain for breaking down the Eagle, fell into a Sedition (many flocking out of the Countrey to the Passover) and demanded justice against divers of his Officers; but this tumult was settled by the slaughter of 3000 about the Temple. Then went *Archelaus* to *Rome*, not daring to take upon him the title without the leave of *Augustus*, to whose disposal his father had referred his Testament. Many followed, and spoke against him, being affected better towards *Antipas*, the *Jews* also sent their Ambassadors, with whom joyned 8000 of their Countrey-men then living at *Rome*, in a Petition to *Cesar*, that they might be joyned to *Syria*, and live under *Roman* Governours without any King. At length *Cesar* came to this resolution, to give half that Dominion, which *Herod* enjoyed, unto *Archelaus*, viz. of *Idumaea*, *Judea*, and *Samaria*; with *Cesarea*, *Sebaste*, *Joppe*, and *Jerusalem*: the other half he divided betwixt *Antipas* and *Philip*. The former had the Countrey lying on the further side of *Jordan* and *Galile*, with 200 Talents of annual revenue. *Philip* obtained *Batanea*, *Trachonitis*, and *Aurapitis* with 100 Talents. *Archelaus* had 500 Talents of yearly rent out of his Countrey. Whilest these things were in hand at *Rome*, grievous Seditions tore the *Jews* in pieces at home; for they being now destitute of a King, several took upon them that title; *Sabinus*, who superintended the affairs of *Cesar* there, gave the occasion, by pilling the people, which now at the feast of *Pentecoste* gathering together from all quarters, sought to shake off that yoke. After great slaughters, at length all was quieted by the coming of *Varus* from *Amioch*, who left the first Legion in Garrison at *Jerusalem*.

Cap. 12.

48. The succession being settled by *Augustus*, a young man, and a Jew, born at *Sidon*, counterfeited himself *Alexander* the son of *Herod* by *Mariamne*, affirming, that both he and *Archelaus* were delivered by a friend, who had it in charge to see them executed, others being killed in their rooms. He deluded thousands of *Jews* inhabiting *Mt. Sion*, as also them at *Rome*, by whom he was received as their King. But he could not deceive *Cesar*, who made him confesse the forgery, and because he had promised him pardon, if he would acknowledge the deceit, for that he had formerly laboured

Cap. 14.

FFFFF 2

And is de-  
fected by Au-  
gustus.

Judea govern-  
ed by Depu-  
ties.

Caius (after  
sent against  
the Armenians.

Dieth 18  
months after  
his brother  
Lucius.

Tiberius sub-  
dueth Germany.

laboured with his hands, he condemned him to the Gallies, and put the man to death who had persuaded him to turn countenance. As for Archelaus, he tyrannized for ten years, and then being accused by the Jews, Augustus sent for him to Rome, where his cause being heard, he banished him to Vienna in Gall, and confiscated his goods. After this Cyrenius being sent into Syria to succeed Varus, valued the goods of each Inhabitant, and seized the estate of Archelaus. This censure or valuation of their estates, gave occasion to a great Sedition, by the means one Judas a Galilæe, Sodec a Pharise, and his confederate, alleging that this description was no other than a manifest token of their servitude, and exhorting all to maintain their liberty, to no purpose. For Judea now having no more Princes of its own, was governed by Deputies, of which Coponius being the first, was shortly after succeeded by M. Ambivius, and he by Annus Rufus.

49. Augustus (that we may return to Roman matters) adopted his two Grandsons Caius and Lucius, having got them to be called *Principes Juventutis*, and designed them *Consuls*. It hapned that the Armenians cast out Artavasdus, whom he had placed as King over them, and were in this Sedition assisted by the Parthians. This troubled him exceedingly; for he grew old himself, and his adopted sons were too young on the other hand. Yet sent he Caius with *Proconsular* power to compose these troubles, giving him for a greater grace *Lollia Paulina* to wife, the daughter (or niece) of M. Lollius, who went with him as his Governour. Tiberius met him at Samus, but was slightly looked on, being little better than a banished man. But Caius falling out with Lollius, who had incensed him against him, he had leave to return home, in the eighth year of his retirement, Augustus giving way to it, through the importunity of Livia, but denying to do any thing without the consent of Caius, and then recalling him with this condition, that he should not at all meddle with affairs of State. As for Caius, he prospered at his first entrance into Armenia, but not long after received an hurt in a rash and unadvised conference, after which he grew listless and sluggish, and this distemper was increased by flatterers, so that he desired to stay in the East, and lead there a private life. His Grandfather vehemently urged his return, with condition also, that then he might do what he pleased, so that unwillingly journeying for Italy, he died at Limyra a City of Lycia. His brother Lucius going into Spain, was dead eighteen months before, after whose decease Augustus would have adopted Tiberius; but he (if we believe *Paterculus* an egregious flatterer of him) fearing the envy of Caius, vehemently withstood the attempt. But now both of them being dead (and it's thought helped away by his mother Livia for his sake) he was adopted, together with Agrippa Posthumus, who had been born of Julia after Agrippa's death. And lest he should attempt any new matters; he was constrained to adopt Germanicus, one of the sons of his brother Drusus, though he had a son of his own called also Drusus, in the 757 year of the City, *Sevius Aelius Laetus* and C. *Sevius Saurinus* being *Consuls*, the fifth after the birth of Christ.

50. Tiberius was presently sent into Germany, where three years before a famous War had broken out; and with him *Pelcius Paterculus* the Historian (formerly a *Tribune* in the Army) in quality of *General of the Horse*, as succeeding his father in his places; and for nine whole years was he, as he telleth us, "the spectator of Tiberius his heavenly actions, either in that place, or as Lieutenant, and as far as the meanesse of his faculties could reach, an assistant in them." This Summer he passed over the River *Vimurgis*, and reduced divers Nations; but in the next even all Germany. For the Roman Army was led 400 miles upwards from the Rhine, as far the River *Elbe* which runneth by *Sens*, now the seat of an Archbishop, and a people then called *Hermundurians*, and was met there by the Fleet, which having sailed through the *British* Sea (till then unknown and unheard of) having conquered many Nations, and brought infinite provision of all things there joynd with it. Now nothing was left unconquered, except the *Marcmanni*, who under

Cap. 15.

Josephus Antiq.  
lib. 18. c. 1. & 3.  
Art. 5. 37.

Dio l. 55.

Sueton in  
Claudio.  
A. D. 3.  
V. C. 755.  
Idem in Tiberio  
c. 12, 13.

Patercul. l. 2.  
c. 103, & 103.  
Florus l. 4. c. ult.

A. D. 4.  
V. C. 756.

Dio in Germania  
A. D. 5.  
V. C. 757.

\* Vide l. 2. c.  
104, 105, 106.

conduct of *Maroboduus* quitting their former seat, had sought themselves upon these grounds surrounded by the *Hercinian* Wood, and through his order-  
ing were raised to a considerable and emulous greatness. *Tiberius* intended to set upon them the next summer; but was diverted by the rebellion of all *Pannonia* and *Dalmatia*, which not satisfied with the benefits of a long Peace, and grown in strength, drew into society all the Nations about them, and flew to arms, to the number of 80000 fighting-men.

51. Augustus himself was much affrighted at this rebellion, and well he might, for the Rebels having raised 200000 foot, and 9000 Horse, all select men, they ordered that part of this Army should make for Italy itself, under expert Captains, that part should break into *Adriaticum*, and a third band be left at home to defend their own. Levies therefore were carefully made, all the old Soldiers recalled from every quarter, and such men and women both, as were found within the censure of Freed-men, were compelled to find Soldiers, the Prince himself being heard to say in the Senate, that except they took good heed, within ten dayes the Enemy might face the walls of Rome. Tiberius was appointed General, and amongst other Officers *Paterculus* went his Quæstor; *Germanicus* also is said to have deserved well in this Expedition. Though the War at first was full of difficulties, and the more through scarcity of provisions, yet was it in the space of three years concluded by Tiberius. *Pannonia* first submitted, *Rato* and *Pinetus* their most famous Leaders being taken off, for the one was made a prisoner, and the other yielded himself. And though the *Dalmatians* were hard to be overcome, through the difficult situation of their places, the fierceness of their natures, and their wondrous abilities in matters of War, yet not long after they were reduced, being almost totally ruined. During these troubles abroad, Agrippa the other adopted son of Augustus lived as a banished person, being by him confined to *Planasia* an Island near *Corfica*, for his great folly and rudeness, though he was not found guilty of any notable crime. To Tiberius a Triumph and other great honours were decreed for reducing *Illyricum*, but he put off the Triumph as very unreasonable, the City being now in great heaviness for the losse of the Legions, and Varus in Germany.

52. *Quintilius Varus* formerly *President of Syria* (which being rich he enured poor, but left it poor coming away rich, as one expresseth it) was sent into Germany, which he governed with great negligence and security, as not considering that he lay in an Enemies Country, but administering Justice as if he had been in the Forum at Rome. Against him thus secure did the Germans conspire at the instigation of *Arminius*, son to *Sigimerus* Prince of that Nation, and a young man of excellent parts. The plot was revealed to Varus by *Segestes*; but he refused to give any credit to the relation. They left no room therefore for a second discoverer, but intangling the best Army the Romans had (both for discipline, valour, and experience) amongst bogs, woods, and ambuscadoes, cut in pieces three Legions, with as many wings, and six cohorts. Varus killed himself, *Vulturnus* his Lieutenant most basely leaving the foot, ran away with the horse; yet he overlined not those whom he had forsaken, but died a betrayer of his Country. *Lucius Appianus* who commanded two Legions under his uncle Varus, preserved his party in so great a calamity, and by coming down in a seasonable time to the lower Wintering quarters, settled the wavering minds of such People as inhabited on this side the Rhine. L. *Sedatus* the Camp-Master, and others with him, being shut up in *Alifons*, and besieged by innumerable forces, when they wanted necessities, brake through and came to their own party. This disaster fell out in the 762 year of the City, Q. *Sulpicius Camarinus* and C. *Poppæus Sabinius* being *Consuls*.

53. Augustus was out of all measure troubled at so dishonourable a losse, so that counting it as full of danger as disgrace, he appointed watches about in the City, prorogued the commands of Presidents over the Provinces; that by them who were experienced and well known to the people, they might the better

Idem ibid. c.  
109, 110.

A. D. 8.

V. 760.

Dio l. 55.

Paterculus l. 2.  
c. 110, 111.

Tacitus l. 1. c. 3.  
Sueton in Tibe-  
rio c. 20.

Paterculus ut  
supra c. 117,  
118, 119, 120.

Tacitus Annal.  
l. 1.

Dio l. 56.  
Sueton in  
Othavio.

Florus l. 4. c. ult.

A. D. 9.  
V. C. 761.

Suetonius in  
Othavio c. 23.

better be kept in order, and he vowed to celebrate Games in honour of *Jupiter*, if the Commonwealth should recover it's former and better condition. Nayhe was struck with such consternation, that for several months he never cut the hair of his head or beard, and sometimes would he knock his head against the dores, crying out in a kind of distraction \* *Quintilius Varus restore the Legions* : he also observed the day of the defeat, as unlucky and dismal every year. He sent *Tiberius* into *Germany*, who settling the affairs of *Gall*, passed over the *Rhene*, and wasting the Country defeated all he met. Perceiving the former miscarriages to have happened through the negligence and remery of the General, he took good advice, though at other times wont to act things on his own head, and exacted Military discipline according to the most ancient strictness thereof. For two years he managed this War, being once in danger of his life, and then returning to *Rome*, triumphed three times; whereas if we believe *Velleius*, who served under him, he deserved seven. The year following *Germanicus Caesar*, after the end of his Consulship, was sent into *Germany*. *Tiberius* was well rewarded. For *Augustus* procured him equal power with himself over Provinces and Armies; which he held for two years, and then arrived at the Monarchy of the Roman Empire.

54. *Augustus* in the year preceding his death; when his fourth ten years Government was now expiring, unwillingly, as he ever pretended, accepted of the fifth, and prorogued to *Tiberius* the Tribuneship for other five years. The year wherein he died he made his third Census with *Tiberius* his Colleague; and in this *Lustrum* were found 4137000 polls of Roman Citizens. Celebrating the *Lustrum* in the *Campus Martius*, and with great concourse of People, an Eagle flew about him several times, and directing her flight to a Chapel near adjoining, fate down over the name of *Agrippa*, at the first letter. Which considering, he commanded *Tiberius* his Colleague to make those vows, which it was the custom to make for the following *Lustrum*. For though the tables were written and ready, yet he refused to undertake that which he should not perform. About the same time, the first letter of his name on his Statue in the *Capitol* was stricken out by a Thunderbolt. The Fortune-tellers answered, that he should onely live 100 days longer, which was signified by the letter C: and must be reckoned amongst the gods; for A E S A R the rest of the name in the *Heiruscan* language signified a God. In the mean time he wrote a breviary of his actions, which he commanded to be cut in brass, and set before his *Mausoleum*. Then sending *Tiberius* into *Illyricum* to settle matters there, he followed him as far as *Beneventum*; but returning back indisposed by a Diarrhea, he came to *Nola*, whither he recalled *Tiberius*, and had long discourse with him in private. His last day being come, he called for a looking-glasse, caused his hair to be combed, and his wrinkled cheeks smoothed up. Then asking his friends if he had not acted his part well, upon their answer *yea*, he said *Plaudite*, and so died in the imbraces of his beloved wife *Livia*, bidding her remember their Marriage and Farewel. He died in the same year as *Otho*: his Father had done, and on the same day (*August 19*) on which he entered his first Consulship, having lived 76 years all but 35 days, in the 767 year of the City, the second of the 198 Olympiad, the 57 after the death of *Julius Caesar*, and the fifteenth after the death of Christ. *Sextus Pompeius* and *Sextus Apuleius* being Consuls. He was the founder of the Roman Monarchy, his Uncle having been rather the chalker of it out. Having obtained it with the destruction of many, he managed it with great prudence and moderation. His publick demeanour was with modesty, and his private with temperance, altogether void of luxury; for though his fortune was high, his fare was but mean, and his apparel suitable, being made of cloath wrought in his own house by his wife, sister, and daughter. He was most unfortunate in his first marriage, through the incredible wantonness of his daughter *Julia*, which died at *Rhegium* in confinement not long after him. And he was not much happier in his second marriage, except his dearly beloved *Livia* was much wronged.

For

Tiberius settles that Country.

Augustus dies.

Birth

\* Redde Legions Quintili Varo.  
Patercul. l. 2. c. 120, 121, 122.  
Sueton in Tiberio c. 18, 19, &c.

Dio l. 56.

Inscript. Gruteri p. 230.

Sueton. in Otho c. 99, 100

Patercul. l. 2. c. 123.

A. D. 15.  
P. c. 767.

For 'tis reported that the (serving *Agrippa Posthumus* might be received into favour again, whom *Augustus* had lately visited) set him forward to his long home, by poisoning some Figs as they hung on a Tree, from which she knew he was wont to gather that kind of fruit.

55. *Tacitus* maketh it a doubt whether *Tiberius* found him alive or dead, for *Livia* kept all things close, gave out words sometimes as if he recovered, secured the High-ways, denied all access to the house, and sent for her son (her self) when he had scarcely entered *Illyricum*; so that by their practices *Agrippa Posthumus* was first taken out of the way, and all things necessary being provided, the very same report gave information that *Augustus* was dead, and *Tiberius* possessed of the Sovereignty. For he had secured it to himself by strength, though he played the dissembler most egregiously, refusing the Government so long as till the Senators fell down at his feet, and besought him to accept of it, whom he answered with ambiguous words, and at length complaining that a miserable and intolerable servitude was imposed on him, received it as by constraint, and yet so as he seemed to signify that he would again relinquish it. Indeed there was cause for him to say, as he did, that he took a Wolf by the ears. For *Clemens* the slave of *Agrippa* had got a considerable party together under pretence of revenging his Lord's death: *Scribonius Libo* secretly plotted his own advancement, and the *Legions* both in *Germany* and *Illyricum* mutined, the former chusing *Germanicus* for their Prince, who earnestly refused to accept of their offer, and at length quieted them with much ado; as *Drusus* did the other in *Pannonia*, they being frightened into obedience by a total Eclipse of the Moon, which fell out on the 27th of September, five hours after midnight. *Clemens* was apprehended, and *Libo* not effecting any thing was in the second year accused to the Senate. *Tiberius* in the mean while looking carefully to himself, notwithstanding these motions obtained the Supreme power, betwixt which and his rule with *Augustus* for two years there was this difference; that his former command extended onely to the Armies and Provinces subject to *Augustus*, but this to the Citie it self Mistress of all. Formerly he had Tribunitial and Censorian power; but now he became Monarch, and was loose or exempt from all power of Laws, as *Augustus* before him. For he had not together with him when living to equal authority as afterwards *L. Varus* had with *M. Antoninus*: the Philosopher, which two first governed the Commonwealth upon equal terms; but such like as *Antoninus Pius* had with *Adrian*, who also adopted him, and made him his Colleague in the Proconsular power as to Provinces, and in the Tribunitial power at home. And therefore *Suetonius* telleth us, that *Tiberius* first assembled the Senate by virtue of his Tribunitial Office onely.

56. *Tiberius* at first carried himself (as ever in some cases) very cunningly, cloaking with marvelous dissimulation those enormities which afterwards appeared. For some time he counterfeited incredible patience, stooped too low in his complementing of Senators and Magistrates; rejected all high titles and honours (not enduring the name of Dominus or Lord) and consulted the Senate continually, not doing little or much without its consents; nay, suffering some things therein to be carried against his mind; he was also at first very temperate in his diet, and exact in reforming manners; by degrees falling into his natural humour. From the beginning he was much afflicted with the fame of *Germanicus*, his brother *Drusus* his son by nature (begotten of *Antonia* the younger, daughter of *Antony* the Triumvir; by *Octavia* the sister of *Augustus*, concerning which *Antonius Pius* reporteth that she never spate) and his own by adoption, who now prosperously carried on the War in *Germany*. Within two or three years a very plausible occasion presented it self for the calling of him back from those Legions which were so much at his devotion. For it hapned then that the *Parthians* were in great commotions about their Kings. *Phraates* had 27 years before for his own security sent four of his sons as Hostages to *Rome*, through the procurement

Sueton in Tiberio Capp. 22, &amp;c. 24.

Tacitus Annal. lib. 1.

In Tiberio cap. 23.

Sueton in Tiberio Capp. 26, 27, 28, &amp;c. Tacitus ut supra.

Tiberius at first dissembleth his vices.

Envieth Germanicus.

curement of his wife *Ihermusa* an Italian woman, which having been formerly his Concubine had then a son by him, and that this her son might obtain the Crown, got the rest to be sent out of the way, and then they two murdered the King. This Bastard called *Phraataces* reigned; but being hated by the people for his parricide, was not long after slain, and then was set up one *Orodes* of the family of the *Arfacidae*, who being also hated for his cruelty came to the same end. Then sent the *Parthians* for one of the Hostages, and *Vonones* the eldest was dismissed by *Tiberius*. But they counting it a disgrace for any to reign over them, who (as they termed it) had been a slave to *Cesar*, rebelliously cast him off, and called in *Artabanus*, who then reigned in *Media*, and was also one of the *Arfacidae* or the blood royal of *Parthia*. He at his first entrance was repulsed by *Vonones*; but the second time overthrew him, and got possession of the Kingdom. *Vonones* retiring into *Armenia* sent to *Tiberius* for aid, who, for that *Artabanus* threatened hard, and the principal of the *Armenians* were of his faction, did not think fit to make War upon him: therefore *Vonones* yielded himself to *Creticus Silanus*, who governed *Syria*, and *Artabanus* set *Orodes* one of his own sons over *Armenia*. At the same time *Antiochus* King of *Commagena* dying, a contention arose betwixt the Nobility and Commons; the former would have the Countrey reduced into the form of a Roman Province, but the people were for a King. Now also *Philopator* King of *Cilicia* being dead, his subjects were divided upon the very same grounds. *Syria* also, and *Judea* being weary of their burthens, desired a diminution of their Tributes.

*Josephus Antiq. lib. 18. cap. 3.*

*Tacitus Annal. l. 2.*

*Sueton in Tiberio cap. 49. Tacitus ut prius.*

*Idem cap. 43.*

*\* Sueton in Caligula cap. 1. Tacitus ibid. cap. 56.*

*Euseb. in Chronico.*

*A. D. 19. V. C. 771. Lib. 2. De Trifibulo.*

*Tacitus lib. 2. Capp. 59, 60, &c. A. D. 20. V. C. 772.*

*Sueton in Caligula cap. 1, 2, 3, 4, &c. Josephus Antiq. lib. 18 c. 8.*

Under pretence of quieting the East exposth him to danger and treachery.

Who dieth of a lingering disease at Antioch.

57. *Tiberius* now persuaded the Senate that the abilities of *Germanicus* were requisite for quieting the East, whereupon the Provinces beyond the Seas were decreed to him, with larger power than had been granted to any that governed them, either by lot or the gift of the Prince. *Germanicus* was often importuned by *Tiberius* upon this ground to return, yet intent upon his business he first subdued several Nations in *Germany*, and by the overthrow of *Arminius* obtained great glory, which was something obscured at last by a shipwrack. It was the design of *Tiberius* to expose him unto danger and treachery; therefore he removed *Silanus* his friend, and put *Cn. Piso* a forward man into his room, to whom he gave in charge some secret thing as many believed. *Germanicus*, being thus expelled to compose the affairs of the East, as one truly termeth it, placed *Zeno* the son of *Polemo* King of *Pontus* over *Armenia*. *Q. Veranius* a Knight had the oversight of *Capadocia*, which was made a Province; for *Archelaus* the King thereof courted not *Tiberius* enough when he was at *Rhodes*, and therefore was called to *Rome*, and there kept till his death. *Q. Servilius* also was set over *Commagena*. *Artabanus* sent to *Germanicus* about renewing the league, and good correspondence, desiring that *Vonones* might not be kept in *Syria*, nor suffered by his Messengers to sow discord amongst the people, offering him also leave to come to the bank of *Euphrates*; to which he answered, as became the State and himself. This year died *Livy* the Historian, who was born at *Padua*; and also *Quintus* the Poet, having remained a banished man in *Jonus* several years, whether the displeasure of *Augustus* confined him, either for that he had seen him do some unseemly thing which he would not have known, or for publishing his wanton books concerning *Love*, as he hints himself. This was the 771 year of the City, the 19th after the birth of *Christ*, *Tiberius Augustus* the third, and *Germanicus Caesar* the second time being Consul.

58. *Germanicus* the year following made a voyage into *Egypt*, to view it for the rarity of its Antiquities; for which he was chidden by *Tiberius*, as going without his leave. Thence returning into *Syria*, he was most shamefully, and without any measure affronted by *Piso*, and at length died of a lingering disease at *Antioch*, being thought to miscarry by the fraud of *Tiberius*, and the Ministry of *Piso*, who plainly said, that he must either displease Father or Son. But the fruit he reaped, in pleasing thus the Father was but unpleasing; for returning to *Rome* the year following; he escaped narrowly

tearing

tearing in pieces by the people, and being condemned by the Senate killed himself. For *Germanicus* there was an universal mourning, not onely in *Rome* and the Provinces, but also amongst *Barbarians* and Enemies themselves. He was a person excellently accomplished, and of a most sweet disposition, whereby he became the love and delight of the people, and *Augustus* long debating with himself whether he should not leave him his Successor, at length caused *Tiberius* to adopt him, who, 'tis thought, being restrained by fear, and reverence of him, after his death broke out into such courses as made the other more missed and glorious. By his wife *Agrippina* (the daughter of *Agrippa* and *Julia*) he died father of three sons, viz. *Nero*, *Drusus*, and *Caius*; and of as many daughters. He died in the 34th year of his age, and that which followed his second Consulship, *M. Junius Solanus*, and *C. Norbanus Flaccus* being Consuls.

His issue.

*Tiberius punished by the treachery of Seianus, who poysoneth his son Drusus.*

59. Three or four years after was *Tiberius* punished in his own kind by the poysoning of his own son *Drusus*, and that by his greatest favourite *Ælius Seianus*. This man being the son of *Seius Strabo* a Roman Knight, when very young followed *Caius* the Nephew of *Augustus*, and afterwards by divers Arts wound himself into the affections of *Tiberius*, who used him as his most inward Counsellour, or Minister of State, and erected to his honour his statue of brass in the Theatre. Now he thought of no less than the Empire it self, as a step to which, he poysoned *Drusus* the son of *Tiberius*, having brought *Livia* the young man's wife to a compliance with him by his filthy dalliance, and corrupted *Lygus* the Eunuch to betray his trust. *Drusus* had the year before the *Tribunial* power conferred on him; but for that he was none of the most towardsly was little regarded by his father, who as soon as his Funeral was over, returned to his wonted employments, forbidding any longer vacation upon his account. The Inhabitants of *Livium* sending their Ambassadors something too late to condole his death, he answered, that he also was sorry for the death of *Hector* their excellent Countrey-man. *Tiberius* after this commended the two sons of *Germanicus*, *Nero* and *Drusus*, to the Senate, which done, *Seianus* began to strike at them, though at first through the sides of their mother, labouring to bring them all into suspicion and hatred. This first advantage he took was from the prayers of the Priests, who made vows for their health, as for that of *Tiberius*; for he took it hainously that they herein should be made equal to him. Then did he provoke them, and never ceased till he caused them to be declared Enemies by the Senate, after which he starved them to death, using also their mother most injuriously, for that she was not sparing of her tongue in reprehending and upbraiding him. Now was *Tacfarinas*, who had maintained a tedious war in *Africa*, slain by *Dolabella*. As for *Tiberius* by the persuasion of *Seianus* he withdrew into the Isle *Caprea*, and thence forward minding nothing gave up himself to all sorts of enormities.

*Tacitus Annal. lib. 4.*

*Sueton in Tiberio cap. 52.*

*Tacitus ut supra.*

*Sueton. in Tib. cap. 40.*

*Idem ibid. Capp. 41, 42. &c.*

*Tiberius returneth to his natural humour.*

His Character given him by his School-master.

60. For, casting off all care of the State, being out of sight, he returned to his natural disposition, not looking to the supply, either of Army or Provinces; suffering *Armenia* to be seized on by the *Parthians*, *Mesia* by the *Dacians*, and *Sarmatians*, and *Gall* to be wasted by the *Germans*. He instituted a new Office for the management of pleasures, unto which he preferred a Knight, *T. Calpurnius Priscus*: he held such in greatest esteem, & bestowed Offices on men that were most for his turn that way, being given up to such beastliness as is incredible, and not to be mentioned. He was excessively covetous, both as to getting, and keeping what was unjust. He was so undutiful to his mother, as he refused to come at her, when living, and when dead, he neglected to bury her; neither would he perform her will, but persecuted her friends; but she was justly rewarded (though as to him unjustly) living over and above other wicked practices been suspected to have had an hand in the death of *Germanicus*. So cruel, and filthy he became, that he verified the Character given him when but young, by *Theodorus Gadarens* his School-master; that he was *αὐτὸν ἀμωρτί-πεφυκένον*, or *Dirt mingled with blood*. Having chosen twenty of the principal men of the City to be his Counsellors,

G g g g

lors,

Iors, he scarcely left two or three of them alive, *Seianus* being found out, and punished justly for his wickedness, amongst others that were innocent. He spared not the familiar friends of his mother, nephews, *Agrippina* or *Seianus*. No day either holy or prophane was free from slaughters. Every offence little or great was Capital. Many were condemned with their wives and children. Rewards were proposed to informers, and all testimonies taken for true. Simple death he accounted nothing, and therefore invented painful waies; especially after he knew how his son *Drusus* died, he neither spared any person nor sort of torments. *Caius* the son of *Germanicus* he cared not for, as suspecting him, and *Tiberius* his grandson by *Drusus* he despised, as conceived in adultery.

61. In the twelfth year of *Tiberius* was *Pontius Pilate* sent into *Judea* to succeed *Valerius Gratus*, the fourth Governour after the banishment of *Archelams* the son of *Herod* to *Vienna*. *Coponius* was the first, *M. Ambivius* the second, *Annius Rufus* the third, and *Gratus* the fourth. *Pilate* at his first entrance set up the *Images* of *Cesar* at *Jerusalem*, which moved the *Jews* to sedition; but overcome by their intreaties, he removed them to *Cæsarea*. He being now Governour of *Judea*, *Herod Antipas* Tetrarch of *Galile*, his brother *Philip* Tetrarch of *Ituraa* and *Trachonitis*, and *Lysanias* of *Abilene*; *Annas* (who, formerly having had the Office, though displaced by *Gratus*, yet for his authority still carried the name) and *Caphas* (otherwise called *Joseph*, whom lately *Gratus* had placed in the room of *Simon*, by him deposed also) being *High-Priests*, in the fifteenth year of *Tiberius* entering, *John Baptist* began to preach and baptize in the resemblance and spirit of *Elias*. Amongst others he baptized *Christ* himself, of whom he was the forerunner. His ministry is thought to have commenced on the tenth day of the seventh month, which was *Penitential*, and so great a *Fest*, that the soul which did not afflict itself, was to be cut off from amongst its People; and was also *Expiatorie*, wherein the *High-Priest* (the Type of him before whose face *John* was sent) entered into the *Holy of Holies* alone, with blood expiating the sins of the People, this being also the same day wherein by trumpet the *Jubile* was proclaimed.

62. *Jesus* now about thirty years of age, being baptized of *John* in *Jordan* (and owned for the *Messiah* and son of God, by the descending of the Holy Ghost in the form of a dove, and resting upon him, as also by a voice from Heaven) was led of the Spirit into the Wilderness to be tempted of the Devil. After his temptation he returned in the power of the Spirit into *Galile*. Going into *Galile* he received *Andrew* and *Simon* his brother, the day following called *Philip* of *Bethsaida* the City of *Andrew*, and *Simon* surnamed *Cephas* or *Peter* by the Lord. On the third day being invited to a marriage in *Cana* of *Galile*, he turned water into wine, this being his first miracle, and by it his glory was manifested, and his Disciples believed in him. Afterward he went down to *Capernaum* with his mother, his brethren, (or kinsmen) and disciples, where they abode not many dayes. Then came he to the exercise of his Ministry, the acts whereof are distinguished by four *Passovers*. Amongst the four Evangelists which describe them, *Matthew* alone hath neglected the order of time, which is constantly observed by the rest, except in the History of *John's* casting into prison, as *Luke* hath recorded it.

63. *Jesus* having ascended to *Jerusalem* at the time of the first *Passover*, cast buyers and sellers out of the Temple, wrought miracles, and instructed *Nicodemus* in the mystery of Regeneration, and Faith in himself. Leaving then *Jerusalem* he went into *Judea* with his Disciples, where abiding, he baptized by the ministry of them; *John* then baptizing in *Enon*; for he was not yet cast in prison. A certain question arose about purifying betwixt some of *John's* Disciples and the *Jews*. *John* instructed now his Disciples concerning *Christ* the last time, as they told him of his acts with some emulation, and not long after he was cast into prison, for reprehending *Herod the Tetrarch* his incest with his brother *Philip's* wife. *Jesus* hearing of his captivity, and that the *Pharisees* took notice that he baptized more by the hands

*Joseph. Antiq.*  
l. 18. c. 3. &  
*Euseb. Eccl.*  
Hist. l. 1. c. 9.  
Luc. 3.

A. D. 29.  
Ol. 201. an. 8.  
V. C. 781.

A. D. 30.  
Ol. 202. an. 8.  
V. C. 782.

*Ex ussione An-*  
*machano ut il-*  
*le ex Richard-*  
*sono Episcopo*  
*Ardachadenst*  
*in provincia*  
*Amathana.*

of his Disciples, departed out of *Judea* (where he had remained some eight moneths) and came into *Galile*. In his passage through *Samar'a* he discoursed with a woman at a Well near unto the City *Sychar*, the Inhabitants of which by her means he brought to the acknowledgement of himself, four moneths before harvest, or the *Passover*, about the middle of the ninth moneth called *Abu*. Having stayed two dayes at *Sychar*, he proceeded, and returned the second time into *Galile* out of *Judea* after his baptism, being received with great respect by the *Galileans*, who had seen what he did at *Jerusalem*. Preaching in their Synagogues here, he also healed at *Cana*, the son of the Noble-man that was sick at *Capernaum*, which was his second miracle in *Galile*. Having wrought miracles at *Capernaum*, he went to *Nazareth*, where he had been brought up, and expounding the Prophet *Esay* concerning himself, they first admired, and then cast him out, and would have thrown him down headlong, but he passed away through the midst of them.

64. Leaving then *Nazareth*, he taught at *Capernaum*, where they were astonished at his doctrine, and cast out an unclean spirit that was first commanded silence. Departing out of the Synagogue into the house of *Simon* and *Andrew*, he cured a Fever *Simon's* wife's mother. At Sun-set he healed sick folkes brought to him, and cast out Devils, first put to silence. In the morning he went out into a desert place to pray, and the multitudes endeavouring to detain him, he answered, he must also preach in other places; and coasting through *Galile*, he preached in their Synagogues, and cast out Devils. Then taught he the People out of *Simon's* ship on the Lake of *Genesareth*, and helped them to a miraculous draught of fishes, whereupon *Simon Peter*, *Andrew*, *James*, and *John*, being commanded to follow him, he maketh fishers of men. Then going through all *Galile* healing and teaching, his fame spread through *Syria*, and multitudes flocked to him. In a certain City he healed a Leper, which though forbidden, yet noised his fame, and such companies now followed him that he could not enter the City, but taught without in desert places, and prayed. After a few dayes he returned to *Capernaum*, and teaching in his own house he healed the *Paralytic*, who was let down in a bed, and forgave him his sins before the *Pharisees*. Thence going towards the Sea he taught, and passing by called *Levi* or *Matthew*, then sitting at the receipt of custom, by whom being feasted, he defended his disciples against the *Pharisees*, for eating with *Publicans* and sinners, and for not fasting. And it came to passe, that on the second Sabbath after the first (that is, on the second Sabbath of the new year, instituted after their return out of *Aegypt*, and beginning with the moneth *Nisan* or *Abib*) *Jesus* passing through the Corn-fields, defended his Disciples, who plucked and ate ears of Corn, against the *Pharisees*, and explained the Doctrine of the observance of the Sabbath.

65. After these things there was a Feast of the *Jews* (that is, the second *Passover* of his Ministry) and *Jesus* went up to *Jerusalem*, where on the Sabbath-day he healed one who had layn 38 years diseased at the Pool of *Bethesda*, for which thing, and because he had called God his Father, the *Jews* went about to kill him, and he opposed against them his most divine apology. Departing thence, in the Synagogue, on another Sabbath, he healed a man that had a withered hand, for which the *Pharisees* and *Herodians* presently sought to kill him. *Jesus* knowing this, departed to the Sea, where teaching the People, he commanded a little Vessel to wait on him, because the multitude crowded him. In these dayes he spent a whole night in prayer upon a mountain, and when it was day, made choice of twelve, whom he called *Apostles*. Going down into the plain he healed the sick, and coming home, such was the presse, that they could not eat, whereupon his friends came to take him, supposing he had been besides himself. When he had seen the multitude he ascended into the mountain, and his Disciples coming to him, there he preached his long Sermon, first speaking to the *Apostles*, and then to the multitude. Having ended all his words in the audience of the People, he entered into *Capernaum*, and healed the *Centurion's* servant ready to die. The

G g g g 2

day

*Pontius Pilate*  
succeedeth  
*Gratus* in *Ju-*  
*dea*.

*John Baptist*  
beginneth to  
preach and  
baptize.

The Lord *Je-*  
*sus* executeth  
his Ministry.

The second  
*Passover*.

The first  
*Passover*  
thereof.



day following he raised from the dead the widow's son in the City *Naim*, whence his fame was spread abroad. Then sent *John* his Disciples from prison to him, to ask whether he was the man, or they must look for another, who being departed with an answer, Christ took occasion to speak of *John*, and upbraided the Cities, acquiescing in the Will of his Father as to the revealing or hiding the things of salvation. Then *Simon* the *Pharisee* inviting him to dinner, a woman that was a sinner washed his feet with her tears, which defending against *Simon*, he forgave her her sins. And it came to passe afterward, that he preached through every City and Village, his Disciples being with him, and certain women ministering to him, amongst which was *Joanna* the wife of *Chusa*, *Herod's* Steward. Then healed he a man possessed with a dumb and deaf Devil, and defended himself against the *Pharisees*, who said, that he cast out Devils by *Beelzebub* Prince of Devils. To the *Scribes* and *Pharisees* demanding a sign, he onely giveth that of *Jonah*, and his mother and brethren asking to speak with him, he declareth who are his nearest relations. On that day going to the Sea, he taught the People from the ship in the Parable of the Sower and others. On this same day when it was evening, he would they should passe to the further side, and having dismissed the multitude, when in their passage a great Tempest arose, he chiding the winds filled the Sea, and saved his Disciples then in danger. Coming unto the further side into the Country of the *Gadarens*, or *Bergasens*, which lyeth over against *Galsile*, two *Demoniacs* met him, exceeding fierce (whereof *Mark* and *Luke* mention but one) out of which he casting the Devils, permitted them to enter into the Swine. The *Gadarens* hereupon desiring him to depart out of their Coasts, he (having dismissed the man who desired to be with him, and upon refusal, preached throughout *Decapolis* what things *Jesus* had done for him) returned by ship unto the further side, and so to *Capernaum* his own City.

66. And it came to passe, that when *Jesus* was returned, the People gladly received him; for they were all waiting for him. And being by the Seaside, he answered the Disciples of *John*, inquiring why his Disciples fasted not, seeing they, and the Disciples of the *Pharisees* fasted often. Whilst he spake, he was besought to heal the onely daughter of *Jairus*; and as he was going down, a woman that had had an issue of blood twelve years, was by touching the hem of his garment made whole. Passing thence, he cured two blind men, whom he charged with threatening to say nothing of him; but in vain. As they passed away, a man possessed with a dumb Devil was presented unto him, whom he healed, the company admiring, and the *Pharisees* blaspheming. Then going about to all the Towns, he taught and healed, and coming into his own Country was contemned again by his Country-men, as he taught in the Synagogue on the Sabbath-day, they calling him *Carpenter*, though they admired him. Going about the Villages he taught, and pitying the multitude because the Harvest was great and the labourers few, he bade his Disciples pray for labourers into the Harvest. Then sent he out his twelve Disciples two and two, commissioned with power to preach and heal. Having made an end of commanding them, he went and preached in their Cities: and the twelve went about the Villages, teaching and healing every where. Now about this time was *John Baptist* beheaded, through the procurement of *Herodias*, which being told unto *Jesus* by his Disciples, who buried him, after the return of his own, he went with them, by ship into a desert place called *Bethsaida*. The multitude hearing of it, got thither before him, where he taught and healed them. And *Jesus* went up into a mountain, and there sate with his Disciples, and the *Pascheover* was nigh. It being late, he having compassion on the multitude, fed the number of 5000 men (besides women and children) with five barley loaves, and two small fishes, whereof twelve baskets full of fragments were taken up. When they would come and take him by force to make him a King, he caused his Disciples to passe over to the other side opposite to *Bethsaida*, and towards *Capernaum*. Having prayed in a mountain apart, he came towards his Disciples, and

and walking upon the Sea; when they had now rowed 25. or 30 furlongs, and were troubled with a contrary wind. They being affrighted at him, he made known himself, and saying *Peter* (who had desired he would bid him come to him on the water) when he was sinking, he passed over with them. Coming into the Land of *Gennesaret*, they brought all sorts of diseased persons to him, desiring they might touch but the hem of his Garment, which as many as touched were made whole. The day after his passage came the people which he had left on the further side to *Capernaum* to seek him, where in the Synagogue he preached concerning the bread of life, asserting himself to be it against the murmuring of the Jews. Many novv of his Disciples departed from, and walked no more with him. And though the 12 refused to depart, yet he declared that one of them was a Devil, meaning *Judas Iscariot*, who should betray him, being one of the twelve.

The third  
Pascheover.

67. After the third *Pascheover* of his Ministry, the *Scribes* and *Pharisees* that were come from *Jerusalem* came to him, and complained that his Disciples are with unwashed hands, to whom he answered concerning their abolishing God's commands by their Traditions, and taught the multitude what he declared to his Disciples, that not what entereth in, but what cometh out defileth a man. Departing into the Coasts of *Tyre* and *Sidon*, he cast the Devil out of the daughter of the *Syrophanician* woman, because of the greatness of her faith. Passing thence to the Sea of *Galile* through the midst of *Decapolis*; he healed a deaf man, who had an impediment in his speech, and ascending into a Mountain healed many. In those dayes a great multitude having stayed with him three dayes, he fed them to the number of 4000 men, besides Women and Children, with seven Loaves, and a few little fishes; and seven baskets full of fragments were taken up. Taking ship presently he came into the parts of *Dalmannitha*, or the Coasts of *Magdala*. The *Pharisees* asking a sign, he sighed deeply in his spirit for that these Hypocrites could discern the face of the sky, and not the signs of the times; and refusing to give them any other sign than that of *Jonah*, he left them, and returned by ship to the further side. His Disciples having forgot to take bread, and brought but one loaf with them, he bids them beware of the Leaven of the *Pharisees* and of *Herod*; and expoundeth his meaning to be of the Leaven of Doctrine. Coming then to *Bethsaida*, he cureth a blind man by degrees without the Town. Passing thence into the Towns of *Casarea-Philippi*, he asked his Disciples concerning the opinion which men had of him, and then what they themselves thought; to which for themselves *Peter* answered, that he was the *Christ*, which thing he forbade them to declare, foretold his death and resurrection, called *Peter* Satan for checking him about his sufferings, and foretold his transfiguration, which after some six dayes was fulfilled. The day following coming down, he cast out a Devil out of the *Lunatick*, which his Disciples could not eject. Passing thence, they journeyed through *Galile*, which he would not have known, and taught his Disciples that he must die, and rise again, which they understanding not were troubled, and afraid to ask him. Being arrived at *Capernaum*, the Lord paid Tribute-money, and taught his Disciples humility by the example of a little Child, speaking also against offending one's weak brother, and forgiving one another seventy seven times by the Parable of the Kings two debtors. *John* telling him that they had seen one casting out Devils in his name, he said he was not to be forbidden, and again spake against offending weak ones, and bade them beware that no Member offended them. After these things *Jesus* walked in *Galile*, for he would not walk in *Jury*, because the Jews sought to kill him. Now the Jews feast of *Tabernacles* (the *Skenopagia*) was at hand. His brethren, or Kins-men would him to go up that his Disciples might believe in him; but he refused to comply with them therein who themselves believed not, and went up after them, not openly, but as it were in secret.

68. When the time was come that he should be received up, he steadfastly set his face to go to *Jerusalem*. The *Samaritans* not receiving him he checked his

his Disciples, who would have had fire called down from Heaven upon them. Several in his passage desiring to follow him, he gave answer to them all. After these things he sent out 70 Disciples before his face, two into every City and place where he would come. And in the midst of the feast when the multitude was busie in inquiring about him, he came, and taught in the Temple. Some were sent to lay hold of him. On the last, and great day, of the Feast, when he spake of faith in himself, a great difference arose, and the Messengers that were sent to apprehend him, with Nicodemus, defended him against the Pharisees. Departing into the Mount of Olives, he returned early in the mornings, and refused as a Judge to condemn the woman taken in Adultery. In the Treasury he spake much concerning many truths, concluding with *before Abraham was I am*; whereupon the Jews took up stones to cast at him; but he hid himself, and passed away through the midst of them. Passing by, he saw, and cured a man that was born blind, who for vindicating him was cast out of the Synagogue. He then preached concerning the true Shepherd, sheep, and Door, as also of Thieves and Mercenaries, which caused a division amongst his hearers. The 70 then return with joy, and a certain Lawyer asking him what he should do to inherit eternal life, he sendeth him to the Law, and to declare who is our neighbour, speaketh the Parable of the man that fell amongst Thieves. After this, he was entertained in the house of Martha, which ministered to him, while her sister Mary hearing his word was preferred before her. And it came to passe that after he had done praying in a certain place, one of his Disciples desired him to teach them to pray, as John also taught his Disciples, therefore he prescribed the second time the same Lords prayer, adding arguments for constancy and firmness of faith. He cast out a Devil which was dumb, & proved against the blasphemers that he did it not by Beelzebub. While he said these things a certain woman said, *Blessed is the womb that bare thee, and the paps that gave thee suck*, to which he answered. The multitude gathering about him, he said, that Generation sought for a sign, but no sign, but that of Jonas the Prophet should be given it, saying, that the Queen of the South, and the Ninevites should condemn it in judgement. Dining with a Pharisee who had invited him, and wondered that he washed not, he spoke against their Hypocrisie, and denounced also woes against the Expositors of the Law. He bade his Disciples beware of the Leaven of the Pharisees (Hypocrisie) and not fear those that could kill the body. He refused to be a Judge betwixt a man and his brother about the inheritance, and thence took occasion to speak against anxious cares of the World, bidding them be ready against the uncertain time of their Lords coming.

69. There being some that told Jesus of the Galileans, the bloud of whom Pilate mingled with their sacrifice, he took thence occasion to presse repentance, and spake the Parable of the barren Fig-tree. On a certain Sabbath healed a woman that had a spirit of infirmity 18 years, which act he defended against the ruler of the Synagogue, and compared the Kingdom of God to a Grane of Mustard seed, and to Leaven. Journeying towards Jerusalem to the Feast of the Dedication he taught through the Cities and Villages, and answered that question whether *few shall be saved*. To certain Pharisees, vwho bade him be gone for fear of Herod, he gave a courageous answer. Being invited to eat in the house of one of the chiefeft Pharisees, he healed one of the Dropsie, defended it, and spake the Parable of those that were invited to the feast, instructing the Pharisee vwho had invited him. One of the Guests, saying, that *Blessed is he that shall eat bread in the Kingdom of God*, he took occasion to speak the Parable of the great Supper, and the excuses of such as were invited. To the multitude following him he preached concerning the denial of life it self for his sake, propounding the Parable of one who was to build a Tower, and the King going to battel. Upon the Publicans and sinners their coming to hear him, the Pharisees murmured, and he spake to them the Parables of the lost sheep, the goat, and the Prodigal Son. To his Disciples he also spake that of the unjust Steward, which applying, the Pharisees who were covetous derided him, whereupon

upon preaching against them, amongst other things he spake the Parable of the Rich-man and Lazarus. Speaking to his Disciples against offences, he also teacheth that we must forgive our offending brother. The Apostles desiring him to increase their faith, he speaketh of the power of that Grace, and by the Parable of the servant sheweth, that *when we have done all we can we are unprofitable servants*, having done but what we ought. Passing through Samaria and Galilee, towards Jerusalem, he healed the ten Lepers, whereof one onely returned and praised God. To the Pharisees asking him when the Kingdom of God should come, he answereth, and declareth to his Disciples, that the day of the son of man should be like to those of Noah and Lot, but he must first suffer many things. To encourage his Disciples to pray, he spake the Parable of the unjust Judge, and to some that thought themselves righteous and despised others, that of the Pharisee and the Publican.

70. At the Feast of Dedication, when it was Winter, Jesus walking in Solomon's Porch, to the Jews, who bade him tell them plainly whether he was Christ or not, he answered, that *He and his father are one*, whereupon they taking up stones to throw at him, he defended his Divinity by his works, and the Scriptures, and escaped when they sought to take him. Passing beyond Jordan into that place where John baptized, he taught and healed, many believing on him, and answered the Pharisees, tempting him, that *it is unlawful for a man to put away his wife, except for Adultery*. Now admitted he Infants, though his Disciples rebuked such as brought them, and as he was passing thence to come into the way, he answered the young Rich man that asked him what he should do to inherit eternal life, and bade him sell all he had, and give it to the poor, then to follow him. Hearing that Lazarus was sick, he abode in the place where he was two dayes, and then coming to Bethany, after he had been dead four dayes raised him from the dead. Hereupon Caiaphas Prophecying that *he was to die for the people*, they resolved to put him to death, which he understanding, went into the Citie Ephraim, and there taught. Ascending towards Jerusalem, he went before his Disciples, who were amazed and afraid. He now told them of his sufferings, which they did not at all understand; and the sons of Zebede asking to sit on his right, and left hand in his Kingdom, he gave them a repulse, and improved it to the teaching of them all humility. Coming near to Jericho he healed a blind man. In Jericho he called, and was entertained by Zachaeus, and passing thence restored sight to two blind men, whereof one was Bartimaeus; when they drew near to Jerusalem, they thinking that the Kingdom of God was near, he spake the Parable of the King, who going a journey committed ten Talents to his servants to be improved till his return. The Paschever being now at hand, many went up to Jerusalem to purifie themselves, and Jesus six dayes before it came to Bethany, where they made him a Supper. Lazarus sate at Table with him, but Mary anointed his feet, and wiped them with her hair. Many of the Jews came not onely to see him, but Lazarus also, upon whose account, for that many believed on him, the Chief Priests consulted also to kill Lazarus. Going towards Jerusalem, when he was come nigh to Bethphage and Bethany, at the Mount of Olives (on the 29th of March) he sent his Disciples for the Asses Colt whereon he rode to Jerusalem. When he came near the Citie he wept over it, foretelling its final destruction. Out of the Temple he cast buyers and sellers, where the Children cried *Hosanna*, and many believed on him, the great ones studying how to kill him. Certain Greeks who were come to the Feast desiring to see him, he preached concerning his passion, and had a voice from Heaven answering his prayer, which some thought to be of an Angel, and others of Thunder. It being late, he went to Bethany with the 12. Notwithstanding, the multitude had seen so many works, yet they believed not, that the saying of Esaias might be fulfilled. Yet many of the Chief Priests believed on him, but durst not confesse him for the Pharisees. Jesus cried, and spake concerning faith in himself.

71. The next morning as he returned he hungered, and curse d the barren Fig-

Fig-tree. He cast buyers and sellers again out of the Temple, and suffered nothing to be carried through it. Whilst he taught concerning Faith in himself, the *Chief-Priests* consulted how to kill him, fearing the People. At evening he went out of the City, and returning in the morning, they found the Fig-tree withered; whereupon he took occasion to preach concerning the power of Faith. As he taught in the Temple, the *Chief-Priests*, and *Pharisees*, and *Elders*, asked him by what authority he did these things? to whom he answered, with another question concerning *John's* authority, spake the Parable of the two sons, asking them, whether did the will of his father? and that of the husbandmen, who killed the heir of the vineyard, applying them to these men, who now studied how to apprehend him, but feared the People. Again, he spake to them the Parable of the marriage of the King's son, and the excuses of the invited, with the want of the wedding garment. Then the *Pharisees* sent some to intrap him in his talk, who asking him whether it was lawful to give tribute to *Cæsar*? admired his answer, and left him. On that day the *Saducees* asked him concerning the woman married to seven husbands, whose she should be at the resurrection? to which having answered, and asserted the resurrection, a Lawyer tempted him, asking him which is the greatest Commandment? Having answered him, he asked the *Pharisees* whose son Christ is? and no man could answer him any thing, nor durst thenceforth ask him any more questions. Then speaking of the *Scribes* and *Pharisees*, he pronounced eight woes against them, and upbraiding *Jerusalem* with her cruelty and obstinacy, foreteller her destruction. Sitting over against the treasury, he saw a poor widdow cast in two mites, and going out to his Disciples, who admired the structure, he foretold it's ruine. His Disciples asked him on the Mount of Olives when these things should be, concerning the sign of his coming, and the end of the World, he answered largely, advising them to watch, for they knew not what hour their Lord would come, illustrating his doctrine by the Parable of the Ten Virgins, and the talents committed to the servants to traffick. And he described the last Judgement by a severing of goats from the sheep. By day he taught, at night he went to the Mount of Olives, and all the People came in the morning to hear him in the Temple. When he had ended these sayings, he said to his Disciples, You know that after two dayes is the Feast of the Paschever, and the son of man is betrayed to be crucified. The great ones assembling in the house of *Caiphas* the High-Priest, consulted how to kill him; but they said, not on the Feast-day, lest there be an uprore amongst the People. *Jesus* being in *Bethany* in the house of *Simon the Leper*, a woman poured ointment upon his head, which he defended against his Disciples, foretelling his burial. Then entred Satan into *Judas*, who offered himself, and covenanted for money to betray him.

72. In the Fourth Paschever *Jesus* himself, Our Paschever, was offered, and an end thereby was put to all Sacrifices, which were but types of this. Some think that he did not this time eat the Paschal Lamb, but onely unleavened bread, and bitter herbs, such as were used by those that could not come up to the Sacrifice, being in another Country. For a (a) learned man distinguisheth betwixt *πάσχα* *Πάσχα* and *κυνήγιον*, which later was performed by those that were a far off, in memorial of the thing, it being unlawful to kill the Lamb any where out of *Judea*. Now *Christ* would not sacrifice, because he himself was now to be offered. That he did not do it, appeareth, because as soon as he came into the house he sat down; and this many of the ancient Greek Fathers did believe. These words of *Christ*, with desire I have desired to eat this Paschever with you before I suffer, the same learned man expoundeth as meant, that he hastened to that Supper because the time of his death was at hand, which would take from him the liberty of celebrating the *πάσχα* *Πάσχα*. It being granted that he kept the Paschever a day before the Jews observed it, (b) another contendeth that *Christ* kept it on the true day, and that the Jews receding from the Law, put it off till the following day, or the 15 of the moneth *Nisan*, being the Sabbath,

The Fourth Paschever wherein *Christ* the true Paschever himself was offered.

(a) *Grægius* Annot. in *Matth.* c. 26.

(b) *Possius* de sacre canone dominica Symbolis Disp. 1.

Sabbath, lest they should be debarred of working for two dayes together. But the other opinion is more probable, which holdeth that he anticipated it, being as the true Paschever, to be offered up on the true day of killing the Paschever, which fell out on the day preceding the Sabbath, and not on the Sabbath day. It clearly appeareth in Scripture, what things our Lord did and suffered for unworthy sinners, after he had eaten this Supper, though the order of the former passages concerning his preaching be obscure, and therefore we have more largely described them. Being betrayed by *Judas* into the hands of the *Chief-Priests*, and by them delivered up to *Pilate* the Governour, he being convinced of his innocence and their malice, sought how to deliver him, till they told him, that if he did it he was not *Cæsar's* friend; whereupon fearing to be accused to *Tiberius*, of protecting one who affected the Kingdom, he condemned him, and delivered him to the Soldiers to be crucified. This was about the sixth hour, or a little after noon, at what time a great darknesse arose, for that the Sun was obscured, and continued till the ninth hour, or three of the clock. Then *Christ* to shew the bitterness of his torment cried (yet) with a loud voice, *Eli Eli Lama Sabachani*, and receiving the vinegar, after he had commended his soul into the hands of his Father, gave up the ghost. Thus he who was in the form of God, and counted it no robbery to be equal with God, made himself of no reputation, and suffered death, even the (most ignominious) death of the Crosse for ingrateful men.

The miraculous Eclipse at our Saviour's death,

73. Some think that the darknesse which hapened at our Saviour's Passion, was onely in the Land of *Judea*. But others, finding that the Evangelists mention \* the whole Earth, conclude that this Eclipse was Occumenical or Universal, *Luke* expressly saying, that the Sun it self (the eye of the whole World) was darkened. Some conceived that the Sun was darkened by the interposition of the body of the Moon, whereof (a) *Dionysius the Areopagite* (as he calleth himself) was an eye witness, at what time he and *Apolophanes* the Philosopher being at *Heliopolis*, observed the Moon suddenly to cast her self before the Sun (though it was not the time of conjunction) and again from the ninth hour to the evening, opposing her self to the middle line of the Sun. If so, it was an extraordinary miracle, the Moon being now at the full (as (b) *Augustin* observeth it to have been ever at the Paschever) and consequently at the greatest distance from the Sun, out of which respect others seem to have held, that the Sun was darkened, not by the interposition of that luminary, but the retention of his beams. That the darknesse was universal, appeareth from the records of Heathen Writers, which, as (c) *Orosius* saith, besides the Evangelists, mentioned the greatnesse of the Eclipse. And (d) *Tertullian* writing to *Pagans* saith, You cannot make this wonder suspected, seeing your own Calendars have remarked it, and your selves retain the testimonies thereof in your own registers. Amongst Greek Authors, *Phlegon* (e) *Trallianus* the Freed-man of *Adrian* the Emperour, in his Work of *Olympiads* or Chronicle, which consisted of sixteen Books, clearly spoke of this Eclipse, writing in his thirteenth Book, that in the fourth year of the 202 Olympiad, the greatest Eclipse hapened that ever was known; for, at the sixth hour of the day it was night, so that the Stars were seen in the Heavens.

Recorded by the Heathen.

The testimony of *Josephus* concerning *Christ*.

74. That *Christ* was put to death in the reign of *Tiberius* by *Pontius Pilate* (a) *Cornelius Tacitus* writeth, an Author guilty of Ethnick ignorance, and prejudice. But (b) *Josephus* the noble Jewish Historian giveth him an honourable testimony, writing, that At the same time there was one *Jesus* a wise man, if it be lawful to call him a man. For he was a worker of wonderful works, and a teacher of those which willingly receive the truth. He had also many followers, not onely Jews but Gentiles: and he was believed to be *Christ*. And whereas by the malice of our Princes, *Pilate* condemned him to be crucified, yet notwithstanding they who first loved him have persevered. For he appeared to them alive the third day; the Prophets having foretold in their writings, these, and many other wonderful things concerning him:

H h h h h

him:

A. D. 33.  
Ol. 202. an. 4.  
V. c. 787.

\* ἐν τῇ πᾶσι τῇ γῆ, Mat. 26. 28. τῇ γῆ, Marc. 16. 7. Luc. 23. 44. (a) Epist. 7.

(b) De Civitat. Dei l. 3. c. 15.

(c) Lib. 7. c. 4.

(d) Apologet. c. 21.

(e) A. u. d. Euseb. in Chronico, & in Orig. contra Celsum. l. 2. & in Matth.

(a) Annal. l. 15. c. 44.  
(b) Antiqu. l. 18. c. 4.

him: and to this day the People from him called Christians have not ceased. This he relateth, after he had spoken of that Sedition which hapened because of Pilate his bringing in of Caesar's Images. Some from amongst our selves have not given credit to this relation, thinking it to be foisted in by some Christians, for the greater honour of our Religion. But as the *pie fraudes* supposed to have been used by the *Primitive Christians*, are rather increased than otherwise, by some, who either pedantically, and out of ostentation seek for applause from the prejudice of their own cause (as one hath done of late in reference to the matter in hand) or as out of a melancholick and distrustful humour question the evidence of the truth; so is there no reason that this testimony should be condemned amongst them. For *Josephus* maketh mention of *John Baptist*, giving him large commendations, and relateth also that he was beheaded; though he assigneth the cause to have been but of jealousy of him, and lest he should make some commotions through his popularity, which likely enough might be some cause, especially the malice of *Herodias* considered, which woman would not be wanting to fill his head with suspicion, although the main reason was his reproving of the incest. He also maketh mention of *James* the brother of *Alphaeus*, whom he calleth the brother of *Jesus Christ*, how he was put to death at *Jerusalem*, saying, that all good men were sorely troubled at it, and clearly expresth himself dissatisfied in it, writing, that *Ananus*, who commanded the murder to be done, did ill, and this he saith not onely because the Judicial power was taken away from the *Jews*, as is evident from the course of his words.

Defended to  
be true and  
not feigned by  
Christians.

75. It is hence clear enough, that *Josephus* was not in the number of those whom *Herod Agrippa* could have pleased in the killing of the other *James* the brother of *John*; and truly amongst the *Jews*, such as were not extremely malicious against Christ, were something inclining to him, if yee consider the temper of that People. It cannot therefore be said, that *Josephus* was so inveterately despightful against Christ and Christians, that, as some have thought, he utterly passed over the story of Christ upon that account. This Principle would have induced him to rail rather than to be silent, to bespatter the Christian generation, rather to say nothing, or rather to seem displeased at their sufferings. It's true, he was with the younger *Agrippa*, but almost a Christian, and therefore we rather follow the translation of *Jerome*, which rendereth his words *credebatur esse Christus*, than to take them as *Eusebius* and *Rufinus* have them, and as they are found in the present copies, *ὁ χριστός οὐτως ἔην, Christus hic erat*. But some there were amongst the learned sort of *Jews*, who knew not really what to blame as to Christ, nay they believed in him, onely they desired still to keep the Law, such were their tenaciousness as to it. It's true, they stumbled at the meanness of his outward condition, and expected a *Messiah* to reign at *Jerusalem*. But *Josephus* lived to see *Jerusalem* utterly destroyed, and thereby an occasion for such an advantage taken away; and affliction maketh men more seriously to consider things; so that he might be favourable enough towards Christ himself, though as to the Law he might still be pertinacious, as many of them were. *Eusebius* writeth, that the Verses of *Sibylla* were accounted by some as feigned by the *Ecclesiasticks*, but not a word of this matter.

76. The *Jews* had great expectations of the coming of the *Messiah*, at that very time when the Lord *Jesus* was upon Earth. They knew that the Prophecies of old respected that season: they understood well enough the *weeks of Daniel*, and that the Scepter was departed from *Judah*, when they had no Judiciary power as to life and death left amongst them. This expectation was so great, that it possessed the whole Eastern part of the Empire, though it was understood in the same sense onely, as by the carnal sort of *Jews*, amongst whom how many counterfeits do we read of, which at that time presumed upon it? Hereupon, though Christ came in an humble way, yet his Miracles caused a reverence and esteem of his person, nay they durst not but think well of him as the *Messiah* (*how long dost thou make us in doubt?*) till confounded by the spiritualness of his preaching, offended at his opposition

\* Acts 15.  
Galat. 1. 23.  
4, 5.

Percrebruerat  
Oriente toto ve-  
tus & constans  
opinio, esse in  
fatis, ut eo tem-  
pore Judaea  
profecti rerum  
poterentur.  
Sueton in  
Vespas.

tion

tion of their Traditions, and Pharisaical Tenents (as contrary to their Law, which they thought must necessarily indure for ever) and especially moved (the greatest of them) by their corrupt interets of profit and applause (which made them deny him, though they knew the resurrection, and to sin against their own consciences, and the holy Ghost) they rejected, and put him to death. That saying amongst the *Talmudists*, and ascribed to the house of *Eliam* (whom some will have to be *John Baptist*) is commonly known, viz. that the World should continue 6000 years, whereof 2000 belong to *Tobu* or *Inane* (that is the void space of time betwixt the Creation and the Law) 2000 to the Law, and 2000 to the *Messiah*; that then it should be destroyed. Now as the first division lighteth well, if the *Tobu* be taken as ending at the birth of *Abraham*, the father of the faithfull (or those in Covenant with God) so the second endeth much about the birth of our Saviour (reckoning as to both those accounts the years of the *Patriarchs*, according to the *Hebrew Text*) and pointeth out the time of the *Messiah*. *Suidas* mentioned out of *Theodosius* a noble Jew, that before Christ did rebuke the Scribes, they marvelled at his name, *Ἰωάννης ὁ υἱοῦ θεοῦ, Μαρίαν, Ἰησοῦς ὁ υἱοῦ θεοῦ*, and entered his name, *Ἰωάννης ὁ υἱοῦ θεοῦ, Μαρίαν, Ἰησοῦς ὁ υἱοῦ θεοῦ*, otherwise he being of the Tribe of *Judah* could not have been suffered to preach at *Nazareth* and *Capernaum* as he did.

77. But (that we may improve those things as to *Josephus*) it doth appear, that not onely before Christ gave them offence, and that before he died, some had honourable thoughts of him, but also after his death they accounted him the very *Messiah*, though they would not part with their old way of worship. Their *Talmud*, like to *Auguri* his stable, is full of filth, amongst which but a few Granes of Corn do appear. It was not finished in lesse time then 100 years, being written with this design; to contain all the sayings of their *Elders* which were not expressed in Scripture, and was completed (such a Fardel as it is) about 500 years after Christ. Yet speaking of that place of *Zachariah* (Chap. 12. vers. 10.) And they shall look upon me whom they have pierced, after it hath reprehended a certain exposition of it, addeth, Peace be to him who hath said that these things are to be understood of *Messiah* the son of *Joseph*, who is slain. There is nothing in the whole *Talmud* more worthy of observation. For so we have him whom both the blessed Virgin her self, and *Nathaniel* calleth the son of *Joseph*, and whom the *Jews* put to death, to be the true *Messiah*, and to have been born about the 4000 year of the World.

\* 2. bylania.

Cap. 5. fol. 52.  
Videsis Ja-  
cobum Cappel-  
lum, in Hist.  
sacra & exotic.  
ad A.M. 3670.

Testimonies  
from the Hea-  
shen.

The Oracles  
silenced.

78. There are not wanting Testimonies concerning the truth of Christ, and his Doctrine from the *Heathen*. *Rhodiginus* and *Volateran* deliver it as a matter of credit, that there was an Altar in *Egypt* Dedicated unto a Virgin that should bring forth a Child, and *Pollux*, that there was another intituled *Primogenito Dei*, to the first begotten of God. Upon the Scar which appeared at his birth (which some think the same mentioned by *Pliny*, and called *Stella crinita sine crine*) many meditating turned to the truth, as *Charemon* amongst the *Stoicks*, and *Challadius* amongst the *Platonists*, who thereupon went into *Judea*, and became *Jews*. It is also reported that the *Romans* called their Temple which they had built to *Bacchus* for victory, *Templum pacis aeternum*, the everlasting Temple of peace, because the Oracle at *Delfi* told them it should stand dum peperit virgo, till a Virgin brought forth a Child; but as soon as Christ was born it fell. The Oracles generally fell in the reign of *Tiberius*, when the time of Christ his preaching was come, who was the eternal word of his Father. *Plutarch* of this subject wrote a Tract, searching much as a Philosopher what the cause of this strange change should be. After his acute search after sundry causes; and accurate Philosophical disputes, he refers it partly to the absence of the *Demoniacal spirits*, which he thinks might die, or remove from place to place, either banished by others more potent, or upon some other dislike; and partly unto the alteration of the soil wherein Oracles were seated, which yielded nor exhalations of such Divine temper as in former times it had done; for, with-

Lib. de defectu  
Oraculorum.

H h h h 2

out

out a certain temperature of exhalations, or breathing of the earth; he thought that spirits could not give their Oracles, more than a Musician can play without an Instrument. Accordingly he expected, that Oracles should either come in use again in Greece, or else burst out in some convenient soil. But where have they thus burst out? Christianity chased them away wherever it came, and put those spirits to silence, which were afraid of the Christians in the primitive times, so, as those holy men could make them confess they were Devils, and chase them out of such bodies as they had possessed, for the truth whereof *Tertullian* in his *Apology* appealeth to the consciences of the heathen themselves, and therefore he would not in so publick a defence produce an untruth which must have been notoriously known. Therefore the silence of the Oracles was not from any of those causes (which to one that hath opportunity are in themselves easie to be confuted); the truth was, the time was come wherein the strong mans house was to be entered, his goods spoiled, and himself bound; now the Prince of this world was to be cast out: Satan fell like lightning from Heaven upon the approach of that true light which lighteth every man that cometh into the world.

79. That notable story which *Plutarch* bringeth for confirmation of his opinion, concerning the Mortality of those *Dæmoniack* spirits, maketh exceeding much for our purpose; if we consider the time thereof. *Thamuis* the Egyptian Master, as he sayeth, was requested by an uncouth voice uttered three times from land, to proclaim the news of *Great Pan's* death, as he passed by *Palodes*. *Thamuis*, whose name was unknown to his Passengers, till he answered to it at the third call, was resolved to have let all passe as a fancy or idle meslage, if the wind and tide should grant him passage by the place appointed: but, the wind failing him on a sudden, at his coming thither, he thought it but a little losse of breath to cry out aloud unto the shoar, as he had been requested, *Great Pan is dead*. The words, as *Plutarch* relateth, were scarce out of his mouth, before they were answered with a huge noise, as it had been of a multitude, sighing and groaning at this wonderment. Now, if these spirits had been by nature mortal, as the Philosopher thought they were, the death of their Chief Captain could not have seemed so strange: but that a far greater than the greatest of them, by whose power the first of them had his being, should die to redeem his Enemies from their thralldom, might well seem a matter of astonishment, and deep sorrow unto them. The circumstance of the time will not permit us to doubt, but that under the known name of *Pan* was intimated the great shepherd of our Souls, who had then laid down his life for his flock; not the feigned son of *Mercury* and *Penelope*, as the *Wise-men* foolishly resolved *Tiberius*, who having had the truth of the story confirmed to him by ear-witnesses, called a convocation of wise-men to resolve him who this great *Pan* lately deceased should be. The Scriptures set forth unto us the true cause, why both the wild goatish *Pan*, and all the rest of that Hellish crew should at that time howl and mourn, seeing by our great shepherds death they were become *Dead in Law*; no more to breath in Oracles, but quite to be deprived of all such strange motions as they had seduced the ignorant World with before. All the Antick tricks of *Fænnus*, the *Satyrs*, and such like Creatures were now put down; God had resolved to make a translation of his Church; and for this cause the Devils were forced to dissolve their old Chapels; and seek a new form of their Liturgy or Service. These passages are pregnant enough, though we allege not what *Nicephorus* reporteth, that the Oracle at *Delphi* (perhaps not just then extinct) said that this *Pan* was *Παῖς Ἑβραῖος*; an Hebrew Child; and though we omit what *Suidas* writeth, that *Augustus* sending to *Pythia* to inquire who should succeed him, had answer, that an Hebrew Child, Lord of the Gods, had commanded him to be gone down again to Hell, and therefore he must no more enquire there. Whereupon *Augustus* erected an Altar in the Capitol *Primogenito Dei*, To the first born of God.

80. But amongst other testimonies of the Heathen concerning Christ, that of

The Testimonies of the Sibylls.

of the Sibyll's must not be omitted. These women were indued with extraordinary gifts of Prophecy, as certain previous pledges, that the Gentiles should also drink of the true heavenly, and eternal Fountain. Like to those was *Balaam* the *Midianite*, an Idolater, yet called a Prophet by the Scriptures, who amongst other things foretold that a Star should rise out of *Jacob*, and a Scepter from *Israel*. There were many of these Sibyll's as we have already shewn, and several of them Prophecies of Christ. Their sayings were made much use of by such ancient Christians as had to do with Pagans, and Heathen Philosophers. (a) *Iustin Martyr* telleth such, that the old, and very ancient Sibylla, of which *Plato*, *Aristophanes*, and others have made mention, spake of one God, and against Idolaters, as also of the coming of our Saviour *Jesus Christ*, plainly, and manifestly, and of his works. (b) *Clemens* also writeth of *Hydaspes* an ancient King of the *Medes*, who clearly foretold that the son of God should come. Concerning the Verses of *Sibylla Erythraea* many have written, and many of them are produced by *Eusebius* in the *Oratio* (c) of *Constantine* to the Clergy, the *Acrosticks* whereof make up these words. \* *Ἰησοῦς Χριστὸς θεὸς, &c.* *Jesus Christus Dei Filius, servator, crucis,* and foretelt the last Judgement and Authority of Christ. There are others also cited by (d) *Lactantius*, which speak of Christ his coming into unjust hands, his being stricken on the head, and wearing a Crown of Thorns; the giving of him *Vinegar*, the renting of the veil of the Temple, and his being dead three dayes. Now some were of opinion of old, that these were feigned by Christians, as appeareth by what *Constantine* (or *Eusebius* for him) subjoyneth. But there are many that give no credence, such he, *thereunto*, although they confesse that *Sibylla Erythraea* was a Prophetesse: yea, they suspect that some of our religion not ignorant in Poetry, made these Verses, and that they are falsly ascribed, and reckoned among the Oracles of *Sibylla*: seeing they contain very profitable sentences, both to restrain the licentiousness of immoderate pleasure, and so perswade to a modest continency of life. But the truth of this matter doth manifestly appear, for our men have with great study so accurately compared the times, that none can suspect that this Poem was made, and came forth after Christ's coming, and therefore they are convinced of falshood, who blaze abroad that these Verses were not made by this *Sibylla*. For it is manifest that *Cicero*, having read this Poem, did translate it into Latine, and joyned it to his works, who was afterward put to death by the Triumvir *Antonius*, and *Antonius* was overcome by *Augustus*, who reigned six and fifty years: *Tiberius* succeeded *Augustus*, in whose reign our Saviour came into the World, and the mystery of religion began to flourish, and the people were changed. Of which I suppose the chief of the Italian Poets hath thus sung.

Constantine confuteeth such as accounted them forged.

81. He meaneth *Virgil*, whose Poem he reciteth concerning the Golden dayes foretold by *Sibylla Cumæa* (by which name the Romans called all the Sibylls, because of the old *Cumana* or *Cumæa*, whose Verses were burnt in the Capitol, in the 871 year of the Citie, and were supplied by other fetcht from *Erythraea*, and elsewhere) as also concerning a Child that was to be born. He ascribeth to this Child such Divine things, as none can doubt, but that he must be above a man, whom *Sibylla* described by such expressions. Now that such Verses could be feigned by Christians none can affirm, but the grossly ignorant, who know not that *Virgil* died several years (*viz.* 18) before Christ was born. Neither can it be thought he feigned it on his own head, although we cannot say with *Constantine* or *Eusebius*, that he did thus mystically involve, and cover the truth, lest the Emperours should be offended with him for writing that which was contrary to their Laws, and Statutes established, concerning their Gods; or that we do believe that he foresaw the happy and glorious mystery of our Saviours coming: but that he might avoid their cruelty, and speak his audience in the accustomed manner. Some of late also have rejected the Poems ascribed to these women as feigned by Christians, because they seem to speak more plainly of Christ, than the true Prophets do, and exhibit rather an history of Christ already come, than a Prophecy of his coming.

(a) *In Parenet. p. 16, &c. ad 37. vide.*

(b) *Strom. l. 6.*

(c) *Cap. 18.*

(d) *L. 14. c. 18.*

*Ecol. 4.*



Some of late  
have also  
questioned  
them.

coming. They think it contrary to the Word of God, to think that these profound mysteries should be more clearly propounded to the *Gentiles* than to the *Jews*. This also much moveth them (for we will confesse the utmost) that they perceive many of the antients in the most primitive times, to have counted it the choicest work they could perform, to help the heavenly truth by their fictions, whereby the new doctrine might more easily be admitted by the *Pagan* wife men. And as they cannot but most grievously reprehend this thing, so nor sufficiently can they admire the judgment of those *Fathers*, who with such facility received these writings, and as doubt not to produce testimonies from them, to underprop the heavenly truth.

82. But it is answered by way of utter denial, that there were many in the Primitive times, who sought to establish the truth by fictions and lyes, and by challenge made for them to produce any one lye or fiction made or used by the most antient *Fathers*, though for a good end. Certainly they which in their disputations with the *Pagans*, appeal to the testimony of the *Sibylls*, deserve great commendations for their prudence. And hence may it be proved, that those testimonies were not forged, because they in all conflicts more willingly had recourse to them than to any other. For, can we imagine them fools, with whom these *Fathers* had to do? They were as cunning and knowing as the best; they were *Philosophers, Rhetors, Professors of Arts, States-men*, and most commonly such as enjoyed the greatest honours. Where is it objected by any of these in the most Primitive times, that these testimonies were feigned by Christians? This answer would have been easie and ready; and such as would instantly have stopped the mouths of Primitive Saints. But the wisest and bitterest of the Enemies of Christians, do not make any such reply, in the most antient times, knowing well enough these Oracles, to which the *Romans* had ever recourse, and which were known sufficiently to the whole World, through which it ran for current, that in the Books of the *Sibylls* was held forth, that one should reign who came out of the East. The clearness of these testimonies concerning Christ, can make nothing against them; for *Esa* spake not more evidently of Christ than *Balaam*, who said, that a *Star* should rise out of *Jacob*. Who dare prescribe to God a manner of prophesying? as if it were not free to him to speak plainly or obscurely to Jew or *Gentile*, or as if there were not in the Scripture most clear predictions concerning Christ. But grant that the *Sibylline Oracles* are clearer. Ought not those things which are predicted to the *Gentiles* concerning Christ to be clearer, because they wanted *Moses*, and the rest of that learning, which should direct them unto him, that what here was wanting might be supplied by the perspicuity of these Oracles? Although we ought not to judge of these Oracles, by that light which at present appeareth. For what things are most evident to us after the accomplishment, were most obscure when they were predicted. If any one had feigned them, he would have made them industriously more obscure, that they might seem written before the things were done, and like to those Prophecies which are contained in the Scriptures. These Heathen Prophets spake some times clearly, according to the intention of God, who overruled them; but often abruptly. It's thought they prophesied as of old *Balaam's* Ass spake, and not otherwise did *Hydaspes* and the *Sibylls* speak clearly of the coming of Christ, the Holy Spirit moving them, and governing their tongues. It appeareth (a) from *Justin Martyr* that it was forbidden upon pain of death to read *Hydaspes, Sibylla* or the *Prophets*, lest the People should attain to the knowledge of good things. To these (b) *Clemens* bringeth in *St. Paul* himself referring the *Greeks*: Take ye also the *Greek Book*, acknowledge *Sibylla* that she manifested one God, and things to come. Take ye also *Hydaspes*, read him; and you shall find the Son of God more clearly and openly described.

83. To omit what might be (and by others hath been) produced out of \*Heathen Writers concerning the blessed Trinity (for we may easily admit, that God, who was ever the God of the whole World, and designed to do the *Gentiles* good also in the knowledge of himself, might give to them such

(a) In Apolog.  
2. p. 82. totius  
operis.  
(b) Strom. l. 6.

\* Vide August.  
de Civit. Dei.  
l. 10. c. 23.  
Et Iud. vivum  
in Locum.  
Tertul. Apol-  
log. c. 21.

Pilate made  
report unto  
Tiberius of the  
Person and  
Works of  
Christ.

hints of the truth, as afterwards might be improved for their welfare) we shall come to the last testimony concerning Christ, and that such an one, as will reduce us to the course of our design. After that Christ was risen from the dead, and had sent his Disciples about to preach and work miracles for the conversion of the World, Pilate who then governed in Judea, reported his Passion and Resurrection to Tiberius and the Senate, with the miracles done by him, or by them in his name, and how the multitude of believers daily increasing, he was accounted a God. Tiberius hereupon reported the matter to the Senate, with his favourable suffrage, that Christ might be accounted a God. But the Senate because they were displeased that they had not first moved it, refused to canonize him, and by an Edict commanded that Christians should be banished the City; especially by reason that *Sejanus* the great minister of State most obstinately contradicted this Religion. But Tiberius by another Edict threatened death to the accusers of Christians. These things thus related by (a) *Orosius*, are also witnessed by (b) *Eusebius, Tertullian*, (a) Lib. 7. c. 4. and *Justin Martyr*, whereof the testimonies of the two later are incontrollable; for in their Apologies they durst not mention such things, and cite such testimonies as they must needs know would be easily confuted.

84. (a) *Tertullian* writeth, that Tiberius referred it to the Senate, with the prerogative of his own suffrage, but they having not approved the thing, refused it. Caesar notwithstanding remained firm in his resolution, and threatened such as should accuse the Christians. This he openly asserteth in his Apology to the *Pagans*, writing also in another (b) place of the same excellent Work, that Pilate, who in his heart believed in Christ, at the same time wrote all the History of him to the Emperor Tiberius, whereupon the Caesar's themselves had worshipped our Master, if their Government in so doing had been consistent with the men of this World, and Christians permitted to have been saluted as a God. There was an ancient Law that forbade introducing new ceremonies into Religion, as worshipping strange Deities, unless approved by the Senate; and this was an unviolable and unalterable Law, to which the Prince himself was subject. He instanceth, that *Marcus Emilius* would have had divine honours rendered to his Idol, called the god *Albarnus*, but could not obtain it. As for *Justin Martyr*, he maketh it more evident, telling plainly the *Pagans* in his second Apology, that they may know these things thus to have been, in the Acts which were written under Pontius Pilate, and again, that they might know, that Christ wrought such miracles, from the Acts (or Acts) made under Pontius Pilate. Now the word *Acta* signifieth sometimes the Journal Book of the Senate, then called *Acta Senatus*, and otherwhiles the Records of the People, or of the Publick, then named *Acta Publica, Diurna*, and *Urbana*. In the former sort was contained whatsoever was done or said by the *Fathers*. In the later things concerning the People, as Publick Judgments, punishments, Assemblies, buildings, nativities, the death of eminent persons, marriages, and divorces. These afforded matter for Historians to digest and adorn. Now *Justin Martyr* either meaneth those *Acta Publica*, wherein might be recorded what notable things hapned in the Provinces; or under the administration of the several *Deputies* or Governors: or rather those *Acta* which Pilate himself composed in his Province. For we cannot but imagine, that care would be taken for the recording of things memorable, as well in other places as in the City itself. The Provinces had their *Subsensors* and their Tables. And the *Presidents* and *Deputies* not onely certified by letters occasionally what happened, but, as we may easily apprehend, did refer in *Acta* all memorable things; which were sent to Rome, and there, it's probable, either transcribed into, or laid up with, the *Acta Publica*. But, thus much of the testimonies of Jews and Heathens concerning Christ.

85. The Lord Jesus having risen the third day from the dead, and after his resurrection given commission and instructions to his Disciples, whom he ordained his Ambassadors to the whole World; forty dayes after he arose, ascended

De Actis cons-  
ulatus omnia  
Tirones Justin  
L'istum in  
Comment. ad  
Taciti Annal.  
lib. 5.

(b) Cap. 21.

(a) Apolog.  
c. 5.

The Ascension of Christ. ascended into Heaven, and sent down the Holy Ghost upon his Disciples, according to his promise, for the furnishing of them to the Work, ten dayes after his ascension. Many being converted to the Faith, the Church increased, and living in Love and Unity together, they had all things common, none calling any thing his own which he possessed. About the end of the year, as is rationally compared, the *Greeks* or *Hellenists* (*Jews* which living out of *Judea* spake *Greek* in a peculiar dialect, which is called *Hellenistick*, and used the Scriptures in their Synagogues in that language) murmured against the *Hebrews* (or those who both read and spake *Hebrew*) for that their widows were neglected in the daily ministrations. Hereupon the Apostles committed it to the number of the faithful, to chuse seven men who should take care of what was gathered for the poor, and these *Ecclesiastical Writers* call *Deacons*. About this time *James* the Apostle the son of *Alphaeus* (who is also called the brother of the Lord, and was surnamed *Just*) was created the first Bishop of *Jerusalem*. For thus *Clemens* wrote in the sixth Book of his *Hypotyposicon*, as he is cited by *Eusebius*, Peter, and James, and John, though they were preferred, after the ascension of the Lord, contended not amongst themselves for glory and honour; but with one consent appointed James the Just Bishop of *Jerusalem*. The same *Clemens* in his first Book, distinguished thus concerning the two which bore the name of James. There were two James, the one termed Just, who was thrown down headlong from the pinnacle, and brained with a Fullers club, the other beheaded. Of him that was called Just, Paul made mention, saying: I saw none of the Apostles save James the brother of the Lord. In the year following Christ's resurrection, a great persecution was raised by the Jews against the Church; wherein Stephen one of the seven Deacons and the Protomartyr was stoned to death, by the procurement especially of Saul a Jew of Tarsus in Cilicia. But in this same year as this Saul was journeying to Damascus to make havock of the Church, he was converted, and called to the Apostleship; after which he went from Damascus into Arabia, as he himself testifieth in his Epistle to the Galatians. Eusebius in his *Chronicon* placeth the conversion of Saul (afterwards called Paul) in the nineteenth year of Tiberius.

The seven Deacons made.

James the first Bishop of Jerusalem.

Saul converted. Pilate making a slaughter of the Samaritans.

Is sent to Rome to give an account of it.

The Jews banished Rome.

86. About this time it happened, that a certain man who sought by all means the favour of the multitude, drew the Samaritans to Mount Gerizim (which they accounted holy above all other mountains) promising to shew them there the holy Vessels buried in a certain place by Moses. Many had gathered themselves to the foot of the hill, where staying for more company that they might ascend all together, Pilate prevented them, and killing some, took many, dispersed the rest, and put to death the chief of those he had taken. Hereof the Senate of Samaria complained to Vitellius President of Syria, who sent Marcellus his friend to take charge of Judea, and commanded Pilate to go to Rome, there to answer before Caesar what should be laid to his charge. Hereupon he departed, after he had governed Judea ten years, but ere he reached Rome, Tiberius was dead. About the same time that these things hapned in Samaria, the Jews were banished Rome by the Emperor upon this occasion. A certain Jew flying his native Country for breaking of the Laws, came to the City, where he professed himself an expounder of them, and drew to him two or three no lesse reprobate than himself. They made a Proselyte Fulvia the wife of Saturninus an honourable person, and persuading her to send some Purple and Gold to the Temple of Jerusalem, converted it to their own use. Saturninus complaining of this to Tiberius, he thereupon commanded all Jews to depart Rome. Of these the Consuls chose out and listed 4000 men, whom they sent into Sardinia, and punished many that refused to bear arms, upon no other account, than because they would not transgress the Ordinances of their Country.

87. About two years after the death of Christ, died Philip the Tetrarch, son to Herod the Great, a man of a modest and quiet disposition, whose Principality, for that he died without issue, Tiberius laid unto the Province of Syria. By this time Ariabannus King of Parthia prospering against his neighbours,

A. D. 33.  
Ol. 203. an. 1.  
V. C. 787.

Joseph. Antiq.  
l. 18. c. 5.

Idem ibid. &  
cap. 6.

The Parthian King revileth and dispirits Tiberius.

neighbours was much puffed up, and despising the old age of Tiberius, when his son Ariamnes was dead made his other son Arsaces King of Armenia, his head. He also reviled Tiberius by Letters, objecting parricide, murders, laziness, and luxury to him, and willed him by a voluntary death to satisfy the most just hatred of his subjects, as soon as possible. But many Noble men of Parthia, to escape his cruelty came to Rome, and desired a King from Tiberius, who thereupon gladly named Phraates the son of Phraates that had been of a long time Hostage at Rome, and he dying in Syria, he commended to them Tiridates. Mithridates brother to Phraates King of the Hiberi was also ordered to get Armenia, who breaking into it joyned the Albanians to him, and procured the death of Arsaces; for the Parthians were easily overthrown, being discouraged by a false rumour of the death of Orodes their Caprain, another of Ariabannus his sons. Ariabannus having before this attempted Cappadocia, sent also to demand the Treasure which Vonones had left in Syria and Cilicia, and that had been seized by Tiberius, who with great perfidiousness killed the owner at Antioch; and he further demanded the ancient Borders of the Persians and Macedonians, bragging that he would invade whatsoever had been possessed by Cyrus and Alexander. But Vitellius the President of Syria having drawn many of his subjects from their trust, his mind so changed, that he fled away cowardly with a few to the confines of Scythia. Vitellius taking the opportunity carried Tiridates into the Kingdom, but he by delaying to seize on the chiefest places, and hastening his Coronation, gave occasion to some of the great ones again to fly unto Ariabannus, who coming on, the other fled as fast back into Syria; so that he recovered his Kingdom, with Armenia, and resolved to set upon Syria.

Caiphas deposed.

Tiberius dieth.

88. Tiberius hereupon wrote to Vitellius to make a peace with him. Vitellius about this time was come to Jerusalem after the expulsion of Pilate, where he celebrated the Passover, remitted to the Citizens the Impost upon such fruits as were sold, and deposed Joseph, surnamed Caiphas, from the High-Priesthood, to which he promoted Jonathan the son of Anna. He met with Ariabannus upon a bridge built over the River Euphrates, where they concluded a peace, and afterwards they were feasted by Herod the Tetrarch. Darius the son of Ariabannus was sent an Hostage to Rome with many presents. But Tiberius died before, (March 16) having since the death of Sejanus cruelly raged against many, and lived disolately from his retirement to the Island Caprea, whence he never returned to the Citie, though he was twice on his way. The people ran up and down, overcome with joy upon the report of his death. Some would have had his body cast into Tiber, and others prayed that no other place might be assigned him now dead than amongst the wicked. He reigned 22 years, seven moneths, and odd dayes, and died in the 78th year of his age, and the 790 of the Citie, Cn. Acerronius Præcælus, and C. Pantius Nigrinus being Consuls.

Tacitus Annal.  
l. 6. c. 31.

Sueton in Tiberio c. 60.

\* Idem in Tib.  
c. 49.

Tacitus ut supra cap. 41.  
Dio l. 59.

Josephus Antiq.  
lib. 18.  
cap. 6.

Sueton ut supra cap. 73.  
&c.  
Tacitus Annal.  
l. 6. c. 50.

A. D. 38.  
Oliac. ann. 1.  
V. C. 790.

## CHAP. II.

From the death of Tiberius to that of Nero, the last Emperour of Caesar's family, containing the space of 20 years.

1. TIBERIUS left behind him a Grand-son of his own name by his son Drusus, yet he preferred before him Caius the son of Germanicus, either for some reason fetcht (a) from Astrology to which he was much given, or through the means (b) of Macro his Freed-man, and greatest favourite, who being a loose and vile person, Caius insinuated himself into his favour by the procurement of his wife. With her Caius was wantonly familiar,

(a) Josephus Antiq. l. 18. c. 8.

(b) Sueton in Caligula c. 12. Tacitus Annal. l. 6. c. 50.

liiii

liar, and promised her marriage by an Oath, and under his hand, if he could compass the Empire, wherewith *Macro* was well pleased, if so be he could but therewith purchase greater preferment. 'Tis reported that he helped his Master forward by stifling him in the bed-cloths. Others have thought (c) that a slow-working poyson was given him by *Caius*; some that meat was denied him, & others that when he demanded his Ring which they had pulled off from his finger, they choked him with the Pillow. However it came to passe, *Caius* succeeded him, and some (d) judged him willing that so it should be, because he knew he would prove a very bad man, and hoped that thereby the faults of his own reign might be something covered. He was received with great applause by all men. By the Army, for that he had been brought up continually amongst them. Some say he was born in the Camp; 'tis certain that the surname of *Caligula* he had for that reason, because he was wont (f) to wear that habit of the ordinary Soldiers. By the people he was gladly entertained out of their affection to *Germanicus*, and commiseration of his family so grossly used by *Tiberius*, whose cruelty he escaped meely by his great dissimulation, and taking in good part every thing; so as it was said truly of him, that *never was there a better servant, nor a worse Master than Caligula*.

(c) *Sueton ut prius.*

(d) *Xiphilinus ex Dion.*

(e) *Josaphus ut supia.*

(f) *Sueton ut prius.*

Preferreth *Agrippa*.

2. *Caius*, within a few dayes after the sumptuous funeral of *Tiberius*, made *Agrippa* King of that Countrey whereof *Philip* had been *Tetrarch*. This *Agrippa* was the Grand-son of *Herod* the Great by his son *Aristobulus* whom he put to death, being begotten of *Berenice* the daughter of *Salome*. Having run through many Straights for want of money by reason of his great profuseness, he became at length very dear to *Caius*, who restored him to liberty (being imprisoned by *Tiberius* for wishing his death, that *Caligula* might succeed him) and then set the Diadem on his head. He had a sister named *Herodias*, married to *Philip Herodes* (not *Philip* the *Tetrarch*) his, and her Uncle, and brother to *Philip Antipas* on the father's side, his mother being daughter to *Simon* the High-Priest. This woman *Herod Antipas* was so taken with, that though he had already to wife the daughter of *Aretas* King of *Arabia Petraea*, yet he divorced this, and married her, upon which account *Aretas* made War upon him, and defeated his forces, which was taken by the people as a judgement of God upon him for putting to death *John Baptist*. Now *Herodias* envying exceedingly the promotion of her brother *Agrippa*, importuned her husband to go to *Rome* and beg, or buy the title of King. *Agrippa* smelling out their design beforehand, wrote to *Caius*, and accused him of having heretofore been of *Seianus* his conspiracy, and of favouring at present the party of *Artabanus* King of *Parthia*, whereof he said his Magazines could testify, being furnished with Provisions for 70000 men of War. This furniture he could not deny, and therefore *Caius* banished him to *Lugdunum* (now *Lyons*) in *Gall* (whither *Herodias* would needs accompany him) and gave his Principality and estate unto *Agrippa*. Thus were these two punished for the death of *John Baptist*; and so was *Pilate* for that of *Christ*. For, being also banished by *Caius* to *Vienna*, two years after he killed himself (whereof the *Gracians* are witnesses, saith *Eusebius*, who commit to memory in their Histories the *Olympiads* of times) and so became the revenger of his wickedness upon himself, as he who betrayed *Christ* into his hands had been before.

\* *Idem ibid. cap. 7.*

*Idem ibid. cap. 9.*

*Euseb. Eccles. Hist. l. 3. c. 7. & Orosius l. 7. c. 5.*

*Sueton in Calig. Capp. 15. 16. 17. &c. Josaphus Antiq. lib. 18. cap. 9.*

*Herod Antipas* banished to *Lyons*.

*Pilate* killed himself.

*Caligula* beguined well.

3. Though the disposition of *Caligula* was from his Childhood tending to intemperance and cruelty, yet at his first coming to the Government he used much moderation and equity, as well towards publick as private persons. He would not hear any accusations, though said to be for his own safety, permitted free and antient Jurisdiction to Magistrates, attempted to bring in again the *Comitia*, and restore the privilege of suffrages to the people, payed the Legacies given by *Tiberius*, though his will was nulled, and those given by *Livia* also; though her son would never discharge them: he remitted part of the Taxes to *Italy*, relieved the necessities of such as received losses by fire, and to such Kings as he restored, he gave the Tributes collected in their absence.

But turneth a Monster of men.

sence: At first he appeared a great Patron of virtue, but degenerated into a Monster, so that as far as a man could go in luxury and cruelty he seemed to proceed, which made *Seneca* say, that nature seemed to have brought him forth to shew what the greatest viciousness backed with the greatest power could be able to do. We may be more favourable to this opinion, if we consider that the greatness of his estate made him so far surpass the limits of all modesty, as challenging to himself the title of Divinity, he governed all things in contempt of God.

4. He thought at first to have taken a Diadem, and changed his Principality into a Kingdom, till by his flatterers he was told, that he was above all such titles. At length he began to take to himself Divine honour. For he caused the images of their Gods to be brought to *Rome*, whereof the heads being taken off, the image of his own was placed upon each in their stead. He would offer himself to be adored amongst his brother gods as he called them, and ordained Temples and Priests with sacrifice of no commoner things than Peacocks, Turkeys, and Pheasants, which were to be offered every day; and he invited the Moon to his embraces. He could not endure to be accounted the off-spring of *Agrippa*, because of his ignobility; but gave out that his mother was conceived of the incest of *Augustus* with his daughter *Julia*. He himself committed incest with all his sisters, and spared not the chastity of either Sex. So imperious he was, that he would make persons of greatest rank run by his Chariot, and stand girt with Towels when he was at meat. So cruel, that he killed his Grand-mother *Anonia* by unkindness, he murdered his brother *Tiberius*, though he had adopted him, with all his kindred except his Uncle *Claudius*, whom he preserved for a laughing stock; and he forced *Macro* and *Ennia* to kill themselves. As for others, he made havock of them, causing some to be knocked in the head with Clubs, if he were but disturbed in the shows. He would cast old men, or infirm, to wild beasts, and shutting up the Barns and Store-houses proclaimed a famine. Many of quality being first stigmatized he condemned to the Mines, or to repairing of High-ways; shut them up like beasts in a Den, or fawed them asunder; and that for no greater matters than if they had not high thoughts of his gifts and shews, or had not sworn by his Genius.

His Vices.

5. He forced Parents to be present at the death of their Children. To one that excused himself by sickness, he sent a Litter to carry him. A certain Knight whom he cast to wild beasts, crying out that he was innocent, he caused to be taken out, and his tongue to be cut out of his head, after this to be cast in again. Demanding of one whom he had recalled out of banishment what he did all that time? upon answer that he prayed for the death of *Tiberius*, and that he might succeed him, supposing that all whom he had banished prayed also for his death, he gave command that they should all be killed. He would suffer none to be put to death but by degrees, that so as he said they might feel themselves die. He sorely afflicted the order of *Knights*, and being incensed against the multitude for favouring a party against him, he wished that the People of *Rome* had but one neck. He was wont openly to complain of the condition of his time, because not signalized by any publick calamity, and how by the serenity thereof he should be buried in oblivion (his being herein contrary to the disposition of *Phalaris*) in so much as he would wish for some overthrow of the Armies, some Famine, Pestilence, Fire, or Earth-quake. He purposed utterly to destroy the works of *Pyrrus* and *Livy*, and take away the Law. He took away honour from families, and when he met with any beautiful person made them as deformed as he could. He was so prodigal that he would drink most precious Pearls dissolved in Vinegar, and invent all sorts of delicacies, by which course he spent infinite sums in the space of three years, which *Tiberius* had hoarded up; and to recruit his Coffers raised unheard-of Tributes. Amongst other means for increasing his revenue he set up stews in his Palace, and some were sent about to invite all sorts of men to them, such as came being commended for increasing *Cesar's* revenues. He purposed to depart to *Antium*

\* *De Consul. ad Albinum cap. 9.*

*Sueton ut supra cap. 22. &c.*

*Idem ibid. cap. 27, 28. &c.*

and thence to *Alexandria*, but first to kill all the chief both of the *Senatorial* and *Equestrian* rank; and answerably hereunto were there found after his death two Books, whereof the title of one was *Gladius*, or *Sword*; and the other *Pugio*, or *Dagger*, wherein were written the names of such as he intended to murder. A great chest also was found full of divers poisons, which being by *Claudius* his appointment cast into the Sea, the water is reported to have been so infected, that the fish was therewith killed, and was cast up by the tide upon the shoar. These things are reported by *Suetonius*, concerning which Author yet it is observed by some, that he wrote the lives of the Emperours with as great liberty as they lived them.

He is slain by  
Cassius Chereas  
the Captain of  
his Guard.

6. Many desired to have an hand in removing him, yet durst not attempt any thing. But *Cassius Chereas* the Captain of his Guard being grievously affronted by him (for ever when *Cains* gave him the watch-word, it should be some effeminate or obscene name, and he continually charged him with cowardize) fully resolved to kill him, and broke the business to others, whom he thought to have the same desire with himself. They killed him as he returned from the games of the Palace to refresh himself, *Chereas* giving him the first wound. His guard of *Germans* (which loved him exceedingly, because of the profit they reaped from the execution of his cruel commands) in a great rage killed all they could meet in the Palace, and with much ado were kept from putting thousands to death, that were now assembled in the theatre. Nay the common People allured by his shows and largesses, endeavoured to find out the authors of his death, to whom *Valerius Asiaticus* (who had been *Consul*) coming forth whilst they were in an uproar, and every one inquired who had done the deed, O, said he, *I wish I had done it*. Being once advised to beware of a *Cassius*, he suspected *Cassius Longinus* the *Proconsul* of *Asia* (of the same family with *Cassius* one of the murderers of *Julius Caesar*) and sending for him, put him to death, never thinking that *Chereas* had also that name. Having reigned three years and ten months with eight dayes, and lived 29, he thus died, on the ninth before the *Calends* of *February*, in the 794 year of the City, and the 42 after the birth of *Christ*, hee himself the fourth time, and *C. Sexsius Saturninus* being *Consul*.

Josephus Antiq.  
l. 19. c. 1.

A. D. 42.  
Ol. 205. an. 1.  
V. C. 794.

7. The Senate now, as *Josephus* telleth us, thought of resuming the ancient form of Government, though it was utterly impracticable, *Saturninus* the *Consul* especially sticking for it. But the Soldiers rightly judging, that such an Empire could not be ruled in a *Popular* way, and especially looking at their own advantage, resolved the contrary. *Tiberius Claudius Drusus*, brother to *Germanicus Caesar*, and son to *Drusus* (by *Antonia* the younger, the daughter of *Antony* the *Triumvir* and of *Octavia* the sister of *Augustus*) was yet living. Him they judging most fit to succeed his Nephew, pulled him out of an hole where he had hid himself to save his life, and straight-way declared him *Emperor*. He was at first discouraged by the messages of the Senate, but again took heart, at the counsel and directions of King *Agrippa*, so that the Senators despairing of successe, gave over their enterprize, but not without (some of them) seeking the Sovereignty for themselves, which would have produced as great slaughters and desolations as ever, had any of them obtained liberty to prosecute their desires. The People were for *Claudius* his preferment, envying the Senate it's ancient power, and making account by the Sovereignty of one to be sheltered from it's avarice. Hereby also they thought to avoid such Civil Wars as fell out amongst the great ones in the time of *Pompey*. The wiser sort knew that it was impossible the Commonwealth should subsist but under Monarchy: some onethy were sure would establish himself, and that through desolations, confusions, and slaughters, they must come to it at last. Self-preservation therefore and publick interest easily led them to the next heir, who by his birth could challenge an interest. For hereditary Monarchies, by preserving due reverence, excluding emulations and contests amongst equals, by preventing numerous pretensions, and the extravagant grandeur of divers families, can onely secure the Peace and prosperity of their Subjects.

Claudius his  
Uncle suc-  
ceedeth him.

Vide Joseph.  
Antiq. l. 19. c. 2.  
& 3. l. 1.  
Sueton in Clau-  
dio c. 10.

Puttech to death *Chereas*. 8. *Claudius* promised the Soldiers a donative upon their taking an oath to defend his person and authority. Then put he to death *Chereas* and others that killed *Cains*, as a means to secure his own person; but in reference to the Senate buried all things in oblivion, and behaved himself moderately and civilly. He confirmed *Agrippa* in his Kingdom, and enlarged his dominions by an addition of *Judea* and *Samaria*, which heretofore belonged to his grandfather. And he further bestowed on him *Abila*, and the Principality of *Libanus*, which had belonged to *Lysanias*; moreover upon his desire he granted to his brother *Herod* the Kingdom of *Chalcis*, and at the request of both, published favourable Edicts in behalf of the *Jews*, who groaned under the persecution of *Cains*. This *Agrippa* (called also *Herod* by *St. Luke*) labouring all manner of wayes to gratifie the *Jews*, killed *James* the brother of *John*, and shut up *Peter* in prison, intending to bring him forth to the People after the *Passover*, but he was miraculously delivered by an Angel. A just punishment from God overtook *Agrippa* not long after: For having begun to build the walls of *Jerusalem*, when upon complaint of *Marsus President* of *Syria*, he was forbidden by *Claudius*, he descended to *Cæsarea*, there to celebrate games in honour of *Cæsar*. Being clothed with a robe of silver, which glittered exceedingly by the reflection of the Sun-beams, he rejected not the flatteries of those who ascribed to him divine honours, and was presently seized by a pain in his guts, and being eaten with worms, gave up the ghost within five dayes, after he had reigned seven years in all, and three over *Judea*. His Kingdom was not committed to his son by reason of his youth (for he was but seventeen years old) and therefore *Cuspius Fadus* was sent to govern it.

Idem c. 11.

Josephus ut su-  
pra c. 4. 5.

Act. 12.

A. D. 45.  
V. C. 797.

Whom ven-  
geance over-  
taketh for the  
death of  
James.

(Claudius resto-  
reth several  
Princes.

The Britains  
tumultuous.

This Island  
from Julius  
Cæsar his Ex-  
peditions, un-  
touched by  
the Romans.

Augustus was  
diverted from  
it.

9. *Claudius* restored also *Mithridates* the *Iberian* to his Kingdom, whom *Cains* had imprisoned. On another *Mithridates* (descended from *Mithridates* the Great King of *Pontus*) he bestowed the Kingdom of *Bosphorus* (giving one part of *Cilicia* to *Polemo* in requital) and another part of this Country to *Antiochus* with *Commagena*; for he had also been deprived of this his Kingdom by *Cains*. But the *Lycians* and *Rhodians* he deprived of their liberty. The former, for that they had raised a Sedition, wherein some *Romans* had been slain, and the later, because they had crucified some of them. About this time the *Britains* were very tumultuous, for the reducing of whom to obedience, he sent *A. Plantius* in his second year, with an Army out of *Gall*.

10. Since the time of *Julius Cæsar*, the *Romans* had attempted nothing upon *Britain*. *Augustus* seemeth of purpose to have neglected it, counting it policy to keep the *Roman Empire* within it's bounds; to wit, the Ocean, the Rivers *Ister* and *Euphrates*, limits set by nature, to the end it might be a State *Adamantine* (for so he himself speaketh in *Julian*) or invincible, and not miscary through it's too great bulck and burthen. *Strabo* is of opinion, that he despised it, seeing no cause to fear, nor hope of much profit from the *Britains*; and yet it seemed that no small danger would be presented from other Nations lying about the said Island. But at length he departed from *Rome* with a purpose to transfer the War into *Britain*; but when he was come into *Gall*, the *Britains* pacified him by Ambassadors, and having obtained his amity, dedicated presents and oblations in the Capitol. They brought the Island now familiar to the *Romans*, and endured taxes and imposts, which saith *Strabo*, are now nothing grievous to them, being raised out of such merchandise and commodities as are shipped to and fro out of *Gall* and *Britain*: those be Ivory works, bits and bridles, chains and wreathes, Vessels of Eleatrum and glasse, with other base and common wares of like sort. And therefore there needs no Garrison for that Island. For it would require one Legion at least, and some Horsemen, if tributes were to be levied from thence, and the said tributes would but countervail the charges of maintaining a Garrison there: for of necessity, by imposing a tribute, the revenues coming by tollage and poundage, and suchlike imposts, would be lesse: and if any violent course were used, some peril or other must be expected. The year following

Leg. Canade-  
num.

following also *Augustus* intended a second Expedition into *Britain*, because there was some variance about the Covenants: but by occasion of some insurrections made in *Spain* by the *Cantabri* and others, that journey was staid.

11. *Tiberius* nothing transported with an inordinate desire of enlarging the Empire, seemeth to have rested in that counsel of *Augustus*; For he brought out a Book written with *Augustus* his own hand, wherein was contained the whole wealth and estate of the Commonweal, what number as well of Roman Citizens as Allies were in Arms, how many Navies, Kingdoms, and Provinces, what tributes and imposts belonged to the State, with a resolution annexed thereto of containing the Empire within the same bounds. Which advice and resolution of *Augustus* contented him so well, that, as *Tacitus* reporteth, he would attempt nothing in *Britain*, nor maintain any Garrison or Deputies there. For, whereas *Tacitus* reckoneth up the number of Legions, and what Coasts and Countries they defended at that time, he maketh no mention at all of *Britain*. And yet it seemeth, that the *Britains* entertained amity with the *Romans*. For when as at the same time *Germanicus* sailed the Ocean, some of his Company being by force of Tempest driven to this Island, were by the Princes thereof sent back again. That *Caius Caesar* cast in his mind to enter this Island is certain: but by his shittie brain, sudden repentance, and wonderful attempts against *Germany* it came to nothing. For to the end that he might terrifie *Britain* and *Germany* (over which he hovered) with the fame of some mighty piece of work, he made a bridge between *Baie* and the *Piles of Puteoli*, three miles and 600 paces in length. But having achieved no greater exploit, than received to grace *Admirinus* the son of *Cynobellinus* King of the *Britans* (who being by his Father banished, had fled over Sea with a small power and train about him) he sent magnificent and glorious letters to *Rome*, as if the whole Isle had been yielded up into his hands: warning and wishing the Posts to ride forward directly into the Forum and Curia, and in no wise to deliver the said missives unto the Consuls, but in the Temple of *Mars*, and that in a frequent Assembly of the Senate.

12. After this to the Ocean he marched, as if he minded to translate the War over into *Britain*. There upon the shoar he embattelled his Soldiers: he himself took Sea in a *Gally*, and having lunched forth a little from the Land, returned again. Then mounting an high scaffold, he fare him down, and gave his Soldiers the sign for battel, and commanding the Trumpets to sound, on a sodain charged them to gather Cockles, Muskles, and other small shell-fishes. Having gotten these spoils he waxed proud, as if he had conquered the Ocean: and having rewarded his Soldiers, he brought some of these shell-fishes to *Rome*, to shew the booty he had gotten. In token and memorial of this great achievement, he caused to be built a brave high Turret, out of which as from a watch-tower, there might blaze all night long lights, and fires, for the better direction of Sea-men. The ruins hereof are some times seen at a low-water on the shoar of *Holland*, by the People inhabiting thereabouts, called *Britenhuus*, that is, the *British house*, who also find oftentimes stones engraven with letters: of which one had these characters, C. C. P. F. which they expound thus, *Caius Caligula Pharum Fecit*, that is, *Caius Caligula made this Pharos* (or Watch-tower) so called, I suppose, from that notable one, and one of the Worlds wonders, built by *Ptolomy Philadelphus* in the Island *Pharos*, from which some would have the ancient Kings of *Aegypt* called *Pharaohs*. It is probable, that this Watch-tower afterward being repaired by *Septimus Severus*, became a Granary for reception of Corn, which was brought out of *Britain*, whence it might take its name of *Britenhuus*. For *Zosimus* writeth, saith *Cambden*, that Corn was wont to be brought out of *Britain* by ships to this place, and thence with barges and boats haled up the *Rhene* against the stream, to serve the Roman Garrisons: seeing that *Julian* the Emperour built Garrisons, as *Marcellus* saith, wherein might be inned and kept the Corn, that the *Britains* usually transported thither.

13. But

*Claudius* sendeth *Plautius* into *Britain*.

Passing thither himself subdueth part of it.

Extraordinary expressions of joy at *Rome*.

13. But, afterwards the inland parts of *Britain* wasted rather with Civil Wars and Factions than by the force of the *Romans*, came by little and little subjected to them. Some making choice of their protection swore allegiance to them, and practised by all means to subject their Native Country unto their government. The principal of these fugitives was one *Bericus*, who moved, and perswaded *Claudius* to give the attempt upon *Britain*, which none assayed to do since the time of *Julius Caesar*, and which then was up in a broil and commotion, for that the said fugitives were not rendered again unto them. *Claudius* therefore in his second year ordered *A. Plautius* the Praetor to passe over out of *Gall*, who having by the means of *Narcissus* quieted the Soldiers that refused to make War without the compasse of the World, overthrew several times the sons of *Cynobellinus*. His Lieutenant was *Flavius Vespasian*, who behaved himself very gallantly in the service. But *Claudius* in his fourth year being very ambitious of a triumph (as not contenting himself with triumphal Ensigns decreed to him by the Senate) without a just cause pitched upon *Britain* as yet seditious, because their fugitives were not restored. Saying from *Ostia*, he was twice in danger of shipwrack, once near *Liguria*, and again near the Islands *Stachades* (four or five in the French Sea near *Languedoc* and *Provence*) wherefore from *Massilia* (now *Marseils* in *Provence*) he went by Land as far as *Gessoriacum* (now *Bologne*) and thence passing into the Island subdued part of it, and amongst other Towns (*Amalodunum* (now *Maldon*) the regal Seat of *Cynobellinus*, with the *Orcades*. *Dio* writeth, that at his first landing he defeated the *Barbarians* in battel. But *Suetonius* saith, he performed these acts without a battel, and the losse of one drop of blood. Having been divers times saluted Imperator (a thing directly saith *Dio* against the Roman custom; for lawfull it is not in one War to assume that title oftner than once) he disarmed the *Britains*, and committing as well the government of these, as the War with the other (not yet subdued) to *Plautius* he hastened to *Rome* in the sixth moneth, sending before him *Pompey* and *Silanus* his sons-in-law with tidings of the victory.

14. So great a matter it was, and of such consequence to have Conquered even so small a parcel of *Britain*, that the Senate thereupon decreed in honour of *Claudius*, yearly Games with triumphal Arches, both at *Rome*, and also at *Gessoriacum* in *Gall*, and a most honourable and stately Triumph. To the beholding hereof Governours of Provinces, and some banished persons also were permitted to come to the Citie: a naval Crown was fixed on the loover of the Palace, as the Ensign of the *British* Sea subdued by him: the Provinces brought in Crowns of Gold, and *Gallia Comata* one above the rest weighing nine pounds: and the higher part of *Spain*, another of seven pound weight. He mounted up into the Capitol by the stairs on his knees, supported, and heaved up by his sons-in-law on either side. He entered in Triumpling wise the *Adriatick* Sea, embarked in a Vessel more like some exceeding great house than a ship. Unto his wife *Messalina* was allowed the highest place to sit in, as also to ride in a Carroch or hanging Coach. After this he set forth triumphal playes and Games, being made Consul for that purpose. The solemnities were exhibited at once in two Theatres, and many times when he was gone aside from the sight, others had the charge thereof. Horse races for the prize he promised as many as those dayes would admit. Howbeit, above ten there were not; for between every course of Horses Bears were killed, Champions performed their duties, and choise Boyes sent for out of *Asia*, danced the warlike dance in Armour. Upon *Valerius Asiaticus*, *Julius Silanus*, *Sidius Geta*, and others, in regard of this Conquest, he heaped triumphal Ornaments. He suffered *Licinius Crassus Frugi* to follow after himself in this triumph, mounted upon a trapped Courser with a rich carapison, and arrayed in a Robe of Dure-tree work. Upon *Posidius* the Eunuch he bestowed a spear staff without an head: upon *C. Gavius* chains, bracelets, horse-trappings, and a Coronet of Gold; as is to be seen in an ancient Marble at *Taurinum*.

15. In

\* *Trues in Aug. de Civit. Dei* l. 16. c. ult.

*Suetonius ut supra cap. 17.*



Plantius

And Vespasian prosper in Britain.

Claudius animadverteth upon his wife Messalina.

Marrieth Agrippina his Niece.

Felix sent Governour into Samaria.

Stirs in Parthia.

The Britains rebel.

15. In the mean time *Aulus Plautius* went on with the reliques of the War in Britain, and sped so well, that *Claudius* passed a decree that he should enter *Rome* in *Ovans Triumph*: and when he was entred into the Citie, he himself went to meet him, giving him the right hand all the way. *Vespasian*, partly under *Claudius*, and partly under *Plantius*, fought thirty battels with the Enemy; subdued also two most mighty Nations, and above twenty Towns, together with the Isle of *Vetis* or *Wight*. For those exploits he received triumphal Ornaments, and within a short space two sacerdotal Dignities, with a *Consulship* which he bore the two last moneths of the year. *Titus* also served in quality of a *Tribune* under his father with exceeding commendations for his industry and valour (for he valiantly delivered his father when besieged) and no lesse repute of his modest carriage say some, as appeareth by a number of his images and titles to them annexed, throughout the *Provinces of Germany and Britain*. About this time a new Island appeared in the *Aegean Sea* named *Thia* near to *Hiera*, which 110 years before it first also sprung up: And both of them lay betwixt *Thura* and *Therapsia*, which in like manner 130 years before the Original of *Hiera* were first seen amongst the *Cyclades*.

16. Two or three years after this, *Claudius* being certified that his wife *Messalina* (the most unchast of all women) had openly married *C. Silius*, he animadverted upon her and her minions. About the same time *Herod* the King of *Chalcis* dying, he bestowed that Kingdom upon *Herods* Nephew *Agrippa* the younger, for *Judea* his father's Kingdom was still governed by Deputies. *Tiberius Alexander*, who succeeded *Fadus*, now gave place to *Cumanus*, under whom the *Jews*, being affronted at the *Passover* by impudent and lawcy Soldiers, mutined, but now, as ever, came to the worst: and not long after their Countrey-men that dwelt at *Rome* were expelled thence by *Claudius*, and under their name as many think the *Christians* also. In the nineteenth year of his reign he married *Agrippina* his own Niece by his brother *Germanicus*, through the perswasion of *Pallas* his Freedman, which woman presently as soon as she perceived her strength procured his daughter *Octavia* to be given in marriage to *Domitius Nero* her son by her former husband *Cn. Domitius Enobarbus*. The maid was formerly contracted to *L. Silanus* an eminent young man, but he accused by *Vitellius* was put out of his *Prætorship*, and the match was broken betwixt him and the Princeesse, whereupon he shortly after killed himself. And a year after was *Claudius* perswaded by *Pallas* to adopt *Nero* his wife's son, though he had a son of his own, by name *Britannicus*, but two years younger. *Pallas* was so high flown in favour, that he procured his brother *Felix* to be sent Governour into *Samaria*, and afterwards got his power extended to *Judea*, *Gulile*, and *Pæra*, where he acted the part of a Tyrant, and having married several great Ladies, obtained also *Drusilla* sister to *Agrippa*. The *Parthians* now again at variance amongst themselves, and wearied with the Tyranny of *Gatarzes*, asked a Prince from *Rome*. *Claudius* sent them *Meherdates* the son of *Vannones*, and Grandson of *Phraates*; but he was presently betrayed into the hands of *Gatarzes*. At this time also the *Britains* rebelled.

17. Now was *P. Ostorius* *Proprætor* there, upon whose first coming the *Britains* grew confident, as concerning him: for his want of experience. The Winter being begun they made excursions into the Territories of the *Alles* of *Rome*. He knowing that the first event would either incourage or amate them, set upon, and scattered them, then went about to disarm all such as he had reason to suspect; but the *Iceni* (inhabiting those parts now called *Suffolk*, *Norfolk*, *Cambridgeshire*, and *Huntingdonshire*) a strong Nation, refusing to submit, drew others in to them, and pitching upon a very convenient ground gave battel to the *Romans*, who by reason that they despaired of pardon, had much ado to overcome them. By this foil of the *Iceni*, others before unfeared were contained in obedience, and *Ostorius* led his Army against the *Canti* (a people living towards the *Irish Sea*) and waisting their grounds had passed on well nigh to the *Irish Sea*, when he was recalled by the

Idem in Tito.

Orosius lib. 7. cap. 6.  
Flia. l. 2. c. 87.  
A. D. 46.  
V. C. 798.

Legæ Tacit. Annal. l. 11. c. 26. &c.

Josephus Antiq. lib. 2. cap. 3.4.  
Orosius lib. 7. cap. 6.  
Sueton ut supra cap. 25.  
Tacitus Annal. l. 2. c. 1. &c.

Tacitus Annal. lib. 12. cap. 31, 32. &c.

Are reduced.

Caratacus betrayed is carried to Rome.

His speech to the Emperor.

He is pardoned.

The Britains again are up.

discord of the *Brigantes* (people inhabiting the North part of that now called *England*) the Ring-leaders of whom, when he had taken off, the rebellion was extinguished. But the *Silures* (inhabiting *Southwales*) would by no means be either allured or discouraged from waging War, trusting to the strength of *Caratacus* the greatest Prince amongst the *Britains*, who excelling as well in policy as the knowledge of the Countrey, transferred the War into the Territories of the *Ordovices* (now *Northwales*) as more convenient for him by reason of the Mountains and Rocks. Here he made a speech to his Officers, putting them in mind how their Ancestors had repulsed *Cæsar* the *Defiator*, and willing them to behave themselves at this time as the beginning of their liberty or eternal slavery. Till they came to strokes the *Romans* had the worst of it; but afterwards breaking into the Rampires they easily routed the *Britains*, and got a great victory, wherein the wife and daughter of *Caratacus* being taken, his brethren yielded themselves.

18. *Caratacus* committing himself into the hands of *Carisimunda*, Queen of the *Brigantes*, was treacherously bound, and delivered up to the Conquerours in the ninth year of the War, wherein he had got himself an exceeding great name. Being carried to *Rome*, the people was called together as to some famous show, and the *Prætorian* bands were placed along for the reception of him. The prayers of the rest were by reason of fear, bafe, and nothing favouring of Nobility: but *Caratacus*, neither hanging down his head, nor craving any mercy, when he stood before the Emperor's Tribunal spake to this purpose. *If my moderation in prosperity had been as great as my Nobility and Fortune, I had come rather as a friend into this Citie, than a Captive: neither would you have disdained to receive me with Covenants of peace, being a Prince descended of Noble Progenitors, and a Commander over many Nations. My present state is, as to me dishonourable, so to you magnificent. I have had horses, men, armour, and wealth: What marvel if against my will I have lost them all? For if you will rule over all men; it followeth that all men must abide servitude. If presently I had yielded, and been delivered into your hands, neither had my Fortune nor your glory been very remarkable: and oblivion would have followed my punishment. But if you save me alive, I shall be an example of your clemency for ever.*

19. Upon those words *Cæsar* pardoned him, his wife, and brethren. And they being all unbound did their reverence likewise unto *Agrippina* (who sat aloft not far off in an high seat to be seen) giving her the like praises, and in the same degrees of stile as they did the Emperor himself. Surely a strange precedent without any example, saith the Historian, that a woman should sit and command the *Roman* Ensigns. But she carried her self as a fellow and associate in the Empire gotten by her *Progenitors*. After this the Senate was called together, and the *Fathers* made long and glorious discourses, as touching the Captivity of *Caratacus*. Neither was this lesse honourable, as they affirmed, than when *Pub. Scipio* shewed *Siphax*, *L. Paulus*, *Perseus*, or whoever else exhibited Conquered Kings to the view of the People. As for *Ostorius*, it was decreed he should be honoured with triumphal Ornaments. But his Fortune soon changed, either for that he grew secure upon the Captivity of so considerable a man, or the Enemy was highly moved to revenge it. For a party left to awe the *Silures* was incompassed by the *Britains*, and if help had not presently come in from the adjoining Villages and Fortresses, had been utterly cut off, besides, that the Commander in Chief with eight Centurions, and many others were slain. Not long after such as went to gather forrage, and several Companies sent in to their aid, were also routed, and the Enemy was hardly restrained at length by the help of the Legions. After this hapned many skirmishes, as they met by chance, or were desirous of booty, and two Auxiliary Cohorts were intercepted, with the spoils of which other Nations were drawn to revolt, and not long after *Ostorius* spent with care and peniveness died. To his place *Claudius* preferred *A. Didius*, who

K k k k k

found

Subdued.

found things but in a bad condition, through the boldness of the *Silures*. But the *Britains* falling out amongst themselves were several times overthrown, and then kept under.

20. *Claudius*, the twelfth year of his reign ending, bestowed on *Agrippa* the Tetrarchy of *Philip*, as also that of *Lyfania*, taking *Chalcis* from him after he had governed it 4 years. After this he restored the *Rhodians* to their former liberty upon their repentance, and eased the Inhabitants of *Ilium* of all charges and tributes, as being the Authors of the *Roman* race. *Nero* pleaded the causes of both Cities, whose mother *Agrippina* now began to be discovered to her husband. He chanced in his drink to say that it was fatal to him first to endure, and then to punish the wickedness of his wives, and he repented of his folly in preferring her son before his own. She bethinking her self how to escape the danger, first gave him poison in Mushrooms his beloved meat, but it passing through him, she used the skill of *Xenophon* the Physician, who as it were to help him to vomit put something down his throat dipped in a most violent poison, and so he died, who within a small time upon a very small account had put to death 35 Senators and 300 Knights. He was a man that before his coming to the Government was despised by his relations as some imperfect thing, and afterwards was but counted blockish, and despicable by others, yet sometimes he would judge very wisely and circumspectly, and so far profited in liberal studies (which he very much plied) that he wrote divers things, and amongst the rest a learned defence of *Cicero* in answer to the books of *Asinius Pollio*. He was fearfull above measure, so that (amongst other demonstrations) when *Camillus*, who attempted a Rebellion, sent him a reprochfull, and menacing Letter, willing him to lay down the Government, he was in doubt, and seriously consulted whether he should not do it: and this made him put many to death upon idle and malicious accusations. He was the very slave of his Freedmen (whereof *Narcissus* and *Pallas* were chief) who rather reigned than he; for, they managed all things according to their pleasure or lust, bestowing favours upon whom they pleased, and killing any, though never so worthy, or nearly allied to him. He excused his anger and peevishness by a public Declaration. He was so forgetfull that he would several times ask for such as he had put to death. He would eat and drink at any time, or in any place: he was a great player at Dice, of which Art he set forth a book. He died on the third before the *Ides of October*, in the 64 year of his age, when he had reigned thirteen years, eight months, and twenty dayes, in the 807 year of the Citie, the 55 after the birth of *Christ*, *M. Asinius Marcellus* and *M. Acilius Aviola* being Consuls.

*Claudius* poisoned by *Agrippina* his wife.

His Character.

Ecclesiastical matters in his reign.

21. Now that we may note briefly such Ecclesiastical matters as fell out in the reign of *Claudius*. In his first year *Fames* the brother of *John* was, as we said, put to death by *Agrippa*, and *Peter* being cast by him into prison was delivered by an Angel. In his second, *Paul* returned out of *Arabia* to *Damascus*, whence he came to *Jerusalem* to see *Peter*. Hence he went to *Tarsus*, and not long after to *Antioch*, being sent for by *Barnabas*, who had been sent thither by the Apostles. In his third year *Paul* preached for a whole year at *Antioch*, together with *Barnabas*. In his fourth, *Paul* carried the Almshouses of the faithfull from *Antioch* to *Jerusalem*, because of the Famine foretold by *Agabus*. Thence returning to *Antioch*, he was sent with *Barnabas* to preach the Gospel in *Asia*. In this fourth then, and the fifth year of *Claudius* he preached Christ in *Cyprus*, *Pamphylia*, *Pisidia*, *Iconium*, *Lystra*, and *Derbe*, and returned to *Antioch*. In the sixth he was sent from *Antioch* to *Jerusalem* to the Council with *Barnabas*, whence returning to *Antioch* he reprehended *Peter*, who came thither a little after him, for his dissembling, and not long after went with *Silas* into *Asia* to confirm the Churches he had founded. In the seventh of *Claudius* he preached Christ in *Crete*, and through *Pisidia*, *Pamphylia*, and *Phrygia*, visited the Churches, converted the *Galatians* to the Faith. In the eighth he came to *Troas*, and thence into *Macedonia*, where at *Philippi*, as also at *Thessalonica*, at *Berea*, and then at *Athens*

*Josephus* Antiq. lib. 20. cap. 5.  
*Tacitus* Annal. lib. 12. cap. 64. 67, 68.

A. D. 55.  
V. C. 807.

Sueton in *Claudius*.

where he preached the Gospel. About the end of the ninth year he came to *Corinth*, where he found *Aquila* and *Priscilla*, with whom he staid half a year preaching the Gospel, and thence wrote both his Epistles to the *Thessalonians*. In the eleventh year he came from *Corinth* to *Ephesus* with *Aquila* and *Priscilla*, whom there leaving, he went to *Jerusalem* to the Feast. Thence he returned to *Antioch* and *Ephesus* through *Phrygia*, *Galatia*, and the higher parts of *Asia*. Being at *Ephesus* in the twelfth year, there he continued two years till the tumult raised by *Demetrius*. Hence he wrote his Epistle to the *Galatians*; the former also to the *Corinthians*, and to *Titus*, but about the end of the following year; as also the first to *Timothy*. About the end also of the thirteenth year, or the beginning of the following, he came into *Macedonia* and *Achaia*, to receive the collections to be carried to *Jerusalem*. And hence (from *Corinth*) being to pass into *Asia*, he wrote his Epistle to the *Romans* about the end of the following year. About the end also of the fourteenth year he was imprisoned at *Jerusalem*. And being carried to *Cæsarea* was there kept prisoner by *Felix* for two years. Concerning the Chronology of these accounts, *Ludovicus Cappellus* is by Students to be consulted, in his *Historia Apostolica Illustrata*.

Of St. Peter his being at Rome.

22. St. Peter the Apostle is reported in the second year of *Claudius* to have come to *Rome*, having been formerly Bishop of *Antioch*, in which Sea he was succeeded by *Evo dius* one of the 70 Disciples, of whom also *Paul* maketh mention: some say that he continued Bishop at *Rome* 25 years, viz. twelve under *Claudius*, and thirteen under *Nero*. Perhaps he might come to *Rome* at this time, but that he staid there 25 years is but to be taken as a fable. For we read that *Claudius* banished all Jews from *Rome*, and he being a Jew, must needs give place, or abide the danger. We do not find he had any trouble, and this was by reason of his absence. It's probable that he went away when *Aquila* and *Priscilla* departed *Rome*, and met St. Paul at *Corinth*. *Eusebius* indeed often mentioneth his being at *Rome*, and writeth, that he suffered Martyrdom together with *Paul* under *Nero*. This might be at his second return unto *Rome*, so that we may count 25 years from his first coming under *Claudius* unto the end of his Martyrdom under *Nero*; it being, to say truth, better thus to reconcile Writers, than flatly to deny all, or to say, he never was at *Rome*. Here he met with *Simon Magus* again, and confounded him, as it's reported. This man being a Samaritan of the Village *Gitton*, was baptized by Philip the Deacon in *Samaria*. He would have bought of Peter the gift of the Holy Ghost; and thence of him arose the word *Simony*. He came to *Rome* in the time of *Claudius*, where calling himself a God, he was honoured with an Image, having this inscription, *Simoni Deo Sancto*. He had to his yoke-mate one *Helene*; by *Irenæus* called *Selen*, a Witch and a common Harlot, whom he called the Principal understanding. He said unto the Samaritans that he was the Father, unto the Jews, that he was the Son descended from Heaven, and unto the Gentiles, that he was the Holy Ghost. Peter foiled him in *Samaria*, whence for shame he fled, and leaving *Samaria* and *Judea*, he sailed from East to West, and came to *Rome*; under *Claudius*, where Peter met him. Peter it's said had much to do with him in the presence of *Nero*. Some write that he had three conflicts with him, and in the end *Simon* seeing himself foiled, and his witchcraft not at all to prevail, told them he would leave their City, and fly up into the Heavens whence he came. Whereupon at a certain day appointed, he climbed up into the high Capitol, whence he took his flight by the means of witchcraft, and the spirits that bore him up in the air. The People at the sight hereof was amazed. But Peter fell down and prayed God that his witchcraft might be revealed to the World. He had no sooner spoke, but down came *Simon Magus*, and was broken to pieces, so that he there miserably died. Now again to the course of our History.

23. The death of *Claudius* was kept private by *Agrippina*, till such time as the Empire could be secured to *Nero* her son, who then, at noon time of the day, the doors of the Palace being opened suddenly, accompanied with

Alt. 8.  
*Euseb.* l. 2. c. 1.  
  
Idem c. 12, 13, 14.  
*Irenæus* l. 1. c. 20.  
*Epiphanius* l. 1. tom. 2. hares. 21.

*Tacitus* Annal. l. 12. c. ult.

Kkkkk 2 Burthius

*Burrhus* Captain of the Guard, went to the watch, by which at the instance of the Captain, he was received with lucky acclamations. Being put into a litter, he was thence carried to the Camp, where speaking as the time required, and promising a donative to the Soldiers, after the example of his Predecessors, he was saluted Emperour, and presently owned by the Senate, and in the Provinces. *Claudius* his testament he never published, left the People should be moved by the injury offered to *Britannicus*, to whom his father was so superlatively unnatural, as to prefer his wives son before him. Indeed some of the Soldiers at first paused, and looking back, asked for *Britannicus*; but finding no body to stir in his behalf, joyned themselves to the multitude. *Nero* came to the Government, being seventeen years old, six years after he had been adopted by *Claudius*.

*Nero* succeeded  
by *Claudius*.

*Sueton in Nero*  
c. 7.

24. *Nero* at first carried it exceeding well towards People and Magistrates, governing according to the pattern of *Augustus*, whose prescript he professed he would observe. He omitted no occasion of shewing liberality, clemency, and mildness, inasmuch that *Trajan* himself admiring his first five years, averred, that *All Princes came short of them*. Heavy tributes he either took off or lessened, distributed money to the People, gave annual stipends to impoverished Senators, and to the *Prætorian bands* Corn every month freely. Being desired to subscribe to the execution of a condemned person, *Oh*, said he, *I wish I knew not letters*. But this good beginning is rather to be attributed to *Burrhus* and *Seneca* (the later of whom, after his adoption, was his School-master) who being in power mutually helped each other. *Agrippina* thought by virtue of his name to rule indeed, and at the beginning poisoned *Silanus* Proconsul of *Asia*, and made away *Narcissus*; without his knowledge the former, and the later without his consent; and had gone further, but that *Burrhus* and *Seneca* interposed. Not long after, jealousies arose betwixt them, for he falling in love with *Acte* a Freed-woman, and distasting such as she leaned upon, removed *Pallas* her Minion from publick employment, which so far exasperated her, that she upbraided him with *Britannicus*, as most fit to enjoy his Fathers seat. This feat she told her son he now enjoyed by her means, and not sparing to lay open all the evils, as she said, of their unhappy Family, her own marriage and forcery; she took it as happy for the gods and her, that *Britannicus* was living, and protested she would go with him to the Camp.

All Princes  
came short  
of his first  
five  
years.

*Idem* c. 10.

*Annelius Vi-*  
*tor.*

*Tacitus Annal.*  
l. 13. c. 1, &c.

His Mother  
and he fall  
at  
ods.

25. This, together with *Britannicus* his forwardness (who being fourteen years old, began to be sensible of his condition, and to move compassion towards himself) made *Nero* resolve to dispatch him out of the way, and for that he could not do it openly to his brother, he procured poison to be given him, which working downwards without any great incommodity, he caused to be boiled to that height, that it instantly killed him the second time, whilst he himself sat at supper with him, asking nothing. He made him be buried the same, though a very rainy, night, his mean funeral being provided beforehand. *Agrippina* very much troubled that her refuge was gone, was shortly after accused to her son, as intending by a marriage with *Rubellia Plautina* (who was as near to *Augustus* as *Nero* himself) to invade the Sovereignty. Being something gone in drink when he heard of it, he would have had her killed out of hand, which being hindered by *Burrhus*, the next day she stoutly denied any such design, and the wound of jealousy for the time was skinned over. After two years, *Nero* began to discover what his Nature prompted him to. Disguising himself in a servile habit, he ran about the City by night to Taverns and Stews, accompanied with such as himself, where taking away things by force, as also cutting and slashing such as they met, he himself came into danger of life.

He poisoneth  
*Britannicus*.

*Idem* *ibid.* c. 15.

*Idem* *ibid.* c. 25.

Beginneth to  
discover him-  
self.

*Festus* suc-  
ceedeth *Felix*.

26. A little before those things, he sent *Porcius Festus* into *Judea* to succeed *Felix*; who being out of his office, was accused at *Rome* by such *Jews* as dwelt at *Cæsarea*. *Nero* pardoned him through the intercession of his brother *Pallas*, who was as yet in favour. About the same time hapned a great dissension betwixt the *Jews* of *Cæsarea* and the *Syrians*, which there inha-

*Josephus An-*  
*tiquit.* l. 20. c. 7.

bited with them, about the right and privilege of the City. They pretended that *Herod* the founder of it was a *Jew*, and those answered, that ere he named it *Cæsarea*, it was called the *Tower of Straton*, at what time none of the *Jews* inhabited it: and the *Syrians* by a great sum of money procured *Beryllus* (who had been *Nero's* School-master) to get them the Emperours letters, whereby was abrogated that Privilege which the *Jews* had formerly enjoyed with the *Syrians*. Herewith the *Jews* incensed, were still seditious till the beginning of the Warre. Great motions at this time fell out in the East. The *Parthians* had set upon *Armenia*, having driven away *Rhadamistus* nephew to *Mithridates*, whom *Claudius* had set over that Kingdom, and who was killed by the other, that he might succeed him. *Nero* sent to preserve that Country *Domitius Corbulo*, who for two or three years had little to do, because the *Parthians* deferred the War. But now *Tiridates* brother to *Vologesus* the *Parthian* being resolved to fight for the Diadem, the *Armenians* also inclining to him, *Corbulo* took several Forts, and besieged *Artaxata* the Metropolis, which, though the Inhabitants opened the gates, and for this were spared, yet because it could not be held for the greatness of it, was burnt and razed. *Nero* for these things was saluted *Imperator*, passing great honours were decreed to him, and a far greater stir was made by the flattering *Fathers* than was convenient.

*Corbulo* pro-  
spereth in the  
East.

*Tacitus ut su-*  
*per* c. 34, &c.

Now falleth  
in love with  
*Poppæa*, which  
inceneth him  
against his  
mother.

27. The same year that these things were done by *Corbulo*, being the fifth of his reign, *Nero* fell in love with *Poppæa Sabina*, the daughter of *P. Olinus*, though she named her self after her Grand-father by the mother's side, because more eminent. He came first acquainted with her by the commendations of *Ocho* her husband, who also had been too familiar with her in the days of her first husband *Rufus Crispinus*: She incensed him more against his mother, because she feared, that as long as she lived, he would not dismiss *Octavia* and marry her self. Sometimes she laid at him by divers criminations, as otherwhiles jeered him as a Pupil, who not nor only wanted command and authority, but also liberty. Some have suspected, that *Agrippina* sought to commit incest with her son. How true soever this was, he now began to be absolutely weary of her, to shun her company, and within a while resolved to make her away, though solicitous how to do it. At length *Anicetus* his Freed-man and General of the Fleet at *Misenum*, acquainted him that a ship might be so framed, as to break into pieces and let her fall into the Sea. This ship was thus made, and she brought into it by her son, under colour of doing her honour, but the upper part of the ship falling chanced to strike her, though it killed one of her attendants. One of her maides knowing nothing of the design, cried out, that she was *Agrippina*, hoping thereby to save her self, and was thereupon killed by the Oars; but she her self being silent, escaped them, and swam to Land. Her escape struck *Nero* with great consternation, who called up *Burrhus* and *Seneca* to give their advice. Whether they knew of the thing before or no is uncertain. Some say, *Seneca* asking *Burrhus* whether the Soldiers should not be commanded to kill her, he answered, they would do no such thing to the daughter of *Germanicus*, and that *Anicetus* rather should perform his promise of dispatching her. This he readily undertaking, accompanied with two others, went to the Village where she lay. One of them first bruised her head with a club, another drawing his sword, she stretched out her belly and bad him strike *that*, and so died of many wounds. Some report, that her son viewed her dead body exactly, and passed his judgement upon every part. She had been a very lewd and ambitious Woman, and now reaped the fruit thereof, according her own desire. For consulting on a time about the fortune of this her son, the *Chaldeans* told her, that He should reign, but kill his mother, to which she answered, *Occidat modo imperet: Let him kill me so he but reign*. After this wicked fact he was continually tormented in his Conscience, confessing often, that he was haunted by the Furies, which did beat him with fire-brands.

*Tacitus Annal.*  
l. 14. c. 1, 2, &c.

*Sueton in Ne-*  
*ron* c. 34.

He causeth  
his mother to  
be made  
away.

A. D. 60.  
V. c. 812.

28. He excused himself to the Senate, laying great loads of heavy accusations upon her. But the *Fathers* not only excused but commended the deed,

nay

The Senate  
and People  
flatter him.

His enormi-  
ties.

Corbulo prosper-  
eth in Arme-  
nia.

Suetonius in  
Britain sub-  
ducing the Si-  
lures.

His Province  
revolteth.

may to such fordidness of spirit was both Senate and People degenerated, that returning to the Citie, they met him with as great Pomp, as if he had come from some notable victory; for the several Tribes, and the Senate received him, their Wives and Children being placed according to their Sex and Age. Hereupon he grew excessive proud, as Lord over so many slaves, and presently unmasking himself, without any care of his actions, fell into such disorders, as he appeared rather a Devil incarnate than a man. He became a Stage-player, learning that art, and exercising himself therein in publick continually. He ordained Games to be solemnized at Rome every fifth year, in imitation of the Greeks, and called them *Nervia*; persons of all sorts, and degrees, being constrained to be actors. These being continued night and day, most horrid things were committed, *Prince, Senate, and People*, either through affection or fear, not onely giving way, but compelling to such filthinesse. *Corbulo* at this time prospering in *Armenia* had *Tigranocerta* yielded to him, and then placed in that Kingdom, *Tigranes* Grand-son to *Archelaus* King of *Cappadocia*, with whom having left a Guard, and settled matters, he departed into *Syria* to succeed *Vinidius* the Governour. The year following, being the 814 of the Citie, wherein *Cassius Paus* and *Petronius Turpilianus* were *Consuls*, the Romans received a sad defeat in *Britain*.

29. Of late the Lieutenants of this Province had made but small progresse in their Conquests; *A. Didius Avianus* the Successor of *Plautius* contenting himself with what was done before, and *Verannius*, who followed him, making onely some excursions upon the *Silures*; for he was prevented by death from any further service. But now *Paulinus Suetonius* the Emulator of *Corbulo* for Military glory, had the chief Command, and fought to equal the acts of the other in *Armenia*, by chastizing and taming the *Britains*. He set upon the Isle *Mona* (now called *Anglesey*) peopled with strong Inhabitants, and the receptacle of all Fugitives, where he was received with multitudes of men on the shore, & with women running about like furies with fire-brands in their hands, having their hair spread about their shoulders; the *Druides* also, the ancient Seat of whom that Island was, pouring out plenty of curses. The Soldiers something terrified at first, being exhorted by their General, easily broke through, and dissipated this furious Company: then placed he a Garrison in the Island, and cut down the Groves where they were wont to offer mans blood, and consult their Gods by the entrails of some Captive. But whilest these things were adoing, news came to *Suetonius* of the revolt of his Province. For, *Prasargus* King of the *Iceni*, that his Kingdom and family might be freed from molestation, left *Cesar* his Heir, together with his two daughters. But it hapned for otherwise, his Kingdom being wasted by *Centurions*, and his house by *Slaves*: his wife *Boadicea* (otherwise called *Boodicia*, *Bondicia*, *Vondica*, and *Rundica*) was whipped, his daughters deflowered, his chiefest subjects spoiled of their Goods and Lands, and his kindred counted no better of than slaves. Provoked by these things, and fear of worse when they should be reduced into the form of a Province, they took Arms, stirring up the *Trinobantes* to rebellion. Others also joyned with them, having heretofore combined to recover their liberty out of hatred to the old superannuated Soldiers, who being planted as a Colony at *Camalodunum*, committed grievous outrages against them, and these were rather cherished by the Army than otherwise, in hope of the like liberty for the time to come. But this Colony not being fenced by any fortifications, the founders having rather looked at the pleasantness of the situation than commodiousness of the ground, the *Britains* accounted it no great matter to destroy it.

30. The *Camalodunians* being terrified by several prodigies, desired aid of *Catus Decianus* the Governour in *Suetonius* his absence. He sent them but 200 men, and those but meanly Armed, and they neglected still to raise any fortifications, their Counsels being confounded by such as were iragged in the plot. Being then beset round by the Natives, all things were burnt and de-

*Tacitus ut su-  
pra c. 12, 13.*

*Consule Tac-  
tum ubi supra  
Capp. 29, 30,  
31. & Xiphi-  
lin. in Excerptis  
ex Dione.*

*A. D. 62.  
Ol. 210. ann. 1.  
V. C. 814.*

*Tacitus ut su-  
pra Capp. 32,  
33. & c. &  
Sueton. in Na-  
rone cap. 39.*

*Camalodunum  
the Colony  
destroyed,*

*And Verulamium.*

destroyed, and *Petilius Cerealis* coming to their relief with the ninth Legion was utterly defeated, all the foot being cut in pieces, and the horse with himself glad to run away to the Camp; whereupon *Catus* passed over into *Gall*, having by his avarice been the great cause of this defection. The same defeat was given to *Verulamium* (out of the ruins of which rose *St. Albans*) a Town free of the Citie of Rome; for the *Britains* passing by Castles and places of defence, set upon such as were most obnoxious to their fury. At both places were massacred 70000 persons, none being taken or sold after the custom of War, but either put to the sword, hanged, burnt, or crucified as Malefactors. *Suetonius* passed through the midst of his Enemies to *Londonium* (now *London*) a Town not then notable in respect of the Colony, but for multitude of Merchants, and plenty of Traffick very famous. Perceiving it but badly provided of Soldiers, although he once thought to make it the seat of the War, he left it, being not prevailed with to stay either by the prayers or tears of the Inhabitants. For, resolving with the losse of one Town to preserve the rest, he took all along with him that could go, and all others, whom either Sex or Age, or the pleasantness of the places detained were destroyed by the Enemy. Having got together an Army of 10000 men, he resolved to venture a battel with all expedition; and for that purpose made his choice of convenient ground. *Boadicea* carrying her two daughters in the Chariot with her about to the Companies, told them it had been usual before for the *Britains* to fight under the conduct of women, but she was now in another capacity than her Ancestors, being not to fight for a Kingdom, but as one of the ordinary sort to revenge her lost liberty, her own stripes, and the violence offered to her daughters. As for her self she said she was resolved to win the field, or die; as for men, they might live if they pleased, and be slaves. *Suetonius* on the other side considering the weight of the Enterprize, was not silent.

*Suetonius de-  
featech the  
Britains in  
battel.*

*Turpilianus  
succeeding  
him is sloth-  
full.*

*Albinus suc-  
ceedeth Fe-  
stus.*

31. The Romans, though far inferiour in number, yet in Military know-lege and Discipline far exceeding the *Britains*, put them to the worst, and made of them great slaughter by reason of the difficulty of flight; for those having brought their wives to behold the battel, and be eye-witnesses of their valour, they had placed them in Waggon about the Army. Some reported that scarcely fewer then 80000 of the Conquered were slain, and of the Conquerors about 400. and *Boadicea* ended her life by poyson. Afterwards, the Army being increased by a great supply sent over by *Cesar*, wasted the Countrey with fire and sword, which was also sorely oppressed by famine; for being intent upon the War, the *Britains* had neglected the sowing of Corn, hoping also to enjoy the Provisions of the Enemy. For all this they were not forward to ask Peace, being encouraged by *Julius Cassilianus*, who being sent to succeed *Catus*, disagreed so far with *Suetonius*, and so filled him to those at Rome, that he wrote they must not expect an end of the War till some one was sent to succeed him, attributing all mishaps to his unfitness, and all success to the good Fortune of the Commonwealth. To view then the condition of *Britain*, was *Polycletus* the Freed-man of *Nero* sent over, who coming in with a great train seemed terrible to the Roman Soldiers, but ridiculous to the *Britains*, who burning with affection to liberty, and as yet ignorant of the power of such a War, would obey slaves. *Suetonius* was commended to deliver up his Army to *Turpilianus*, who was even now out of the Consulship, and neither provoking nor being provoked covered slothfull idleness, as *Tacitus* telleth us, with the specious, and comely name of Peace.

32. The year after was *Albinus* sent into *Judea* to succeed *Festus*, who died in his Government. About the same time *Agrippa* (who had power after his Uncle of *Chalcis* to bestow the High-Priesthood on whomsoever he pleased) gave it to *Ananus* son of that *Annas* or *Ananus*, who beyond example having himself enjoyed the Office, had five sons, who every one of them executed the same. This young *Ananus* being a *Sadducee*, as also very bold

*Tacitus ut  
prius Capp. 37,  
38.*

*Josephus Anti-  
quit. lib. 20.  
cap. 8.*

James the Just killed by the procurement of Ananias the High-Priest.

Burrhus dieth.

Nero marrieth Poppæa.

The fires in Armenia renewed.

Nero's wickedness.

bold and cruel, conceiving he had got a convenient opportunity (*Festus* being dead, and *Albinus* not yet arrived) called a Council, and condemned *James the brother of Jesus Christ*, as *Josephus* writeth, with some others, as guilty of impiety, to be stoned. *This act displeased*, saith the Historian, *all good men, and especially such as were most studious of the Law*, who desired of *Agrippa* that he would command *Ananias* to forbear the like for the time to come: some going also to meet *Albinus*, told him that the *High-Priest* had no authority to call a Council, whereupon he wrote to him very angrily, and threatened him, upon which account *Agrippa* the King removed him from his Office after the third month. At this time died *Burrhus* at *Rome*, not without suspicion of poyson, and *Seneca's* power was weakned by the losse of that conjunction, whereby they had mutually strengthened the hands of each other. *Seneca* was now backbited, and by *Nero* sleighted, of whom he desired leave to withdraw himself, having been with him fourteen years, and he offered to give up his great estate into his hands (for that had brought him so far into envy;) but *Nero* having learnt, and practised dissimulation, under colour of respect denied his Petition. Now did *Nero* marry *Poppæa*, whom all this while he had kept as his Concubine, and dismissed *Octavia* loaded with accusations of barrenesse and greater Crimes; and when the people troubled at it grew seditious, he caused her to be put to death in that fatal Island *Pandateria*. The same year also as 'tis believed he poysoned the Chief of the *Liberii* or *Freed-men*, *Peryphorus*, because he was against his marrying *Poppæa*, and *Pallas*, for that living very long, he had scraped together a vast sum of money.

33. At this time were the fires renewed in *Armenia*. For *Vologeses* seeing his brother thus beaten off, and *Tigranes* set up in his stead, had invaded the Countrey to revenge the injury offered to the line of the *Arscidae*. *Corbulo*, though very warily, yet resisted and repelled him, when *Cesennius Pæus* was sent to defend that Countrey, who by his ignorance in Military matters and rashness undid all. Being besieged, he was glad to Covenant for his preservation to quit *Armenia*, and remove the Garrisons thence, which done, *Nero* was to be sent to. Yet so ridiculous and degenerate were they at *Rome*, as to erect Trophies over the *Parthians*, though they knew nothing of the success, either one way or other. The *Parthian* Ambassadors came to *Rome* to desire that (as they hinted) which had been gotten by force, but without effect, for War was decreed against them to be managed by *Corbulo*; yet were they dismissed with gifts, so as there might be hope, that, if *Tiridates* himself would intreat for the Diadem, it should not be in vain. *Corbulo* again invaded *Armenia*, at which the *Parthians* affrighted came to a Treaty, wherein it was agreed that *Tiridates* laying down his Diadem at the feet of *Nero's* Statue should not receive it without his leave. *Nero* now growing now worse and worse, broke out into most horrid impieties, well nigh beyond all belief.

34. The next year being the 817 of the Citie, the 65th after the birth of *Christ*, and of his own reign the 10. C. *Lecanius Bassus*, and *M. Licinius Crassus* being *Consuls*, acting the common Stage-player, and giving up himself to all luxury, and unheard-of pollutions, amongst the rest he married himself as a woman to one of his filthy crue, called *Pythagoras*, all things being provided and celebrated as at a marriage. He made himself also the husband of *Spornus*, from whom he took as much of the Male as possible, and ordered him to be brought to him in a Veil as a Bride. Being offended at the deformity of the old buildings, and the narrowness of the streets, or else to feed his cruel eye with so sad a spectacle as he had read to have hapned at the siege of *Troy*, he caused the Citie to be set on fire, which burning six dayes and seven nights, of the fourteen divisions four onely remained whole, the other being wasted, or defaced, with the fury of the flame. He beheld the fire from the Tower of *Macenas*, and very merry at the beauty of it, as he termed it, in a Player's habit surg the destruction of Ilium. This calamity being generally attributed to him as the cause, he accused the *Christians* there-

A. D. 63.  
V. C. 817.

Tacitus Annal.  
lib. 14. capp. 51.  
52, &c.

Tacitus Annal.  
lib. 15. capp. 1.  
23, &c.

Sueton in Nero  
cap. 38.

A. D. 65.  
V. C. 817.  
Idem ibid.  
cap. 16.  
Tacitus ut su-  
per cap. 44.

Setting *Rome* on fire, he accused and persecuted the *Christians*.

thereof, and raised the *First Persecution*, torturing them with most exquisite kinds of punishment. About this time he sent *Gessius Florus* into *Judæa* to succeed *Albinus*, who desiring to gratifie them of *Jerusalem*, for all the mischief he had done, ere his departure, brought out all the prisoners, whereof those that were committed for any capital offence he put to death, but the rest he fined onely and dismissed; whereby all the Gaols being thus emptied, the Country was filled with thieves more than before. The year following was discovered a conspiracy against *Nero*, which gave him occasion further to indulge his cruel humour.

35. Who was the Author of it is uncertain, as also upon what particular grounds it was hatched, though all the persons bore him malice, as they thought they had reason. But *Lucan* the Poet (who wrote the Civil Wars betwixt *Cæsar* and *Pompey*, and was nephew to *Seneca* by his brother *Annanus Mela*) was aggrieved that *Nero* envied him the glory he had got by his Verses; and several others joynd with them out of love to *Cn. Piso* the head of the party. It was discovered by *Milichus* the Freed-man of *Severinus*, who had commanded him to scour his dagger, and provide necessaries for wounds; whereupon some would have had *Piso* to have gone to the *Rosstra*, and laid open the Tyrant to the People, to obtain their help; but he refused. The next after him that was put to death was *Annanus Seneca* the Philosopher and *Nero's* School-master, not being convicted of any treason, though accused by one *Natalis*, as it's thought, to please *Cæsar*, such an earnest desire his Scholar had to dispatch him, having formerly without effect attempted it by poyson. Being commanded to dye, he did it very cheerfully, though he was forced to seek for death several wayes. For, he had so starved himself with abstinence, that he could not bleed, and poyson would not work upon him; but at length entering into a bath he was stifled with the fume of it, having all this while discoursed, even to his last, according to his wonted elegance, such excellent things, as being then taken from his mouth, came afterwards abroad. Such was the end of this excellent Philosopher, concerning the character of whom, Students are rather to trust to *Cornelius Tacitus* than to *Dio*, if *Justus Lipsius* be a competent Judge. *Dio* accuseth him of extortion, adultery with *Agrippina*, and what not? He maketh him a *Sodomite*, and to have taught his Scholar that wickedness, as also the cause and procurer of the death of *Agrippina*, and a cart-load of other Calumnies, saith \* *Lipsius*, doth the idle man heap upon him, contrary to the belief and mind of all men. What cause was there of this hatred? or what reward had he for lying? for *Seneca* lived so long before him, that he neither could injure him nor oblige him: I believe, saith he, it was a certain perversity of judgement and manners, which also set him keen against *Cicero* and all good men. I desire that youth may take heed, and so to gather the flowers of Antiquity from these fields, that they do not also gather poison. But as for what concerneth the riches and gallantry of *Seneca*, see Reader, and read his excellent Treatise *De vita beata*, which he wrote with no other design, than to stop the mouths of these Calumniators, especially from the seventeenth Chapter. Thus hath *Lipsius* prevented us in our Apology for this excellent person, in whose vindication much might be said.

36. *Pompeia Paullina* the wife of *Seneca* (*Dio* calleth her a most noble woman, perhaps the daughter of *Pompeius Paullinus*, to whom *Tacitus* giveth the title of *Consularis*, and who was set over the publick customs or imposts) cut also her veins, that she might die with him, but *Nero* bearing her no malice as it happened, sent some to stop the bleeding, and recover her. *Seneca* had another brother besides the father of *Lucan*, who was also put to death. This was *Annanus Novatus*, otherwise called *Junius Gallio* from his adoptive Father, being also mentioned in the Acts of the Apostles, and then Governour of *Achaia*. Their Father was *M. Annæus Seneca* a Rhetorician of *Cornuba* in *Spain*, whose *Suasories* and Controversies are yet extant, joynd to his sons Works. *Nero* proceeded in his madness and cruelties. Acting the Stage-player still he was reviled at his return home by *Poppæa's* wife,

LIIII

for

Idem ibid. c. 49.  
&c.

A. D. 66.  
V. C. 818.

\* Quam consule in Comment. ad Taciti Annal. l. 14. & omnino ad l. 15.



Nero killed  
Poppaea.

for which he kicked her great with child, and thereupon she miscarried. Then raged he against many of greatest note, amongst whom was *Mela* the father of *Lucan* (who had formerly perished for the conspiracy) and this allayed the grief which was conceived for the death of many others, by the pestilence that now raged, because they seemed thereby well delivered from the fury and rage of the Prince, who now neither used choice nor measure in his slaughters. Being puffed up with the success of his cruelty, he said, that *None of his Predecessors knew their power*, hinting also, that he meant to destroy the remnant of the Senators. It was believed he had a great desire to deliver up quick men to be devoured of an *Egyptian*, a monstrous eater of raw flesh, or any other thing that was given him.

The height  
of his wick-  
edness.

37. Neither was there wanting to him luxury and effeminatenesse, suitable to his cruelty, nor any other vice, whereby the truth of that saying of *Domitian* his father might appear, who hearing of his birth, said, that *Of himself and Agrippina could proceed nothing but accursed, detestable, and to the damage of the Commonwealth*. For in him seemed to meet and be conjoined not only all the vices of his own family (which of late had been too pregnant of them) but all the corruption of his Country, from the beginning to his very time. He lengthened his feasts from *Noon to Midnight*, accounting no use of riches but in the abuse of them. Such he thought to be sordid and base, as took account of their expenses, and he extolled and admired his Uncle *Caius*, for spending in so short a time so vast sums, as had been hoarded up by *Tiberius*. To *Tiridates* that came to *Rome* to take the *Diadem* from his hands, he allowed an incredible sum for his daily expenses, and as profusely gratified him at his departure. He put on no garment twice, plaid for vast sums at dice, fished with a golden net, when he journeyed any whither, he never had less than 1000 Caroches in his train, and he caused his mules to be shod with Silver. But his house exceeded all belief, having built it out of the ruins of the City. For length, for pleasantness of groves and fish-ponds it was incredible, garnished also with Gold and precious stones. To the madnesse of this expence he was encouraged by one that made him fair promises of discovering a vast treasure in *Africk*, which *Dido* the *Queen* flying out of *Tyre* should thence bring with her. But being deceived, as was likely, with fo foolish a project, he took such courses as became *Nero* to recruit his coffers.

38. When *Tiridates* was departed into *Armenia*, he went into *Greece*, there to act *Tragedies*, to sing, and run races in the Chariot. Running in the *Olympick Games*, although he fell from his Chariot, yet he was rewarded with a crown as Victor. He took from *Apollo* the *Cyrrhaean Territory*, and defaced the place whence they were wont to receive Oracles, killing men at the hole whence the blast came. He attempted to cut through the *Isthmus* of *Peloponnesus*, digging first himself, and carrying out the first basket of Earth upon his shoulders: but with the same success as others had before him. When he was in *Achaia* news came from *Cestius Gallus* President of *Syria* concerning the rebellion of the *Jews*. Being long vexed with the injuries of the *Deputies* and *Governours*, they could no longer contain themselves. *Christ's* blood lying heavy upon them, and crying for vengeance, they themselves executed part of it. For such robberies in the Country, such and so many murders in the City were committed, and such delusions by false Prophets prevailed amongst them, as after a wonderful manner turned their estate upside down, drew upon them the malice of their enemies, and demonstrated the high displeasure of Almighty God. The particular occasion of their rebellion was from *Florus* their *Governour*, who through the insinuations of his wife into *Poppaea* having procured that Office, carried himself as worthy of such a Master. He flew to that height of impudence and wickedness, as by a publick Crier to give free leave to rob and steal through the whole Country, on condition that he might have part of the booty. It was his design to provoke them to rebel, that his impieties might thereby be covered. After he and the Townsmen of *Casarea* had grievously abused such *Jews* as there lived, he

Vide Sueton. in  
Nerone c. 33, 34, 5.

Idem ibid. c. 31,  
& 32.  
Tacitus Annal.  
lib. 15. c. 42.

A. D. 67.  
V. C. 819.

Vide Josephum  
de bello Judaeo  
c. 2. c. 13.

he came to *Jerusalem* with an Army, rifled the *Forum*, plundered the houses, killed the Inhabitants, whipped and hung up several, who, though *Jews* born, were made *Knights of Rome*, and all under pretence that some had reviled him for his cruelty. Not content herewith, he persuaded the People of *Jerusalem* to go out to meet, in a courteous manner, certain Soldiers that were coming thither, to whom he sent, that they should not return their civility, that so they might be offended, and give out words, which advantage he commanded them to take, and fall upon them. This was performed, and many perished, whom the *Chief-priests* and others with lamentable intreaties had persuaded to go forth, hoping thereby to please the Tyrant, and prevent the mischief. From this violence sprung the War, in the twelfth year of *Nero's* reign, the seventeenth of *Agrippa*, the second of *Florus* his Government, the 819 of the City, and 67 after the birth of *Christ*, *C. Suetonius Paulinus* and *L. Pontius Telesinus* being *Consuls*.

Great slaugh-  
ters of them  
in several pla-  
ces.

They chuse  
themselves  
Captains.

39. Some of those that were most eager after rebellion, assaulted a Castle called *Massada*, and killing the *Romans* placed therein a Garrison of their own. And in the Temple *Eleazar* the son of *Ananias* the *High-Priest* Captain of the Guard and a forward young man, persuaded the People no more to offer the sacrifices which were wont to be offered for the good of the *Romans*. The *Chief-Priest* and Nobility dissuaded them all they could from rebellion, but profiting nothing, besought *Agrippa* and *Florus* to come and suppress the sedition betimes. *Florus* glad to hear such news, gave no answer. *Agrippa* sent 3000 Horse, which being received into the upper part of the City, the Rebels took the lower part with the Temple, and after some ado brake also into the upper quarters, burnt divers Palaces and publick houses, and then besieged the *Tower of Antony*, which having taken within two dayes, they put the Garrison to the sword. After this they laid siege to the *Kings Palace*, whither *Agrippa's* Souldiers being retired, upon their desire they were dismissed. But the *Romans* yielding upon the Faith of *Eleazar*, were all cut in pieces contrary to his word, except *Meslins* their Captain, who begging hard for his life, promised to be circumcized and turn *Jew*: and this was done on the *Sabbath-day* in *September*. On the same day were all the *Jews* of *Casarea* massacred by the inhabitants, to the number of above 200000, not one being left alive; for those that escaped were taken by *Florus*, and brought out bound to the People. Throughout all *Syria* the slaughters of the *Jews* were renewed. At *Alexandria* also a sedition being raised, 50000 *Jews* were slain in one day by two *Roman* Legions.

40. *Cestius Gallus* as soon as he heard of these motions, came with an Army into *Judea*, wherein taking some Towns he fate down before *Jerusalem*, at the *Feast of Tabernacles*. But though he might easily with a little patience have taken the City, yet raised he his siege, having neglected many opportunities. He departed to *Antipatriis*, losing many of his men by the way, that were cut off by the *Jews* who followed him close in the rear. With this success the *Jews* being elevated, created two Commanders to govern the City, viz. *Joseph* the son of *Gorion*, and *Ananus* the *High-Priest*: and they sent several Captains and Governours into the Country, amongst whom was *Joseph*, who wrote the history of this War. He fortified the several Towns of *Galilee*, and indured as great a conflict as to his own person, with divers, both there and at *Jerusalem*, (who envying him the honour of his command, would have had him turned out) as he did afterwards with the *Romans*. But *Cestius* sent to *Nero* then in *Achaia*, as we said, to let him understand the state of affairs, laying all the blame of the rebellion upon *Florus*.

41. *Nero* deliberating whom he should send into *Judea*, wanted *Corbala* whom he had killed. At length he pitched on *Vespasian*, who having been trained up in Martial matters all his youth, he thought him only capable of such a charge, though a little before grievously offended at him, for that he little regarded his singing (either departing from off the stage, or sleeping if there) he forbade him not only his presence, but also publicly to salute him.

LIIII 2

Vespasian sent  
against them.

Vindex and  
Galba conspire  
against Nero.

him. Hereupon he withdrew himself, and lurked out of the way in fear of his life; but Nero having now need of him, and not fearing him, because of the meanness of his birth and name, gave him this employment. Vespasian dispatched away his son Titus to Alexandria, thence to bring forces into Judea, and he himself passing the Hellespont into Syria gathered together the Roman Soldiers with supplies from the Princes, and came to Ptolemais, where Titus reached him sooner than was expected for the Winter season. Nero returning towards Rome in Triumphant manner, after he had been two years in Greece, C. Julius Vindex a Gall by birth, but of Senatorian degree amongst the Romans, incensed his Country-men against him, for that they groaned under his intolerable exactions, yet striving not for the Principality himself, he offered it to Ser. Sulpicius Galba an old Soldier, and now Governour of the Tarraconian Province in Spain, who, as well for his own safety, as to gratifie ambition, accepted of it. Nero being come to Naples heard of the conspiracy on that day he had killed his mother, & was then little moved at it; but seemed rather to rejoyce for the occasion that was thence offered to spoyl the rich Provinces of Gall. For though the Mathematicians had told him that he should be forsaken, yet he interpreted it of the losses sustained in Britain and Armenia; and some also promised him, though in this condition, the Empire of the East, and some by name the Kingdom of Jerusalem; but most affirmed that things would go well at this time. He took nothing to ill in all the opprobrious speeches of Vindex, as to be called an unskilfull Musician, &c, after the name of his family, Enobarbus; yet at length terrified by many messages he returned to Rome. Now had he most horrid projects in his head, as of killing the Captains and Governours of Provinces, with all the Exiles, and all of Gallish Original at Rome; of poisoning the whole Senate in feasting, burning the Citie, and letting loose wild beasts upon the people, thereby to hinder the quenching of the flames. From these things he was thought to be terrified more by despair of accomplishing them, than out of any repentance concerning his purpose. In preparing for his expedition his especial care was for the choice of carriages wherein to convey his Concubines and instruments for the stage.

42. When he heard of the revolt of the rest of the Armies, in a great rage taking some poyson with him in a Golden box, he left his house, and sending some of his trustiest servants to Ostia to make ready some ships, moved the Tribunes and Centurions of his Guard about flying with him; but some flaggering at it and hanging backwards, others flatly refused it. Then he considered whether he should not fly to the Parthian, or in an humble manner to Galba; or whether going to the Rostra in a mourning habit, he should not there ask pardon in as dolefull a manner as he could for what was past? but he was fearfull to be pulled in pieces ere he could reach the publick meeting-place; and put off those thoughts till the next day. At night finding his Guards withdrawn, he started out of his bed, and sending his friends about to their Lodgings, went also himself; but none would answer; so that he returned to his Chamber, whence his attendants also were now fled, having taken away the furniture, and removed out of the way the box of poyson. Then desired he that some one would kill him, but none attempting it, Then, saith he, I have neither Friend nor Enemy, and run down as to throw himself into Tiber. But stopping ere he came there, he desired some lurking hole wherein he might recover his spirits, and Phoon his Freedman offering him his assistance, he went with him to a Village four miles distant in a disguise, hearing as he passed the prayers of the people for his destruction. Here being called on to rid himself out of the way, and prevent the abuses which else would fall upon him, he ordered things to be prepared for his dead body, weeping, and adding, *Qualis Artifex perire? How excellent an Artist do I die?* Understanding at length that he was declared an Enemy by the Senate, and how he was sought for to be punished, *more majorum*, or after the custom of their Ancestors, and upon his enquiry hearing that this kind of death was to be stripped, and having his neck made fast in a Pillory to be whipped to death,

A. D. 69.  
Ol. 211. ann. 4.  
V. C. 821.

He killed  
himself.

Ecclesiastical  
matters in his  
time.

he called for two Daggers, the points of which he onely felt, and put them up again, pretending that his fatal hour was not yet come: He bade Poms lament and weep, and wished that some would help him by their own example to kill himself, chiding also himself for his backwardness. Certain horse-men now drawing near to fetch him alive, he at length effected it by the help of Epaphroditus his Freed-man, on the fourth of the Ides of June, having reigned 13 years, seven moneths, and 28 dayes, in the 32th of his age, and the 821 of the Citie, An. Dn. 68. C. Silius Italicus, and M. Valerius Traebalus being Consuls. Vespasian asked Apollonius what was Nero's overthrow? He answered, *Nero could touch and tune the Harp well* (noting his excessive delight in that Instrument) *But in government sometimes he used to wind the pins too high, sometimes to let them down too low.* The unequal, and untimely Enterchange of power Pressed too far, and Relaxed too much, destroyed authority above all things.

43. About the later end of Nero's second year St. Paul was sent bound to Rome by Festus, where he continued in durance two years. In his third year living at Rome in free custody, he wrote to the Ephesians, Philippians, Colossians, and Philemon. About the end of the fourth he seemeth to have been set at liberty, and thence to have returned into Greece and Asia, where for five or six years he established the Churches he had founded. In the eleventh year of Nero he is said to have suffered Martyrdom at Rome. For, Nero having set the Citie on fire, accused the Christians, as Tacitus writeth; and exposed them to ignominious deaths. Some he caused to be covered with the skins of wild beasts, that they might be devoured of Dogs, others to be Crucified, and others burnt alive, and that in the night, that they might give light to passengers. He offered his own Garden for this show, and celebrated the Circenian Games amongst the common sort in the habit of a Chariot driver, who could not have raged against Christianity as Tertullian observeth, but that some excellency was in it. In this First persecution, besides Paul, who was beheaded, and many others, Peter also was Crowned with Martyrdom; being Crucified as 'tis reported with his head downward, which kind of death himself desired, because he would die in a more dishonourable sort than his Lord and Master. But some will have St. Paul and Peter to have suffered Martyrdom in the last year of Nero's reign, and that on June the 29. insomuch that Chrysostome saith, that the day of Paul's death was more known than that of Alexander.

44. After the Martyrdom of James surnamed Just the First Bishop of Jerusalem (whom Eusebius (a) from Clemens reporteth to have been thrown down from a Pinnacle of the Temple, and brained with a Fuller's Club) who governed that Sea thirty years, Simon (b) Cleopas the Lords Cousin German, one of the 70 Disciples, and which saw Christ with his eyes, was chosen into his place by the Apostles, and Disciples themselves, being gathered together for this purpose. After the Martyrdom of Peter, (c) Linus one of the 70 Disciples, of whom Paul made mention, succeeded him in the Sea of Rome, where he continued Bishop twelve years, though some place his Martyrdom also in the last year of Nero, and the ninth before the Calends of October. Evodius one of the 70 Disciples, whom St. Paul remembered in his Epistles, was Bishop of Antioch, being by Eusebius said to be the first known to govern that Church. Him succeeded Ignatius (d) the Disciple of John, who wrote as they say to Mary the Mother of Christ, and Mary unto him again. He wrote unto John the Evangelist, and to Polycarpus his Disciple. Besides, he wrote sundry other notable Epistles, yet extant, and in the eleventh year of Trajan was brought to Rome, and torn in pieces of wild beasts, as will be shewn. Eusebius writeth that he was the second Bishop by succession after Peter in the Church of Antioch. When Nero had reigned the space of eight years, saith the Historian, first after Mark the Evangelist, Anianus took the government of the Church of Alexandria, a man both virtuous, and renowned in all respects.

Consule Lud.  
Cappellum in  
Hist. Ecclef.  
Illustrata.  
Tacitum An-  
nal. l. 15. c. 44.  
Euseb. Ecclef.  
Hist. l. 2. c. 25.  
& l. 3. c. 1.

(a) Ecclef. Hist.  
l. 2. c. 23.  
(b) Idem l. 3.  
cap. 11.

(c) Idem l. 3.  
c. 23, 19. &  
in Chron.

(d) Idem l. 3.  
c. 19, 32. &  
in Chron.  
Tritem.

## CHAP. III.

From the death of Nero to that of Domitian, the last of the family of Vespasian, the space of 27 years.

**1. GALBA** after the death of Nero obtained the Principality, yet not long; for being Emperor, he maintained not the opinion which had been conceived of him whilst a private man; for that he gave way to a cruel and covetous humour, acting all things according to the will and lust of three men whom the people thence called his *School-masters*. But his severity towards the Soldiers, especially that speech *Legi a se militem non emi*, procured his ruin, who upon the revolt of the Armies in upper Germany betrayed him to *M. Salvius Otho*, notwithstanding he had adopted *Piso*. He was murdered by them in the Forum near the place where *Curtius* rode into the hole, and his head being cut off, for some time was carried up and down on a spear, till his Enemies had with the sight satisfied their flouting appetite, and then it was buried with the body. He died on the 17th of the *Calends of February*, in the 73th year of his age, having reigned seven months.

Is murdered by his Soldiers.

Otho seizes on the Empire.

Being opposed by Vitellius,

He killed himself.

Vitellius owned as Emperor.

**2. Otho** seized on the Empire by the help of his Soldiers, having resolved it after he saw *Piso* preferred before him. He was Nero's great friend and companion, and now refused not to be called by his very name, suffered his Images and Statues robe restored, as also his Officers and Freed-men to their several places, and the first thing he subscribed to was for money to finish his golden house. But *A. Vitellius* was shortly after saluted Emperor in Germany by the Army there, being son to *L. Vitellius*, who governed Syria. Being sent into Germany by *Galba*, he denied nothing to the Soldiers, but granted them their wills, with impunity in all things, and for that was rewarded with this Election. Hereupon *Otho* desired the Senate that they would send to him, to acquaint him with his Election, and to persuade him to be quiet; but he himself by Letters offered to be onely partner with him in the Sovereignty, and to be his son-in-law. The Enemy drawing near, the *Prætorian* bands stood very faithfully to him, even so far, that with much ado, and with the slaughter of some of their Officers, were they kept from destroying the Senate, which they suspected to be false to him. His interest was to draw out the War in length, having the Enemy at advantage, who was straitened both for necessities, and by reason of the narrowness of the passage: But he rashly and imprudently resolved on a battle, either for that *Vitellius* was not yet come, or urged by the earnestness of the Soldiers. They had four engagements, whereof in the first three he had the better, but in the last at *Bedriacum* (a Village in Italy betwixt *Cremona* and *Verona*, now called *Labemcin*) was worsted; yet so as he might without difficulty have recovered himself, though taken at unware, and deceived by pretence of a parley. But being ashamed to seek his own establishment with the hazard of so many mens lives, rather than out of any desperation, he killed himself. He was much extolled for his generous death (as it was accounted) which rendered him so much more desirable than his life had done, that many thought him to have killed *Galba*, not so much out of the desire of rule, as to restore liberty so called to the Commonwealth. He died on the 12th before the *Calends of May*, in the 38th year of his age, and the 95th day of his Empire.

Tacitus Histor. lib. 1. Sueton in Galba.

Idem ibid. Tacitus Histor. lib. 2. Plutarch in Othone.

Tacitus Histor. l. 2. c. 3. Sueton in Vitellio.

**3. Otho** being dead, though *Vitellius* was detested by those at Rome, yet when they heard how things went they began to flatter, and gave him the title of Emperor. The Army of upper Germany which first mutined against *Galba* turning to him, he gladly received the surname of *Germanicus*, but deferred the title of *Augustus*, and utterly refused that of *Cæsar*. When yet in Gall he heard of the event of the battle at *Bedriacum*, he presently cashiered the *Prætorian* bands, as giving a bad example of revolt, and 120 which had demanded a reward of *Otho* for killing *Galba*, he commanded to be fought, and put to death. Hereby he much commended himself to the people,

People, and gave hopes of an excellent Prince; but carrying on all things afterwards according to his natural inclination and former course of life, he deserved to be ranked amongst the worst of Governours.

Is very vicious.

And cruel.

**4.** He returned to Rome in a triumphant manner, and gave up himself to luxury and excess, wherein he also tolerated his family and Soldiers, as in all manner of wickedness. Coming through the fields where the Armies fought, when many loathed the noisomness of the carriages, he stuck not to say, *Optime olere occisum hostem, & melius civem*; that *A slain Enemy smells well, but sweeter a Citizen*. He drunk much wine in the place before them all, to prevent any hurt that might proceed from the stench, and caused this liquor to be distributed to the Soldiers, with the like vanity and insolence. Entering the City as into a field with trumpets sounding to the charge, with colours flying, and in his coat-armour, he fell more and more into the neglect of all Laws, divine and humane. He made himself *Perpetual Consul*, and that it might be seen after whose pattern he meant to govern, in the *Campus Martius* attended by a number of Priests he sacrificed for the Soul of Nero; and at a solemn feast commanding a Musician to sing something of *Domitius*, he leaped up and applauded the beginning of Nero's songs. He governed State matters at the will and discretion of the vilest Player and chariot driver, especially of *Asiaticus* his Freed-man. He gave himself over to such luxury as he had been accustomed to in the days of *Caius* and *Nero*; especially to gluttony, the abominable excess whereof turned him into a very Monster. For, he would eat four or five meals a day, which that he might be able to bear, he used frequent vomiting; and inviting himself to the houses of his friends, he would, as *Nero* did, put them to incredible expenses. At his coming to Rome his brother made him a feast, wherein were served up 2000 several dishes of fish, the daintiest that could be found, and 7000 sorts of fowl. But he far exceeded this preparation at the Dedication of the *Great Platter*, which he called *Minerva's Target*, in which were mixed together the livers of *Guilt-heads*, brains of *Pheasants* and *Peacocks*, with the tongues of *Phanicopters*, and the small guts of *Sea-Lampries* fetched as far as the *Carpathian* Sea and the Straights of *Gibraltar*. He would also eat meat taken from the hearth in time of sacrifice, and fetched from Visiting houses, either smoking, made ready the day before, or half eaten.

**5.** He was prone to the killing of any person and for any cause whatsoever: Noble-men, his School-fellows and contemporaries, he deceitfully made away by degrees. To one in a Fever, desiring a draught of cold water, he gave poison in it with his own hands. He scarcely ever spared any of his creditors or others that asked him the money he ought. One of them saluting him, he sent away to be put to death, and presently again calling him back (for which the by-standers commended his clemency) he caused him to be killed before his eyes, saying, that *he would sate his eyes with the slaughter of him*; and another that interceded for him, he put to death with his two sons. A certain Knight whom he commanded to be slain, to save his life, told him he had made him his heir, whereupon he commanded his will to be produced, in which finding that the man's Freedman was made coheir with him, he caused them both to be put to death. He was most cruel towards *Mathematicians*, because they foretold his reign would be but short. And to complete all, he was suspected to have killed his mother. These vices onely seemed to put him in mind of his condition, for else so great a stupidity had seized on him, that if others had not known him to be the Prince, he himself would quickly have forgot it. He accounted all sharp that was wholesome, liking of nothing but what was pleasant; and fortifying himself onely with mirth and fortitude against all dangers, he forgot all things past, and regarded nothing present or to come: not a word of War proceeded from him, the rumour and talk of which was forbidden in the City. But he was within a short time roused by the coming of the forces of *Vespasian*, who was by others put upon seeking the Empire, being then *Judea*.

Vespasian put upon seeking the Empire.

**6. Vespasian** (that we may now prosecute the History of his actions in that Country)

His acts in  
Judæa.

Country) after *Titus* had brought the Army to *Ptolemais* out of *Egypt*, *Josephus de bello lib. 3. c. 5.* with his forces united set upon *Galile*, and at the first onset took *Gadara*, which was burnt and destroyed. Thence removing to *Jotapata*, on the 21 day of *May* he took it by storm after 40 dayes, though stoutly defended by *Joseph* the Historian. *Joseph* was taken and kept to be sent prisoner to *Nero*, but desiring to speak with *Vespasian*, foretold him that he should loose him out of captivity, but as *Emperour*. After this, bestowing his Armie at *Cæsarea* and *Scythopolis*, to refresh the Legions, he himself went to *Cæsarea Philippi*, where he was entertained by *Agrippa* the King for twenty dayes. Then went he about to subdue *Tiberias* and *Tarichæa*, whereof the former yielded, and was spared at the request of the King, but the later was taken by force and destroyed. After this were *Gamala*, *Giscala*, and the Hill *Iraburium* taken, and all *Galile* being reduced, *Vespasian* and *Titus* returned to *Cæsarea*. *Idem l. 4. c. 1, 2, &c.*

The Jews fall  
out amongst  
themselves.

7. The Jews were now imbroyled in civil dissensions, whilst some desired Peace, and others would not hear a word of it. Parties were made and fought in every City, and rash young men prevailed every where against the grave and elder sort, who foresaw the calamity. At first they robbed one another singly; but at length turned thieves, in whole troops committing such cruelties, as equalled the misfortune received from the Romans. At last the thieves loaded with plunder brake into *Jerusalem*, where they not onely consumed the provisions of the People, but filled the City with slaughters, rapines, and dissensions. They cast the principal of the Citizens into prison, and then put them to death unheard, pretending that they intended to betray the City to the Romans; yet for all this wickednesse they boasted of zeal for the Law of God, and customs of their Country, and thereupon were called *Zealots*. The People being about to rise against them, they betook themselves to the Temple, where they made one *Phanias* an ignorant fellow *Hierophiest*, though he was not of the order of *Priests*; but they were opposed by *Ananias*, who procured the People to rise against them, and beat them into the inner part. Hereupon they sent to the *Idumeans*, accusing *Ananias* of an intention to betray their Country, and forasmuch as they fought for the liberty thereof, and now were besieged, they implored their assistance. Twenty thousand came, and being let into the City, together with the *Zealots*, committed horrid outrages against the Inhabitants. They slew 8000 the first night, and afterwards other 1200 of the chieftest, (amongst whom was *Ananias*) besides an infinite number of the common sort: then at length the *Idumeans* perceiving the wickednesse of the *Zealots*, and that they had falsely accused the Nobility, set at liberty 2000 which they had imprisoned, and returned home. After their departure the *Zealots* renewed their slaughters, and ragged more cruelly than ever, especially against such as they had found attempting to flye to the Romans. *Idem l. 5. c. 3, 4, 5, 6, &c.*

Horrid outrages com-  
mitted by the  
*Zealots*.

All Judæa  
languisheth  
in an un-  
heard-of man-  
ner.

8. But they presently after fell out amongst themselves, by reason of one *John*, who with a seditious party holding *Giscala*, pretended to receive the conditions given him by *Titus*, and stole away to *Jerusalem*. There becoming the great Incendiary, he now affected sovereign power; but he was withstood by such as before this had been equal to him. Though they thus disagreed, yet herein they consented, to spoil the People; and *Jerusalem* being thus filled with tumults, those that were without the City had liberty to rob and spoil, and those whose Towns were hereby destroyed, assembled together in the Wilderness, and uniting, brake into other Temples and Towns; so that there was no place in *Judæa*, which did not languish in an unheard-of manner together with the mother City. *Vespasian* excited by the seditious, and intreated by the fugitives to save their Country, prepared for the siege of *Jerusalem*, and that he might not leave an Enemy at his back, took in *Gadara* (where 13000 were put to the sword) and all other places beyond the River, except the Castle of *Macheron*. He built Castles at *Jericho* and *Adida*, and made all things ready for the siege; but hearing of *Nero's* death, and the succession of *Galba*, he deferred the Expedition, and sent *Titus*

*Vespasian* sub-  
dueth all, ex-  
cept three  
Castles and  
*Jerusalem*.

The Armies  
in the East  
declare for  
*Vespasian*.

*Vitellius* is to  
seek what to  
do.

*Titus* to know *Galba's* pleasure. But as *Titus* sailed by *Achaia* he heard of his end, and *Otho's* advancement, whereupon he returned to his Father. Uncertain what would ensue, and who should be Emperour, they neglected the Warre against the Jews, for they feared their own Country, and therefore thought it an unfit time to assault strangers. Yet he drew out his Army from *Cæsarea*, and subdued all forts of *Judæa* save three Castles, *Herodium*, *Masada*, and *Macheron*, which were kept by the thieves. Besides these *Jerusalem* onely remained to be conquered.

9. *Vespasian* hearing of *Otho's* death, and having compassion on the State, thought of freeing the Commonwealth from the tyranny of *Vitellius*; but for that it was now Winter, and he was at a great distance from *Rome*, he strove to conceal that indignation which he had conceived. But *Mucianus* President of *Syria* perswaded him to it very earnestly: certain Soldiers also who were removed out of *Syria* into *Mæsia*, giving him large commendations, the three Legions which proceeded as far as *Aquileia* to help *Otho*, resolved to proceed, notwithstanding his death, and put *Vespasian's* name into their Colours. First of all others, *Tiberius Alexander* Governour of *Egypt*, on the first of *July* swore the Legions to him, and two daies after the Army in *Judæa*, compelling him with threats to take the Government upon him, took the oath. The Armies then in several Provinces declaring for him, he sent *Mucianus* with forces into *Italy*, and went himself to *Alexandria*, to make sure of *Egypt*. The *Mælian* Legions hearing of *Mucianus* his coming, chose *Antonius Primus* an excellent Soldier (who had been banished by *Nero*, and restored by *Galba*) for their Captain, and halted for *Italy*, that they might have the plunder of the Country. *Cacina* (otherwise called *Alisennus*) the General of *Vitellius*, made haste and got to *Cremona* before them; but considering the effeminatenesse of his Army, he hearkned to the friendly advice sent him by *Antonius*, and perswaded his Soldiers, by laying before them the weaknesse of *Vitellius*, and the force of his adversary, to revolt. They accordingly sware fealty to *Vespasian*, but presently repenting, cast bonds upon their General as a traitor, and exhorted even *Antonius* to embrace the quarrel of *Vitellius*; then coming to blows, though they wanted a Leader, maintained a most sharp fight, both parties being possessed with such fury, as night it self could not sever them. They knew and talked to one another, nay intermitting the fight for some time, give victuals one to another, and yet after their repasts fell to it again. But in a morning the Soldiers of the third Legion saluting according to the fashion, the rising Sun, *Vitellius* his men thought *Mucianus* was arrived, and thereupon betook themselves to *Cremona*, where loosing *Cacina*, they procured him to make their Peace, and the *Mælian* Army entering the Town made great disorder.

10. *Vitellius* hearing of this was amazed, and not knowing what to do, became ridiculous unto all men; for his affairs went down the wind in all places. He covenanted then with *Flavius Sabinus* the brother of *Vespasian* for his own safety, and presently after at the stairs of the Palace, before many Soldiers, professed he would give up the Empire, which he had unwillingly taken upon him. But the Soldiers crying out against it, he deferred the thing, and in the morning went to the *Rostrum* in a mourning habit, where with many tears out of a paper he uttered the same words he had before spoken to the Soldiers, who again interrupting him, the People bad him be of good cheer, and promised him their assistance. Taking courage hereat, he forced *Sabinus* (who was Governour of the City) with others into the Capitol, which setting on fire he suppressed them, *Sabinus* being put to death, whose nephew *Domitian* (afterwards Emperour) was hid by the Priest of *Jupiter's* Temple and escaped. Then would he have had the Senate send Ambassadors to the Enemy with the *Vestal Nuns* to beg Peace, or at least so much time as to consider what was to be done. But *Vespasian's* Soldiers enraged at the report of the besieging of the Capitol, made haste. *Petilius Cerealis* being sent before with a thousand Horse set upon the City, but was forced to retreat. *Antonius Primus*

*Tacitus Histor. lib. 3, & 4. Sueton in Vitellio, & Josephus de bello Judaico l. 5. c. 10, 12, 13, 14.*

M m m m m Primus

*Primus* coming on with the rest of the Army, many skirmishes hapned, till such time as the Guards being beaten from off the bridge *Vespasian's* men entered the Citie with great fury, wherein they committed grievous outrages. *Vitellius* was pulled out of an hole in the Palace where he lurked, at first unknown; but being discovered, he desired he might be kept in prison, for that he had something to reveal, which concerned the safety of *Vespasian*. But his hands being tied behind him, and an halter cast about his neck, he was dragged half naked into the Market-place, and abused in the way, both by many words and deeds, was killed with many blows, and cast after the fashion of Traitors into *iber*. This hapned in the 57th year of his age, after he had held the Government eight moneths, and five dayes. The day following

A. D. 70;  
O. 212. 221.  
V. C. 822.

Is killed.

*Vespasian* ere his departure from Egypt ordered his son *Titus* to besiege *Jerusalem*.

Commotions in Germany.

*Mucianus* entered the Citie, and the Soldiers being hindred from any further slaughters, the Empire was by the Senate decreed to *Vespasian*, who hearing these things at *Alexandria*, receiving congratulatory Embassies from all quarters, and having settled affaires in *Egypt*, ere he set forward for *Rome*, ordered his son *Titus* to set upon *Jerusalem*, and finish the War in *Judea*.

11. Whilest *Vespasian* and *Vitellius* were yet disputing the controversie, great commotions hapned in *Germany*, the *Barbarians* (now Inhabitants of *Holland* in the Low-Countrys) rebelling first at the instigation of *Claudius Civilis*, the most eminent amongst them, who having been sent prisoner in Chains unto *Nero*, and dismissed by *Galba*, came into danger again under *Vitellius*, the Army requiring that he should be put to death. He drew into the conspiracy, besides the *Caninafales* (a more inconsiderable people inhabiting the same Island) by secret mesages the Auxiliaries of *Britain*, and the *Barbarian* Cohorts, which then quartered at *Mogontiacum*, now *Mentz*. They cast out, or destroyed the *Roman* Garrisons, overthrew *Aquilinus* Captain of the Vanguard, and after him *Mumius Lupercus* the Lieutenant. *Herennius Gallus* also endeavouring to hinder the march of the *Barbarian* Cohorts, was worsted by them. *Civilis* after the coming of the Cohorts, to colour the matter, swore his Soldiers to *Vespasian*, and besieged such as refused in the old Camp. After this the *Romans* mutining against *Hordenus*, the command was given to *Vocula*, and *Herennius Gallus* was made his Lieutenant. *Vocula* in his first engagement with *Civilis* had the worst, but at length by good hap overthrew him, the Vizard of his friendship to *Vespasian* being drawn off.

12. The report of *Vitellius* his death through *Germany* and *Gall* doubled the War. For now *Civilis* without any pretence of friendship to *Vespasian*, carried himself as an Enemy to the *Romans*, and *Vitellius* his Soldiers rather wished for external servitude than his Government: the *Galls* also took heart, interpreting the burning of the *Capitol* to presage the destruction of the Empire. The *Treviri* therefore (now Inhabitants of *Triers*) and the *Lingones* (now of *Langres*) revolted, when all *Gall* was in a tottering condition, and what was worse, and unheard of, the Legions proved unfaithfull, and were corrupted. For *Vocula* being slain, they took an Oath for the Empire of *Gall*, and to them other Legions in several places joyned themselves, some being besieged upon necessity, and afterwards cut in pieces by *Civilis* as they had deserved. In the mean time *Julius Sabinus* one of the revolvers taking on him the name of *Cesar*, led a great and disorderly Company against the *Sequani* (inhabiting the Countrey now called *La Franche Comté*) who not refusing battel routed the multitude, and put him to flight. These things being reported at *Rome* rather with improvement, all things seemed there to be lost, whereupon *Domitian* the son of *Vespasian*, and *Mucianus*, addressed themselves to the War, and four Legions were presently dispatched away towards *Germany*.

13. By this time the *Galls* by the means especially of *Julius Vindex*, began to consider of the power of the *Romans*, and at length approved rather of a servile peace than a dangerous War; *Petilius Cerealis* also gave the *Treviri* a great overthrow, and most of the revolvers returned to obedience.

After

Composed by *Petilius Cerealis*.

After this he accepted of battel from *Civilis* and *Classicus* his companion, in the beginning whereof he had the worst, for the Legions began to be broken, the horse was put to flight, and the bridge over the River *Mosella* gained by the Enemy; but though he had now lost even all for want of heed, yet he restored all by his diligence, so as on the same day he took, and destroyed the Enemy's Camp. *Domitian* and *Mucianus* heard of the successe ere they came to the *Alps*, and *Mucianus* perswaded *Domitian* against marching further, knowing his ambitious and naughty humour, which he had already betrayed whilest at *Rome*; but his advice succeeding not, he went with him out of compliance to *Lyons*, whence, as 'tis said, *Domitian* wrote privately to *Cerealis* to deliver up the Army to him, that he might therewith seize on the Empire. But perceiving he was despised for his youth, he betook himself to such courses whereby he thought that his designs might best be covered. During these stirs *Vespasian* was yet at *Alexandria*. Afterwards both *Civilis* recruited his Forces through *Germany*, and *Cerealis* also doubled his strength, whereupon followed several fights, the effect of which was a Peace. For the *Barbarians* were so chafed, as glad they were to accept of it, as *Civilis* of pardon, both of which were offered by the *Roman* General.

The invasion of the *Sarmatians*.

14. With the aforefaid revolt of the *Germans*, at the same time, saith \* *Josephus*, agreed the boldnesse of the *Scythians*. For those that are called *Sarmatæ*, in great multitudes having privily passed over *Ister*, being violent, and most cruel, through the suddennesse of their invasion killed many of the *Romans* whom they found in Garrisons, with *Foncius Agrippa* the Lieutenant (who valiantly resisted them) and wasted all the adjacent Countreys with fire and sword. *Vespasian* hearing of this, and the wasting of *Masæa*, sent *Rubrius Gallus* to chastize them, by whom many being slain, such as escaped returned home in great fear. The War being thus ended, the General taking care for the future, fortified the places with stronger Garrisons, that the passage might be utterly impassable to the *Barbarians*. These first eruptions of the *Barbarous* Northern Nations are therefore more to be noted, because at length they over-ran and destroyed the *Roman* Empire. Now return we to the affairs of the *Jews*, and the War managed by *Titus*.

The Zealots fall out amongst themselves.

15. During the former transactions in the *Jesse*, a faction was raised against the Zealots by one *Simon* the son of *Giora*, who getting together a company of Thieves and Murderers that were assembled on the Hilly Countrey, fell upon many Villages and Cities, brought all *Idumea* into his power, wasted *Judea*, pitched his Camp against *Jerusalem* itself, and became a great terror to the poor Inhabitants, who were most cruelly oppressed by the Zealots within. In the mean time such *Idumeans* as had of late fled into the Citie, and were become of *John's* party (whom the Zealots had now chosen their Captain) fell at odds with him, deriding his cruelty, and killing many of his men, forced the Tyrant out of his Palace into the Temple; but he, and the Citizens fearing that by night he might fall out upon the Citie, they set in *Simon*, and then set upon the Temple, but in vain. After this *Eleazar*, who once had been chief amongst the Zealots, envying *John* his power, withdrew some Soldiers from him, and kept the inward part of the Temple, whereby *John* was forced to fight, both against *Simon* and him. Hereby all things about the Temple were burnt up, and Provisions destroyed, which might have served them a long time, and for want whereof they were oppressed with famine in the siege.

*Titus* besiegeth the Citie.

15. But *Titus* in prosecution of his fathers orders came from *Alexandria* to *Cæsarea*, where gathering together some forces with aids from the Neighbouring Kings, he appointed the rest to follow him, and marched towards *Jerusalem*, accompanied with *Tiberius Alexander*, (who now began to be in principal favour) and *Joseph* the Jew being for the truth of his prediction now released out of bonds. He sat down within six or seven furlongs of the Citie, a little before the Feast of the *Pasche*, and therein shut up an infinite multitude, which according to the custom flocked to that so-

M m m m 2

lemnity;

\* De bello Judaico lib. 7. cap. 23.

*Josephus de bello Judaico lib. 5. cap. 9. & l. 6. c. 1.*

*Idem Ibid. & cap. 2. 3. 4.*



*Primum* coming on with the rest of the Army, many skirmishes hapned, till such time as the Guards being beaten from off the bridge *Vespasian's* men entered the Citie with great fury, wherein they committed grievous outrages. *Vitellius* was pulled out of an hole in the Palace where he lurked, at first unknown; but being discovered, he desired he might be kept in prison, for that he had something to reveal, which concerned the safety of *Vespasian*. But his hands being tied behind him, and an halter cast about his neck, he was dragged half naked into the Market-place, and abused in the way, both by many words and deeds, was killed with many blows, and cast after the fashion of Traitors into *Tiber*. This hapned in the 57th year of his age, after he had held the Government eight moneths, and five dayes. The day following *Mucianus* entred the Citie, and the Soldiers being hindred from any further slaughters, the Empire was by the Senate decreed to *Vespasian*, who hearing these things at *Alexandria*, receiving congratulatory Embassies from all quarters, and having settled affaires in *Egypt*, ere he set forward for *Rome*, ordered his son *Titus* to set upon *Jerusalem*, and finish the War in *Judea*.

Is killed.

*Vespasian* ere his departure from *Egypt* ordered his son *Titus* to besiege *Jerusalem*.

Comotions in Germany.

11. Whilest *Vespasian* and *Vitellius* were yet disputing the controversie, great commotions hapned in *Germany*, the *Batavians* (now Inhabitants of *Holland* in the Low-Countreys) rebelling first at the instigation of *Claudius Civilis*, the most eminent amongst them, who having been sent prisoner in Chains unto *Nero*, and dismissed by *Galba*, came into danger again under *Vitellius*, the Army requiring that he should be put to death. He drew into the conspiracy, besides the *Caninafales* (a more inconsiderable people inhabiting the same Island) by secret messages the Auxiliaries of *Britain*, and the *Batavian* Cohorts, which then quartered at *Mogontiacum*, now *Mentz*. They cast out, or destroyed the *Roman* Garrisons, overthrew *Aquilinus* Captain of the Vanguard, and after him *Mummus Lupercus* the Lieutenant. *Herennius Gallus* also endeavouring to hinder the march of the *Batavian* Cohorts was worsted by them. *Civilis* after the coming of the Cohorts, to colour the matter, sware his Soldiers to *Vespasian*, and besieged such as refused in the old Camp. After this the *Romans* mutining against *Hordanius*, the command was given to *Vocula*, and *Herennius Gallus* was made his Lieutenant. *Vocula* in his first engagement with *Civilis* had the worst, but at length by good hap overthrew him, the Vizard of his friendship to *Vespasian* being drawn off.

12. The report of *Vitellius* his death through *Germany* and *Gall* doubled the War. For now *Civilis* without any pretence of friendship to *Vespasian*, carried himself as an Enemy to the *Romans*, and *Vitellius* his Soldiers rather wished for external servitude than his Government: the *Galls* also took heart, interpreting the burning of the *Capitol* to presage the destruction of the Empire. The *Treviri* therefore (now Inhabitants of *Triers*) and the *Lingones* (now of *Langres*) revolted, when all *Gall* was in a tottering condition, and what was worse, and unheard of, the Legions proved unfaithfull, and were corrupted. For *Vocula* being slain, they took an Oath for the Empire of *Gall*, and to them other Legions in several places joyned themselves, some being besieged upon necessity, and afterwards cut in pieces by *Civilis* as they had deserved. In the mean time *Julius Sabinus* one of the revolvers taking on him the name of *Cesar*, led a great and disorderly Company against the *Segnani* (inhabiting the Countrey now called *La Franche Comté*) who not refusing battel routed the multitude, and put him to flight. These things being reported at *Rome* rather with improvement, all things seemed there to be lost, whereupon *Domitian* the son of *Vespasian*, and *Mucianus*, addressed themselves to the War, and four Legions were presently dispatched away towards *Germany*.

13. By this time the *Galls* by the means especially of *Julius Vindex*, began to consider of the power of the *Romans*, and at length approved rather of a servile peace than a dangerous War; *Petilius Cerealis* also gave the *Treviri* a great overthrow, and most of the revolvers returned to obedience.

After

A. D. 70;  
O. 12. an. i.  
V. C. 822.

Tacitus Histor.  
lib. 4.

Idem ibid.

Composed by  
*Petilius Cerealis*.

After this he accepted of battel from *Civilis* and *Classicus* his companion, in the beginning whereof he had the worst, for the Legions began to be broken, the horse was put to flight, and the bridge over the River *Mosella* gained by the Enemy; but though he had now lost even all for want of heed, yet he restored all by his diligence, so as on the same day he took, and destroyed the Enemy's Camp. *Domitian* and *Mucianus* heard of the successe ere they came to the *Alps*, and *Mucianus* periwaded *Domitian* against marching further, knowing his ambitious and naughty humour, which he had already betrayed whilest at *Rome*; but his advice succeeding not, he went with him out of compliance to *Lyons*, whence, as 'tis said, *Domitian* wrote privately to *Cerealis* to deliver up the Army to him, that he might therewith seize on the Empire. But perceiving he was despised for his youth, he betook himself to such courses whereby he thought that his designs might best be covered. During these fits *Vespasian* was yet at *Alexandria*. Afterwards both *Civilis* recruited his Forces through *Germany*, and *Cerealis* also doubled his strength, whereupon followed several fights, the effect of which was a Peace. For the *Batavians* were so chastized, as glad they were to accept of it, as *Civilis* of pardon, both of which were offered by the *Roman* General.

The invasion of the Saxons.

14. With the afore said revolt of the  *Germans*, at the same time, saith \* *Josephus*, agreed the boldnesse of the *Scythians*. For those that are called *Sarmatae*, in great multitudes having privily passed over *Ister*, being violent, and most cruel, through the suddennesse of their invasion killed many of the *Romans* whom they found in Garrisons, with *Fonstius Agrippa* the Lieutenant (who valiantly resisted them) and wasted all the adjacent Countreys with fire and sword. *Vespasian* hearing of this, and the wasting of *Masfa*, sent *Rubrius Gallus* to chastize them, by whom many being slain, such as escaped returned home in great fear. The War being thus ended, the General taking care for the future, fortified the places with stronger Garrisons, that the passage might be utterly impassable to the *Barbarians*. These first eruptions of the *Barbarous* Northern Nations are therefore more to be noted, because at length they over-ran and destroyed the *Roman* Empire. Now return we to the affairs of the *Jews*, and the War managed by *Titus*.

The Zealots fall out amongst themselves.

15. During the former transactions in the *West*, a faction was raised against the *Zealots* by one *Simon* the son of *Giora*, who getting together a company of Thieves and Murderers that were assembled on the Hilly Countrey, fell upon many Villages and Cities, brought all *Idumea* into his power, wasted *Judea*, pitched his Camp against *Jerusalem* it self, and became a great terror to the poor Inhabitants, who were most cruelly oppressed by the *Zealots* within. In the mean time such *Idumeans* as had of late fled into the Citie, and were become of *John's* party (whom the *Zealots* had now chosen their Captain) fell at odds with him, detesting his cruelty, and killing many of his men, forced the Tyrant out of his Palace into the Temple; but he, and the Citizens fearing that by night he might fall out upon the Citie, they set in *Simon*, and then set upon the Temple, but in vain. After this *Eleazar*, who once had been chief amongst the *Zealots*, envying *John* his power, withdrew some Soldiers from him, and kept the inward part of the Temple, whereby *John* was forced to fight, both against *Simon* and him. Hereby all things about the Temple were burnt up, and Provisions destroyed, which might have served them a long time, and for want whereof they were oppressed with famine in the siege.

*Titus* besiegeth the Citie.

15. But *Titus* in prosecution of his fathers orders came from *Alexandria* to *Casarea*, where gathering together some forces with aids from the Neighbouring Kings, he appointed the rest to follow him, and marched towards *Jerusalem*, accompanied with *Tiberius Alexander*, (who now began to be in principal favour) and *Joseph* the Jew being for the truth of his prediction now released out of bonds: He sate down within six or seven furlongs of the Citie, a little before the Feast of the *Passeover*, and therein shut up an infinite multitude, which according to the custom flocked to that solemnicity;

\* De bello Judaico lib. 7. cap. 23.

*Josephus de bello Judaico lib. 5. cap. 9. & l. 6. c. 1.*

Idem Ibid. & cap. 2, 3, 4.

lemnity; and hereby all Provisions were consumed in a short time. The three factions upon fight of his great Army agreed to oppose it, and issuing out, made great disorder, forcing the Romans to forsake their Camp, and fly to the Mountains; but they were repelled by the great care and industry of *Titus*. But on the day of *unleavened bread* (*April* the 14) *Eleazar*, who kept the inward part of the Temple, opening the Gates to the people, which was desirous to sacrifice, *John* sent many of his party in amongst the rest with swords hid under their Cloaths, who killing *Eleazar*, and many of his faction, seized also on that part of the Temple, and thereby the number of the factions was reduced to that of two. That under *John* consisted of 8400. and the other under *Simon* of 10000 fighting men besides 5000 *Idumeans*. Notwithstanding the Enemy was at the Walls, and to oppose him, they a little joyned together; yet did they break out the one upon the other, and the poor people miserably suffered under both.

*Idem ibid.*  
& *Tacitus*  
*Hist. l. 5. c. 12.*

*Josephus de*  
*bello l. 6. c. 7.*  
8, 9, 10, 11.

Breaking in-  
to it.

16. The Citie being fortified with three Walls on every side, but where it was fenced with deep Valleys, *Titus* having with much opposition placed his Engines, battered the uttermost of them, and breaking, on the third of *May* into the Citie, possessed all the North part as far as the *Tower of Antonius*, and the *Valley of Cedron*. Five dayes after, he brake within the second Wall, though the besieged made divers sallies. They beat him out again, but the fourth day after he recovered the place, and prepared for the battery of the third Wall. Yet he sent *Joseph* the *Historian* to them, who exhorting them with many words to yield, was entertained onely with scoffs and reproaches. The people thinking to escape out of the Citie, *John* and *Simon* stopped up all passages; yet the famine increasing many came out, whom being taken *Titus* caused to be Crucified to such a vast number that room was wanting for Crosses, and Crosses for persons. On the 12th of *May* he began four Mounts whereon to place his battering rams: two near to the *Castle Antonia*, where he hoped he might take the Temple, and other two near the *Monument of John* the High-Priest, where he thought he should with most ease break into the upper part of the Citie. But *John*, whose part it was to oppose the Romans in the former place, cast down, and burnt them two; and two dayes after *Simon* did as much by the other, though seventeen dayes had been spent in making them all. He destroyed also many rams and engines, and brake into the very Camp of the Romans; but was repelled by *Titus* from *Antonia*, who in a Council of Officers resolved now to compass the whole Citie with a trench, which with incredible diligence and celerity was finished in three dayes, with thirteen forts to hinder the flight of the besieged, and hinder the conveyance of relief into the Citie.

Famine rag-  
geth.

17. The seditious were nothing herewith moved, though the famine not only raged amongst the common sort, but themselves also were pressed by it. A certain Noble woman sod her child to eat it, and such a mortality ensued, that from the fourteenth of *April* to the first of *July* were caried out to be buried at the publick charge 115080 carkeises of the poorer sort, as *Titus* was told by one *Mannius*, who was appointed to pay the money. Divers Noble men that fled to him, certified him also that 600000 of the ordinary sort were cast dead out of the gates, and others that were dead besides, were innumerable; for because they could not cary all out, they laid them up in houses. A bushel of corn was sold for a talent, sinks and holes were raked to find old dung of Oxen to eat, which much moved the Romans to compassion, but the seditious were hereby nothing changed. For *Simon* not obtaining from murders and rapines, notwithstanding this lamentable condition, killed *Matthias* the High-Priest, by whom he had been let into the Citie, with his three sons, and sixteen others, pretending that they purposed to flie to the Enemy. *Judas* one of his own Officers hereupon weary of his cruelty, attempted to betray a certain Tower, whereof he had the charge, to the Romans; but being discovered, was put to death with ten others of his complices. *John* also being driven by necessity, converted the Golden Vessels of the Temple with the sacred Money to prophane uses, and was con-

constrained to divide the Wine and Oil, ordained for Sacrifices, to his Soldiers.

Yet the de-  
luded defend-  
ants refuse  
to yield.

The Temple  
burnt.

*Titus* com-  
mandeth the  
Temple and  
Citie to be ut-  
terly razed.

18. *Titus* cut down all the groves within a great distance of the Citie, and causing more mounts or scaffolds to be erected within 21 dayes, on the first of *July* began to batter the wall of *Antonia*, *John* that opposed him being beateen back, and on the fift day broke into the Castle. At this time many false Prophets suborned by the seditious, told the multitude they must expect assistance from God, and therefore though *Titus* often exhorted them to yield, they flatly refused, boasting that they would rather endure all miseries. The contest was earnest about the Temple. The wall of the inward part thereof was too strong for the battering rams, and the defendants valiantly resisted at the top: the foundation of the gates could not be undermined, and therefore *Titus* was constrained to set them on fire. Yet was it his intention to save the Temple, but on the tenth of *August*, a certain soldier without any command, (nay against the command of his General) moved as by an instinct from above, cast fire into the buildings on the North side, which catching the flame imparted it to the Temple it self, notwithstanding all that *Titus* could do to quench it, on the same day of the same moneth that it was formerly set on fire by the command of *Nebuchadnezzar*. The Temple thus burning *Titus* was saluted *Imperator* by his Soldiers, and the Tyrants with their companions fled into the Citie. They now desired a parly with the General himself, who checked them much for their obstinacy, but promised them life if they would yield. But refusing to commit themselves to his fidelity, they required to depart the Citie with their wives and children; wherewith being greatly angered, he commanded to be proclaimed by a Crier, that They should not look any longer for mercy.

19. He permitted his Soldiers to plunder and burn the Citie; but the seditious wretches got to the *King's house*, where many had deposited their wealth, and thence repelled the Romans. They also killed of their own Country People to the number of 6400, and rising the money got them into the upper and strongest part of the Citie, called *Sion*, where for all this danger they still most cruelly tyrannized. *Titus* having considered the strength of the place, provided engines to batter the walls, and began so to do it on the seventh day of *September*. Part of the wall being broken down, the Tyrants were seized with great fear and amazement, not knowing what to do. Some said the East part of it was broken down, others that the Romans were entered, and that they saw them out of the Towers; so that the power of God appeared in the overthrow of these wretches; for they forsook the Towers which were their onely strength, and in vain seeking to escape, hid themselves in caves and privies. The Romans entering, put all to the Sword, and burnt the houses with all that fled to them for safeguard. *Titus* commanded both the Temple and Citie to be utterly razed by a plow brought over them, according to the custom; onely the West part of the wall with three Towers for their strength and beauty he preserved, to bear testimony of the flateliness of the Citie to posterity. They would have crowned him as a Conquerour for this work, but he refused the honour, denying he was the author of it, for that he onely served God herein, who by it demonstrated his wrath against the Jews. To such an end came this famous Citie, on the eighth day of *September*, in the second year of *Vespasian*, he and *Titus* his son being *Consuls*, 38 years after the death of *Christ*, the Blood of whom now fell heavy upon them. It had been taken in all six times; by *Asochans* or *Shishack* King of *Egypt*, *Nebuchadnezzar*, *Antiochus* Epiphanes, *Pompey*, *Herod* and *Sossus*, and now by *Titus*; but twice onely was it destroyed, viz. by *Nebuchadnezzar* and *Titus*. It was first built, saith *Josephus*, by *Melchisedeck* King of *Salem*, and afterwards enlarged by *David*. It was destroyed by the *Babylonians* 1468 years and six moneths after the founding of it, and 477 years and six moneths after it had been taken by *David* from the *Canaanites*. By *Titus Vespasian* it was destroyed 1179 years after *David* took it, but from it's first founding to it's last destruction intervened 2177 years.

20. *John*

*Idem l. 7. c. 1.*  
&c.

*Idem ibid.*  
c. 14, 15, 16,  
17, 18.

A. D. 71.  
Ol. 212. an. 2.  
V. C. 823.

20. John and Simon having hid themselves were taken, and the former being condemned to perpetual prison, the other was reserved for a Triumph. The rest of the thieves and seditious were discovered, one telling of another, and were all slain. Of those which during the whole War were taken captives the number amounted to 97000, and of those that perished in the siege to 110000. 'O heavy was the guilt which lay on them for the death of Christ, and such were the horrid enormities committed by them, that we have reason to agree with *Josephus*, who thought, that if the Romans had delayed to come against them, the City would either have been swallowed up of the Earth, or have perished by some Deluge, or else by Thunderbolts and Lightning have undergone the punishments of Sodom, whose Inhabitants they exceeded in wickedness. A year after was *Lucilius Bassus* sent Lieutenant into Judaea, who taking the Army of *Cerealis Vitellianus* took the Castle of Herodian and of Macharun beyond Jordan. Not long after *Vespasian* wrote to *Liberius Maximus* the Governour, to sell all the Land of the Jews, upon whom whosoever they lived he imposed a yearly tribute to be paid into the Capitol, it being that they were wont to pay into the Temple at Jerusalem. About a year after *Publius Sylva* succeeded *Bassus* then dead, and finished the War, taking the strong Castle of Massada from Eleazar, who held it with 960 hacksters, who upon his motion set fire on the Castle and all their goods, and then killed themselves. Many such as these flying out of the Country came to Alexandria in Egypt, where they solicited the Jews to revolt, but were by them delivered up to the Romans, and those of them that then escaped were afterwards taken. *Vespasian* hearing of their attempt, gave order to *Lupus* Governour of Alexandria, to demolish the Temple of the Jews (built in Egypt in times past by *Onias* brother of the High Priest) which he neglecting to do, onely spoiled it of some consecrated things, and shut it up. But *Paulinus* his Successor utterly bereaved it of all, and so shut it up, that he made it inaccessible, and without any shew of Religion, 343 years after it was first built by *Onias*.

Lib. 6. c. 16.

Idem l. 7. c. 25, 26, 28, 29, 30, 31.

The War finished by Sylva.

The Temple of the Jews in Egypt destroyed.

A sedition of the Jews in Cyrene.

The end of Josephus his History.

The Lex Regia renewed in behalf of Vespasian.

21. But the Jews of Cyrene were also infected with a distemper of madness. There one Jonathan a Weaver led many of the simple sort into the Wilderness, promising to shew them signs and wonders; but by the chieftest of the Jews the matter being discovered to *Caullus* Governour of those parts, he sent Soldiers who slew most of them, and not long after Jonathan himself was taken. *Caullus* a covetous man procured him and others to accuse many unjustly, whom having slain and seized on their estates, he carried him to Rome, where following the same trade, *Joseph* the Historian was also accused; but *Vespasian* having found out the deceit, caused Jonathan first to be whipped, and then burnt alive. *Caullus* at present escaped through the mildness of the Emperour, but not long after fell into grievous anguish of mind, imagining he saw the ghosts of those he had slain, and his bowels rotted away from him, that he died miserably. Thus far hath *Josephus* communicated to us the affairs of the Jews, who being kindly entertained by *Vespasian*, was honoured with a Statue, and his Books were thought worthy of the publick Library. For the truth of his History concerning the Wars, he had the testimony of the Emperours, King Agrippa, and others. *Titus* would have the certain knowledge of these Wars delivered unto the World by his Books onely, commanding them to be published with the privilege of his own hand. And King Agrippa wrote 62 Epistles, wherein he testified of the true History delivered by him. But his Jewish Antiquities he finished not till the thirteenth of Domitian, when he himself was 56 years old, as he testifieth at the end of that Work.

Vide Euseb. Eccles. Hist. l. 3. c. 9, 16.

Josephus contra Apionem lib. 1. &amp; Antiquit. l. ult. c. ult.

22. To *Vespasian* was renewed the Lex Regia, and the same power that *Augustus*, *Tiberius*, and the rest enjoyed was confirmed to him as hereditary. A fragment of this Law (which evinceth that absolute power we formerly proved to have been in the Emperours) is yet extant after this manner. Let it be lawful for him to make a League with whom he pleaseth, as it was lawful to Divus Augustus, Tiberius Julius Cæsar Augustus, and Tiberius Claudius

The Lex Regia renewed to Vespasian. Claudius Cæsar Augustus Germanicus, &c. As also to hold the Senate, make report, dismiss, and make Senatus Consulta by reporting and separation, as it was lawful to Divus Augustus, Tib. Julius Cæsar Augustus, Tib. Claudius Cæsar Augustus Germanicus. Moreover, when as by his will, authority, command, or mandate, or he being present the Senate shall be assembled, it shall be effectual to all ends and purposes, as if the Senate had been assembled or held by Law. Moreover, whomsoever he shall commend to the Roman Senate and People that stand for any Magistracy, power, command, or charge, or to whomsoever he shall give or promise his suffrage, let them be considered beyond the usual form in the Comitia. As also it may be lawful for him to enlarge the Pomarium if he think it convenient for the Commonwealth, so as it was lawful for Tib. Claudius Cæsar Germanicus. Moreover, whatsoever he shall think useful for the Commonwealth, or agreeable to the Majesty of all things divine or humane, publick or private, let him have right and authority to act and do, so as it was lawful for Divus Augustus, and Tiberius Julius Cæsar Augustus, and Tiberius Claudius Cæsar Augustus Germanicus. Moreover, from what Laws and Plebiscita it was ordained, that Divus Augustus, Tiberius Julius Cæsar Augustus, and Tiberius Claudius Cæsar Augustus Germanicus should be loosed, from those Laws and Plebiscita, let the Emperour Cæsar Vespasian be loosed. And what things sever, by what Law or asking sever Divus Augustus, Tib. Julius Cæsar Augustus, and Tiberius Claudius Cæsar Augustus Germanicus ought to do, let it be lawful for the Emperour Cæsar Vespasian Augustus to do them all. Moreover, what things sever before the asking of this Law were acted, done, decreed, or commanded by the Emperour Cæsar Vespasian Augustus, or by any other, by virtue of his command or mandate, let them be held as just and valid, as if they had been done by command of the People or Commons.

## The Sanction.

If any one by virtue of this Law hath done or shall do any thing against the Laws, asking of Laws (rogationes) Plebiscita or Senatus Consulta, or shall not do what he ought to have done according to any Law, asking, Plebiscitum or Senatusconsultum, and that by virtue of this Law, let no damage thence light upon him; neither let him owe any thing to the People for this matter, neither let any have an action against him, neither let any one judge him, nor permit the matter to be debated before him.

23. In the fourth year of *Vespasian*, *Cæseus Patus* President of Syria, accused *Antiochus* King of Comagena and *Epiphanes* his Son, as holding correspondence with the Parthian, whereupon order was given him to prevent what might ensue. *Patus* then invaded Comagena, which *Antiochus* quitted, being loth to fight, and fled into Cilicia. His sons also, after they had made some opposition, went to *Vologesus* into Parthia. But *Patus* procured *Antiochus* to be taken and sent to him bound towards Rome, yet *Vespasian* caused him to be loosed, and stay at Lacedæmon, where he allowed him a revenue to live like himself, and he afterwards sent for both him and his sons to the City, where they were magnificently entertained. About this time the Alani, who being Scythians inhabited about Tanais and the Lake Meotis, consulted with the King of the Hyrcanians who was Master of the Straights to invade Media, which they entered and sacked at their pleasure, *Pacorus* the King being forced up into a strong hold, and glad to redeem his wife and concubines with 100 Talents. From Media they passed into Armenia, and wasted the Country. *Tiridates* the King opposed them, but was near being taken alive in battel, for with his sword he cut in pieces the rope that was cast about his neck, as they were therewith drawing him amongst his Enemies, and escaped. But they enraged at his opposition wasted the Kingdom, and carrying great booty out of both Countries returned home.

Several acts of Vespasian.

24. *Vespasian* took away liberty from Achaia, Lycia, Rhodes, Byzantium, and Samus, reducing them into Provinces, as also Thrace, Cilicia, and

Ex tabula aenea in basilica Lateranensi alta palmos 9. lat. 5. digitos 3. crassa, in inscriptione Gruteri pag. 242. Et ex Antiqu. Epigrammatum libro apud Photomannum l. de Legibus Romanis.

Josephus de bello Judaico lib. 7. c. 27.

Patus gaineth Comagena.

The Alani invade Media and Armenia.

Several acts of Vespasian.

and *Comagena*, the King whereof he sent for to *Rome*, as we said before. *Cappadocia* now began to be over-run with barbarous Nations, to restrain whom he added Legions, and placed one of *Consular dignity* over it in room of a *Knight*. At length all Wars and tumults being suppressed both at home and abroad, he shut the Temple of *Janus* the sixth time from the foundation of the City. It was his principal care first to settle and establish the afflicted and tottering condition of the Empire, and then to adorn it. Whereas the City was very deformed by reason of the burning of it, he permitted any to build upon old plots, if the owners would relinquish them: he also re-edified the *Capitol*. As to his personal quality, he was of much temper and clemency, easily passing by and forgetting injuries. The meanness of his former condition he fought not to hide, but sometimes would profess it openly. He took not the *Tribunitial power*, nor title of *Father of his Country* for some time. If any innocent person were punished it was solely against his will, and for want of knowledge. He passed by the treason of many that had plotted his destruction, saying, *They were fools, and knew not what a weight and trouble the Empire was*: he wept and groaned at the punishment of an offender. To *Vologeses* King of *Parthia* who wrote to him thus: *Artaxerxes King of Kings to Fl. Vespasian*, without any reproof he directed his answer thus, *Fl. Vespasian to Artaxerxes King of Kings*. The onely vice reprehended in him was covetousness, and yet to that seeking earnestly for money, he was constrained through the necessities of the State. 'Tis certain he used it well however gotten, being very liberal in feasting, relieving impoverished Senators, and others of desert. He encouraged learning, and gave the first stipends out of the Exchequer to the Professors thereof. He was *Consul* eight times (besides once before he was Emperour) and in his last *Consulship* died of a flux, in the 69 year of his age, the tenth of his reign being completed; in the 832 of the City, A.D. 79, he himself the ninth time and *Titus Caesar* the seventh being *Consul*. He was the first Emperour whose successor was his own son. In his time flourished *Pliny* the elder and writer of the Natural History. Who also the same year that he died, whilst he went to see what might be the cause of the burning of the hill *Vesuvius*, was stifled with the smok thereof, and died, as *Pliny Junior* his nephew writes in his Epistle \* to *Trajan*. Now also *Quintilian* and other learned men were famous.

Orosius l.7.c.9.

Xiphilinus ex Dione.

\* Lib. 6. ep. 16.

Sueton in Tito, Eutrop l. 7. Orosius l. 7. c. 9. glij.

A.D. 79. V. c. 832. Titus 1.

His character.

His death.

And that of Pliny.

Titus succeeded him.

25. *Titus* his eldest son succeeded him (by whom *Jerusalem* had been taken, and destroyed) on the eighth of the *Calends* of *June*. He was born that year wherein *Caius* was slain, and brought up with *Britannicus* the son of *Claudius*, being instructed in the same things by the same Masters: he was thought also to have drunk some of the poyson which *Nero* gave to that Prince, and that this was the cause of his want of health some conjectured. He performed the Office of *Tribune* both in the Wars of *Germany* and *Britain* with great commendations, and after that, being *Quaestor*, came to have the command of a Legion in *Judea*. After his father came to the Government he was suspected by some, when he was yet in *Aegypt*, as intending to establish himself, whereupon he hastened to *Rome* to cut off all jealousies. Taking then part with his father in the publick cares, he triumphed with him over *Judea*, executed with him the *Censorship*, *Tribuneship*, and seven *Consulships*; nay taking as it were all upon him, he dictated letters in his fathers name, published edicts, spake in the Senate, and that in the room of the *Quaestor*, and took on him the Government of the *Palace*, which never had formerly been discharged but by some *Roman Knight*; and this Office he executed with such rigor, that he contracted much envy, and was accounted cruel. He was suspected of luxury, for feasting with voluptuous persons till midnight; of incontinency also, being (amongst other arguments) too familiar with *Berenice* the sister of *King Agrippa*, to which Lady he is also said to have promised marriage, but performed it not, because of the distaste of the People. Moreover rapacity was laid to his charge. Hee was both accounted and openly talked of as another *Nero*, and scarcely did any

any ever came with more fear or lesse favour to the Government.

26. But so contrarily to expectation did he behave himself, that his former carriage did but set him off with the greater lustre; and so free was he from all vice, and adorned with so many virtues, that he became the *Love and delight of mankind*, and by an happy exchange was so called. His temperance he shewed in the moderation of his diet, the choice of his companions, and putting away *Berenice*: his moderation by abstaining utterly from other mens goods, and refusing often ordinary benevolences, although no man ever exceeded him in munificence. He was the *Mirror of courtesy*, being wont to say, that no man should go sorrowful from the presence of the Prince; and on a day having done no courtesie for any man, he said, *Amici diem perdidit, My friends I have lost a day*. Several sad accidents hapned in his litle time; so great a Pestilence as seldom had been known. So great a fire there was in *Rome*, and kindled from Heaven, that it burnt three dayes together. *Vesuvius* also the hill in *Campania* burst forth with great flames, and destroyed all round about it; all which miseries he lessened as much as he could, neither sparing cost nor pains to relieve the distressed. At the same time another War arose in *Britain*, wherein *Cn. Julius Agricola* harrazed all the Country of the Enemies, and first of all the *Romans* that we know of, saith *Dio*\*, knew that *Britain* was compassed about by the sea. For certain Soldiers in a Sedition having killed their *Centurions* and *Tribunes* fled to their ships, and lanching out, sailed about that part of *Britain* which lieth toward the West, being caried by waves and wind: when they had done this, and by chance light upon the other Camp of the *Romans* on the other side, *Agricola* sent out others to hold the same course, from whom he also knew that it was an Island. These things being done in *Britain*, *Titus* was saluted *Imperator* the fifteenth time. *Agricola* passed the rest of his life in ignominie and poverty, because he had done greater things than were fuitable for a *Prætor*; and for that cause he was afterwards put to death by *Domitian*, though by the permission of *Titus* he had triumphed. But concerning these things *Tacitus* is rather to be consulted in the life of *Agricola*.

27. *Titus* put down informers, usually tolerated before. His mercy was too great; for he vowed he had rather perish than destroy another, as according to the judgment of some it came to passe. Amongst others that plotted his destruction, he not onely spared his brother *Domitian*, but had him in the same respect as from the beginning, and owned him as his partner and successor; onely betwixt them two he befought him with tears at length to relent to Love and Unity. He was a man of excellent parts, both outward and inward accomplishments; but to the great losse of man-kind, was presently taken away, whether by the treachery of his brother or no, is uncertain. In the beginning of his sickness he is said to have look'd up to Heaven, as taking it ill he should dye so soon, being not conscious to himself of any sin, save one, which as he did not expresse, so it is altogether unknown. He was with good reason sadly lamented throughout the *Provinces*. He died in the same Village his Father had ended his dayes, near the Country of the *Sabines*, in the 42 year of his age, when he had reigned two years, as many moneths, and twenty dayes; in the 834 year of the City, A.D. 81. *M. Plautius Silvanus*, and *M. Annius Verus* being *Consuls*.

Domitian his brother succeeded him.

He dieth.

28. *Domitian* (so called from *Domitilla* their mother) succeeded *Titus*, being more like to *Nero*, *Caligula*, or *Tiberius*, than either father or brother. His youth he passed disgracefully enough. Doubting upon the death of his father, whether he should not give a double donative to the Soldiers to obtain their good-will, he never feared to boast that he was left partner in the Empire by his father, but that his testament was corrupted. He never ceased to plot against his brother secretly or openly, and ere he was quite dead commanded him to be caried out as such. In the beginning of his reign he restrained himself; for his cruelty was then employed upon flies, which privately in a room hee was wont to catch and prick with a bodkin, so that oneasking whether any body was within with *Cæsar*? it was not unfirly answered

\* Apud Xiphil. in excerpt. l. 66.

Sueton &amp; Eutropius.

A. D. 81. V. c. 834. Titus 3.

At his beginning displeased his Vices.

swered by *Vibius Crispus*, No not so much as a *flie*. But though at present he strove to allay the fury of his vices by some forced virtue, yet within a while he let fall also this vizard, and became in appearance what inwardly his disposition inclined him to be.

Great difficulties in his time,

which yet he overcometh.

His cruelty.

His death.

29. He undertook several Expeditions, as against the *Catti* and *Sarmatians* (People inhabiting the Northern parts of *Europe*) who had cut off a whole Legion. The *Dacians* also put him to much trouble, and grievously afflicted the *Roman* State, under conduct of *Dinurpanus* their King; for they overthrew first *Oppius Sabinus* a man of *Consular* dignity, and next *Cornelius Fuscus* Captain of the Guards, in several fore and bloody batrels, in so much that the Historians of those times, have thought fittest to passe over in silence the number of the slain; Yet at length he triumphed over them all. He was also struck at by a Civil War raised by *L. Antonius* President of upper *Germany*, whom he had incensed by the odiousness of his vices, and especially by uncivil language. This he finished absent with admirable felicity; for, that very hour the fight was to be, the *Rhine* swelled so high, that it hindered the Auxiliaries which were sent to *Antonius* from joining with him. In the second year of his reign *Agricola* defeated the *Ordovices* in *Britain*, and took the Isle *Adona* about Autumn, and that upon his first coming into the Island. So that the years of the Expeditions which *Tacitus* afterwards relateth, are rather to be reckoned from the *Kalends* of *January* of the former year, as *Jacobus Cappellus* hinteth. Though *Dion Cassius*, as appeareth from *Xiphilin*, referred the discovery of that *Britain* an Island to the reign of *Titus*. Yet others unto the time of *Domitian*, who at length envying *Agricola* that great glory he had got in reducing *Britain*, recalled him under pretence of sending him into *Asia*; and he died two years after, on the tenth of the *Kalends* of *September* in the 56 year of his age, *Pompeius Colega* and *Cornelius Priscus* being *Consuls*. Whether hee died of poyson or not, though there wanted not suspicions, *Tacitus* his son-in-law dares not affirm.

30. *Domitian* having suppressed the rebellion of *Antonius*, grew extraordinarily cruel, putting men to death upon small and trivial accounts. Those of any note that were of his party he tortured to death by wayes unheard of, and confounded the cause of the innocent with that of the guilty, raging against the Christians with a second persecution. He arrived at that horrid arrogance, that he sticke not to say in the Senate, that he gave the Empire to his father and brother, who did but restore it to him; and (what was worse than this) he would be called our Lord and God. Being hereby rendered terrible and hateful unto all, he wrought his own destruction, which fearing, and being foretold it by the *Chaldeans*, he grew timorous out of measure, and was ruined with the least suspicion. Hence did he cause the place where he was wont to abide to be beset with the stone *Phengites*, that he might see if any one came behind him; and though he was sufficiently ambitious, yet did he refuse an extraordinary honour offered him by the Senate, viz. that when he bore the *Consulship*, *Knights should go before him with spears amongst the Sergeants*. Hence also he put *Epaphroditus* his Secretary to death, because it was believed that he had helped *Nero* in dispatching himself; and he killed *Flavius* his Uncle, though he had openly owned his two sons as his Successors, whereof the one he called *Vespasian*, and the other *Domitian*; which hastened his destruction. Eight months after he was slain by his own servants, of whom *Parthenius* the chief of his Chamber was principal, *Domitia* his wife being drawn in to the conspiracy, for that she feared to be poysoned for her kinnesse to *Paris*. *Longinus Proculus* then in *Germany* is said to have foretold the very day of his death, and *Apollonius Tyanaus* a famous *Magician* (who being convented before him vanished out of sight) spoke of it that very hour, exhorting *Stephanus* as it were to strike him home. The people took his death indifferently, the Soldiers heavily, which they shortly after revenged upon the murderers; but the Senate as it were triumphed, and ordered the memory of him to be abolished. The best thing we find concerning him was, that though he was no Scholar himself, he took

Sueton in *Domitiano*.  
Eutropius ut *supra*.  
Orosius lib. 7. c. 16.

*Tacitus in vita Agricole.*

A. D. 96.  
V. C. 849.  
Domitiani 15.

care for repairing of Libraries. He was murdered on the fourteenth before the *Kalends* of *October*, in the 45<sup>th</sup> year of his age, and the 15<sup>th</sup> of his reign, in the 849 year of the Citie, A. D. 96. *T. Fulvius Valens*, and *C. Antistius Vetus* being *Consuls*. In his time flourished *Statius Papius*, who begetteth the fourth book of his *Sylve* with the celebration of his 17<sup>th</sup> Consulship, which fell in with the 14<sup>th</sup> of his reign. *Juvenal* and *Marialis* also flourished at this time; whereof the later was of *Equestrian* rank, though ever poor, as \* he himself witnesseth.

31. Now must we give a short account of Ecclesiastical affairs according to the course of time and matter. (a) *Dionysius* the *Areopagite* being by *St. Paul*, (who converted him to the faith) made *Bishop* of *Athens*, governed that Church in the time of *Nero* and afterwards. There are extant several works under his name, but suspected; and sundry Epistles, whereof one to *John* the *Evangelist* then in the Isle *Pathmos*, and another unto *Polycarpus*, *Linus* the *Bishop* of *Rome*, being Crowned with Martyrdom on the ninth of the *Kalends* of *October*, in the last year of *Nero*, according to *Damasus*, *Clement* or *Anacleus* succeeded him in that See. Some next unto *Linus* do place *Clement*, then *Cletus*, and then *Anacleus*. But *Irenaeus*, *Eusebius*, and *Epiphanius* rank them thus: *Peter*, *Linus*, *Cletus*, or *Anacleus*, *Clement*; for he whom *Irenaeus* and *Eusebius* call *Anacleus*, is by *Epiphanius* and *Damasus* called *Cletus*. This *Cletus* according to *Damasus* died in the 2 year of *Domitian*, on the sixth before the *Kalends* of *May*, and was succeeded by *Anacleus*. But (b) *Eusebius* maketh *Anacleus* to have been *Bishop* twelve years, and in the 12<sup>th</sup> of *Domitian* to have been succeeded by *Clement*, whom *St. Paul* in his Epistle to the *Philippians*, calleth his fellow labourer. In the fourth year of the reign of *Domitian* (c) *Anianus* the first *Bishop* of *Alexandria* (having continued there 32 years) died, to whom succeeded *Abilinus*. As for the *Bishops* of *Byzantium* afterwards called *Constantinople*, we have them in this order from (d) *Nicephorus* the *Patriarch*. The first was *Andrew* the Apostle, who having preached the word at *Byzantium*, and built an Oratory in *Argropolis* ordained *Stachys* to be *Bishop*, of whom (e) *St. Paul* maketh mention. *Stachys* governed 16 years, after him succeeded in the year of our Lord 55 *Onefimus*, who governed 14. then *Polycarpus* ruled 17. and *Elenbeirus* 7. who came to the Chair A. D. 85. in the second of *Domitian*.

32. *Domitian* having raised the second persecution against the Christian faith, *St. John* the Apostle, who having continued at *Ephesus* 27 years, was in the ninth of his reign banished into the Island (a) *Pathmos* one of the *Cyclades*, where he wrote his *Revelation*. In this work he sheweth both *Christ* and his own hatred of the Doctrine of the *Nicolaitans*; for several Heresies had by this time sprung up, as *St. Paul* had forewarned. (b) *Eusebius* maketh *Simon Magus* the first Author of Heresies, concerning whom we have already spoken, but as to his Heresies particularly, 1. He affirmed that he himself was Father, Son, and Holy Ghost, and that he was worshipped of all people by divers names. 2. That *Christ* did suffer no hurt from the Jews; for he was *Christ*. 3. That any man might ly with any woman, for this was no sin. 4. That the World was made by Angels, and that an Angel redeemed mankind. 5. He denied the Resurrection. 6. He thought that the gifts of the holy Ghost might be bought with money, and therefore that sin of him is called *Simony*. (c) *Nicholaitans*. *cholas* the Patron of the *Nicholaitans* was one of the seven first *Deacons*. He having a fair wife, and being accused of jealousy, permitted any to marry her, at which fact others taking occasion, thought it lawfull for any man to have the company of any woman whom they themselves could like. (d) *Epiphanius* writeth, that they taught *Venerie* to be so necessary, that those men who used it not every week on Friday could not be saved. Besides these Hereticks, about the year 69 sprung up the Heresie of the *Cerinthians*. (e) *Cerintus* was a Jew by birth. He taught that the World was made by Angels. 2. That *Jesus* our Saviour had for his Parents indeed *Joseph* and *Mary*, and that at his baptism *Christ* descended on him, who (saith he) is called the holy Ghost, by whom he did all his miracles; when *Jesus* was to be crucified

Nnnnn 2 of

\* Sum fatcor  
semperque fui  
Callistratē pauper.  
Sed non ob-  
securus nec male  
notus eques.

(a) Euseb. Ec-  
cles. Hist. l. 3.  
c. 4.  
L. A. c. 22.

(b) Lib. 3. c. 14.

(c) Idem ibid.  
c. 13.

(d) Vide Jo-  
seph. Scaliger  
in Eusebianis  
pag. 313.  
(e) Rom. 16. 9.

(a) Euseb. Ec-  
cles. Hist. l. 3.  
c. 18.

(b) Lib. 2. c. 13.

(c) Clemens  
Alexand.  
Strom. l. 3. c. 29.  
Euseb. l. 3. c. 29.

(d) Lib. 2.  
Tom. 2. Her. 25.

(e) Irenaeus  
Epiphanius  
Euseb. l. 3. c. 28.  
L. A. c. 14.

Philastrius.



of the *Jews*, then Christ left him, and returned into Heaven. 3. That Christ's Kingdom after the resurrection should be an earthly Kingdom, and men then should live in all fleshly lusts and pleasures together for 1000 years. 4. He denied the Divine nature of Christ, and said, that he had onely an humane nature; and that he was not yet risen from the dead, but should rise hereafter. 5. He affirmed that the old Law, and all the old Commandments and Precepts belonging to it were to be kept, together with the new Law or Gospel, and that therefore Circumcision was necessary for every one that would be saved. *Epiphanius* writeth, that certain *Hereticks* called *Alogi*, affirmed *Cerinthus* to have been the Author of the *Revelation*.

33. About the beginning of *Domitian* arose also the Heresie of *Menander* a *Samaritan*, and the Scholar of *Simon Magnus*. He taught first, that the World was made by Angels, and that these Angels could be overcome by no means but by Art Magick. 2. He denied Christ to be true man. 3. He affirmed himself the Saviour of the World, and that he came from Heaven to save mankind, & that all who would be saved must be baptized in his name. Out of his Doctrine (that we may speak of these Hereticks briefly) budded that of *Saturninus* of *Antioch*, who not long after in like manner taught, 1. That the world was made by seven Angels, without the knowledge of God the father. 2. That Christ was but the shadow of a man, for he had neither the true Body nor Soul of a man, and thus he fulfilled the mytery of our redemption. 3. He said moreover that marriage and procreation was of the Devil. *Basilides*, of whom were named the *Basilidiani*, agreed in several points with *Simon*, *Menander*, and *Saturninus*. He taught, that Christ did not suffer but *Simon* of *Cyrene*; that Christ taking the form of *Simon* laughed them to scorn. 2. He turned men away from Martyrdom, affirming that it was no sin to deny Christ in time of persecution. 3. That the Angels made 365 Heavens, and that these Heavens made the World. He wrote 24 books upon the Gospel, and feigned to himself Prophets, whom he called *Barabas* and *Barcoph*. He commanded silence to his Scholars for the space of five years, after the manner of *Pythagoras*.

34. *Irenaeus* writeth, that in the time of these two *Carpocrates* lived, the father of the Heresie held by the *Gnosticks*, who thought good not to make known the Sorcery of *Simon* privily but openly, glorying of charmed love-drinks, of Devilish, and drunken dreams, of assistant and associate spirits, with other like illusions. They taught further, that who so would attain to the perfection of their mysteries must work such facts though never so filthy, otherwise could they not overcome (as they termed them) the secular Potentates, unless every one played his part after the same secret operation. These were the most vile Hereticks in filthiness of all others. They held 1. That the Soul was made of the substance of God, and that brute beasts have reason as man hath. 2. That there are two Gods, a good and an evil one, and that this evil God was the Creator of all things. *Carpocrates* also taught 1. That Christ was a meer man born of *Joseph*, and not of the blessed Virgin, that he was a good man, and therefore after he was Crucified his Soul went up into Heaven, but his body is still in the Grave. 2. That the World was made by Angels. 3. That there is no resurrection. 4. He rejected the *Old Testament* as not *Canonical*. Besides these, at this time arose the Heresie of the *Ebionites*, so called from *Ebion*. He taught, that Christ was but a meer man. 2. That when *Jesus* was 30 years old there descended on him, and dwelt in him another person called *Christ*, and thus *Jesus* and *Christ* dwelt, and were united together. 3. He agreed with *Cerinthus* in the rest of the Heresies, touching Circumcision, and keeping all the Law of *Moses*. He denied the *Epistles of Paul*, accusing him that he fell from the Law. The *Jewish Sabbath*, and other Ceremonies he observed together with the *Jews*, onely the *Sunday* he celebrated as we do in remembrance of the resurrection. 'Tis reported that *St. John* hearing *Ebion* was in the Bath refrained his company, and having seen and allowed the three Gospels published by the other *Evangelists*, wrote his own to confute the Heresies of him, *Cerinthus* and *Menander*.

CHAP.

*Euseb. l. 3. c. 26. &c.*  
*Irenaeus, Epiphanius, August. Philastr.*

*Euseb. l. 4. c. 7.*

*Epiphanius, Hebr. ref. 30.*  
*Euseb. l. 3. c. 21.*

## CHAP. IV.

From the death of *Domitian* to that of *Pertinax*, and the exposing of the Empire to publick sale by the Soldiers, the space of 97 years.

1. IT is reported of *Domitian*, that not long before his death he dreamed, that a golden neck and head was grown up on his shoulders, and that he was fully assured, that after him were thereby portended golden dayes to the Commonwealth. This truly came to passe through the abstinence, moderation, and excellent government of the six succeeding Princes, during the reign of whom the Roman Empire (for temporal respects) enjoyed more happiness, than ever before or after, Strangers affording that, which the Natives of Italy would not contribute to their own Country.

2. *Cocceius Nerva*, an old man, and born in *Crete* (say some, though others make him a native of *Narnia* in Italy) after the death of *Domitian* had the Empire put upon him, by the Legions which then quartered amongst the *Sequanians* in *Gall*. After his assuming the Government, a strong rumour went abroad, that *Domitian* was yet living, which somewhat perplexed him, till by *Parthenius*, and *Peronius*, Captains of the guards, he was put out of doubt; and afterwards his election was confirmed by the Senate. He took down the golden and silver Statues erected to *Domitian*, whereof was raised a great sum of money, and forbad any to be set up to himself. He recalled such as his predecessors banished, and amongst others the Christians, so that *St. John the Apostle* returned out of *Pachmos* unto *Ephesus*. *Calpurnius Crassus* by vast promises attempted to draw the Soldiers from him; but being happily discovered, he onely banished him to *Tarentum*. He eased the Commonwealth of the grievous impositions laid upon it, and having conjoynd these two things, in the times of some of his Predecessors insociable, viz. Sovereignty and Liberty, although he had kindred of his own, yet he adopted *M. Ulpius Trajanus*, a *Spaniard* born, who then ruled *Germany*, preferring herein the publick good before private respects. He lived with him but three moneths. For falling out with one *Regulus* a Senator, he was in so great a passion, that it drove his natural heat into a Fever, whereof he died on the sixth before the Calends of February, having lived 65 years, and reigned one year, four moneths, and nine dayes, in the 851 year of the City, A. D. 98, he himself the fourth, and *Trajanus Caesar* the second time, being Consul.

3. *Trajan* succeeded him, and took the Ensigns of the Empire at *Agripina* a Colony in *Gall*. He presently reduced all *Germany* beyond the *Rhine* into its wonted condition, brought under also several Nations beyond the River *Danubius*. But *Diurpanes* (or *Diurpanis*, *Decebalus*, or *Decibalus*, for he hath several names) King of the *Daci*, who had formerly forced *Domitian* to pay tribute, held him stiffly to it for the space of five years, with the expence of so much blood, that there wanted lianen to bind up the wounds of the Soldiers, and the Emperour tare his own robe to supply the defect thereof. But at length he brought them under, and planted Colonies in that Country. He reduced *Armenia*, having killed him that seized on it, conquered *Parthia* (whence he was called *Parthicus*) and passing over *Tigris* and *Euphrates*, invaded *Persia* and *Assyria*; and got into his hands *Selencia*, *Ctesiphon*, and *Babylon*. Considering *Trajan* as an Heathen Prince, in excellency of Government he was second to none. He extended the Empire further than any of his predecessors; so that now it reached from the *Irish Ocean* beyond the River *Tigris*: from the *Atlantick Sea* to the *Persian Gulf*; from the *Mount Atlas* to the *Calidian Forrest*: as also as far as the River *Albis*, and beyond *Danubius*. He had in his intention to invade *India* with a Fleet, which he ordered to be provided in the *Red Sea*. He was saluted

*Sueton in Domitian.*  
*Eutropius.*  
*Xiphilius ex Dion.*

*Amelius Victor.*

*Euseb. Eccles. Hist. l. 3. c. 21.*

*Tacitus in Agricola.*

*Orosius l. 7. c. 12.*

A. D. 98.  
V. C. 851.  
*Trajanus* 1.

Adopteth  
*Trajan* and  
dieth.

*Trajan* succeeded him.

His Wars.

He extendeth  
the Empire  
further than  
ever.

A moderate  
person in ci-  
vil matters,

But persecu-  
teth the  
Church.

His discourse  
with Ignatius  
Bishop of An-  
tioch,

Whom he  
causeth to be  
cast to wild  
beasts at  
Rome.

Tiberianus his  
letter to Tra-  
jan,

saluted *Optimus* by the Senate. His moderation was exceeding great, being backed with such a confidence of his own innocence, that giving a dagger to *Sabrinus* according to the custom, when he made him *Captain of his Guard*, he bade him use it in his behalf if he did well, but employ it against him, if he found him to transgress the bounds of Law and equity, for as much as he that ought to look to others, should most of all look to himself. He so used his Subjects as he himself (he said) would desire his Prince should use him, were he a private person. Though he was not learned himself, yet he much favoured humane and secular Learning, conversing very familiarly and often with the Professors thereof, whom he also preferred to publick Offices.

4. Humane and Secular Learning he favoured, and that onely. For he raised the third persecution against the Heavenly Doctrin and the Church of Christ, to which cruelty the worldly wife men seem most of all to have contributed. Being puffed up with the Victory he had obtained over the Daci and Thracians (after the ending of the second Dacian War, in the ninth year of his reign, *Decebalus* having killed himself) as he was marching against *Osroes* or *Chosroes* the Parthian King, and the Armenians, having commanded all that would not worship his false gods to be put to death, *Ignatius* the Scholar of St. John the Apostle, and Bishop now of Antioch, was brought before him, whilst he lay (in his passage) in this City. *Ignatius* standing in his presence, he said, who art thou Devil (*Cacodæmon*) who makest haste to transgress our Commands, and perswadeest others to destroy themselves? *Ignatius* answered, No body calleth Theophorus a *Cacodæmon*, for Devils flee from the Servants of God. But I know thou so callest me because I molest them. For I confesse I have Christ the heavenly King; and dissolve their councils. Trajan demanded who is Theophorus? *Ignatius* replied, He who hath Christ in his breast. Trajan said, Dost not thou think we have the Gods in our breast which assist us against our Enemies? *Ignatius* answered, In that thou esteemest the Devils of the Gentiles to be gods, thou erreest. For there is one God, who made Heaven, and Earth, and Sea, with all that are in them; and he hath one onely begotten Sonne Jesus Christ, whose friendship I have obtained. Trajan then said, Thou speakest of him that was crucified by Pontius Pilate: *Ignatius* replied, Of him who crucified sin and the inventor of it; and who approveth not of him that serveth Idols, but who in his heart wisely understandeth this. Trajan added, Dost thou then carry Christ in thy self? *Ignatius* said, Yea, for it is written, I will dwell and walk in them. Trajan concluded thus, I award that *Ignatius*, who saith, he beareth in himself the Crucified, be conveyed in bonds by Soldiers to the great City Rome, there to be devoured of beasts for a show to the People. This was accordingly executed upon the most holy Martyr, on the 20 of December, as it is recorded in his *Acta* or the *Memorials* of him collected by *Philo*, *Gaius*, and *Agathopus*, who followed him from Syria to Rome; concerning which, as also three Epistles which go under his name, the Differences of the most Reverend and Learned Arch-Bishop of Armagh are to be consulted.

5. *Ignatius* being vexed by a tedious journey, that his constancy might be shaken, when he came to *Troas* (or new Troy, built not far from the place where that of *Priamus* stood) understood that Peace was restored to his Church of Antioch. This came to passe whilst Trajan staid continued there, consulting about the Parthian War, as appeareth from *Malela* the Historian of that City. For *Tiberianus* the President of the chief Nation of Palestine, moved the Emperour to moderation by this letter: I am wearied with punishing and putting to death the Galilæans (who come before us under the name of Christians) according to your Commands, yet they cease not to reveal themselves for the slaughter. And although I have laboured both by exhortation and threatenings, that they might not dare to make known themselves to me as professors of that doctrine; yet being persecuted, they do not cease. I desire therefore that what your pleasure is in this kind, your Majesty would please

consulte *asservum* in notis ad Epist. Ignatii ad Philadelphenos.

Mitigateth  
the Persecu-  
tion.

As also the  
letter of Pliny  
Junior.

to certify me. \* *Suidas* mentioning also this message of *Tiberianus* unto Trajan, addeth, that the Emperour forbade all his Subjects to punish the Christians. Yet that this indulgence was not so universal, but that it most especially concerned Palestine, Syria, and other parts of the East, where the Emperour then resided, appeareth from *Ignatius* his deprecation, that the persecution might cease, when he was even to be brought into the *Amphitheatre*; as the *Acta* or *Memorials* concerning him relate. But besides this Letter of *Tiberianus*, there is extant another of *Pliny* the younger, who was moved to write to the Emperour upon the same occasion; and for the same end.

6. For being *Proprator* of Bithynia, the variety of cases in those that were accused troubled him; although, to comply with the iniquity of the times, he declareth, that such as stood out his threatenings thrice, he commanded to be led to punishment. He signifieth, that out of such as had formerly been Christians, but now worshipped the Images of the Emperour, and the gods, and blasphemed Christ, he could not get any confession of any other fault or error, than that they were wont on a day appointed, before it was light, to meet together, and sing an hymn to Christ; and bound themselves by a Sacramentum or religious oath, not for any wickednesse, but that they should not commit robbery, theft, or adultery, that they should not break promise nor cheat. Which being done, they were wont to depart, and meet again to eat, promiscuously but innocently. To get out the truth he tortured two women servants, but could not find any thing justly chargeable, though through his Ethnic pravity and desire to please the Emperour, he termeth the faith Superstitio prava & immodica, or a naughty and immoderate superstition. He addeth, that it seemed to him a thing worthy of serious consideration; especially for the number of those that were in danger: for many, saith he, of every age and order, and of both Sexes, are brought, and will be brought into danger. For not onely hath the contagion of this superstition gone through Cities; but also Villages, and fields, which as it seemeth might be stopped and corrected. To be sure, it's clear enough, that the Temples which were almost desolate begin to be frequented, and the sacrifices of long time intermitted to be restored, beasts for that use now going off, which till now scarcely any would buy. Whereby it is easie to guesse, what a multitude of men might be reclaimed, if there were but place for repentance: Thus *Pliny*, to whom Trajan answereth (that we may onely repeat the sum) that Christians are not to be sought for, but if accused and convicted, except they recant, to be punished; concerning the absurdity and injustice of which Sentence, *Tertullian* excellently argueth in his \* *Apology*, most worthy to be read of all Christians.

7. In the reign of Trajan died St. John the Apostle, the time and manner of his death being uncertain, though all agree as to the place, which was *Ephesus*. (a) *Jerome* referreth his death to the 68 year after the Passion of Christ, which fell in with the third of Trajan, and the 27 of December, on the first Feria. (b) Others place it in the 71 after Christs Passion, and the sixth of Trajan. *Dorotheus* Bishop of Tyre (in his tract written concerning the lives, ends, and Martyrdoms of the Prophets, Apostles, and 70 Disciples) writeth, that being 120 years old, yet living (the Lord would so have it) he buried himself. (c) *Jerome* alleged out of *Tertullian*, that in the time of Nero (though others say in the reign of *Domitian*) he was thrown at Rome into a tun of hot boyling oil, yet thereby took no harm, but came out after this trial purer than he went in. (d) *Augustine* calleth him a Martyr by will: *Polycrates* Bishop of *Ephesus* (as (e) *Eusebius* allegeth) sticketh not to call him a Priest, a Martyr, and a Doctor. But that which (f) *Augustine* writeth of his end, is strangest of all, and let the credit thereof rest in the choice of the Reader. How John caused at *Ephesus* his grave to be made, and in presence of divers went in alive, and being no sooner in and to their seeming dead they covered him. Which kind of rest saith he, is rather to be termed a sleep than death. For that the earth of the grave bubbleth or boyleth up after the

\* In voce  
Tediani.

Plin. Epist. 97.  
l. 10.

\* Chap. 2.

(a) In *Jovinian*, l. 1.

(b) *Arabica* Kiristenii apud Jacob. Cappellum ad A.D. 103.

(c) ut supra & in Mat. c. 20.

(d) In *John* tract. 124.

(e) Lib. 3. c. 31.

(f) ubi supra.

the manner of a Well, by reason of *John's* resting in it, and breathing: a sign of his slumbring therein. Though he died at *Ephesus*, yet was not the succeeding *Bishop*, much lesse any other, Heir of that Authority, which for so many years he had obtained in the Church, as having many years outlived the rest of the Apostles. For to the Apostles succeeded not Apostles nor universal Messengers of Christ, of which sort *John* was for many years, and he alone, but Bishops, every one circumscribed within his own limits. In the days of *Trajan*, and this third persecution was Crucified (g) *Simeon Cleophas* Bishop of *Jerusalem*, being 120 years old. *Justus* a Jew succeeded him, after whom some place *Zachaus*, *Tobias*, *Benjamin*, and *John* in the 19th. and last of *Trajan*. In the eleventh of his reign was *Euaristus* Bishop of *Rome* Crowned with Marrydom on the sixth of the Calends of *November*, and *Alexander* succeeded him, who also being Martyred in the 19th. year. on the fifth before the *Nones of May*. (h) *Cistus* had his seat according to *Damasus*. And we must not forget that *Heroy* succeeded *Ignatius* in the See of *Antioch*.

(g) *Euseb. l. 3. cap. 32.*

(h) *Euseb. l. 3. cap. 35.*

Gods judgements upon *Trajan* for his persecuting Christians.

8. The persecution of the Christians drew down heavy judgements upon the Empire in the time of *Trajan*. In the later end of his reign hapned most grievous Earth-quakes in several places, by which four Cities in *Asia*, three in *Greece*, and three in *Galatia* were overturned. *Antioch* also whilest he wintered there was grievously shaken, whereby multitudes, which for his sake had flocked thither, perished by many sorts of deaths. He himself was by an unknown hand drawn out of a window, and continued in the open air till the Earth-quake ceased, not daring to venture himself in any house for many days. He was now marching towards the East, and not being removed from his purpose, proceeded, crossed *Tigris*, subdued *Adiabene*, and peirced as far as *Ctesiphon* and *Babylon*: but presently it came to passe through the fickleness of such as had revolted to him, that he, who had already devoured the whole East, was forced to retreat to defend his own. For the Jews supposing him intangled in an inextricable Warre. 2. Perfwading themselves that by the Earth-quake was portended the ruin of the *Roman Empire*. 3. Thinking that from the first of *Cyrus* to this present had but passed 483 years, and consequently but one of *Daniel's* weeks to be unfulfilled, entred into a conspiracy, and made incredible slaughters of the *Romans*, using in several Countreys several Captains, whereof yet *Barcocab* was chief. The fury of this rebellion fell upon *Egypt*, *Cyrene*, and *Cyprus*. The manner of the outrageous Massacres they practised both upon *Greeks* and *Romans* was as hainous as the facts themselves; though these hainous beyond all belief, if not related by most credible, and most impartial Writers. They ate their flesh, besmeared themselves with their blood, wore their skins, sawed them asunder, cast them to wild beasts, made them kill one another, &c. Besides the particular butcheries which they committed throughout *Egypt*; about *Cyrene* they slew 200000. and in *Cyprus* 250000. *Trajan* resolving to pursue them throughout his Dominions, not as Enemies or Rebels of the Empire, but as Creatures noxious to humane society, with revenge suiting their former outrages, sent *Marcus Tubero* with a great power, both by Land and Sea.

*Orosius lib. 7. cap. 12. Euseb. Eccles. Hist. l. 4.*

*Dio l. 68.*

The Jews rebel.

9. He neither in a short space, nor without long, and cruel hostility finished the War; but he slew many Myriads of the Jews. Partly for the better security of the *Cyprians* in time to come, partly in memory of their former misery, and the infamy of the Jews it was publicly enacted: That no Jew, though driven by Tempests thither, should presume to set foot within their Coast, upon pain of present execution, as already condemned by his very appearance on that soil, which had been tainted with the deadly venom of his Country-men. Their carriage in the West made the Emperor suspect their brethren in *Mesopotamia*, whereupon he commanded *L. Quintinus* to banish them that Countrey, and he joyning battel with them slew also a great number. In the time of *Trajan* was *Nero's* golden house burnt, and also the *Pantheon* by Thunder; not the *Pantheon* of *Agrippa*, as *Scaliger* and *Cappellus* note, but perhaps that of *Jupiter Ultor* or *Minerva Medica*. At length

*Trajan*

*Trajan* dieth. *Trajan* died in *Cilicia* of a flux in *August*, having reigned 19 years, six moneths, and 15 days, in the 64th year of his age, the first of the 224 *Olympiads*, of the Citie the 870. A. D. 117. *Quintinus Niger*, and *T. Vipsianus Apprianus* being *Consuls*. He was first of all Emperours buried in the Citie, being so beloved, that in succeeding times the people in their acclamations to their Princes would wish them the felicity of *Augustus*, and the goodness of *Trajan*. In his time flourished *Plutarch*, *Lucian* first a Christian, and then an Atheist; *Plinius Secundus*, *Suetonius*, *L. Florus*, *Cor. Tacitus*, and others.

*Euseb. in Chron.*

*Hadrian.*

10. *Ælius Hadrianus*, or *Adrian*, succeeded *Trajan*, being the son of his Cousin German, and born also in *Spain*, in the Citie *Ialica*, near to *Civil*, the birth-place of *Trajan*. He was more ingaged to *Platina* the Emperesse than to her husband for his succession; for she, ere his death was published, signed the Testament whereby he was made Heir; and the Soldiers standing to him, he took upon him the government in *Syria*, where he was *President*. At his first beginning he cut off all he suspected, and restored Discipline to the Army. He crossed the Seas into *Britain*, where he reformed divers *Spartianus* things, and caused a Wall 80 miles in length first to be made to sever the *Barbarians* from the *Romans*. He took the greatest pains of any Emperour in visiting the *Provinces*, for coming into *Britain* out of *Gall* and *Germany*, he also went into *Spain*; then did he visit *Mauritania*, *Parthia*, *Asia*, and *Greece*; and by *Sicily* returned to *Rome*. After this he went into *Africk* again, and thence returning into the Citie, once more into *Greece*, thence into *Arabia*, and so into *Egypt*. He ever travelled on foot, and without any thing on his head, either in heat or cold. For this travelling *Florus* the Poet twitted him, to whom he as wittily answered.

The Jews again rebel.

11. He overthrew the *Sarmomata* (or *Sarmata* inhabiting the Countreys now called *Russia* and *Tartary*) but the greatest contest was with the *Jews*. The principal cause of their rebellion was, for that he built a new Citie, and therein a Temple to *Jupiter Capitolinus*, where *Jerusalem* stood, and called the place after himself *Ælia Capitolina*, and he forbade them to be Circumcised. They were confirmed in their sedition by one who pretending he came down to them as a light from Heaven to save them from slavery and bondage, saying, he was the Star foretold by *Balaam*, whence being called *Barcocab*, he was first worshipped as the *Messiah*, and anointed at *Bitur*, a Citie in *Africk*, but afterwards proving to be an Impostor, they called him *Barcoba*, or the son of a lye. *Dio* wrote, that the whole World was in a manner shaken with this Commotion of the *Jews*. *Hadrian* sent the best Captains he had against them, whereof the chief was *Julius Severus*, who at this time governed *Britain*. Albeit in the end he had the victory, yet would he not have wished for many Triumphs at the same rate. For very many of the *Romans* fell; inso much that *Adrian* writing to the Senate, used not that beginning which other Emperours were wont: *Si vos liberique vestri valeatis, Bene est; Ego quidem & exercitus valemus*. But the extraordinary strength which now appeared in the *Jews* was given them for their destruction. The greater danger their mutiny had occasioned to the Empire, the greater was the Emperours severity in punishing their rebellion past, the greater his care to prevent the like in time to come. In battels & skirmishes were slain of them 580000. besides an infinite number consumed with famine and diseases, during the time of this lingering War, protracted of purpose by the *Romans*, not willing to try it out in open field with such a forlorn desperate multitude; *Dio*, who lived not long after this time, emphatically notes, that they were left few in number, their Land laid waste, fifty of their strongest Munitions utterly razed, and 985 of their Chief, and most populous Towns sackt, and consumed by fire. *Adrian* after this strange desolation, by Publick Decree ratified by the Senates consent, prohibited any Jew to come within the view of *Judea*. Before this overthrow they had manifest signs foreshewing their desolation. *Solomon's* Sepulchre which they held in greatest honour, saith *Dio*, a little before this War fell asunder of its own accord; Wolves and Hyænaes

*Lib. 69. p. 7934*

○ ○ ○ ○ ○

howled

howled throughout their streets, and devoured them in the fields. Such Jews as Adrian took captive, he banished into Spain his own Country (this was their 10th Captivity saith John \* Vassius) where they had their Synagogues, till the time of Ferdinand and Isabel, and Emanuel King of Portugal.

12. The State of the Jews from this time until the expiration of the Roman Empire cannot easily be gathered from any Roman writers, who seldom vouchsafe the Jews or Christians any mention, unless enforced thereto by some famous war or mutiny, or by some other event redounding to the Roman glory. Judea after this time was not famous for any tumult till the ruin of Rome's greatness; the Jews wanted strength; and the Christians willing minds to procure the Emperours glory by Seditions. Hereupon whatsoever calamity either of them suffered by the Romans, was passed over by Roman writers, as private wrongs not worthy registering in their Annals. Upon this account 'tis no wonder they took no notice of our Saviour, or his Acts, all tending to Peace and Loyalty. For as Tacitus notes, Judea was most quiet in Tiberius his time, which was the best news the Romans cared to hear thence. Yet the general estate of the Jews between Adrians and Honorius his time, as \* one observes, may be gathered out of the reverend Fathers of the Primitive Church, who usually stopped the mouths of Heathens, or blasphemous Atheists, by proposing their condition, then known unto all the World, for such as our Saviour had foretold it. Thus much of the Jews until the series of time and affairs reduce us to them.

Adrians Character.

13. Adrian, if we look at his natural disposition, was as it were compounded of vice and virtue, yet so as he seemed to have the command of them, and may be reckoned amongst good Princes. He was much addicted to studies, and well seen in most of the liberal Arts; here was his fault, that he desired to comprehend all, and did not reserve himself for the most worthy, being one of the most curious men that ever lived. And in him that saying was sufficiently demonstrated, *Non est curiosus quin idem sit malevolus*. For he was so envious that he mortally hated all better Scholars than himself, and consequently the greatest Professors in all Sciences; but such as were unable for their Profession he would dismiss with great rewards. He killed Apollodorus the Architect for shewing him something freely the errors in his buildings. The Captain of his Guard was Similis, who as Dio writeth, getting leave to retire, and live quietly in the Country his last seven years, commanded this Inscription to be set on his Tomb: *Hec licet Similis, whose life consisted of many (or 67) years, yet he lived but 7*. His cruelty toward his later end we may in charity impute to his peevishness contracted by the Dropie with which he was fore vexed in every part. In his time the Church was under some persecution; for Xistus Bishop of Rome was Crowned with Martyrdom in the tenth year of his reign, on the eighth of the Ides of April, to whom succeeded Telephorus, according to Damascus; but this was rather from the malice of others, and the wicked custom then on foot, than out of his inclination. Being something satisfied with the Apologies of Quadratus and Arifides, two learned men, he wrote a Letter to Minutius Fundanus Proconsul of Asia, which Justin Martyr hath exemplified in his second Apology, and from him as it seemeth, Eusebius in his History, after this manner.

14. The Emperour Caesar Aelius Adrianus to Minucius Fundanus. I received a Letter from Serenius Granianus, that right worthy man thy Praefect, the occasion whereof I cannot with silence passe by, lest thereby men be troubled, and a gap left open to the malice of Sycophants. Wherefore if your Provincials can prove ought against the Christians whereof they charge them, and justifie it at the Bar, let them proceed, and not impeach them only for the name with making outcries against them. For it is very expedient that if any be disposed to accuse, the accusation be thoroughly known of you and sifted. Therefore if any accuse the Christians that they transgress the Laws, see that you judge, and punish according to the quality of the offence.

But

He dieth.

But in plain terms, if any upon spite or malice in way of cavillation complain against them, see that by all means you chastise and punish him according to his malice. Adrian at length by vomiting blood in great quantity contracted a Dropie (if Dio writeth Physician like) which so tormented him, that he desired death, but could not have it (according to the prayer of Severianus, whom, though he judged him worthy of the Empire, of late he had put to death) but at length by an ill kind of diet accelerated it, yet saying, *Mul- ti Medici Regem sustulerunt*, and enquiring \* of his Soul whicher it meant to go. He died on the fourth of the Ides of July, having lived 62 years, and reigned 21 with 11 moneths, in the 801 year of the City, A. D. 138, Sulpicius Camerinus and Quintus Niger Magnus being Consuls. In his time flourished Ptolomy of Alexandria, that great Astronomer, Aulus Gellius or Agellius, Justin who epitomized Trognus Pompeius, and others.

Antoninus Pius.

15. Adrian first adopted L. Verus, who died the year before him, on the first day of his second Consulship, and the Kalends of January. He had a son named Lucius, and was commanded to adopt Marcus, but they being both young, Hadrian adopted Pius, and commanded him to adopt Lucius and Marcus. E. A. Aelius Fulvius Antoninus for his goodness firnamed Pius, the son of Aurelius Fulvius, and born in Gall within the Alpes, succeeded Adrian. There was little stir in the Provinces during his reign; onely something was done in Britain against the Natives by Lollius his Lieutenant, and some bickering with the Jews, the last and weakest strugglings of a dying Nation. Now was another wall of turf made in Britain, and for the Victories obtained by Lollius Urbicus, the Emperour was saluted *Britannicus*, who as \* Pausanias telleth us, fined the Brigantes part of their grounds, because they had fallen with War upon the Genunii, the Allies of the Roman People. And at this time saith Cambden, as we collect out of *Jabolenus*, *Seius Saturninus* was *Archigubernus* of the Navy in Britain. But whether by this title he was an Admiral of the said Navy, or a principal Pilot, or the Master of a ship, I would have the Lawyers to tell. Antoninus ruled with such care, moderation, and humanity, that he was called another *Numa*, all things flourishing in calmness and tranquility. He repaired several Cities that had been overturned with Earthquakes, in which and other respects Pausanias giveth him large commendations. He was excellently learned; a subtil and deep Philosopher. He was rendered favourable to Christianity by the Apologies of Justin Martyr, and the supplications of others in behalf of the faithful in Asia, which were grieved with all sorts of contumelies practiced against them by their Provincials. He graciously sent a constitution in their behalf unto the body of Asia, which was read at Ephesus in the audience of this great Assembly, and yet is preserved to our sight in the end of Justin Martyr his second Apology, and by Eusebius in his Ecclesiastical History, according to this tenour.

His edict in behalf of the Christians.

16. The Emperour Caesar, Titus Aelius Adrianus Antoninus, Augustus Pius, Pontifex Maximus, fifteen times enjoying the power of Tribune, a four times Consul (not thrice, as it is corruptly written in Eusebius) Father of the Country, to the People of Asia Health. I know the gods are careful to disclose hurtful persons. For they punish such as will not worship them more grievously than you do those whom you bring in trouble, confirming that opinion which they have of you to be wicked and ungodly men. It's their desire in Gods quarrel, rather to die than live. So that they become conquerours, yielding their lives unto the death, rather than to obey Edicts. It shall seem very necessary to admonish you of the Earthquakes, which have and do happen amongst us, that being therewith moved, you may compare our estate with theirs. They have more confidence to Godward than you have, you during the time of your ignorance despise other gods, condemn the Religion of the immortal God, banish the Christians which worship him, and persecute them unto the death. In the behalf of these men many of the Principal Presidents have written heretofore unto our Father of famous memory, whom he answered.

O o o o o 2

in

\* *Animula vagula blandula, hospes comesque corporis, Que nunc abibis in loca pallidula rigida nudula, Nec ut soles dabis jocos?*

\* *In Arcadiis.*

howled throughout their streets, and devoured them in the fields. Such Jews as Adrian took Captive, he banished into Spain his own Countrey (this was their 10th Captivity saith John \* Vassaus) where they had their Synagogues, till the time of Ferdinand and Isabel, and Emanuel King of Portugal.

12. The State of the Jews from this time untill the expiration of the Roman Empire cannot easily be gathered from any Roman writers, who seldom vouchsafe the Jews or Christians any mention, unless inforced thereto by some famous war or mutiny, or by some other event redounding to the Roman glory. Judaea after this time was not famous for any tumult till the ruin of Romes greatness; the Jews wanted strength, and the Christians willing minds to procure the Emperours glory by Seditions. Hereupon whatsoever calamity either of them suffered by the Romans, was passed over by Roman writers, as private wrongs not worthy registering in their Annals. Upon this account 'tis no wonder they took no notice of our Saviour, or his Acts, all tending to Peace and Loyalty. For as Tacitus notes, Judaea was most quiet in Tiberius his time, which was the best news the Romans cared to hear thence. Yet the general estate of the Jews between Adrians and Honorius his time, as \* one observes, may be gathered out of the reverend Fathers of the Primitive Church; who usually stopped the mouths of Heathens, or blasphemous Atheists, by proposing their condition, then known unto all the World, for such as our Saviour had foretold it. Thus much of the Jews untill the series of time and affairs reduce us to them.

\* Dr. Jackson  
B. I. Chap. 27.  
pag. 114. upon  
the Creed.

Adrians Character.

13. Adrian, if we look at his natural disposition, was as it were compounded of vice and virtue, yet so as he seemed to have the command of them, and may be reckoned amongst good Princes. He was much addicted to studies, and well seen in most of the liberal Arts; here was his fault, that he desired to comprehend all, and did not reserve himself for the most worthy, being one of the most curious men that ever lived. And in him that saying was sufficiently demonstrated, *Non est curiosus quin idem sit malevolus*. For he was so envious that he mortally hated all better Scholars than himself, and consequently the greatest Professors in all Sciences; but such as were unable for their Profession he would dismiss with great rewards. He killed Apollodorus the Architect for shewing him something freely the errors in his buildings. The Captain of his Guard was Similis, who as Dio writeth, getting leave to retire, and live quietly in the Countrey his last seven years, commanded this Inscription to be set on his Tomb: *Heretich Similis, whose life consisted of many (or 67) years, yet he lived but 7*. His cruelty toward his later end we may in charity impute to his peevishness contracted by the Dropie with which he was sore vexed in every part. In his time the Church was under some persecution; for Xistus Bishop of Rome was Crowned with Martyrdom in the tenth year of his reign, on the eighth of the Ides of April, to whom succeeded Telephorus, according to Damasus; but this was rather from the malice of others, and the wicked custom then on foot, than out of his inclination. Being something satisfied with the Apologies of Quadratus and Aristides, two learned men, he wrote a Letter to Minucius Fundanus Proconsul of Asia, which Justin Martyr hath exemplified in his second Apology, and from him as it seemeth, Eusebius in his History, after this manner.

14. The Emperour Caesar Ælius Adrianus to Minucius Fundanus. I received a Letter from Serenius Gracianus, that right worthy man thy Predecessor, the occasion whereof I cannot with silence passe by, lest thereby men be troubled, and a gap left open to the malice of Sycophants. Wherefore if your Provincials can prove ought against the Christians whereof they charge them, and justifie it at the Bar, let them proceed, and not impeach them onely for the name with making outcries against them. For it is very expedient that if any be disposed to accuse, the accusation be thoroughly known of you and sifted. Therefore if any accuse the Christians that they transgress the Laws, see that you judge, and punish according to the quality of the offence. But

He dieth.

But in plain terms, if any upon spite or malice in way of cavillation complain against them, see that by all means you chastise and punish him according to his malice. Adrian at length by vomiting blood in great quantity contracted a Dropie (if Dio writeth Physician like) which so tormented him, that he desired death, but could not have it (according to the prayer of Severianus, whom, though he judged him worthy of the Empire, of late he had put to death) but at length by an ill kind of diet accelerated it, yet saying, *Mul-ti Medici Regem sustulerunt*, and enquiring \* of his Soul which it meant to go. He died on the fourth of the Ides of July, having lived 62 years, and reigned 21 with 11 moneths, in the 891 year of the City, A. D. 138, Sulpicius Camerinus and Quintus Niger Magnus being Consuls. In his time flourished Ptolomy of Alexandria, that great Astronomer, Aulus Gellius or Agellius, Justin who epitomized Trogus Pompeius, and others.

Antoninus Pius.

15. Adrian first adopted L. Verus, who died the year before him, on the first day of his second Consulship, and the Kalends of January. He had a son named Lucius, and was commanded to adopt Marcus, but they being both young, Hadrian adopted Pius, and commanded him to adopt Lucius and Marcus. F. A. Elius Fulvius Antoninus for his goodness surnamed Pius, the son of Aulus Fulvius, and born in Gall within the Alpes, succeeded Adrian. There was little stir in the Provinces during his reign; onely something was done in Britain against the Natives by Lollius his Lieutenant, and some bickering with the Jews, the last and weakest strugglings of a dying Nation. Now was another wall of turf made in Britain, and for the Victories obtained by Lollius Urbicus, the Emperour was saluted *Britannicus*, who as \* Pausanias telleth us, fined the Brigantes part of their grounds, because they had fallen with War upon the Genunii, the Allies of the Roman People. And at this time saith Camden, as we collect out of Fabolenus, *Seius Saturninus* was *Archigubernus* of the Navy in Britain. But whether by this title he was an Admiral of the said Navy, or a principal Pilot, or the Master of a ship, I would have the Lawyers to tell. Antoninus ruled with such care, moderation, and humanity, that he was called another Numa, all things flourishing in calmness and tranquillity. He repaired several Cities that had been overturned with Earthquakes, in which and other respects Pausanias giveth him large commendations. He was excellently learned; a subtil and deep Philosopher. He was rendered favourable to Christianity by the Apologies of Justin Martyr, and the supplications of others in behalf of the faithful in Asia, which were grieved with all sorts of contumelies practiced against them by their Provincials. He graciously sent a constitution in their behalf unto the body of Asia, which was read at Ephesus in the audience of this great Assembly, and yet is preserved to our sight in the end of Justin Martyr his second Apology, and by Eusebius in his Ecclesiastical History, according to this tenour.

\* In Arcadisch.

His edict in  
behalf of the  
Christians.

16. The Emperour Caesar, Titus Ælius Adrianus Antoninus, Augustus Pius, Pontifex Maximus, fifteen times enjoying the power of Tribune, four times Consul (not thrice, as it is corruptly written in Eusebius) Father of the Countrey, to the People of Asia Health. I know the gods are careful to disclose hurtful persons. For they punish such as will not worship them more grievously than you do those whom you bring in trouble, confirming that opinion which they have of you to be wicked and ungodly men. It's their desire in Gods quarrel, rather to die than live. So that they become conquerors, yielding their lives unto the death, rather than to obey Edicts. It shall seem very necessary to admonish you of the Earthquakes, which have and do happen amongst us, that being therewith moved, you may compare our estate with theirs. They have more confidence to Godward than you have, you during the time of your ignorance despise other gods, condemn the Religion of the immortal God, banish the Christians which worship him, and persecute them unto the death. In the behalf of these men many of the Principal Presidents have written heretofore unto our Father of famous memory, whom he answered.

○ ○ ○ ○ ○ 2

in

\* *Animula vi-  
gula blandula  
bosques comesque  
corporis,  
Que mune abibis  
in loca Pallidula  
rigida nudula,  
Nec ut soles  
dabis jocos?*



in writing again, that they were not to be longer molested, unless they had practiced treason against the Roman Empire. And many have informed us of the same matter, whom we answered as our Father did before us. If any therefore hereafter be found thus busied in other mens affaires, we command that the accused be absolute and free, though he be found such an one, I mean as faultily, and that the accuser be grievously punished. That this Edict was proclaimed at Ephesus in the hearing of the great Assembly of Asia, witnesseth is Meliton (saith Eusebius) Bishop of Sardis (who flourished at that time) in his profitable *Apology* for our doctrine, delivered unto the Emperour *Vetus*. But *Antoninus* died on the *Nones* of *March*, after he had reigned 22 years, seven moneths, and 26 dayes, in the first year of the 235 *Olympiad*, the 914 of the City, A. D. 161. In his time flourished besides many excellent Lawyers, and *Justin* the Christian Philosopher (the son of *Priscus* *Bacchus*, and born in *Flavia* a new City of *Palestine*, as he saith himself) *Polycarpus* Bishop of *Smyrna*, *Galen* that excellent Physician, and *Ælian* Writer of the natural and various Histories.

Bishops.

17. In the first year of *Pius* died *Telephorus* Bishop of *Rome*, on the *Nones* of *January*; the Sea was vacant seven dayes (both the terms being excluded) and then *Hyginus* the ninth Bishop succeeded on the *Ides* of *January*, and the first feria. In the fifth of *Pius* died *Hyginus*, on the third of the *Ides* of *January*, and *Pius* succeeded him, when *Sex. Erucius Clarus* and *Cn. Claudius Severus*, as *Damasus* will have it, were Consuls, which if it be true, the Sea was vacant four years. In the thirteenth of *Pius*, died *Pius* the Bishop, on the fifth of the *Ides* of *July*, and his seat being vacant fourteen dayes, *Anicetus* the eleventh succeeded him on the 25 of *July*, the first feria. (a) From the Passion of our Saviour till the eighteenth year of *Adrian* there were fifteen Bishops in the Church of *Jerusalem* all Jews. In the which year after the utter overthrow, the siege and conquering of the City under the said *Ælius Adrianus* *Jerusalem* was called *Ælia*, and began to be inhabited of strange Nations. Until (b) wellnigh this time this Church was called a pure and uncorrupted Virgin, for till about the year 110 there was no false doctrine sown there. Of the Gentiles (c) *Marcus* was the first Bishop of *Jerusalem*. After *Abilius*, (d) *Cerdo* was Bishop of *Alexandria* in the first year of *Trajan*, where he continued thirteen years. Him succeeded *Primus*, who continued in the Sea twelve years. After *Primus* was (e) *Iustus* Bishop of *Alexandria*, where he continued eleven years. After *Iustus*, (f) *Eumenes* was Bishop, and so continued thirteen years. He was succeeded by *Marcus*, who governed that Church ten years. Then followed (g) *Celadion*, who continued fourteen years. And in the Sea of *Antioch* (that we may still continue the series of Bishops formerly began) after *Heros* (who succeeded *Ignatius*) (h) *Cornelius* was Bishop about the twelfth of *Adrian*.

Damasus.

(a) Euseb. l. 4. c. 5, 6.

(b) Idem l. 4. c. 22.

(c) Idem l. 4. c. 6. &amp; l. 5. c. 11.

(d) Idem l. 3. c. 21.

(e) Idem l. 4. c. 4, 5.

(f) Idem l. 4. c. 5, 11.

(g) Idem l. 4. c. 11, 20.

(h) Idem l. 4. c. 20.

(a) Euseb. l. 4. c. 22.

Epiph. hares. 37. August. l. de heretib.

Epiph. hares. 29.

Idem hares. 38. Aug.

Hereticks.

18. After the Bishops and Fathers of the Church, it's convenient to continue the series of Hereticks formerly laid down. About the year 110, (a) *Thebulis* was the first Heretick in the Church of *Jerusalem*. It's said, that he fell from the Faith because they would not chuse him Bishop after *Simon*. About the same time were certain Hereticks called *Ophites*, who worshipped a Serpent, and thought that the Serpent which deceived *Adam* and *Eve* was Christ: they kept a living Serpent, which with opening of the chest and charming of the Priest came forth, licked the bread upon the altar, and wrapped it self about it. Their manner was to kisse the bread, and so to eat, believing verily that the Serpent had consecrated it. They defended themselves that the *Nicolaitans* and *Gnosticks* delivered them this service. About the same time there were certain Jews, which believing in Christ, called themselves *Nazarai* or *Nazareth*. In confessing *Jesus Christ* to be the Son of God they contraried the Jews. But they erred in Christian Religion, in that they addicted themselves wholly to the whole Law. There were other Hereticks which honoured *Cain*, and took him for their Father, whence they were called *Caini*. They highly esteemed of *Esau*, *Corah*, *Dathan*, and

and *Abiram*, with the *Sodomites*. They called *Judas* the Traitor their *Co-sin*, honoured him for betraying of Christ, affirming that his forefaw how great a benefit it would bring to mankind. They read a certain gospel written, as they said, by *Judas*: they reviled the Law, and denied the Resurrection. There were others called *Seihiani*, who derived their pedigree from *Seth* the son of *Adam*, whom they honoured, and called *Christ* and *Jesus*; they held that in the beginning of the World he was called *Seth*, but in the latter dayes *Christ Jesus*. *Epiphanius* saith, that he disputed with some of them in *Aegypt*, and that the last of them were in his time. *Cerdon* the Heretick came from *Syria* to *Rome* when *Hyginus* was Bishop there. He taught that God preached by the Law and Prophets, was not the Father of our Lord *Jesus Christ*. He said, that Christ was known, the Father of Christ unknown. He denied the Resurrection, and the Old Testament, he held other things with the *Manichies*; and *Marcion* was his Scholar.

Epiph. hares. 39. Aug. Euseb. l. 4. c. 10, 11. Epiph. hares. 41.

19. In the time of *Hyginus*, *Valentinus* the Heretick came to *Rome*, lived under *Pius*, and continued till *Anicetus*. He taught 1. That Christ brought his flesh with him from Heaven, and took no flesh of the blessed Virgin, but passed through her as water through a conduit-pipe. 2. That there are two beginnings of all things, *Profundum*, i. e. the Deep: and *Silentium*, i. e. Silence: these being married together, had issue *Understanding* and *Truth*, which brought forth 300 *Ænoa* or *Æge*, and of these were the Devil and others born, who made the World. In the reign of *Antoninus Pius*, *Marcion* also the Heretick began to teach, living in the time of *Justin Martyr*, who wrote against him. He was native of *Pontus*, first a Stoick, then a Christian, he followed *Baptists*, *Cerdon*, and *Valentinus*, in their Heresies. Meeting *Polycarpus*, he said, Knowest thou us? *Polycarp* answered, I know thee for the first born of *Satan*. *Epiphanius* writeth, that being a Bishop's son, when he had deflowered a Virgin, he was by his own Father excommunicated, and afterwards flying to *Rome*, because they there admitted him not into the Church, he began to preach detestable doctrine. He taught, that there were three beginnings, *Good*, *Just*, and *Evil*: that the New Testament was contrary to the Old. He denied the Resurrection. He baptized such as died without Baptism, saying, that *Paul* bade him do so. He taught that marriage was unlawful, and that it was a great sin to marry. That *Cain*, the *Sodomites*, and all wicked men were saved, because they met Christ when he descended into hell, but the *Patriarchs* and *Prophets* are still in hell, for not meeting Christ; for they thought (said he) that Christ came to tempt them. Under *Anicetus* also came to *Rome* *Marcellina*, a woman which infested many with the Heresie of *Carpocrates*, who called himself *γνῶσις*. She is said to have kept and offered incense to the Statues and Pictures of Christ (which the *Gnosticks* said, had been made by command of *Pilate*) as also to others of *St. Paul*.

Tertullian contra Valentinianos. Epiph. hares. 31. Philastrius.

Euseb. l. 4. c. 11, 14. Epiph. hares. 42. Theophyl. Hicor. cont. Iovinian. Irenæus l. 3. c. 4, 29.

20. About the nineteenth year of *Antoninus Pius*, the beginning also of *Montanus* his Heresie is placed by *Epiphanius*; but from *Eusebius*, *Cappellus* would gather, that the original of it was fifteen years before, because the Historian writeth, that *Apollinarius* wrote against *Miltiades*, and *Montanus* the Hereticks, under the Proconsulship of *Gratus*, who seemeth the same with him, whose Consulship is by *Cassiodorus* cast into the fourth of *Pius*. He thinks therefore, that in the nineteenth year some new thing might be attempted by *Montanus*; as he might this year institute his *Prophetesses*. These were his two Country-women, *Priscilla* and *Maximilla*, born at *Pepusæa* City of *Phrygia*, upon which account he called *Hiernusalem* by that name. *Cappellus* further observeth, that of such things as are attributed to *Montanus*, some were truly his, some after his death were added by the *Montanists*, and some falsely ascribed to them. *Montanus* really held, that the promise of sending the Holy Ghost was deferred till his time, and in himself fulfilled, because the Church heretofore could not bear the yoke of more severe and holy discipline, which he endeavoured to bring in, by appointing the eating of dried meats, fasting, and Monogamy, or single marriage. The *Montanists*, after

Hares. 48.

after their number was increased did those things which *Hierome* mentioneth, viz. they appointed themselves *Patriarchs*, 2 *Cenona*, which word seemeth of *Phrygian* Original, and 3 *Bishops*. That is falsely imputed to them, which *Ferome* saith others did attribute, but he would not believe, viz. that they pricked an Infant, and with his blood made up the *Eucharist*. If this opinion may be attributed to any *Hæresie*, or if this prejudice did not arise from the imputation of this kind of cruelty by the *Heathen* to Christianity it self, the *Carpocratians* rather than the *Montanists* were guilty of it. But because both sorts were called *Gnosticks* (as swelling with an opinion of knowledge) what was acted but by one, might easily be attributed to the other. So because *Montanus*, as full of the Holy Ghost called upon men in the name of the Father, he was believed to confound the persons of the *Trinity* into one, which was the invention of the *Sabellians* 100 years after. 'Tis further said of him, that he baptized the dead, and not allowing of second marriages permitted married persons to be separated when they themselves would. That he took away repentance, affirming that sinners could never have their sins pardoned by repentance. And that the Apostles and Prophets understood not any thing they had written, but were *Arrepti*. Now to return to civil matters.

*Ad Marcellum*  
tom. 3. p. 9.

*M. Avelinus*,  
*Antoninus*,  
*Philosophus*,  
and *L. Verus*.

21. *Pius* being dead on the *Nones of March*, *Marcus* the son of *Annius Verus* succeeded, who was first adopted by *Catilius Severus* his great Grandfather on the mother's side, the second time by *Lucius Commodus*, and the third by *Pius*. He made *Lucius* the son of *Lucius Commodus*, by whom he was adopted the second time, partner with him in the Empire, as his brother, and six months after having a son born to him on the *Calends of September*, named him *Commodus*, after his said adoptive father. *Marcus* and *Lucius* were the first two that ever jointly, and with equal power and authority ruled the Empire, being very contrary in disposition, though through the goodness and prudence of the former they maintained concord betwixt themselves. *Marcus* notwithstanding his publick place was so in love with the liberal Sciences, that he would frequent the Lectures of Philosophers: *Lucius* having little capacity, and lesse affection for such matters, gave himself up to luxury and idleness, onely so far restraining himself as his interest compelled him to comply with his Collegue, although he might have been diverted from such courses by the Wars. For *Vologesus* King of *Parthia* brake into *Armenia*, *Cappadocia*, and *Syria*, laying all waste before him, overthrew the Roman Army, and put to flight *Artidius Cornelianus*, who at that time governed *Syria*. Against him *Lucius* was sent, and by his Captains did very great things, not onely for the recovery and relief of those places, but also in *Assyria*. For, he therein took *Seleucia*, situate upon the River *Hidaspes* with 400000 persons, for which he triumphed with his brother. But after they had reigned eleven years *Lucius* died of an Apoplexy as he rode with his Collegue in the same Chariot.

22. As for the disposition and carriage of *Marcus*, both as a (Heathen) Man, and a Prince; he scarcely ever had his Superiour in goodness and virtue. Being extraordinarily learned (upon which account he was surnamed *Philosophus*) he abounded according to the dictates of right reason, with moderation, justice, and clemency. For the maintenance of his Wars, that he might not be burthenfome to his subjects, he sold several things to raise money. The head of *Artidius Cassius*, who having rebelled against him was slain in the East, being sent to him, he caused it presently without any insulting language to be buried. *Aurel. Victor* telleth us that in his time the freedom of the Citie was promiscuously given to all; so that *Cambden* seemeth mistaken, who writeth that by the ordinance of *Pius*, as many as were in the Roman World became Citizens of *Rome*. This freedom of the Citie was wont to be given either with privilege of Suffrage or without. The first that had it without suffrage were the *Carites*. We understand, saith *Gellius*, that the *Carites* were first made *Municipes* without the right of suffrage: and that it was granted to them, that they should receive the honour of the Roman Citie, but be freed

*Lib. 16. cap. 13.*

Freedom of  
the Citie va-  
rious.

freed from business, and burthens, for that they received, and kept the *sacra* (or idols) in the Gallick war. *Patriculus* also telleth us, that in the Consulship of *Sp. Posthumius* and *Veturius Calvinus*, *Campanis data est civitas partique Samnitium sine suffragio*, and in the same place *M. Curio & Rufino Cornelio Coss. Sabinus sine suffragio data civitas*. What *Municipium* was, and who *Municipes*, is worthy of consideration. In the time of *Gellius* it appears from him that those words were much in use, but nothing understood. For such as were of Colonies would call both themselves and their Countrey-men *Municipes*, which, saith he, is far distant from reason and truth. Even so what *Municipi* are, and how much they differ from a Colony, we are ignorant, and we think that Colonies are in a better condition than they.

23. Of this opinion so full of error *Adrian* the Emperour learnedly discoursed in his Oration which he made in the Senate concerning the *Italicenses*, or Inhabitants of *Italica* in Spain, (as they were called) from whom he himself descended. He wondred that the *Italicenses* and other ancient *Municipia* (amongst whom he named them of *Utica*) when they might live according to their own customes and laws, were tickled with a desire to be changed into the condition of Colonies. He said that the *Prænestines* earnestly desired of *Tiberius* to be altered from the state of a Colony to that of a *Municipium*, and that the Emperour granted it, in consideration that under the Walls of their Town he had recovered from a deadly disease. *Municipes* therefore (so *Gellius* concludeth) are Roman Citizens of the *Municipia*, using their own freedom and Laws, onely partakers of honourable employment (*Muneris honorarii*) with the Roman people, from undertaking which employment (*à quo munere capeffendo*) they seem to be named, being bound by no other necessities, nor by any Law of the Roman people, for as much as their Land never belonged to it. Then proceedeth he to distinguish in the matter of the *Carites*, betwixt such *Municipes* as had right of suffrage, and not, for if there had been no such distinction he would never have said, *The first Municipes we understand to have been made without right of suffrage were Carites*. For a more clear discovery of the relations of other places unto *Rome*, we shall observe this four-fold distinction of privileges.

The several  
sorts of Privi-  
leges.

There was 1 *Jus Civitatis*, 2 *Jus Municipii*, 3 *Jus Coloniae*, 4 *Jus Latii*. *Jus Civitatis* was freedom of the Citie, and we find in *Patriculus* that it was *cum suffragio & sine suffragio*. *Jus Municipii* we find in *Gellius* to have also been freedom of the Citie, for *Municipes* were also called *Cives Romani*, and were named *Municipes*, a *muneribus capiendis*, or *capeffendis*; there was also as appeareth from *Gellius Jus Municipii cum, & sine suffragio*, *Jus Civitatis* therefore & *Jus Municipii* seem to have differed little; the former was larger, respecting single persons sometimes absolutely considered without relation to any place that was related to *Rome* as a *Municipium*. For single persons (*Ambassadors* or others) have had the freedom of the Citie bestowed on them primarily without respect to any place at all, who perhaps could not be called *Municipes*, because such seem to have been proper, and onely Free-men of *Municipia*, and not otherwise than mediately to have been free of *Rome*. The power or right of suffrage will not suffer us to imagine that, because *Gellius* calleth the employment of the *Municipes*, *munus honorarium*, therefore it was but titular. For by the right of suffrage they had power to assemble in the *Comitia*, and Vote in their *Tribes*, *Centuries*; and *Curia*, as the occasion required: and hence doubtlesse were capable of honourable Offices. And the word it self, though sometimes it may be expounded *Titular*, as the *Consuls* after *Constantines* time (or rather *Consulares*), as they are called in *Cassiodorus*, and their Office *Consularitas* are termed *Consules Honorarii*, being but *Titular Consuls*; yet it also respecteth authority and power as well as meer Title, in that the Law of the *Prætor* (whereof we have formerly spoken) is called *Jus Honorarium*.

24. As for the *Jus Coloniae*, it is so termed by *Tacitus* also in those words: *Atin Italia vetus oppidum Puteoli Jus Coloniae & Cognomen à Nerone adipiscuntur*. *Gellius* distinguisheth it from the *Jus Municipii*, after this manner. But of Colonies there is another relation or alliance (necessitudo.) For

*Jus Civitatis*  
& *Jus Municipii*

\* *Lib. 6. epist.*  
20.

*Marcus* giveth  
the freedom  
of the Citie  
to all.

For they do come extrinsically into the City, neither do they stand on their own roots; but are as it were begotten by the State, and have Laws and Institutions, not of their own, but those of the Roman people. Yet this condition, although it be more obnoxious and less free, is accounted better and more excellent, for the amplitude and Majesty of the Roman people; whereof these Colonies seem to be certain Images and resemblances: and also because the rights of the Municipia are obscure and obliterated, which by reason of ignorance the owners cannot use. From this it appears that Colonies were free of the City, in which respect *Paterculus* giving us account of the several Colonies that were planted till the time of *Marinus*, mixeth with them such places as to which freedom was given, making it as it were the same thing. If it had been otherwise, there would not have been any comparison as to privilege betwixt *Municipia* and *Colonies*, and it would have saved *Gellius* the labour of proving against the common belief that the *Jus Municipii* was greater. Now as for the *Jus Latii*, *Suetonius* distinguisheth it from *Jus Civitatis*, for speaking what *Augustus* did to several Cities, he hath this expression amongst the rest: *Latinitate vel civitate donavit*. *Spartianus* in the life of *Adrian* saith, *Latium multis civitatibus dedit*. And *Tacitus* (coming up to our Term) saith of *Nero*: *Eodem anno Cæsar nationes Alpium maritimarum in Jus Latii transtulit*. The *Latines* were ever counted of the kindred of *Rome*, the *Romans* having descended from them, and upon this account there was a stricter League and Alliance with them than any other people, which enjoyed not the freedom of the City.

25. The *Latines* envying the rising fortune of *Rome* their Colony, laboured to suppress it, but still were worsted, and ever forced to submit. *Servius Tullius* the sixth King of *Rome* breathing after glory in future times, in imitation of the Council of the *Amphyctiones* in *Greece*, and other publick conventions (as we have formerly said) persuaded both Nations to build at *Rome* a Temple or *Asylum* out the common expence, where the Cities meeting yearly, should sacrifice, hold a fair at certain times, and if any contention hapned amongst them, it might be composed in a religious manner by their fellow Cities. Gathering money he built the Temple of *Diana* in the *Aventine Mount* (the most eminent in the City) and wrote down the conditions of the League, with the manner of observing the Feast and Marr. And that they might not be abolished by the injury of time, he engraved the Decrees of the Council in a pillar of brasse, and the Cities which were partakers of this society, which pillar continueth till our age, saith *Dionysius*, dedicated in the Temple of *Diana*, inscribed with such Characters as *Greece* anciently used, which is no light argument that *Rome* was not built by Barbarians. *Tarquinius* the last King, and Successor of *Servius*, renewed this League, and taking in the *Hernici* and *Volsci*, appointed another place in the midst of all those Nations, viz. a Mount near to the *Albanians*, called also *Mons Albanus*, where yearly *Feria* (or a Festival) were to be celebrated, and for that time, in respect of the religion of the place, and the Law made for that purpose, they were all to abstain from all manner of violence, and in common sacrifice to *Jupiter Latiaris* and Feast together; it being appointed how much each people should contribute and receive. Of these *Feria*, and this sacrifice were partakers 47 people, and in our age, saith the Historian, the Romans observe these *Feria* (called *Feria Latina*) and some contribute Lambs, some Cheese, some a certain quantity of Milk, and others Cakes or Wafers made up with Milk. The sacrifice is one Bull for all, of whose inward a certain portion is given to every people. They sacrifice for all in general, and the Romans preside at the sacrifice. Those *Feria* at first consisted but of one day, which *Tarquinius* appointed. After his banishment the people added another. And about six years after, when Peace was composed betwixt *Patricians* and *Plebeians*, after the Creation of the *Tribuni Plebis* and *Ediles*, a third was added; at what time the League was also renewed with the *Latines*, because that after the Peace made with them at the end of the War with *Tarquinius* (whose part they

The strict  
League and  
Alliance be-  
twixt the  
Romans and  
Latines.

Lib. 1. c. 14.  
15.

C. 47.

Annal. 1. 15.  
c. 32.

Jus Latii.

Dionys. Halicarn. lib. 4.

they took) they had continued peaceable and faithful to the *Romans* during their confusions and seditions.

26. \* *Dionysius* mentioning the renewing of this League, giveth us the substance of it, by which description our design is accomplished as to the *Jus Latii*. These things were contained in the League; Let there be mutual Peace betwixt the *Romans* and *Latines*, as long as the Heavens and Earth keep the same Station: and let neither make War upon the other, nor procure others to do it, nor give free passage to such as would, but to the utmost help each other infested by War, and equally divide the prey and spoils. Concerning private contracts, let the controversy be judiciously decided in the Forum of that People where the contract was made. Let nothing be added to the conditions of the League, nor taken away, without the consent of the *Romans*, and all the *Latine* People. To this purpose a League was established betwixt the parties, and sworn to by all sacred things. This near confederacy is to be taken as explanatory of the *Jus Latii*, including such a strong alliance as was not made with any, but afterwards according to this prescript. In process of time the *Latines* came to have the freedom of the City. When this freedom was given to them is something obscure. *Dionysius* so relateth the story of *Cassius* (in whose second Consulship, according to him, this League was renewed) as if at the same time was given to them the freedom of the City; for *Cassius* to curry favour with the *Hernici* gave them the same league, and when he would have in his third Consulship the *Agrarian* to pass, he caused the *Latines* and *Hernici* to be present at the *Comitia*, to carry it by the greater number of voices. But if any such thing were, it was done rather by his over forwardness to gratify them, and without the consent of the State, as those Privileges were which he bestowed upon the *Hernici*. However, it appeareth that they had not the freedom till this time; for *Cassius* in his flattering speech to the multitude concerning the excellent acts performed by them in his three Consulships, saith, that in his third the sedition being appeased, the Commons were reduced home: the *Latines* kinsmen of the *Romans*, but emulators for glory and Empire, were received into friendship and into the City, that afterwards they might esteem *Rome* as their Country, and not as an adversary. Though formerly there was a League with them, yet it seemeth they were not received into the City till now, and that rather by *Cassius* his flattery, so that neither they nor the *Hernici* retained this privilege, and we do not find that they were admitted into any Tribe, or gave thenceforth their suffrages in the *Comitia*. This confirmeth what we say, that \* *Florus* declareth the cause of their revolt afterwards, to have been an emulation for Empire and Magistrates, and that contemning the *Romans* after the burning of the City, they required *Jus civitatis* amongst other things.

27. This they did not now obtain, being subdued and reduced by War to obedience, and punished several ways. However the ancient League seemeth to have been renewed; at least with most of them, who were still called *Socii nominis Latini*. Often the *Jus Civitatis* was promised them, but still deferred and put off by the *Fathers*, who alone knew the secret of Empire, till at length they broke out into the Social War, and yet then were they subdued again, and brought under by force, and then was given to them conquered, what they could not obtain by strong hand. After this, the hedge being broken down from about the *Roman* State, and through the variety of the interests of *Roman* Citizens parties and factions arising, Freedom came to be given to other places, one after another, though when, to whom, and by whom, we now must not inquire. *Augustus* was very sparing in the grant thereof; but succeeding Princes spread this privilege far and wide, till at length *Antoninus Philosphus* communicated it to the whole body of the Empire, it being now nothing material, seeing that the multitude met not together in the *Comitia*, to give their suffrages, which had by variety of interests, humours, and inclinations confounded all things. Now again to our matter.

28. *Marcus Aurelius Antoninus*, like a good Patriot, or rather *Pater Patriæ*, did not satisfy himself in providing for the publick good for his own

Ppppp time

\* Lib. 6.

The Contents  
of the League.

Dionys. l. 8.

\* L. 1. c. 14. 2.

The fourth  
persecution.

time only. For he took special care for the good education of his son *Commodus*, committing him to the most eminent men he could obtain for money to be educated in good literature and manners. To *Lucius* rather than him, is to be imputed the fourth persecution, which in their time raged throughout the Provinces. Herein suffered *Polycarpus* that famous Bishop of *Smyrna*, as is testified in the Epistle written by his Church unto the brethren in *Pontus*. He was ordained Bishop by St. *John* and other Apostles, with whom he conversed, and his Scholar he was, as *Tertullian*, *Irenaeus*, and several of the Antients do testify, and had served Christ 86 years, for he was older by much than thus, as Reverend \* *Usher* hath evinced. He caused meat to be set before those who apprehended him, and with wonderful alacrity and resolution underwent his Martyrdom by fire, on the seventh of the Calends of *April*, the ninth of *M. Aurelius Antoninus*, and the 169 of the ordinary *Era* of Christ, which was the same wherein *Lucius* died, as some Incriptions of *Gruterus* do testify. Now suffered also *Justin Martyr*, who after he had published his second Apology for the Christians, through the malice of *Crescens* the Cynick (whom railing against Christianity he had taxed for his filthy kind of life) as he even foretelleth in his *Apology*. The Churches of *Lugdunum* and *Vienna* in *Gall* were especially exercised in this fiery trial, as is to be seen in the History of *Eusebius*.

29. It may without curiosity be observed, that usually the persecutions of Gods People were followed with judgements upon the adversaries, as it now through Gods providence came to passe. For so great a Pestilence fell upon the Provinces, that Villages, Towns, and fields in *Italy*, were left without Inhabitant or Tiller, and *Galen* the Physician ran away from it from *Rome* home to *Pergamus*. This was followed by a War with the *Marcomanni*, which could not be carried on without new levies, which for three years together the Emperour made at *Carnuntum* (now *Chartres*) in *Gall*. For besides the *Marcomanni* (a People inhabiting that now called *Merhern*) the *Quadi* (whom some will have the same with the present *Austrians*, others with the *Saxons* and *Silesians*) the *Vandalls* (inhabiting in the now Kingdom of *Sweden*) *Sarmatians*, and *Suevians*, and almost all *Germany* were up in arms, and invaded *Pannonia*. The *Roman* Army resisting these motions, perished into the borders of the *Quadi*; but there were beset by their adversaries, and encountered by a greater Enemy, being all ready to perish by thirst. At this time the Soldiers of the Legion called *Melitina* being Christians, fell upon their knees in presence of their fellow Soldiers, and in the name of Christ so far prevailed with Almighty God, that presently abundance of rain fell, and the Enemy was defeated by Thunder and Lightning. This Legion was thence called *Fulminatrix* or *Thundering*, and the Emperour confessing the Victory to have proceeded from the prayers of Christians, was thenceforth favourable to such, and owned the deliverance in a publick instrument or letter to the *Roman* People and Senate. Herein, after he hath related the story, and improved it in the behalf of Christianity, he commandeth such as accuse Christians meere as such, to be burnt alive, and no constraint to be used towards the faithful. This his constitution he would have confirmed by a *Senatusconsultum*, and proposed to be seen and read in the Forum of *Trajan*. He ordereth *Verasius Pollio* to take care that it be sent into all the Provinces, and that any one that pleaseth may take a copy of it.

The Emperour's letter  
in behalf of  
Christianity.

30. This letter is published at the end of *Justin Martyr's* second *Apology*, together with those of *Antoninus* and *Adrian*. It could not be added by *Justin* himself, for ere this time he had suffered Martyrdom. *Perionius* thinketh, that onely that of *Adrian* was added by him, and the other two by some other, who saw them pertinent for the place. But *Eusebius* in his History mentioneth that of *Antoninus* as well as that of *Adrian*, in the words of *Melita* Bishop of *Sardis*, who wrote an Apology to the Emperour, and also \* exemplifieth the Epistle itself. This letter also of *M. Antoninus Philosopher*, is extant in the most antient Copy of the *Vatican* library, in the end of *Justin Martyr's* works, added by some studious and well-affected person, first

\* Quem consule  
de Polycarpo  
in Dissert. de  
Scriptis illius  
& Ignatii.

*Euseb. l. 4. c. 15,  
16, 17. & l. 5.  
c. 1.*

*Orosius l. 7.  
c. 15.  
Eutrop. l. 8.*

Vide Textul.  
Apolog. c. 5.  
*Euseb. Hist. l. 5.  
c. 5. & in  
Chron.  
Orosium ubi  
supra.  
Paul. Diacon.  
l. 8.  
Xiphil. ex Dion.  
Julium Capito-  
linum.*

\* Lib. 4. c. 25.

\* c. 13.

first translated into *Greek* out of *Latin*, and again into *Latin* out of *Greek* most accurately, as we are informed by *Syburgius* in his Annotations upon *Justin Martyr*. But the Emperour being called into *Pannonia* for the finishing of the War there, and passing into *Sarmatia*, fell sick. Hereupon seriously bethinking himself what might happen to the Empire in the minority of his son, these parts being not fully reduced to obedience, especially in case he should degenerate from the worth of his ancestors, and give himself up to luxury and cruelty, he called his friends together, and seriously commended him unto them, to be advised and assisted for the best. After this he lived but one day and a night, to the grief of all men. He died at *Vendebona* the 17 of *March*, in the 58 year of his age, and of his Empire the 19, the 932 of the City. A.D. 180. *Arrius Præfatus* the 2 time and *Aelius Gordianus* being *Consuls*.

*M. Aurelius  
dictus.*

*Commodus.*

31. *Commodus* his son (for whose sake *Dio* maketh the Physicians to have killed him) succeeded him, having two years before been made a Consul, through a dispensation with the *Lex Annæa*, as *Lampridius* writeth, although it seemeth something strange, that this Law could take place upon those, to whom the title of *Augustus* was not denied. Being owned by the Army, for some time he governed according to the direction of his Father's friends, but being obnoxious to flatterers by reason of his youth, who sought to make their own ends out of him, he shortly after, contrary to the judgement of his best Counsellors, made a dishonourable Peace with the Enemy, and away he went to enjoy the pleasures of *Rome*, where he was joyfully received for his fathers sake, his beauty also much commending him to the eye. For a time he here also harkened to his fathers friends, but making one *Perennius* an old Soldier Captain of his Guards, he being excessively covetous, allured him at first by pleasures to idleness and neglect of business, then governing all himself, he falsely accused them and others of the richer sort, that he might seize on their estates. This his design was furthered by *Lucilla* the Emperour's sister, who grudging that *Crispina Commodus* his wife should take place of her, entered into a conspiracy against her brother, and engaged one *Quadratus* a young Noble man therein, who perswaded *Quintianus* to kill *Commodus*. But he meeting him, had no power to do the deed, onely shewing his dagger, said, The Senate sends thee this, and so was apprehended and put to death with his complices. These words concerning the Senate thus foolishly spoken, never went out of the Emperours mind, but made him suspect all the Fathers, which advantage *Perennius* took, and perswaded him to kill all the chiefest of them. This being performed, this man affected the Sovereignty, but was in good time discovered, both he and his sons, whom he had sent into *Illyricum* to draw the Legions to revolt, and received their reward.

His difficul-  
ties.

32. *Commodus* to prevent the too great power of one man, put two into his place, *Cleander* and *Niger*, for the time to come; and yet presently after had more plots laid for his life. There was one *Maternus*, who practising the trade of robbery, got a great company of Highway-men together, and making himself Captain of a considerable Army, wasted *Gall* and *Spain*, and thence repelled, resolved to venture for the Sovereignty itself. Having but little hope to obtain it by force, because of the People, and the Pretorian bands, he betook him to his wits. At that time the Annual solemnity was kept in honour of the mother of their gods, wherein it was lawful for Soldiers or any other to imitate Magistrates or their Officers. Taking this opportunity, he sent some of his Soldiers privily armed to get amongst the Sargeants and Officers of the Emperour, and so to kill him; but being betrayed by his own party, he and his plot both miscarried. After this succeeded a terrible Pestilence; accompanied with a Famine, which *Cleander* a *Phrygian*, one who from a slave came into greatest power, made an occasion to advance himself. He bought up all the Corn, thinking by a largesse thereof to purchase the Empire of the Soldiers and People, but these rising against him, as the cause of the Dearth and Plague too, after that with great difficulty, by reason of his power, the matter was revealed to *Commodus*, he also received

*Herodianus l. 1.  
Olymp. 239.  
an. 4.  
V. C. 932.  
A. D. 180.*

Ppppp 2

his

his reward. These things caused the Emperour to be jealous of all men, to cast off all care of State affaires, and giving ear to every back-biter, to kill any. Hence also no persons of worth being admitted into his presence, he was ruled by dissolute companions, and fell more and more into disorder.

33. He turned chariot-driver, and spent his time in killing beasts with darts, and other unworthy exercises. He was the best marksman that ever was known, scarcely ever missing any mark he aimed at. He publicly killed multitudes of wild beasts upon the theatre, amongst the rest a Panther, which just being about to devour a man, he hit and slew in the nick of time, as she was about to seize on him. In stead of *Commodus the son of Marcus*, he commanded himself to be called *Hercules the son of Jupiter*. Casting off the usual Robe of Princes, in compliance with that name, he would lye on a Lyons skin, and have a club in his hand; yet he would wear purple garments and cloath of Gold. To his former title he added *Amazonian* and *Conquerour*; *Rome* he stiled *Immortal* and *Fortunate*, and the World *His Colony*. A great fire hapened in the City, which burned that excellent Library gathered by his Prædecessors, with the Temple of *Peace*, and other buildings, which accident as the People accounted an ill omen, so they laid the guilt upon him, knowing well his practices, which he never strove to conceal. Though his throwing of darts upon the theatre much derogated from the Imperial Majesty, they were indifferently pleased with it; but when he came naked upon the stage and acted the common fencer, it seemed intolerable. At length at the Feast of *Janus* resolving not to proceed from his Palace as *Emperour*, but as a *Fencer* from the fencing School, attended with such like to the view of the People, this occasioned his end.

34. For, this his resolution being known to his Friends, *Martia* his beloved Concubine, *Latius* his General, and *Eleusus* his Chamberlain, laboured with all intreaties to divert him from so shameful a thing. He herewith extremely displeased, betook himself to his Chamber, where in a roule he wrote down the names of such as he would have killed, and amongst them those three in that order we mention them had the first places; them followed a great number of Senators, the goods of whom he intended to distribute amongst the Fencers and Soldiers, to purchase mirth and jollity from them, and defence from these. This writing he laid upon his bed, where he did not suspect that any would come at it. But a little boy with whom he was wont to play, coming thither, took it up, and went out with it in his hand, whom *Martia* meeting, and taking up in her arms, fearing it might be something of consequence, read it, and thereby discovered the matter, which she presently imparted to the other two. They all concluding that haste was to be made, *Martia* gave him poyson, and when that succeeded not, they hired one *Narcissus* to strangle him. So *Commodus* died, who by his Lieutenants overthrew the *Moors* and *Dacians*, and bridled *Pannonia*, *Germany*, and *Britain*, which would have thrown off the yoke. He died on the last day of the *Julian* year; the 32 of his age, when he had reigned almost 13 years. A. V. C. 945. A. D. 192, he himself the seventh and *Helvius Pertinax* the third time being *Consul*.

35. The Conspirators did not make known his death, till they had made means for a Successor, and then gave out that he died of an Apoplexy, which was easily believed, because of his voluptuous life. He upon whom they pitched was *Helvius Pertinax*, an old Soldier, who had done good service in *Britain*, where he was near killing by his Soldiers, but severely corrected their insolence. He had been thrice Consul, yet being thus delivered from the danger he was in by *Commodus*, considering the meanness of his birth, he would have declined the burthen, but it was put upon him by the Senate, and the Army acknowledged him. He gave great hopes of an excellent Prince, behaving himself modestly and suitably towards all men. He restrained Promoters, took away divers tolls and gabels lately imposed, and restrained the rapines and insolence of the Soldiers. This troubled the guards exceedingly, who being so much the more sensible of the change brought upon them by

*Idem ibid.*  
*Orosius l. 7. cap. 6.*

*Lege Herod. ubi  
supra.*  
*Eutrop. l. 8.*  
*Xiphil. ex Di-*  
*one.*  
*Aurel. Victor.*

*Herodian. l. 2.*

*Olymp. 242. an.*  
*A. V. C. 945.*  
*A. D. 192.*

strict

His carriage.

He is murdered.

*Helvius Pertinax.*

strict discipline, as they remembered the liberty given them by *Commodus*, resolved to make tryal of another, and an end of *Pertinax*. In the strength of this resolution they set upon and killed him, though he had like so excellent a person gravely and stoutly admonished them of their duty. He died in the 85 day of his reign, and the 69 year of his age. *Q. Sotinus Falco*, and *C. Julius Erucius Clarus* being *Consuls*.

Bishops.

36. Now, that we may briefly carry on the series of Ecclesiastical matters, whence we left them. In the second year of *M. Annelius Philosophus* died *Anicetus* the Bishop of *Rome* and *Soter* being the 13th of this Sea succeeded him, according to *Damasus*. In his 10th year *Soter* died, and was succeeded by *Eleutherius*. In the 6th of *Commodus* died *Eleutherius*, on the 7th before the *Calends of June*, *Maternus* and *Bradius* being *Consuls*, in which year *Commodus* and *Cleander* to overturn the power of the Consulship created 25 *Consuls*, for which *Cleander* was afterwards punished, being carried to *Rome* amongst the worst sort of slaves. In the following year *Eleutherius* was succeeded by *Victor* an *African*, *Commodus* the fifth time, and *Gladius* being *Consuls*. Touching the purity of the Church of *Rome* at this time *Egesippus* thus wrote. (a) *When I came to Rome I stayed there till Anicetus was chosen Bishop, whose Deacon was Eleutherius, whom Soter succeeded, & after him Eleutherius. In all their successions, and in every one of their Cities is no otherwise than the Law and the Prophets, and the Lord himself preached.* *Irenæus* also wrote: Now (b) *Eleutherius was the 12th Bishop from the Apostles, after the same order, the same Doctrine and Tradition of the Apostles truly taught in the Church at this day continued in our time.* From *Marcus* the first Bishop of *Jerusalem* from amongst the *Gentiles*, some reckon 13 Bishops unto *Narcissus*, of whom are many things reported. He (c) was accused of an heinous crime, and although he was innocent, yet left he his Church, and fled into the Wilderness, where he continued a long time. In the mean while his accusers were wonderfully plagued from above to the example of all perjured persons. After his departure *Dios* was Bishop unto the reign of *Severus*, as is gathered from *Epiphanius*. After *Cornelius* was (d) *Theophilus* Bishop of *Antioch*, he wrote of *Eleutherius* of *Antioch*, and dedicated them to *Autolycus*. Also against the Heresie of *Hermogenes* and *Marcion*. After him followed *Maximinus*, and then (e) *Serapion*. After *Celadion* in the Church of *Alexandria*, (f) *Agrippas* was Bishop about the 8th year of *Marcus*, and governed 12 years. Him succeeded (g) *Julianus* in the first of *Commodus*, and governed 10 years. Then followed (h) *Demetrius*, who continued 43 years.

Councils.

37. During the reign of *Commodus* were several *Synodes* or *Councils* held against the Heresie of *Montanus*, and about the Celebration of *Easter*. Because before this time *Councils* were but few, we would not give any account of them in a scattered manner; but now shall briefly recite from the first of all such as hapened untill the end of *Commodus*. The (a) *Apostles* immediately after the ascension of our Saviour returned from Mount *Oliver* to *Jerusalem*, and there assembled together for the election of one to succeed in the room of *Judas* the Traitor, where they chose *Matthias*. This is the first Council. The (b) second was summoned of the *Apostles* and Disciples at *Jerusalem*, about removing the tumult risen betwixt the *Græcians* and *Hebrews* about their Widows, wherein they chose seven *Deacons* as they are called by *Ecclesiastical* Writers. The (c) third was held by the *Apostles*, *Elders*, and *Brethren* at *Jerusalem*, concerning circumcision and observation of the Law, where it was resolved, that the *faithfull should abstain from blood, from that which is strangled, and from fornication*, the which they published by their Letters unto the Churches of *Antioch*, *Syria*, and *Cilicia*. The fourth was held by *James* Bishop of *Jerusalem*, *Paul*, and the *Elders* at that City also, where for removing of suspicion, and winning of the brethren, it was decreed, that *Paul should clear and purifie himself according to the Law, yielding for some time to the Ceremonies of it*. After the death of *James* the *Apostles* from every quarter (e) gathered themselves together at *Jeru-*

(a) *Euseb. Hist. lib. 4. cap. 22.*

(b) *Euseb. l. 5. cap. 6.*

(c) *Idem lib. 5. cap. 11. lib. 6. c. 8, 9.*

(d) *Idem lib. 4. c. 20. 24.*

(e) *Idem lib. 5. c. 19. 22.*

(f) *L. 4. c. 20.*

(g) *L. 5. c. 9.*

(h) *L. 5. c. 9.*

(i) *L. 5. c. 22.*

(j) *L. 6. c. 26.*

(a) *Acts 1.*

(b) *Acts 6.*

(c) *Acts 15.*

(d) *Acts 21.*

(e) *Euseb. l. 3. cap. 11.*



Jerusalem for the Election of a Bishop, and chose Simon Cleopas. In an assembly of the Apostles, certain Canons were agreed on, and published by Clemens as 'tis said. But (f) those that now go for them are corrupt, the (f) Concil corruption of the Apostolical constitutions, and of Ignatius his Epistles having proceeded from the same hand, as reverend *Usher* sheweth in his Dissertation concerning the said Epistles, who as to this matter is therein most worthy to be consulted. About the time of *Nerva* the Emperour were two (g) Synods summoned in Asia for reformation of the Churches, and Consecration of Bishops, where St. John the Apostle being sent for was present. (g) *Euseb. l. 3. c. 23.* About the beginning of *Marcus Antoninus* was a Synod at (h) *Ancyra* in Galatia, where the figments of *Montanus* were confuted by *Apollinaris*. (h) *Idem l. 5. cap. 16.* And there were held in Asia sundry Synods in which *Montanus* was excommunicated, and his Heresie condemned. The brethren in (i) *France* also assembled together, and censured the opinions of *Montanus*, writing to *Eusebius* Bishop of *Rome*, that he would maintain the Peace of the Church there against such Hereticks. (i) *Lib. 5. c. 3.* (k) *Serapion* also Bishop of *Antioch* held a Synod there about the middle of *Commodus* his reign, where together with many other Bishops he condemned the *Montanists*, or their Heresie called the *Phrygian* Heresie, because *Montanus* was of that Countrey. Not long after was held a Council at (l) *Rome* by *Victor* the Bishop about the Celebration of (l) *Idem l. 5. cap. 23.* *Easter*, in *Palestine* also, in *Pontus* and *Gall* were Synods called about the same matter.

Controversie concerning Easter.

38. This controversie about *Easter* is mentioned by *Eusebius* not till the last year of the 243 Olympiad, which fell in with the fourth of *Severus*; but *appellus* thinketh it first arose in the first of the 242 Olympiad, and the tenth of *Commodus*, wherein this feast was celebrated by the Jews, and the Churches of *Asia Minor*, at a wrong time, as *Theophilus* Bishop of *Casarea* thought, viz. by the Jews on the fifteenth of *Nisan*, March 20. but by the Christians of *Asia* on the fourteenth of *Nisan*, March 19. on the fourth *Feria*, three dayes before the Vernal *Aequinox*. *Theophilus* supposing that the *Aequinox* hapned on March the 25. and that so it ever did, and for this cause that the Sun was on that day created, and that Christ arose again the same day, as also that the Lords Supper was instituted on the 22 of March, contended that it was utterly against reason to prevent the *Epoche* of the *Aequinox* so many dayes, and the day whereon the Lords Supper was instituted. Wherefore he procured the Fathers of *Palestine* assembled in a Synode, to make these Canons. 1. That never, except after March 21. 2. That never but after the fourteenth Moon. 3. That never after April 24. 4. That never except on the Lords day *Easter* should be celebrated; on that day which next followed the fourteenth Moon hapning next after March 21. Hereby he hoped it would come to passe, that *Easter* would ever be observed within the moneth of *Aries*. In the Synode of *Palestine* where these Canons were made, the aforesaid *Theophilus* Bishop of *Casarea*, and *Narcissus* of *Jerusalem* presided. Of that at *Rome*, *Victor* the Bishop was President. In that of *Pontus*, *Palmas*, as the most antient did govern. In that of the Bishops of *Gall*, *Irenaeus* presided. There was another of the Bishops throughout *Osroene*, and the Cities therein contained; and especially held by *Rauehillus* Bishop of *Corinth* with many others; all which faith *Eusebius* with one and the same sentence and judgement ordained the same Decree. With those also consented *Cassius* Bishop of *Tyre*, and *Clarus* Bishop of *Ptolemais*. They affirmed that it was the Apostolick tradition and custom as yet retained, that the fasting dayes should be broken up on no other day than that wherein our Saviour arose from the dead. And the Church of *Alexandria* celebrated *Easter* on the self-same day with them.

39. But all the Churches throughout *Asia*, as of an antient tradition thought good to observe the high-feast of *Easter* in the 14th Moon, on which day the Jews were commanded to offer their Paschal Lamb. As much as to say, that upon what day soever in the week that Moon fell, the fasting dayes were finished and ended. *Polycrates* of *Ephesus*, chief of these Bishops, in his Epistle

Eccl. de signatura  
verum cap. 28.  
46. & de  
quinquies.

Epistle to the Church of *Rome*, sheweth the custom of *Asia* observed unto his time, in these words. We observe the unviolated day of *Easter*, neither adding any thing thereto, neither taking any thing from it. For notable pillars of Christian Religion have rested in *Asia*, which shall arise at the last day whack the Lord shall come home from Heaven, with glory, and restore all the Saints to joy. Philip, one of the twelve Apostles now lying at *Hierapolis*, and his two daughters, who kept themselves Virgins all the dayes of their lives, the third also after the end of her holy conversation rested at *Ephesus*. John also, who lay on the Lord's breast, and wore the Priestly Attire, both a Martyr and a Doctor slept at *Ephesus*. Moreover, *Polycarpus* Bishop of *Smyrna*, and a Martyr. *Thraseas* an *Eumenian*, both a Bishop and a Martyr slept at *Smyrna*. What shall I speak of *Sagaris*, both a Bishop and a Martyr lying at *Laodicea*? Also of blessed *Papirius* and *Melito* an Eunuch, who was led and guided in all things he did by the holy Ghost, and now rests at *Sardis*, waiting the message from Heaven when he shall arise from the dead. All these celebrated the Feast of *Easter*, according to the Gospel, in the fourteenth Moon, swarving no where, but observing the rule of faith. To be short, and I *Polycrates* the meanest of you all do retain the tradition of my forefathers, of which also I have imitated some. For there were seven Bishops before me, and I am the 8th which alwayes have celebrated the Feast of *Easter* on that day in which the people remove the leaven from amongst them. I therefore (my brethren) who now have lived 65 years in the Lord, have conferred with the brethren throughout the World, and have read, and over-read the holy Scriptures, yet will not be moved at all with those things which are made to terrifie us. For my Ancestors and Elders have said that we ought rather to obey God than men. Afterwards he speaketh of the Bishops that consented, and subscribed to his Epistle, after this manner: I could repeat the Bishops that were present, whom you requested me to assemble, whom also I have assembled together, whose names if I should write would grow unto a great number; they have visited me a simple Soul, and a man of small account, and have consented to this Letter. They also know that I bear not these gray hairs in vain, but alwayes have had my conversation in Christ Jesus.

40. Immediately upon this, *Victor* Bishop of *Rome* went about to sever from the unity in the Communion all the Churches of *Asia*, together with the adjoining Congregations, as favoring not aright, and inveted against them in his Epistles, and pronounced Ancy all the brethren there for excommunicated persons. But this not pleasing all the Bishops, they exhorted him to seek after those things which concerned peace, unity, and love between brethren. Their words are at this day extant (saith *Eusebius*) that sharply reprehended *Victor*. Of which number *Irenaeus* in the name of all the brethren in *Gall* that were under his charge, wrote, and allowed the same sentence, viz. The Mystery of the resurrection of our Saviour to be celebrated on the Sunday only. Yet as it was very meet he put him in mind at large of his duty, that he should not estrange, or cut off all the Churches of God, which retained the tradition of old custom. He told him, that there was not onely a controversie about the day, but also the kind or manner of fasting, that this variety began long before their time; yet for all this they were at unity one with another, for this variety of fasting, saith he, commendeth the unity of faith. He told him, that his Predecessors in the See of *Rome*, *Anicetus*, *Dius*, *Hyginus*, *Telephorus*, and *Xistus*, neither did so observe it themselves, neither left any such commandment unto posterity, and yet they were at unity with them which referred to them from other Churches, and did observe the same. *Polycarpus* being at *Rome* in the time of *Anicetus*, they varied between themselves about trifling matters, yet were they soon reconciled, and not a word of this matter. Neither was *Anicetus* able to persuade *Polycarpus* that he should not retain that which he had alwayes observed with John the Disciple of our Lord, and the rest of the Apostles with whom he had been conversant: neither did *Polycarpus* persuade *Anicetus* to observe it, but told him he ought

Victor Bishop of Rome sharply reprehended.

ought to keep the ancient custom of the Elders whom he succeeded. These things being at this point, they communicated one with another. And in the Church *Anicetus* granted the Eucharist unto *Polycarpus* (or as *Rufinus* understandeth it, granted the ministrations of the Communion to him) for the reverence he owed him, and in the end they parted in peace; and all such as retained contrary observations throughout the whole universal Church held fast the bond of Love and Unity. Thus *Irenaeus*, not degenerating from the Etymology of his name, and passing all others in the gift of reconciling the brethren, practised for Ecclesiastical peace. He wrote not onely to *Victor*, but also to sundry Governours of divers other Churches, in several Epistles concerning the said Controversy.

41. Thus do we see the first controversies about this *Fest of Easter*. Although the hypotheses of *Theophilus* concerning the *Aequinoctial* will not abide trial, yet doubtlesse, those had more reason on their side, who intending to celebrate the resurrection of Christ, refused to do it, but on that day he rose from the dead; the other practice seeming to have risen from a custom of keeping the Paschever at that time, by such as were originally of the *Jewish* Nation. Notwithstanding they differed about time and manner, yet before the government of *Victor*, we see they agreed in brotherly love. And it appeareth that the custom of observing this *Fest*, was most ancient, even in the Apostles dayes, as appeareth from what is said by *Polycrates*, and by *Irenaeus*, in behalf of *Polycarpus*. Though they differed in the manner about keeping it, yet we do not find that any denied it was to be kept at all, although they were also for the true and spiritual observation of it, and against abuses, as all good Christians have reason to be. But (that we may conclude this controversy) in proceesse of time both they of *Asia* and others, leaving their own customs, admitted of the *Paschal Canons*, made by the Orientals, especially by those of *Palastine* and *Alexandria*. At length few dissenters remaining, a necessity of obedience was imposed by *Constantine*, who herein followed the judgement of two Synods, viz. that of *Arelatium* or *Arles*, A. D. 314, and the other of *Nice*, A. D. 325. But (that we may note thus much by way of Anticipation) The ancient *British* Church as it seemeth submitted not to those Decrees, observing *Easter* from the fourteenth to the twentieth Moon, which computation, saith (a) *Beda*, is contained within the Circle of 84. years. And for this, when they would not comply with *Augustine* the Monk (who had been sent from *Gregory* the Great Bishop of *Rome* to convert the *Saxons*, and was made by him the first Archbishop of *Canterbury*) who sought to draw them to uniformity, 1200 Monks of *Bangor* were put to the sword (whether through procurement of *Augustine* or no, I shall not now determine) by King *Eibelfrid*, A. D. 603, the *Scots* also then inhabiting *Ireland* observed *Easter* at the same time as the *Britains* did, to whom therefore *Laurentius* the Successor of *Augustine* in the See of *Canterbury* wrote, to drive them from their singularities. But how much be hereby profited, the present times do yet declare, saith (b) *Beda*, who lived A. D. 700.

42. And being thus occasionally brought to *Britain*, we must observe in behalf of our native Country, that the thick mists of superstition being scattered, in the reign of *Commodus* (not under *M. Aurelius* and *L. Verus*, as *Beda* writeth) when *Eleutherus* was Bishop of *Rome*, the heavenly light and brightness of Christianity, by the means of King *Lucius* shone upon this Island. This Prince admiring the holy life of Christians, made petition unto *Eleutherus* by mediation of *Elvan* and *Meduan*, *Britains*, that both himself and his Subjects might be instructed in the Christian Religion. He sent forth with *Eugenius* and *Donatianus*, two holy men, with letters, which at this day, saith *Cambden*, be extant, and, as very many be persuaded, not forged, but Authentical, as bearing date when *L. Aurelius Commodus* the second time, and *Vesprontius* were Consuls. This *Vesprontius* was *Vesprontius Caydidus*, whom *Onuphrius* and *Baronius* make the Colleague of *Commodus* in the first year of his Fathers reign, though an Inscription of *Gruterus* mentions

(a) Eccles. Hist.  
Ang. l. 2. c. 2.

(b) ubi supra  
c. 4.

tions *Aurelius Verus*; so that to the very first beginning of *Commodus* the preaching of these men is to be ascribed. These holy men instructed the King and others in the mysteries of Christian Religion. Hereupon *Ninnius* writeth: King *Lucius* is surnamed *Lever Maur*, that is, a Prince of great glory, for the Faith which in his time came. Now such as call the being of this King into question, for that they think there was at this time no King in *Britain*, which was wholly and fully reduced into a Province before; *Cambden* willeth to remember, That the *Romans* had by ancient custom in their Provinces, Kings, as the instruments of their bondage, that the *Britains* even then refused to obey *Commodus*, and that they themselves possessed and held freely those parts of the Island, which were beyond the aforesaid wall, and had there Kings of their own, and that *Antoninus Pius* a few years before, having put an end to War, permitted Kingdoms to be ruled by their own Kings, and Provinces by their own *Comites*. He citeth *Tertullian*, who much about this time wrote, that Those places amongst the *Britains* which yielded the *Romans* no access, are now subdued unto Christ. Britain is inclosed within the compass of the Ocean. The Nation of the *Mauri*, and the barbarous *Getulians* are beset by the *Romans*, for fear they might passe beyond the limits of their Countries. What should I speak of the *Romans*, who with Garrisons of their Legions fortifie their Empire? neither are they able to extend the power of their Dominion beyond these very Nations. But the Kingdom and Name of Christ reacheth further still, it is believed in every place, and is worshipped of all those People above named, &c.

43. But our Ecclesiastical Writers (thus *Cambden* proceedeth) who have employed both time and diligence in the consideration of this point, endeavour and labour to prove, and that out of ancient Fathers of credit, that before this time, in the very dawning and infancy of the Church, *Britain* had received Christian Religion: and namely that *Joseph of Arimathea*, a Noble Senator, sailed out of *Gall* into *Britain*, and that *Claudia Rufina* the wife of *Aulus Pudens* (which woman as is credibly thought *St. Paul* nameth in his later Epistle to *Timothee*) and whom the Poet *Martial* so highly commendeth, was a *Britain* born. They cite the testimony of *Dorotheus*, who commonly goeth under the name of the Bishop of *Tyre*, who in his *Synopsis* hath recorded, that *Simon Zelotes* having travelled through *Mauritania*, was at last slain and buried in *Britain*, as also that *Aristobulus*, whom *St. Paul* mentioneth in his Epistle to the *Romans*, was made Bishop of *Britain* (to which *Nicephorus* inclineth) notwithstanding he speaketh of *Britannia* and not of *Britania*. They report likewise upon the authority of *Simeon*, that great Metaphrast, and of the *Menology* of the *Greeks*, that *St. Peter* came hither and spread abroad the Light of Gods Word: out of *Sophronius* also and *Theodoret*, that *St. Paul* after his second imprisonment in *Rome*, visited this our Country. Whereupon *Venantius Fortunatus* wrote of him, (except he speaketh of his Doctrine) if he may be believed as a Poet. But to this purpose, saith our Author, maketh especially, that which ere-while I alleged out of *Tertullian*, as also that which *Origen* recordeth, how *The Britains* with one consent embraced the Faith, and made way themselves, to God by means of the Druids, who did alwaies beat upon this Article of Belief, That there is but one God. And verily of great moment is that with me, which *Gildas* writeth, after he had mentioned the rebellion of *Boudicia*, and treated of the revenge thereof. In the mean while, saith he, Christ that true sun shining with his most glittering brightness upon the universal world, not from the temporal skie and firmament, but even from the highest cope of Heaven, exceeding all times, vouchsafed first his beams, that is to say, his precepts and doctrine, in the time, as we know, of *Tiberius Caesar*, unto this frozen Island full of ice, and lying out as it were in a long tract of earth remote from the visible Sun. *Chrysostome* likewise, to note so much by the way, writeth of the Christian Religion in this Island as followeth. The *British* Islands seated without this Sea, and within the very Ocean, have felt the power of the Word (for even there also be Churches founded, and Altars

\* Transiit Oceanum & qua facit insula portum Quasque Britannus habet terras quasque ultima Thule.

Q9999 erected

erected) of that Word I say, which is planted in the Souls, and now also in the lips of all People. And the same Chrysostome in another place: How often have People in Britain fed of mans flesh? but now with fasting they refresh the Soul. Likewise St. Hierome: The Britain divided from our World, if he proceed in Religion, leaving the Western parts towards the Sunns setting, will seek Jerusalem, a City known to him by form onely, and relation of Scriptures.

Hereticks.

44. As for Hereticks which lived in the time with the forementioned Bishops, and the reigns of Marcus and Commodus: There were the Secundians, called so from Secundus, who together with Epiphane and Isidorus taught the same with Valentinus. In life they were beastly, all women among them were common: they denied the resurrection of the flesh. Ptolomans of whom were named the Ptolomai, taught the heretical opinions of the Gnosticks out of Valentinus, adding thereunto of his own certain heathenish doctrines out of Homer. Marcus of whom the Marcosis, Colorbasus of whom the Colorbasii, and Heracleon of whom the Hereticks were called Heracleontes, sacrificed with witchcraft; to amaze their auditory they pronounced Hebrew words. Many women coming to Church, under colour of receiving the power of Prophecy from them, confessed they were abused by them. Marcus ran away with another mans wife. They poured oyl and water upon the head of the deceased, hoping so to redeem them. They said, that the life and generation of man consisted in seven Starrs: that Christ suffered not indeed, and that there was no resurrection of the flesh. Alcibiades refraining the use of Gods Creatures, was reformed by Aulus the Martyr. Archontici, Hereticks in Palestine, referred all things unto mans powers. They said, the Sabbath was the God of the Jews, and the Devil the son of the Sabbath. (b) Tatianus the Scholar of Justin Martyr gave original to the Encratites, so called from continencie. For they abhorred marriage, forbade the use of living creatures, offered water instead of wine in the Sacrament, and denied that Adam was saved. Severus of whom were named the Severians, added to the opinions of Tatianus, reviling Paul, rejecting his Epistles, and the Acts of the Apostles. He said, that a woman was of the Devil, that man from the middle upwards was of God, and beneath of the Devil. Apelles, Ponsinus, and other Marcionites, about this time also disturbed the Peace of the Church.

45. There were also certain Hereticks of Galatia and Cappadocia called Pepuzians, as also Quintiliani and Priscilliani, because they said, that Christ in form of a woman being the bed-fellow of Quintilla or Priscilla, revealed unto her Divine Mysteries. Women were Priests amongst them, and their sacrifices were alike to the Montanists, of which Sect they seem to have been, seeing also his Prophetesses were of the Town Pepusa. Ariotyrites were Hereticks which offered bread and cheese in the Sacrament. Alogi denied Christ to be the Word, condemned John's Gospel, and said, that Cerinthus the Heretick wrote the Revelations. Theodorus a Montanist through Sorcery took his flight towards Heaven, but down he fell and died miserably. Adamites devised a Church after the fashion of an hot-house, to keep them from cold for the space of an hour or Service time: they were all naked men and women: Virgins preached unto the rest: their Church they called Paradise, and themselves Adam and Eve. (a) Florinus and Blastus fell from the Church, and taught at Rome, that God was the Author of evil, whom Ireneus confuted. (b) Theodorus a Tanner denied the Divinity of Christ: he was the first Author of the Heresy of Ariemon, for which cause Victor Bishop of Rome excommunicated him. Ariemon his disciple accounted Christ but a bare and naked man. He lived in the time of Victor and Zephyrinus. His companions were Asclepiodorus and Nardius, who repented and fell at the feet of Zephyrinus Bishop of Rome for absolution. (c) Marcianus the Heretick maintained an heterodox opinion, out of the pretended Gospel of Peter, whom Serapion Bishop of Antioch confuted. (d) Noetus denied there were three Persons, saying, All three were one. He called himself

Epiphan.  
August. de  
heresibus.  
Euseb.

Euseb. l. 5.  
c. 3.  
(b) L. 4. c. 27.

Epiphan.  
Aug.

(a) Euseb. Eccl.  
Hist. l. 5. c. 14,  
19.  
(b) L. 5. c. 28.

(c) Lib. 6. c. 12.  
(d) Epiphan.  
heres. 37.

self Moser, and said, Aaron was his brother. He said, the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost, suffered in the flesh.

## CHAP. V.

From the death of Pertinax, and the exposing of the Empire to sale, to the death of Maximinus the first elected Emperour without consent of the Senate, the space of 45 years.

1. THE Soldiers having murdered Pertinax, got them to their Camp, and set the Empire to sale, proclaiming, that they would prefer him that should offer most. Two there were found who bade money for it: first Sulpicianus a man of Consular dignity, Governour of the City, and Father in Law to Pertinax, and Didius Julianus of the same degree, a great Lawyer, and exceeding rich. The Soldiers being jealous left the former should have an intention to punish them for the murder of Pertinax, accepted the offer of Julianus, who promised what they would ask, having, as he said, treasures of Silver and Gold. Being by a ladder received up to the wall, and so into the Camp, he promised to restore the honours and statues of Commodus, to grant them what liberty they enjoyed under that Prince, and to give them more than they could ask or expect, he was carried into the Palace, the people by the way cursing and upbraiding him with his purchase. Having thus invaded the Empire, he gave himself up to all Luxury, but being unable to perform his promise to the Soldiers, lost their favour, and fell into the contempt of all men, the people desiring another Prince. At this time Pescennius Niger was Governour of Syria, who as well for the greatness of his place (his Province containing all from Phœnicia unto Euphrates) as for his popularity, was most eminent: him did the People extol, and they implored his assistance. He being glad of this opportunity, easily persuaded his Soldiers to accept of him for their Emperour, and entertained Ambassadors which now had recourse to him as the lawful Prince. But then giving himself up to idleness, he neglected to settle and confirm his estate by going to Rome, and (what was more) by drawing the Army in Illyricum to his side, and so lost all.

2. At this time governed both the Pannonias L. Septimius Severus an African born, a man forward and crafty, who seeing the Roman Empire thus obnoxious to every man's catch, resolved to venture for it amongst the rest, especially in regard that of those two who had seized on it, the one was negligent and secure, the other hated and despised. Being also encouraged by some dreams, he first of all inveighed against the Prætorian bands which had killed Pertinax, whom knowing to be much beloved by his Soldiers, he highly extolled him, and easily persuaded them to revenge his death, who once was Lieutenant of the forces in Illyricum. Then presently (though he pretended he sought it not) was he saluted Emperour, and took upon him the name of Pertinax, which he knew was acceptable to all. After this he marched with great speed to Rome, the Italians (who ever since the dayes of Augustus had not been used to War) receiving him in all places, and Julianus his Soldiers very slowly providing for resistance, though he had now distributed to them all the money he could by any means compass. Severus conveyed his Soldiers in a disguised manner into the City, which was full of them privily armed ere Julianus or the People were aware; whereupon Julianus wrote to him, to signify he was willing to receive him into participation of the Empire, and afterwards desired he might resign it. For the Senate seeing him so timorous; and the other now at hand, being called together according to the ancient custome by the Consuls, decreed death to him, and the Empire to Severus. Julianus held the dignity seven moneths, having purchased death at an excessive rate.

Q9999 2

3. Severus

Severus ob-  
taineth it.

3. *Severus* having thus obtained the Empire, that he might not at first crack his credit by falsifying his word, got those Soldiers into his power that had slain *Pertinax*, & making them be stripped of their Military Cloaths, banished them 100 miles from the Citie. Then entering the Court, he promised great things to the Senate, professing his intention was to govern after the precept of *Marcus*, and not onely to take the name, but also disposition of *Pertinax*, although there were some who so well knew him that they could not be deceived. After this he prepared for an expedition against *Niger*, but fearing to leave an *Emulator* at his back, he endeavoured to prevent him. This was *Clodius Albinus*, who at this time governed *Britain*, was of *Patrician rank*, and had a strong Army at his Command. He flattered him with the title of *Cesar*, beseeching him, as the fittest person, to take care of the Empire, for that he himself grew old, and his Children were Infants. *Albinus* overjoyed that he should obtain what he had desired without any trouble, fooled himself in his vain confidence, especially for that *Severus* had written to the Senate in the same strain, had ordered money to be stamped with his Image, erected him some Statues, and did him honour otherwise, to deceive him.

4. *Niger* much troubled at his coming towards him, took care for securing the passages into *Asia*, gathered together all the forces in those parts, obtained aid from the *Parthian* and *Armenian* Kings, seized on *Byzantium*, and fortified the Straights of the Mountain *Taurus*. *Severus* therefore directed not his course towards *Byzantium*, but marched for *Cyzicus*, where *Emilianus* General to *Niger* met him, and either for that he was overmarched, or desirous to save his Children (whom *Severus*, as also others of his adversaries had got into his hands) betrayed his trust, and lost his Army. Then did *Severus* invade *Bithynia*, wherein they of *Nicomedia* revolted to him; but the Inhabitants of *Nice* stuck close to *Niger*: thence he proceeded into *Galatia*, and so into *Cappadocia* to passe over *Taurus*. The passage was so fortified and defended, that no hope there was of breaking through, till abundance of Rain-water falling down from the Mountains broke down the Wall, whereupon the Defendants fled. Then came *Niger* with an Army very numerous, but not to be compared with the Legions of *Illyricum* for skill and valour, and they met at *Iffus*, where *Darius* was overthrown by *Alexander*. Here *Niger* had the same fortune in a great and bloody battel, after which going back to *Antioch*, and being pursued by a party of horse, his head was cut off, having brought himself to this end by his delay and idleness. *Severus* having thus removed him, now cast his thoughts towards his friend in *Britain*.

5. He now consulted how he might secure the Empire to his family, which could not be done as long as *Albinus* continuing *Cesar* had some title to it, and to whom in his absence the great ones had demonstrated their affections, as to a man of great nobility, and far more worthy of the Sovereignty than he who at present possessed it: he therefore resolved to remove him out of the way. By open War he thought it not convenient to do it, and therefore at first attempted his design by treachery, sending some who under colour of bringing Letters should make him away. *Albinus* having warning of him, this succeeded not, so that he betook himself to force, and with incredible expedition returned into the West. *Albinus* terrified at his hasty retreat made all possible Provision for resistance, and passed over into *Gaul*, where after many skirmishes they joyned in a pitched battel near *Lugdunum*. Victory at the first so far inclined towards *Albinus*, that *Severus* cast off his Robe, and hid himself, but by the coming in of *Lains*, who designed to destroy them both, and set up for himself, the fight was so changed, that *Albinus* was routed, and flying to the Citie, there had his head struck off. Then returned *Severus* to *Rome* with all his Army, which to reward, he not onely bestowed money upon them, but also such privileges, which though to him they might procure respect and service, yet proved the bane of the Commonwealth. For the Soldiers having formerly through the looseness and neglect

Olymp. 243.  
ann. 1.  
V. (. 946.  
A. D. 193.

Leges Herodian.  
lib. 3.  
Eutrop. lib. 9.  
Aurelium  
Victorem.  
Xiphil. ex Dio-  
ne.  
Orosium lib. 7.  
cap. 17.

Suppresseth  
*Niger*,

And *Albinus*.

neglect of some Emperours, contracted sloth and coverousnesse, were thence more animated to violate the Sovereignty, to depose, and set upon whom they pleased. Now he adding more fuel to this flame increased their allowance of Corn, gave them license to wear Rings of Gold as Knights, and to marry and maintain wives, which broke in pieces the Relicks of the antient Discipline, and effected that we shall hear more of them upon very sad occasions.

6. He made another expedition into the East to be revenged upon such as had assisted *Niger*. Peircing into *Arabia* he besieged *Aræ* the Metropolis of the *Atræi*; but found such entertainment as glad he was to retreat without any thing performed, and onely by chance as some say saved his reputation. For in his return being driven by Tempests into *Parthia*, he was constrained to land near *Ctesiphon*, the chief Citie where *Artabanus* the King then resided. *Artabanus* struck with the suddennesse of the thing fled again, and *Severus* taking the Citie with ease, got great Treasures, with multitudes of Captives, and returned to *Rome* in a Triumphant manner, having more by good fortune than policy achieved this Enterprize. When he had done these great things abroad, and (considering the Princes by him defeated, and the wonderfull expedition he used at all times) had approached near unto the greatest Military glory of the most famous Captains, he lay idle at home, or spending his time in judicial affairs he let fall the vizard of goodness, which in the beginning he had put on. His extraordinary coverousnesse increased his innate cruelty, so that under pretence of taking off his Enemies, he put to death unheard 43 persons of chiefe rank. In despite of the Senate he Canonized *Commodus* for a God, cast *Narcissus*, who strangled him (as he had deserved) to the Lyons, called himself his brother, and to his son *Bassianus*, whom he made partner with him in the Empire, he gave the surname of *Antoninus*. His cruelty was also extended to the Church, against which he raised the fifth persecution in the 10th year of his reign, wherein perished many.

His success  
in the East.

His Vices.

The fifth per-  
secution.

Coming into  
*Britain*,

Euseb. Eccles.  
Hist. l. 6. c. 1.  
&c.

7. *Severus* after the overthrow of *Albinus*, sent first *Heraclianus* to seize upon *Britain*, and to rule it: then *Virius Lupus* as Proprator and Lieutenant (whom *Ulpian* the Lawyer calleth *President of Britain*) who being wearied with the inrodes and insolences of the *Manna*, sent for the Emperour himself over. He was glad of this occasion, not onely for desire of glory, but also to draw away with him his two sons from the Citie, where they gave up themselves to licentious rioting, and exercised irreconcilable enmity betwixt themselves. The *Britains* sent Ambassadors to him to beg peace, but he detained them till he had made sufficient Provision for War, and then dismissed them without granting their requests. Leaving his son *Geta* (whom at his arrival he also created *Augustus*) in the hithermost part of the Province (which continued in obedience) for the civil Jurisdiction and Administration of affairs there; he himself with *Antoninus* went into the further parts, where being busied in cutting down Woods, making Bridges, and drying up the Meers, he fought no battel, but what with the Enemies ambuscadoes, and with sickness lost 50000 men, according to *Dio*. *Herodian* writeth that the *Britains* found him work enough, being able to retreat where the *Romans* could not follow by reason of the Fens, which the Natives easily passed being naked, very nimble and skilfull in the places, so that by ambuscadoes laid in the *Caledonian Forest*, and through the unwholesomenesse of the Meerish grounds he lost many thousands of his men; but he forced them to Peace with delivery of a good part of their Countrey and their Arms. For these victories he stamped certain pieces of money with this inscription *Victoria Britannica*, assumed the surname of *Britannicus Maximus*, and his son *Geta* was also surnamed *Britannicus*, as appeareth by his Coins, saith *Cambden*. But shortly after they revolted, whereupon he brake out into such a rage that he gave his Soldiers charge to make a general Massacre of them all, and returning, though much tormented with the Gout, against them raised a Wall 130 miles in length crosse the Island to separate betwixt the *Barbarians*

Here he dieth.

barians and Romans, which Bassianus afterwards increased. When he had in some sort repressed the Rebels, he sickned, not so much out of any bodily distemper, as for grief, and sorrow of mind, by reason of the desperate and unclaimable demeanour of his son Antoninus, who once or twice gave the attempt to kill him with his own hand. These were his last words: *A troubled State of the Commonwealth I found in every place, but I leave it in peace and quietness even amongst the Britains.* He died at Eboracum, now called York, (having tried as he said all sorts of lives, and condemned all of vanity) on the day before the Nones of February, having reigned 18 years, and almost lived 66. *A. V. C. 964. A. D. 211. Q. Epidius Rufus and Pomponius Bassus being Consuls.*

\* Omnia fui & nihil expedit.

The manner of the Apotheosis of the Roman Emperours.

8. Severus his body was in a Military fort carried forth by his Soldiers to the funeral fire, and honoured with a solemn jousting and running at tilt performed by his Sons and Soldiers. He was also Canonized a god after the ordinary manner of the Apotheosis of the Roman Emperours, which being not formerly touched its convenient in this place to describe, as we have it from Herodian. A custom, saith he, the Romans have to consecrate those Emperours that die, their sons or successors surviving. And whosoever are thus honoured, be canonized, and registered in the Roll of their Divi or gods. During this complement they hold a general mourning through the whole City, and the same mixed with a festival solemnity. For the dead body they bury with a sumptuous funeral, according to the manner of other men. But they frame an Image of wax, resembling in all points the party deceased, and lay the same openly at the Entry of the Palace, upon a most ample and stately bed of Ivory erected on high, and covered with Cloath of Gold. And verily that Image lieth with a pale colour like unto a sick man. About the bed there sits a good part of the day the whole body of the Senate on the left hand arrayed in their black; and on the right hand certain Matrones honorable by the Dignity of their Husbands or Parents. And there is not one of them seen to wear any Gold about them, nor to be adorned with Jewels, but clad in white and slender Garments they represent mourners. This they do for seven dayes together: during which time the Physicians resort daily to him to feel his pulse, and consider of his disease, and thereupon as of their Patient judiciously pronounce that he groweth worse and worse. Then when he seemeth to be dead, certain of the noblest, and most choice young men, as well of Senatorian as Equestrian rank, take up the bed, and carry it through the Via Sacra into the old Forum, where the Roman Magistracies were wont to lay down their Offices. Here on both sides are certain steps raised in manner of stairs; upon which on the one hand are placed a quire of boyes of noblest birth and Patritian dignity, and on the other a Company of women of noble parentage, singing in commendation of the deceased Prince, Hymns and Sonets tuned to a solemn and mournfull note.

9. These things done, they take up the bed or bier again, and carry it out of the City into the Campus Martius, where in the broadest place thereof a frame or turret four-square, with equal sides, is raised, and made in manner of a Tabernacle, of no other matter than great pieces of Timber. Now this within is all filled with dry fuel: but without adorned with rich hangings interwoven with Gold-wire, with divers Ivory portraicts of Imagery, and sundry curious pictures. Over this frame stood another somewhat lesse; but in form and furniture like unto the former, with windows and doors standing open. And so a third, and fourth Turret, smaller every one than that next beneath it, and others like it still one after another, till you come to the last, which is the least of all the rest. The manner of this building you may compare to those Lanterns, or light Towers standing by Haven sides, and commonly called Phari, which give light by fire in the night time, and direct ships at Sea in their course to safe Harbours. The Hearse then being monnred up into the second Tabernacle, they get together spices, and odours of all sorts, as also all the sweet smelling fruits, herbs, juices, and liquors, that the whole World will afford, and thereon pour them by heaps. For there is no

Na.

Nation, City, or State, nor any person of rank and quality, but strive every one to bestow in honour of the Prince, these last gifts and presents. Now when there's a mighty heap of spices raised, and the whole room is therewith filled, then all of Knights degree first ride about the edifice, marching in a certain measure: and therewith in their courses and reconours observe a Warlike kind of motion round, in just measure and number. Chariots are also driven about by such, as sitting in them are clothed in purple, and represent all the famous Roman Captains and Emperours. These things thus performed, he that succeedeis in the Empire takes a torch, and sets it to the tabernacle: then all the rest on every side put fire under, and every place being filled with that dry fuel and odors, instantly are taken with a vehement fire. Then presently from the last and least tabernacle, as from some high turret, when the fire is put underneath, an Eagle is let flye, which is believed to carry the Princes Soul up into Heaven. And so from that time forward the Emperour is adored amongst the rest of the gods.

Bassianus having killed his brother, cruelly rageth against others.

10. Severus left his two son Antoninus Bassianus (called also Caracalla from a barbarous habit he gave to the people, as Spartianus writeth) and Geta equal sharers in the Empire. They after his death left not off their former contentions, but increased them to that height, that they could neither live nor reign together, but thought of parting the Empire betwixt them; but their mother Julia (Spartianus maketh her the step-mother of Antoninus, and to have loved him better than her own son Geta, nay filchily, in so much that she married him afterwards) by her passionate interposition hindred it. They then betook themselves to secret conspiracies, which succeeding not, Antoninus resolved though it were by open force to kill his brother, whom he perceived to be far better beloved than himself, and either breaking into his brothers chamber, or getting in by his mothers means, under pretence of reconciliation to be made, killed him in her bosom. This done, he secured the Empire to him by bribing the Soldiers, to whom he was so profuse, that in one day he bestowed on them, what his father had been unjustly scraping together for eighteen years. Then falling like a savage beast into cruel courses, he cut off all Geta's friends and acquaintance, all the Senators of any considerable rank or wealth, the Lieutenants and Governours of Provinces, with the Vestal Nuns, and set the Soldiers to kill the people beholding the Circensian Games. After this going into Germany, to please his Army he lived an hard and labouring life; and thence passing into Thrace, he there imitated Alexander the Great, whom he ever much affected to talk of, and pretended to emulate. He went thence to Illyum, where he counterfeited Achilles, and so to Alexandria, where he made the Inhabitants dearly repent of their rashness and folly.

11. Being naturally given to much tattling, they had formerly railed against him for his cruelty towards his brother, and despised him, for that being a man of so contemptible stature, he compared himself to their Alexander. Resolving then to be revenged on them, he first entertained them very plausibly, but afterwards drawing forth all the youth by a wile, he compassed them in with his Army, and killed them all. After this desirous to become famous by some great exploit, he sent to the Parthian for his Daughter, and pretended that he himself would come and marry her, whereby that King being persuaded to meet him with a great number of people, he fell upon them and made a great slaughter, for that they thought it needlesse to come armed to a wedding; and Ariabannus himself with difficulty escaped. Getting here much booty, and as he thought much glory, he returned into Mesopotamia, where he received punishment from above, for his manifold cruelty. There was one Opilius Macrinus an African born, and one of his Captains, whom he unworthily used. This Macrinus receiving a letter from Maternianus directed to the Emperour (who had commanded him to call together the Magicians, and consult them about his end, and whether any lay in wait for the Empire) wherein Antoninus was advised to cut him off, as aiming at the Sovereignty, when he had ventured to open it, perceiving that either he or

Olymp. 247.  
an. 4.  
V. C. 965.  
A. D. 212.  
Bassianus 22



his Master must dye, and therefore procured one *Martialis* to kill him. This man being enraged against the Emperour, for that he had condemned his brother without sufficient hearing, slew him as he was making water, on the sixth of the Ides of April, after he had reigned six years, and two moneths, in the first year of the 249 Olympiad, A. V. C. 970. A. D. 217, *Brutius Praesens* and *Extricatus* being *Consuls*. Amongst many others *Caracallus* put to death *Papinianus* the great Lawyer, as its said, because he would not defend his paricide.

Bishops.

12. In the first year of *Severus* (that we may continue our method concerning Ecclesiastical matters) died *Victor* Bishop of Rome, on the fifth of the Calends of August, and *Zephyrinus* succeeded, the fifteenth Bishop of that Sea, according to *Damasus*. In the last of *Antoninus Bassianus*, *Zephyrinus* died on the seventh before the Calends of September. The Sea was vacant five dayes. Then succeeded *Callistus*, who therefore was elected, the day before the Calends of September, on the first feria. After *Dios* Bishop of Jerusalem whom the Bishops of the neighbouring Churches had ordained after the departure of *Narcissus*, *Germanion* succeeded, and after him *Gordius*, in whose time *Narcissus* shewed himself again, as if he had been risen from the dead, and was intreated by the brethren to enjoy his Bishoprick, being much marvelled at for his departure, for his Philosophical course of life, and especially for the vengeance and plagues of God poured upon his accusers. And because for his great age he was not able to supply the place, *Alexander* Bishop of Cappadocia was joyned with him, and governed alone after his death. In the Church of Antioch, *Asclepiades* was Bishop after *Serapion*, about the first year of *Caracalla*, and was succeeded by *Philetus* about the last of that Prince's reign.

Tertullian.

13. Upon *Zephyrinus* Bishop of Rome falleth very foul *Tertullian* a Presbyter or Priest of Carthage in Africk, for that he was more severe against such, as through fear had sacrificed to Idols, than against Whoremongers and Adulterers, wherein not without cause truly (saith *Cappellus*) but yet without measure he blameth *Zephyrinus*, and the whole Roman Clergy, the manners of whom were even now very corrupt, if we may believe *Tertullian*. But really not so much out of hatred to their vices, as out of prejudice to the truth he calleth the Roman Clergy *Psychicus*, as well in his book *de pudicitia*, as in that *de monogamia*, which he thus beginneth, *Hæretici nuptias auferrunt Psychici ingerunt*. He pretendeth therein onely to condemn second marriages, but indeed most of his arguments respect both first and second, although he himself had married a wife, and retained her in his Presbytery. But marriage which he had learnt of the Orthodox to approve, he learnt of *Montanus* to despise, to whom he would have more revealed than to the Apostles, because they as yet (or for certain the Church) could not bear the yoke of fastings and calibare which *Montanus* brought in, and he as a *Montanist* would inculcate. This humour at length so possessed him, that neither content with the title of *Christian*, nor that of *Presbyter*, he put on the Philosophick *Pallium*, as a token of a more austere life, wherein he would be eminent not onely amongst *Christians* but also *Montanists*. The Africans either being amazed or laughing at this novelty, hath been of obscure Book *de pallio*, which before being miserably lacerated, hath been of prelate dayes restored by the most learned *Salmasius*. He wrote his Book *de descriptionibus* about the eighth year of *Commodus*, as *Cappellus* gathereth, because in the end thereof making a Catalogue of Hereticks, he mentioneth *Theodotus* (who was censured by *Victor* Bishop of Rome, for holding Christ to have been a meer man) but not *Artemon* the Heretick who appeared shortly after.

14. His book *de corona militis* acquainteth us with the occasion of the persecution of the Christians, in the reign of *Severus*. The Emperour ere he marched into the East (in that Expedition wherein he overthrew the *Parthians*) made his elder son his partner in the *Tribunitial* power, and by his liberality pleased the People formerly enraged by the many punishments he inflicted.

Clement Alex.  
andrianus.Minutius  
Felix.Euseb. Eccl.  
Hist. l. 6. c. 10.

inflicted. By occasion of this liberality, as it seemeth, a Christian Soldier holding a certain garland or crown in his hand, as if it were wickednesse for him to set it on his head as the rest did, was asked why he did so, and answered, that he was a *Christian*. This was the occasion of the Emperours rage. About the fifteenth of *Severus* he wrote against the *Marcionites*, whom he so impugneth, as yet underhand he inculcareth his *Montanism*. For saith he: *Amongst us spiritual reason derived from the Comforter, persuadeth in the Faith single matrimony*. But we must not forget, that about the fourth of *Severus* he wrote a most excellent *Apology* for the Christian Faith. At the same time with *Tertullian* flourished *Clement Alexandrianus*, because a Philosopher of Alexandria, the Scholar of *Pantenus*, and Master of *Origen*. *Eusebius* mentioneth him, and *Pantenus* in the second of *Severus*, at which time it's probable he wrote his *Stromata*; for not intending his Chronology beyond the time of *Commodus*, he seemeth not long after his death to have begun that Work. At this time also lived *Minutius Felix* an eminent Lawyer, and the Author of that excellent Book intituled *Octavius*, which, as *Lactantius* writeth, *doth declare how fit an assessor of the truth he might have been, had he applyed himself wholly to that study*. This Book being intended as an *Apology* for Christian Religion, acquainteth us what thoughts the Heathen at that time had thereof; as also do the *Apologies* of *Justin Martyr*, the Books of *Origen* against *Celsus*, and especially that of *Tertullian*. We have already shewn the rise and increase of Christian Religion, we have delivered the series of the most eminent Bishops and Fathers thereof, as also of the several Hereticks which from within disturbed the peace thereof. We have also given an account of the several fiery tryals the faithful underwent. But what opinions the Infidels had of Christians and Christianity, of what crimes they accused them, whence their hatred proceeded, whereupon the Emperours grounded their bloody Edicts: what the Primitive Saints did in the mean time, how they behaved themselves under these pressures, how they carried it towards their Enemies, how they stood affected in duty towards their Princes; in sum, what their conversations both as men and Christians were, is most worthy to be considered, and those things in short out of the *Apologies* aforementioned, and other Authors, we shall endeavour to discover.

An inquiry  
into the con-  
dition of  
Christians.The reason of  
the prejudice  
of Heathens  
against them.

15. The first thing that the Heathens cavilled at in Christianity was the newnesse of it. (a) *Sr. Paul* seemed to them to be a setter forth of new gods. And there was an ancient Law at (b) *Rome* which forbid introducing new ceremonies into Religion, as worshipping strange deities, unless approved by the Senate, and this was an inviolable Law, which binding Emperours as well as others, *Tiberius* could not as he desired receive *Jesus Christ* amongst their gods; for the Senate would not approve of a God they did not know. This prejudice (which yet in Idolatry often effected nothing amongst the *Romans*) was increased by a misapprehension of our Lord and Saviours sufferings; his being crucified made them despise both him and his. Hence (c) *Tacitus* telling the original of the *Christians*, will let the World know, that *Christ* from whom they derived their name, was *Tiberio imperitante per procuratorem Pontium Pilatum supplicio affectus*. And hence *Trajan* (d) in his discourse with *Ignatius*, when he would mean *Christ*, called him *Crucifixus*, the Crucified, in way of contempt. This contempt was increased into disdain, by reason that *Christ* would have no other Gods (as they accounted them) sharers with him in worship, and this disdain was heightened into rage, when Christians preaching this saving doctrine, declaiming against Idols, proving the Heathen gods to be devils, and striking at the root of Paganism, endeavoured to draw even the whole World from superstition and Idolatry so ancient and universal. You say, we do not worship the Gods, saith (e) *Tertullian*. This was accounted a crime of sacrilege, and worthy of death; much more then to dissuade others from doing it. *Quid, homines (Iustinebitis enim me imperium suscepta orationis liberius exercentem) homines (inquam) deplorata, illicita ac desperata factionis grassari in Deos*

(a) Acts 17, 18.  
(b) Tertullian  
Apol. c. 5.(c) Annal. l. 15.  
c. 44.(d) *Alia Ig-*  
*natii.*(e) *Apol. c. 10.*

R r r r r nonne

nonne ingemiscendum est? saith (f) *Cecilius*, as he is brought in by *Minutius*. (f) *Minut.* Hereupon the Christians were accounted *Athei* or *Atheists*, and it was a custom to cry out against them where the Greek tongue was used (g) *Αἵρε τῶν αἰσίων, Take off the Atheists*, which words they would have had *Polycarp* utter as a sign of his recantation. This by reason of the malice of Devils (who were worshipped under the names of the several gods) did render them so highly impious in the opinion of the vulgar, and so enraged the multitude against them, that (h) if *Tiber* over-flowed, if *Nile* watered not the plains, if *Heaven* stopped its course, and did not pour its rains here below, if there were Earth-quake, Famine, or plague, they would immediately cry out: Christians ad Leones; Cast the Christians to the Lions, as the cause (in their opinion) of all the calamities that arrived in the World, and all the evils that people suffered.

16. Prejudice and hatred being risen thus high invented false accusations, and caught hold of idle fumes, nothing ill seeming incredible concerning those that are already odious. (a) *Athenagoras* saith, that three things they objected against Christians: *Atheism*, *Thyestes his feasts*, and the *Copulation of Oedipus*. The two later (whereof as much as concerneth *Thyestes* and *Oedipus* we have spoken above in their due places) (b) *Tertullian* thus explaineth. The Crimes pretended against us (the horror of which makes us passe for wicked in the opinion of the people) are, that we meet together to sacrifice a Child; that after we have taken away his life by a barbarous superstition, we devour his body, and when we have eaten the flesh of this innocent, we commit Incests. They add, that we have Dogs, which serve to overthrow the Candles, and doing the Office of those infamous Merchants of modesty, make us lose all shame in taking the lights from us, and covering our actions under the veil of darknesse, embolden us to seek the use of ungodly, and sacrilegious pleasures. *Calicius* maketh beginners initiated by the blood of an Infant, which they all licking up, and dividing his Members amongst themselves, by so horrid a Ceremony confirmed their league, and the Covenant of their mutual secrecy. These *Sacra* (saith he) are more abominable than all sacrilege. And as for their feasting 'tis known sufficiently, all speak of it in all places; the Oration also of our *Certensis* doth witness it: They meet together to eat on a set day with all their Children, Sisters, Mothers, Persons of every Sex, and every age. There, after much eating, when the feast is now grown hot, & the heat of incestuous lust is kindled by drunkennesse, the Dog that is tied to the Candle-stick is provoked, by casting a piece of meat beyond the length of the string by which he is bound, to a violent leap. Thus the conscious light being overthrown and put out, &c. so he proceedeth to the same purpose, but in worse terms. And *Justin Martyr* in his Conference with (c) *Tryphon* the Jew demandeth of him after this manner. Do you also believe concerning us that we devour men, and after meat the lights being put out, use wicked and promiscuous Copulation? Lastly, *Theophylus* Patriarch of *Antioch* in his third book (d) to *Antolycus* against Calumniators of Christian Religion, summeth up what we have already said, in these words. They say that our wives are common, and accuse us that we use promiscuous Copulation. Besides, they lay to our charge that we do not abstain from our own sisters, but rashly dare to violate those with incestuous lust. But this is most cruel and brutish of the Crimes they object against us, when with an impious mouth they prate, that we eat mans flesh: neither do they cease to traduce our Religion or Doctrine as of yesterday, and destitute of all truth, which neither we our selves, if a controversie arise are able to defend with clear demonstrations. Further, they say that our Doctrine is nothing but folly, and meer toys.

17. That malice which invented these impious adjuncts of Christian Religion, found out a suitable object of worship; for the Romans had so far forgotten their own ancient custom of serving their Gods without Images, or resemblances (for *Numa*, as *Plutarch* telleth us, and the ancient Romans for many years admitted no Images in their Temples, because the Deity cannot be

made out by any external resemblance) that they thought it impossible for any Religion not to be guilty of Idolatry towards some visible thing. Hence came that fable related by (a) *Lucius* (an Author guilty of malice against both Jews and Christians) that the Jews consecrated the Image of an Ass, because (forsooth) being pressed sorely with thirst in the deserts of *Arabia*, certain wild Asses shewed them the Fountains where they were wont to drink; although this Author, who saith he lies not, writeth, that *Pompey* having taken *Jerusalem*, and entred into the Temple to see the mysteries of the Jewish Religion, saw there no Image at all. (b) *Tertullian* conceiveth, that was drawn from that of the Jews, and succeeded it) worshipped the Effigies of an Ass. I hear, (saith *Cecilius*) that they worship a Consecrated head of an Ass, the most filthy of all sorts of Cattel, I know not out of what foolish persuasion; a Religion worthy of, and descended from, such manners. But he goeth further, and relateth a report, that the very object of their worship was also obscene. (c) *Tertullian* further writeth, that some were of opinion they worshipped the *Crosse*, and *Cecilius*, from the ignominious death of our Lord, and this instrument of it, argueth to the infamy of Christian Religion in an abominable manner. *Tertullian* in the same place telleth us, that some with more apparent reason believed the Sun to be their God, and sent them to the Religion of the *Persians*, herein suspecting them for so doing, because when they prayed they turned themselves toward the East. [And after an answer to this he addeth:] The calumnies invented to cry down our Religion arose to such excesses of impiety, that not long ago in this City, a picture of our God was shewed by a certain infamous person that got his living by exposing to the sight of the people, wild beasts: who by a strange faculty gotten by him to avoid their bitings, making use of his craft, shewed also the aforesaid picture to all comers, with this inscription thereon, *This is Onochores the God of Christians*. This supposed God of the Christians pretended by him, had the ears of an Ass, an hoof on one of his feet; carried a book, and was clothed with a Gown: we laugh at the barbarousnesse of this name, and the extravagancy of this figure. Such were the blasphemies of Pagans against Christian worship, and as an argument for them they produced the secrecy of Christian meetings, which their own cruelty and rage had made necessary. They (d) talked of nothing more than the excesses of the Tables of the Christians. And after all this they (e) objected, that they were not any way profitable in the commerce of the World.

18. As to their outward demeanour they accused them of Sedition as *Atheism*. Let (a) *Tertullian* speak upon what frivolous grounds: "You say we worship not the Gods; nor for the welfare of the Emperours offer sacrifices to them. The one of these two Crimes whereof you accuse us must necessarily follow upon the neck, or in consequence of the other: for, being resolved to render no manner of worship to your Deities, we must necessarily in like manner be resolved not to sacrifice at their Altars, whether for our selves, or for what person soever it be. Hereupon you conclude us guilty of Sacrilege and high Treason. *Pliny* was wont, as appeareth from his Epistle to *Trajan*, to try Christians by supplications made to the Images of the Gods, and amongst these to the Emperours picture, by Frankincense and Wine. This burning incense was an ordinary tryal in all ages. They were also counted singular and factious, for that they would not swear by the *Fortune* or *Genius* of the Emperours. This the holy Martyr (b) *Polycarp* was bidden to do by the *Proconsul* a little before his suffering. These prejudices and false opinions being heightened and irritated by the malice of Devils, who found themselves neerly concerned therein, procured wonderfull enmity and malice in the hearts of Pagans against the faith.

19. "Is it not strange (saith (a) *Tertullian*), that the hatred wherewith this name is pursued, in such manner blinds the minds of most men, that when they witness the probity of a Christian, they mix in their discourse as a reproach that he hath imbraced this Religion. One saith, truly, he of whom

And the object of it.

They were accused of Sedition.

Malicious slanders concerning the manner of their worship.

(a) *Epist. Lucii ad Olympium* pag. 4. *Adversus Gentem* pag. 1. *De S. Polycarpi Martyrio* pag. 16. & 20. (b) *Tertull.* *Apol. cap. 40.* (c) *Ibid.* (d) *Tertul. A.* *cap. 39.* (e) *Idem ibid.* *cap. 42.* (a) *Apol. cap. 10.* (b) *Epist. Eccl. Smyrenf. de S. Polycarpi Martyrio* pag. 20, 21. (a) *Apol. c. 3.*

Hence wonderfull  
hated.

whom you speak is an honest man, if he were not a Christian, and his life would be free from blame. Another, Do you know such a one, who had the reputation of a wise and discreet man? he is lately turned Christian. [Again] These people by an extreme blindness of hatred speak to the advantage of the name Christian, when they strive to render it odious. For, say they, How pleasant, and of what a good humour was that woman? How sociable and jovial was that man? 'Tis pity they should be Christians. So they impute the amendment of their lives to the profession of Christianity. Some of them also purchase the aversion they carry against the name Christian, which we bear, with the price of what is most precious to them, rather desiring to lose the sweetness of life, tranquillity of mind, and all sorts of commodities, than to see in their houses that which they hate. A man who heretofore had his mind full of jealousy, can no longer endure the company of his wife, what assurance soever he hath of her chastity, after once he perceives her to be turned Christian, and parts from her now when her actions full of modesty have extinguished all suspicions wherewith he was heretofore moved. A father who of a long time endured the disobedience of his heathenish son, resolves to take from him the hope of succeeding him in his inheritance for turning Christian, when at the same time executing his commands without murmuring. A master that used his slave gently when his carriage gave him some cause of distrust, now puts him far from him for a Christian, when he hath most assurance of his fidelity. 'Tis committing of a Crime to correct the disorders of a man's life by the motions of an holy conversion to the Christian faith, and the good which is produced by happy change works not so powerfully in the minds of men, as the hatred they have conceived against us. Indeed this hatred is strange; and when I consider that the name of Christian only makes it to be so, I would willingly know how a name can be Criminal, and how a simple word can be accused? Thus much (and enough I suppose) to discover hatred itself.

The sad effects thereof.

20. And the fruits of hatred abundantly manifested themselves. "1 In fastning Christians to Crosses & pieces of wood. 2 Hanging them up as public spectacles unto all men upon Gibbers. 3 Piercing their bodies with Irons. 4 Cutting off their heads. 5. Exposing them to the rage of wild beasts. 6. Throwing them into flames. 7. Condemning them to work in Mines, and 8. confining them to Islands; "all which sorts are expressed in one (a) Chapter of *Tertullian's* Apology. In another (b) place he thus writeth. How often do those people being our Enemies, of their own accord, without your authority, assault us with stones, or burn us? They are verily so enraged against us, that during the furies of the *Bacchinales*, they spare not even Christians that are dead, but trouble the rest of their Graves, they violate their Sepulchres which are as Sanctuaries of the dead, they draw forth their bodies not to be known whose bodies they are, after mangled by them, which with extreme inhumanity they tear, and drag in the streets. (c) [Elsewhere;] How many are there among you, O ye people, that are this way greedy of the blood of Christians? and also among you, O ye Magistrates, after you appear such Justiciars by the severity you treat us with, whose consciences I would strike with true reproaches of having procured the death of your own Children? Yet if you did but simply put them to death, it were something; but by a strange excess of cruelty you throw them into the water, you expose them to the rigour of cold and hunger, and the rage of Dogs; you will not take their lives away with the sword, because too gentle a death, and which men of the age of discretion had rather suffer, than any other that hath violence in it.

21. But, when the time of persecution drew towards an end, then especially did the Devil rage with variety of torments against the Primitive Saints. For besides those formerly mentioned, (d) *Serapion* was thrown down, and had his neck broken. Some having their flesh rent in pieces with the lash of the whip were broyled upon Gridirons; others having their skins razed, and scorched, being tied by one leg were hanged on Trees with the head downwards

(a) Cap. 12.  
(b) Cap. 37.

(c) Cap. 9.

(d) *Euseb. Eccl. Hist. lib. 6. cap. 41.*

wards. They pulled out the right eyes of others, fearing the empty place, and sawing off the left legs of others, seared their hams, and condemned them to the mines, which usage was accounted clemency. Some they scourged to death, cut out their tongues, and strangled them. One *Apphianus*, being all disfigured with stripes, had his feet wrapped in flax, oyled all over, which being set on fire, it ran over his flesh and consumed it, and pierced into the marrow within the bones, so that his whole body distilled like to melting wax. Three dayes he was suffered to remain in prison after this torture, and when, by reason of his wounds he was ready to yield up the ghost, then was he thrown into the Sea. Others were forced by buckling, juggling, and buffeting, to kill one another. Others of mens estate were gelded and condemned to the quarries. Others were tormented grievously and chastized with imprisonment and fetters, of which number was *Pamphilus*, of all my familiars my dearest friend, a man who among all the Martyrs of our time, saith *Eusebius*, excelled in every kind of virgine. He had his sides mangled with sharp razors, and then was ordered to be kept in the noisome stench of the close prison, where the rest of the Confessors remained, till at length he was put to death, being a Presbyter of the Church of *Cæsarea*, concerning whose life *Eusebius* wrote three books, and for his familiarity with, and affection to him, had the surname of *Pamphilus*. This variety of the torments of Christians, appeareth from several passages in the seventh and eighth Books of his Ecclesiastical History, which so far exceedeth all inferiour punishments, or (that I may speak in the phrase of Lawyers) the *diminutiones capitis*, that we need not mention how Christians were denied the title of (b) Roman Citizens. But one kind of punishment far more grievous than the rest there yet was, which more tormented Christians than all other tortures put together: and that was the loss of their chastity. This Engine battered the fort of *Origen's* constancy, who chose rather to sacrifice to idols than be abused by an *Ethiopian*, as *Suidas* writeth. (c) *Tertullian* giveth us another instance, that we may enquire no further. "And indeed a few dayes since, (saith he) you condemned a Christian maid to be rather prostituted to an infamous corrupter of her chastity, than to be exposed to the rage of a Lyon; you acknowledge there is no punishment nor kind of death, which is so intolerable to Christians, as the loss of their chastity.

(b) *Tertul. Apol. l. 36.*

(c) *Apol. c. ult.*

22. Such was the entertainment Christians found in this World, now let us see how far they deserved it, as to their demeanour, and carriage; for there is no need to speak here to the two first objections. "The Heathens (a) believe a man could not make profession of Christianity, without being tainted with all sorts of crimes, without being an Enemy to the gods, to Princes, to the Laws, to good manners, and to nature, and that a Christian could not be acquitted, unless he denied himself to be such an one. "But their carriage was so quite contrary to all these surmises, except that concerning the worship of Heathenish vanities, or Devils, under the name of gods, that they only were the servants of the true God, they only were free from all sorts of crimes, were the best friends and Subjects of Princes, of the Laws, good manners, and nature, and truly affirming themselves Christians, might justly in this respect have been acquitted from these accusations. "They (b) assembled together by troops in their prayers to God, as if thereby they would carry by force the grant of whatsoever Prayers were presented to him, this being a violence agreeable to him; they prayed to him for the Emperours, their Ministers the Magistrates that had the exercise of their power, for the State, the tranquillity of the Empire, and the retarding of the general dissolution that must put an end to all things. They assembled together to read the Holy Scriptures, and they read them according to the condition of the times; what served either to admonish or confirm the faithful. In effect, the Scriptures nourished their faith, lifted up, and assured the confidence they had in God, nevertheless they ceased not to confirm their discipline by the strength of precepts they continually repeated. In these Assemblies, (saith *Tertullian*, for the former are also his words) we make exhorta-

(a) *Tertul. ubi supra c. 2.*

(b) *Idem ibid. c. 39.*

The unblameable demeanour of Christians in their Assemblies.

'exhortations and threatnings, and exercise Divine censure, which banisheth sinners, and excludes them from our Communion: we judge them with very much circumspection, because we know that God is in the midst of us, and sees what we do; and certainly it is a great foretelling of the judgment that God will one day pronounce against the wicked, when the Church moved with the enormity of their crimes, darts out upon wilful sinners the Thunderbolts of excommunication, and deprives them of the participation of its prayers, its society, and all sorts of holy commerce with it.

'23. In our assemblies there are Bishops that preside, and have authority over all the faithful committed to their charge; they are approved by the suffrages of them whom they ought to conduct, and it is not bribes that acquire them this honour, but testimonies given of their good life. For in the Church of God nothing is done by the allurements of gifts; if there be among us any kind of treasure, the money laid up makes our Religion not ashamed. And every one contributes a little sum at the end of the month, or when he will; but it is if he will and can; for none are constrained to give. If we get any alms it is of good will, riches gathered in this manner are as the pledges of piety; we do not confound them in eating and drinking with excess; we make not use of them for the foul and loathsome exercise of gluttony: but we employ them in feeding the poor, burying them, in comforting poor Orphans, in helping old men who have spent their best days in the service of the faithful, in helping the poor that have lost by shipwreck what they had, and in assisting them that serve in the mines, are banished into Islands, or shut up in prisons, because they profess the Religion of the true God, that during the time they suffer for the confession of his name, they may be nourished by the stock of the Church. But it's a strange thing, that this charity among us gives occasion to some to blame us. See, say they, how they love one another; this astonisheth them, because they hate one another. See say they, how they are ready to die one for another; but as for them they are ready to kill one another. [A little after:] As we live with the same intelligence, as if we had all but one spirit and one soul; we have nothing in particular but our wives, of all things in the World there is nothing but wives, whereof we reject community; and on the contrary, among them of their wives onely there is a community with other men. [Again:] Now seeing we live together with so much charity, that all our goods are common, why should they wonder if we make good cheer? for it's one of the excesses you reproach us with; besides the infamous crimes whereof you accuse our repasts, you charge it with prodigality.

'24. In the same place: "But you need but consider the name given to our repasts, to know the quality thereof. They expresse themselves with the same word that signifies *Love* with the *Greeks*; whatsoever the cost is that is made, it is profitable, for they gain alwaies in this expence, because it hath piety for its foundation. Its a sweetness wherewith we comfort the want of the poor, but we do not treat them as you those infamous gluttons, who glory in selling you their liberty for the price of their good bits, wherewith they fill their bellies in the midst of a thousand indignities. But we will have the least served with our goods, because they we know, amongst all men, are the most acceptable unto God. Then seeing our feasts have so honest an end, consider what our discipline should be in the rest of our actions, even those which more concern the duties of Religion; it permits nothing that is dishonourable, nor far from modesty. Before we go to table we are fed with heavenly meat, which is the Prayer we make to God; as we eat as much as is necessary to satisfy one's appetite, we drink as much as is permitted to persons that have a care of their purity. They that sit there, take their refectiion with so much temperance, as they may remember they are obliged to worship God even at night. They entertain one another as People that know God hears what they say. After the repast done, they have washed their hands, and lighted the candles, they are invited to praise God and sing

Psalms

'Psalms taken out of the holy Scripture, or Hymns every one composeth according to the capacity of his mind. By this it may be known, if they have committed any excess at table; as the repast began with Prayer, so it ends; they go forth not in divers troops to defile their hands with the blood of men, not in several bands running in the streets, not to do insolencies; but with the same care they had in coming in, preserve their modesty and chastity.

'25. Finally, Christians retire with so much staydness, that we may very well see they are not fed so much with corporal meats as the substance of heavenly and holy discipline. Certainly, it were but reason that this society of the Christians should be reputed unlawful, if it were like to that the Laws forbid; it were but good reason it should be condemned, if it were not different to that which deserves to be condemned; if one would reproach it with the same things wherewith they accuse factious societies. But tell me, Did we ever assemble to procure the hurt of any one? we are the same in a body, as when separated: as we are in particular, so we are in general: that is to say, in whatsoever estate we are found, we injure no body; when any virtuous or godly People are associated, when any pious or chaste persons assemble together, their union should not be called a faction, but a lawful society. Thus *Tertullian*, to whose words, as to the harmless carriage of the Christians in their Assemblies, Apostates witnessed, as appeareth from what *Pliny* the younger wrote to *Trajan*. As for the crimes supposed to be committed by them, they ever challenged any witness to be produced of them, and sufficiently confute the vain reports in their Apologies. They laughed at the fiction of the Asse head, and such like stuff, and as for worshipping Crosses, *Octavius* in his answer to *Cecilius* saith, *Crucis etiam nec colimus nec optamus. Crosses we neither worship nor wish for.* Neither did they meet for seditious ends, as for the alteration of Governments, destruction of Princes, or changing of Magistrates. Though they rather than any of late time might pretend to Saintship, yet did they not make it an advantage to raise themselves; whereby they laid no claim to the riches, power, or dominion of the World; they did not hold that temporal dominion was founded in grace, nor that the true and spiritual Kingdom of Jesus Christ destroyed the right and interest of earthly Princes. They made no insurrections, covered no rebellious designs with the name of Religion, neither did by violence attempt a reformation; although they were so many thousands, as in all probability they might have born down all before them; though they filled all places, consisted of all degrees, and hereby shared in all interests, in power and intelligence, and by their combinations might have taken their opportunities, and easily by force of arms made way for their designs; yet obedience to their Princes they ever held most inviolable by the Principles of their Religion, and made use of no other weapons than prayers and tears, though for their own safety and preservation. Hear to this purpose what challenges *Tertullian* makes to such, as if he had not had truth on his side, would have been sufficiently ready to instance wherein the Christians offended, which they yet never adventured to do.

They were good and loyal Subjects.

'26. In the midst of all these outrages have you observed that these People, who (as you think) have framed so strange a conspiracy, and on the other side might be animated enough for revenge, by the punishments wherewith you take away their lives, endeavoured any thing against you to resent the evil treating they have received? Think you that they want an occasion? *Tertul. Apolog. c. 37.* when in one night onely a small number of torches would be enough to satisfy their Revenge, if with us it were permitted to render evil for evil; but God forbid we should do so. A Religion that is all divine, ought not to revenge by the instigation of men, and must not think it strange to suffer that which is made use of to prove them. If we would declare against you as open, rather than pursue you as secret Enemies, might we not have forces and troops enough? It may be the *Moors* and *Marcomanni*, the *Parthians*, or whatsoever People they are shut up in the bounds of the Country they inhabit,

inhabit, make a greater number of men than they that are spread throughout all the Universe, and have no other limits than that of the World. Our Religion is but of late, and we fill already all that your power acknowledgeth, Cities, Fortresses, Isles, Provinces, the Assemblies of the People, the Armies also, the wards and rents of Rome, the Palace, the Senate, and the Publick places; Finally, we leave you but the Temples. What Wars were we not able to undertake? with what readinesse might we not arm our selves, although we should be the weaker? we that suffer our selves so willingly to be killed, if in our Religion it were not rather lawful to let our selves be killed than to kill others, we could also make War against you without taking up arms, by casting our selves into a revolt: it were enough not to live with you, and to separate our selves, our divorce would print shame in your foreheads. For if Christians, who make so great a multitude of all sorts of persons, should abandon you to retire unto some Country of the World dispersed from all society; truly the losse of so many Citizens, of what condition soever, would disparage your Government, and also our retreat would be a rude punishment to you; without doubt this solitude that would remain with you, this silence of all things, this general astonishment of nature, even as if all the world were dead, would frighten you; you might go seek Subjects to command, there would remain to you more Enemies than Citizens: now you have more Citizens than Enemies, because there are a greater number of Christians among you.

27. Thus we see their peaceable demeanour, how their minds stood affected towards their Princes, let *Tertullian* also inform us. 'As for us, in the prayers we make for the Emperours, we call upon the eternal God, the true God, the living God, &c. [In the same place:] It is to him to whom we Christians address our prayers, make them with hands opened and lifted up, because innocent; the head bare, because no cause to be ashamed when we pray to God. There are none telleth us the words we are to say, because it is our heart that uttereth rather than our tongue. We pray for all the Emperours, and ask of God that he would give them a long life, that their Empire enjoy a profound Peace, their house happy concord, their Armies be innumerable, themselves assisted with good Councils, the People remain in their duties, no trouble arise in the World against their authority. In conclusion, we forget nothing the Prince can wish for, either as a man or as an Emperour. [A little after:] Whilst we implore the grace of God for the Emperours with our hands lifted up, and stretched towards Heaven, let irons pierce us, let us be put on gibbets and crosses, fires consume us, knives cut our throats, beasts devour us: A Christian while in prayer lifting up his hands to God, is in a condition fit to receive all sorts of punishment; and therefore continue O Magistrates so affected to Justice; ravish our Souls whilst they are in prayers for the welfare of the Emperours, and make a crime of Truth and the Service of God. [In the following Chapter] We intreat them who believe our Religion takes no care of the preservation of the Emperours, to examine the Laws of our God, to read our Books which we hide not, and which by divers accidents fall into other hands than ours. They will learn there, that it is commanded by a superabundant charity, to pray to God for our Enemies, and to wish good to them that persecute us. Now have we greater Enemies, and ruder persecutors, than those who make offended Majesty the ground of the crime they impute unto us? Holy Scriptures content not themselves with this commandment, they have another more precise and clearer. Pray, say they, for Kings, Princes, and Powers, that you may live in peace in the midst of publick tranquillity. [In another place:] But why should I stay longer in making known with what sence of Religion and Piety Christians honour Emperours? It sufficeth to say, we are obliged to render them our duties, as to whom our Master hath commanded us so to do.

28. As these Primitive Saints were good Christians in the exercise of their Religion, and dutiful Subjects towards their Princes, so also good men, free from

Apol. c. 30.

Chap. 31.

Chap. 32.

from vice, and adorned with Virtues; or if any were noted to be of contrary practice they were disowned, and the Censures of the Church cut them off from it's society. "We speak as boldly (saith *Tertullian*) of the Christians you put to death, for we have an unrepreeable testimony of their integrity, which we take also from your Registers. You who are employed every day in judging those that are kept in prisons, and who terminate their processes by the sentences you give against them, of all the malefactors accused before you of so many sorts of crimes, is there any of them charged with Murder, Robbery, Sacrilege, and other faults, to whom they impute also that he is a Christian? either, when Christians are presented to be punished as Criminals, because they are Christians, is there any amongst them whose life is like that of other prisoners? all the Malefactors where-with your prisons are so filled, that they are overcharged, are of your Religion; they are also of your Religion that make the Mines grogne under the weight of their strokes, they are the wretched creatures of the same Religion you are, wherewith the wild beasts fill their bellies. All those poor Criminals which your Citizens keep to make them cruelly kill one another before a bloody people, have the same opinion you have of the Deity. Finally, among all those wretched creatures there's not one Christian, unless he be charged by justice, because of his name *Christian*: Or if there be a Christian found attainted of the same crime, he hath no more the name *Christian*, because he hath lost that divine quality in losing his innocency. [Elsewhere:] But some will say, even among us there are a people that give themselves the liberty of doing evil, that free themselves from subjection to our Laws, from any what ever exact observation of what is legally commanded by us. It is true there are some such, but so soon as they fall into this disorder, we hold them no more for Christians. The fear of God, and purity of his precepts constrained them to this holy demeanour; for opinion of men and their rules, as this our Author observeth, cannot reach the heart, nor procure that Virtue which is truly good. "The admirable fruits their doctrine produced (the knowledge whereof became publick by the commerce they had in the World) made so down-right a conflict with rude incredulity, that to defend herself she was forced to say, that their profession had no Divine matter in it, but was onely a Sect of Philosophy, that obliged Christians to rank themselves there in the exercise of Moral Virtues.

Chap. 46.

They were  
eminent for  
love and uni-  
ty of affection.

29. Though there was some diversity of opinions amongst them, yet as we shewed before, they maintained mutual Love; and that herein they were highly eminent as to all pious effects, is already evident. *Origen* in his Work against *Celsus* (wherein he especially answereth to cavils raised against the Author and Doctrin of Christian Religion) takes off that prejudice that might arise from diversity of opinions, by a comparison of this difference with the numerous (or rather innumerable) Sects of Heathen Philosophers. *Tertullian* layeth the great guilt of Heresie upon such, who being animated with the spirit of Philosophy, infected the purity of the Gospel with the corruption of their own opinions. In the same place he acquainteth us what was the Primitive touch-stone of Doctrines most worthy now to be considered. "These People (saith he) that are separated from us have violated the Faith of Jesus Christ, and we beat down their errors by this onely exception, that the true rule of Truth is, that which hath been taught by our Master, and transmitted to us by those holy persons, who had the happinesse to hear his Word, and receive his Divine Institutions; we shall shew in another place, that all which is not conformable to this rule, hath been invented by new Doctors, who came not till after the blessed companions of the Sonne of God.

Apol. c. 47.

They forced  
Devils out of  
bodies, and to  
confesse the  
truth.

30. All these excellent qualities in those holy persons, might have sufficed to stop the mouths of Calumniators, and had weight sufficient to have moved the minds of all men to the truth. But that Victory which Christians obtained over Devils, might much more have convinced them of the power which

Sffff was



was superiour to that of their false Gods. "Christians were wont to drive away these Devils from the bodies of men, forced them to confesse that they were no other than Devils, and that Jesus Christ was the Son of God, and his way the true Religion. [As to the former, first hear *Tertullian*:] But if we were not near you, who would snatch you away from these secret Enemies, whose malignant operations make so strange a confusion in your minds, and so horrible an alteration of your healths? I have heard speak of the possession of Devils, wherewith you are tormented, from whence we deliver you freely, and without reward; if we had the spirit of Revenge, it were enough to satisfy us, that these corrupted spirits might at all times seize on your bodies, and that entrance therein were always open to them. But as you do not think of that you ought, viz. so dear a protection, you cease not to declare a People to be your Enemies, who do you no hurt, whose assistance is so absolutely necessary for you. It is true, we are Enemies, yet not of men but of their errors. [In another place:] As for Devils or Genies, we are wont to conjure them, to drive them away from the bodies of men, whereof they are seized, and render them not the honours due to God only, by swearing by them. [*Justin Martyr* in his fifth \* Apology:] Δαίμονιόμνους γὰρ πολλὰς, &c. For many possessed with Devils throughout the World, and this your City, whom many Exorcists, Inchanters, and Conjurers could not cure, Many of our men through the name of Jesus Christ crucified under *Pontius Pilate* have healed, and now also do heal, disarming and driving out of men those Devils that had possessed them. [In his Dialogue with *Tryphon* the Jew:] Κατὰ γὰρ τὸ ὄντως τῷ Θεῷ, &c. For in the name of this the Son of God, the first-born of every creature, and born of a Virgin, and made a man subject to suffering, and crucified by your people under *Pontius Pilate*, who died, arose from the dead, and ascended into Heaven, every Devil adjured is overcome and subdued. [In another place of this Apology:] And now we who believe in Jesus Christ our Lord crucified under *Pontius Pilate*, adjuring all Devils and malignant spirits, have them subject under our power. He affirmeth the same thing in other places.

31. That Christians constrained Devils to confesse themselves such, and to acknowledge the truth of the Gospel, in this matter hear also *Tertullian*: "If a man should bring before your tribunals one that were truly possessed of a Devil, if a Christian should command him to speak, this wicked spirit will confesse that he is a Devil, with as much truth as he saith falsely at another time he is a god. Let them present any one of these they believe to be wrought upon within by a deity; that in the ceremony of the Sacrifices they offer on the altars have the virtue of a God, in sending the smell which goes out of the Sacrifices; who with force belch out words out of their stomachs; within breathing declare Oracles; if this heavenly Virgin that promisseth rain; if this *Æsculapius* who teacheth the secrets of Physick, who preserves the lives of them that must lose the same soon after, confesse not by the mouths of these Impostors, the feigned inspirations of whom deceive the World, that they are but Devils, if the presence of a Christian takes not from them the boldness of lying, we are willing, that in the same place you shed the blood of this Christian, and punish him as a wicked person. [In the same Chapter:] Now seeing by our means your gods discover to you that they are no gods, and that all the other to whom men erect altars are none in like manner; but this at the same time they make you know, who the true God is, if it be this onely God whom we that are Christians worship, if we must believe of him what the Christians believe, if he must be served as their Laws ordain. When you conjure your gods in the name of Jesus Christ, do they ask who is that Jesus Christ? do they call the History of his life a fable? do they say he is a man of the same education as other men? that he was a Magician? that after he was dead, his disciples took away his body privately from the Sepulcher? and that he is now in Hell? say they not rather, he is in Heaven? that he must descend to the

Apolog. c. 37.

Chap. 31.

\* Pag. 45.  
talis operis.

Pag. 311.

Pag. 302.

Apolog. cap. 23.

'terror of all the World? with horror to the Universe? with the lamentation of all men but Christians? and that he shall come down on the Earth full of Majesty, as the Virtue of God, the Spirit of God, the Word, Wisdom, Reason, and the Son of God?

32. Whence Christians came to be so strong, as to wrest these confessions from them, hear him in the same place: "Now all the power we have of them, is the name of Jesus Christ who gives it us, it is the threatening we give them of the evils God is ready to pour on their heads, and which one day Jesus Christ must declare unto them. As they fear Jesus Christ in God, and God in Jesus Christ, they are under the Government of the servants of God and of Jesus Christ: so by the onely touch of our hands, and breath of our mouths, the Devils seized with fear at the sight of the flames that environ them are forced to obey us, to come out of the bodies they possess, in despite of them, and with murmuring to suffer this shame in our presence. You that are wont to believe them when they lie, believe them when they speak of themselves. None will tell a lie to get shame by it, but rather to gain honour; one will sooner believe them that confesse against their own interest, than those that denie to their advantage. These testimonies which we have of your gods make men to be Christians; for we cannot give a full belief to what they say, without believing in Jesus Christ our Master. Your gods kindle in our hearts the Faith which the holy Scripture reacheth us, they strengthen our hope, and confirm us in the assurance we have of our Salvation. As for you, to honour them, you offer them also the blood of Christians; and if it were permitted them to lie when Christians inter-rogate them, and labour to make you know the truth by their confession, they would take good heed of discovering your errors to you, as well for keeping the profit they have of them, and the honours you render them, as for the fear they might have, that in becoming your selves Christians, you drive them away as we do, from the bodies they torment with so much rage. [In the beginning of the following Chapter:] "We need nothing but the acknowledgement we have from your gods, when we make them confesse they are no gods, and when they answer us, there is no other God than the onely God we serve, to purge us from the crimes of high-treason and impiety to the Roman Religion.

Whence they  
had this  
strength a-  
gainst them.

They tri-  
umphed over  
their enemies  
in their very  
sufferings.

33. No wonder then that these impure Spirits enraged at Christians, sought all manner of ways to destroy them. But yet in their deaths they overcame them, and in all sorts of indignities and tortures triumphed over their implacable adversaries; for *The blood of the Martyrs was the seed of the Church*. That this was so indeed, *Tertullian* also informeth us, the veracity of whom, as to these things alleged is unquestionable, because appealing to his adversaries, he must needs in behalf of his cause produce such things as were most certain: the contrary whereof would have Apologized sufficiently for what he laboured to confute. We shall with the last words of his excellent Apology conclude this most delightful Subject. "But do what you please, all inventions the most exquisite cruelty can advise you unto are to no purpose; so far are they from profiting you, that contrarily they draw all the World to our Religion. The oftner you make an harvest of the Christians, the oftner their number increaseth: their blood is a seed which dies not on the earth, but puts forth prosperously. Many among you have laboured to persuade men to suffer constantly pain and death, (as *Cicero* in his *Tusculans*, *Seneca* in his Treatise against casual things, *Diogenes*, *Pyrrhon*, and *Callinicus*) but Christians have better taught constancy, by the examples they have given, in supporting patiently so many evils, than all the Philosophers with all their discourses. This same obstinacy, wherewith you reproach us, is an excellent mistress of truth which we believe: for who is there not that striveth with contemplation to seek what it is? who after his search made, comes not on our side? who having embraced the Faith of Jesus Christ, desires not to suffer for him, that by his sufferings he may get the infinite treasures of the grace of God, and that in the price of his blood,

Sssss 2

they

they may obtain the pardon of their faults; for the remission of all our sins, is the assured recompence of our punishments. This is the reason that when they read your sentences of death unto us, we render you thanks; because by an happy emulation that meets between the Judgements of God, and the judgement of men, at the same instant when you condemn us here below, God pronounceth our absolution in Heaven.

34. The Soldiers being at a stand after the murder of *Antoninus Bassianus*, were without an Emperour for two dayes. Then hearing that *Artabanus*, the *Parthian*, was coming to revenge the injury offered to him, they made choice of *Ardentius* one of their principal Officers, but he excused himself by his age, and the dignity was conferred on *Macrinus*, by the especial indeavour of the Tribunes, who alone were conscious of the fact towards *Antoninus*. He gave battle to *Artabanus*, and made incredible slaughter of men for two dayes, during which time, the *Parthian* knew nothing of his Enemies death, but on the next day being certified thereof by *Macrinus*, he received the Captives with the spoil taken in his Country, and making a League with the *Roman* Emperour, departed into his own Kingdom: *Macrinus* returning to *Antioch*, by letters gave the Senate an account of his successe, and endeavouring to remove all prejudice which might arise from the obscurity of his birth, promised to rule with as much moderation as any. He was cheerfully owned, not so much out of respect to himself, as hatred towards his Predecessor. During the time he reigned, things were well reformed; but lying idle at *Antioch*, he gave up himself to pleasures, and keeping there the Soldiers against their inclination, thereby drew contempt and hatred upon himself, which wrought his destruction.

*Macrinus* succeedeth *Bassianus*.

35. *Mesa* a *Phœnician*, sister to *Julia* the wife of *Severus*, had two daughters, *Sœmia* and *Mamma*. The former had a son named *Bassianus* fourteen years old, and the later one called *Alexianus* two years younger. Both these boyes were Priests of the Sun, in the *Phœnician* language called *Heliogabalus*, and the elder being the chief, was also a youth of an excellent beauty, and for it was very much admired by the *Roman* Soldiers. Their Grandmother *Mesa* hereat took occasion to affirm (whether truly or otherwise) that they were both the sons of *Antoninus*, who had been familiar with both her daughters, dwelling with her under the same roof. Having got great store of wealth by living at Court in her sisters time, she promised large sums to the Soldiers, in case the Empire could be devolved upon one of them. The Soldiers gladly closing with her offer, received them into their Camp; which *Macrinus* hearing of, neglected it, onely he sent *Julianus* with a party against the Revolters; but this party allured with the sight of the boy and money together, cut off their Captains head, and sending it back to *Macrinus*, were also received into the Camp. After this a battle was fought in the confines of *Syria* and *Phœnicia*, wherein *Macrinus* having the worst fled towards *Italy*, but was taken at *Chalcedon*, where he fell sick of his journey, and his head was struck off after he had reigned about fourteen moneths. He was more sharp towards his Soldiers than was suitable to his condition, being otherwise also very severe, so as he burnt Adulterers quick with their bodies joyned together. He was slain in the 54 year of his age, together with his son *Diadumenianus*, to whom he had given the title of *Cæsar*.

*Heliogabalus*.

36. *Antoninus Heliogabalus* succeeding *Macrinus*, continued still in his Office of Priest, wearing the ornaments belonging to it, and dancing continually in that Antick habit. He gave up himself to all filchinesse, luxury, and uncleannesse, and killed many that talked against his courses. He married the Image of *Pallas* (which never had seen light, except when the City was burnt, since its bringing from *Troy*) unto his god, as also that of *Urania* (by which the *Africans* meant the Moon) reported to be brought out of *Phœnicia* by *Dido*. He built a sumptuous Temple for his god, who was brought into it in a chariot adorned with gold and precious stones, the Priest himself leading the horses, and going backward all the way. He painted his face though he

had much natural beauty, wore Pearls in his shooes, never supped under the rate of thirty pounds, was drawn by Dogs in a Chariot up and down the Palace, alwayes sate either amongst Flowers or sweet Odours, and when he journeyed had no lesse then 600 Carriages in his train. Being told by the *Syrian* Priests that he should die a violent death, he provided silken Halters, Golden Knives, and a Turret floored with Gold and Pearl, saying, his death should be costly and luxurious, that it might be said, *No man died in such a sort*. Of his mother he was so fond, that he would do nothing without her, and carried her with him into the Senate-house. But these courses occasioned the ruine of them both.

37. His Grand-mother fearing these courses would bring him into contempt with the Soldiers, prevailed with him, though otherwise heady enough, to adopt *Alexianus* his Cousin German, that all might not miscarry together with him. She persuaded him to it, by shewing how hereby he might provide for his pleasures and attendance on his God, the other taking care of State affairs. He fought to train up *Alexianus*, now called *Alexander*, in his own way, and *Mamma* having provided him Tutors, able men to bring him up in good literature, he either put to death or banished the chief of them, as corrupting his son. He preferred none but Players to publick Dignities, and gave the governments of Provinces to the filchiest amongst his slaves. By these things he drew more and more upon him the hatred of the Soldiers, who all inclined to *Alexander* as a youth of good hope, who also had money from his mother for a bait, without which all had been nothing. *Antoninus* knowing this, endeavoured all wayes to poison him, and this succeeding not, he gave out he was dead, to see how the Soldiers would take it, who hereupon mutined. To appease them, he took him along with him in a Chariot beautified with Pearl and Gold to the Camp. Here was *Alexander* saluted and honoured alone, no respect being given to *Heliogabalus*, who being incensed thereat, went about to animadvert upon such as made acclamations; but the Soldiers catching at this advantage, slew him, together with his mother, and those that accompanied him, their two bodies being tumbled up and down the streets were at length cast into *Tiber*. He thus died having lived 18 years, and reigned five; *A.V.C. 975. A.D. 222.*

*Alexander*.

38. *Alexander* then was received as Emperour, and ruled with great moderation and clemency, being kept from ill company by *Mamma* his mother, and otherwise of his own inclination abhorring blood, so that in all his time not any one was put to death innocent and unheard. He carried himself with great courtesie towards all; nay, *Camillus* attempting new matters, he onely thanked that he was willing to receive that burthen which good men refused. His saying was, *Quod tibi fieri non vis alteri ne feceris*. What thou wouldest not have done to thy self, do not to another. Although the peace which *Macrinus* had made with the *Parthian* was disgracefull to the *Roman* Empire, yet it pleased not the *Parthians*, who thought the perfidiousnesse of *Bassianus* deserved much greater punishment. Thence arose dissatisfaction, contempt, and hatred amongst the subjects of *Artabanus*, the issue whereof was, that *Artaxares* or *Artaxerxes* stirred up the *Persians* to the recovery of their ancient honour, and translated the Kingdom from *Artabanus*, and the *Parthians*, upon himself, in the fourth year of this *Alexander*, 538 years after *Alexander* the Great, or rather in the 538 year of the *Seleucide*. Not content herewith, he sent to *Alexander* to demand whatsoever the *Romans* had taken from the *Persians*, and having a great ambition to recover what ever had belonged to that Empire, invaded *Mesopotamia*, giving out he would reduce all *Asia* unto his power. *Alexander* was constrained to march against him, and so repelled and weakened him, though with great losse of his own men, that for divers years no more was heard of him. By his Lieutenants he prospered in the Wars of *Mauritiana*, *Illyricum*, and *Armenia*, but being called for against the *Germans* who wasted *Gall*, either because he was despised for want of successe in this expedition, for his severity, or rather for that the Soldiers loved to fish in troubled waters, he was traiterously murdered, together with his mother,

*Olymp. 250. ann. 2. V.C. 975. A.D. 222. Consule Herodian. ubi supra. Lamprid. in Alexand. Eutropium l. 8. Euseb. Eccles. Hist. l. 6. c. 22. Orosium lib. 7. cap. 18.*

ther, and Maximinus was set up in his stead. *Mamma* his mother was first instructed in Christian Religion by *Origen*, whom she called to her at *Antioch*, but afterwards learnt of the *Gnosticks*, 1. Openly to deny what she privately owned, and 2. to keep, and worship images of Christ. She instructed her son in the same Doctrine, who would have made a Temple for Christ, but was prohibited saith *Lampridius*; that is, would have made one if he could have done it with the good will of the *Romans*. *Ulpian* the great Lawyer was his chief Justice, and was slain by the Soldiers. *Paulus* also, *Pomponius*, and *Modestinus* flourished in his time, which abounded with able men of this profession. *Alexander* was slain in *Gall* near *Moguntiacum*, on the fourth before the Nones of *October*, having lived 29 years, and reigned 13. A.V.C. 988. A. D. 235. *L. Catilius Severus*, and *L. Ragonius Quintianus* being *Consuls*.

Maximinus  
made Empe-  
rour by the  
Soldiers.

39. Maximinus by whose procurement *Alexander* was murdered, was born in *Thrace*, his father being a *Goth*, and his mother an *Alane*. Being at first an Herd-man, he was for the vastness of his body made a Soldier, and by degrees was preferred in the Army. He had been set over the new raised Soldiers, to train, and exercise them, and by his great valour, and enduring all labour and toil together with them, procured their favour, and hereby his own rise. As he was a man of stupendous bulk and proportionable diet, so also of avarice and cruelty, to the later whereof he was the more provoked by a conspiracy or two, which were discovered ere they took effect. He overthrew the *Germans*, and wasted their Countrey, threatening also to subdue all the Northern Nations as far as the Ocean, and had his other carriage been answerable to his valour, he might have enjoyed time and opportunity for the performance of much. This occasion of revolt from him was first given in *Africa* by his Officer at *Carthage*, whose rapacity so far incensed certain young men, that they killed him, and compelled *Gordianus* the *Proconsul* to take upon him the Purple, who being of the age of 80 years, was joyfully owned both by Senate and People. But he going about to revenge private injuries, destroyed himself, by constraining *Capellianus* who governed *Mauritiana* to come upon him with an Army, wherewith being worsted he hanged himself, his son having perished in the fight at the age of 46. They scarcely enjoyed the title 36 days.

Herod. lib. 7, 8.

Capitolinus  
Eutropius lib. 9.  
Orosius lib. 7.  
cap. 19.

Gordianus.

Maximus and  
Balbinus.

40. The Senate, that they might have some to oppose against *Maximinus*, chose two Emperors, *Maximus* and *Balbinus*; but the people not being satisfied therewith, and being desirous to have a Prince out of the stock of *Gordianus*, they gave the title of *Cesar* to *Gordianus* his Grandson by his daughter, a boy of 13 years of age. A little after it hapned that two old Soldiers who had belonged to *Maximinus* going to the Senate-house to hearken for news, were slain by two Senators, which thing raising a great tumult, the Soldiers in Town set the City on fire, whereby a great part of it was burnt down, and got them to their Camp. *Balbinus* was appointed to take care of *Rome*, and *Maximus* went into *Italy* to raise forces against *Maximinus*, who now marched fast for *Rome*. Finding no resistance at the *Alpes*, he accounted himself most sure of victory, but found so much at *Aquileia* as stopped his journey; for the Inhabitants furnished by the commodiousness of the place with all sorts of Provisions most stoutly defended themselves. They threw down so much scalding Pitch and Sulphur upon his Soldiers, that they were not able to continue the storms, and the women, 'tis said, cut the hair from their heads to make Provision for bonny-firings. This unexpected opposition drove him to such a rage, that having no power to torment the Enemy, he exercised his fury upon divers of his Captains whom he put to death, as if through their laziness and neglect the Town stood out. This cruelty, together with the scarcity of Victuals in the Camp (for the besiegers were so besieged that all Provisions were cut off from them) induced such of the Soldiers, as had their Wives and Children at *Rome*, to conspire against him. Together with him fell his son, such an one as himself, whom he had named *Cesar*, the Soldiers crying out, that of an ill Litter not a Whelp was to be pre-

Maximinus  
killed by his  
own men.

preserved. He also persecuted the Church by the sixth persecution, commanding that Governours onely and the principal Ministers of our Saviour's Doctrine should be put to death. But to such an end came he, being the first Emperor created onely by the Army without consent of the Senate, after he had reigned three years, A. V. C. 991, A. D. 238. *Euseb. Hist. l. 6. c. 29, & in Chron.*

Bishops.

41. Now to our continuation of Ecclesiastical matters. In the first year of *Alexander* or the last of *Heliogabalus*, the day preceding the Ides of *October*, *Callistus* Bishop of *Rome* was crowned with Martyrdom. The Sea was vacant six dayes, and then succeeded *Urbanus* the seventeenth Bishop, according to *Damasus*, on the twentieth of *October*, and first Feria. In the tenth of *Alexander*, on the eighth before the Calends of *June* died *Urbanus*. The Sea was vacant thirty dayes, and then *Pontianus* succeeded on the eighth before the Calends of *July*, the sixth Feria. In the first of *Maximinus*, *Pontianus* being banished into the Island *Sardinia*, there died on the thirteenth of the Calends of *December*, and *Antherus* succeeded him, who in the year following on the third of the Nones of *January* was crowned with Martyrdom, because he had diligently gathered an History of the Martyrs, and laid it up in the Church. The sea was vacant thirteen dayes, and then was *Fabianus* elected on the seventeenth of *January*, and the first Feria, being the twentieth Bishop of *Rome*, according to *Damasus*. And about the eleventh year of *Alexander*, *Heracles* who once was *Origen's* Usher in the School of *Alexandria* was Bishop of that Sea, where he continued sixteen years. *Damasus: Euseb.*

Damasus:  
Euseb.

\* Euseb. Hist.  
l. 6. c. 15, 26,  
31.

## CHAP. VI.

From the death of Maximinus the first created Emperour without consent of the Senate, to the Monarchy of Constantine the first Christian Emperour, who reformed Religion, and translated the Imperial seat to Byzantium, the space of 86 years.

1. THE news of *Maximinus* his death being brought to *Rome*, filled the City with extraordinary joy, having taken *Maximus* as he was lifting men in *Italy*, who thereupon went to *Aquileia*, and received the Army, to which he pardoned all things past. Then returned he to *Rome*, where he and his Colleague managed matters with discretion enough, could they have agreed betwixt themselves; but the one being jealous of the other, and both endeavouring to grapple all the power into their own hands, thereby wrought to themselves sodain destruction. The *Pratorian* bands hated them both, as created by the Senate, and resolved for the removal of such an indignity offered to the Army, to make them away, which *Maximus* understanding, would have sent for the Guard of *Germans*, which he knew both to be faithful to him, and able to resist the power of the other; but *Balbinus* suspecting that he intended something against himself, would not suffer it; and so the Soldiers entering the Palace hated them out, and after all sorts of indignities offered to their persons, upon report that the *Germans* were coming, slew them both. Now knowing no fit person whom they might prefer, and being assured it would be very acceptable to the People, they made choice of *Gordianus*, who had been formerly made *Cesar*. At his beginning so great an Eclipse of the Sun happened (April 2. on the second Feria, as *Capellus* agreeith with *Mulierus*) that the day seemed to be turned into night, and nothing could be done in houses without candles. *Sabinianus* in *Africa* attempted new matters, but was slain. *Gordianus* being yet very young undertook an Expedition against the *Persians*, over whom *Sapores* in his third year began to reign, having succeeded *Artaxerxes* their first King. By the good conduct of *Mistheus* his Father-in-Law he prospered very well, but he being

Herod. Capitol.  
Zozimus l. 1.  
Eutrop. l. 9.

Olymp. 254.  
an. 2.  
V. C. 991.  
A. D. 238.

Gordianus.

being slain or made away, the Soldiers not enduring the rawness of *Gordianus*, transferred the Sovereignty unto *Philip*, and killed him, after he had reigned six years. It is observed, that all those nine that slew him perished by their own hands, their own swords, and the very same with which they destroyed him.

*M. Julius Philippus.*

2. *M. Julius Philippus* was by birth an *Arabian* of *Trachonitis*, his Father being a notable Captain of thieves in that Country. He made his son partaker with him in the Imperial dignity. In his fourth year fell out the 1000th of *Rome*, which was celebrated with great pomp, and all manner of Games, from April 21 to April 21 of the following year. *Eusebius* reports of him, that he was the first Christian Emperour, and that being desirous to joyn with the multitude in the Ecclesiastical Prayers, he could not be admitted till he had first rendred an account of his Faith, and joyned himself with such, as for their sins were examined, and set in the place of penitents, therefore because he was faulty in many things, saith the Historian, he willingly obeyed, and declared by his works his sincere and religious mind towards God. The Martyrologies will have him and his son converted by occasion of the solemnity of the 1000th year, and being baptized by *Fabianus* Bishop of *Rome*, after confession of his sins, to have been admitted to the Communion. But saith *Cappellus*, if any of this had been true, would the Senate that was so set against the Christians have reckoned him amongst the gods? At least would *Decius* have objected this as a crime against him? The *Scythians* in his time infesting the Empire, he repelled by his Lieutenants. *Marinus* raising a Commotion in *Pannonia*, he sent *Decius* to quiet the Soldiers, who put the purple upon him. *Philip* then led an Army against this Usurper, and they met at *Verona*, where the old Emperour was defeated and slain, which news coming to *Rome*, his son a child of twelve years of age was murdered by the *Prætorian* bands, after they had reigned about five years.

*Eutrop. l. 9. Victor. Euseb. Hist. l. 6. c. 34. & in Chron.*

*Decius.*

3. *Quintus Trajanus Decius*, as *Orosius* calleth him, was born in *Pannonia*. According to the custom he assumed his son into participation of the Empire. He quiered at his beginning some motions in *Gaul*, but raised a great one against the Church, being Author of the seventh Persecution out of hatred to *Philip*, or as others say, having conspired against *Philip*, out of hatred to Christianity: by his edicts many were put to most cruel deaths. He received his reward after a short time: for now the *Goths* (originally inhabitants *Scanzia*) invaded *Thrace*, and other places, both by Land and Sea, because such of them as served in the Wars had been defrauded of their pay. At the desire of the Senate, to which he commended the Commonwealth in his absence, he marched against and overthrew them in several battels (notwithstanding that he lost his son, and *Priscus* Governour of *Philippi* revolted) and had perfected his Victory, but that he was betrayed by *Gallus Hostilianus* Governour of the lower *Mæsia*. He persuaded him to fight in a fenny ground, and then revealed his intention to the Enemy, by whom he was beset, and was swallowed up in a bog, so as his body could never be found. He was courteous enough to all but Christians, and gave satisfaction to Senate and People. He reigned two years and an half.

*Olymp. 257. an. 1. V. C. 1002. A. D. 249. Orosius lib. 7. cap. 21. Euseb. Hist. l. 6. c. 39. Leg. item Zozimus lib. 1. Eutrop. l. 9. Pomponius Letum.*

*Gallus.*

4. *Vibius Gallus Hostilianus* succeeded him, both in his Empire, his malice towards Christians, and his punishment. He clasped up an ignominious Peace with the *Goths*, unto whom he promised money, a thing scarcely heard of before amongst the *Romans*; and this not being long kept, the *Goths* and *Scythians* made incursions into *Thrace*, *Macedonia*, and *Thessaly*, and also into *Asia*, making great spoils in all places. Many other Nations after their example rebelled, and made havock of the Provinces: the *Parthians* also peirced into *Armenia*, and thence expelled *Tiridates* the King. The *Scythians* proceeded so furiously, that they seemed to carry all before them, till that *Emilianus* a *Moor*, and who commanded the Legions in *Pannonia*, by promises drew on his Soldiers against them, and so repelled them, that he invaded their Country, for which service he was saluted Emperour by this Army.

*Eutrop. l. 9. Pompon. Letum. Victor.*

*Emilianus.*

Army. *Gallus* hearing of this, went presently against him, but was slain together with *Volusian* his son and partner in the Empire. Such was the end of him who persecuted the Church of God, and chased away such holy men as praised for his peaceable and prosperous estate. The persecutions of the Christians in the dayes of *Decius* and *Gallus* were accompanied or followed with a most grievous Pestilence, which so vehemently raged, that there was scarcely any Province, City or house, but was almost wasted and ruined by it. *Gallus* and *Volusian* his son reigned little more than one year.

*Euseb. Hist. l. 7. c. 1. Orosius l. 7. c. 21.*

*Valerianus.*

5. *Emilianus* enjoyed the dignity not long, for another Army near the *Alpes* creating Emperour one *Valerianus*, a man of noble descent, his Soldiers, lest they should incur any danger or trouble killed him after three moneths. *Valerianus* then taking the Government upon him in *Rhætia*, the Senate at *Rome* gave the title of *Cæsar* to *Gallienus* his son. He was at first very courteous to the Christians, and so familiarly imbraced them, that his Palace was filled with Professors of the Faith; but afterward, he was persuaded by the Master of the *Egyptian* Sorcerers to slay them, as Enemies to their Art, and hinderers of it's operation in their preience; so that he raised the eighth Persecution, wherein many perished. But God avenged the cause of his Saints upon him; for going against *Sapores* the King of the *Persians*, he was taken prisoner, and could not be released, notwithstanding the intercession of the *Persian*'s confederates, who alleged, that the *Romans* the more they were overcome, the more vehemently they ever resisted. *Sapores* kept and used him as a stool to tread on when he got on horse-back, and at length pulling his skin over his ears, tortured him to death. *Gallienus* his son who all this time had reigned with him terrified hereat, stopped the Persecution of the Christians; but many of the *Romans* who had been the instruments of the Emperours cruelty, being to be punished as well as he, many Nations fell like a flood upon the *Roman* Empire, *Gallienus* giving up himself to all wantonness and luxury. The *Germans* over-running *Rhætia* and part of *Italy*, came as far as *Ravenna*, the *Allemans* also waiting *Gall* peirced into *Italy*. *Greece*, *Macedonia*, *Pontus*, and *Asia*, were overwhelmed with an inundation of the *Goths* and *Scythians*. *Dacia* beyond *Danubius* was perpetually lost, the *Quadi* and *Sarmata* seized on *Pannonia*, and the *Parthians* having got into their hands *Mesopotamia*, made incursions into *Syria*.

*Olymp. 258. an. 1. V. C. 1006. A. D. 253. Latus. Orosius ubi supra. Euseb. Hist. l. 7. c. 10.*

*Gallienus.*

*Orosius l. 7. c. 22. Eutrop. l. 9.*

6. *Gallienus* neglected these motions, answering alwaies concerning these matters, as if notwithstanding them the Empire might flourish and do well enough. He thus little minding the Commonwealth, the Soldiers almost in all places chose them Emperours; so that at this time there were no less than thirty Tyrants. The most notable of these upstarts was *Posthumus*, who reigned in *Gall* with great commendation ten years; he used much moderation, expelled the Enemies, and recovered Provinces. All those thirty fell at length, either fighting with one another, or with the Emperours. But *Gallienus* at last, being contemned, was slain, having reigned six years together with his father, and nine by himself, A. V. C. 1021. A. D. 268. His Successor was *Flavius Claudius* a *Dalmatian* born, according to his own desire, and the will of the Senate, who killing of the *Goths* and other Barbarians to the number of 330000 men, and sinking 2000 Vessels, the Senate decreed him a Golden Shield to be set up in the Court, and a Statue in the Capitol; but to the great losse of the Commonwealth he was slain at *Syracum*, when he had scarcely reigned two years. Into his place was advanced *Aurelius Quintillus* his brother, an excellent person; but being too good, they that set him up pulled him down, because they could not bear his gravity and strictness, killing him the seventeenth day after at *Aquileia*. Then reigned *Valerius Aurelianus*, born either at *Syracum* or some place in *Dacia*, of mean parentage. Being by *Claudius* appointed to drive the *Goths* out of *Thrace*, he was after his death saluted Emperour. He was an excellent Soldier, and restored the Empire well nigh to it's former bounds. He drove out the *Goths* from about *Danubius*; then returning to *Rome*, and there

*Aurelius Victor. Pollio de 30 Tyrannis. Orosius ubi supra. Pomponius Letum.*

*Orosius l. 7. c. 23.*

T T T T

quidam

punishing some Seditious persons, he marched into the East, to reduce those parts to their former obedience.

7. In the dayes of *Gallienus*, the *Perfians* having subdued *Mesopotamia*, and invaded *Syria*, One *Odenatus* an inhabitant of *Palmyra*, a Citie of this Countrey, gathering together a company of Boors, fell upon them, and so ordered his affairs, that he beat them out of *Syria*, recovered *Mesopotamia*, and incamped before *Ctesiphon* the Metropolis. Being slain after this Conquest, *Zenobia* his wife in right of her Children kept possession of the East together with *Egypt*. *Aurelianus* now going against her, in his way, in *Illyricum*, *Thrace*, and other places, defeated such Enemies as he met, and then entering *Syria*, after some trouble and danger, overthrew, and took the Queen her self near *Antioch*, and then recovered all her Dominions. But after his departure the Inhabitants of *Palmyra* killed his Garrison and revolted, which calling him back, he destroyed both the Citie and them therein, sparing neither Sex nor age; and after this recovered *Egypt*. Then returning into the West, he bent his endeavours against *Tetricus*, who reigned in *Gall*. *Tetricus* being vexed by his Seditious Soldiers, desired him, whom he termed *Invincible*, to rescue him from such evils, and betrayed his Army into his hands. *Valerian* growing proud upon such successe, first of all *Romans* set a Diadem on his head, and adorned himself with Gold and Pearl. He began also to persecute the Christians; but undertaking a War against the *Perfians*, he was slain betwixt *Byzantium* and *Heraclea*, through the malice of his Secretary, in the sixth year of his reign. In his first year, *Hormisdas* the third *Persian* King began his reign, which lasted but one year. Him succeeded *Varane*, and reigned three years, and him followed *Narjes* who continued 28. In his first year also died *Plotinus* the *Platonist*, who deriding all religion, perished through the just judgement of God by a filthy and painfull disease, although he had chosen a pleasant and wholesom place wherein to live in *Campania*. Now also flourished *Porphyry* his Scholar, who of a Christian became a great Enemy to Christianity, and wrote 15 books against it, to which *Eusebius* answered in 30. of which 20 were extant in the time of *Jerome*, but at this day not one.

*Orosius.*

*Euseb. in Chron. Zozimus lib. 2.*

*Victor. Orosius.*

*Euseb. Hist. l. 7. cap. 30. & in Chron.*

*Agathias.*

*Firmicus lib. 2.*

*Orosius lib. 7. cap. 24. Eutrop. lib. 9.*

*Fl. Vopiscus.*

*Zozimus. Pomponius Liber.*

*Tacitus.*

*Probus.*

8. There was an *inter-regnum* after the death of *Valerian* for 8 moneths, the Senate and Army straining courtesie the one with the other, at length the Senate made choice of *Tacitus*, a man of Consular Dignity, who in his sixth moneth died of a Fever at *Tarsus*. The Senate desired him, that in case he should die presently, he would not leave his Children his Successors, but some man of approved worth and valour, as the necessity of the State required. This man was *Probus*; yet notwithstanding *Florianus* the brother of *Tacitus* invaded the Empire, but was cut off by *Probus* near *Tarsus*, within the space of two or three moneths. *Probus* unwillingly receiving the burthen upon him, managed the Government with great commendation. He recovered *Gall* out of the hand of the *Francones* a people of *Germany*, which now first seized on it, after many bloody battels, and after this was engaged in Civil Wars. For *Saturninus* was saluted Emperour in *Egypt*, who was overthrown also, and killed also against his mind, and the same successe he had against *Proculus* in *Gall* and *Bonofus* a *Britain* born. He overthrew the *Sarmatians*, subdued several barbarous Nations about *Thrace* by the terror of his name onely, quieted all *Asia*, and forced the *Parthian* King to desire peace, which he granted. Returning afterward into *Thrace*, he planted several barbarous people within the *Roman* Empire, whereof some revolting, he chastised and reduced them. Now all things flourished exceedingly through peace and security, which made him something slight the Soldiers, who thereupon, as he was marching through *Illyricum* against the *Perfians*, murdered him at *Syrminum*, though he fled for safety into a Fortified Tower. That saying undid him, *Si vixero non opus erit amplius Romano Imperio militibus*, a speech of great despair for the Soldiers. Witty and sharp speeches fallen from Princes have often given fire to Seditions. Surely, faith the most learned *Viscount* of *St. Albans*, *Princes had need in tender matters, and tick-*

*list*

*list times, to beware what they say; especially in those short speeches, which fly abroad like Darts, and are thought to be shot out of their secret intentions. For as for large Discourses, they are flat things, and not so much noted.*

*Carus.*

*Diocletian.*

9. *M. Aurelius Carus*, of the Province of *Narbon* in *Gall*, succeeded him, who, when he had created *Casars* his two sons, *Carinus* and *Numerianus*, restrained the *Sarmatians*, that upon the death of *Probus* threatened *Italy*. But going against the *Perfians*, after he had recovered *Mesopotamia*, and taken the two noble Cities of *Partbia*, *Ctesiphon*, and *Cochu*, he was slain by a Thunder-bolt in his Tent near to the River *Tigris*. Of his two sons, *Numerianus* was with him, and *Carinus* was left behind to look to *Gall*. *Numerianus* returning out of the East as Conquerour, and lying sick in his Litter, was killed by *Arim Aper* his father-in-law, who gaped after the Empire. Scarcely after some dayes was this wickednesse detected by the stench of the Carkase, and then the Author of it being also discovered, *Valerius Diocletianus*, who governed the family of *Carus*, was chosen Emperour, and rewarded *Aper* as he had deserved. On the 15th before the Calends of *December*, and 10 dayes after, he entered *Nicomedia* in Purple. From the beginning of this *Diocletian* the *Egyptians* began a new *Era*, fetching its rise from the new Moon of *Thoth* the preceding moneth (*August* 29) which they called the *Era of Grace* for some reason or other. *Cappellus* observeth, that the fluctuating and vitious Chronology of *Baronius* henceforth beginneth to be right. For thinking, faith he, that he exhibited the years both of the true, and received *Era* of *Christ* in truth, he exhibited neither the one sort nor the other. Beginning the *Era* of *Diocletian* from the 284 year of our Lord, its true, and right, so that it be understood of the received, nor of the true *Era* of *Christ*: and the same is to be said concerning the years of the following Emperours. But after this, *Carinus* and *Diocletian* fought for the Sovereignty, and *Carinus* after much ado was slain by his own Soldiers for his lasciviousnesse, which made an end of a bloody and laborious War.

*Olymp. 265. Ann. 3. V. C. 1036. A. D. 283.*

*Orosius. Eutrop. Vopiscus.*

10. *Diocletian* then enjoyed the Dignity alone; but great firs arising in *Gall*, *Carausius* also who was set to defend the Sea-Coasts from the invasion of the *Franks* and *Saxons*, rather taking part with them than otherwise, he was constrained to create *Casar*, *Maximianus Herculeus*. He suppressed the motions in *Gall*, but commanding *Carausius* to be killed, this man put on the Purple, though a man of mean condition, and seized upon *Britain*. *Achilleus* rebelled in *Egypt*, *Africk* was in trouble, and *Narjes* King of *Persia* invaded the Eastern parts. *Diocletian* awakened with these dangers, promoted *Maximianus* to be *Augustus*, and they two adopted for *Casars* *Maximianus Galerius*, and *Constantius Chlorus*, who married *Theodora* the wife's daughter of *Herculeus*, and by her had six sons; as the other, the daughter of *Diocletian*. *Carausius* valiantly held *Britain* for seven years, and then was slain by *Allectus*, who having kept possession of the Island three years, was overthrown by *Asclepiodorus*. *Constantius* fighting against the *Allemani* in *Gall*, at first was worsted, but afterwards got a great victory, wherein 60000 of them are said to have been slain. *Maximianus Herculeus* reduced *Africk*, *Diocletian* himself besieging *Achilleus* in *Alexandria* 8 moneths, at length slew him therein, gave up the Citie to be plundered by the Soldiers, and vexed all *Egypt* with proscriptions and slaughters. *Galerius* was overthrown by the *Persian* King, and fled to *Diocletian*, who received him with great disdain, and made him run in his Purple Robe for some miles before his Chariot. *Galerius* much moved by this disgrace recruited his Army throughout *Illyricum* and *Masia*, and returning against *Narjes*, routed his Army, took his Camp, his Wives, Sisters, and Children, many of his Nobles, and great Treasure, wherewith returning into *Mesopotamia* unto *Diocletian*, he was then received most honourably; for he had taken *Ctesiphon*, subdued *Assyria*, and recovered those five Provinces beyond *Tigris*, which revolted from *Trajan*.

*Orosius ubi supra cap. 25. Eutrop. lib. 9. Festus Rufus.*



The tenth  
persecution.

11. After this were the *Carpi*, *Bastarna*, and *Sarmatians* overthrown, and divers other Nations quiered. *Diocletian* now suffered himself to be called *Lord*, and worshipped as a God. He in the East, and his Collegue in the West, raised against the Christians the most heavy persecution that ever yet had hapned both for length and cruelty. The Soldiers were first begun with, whereof all such as would not sacrifice to Devils were cashiered; but the persecutors proceeded to such cruelty and rage that some were Crucified, others burnt alive, others roasted with slow fiers, and others pulled in pieces by having their limbs made fast to boughs of Trees, which being brought together for that purpose, were afterwards suffered to return to their natural position. Some were starved to death, many slain with the sword, and many devoured of wild beasts. Some were dead alive, others beaten to death by hot burning iron rods, and some returned to prison after their torments, there to languish away. Women were hung naked by one foot, and some had their breasts seared: no Sex, no Age, no condition was spared. A terrible Earthquake followed in *Syria*, which destroyed many thousands about *Tyre* and *Sidon*. But in the second year of this persecution *Diocletian* perswaded his Collegue, though unwilling, that they both might resign the Empire to the two *Cæsars*; so that he being seized with a fowl disease after he had almost reigned twenty years, put off the Purple at *Nicomedia*, and *Maximianus Hercules* the same day at *Milain*. The former withdrew to *Salena* into his own Countrey, and the later into *Lucania*.

Maximianus  
Galerius, and  
Constantius  
Chlorus.

12. The two *Cæsars*, *Maximianus Galerius*, and *Constantius Chlorus*, became *Augusti* after the resignation of their fathers in Law, and first of all others parted the Empire between them. To *Constantius* fell *Gall*, *Britain*, *Spain*, *Italy*, and *Africk*; to the other *Illyricum*, with *Greece*, and *Asia*. *Galerius* created *Cæsars* his sister's two sons, *Galerius Maximinus* and *Severus*. The East he appointed to *Maximinus*, and intended *Italy* for *Severus*, if he could but take it from *Constantius*. For this purpose he kept at *Rome* as an Hostage *Constantine* the son of *Constantius* by *Helena* a British woman as some say, which he put away when he married the daughter of *Maximianus*. But *Constantine* made an escape to his father, who died at *York* in *Britain* not long after, on the 25 of *July*, in the third year of his reign, he and his Collegue both the sixth time being *Consuls*, in the 1058 year of the City, the 306 of the ordinary *Æra* of Christ, the first year of the 271 *Olympiad*. His son *Constantine* in *Britain* was now saluted Emperour.

13. The *Prætorian* Soldiers at *Rome* named Emperour *Maxentius* the son *Idem* of *Maximianus Hercules*, who together with *Diocletian* had resigned the Government. Against *Maxentius*, *Galerius* sent *Severus*, who besieging *Aurelius Vi-* *Rome* was betrayed by his Soldiers, and flying away was killed at *Ravenna*. Now *Maximianus Hercules* out of desire to recover the Empire joyned with *Constantine*, to whom he married *Fausta* his daughter by *Eutropia*; then to obtain his design did he plot against both son and son-in-law, but being frustrated by both, hanged himself at *Massilia*, now *Marseils*, a Citie in *France*. *Maxentius* his son, and *Galerius Maximinus*, otherwise disagreeing, joyned in renewing the persecution against the Christians, by *Eusebius* called the second, which we understand of his age. But *Galerius Maximianus Augustus* made *Licinius* his Collegue in the Empire in the fifth year after the death of *Constantius*, in which year also *Sapor* the seventh King of *Persia* began his reign. *Galerius Augustus* heightning the persecution of Christians by several cruel edicts, rotted within, and was eaten with worms, which crawled out of his belly, so that the Physicians not able to endure the stench of his body were put to death. Perceiving the hand of God upon him, in his own and *Constantius* name he recalled his Edicts, and at last miserably died. This was the second persecution, which if it be joyned with the former, both make up about 8 years. But this rest scarcely continued 6 months; for *Maximianus* being dead at *Salena*, *Maximinus* being nothing amended by so sad an example, renewed the persecution. His fury God chastized by putting him to flight before the *Armenians* whom he had provoked, as also by pesti-

pestilence and famine, wherein by Gods Grace the humanity of Christians was as admirable as formerly their constancy had been. Now the *Roman* Empire was under four Princes, viz. *Constantine* and *Maxentius* sons of Emperours, and *Maximinus* and *Licinius* new raised men.

14. The chief men at *Rome* being wearied with the Tyranny of *Maxentius* sent for *Constantine* against him. *Constantine* in his journey by the benefit of a famous vision tasted of Christianity, being formerly inclined towards it. The truth of the story he confirmed to *Eusebius* by an oath (as that Historian telleth us in the History of his life) and relareth it after this manner: A little past noon he beheld the sign of a Crosse lively figured in the air, with an Inscription in it, containing these words: *In hoc vince. In this overcome*. He said, that both he and his whole Army did wonder at so strange a prodigy. It's further said, that Christ appearing to him in a dream, commanded him to make the figure of the Crosse which he had seen, and to wear it in his Colours in the field. Proceeding against *Maxentius*, he overthrew his forces four times, although four times larger than his own; at the later time *Maxentius* flying amain towards *Rome*, was drowned in the River. *Maximinus* published an Edict against Christians, but was forced to sing a palinode twice, although his flattery was as unprofitable as his threats, for he died of an horrible disease at *Tarsus*. Then did *Constantine* and *Licinius* enjoy the Empire together. The former after his Victory over *Maxentius* was confirmed in the Christian Faith, and owned Christ for the Author of his successe. *Licinius* complied with him for a time in encouraging the Christians; but afterwards plotting against him, he also began a grievous persecution against the People of God, changed the good Laws, and laid heavy impositions on his Subjects. *Constantine* being hereby constrained to make Warre upon him, overthrew him in *Pannonia*, and several times afterwards, for that he had renewed the War both by Land and Sea most perfidiously, and given the title of *Cæsar* to *Martinianus*. At length he forced him to yield his person, and deliver up his Robe by the hand of his wife, which was *Constantine's* sister, given him on purpose to oblige him. He sent him to *Thessalonica*, where he afterwards attempting new matters, he commanded him to be slain.

Constantine  
converted.

Licinius put to  
death.

Constantine ob-  
taineth the  
Monarchy.

Buildeth Con-  
stantinople.

15. Thus did *Constantine* obtain the Monarchy of the *Roman* Empire, in the nineteenth year of his reign, the fourth of the 275 *Olympiads*, A. V. C. 1077, A. D. 324. Six years after, in the 25 of his reign, he repaired *Byzantium*, and making it larger than ever, carried from *Rome* the greatest part of the ornaments, and of Christian Senators, and calling it after himself *Constantinople*, would have it also named *New Rome*, and to be head of the *Roman* Empire with the same right as the other. He first of all had designed to build a City near *Sardis* in *Asia*, afterwards begun one at *Sigam* a Promontory of Mount *Ida*, in the Country of *Troas*. The third time the design was begun at *Chalcedon*, where walls were erected; but fowls snatching up and carrying away the cords of the workmen to *Byzantium* a City of *Thrace*, upon it the Emperour pitched. This Town was first built in the third year of the thirtieth *Olympiad*; *Hesychius* saith by a Colony of the *Argives*, *Amminius* by one of the *Athenians*, *Velleius* saith, it was a Colony of the *Milesians*, and *Marcianns Periegetos* of the *Megarians*, being so named from *Byzas* their Country-man and Captain of the Colony. It stood right over against *Chalcedon* in a far better soil, which made *Apollo* term the founders of the later blind men, because they passed by so excellent a place. It ran through various fortune according to that influence which *Greece* had into it's affairs; as we have from time to time observed upon occasion. *Severus* the Emperour almost destroyed it, but by the Soldiers of *Galienus* it was brought to ruine, and now restored and augmented by *Constantine*.

16. This Empire being now in it's declining condition, by reason of it's old age (for all sublunary things are subject to the vicissitude of time) and sorely disempowered by inward heats, into which want of hereditary Monarchy, and the horrid licentiousness of a standing Army had thrown it, as also labouring under so huge a bulk, and so great a plethora as Nature could not well govern,

Entrop. ubi su-  
pra.  
Orosius.

Vide Ludovicum in Augustin. de Civitate Dei. lib. 5. c. 26. Simfonium in Chron. cathol. ad A. M. 3347. Joan. Baptistam Egnatium in Constantino l. 2. Rom. Principum.

Constantine by translating thither the Imperial seat occasioneth the ruine of the Empire.

govern, being forced as it were by *Constantine* to change its natural, suitable, and native air, by so violent an alteration contracted it's mortal infirmity. For as plants being transplanted out of their native soil, into other regions divers in climate and quality, retain little of their natural virtue; so humane affairs, especially Dominions and Empires, by such great mutations lose their vigour and stability, even also as we see it happeneth to several sorts of Animals. For this cause the *Senate* would never consent to the *Commons* to depart from *Rome* to *Vesit*, though a place much more pleasant and commodious, especially after *Rome* was burnt by the *Galls*. All great and sodain mutations as to the body natural, so to the body Politick, are ever dangerous. But this translation of the Imperial Seat to *Byzantium*, seemeth also to have given some occasion to a second error of *Constantine*, whereby dividing his Empire into three parts to his sons, of one great one he made three, with a notable diminution of authority and strength. For his sons falling out amongst themselves, they so defeated one another, as the Empire was exhausted, and enervated amongst them.

How this came to passe.

17. For although it sometimes a little recovered under one Prince, yet remained it so lyable to divisions, that it seldom happened but it was divided into *Eastern* and *Western*, till at length *Odoacer* King of the *Heruli* and *Turingi* entering *Italy* with a great Army, cast *Augustulus* into such Straights, that out of desperation he quitted the *Western* Empire, which happened about the year 476. The *Hunni* ere this had passed over *Danubius*, *Alaricus* King of the *Vandals* had taken *Rome*. The *Vandals* first seized on *Andalusia*, and afterwards on *Africk*: the *Alani* on *Lusitania* (now *Portugal*) and the *Goths* on the greater part of *Spain*, the *Angli* on *Britain*, and the *Burgundians* on *Provence*. *Justinian* the Emperour by driving the *Vandals* out of *Africk* and the *Goths* out of *Italy*, did a little repair these decayes. but the effect thereof continued not long, for about the year 710 the Armies and Heresie of *Mahomet* began to disturb the *Eastern* Empire: and in a short time the *Saracens* over-ran *Syria*, *Egypt*, *Africk*, *Sicily*, and *Spain*. About the year 735 they also seized on several parts of *Gall*. Thus was the *Western* Empire by little and little torn in pieces and canonized. At length by a new title it came to *Charls* the Great, in whose family it scarcely continued 100 years, and then came to be Elective by seven Persons, and so continueth rather a resemblance of an Empire than otherwise unto this day. As for the *Eastern*, it continued so weak, that scarcely sometimes could it defend the *Metropolis* against the *Saracens*; much lesse could it afford any assistance to the other; and after the *Saracens*, the *Turks* got ground of it by little and little, till having for many years left the Emperours little more than an empty name, at last *Constantinople* also was taken by *Mahomet* the Great. No more at present by way of Anticipation, either concerning the decay of the *Roman* Empire, or of those particular Kingdoms, Principalities, and States that were cut out of it, all which are referred to the method of another Volume. But as we said, the division of the Empire took it's original from the translation of the Imperial Seat to *Byzantium*, it increased by plurality of Princes, and came to perfection in the promotion of *Charls* the Great, after which there was no communion of Government, Laws, Magistracy, or Councils, as had been before. Now to our continuation of Ecclesiastical matters.

Bishops.

18. In the second year of *Decius* was *Fabianus* Bishop of *Rome* crowned with Martyrdom on the fourteenth of the *Calends* of *February*. The Sea was vacant for one year, and then was chosen *Cornelius*, whose election displeasing some, *Novatus* ordained against him *Novatianus*. The year following *Cornelius* was Martyred on the eighteenth before the *Calends* of *October*, and *Lucius* succeeded him, who shortly after was banished. In the second of *Gallienus* was he beheaded, and after a vacancy of 35 dayes, *Stephen* succeeded on the ninth of *April* the first feria, who interceding for *Basilides* condemned by the *Spaniards*, they defended their right against him, and condemned his usurpation against the *Africans* as appeareth from *Cyprian's* Epistles,

Epistles, as also that the boldnesse of the *Roman* Sea was now checked by all the Provinces. After three years *Stephen* was beheaded by the command of *Valerian*, and *Sixtus* succeeded him, who being beheaded when *Lawrence* the Deacon was fried to death by the command of *Valerian*, *Dionysius* succeeded. After him came *Felix*, and then *Eutychianus*, who being martyred in the first of *Carus*, after nine dayes *Caius* succeeded, December 16. *Caius* was crowned with Martyrdom in the twelfth of *Diocletian*, and after eleven dayes *Marcellinus* succeeded, who through fear offering incense to Idols, when he denied it, was overborn by the testimony of a multitude of witnesses, confessed his fault, and afterwards redeemed his credit by suffering Martyrdom. *Marcellus* succeeded him. After *Marcellus* succeeded *Eusebius*, and then *Miltiades*, then *Sylvester*, who was Bishop at the time of the Council of *Nice*, in the twentieth year of *Constantine*.

19. After *Alexander*, *Maxabanes* was Bishop of *Jerusalem* untill the reign of *Gallus* and *Volusianus*, after him *Hymeneus* till the time of *Aurelian*. Then followed *Zambdas* and *Hermion*, according to (a) *Eusebius*, (a) *Lib. 7. c. 19.* who writeth, that the Sea of *Jerusalem* was alwaies honoured, and the succession continued unto his own dayes. After *Hermion* *Macarius* was Bishop, and was present at the Council of *Nice*. In the Church of *Antioch* after *Scholast.* 1. 1. *Phileus* succeeded *Zebinus*, and then *Babylas*, who died in prison, in the cap. 9, 13. persecution under *Decius*. Him followed *Fabius*, him *Demetrianus*, and him *Paulus Samosatenus* the heretick, who denying the Divinity of the Son of God, was excommunicated, and deprived by the second Synod held against him at *Antioch* in the dayes of (c) *Aurelianus*. And when he would (c) *Euseb. l. 7.* neither depart the Church, nor avoid the house, the Emperour was befoight c. 29, 30. (the first application to the Prince in this nature by the Christians) to interpose and command by edict, that such should have the house as agreed in doctrine with the followers of the Bishop of *Rome* and *Italy*. *Domnus* was by the Synod appointed to succeed him, after whom followed *Timoneus*, *Cyrellus*, *Dorotheus*, *Tyrannus*, *Vitalis*, *Philogonus* a Martyr, and (d) *Eusebius*, (d) *Socrat. l. 1.* who was at the Council of *Nice*. He fell into the Heresie of *Sabellius*, who c. 9, 23. being the Scholar of *Noetus*, taught that the three Persons of the Trinity were but one; but they differed, in that *Sabellius* said not the Father to have suffered. He was deposed by a Council held at *Antioch*. *Eusebius Pamphilus* Bishop of *Cæsarea* confuted him. After his deposition the Sea was vacant eight years. In the Sea of *Alexandria* after *Heraclius*, *Dionysius* the Scholar of *Origen* was Bishop, in the third year of *Philip*. He reporteth in (e) *Eusebius* the peril he stood in, and the persecution he suffered under *Decius*. He wrote of the *Alexandrian* Martyrs to *Fabius* Bishop of *Antioch*; (e) *Quem vid. l. 6. c. 7. passim.* and to *Novatus* the Heretick, who being a Priest of *Rome* fell from his order, and calling his Sect *Cathari*, would not admit unto the Church such as fell after repentance, and he abhorred second marriage. *Dionysius* also wrote to *Hermanion*, to *Steven*, and *Xistus* Bishops of *Rome*, unto *Philemon* a Minister of *Rome*, and unto *Dionysius* Bishop of *Rome*. He confuted the Book of *Nepos* the *Chilias*t, and confounded in open disputation *Coracion* his disciple. Hitherto this error of the *Millenaries* propagated by *Papias*, had many of the Fathers that adhered to it, who yet held that Christ when he came was to do his own work, without any prejudice to Earthly Princes in the mean time. Some observe, that *Dionysius* striking at this error, traduceth the *Apocalypse*, as also defending the distinction of Persons against *Sabellius*, seemeth to make three Essences. Many betook themselves to *Dionysius* Bishop of *Rome*, that he would reclaim him, and obtained it. After he had governed the Church seventeen years he died, and *Maximinus* succeeded him, whom followed *Theonius*, and him *Peter*, who was martyred under *Diocletian*. Him succeeded *Achillus*, and then came *Alexander*, who was at the Council of *Nice*. Hee by preaching of the Trinity somewhat curiously, gave occasion to *Arius* one of his Clergy to fall from the Faith, as \* *Socrates* in- \* *L. 1. c. 5.* formeth us.

20. In the fifth year of *Philip* whilst *Fabianus* was Bishop of *Rome*, Do-  
natus

natus the Bishop of Carthage died, and Cyprian succeeded him by consent of all men except *Feliciſſimus*, who, whileſt the Heathens invaded his patrimony, endeavoured to deprive him of his Biſhoprick. *Feliciſſimus* was ordained Biſhop by *Novatus*, who alſo ordained *Novatianus* againſt *Cornelius* Biſhop of Rome. Yet *Cornelius* favoured *Feliciſſimus* againſt *Cyprian*, and would have taken Cogniſance of their buſineſſe, whereupon *Cyprian* vehemently rebuketh him, and denies that any one beyond the Sea hath right to paſſe judgement upon any matters concerning *Africa*. And a little after, the pride of the Roman Sea was reprehended by all thoſe of the Provinces, an occaſion being given about *Baſilides*, who being cenſured in Spain, complained to *Stephen* the Biſhop of Rome. *Cyprian* was ſeveral times driven into exile. (a) *Eusebius* maketh him to have erred in rebaptizing Hereticks. In the fourth of *Valerian* died *Origen* ſeventy years old, a man of admirable parts, moſt auſtere life, indefatigable induſtry, and ſtupendious learning, but of impure Doctrine. *Jerome* ſheweth how full of portentous errors his book *περί ἀρχαῶν* is. (b) *Augustin* ſaith, he held the Devil at length ſhould be delivered from Hell, and aſſociated with the holy Angels, and for this, and other things, eſpecially for holding alternate or ſucceſſive bleſſedneſſe and miſery for ever, the Church did rejeſt him. *Pamphilus* wrote an Apology for him. But his works are to be read with eſpecial care, and eſpecially his Commentaries upon the Scripture, concerning ſome of which *Theodore* (c) *Beza* paſſeth this cenſure: *Certe hoc auſim dicere, ſi hæc ſunt Origenis cujus titulum præferunt, hunc hominem fuiſſe ſelectum Diaboli organum Apoſtolica Doctrina evertenda deſtinatum*; for he evaporateth the ſolid and ſubſtantial Doctrine of the Goſpel, into Allegorical, and airy Notions.

21. But, God having exerciſed his people by many a fiery trial, was pleaſed to preſerve the buſh unburned, and at length to grant them Peace by *Conſtantine*, who proved a nurſing father to the Church, taking away all penal Laws againſt them, and enacting new ones, not onely for their preſervation, but convenience and comfort. And as he preſerved them from external violence; ſo he alſo took care for their inward peace. This had been ſomewhat of late diſturbed by the Hereſie of *Manes*, from whom his followers were named *Maniches*, who began to publiſh his impure Doctrine in the fiſt of *Probus*, in the 277 year of the ordinary, or received *Æra* of Chriſt. This fellow being a *Persian*, ſaid that he was born of a Virgin, that he was both Chriſt and the holy Ghoſt, and ſent out twelve Diſciples to preach his Doctrine, which was made up of many old Hereſies heretofore named. But his, and other groſſe opinions found not ſuch entertainment as to procure ſo much diſturbance as that of *Arius* did, who having as we ſaid heard *Alexander* the Biſhop of *Alexandria* diſcourſing curiouſly of the Trinity, and thinking that he maintained the error of *Sabelius*, in oppoſition to him fell to deny the bleſſed Trinity, and affirmed that the ſon of God was like unto God in name onely, and not in ſubſtance. His Hereſie having been condemned in many Synods, *Conſtantine* in the 20th of his reign A. D. 325, ſummoned a General Council to meet at *Nice*, where aſſembled 318 Biſhops. In oppoſition to *Arianism* was framed the *Nicene Creed*, June 19. *Hofius* preſided as he had done in the Synodes of *Egypt*, and fiſt ſubſcribed the Canons. Beſides the condemnation of *Arius*, the Sanction concerning *Eaſter* made at *Arles* and in *Paſtine* was confirmed. Moreover, twenty Eccleſiaſtical Canons were eſtabliſhed, than which no good Author mentioneth more. Now were the Temples of Idols overthrowed, and Churches Erected, the ſervice of Devils was baniſhed, and the worſhip of the true God owned and encouraged: now faith and patience triumphed over moſt tedious and exquisite perſecutions, and truth diſſipated the Clouds of prejudice and error.

Reli-

Mr. George Herbert his Church Militant.

Religion now flouriſh'd in Greece, where Arts  
Gave her the higheſt place in all mens hearts.  
Learning was poſ'd, Philoſophy was ſet.  
Sophiſters taken in a fiſhers net.  
Plato, and Aristotle were at a loſſe,  
And wheel'd about again to ſpell Chriſts Croſſe.  
Prayers chaſed Syllogiſms into their den,  
And Ergo was transform'd into Amen.  
Though Greece took horſe as ſoon as Egypt did,  
And Rome as both, yet Egypt faſter rid,  
And ſpent her period, and prefixed time  
Before the other. Greece being paſt her prime,  
Religion went to Rome, ſubduing thoſe,  
Who that they might ſubdue made all their foes.  
The Warriour his dear ſcars no more reſounds;  
But ſeems to yield Chriſt haith the greater wounds,  
Wounds willingly endur'd to work his bliſſe,  
Who by an ambuſh loſt his Paradife.  
The great heart ſtoops, and taketh from the duſt  
A ſad repentance, not the ſpoils of luſt;  
Quitting his ſpear, leſt it ſhould pierce again  
Him in his members, who for him was ſlain.  
The ſhepherds hook grew to a Scepter here,  
Giving new names, and numbers to the year.  
But th' Empire dwelt in Greece, to comfort them  
Who were cut ſhort in Alexander's ſtem.  
In both of theſe Proweſſe and Arts did tame  
And tune mens hearts againſt the Goſpel came,  
Which uſing, and not fearing ſkill in th' one  
Or ſtrength in th' other, did erect her Throne.  
Many a rent, and ſtrugling th' Empire knew  
(As dying things are wont) untill it ſlew  
At length to Germany, ſtill Weſtward bending,  
And there the Churches feſtival attending:  
That as before Empire, and Arts made way,  
(For no leſſe Harbingers would ſerve than they)  
So they might ſtill, and point us out the place,  
Where fiſt the Church ſhould raiſe her down-caſt face.  
Strength levels ground, Art makes a Garden there,  
Then ſhowrs Religion, and makes all to bear.  
Spain in the Empire ſhar'd with Germany,  
But England in the higher Victory  
Giving the Church a Crown to keep her ſtate,  
And not go leſſe than ſhe had done of late.  
Conſtantine's Britiſh line meant this of old,  
And did this myſtery wrap up, and fold  
Within a ſheet of paper, which was rent  
From time's great Chronicle and hither ſent.  
Thus both the Church and Sun together ran  
Unto the fartheſt old Meridian.  
How dear to me, O God thy Counſels are!  
Who may with thee compare?

F I N I S.

V V V V V

REA-

Origen.

Vita &amp; epiſtola Cypriani.

(a) Lib. 7. c. 3.

(b) Quem conſule de Civitate Dei. l. 21. c. 17.

(c) In Rom. cap. 3. verſ. 20.

The Council of Nice.

Books printed for Henry Herringman, at the sign of the Anchor on the Lower Walk of the new Exchange.

The great Exemplar, the Life and Death of the Holy Jesus, by Jer. Taylor Dr. in Divinity, Chaplain in ordinary to his Majesty.

Astrea, a Romance in 3 Volumes in Folio.

Panlo Paruto's History of Venice, Translated by Henry Earl of Monmouth.

Bishop Andrews second Volume of Sermons.

The Grand Scipio, an excellent new Romance written in French by Monsieur de Vaumoriere, and rendred into English by Gil. Havers.

The History of the Commonwealth of Venice, by James Howell, Esq;

The Wall-flower, an excellent Romance, written by Dr. Baley.

A Compendious History of the Goths, Swedes, Vandals, and other Northern Nations, written by Olaus Magnus, Arch-Bishop of Upsal, and Metropolitan of Sweden.

Clelia, an excellent new Romance, the fifth, and last Volume.

Gondibert, an Heroick Poem, written by Sir William Davenant.

Parthenissa, an excellent Romance in five Volumes, written by the Right Honorable the Lord Broghill.

The civil right of Tythes, wherein setting aside the higher Plea of Jus Divinum, from the Equity of the Levitical Law, or that of nature for sacred services, and the certain apportioning by the undoubted Canon of the New Testament, the labourers of the Lords Vineyard of the Church of England are estated in their quota Pars of the Tenth or Tythe, per legem Terra, by civil Sanction, or the Law of the Land, written by C. E. Mr. of Arts.

The Art of making Devises, by Tho. Blunt.

The Immortality of the Soul demonstrated by the light of nature, by Doctor Charleton.

Natural History of nutrition, life, and voluntary motion, containing all discoveries of Anatomists, and most probable opinions, of Physicians concerning the Oeconomie of humane nature, Methodically delivered in Exercitations Physico-Anatomical, by Dr. Charleton.

Epicurus's Morals collected partly out of his own Greek Text in Diogenes Laertius, and partly out of the Rhapsodies of Marcus Antonius, P. n. iarch, Cicero, and Seneca, and faithfully Englished by Dr. Charleton.

Ironadia Gratulatoria, Latin Poems, by Pa. Fisher.

The siege of Rhodes.

The History of Sr. Francis Drake.

The cruelty of the Spaniards in Peru expressed by Instrumental and Vocal Musick, and by Art of perspective in Scenes, &c. all three written by Sir William Davenant.

Unum Necessarium, or the Doctrine and practice of Repentance, by Jer. Taylor, D. D.

A Collection of Offices and Forms of prayer publick and private, fitted for the needs of all Christian assemblies, by Jer. Taylor, Dr. of Divinity.

A Collection of Letters made by Sr. Toby Mathews Knight, with a Character of the most excellent Lady Lucy Countesse of Carlisle, by the same Author, to which is added many Letters of his own to several persons of Honour, who were Contemporary with him.

Satyricall Characters, and handfom Descriptions in Letters written to several persons of quality.

Poems, viz. A Panegyrick to the King, Songs & Sonnets, the Blind Lady, a Comedy, the fourth book of Virgil, Statius Achilleis, with Annotations, A Panegyrick to General Monck, by the Honorable Sr. Rob. Howard.

The Characters of the Passions written in French by the Sieur de la Chambre, Physician to the Lord Chancellor of France, put into English by a person of quality.

Anthropologia abstracted, or the Idea of humane nature reflected in brief Philosophical and Anatomical Collections.

The Court of Rome, wherein is set forth the whole Government thereof.

The Grand difference between France, Spain, and the Empire, with the Titles, Claims, and pretences to each others Dominions discussed and stated by an Impartial hand, very necessary

READER, there being many proper names in this work, which the Printers rarely meet with elsewhere, this hath occasioned the more faults in the Impression; yet most of them are corrected by a frequent printing of them aright, especially towards the later end of the Book; most faults being onely the alteration of one letter in a word. Such of these, or others, that are most notable thus correct, and passe by the rest by thy candour.

Page 1. line 12. for eat it, read eat of it, p. 2. marg. for Meverum r. Merceum, p. 7. l. 43. f. Irelan. r. Joffan, p. 11. l. 22. f. Amonite r. Amorrhite, p. 12. l. 3. f. Clisiphon. r. Cissiphon, p. 13. l. 14 f. Pesen v. Resen, p. 21. l. 47 f. Judea r. India, p. 24. marg. f. Aphen. r. Athenew, p. 34. l. 26. f. Damascenus. r. Damascus, p. 39. marg. f. Deut. r. Orat. p. 78. marg. f. Phicium, r. Phocium, v. 82. l. 57 f. severity r. serenity, p. 86. l. 21. f. caried r. varied, p. 88. l. 21. f. Agyp- tians r. Aginetans, p. 91. l. 20. f. Generation r. veneration, p. 94. l. 54. f. Aphutes r. Iphicles, p. 95. l. 32. f. Sanchoniathon r. Sanchoniathon, p. 109. l. 51. f. law v. cave, p. 111. l. 7. f. ancient r. after, p. 116. l. 1. f. Greece. r. Crete, p. 187. l. 31. f. Pabaves r. Bubaves, p. 192. l. 46. f. Mossa r. Atossa, p. 199. l. 18. f. 161. r. 16. p. 213. f. penult. r. 490. so. p. 214. l. 10. & 17. & 18. r. 489. & 490. p. 238. l. 16. f. Glos r. Glau, and l. 26. p. 293. l. 4. f. Coveycaus r. Corinthians, p. 297. l. 1. f. Men- ton r. Acton, p. 362. marg. Sordanus r. Soranus, p. 364. l. 34. f. Dubaves r. Bubaves, p. 429. l. 30. f. Buleo r. Buteo, p. 484. marg. Scribonianus r. Tr. Bonanus, p. 544. l. 30. f. Antiochus r. Antigonus, p. 583. l. 51. dele. self, p. 596. l. 28. f. Phaucias. Phe- micia, 646 l. 38. f. took r. loofe, p. 743. l. 21. f. a fight, r. for fight, p. 749. m. betwixt avus & Rex, r. Cecinna, ibid. l. 45. f. induced r. induced, ibid. l. 73 f. Eremias r. Armies, p. 760. m. Principalities r. Provinces, p. 792. l. 16. Hypotyposeum r. Hypotypojon, p. 798 penult. f. Marcellus r. Marsellinus, p. 800. penult. f. Canst r. Cang, p. 830. l. 44. f. three r. the, p. 839. l. 10. f. Municipi r. Municipia, p. 853. l. 10. f. Atreui r. Atreui, p. 857. l. 10. betwixt Clemens & Alexandrinus, add called, p. 866. l. 18. f. fifth r. first.

cessary for the clear understanding of the present Commotions, and great affairs of *Europe*.

A Triumphant Arch Erected and Consecrated to the glory of the Feminine Sex, by Monsieur de *Scudery*, Englished by J. B. Gent.

Humane Industry, or a History of most Manual Arts, deducing the Original Progress, and Improvement of them, furnished with variety of Instances and Examples, shewing forth the Excellency of humane wit.

Emphick Love written by the Honorable *Robert Boyle*.

Certain Physiological Essayes, written at distant times, and on several occasions, by the Honorable *Robert Boyle*.

A Prospective of the Naval Triumph of the *Venetians* over the *Turks* to Signor *Pietro Liberi*, that Renown'd and Famous Painter, by *Gio. Francesco Busenello*, Englished by *Tho. Higgons*, Esq;

*Rare* Rim'd to death, or a Collection of Ballers made on the *Rump* Parliament.

Dr. *Jer. Taylors* Rules of living and dying.

Sr. *Walter Rawleighs* Ghost, or a Translation of *Lessius de Providentia Numinis & Animi Immortalitate*, written against the Atheists and Politicians of these dayes.

A Devout Paraphrase on the 50th. Psalm, by *Math. Kellison*, D.D.

A Discourse of a Method for the well guiding of Reason, and the Discovery of Truth in the Sciences.

*Musarum Delitiae*, containing several pieces of Poetick wit, by Sr. *John Mennis* and Dr. *Smith*.

Poems, Elegies, and Sonets, written by the Bishop of *Chichester*.

All *Horace* his Lyricks, or his fourth book of Odes, and his book of *Epods* Englished.

*Heroick* Education, or choice

Maxims and Instructions for the most sure and facile training up of youth in the wayes of Eminent learning and virtues, a Treatise very necessary for all men, but most especially for such as undertake the charge to govern the young Nobility and Gentry.

A Treatise of adhering to God, written by *Albert* the Great, Bishop of *Ratisbon*, put into English by Sr. *Kenelm Digby* Knight. Also a Conference with a Lady about choice of Religion.

The Royal Game at Chesse-Play, sometimes the recreation of the late King *Charles* the first (of blessed memory) with many of the Nobility, Illustrated with almost an hundred Gambels, being the study of *Ricchio* the famous *Italian*.

A Diarium, or Journal, divided into 12. *Jornades* in *Burlesque* Rhime, or Droling verse, with divers other pieces of the same Author.

Satyrical Declamations at the entertainment at *Rutland* house, by Sr. *William Davenant*.

A Proposition for the advancement of Experimental Philosophy, by *Abraham Cowley*.

A Discourse between the aforementioned Author and the Devil, concerning *Oliver Cromwel*.

The *Ephesian Maïron*, or a Discourse upon the nature of Women.

The *Roman*, the Conversation of the *Romans* and *Macedonians* in three excellent Discourses, written in *French* by *Balsac*, Englished by a person of quality.

#### P L A Y E S.

The Enchanted Lovers.

The Amorous Fantasm.

The Noble Ingratitude.

The Guardian *Cowley*.

*Bélus* and *Thetis*.

Loves labour lost.

*Hamlet* Prince of *Denmark*.

*Romio* and *Juliet*.